



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

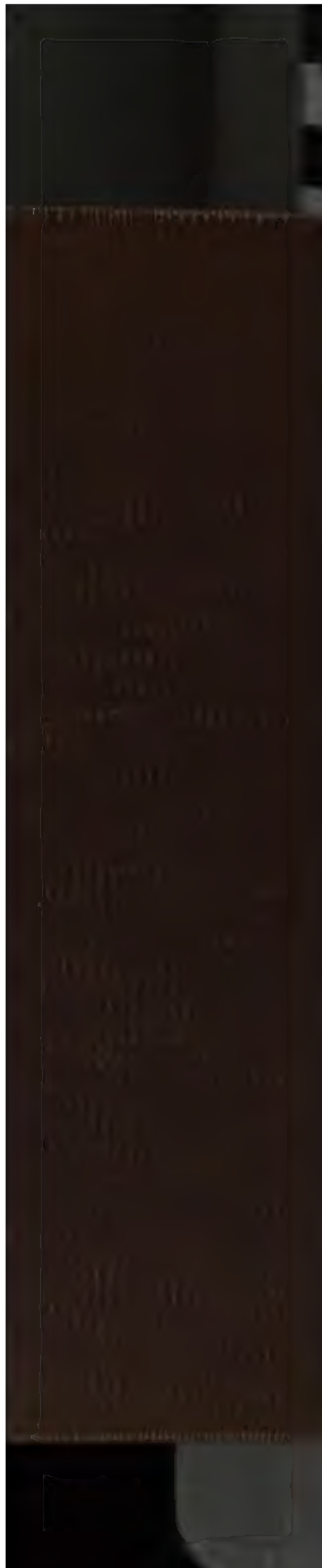
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



7

Harvard College
Library



GIFT OF THE
OVERSEERS' COMMITTEE
TO VISIT THE
DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH









THE STUDENT'S CHAUCER

SKEAT



London

HENRY FROWDE, M.A.
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE
AMEN CORNER, E.C.



New York

THE MACMILLAN CO., 66 FIFTH AVENUE

THE STUDENT'S

Chaucer

BEING

A Complete Edition of his Works

EDITED

FROM NUMEROUS MANUSCRIPTS

BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT

LITT.D., LL.D., PH.D., M.A.

*Elrington and Bosworth Professor of Anglo-Saxon
in the University of Cambridge*



Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1897

12425.2.7

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

Gift of the

OVERSEERS COMMITTEE

to Visit the

DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH

Sept. 3, 1921

Oxford

PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

BY HORACE HART, M.A.

PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

AMPLISSIMO PHILOSOPHORVM
ACADEMIAE FRIDERICIANAE HALENSIS
CVM VITEBERGENSI CONSOCIATAE ORDINI
CVIVS EX DECRETO

DIE III. M. AVGVSTI A. MDCCCXCIV
QVO DIE SACRA BISAECVLARIA VNIVERSITATIS
SOLEMNITER PERAGEBANTVR
AD GRADVM DOCTORIS HONORIS CAVSA
PROVECTVS SVM
HVNC LIBRVM GRATO ANIMO
DO DEDICO



.

.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION :—

	PAGE
LIFE OF CHAUCER	xii
WRITINGS OF CHAUCER AND EARLY EDITIONS	xvi
BRIEF ACCOUNT OF THE GRAMMAR, METRE, VERSIFICATION, AND PRONUN- CIATION	xviii

ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE: Fragment A	1
.. .. Fragment B	18
.. .. Fragment C	59

THE MINOR POEMS :—

I. An A. B. C.	79
II. The Complaynte unto Pite	81
III. The Book of the Duchesse	83
IV. The Complaynt of Mars	97
V. The Parlement of Foules	101
VI. A Compleint to his Lady	111
VII. Anelida and Arcite	113
VIII. Chaucers Wordes unto Adam	118
IX. The Former Age	118
X. Fortune	119
XI. Merciles Beaute	121
XII. To Rosemounde : A Balade	121
XIII. Truth	122
XIV. Gentilesse	122
XV. Lak of Stedfastnesse	123
XVI. Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan	123
XVII. Lenvoy de Chaucer a Bukton	124
XVIII. The Complaynt of Venus	125
XIX. The Compleint of Chaucer to his Empty Purse	126
XX. Proverbs	126
XXI. Against Women Unconstant	127
XXII. An Amorous Compleint (Compleint Damours)	127
XXIII. A Balade of Complaynt	129
XXIV. Womanly Noblesse	129



	PAGE
BOETHIUS DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIE	130
TROILUS AND CRISEYDE	206
THE HOUS OF FAME	326
THE LEGEND OF GOOD WOMEN	349
A TREATISE ON THE ASTROLABE	396
THE CANTERBURY TALES :—	
GROUP A. The Prologue	419
The Knightes Tale	430
The Miller's Prologue	457
The Milleres Tale	459
The Reeve's Prologue	467
The Reves Tale	468
The Cook's Prologue	474
The Cokes Tale	474
GROUP B. INTRODUCTION TO THE MAN OF LAW'S PROLOGUE	475
The Prologue of the Mannes Tale of Lawe	476
The Tale of the Man of Lawe	477
The Shipman's Prologue	492
The Shipmannes Tale	492
The Prioress's Prologue	498
The Prioresses Tale	498
Prologue to Sir Thopas	502
Sir Thopas	502
Prologue to Melibeus	505
The Tale of Melibeus	505
The Monk's Prologue	530
The Monkes Tale :— Lucifer. Adam. Sampson. Hercules. Nabugodonosor. Balthasar. Cenobia. De Petro rege Ispannie. De Petro Rege de Cipro. De Barnabo de Lum- bardia. De Hugelino. Nero. De Oloferno. De Rege Anthiocho. De Alexandro. De Iulio Cesare. Cresus	531
The Prologue of the Nonne Prestes Tale	542
The Nonne Preestes Tale	543
Epilogue to the Nonne Preestes Tale	551
GROUP C. The Phisiciens Tale	551
The Prologue of the Pardoneres Tale	556
The Pardoneres Tale	558

Contents.

ix

	PAGE
GROUP D. The Wife of Bath's Prologue	565
The Tale of the Wyf of Bathe	576
The Friar's Prologue	581
The Freres Tale	582
The Somnour's Prologue	587
The Somnours Tale	588
GROUP E. The Clerk's Prologue	596
The Clerkes Tale	597
The Merchant's Prologue	612
The Marchantes Tale	613
Epilogue to the Marchantes Tale	627
GROUP F. The Squieres Tale	628
The Wordes of the Franklin	636
The Franklin's Prologue	637
The Frankeleyns Tale	637
GROUP G. The Seconde Nonnes Tale	649
The Canon's Yeoman's Prologue	657
The Chanouns Yemannes Tale	659
GROUP H. The Manciple's Prologue	669
The Maunciples Tale	670
GROUP I. The Parson's Prologue	674
The Persones Tale	675
APPENDIX : VARIATIONS AND EMENDATIONS	719
<hr/>	
GLOSSARY TO CHAUCER'S WORKS	1
GLOSSARY TO FRAGMENTS B AND C OF THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE	133



INTRODUCTION.

LIFE OF CHAUCER.

Geoffrey Chaucer was born in London, about 1340 (not 1328, as was formerly said). His father was John Chaucer, citizen and vintner of London, and his mother's name was Agnes. His grandfather was Robert Chaucer, of Ipswich and London, who married a widow named Maria Heyroun, with a son Thomas Heyroun. John Chaucer's house stood in Upper Thames Street, beside Walbrook, just where that street is now crossed by the South-Eastern Railway from Cannon-street Station. Here it was that the poet spent his earliest days, and in an interesting passage in his *Pardoner's Tale* (lines 549-572), he incidentally displays his knowledge of various wines and the ways of mixing them together.

John Chaucer, the poet's father, was in attendance on Edward III. in 1338, and this connexion with the court led to his son's employment there, some years afterwards, as a page in the household of Elizabeth, wife of Lionel, duke of Clarence, the third son of Edward III. In the household accounts of this princess, mention is made of various articles of clothing and other necessities purchased for 'Geoffrey Chaucer' in April, May, and December, 1357, when he was about seventeen years old. In 1359, he joined the army of Edward III. when that king invaded France, and was there taken prisoner. In May, 1360, the peace of Bretigny (near Chartres) was concluded between the French and English kings. Chaucer had been set at liberty in March, when Edward paid 16*l.* towards his ransom.

1367. We can only conjecture the manner in which he spent his life from hints given us in his own works, and from various notices of him in official records. To consider the latter first, we find, from the Issue Rolls of the Exchequer, that a life-pension of 20 marks was granted by the king to Chaucer in 1367, in consideration of his services, as being one of the valets of the king's household. During 1368 and part of 1369 he was in London, and received his pension in person. In October, 1368, his patron, Prince Lionel, died, and it appears that Chaucer's services were consequently transferred to the next brother, John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster.

1369. In the autumn of 1369, the year of the third great pestilence of Edward's reign, Blanche, the first wife of John of Gaunt, died at the early age of twenty-nine. Chaucer did honour to her memory in one of his earliest poems, entitled 'The Death of Blanche the Duchesse.'

1370-1373. From 1370 to 1386, Chaucer was attached to the court, and employed in frequent diplomatic services.

In December, 1372, being employed in the king's service, he left England for Genoa, Pisa, and Florence, and remained in Italy for nearly eleven months, but

we again find him in London on November 22, 1373. This visit of his to Italy is of great importance, as it exercised a marked influence on his writings, and enables us to understand the development of his genius.

1374. His conduct during this mission to Italy met with the full approval of the king, who, on the celebration of the great festival at Windsor on St. George's day (April 23) in 1374, granted our poet a pitcher of wine daily, to be received from the king's butler. On May 10 of the same year, Chaucer took a lease of a house in Aldgate, for the term of his life, from the Corporation of London; but he afterwards gave it up to a friend in October, 1386; and it is probable that he had ceased to reside in it for a year or more previously. On June 8, 1374, he was appointed to the important office of Comptroller of the Customs and Subsidy of Wools, Skins, and Leather, for the port of London; and a few days later (June 13) received a life-pension of 10*l.* from the duke of Lancaster for the good service rendered by him and his wife Philippa to the said Duke, to his consort, and to his mother the Queen. This is the first mention of Philippa Chaucer as Geoffrey's wife, though a Philippa Chaucer is mentioned as one of the Ladies of the Chamber to Queen Philippa, on September 12, 1366, and subsequently. It has been conjectured that Chaucer was not married till 1374, and that he married a relative, or at least some one bearing the same name as himself; but this supposition is needless and improbable; there is no reason why the Philippa Chaucer mentioned in 1366 may not have been already married to the poet, who was then at least 26 years of age.

1375. In 1375 his income was increased by receiving from the Crown (November 8) the custody of the lands and person of one Edmond Staplegate, of Kent. This he retained for three years, during which he received 104*l.*; together with some smaller sums from another source.

1376. On July 12, 1376, the king granted Chaucer the sum of 71*l.* 4*s.* 6*d.*, being the value of a fine paid by one John Kent for shipping wool without paying the duty thereon. Towards the end of this year, Sir John Burley and Geoffrey Chaucer were employed upon some secret service, for which the latter received 6*l.* 13*s.* 4*d.*

1377. In February, 1377, Chaucer was employed on a secret mission to Flanders, and received for it, in all, the sum of 30*l.* In April he was sent to France, to treat for peace with king Charles V.; for this service he received, in all, the sum of 48*l.* 13*s.* 4*d.* On June 21, king Edward III. died, and was succeeded by his grandson, Richard II.

1378. In January, Chaucer seems to have been employed in France. Soon afterwards, he was again sent to Italy, from May 28 to September 19, being employed on a mission to Lombardy, to treat with Bernabo Visconti, duke of Milan; to whose death (in 1385) the poet alludes in his *Monkes Tale* (ll. 3589-3596), where he describes him as—

‘Of Melan grete Barnabo Viscounte,
God of delyt, and scourge of Lumbardye.’

Before leaving England on this business, Chaucer appointed his friend John Gower, the poet, as one of his agents to represent him in his absence.

1380. By deed of May 1, 1380, one Cecilia Chaumpayne released Chaucer from a charge which she had brought against him, ‘*de raptu meo.*’ We have no means of ascertaining either the nature of the charge, or the circumstances of the case.

1382. We have seen that Chaucer had been appointed Comptroller of the Wool

Customs in 1374. Whilst still retaining this office, he was now also appointed Comptroller of the Petty Customs (May 8, 1382).

1385. In February, 1385, he was allowed the great privilege of nominating a permanent deputy to perform his duties as Comptroller. It is highly probable that he owed this favour to 'the good queen Anne,' first wife of king Richard II.; for, in the Prologue to the Legend of Good Women, probably written during this period of his newly-acquired freedom from irksome duties, he expresses himself most gratefully towards her.

If we may trust the description of his house and garden in the Prologue to the Legend of Good Women, probably composed in the spring of 1385, it would appear that he was then living in the country, and had already given up his house over the city gate at Aldgate to Richard Forster, who obtained a formal lease of it from the Corporation of London in October, 1386. We learn incidentally, from a note to the Envoy to Scogan, l. 45, that he was living at Greenwich at the time when he wrote that poem (probably in 1393). And it is highly probable that Chaucer's residence at Greenwich extended from 1385 to the end of 1399, when he took a new house at Westminster. This supposition agrees well with various hints that we obtain from other notices. Thus, in 1390, he was appointed (with five others) to superintend the repairing of the banks of the Thames between Woolwich and Greenwich. In the same year he was robbed at Hatcham (as we shall see below), which is near Deptford and Greenwich. And we find the singular reference in the Canterbury Tales (A 1907), where the Host suddenly exclaims—'Lo! Grenewich, ther many a shrewe is inne'; which looks like a sly insinuation, on the Host's part, that Greenwich at that time contained many 'shrews' or rascals. Few places would serve better than Greenwich for frequent observation of Canterbury pilgrims.

1386. In this year Chaucer was elected a knight of the shire for Kent, in the Parliament held at Westminster. In August, his patron John of Gaunt went to Spain: and during his absence, his brother Thomas, duke of Gloucester, contrived to deprive the king of all power, by appointing a regency of eleven persons, himself being at the head of them. As the duke of Gloucester was ill disposed towards his brother John, it is probable that we can thus account for the fact that, in December of this year, Chaucer was dismissed from both his offices, of Comptroller of Wool and Comptroller of Petty Customs, others being appointed in his place. This sudden and great loss reduced the poet from comparative wealth to poverty; he was compelled to raise money upon his pensions, which were assigned to John Scalby on May 1, 1388.

In October of this year (1386), there was a famous trial between Richard Lord Scrope and Sir Thomas Grosvenor, during which Chaucer deposed that he was 'forty years of age and upwards, and had borne arms for twenty-seven years.' He was, in fact, about forty-six years old, having been born, as said above, about 1340. Moreover, it is probable that he first bore arms in 1359, when he went with the invading army to France. This exactly tallies with his own statement.

1387. In this year died Chaucer's wife, Philippa; to this loss he alludes in his Envoy to Bukton. It must have been about this time that he was composing portions of his greatest poem, the Canterbury Tales.

1389. On May 3, Richard II. suddenly took the government into his own hands. John of Gaunt returned to England soon afterwards, and effected an outward reconciliation between the king and the duke of Gloucester. The Lancastrian party was

Introduction.

now once more in power, and Chaucer was appointed Clerk of the King's Works at Westminster on July 12, at a salary of 2s. a day (more than 1*l.* of our present money, at the least).

1390. In this year, Chaucer was also appointed Clerk of the Works at St. George's Chapel at Windsor, and was put on a Commission to repair the banks of the Thames between Woolwich and Greenwich. In a writ, dated July 1 in this year, he was allowed the costs of putting up scaffolds in Smithfield for the King and Queen to view the tournament which had taken place there in May. This helps to explain the minute account of the method of conducting a tournament which we meet with in the Knight's Tale. In the preceding month he had been appointed, by the Earl of March, joint Forester (with Richard Brittle) of North Petherton Park in Somerset. In September, he was twice robbed of some of the king's money; once, at Westminster, of 10*l.*; and again, near the 'foule ok' (foul oak) at Hatcham, Surrey, of 9*l.* 3*s.* 8*d.*; but the repayment of these sums was forgiven him.

1391. This is the date given by Chaucer to his prose Treatise on the Astrolabe, which he compiled for the use of his 'little son' Lewis, of whom nothing more is known; and it is supposed that he died at an early age. At this time, for some unknown reason, the poet unfortunately lost his appointment as Clerk of the Works.

1394. In February of this year, Chaucer received a grant from the king of 20*l.* a year for life; nevertheless, he seems to have been in want of money, as we find him making applications for the advancement of money from his pension.

1398. In this year or the preceding, Chaucer was made sole Forester of North Petherton Park, instead of joint Forester, as in 1390. In the Easter Term, he was sued for a debt of 14*l.* 1*s.* 11*d.* In October, the king granted him a tun of wine yearly, for his life-time.

1399. On September 30, Henry IV. became king of England, and Chaucer addressed to him a complaint regarding his poverty, called a 'Compleynt to his Pura,' in response to which, only four days afterwards, Henry granted that the poet's pension of twenty marks (13*l.* 6*s.* 8*d.*) should be doubled, in addition to the 20*l.* a year which had been granted to him in 1394.

On Christmas eve of this year, Chaucer took a long lease of a house in the garden of the Chapel of St. Mary, Westminster; this house stood near the spot now occupied by King Henry the Seventh's Chapel. The lease is in the Muniment Room of Westminster Abbey (Historical MSS. Commission, i. 95).

1400. The traditional date of Chaucer's death is October 25, 1400; in the second year of Henry IV. His death doubtless took place in his newly-acquired house at Westminster; and he attained to the age of about sixty years. Of his family, nothing is known. His 'little son' Lewis probably died young; and there is no evidence earlier than the reign of Henry VI. that the Thomas Chaucer whose great-grandson, John de la Pole, Earl of Lincoln, was declared heir to the throne by his uncle, Richard III., in 1484, was Chaucer's son. As Thomas Chaucer was a man of great wealth, and of some mark, we should have expected to find early and undoubted evidence as to his parentage. We find, however, that Thomas Gascoigne, who wrote a Theological Dictionary, and died in 1458, refers to the poet in these words:—'*Fuit idem Chawserus pater Thomae Chawserus, armigeri, qui Thomas sepelitur in Nuhelm iuxta Oxoniam.*' Gascoigne was in a position to know the truth, since he was Chancellor of Oxford, and Thomas Chaucer had held the

Character of Chaucer.

xv

manor of Ewelme, at no great distance, till his death in 1400. If this information be correct, it then becomes highly probable that Chaucer's wife Philippa was Philippa Roet, sister of the Katharine de Roet of Hainault, who married Sir John Swynford, and afterwards became the mistress, and in 1396 the third wife of John of Gaunt. This has been inferred from the fact that Thomas Chaucer's arms contain three wheels, supposed to represent the name of Roet; since the Old French *roet* means 'a little wheel.' Those who accept this inference see good reasons for explaining the favours extended to Chaucer both by John of Gaunt himself and his son King Henry IV.

CHARACTER OF CHAUCER.

There is no space here for exhibiting fully the revelation of Chaucer's character as expressed by numerous passages in his works. We easily recognise in them a man of cheerful and genial nature, with great powers of originality, full of freshness and humour, a keen observer of men, and at the same time an enthusiastic and untiring student of books. He tells a story excellently and sets his characters before us with dramatic clearness; and he has also an exquisite ear for music and pays great attention to the melodious flow of his verse. Except in his prose tales, he frequently affects, in his *Canterbury Tales*, an air of simplicity which sits upon him gracefully enough. In his *Prologue to Sir Thopas*, he describes himself as a 'large,' i.e. a somewhat corpulent man, and no 'poppet' to embrace, that is, not slender in the waist; as having an 'elvish' or abstracted look, often staring on the ground 'as if he would find a hare,' and 'doing no dalliance' to any man, i.e. not entering briskly into casual conversation. His numerous references and quotations show that he was deeply read in all medieval learning, and well acquainted with Latin, French (both of England and of the continent), and Italian, besides being a master of the East-midland dialect of English. A passage in the *Reeve's Tale* imitates some of the peculiarities of the Northumbrian dialect with much fidelity. On the other hand, he occasionally introduces forms into his poems that are peculiarly Kentish; owing, as I am inclined to suggest, to his residence for some years at Greenwich. In his *House of Fame*, he tells us how he had 'set his wit to make books, songs, and ditties in rime,' and often 'made his head ache at night with writing in his study.' For, when he had done his official work for the day, and 'made his reckonings,' he used to go home and become wholly absorbed in his books, 'hearing neither this nor that'; and, 'in stead of rest and new things' (recreation), he used 'to sit at a book, as dumb as a stone, till his look was dazed'; and thus did he 'live as a hermit, though (unlike a hermit) his abstinence was but little.' So great (as he tells us in the *Prologue to The Legend of Good Women*) was his love of nature, that, 'when the month of May is come, and I hear the birds sing, and see the flowers springing up, farewell then to my book and to my devotion' to reading. In many passages he insists on the value of the parity of womanhood and the nobility of manhood, taking the latter to be dependant upon good feeling and courtesy. As he says in *The Wife of Bath's Tale*, 'the man who is always the most virtuous, and most endeavours to be constant in the performance of gentle deeds, is to be taken to be the greatest gentleman. Christ desires that we should derive our gentleness from Him, and not from our masters, however rich.'

WRITINGS OF CHAUCER.

Other notices of Chaucer must be gathered from his writings and from what we know about them. It is advisable to date his various works, where possible, as well as we can, and to consider the result.

Chaucer's works fall (as shewn by Ten Brink) into three periods. During the first of these, he imitated French models, particularly the famous and very long poem entitled *Le Roman de la Rose*, of which, as he himself tells us, he made a translation. It so happens that there exist what are apparently two, but are really three fragments of translations of two different parts of this poem; they are found in a MS. at Glasgow, written out about A.D. 1430-40, and in the early printed editions. These three fragments, marked A, B, C in the present volume, appear to be by different hands; and only the first of them can be reconciled with Chaucer's usual diction and grammar. We must regretfully infer that the major part of Chaucer's own translation is irrecoverably lost. The poems of this First Period were written before he set out on his Italian travels in 1372, and there is no trace in them of any Italian influence.

The poems of the Second Period (1373-1384) clearly shew the influence of Italian literature, especially of Dante's *Divina Commedia*, and of Boccaccio's poems entitled *Il Teseide* and *Il Filostrato*. Curiously enough, there is nothing to shew that Chaucer was acquainted, at first-hand, with Boccaccio's *Decamerone*.

The poems of the Third Period are chiefly remarkable for a larger share of originality, and are considered as beginning with the *Legend of Good Women*, the first poem in which the poet employed what is now known as the 'heroic' couplet, which he adapted from Guillaume de Machault.

The following list is arranged, *conjecturally*, in chronological order.

Origenes upon the Maudeleyne (*lost*).

Book of the Leoun (*lost*).

Ceys and Alcioun; afterwards (probably) partly preserved in the Book of the Duchesse.

The Romaunt of the Rose. (Fragment A (ll. 1-1705) is all that can fairly be claimed as Chaucer's work. Fragment B is written in a dialect approximating to that of Lincolnshire. The author of Fragment C, like that of B, remains unknown.)

A. B. C.—Minor Poems, I.

1369. Book of the Duchesse.—M. P. III.

Lyf of St. Cecyle (afterwards adapted to become the Second Nonnes Tale).

Monkes Tale (parts of); lines 3365-3652 clearly belong to a later period.

About 1372-3. Clerkes Tale; except E 995-1008, and the Envoy.

Palamon and Arcite; of which some scraps are preserved in other poems. It was also used as the basis of the *Knichtes Tale*,

Compleint to his Lady.—M. P. VI.

An Amorous Compleint, made at Windsor.—M. P. XXII.

Womanly Noblesse.—M. P. XXIV.

Compleint unto Pitè.—M. P. II.

Anelida and Arcite (containing ten stanzas from Palamon).—M. P. VII.

The Tale of Melibeus (in its original form); partly translated from Albertano of Brescia.

The Persones Tale (in its original form); partly translated from Frère Lorens.

Of the Wretched Engendring of Mankind; mentioned in the Legend, Text A, l. 414; and partly preserved in scraps occurring in the Man of Lawes Tale, B 99-121, 421-7, 771-7, 925-931, 1135-41.

Man of Lawes Tale (in its original form); partly translated from Nicholas Trivet.

1377-81. Translation of Boethius.

1379? Complaint of Mars.—M. P. IV.

1379-83. Troilus and Criseyde; (partly from Boccaccio's *Il Filostrato* and Guido delle Colonne's *Historia Troiae*; containing three stanzas from Palamon).

Wordes to Adam (concerning Boethius and Troilus).—M. P. VIII.

The Former Age; chiefly from Boethius, Book II. met. V.—M. P. IX.

Fortune; containing hints from Boethius.—M. P. X.

1382. Parlement of Foules (containing six stanzas from Palamon).—M. P. V.

1483-4. House of Fame; containing hints from Dante; *unfinished*.

1385-6. Legend of Good Women; *unfinished*.

1386. Canterbury Tales begun.

1387-8. Central period of the Canterbury Tales.

1389, &c. The Tales continued.

1391. Treatise on the Astrolabe; chiefly from Messehala; *unfinished*.

1393? Complaint of Venus.—M. P. XVIII.

1393. Lenvoy to Scogan.—M. P. XVI.

1396. Lenvoy to Bukton.—M. P. XVII.

1399. Envoy to Complaint to his Purse.—M. P. XIX.

The following occasional triple roundel and balades may have been composed between 1380 and 1396:—Merciless Beautè.—M. P. XI. Balade to Rosemounde.—M. P. XII. Against Women Unconstaunt.—M. P. XXI. Complaint to his Purse (except the Envoy).—M. P. XIX. Lak of Stedfastnesse.—M. P. XV. Gentileesse.—M. P. XIV. Truth.—M. P. XIII. Proverbes of Chaucer.—M. P. XX.

EDITIONS OF CHAUCER.

Several of Chaucer's Poems were printed at various times by Caxton and others, but the first collected edition of his works was that edited by W. Thynne in 1532. This was reprinted, with the addition of the spurious *Plowman's Tale*, in 1542; and again, about 1550. Later editions appeared in 1561 (with large additions by John Stowe); in 1598 (re-edited by Thomas Speght, second edition, 1603, and reprinted in 1687. Still later editions were the very bad one by Urry, in 1721, and the excellent one by Tyrwhitt, of the *Canterbury Tales only*, in 1775-8. These editions, excepting Tyrwhitt's, have done much to confuse the public as to the genuine works of Chaucer, because in them a large number of poems, some known (even by the editors) to be by Lydgate, Gower, Hoccleve, and Scogan, together with others obviously spurious, were carelessly added to works by Chaucer himself; and many erroneous notions have been deduced from the study of this incongruous mixture.

It must suffice to say here that most of the later editions, since the publication of Tyrwhitt's remarks on the subject, reject many of these additional pieces, but still unadvisedly admit the poems entitled *The Court of Love*, *The Complaint of the Black Knight*, *Chaucer's Dream*, *The Flower and the Leaf*, and *The Cuckoo and the Nightingale*. Of these, *The Complaint of the Black Knight* is now known to be by Lydgate, *The Flower and the Leaf* cannot be earlier than 1450, and was probably written, as it

purports to be, by a lady; whilst *The Court of Love* can hardly be earlier than 1500, and *Chaucer's Dream* (so called) is of still later date. Nothing but a complete ignorance of the history of the English language can connect these fifteenth-century and sixteenth-century poems with Chaucer. The only poem, in the above set, which can possibly be as old as the fourteenth century, is *The Cuckoo and the Nightingale*. There is no evidence of any kind to connect it with Chaucer; and Professor Lounsbury decisively rejects it, on the internal evidence. It admits a few rimes (see p. xxiv) such as Chaucer nowhere employs.

GRAMMATICAL HINTS.

The following brief hints contain but a minimum of information, and include nothing that should not be extremely familiar to the student.

Observe that, in Chaucer's English, the final syllables *-e*, *-ed*, *-en*, *-es*, almost always form a distinct and separate syllable, so that a large number of words had then *a syllable more* than they have now. Unless this rule be observed, no progress in the study is possible. In particular, *always* sound this final *-e* (like the *a* in *China*) at the end of a line.

Final *-e* is elided, or slurred over, when the next word begins with a vowel, or is one of certain words beginning with *h*, viz. (1) a pronoun, as *he*; (2) part of the verb *have*; (3) the adverbs *heer*, *how*; (4) mute *h* in *honour*, *houre*. In a similar position, final *-er*, *-en*, *-el*, *-y*, are slurred over likewise; thus *get-en* is really *get'n* in l. 291¹.

Final *-e* is *sometimes* dropped in a few common words, such as *were*, *hadde*, *had*, *wolde*, *would*.

Middle *-e* is also sometimes dropped, as in *havene*s, pronounced (haavnez), l. 407. But *trew-e-ly* (481) is trisyllabic.

The reasons for sounding the final *-e*, *-en*, *-es*, as distinct syllables, are grammatical. These endings represent older inflexions, mostly Anglo-Saxon; and were once, in fact, essential. But, in Chaucer's time, they were *beginning* to disappear, and many are now lost altogether.

Final *-e*. The various sources of the M. E. (i. e. Middle-English) final *-e* are, chiefly, these following.

1. The A.S. (Anglo-Saxon) sb. ended in a vowel. Thus A.S. *har-a*, a hare, became M.E. *har-e* (191).
2. The A.F. (Anglo-French) sb. ended in a vowel which was formerly sounded. Thus A.F. *mélodî-ē* (four syllables) is M.E. *melody-ē* (four syllables, 9).
3. The dative case often ends in *-e*, especially after the prepositions *at*, *by*, *for*, *in*, *of*, *on*, *to*. Thus *rot-e* (2) is the dative case of *root*, a root. We even find the form of an oblique case used as a nom. case, owing to confusion. Thus A.S. *hwelp*, a whelp, makes the dat. *hwelp-e*; Chaucer has *whelp-e* as a nominative (257).
4. The forms *hell-e* (so in A.S.), *sonn-e* (A.S. *sunnan*) are *genitives*; see Book Duch. 171; A 1051. Similarly *-y* represents a genitive suffix in *lad-y*, 88, 695.
5. The *definite* form of the adjective (i. e. the form used when the def. art. *the* or a possessive or demonstrative pronoun precedes it) ends in *-e*. Ex.: *the-yong-e*, 7.
6. The adj. pl. ends in *-e*; as *smal-e*, 9.

¹ The numbers refer to the lines of The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales; see p. 419.

7. Even the adj. sing. may end in *-e*; as *soot-e* (5), from A.S. *sootta*, sweet, in which the final *-e* is essential. So also *treow*, from A.S. *trēowes*; 531.

8. Verbs: the infinitive and gerund (with *to*) end in *-en* or *-e*, as *begin-e*, 41; *for* *to* *go-e*, 33.

9. Strong verbs: the pp. (past participle) ends in *-en* or *-e*; as *y-ronn-e*, 8.

10. Weak verbs: the pt. t. (past tense) ends in *-ede*, *-de*, *-te*, *-e*; as *say-de*, 70. Sometimes in *-ed*, as *prov-ed*, 547. Observe *lakk-e-de*, 756; *lov'de*, 97; *wot-te*, 129; *went-e*, 78.

11. Verbs: various other inflexions in *-en* or *-e*. Thus *slēp-en*, 3 p. pr. pl., 10; *wēr-en*, 1 p. pt. pl., 29; *geas-e*, 1 p. pr. s., 82; *smert-e*, 3 p. pr. s. subj., 230, &c.

12. Adverbs and prepositions may end in *-en* or *-e*; as *abov-en*, 53; *about-e*, prep. 158, adv. 488.

Final *-en*. The suffix *-en* usually denotes either (1) the pl. sb., as *hōe-en*, 456; (2) the infin. or gerundial infin. of a verb, as *to wend-en*, 21; (3) the pp. of a strong verb, as *holp-en*, 18; (4) the pl. of any tense of a verb, as *wēr-en*, 1 p. pt. pl., 29; (5) a prep. or adverb, as *abov-en*, 53.

Final *-es*. The final *-es* denotes either (1) the gen. sing., as *lord-es*, 47; (2) the pl. sb., as *shov-es*, 1; or (3) an adverb, as *thry-es*, 562. But the gen. of *lady* is *lady*; and of *fader*, *is fader*. And the plural may end in *-e*, as in *palmer-e*, 13.

The student should endeavour to make out, in every case, the reason for the use of final *-e*, *-en*, or *-es*. He will thus acquire the grammar. The above hints explain most cases that can arise.

Further notes. Some neuter sbs. do not change in the plural, as *hors*, pl. *hors*, 74. So also *neat*, *sheep*, *swyn*, *yeer*.

Comparatives end in *-er*, as *grett-er*, adj., 197; or *-re*, as *fer-re*, adv., 48. Superlatives, in *-est*, occasional def. form *-est-e*, as *best-e*, 252. Pronouns: *tho*, those; *this*, pl. *thise*, these; *thilke*, that; *like*, same. *Atte*, for *at the*. *Ye*, nom.; *yow*, dat. and acc., you. *Hēr*, their (also her); *hem*, them. *Hīs*, his, ita. *Whiche*, what sort of, 40; *what*, i.e. 'why,' 184; *That . . . he*, who, 44, 45; *whō eō*, whoever, 741. *Mēn*, one, with a sing. verb, as *mēn smoot*, one smote, 149.

Verbs. Verbs are distinguished as being weak or strong. In the former, the pp. ends in *-ed*, *-d*, or *-t*; in the latter, in *-en*, or *-e*.

A simple rule is this. In weak verbs, the pt. t. ends in *-ede* (rarely *-ed*), *-de*, *-te*, *-e*, so that the final *-e* is here extremely common, but it does not appear in the pp.; conversely, in strong verbs, it is the pp. that ends in *-en* or *-e*, which never appears in the first or third person singular of the past tense. Ex. *went-e*, 3 p. pt. s., 78, is a weak past tense; *clō-d*, 103, is a weak pp. Conversely, *y-ronn-e*, 8, is a strong pp.; *slēp*, 98, is a strong pt. t. The prefix *y-* (A.S. *ge-*) can be prefixed to any pp., and makes no difference.

Strong verbs usually shew vowel-change; thus *bigan* (44) is the pt. t. of *beginnen*. But note that this is not a sure guide; for *raugh-te* (136) is the pt. t. of *reck-en*, to reach, and is weak. *Slēp-en*, to sleep, pt. t. *sleep*, is strong.

In strong verbs, the vowel of the past tense is changed, sometimes, in the plural. Thus the pt. t. sing. of *ryd-en*, to ride, is *rood*, 169; but the pl. is *rid-en*, 825. The pp. is also *rid-en*, 48.

The usual formulae for the conjugation of verbs are as follows.

Present tense. Sing. *-e*, *-est*, *-eth* (*-ā*); pl. *-en* or *-e*.

Past tense; weak verbs. Sing. *-ede* (*-de* or *-ed*), *-de*, *-te*, *-e* (in persons 1 and 3), *-est*, *-dest*, *-test*, *-et* (2 person). Plural, *-eden*, *-ede*, *-de*, *-den*, *-ten*, *-te*, *-e* (all persons).

Introduction.

Past tense; strong verbs. Sing. indic. *no suffix* (in persons 1 and 3); *-e*, occasionally (2 person). Sing. subj. *-e* (all persons). Plural of both moods: *-en*, *-e*.

Imperative. Sing. 2 person: *no suffix* (usually); *-e* (in some weak verbs). Plural, 2 person: *-eth*, *-th*; (sometimes *-e*).

Infinitive: *-en*, *-e*. The gerundial infinitive has *to* or *for to* prefixed, and often denotes purpose.

Participles. Present: *-ing*, often *-inge* at the end of a line. Pp. of weak verbs: *-ed*, *-d*, *-t*. Pp. of strong verbs: *-en*, *-e*.

N.B. We find the contracted form *bit*, for *biddeth*, in the 3 p. pr. s. indicative, 187.

Similar contractions are common; hence *hit* means 'hideth'; *rit* means 'rideth'; *sit*, 'sitteth'; *let*, 'leadeth,' B 1496; &c.

Formation of Past Tenses. The form of the pt. t. of a weak verb depends on the form of its stem. There are three classes of such verbs.

1. Infin. *-ien*; pt. *-ede* (*-de*), or *-ed*. Thus *lov-ien*, to love; pt. t. *lov-ede* (pronounced *luv'de*), or *lov-ed* (*luv'ed*). Compare *lakk-e-de*, 756; though the infin. is *lakk-en*.

2. Infin. *-en*; pt. t. *-de*, *-te*, or sometimes (after *d* or *t*) *-e*; without vowel-change, except such as is due to contraction. Ex. *hēr-en*, to hear, pt. t. *her-de*; *kēp-en*, to keep, pt. t. *kep-te*; *lēd-en*, to lead, pt. t. *lad-de* (short for *lēd-de*). Cf. *went-e*, went.

3. Infin. *-en*, with a modified vowel in the infinitive, the root-vowel appearing in the pt. t. and pp. Thus the root *sōk* (of Gothic *sōkjan*, to seek), appears in the A.S. pt. t. *sōh-te*, pp. *sōh-t*, M.E. *soght-e*, *sogh-t*; but the *ō* becomes *ē* (as in A.S. *fūt*, foot, pl. *fēt*, feet) in the infin. *sēc-an*, M.E. *sēk-en*, E. *seek*. Cf. *tell-en*, pt. t. *tol-de*; *tech-en*, pt. t. *taugh-te*.

N.B. The pp. of a weak verb results from the pt. t. by dropping *-e* (unless it has been dropped already); thus pt. t. *tol-de* gives pp. *tol-d*.

Strong verbs. The seven conjugations of strong verbs are given in my Principles of Etymology. I take as representative verbs the following: *fall*, *shake*, *bear*, *give*, *drink*, *drive*, *choose*. A more usual order (though it makes no real difference) is:

1. *drive*, 2. *choose*, 3. *drink*, 4. *bear*, 5. *give*, 6. *shake*, 7. *fall*.

The 'principal parts' are: (a) the infinitive: (b) the past tense, singular; (c) the pt. t. pl.; (d) the pp.

1. 'Drive.' Here Chaucer has: (a) *rȳd-en*, to ride; (b) *rood*; (c) *rīd-en*; (d) *rīd-en*. So also *byt-en*, bite, *rys-en*, rise, *shyn-en*, shine, *shryv-en*, shrive, *smyt-en*, smite, *wryt-en*, write¹. I here write *y* to denote long *i*.

2. 'Choose.' As: (a) *sēth-en*, to seethe; (b) *seeth*; (c, d) *sod-en*.

3. 'Drink.' As: (a) *biginn-en*; (b) *bigan*; (c) *bigonnen*; (d) *bigonnen*. So also *drinken*, *ginnen*, *rinnen*, to run, *singen*, *springen*, *swinken*, to toil, *winnen*, *delven*, *fighten* (pt. t. s. *faught*), *helpen*, *kerven*, *thresshen*.

4. 'Bear.' As: (a) *ber-en*; (b) *bar*; (c) *bēr-en*; (d) *bor-en*. So also *breken*, *sheren*, *stelen*. Comen has: (b) *cōm*; (c) *cōm-en*; (d) *cōm-en*.

5. 'Give.' As: (a) *yev-en*, *yiv-en*; (b) *yaf*; (c) *yēv-en*; (d) *yiv-en*. So also *geten* (pp. *geten*); *speken* (pp. *spoken*).

6. 'Shake.' As: (a) *bak-en*; (b) *book*; (c) *bōk-en*; (d) *bak-en*. So also *drawen*, *shaken*, *shaven*, *stonden* (pt. t. *stood*), *taken*, *sweren* (pp. *swor-e*).

7. 'Fall.' As: (a) *fall-en*; (b) *fl*; (c) *fill-en*; (d) *fall-en*. So *holden*, pt. t. *hēld*;

¹ Chaucer's Prologue does not contain specimens of *all* the parts of the verbs mentioned. Thus *sēthen* only occurs in the infinitive (383); however, the pl. t. *seeth* occurs elsewhere, viz. in the Clerkes Tale, E 227.

lēt-en, pt. t. *leet*; *slēp-en*, pt. t. *sleep*; *blōwen*, *grōwen*, *knōw-en*, pt. t. *blew*, &c.; *wēp-en*, pt. t. *weep*; *goon*, pp. *y-goön*, *y-go*, 286. Compare the complete list of strong M.E. verbs, in *Specimens of English*, ed. Morris and Skeat, pt. 1.

Anomalous Verbs. Among these note the following. *Been*, *ben*, are. Imper. pl. *beeth*, *beeth*, be ye. Pp. *been*, *ben*, *been*.

Can, I know; pl. *connen*; pt. t. *coude*, knew, could; pp. *couth*, known. *Dar*, I dare; pt. t. *dorste*. *May*, I may; pl. *mowen*; subjunctive, *moove*, pl. *mowen*. *Moot*, I must, I may, he must, he may; pl. *mōten*, *mōte*; pt. t. *mōste*. *Oghte*, ought. *Shal*, pl. *shullen*, *shul*; pt. t. *sholde*. *Witen*, to know; *woot*, *wōt*, I know, he knows; pl. *witen* (correctly; but Chaucer also has *ye woot*); pt. t. *wiste*, knew; pp. *wist*. *Wil*, *wol*, *wole*, will; pl. *wolen*, *wilen*; pt. t. *wolde*. *Thar*, needs; pt. t. *thurte*.

Negatives. *Nam*, for *ne am*, am not; *nis*, for *ne is*, is not; *nas*, was not; *nēre*, were not; *nadde*, had not; *nil*, will not; *nolde*, would not; *noot*, I know not, he knows not; *niste*, knew not; *ne . . . ne*, neither . . . nor, 603. Double negatives, 70, 71, &c.

Adverbs. End in *-e*, as *dēp-e*, deeply; or *-ly*, as *subtil-ly*; or *-e-ly*, as *trewe-e-ly*, truly; or *-en*, *-e*, as *bifor-en*, *bifor-e*; or in *-es*, as *thry-es*, thrice. *Ther*, where, 547; *thar es*, where that, 34.

Prepositions. End in *-en*, *-e*, *-es*; &c. *Til*, for *to*, before a vowel. *With* adjoins its verb; 791.

METRE.

Chaucer was our first great metrist, and enriched our literature with several forms of metre which had not been previously employed in English. These he borrowed chiefly from Guillaume de Machault, who made use of stanzas of seven, eight, and nine lines, and even wrote at least one Complaint in the 'heroic' couplet.

The metre of four accents, in rimed couplets, had been in use in English long before Chaucer's time; and he adopted it in translating *Le Roman de la Rose* (the original being in the same metre), in the *Book of the Duchesse*, and in the *House of Fame*.

The ballad-metre, as employed in the *Tale of Sir Thopas*, is also older than his time. In fact, this *Tale* is a burlesque imitation of some of the old Romances.

The four-line stanza, in the *Proverbes*, was likewise nothing new.

But he employed the following metres, in English, for the first time.

1. The 8-line stanza, with the rimes arranged in the order *ababbcbc*; i. e. with the first line (*a*) riming with the third (*a*), and so on. Exx. *A.B.C.*; *The Monkes Tale*; *The Former Age*; *Envoy to Bukton*.

2. The same, thrice repeated, with a refrain. Ex. (part of) *Fortune*; *Complaint to Venus*; *Balade to Rosemounde*.

3. The 7-line stanza, with the rimes *ababbcc*; a favourite metre. Exx. *Lyf of Saint Cecyle*; *Clerkes Tale*; *Palamon and Arcite*; (part of) *Complaint to his Lady*; *An Amorous Complaint*; *Complaint to Pitè*; (part of) *Anelida*; *The Wretched Legendring of Mankind*; *The Man of Lawes Tale*; (part of) *The Complaint of Mars*; *Troilus and Criseyde*; *Wordes to Adam*; (part of) *The Parlement of Foules*; (parts of) *The Canterbury Tales*; *Envoy to Scogan*.

4. The same 7-line stanza, thrice repeated, with a refrain. Exx. *Against Women*

Unconstaunt; Complaint to his Purse; Lak of Stedfastnesse; Gentillesse; Truth. Also in the Legend of Good Women, 249-269.

- 1c. The 7-line stanza, with the rimes *ababbab*. Ex. (part of) Fortune.
2. Terza Rima. Only a few lines; in the Complaint to his Lady.
4. The 10-line stanza, *aabaabddc*. In the Complaint to his Lady.
5. The 9-line stanza, *aabaabbaa*. Only in Anelida.
- 5A. The same, with internal rimes. Only in Anelida.
- 5c. The same as 5, but thrice repeated. Only in Womanly Noblesse.
6. Two stanzas of 10 lines each; with the rimes *aaabaaab · bbbabbba*. Only in Anelida.
7. The 9-line stanza, *aabaabbbc*. Only in the latter part of the Complaint of Mars.
8. The roundel. In the Parlement of Foules; and Merciless Beauté.
9. The heroic couplet. In the Legend of Good Women and parts of the Canterbury Tales.
10. A 6-line stanza, repeated six times; with the rimes *ababcb*. Only in the Envoy to the Clerkes Tale.
11. A 10-line stanza, *aabaabbaab*. Only in the Envoy to the Complaint of Venus.
12. A 6-line stanza, *ababaa*. Only in the Envoy to Womanly Noblesse.
13. A 5-line stanza, *aabba*. Only in the Envoy to Complaint to his Purse.

The following pieces are in prose. The Tale of Melibeus. The Persones Tale. The translation of Boethius, *De Consolatione Philosophiae*. The Treatise on the Astridaba.

VERSIFICATION.

None lines drop the first syllable, and the first foot contains *one* syllable only; as: *thing | len in*, &c. 170.

Many rimes are *double*, as *cloistre, oistre*, 181; *Rom-e, to me*, 671; *non-es, noon is*, 523. Always sound final *-e* at the end of a line. Rimes may be *treble*, as *apothec-dr-i-es, letu-dr-i-es*, 425; so at ll. 207, 513, 709. Compare the Grammatical Hints.

Cæsura. The cæsura, or middle pause, allows extra syllables to be preserved. Thus, at l. 203, we have:—

For him was léver—hav' át his bédde héed.

The pause gives time for the *-er* of *lêv-er*. Similarly, we may preserve the *-er* of *deliv-er*, 84; *-e* in *mor-e*, 98; *-e* in *curteisy-e*, 132; *-te (=y)* in *car-ie*, 130.

(Compare also:—

With-út-e bak-e met-e—was nev'r his hous; 343.
Thát | no dróp-e—ne fill' upon hir brest; 131.

The syllables *-er, -en, -el, -ed*, before a vowel, or *h* (in *he*, &c.), are light, and do not always count in scansion; see ll. 84, 291, 296, 334, &c. Cf. *ma | ny a breem |*; 350. Read the lines *deliberately*, and remember the old pronunciation.

Accent. Variable, in some words; cf. *miller*, 545, with the archaic trisyllabic *mil-lér-e*, 541. Also, in French words, we have *hónour*, 582; but the archaic *honóur*, 40. Cf. *licóur*, 3; *vertú*, 4.

PRONUNCIATION.

The M.E. pronunciation was widely different from the present, especially in the vowel-sounds. The sounds of the vowels were nearly as in French and Italian.

They can be denoted by phonetic *invariable* symbols, enclosed within marks of parenthesis. Convenient phonetic symbols are these following.

Vowels. (æ), as æ in *fæther*; (a) short, as a in *cha!* (æ), open long æ, as æ in *Mary*; (e), open short e, as e in *bed*; (ee), close long e, as e in *veil*; (i) short, as F. *i* in *fini*, or (nearly) as E. *i* in *in*; (ii), as ee in *deep*; (eo), open long o, as oo in *now*; (o) open short o, as o in *not*; (oo), close long o, as o in *note*, or o in German 'so'; (u), as u in *full*; (uu), as oo in *fool*; (ū), as F. *u* in F. 'sou'; (ū), as long G. *u* in G. 'grā.' Also (e), as final æ in *China*.

Diphthongs. (ai), as y in *fly*; (au), as oo in *now*; (ei), as ei in *veil*; (oi), as oi in *oil*.

Consonants (special). (k), as c in *cat*; (s), as c in *city*; (ch), as in *church*; (tch), as in *catch*; (th), as th in *thin*; (dh), as th in *then*. Also (h), when not initial, to denote a guttural sound, like G. *ch* in *Nacht*, *Licht*, but weaker, and varying with the preceding vowel.

An accent is denoted by (ˈ), as in M.E. *name* (naˈme).

By help of these symbols, it is possible to explain the meaning of the M.E. symbols employed by the scribes in Chaucer's Tales. The following is a list of the sounds they denote. The letters in *thick type* are the letters *actually employed*; the letters within parenthesis denote the *sounds*, as above.

Observe that long 'p,' also written 'ō,' means the same as (ao); and long 'g,' also written 'ā,' means the same as (ae).

a short, (a). Ex. *at* (a); *as* (a). N.B. The modern a in *cat* (kæt) is denoted by (æ), and does not occur in Chaucer.

a long, (aa). (1) at the end of a syllable; as *age* (aaˈje); (2) before e or ce; as *cas* (kaˈse), *face* (faˈse).

ai, ay (ei), originally perhaps (ai); but *ai* and *ei*, both being pronounced as (ei), had already been confused, and invariably rime together in Chaucer. Cf. E. *gay*, *pay*.

au, aw (au). Ex. *account* (avaunˈt); *awe* (auˈe).

c, as (k), except before e and i; as (s), before e and i.

ch (ch); och (tch).

e short, (e). Ex. *fæther* (fædˈræ); middle e dropped.

e final, (e); and often dropped or elided or very lightly touched.

e long and open, (æ). Sometimes denoted by 'g' or 'gg.' Ex. *clene* (klaˈne).

e long and close, (ee). Ex. *sweete* (swēˈte); *weep* (wēp).

ei, ey (ei). Ex. *streit* (stret); *wey* (wei).

g hard, i.e. (g), except before e and i; (j), before e and i. Ex. *go* (gao); *age* (aaˈje).

gh (h), G. *ch*. Ex. *light* (liht). The vowel was at first short, then half-long (as probably in Chaucer), then wholly long, when the (h) dropped out. Later, (ii) became (ei), and is now (ai).

gn (n), with long preceding vowel; as *digne* (diˈne).

i short, (i). As F. *i* in *fini*; but often as E. *i* in *in*; the latter is near enough. So also y, when short, as in *many* (manˈi).

i, y long, (ii). Ex. *I* (ii); *melode* (mélˈodiˈe).

ie (ee), the same as ee. Ex. *mischa* (misˈcheef).

I consonantal, (j). Ex. *Jay* (jei); *Jage* (jāˈje). So in the MSS.; but here printed 'k' as in *Jay* (jei).

in, often vocalic (i), as in E. *temple* (tempˈl). But note *stables* (staˈbles).

Introduction.

ng (ngg); always as in E. *linger*. Ex. *thing* (thingg).

o short, (o), as in *of* (ov). But as (ɔu) before *gh*. And *note particularly*, that it is always (u), i. e. as *u* in *full*, wherever it has a sound like *u* in mod. E., as in *company*, *son*, *monk*, *cousin*, &c. Ex. *sonne* (sun'nə), *monk* (mungk), *moche* (muchə).

o long and open, (ao). Sometimes denoted by 'q' or 'qq.' Ex. *go* (gao); *stoon* (staon).

o long and close, (oo). Ex. *sote* (sootə); *hood* (hood).

oi, oy (oi).

ou, ow (uu); as in *flour* (fluur); *now* (nuu). Rarely (ɔu), as in *soule* (soulə).

ogh (ɔuh), with open o, as in E. *not*, followed by short (u).

ough (nuh); with *uu* as in E. *fool* (fuul); or as ogh.

r is always *strongly trilled*. sah (shah), as in *fresshe* (fresh'shə).

u short, (ū); French; as in *just* (jūst). Rarely (u), as in *cut* (kut); English.

u long, (ū·), as in *nature* (natū·rə); French.

we final, (wə), but often merely (u). Ex. *arices* (ar·wez); *bowe* (baou·ə, bou·ə); *morie* (morn); so *blew* (blee·u).

N.B. Open long *e* (ae) often arises from A.S. *ǣ*, *ǣa*, or lengthening of *e*. Ex. *waere* (waerə), A.S. *wāron*; *ęk* (æk), A.S. *ǣc*; *speken* (spæken), A.S. *sprecan*. Open long *o* (ao) often arises from A.S. *ā*, or lengthening of *o*. Ex. *fȝ* (fao), A.S. *fā*; *open*, A.S. *open*. Chaucer refrains from riming open long *e* (ae), when arising from A.S. *ǣa*, or lengthening of *e*, with the close *e* arising from A.S. *ē* or *ēo*. But there is some uncertainty about the quality of the *e* arising from A.S. *ǣ*, or from mutation.

The occurrence of rimes such as Chaucer *never* employs furnishes an easy test for poems which have been supposed to be his on insufficient grounds. Thus, in *The Cuckoo and the Nightingale*, stanza 13, *green* rimes with *been*; whereas the form *green* never occurs in Chaucer, who always employs *grēn-e* (gree'nə) as a dissyllable, in accordance with its etymology from A.S. *grēne*. In the same poem, *upon* rimes with *mon*, a man (stanza 17); but Chaucer knows nothing of such a form as *mon*.

Non-Chaucerian rimes occur in large numbers in Fragment B of the *Romaunt of the Rose*.

THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

Words and syllables enclosed within square brackets are supplied by the Editor.
Readings marked with an obelus (†) are doubtful, and are accounted for in the Appendix.

[Only three fragments of this translation have come down to us. Of these, Fragment A is by Chaucer; Fragment B is by a Northerner, and has many corrupt readings; whilst Fragment C is of doubtful origin, and I do not feel sure that it is Chaucer's.]

FRAGMENT A

Many men seyn that in sweveninges
Ther nis but fables and lesinges;
But men may somme †swevenes seen,
Which hardely †ne false been,
But afterward ben apparaunte.
This may I drawe to waraunte
An authour, that hight Macrobes,
That halt not dreemes false ne lees,
But undoth us the avisioun
That whylom mette king Cipion.
And who-so sayth, or weneth it be
A jape, or elles [a] nycetes
To wene that dreemes after falle,
Let who-so liste a fool me calle.
For this trowe I, and say for me,
That dreemes signifiante be
Of good and harme to many wightes,
That dremen in her slepe a-nightes
Ful many thinges covertly,
That fallen after al openly.

The Dream.

Within my twenty yere of age,
Whan that Love taketh his corage
Of yonge folk, I wente sone
To bedde, as I was wont to done,
And fast I †sleep; and in aleping,
He mette swiche a swevening,

That lykede me wonders wel;
But in that sweven is never a del
That it nis afterward befallē,
Right as this dreem wol telle us alle. 30
Now this dreem wol I ryme aright,
To make your hertes gaye and light;
For Love it prayeth, and also
Commaundeth me that it be so.
And if ther any aske me, 35
Whether that it be he or she,
How [that] this book [the] which is here
Shall †hote, that I rede you here,
It is the Romance of the Rose,
In which al the art of love I close. 40
The mater fair is of to make;
God graunte in gree that she it take
For whom that it begonnen is!
And that is she that hath, y-wis,
So mochel prys; and ther-to she 45
So worthy is biloved be,
That she wel oughte, of prys and right,
Be cleped Rose of every wight.
That it was May me thoughte tho,
It is fyve yere or more ago; 50
That it was May, thus dremed me,
In tyme of love and jolitee,
That al thing ginneth waxen gay,

For ther is neither busk nor hay
 In May, that it nil shrouded been, 55
 And it with newe loves wreen.
 These wodes eek recoveren grene,
 That drye in winter been to sene ;
 And th' erthe wexeth proud withalle,
 For swote dewes that on it falle, 60
 And [al] the pore estat forget
 In which that winter hadde it set ;
 And than bicometh the ground so proud
 That it wol have a newe shroud,
 And maketh so queynt his robe and fayr 65
 That it þath hewes an hundred payr
 Of gras and floures, inde and pers,
 And many howes ful dyvers :
 That is the robe I mene, y-wis,
 Through which the ground to preisen is. 70

The briddes, that han left hir song,
 Whyl they han suffred cold so strong
 In wedres grille, and derk to sighte,
 Ben in May, for the sonne brighte,
 So glade, that they shewe in singing, 75
 That in hir herte is swich lyking,
 That they mote singen and be light.
 Than doth the nightingale hir might
 To make noyse, and singen blythe.
 Than is blisful, many a sythe, 80
 The chelaundre and the papingay.
 Than yonge folk entenden ay
 For to ben gay and amorous,
 The tyme is than so savorous.
 Hard is his herte that loveth nought 85
 In May, whan al this mirth is wrought ;
 Whan he may on these braunches here
 The smale briddes singen clere
 Hir blisful swete song pitous ;
 And in this sesoun delitous, 90
 Whan love affrayeth alle thing,
 Me thoughte a-night, in my sleping,
 Right in my bed, ful redily,
 That it was by the morowe erly,
 And up I roos, and gan me clothe ; 95
 Anoon I wissh myn hondes bothe ;
 A sylvre nedle forth I drogh
 Out of an aguiler queynt y-nogh,
 And gan this nedle threde anon ;
 For out of toun me list to gon 100
 The sowne of briddes for to here,
 That on thise þussches singen clere
 And in the swete sesoun that leef is,
 With a threde basting my slevis,

Aloon I wente in my playing, 105
 The smale foules song harkning ;
 That peyned hem ful many a payre
 To singe on bowes blosmed fayre.
 Jolif and gay, ful of gladnesse,
 Toward a river þ I gan me dresse, 110
 That I herde renne faste by ;
 For fairer playing non saugh I
 Than playen me by that riveer,
 For from an hille that stood ther neer
 Cam down the streem ful stif and bold. 115
 Cleer was the water, and as cold
 As any welle is, sooth to seyne ;
 And somdel lasse it was than Seine,
 But it was straighter wel away.
 And never saugh I, er that day, 120
 The water that so wel lyked me ;
 And wonder glad was I to see
 That lusty place, and that rivoer ;
 And with that water that ran so cleer
 My face I wissh. Tho saugh I wel 125
 The botme paved everydel
 With gravel, ful of stones shene.
 The medewe softe, swote, and grone,
 Beet right on the water-syde.
 Ful cleer was than the morow-tyde, 130
 And ful attempre, out of drede.
 Tho gan I walke through the mede,
 Dounward ay in my pleying,
 The river-syde costeying.

The Garden.

And whan I had a while goon, 135
 I saugh a GARDIN right anoon,
 Ful long and brood, and everydel
 þ Enclos it was, and walled wel,
 With hye walles embatailled,
 Portrayed without, and wel entailed 140
 With many riche portraitures ;
 And bothe images and peyntures
 Gan I biholde bisily.
 And I wol telle you, redily,
 Of thilke images the semblaunce, 145
 As for as I have remembraunce.

Hate.

A-midde saugh I HATE stonde,
 That for hir wrathe, ire, and onde,
 Semed to been a þmoveresse,
 An angry wight, a chideresse ; 150
 And ful of gyle, and fel corage,
 By semblaunt was that ilke image.
 And she was no-thing wel arrayed,

But lyk a wood woman afrayed ;
Y-frownced foule was hir visage, 155
And grenning for dispitous rage ;
Hir nose snorted up for tene.
Ful hidous was she for to sene,
Ful foul and rusty was she, this
Hir heed y-writhen was, y-wis, 160
Ful grimly with a greet towayle.

Felonye.

An image of another entayle,
A luf half, was hir faste by :
Hir name above hir heed saugh I,
And she was called FELONYE. 165

Vilanye.

Another image, that VILANYE
Y-cleped was, saugh I and fond
Upon the walle on hir right hond.
Vilanye was lyk somdel
That other image, and, trusteth wel, 170
She semed a wikked creaturo.
By countenance, in portrayture,
She semed be ful despitous,
And eek ful proud and outrageous.
Wel coude he peynte, I undertake, 175
That swiche image coude make.
Ful foul and cherlish semed she,
And eek vilaynous for to be,
And litel coude of norture,
To worships any creaturo. 180

Coveityse.

And next was peynted COVEITYSE,
That eggeth folk, in many gyse,
To take and yeve right nought ageyn,
And grete treours up to leyn.
And that is she that for usure 185
Lenteth to many a creaturo
The lasse for the more winning,
So coveitous is her brenning.
And that is she, for penyes fele,
That techeth for to robbe and stele 190
These theves, and these smale harlotes ;
And that is routh, for by hir throtes
Ful many oon hangeth at the laste.
She maketh folk compasse and caste
To taken other folkes thing, 195
Through robberie, or þmiscounting.
And that is she that maketh trechoures ;
And she [that] maketh false pledoures,
That with hir termes and hir domes
Doom maydene, children, and eek gromes
Hir heritage to forgo. 201

Ful croked were hir hondes two ;
For Coveityse is ever wood
To grypen other folkes good.
Coveityse, for hir winning, 205
Ful leef hath other mennes thing.

Avarice.

Another image set saugh I
Next Coveityse faste by,
And she was cleped AVARICE.
Ful foul in peynting was that vice ; 210
Ful sad and caytif was she eek,
And al-so grene as any leek.
So yvel hewed was hir colour,
Hir semed have lived in langour.
She was lyk thing for hangre deed, 215
That ladde hir lyf only by breed
Kneden with elsel strong and egre ;
And therto she was lane and megre.
And she was clad ful povrely,
Al in an old torn þcourtepy, 220
As she were al with dogges torn ;
And bothe bihinde and eek biforn
Clouted was she beggarly.
A mantel heng hir faste by,
Upon a porche, weyke and smalle ; 225
A burnet cote heng therwithalle,
Furred with no menivere,
But with a furre rough of here,
Of lambe-skinnes hevy and blake ;
It was ful old, I undertake. 230
For Avarice to clothe hir wel
Ne hasteth hir, never a del ;
For certeynly it were hir loth
To waren ofte that ilke cloth ;
And if it were forwered, she 235
Wolde have ful greet necesiteo
Of clothing, er she boughte hir nows,
Al were it bad of wolle and hews.
This Avarice held in hir hande
A purs, that heng [doun] by a bande ; 240
And that she hidde and bond so stronge,
Men must abyde wonder longe
Out of that purs er ther come ought,
For that ne cometh not in hir thought ;
It was not, certein, hir entente 245
That fro that purs a peny wante.

Envye.

And by that image, nygh y-nough,
Was þpeynt ENVYE, that never lough.
Nor never wel in herte ferde
But-if she outhur saugh or herde 250

Som greet mischaunce, or greet disese.
 No-thing may so moch hir plesse
 As mischef and misaventure ;
 Or whan she seeth discomfiture
 †On any worthy man [to] falle, 255
 Than lyketh hir [ful] wel withalle.
 She is ful glad in hir corage,
 If she see any greet linage
 Be brought to nought in shamful wyse.
 And if a man in honour ryse, 260
 Or by his witte, or by prowesse,
 Of that hath she gret hevinesse ;
 For, trusteth wel, she goth nigh wood
 When any chaunce happeth good.
 Envye is of swich crueltee, 265
 That feith ne trouthe holdeth she
 To freend ne felawe, bad or good.
 Ne she hath kin noon of hir blood,
 That she nis ful hir enemy ;
 She nolde, I dar seyn hardely, 270
 Hir owne fader ferde wel.
 And sore abyeth she everydel
 Hir malice, and hir maltalent :
 For she is in so greet turment
 And hath such [wo], whan folk doth
 good, 275
 That nigh she melteth for pure wood ;
 Hir herte kerveth and †to-breketh
 That god the peple wel awreketh.
 Envye, y-wis, shal never lette
 Som blame upon the folk to sette. 280
 I trowe that if Envye, y-wis,
 Knewe the beste man that is
 On this syde or biyond the see,
 Yit somewhat lakken him wolde she.
 And if he were so hende and wys, 285
 That she ne mighte al abate his prys,
 Yit wolde she blame his worthinesse,
 Or by hir wordes make it lesse.
 I saugh Envye, in that peynting,
 Hadde a wonderful loking ; 290
 For she ne loked but awry,
 Or overthwart, al baggingly.
 And she hadde [eek] a foul usage ;
 She mighte loke in no visage
 Of man or womman forth-right pleyn, 295
 But shette oon yē for disdeyn ;
 So for envye brenned she
 Whan she mighte any man [y]-see,
 That fair, or worthy were, or wys,
 Or elles stood in folkes prys. 300

Sorowe.

Sorowe was peynted next Envye
 Upon that walle of masonrye.
 But wel was seen in hir colour
 That she hadde lived in langour ;
 Hir semed have the Jaunyce. 305
 Nought half so pale was Avaryce,
 Nor no-thing lyk, [as] of lenesse ;
 For sorowe, thought, and greet distresse,
 That she hadde suffred day and night
 Made hir ful yelwe, and no-thing bright,
 Ful fade, pale, and megre also. 310
 Was never wight yit half so wo
 As that hir semed for to be,
 Nor so fulfilled of ire as she.
 I trowe that no wight mighte hir plesse, 315
 Nor do that thing that mighte hir ese ;
 Nor she ne wolde hir sorowe slake,
 Nor comfort noon unto hir take ;
 So depe was hir wo bigonnen,
 And eek hir herte in angre ronnen, 320
 A sorowful thing wel semed she.
 Nor she hadde no-thing slowe be
 For to forcracchen al hir face,
 And for to †rende in many place
 Hir clothes, and for to tere hir swire, 325
 As she that was fulfilled of ire ;
 And al to-torn lay eek hir here
 Aboute hir shuldres, here and there,
 As she that hadde it al to-rent
 For angre and for maltalent. 330
 And eek I telle you certeynly
 How that she weep ful tenderly.
 In world nis wight so hard of herte
 That hadde seen hir sorowes smerte,
 That nolde have had of hir pitee, 335
 So wo-bigoon a thing was she.
 She al to-dasshte hir-self for wo,
 And smoot togider hir handes two.
 To sorwe was she ful ententyf,
 That woful recchelees caityf ; 340
 Hir roughte litel of pleying,
 Or of clipping or [of] kissing ;
 For who-so sorweful is in herte
 Him liste not to pleye ne sterte,
 Nor for to daunsen, ne to singe, 345
 Ne may his herte in temper bringe
 To make joye on even or morowe ;
 For joye is contraire unto sorowe.

Elde.

Elde was peynted after this,

That shorter was a foot, y-wis, 350
 Than she was wont in her yonghede.
 Unnethe hir-self she mighte fede ;
 So feble and eek so old was she
 That faded was al hir beautee.
 Ful salowe was waxen hir colour, 355
 Hir heed for-hoor was, whyt as flour.
 Y-wis, gret qualm ne were it noon,
 Ye sinne, although hir lyf were gon.
 Al women was hir body unwelde,
 And drye, and dwyned al for elde. 360
 A foul forwelked thing was she
 That whylom round and softe had be.
 Hir eres shoken fast withalle,
 As from her heed they wolde falle.
 Hir face frounced and forpyned, 365
 And bothe hir hondes lorn, fordwyned.
 So old she was that she ne wente
 A foot, but it were by potentia.

Time.

The Tyme, that passeth night and day,
 And restelees travayleth ay, 370
 And steleth from us so prively,
 That to us semeth sikerly
 That it in oon point dwelleth ever,
 And certes, it ne resteth never,
 But goth so faste, and passeth ay, 375
 That ther nis man that thinke may
 What tyme that now present is :
 Asketh at these clerkes this ;
 For [er] men thinke it redily,
 Three tymes been y-passed by. 380
 The tyme, that may not sojourne,
 But goth, and †never may retourne,
 As water that down renneth ay,
 But never drope retourne may ;
 Ther may no-thing as tyme endure, 385
 Metal, nor erthely creature ;
 For alle thing it fret, and shal :
 The tyme eek, that chaungeth al,
 And al doth waxe and fostred be,
 And alle thing distroyeth he : 390
 The tyme, that eldeth our auncessours
 And eldeth kinges and emperours,
 And that us alle shal overcomen
 Er that deeth us shal have nomen :
 The tyme, that hath al in welde 395
 To elden folk, had maad hir elde
 So inly, that, to my witing,
 She mighte helpe hir-self no-thing,
 But turned ageyn unto childhede ;

She had no-thing hir-self to lede, 400
 Ne wit ne pith in[with] hir holde
 More than a child of two year olde.
 But natheles, I trowe that she
 Was fair sumtyme, and freshe to see,
 Whan she was in hir rightful age : 405
 But she was past al that passage
 And was a doted thing bicommen.
 A furred cope on had she nomen ;
 Wel had she clad hir-self and warm,
 For cold mighte elles doon hir harm. 410
 These olde folk have alwey colde,
 Hir kind is swiche, whan they ben
 olde.

Pope-holy.

Another thing was doon ther write,
 That semede lyk an ipocrite,
 And it was cleped POPE-HOLY. 415
 That ilke is she that prively
 Ne spareth never a wikked dede,
 Whan men of hir taken non hede ;
 And maketh hir outward precious,
 With pale visage and pitous, 420
 And semeth a simple creature ;
 But ther nis no misaventure
 That she ne thenketh in hir corage.
 Ful lyk to hir was that image,
 That maked was lyk hir semblaunce. 425
 She was ful simple of countenance,
 And she was clothed and eek shod,
 As she were, for the love of god,
 Yolden to religioun,
 Swich semed hir devocioun. 430
 A saunter held she faste in honde,
 And bisily she gan to fonde
 To make many a feynt prayere
 To god, and to his seyntes dere.
 Ne she was gay, freshe, ne jolyf, 435
 But semed be ful ententyf
 To gode werkes, and to faire,
 And therto she had on an haire.
 Ne certes, she was fat no-thing,
 But semed wery for fasting ; 440
 Of colour pale and deed was she.
 From hir the gate †shal werned be
 Of paradys, that blisful place ;
 For swich folk maketh lene hir †face,
 As Crist seith in his evangyle, 445
 To gete hem prys in toun a whyle ;
 And for a litel glorie veine
 They lesen god and eek his reine.

Povert.

And alderlast of everichoon,
 Was peynted POVERT al aloon, 450
 That not a peny hadde in wolde,
 Al-though [that] she hir clothes solde,
 And though she shulde anhonged be;
 For naked as a worm was she.
 And if the weder stormy were, 455
 For colde she shulde have deyed there.
 She nadde on but a streit old sak,
 And many a clout on it ther stak;
 This was hir cote and hir mantel,
 No more was there, never a del, 460
 To clothe her with; I undertake,
 Gret leyser hadde she to quake.
 And she was put, that I of talke,
 Fer fro these other, up in an halke;
 There lurked and there coured she; 465
 For povre thing, wher-so it be,
 Is shamfast, and despysed ay.
 Acursed may wel be that day,
 That povre man conceyved is;
 For god wot, al to selde, y-wis, 470
 Is any povre man wel fed,
 Or wel arayed or y-cled,
 Or wel biloved, in swich wyse
 In honour that he may aryse.
 Alle these thinges, wel avysed, 475
 As I have you er this devysed,
 With gold and asure over alle
 Depeynted were upon the walle.
 Squar was the wal, and high somdel;
 Enclosed, and y-barred wel, 480
 In stede of hegge, was that gardin;
 Com never shepherde therin.
 Into that gardyn, wel [y-]wrought,
 Who-so that me coude have brought,
 By †laddre, or elles by degree, 485
 It wolde wel have lyked me.
 For swich solace, swich joye, and play,
 I trowe that never man ne say,
 As in that place delitous.
 The gardin was not daungerous 490
 To herberwe briddes many oon.
 So riche a †yerd was never noon
 Of briddes songe, and braunches grene.
 Therin were briddes mo, I wene,
 Than been in alle the rewme of Fraunce.
 Ful blisful was the accordaunce 496
 Of swete and pitous songe they made,
 For al this world it oughte glade.

And I my-self so mery ferde,
 Whan I hir blisful songes herde, 500
 That for an hundred pound †nolde I,—
 If that the passage openly
 Hadde been unto me free—
 That I nolde entren for to see
 Thassemblee, god †it kepe and were! 505
 Of briddes, whiche therinne were,
 That songen, through hir mery throtes,
 Daunces of love, and mery notes.

Whan I thus herde foules singe,
 I fel faste in a weymentinge, 510
 By which art, or by what engyn
 I mighte come in that gardyn;
 But way I couthe finde noon
 Into that gardin for to goon.
 Ne nought wiste I if that ther were 515
 Eyther hole or place [o]-where,
 By which I mighte have entree;
 Ne ther was noon to teche me;
 For I was al aloon, y-wis,
 †Ful wo and anguissous of this. 520
 Til atte last bithoughte I me,
 That by no weye ne mighte it be;
 That ther nas laddre or way to passe,
 Or hole, into so fair a place.

Tho gan I go a ful gret pas 525
 Envyrning even in compas
 The closing of the square wal,
 Til that I fond a wicket smal
 So shet, that I ne mighte in goon,
 And other entree was ther noon. 530

The Door.

Upon this dore I gan to smyte,
 That was [so] fetys and so lyte;
 For other way coude I not seke.
 Ful long I shoof, and knocked eke,
 And stood ful long and off[t] herkning 535
 If that I herde †a wight coming;
 Til that the dore of thilke entree
 A mayden curteys opened me.

Ydelnesse.

Hir heer was as yelow of hewe
 As any basin scoured newe. 540
 Hir flesh [as] tendre as is a chike,
 With bente browes, smothe and slike;
 And by mesure large were
 The opening of hir yën clere.
 Hir nose of good proporcioun, 545
 Hir yën greye as a faucoun,
 With swete breeth and wel savoured.

Hir face whyt and wel coloured,
 With litel mouth, and round to see ;
 A clove chin eek hadde she. 550
 Hir nekke was of good fasoun
 In lengthe and gretnesse, by resoun,
 Withoute bleyne, scabbe, or royne.
 Fro Jerusalem unto Burgoyne
 Ther nis a fairer nekke, y-wis, 555
 To fele how smothe and softe it is.
 Hir throte, al-so whyt of hewe
 As snow on braunche snowed newe.
 Of body ful wel wrought was she ;
 Men neded not, in no cuntree, 560
 A fairer body for to seke.
 And of fyn orfrays had she eke
 A chapelet : so semly oon
 Ne wored never mayde upon ;
 And faire above that chapelet 565
 A rose gerland had she set.
 She hadde [in honde] a gay mirour,
 And with a riche gold tressour
 Hir heed was tressed queyntely ;
 Hir aleves sewed fetisly. 570
 And for to kepe hir hondes faire
 Of gloves whyte she hadde a paire.
 And she hadde on a cote of grene
 Of cloth of Gaunt ; withouten wene,
 Wel semed by hir apparayle 575
 She was not wont to greet travayle.
 For whan she kempt was fetisly,
 And wel arrayed and richely,
 Thanne had she doon al hir journee ;
 For mery and wel bigoon was she. 580
 She hadde a lusty lyf in May,
 She hadde no thought, by night ne day,
 Of no-thing, but it were oonly
 To graythe hir wel and uncouthly.
 Whan that this dore hadde opened me
 This †mayden, semely for to see, 586
 I thanked hir as I best mighte,
 And axede hir how that she highte,
 And what she was, I axede eke.
 And she to me was nought unmeke, 590
 Ne of hir answer daungerous,
 But faire answerde, and seide thus :—
 ' Lo, sir, my name is YDELNESSE ;
 So clepe men me, more and lesse.
 Ful mighty and ful riche am I, 595
 And that of oon thing, namely ;
 For I entende to no-thing
 But to my joye, and my pleying,

And for to kembe and tresse me.
 Aqueynted am I, and privee 600
 With Mirthe, lord of this gardyn,
 That fro the lande †Alexandryn
 Made the trees †be hider fet,
 That in this gardin been y-set. 604
 And when the trees were woxen on highte,
 This wal, that stant here in thy sighte,
 Dide Mirthe enclosen al aboute ;
 And these images, al withoute,
 He dide hem bothe entaile and peynte,
 That neither ben jolyf ne queynte, 610
 But they ben ful of sorowe and wo,
 As thou hast seen a whyle ago.

' And ofte tyme, him to solace,
 Sir Mirthe cometh into this place,
 And eek with him cometh his meynnee,
 That liven in lust and jolitee. 616
 And now is Mirthe therin, to here
 The briddes, how they singen clere,
 The mavis and the nightingale,
 And other joly briddes smale. 620
 And thus he walketh to solace
 Him and his folk ; for swetter place
 To pleyen in he may not finde,
 Although he soughte oon in-til Inde.
 The alther-fairest folk to see 625
 That in this world may founde be
 Hath Mirthe with him in his route,
 That folowen him alwayes aboute.'

When Ydelnesse had told al this,
 And I hadde herkned wel, y-wis, 630
 Than seide I to dame Ydelnesse,
 ' Now al-so wisly god me blesse,
 Sith Mirthe, that is so fair and free,
 Is in this yerde with his meynnee,
 Fro thilke assemblee, if I may, 635
 Shal no man werne me to-day,
 That I this night ne mote it see.
 For, wel wene I, ther with him be
 A fair and joly companye
 Fulfilled of alle curtesye.' 640
 And forth, without wordes mo,
 In at the wicket wente I tho,
 That Ydelnesse hadde opened me,
 Into that gardin fair to see.

The Garden.

And whan I was [ther]in, y-wis, 645
 Myn herte was ful glad of this.
 For wel wende I ful sikerly
 Have been in paradys erth[ely] ;

So fair it was, that, trusteth wel,
 It semed a place espirituel. 650
 For certes, as at my devys,
 Ther is no place in paradys
 So good in for to dwelle or be
 As in that GARDIN, thoughte me ;
 For there was many a brid singing, 655
 Throughout the yerde al thringing.
 In many places were nightingales,
 Alpes, finches, and wodewales,
 That in her swete song delyten
 In thilke þplace as they habytten. 660
 Ther mighte men see many flokkes
 Of turtles and [of] laverokkes.
 Chalaundres fele saw I there,
 That wery, nigh forsongen were.
 And thrustles, terins, and mavys, 665
 That songen for to winne hem prys,
 And eek to sormounte in hir song
 †These other briddes hem among.
 By note made fair servyse
 These briddes, that I you devyse ; 670
 They songe hir song as faire and wel
 As angels doon espirituel.
 And, trusteth wel, whan I hem herde,
 Full lustily and wel I ferde ;
 For never yit swich melodye 675
 Was herd of man that mighte dye.
 Swich swete song was hem among,
 That me thoughte it no briddes song,
 But it was wonder lyk to be
 Song of mermaydens of the see ; 680
 That, for her singing is so clere,
 Though we mermaydens clepe hem here
 In English, as in our usaunce,
 Men clepe[n] hem sereyns in Fraunce.
 Ententif weren for to singe 685
 These briddes that nought unkunninge
 Were of hir craft, and apprentys,
 But of [hir] song sotyl and wys.
 And certes, whan I herde hir song,
 And saw the grene place among, 690
 In herte I wex so wonder gay,
 That I was never erst, er that day,
 So jolyf, nor so wel bigo,
 Ne mery in herte, as I was tho.
 And than wiste I, and saw ful wel, 695
 That Ydelnesse me served wel,
 That me putte in swich jolitee.
 Hir freend wel oughte I for to be,
 Sith she the dore of that gardyn

Hadde opened, and me leten in. 700
 From hennesforth how that I wroughte,
 I shal you tellen, as me thoughte.
 First, whereof Mirthe served there,
 And eek what folk ther with him were,
 Without[e] fable I wol descryve. 705
 And of that gardin eek as blyve
 I wol you tellen after this.
 The faire fasoun al, y-wis,
 That wel [y-]wrought was for the nones,
 I may not telle you al at ones : 710
 But as I may and can, I shal
 By ordre tellen you it al.
 Ful fair servyse and eek ful swete
 These briddes maden as they sete.
 Layes of love, ful wel sowning 715
 They songen in hir jargoning ;
 Summe highe and summe eek lowe songe
 Upon the braunches grene y-spronge.
 The sweetnesse of hir melodye
 Made al myn herte in †reverdya. 720
 And whan that I hadde herd, I trowe,
 These briddes singing on a rowe,
 Than mighte I not withholde me
 That I ne wente in for to see
 Sir Mirthe ; for my desiring 725
 Was him to seen, over alle thing,
 His countenaunce and his manere :
 That sighte was to me ful dera.
 Sir Mirthe.
 Tho wente I forth on my right hond
 Down by a litel path I fond 730
 Of mentes ful, and fenel grene ;
 And faste by, withoute wene,
 Sir Mirthe I fond ; and right anon
 Unto sir Mirthe gan I goon,
 Ther-as he was, him to solace. 735
 And with him, in that lusty place,
 So fair folk and so fresh hadde he,
 That whan I saw, I wondred me
 Fro whennes swich folk mighte come,
 So faire they weren, alle and some ; 740
 For they were lyk, as to my sighte,
 To angels, that ben feathered brighte.
 Gladnesse.
 This folk, of which I telle you so,
 Upon a carole wenten tho.
 A lady caroled hem, that highte 745
 GLADNESSE, [the] blisful, the lighte ;
 Wel coude she singe and lustily,
 Non half so wel and semely.

And make in song swich refreininge,
 It sat hir wonder wel to singe. 750
 Hir vois ful cleer was and ful swete.
 She was nought rude ne unmete,
 But couthe y-now of swich doing
 As longeth unto caroling :
 For she was wont in every place 755
 To singen first, folk to solace ;
 For singing most she gaf hir to ;
 No craft had she so leef to do.

The mightest thou caroles seen,
 And folk [ther] daunce and mery been, 760
 And †make many a fair tourning
 Upon the grene gras springing.
 Ther mightest thou see these floutours,
 Minstrales, and eek jogelours,
 That wel to singe dide hir peyne. 765
 Somme songe songes of Loreyne ;
 For in Loreyne hir notes be
 Ful swetter than in this contree.
 Ther was many a timbestere,
 And saylours, that I dar wel swere 770
 Couthe hir craft ful parfitly.
 The timbres up ful sotilly
 They caste, and hente[n hem] ful ofte
 Upon a finger faire and softe,
 That they [ne] fayled never-mo. 775
 Ful fetis damiselles two,
 Right yonge, and fulle of semlihede,
 In kirtles, and non other wede,
 And faire tressed every tresse,
 Had Mirthe doon, for his noblesse, 780
 Amide the carole for to daunce ;
 But her-of lyth no remembraunce,
 How that they daunced queyntely.
 That oon wolde come al prively
 Agayn that other : and whan they were
 Togidre almost, they threwe y-fere 786
 Hir mouthes so, that through hir play
 It semed as they kiste alway ;
 To dauncen wel coude they the gyse ;
 What shulde I more to you devyse ? 790
 Ne †bede I never thennes go,
 Whyles that I saw hem daunce so.

Curtesye.

Upon the carole wonder faste
 I gan biholde ; til atte laste
 A lady gan me for to espye, 795
 And she was cleped CURTESYE,
 The worshipful, the debonaire ;
 I pray god ever falle hir faire !

Ful curteisly she called me,
 'What do ye there, beau sire ?' quod
 she, 800
 'Come [neer], and if it lyke yow
 To dauncen, daunceth with us now.'
 And I, withoute taryng,
 Went into the caroling.
 I was abaashed never a del, 805
 But it me lykede right wel
 That Curtesye me cleped so,
 And bad me on the daunce go.
 For if I hadde durst, certeyn
 I wolde have caroled right fayn, 810
 As man that was to daunce blythe.
 Than gan I loken ofte sythe
 The shap, the bodies, and the cheres,
 The countenaunce and the maneres
 Of alle the folk that daunced there, 815
 And I shal telle what they were.

Mirthe.

Ful fair was Mirthe, ful long and high ;
 A fairer man I never sigh.
 As round as appel was his face,
 Ful rody and whyt in every place. 820
 Fetys he was and wel beseye,
 With metely mouth and yēn greye ;
 His nose by mesure wrought ful right ;
 Crisp was his heer, and eek ful bright.
 His shuldres of a large brede, 825
 And smalish in the girdilstede.
 He semed lyk a portreiture,
 So noble he was of his stature,
 So fair, so joly, and so fetys,
 With limes wrought at poynt devys, 830
 Deliver, smert, and of gret might ;
 Ne sawe thou never man so light.
 Of berde unnethe hadde he no-thing,
 For it was in the firste spring.
 Ful yong he was, and mery of thought,
 And in samyt, with briddes wrough^t 836
 And with gold beten fetisly,
 His body was clad ful richely.
 Wrought was his robe in straunge gyse,
 And al to-sliterated for queyntyse 840
 In many a place, lowe and hye.
 And shod he was with greet maistrye,
 With shoon decoped, and with laas.
 By druerye, and by solas,
 His leef a rosen chapelet 845
 Had maad, and on his heed it set.
 And wite ye who was his leef ?

Gladnesse.

Dame GLADNES ther was him so leef,
 That singeth so wel with glad corage,
 That from she was twelve yeer of age, 850
 She of hir love graunt him made.
 Sir Mirthe hir by the finger hadde
 [In] daunsing, and she him also;
 Gret love was atwixe hem two.
 Bothe were they faire and brighte of hewe;
 She semede lyk a rose newe 856
 Of colour, and hir flesh so tendre,
 That with a brere smale and slendre
 Men mighte it cleve, I dar wel t^sayn.
 Hir forheed, frounceles al t^splayn. 860
 Bente were hir browes two,
 Hir y^en greye, and gladde also,
 That laughede ay in hir semblaunt,
 First or the mouth, by covenant.
 I t^snoot what of hir nose descryve; 865
 So fair hath no womman alyve
 Hir heer was yelow, and clear shyning,
 I wot no lady so lyking.
 Of orfrays fresh was hir gerland;
 I, whiche seen have a thousand, 870
 Saugh never, y-wis, no gerlond yit,
 So wel [y]-wrought of silk as it.
 And in an over-gilt samyt
 Clad she was, by gret delyt.
 Of which hir leef a robe werde, 875
 The myrier she in herte ferde.

Cupide.

And next hir wente, on hir other syde,
 The god of Love, that can devyde
 Love, t^sas him lyketh it [to] be.
 But he can cherles daunt, he, 880
 And maken folkes pryde fallen.
 And he can wel these lordes thrallen,
 And ladies putte at lowe degree,
 Whan he may hem to proude see.
 This God of Love of his fasoun 885
 Was lyk no knave, ne quistroun;
 His beautee gretly was to pryse.
 But of his robe to devyse
 I drede encombred for to be.
 For nought y-clad in silk was he, 890
 But al in floures and flourettes,
 Y-painted al with amorettes;
 And with losenges and scochouns,
 With briddes, libardes, and lyouns,
 And other beestes wrought ful wel. 895
 His garnement was everydel

Y-portreyd and y-wrought with floures,
 By dyvers medling of coloures.
 Floures ther were of many gyse
 Y-set by compas in assyse; 900
 Ther lakked no flour, to my dome,
 Ne nought so muche as flour of brome,
 Ne violete, no eek pervenke,
 Ne flour non, that man can on thenke;
 And many a rose-leef ful long 905
 Was entermedled ther-among:
 And also on his heed was set
 Of roses rede a chapelet.
 But nightingales, a ful gret route,
 That flyen over his heed aboute, 910
 The leves felden as they flyen;
 And he was al with briddes wryen,
 With popinjay, with nightingale,
 With chalaundre, and with wodewale,
 With finch, with lark, and with archaungel.
 He semede as he were an aungel 916
 That doun were comen fro hevene clere.

Swete-Loking.

Love hadde with him a bachelere,
 That he made alweyes with him be;
 SWETE-LOOKING cleped was he. 920
 This bachelere stood biholding
 The daunce, and in his honde holding
 t^sTurke bowes two hadde he.
 That oon of hem was of a tree
 That bereth a fruyt of savour wikke; 925
 Ful croked was that foule stikke,
 And knotty here and there also,
 And blak as bery, or any slo.
 That other bowe was of a plante
 Without wem, I dar warante, 930
 Ful even, and by proporcoun
 Tretys and long, of good fasoun.
 And it was peynted wel and thwiten,
 And over-al diaped and writen
 With ladies and with bacheleres, 935
 Ful lightsom and [ful] glad of cheres.
 These bowes two held Swete-Loking,
 That semed lyk no gadeling.
 And ten brode arowes held he there,
 Of which five in his right hond were. 940
 But they were shaven wel and dight,
 Nokked and fethered a-right;
 And al they were with gold bigoon,
 And stronge poynted everichoon,
 And sharpe for to kerven weel. 945
 But iren was ther noon ne steel;

For al was gold, men mighte it see,
Out-take the fetheres and the tree.

Beautee.

The swiftest of these arowes fyve
Out of a bowe for to dryve, 950
And best [y]-fethered for to flee,
And fairest eek, was cleped **BEAUTE.**

Simplesse.

That other arowe, that hurteth lesse,
Was cleped, as I trowe, **SIMPLESSE.**

Fraunchyse.

The thridde cleped was **FRAUNCHYSE,** 955
That fethered was, in noble wyse,
With valour and with curtesye.

Companye.

The fourthe was cleped **COMPANYE,**
That hevy for to tsheten is ;
But who-so sheteth right, y-wis, 960
May therwith doon gret harm and wo.

Fair-Semblaunt.

The fife of these, and laste also,
FAIR-SEMBLAUNT men that arowe calle,
The leeste grevous of hem alle ;
Yit can it make a ful gret wounde, 965
But he may hope his sores sounde,
That hurt is with that arowe, y-wis ;
His wo the bet bistowed is.
For he may soner have gladnesse,
His langour oughte be the lesse. 970

Fyve arowes were of other gyse,
That been ful foule to devyse ;
For shaft and ende, sooth to telle,
Were al-so blak as feend in helle.

Pryde.

The first of hem is called **PRYDE ;** 975

Vilanye.

That other arowe next him bisyde,
It was [y]-cleped **VILANYE ;**
That arowe was as with felonye
Envenimed, and with spitous blame.

Shame.

The thridde of hem was cleped **SHAME.** 980

Wanhope.

The fourthe, **WANHOPE** cleped is,

Newe-Thought.

The fife, the **NEWE-THOUGHT,** y-wis.

These arowes that I speke of here,
Were alle fyve tof oon manere,
And alle were they resemblable. 985
To hem was wel sitting and able
The foule croked bowe hidous,

That knotty was, and al roynous.
That bowe semede wel to shete
These arowes fyve, that been unmete, 990
Contrarie to that other fyve.

But though I telle not as blyve
Of hir power, ne of hir might,
Her-after shal I tellen right
The sothe, and eek signifaunce, 995
As fer as I have remembraunce :
Al shal be seid, I undertake,
Er of this boke an ende I make.

Now come I to my tale ageyn.

But alderfirst, I wol you seyn 1000
The fasoun and the countenaunces
Of al the folk that on the daunce is.
The God of Love, jolyf and light,
Ladde on his honde a lady bright,
Of high prys, and of greet degree. 1005

Beautee.

This lady called was **BEAUTE,**
† As was an arowe, of which I tolde.
Ful wel [y]-thewed was she holde ;
Ne she was derk ne broun, but bright,
And cleer as [is] the mone-light, 1010
Ageyn whom alle the sterres semen
But smale candels, as we demen.
Hir flesh was tendre as dewe of flour,
Hir chere was simple as byrde in bour ;
As whyt as lillie or rose in rys 1015
Hir face, gentil and tretys.
Fetys she was, and smal to see ;
No †windred browes hadde she,
Ne popped hir, for it neded nought
To windre hir, or to peynte hir ought. 1020
Hir tresses yelow and longe straughten,
Unto hir heles down they raughten :
Hir nose, hir mouth, and eye and cheke
Wel wrought, and al the remenaunt eke.
A ful gret savour and a swote 1025
Me †thinketh in myn herte rote,
As helpe me god, whan I remembre
Of the fasoun of every membre !
In world is noon so fair a wight ;
For yong she was, and hewed bright, 1030
† Wys, plesaunt, and fetys withalle,
Gente, and in hir middel smalle.

Richesse.

Bisyde Beaute yede **RICHESSE,**
† An high lady of greet noblesse,
And greet of prys in every place. 1035
But who-so durste to hir trespace,

Or til hir folk, in þworde or dede,
 He were ful hardy, out of drede;
 For bothe she helpe and hindre may:
 And that is nought of yisterday 1040
 That riche folk have ful gret might
 To helpe, and eek to greve a wight.
 The beste and grettest of valour
 Diden Richesse ful gret honour,
 And besy weren hir to serve; 1045
 For that they wolde hir love deserve,
 They cleped hir 'Lady,' grete and smalle;
 This wyde world hir dredeth alle;
 This world is al in hir daungere.
 Hir court hath many a losengere, 1050
 And many a traytour envious,
 That been ful besy and curious
 For to dispreisen, and to blame
 That best deserven love and name.
 Bifore the folk, hem to bigylen, 1055
 These losengeres hem preyse, and smylen,
 And thus the world with word anoynten;
 But afterward they þprikke and poynten
 The folk right to the bare boon,
 Bihinde her bak whan they ben goon,
 And foule abate the folkes prys. 1061
 Ful many a worthy man and wys,
 An hundred, have [they] don to dye,
 These losengeres, through flaterye;
 And maketh folk ful straunge be, 1065
 Ther-as hem oughte be prive.
 Wel yvel mote they thryve and thee,
 And yvel aryved mote they be,
 These losengeres, ful of envye!
 No good man loveth hir companye. 1070
 Richesse a robe of purple on hadde,
 Ne trowe not that I lye or madde;
 For in this world is noon it liche,
 Ne by a thousand deel so riche,
 Ne noon so fair; for it ful wel 1075
 With orfrays leyd was everydel,
 And portrayed in the ribaninges
 Of dukes stories, and of kinges.
 And with a bend of gold tasseled,
 And knoppes fyne of gold þameled. 1080
 Aboute hir nekke of gentil entaile
 Was shet the riche chevesaile,
 In which ther was ful gret plentee
 Of stones clere and bright to see.
 Rychesse a girdel hadde upon, 1085
 The bokel of it was of a stoon
 Of vertu greet, and mochel of might;

For who-so bar the stoon so bright,
 Of venim þthurte him no-thing doute,
 While he the stoon hadde him aboute.
 That stoon was greetly for to love, 1091
 And til a riche mannes bihove
 Worth al the gold in Rome and Fryse.
 The mourdaunt, wought in noble wyse,
 Was of a stoon ful precious, 1095
 That was so fyn and vertuuous,
 That hool a man it coude make
 Of palasye, and of tooth-ake.
 And yit the stoon hadde suche a grace,
 That he was siker in every place, 1100
 Al thilke day, not blind to been,
 That fasting mighte that stoon seen.
 The barres were of gold ful fyne,
 Upon a tissu of satyne,
 Ful hevy, greet, and no-thing light, 1105
 In everich was a besaunt-wight.
 Upon the tresses of Richesse
 Was set a cercle, for noblesse,
 Of brend gold, that ful lighte shoon;
 So fair, trowe I, was never noon. 1110
 But he were cunning, for the nones,
 That coude devysen alle the stones
 That in that cercle shewen clere;
 It is a wonder thing to here.
 For no man coude preyse or gesse 1115
 Of hem the valewe or richesse.
 Rubyes there were, saphyres, þjagounces
 And emeraudes, more than two ounces.
 But al bifore, ful sotilly,
 A fyn carboucle set saugh I. 1120
 The stoon so cleer was and so bright,
 That, al-so sone as it was night,
 Men mighte seen to go, for nede,
 A myle or two, in lengthe and brede.
 Swich light [tho] sprang out of the stoon,
 That Richesse wonder brighte shoon, 1126
 Bothe hir heed, and al hir face,
 And eke aboute hir al the place.
 Dame Richesse on hir hond gan lede
 A yong man ful of semelihede, 1130
 That she best loved of any thing;
 His lust was muche in housholding.
 In clothing was he ful fetys,
 And lovede wel have hors of prys.
 He wende to have reproved be 1135
 Of thefte or mordre, if that he
 Hadde in his stable an hakeney.
 And therfore he desyred ay

To been aqneynted with Richesse ;
 For al his purpos, as I gesse, 1140
 Was for to make greet dispense,
 Withoute werning or defence.
 And Richesse might it wel sustene,
 And hir dispenses wel mayntene,
 And him alwey swich plentee sende 1145
 Of gold and silver for to spende
 Withoute lakking or daungere,
 As it were poured in a garnere.

Largesse.

And after on the daunce wente
 Largesse, that sette al hir entente 1150
 For to be honourable and free ;
 Of Alexandres kin was she ;
 Hir moste joye was, y-wis,
 When that she yaf, and seide 'have this.'
 Not Avarice, the foule captyf, 1155
 Was half to grype so ententyf,
 As Largesse is to yeve and spende.
 And god y-nough alwey hir sende,
 So that the more she yaf away,
 The more, y-wis, she hadde alwey. 1160
 Gret loos hath Largesse, and gret prys ;
 For bothe wys folk and unwys
 Were hoolly to hir baundon brought,
 So wel with yiftes hath she wrought.
 And if she hadde an enemy, 1165
 I trowe, that she coude craftily
 Make him ful sone hir freend to be,
 So large of yift and free was she ;
 Therefore she stood in love and grace
 Of riche and povre in every place. 1170
 A ful gret fool is he, y-wis,
 That bothe riche and nigard is.
 A lord may have no maner vice
 That greveth more than avarice.
 For nigard never with strengthe of hond
 May winne him greet lordship or lond.
 For freendes al to fewe hath he 1177
 To doon his wil perfourmed be.
 And who-so wol have freendes here,
 He may not holde his tresour dere. 1180
 For by ensample I telle this,
 Right as an adamaunt, y-wis,
 Can drawen to him sotilly
 The yren, that is leyd thereby,
 So draweth folkes hertes, y-wis, 1185
 Silver and gold that yeven is.

Largesse hadde on a robe fresshe
 Of riche purpur and sarsinesse.

Wel fourmed was hir face and clere,
 And opened had she hir colere ; 1190
 For she right there hadde in present
 Unto a lady maad present
 Of a gold broche, ful wel wrought.
 And certes, it missat hir nought ;
 For through hir smokke, wrought with
 silk, 1195

The flesh was seen, as whyt as milk.
 Largesse, that worthy was and wys,
 Held by the honde a knight of prys,
 Was sib to Arthour of Bretaigne.
 And that was he that bar the enseigne
 Of worship, and the †gonfanoun. 1201
 And yit he is of swich renoun,
 That men of him seye faire thinges
 Bifore barouns, erles, and kinges.
 This knight was comen al newly 1205
 Fro tourneyinge faste by ;
 Ther hadde he doon gret chivalrye
 Through his vertu and his maistrye ;
 And for the love of his lemman
 †Had cast down many a doughtyman. 1210

Fraunchyse.

And next him daunced dame FRAUN-
 CHYSE,
 Arrayed in ful noble gyse.
 She was not broun ne dun of hewe,
 But whyt as snowe y-fallen newe.
 Hir nose was wrought at poynt devys, 1215
 For it was gentil and tretys ;
 With eyen gladde, and browes bente ;
 Hir heer down to hir heles wente.
 And she was simple as dowve on tree.
 Ful debonaire of herte was she. 1220
 She durste never seyn ne do
 But that [thing] that hir longed to.
 And if a man were in distresse,
 And for hir love in hevinesse,
 Hir herte wolde have ful greet pitee, 1225
 She was so amiable and free.
 For were a man for hir bistad,
 She wolde ben right sore adrad
 That she dide over greet outrage,
 But she him holpe his harm to aswage :
 Hir thoughte it elles a vilanye. 1231
 And she hadde on a sukkenye,
 That not of †hempen herdes was ;
 So fair was noon in alle Arras.
 Lord, it was rideled fetysly ! 1235
 Ther nas nat †oo poynt, trewely,

That it nas in his right assyse.
 Ful wel y-clothed was Fraunchyse;
 For ther is no cloth sitteth bet
 On damiselle, than doth roket. 1240
 A womman wel more fetys is
 In roket than in cote, y-wis.
 The whyte roket, rideled faire,
 †Bitokened, that ful debonaire
 And swete was she that it bere. 1245

By hir daunced a bachelere;
 I can not telle you what he highte,
 But fair he was, and of good highte,
 Al hadde he be, I sey no more,
 The lordes sone of Windesore. 1250

Curtesye.

And next that daunced CURTESYE,
 That preised was of lowe and hye,
 For neither proud ne fook was she.
 She for to daunce called me,
 (I praygod yeve hir right good grace!) 1255
 Whan I com first into the place.
 She was not nyce, ne outrageous,
 But wys and war, and vertuous,
 Of faire speche, and faire answer; e;
 Was never wight misseid of here; 1260
 She bar no rancour to no wight.
 Cleer broun she was, and therto bright
 Of face, of body avenaunt;
 I wot no lady so plesaunt.

She were worthy for to bene 1265
 An emperesse or crowned quene.

And by hir wente a knight dauncing
 That worthy was and wel speking,
 And ful wel coude he doon honour.
 The knight was fair and stif in stour, 1270
 And in armure a semely man,
 And wel biloved of his lemman.

Ydelnesse.

Fair YDELNESSE than saugh I,
 That alwey was me faste by.
 Of hir have I, withouten fayle, 1275
 Told yow the shap and aparayle;
 For (as I seide) lo, that was she
 That dide me so great bountee,
 That she the gate of the gardin
 Undide, and leet me passen in. 1280

Youthe.

And after daunced, as I gesse,
 †YOUTH, fulfild of lustinesse,
 That nas not yit twelve yeer of age,
 With herte wilde, and thought volage;

Nyce she was, but she ne mente 1285
 Noon harm ne slight in hir entente,
 But only lust and jolitee.

For yonge folk, wel witen ye,
 Have litel thought but on hir play.
 Hir lemman was bisyde alway, 1290

In swich a gyse, that he hir kiste
 At alle tymes that him liste,
 That al the daunce mighte it see;
 They make no force of privetee;
 For who spak of hem yvel or wel, 1295
 They were ashamed never-a-del,
 But men mighte seen hem kisse there,
 As it two yonge doves were.

For yong was thilke bachelere,
 Of beaute wot I noon his pere; 1300
 And he was right of swich an age
 As Youthe his leef, and swich corage.

The lusty folk †thus daunced there,
 And also other that with hem were,
 That weren alle of hir meyn; 1305
 Ful hende folk, and wys, and free,
 And folk of fair port, trewely,
 Ther weren alle comunly.

Whan I hadde seen the countenaunces
 Of hem that ladden thus these daunces,
 Than hadde I wil to goon and see 1310
 The gardin that so lyked me,
 And loken on these faire †floreres,
 On pyn-trees, cedres, and oliveres.
 The daunces than †y-ended were; 1315
 For many of hem that daunced there
 Were with hir loves went away
 Under the trees to have hir play.

A, lord! they lived lustily!
 A gret fool were he, sikerly, 1320
 That nolde, his thanks, swich lyf lede!
 For this dar I seyn, out of drede,
 That who-so mighte so wel fare,
 For better lyf †thurte him not care;
 For ther nis so good paradys 1325
 As have a love at his devys.

Out of that place wente I tho,
 And in that gardin gan I go,
 Pleying along ful merily.
 The God of Love ful hastely 1330
 Unto him Swete-Loking clepte,
 No lenger wolde he that †he kepte
 His bowe of golde, that shoon so bright.
 He †bad him bende it anon-right;
 And he ful sone [it] sette †on ende, 1335

And at a braid he gan it bende,
 And took him of his arowes fyve,
 Ful sharpe and redy for to dryve.
 Now god that sit in magestee
 Fro deedly woundes kepe me, 1340
 If so be that he þwol me shete;
 For if I with his arowe mete,
 It þwol me greven sore, y-wis!
 But I, that no-thing wiste of this,
 Wente up and down ful many a wey, 1345
 And he me folwed faste alwey;
 But no-wher wolde I reste me,
 Til I hadde al the þyerde in be.

The gardin was, by mesuring,
 Right even and squar in compassing; 1350
 It was as long as it was large.

The Trees.

Of fruyt hadde every tree his charge,
 But it were any hidous tree
 Of which ther were two or three.
 Ther were, and that wot I ful wel, 1355
 Of pomgarnettes a ful gret del;
 That is a fruyt ful wel to lyke,
 Namely to folk whan they ben syke.
 And trees ther were, greet foisoun,
 That baren notes in hir sesoun, 1360
 Such as men notemigges calle,
 That swote of savour been withalle.
 And alemandres greet plentee,
 Figs, and many a date-tree
 Ther weren, if men hadde nede, 1365
 Through the þyerd in length and brede.
 Ther was eek wexing many a spyce,
 As clow-gelofre, and licoryce,
 Gingere, and greyn de þparadys,
 Canelle, and setewale of prys, 1370
 And many a spyce delitable,
 To eten whan men ryse fro table.
 And many hoomly trees ther were,
 That peches, coynes, and apples bere,
 Medlers, ploumes, peres, chesteynes, 1375
 Cheryse, of whiche many on fayn is,
 Notes, aleya, and bolas,
 That for to seen it was solas;
 With many high lorer and pyn
 Was renged clene al that gardyn; 1380
 With cipres, and with oliveres,
 Of which that nigh no plente here is.
 Ther were elmes grete and stronge,
 Maples, asche, ook, ash, planes longe,
 Pyn ew, popler, and lindes faire, 1385

And othere trees ful many a payre.

What sholde I telle you more of it?
 Ther were so many treës yit,
 That I sholde al encombred be
 Er I had rekened every tree. 1390

These trees were set, that I devyse,
 Oon from another, in assyse,
 Five fadome or sixe, I trowe so,
 But they were hye and grete also:
 And for to kepe out wel the sonne, 1395
 The croppes were so thikke y-ronne,
 And every braunch in other þknet,
 And ful of grene leves þset,
 That sonne mighte noon descende,
 Lest [it] the tendre grasses shende. 1400
 Ther mighte men does and roes y-see,
 And of squirrels ful greet plentee,
 From bough to bough alwey leping.
 Conies ther were also playing,
 That comen out of hir claperes 1405
 Of sondry colours and maneres,
 And maden many a turneyng
 Upon the fresshe gras springing.

The Welles.

In places saw I welles there,
 In whiche ther no frogges were, 1410
 And fair in shadwe was every welle;
 But I ne can the nombre telle
 Of stremes smale, that by devys
 Mirthe had don come through condys,
 Of which the water, in renning, 1415
 Gan make a noyse ful lyking.

About the brinkes of thise welles,
 And by the stremes over-al elles
 Sprang up the gras, as thikke y-set
 And softe as any veluēt, 1420
 On which men mighte his lemman leye,
 As on a fetherbed, to pleye,
 For th'erthe was ful softe and swete.
 Through moisture of the welle wete
 Sprang up the sote grene gras, 1425
 As fair, as thikke, as mister was.
 But mucche amended it the place,
 That th'erthe was of swich a grace
 That it of floures had plente,
 That both in somer and winter be. 1430

Ther sprang the violete al newe,
 And fresshe pervinke, riche of hewe,
 And floures yelowe, whyte, and rede;
 Swich plentee grew ther never in mede.
 Ful gay was al the ground, and queynt,

And poudred, as men had it peynt, 1436
With many a fresh and sondry flour,
That casten up ful good savour.

I wol not longe holde you in fable
Of al this gardin þdelitable. 1440
I moot my tonge stinten nede,
For I ne may, withouten drede,
Naught tellen you the beautee al,
Ne half the bountee therewithal.

I wente on right honde and on left 1445
Aboute the place ; it was not left,
Til I hadde al the þyerde in been,
In the þestres that men mighte seen.
And thus whyle I wente in my pley,
The God of Love me folowed ay, 1450
Right as an hunter can abyde
The beste, til he seeth his tyde
To þshete, at good mes, to the dere,
Whan that him nedeth go no nere.

And so befil, I rested me 1455
Besyde a welle, under a tree,
Which tree in Fraunce men call a pyn.
But, sith the tyme of king Pepyn,
Ne grew ther tree in mannes sighte
So fair, ne so wel woxe in highte ; 1460
In al that yerde so high was noon.
And springing in a marble-stoon
Had nature set, the sothe to telle,
Under that pyn-tree a welle.
And on the border, al withoute, 1465
Was writen, in the stone aboute,
Lettres smale, that seyden thus,
Here starf the faire Narcisus.'

Narcisus.

NARCISUS was a bachelere,
That Love had caught in his daungere,
And in his net gan him so streyne, 1471
And dide him so to wepe and pleyne,
That nede him muste his lyf forgo.
For a fair lady, hight Echo,
Him loved over any creature, 1475
And gan for him swich payne endure,
That on a tyme she him tolde,
That, if he hir loven nolde,
That hir behoved nedes dye,
Ther lay non other remedye. 1480
But natheles, for his beautee,
So fiers and daungerous was he,
That he nolde graunten hir asking,
For weping, ne for fair praying.
And whan she herde him werne hir so,

She hadde in herte so gret wo, 1486
And took it in so gret dispyt,
That she, withoute more respyt,
Was deed anoon. But, er she deyde,
Ful pitously to god she preyde, 1490
That proude-herted Narcisus,
That was in love so daungerous,
Mighte on a day ben hampred so
For love, and been so hoot for wo,
That never he mighte joye atteyne ; 1495
Than shulde he fele in every veyne
What sorowe trewe lovers maken,
That been so þvilaynsly forsaken.

This prayer was but resonable,
Therfor god held it ferme and stable : 1500
For Narcisus, shortly to telle,
By aventure com to that welle
To reste him in that shadowing
A day, whan he com fro hunting.
This Narcisus had suffred paynes 1505
For renning alday in the playnes,
And was for thurst in greet distresse
Of hete, and of his werinesse
That hadde his breeth almost binomen.
Whan he was to that welle y-comen, 1510
That shadwed was with braunches grene,
He thoughte of thilke water shene
To drinke and fresshe him wel withalle ;
And doun on knees he gan to falle,
And forth his heed and nekke out-
straughte 1515
To drinken of that welle a draughte.
And in the water anoon was sene
His nose, his mouth, his yē shene,
And he ther-of was al abashed ;
His owne shadowe had him bitrashed.
For wel wende he the forme see 1521
Of a child of greet beautee.
Wel couthe Love him wreke tho
Of daunger and of pryde also
That Narcisus somtyme him bere. 1525
He quitte him wel his guerdon there ;
For he þso musede in the welle,
That, shortly al the sothe to telle,
He lovede his owne shadowe so,
That atte laste he starf for wo. 1530
For whan he saugh that he his wille
Mighte in no maner wey fulfille,
And that he was so faste caught
That he him couthe comfort naught,
He loste his wit right in that place, 1535

And deyde within a litel space. And thus his warisoun he took For the lady that he forsook. Ladyes, I preye ensample taketh, Ye that ayeins your love mistaketh : 1540 For if hir deeth be yow to wyte, God can ful wel your whyte quyte. Whan that this lettre, of whiche I telle, Had taught me that it was the welle Of Narcisus in his beautee, 1545 I gan anon withdrawe me, Whan it fel in my remembraunce, That him bitidde swich mischaunce. The Welle. But at the laste than thoughte I, That scatheles, ful sikerly, 1550 I mighte unto THE WELLE go. Wherof shulde I abasshen so ? Unto the welle than wente I me, And down I louted for to see The clere water in the stoon, 1555 And eek the gravel, which that shoon Down in the botme, as silver fyn ; For of the welle, this is the fyn, In world is noon so cleer of hewe. The water is ever fresh and newe 1560 That welmeth up in wawes brighte The mountance of two finger highte. Abouten it is gras springing, For moiste so thikke and wel lyking, That it ne may in winter dye, 1565 No more than may the see be drye. Down at the botme set saw I Two cristal stones craftely In thilke freshe and faire welle. But o thing soothly dar I telle, 1570 That ye wol holde a greet mervayle Whan it is told, withouten fayle. For whan the sonne, cleer in sighte, Cast in that welle his bemes brighte, And that the heet descended is, 1575 Than taketh the cristal stoon, y-wis, Agayn the sonne an hundred hewes, Blawe, yelow, and rede, that fresh and newe is. Yit hath the merveilous cristal 1579 Swich strengthe, that the place overal, Bethe fowl and tree, and leves grene, And al the yerd in it is sene. And for to doon you understonde, To make ensample wol I fonde ;	Right as a mirour openly 1585 Sheweth al thing that stant therby, As wel the colour as the figure, Withouten any coverture ; Right so the cristal stoon, shyning, Withouten any disceyving, 1590 The testres of the yerde accuseth To him that in the water museth ; For ever, in which half that þe be, þ He may wel half the gardin see ; And if he turne, he may right wel 1595 Seen the remenaunt everydel. For ther is noon so litel thing So hid, ne closed with shitting, That it ne is sene, as though it were Peynted in the cristal there. 1600 This is the mirour perilous, In which the proude Narcisus Saw al his face fair and bright, That made him sith to lye upright. For who-so loke in that mirour, 1605 Ther may no-thing ben his socour That he ne shal ther seen som thing That shal him lede into þloving. Ful many a worthy man hath it Y-blent ; for folk of grettest wit 1610 Ben sone caught here and awayted ; Withouten respyt been they bayted. Heer comth to folk of-newe rage, Heer chaungeth many wight corago ; Heer lyth no reed ne wit therto ; 1615 For Venus sone, daun Cupido, Hath sownen there of love the seed, That help ne lyth ther noon, ne reed, So cercleth it the welle aboute. His ginnes hath he set withoute 1620 Right for to cacche in his panteres These damoysels and bacheleres. Love will noon other bridde cacche, Though he sette either net or lacche. 1624 And for the seed that heer was sownen, This welle is cleped, as wel is knowen, The Welle of Love, of verray right, Of which ther hath ful many a wight Spoke in bokes dyversely. But they shulle never so verily 1630 Descripcioun of the welle here, No eek the sothe of this matere, As ye shulle, whan I have undo The craft that hir bilongeth to. Always me lyked for to dwelle, 1635
---	--

To seen the cristal in the welle,
 That shewed me ful openly
 A thousand thinges faste by.
 But I may saye, in sory houre
 Stood I to loken or to poure ; 1640
 For sithen [have] I sore †syked,
 That mirour hath me now entryked.
 But hadde I first knowen in my wit
 The vertue and [the] †strengthe of it,
 I nolde not have mused there ; 1645
 Me hadde bet ben elles-where ;
 For in the snare I fel anoon,
 That hath †bitraissed many oon.

The Roser.

In thilke mirour saw I tho,
 Among a thousand thinges mo. 1650
 A ROSER charged ful of roses,
 That with an hegge aboute enclos is.
 Tho had I swich lust and envye,
 That, for Parys ne for Pavye,
 Nolde I have left to goon and see 1655
 Ther grettest hepe of roses be.
 Whan I was with this rage hent,
 That caught hath many a man and shent,
 Toward the roser gan I go.
 And whan I was not fer therfro, 1660
 The savour of the roses swote
 Me smoot right to the herte rote,
 As I hadde al embawmed †be.
 And if I ne hadde endouted me
 To have ben hated or assailed, 1665
 My thanks, †wolde I not have failed
 To pulle a rose of al that route
 To bere[n] in myn honde aboute,
 And smellen to it wher I wente ;
 But ever I dredde me to repente, 1670

And lest it greved or for-thoughte
 The lord that thilke gardyn wroughte.
 Of roses were ther gret woon,
 So faire †wexe never in roon.
 Of knoppes clos, some saw I there, 1675
 And some wel beter woxen were ;
 And some ther been of other moyzoun,
 That drowe nigh to hir sesoun,
 And spedde hem faste for to sprede ;
 I love wel swiche roses rede ; 1680
 For brode roses, and open also,
 Ben passed in a day or two ;
 But knoppes wilen fresshe be
 Two dayes atte leest, or thre.
 The knoppes gretly lyked me, 1685
 For fairer may ther no man see.
 Who-so mighte have[n] oon of alle,
 It oughte him been ful leef withalle.
 Mighte I [a] gerlond of hem geten,
 For no richesse I wolde it leten. 1690

The Knoppe.

Among THE KNOPPES I chees oon
 So fair, that of the remenaunt noon
 Ne preyse I half so wel as it,
 Whan I avyse it in my wit.
 For it so wel was enlumyned 1695
 With colour reed, as wel [y]-fyned
 As nature couthe it make faire,
 And it †had leves wel fourre paire,
 That Kinde had set through his knowing
 About the rede †rose springing. 1700
 The stalke was as risshe right,
 And theron stood the knoppe upright,
 That it ne bowed upon no syde.
 The swote smelle sprong so wyde
 That it dide al the place aboute— 1705

FRAGMENT B.

[Line 1705 is incomplete, as the sentence has no verb. Here the genuine portion ends.
 Line 1706 gives a false rime, and is by another hand.]

Whan I had smelled the savour swote,
 No wille hadde I fro thens yit go,
 But somdel neer it wente I tho
 To take it ; but myn hond, for drede,
 Ne dorste I to the rose bede, 1710
 For thistels sharpe, of many maneres,
 Netles, thornes, and hoked breres ;

†Ful muche they distourbled me,
 For sore I dradde to harmed be.
 The God of Love, with bowe bent, 1715
 That al day set hadde his talent
 To pursuen and to spyen me,
 Was standing by a fige-tree.
 And whan he sawe how that I

en so ententilly 1720
 un, more unto my pay
 other that I say,
 n arowe ful sharply whet,
 is bowe whan it was set,
 at up to his ere drough 1725
 ge bowe, that was so tough,
 at me so wonder smerte,
 ough myn eye unto myn herte
 smoot, and depe it wente.
 with-al such cold me hente,
 er clothes warme and softe, 1731
 t day I have chevered ofte.
 was hurt thus in [that] stounde,
 plat unto the grounde.
 e failed and feynted ay, 1735
 tyme [ther] a-swone I lay.
 I com out of swoning,
 e wit, and my feling,
 naat, and wende ful wel
 ave boren a ful gret del. 1740
 t, the arowe that in me stood
 drew no drope of blood,
 I found my wounde al dreye.
 I with myn hondis tweye
 , and ful fast out it plight, 1745
 e pulling sore I sight.
 last the shaft of tree
 out, with the fethers three.
 e hoked heed, y-wis,
 e Beantee callid is, 1750
 pe in myn herte passe,
 mighte nought arace ;
 yn herte stille it stood,
 I not a drope of blood.
 e anguissous and trouble 1755
 eril that I saw double ;
 at to seye or do,
 leche my woundis to ;
 ir thurgh gras ne rote,
 I help of hope ne bote. 1760
 botoun ever-mo
 drew ; for al my wo,
 ht was in non other thing.
 it been in my keping,
 ave brought my lyf agayn. 1765
 inly, I dar wel seyn,
 only, and the savour,
 uche of my langour.
 n I for to drawe me
 e botoun fair to see ; 1770

And Love hadde gete him, in ta throwe,
 Another arowe into his bowe,
 And for to shete-gan him dresse ;
 The arowis name was Simplese.
 And whan that Love gan nyghe me nere,
 He drow it up, withouten were, 1776
 And shet at me with al his might,
 So that this arowe anon-right
 Thourghout [myn] eigh, as it was founde,
 Into myn herte hath maad a wounde.
 Thanne I anoon dide al my crafte 1781
 For to drawen out the shafte,
 And ther-with-al I sighed eft.
 But in myn herte the heed was left,
 Which ay encreasid my desyre, 1785
 Unto the botoun drawe nere ;
 And ever, mo that me was wo,
 The more desyr hadde I to go
 Unto the roser, where that grew
 The fresshe botoun so bright of hewe. 1790
 Betir me were have leten be ;
 But it bihoved nedes me
 To don right as myn herte bad.
 For ever the body must be lad
 Aftir the herte ; in wele and wo, 1795
 Of force togidre they must go.
 But never this archer wolde fyne
 To shete at me with all his pyne,
 And for to make me to him meta.
 The thridde arowe he gan to shete 1800
 Whan best his tyme he mighte espye,
 The which was named Curtesye ;
 Inte myn herte it dide avale.
 A-swone I fel, bothe deed and pale ;
 Long tyme I lay, and stired nought, 1805
 Til I abraid out of my thought.
 And faste than I avysed me
 To drawe[n] out the shafte of tree ;
 But ever the heed was left bihinde
 For ought I couthe pulle or winde, 1810
 So sore it stikid whan I was hit,
 That by no craft I might it flit ;
 But anguissous and ful of thought,
 I felte such wo, my wounde ay wrought,
 That somoned me alway to go 1815
 Toward the rose, that pleased me so ;
 But I ne durste in no manere,
 Bicause the archer was so nere.
 For evermore gladly, as I rede,
 Brent child of fyr hath muche drede. 1820
 And, certis yit, for al my peyne,

Though that I sigh yit arwis reyne,
 And grounde quarels sharpe of stele,
 Ne for no payne that I might fele,
 Yit might I not my-silf with-holde 1825
 The faire roser to biholde ;
 For Love me yaf sich hardement
 For to fulfille his commaundement.
 Upon my feet I roos up than
 Feble, as a forwoundid man ; 1830
 And forth to gon [my] might I sette,
 And for the archer nolde I lette.
 Toward the roser fast I drow ;
 But thornes sharpe mo than y-now
 Ther were, and also thistels thikke, 1835
 And breres, brimme for to prikke,
 That I ne mighte gete grace
 The rowe thornes for to passe,
 To sene the roses fresshe of hewe,
 I must abide, though it me rewe, 1840
 The hegge aboute so thikke was,
 That closid the roses in compas.

But o thing lyked me right wele ;
 I was so nygh, I mighte fele
 Of the botoun the swote odour, 1845
 And also see the fresshe colour ;
 And that right gretly lyked me,
 That I so neer þit mighte see.
 Sich joye anoon therof hadde I,
 That I forgot my malady. 1850
 To sene þit hadde I sich delyt,
 Of sorwe and angre I was al quit,
 And of my woundes that I had þthar ;
 For no-thing lyken me might þmar
 Than dwellen by the roser ay, 1855
 And thennes never to passe away.

But whan a whyle I had be thar,
 The God of Love, which al to-shar
 Myn herte with his arwis kene,
 þCaste him to yeve me woundis grene.
 He shet at me ful hastily 1861
 An arwe named Company,
 The whiche takel is ful able
 To make these ladies merciabie.
 Than I anoon gan chaungen hewe 1865
 For grevaunce of my wounde newe,
 That I agayn fel in swoning,
 And sighed sore in compleyning.
 Sore I compleyned that my sore
 On me gan greven more and more. 1870
 I had non hope of allegeaunce ;
 So nigh I drow to desperaunce,

I rought of dethe ne of lyf,
 Whither that love wolde me dryf.
 If me a martir wolde he make, 1875
 I might his power nought forsake.
 And whyl for anger thus I wook,
 The God of Love an arowe took ;
 Ful sharp it was and [ful] pugnaunt,
 And it was callid Fair-Semblaunt, 1880
 The which in no wys wol consente,
 That any lover him repente
 To serve his love with herte and alle,
 For any peril that may bifalle.
 But though this arwe was kene grounde
 As any rasour that is founde, 1886
 To cutte and kerve, at the poynt,
 The God of Love it hadde anyont
 With a precious oynement,
 Somdel to yeve aleggement 1890
 Upon the woundes that he had
 Through the body in my herte maad,
 To helpe hir sores, and to cure,
 And that they may the bet endure.
 But yit this arwe, withoute more, 1895
 Made in myn herte a large sore,
 That in ful gret peyne I abood.
 But ay the oynement wente abroad ;
 Throughout my woundes large and wyde
 It spredde aboute in every syde ; 1900
 Through whos vertu and whos might
 Myn herte joyful was and light.
 I had been deed and al to-shent
 But for the precious oynement.
 The shaft I drow out of the arwe, 1905
 Roking for wo right wondir narwe ;
 But the heed which made me smerte,
 Lefte bihinde in myn herte
 With other foure, I dar well say,
 That never wol be take away ; 1910
 But the oynement halp me wele.
 And yit sich sorwe dide I fele
 þOf my woundes fresshe and newe,
 That al-day I chaunged hewe,
 As men might see in my visage. 1915
 The arwis were so fulle of rage,
 So variaunt of diversitee,
 That men in everich mighte see
 Both gret anoy and eek swetnesse,
 And joye meynt with bittirnesse, 1920
 Now were they esy, now where they wood,
 In hem I felte both harm and good ;
 Now sore without aleggement,

Low †softening with oynement ;
It softned here, and †prikked there, 1925
Thus ese and anger togider were.

The God of Love deliverly
Com lepard to me hastily,
And seide to me, in gret rape,
'Yeld thee, for thou may not escape ! 1930
May no defence availe thee here ;
Therefore I rede mak no daungere.
If thou wolt yelde thee hastily,
Thou shalt [the] rather have mercy.
He is a fool in sikernesse, 1935
That with daunger or stoutnesse
Rebellith ther that he shulde plese ;
In such folye is litel ese.
Be meek, wher thou must nedis bowe ;
To stryve ageyn is nought thy prowē.
Come at ones, and have y-do, 1941
For I wol that it be so.

Than yeld thee here debonairly.
And I answerid ful humbly,
'Gladly, sir ; at your bidding, 1945
I wol me yelde in alle thing.
To your servyse I wol me take ;
For god defende that I shulde make
Ageyn your bidding resistence ;
I wol not doon so gret offence ; 1950
For if I dide, it were no skile.

Ye may do with me what ye wile,
Save or spille, and also sloo ;
Fro you in no wyse may I go.
My lyf, my deth, is in your honde, 1955
I may not laste out of your bonde.

Pleyn at your list I yelde me,
Hoping in herte, that sumtyme ye
Comfort and ese shulle me sende ;
Or ellis shortly, this is the ende, 1960
Withouten helthe I moot ay dure,
But-if ye take me to your cure.
Comfort or helthe how shuld I have,
Sith ye me hurte, but ye me save ?
The helthe of †lovers moot be founde
Wher-as they token firste hir wounde.

And if ye list of me to make 1967
Your prisoner, I wol it take
Of herte and wil, fully at gree.

Hoolly and pleyn I yelde me, 1970
Withoute feyning or feyntyse,
To be governed by your empyrse.
Of you I here so much prys,
I wol ben hool at your devys

For to fulfille your lyking 1975
And repente for no-thing,
Hoping to have yit in som tyde
Mercy, of that [that] I abyde.'

And with that covenant yeld I me,
Anoon doun kneling upon my knee, 1980
Profering for to kisse his feet ;
But for no-thing he wolde me lete,
And seide, ' I love thee bothe and preyse,
Sen that thyn answer doth me ese,
For thou answerid so curteisly. 1985

For now I wot wel uttirly,
That thou art gentil, by thy speche.
For though a man fer wolde seche,
He shulde not finden, in certeyn,
No sich answer of no vileyn ; 1990
For sich a word ne mighte nought
Isse out of a vilayns thought.

Thou shalt not lesen of thy speche,
For [to] thy helping wol I eche,
And eek encresen that I may. 1995

But first I wol that thou obey
Fully, for thyn avauntage,
Anon to do me here homage.
And sithe[n] kisse thou shalt my mouth,
Which to no vilayn was never couth xxx
For to aproche it, ne for to touche ;
For sauf †to cherlis I ne vouche
That they shulle never neigh it nere.

For curteys, and of fair manere,
Wel taught, and ful of gentilnesse 2005
He muste ben, that shal me kisse,
And also of ful high fraunchyse,
That shal atteyne to that empyrse.

' And first of o thing warne I thee,
That payne and gret adversitee 2010
He mot endure, and eek travaile,
That shal me serve, withoute faile.
But ther-ageyns, thee to comforte,
And with thy servise to desporte,
Thou mayst ful glad and joyful be 2015
So good a maister to have as me,
And lord of so high renoun.

I bere of Love the gonfanoun,
Of Curtesye the banere ;
For I am of the silf manere, 2020
Gentil, curteys, meek and free ;
That who [so] ever ententif be
Me to honoure, doute, and serve,
And also that he him observe
Fro trespas and fro vilanye, 2025

And him governe in curtesyo
 With wil and with entencioun ;
 For whan he first in my prisoun
 Is caught, than muste he uttirly,
 Fro thennes-forth ful bisily, 2030
 Caste him gentil for to be,
 If he desyre helpe of me.'

Anoon withouten more delay,
 Withouten daunger or affray,
 I bicom his man anoon, 2035
 And gave him thankes many a oon,
 And kneled down with hondis joynt,
 And made it in my port ful †quoynt ;
 The joye wente to myn herte rota.

Whan I had kissed his mouth so swote,
 I had sich mirthe and sich lyking, 2041
 It cured me of languisshing.

He askid of me than hostages :—
 'I have,' he seide, '†tan fele homages
 Of oon and other, where I have been 2045
 †Disceyved ofte, withouten wene.

These felouns, fulle of falsitee,
 Have many sythes bigyled me,
 And through falshede hir lust acheved,
 Wherof I repente and am agreved. 2050

And I hem gete in my daungere,
 Hir falshed shulle they bye ful dere.
 But for I love thee, I seye thee pleyn,
 I wol of thee be more certeyn ;

For thee so sore I wol now binde, 2055
 That thou away ne shalt not winde
 For to denyen the covenaut,
 Or doon that is not avenaunt.

That thou were fals it were greet reuthe,
 Sith thou semest so ful of treuthe.' 2060

'Sire, if thee list to undirstande,
 I merveile thee asking this demanda.
 For-why or wherfore shulde ye
 Ostages or borwis aske of me,
 Or any other sikirnesse, 2065
 Sith ye wote, in sothfastnesse,
 That ye have me †surprysed so,
 And hool myn herte †tan me fro,
 That it wol do for me no-thing
 But-if it be at your bidding? 2070

Myn herte is yours, and myn right nought,
 As it bihoveth, in dede and thought,
 Redy in alle to worche your wille,
 Whether so [it] turne to good or illa.
 So sore it lustith you to plesse, 2075
 No man therof may you †disseise.

Ye have theron set sich justise,
 That it is werreyd in many wise.
 And if ye doute it nolde obeye,
 Ye may therof do make a keye, 2080
 And holde it with you for ostage.'
 'Now certis, this is noon outrage,'
 Quoth Love, 'and fully I accord ;
 For of the body he is ful lord
 That hath the herte in his tresor ; 2085
 Outrage it were to asken more.'

Than of his aumener he drough
 A litel keye, fetys y-nough,
 Which was of gold polissched clere,
 And seide to me, 'With this keye here
 Thyn herte to me now wol I shette ; 2091
 For al my jowellis loke and knette
 I binde under this litel keye,
 That no wight may carye aweye ;
 This keye is ful of gret poeste.' 2095

With which anoon he touchid me
 Undir the syde ful softly,
 That he myn herte sodeynly
 Without [al] anoy had spered,
 That yit right nought it hath me dered.

Whan he had doon his wil al-out, 2101
 And I had put him out of dout,
 'Sire,' I seide, 'I have right gret wille
 Your lust and plesaunce to fulfilla.

Loke ye my servise take at gree, 2105
 By thilke feith ye owe to me.

I seye nought for recreaundyse,
 For I nought doute of your servyse.
 But the servaunt traileth in vayne,
 That for to serven doth his payne 2110
 Unto that lord, which in no wyse
 Can him no thank for his servyse.'

Love seide, 'Dismaye thee nought,
 Sin thou for sucour hast me sought,
 In thank thy servise wol I take, 2115
 And high of †gree I wol thee make,
 If wikkidnesse ne hindre thee ;
 But, as I hope, it shal nought be.

To worship no wight by aventure
 May come, but-if he peyne endure. 2120
 Abyde and suffre thy distresse ;
 That hurtith now, it shal be lesse ;
 I wot my-silf what may thee save,
 What medicyne thou woldist have.

And if thy trouthe to me thou kepe, 2125
 I shal unto thyn helping eke,
 To cure thy woundes and make hem clene,

Wher-so they be olde or grene ;
 Thou shalt be holpen, at wordis fewe.
 For certeynly thou shalt wel shewe 2130
 Wher that thou servest with good wille,
 For to complisshen and fulfille
 My comaundementis, day and night,
 Whiche I to lovers yeve of right.'

'Ah, sire, for goddis love,' said I, 2135
 'Er ye passe hens, ententify
 Your comaundementis to me ye say,
 And I shal kepe hem, if I may ;
 For hem to kepen is al my thought.
 And if so be I wot them nought, 2140
 Than may I [sinne] unwittingly.
 Wherfore I pray you enterely,
 With al myn herte, me to lere,
 That I trespasse in no manere.'

The god of love than chargid me 2145
 Anoon, as ye shal here and see,
 Word by word, by right emprise,
 So as the Romance shal devyse.

The maister lesith his tyme to lere,
 Whan the disciple wol not here. 2150
 It is but veyn on him to swinke,
 That on his lerning wol not thinke.
 Who-so lust love, let him entende,
 For now the Romance †ginneth amende.
 Now is good to here, in fay, 2155
 If any be that can it say,

And poynte it as the resoun is
 Set ; for other-gate, y-wis,
 It shal nought wel in alle thing
 Be brought to good undirstonding ; 2160
 For a rede that poyntith ille

A good sentence may ofte spille.
 The book is good at the ending,
 Maad of newe and lusty thing ;
 For who-so wol the ending here, 2165
 The crafte of love he shal now lere,
 If that he wol so long abyde,
 Til I this Romance may unhyde,
 And undo the signifiante
 Of this dreame into Romaunce. 2170

The sothfastnesse, that now is hid,
 Without coverture shal be kid,
 Whan I undon have this dreming,
 Wherin no word is of lesing.

'Vilany, at the beginning, 2175
 I wol,' †sayd Love, 'over alle thing,
 Thou leve, if thou wolt [not] be
 Fals, and trespasse ageynes me.

I curse and blame generally
 Alle hem that loven vilany ; 2180
 For vilany makith vilayn,
 And by his dedis a cherle is seyn.
 Thise vilayns arn without pitee,
 Frendshipe, love, and al bounte.
 I nil receyve †to my servyse ; 2185
 Hem that ben vilayns of emprise.

'But undirstonde in thyn entent,
 That this is not myn entendement,
 To clepe no wight in no ages
 Only gentil for his linages. 2190

But who-so [that] is vertuous,
 And in his port nought outrageous,
 Whan sich oon thou seest thee biforn,
 Though he be not gentil born,
 Thou mayst wel seyn, this is †a soth, 2195
 That he is gentil, bicause he doth
 As longeth to a gentilman ;
 Of hem non other deme I can.

For certeynly, withouten drede,
 A cherle is demed by his dede, 2200
 Of hye or lowe, as ye may see,
 Or of what kinrede that he be.
 Ne say nought, for noon yvel wille,
 Thing that is to holden stille ;
 It is no worship to misseye. 2205

Thou mayst ensample take of Keye,
 That was somtyme, for misseying,
 Hated bothe of olde and ying ;
 As fer as Gaweyn, the worthy,
 Was preysed for his curtesy, 2210
 Keye was hated, for he was fel,
 Of word dispitous and cruel.

Wherfore be wyse and aqueyntable,
 Goodly of word, and resonable
 Bothe to lesse and eek to mar. 2215

And whan thou comest ther men ar,
 Loke that thou have in custom ay
 First to salve hem, if thou may :
 And if it falle, that of hem som
 Salve thee first, be not dom, 2220
 But quyte him curteisly anoon
 Without abiding, er they goon.

'For no-thing eek thy tunge applye
 To speke wordis of ribaudye.
 To vilayn speche in no degree 2225

Lat never thy lippe unbounden be.
 For I nought holde him, in good feith,
 Curteys, that foule wordis seith.
 And alle wimmen serve and preyse,

And to thy power hir honour reyse. 2230
 And if that any missayere
 Dispyse wimmen, that thou mayst here,
 Blame him, and bidde him holde him stille.
 And set thy might and al thy wille
 Wimmen and ladies for to plesse, 2235
 And to do thing that may hem ese,
 That they ever speke good of thee,
 For so thou mayst best preysed be.

‘ Loke fro pryde thou kepe thee welo ;
 For thou mayst bothe perceyve and fele,
 That pryde is bothe foly and sinne ; 2241
 And he that pryde hath, him withinne,
 Ne may his herte, in no wyse,
 Meken ne souplen to servyse.
 For pryde is founde, in every part, 2245
 Contrarie unto Loves art.
 And he that loveth trewely
 Shulde him contene jolily,
 Withouten pryde in sondry wyse,
 And him disgysen in queyntyse. 2250
 For queynt array, withouten drede,
 Is no-thing proud, who takith hede ;
 For fresh array, as men may see,
 Withouten pryde may ofte be.

‘ Mayntene thy-silf aftir thy rent, 2255
 Of robe and eek of garnement ;
 For many sythe fair clothing
 A man amendith in mich thing.
 And loke alwey that they be shape,
 What garnement that thou shalt make,
 Of him that can [hem] beste do, 2261
 With al that perteyneth therto.
 Poyntis and sleeves be wel sittand,
 Right and streight tūpon the hand.
 Of shoon and botes, newe and faire, 2265
 Loke at the leest thou have a paire ;
 And that they sitte so fetisly,
 That these rude may uttirly
 Merveyle, sith that they sitte so pleyn,
 How they come on or of ageyn. 2270
 Were streite gloves, with tūmenere
 Of silk ; and alwey with good chere
 Thou yeve, if thou have richesse ;
 And if thou have nought, spend the lesse.
 Alwey be merry, if thou may, 2275
 But waste not thy good alway.
 Have hat of floures fresh as May,
 Chapolet of roses of Whitsonday ;
 For sich array ne tūcost but lyte.
 Thyn hondis wash, thy teeth make whyte,

And let no filthe upon thee be. 2281
 Thy nailes blak if thou mayst see,
 Voide it away deliverly,
 And kembe thyn heed right jolily.
 tFard not thy visage in no wyse, 2285
 For that of love is not th’empryse ;
 For love doth haten, as I finde,
 A beaute that cometh not of kinde.
 Alwey in herto I rede thee
 Glad and mery for to be, 2290
 And be as joyful as thou can ;
 Love hath no joye of sorowful man.
 That yvel is ful of curtesye
 That tflauhwith in his maladye ;
 For ever of love the siknesse 2295
 Is meynd with swete and bitternesse.
 The sore of love is merveilous ;
 For now the lover [is] joyous,
 Now can he pleyne, now can he grone,
 Now can he singen, now maken mone.
 To-day he pleyneth for hevinesse, 2301
 To-morowe he tpleyeth for jolynesse.
 The lyf of love is ful contrarie,
 Which stoundemole can ofte varie.
 But if thou canst [som] mirthis make, 2305
 That men in gree wole gladly take,
 Do it goodly, I comaunde thee ;
 For men sholde, wher-so-ever they be,
 Do thing that hem [best] sitting is,
 For therof cometh good loos and pris. 2310
 Wher-of that thou be vertuous,
 Ne be not straunge ne daungerous.
 For if that thou good rider be,
 Prike gladly, that men may se.
 In armes also if thou conne, 2315
 Pursue, til thou a name hast wonne.
 And if thy voice be fair and clere,
 Thou shalt maken no gret daungere
 Whan to singe they goodly preye ;
 It is thy worship for to obeye. 2320
 Also to you it longith ay
 To harpe and giterne, daunce and play ;
 For if he can wel foote and daunce,
 It may him greetly do avaunce.
 Among eek, for thy lady sake, 2325
 Songes and complayntes that thou make ;
 For that wol tmeve [hem] in hir herte,
 Whan they reden of thy smerte.
 Loke that no man for scarce thee holde,
 For that may greve thee many-folde. 2330
 Resoun wol that a lover be

In his yiftes more large and free
Than charles that been not of loving,
For who ther-of can any thing,
He shal be leef ay for to yeve, 2335
In † Loves lore who so wolde leve;
For he that, through a sodeyn sight,
Or for a kissing, anon-right
Yaf hool his herte in wille and thought,
And to him-silf kepith right nought, 2340
Aftir † swich yift, is good resoun,
He yeve his good in abandoun.

Now wol I shortly here reherce,
Of that [that] I have seid in verse,
Al the sentence by and by, 2345
In wordis fewe compendiously,
That thou the bet mayst on hem thinke,
Whether-so it be thou wake or winke;
For [that] the wordis litel greve
A man to kepe, whanne it is breve. 2350

Who-so with Love wol goon or ryde
He mot be curteys, and void of pryde,
Mery and fulle of jolite,
And of largesse alosed be.

First I joyne thee, here in penaunce,
That ever, withoute repentaunce, 2356
Thou set thy thought in thy loving,
To laste withoute repenting;
And thanke upon thy mirthis swete,
That shal folowe aftir whan ye mete. 2360

And for thou trewe to love shalt be,
I wol, and [eek] comaunde thee,
That in oo place thou sette, al hool,
Thyn herte, withouten halfen dool,
For trecherie, † in sikernesse; 2365
For I lovede never doublenesse.

To many his herte that wol depart,
Everiche shal have but litel part.
But of him drede I me right nought,
That in oo place settith his thought. 2370
Therefore in oo place it sette,
And let it never thennes flette.

For if thou yevest it in lening,
I holde it but a wrecchid thing:
Therefore yeve it hool and quyte, 2375
And thou shalt have the more merite.

If it be lent, than aftir soon,
The bountee and the thank is doon;
But, in love, free yeven thing
Requyrith a gret guerdoning. 2380
Yeve it in yift al quit fully,
And make thy yift debonairly;

For men that yift [wol] holde more dere
That yeven is with gladsome chere.
That yift nought to preisen is 2385
That man yeveth, mangre his.

Whan thou hast yeven thyn herte, as I
Have seid thee here [al] openly,
Than adventures shulle thee falle,
Which harde and hevy been withalle. 2390
For ofte whan thou bithenkist thee

Of thy loving, wher-so thou be,
Fro folk thou must depart in hy,
That noon perceyve thy malady,
But hyde thyn harm thou must alone, 2395
And go forth sole, and make thy mone.

Thou shalt no whyl be in oo stat,
But whylom cold and whylom hat;
Now reed as rose, now yelowe and fade.
Such sorowe, I trowe, thou never hade;
Cotidien, ne [yit] quarteyne, 2401
It is nat so ful of peyne.

For ofte tymes it shal falle
In love, among thy peynes alle,
That thou thy-self, al hoolly, 2405
Foryeten shalt so utterly,

That many tymes thou shalt be
Stille as an image of tree,
Dom as a stoon, without stering
Of foot or hond, without speking; 2410
Than, sone after al thy peyne,

To memorie shalt thou come ageyn,
A[s] man abasshed wondre sore,
And after sighen more and more.
For wit thou wel, withouten wene, 2415
In swich astat ful oft have been

That have the yvel of love assayd,
Wher-through thou art so dismayd.

After, a thought shal take thee so,
That thy love is to fer thee fro: 2420
Thou shalt say, "God, what may this be,
That I ne may my lady see?

Myne herte aloon is to her go,
And I abyde al sole in wo,
Departed fro myn owne thought, 2425
And with myne eyen see right nought.

Alas, myn eyen † sende I ne may,
My careful herte to convay!
Myn hertes gyde but they be,
I praise no-thing what ever they see. 2430

Shul they abyde thanne? nay;
But goon † visyte without delay
That myn herte desyreth so.

For certeynly, but-if they go,
 A fool my-self I may wel holde, 2435
 Whan I ne see what myn herte wolde.
 Wherfore I wol gon her to seen,
 Or esed shal I never been,
 But I have som tokening."
 Then gost thou forth without dwelling;
 But ofte thou faylest of thy desyre, 2441
 Er thou mayst come hir any nero,
 And wastest in vayn thy passage.
 Than fallest thou in a newe rage;
 For wante of sight thou ginnest morne,
 And homward pensif dost retorne. 2446
 In greet mischeef than shalt thou be,
 For than agayn shal come to thee
 Sighes and pleyntes, with newe wo,
 That no icching prikketh so. 2450
 Who wot it nought, he may go lere
 Of hem that byen love so dere.

'No-thing thyn herte appesen may,
 That oft thou wolt goon and assay,
 If thou mayst seen, by aventure, 2455
 Thy lyves joy, thyn hertis cure;
 So that, by grace if thou might
 Atteyne of hir to have a sight,
 Than shalt thou doon non other dede
 But with that sight thyn eyen fede. 2460
 That faire fresh whan thou mayst see,
 Thyn herte shal so ravished be,
 That never thou woldest, thy thankis, lete,
 Ne remove, for to see that swete.
 The more thou seest in sothfastnesse, 2465
 The more thou †coveytest of that swet-
 nesse;

The more thyn herte brenneth in fyr,
 The more thyn herte is in desyr.
 For who considreth every del,
 It may be lykned wondir wel, 2470
 The peyne of love, unto a fere;
 For ever [the] more thou neigest nere
 †Thought, or who-so that it be,
 For verray sothe I telle it thee,
 The hatter ever shal thou brenne, 2475
 As experience shal thee kenne.
 Wher-so [thou] comest in any cost,
 Who is next fyr, he brenneth most.
 And yit forsothe, for al thyn kete,
 Though thou for love swelte and swete,
 Ne for no-thing thou felen may, 2481
 Thou shalt not willen to passe away.
 And though thou go, yet must thee nede

Thenke al-day on hir fairhede,
 Whom thou bihelde with so good wille;
 And holde thyself bigyled ille, 2486
 That thou ne haddest non hardement
 To shewe hir ought of thyn entent.
 Thyn herte ful sore thou wolt dispyse,
 And eek reprove of cowardyse, 2490
 That thou, so dulle in every thing,
 Were dom for drede, without speking,
 Thou shalt eek thenke thou didest foly,
 That thou wert hir so faste by,
 And durst not aunte thee to say 2495
 Som-thing, er thou cam away;
 For thou haddist no more wonne,
 To speke of hir whan thou bigonne:
 But †yf she wolde, for thy sake,
 In armes goodly thee have take, 2500
 It shulde have be more worth to thee
 Than of tresour greet plentee.

'Thus shalt thou morne and eek com-
 pleyn,
 And gete enchesoun to goon ageyn
 Unto thy walk, or to thy place, 2505
 Where thou biheld hir fleshly face.
 And never, for fals suspeccioun,
 Thou woldest finde occasioun
 For to gon unto hir hous.
 So art thou thanne desirous 2510
 A sight of hir for to have,
 If thou thine honour mightest save,
 Or any erand mightist make
 Thider, for thy loves sake;
 Ful-fayn thou woldist, but for drede 2515
 Thou gost not, lest that men take hede.
 Wherfore I rede, in thy going,
 And also in thyn ageyn-coming,
 Thou be wel war that men ne wit;
 Feyne thee other cause than it 2520
 To go that weye, or faste by;
 To hele wel is no folye.
 And if so be it happe thee
 That thou thy love ther mayst see,
 In siker wyse thou hir salewe, 2525
 Wherwith thy colour wol transmewe,
 And eke thy blood shal al to-quake,
 Thy hewe eek chaungen for hir sake.
 But word and wit, with chere ful pale,
 Shul wante for to telle thy tale. 2530
 And if thou mayst so far-forth winne,
 That thou [thy] resoun durst biginne,
 And woldist seyn three thingis or mo,

Thou shalt ful scarsly seyn the two.
 Though thou bithenke thee never so wel,
 Thou shalt foryete yit somdel, 2536
 But-if thou deale with trecherye.
 For fals lovers mowe al folye
 Seyn, what hem lust, withouten drede,
 They be so double in hir falshede ; 2540
 For they in herte cunne thenke a thing
 And seyn another, in hir speking.
 And whan thy speche is endid al,
 Right thus to thee it shal bifal ;
 If any word than come to minde, 2545
 That thou to seye hast left bihinde,
 Than thou shalt brenne in greet martyr ;
 For thou shalt brenne as any fyr.
 This is the stryf and eke the affray,
 And the batail that lastith ay. 2550
 This bargeyn ende may never take,
 But-if that she thy pees wil make.
 'And whan the night is comen, anon
 A thousand angres shal come upon.
 To bedde as fast thou wolt thee dight, 2555
 Where thou shalt have but smal delyt ;
 For whan thou wenest for to slepe,
 So ful of peyne shalt thou crepe,
 Sterte in thy bedde aboute ful wyde,
 And turne ful ofte on every syde ; 2560
 Now downward groffe, and now upright,
 And walowe in wo the longe night ;
 Thyne armis shalt thou sprede abrede,
 As man in werre were †forwerreyd.
 Than shal thee come a remembraunce
 Of hir shape and hir semblaunce 2566
 Wherto non other may be pere.
 And wite thou wel, withoute were,
 That thee shal †seme, somtyme that night,
 That thou hast hir, that is so bright, 2570
 Naked bitwene thyn armes there,
 Al sothfastnesse as though it were.
 Thou shalt make castels than in Spayne,
 And dreme of joye, al but in vayne,
 And thee delyten of right nought, 2575
 Why! thou so alomrest in that thought,
 That is so swete and delitable,
 The which, in soth, nis but a fable,
 For it ne shal no whyle laste.
 Than shalt thou sighe and wepe faste, 2580
 And say, " Dere god, what thing is this ?
 My dreme is turned al amis,
 Which was ful swete and apparent,
 But now I wake, it is al shent

Now yede this mery thought away ! 2585
 Twenty tymes upon a day
 I wolde this thought wolde come ageyn,
 For it alleggith wel my peyn.
 It makith me ful of joyful thought,
 It sleeth me, that it lastith noght. 2590
 A, lord ! why nil ye me socoure,
 The joye, I trowe, that I langoure ?
 The deth I wolde me shulde slo
 Why! I lye in hir armes two.
 Myn harm is hard, withouten wene, 2595
 My greet unese ful ofte I mene.
 But wolde Love do so I might
 Have fully joye of hir so bright,
 My peyne were quit me richely.
 Allas, to greet a thing aske I ! 2600
 It is but foly, and wrong wening,
 To aske so outrageous a thing.
 And who-so askith folily,
 He moot be warned hastily ;
 And I ne wot what I may say, 2605
 I am so fer out of the way ;
 For I wolde have ful gret lyking
 And ful gret joye of lasse thing.
 For wolde she, of hir gentilnesse,
 Withouten more, me onis kesse, 2610
 It were to me a greet guerdoun,
 Relees of al my passioun.
 But it is hard to come therto ;
 Al is but foly that I do,
 So high I have myn herte set, 2615
 Where I may no comfort get.
 †I noot wher I sey wel or nought ;
 But this I wot wel in my thought,
 That it were †bet of hir aloon,
 For to stinte my wo and moon, 2620
 A loke on †me y-cast goodly.
 †Than for to have, al utterly,
 Of another al hool the pley.
 A ! lord ! wher I shal byde the day
 That ever she shal my lady be ? 2625
 He is ful cured that may hir see.
 A ! god ! whan shal the dawning spring ?
 To †ly thus is an angry thing ;
 I have no joye thus here to ly
 Whan that my love is not me by. 2630
 A man to lyon hath gret disese,
 Which may not slepe ne reste in ese
 I wolde it dawed, and were now day,
 And that the night were went away ;
 For were it day, I wolde upryse. 2635

A ! slowe sonne, shew thyn enpryse !
Speed thee to sprede thy bemis bright,
And chace the derknesse of the night,
To putte away the stoundes stronge,
Which in me lasten al to longe." 2640

'The night shalt thou contene so,
Without rest, in payne and wo ;
If ever thou knewe of love distresse,
Thou shalt mowe lerne in that siknesse.
And thus enduring shalt thou ly, 2645
And ryse on morwe up erly
Out of thy bedde, and harneys thee
Er ever dawning thou mayst see.
Al privily than shalt thou goon,
What †weder it be, thy-silf aloon, 2650
For reyn, or hayl, for snow, for slete,
Thider she dwellith that is so swete,
The which may falle aslepe be,
And thenkith but litel upon thee.
Than shalt thou goon, ful foule aferd ; 2655
Loke if the gato be unsperd,
And waite without in wo and peyn,
Ful yvel a-colde in winde and reyn.
Than shal thou go the dore bifore,
If thou maist fynde any score, 2660
Or hole, or reft, what ever it were ;
Than shalt thou stoupe, and lay to ere,
If they within a-slepe be ;
I mene, alle save thy lady free.
Whom waking if thou mayst aspye, 2665
Go put thy-silf in jupartye,
To aske grace, and thee bimene,
That she may wite, withouten wene,
That thou [a]night no rest hast had,
So sore for hir thou were bistad. 2670
Wommen wel ought pite to take
Of hem that sorwen for hir sake.
And loke, for love of that relyke,
That thou thenke non other lyke,
For †whom thou hast so greet annoy, 2675
†Shal kisse thee er thou go away,
And hold that in ful gret deyntee.
And, for that no man shal thee see
Bifore the hous, ne in the way,
Loke thou be goon ageyn er day. 2680
Suche coming, and such going,
Such hevinesse, and such walking,
Makith lovers, withouten wene,
Under hir clothes pale and lene,
For Love leveth colour ne cleernesse ; 2685
Who loveth trewe hath no fatnesse.

Thou shalt wel by thy-selfe see
That thou must nedis assayed be.
For men that shape hem other way
Falsly her ladies to bitray, 2690
It is no wonder though they be fat ;
With false othes hir loves they gat ;
For oft I see suche losengeours
Fatter than abbatis or priours.

'Yet with o thing I thee charge, 2695
That is to seye, that thou be large
Unto the mayd that hir doth serve,
So best hir thank thou shalt deserve.
Yeve hir yiftes, and get hir grace,
For so thou may [hir] thank purchase, 2700
That she thee worthy holde and free,
Thy lady, and alle that may thee see.
Also hir servauntes worshipe ay,
And plesse as mucche as thou may ;
Gret good through hem may come to thee,
Bicause with hir they been prive. 2705
They shal hir telle how they thee fand
Curteis and wys, and wel doand,
And she shal preyse [thee] wel the †mare.
Loke out of londe thou be not †fare ; 2710
And if such cause thou have, that thee
Bihoveth †gon out of contree,
Leve hool thyn herte in hostage,
Til thou ageyn make thy passage.
Thenk long to see the swete thing 2715
That hath thyn herte in hir keping.

'Now have I told thee, in what wyse
A lover shal do me servyse.
Do it than, if thou wolt have
The mede that thou aftir crave.' 2720

Whan Love al this had boden me,
I seide him :—'Sire, how may it be
That lovers may in such manere
Endure the payne ye have seid here ?
I merveyle me wonder faste, 2725
How any man may live or laste
In such payne, and such brenning,
In sorwe and thought, and such sighing,
Ay unrelesed wo to make,
Whether so it be they slepe or wake. 2730
In such annoy continuely,
As helpe me god, this merveile I,
How man, but he were maad of steele,
Might live a month, such peynes to fele.'

The God of Love than seide me, 2735
'Freend, by the feith I owe to thee,
May no man have good, but he it by.

more tendirly
 he hath bought most dere.
 el, withouten were, 2740
 hing is taken more,
 n hath suffred sore.
 may atteyne
 loves peyne.
 ne may amounte, 2745
 man [may] counte
 of the water be.
 the grete see
 as the harmes telle
 h Love dwelle 2750
 peyne hem sleeth,
 an wolde flee the deeth,
 shulde never escape,
 couthe hem make
 prisoun set, 2755
 ten for to et
 , and watir pure,
 rmin and in ordure ;
 rit can he live,
 comfort hath him yive,
 wene that he shal be 2761
 ome to liberte ;
 s] fulle trust.
 n strawe or dust,
 susteyning. 2765
 s, in hir wening,
 th shit in his prisoun ;
 r salvacioun.
 sore that they smerte,
 he wille and herte 2770
 dy to martyre ;
 e doth hem desyre
 rm that men devyse,
 ftir shal aryse.
 ire [to] cacche victorie ;
 is al the glorie, 2776
 hat love may yive ;
 shulde no lover live.
 , which with desyre
 s in such manere. 2780
 rteis for to plesse,
 rom al disese.
 lond, and wol abyde,
 at may betyde ;
 ers, as most cheef, 2785
 re[n] al mischeef ;
 p, whan mister is.
 thee eek, y-wis,

Three other thingis, that greet solas
 Doth to hem that be in my las. 2790
 'The first[e] good that may be founde.
 To hem that in my lace be bounde,
 Is Swete-Thought, for to recorde
 Thing wherwith thou canst accorde
 Best in thyn herte, wher she be ; 2795
 †Thought in absence is good to thee.
 Whan any lover doth compleyne,
 And liveth in distresse and peyne,
 Than Swete-Thought shal come, as blyve,
 Away his angre for to dryve. 2800
 It makith lovers have remembraunce
 Of comfort, and of high plesaunce,
 That Hope hath hight him for to winne
 For Thought anon than shal biginne,
 As fer, god wot, as he can finde, 2805
 To make a mirroure of his minde ;
 For to biholde he wol not lette.
 Hir person he shal afore him sette,
 Hir laughing eyen, persaunt and clere,
 Hir shape, hir fourme, hir goodly chere,
 Hir mouth that is so gracious, 2811
 So swete, and eek so saverous ;
 Of alle hir fetures he shal take hede,
 His eyen with alle hir limes fede.
 'Thus Swete-Thenking shal aswage 2815
 The peyne of lovers, and hir rage.
 Thy joye shal double, withoute gesse,
 Whan thou thenkist on hir semlinessse,
 Or of hir laughing, or of hir chere,
 That to thee made thy lady dere. 2820
 This comfort wol I that thou take ;
 And if the next thou wolt forsake
 Which is not lesse saverous,
 Thou shuldist †been to daungerous.
 'The secounde shal be Swete-Speche,
 That hath to many oon be leche, 2826
 To bringe hem out of wo and were,
 And helpe many a bachilere ;
 And many a lady sent socoure,
 That have loved par-amour, 2830
 Through speking, whan they mighten
 here
 Of hir lovers, to hem so dere.
 To †hem it voidith al hir smerte,
 The which is closed in hir herte.
 In herte it makith hem glad and light,
 Speche, whan they mowe have sight. 2836
 And therefore now it cometh to minde
 In olde dawes, as I finde,

The Romaunt of the Rose.

[FRAGMENT B.]

. at hir knowe,
 a lawe, 2840
 a song,
 among
 When that I here
 a dore,
 al my] surte, 2845
 man herte.
 at eve or morwe,
 al my sorwe.
 gh plesance
 alance " 2850
 al wel that Swete-Speking
 al muche thing
 al wel assayed,
 al wel upayed,
 al hir joye was set. 2855
 I rede thee that thou get
 al wel concele
 al wel hele,
 al thy herte,
 al joye and anerte. 2860
 al thou go,
 al prively, between yow two,
 al that goodly thing,
 al thy herte in hir keying;
 al hir beaute and hir semblance, 2865
 al of hir goodly countenance,
 al al thy state then shalt him sey,
 al aske him counseil how thou may
 al any thing that may hir plesse,
 al to thee shal do gret ese, 2870
 al that he may wite thou trust him so,
 al bothe of thy wele and of thy wo,
 al al his herte to love be set,
 al his compaignie is muche the bet,
 al for resoun wel, he shewe to thee 2875
 al al thy privity,
 al al what she is he loveth so,
 al al to thee prively he shal undo,
 al al withoute drede of any shame,
 al al he telle hir renoun and al hir name 2880
 al al thou shal be forther, ferre and nere,
 al al namely to thy lady dore,
 al al in sike wyse, ye, every other
 al al shal helpe as his owne brother,
 al al in tithes withoute doublenesse, 2885
 al al al kene clous in sikernesse,
 al al for it is noble thing, in fay,
 al al To have a man thou darst say
 al al Thy prive counseil every del,

For that wel comfort thee right wel, 2890
 And thou shalt holde thee wel apayed,
 When such a freend thou hast assayed.
 The thuride goel of greet comfort
 That yeveth to lovers most disport,
 Comith of sight and beholding, 2895
 That clepid is Swete-Loking,
 The whiche may noon ese do,
 When thou art fer thy lady fre;
 Wherfore thou prese alway to be
 In place, where thou mayst hir se. 2900
 For it is thing most amorous,
 Most delectable and savorous,
 For to aswage a mannes sorowe,
 To see his lady by the morowe.
 For it is a ful noble thinge 2905
 When thyn even have meting
 With that relyke precious,
 Wherof they be so desirous.
 But al day after, soth it is,
 They have no drede to faron amys, 2910
 They drede neither wind ne royn,
 Ne [yt] non other maner peyn.
 For when thyn eyen were thus in blis,
 Yit of hir curtesye, y-wis,
 Aloun they can not have hir joye, 2915
 But to the herte they [it] conveye;
 Part of hir blis to him [it] they sende,
 Of al this harm to make an ende.
 The eye is a good messangere,
 Which can to the herte in such manere
 Tidyngis sende, that [he] hath seen, 2920
 To velle him of his paynes cleen.
 Wherof the herte rejoyseth so
 That a gret party of his wo
 Is voided, and put away to flight. 2925
 Right as the derknesse of the night
 Is chased with clerenesse of the mone,
 Right so is al his wo ful sone
 Devoided cleen, when that the sight
 Biholden may that fresshe wight 2930
 That the herte desyreth so,
 That al his derknesse is ago,
 For than the herte is al at ese,
 When they seen that that may hem plesse.
 Now have I [it] thus declared al-out, 2935
 Of that thou were in drede and dont;
 For I have told thee feithfully
 What thee may curen utterly,
 And alle lovers that wole be
 Feithful, and ful of stablite. 2940

Good-Hope alwey kepe by thy syde,
And Swete-Thought make eek abyde,
Swete-Loking and Swete-Speche;
Of alle thyn harmes they shal be leche.
Of every thou shalt have greet plesaunce;
If thou canst byde in sufferaunce, 2946
And serve wel without feyntyse,
Thou shalt be quit of thyn empryse,
With more guerdoun, if that thou live;
But al this tyme this I thee yive.' 2950

The God of Love whan al the day
Had taught me, as ye have herd say,
And enfourmed compendiously,
He vanished away al sodeynly,
And I alone left, al sole, 2955
So ful of compleynt and of dolo,
For I saw no other man ther me by.
My woundes me greved wondirly;
Me for to curen no-thing I knew,
Save the botoun bright of hew, 2960
Wheron was set hoolly my thought;
Of other comfort knew I nought,
But it were through the God of Love;
I knew nat elles to my bihove
That might me ese or comfort gete, 2965
But-if he wolde him entermete.

The roser was, withoute doute,
Closed with an hegge withoute,
As ye to-forn have herd me seyn;
And fast I bisied, and wolde fayn 2970
Have passed the haye, if I might
Have geten in by any slight
Into the botoun so fair to see.
But ever I dradde blamed to be,
If men wolde have suspeccioun 2975
That I wolde of entencioun
Have stole the roses that ther were;
Therefore to entre I was in fere.
But at the last, as I bithought
Whether I sholde passe or nought, 2980
I saw com with a gladde chere
To me, a lusty bachelere,
Of good stature, and of good hight,
And Bialacoil forsothe he hight.
Sone he was to Curtesy, 2985
And he me graunted ful gladly
The passage of the outer hay,
And seide:—' Sir, how that ye may
Passe, if [it] your wille be,
The freshe roser for to see, 2990
And ye the swete savour fele.

Your + warrant may [I be] right wele;
So thou thee kepe fro folye,
Shal no man do thee vilanye.
If I may helpe you in ought, 2995
I shal not feyne, dredeth nought;
For I am bounde to your servyse,
Fully devoide of feyntyse.'
Than unto Bialacoil saide I,
' I thank you, sir, ful hertely, 3000
And your biheest [I] take at gree,
That ye so goodly profer me;
To you it cometh of greet fraunchyse,
That ye me profer your servyse.'
Than aftir, ful deliverly, 3005
Through the breres anoon wente I,
Wherof encombred was the hay.
I was wel plesed, the soth to say,
To see the botoun fair and swote,
So fresshe spronge out of the rote. 3010
And Bialacoil me served wel,
Whan I so nygh me mighte fele
Of the botoun the swete odour,
And so lusty hewed of colour.
But than a cherl (foule him bityde!) 3015
Bisyde the roses gan him hyde,
To kepe the roses of that roser,
Of whom the name was Daunger.
This cherl was hid there in the greves,
Covered with grasse and with leves, 3020
To spye and take whom that he fond
Unto that roser putte an hond.
He was not sole, for ther was mo;
For with him were other two
Of wikked maners, and yvel fame. 3025
That oon was clepid, by his name,
Wikked-Tonge, god yeve him sorwe!
For neither at eve, ne at morwe,
He can of no man [no] good speke,
On many a just man doth he wreke. 3030
Ther was a womman eek, that hight
Shame, that, who can reken right,
Trespas was hir fadir name,
Hir moder Resoun; and thus was Shame
[On lyve] brought of these ilk two. 3035
And yet had Trespas never ado
With Resoun, ne never ley hir by,
He was so hidous and ugly,
I mene, this that Trespas hight;
But Resoun conceyveth, of a sight, 3040
Shame, of that I spak asorn.
And whan that Shame was thus born,

It was ordeyned, that Chastitee
 Shulde of the roser lady be,
 Which, of the botouns more and las, 3045
 With sondry folk assailed was,
 That she ne wiste what to do.
 For Venus hir assailith so,
 That night and day from hir she stal
 Botouns and roses over-al. 3050
 To Resoun than prayeth Chastitee,
 Whom Venus flemmed over the see,
 That she hir doughter wolde hir lene,
 To kepe the roser fresh and grene.
 Anoon Resoun to Chastitee 3055
 Is fully assented that it be,
 And grauntid hir, at hir request,
 That Shame, bicause she is honest,
 Shal keper of the roser be.
 And thus to kepe it ther were three, 3060
 That noon shulde hardy be ne bold
 (Were he yong, or were he old)
 Ageyn hir wille away to bere
 Botouns ne roses, that ther were.
 I had wel sped, had I not been 3065
 Awayted with these three, and seen.
 For Bialacoil, that was so fair,
 So gracious and debonair,
 Quitte him to me ful curteisly,
 And, me to plesse, bad that I 3070
 Shuld drawe me to the botoun nere;
 Prese in, to touche the rosere
 Which bar the roses, he yaf me leve;
 This graunt ne might but litel greve.
 And for he saw it lyked me, 3075
 Right nygh the botoun pullede he
 A leef al grene, and yaf me that,
 The which ful nygh the botoun sat;
 I made [me] of that leef ful queynt
 And whan I felte I was aqueynt 3080
 With Bialacoil, and so prive,
 I wende al at my wille had be.
 Then wex I hardy for to tel
 To Bialacoil how me bifel
 Of Love, that took and wounded me, 3085
 And seide: 'Sir, so mote I thee,
 I may no joye have in no wyse,
 Upon no syde, but it ryse;
 For sithe (if I shal not feyne)
 In herte I have had so gret payne, 3090
 So gret annoy, and such affray,
 That I ne wot what I shal say;
 I drede your wrath to disserve.

Lever me were, that knyves kerve
 My body shulde in pecis smalle, 3095
 Than in any wyse it shulde falle
 That ye wratthed shulde been with me.'
 'Sey boldely thy wille,' quod he,
 'I nil be wroth, if that I may, 3099
 For nought that thou shalt to me say.'
 Thanne seide I, 'Sir, not you displese
 To knowen of my greet unese,
 In which only love hath me brought;
 For peynes greet, disese and thought,
 Fro day to day he doth me drye; 3105
 Supposeth not, sir, that I lye.
 In me fyve woundes dide he make,
 The sore of whiche shal never slake
 But ye the botoun graunte me,
 Which is most passaunt of beautee, 3110
 My lyf, my deth, and my martyre,
 And tresour that I most desyre.'
 Than Bialacoil, affrayed all,
 Seyde, 'Sir, it may not fall;
 That ye desire, it may not tryse. 3115
 What? wolde ye shende me in this wyse?
 A mochel foole than I were,
 If I suffrid you away to bere
 The fresh botoun, so fair of sight.
 For it were neither skile ne right 3120
 Of the roser ye broke the rind,
 Or take the rose afor his kind;
 Ye ar not courteys to aske it.
 Lat it stil on the roser sit,
 And trowe til it amended be, 3125
 And parfitly come to beaute.
 I nolde not that it pulled wer
 Fro the roser that it ber,
 To me it is so leef and dere.'
 With that sterte out anoon Daungere,
 Out of the place where he was hid. 3131
 His malice in his chere was kid;
 Ful greet he was, and blak of hewe,
 Sturdy and hidous, who-so him knewe;
 Like sharp urchouns his here was growe,
 His eyes trowe as the fire-glow; 3136
 His nose frounced ful kirked stood,
 He com criand as he were wood,
 And seide, 'Bialacoil, tel me why
 Thou bringest hider so boldly 3140
 Him that so nygh [is] the roser?
 Thou worchist in a wrong maner;
 He thenkith to dishonour thee,
 Thou art wel worthy to have maugree

him of the roser wit ; 3145
 veth a feloun is yvel quit.
 I dist have doon greet bountee,
 with shame wolde quyte thee.
 nes, felowe ! I rede thee go !
 th lital † I wol thee slo ; 3150
 accoil ne knew thee nought,
 nee to serve he sette his thought ;
 I wolt shame him, if thou might,
 reyn resoun and right.
 more in thee affye, 3155
 nest so slyghly for tespye ;
 eveth wonder wel,
 ht and tresoun every del.
 t no more ther make abode,
 cherl, he was so wode ; 3160
 e threaten and manace,
 rgh the haye he did me chace.
 of him I tremblid and quook,
 shly his heed he shook ;
 e, if eft he might me take, 3165
 not from his hondis scape.
 Bialacoil is fled and mate,
 sole, disconsolate,
 aloon in peyne and thought ;
 e, to deth I was nygh brought.
 ight I on myn high foly, 3171
 t my body, utterly,
 e to peyne and to martyre ;
 to hadde I so gret yre,
 e durst the hayes passe ; 3175
 as non hope, theré was no grace.
 ever man wiste of peyne,
 ere laced in Loves cheyne ;
 an [wot], and sooth it is,
 love, what anger is. 3180
 lith his heest to me right wele,
 yne he seide I shulde fele.
 e may thenke, ne tunge seyne,
 e of my wo and peyne.
 ot with the anger laste ; 3185
 e in poynt was for to braste,
 hought on the rose, that so
 ugh Daunger cast me fro.
 whyl stood I in that state,
 ne saugh so mad and mate 3190
 of the highe ward,
 om hir tour lokid thiderward.
 en clepe that lady,
 om hir tour deliverly
 n to me withouten more. 3195

But she was neither yong, ne hore,
 Ne high ne low, ne fat ne lene,
 But best, as it were in a mene.
 Hir eyen two were cleer and light
 As any candel that brenneth bright ; 3200
 And on hir heed she hadde a crown.
 Hir semede wel an high persoun ;
 For rounde environ, hir crownet
 Was ful of riche stonis fret.
 Hir goodly semblaunt, by devys, 3205
 I trowe were maad in paradys ;
 † Nature had never such a grace,
 To forge a werk of such compace.
 For certeyn, † but the letter lye,
 God him-silf, that is so high, 3210
 Made hir aftir his image,
 And yaf hir sith sich avauntage,
 That she hath might and seignorye
 To kepe men from al folye ;
 Who-so wole trowe hir lore, 3215
 Ne may offenden nevermore.

And whyl I stood thus derk and pale,
 Resoun bigan to me hir tale ;
 She seide : ' Al hayl, my swete frend !
 Foly and childhood wol thee shend, 3220
 Which thee have put in greet affray ;
 Thou hast bought dore the tyme of May.
 That made thyn herte mery to be.
 In yvel tyme thou wentist to see
 The gardin, wherof Ydilnesse 3225
 Bar the keye, and was maistressse
 Whan thou yedest in the daunce
 With hir, and hadde[st] aqueyntaunce :
 Hir aqueyntaunce is perilous,
 First softe, and aftir[ward] noyous ; 3230
 She hath [thee] trashed, withoute ween ;
 The God of Love had thee not seen,
 Ne hadde Ydilnesse thee conveyed
 In the verger where Mirthe him pleyed.
 If Foly have supprised thee, 3235
 Do so that it recovered be ;
 And be wel war to take no more
 Counsel, that greveth aftir sore ;
 He is wys that wol himsilf chastyse.
 And though a young man in any wyse
 Trespace among, and do foly, 3240
 Lat him not tarye, but hastily
 Lat him amende what so be mis.
 And eek I counseile thee, y-wis,
 The God of Love hoolly foryet, 3245
 That hath thee in sich peyne set.

And thee in herte tormented so
 I can nat seen how thou mayst go
 Other weyes to garisonn,
 For Daunger, that is so feloun, 3250
 Fely purposith thee to werrev,
 Which is ful cruel, the soth to sey
 And yit of Daunger cometh no blame,
 In reward of my daughter Shame,
 Which hath the roses in hir warde, 3255
 As she that may be no musarde.
 And Wikked-Tunge is with these two,
 That suffrith no man thider go,
 For er a thing be do, he shal,
 Where that he cometh, over-al, 3260
 In forty places, if it be sought,
 Seye thing that never was doon no
 wrought;
 So moche tresoun is in his male,
 Of falsnesse for to trefyne a tale.
 Thou delest with angry folk, y-wis; 3265
 Wherfor to thee it better is
 From these folk away to fare,
 For they wol make thee live in care.
 This is the yvel that Love they calle,
 Wherin ther is but foly alle, 3270
 For love is foly everydel
 Who loveth, in no wyse may do wel,
 Ne sette his thought on no good werk,
 His scole he lesith, if he tbe clerk,
 Of other craft eek if he be, 3275
 He shal not thryve therin for he
 In love shal have more passioun
 Than monke, hermyte, or chaneoun.
 The perne is hard, out of mesure,
 The joye may eek no whyl endure, 3280
 And in the possessionn
 Is muche tribulacioun,
 The joye it is so short-lasting,
 And but in happe is the geting;
 For I see ther many in travaille, 3285
 That atte laste soule fayle
 I was no-thing thy counseler,
 Whan thou were maad the homager
 Of God of Love to hastily,
 Ther was no wisdom, but foly 3290
 Thy herte was joly but not sage.
 Whan thou were brought in sich a rage,
 To velle thee so redily,
 And to Love, of his gret mastery,
 I rede thee Love away to dryve, 3295
 That makith thee recche not of thy lyve.

The foly more fro day to day
 Shal growe, but thou it putte away
 Take with thy teeth the bridel faste,
 To daunte thyn herte and eek thee caste,
 If that thou mayst, to gete tdefence 3300
 For to redresse thy first offence,
 Who-so his herte alwey wol leve,
 Shal finde among that shal him greve.
 Whan I hir herd thus me chastyse, 3305
 I answered in ful angry wyse,
 I prayed hir cessen of hir speche,
 Outher to chastyse me or teche,
 To bilde me my thought refreyne,
 Which Love hath caught in his de-
 meyne - 3310
 'What? wene ye Love wol consent,
 That me assailth with bowe bent,
 To draw myn herte out of his honde,
 Which is so quikly in his bonde?
 That ye counsaile, may never be; 3315
 For whan he first arrested me,
 He took myn herte so hool him til,
 That it is no-thing at my wil;
 He ttaughte it so him for to obey,
 That he it sparred with a key. 3320
 I pray yow lat me be al stille,
 For ye may wel, if that ye wille,
 Your wordis waste in idilnesse,
 For utterly, withouten gesso,
 Al that ye seyn is but in veyne, 3325
 Me were lever dye in the payne,
 Than love to me-ward shulde arette
 Falsheed, or tresoun on me sette,
 I wol me gete prys or blame,
 And love trowe, to save my name; 3330
 tWho me chastysith, I him hate.'
 With that word Resoun wente hir gate,
 Whan she sangh for no sermoung
 She might me fro my foly bring
 Than dismayed, I left al sool, 3335
 Forwery, forwan tred as a fool,
 For I ne knew no tchevisaunce,
 Than fel into my remembraunce,
 How Love bade me to purveye
 A felowe, to whom I nughte seye 3340
 My counsel and my privete,
 For that shulde rauche availe me,
 With that buthought I me, that I
 Hadde a felowe faste ly,
 Trewe and siker curteys, and bend, 3345
 And he was called by name a Freend.

felowe was no-wher noon.
 to him I wente anoon,
 im al my wo I tolde,
 right nought I wold withholde.
 im al withoute were, 3351
 le my compleynt on Daungere,
 to see he was hidous,
 ne-ward contrarious ;
 he through his cruelte 3355
 mynt to have meyned me ;
 lacoil whan he me sey
 he gardyn walke and pley,
 he made him for to go,
 eft aloon in wo ; 3360
 o lenger with him speke,
 ger seide he wolde be wreke,
 at he sawe how I wente
 he botoun for to hente,
 hardy to come neer 3365
 the hay and the roser.
 reend, whan he wiste of my
 ght,
 nforted me right nought,
 , ' Felowe, be not so mad,
 ysshed nor bistad. 3370
 knowe ful wel Daungere,
 he is feers of his chere,
 temps, Love to manace ;
 have ben in his caas.
 first though that he be, 3375
 shalt him souple see.
 assed I knew him wele ;
 first though men him fele,
 eek aftir, in his bering,
 service and obeysshing. 3380
 e telle what thou shalt do :—
 rede thou go him to,
 pray him specialy
 space to have mercy,
 him wel, [him] here to please, 3385
 shalt nevermore him displese.
 best serve of flattery,
 ' Daunger most uttirly.'
 end hath seid to me so wel,
 he esid hath somdel, 3390
 dlegged of my torment ;
 gh him had I hardement
 Daunger for to go,
 f I might meke him so.
 nger cam I, al ashamed, 3395
 aforne me hadde blamed,

Desyring for to pese my wo ;
 But over hegge durst I not go,
 For he †forbad me the passage.
 I fond him cruel in his rage, 3400
 And in his hond a gret burdoun.
 To him I knelid lowe adoun,
 Ful meke of port, and simple of chere,
 And seide, ' Sir, I am comen here
 Only to aske of you mercy. 3405
 That greveth me, [sir], ful gretly
 That ever my lyf I wratthed you,
 But for to amende I am come now,
 With al my might, bothe loude and stille,
 To doon right at your owne wille ; 3410
 For Love made me for to do
 That I have trespassed hidirto ;
 Fro whom I ne may withdrawe myn
 herte ;
 Yit shal I never, for joy ne smerte,
 What so bifalle, good or ille, 3415
 Offende more ageyn your willa.
 Lever I have endure disese
 Than do that shulde you displese.
 ' I you require and pray, that ye
 Of me have mercy and pitee, 3420
 To stinte your yre that greveth so,
 That I wol swere for evermo
 To be redressid at your lyking,
 If I trespasse in any thing ;
 Save that I pray thee graunte me 3425
 A thing that may nat warned be,
 That I may love, al only ;
 Non other thing of you aske I.
 I shal doon elles wel, y-wis,
 If of your grace ye graunte me this. 3430
 And ye [ne] may not letten me,
 For wel wot ye that love is free,
 And I shal loven, †sith that I wil,
 Who-ever lyke it wel or il ;
 And yit ne wold I, for al Fraunce, 3435
 Do thing to do you displesaunce.'
 Than Daunger fil in his entent
 For to foryeve his maltalent ;
 But al his wratthe yit at laste
 He hath relesed, I preyde so faste : 3440
 Shortly he seide, ' Thy request
 Is not to mochel dishonest ;
 Ne I wol not werne it thee,
 For yit no-thing engroveth me.
 For though thou love thus evermore, 3445
 To me is neither softe ne sore.

Love þwhe thes list; what recchith me,
So thou] fer fro my roses he?

Trust not on me, for noon assay,
In any tyme to passe the hay.' 3450
Thus hath he graunted my prayere.

Than wente I forth withouten were,
Unto my Freend, and tolde him al,
Which was right joyful of my tale.
He seide, 'Now goth wel thyn affaire. 3455
He shal to thee be debonaire.

Though he aforw was dispitous,
He shal heeraftir be gracious.
If he were touchid on som good veyne,
He shal yit rewen on thy payne. 3460
Suffre, I rede, and no boast make,
Til thou at good mes mayst him take.
By suffraunce, and [by] wordis softe,
A man may overcome[n] ofte
Him that aforw he had le in drede, 3465
In trokis sothly as I rede.'

Thus hath my Freend with gret com-
fort

Avanced me with high disport,
Which wolde me good as much as I.
And thanne anon ful sodeynly 3470
I took my leve, and streight I went
Unto the hay, for gret talent
I had to seen the fresh botoun,
Wherin lay my salvacionn,
And Daunger took kepe, if that I 3475
Kepe him covenant trewly.

So sore I dradde his manasing,
I durst not breke[n] his bidding;
For, lest that I were of him shent,
I brak not his comaundement, 3480
For to purchase his good wil,
It was [hard] for to come ther-til,
His mercy was to fer behinde;
I wepte, for I ne might it finde,
I compleyned and sighed sore, 3485
And languished evermore,

For I durst not over go
I'nto the rose I loved so,
Thurghout my deming outerly,
þThan had he knowlege certeinly. 3490
þThat Love me ladde in such a wyse,
That in me ther was no feyntyse,
Falsheed, ne no trecherye,
And yit he, ful of vilanye,
Of dedeyne, and ornelte, 3495
On me ne wolde have pite,

His cruel wil for to refreyne,
Though I wepe alway, and þcompleyne.

And while I was in this torment,
Were come of grace, by god sent, 3500
Fraunchyse and with hir Pite

Fulfilde the botoun of bountee
They go to Daunger anon-right
To forther me with al hir might,
And helpe in wordes and in dede, 3505

For wei they saugh that it was nede.
First, of hir grace, dame Fraunchyse
Hath taken [word] of this emprise
She seide, 'Daunger, gret wrong ye do
To werche this man so muche wo, 3510
Or pynen him so angerly,
It is to you gret vilany.

I can not see why, ne how,
That he hath trespassed ageyn you,
Save that he loveth, wherfore ye shulde
The more in cherete of him holde. 3515
The force of love makith him do this;
Who wolde him blame he dide amis?
He leseth more than ye may do,

His payne is hard, ye may see, lo! 3520
And Love in no wyse wolde consente
That þe have power to repente,
For though that quik ye wolde him sloo,
Fro Love his herte may not go.

Now, swete sir, þis it your ese 3525
Him for to angre or disese?
Alas, what may it you advance
To doon to him so greet grevaunce?
What worship is it agayn him take,
Or on your man a werre make, 3530
Sith he so lowly every wyse
Is redy, as ye lust devyse?

If Love hath caught him in his lace,
You for to beye in every caas,
And been your rugat at your wille, 3535
Shulde ye therfore willen him ille?
Ye shulde him spare more, al-out,
Than him that is bothe proud and stout.
Cortesye wol that ye socour
Hem that ben meke undir your cure. 3540
His herte is hard, that wole not meke,
Whan men of mekenesse him biseke'

'That is certeyn,' seide Pite;
'We see ofte that humiltee
Bothe ire, and also felonye 3545
Vanquisheth, and also melancolye,
To stonde forth in such duresse,

rueltee and wikkednesse.
 ore I pray you, sir Daungere,
 mayntene no lenger here 3550
 ruel werre agayn your man,
 lly youres as ever he can ;
 at ye worchen no more wo
 is caytif that languisshith so,
 wol no more to you trespasse, 3555
 t him hoolly in your grace.
 ense ne was but lyte ;
 d of Love it was to wyte,
 e your thral so gretly is,
 ye harm him, ye doon amis ; 3560
 hath had ful hard penaunce,
 at ye refte him th'aqueyntaunce
 acoil, his moste joye,
 alle his peynes might acoye.
 biforn anoyed sore, 3565
 in ye doubled him wel more ;
 of blis hath ben ful bare,
 alacoil was fro him fare.
 uth to him do greet distresse,
 h no nede of more duresse. 3570
 from him your ire, I rede ;
 not winnen in this dede.
 Bialacoil repeire ageyn,
 veth pite upon his payn ;
 unchise wol, and I, Pite, 3575
 erciful to him ye be ;
 h that she and I accorde,
 pon him misericorde ;
 ou pray, and eek moneste,
 to refusen our requeste ; 3580
 is hard and fel of thought,
 r us two wol do right nought.
 ger ne might no more endure,
 ed him unto mesure.
 d in no wyse,' seith Daungere, 3585
 that ye have asked here ;
 to greet uncurtesye.
 e have the companye
 acoil, as ye devyse ;
 im lette[n] in no wyse.' 3590
 alacoil than wente in hy
 byse, and seide ful curteisly :—
 re to longe be deignous
 is lover, and dangerous,
 to withdrawe your presence, 3595
 hath do to him grete offence,
 not wolde upon him see ;
 re a sorowful man is he.

Shape ye to paye him, and to plesse,
 Of my love if ye wol have ese. 3600.
 Fulfil his wil, sith that ye knowe
 Daunger is daunted and brought lowe
 Thurgh help of me and of Pite ;
 You †thar no more afered be.'
 'I shal do right as ye wil,' 3605
 Saith Bialacoil, 'for it is skil,
 Sith Daunger wol that it so be.'
 Than Fraunchise hath him sent to me.
 Bialacoil at the biginning
 Salued me in his coming. 3610
 No straungenes was in him seen,
 No more than he ne had wrathed been.
 As faire semblaunt than shewed he me,
 And goodly, as aforne did he ;
 And by the honde, withouten doute, 3615
 Within the haye, right al aboute
 He ladde me, with right good chere,
 Al environ the vergere,
 That Daunger had me chased fro.
 Now have I leve over-al to go ; 3620
 Now am I raised, at my devys,
 Fro helle unto paradys.
 Thus Bialacoil, of gentillesse,
 With alle his peyne and besinesse,
 Hath shewed me, only of grace, 3625
 The estres of the swote place.
 I saw the rose, whan I was nigh,
 Was gretter woxen, and more high,
 Fresh, rody, and fair of hewe,
 Of colour ever yliche newe. 3630
 And whan I had it longe seen,
 I saugh that through the leves grene
 The rose spredde to spanishing ;
 To sene it was a goodly thing.
 But it ne was so spred on brede, 3635
 That men within might knowe the sede ;
 For it covert was and [en]close
 Bothe with the leves and with the rose.
 The stalk was even and grene upright,
 It was theron a goodly sight ; 3640
 And wel the better, withouten wene,
 For the seed was not [y]-sene.
 Ful faire it spradde, †god it blesse !
 For suche another, as I gesse,
 Aforne ne was, ne more vermayle. 3645
 I was abawed for mervyle,
 For ever, the fairer that it was,
 The more I am bounden in Loves laas.
 Longe I abood there, soth to saye,

Til Bialacoil I gan to praye, 3650
 Whan that I saw him in no wyse
 To me warnen his servyse,
 That he me wolde graunte a thing,
 Which to remembre is wel sitting ;
 This is to sayne, that of his grace 3655
 He wolde me yeve leyser and space
 To me that was so desirous
 To have a kissing precious
 Of the goodly freshe rose,
 That †swetely smelleth in my nose ; 3660
 ' For if it you displeased nought,
 I wolde gladly, as I have sought,
 Have a cos therof freely
 Of your yeft ; for certainly
 I wol non have but by your leve, 3665
 So loth me were you for to greve.'

He sayde, ' Frend, so god me spede,
 Of Chastite I have suche drede,
 Thou shuldest not warned be for me,
 But I dar not, for Chastite. 3670
 Agayn hir dar I not misdo,
 For alwey biddeth she me so
 To yeve no lover leve to kisse ;
 For who therto may winnen, y-wis,
 He of the surplus of the pray 3675
 May live in hope to get som day.
 For who so kissing may attayne,
 Of loves payne hath, soth to sayne,
 The beste and most avenaunt,
 And earnest of the remenaunt.' 3680

Of his answer I syghed sore ;
 I durst assaye him tho no more,
 I had such drede to greve him ay.
 A man shulde not to muche assaye
 To chafe his frend out of mesure, 3685
 Nor put his lyf in aventure ;
 For no man at the firste stroke
 Ne may nat felle down an oke ;
 Nor of the reisins have the wyne,
 Til grapes †rype and wel afyne 3690
 Be sore empressid, I you ensure,
 And drawen out of the pressure.
 But I, forpeyned wonder stronge,
 †Thought that I abood right longe
 Aftir the kis, in payne and wo, 3695
 Sith I to kis desyred so :
 Til that, †rewing on my distresse,
 Ther †to me Venus the goddesse,
 Which ay werreyeth Chastite,
 Came of hir grace, to socoure me, 3700

Whos might is knowe fer and wyde,
 For she is modir of Cupyde,
 The God of Love, blinde as stoon,
 That helpith lovers many oon.
 This lady brought in hir right hond
 Of brenning fyr a blasing brond ;
 Wherof the flawme and hote fyr
 Hath many a lady in desyr
 Of love brought, and sore het,
 And in hir servise hir †hertes set.
 This lady was of good entayle,
 Right wondirful of apparayle ; .
 By hir atyre so bright and shene,
 Men might perceyve wel, and seen,
 She was not of religioun.
 Nor I nil make mencion
 Nor of [hir] robe, nor of tresour,
 Of broche, †nor of hir riche attour ;
 Ne of hir girdil aboute hir syde,
 For that I nil not long abyde.
 But knowith wel, that certeynly
 She was arayed richely.
 Devoyd of pryde certeyn she was ;
 To Bialacoil she wente a pas,
 And to him shortly, in a clause,
 She seide : ' Sir, what is the cause
 Ye been of port so daungerous
 Unto this lover, and deynous,
 To graunte him no-thing but a kis ?
 To werne it him ye doon amis ;
 Sith wel ye wote, how that he
 Is Loves servaunt, as ye may see,
 And hath beaute, wher-through [he]
 Worthy of love to have the blis.
 How he is semely, biholde and see,
 How he is fair, how he is free,
 How he is swote and debonair,
 Of age yong, lusty, and fair.
 Ther is no lady so hauteyne,
 Duchesse, countesse, ne chasteleyne,
 That I nolde holde hir ungoodly
 For to refuse him outerly.
 His breeth is also good and swete,
 And eke his lippis rody, and mete
 Only to †pleyen, and to kisse.
 Graunte him a kis, of gentilnesse !
 His teeth arn also whyte and clene ;
 Me thinkith wrong, withouten wene.
 If ye now werne him, trustith me,
 To graunte that a kis have he ;
 The lasse †to helpe him that ye hast

The more tyme shul ye waste.'

Whan the flawme of the verry brond,
That Venus brought in hir right hond,
Had Bialacoil with hete smete, 3755

Anoon he þbad, withouten lette,
Graunte to me the rose kisse.
Than of my peyne I gan to lisse,
And to the rose anoon wente I,
And kissid it ful feithfully. 3760

Thar no man aske if I was blythe,
Whan the savour soft and lythe
Strook to myn herte withoute more,
And me alegged of my sore,
So was I ful of joye and blisse. 3765

It is fair sich a flour to kisse,
It was so swote and saverous.
I might not be so anguisshous,
That I mote glad and joly be,
Whan that I remembre me. 3770

Yit ever among, sothly to seyn,
I suffre noye and moche peyn.
The see may never be so stil,
That with a litel winde it þnil
Overwhelme and turne also, 3775

As it were wood, in wawis go.
Aftir the calm the trouble sone
Mot folowe, and chaunge as the mone.
Right so fareth Love, that selde in oon
Holdith his anker; for right anoon 3780

Whan they in ese wene best to live,
They been with tempest al fordrive.
Who serveth Love, can telle of wo;
The stoundemele joye mot overgo.
Now he hurteth, and now he cureth, 3785
For selde in oo poynt Love endureth.

Now is it right me to procede,
How Shame gan medle and take hede,
Thurgh whom felle angres I have had;
And how the stronge wal was maad, 3790

And the castell of brede and lengthe,
That God of Love wan with his strengthe.
Al this in romance wil I sette,
And for no-thing ne wil I lette,
So that it lyking to hir be, 3795

That is the flour of beaute;
For she may best my labour quyte,
That I for hir love shal endyte.

Wikkid-Tunge, that the covyne
Of every lover can devyne 3800
Worst, and addith more somdel,
(For Wikkid-Tunge seith never wel),

To me-ward bar he right gret hate,
Espying me erly and late,
Til he hath seen the gret[e] chere 3805
Of Bialacoil and me y-fere.

He mighte not his tunge withstonde
Worse to reporte than he fonde,
He was so ful of cursed rage;
It sat him wel of his linage, 3810

For him an Irish womman bar.
His tunge was fyled sharp, and squar,
Poignaunt and right kerving,
And wonder bitter in speking.

For whan that he me gan espye, 3815
He swoor, afferming sikirly,
Bitwene Bialacoil and me
Was yvel aquayntaunce and privee.

He spak therof so folily,
That he awakid Jelousy; 3820
Which, al afrayed in his rysing,
Whan that he herde [him] jangling,

He ran anoon, as he were wood,
To Bialacoil ther that he stood;
Which hadde lever in this caas 3825
Have been at Reynes or Amyas;

For foot-hoot, in his felonye
To him thus seide Jelousye:—
'Why hast thou been so negligent,
To kepen, whan I was absent, 3830

This verger here left in thy ward?
To me thou haddist no reward,
To truste (to thy confusioun)
Him thus, to whom suspeccioun

I have right greet, for it is nede; 3835
It is wel shewed by the dede.
Greet faute in thee now have I founde;
By god, anoon thou shalt be bounde,

And faste loken in a tour,
Withoute refuyt or socour. 3840
For Shame to long hath be thee fro;
Over sone she was ago.

Whan thou hast lost bothe drede and fere,
It semed wel she was not here.
She was [not] bisy, in no wyse, 3845
To kepe thee and [to] chastyse,

And for to helpen Chastitee
To kepe the roser, as thinkith me.
For than this boy-knave so boldely
Ne sholde not have be hardy, 3850

[Ne] in this þverger had such game,
Which now me turneth to gret shame.'
Bialacoil nist what to sey;

Ful fayne he wolde have fled away,
 For fore han hid, nere than he 3855
 Al sodeynly took him with me,
 And whan I saugh he hadde so,
 This Jelonsye, take us two,
 I was astoned, and knew no rede,
 But fledde away for varrey drede. 3860
 Than Shame cam forth ful simply,
 She wende have trespassed ful gretly,
 Humble of hir port, and made it ample,
 Wering a veyle in stede of wimple,
 As nonnis doon in hir abbey. 3865
 Bicause hir herte was in affray,
 She gan to speke, within a throwe.
 To Jelonsye, right wonder lowe
 First of his grace she bisought,
 And seide 'Sire, ne levoth nought 3870
 Wikkid-Tunge, that fals espye,
 Which is so glad to feyne and lye
 He hath you maad, thurgh flatering,
 On Bialacoil a fals leaing
 His falsnesse is not now anew, 3875
 It is to long that he him knew
 This is not the firste day;
 For Wikkid-Tunge hath custom ay
 Yonge folkis to bewreye,
 And false lesinges on hem tleye. 3880
 'Yit nevertheles I see among,
 That the loigne it is so longe
 Of Bialacoil, hertis to lure,
 In Loves servise for to endure,
 Drawing such folk him to, 3885
 That he had nothing with to do,
 But in sothnesse I trowe nought,
 That Bialacoil hadde ever in thought
 To do trespass or vilanye,
 But, for his modir Curtesye 3890
 Hath taught him over [for] to be
 Good of aqueyntaunce and privee,
 For he loveth non hevynesse,
 But mirthe and pley, and al gladnesse;
 He hateth alle trefcherous, 3895
 Soleyn folk and envious,
 For [wel] ye witen how that he
 Wol ever glad and joyful be
 Honestly with folk to pley
 I have be negligent, in good fey, 3900
 To chastise him, therefore now I
 Of herte terye you here mercy,
 That I have been so recholes
 To tamen him, withouten lea.

Of my foly I me repente, 3905
 Now wol I bool sette myn entente
 To kepe, bothe froude and stille,
 Bialacoil to do your wille.
 'Shame, Shame,' seide Jelonsy,
 'To be bitrashed gret drede have I 3910
 Lecherye hath clombe so hye,
 That almost blered is myn ye,
 No wonder is, if that drede have I
 Over-al regnith Lechery,
 Whos might [yt] growith night and day,
 Bothe in cloistre and in abbey 3915
 Chastite is worreyed over-al
 Therefore I wol with siker wal
 Close bothe roses and roser
 I have to longe in this maner 3920
 Left hem uncloued wilfully,
 Wherfore I am right inwardly
 Sorowful and repente me.
 But now they shal no longer be
 Uncloued; and yit I drede sore, 3925
 I shal repente ferthormore,
 For the game goth al amis.
 Counsel I [met] [take] newe, y-wis.
 I have to longe trusted thee,
 But now it shal no lenger be, 3930
 For he may best, in every cost,
 Disceyve, that men tristen most.
 I see wel that I am nygh shent,
 But-if I sette my ful entent
 Remedye to purveye 3935
 Therefore close I shal the weye
 Fro hem that wol the rise espye,
 And come to wayte me vilanye,
 For, in good feith and in trouthe,
 I wol not lette, for no slouth, 3940
 To live the more in sikirnesse,
 [To] make anon a forteresse,
 [To] enclose the roses of good savour.
 In middis shal I make a tour
 To putte Bialacoil in prisonn, 3945
 For ever I drede me of tresoun.
 I trowe I shal him kepe so,
 That he shal have no might to go
 Aboute to make compayns
 To hem that thanke of vilanye, 3950
 Ne to no such as hath ben here
 Afore, and founde in him good chere,
 Which han assailed him to shende,
 And with hir trowandysse to blende.
 A fool is eyth [for] to bigyle; 3955

But may I lyve a litel while,
He shal forthenke his fair semblaunt.'

And with that word cam Drede avaunt,
Which was abashed, and in gret fere,
Whan he wiste Jelousye was there. 3960

He was for drede in such affray,
That not a word durste he say,
But quaking stood ful stille aloon,
Til Jelousye his wey was goon,
Save Shame, that him not forsook ; 3965
Bothe Drede and she ful sore quook ;

[Til] that at laste Drede abreyde,
And to his cosin Shame seyde :
'Shame,' he seide, 'in sothfastnesse,
To me it is gret hevynesse, 3970

That the noyse so fer is go,
And the sclandre of us two.
But sith that it is [so] bifalle,
We may it not ageyn [do] calle,
Whan onis sprongen is a fame. 3975

For many a yeer withouten blame
We han been, and many a day ;
For many an April and many a May
We han [y]-passed, not [a]shamed,
Til Jelousye hath us blamed 3980
Of mistrust and suspicioun

Causeles, withouten enchesoun.
Go we to Daunger hastily,
And late us shewe him openly,
That he hath not aright [y]-wrought, 3985
Whan that he sette nought his thought
To kepe better the purpryse ;
In his doing he is not wyse.

He hath to us [y]-do gret wrong,
That hath suffred now so long 3990
Bialacoil to have his wille,
Alle his lustes to fulfille.

He must amende it utterly,
Or ellis shal he †vilaynsly
Eyled be out of this londe ; 3995
For he the werre may not withtonde
Of Jelousye, nor the greef,
Sith Bialacoil is at mischeef.'

To Daunger, Shame and Drede anoon
The righte wey ben [bothe a]-goon. 4000
The cherl they founden hem afor
Lying undir an hawethorn.

Undir his heed no pilowe was,
But in the stede a trusse of gras.
He slombred, and a nappe he took, 4005
Til Shame pitously him shook,

And greet manace on him gan make.
'Whyslepist thou whan thou shuld wake?'
Quod Shame ; 'thou dost us vilanye !

Who tristith thee, he doth folye, 4010
To kepe roses or botouns,
Whan they ben faire in hir sesouns.

Thou art woxe to familiere
Where thou shulde be straunge of chere,
Stout of thy port, redy to greve. 4015

Thou dost gret foly for to leve
Bialacoil here-in, to calle
The yonder man to shenden us alle.

Though that thou slepe, we may here
Of Jelousie gret noyse here. 4020
Art thou now late ? ryse up †in hy,

And stoppe sone and deliverly
Alle the gappis of the hay ;
Do no favour, I thee pray.

It fallith no-thing to thy name 4025
†Make fair semblaunt, where thou maist
blame.

'If Bialacoil be swete and free,
Dogged and fel thou shuldist be ;
Froward and outrageous, y-wis ;
A cherl chaungeth that curteis is. 4030

This have I herd ofte in seying,
That man [ne] may, for no daunting,
Make a sperhanke of a bosarde.

Alle men wole holde thee for musarde,
That debonair have founden thee ; 4035
It sit thee nought curteis to be ;

To do men plesaunce or servyse,
In thee it is recreaundyse.
Let thy werkis, fer and nere,

Be lyke thy name, which is Daungere.'

Than, al abawid in shewing, 4041
Anoon spak Dreed, right thus seying,
And seide, 'Daunger, I drede me

That thou ne wolt [not] bisy be
To kepe that thou hast to kepe ; 4045
Whan thou shuldist wake, thou art aslepe.

Thou shalt be greved certeynly,
If thee aspye Jelousy,
Or if he finde thee in blame.

He hath to-day assailed Shame, 4050
And chased away, with gret manace,
Bialacoil out of this place,

And swereth shortly that he shal
Enclose him in a sturdy wal ;
And al is for thy wikkednesse, 4055
For that thee faileth straungenesse.

'Thyn herte, I trowe, be failed al ;
 'Thou shalt repente in special,
 If Jelousye the sothe knewe ;
 Thou shalt forthenke, and sore rewe.' 4060

With that the cherl his clubbegan shake,
 Frowning his eyen gan to make,
 And hidous chere ; as man in rage,
 For ire he brente in his visage.
 Whan that he herde him blamed so, 4065
 He seide, ' Out of my wit I go ;
 To be discomfit I have gret wrong.
 Certis, I have now lived to long,
 Sith I may not this closer kepe ;
 Al quik I wolde be dolven depe, 4070
 If any man shal more repeire
 Into this garden, for foule or faire.
 Myn herte for ire goth a-fere,
 That I lete any entre here.

I have do foly, now I see, 4075
 But now it shal amended be.
 Who settith foot here any more,
 Truly, he shal repente it sore ;
 For no man mo into this place
 Of me to entre shal have grace. 4080
 Lever I hadde, with swerdis tweyne,
 Thurgh-out myn herte, in every veyne
 Perced to be, with many a wounde,
 Than slouthe shulde in me be founde.
 From hennesforth, by night or day, 4085
 I shal defende it, if I may,
 Withouten any excepcioun
 Of ech maner condicioun ;
 And if I tany man it graunte,
 Holdeth me for recreaunte.' 4090

Than Daunger on his feet gan stonde,
 And hente a burdoun in his honde.
 Wroth in his ire, ne lefte he nought,
 But thurgh the verger he hath sought.
 If he might finde hole or trace, 4095
 Wher-thurgh that me[n]mot forthby pace,
 Or any gappe, he dide it close,
 That no man mighte touche a rose
 Of the roser al aboute ;
 He shitteth every man withoute. 4100

Thus day by day Daunger is wers,
 More wondirful and more divers,
 And feller eek than ever he was ;
 For him ful oft I singe ' allas !'
 For I ne may nought, thurgh his ire, 4105
 Recover that I most desire.
 Myn herte, allas, wol brest a-two,

For Bialacoil I wratthed so.
 For certeynly, in every membre
 I quake, whan I me remembre 4110
 Of the botoun, which [that] I wolde
 Fulle ofte a day seen and biholde.
 And whan I thenke upon the kisse,
 And how muche joye and blisse
 I hadde thurgh the savour swete, 4115
 For wante of it I grone and grete.
 Me thenkith I fele yit in my nose
 The swete savour of the rose.
 And now I woot that I mot go
 So fer the fresshe floures fro, 4120
 To me ful welcome were the deeth ;
 Absens therof, allas, me sleeth !
 For whylom with this rose, allas,
 I touched nose, mouth, and face ;
 But now the deeth I must abyde. 4125
 But Love consente, another tyde,
 That onis I touche may and kisse,
 I trowe my peyne shal never lisse.
 Theron is al my coveityse,
 Which brent myn herte in many wyse.
 Now shal repaire agayn sighinge, 4130
 Long wacche on nightis, and no slepinge ;
 Thought in wisshing, torment, and wo,
 With many a turning to and fro,
 That half my peyne I can not telle. 4135
 For I am fallen into helle
 From paradys and welthe, the more
 My turment greveth ; more and more
 Anoyeth now the bittirnesse,
 That I toforn have felt swetnesse. 4140
 And Wikkid-Tunge, thurgh his falshede,
 Causeth al my wo and drede.
 On me he leyeth a pitous charge,
 Bicause his tunge was to large.

Now it is tyme, shortly that I 4145
 Telle you som-thing of Jelousy,
 That was in gret suspecioun.
 Aboute him lefte he no masoun,
 That stoon coude leye, ne querroure ;
 He hired hem to make a tour. 4150
 And first, the roses for to kepe,
 Aboute hem made he a dicke depe,
 Right wondir large, and also brood ;
 Upon the whiche also stood
 Of squared stoon a sturdy wal, 4155
 Which on a cragge was founded al,
 And right gret thikkenesse eek it bar.
 Abouten, it was founded squar,

d fadome on every syde,
 che longe and wyde. 4160
 yme it were assayled,
 outh it was batayled;
 e envircoun eek were set
 a riche and fair touret.
 rner of this wal 4165
 tour ful principal;
 h hadde, withoute fable,
 ys defensable
 enemies, and to greve,
 hir force wolde preve. 4170
 midde this purpryse
 a tour of gret maistryse;
 ough no man with sight,
 wyde, and of gret might.
 redde noon assaut 4175
 gunne, nor skaffaut.
 mprure of the mortere
 of licour wonder dere;
 lyme persant and egre,
 was tempred with vinegre.
 was hard þas ademan, 4181
 ey made the foundement.
 as rounde, maad in compas;
 world no richer was,
 ordeigned therwithal. 4185
 tour was maad a wal,
 twixt that and the tour,
 re set of swete savour,
 y roses that they bere.
 ithin the castel were 4190
 a, gunnes, bows, archers;
 ove, atte corners,
 ver the walle stonde
 nes, þwiche were nigh honde;
 kernels, here and there, 4195
 rs gret plentee were.
 re might hir stroke with-
 y to prece to honde.
 e diche were listes made,
 s batayled large and brade, 4200
 nd hors shulde not atteyne
 he diche over the pleyne.
 use bath envircoun
 his garnisoun
 s rounde, and diche depe, 4205
 oser for to kepe.
 ger [eek], erly and late
 kepte of the utter gate.

The which openeth toward the eest.
 And he hadde with him atte leest 4210
 Thritty servauntes, echon by name.
 That other gate kepte Shame,
 Which openede, as it was couth,
 Toward the parte of the south.
 Sergeauntes assigned were hir to 4215
 Ful many, hir wille for to do.
 Than Drede hadde in hir baillye
 The keping of the conestablerye,
 Toward the north, I undirstonde,
 That opened upon the left honde, 4220
 The which for no-thing may be sure,
 But-if she do [hir] bisy cure
 Erly on morowe and also late,
 Strongly to shette and barre the gate.
 Of every thing that she may see 4225
 Drede is aferd, wher-so she be;
 For with a puff of litel winde
 Drede is astonied in hir minde.
 Therefore, for stalinge of the rose,
 I rede hir nought the yate uncloze. 4230
 A foulis flight wol make hir flee,
 And eek a shadowe, if she it see.
 Thanne Wikked-Tunge, ful of envye,
 With sondiours of Normandye,
 As he that causeth al the bate, 4235
 Was keper of the fourthe gate,
 And also to the tother three
 He went ful ofte, for to see.
 Whan his lot was to wake a-night,
 His instrumentis wolde he dight, 4240
 For to blowe and make soun,
 Ofter than he hath enchesoun;
 And walken oft upon the wal,
 Corners and wikettis over-al
 Ful narwe serchen and espye; 4245
 Though he nought fond, yit wolde he lye.
 Discordaunt ever fro armonye,
 And distoned from melodye,
 Controve he wolde, and foule fayle,
 With hornpypes of Cornewayle. 4250
 In floytes made he discordaunce,
 And in his musik, with mischaunce,
 He wolde seyn, with notes newe,
 That he [ne] fond no womman trewe,
 Ne that he saugh never, in his lyf, 4255
 Unto hir husbonde a trewe wyf;
 Ne noon so ful of honestee,
 That she nil laughe and mery be
 Whan that she hereth, or may espye,

A man speken of lecherye. 4260
 Everich of hem hath somme vyce ;
 Oon is dishonest, another is nyce ;
 If oon be ful of vilanye,
 Another hath a likerous ye ;
 If oon be ful of wantonesse, 4265
 Another is a chideresse.
 Thus Wikked-Tunge (god yeve him
 shame !)
 Can putte hem everichone in blame
 Withoute desert and causeles ;
 He lyeth, though they been giltles. 4270
 I have pite to seen the sorwe,
 That †waketh bothe eve and morwe,
 To innocents doth such grevaunce ;
 I pray god yeve him evel chaunce,
 That he ever so bisy is 4275
 Of any womman to seyn amis !
 Eek Jelousye god confounde,
 That hath [y]-maad a tour so rounde,
 And made aboute a garisoun
 To sette Bialacoil in prisoun ; 4280
 The which is shet there in the tour,
 Ful longe to holde there sojour,
 There for to live[n] in penaunce.
 And for to do him more grevaunce,
 †Ther hath ordeyned Jelousye 4285
 An olde vekke, for to espye
 The maner of his governaunce ;
 The whiche devel, in hir enfaunce,
 Had lerned [muche] of Loves art,
 And of his pleyes took hir part ; 4290
 She was †expert in his servyse.
 She knew ech wrenche and every gyse
 Of love, and every [lovers] wyle,
 It was [the] harder hir to gyle.
 Of Bialacoil she took ay hede, 4295
 That ever he liveth in wo and drede.
 He kepte him coy and eek privee,
 Lest in him she hadde see
 Any foly countenaunce,
 For she knew al the olde daunce. 4300
 And aftir this, whan Jelousye
 Had Bialacoil in his baillye,
 And shette him up that was so free,
 For seure of him he wolde be,
 He trusteth sore in his castel ; 4305
 The stronge werk him lyketh wel.
 He dradde nat that no glotouns
 Shulde stele his roses or botouns.
 The roses weren assured alle,

Defenced with the stronge walle. 4310
 Now Jelousye ful wel may be
 Of drede devoid, in libertee,
 Whether that he slepe or wake ;
 For of his roses may noon be take.
 But I, allas, now morne shal ; 4315
 Bicause I was without the wal,
 Ful moche dole and mone I made.
 Who hadde wist what wo I hadde,
 I trowe he wolde have had pitee.
 Love to deere had sold to me 4320
 The good that of his love hadde I.
 I †wende a bought it al queyntly ;
 But now, thurgh doubling of my peyn,
 I see he wolde it selle ageyn,
 And me a newe bargeyn lere, 4325
 The which al-out the more is dere,
 For the solace that I have lorn,
 Than I hadde it never afor.
 Certayn I am ful lyk, indeed,
 To him that cast in erthe his seed ; 4330
 And hath joie of the newe spring,
 Whan it greneth in the ginning,
 And is also fair and fresh of flour,
 Lusty to seen, swote of odour ;
 But er he it in sheves shere, 4335
 May falle a weder that shal it dere,
 And make[n] it to fade and falle,
 The stalk, the greyn, and floures alle ;
 That to the †tilier is fordone
 The hope that he hadde to sone. 4340
 I drede, certeyn, that so fare I ;
 For hope and travaile sikerly
 Ben me biraft al with a storm ;
 The floure nil seden of my corn.
 For Love hath so avaunced me, 4345
 Whan I bigan my privitee
 To Bialacoil al for to telle,
 Whom I ne fond froward ne felle,
 But took a-gree al hool my play.
 But Love is of so hard assay, 4350
 That al at onis he reved me,
 Whan I †wend best aboven have be.
 It is of Love, as of Fortune,
 That chaungeth ofte, and nil contune ;
 Which whylom wol on folke smyle, 4355
 And gloumbe on hem another whyle ;
 Now freend, now foo, [thou] shalt hir fele,
 For [in] a twinkling tourneth hir wheel.
 She can wrythe hir heed away,
 This is the concours of hir pley ; 4360

wyse that doth morne,
 adown, and overturne
 hieghst, þal as hir þlist ;
 that wol hir trist.
 I that am com down 4365
 ange and revolucioun !
 wil mot fro me twinne,
 prisoun yond withinne,
 at myn herte I fele ;
 oye and al myn hele 4370
 and in the rose,
 n þwal, which him doth close,
 I may him see,
 that I cured be
 es that I endure, 4375
 ruel aventure.
 wil, myn owne dere !
 a be now a prisonere,
 ste thyn herte to me,
 not that it daunted be ; 4380
 elousye, in his rage,
 herte in no servage.
 chastice thee withoute,
 hy body unto him loute,
 as hard as dyamaunt, 4385
 and nought pliaunt ;
 hough thy body be,
 e thyn herte free.
 te wol not plye
 ace that it may drye. 4390
 doth thee payne,
 his whyle thus agayne,
 ee, atte leest in thought,
 7 thou mayest nought ;
 wyse sotilly 4395
 d winne the maistry.
 n in gret affray
 o not as I say ;
 i canst me greet maugree,
 mprisoned art for me ; 4400
 | not for my trespas,
 me never discovered was
 at oughte be secree.
 noy [ther] is in me,
 hee, of this mischaunce ; 4405
 e more hard penaunce
 nan] can seyn or thinke,
 e sorwe almost I sinke.
 nembre me of my wo,
 at of my wit I go. 4410
 n herte I fele blede,

For comfortles the deeth I drede.
 Ow I not wel to have distresse,
 Whan false, thurgh hir wikkednesse,
 And traitours, that arn envyous, 4415
 To noyen me be so coragious ?
 A, Bialacoil ! ful wel I see,
 That they hem shape to disceyve thee,
 To make thee buxom to hir lawe,
 And with hir corde thee to drawe 4420
 Wher-so hem lust, right at hir wil ;
 I drede they have thee brought thertil.
 Withoute comfort, thought me sleeth ;
 This game wol bringe me to my deeth.
 For if your þgode wille I lese, 4425
 I mote be deed ; I may not chese.
 And if that thou foryete me,
 Myn herte shal never in lyking be ;
 Nor elles-where finde solace,
 If I be put out of your grace, 4430
 As it shal never been, I hope ;
 Than shulde I falle[n] in wanhope.

*[Here, at l. 4070 of the French text,
 ends the work of G. de Lorris ; and
 begins the work of Jean de Meun.]*

Allas, in wanhope ?—nay, pardee !
 For I wol never dispeired be.
 If Hope me faile, than am I 4435
 Ungracious and unworthy ;
 In Hope I wol comforted be,
 For Love, whan he bitaught hir me,
 Seide, that Hope, wher-so I go,
 Shulde ay be relees to my wo. 4440
 But what and she my balis bete,
 And be to me curteis and swete ?
 She is in no-thing ful certeyn.
 Lovers she put in ful gret peyn,
 And makith hem with wo to dele. 4445
 Hir fair biheest disceyveth fele,
 For she wol bihote, sikirly,
 And failen aftir outrely.
 A ! that is a ful noyous thing !
 For many a lover, in loving, 4450
 Hangeth upon hir, and trusteth fast,
 Whiche lese hir travel at the last.
 Of thing to comen she woot right nought ;
 Therefore, if it be wysly sought,
 Hir counseille, folly is to take. 4455
 For many tymes, whan she wol make
 A ful good silogisme, I drede

That aftirward ther shal in dede
 Folwe an evel conclusioun ;
 This put me in confusioun. 4460
 For many tymes I have it seen,
 That many have bigyled been,
 For trust that they have set in Hope,
 Which fel hem aftirward a-slope.

But natheles yit, gladly she wolde, 4465
 That he, that wol him with hir holde,
 Hadde alle tymes þis purpos clere,
 Withoute deceyte, or any were.
 That she desireth sikirly ;
 Whan I hir blamed, I did foly. 4470
 But what avayleth hir good wille,
 Whan she ne may staunche my stounde
 ille ?

That helpith litel, that she may do,
 Outake biheest unto my wo.
 And heeste certeyn, in no wyse, 4475
 Withoute yift, is not to þpryse.

Whan heest and deed a-sundir varie,
 They doon [me have] a gret contrarie.
 Thus am I possed up and down
 With dool, thought, and confusioun ; 4480
 Of my disese ther is no noumbre.
 Daunger and Shame me encumbre,
 Drede also, and Jelousye,
 And Wikked-Tunge, ful of envye,
 Of whiche the sharpe and cruel ire 4485
 Ful oft me put in gret martire.
 They han my joye fully let,
 Sith Bialacoil they have bishet
 Fro me in prisoun wikkidly,
 Whom I love so entierly, 4490
 That it wol my bane be,
 But I the soner may him see.

And yit moreover, wurst of alle,
 Ther is set to kepe, foule hir bifalle !
 A rimpled vekke, fer ronne in age, 4495
 Frowning and yelow in hir visage,
 Which in awayte lyth day and night,
 That noon of hem may have a sight.
 Now moot my sorwe enforced be ;
 Ful soth it is, that Love yaf me 4500
 Three wonder yiftes of his grace,
 Which I have lorn now in this place,
 Sith they ne may, withoute drede,
 Helpen but litel, who taketh hede.
 For here availeth no Swete-Thought, 4505
 And Swete-Speche helpith right nought.
 The thridde was called Swete-Loking,

That now is lorn, without leasing.
 [The] yiftes were fair, but not forthy
 They helpe me but simp[sil]ly, 4510
 But Bialacoil [may] loosed be,
 To gon at large and to be free.
 For him my lyf lyth al in dout,
 But-if he come the rather out.
 Allas ! I trowe it wol not been ! 4515
 For how shuld I evermore him seen ?
 He may not out, and that is wrong,
 Bicause the tour is so strong.
 How shulde he out ? by whos prowesse,
 Out of so strong a forteresse ? 4520
 By me, certeyn, it nil be do ;
 God woot, I have no wit therto !
 But wel I woot I was in rage,
 Whan I to Love dide homage.
 Who was in cause, in sothfastnesse, 4525
 But hir-silf, dame Idelnesse,
 Which me conveyed, thurgh fair prayers,
 To entre into that fair vergere ?
 She was to blame me to leve,
 The which now doth me sore greve. 4530
 A foolis word is nought to trowe,
 Ne worth an appel for to lowe ;
 Men shulde him snibbe bittirly,
 At pryme temps of his foly.
 I was a fool, and she me leved, 4535
 Thurgh whom I am right nought releved.
 She accomplisshed al my wil,
 That now me greveth wondir il.
 Resoun me seide what shulde falla.
 A fool my-silf I may wel calle, 4540
 That love asyde I had not leyde,
 And trowed that dame Resoun seyde.
 Resoun had bothe skile and right,
 Whan she me blamed, with al hir might
 To medle of love, that hath me shent ;
 But certeyn now I wol repent. 4545
 ' And shulde I repent ? Nay, parde !
 A fals traitour than shulde I be.
 The develles engins wolde me take,
 If I my þlorde wolde forsake, 4550
 Or Bialacoil falsly bitraye.
 Shulde I at mischeef hate him ? nay,
 Sith he now, for his curtesye,
 Is in prisoun of Jelousye.
 Curtesye certeyn dide he me, 4555
 So þmuche, it may not yolden be,
 Whan he the hay passen me lete,
 To kisse the rose, faire and swete :

Shulde I therefore kunne him mangree?
 Nay, certeynly, it shal not be; 4560
 For Love shal never, þif god wil,
 Here of me, thurgh word or wil,
 Offence or complaynt, more or lesse,
 Neither of Hope nor Idilnesse;
 For certis, it were wrong that I 4565
 Hated hem for hir curtesya.
 Ther is not ellis, but suffre and thinke,
 And waken whan I shulde winke;
 Abyde in hope, til Love, thurgh chaunce,
 Sende me socour or allegeaunce, 4570
 Expectant ay til I may mete
 To geten mercy of that swete.
 Whylom I thinke how Love to me
 Seyde he wolde take[n] att[e] gree
 My servise, if unpacience 4575
 Caused me to doon offence.
 He seyde, "In thank I shal it take,
 And high maister eek thee make,
 If wikkednesse ne reve it thee;
 But sone, I trowe, that shal not be." 4580
 These were his wordis by and by;
 It semed he loved me trewly.
 Now is ther not but serve him wele,
 If that I thinke his thank to fele.
 My good, myn harm, lyth hool in me;
 In Love may no defeaute be; 4586
 For trewe Love þfailid never man.
 Sothly, the faute mot nedis than
 As God forbede ! be founde in me,
 And how it cometh, I can not see. 4590
 Now lat it goon as it may go;
 Whether Love wol socoure me or slo,
 He may do hool on me his wil.
 I am so sore bounde him til,
 From his servyse I may not fleen; 4595
 For lyf and deth, withouten wene,
 Is in his hand; I may not chese;
 He may me do bothe winne and lese.
 And sith so sore he doth me greve,
 Yit, if my lust he wolde acheve 4600
 To Bialacoil goodly to be,
 I yeve no force what felle on me.
 For though I dye, as I mot nede,
 I praye Love, of his goodlihede,
 To Bialacoil do gentilnesse, 4605
 For whom I live in such distresse,
 That I mote deyen for penaunce.
 But first, withoute repentaunce,
 I wol me confesse in good entent,

And make in haste my testament, 4610
 As lovers doon that felen smerte:—
 To Bialacoil leve I myn herte
 Al hool, withoute departing,
 Or doublenesse of repenting.'

Coment Raison vient a L'amant.

Thus as I made my passage 4615
 In compleynt, and in cruel rage,
 And I þnist wher to finde a lecho
 That couthe unto myn helping eche,
 Sodeynly agayn comen doun
 Out of hir tour I saugh Resoun, 4620
 Discrete and wys, and ful plesaunt,
 And of hir porte ful avenaunt.
 The righte wey she took to me,
 Which stood in greet perplexite,
 That was possed in every side, 4625
 That I nist where I might abyde,
 Til she, demurely sad of chere,
 Seide to me as she com nere:—
 'Myn owne freend, art thou yit greved?
 How is this quarel yit acheved 4630
 Of Loves syde? Anoon me telle;
 Hast thou not yit of love thy fille?
 Art thou not wery of thy servyse
 That thee hath [pyned] in sich wyse?
 What joye hast thou in thy loving? 4635
 Is it swete or bitter thing?
 Canst thou yit chese, lat me see,
 What best thy socour mighte be?
 'Thou servest a ful noble lord,
 That maketh thee thral for thy reward,
 Which ay renewith thy turment, 4641
 With foly so he hath thee blent.
 Thou felle in mischeef thilke day,
 Whan thou didest, the sothe to say,
 Obeysaunce and eek homage; 4645
 Thou wroughtest no-thing as the sage.
 Whan thou bicam his liege man,
 Thou didist a gret foly than;
 Thou wistest not what fel therto,
 With what lord thou haddist to do. 4650
 If thou haddist him wel knowe,
 Thou haddist nought be brought so lowe;
 For if thou wistest what it were,
 Thou noldist serve him half a yeer,
 Not a weke, nor half a day, 4655
 Ne yit an hour withoute delay.
 No never þhan loved paramours,

His lordship is so ful of shoures.
Knowest him ought ?

L'Amaunt. 'Ye, dame, parde !'

Raisoun. 'Nay, nay.'

L'Amaunt. 'Yes, I.'

Raisoun. 'Wherof, lat see ?' 4660

L'Amaunt. 'Of that he seyde I shulde
be

Glad to have sich lord as he,
And maister of sich seignory.'

Raisoun. 'Knowist him no more ?'

L'Amaunt. 'Nay, certis, I,
Save that he yaf me rewles there, 4665
And wente his wey, I niste where,
And I abood bounde in balaunce.'

Raisoun. 'Lo, there a noble conisaunce !
But I wil that thou knowe him now
Ginning and ende, sith that thou 4670
Art so anguisshous and mate,
Disfigured out of astate ;
Ther may no wrecche have more of wo,
Ne caitif noon enduren so.
It were to every man sitting 4675
Of his lord have knowleching.
For if thou knewe him, out of dout,
Lightly thou shulde escapen out
Of the prisoun that marreth thee.'

L'Amaunt. 'Ye, dame ! sith my lord
is he, 4680
And I his man, maad with myn honde,
I wolde right fayn undirstonde
To knowe[n] of what kinde he be,
If any wolde enforme me.'

Raisoun. 'I wolde,' seid Resoun, 'thee
lere, 4685
Sith thou to lerne hast sich desire,
And shewe thee, withouten fable,
A thing that is not demonstrable.
Thou shalt [here lerne] without science,
And knowe, withoute experience, 4690
The thing that may not knowen be,
Ne wist ne shewid in no degree.
Thou mayst the sothe of it not witen,
Though in thee it were writen.
Thou shalt not knowe therof more 4695
Whyle thou art reuled by his lore ;
But unto him that love wol flee,
The knotte may unclosed be,
Which hath to thee, as it is founde,
So long be knet and not unbounde. 4700
Now sette wel thyn entencioun,

To here of love discripcioun.

'Love, it is an hateful pees,
A free acquitaunce, without reles,
†A trouthe, fret full of falshede, 4705
A sikernesse, al set in drede ;
In herte is a dispeiring hope,
And fulle of hope, it is wanhope ;
Wyse woodnesse, and wood resoun,
A swete peril, in to droune, 4710
An hevy birthen, light to bere,
A wikked wawe away to were.
It is Caribdis perilous,
Disagreable and gracious.
It is discordaunce that can accorde, 4715
And accordaunce to discorde.
It is cunning withoute science,
Wisdom withoute sapience,
Wit withoute discrecioun,
Havoir, withoute possessioun. 4720
It is †sike hele and hool siknesse,
A †thrust drowned †in dronkenesse,
†An helthe ful of maladye,
And charitee ful of envye,
†An hunger ful of habundaunce, 4725
And a gredy suffisaunce ;
Delyt right ful of hevinesse,
And dreri[h]ed ful of gladnesse ;
Bitter swetnesse and swete errorr,
Right evel savoured good savour ; 4730
†Sinne that pardoun hath withinne,
And pardoun spotted without [with]
sinne ;
A peyne also it is, joyous,
And felonye right pitous ;
Also pley that selde is stable, 4735
And stedefast [stat], right mevable ;
A strengthe, weyked to stonde upright,
And feblenesse, ful of might ;
Wit unavysed, sage folye,
And joye ful of turmentrye ; 4740
A laughter it is, weping ay,
Rest, that traveyleth night and day ;
Also a swete helle it is,
And a sorowful Paradys ;
A plesaunt gayl and esy prisoun, 4745
And, ful of froste, somer sesoun ;
Pryme temps, ful of frostes whyte,
And May, devoide of al delyte,
With seer braunches, blossoms ungrene ;
And newe fruyt, fillid with winter tene.
It is a slowe, may not forbere 4751

Raggas, ribaned with gold, to were:
 For al-so wel wol love be set
 Under raggas as riche rochet;
 And eek as wel þe amourettes 4755
 In mourning blak, as bright burnettes.
 For noon is of so mochel prys,
 Ye no man founden [is] so wys,
 Ye noon so high is of parage,
 Ye no man founde of wit so sage, 4760
 Ye man so hardy ne so wight,
 Ye no man of so mochel might,
 Soon so fulfilled of bounte,
 †But he with love may daunted be.
 Al the world holdith this way; 4765
 Love makith alle to goon miswey,
 But it be they of yvel lyf,
 Whom Genius cursith, man and wyf,
 That wrongly werke ageyn nature.
 Soon sache I love, ne have no cure 4770
 Of sache as Loves servaunts been,
 And wol not by my counsel fleen.
 For I ne preyse that loving,
 Wher-thurgh man, at the laste ending,
 Shal calle hem wrecchis fulle of wo, 4775
 Love greveth hem and shendith so.
 But if thou wolt wel Love eschewe,
 For to escape out of his mewe,
 And make al hool thy sorwe to slake,
 So bettir counsel mayst thou take, 4780
 Than thinke to fleen wel, y-wis;
 May nought helpe elles; for wite thou
 this :—
 If thou flee it, it shal flee thee;
 Folowe it, and folowen shal it thee.'
 L'Ameant. Whan I hadde herd al
 Resoun seyn, 4785
 Which hadde spilt hir speche in veyn :
 'Dame,' seyde I, 'I dar wel sey
 Of this avaunt me wel I may
 That from your scole so deviaunt
 I am, that never the more avaunt 4790
 Rightnought am I, thurgh your doctryne;
 I dulle under your disciplyne;
 I wot no more than [I] wist þer,
 To me so contrarie and so fer
 Is every thing that ye me lere; 4795
 And yit I can it al †parcuere.
 My herte foryetith therof right nought,
 It is so writen in my thought;
 And depe †graven it is so tendir
 That al by herte I can it rendre, 4800

And rede it over comunely;
 But to my-silf lewedist am I.
 'But sith ye love discreven so,
 And lakke and preise it, bothe two,
 Defyneth it into this letter, 4805
 That I may thenke on it the better
 For I herde never †diffyne it ere,
 And wilfully I wolde it lere.'
 Raisoun. 'If love be serched wel and
 sought,
 It is a sykenesse of the thought 4810
 Annexed and †knet bitwixe tweyne,
 †Which male and female, with oo cheyne,
 So frely byndith, that they nil twinne,
 Whether so therof they lese or winne.
 The roote springith, thurgh hoot bren-
 ning, 4815
 Into disordinat desiring
 For to kissen and embrace,
 And at her lust them to solace.
 Of other thing love recchith nought,
 But setteth hir herte and al hir thought
 More for delectacioun 4821
 Than any procreacioun
 Of other fruyt by †engendring;
 Which love to god is not plesing;
 For of hir body fruyt to get 4825
 They yeve no force, they are so set
 Upon delyt, to pley in-fere.
 And somme have also this manere,
 To feynen hem for love seke;
 Sich love I preise not at a leke. 4830
 For paramours they do but feyne;
 To love truly they disdeyne.
 They falsen ladies traitoursly,
 And sweren hem othes utterly,
 With many a lesing, and many a fable,
 And al they finden deceyvable. 4836
 And, whanne they †her lust han geten,
 The hote ernes they al foryeten.
 Wimmen, the harm they byen ful sore;
 But men this thenken evermore, 4840
 That lasse harm is, so mote I thee,
 Disceyve them, than disceyved be;
 And namely, wher they ne may
 Finde non other mene wey.
 For I wot wel, in sothfastnesse, 4845
 That †who doth now his bisynesse
 With any womman for to dele,
 For any lust that he may fele,
 But-if it be for engendrure,

He doth trespassse, I you ensure, 4850
 For he shulde setten al his wil
 To geten a likly thing him til,
 And to sustene[n], if he might,
 And kepe forth, by kindes right,
 His owne lyknesse and samblable, 4855
 For bicause al is corrupable,
 And faile shulde successioun,
 No were þther generacioun
 Our aetis strenge for to save.
 What fader or moder arn in grave, 4860
 Hirchildren shulde, whan they ben dedde,
 Ful diligent ben, in hir steede,
 To use that werke on such a wyse,
 That oon may thurgh another ryse,
 Therfore set Kinde therin delyt, 4865
 For men therin shulde hem delyte,
 And of that dede be not erke,
 But ofte cythes haunt that werke.
 For noon welde drawe therof a draught
 Ne were delyt, which hath him caught,
 This hadde sotel dame Nature, 4870
 For noon goth right, I thes ensure,
 Ne hath entent hool ne partyt,
 For hir desir is for delyt,
 The which fortene crece and eke 4875
 The play of love for-ofte seke,
 And thralle hem-silf, they be so nyce,
 Unto the prince of every vyce,
 For of ech sinne it is the rote,
 Unlesfulle lust, though it be sote, 4880
 And of al yvel the racyne,
 As Tullius can determynne,
 Which in his tyme was ful sage,
 In a boke he made of Age.
 Wher that more he preyseth Elde, 4885
 Though he be croked and unwelde,
 And more of commendacioun,
 Than Youthe in his discripcioun,
 For Youthe set bothe man and wyf
 In al perel of soule and lyf; 4890
 And perel is, but men have grace,
 The þtyme of youthe for to pace,
 Withoute any deth or distresse,
 It is so ful of wildenesse;
 So ofte it doth shame or damage 4895
 To him or to his linage,
 It ledith man now up, now down,
 In mochel dissolucioun,
 And maketh him love yvel company,
 And lede his lyf disrewlly, 4900

And halt him payed with noon estate,
 Within him-silf is such debate,
 He chaungith purpos and entent,
 And yalt [him] into som covent,
 To liven aftir her empyrse, 4905
 And leaith fredom and fraunchyse,
 That Nature in him hadde set,
 The which ageyn he may not get,
 If he there make his mansioun
 For to abyde professioun, 4910
 Though for a tyme his herte absente,
 It may not fayle, he shal repente,
 And eke abyde thilke day
 To leve his abit, and goon his way,
 And leaith his worship and his name,
 And dar not come ageyn for shame, 4915
 But al his lyf he doth so mourne,
 Bicause he dar not hoom retourne.
 Fredom of kinde so lost hath he
 That never may recured be, 4920
 †But-if that god him graunte grace
 That he may, or he hennes pace,
 Conteyne undir obediense
 Thurgh the vertu of paciense,
 For Youthe set man in al folye, 4925
 In unthrift and in ribaudye,
 In lecherye, and in outrage,
 So ofte it chaungith of corage,
 Youthe ginneth ofte sich bargayn,
 That may not ende withouten payn, 4930
 In gret perel is set youth-hede,
 Delyt so doth his bridil lede,
 Delyt †thus hangith, drede thee nought,
 Bothe mannis body and his thought,
 Only thurgh †Youthe, his chamberere,
 That to don yvel is customere, 4935
 And of nought alles taketh hede
 But only folkes for to lede
 Into disporte and wildenesse,
 So is [she] froward from sadnesse, 4940
 ' But Elde drawith hem therfro;
 Who wot it nought, he may wel go
 †Demand of hem that now arn olde,
 That whylom Youthe hadde in holde,
 Which yet †remembre of tender age, 4945
 How it hem brought in many a rage,
 And many a foly therin wrought,
 But now that Elde hath †hem thurgh-
 sought,
 They repente hem of her folye,
 That Youthe hem putte in jupardye, 4950

In perel and in muche wo,
 And made hem ofte amis to do,
 And such yvel companye,
 Riot and avouterye.
 But Elde þan ageyn restreyne 4955
 From such foly, and refreyne,
 And set men, by hir ordinaunce,
 In good reule and in governaunce.
 But yvel she spendith hir servyse,
 For so man wol hir love, þne pryse; 4960
 She is hated, this wot I wele.
 Hir aseyntaunce wolde no man fele,
 Ne han of Elde companye,
 Men hate to be of hir alye.
 For no man wolde bi-comen olde, 4965
 Ne dye, when he is yong and bolde.
 And Elde mervailith right gretly,
 When they remembre hem inwardly
 Of many a perelous emprise,
 Whiche that they wrought in sondry
 wyse, 4970
 How ever they might, withoute blame,
 Escape away withoute shame,
 In youthe, withoute[n] damage
 Or reproof of her linage,
 Losse of membre, sheding of blode, 4975
 Perel of deth, or losse of good.
 Wost thou nought where Youthe
 abit,
 That men so preisen in her wit?
 With Delyt she halt sojour,
 For bothe they dwellen in oo tour. 4980
 As longe as Youthe is in sesoun,
 They dwellen in oon mansioun.
 Delyt of Youthe wol have servyse
 To do what so he wol devyse;
 And Youthe is redy evermore 4985
 For to obey, for smerte of sore,
 Into Delyt, and him to yive
 Hir servise, whyl that she may live.
 Where Elde abit, I wol thee telle
 Shortly, and no whyle dwelle, 4990
 For thider bihoveth thee to go.
 If Deth in youthe thee not slo,
 Of this journey thou maist not faile.
 With hir Labour and Travaile
 Logged been, with Sorwe and Wo, 4995
 That never out of hir courte go.
 Peyne and Distresse, Syknesse and Ire,
 And Malencoly, that angry sire,
 Men of hir paleys senatours;

Groning and Grucching, hir herber-
 geours, 5000
 The day and night, hir to turment,
 With cruel Deth they hir present,
 And tellen hir, erliche and late,
 That Deth þstant armed at hir gate.
 Than bringe they to hir remembraunce
 The foly dedis of hir infaanee, 5006
 Which causen hir to mourne in wo
 That Youthe hath hir bigiled so,
 Which sodeynly away is hasted.
 She þwepeth the tyme that she hath
 wasted, 5010
 Complayning of the preterit,
 And the present, that not abit,
 And of hir olde vanitee,
 That, but aforh hir she may see
 In the future som socour, 5015
 To leggen hir of hir dolour,
 To graunt hir tyme of repentaunce,
 For hir sinnes to do penaunce,
 And at the laste so hir governe
 To winne the joy that is eterne, 5020
 Fro which go bakward Youthe þhir made,
 In vanitee to droune and wade.
 For present tyme abidith nought,
 It is more swift than any thought;
 So litel whyle it doth endure 5025
 That ther nis compte ne mesure.
 But how that ever the game go,
 Who list þhave joye and mirth also
 Of love, be it he or she,
 High or lowe, who[so] it be, 5030
 In fruyt they shulde hem delyte;
 Her part they may not elles quyte,
 To save hem-silf in honestee.
 And yit ful many oon I see
 Of wimmen, sothly for to seyne, 5035
 That [ay] desire and wolde fayne
 The pley of love, they be so wilde,
 And not coveite to go with childe.
 And if with child they be perchaunce,
 They wole it holde a gret mischaunce;
 But what-som-ever wo they fele, 5041
 They wol not pleyne, but concele;
 But-if it be any fool or nyce,
 In whom that shame hath no justyce.
 For to delyt echon they drawe, 5045
 That haunte this werk, bothe high and
 lawe,
 Save sich that ar[e]n worth right nought,

That for money wol be bought.
 Such love I preise in no wyse,
 Whan it is †given for coveitise. 5050
 I preise no womman, though †she be wood,
 That yeveth hir-silf for any good.
 For litel shulde a man telle
 Of hir, that wol hir body selle,
 Be she mayde, be she wyf, 5055
 That quik wol selle hir, by hir lyf.
 How faire chere that ever she make,
 He is a wrecche, I undirtake,
 That †loveth such one, for swete or sour,
 Though she him calle hir paramour, 5060
 And laugheth on him, and makith him
 feeste.
 For certeynly no suche [a] beeste
 To be loved is not worthy,
 Or bere the name of dru[e]ry.
 Noon shulde hir please, but he were wood,
 That wol dispoile him of his good. 5066
 Yit nevertheles, I wol not sey
 †But she, for solace and for pley,
 May a jewel or other thing
 Take of her loves free yeving ; 5070
 But that she aske it in no wyse,
 For drede of shame of coveityse.
 And she of hirs may him, certeyn,
 Withoute solaundre, yeven ageyn,
 And joyne her hertes togidre so 5075
 In love, and take and yeve also.
 Trowe not that I wolde hem twinne,
 Whan in her love ther is no sinne ;
 I wol that they togedre go,
 And doon al that they han ado, 5080
 As curteis shulde and debonaire,
 And in her love beren hem faire,
 Withoute vyce, bothe he and she ;
 So that alwey, in honestee,
 Fro foly love †they kepe hem clere 5085
 That brenneth hertis with his fere ;
 And that her love, in any wyse,
 Be devoid of coveityse.
 Good love shulde engendrid be
 Of trewe herte, just, and secree, 5090
 And not of such as sette her thought
 To have her lust, and ellis nought,
 So are they caught in Loves lace,
 Truly, for bodily solace.
 Fleshly delyt is so present 5095
 With thee, that sette al thyn entent,
 Withoute more (what shulde I glose ?)

For to gete and have the Rose ;
 Which makith thee so mate and wood
 That thou desirest noon other good. 5100
 But thou art not an inche the nerre,
 But ever abydest in sorwe and werre,
 As in thy face it is sene ;
 It makith thee bothe pale and lene ;
 Thy might, thy vertu goth away. 5105
 A sory gest, in goode fay,
 Thou †herberedest than in thyn inne,
 The God of Love whan thou let inne !
 Wherfore I rede, thou shette him out,
 Or he shal greve thee, out of doute ; 5110
 For to thy profit it wol turne,
 If he nomore with thee sojourne.
 In gret mischeef and sorwe sonken
 Ben hertis, that of love arn dronken,
 As thou peraventure knowen shal, 5115
 Whan thou hast lost †thy tyme al,
 And spent †thy youthe in ydilnesse,
 In waste, and woful lustinesse ;
 If thou maist live the tyme to see
 Of love for to delivered be, 5120
 Thy tyme thou shalt biwepe sore
 The whiche never thou maist restore.
 (For tyme lost, as men may see,
 For no-thing may recured be).
 And if thou scape yit, atte laste, 5125
 Fro Love, that hath thee so faste
 Knit and bounden in his lace,
 Certeyn, I holde it but a grace.
 For many oon, as it is seyn,
 Have lost, and spent also in veyn, 5130
 In his servyse, withoute socour,
 Body and soule, good, and tresour,
 Wit, and strengthe, and eek richesse,
 Of which they hadde never redresse.
 Thus taught and preched hath Resoun
 But Love spilte hir sermoun, 5135
 That was so impeded in my thought,
 That hir doctrine I sette at nought.
 And yit ne seide she never a dele,
 That I ne understode it wele, 5140
 Word by word, the mater al.
 But unto Love I was so thral,
 Which callith over-al his pray,
 He chasith so my thought †alway,
 And holdith myn herte undir his sele,
 As trust and trew as any stele ; 5145
 So that no devocioun
 Ne hadde I in the sermoun

Resoun, ne of hir rede ;
 no sojour in myn hede. 5150
 yede out at oon ere
 that other she dide lere ;
 me she lost hir lore,
 she me greved wondir sore.
 unto hir for ire I seide, 5155
 er, as I dide abraide :
 and is it your wille algate,
 not love, but that I hate
 n, as ye me teche ?
 do aftir your speche, 5160
 t ye seyn love is not good,
 ust I nedis say with mood,
 ve, in hatrede ay
 nd voide love away
 e, [and been] a sinful wrecche,
 f all that [love that] tecche. 5166
 ot go noon other gate,
 er must I love or hate.
 hate men of-newe
 an love, it wol me rewe, 5170
 ur preching semeth me,
 e no-thing ne preisith thee.
 good counseil, sikirly,
 chith me al-day, that I
 not Loves lore alowe ; 5175
 a fool, wolde you not trowe !
 e also ye han me taught
 love, that knowen is naught,
 I have herd you not reprove,
 ech other ; by your leve, 5180
 lde diffyne it me,
 gladly here, to see,
 rest, if I may lere
 ry loves the manere.'
 'Certis, freend, a fool art 5185
 hat thou no-thing wolt allowe
 thee] for thy profit say.
 I sey thee more, in fay ;
 a redy, at the leste,
 nplisshe thy requeste, 5190
 t wher it wol avayle ;
 e, perauntre, I shal travayle.
 er is in sondry wyse,
 I thee here devyse.
 love leful is and good ; 5195
 not that which makith thee wood,
 ngith thee in many a fit,
 isshith fro thee al thy wit,

It is so merveilous and queynt ;
 With such love be no more aqueynt. 5200

Comment Raison diffinist
 †Amistie.

'Love of Frendshipe also ther is,
 Which makith no man doon amis,
 Of wille knit bitwixe two,
 That wol not breke for wale ne wo ;
 Which long is lykly to contune, 5205
 Whan wille and goodis ben in comune ;
 Grounded by goddis ordinaunce,
 Hool, withoute discordaunce ;
 With hem holding comuntee
 Of al her goode in charitee, 5210
 That ther be noon excepcioun
 Thurgh chaunging of entencioun ;
 That ech helpe other at hir neede,
 And wyaly hele bothe word and dede ;
 Trewe of mening, devoid of slouth, 5215
 For wit is nought withoute trouthe ;
 So that the ton dar al his thought
 Seyn to his freend, and spare nought,
 As to him-silf, without dreding
 To be discovered by wreying. 5220
 For glad is that conjunccioun,
 Whan ther is noon suspeccioun
 [Ne lak in hem], whom they wolde prove
 That trew and parfit weren in love.
 For no man may be amiable, 5225
 But-if he be so ferme and stable,
 That fortune chaunge him not, ne blinde,
 But that his freend alwey him finde,
 Bothe pore and riche, in oo[n] [e]state.
 For if his freend, thurgh any gate, 5230
 Wol compleyne of his povertie,
 He shulde not byde so long, til he
 Of his helping him requere ;
 For good deed, don [but] thurgh prayere,
 Is sold, and bought to dere, y-wis, 5235
 To hert that of gret valour is.
 For hert fulfilled of gentilnesse
 Can yvel demene his distresse.
 And man that worthy is of name
 To asken often hath gret shame. 5240
 A good man brenneth in his thought
 For shame, whan he axeth ought.
 He hath gret thought, and dredith ay
 For his disese, whan he shal pray
 His freend, lest that he warned be, 5245

Til that he prove his stabiltee.
 But whan that he hath founden oon
 That trusty is and trew as stone,
 And [hath] assayed him at al,
 And found him stedfast as a wal, 5250
 And of his freendship be certeyne,
 He shal him shewe bothe joye and peyne,
 And al that [he] dar thinke or sey,
 Withoute shame, as he wel may.
 For how shulde he ashamed be 5255
 Of such oon as I tolde thee?
 For whan he woot his secree thought,
 The thridde shal knowe ther-of right
 nought,
 For tweyn in nombre is bot than three
 In every counsel and secree, 5260
 Repreve he dredeth never a del,
 Who that biset his word is wel.
 For every wys man, out of drede,
 Can kepe his tunge til he see nede:
 And foolles can not holde hir tunge, 5265
 A foolles belle is sone runge.
 Yit shal a trewe freend do more
 To helpe his felowe of his sore,
 And secoure him, whan he hath nede,
 In al that he may doon in dede, 5270
 And gladder [he] that he him plesith
 Than is his felowe that he esith.
 And if he do not his requeste,
 He shal as mochel him moleste
 As his felow, for that he 5275
 May not fulfille his voluntee
 [As] fully as he hath requered.
 If þbothe hertis Love hath fered,
 Joy and wo they shul depart,
 And take evenly ech his part. 5280
 Half his anoy he shal have ay,
 And comfort [him], what that he may,
 And of þhis blasse parte shal he,
 If love wol departed be.
 'And whilom of this þamitee 5285
 Spak Tullus in a ditee;
 þ" A man shulde maken his request
 Unto his freend, that is honest;
 And he goodly shulde it fulfille,
 But it the more were out of skile, 5290
 And otherwise not graunt therto,
 Except only in þeases two.
 If men his freend to deth wolde dryve,
 Lat him be bly to save his lyve.
 Also if men wolen him assayle, 5295

Of his wurship to make him faile,
 And hindren him of his renoun,
 Lat him, with ful entencionn,
 His dever doon in ech degree 5300
 That his freend ne shamed be,
 In this two þeases with his might,
 Taking no kepe to skile nor right,
 As ferre as love may him excuse,
 This oughte no man to refuse."
 This love that I have told to thee 5305
 Is no-thing contrarie to me;
 This wol I that thou folowe wel,
 And leve the tother everydel
 This love to vertu al attendith, 5310
 The tothir foolles blent and shendith
 'Another love also there is,
 That is contrarie unto this,
 Which desyre is so constreyned
 That [it] is but wille feyned;
 Away fro trouthe it doth so varie, 5315
 That to good love it is contrarie,
 For it maymeth, in many wyse,
 Syke hertis with covetyse,
 Al in winning and in profyt
 Sick love settith his delyt. 5320
 This love so hangeth in balannee
 That, if it lese his hope, perchaunce,
 Of lucre, that he is set upon,
 It wol faile, and quenche anon,
 For no man may be amorous, 5325
 Ne in his living vertuous,
 But [if] he love more, in mood,
 Men for hem-silt than for hir good.
 For love that profit doth abyde
 Is fals, and bit not in no tyde. 5330
 [This] love cometh of dame Fortune,
 That litel whyle wol contune,
 For it shal chaungen wonder sone,
 And take eclips right as the mone.
 Whan þshe is from us [y]-lot 5335
 Thurgh erthe, that bitwixe is set
 The sonne and hir, as it may falle,
 Be it in party, or in alle;
 The shadowe maketh her bennis merke,
 And hir hornes to shewe derke, 5340
 That part where she hath lost þthe lyght
 Of Phebus fully, and the sight,
 Til, whan the shadowe is overpast,
 She is enlumined agayn as faste, 5344
 þThurgh brightnesse of the sonne bennes
 That yeveth to hir ageyn hir lames.

That love is right of sich nature ;
Now is [it] fair, and now obscure,
Now bright, now clippy of manere,
And whylom dim, and whylom clere. 5350

As sone as Poverté ginneth take,
With mantel and [with] wedis blake
[It] hidith of Love the light away,
That into night it turneth day ;
It may not see Richesse shyne 5355
Til the blakke shadowes fyne.

For, whan Richesse shyneth bright,
Love recovereth ageyn his light ;
And whan it failith, he wol flit,
And as she þgroweth, so groweth it. 5360

‘ Of this love, here what I sey :—
The riche men are loved ay,
And namely tho that sparand bene,
That wol not wasse hir hertes clene
Of the filthe, nor of the vyce 5365
Of gredy brenning avaryce.

The riche man ful fond is, y-wis,
That weneth that he loved is.
If that his herte it undirstood,
It is not he, it is his good ; 5370
He may wel witen in his thought,
His good is loved, and he right nought.

For if he be a nigard eke,
Men wole not sette by him a leke,
But haten him ; this is the soth. 5375
Lo, what profit his catel doth !

Of every man that may him see,
It geteth him nought but enmitee.
But he amende þhim of that vyce,
And knowe him-silf, he is not wys. 5380

‘ Certis, he shulde ay freendly be,
To gete him love also ben free,
Or ellis he is not wyse ne sage
No more than is a gote ramage.

That he not loveth, his dede proveth,
Whan he his richesse so wel loveth, 5386
That he wol hyde it ay and spare,
His pore freendis seen forfare ;

To kepe þit ay is his purpose,
Til for drede his eyen close, 5390
And til a wikked deth him take ;

Him hadde lever asondre shake,
And late þhis limes asondre ryve,
Than leve his richesse in his lyve.

He thenkith parte it with no man ; 5395
Certayn, no love is in him than.
How shulde love within him be,

Whan in his herte is no pite ?
That he trespasseth, wel I wat,
For ech man knowith his estat ; 5400
For wel him þoughte be reproved
That loveth nought, ne is not loved.

‘ But sith we arn to Fortune comen,
And þhan our sermoun of hir nomen,
A wondir wil I telle thee now, 5405
Thou herdist never sich oon, I trow.

I not wher thou me leven shal,
Though sothfastnesse it be þin al,
As it is writen, and is sooth,
That unto men more profit doth 5410

The froward Fortune and contraire,
Than the swote and debonaire :
And if thee thinke it is doutable,
It is thurgh argument provable.

For the debonaire and softe 5415
Falsith and bigylith ofte ;
For liche a moder she can cherishe
And milken as doth a norys ;

And of hir goode to þhem deles,
And yeveth þhem part of her joweles,
With grete richesse and dignitee ; 5421
And hem she hoteth stabilitee

In a state that is not stable,
But chaunging ay and variable ;
And fedith þhem with glorie veyne, 5425
And worldly blisse noncerteyne.

Whan she þhem settith on hir whele,
Than wene they to be right wole,
And in so stable state withalle,
That never they wene for to falle. 5430

And whan they set so high[e] be,
They wene to have in certintee
Of hertly frendis þso gret noumbre,
That no-thing mighte her stat encombre ;

They truste hem so on every syde, 5435
Wening with þhem they wolde abyde
In every perel and mischaunce,
Withoute chaunge or variaunce,

Bothe of catel and of good ;
And also for to spende hir blood 5440
And alle hir membris for to spille,
Only to fulfille hir wille.

They maken it hole in many wyse,
And hoten hem hir ful servyse,
How sore that it do hem smerte, 5445
Into hir very naked sherte !

Herte and al, so hole they yeve,
For the tyme that they may live,

So that, with her flaterye,
 They maken foolis glorifye 5450
 Of hir wordis [greet] speking,
 And han †there-of a rejoysing,
 And trowe hem as the Evangyle;
 And it is al falsheed and gyle,
 As they shal afterwarde[s] see, 5455
 Whan they arn falle in povertē,
 And been of good and catel bare;
 Than shulde they seen who freendis
 ware.

For of an hundred, certeynly,
 Nor of a thousand ful scarsly, 5460
 Ne shal they fynde unnethis oon,
 Whan povertē is comen upon.
 For †this Fortune that I of telle,
 With men whan hir lust to dwelle,
 Makith hem to lese hir conisaunce, 5465
 And nourishith hem in ignoraunce.

‘But froward Fortune and perverse,
 Whan high estatīs she doth reverse,
 And maketh hem to tumble down
 Of hir whele, with sodeyn tourn, 5470
 And from hir richesse doth hem flee,
 And plongeth hem in povertē,
 As a stepmoder envyous,
 And leyeth a plastre dolorous
 Unto her hertis, wounded egre, 5475
 Which is not tempred with vinegre,
 But with povertē and indigence,
 †She sheweth, by experience,
 That she is Fortune verely
 In whom no man shulde affy, 5480
 Nor in hir yeftis have flaunce,
 She is so ful of variaunce.

Thus can she maken high and lowe,
 Whan they from richesse ar[e]n throwe,
 Fully to knowen, withouten were, 5485
 Freend of †effect, and freend of chere;
 And which in love weren trew and stable,
 And whiche also weren variable,
 After Fortune, hir goddessse,
 In povertē, outhē in richesse; 5490
 For al †she yeveth, out of drede,
 Unhappe bereveth it in dede;
 For Infortune †lat not oon
 Of freendis, whan Fortune is goon;
 I mene tho freendis that wol flee 5495
 Anoon as entreth povertē.
 And yit they wol not leve hem so,
 But in ech place where they go

They calle hem “wrecche,” scoorne and
 blame,
 And of hir mishappe hem diffame, 5500
 And, namely, siche as in richesse
 Pretendith most of stablenesse,
 Whan that they sawe him set onlofte,
 And weren of him socoured ofte,
 And most y-holpe in al hir nede: 5505
 But now they take no maner hede,
 But seyn, in voice of flaterye,
 That now apperith hir folye,
 Over-al where-so they fare,
 And singe, “Go, farewel feldefare.” 5510
 Alle suche freendis I beshrewe,
 For of [the] trewe ther be to fewe;
 But sothfast freendis, what so bityde,
 In every fortune wolen abyde;
 They han hir hertis in suche noblesse
 That they nil love for no richesse; 5516
 Nor, for that Fortune may hem sende,
 They wolen hem socoure and defende;
 And chaunge for softe ne for sore,
 For who is freend, loveth evermore. 5520
 Though men draweswerd his freend to slo,
 He may not hewe hir love atwo.
 But, in [the] case that I shal sey,
 For pride and ire lese it he may,
 And for reprove by nycetee, 5525
 And discovering of privitee,
 With tonge wounding, as feloun,
 Thurgh venemous detraccioun.
 Frend in this case wol gon his way,
 For no-thing greve him more ne may;
 And for nought ellis wol he flee, 5531
 If that he love in stabilitee.
 And certeyn, he is wel bigoon
 Among a thousand that fyndith oon.
 For ther may be no richesse, 5535
 Ageyns frendship, of worthinesse;
 For it ne may so high atteigne
 As may the valoure, sooth to seyne,
 Of him that loveth trew and wel;
 Frendship is more than is catel. 5540
 For freend in court ay better is
 Than peny in [his] purs, certis;
 And Fortune, mishapping,
 Whan upon men she is †falling,
 Thurgh misturning of hir chaunce, 5545
 And †casteth hem oute of balauce,
 She makith, thurgh hir adversitee,
 Men ful cleerly for to see

is freend in existence
 that is by apparence. 5550
 tane makith anon
 thy freendis fro thy foon,
 ance, right as it is ;
 h is more to preysse, y-wis,
 miche richesse and tresour ;
 doth profit and valour 5555
 and such adversitee,
 an doth prosperitee ;
 non yeveth conisaunce,
 othe ignoraunce. 5560
 us in povertie is in dede
 declared fro falschede ;
 e freendis it wol declare,
 e also, what wey they fare.
 he was in his richesse, 5565
 ndis, ful of doublenesse,
 e in many wyse
 body, and servyse.
 lde he than he tyeve to ha
 at
 n openly her thought, 5570
 ow hath so clerly seen ?
 bigyled he sholde have been
 addre than perceyved it,
 me nold not late him wit.
 avauntage doth him than, 5575
 it makith him a wys man,
 mischeef that he t'receyveth,
 h richesse that him deceyveth.
 riche ne makith nought
 on tresour set his thought ;
 me stont in suffisaunce 5580
 hing in habundance ;
 aunce al-only
 en to live richely.
 at hath [but] miche twayne,
 | value in his demeigne, 5585
 ore at ese, and more is riche,
 h he that is [so] chiche,
 e bern hath, soth to seyn,
 ed t'muwis of whete greyn, 5590
 e be chapman or marchaunt,
 of golde many besaunt.
 e geting he hath such wo,
 e keping drede also,
 vermore his bisynesse 5595
 cresse, and not to losse,
 gment and multiply.
 gh on hepis t'it lye him by,

Yit never shal make his richesse
 Asseth unto his gredinesse. 5600
 But the povre that recchith nought,
 Save of his lyfode, in his thought,
 Which that he getith with his travaille,
 He dredith nought that it shal faille,
 Though he have lytel worldis good, 5605
 Mete and drinke, and ey food,
 Upon his travel and living,
 And also suffisaunt clothing.
 Or if in syknesse that he falle,
 And lothe mete and drink withalle, 5610
 Though he have nought, his mete to by,
 He shal bithinke him hastely,
 To putte him out of al daunger,
 That he of mete hath no mister ;
 Or that he may with litel eke 5615
 Be founden, whyl that he is seke ;
 Or that men shul him t're in hast,
 To live, til his syknesse be past,
 To somme maysondewe biyde ; 5619
 He cast nought what shal him bityde.
 He thenkith nought that ever he shal
 Into any syknesse falla.
 ' And though it falle, as it may be,
 That al betyme spare shal he
 As mochel as shal to him suffice, 5625
 Whyl he is syke in any wyse,
 He doth [it], for that he wol be
 Content with his poverties
 Withoute nede of any man.
 So miche in litel have he can, 5630
 He is apayed with his fortune ;
 And for he nil be importune
 Unto no wight, ne onerous,
 Nor of hir goodes covetous ;
 Therefore he spareth, it may wel been,
 His pore estat for to sustene. 5636
 ' Or if him lust not for to spare,
 But suffrith furth, as nought ne ware,
 Atte last it hapneth, as it may,
 Right unto his laste day, 5640
 And t'taketh the world as it wolde be ;
 For ever in herte thankith he,
 The soner that [the] deeth him sle,
 To paradys the soner go
 He shal, there for to live in blisse, 5645
 Where that he shal no good misse.
 Thider he hopith god shal him sende
 After his wrecchid lyves ende.
 Pictagoras himsilf rehertes,

In a book that the Golden Verses 5650
 Is clepid, for the nobilitee
 Of the honourable ditee :—
 “ Than, whan thou gost thy body fro,
 Free in the air thou shalt up go,
 And leven al humanitee, 5655
 And purely live in deitee.”—
 He is a fool, withouten were,
 That trowith have his countre here.
 “ In erthe is not our countree,”
 That may these clerkis seyn and see 5660
 In Boece of Consolacioun,
 Where it is maked mencion
 Of our countree pleyn at the eye,
 By teching of philosophye,
 Where lewid men might lere wit, 5665
 Who-so that wolde translaten it.
 If he be sich that can wel live
 Aftir his rente may him yive,
 And not desyreth more to have,
 That may fro povertie him save : 5670
 A wys man seide, as we may seen,
 Is no man wrecched, but he it wene,
 Be he king, knight, or ribaud.
 And many a ribaud is mery and baud,
 That swinkith, and berith, bothe day and
 night, 5675
 Many a burthen of gret might,
 The whiche doth him lasse offense,
 For he suffrith in pacience.
 They laugh and daunce, trippe and singe,
 And ley not up for her living, 5680
 But in the tavern al dispendith
 The winning that god hem sendith.
 Than goth he, fardels for to bere,
 With as good chere as he dide ere ;
 To swinke and traveile he not feynith,
 For for to robben he disdeynith ; 5686
 But right anon, aftir his swinke,
 He goth to tavern for to drinke.
 Alle these ar riche in abundaunce,
 That can thus have suffisaunce 5690
 Wel more than can an usurere,
 As god wel knowith, withoute were.
 For an usurer, so god me see,
 Shal never for richesse riche bee,
 But evermore pore and indigent, 5695
 Scarce, and gredy in his entent.
 ‘ For soth it is, whom it displese,
 Ther may no marchaunt live at ese ;
 His herte in sich a þwere is set,

That it quik brenneth [more] to get, 5700
 Ne never shal þenough have geten ;
 Though he have gold in gerner yeten,
 For to be nedý he dredith sore.
 Wherfore to geten more and more
 He set his herte and his desire ; 5705
 So hote he brennith in the fire
 Of coveitise, that makith him wood
 To purchase other mennes good.
 He undirfongith a gret payne,
 That undirtakith to drinke up Seyne ;
 For the more he drinkith, ay 5711
 The more he leveth, the soth to say.
 † This is the thirst of fals geting,
 That last ever in coveiting,
 And the anguisse and distresse 5715
 With the fire of gredinesse.
 She fighteth with him ay, and stryveth,
 That his herte asondre ryveth ;
 Such gredinesse him assaylith,
 That whan he most hath, most he faylith.
 ‘ Phisiciens and advocates 5721
 Gon right by the same yates ;
 They selle hir science for winning,
 And haunte hir crafte for greet geting.
 Hir winning is of such swetnesse, 5725
 That if a man falle in sikenesse,
 They are ful glad, for hir encrease ;
 For by hir wille, withoute lees,
 Everiche man shulde be seke, 5729
 And though they dye, they set not a leke.
 After, whan they the gold have take,
 Ful litel care for hem they make.
 They wolde that fourty were seke at onis,
 Ye, two hundred, in flesh and bonis,
 And yit two thousand, as I gesse, 5735
 For to encresen her richesse.
 They wol not worchen, in no wyse,
 But for lucre and coveityse ;
 For fisyk ginneth first by fy,
 The fysycien also sothely ; 5740
 And sithen it goth fro fy to þey ;
 To truste on hem, it is folý ;
 For they nil, in no maner gree,
 Do right nought for charitee.
 ‘ Eke in the same secte are set 5745
 Alle tho that prechen for to get
 Worshipes, honour, and richesse.
 Her hertis arn in greet distresse,
 That folk [ne] live not holily.
 But aboven al, specialy, 5750

men [for] veynglorie,
 god have no memorie,
 ypocrites trace,
 soules deth purchace,
 that shewen holynesse, 5755
 be fulle of cursidnesse.
 the apostles twelve,
 other and hem-selve;
 e gyler than.
 of a cursed man, 5760
 other may profyte,
 leth not a myte;
 predicacioun
 el entencioun.
 ailith his preching, 5765
 other with his teching;
 ey good ensauple take,
 with veynglorie shake.
 leven these prechoures,
 hem that in her toures 5770
 gold, and faste shette,
 ron her herte sette.
 love god, ne drede
 ore than it is nede,
 agges sore it binde, 5775
 nne, and of the winde;
 p more than nede ware,
 een pore folk forfare,
 ye, and for cold quake;
 vengeaunce therof take. 5780
 nischeves hem assailith,
 gadring ay travaylith;

With moche peyne they winne richesse;
 And drede hem holdith in distresse,
 To kepe that they gadre faste; 5785
 With sorwe they leve it at the laste;
 With sorwe they bothe dye and live,
 That to richesse her hertis yive,
 And in defaute of love it is,
 As it shewith ful wel, y-wis. 5790
 For if these gredy, the sothe to seyn,
 Loveden, and were loved ageyn,
 And good love regned over-alle,
 Such wikkidnesse ne shulde falle;
 But he shulde yeve that most good had
 To hem that weren in nede bistad, 5796
 And live withoute fals usure,
 For charitee ful clene and pure.
 If they hem yeve to goodnesse,
 Defending hem from ydelnesse, 5800
 In al this world than pore noon
 We shulde finde, I trowe, not oon.
 But chaunged is this world unstable;
 For love is over-al vendable.
 We see that no man loveth now 5805
 But for winning and for prow;
 And love is thrallid in servage
 Whan it is sold for avauntage;
 Yit wommen wol hir bodies selle; 5809
 Suche soules goth to the devel of helle.'

*[Here ends l. 5170 of the F. text. A
 great gap follows. The next line an-
 swers to l. 10717 of the same.]*

FRAGMENT C.

had told hem his entente,
 to councel wente;
 tences they fille,
 they seide hir wille:
 word they accorded, 5815
 rd to Love recorded.
 they, 'we been at oon,
 rd of everichoon,
 hesse al-only,
 hath ful hauteynly, 5820
 castel and nil assaile,
 troke in this bataile,
 e mace, spere, ne knyf,

For man that speketh or bereth the lyf,
 And blameth your empryse, y-wis, 5825
 And from our hoost departed is,
 (At leeste wey, as in this plyte,)
 So hath she this man in dispyte;
 For she seith he ne loved hir never,
 And therfor she wol hate him ever. 5830
 For he wol gadre no tresore,
 He hath hir wrath for evermore.
 He agilde hir never in other caas,
 Lo, here al hoolly his trespas!
 She seith wel, that this other day 5835
 He asked hir leve to goon the way

That is clepid To-moche-Yeving,
 And spak ful faire in his praying ;
 But whan he prayde hir, pore was he,
 Therefore she warned him the entree. 5840
 Ne yit is he not thriven so
 That he hath geten a peny or two,
 That quitly is his owne in hold.
 Thus hath Richesse us alle told ;
 And whan Richesse us this recorded, 5845
 Withouten hir we been accorded.

' And we finde in our accordaunce,
 That False-Semblant and Abstinaunce,
 With alle the folk of hir bataile,
 Shulle at the hinder gate assayle, 5850
 That Wikkid-Tunge hath in keping,
 With his Normans, fulle of jangling.
 And with hem Curtesie and Largesse,
 That shulle shewe hir hardinesse
 To the olde wyf that þkepeth so harde
 Fair-Welcoming within her warde. 5856
 Than shal Delyte and Wel-Helinge
 Fonde Shame adoun to bringe ;
 With al hir hoost, erly and late,
 They shulle assailen þthilke gate. 5860
 Agaynes Drede shal Hardinesse
 Assayle, and also Sikernesse,
 With al the folk of hir leding,
 That never wist what was fleing.

' Fraunchyse shal fighte, and eek Pitee,
 With Daunger ful of crueltee. 5866
 Thus is your hoost ordeyned wel ;
 Doun shal the castel every del,
 If everiche do his entente,
 So that Venus be presente, 5870
 Your moder, ful of vassalage,
 That can y-nough of such usage ;
 Withouten hir may no wight spede
 This werk, neither for word ne dede.
 Therefore is good ye for hir sende, 5875
 For thurgh hir may this werk amende.'

Amour. 'Lordinges, my moder, the
 goddesse,
 That is my lady, and my maistresse,
 Nis not [at] al at my willing,
 Ne doth not al my desyring. 5880
 Yit can she som-tyme doon labour,
 Whan that hir lust, in my socour,
 þAl my nedes for to acheve,
 But now I thenke hir not to greve.
 My moder is she, and of childhede 5885
 I bothe worshiþe hir, and eek drede ;

For who that dredeth sire ne dame
 Shal it aby in body or name.
 And, natheles, yit canne we
 Sende after hir, if nede be ; 5890
 And were she nigh, she comen wolde,
 I trowe that no-thing might hir holde.

' My moder is of greet prowessse ;
 She hath tan many a forteresse,
 That cost hath many a pound er this, 5895
 Ther I nas not present, y-wis ;
 And yit men seide it was my dede ;
 But I come never in that stede ;
 Ne me ne lyketh, so mote I thee,
 Such þtours take withoute me. 5900
 For-why me thenketh that, in no wyse,
 It may ben cleped but marchandise.

' Go bye a courser, blak or whyte,
 And pay therfor ; than art thou quyte.
 The marchaunt oweth thee right nought.
 Ne thou him, whan thou [hast] it bought.
 I wol not selling clepe yeving, 5907
 For selling axeth no guerdoning ;
 Here lyth no thank, ne no meryte,
 That oon goth from that other al quyte.
 But this selling is not semblable : 5911
 For, whan his hors is in the stable,
 He may it selle ageyn, pardee,
 And winne on it, such hap may be ;
 Al may the man not lese, y-wis, 5915
 For at the leest the skin is his.
 Or elles, if it so bityde
 That he wol kepe his hors to ryde,
 Yit is he lord ay of his hora.
 But thilke chaffare is wel wors, 5920
 There Venus entremeteth nought ;
 For who-so such chaffare hath bought,
 He shal not worchen so wysly,
 That he ne shal lese al outerly
 Bothe his money and his chaffare : 5925
 But the seller of the ware
 The prys and profit have shal.
 Certeyn, the byer shal lese al ;
 For he ne can so dere it bye
 To have lordship and ful maistrye, 5930
 Ne have power to make letting
 Neither for yift ne for preching.
 That of his chaffare, maugre his,
 Another shal have as moche, y-wis,
 If he wol yeve as moche as he, 5935
 Of what contrey so that he be ;
 Or for right nought, so happe may,

an flater hir to hir pay.
 an suche marchaunts wyse?
 : foolles in every wyse, 5940
 they bye such thing wilfully,
 they lese her good þfully.
 theles, this dar I saye,
 der is not wont to paye,
 is neither so fool ne nyce, 5945
 remete hir of sich vyce.
 ste wel, he shal paye al,
 pente of his bargeyn shal,
 Poverté put him in distresse,
 e he scoler to Richesse, 5950
 for me in gret yerning,
 she assenteth to my willing.
 . [by] my moder seint Venus,
 hir fader Saturnus,
 ir engendrid by his lyf, 5955
 t upon his wedded wyf!
 l I more unto you swere,
 te this thing the seurere;
 r that feith, and that þleautee
 to alle my brethren free, 5960
 ch ther nis wight under heven
 an her fadres names neven,
 ers and so many ther be
 ith my moder have be privee!
 lde I swere, for sikernesse, 5965
 le of helle to my witnesse,
 inke I not this yeer clarree,
 I lye, or forsworn be!
 the goddes the usage is,
 ho-so him forswereth amis, 5970
 at yeer drinke no clarree).
 ve I sworn y-nough, pardee;
 swere me, than am I lorn,
 vol never be forsworn.
 chesse hath me failed here, 5975
 al abyte that trespas þdere,
 te wey, but [she] hir arme
 werd, or sparth, or gisarme.
 tes, sith she loveth not me,
 lke tyme that she may see 5980
 stel and the tour to-shake,
 tyme she shal awake.
 y grype a riche man,
 so pulle him, if I can,
 e shal, in a fewe stoundes, 5985
 le his markes and his poundes.
 him make his pens outalinge,
 they in his gerner springe;

Our maydens shal eek plukke him so,
 That him shal neden fetheres mo, 5990
 And make him selle his lond to spende,
 But he the bet cunne him defende.
 ' Pore men han maad hir lord of me;
 Although they not so mighty be,
 That they may fede me in delyt, 5995
 I wol not have hem in despyt.
 No good man hateth hem, as I gesse;
 For chynche and feloun is Richesse,
 That so can chase hem and dispyse,
 And hem defoule in sondry wyse. 6000
 They loven ful bet, so god me spede,
 Than doth the riche, chinchy þgnede,
 And been, in good feith, more stable
 And trewer, and more serviable;
 And therfore it suffyseth me 6005
 Hir goode herte, and hir þleautee.
 They han on me set al hir thought,
 And therfore I forgete hem nought.
 I þwolde hem bringe in greet noblesse,
 If that I were god of Richesse, 6010
 As I am god of Love, sothly,
 Such routhe upon hir pleynt have I.
 Therfore I must his socour be,
 That peyneth him to serven me;
 For if he deyde for love of this, 6015
 Than semeth in me no love ther is.'
 ' Sir,' seide they, 'sooth is, every del,
 That ye reherce, and we wot wel
 Thilk oth to holde is resonable;
 For it is good and covenable, 6020
 That ye on riche men han sworn.
 For, sir, this wot we wel biforn;
 If riche men doon you homage,
 That is as foolles doon outrage;
 But ye shul not forsworen be, 6025
 Ne let therfore to drinke clarree,
 Or piment maked fresh and newe.
 Ladyes shulle hem such pepir brewe,
 If that they falle into hir laas,
 That they for wo mowe seyn 'Allas!'
 Ladyes shuln ever so curteis be, 6031
 That they shal quyte your oth al free.
 Ne seketh never other vicaire,
 For they shal speke with hem so faire
 That ye shal holde you payed ful wel,
 Though ye you medle never a del. 6036
 Lat ladies worche with hir thinges,
 They shal hem telle so fele tydinges,
 And move hem eke so many requestis

By flattery, that not honest is, 6040
 And therto yeve hem such thankinges,
 What with kissing, and with talkinges,
 That certes, if they trowed be,
 Shal never love hem lond ne fee
 That it nil as the moeble fare, 6045
 Of which they first delivered are.
 Now may ye telle us al your wille,
 And we your hestes shal fulfille.

'But Fals-Semblant dar not, for drede
 Of you, sir, medle him of this dede, 6050
 For he seith that ye been his fo ;
 He not, if ye wol worche him wo.
 Wherefore we pray you alle, beau-sire,
 That ye forgive him now your ire,
 And that he may dwelle, as your man,
 With Abstinence, his dere lemman ; 6056
 This our accord and our wil now.'

'Parfay,' seide Love, 'I graunte it yow ;
 I wol wel holde him for my man ; 6059
 Now lat him come : ' and he forth ran.
 'Fals-Semblant,' quod Love, 'in this wyse
 I take thee here to my servyse,
 That thou our freendis helpe alway,
 And thindre hem neither night ne day,
 But do thy might hem to releve, 6065
 And eek our enemies that thou greve.
 Thyn be this might, I graunt it thee,
 My king of harlotes shalt thou be ;
 We wol that thou have such honour.
 Certeyn, thou art a fals traitour, 6070
 And eek a thief ; sith thou were born,
 A thousand tyme thou art forsworn.
 But, natheles, in our hering,
 To putte our folk out of douting,
 I bid thee teche hem, wostow how ? 6075
 By somme general signe now,
 In what place thou shalt founden be,
 If that men had mister of thee ;
 And how men shal thes best espye,
 For thee to knowe is greet maistrye ; 6080
 Tel in what place is thyn haunting.'

F. Sem. 'Sir, I have fele dyvers woning,
 That I kepe not rehersed be,
 So that ye wolde respyten me.
 For if that I telle you the sothe, 6085
 I may have harm and shame bothe.
 If that my felowes wisten it,
 My tales shulden me be quit ;
 For certeyn, they wolde hate me,
 If ever I knewe hir cruelte ; 6090

For they wolde over-al holde hem stille
 Of trouthe that is ageyn hir wille ;
 Suche tales kepen they not here.
 I might eftsone bye it ful dere,
 If I seide of hem any thing, 6095
 That ought displeseth to hir hering.
 For what word that hem prikke or byteth,
 In that word noon of hem delyteth,
 Al were it gospel, the evangyle,
 That wolde reprove hem of hir gyle, 6100
 For they are cruel and hauteyn.
 And this thing wot I wel, certeyn,
 If I speke ought to peire hir loos,
 Your court shal not so wel be cloos,
 That they ne shal wite it atte last. 6105
 Of good men am I nought agast,
 For they wol taken on hem no-thing,
 Whan that they knowe al my mening ;
 But he that wol it on him take,
 He wol himself suspicious make, 6110
 That he his lyf let covertly,
 In Gyle and in Ipocrisy,
 That me engendred and yaf fostring.'

'They made a ful good engendring,'
 Quod Love, 'for who-so soothly telle, 6115
 They engendred the devel of helle !

'But nedely, how-so-ever it be,'
 Quod Love, 'I wol and charge thee,
 To telle anon thy woning-places,
 Hering ech wight that in this place is ;
 And what lyf that thou livest also, 6120
 Hyde it no lenger now ; wherto ?
 Thou most discover al thy wurching,
 How thou servest, and of what thing,
 Though that thou shuldest for thy soth-
 sawe 6125

Ben al to-beten and to-drawe ;
 And yit art thou not wont, pardee.
 But natheles, though thou beten be,
 Thou shalt not be the first, that so
 Hath for soth-sawe suffred wo.' 6130

F. Sem. 'Sir, sith that it may lyken
 you,
 Though that I shulde be slayn right now,
 I shal don your comaundement,
 For therto have I gret talent.' 6134

Withouten wordes mo, right than,
 Fals-Semblant his sermon bigan,
 And seide hem thus in audience :—
 'Barouns, tak hede of my sentence !
 That wight that list to have knowing

Of Fals-Semblant, ful of flatering, 6140
 He must in worldly folk him seke,
 And, certes, in the cloistres eke ;
 I wone no-where but in hem tweye ;
 But not lyk even, sooth to seye ;
 Shortly, I wol herberwe me 6145
 There I hope best to hulstred be ;
 And certeynly, sikereest hyding
 Is underneth humblest clothing.
 ' Religious folk ben ful covert ;
 Seculer folk ben more appert. 6150
 But natheles, I wol not blame
 Religious folk, ne hem diffame,
 In what habit that ever they go :
 Religious humble, and trewe also,
 Wol I not blame, ne dispyse, 6155
 But I nil love it, in no wyse.
 I mene of fals religious,
 That stoute ben, and malicious ;
 That woken in an abit go,
 And setten not hir herte therto. 6160
 ' Religious folk ben al pitous ;
 Thou shalt not seen oon dispitous.
 They loven no pryde, ne no stryf,
 But humbly they wol lede hir lyf ;
 With þswich folk wol I never be. 6165
 And if I dwelle, I feyne me
 I may wel in her abit go ;
 But me were lever my nekke atwo,
 Than þlete a purpose that I take,
 What covenannt that ever I make. 6170
 I dwelle with hem that proude be,
 And fulle of wyles and subtelte ;
 That worship of this world coveyten,
 And grete þnedes cunne espleyten ; 6174
 And goon and gadren greet pitaunces,
 And purchase hem the acqueyntaunces
 Of men that mighty lyf may leden ;
 And feyne hem pore, and hem-self feden
 With gode morcels delicious,
 And drinken good wyn precious, 6180
 And preche us povert and distresse,
 And flashen hem-self greet richesse
 With wyly nettis that they caste :
 It wol come foul out at the laste.
 They ben fro clene religioun went ; 6185
 They make the world an argument
 That hath a foul conclusioun.
 " I have a robe of religioun,
 Than am I al religious : "
 This argument is al roignons ; 6190

It is not worth a croked brere ;
 Habit ne maketh þmonk ne frere,
 But clene lyf and devocioun
 Maketh gode men of religioun.
 Nathelesse, ther can noon answer, 6195
 How high that ever his heed he shere
 With rasour whetted never so kene,
 That Gyle in braunches cut thrittene ;
 Ther can no wight distincte it so,
 That he dar sey a word therto. 6200
 ' But what herberwe that ever I take,
 Or what semblant that ever I make,
 I mene but gyle, and folowe that ;
 For right no mo than Gibbe our cat
 [þFro myce and rattes went his wyle],
 Ne entende I [not] but to þbegyle ; 6206
 Ne no wight may, by my clothing,
 Wite with what folk is my dwelling,
 Ne by my wordis yet, pardee,
 So softe and so plesaunt they be. 6210
 Bihold the dedes that I do ;
 But thou be blind, thou oughtest so ;
 For, varie hir wordis fro hir dede,
 They thenke on gyle, without[en] drede,
 What maner clothing that they were,
 Or what estat that ever they bere, 6216
 Lered or lewd, lord or lady,
 Knight, squier, burgeis, or bayly.'
 Right thus whyl Fals-Semblant ser-
 moneth,
 Eftsones Love him aresoneth, 6220
 And brak his tale in the speking
 As though he had him told lesing ;
 And seide : ' What, devel, is that I here ?
 What folk hast thou us nempned here ?
 May men finde religioun 6225
 In worldly habitacioun ? '
 F. Sem. ' Ye, sir ; it foloweth not that
 they
 Shulde lede a wikked lyf, parfey,
 Ne not therfore her soules lese,
 That hem to worldly clothes chese ; 6230
 For, certes, it were gret pitee.
 Men may in seculer clothes see
 Florisshen holy religioun.
 Ful many a seynt in feeld and toun,
 With many a virgin glorious, 6235
 Devout, and ful religious,
 Had deyed, that þcomun clothe ay beren,
 Yit seyntes never-the-les they weren.
 I coude reken you many a ten ;

Ye, wel nigh alle these holy wimmen,
 That men in chirches herie and seke, 6241
 Bothe maydens, and these wyves eke,
 That baren þmany a fair child here,
 Wered alwey clothis seculere,
 And in the same dyden they, 6245
 That seyntes weren, and been alwey.
 The eleven thousand maydens dere,
 That beren in heven hir cierges clere,
 Of which men rede in chirche, and singe,
 Were take in seculer clothing, 6250
 Whan they resseyved martirdom,
 And wonnen heven unto her hoom.
 Good herte maketh the gode thought;
 The clothing yeveth ne reveth nought.
 The gode thought and the worching, 6255
 That maketh þreligioun flowring,
 Ther lyth the good religioun
 After the right entencioun.

‘ Who-so toke a wethers skin,
 And wrapped a gredy wolf therin, 6260
 For he shulde go with lambes whyte,
 Wenest thou not he wolde hem byte?
 Yis! never-the-las, as he were wood,
 He wolde hem wery, and drinke the
 blood;

And wel the rather hem disceyve, 6265
 For, sith they coude not perceyve
 His treget and his crueltee,
 They wolde him folowe, al wolde he flee.

‘ If ther be wolves of sich hewe
 Amonges these apostlis newe, 6270
 Thou, holy chirche, thou mayst be wayled!
 Sith that thy citee is assayled
 Thourgh knightes of thyn owne table,
 God wot thy lordship is doutable!
 If they enforce [hem] it to winne, 6275
 That shulde defende it fro withinne,
 Who might defence ayens hem make?
 Without[en] stroke it mot be take
 Of trepeget or mangonel;
 Without displaying of pensel. 6280

And if god nil don it socour,
 But lat [hem] renne in this colour,
 Thou moost thyn heestes laten be.
 Than is thor nought, but yelde thee,
 Or yeve hem tribute, doutelees, 6285
 And holde it of hem to have pees:
 But gretter harm bityde thee,
 That they al maister of it be.
 Wel conne they scorne thee withal;

By day stuffen they the wal, 6290
 And al the night they mynen there.
 Nay, thou þmost planten elleswhere
 Thyn impes, if thou wolt fruyt have;
 Abyd not there thy-self to save.

‘ But now pees! here I turne ageyn;
 I wol no more of this thing þseyn, 6295
 If I may passen me herby;
 I mighte maken you wery.
 But I wol heten you alway
 To helpe your freendes what I may, 6300
 So they wollen my company;
 For they be shent al-outerly
 But-if so falle, that I be
 Oft with hem, and they with me.
 And eek my lemman mot they serve, 6305
 Or they shul not my love deserve.
 Forsothe, I am a fals traitour;
 God jugged me for a theef trichour;
 Forsworn I am, but wel nygh non
 Wot of my gyle, til it be don. 6310

‘ Thourgh me hath many oon deth
 resseyved,

That my treget never aperceyved;
 And yit resseyveth, and shal resseyve,
 That my falsnesse þnever aperceyve:
 But who-so doth, if he wys be, 6315
 Him is right good be war of me.
 But so sligh is the [þdeceyving
 That to hard is the] aperceyving.
 For Protheus, that coude him change
 In every shap, hoomly and straunge, 6320
 Coude never sich gyle ne tresoun
 As I; for I com never in toun
 Ther-as I mighte knowen be,
 Though men me bothe might here and see.
 Ful wel I can my clothes chaunge, 6325
 Take oon, and make another straunge.
 Now am I knight, now chasteleyn;
 Now prelat, and now chapeleyn;
 Now prest, now clerk, and now forstere;
 Now am I maister, now scolere; 6330
 Now monk, now chanoun, now baily;
 What-ever mister man am I.
 Now am I prince, now am I page,
 And can by herte every langage.
 Som-tyme am I hoor and old; 6335
 Now am I yong, [and] stout, and bold;
 Now am I Robert, now Robyn;
 Now frere Menour, now Iacobyn;
 And with me folweth my loteby,

on me solas and company, 6340
 hight dame † Abstinence-Streyned,
 any a queynt array [y]-feyned.
 as it cometh to hir lyking,
 alle al hir desiring.
 yme a wommans cloth take I; 6345
 am I mayde, now lady.
 yme I am religious;
 lyk an anker in an hous.
 yme am I prioresse,
 now a nonne, and now abbesse; 6350
 go thurgh alle regionns,
 g alle religiounns.
 what ordre that I am sworn,
 the strawe, and †lete the corn;
 lynde folk [ther] I onhabite, 6355
 no-more but hir abite.
 wol ye more? in every wyse,
 as me list, I me disgysa.
 an I bere me under weed;
 is my word to my deed. 6360
 make I in my trappes falle,
 th my pryvileges, alle
 ben in Cristendom alyve.
 assoile, and I may shryve,
 no prelat may lette me, 6365
 k, wher-ever they founde be:
 no prelat may don so,
 the pope be, and no mo,
 made thilk establisshing.
 is not this a propre thing? 6370
 were my sleightes aperceyved,
 hulde I more been receyved]
 as wont; and wostow why?
 lide hem a tregetry;
 erof yeve I litel tale, 6375
 the silver and the male;
 e I preched and eek shriven,
 e I take, so have †me yiven,
 h hir foly, husbond and wyf,
 lede right a joly lyf, 6380
 h simplesse of the prelacye;
 now not al my tregetrye.
 for as moche as man and wyf
 shewe hir paroche-prest hir lyf
 yeer, as seith the book, 6385
 wight his housel took,
 ave I pryvileges large,
 ay of moche thing discharge;
 may seye right thus, pardee:—
 reest, in shrift I telle it thee, 6390

That he, to whom that I am shriven,
 Hath me assoiled, and me yiven
 Penaunce soothly, for my sinne,
 Which that I fond me gilty inne;
 Ne I ne have never entencioun 6395
 To make double confessioun,
 Ne reherce eft my shrift to thee;
 O shrift is right y-nough to me.
 This oughte thee suffyce wel,
 Ne be not rebel never-a-del; 6400
 For certes, though thou haddest it sworn,
 I wot no prest ne prelat born
 That may to shrift eft me constreyne.
 And if they don, I wol me pleyne;
 For I wot where to pleyne wel. 6405
 Thou shalt not streyne me a del,
 Ne enforce me, ne †ytit me trouble,
 To make my confessioun double.
 Ne I have none affeccoun
 To have double absolucioun. 6410
 The firste is right y-nough to me,
 This latter assoiling quyte I thee.
 I am unbounde; what mayst thou finde
 More of my sinnes me to unbinde?
 For he, that might hath in his hond, 6415
 Of alle my sinnes me unbond.
 And if thou wolt me thus constreyne,
 That me mot nedis on thee pleyne,
 There shal no jugge imperial,
 Ne bisshop, ne official, 6420
 Don jugement on me; for I
 Shal gon and pleyne me openly
 Unto my shrift-fader newe,
 (That hight not Frere Wolf untrewe!)
 And he shal †chevise him for me, 6425
 For I trowe he can hampre thee.
 But, lord! he wolde be wrooth withalle,
 If men him wolde Frere Wolf calle!
 For he wolde have no pacience,
 But don al cruel vengeaunce! 6430
 He wolde his might don at the leest,
 [Ne] no-thing spare for goddes heest.
 And, god so wis be my socour,
 But thou yeve me my Saviour
 At Ester, whan it lyketh me, 6435
 Withoute presing more on thee,
 I wol forth, and to him goon,
 And he shal housel me anon,
 For I am out of thy grucching;
 I kepe not dele with thee no-thing." 6440
 Thus may he shryve him, that forsaketh

His parochē-prest, and to me taketh.
 And if the prest wol him refuse,
 I am ful redy him to accuse,
 And him punisse and hampre so, 6445
 That he his chirche shal forgo.

‘But who-so hath in his feling
 The consequence of such shryving,
 Shal seen that prest may never have might
 To knowe the conscience aright 6450
 Of him that is under his cure.

And this ageyns holy scripture,
 That biddeth every herde honeste
 Have verrey knowing of his beste.
 But pore folk that goon by strete, 6455
 That have no gold, ne sommes grote,
 Hem wolde I lete to hir prelates,
 Or lete hir prestes knowe hir states,
 For to me right nought yeve they.’

Amour. ‘And why þis it?’

F. Sem. ‘For they no may. 6460
 They ben so bare, I take no keep;
 But I wol have the fatte sheep;—
 Lat parish prestes have the lene,
 I yeve not of hir harm a bene!
 And if that prelats grucchen it, 6465
 That oughten þwroth be in hir wit,
 To lese her fatte bestes so,
 I shal yeve hem a stroke or two,
 That they shal lesen with [the] force,
 Ye, bothe hir mytre and hir croce. 6470
 Thus jape I hem, and have do longe,
 My priveleges been so stronge.’

‘Fals-Semblant wolde have stinted here,
 But Love ne made him no such chere
 That he was wery of his sawe; 6475
 But for to make him glad and fawe,
 He seide:—‘Tel on more specialy,
 How that thou servest untrewly.
 Tel forth, and shame thee never a del;
 For as thyn abit shewith wel, 6480
 Thou þsemest an holy heremyte.’

F. Sem. ‘Soth is, but I am an ypocryte.’

Amour. ‘Thou gost and prechest pover-
 tee?’

F. Sem. ‘Ye, sir; but richesse hath
 poustee.’

Amour. ‘Thou prechest abstinence
 also?’ 6485

F. Sem. ‘Sir, I wol fillen, so mote I go,
 My paunche of gode mete and wyne,
 As shulde a maister of divyne;

For how that I me pover feyne,
 Yit alle pore folk I disdeyne. 6490

‘I love þbet the acqueyntaunce
 Ten tymes, of the king of Fraunce,
 Than of þpore man of mylde mode,
 Though that his soule be also gode.
 For whan I see beggers quaking, 6495
 Naked on mixens al stinking,
 For hungro crye, and eek for care,
 I entremete not of hir fare.
 They been so pore, and ful of pyne,
 They might not ones yeve me þdyne, 6500
 For they have no-thing but hir lyf;
 What shuldo ho yeve that likketh his
 knyf?

It is but foly to entremete,
 To seke in houndes nest fat mete.
 Let bere hem to the spitel anon, 6505
 But, for me, comfort gete they noon.
 But a riche sike usurero

Wolde I visyte and drawe nere;
 Him wol I comforte and rehote,
 For I hope of his gold to gete. 6510
 And if that wikked deth him have,
 I wol go with him to his grave.

And if ther any reprove me,
 Why that I lete the pore be,
 Wostow how I þmot ascape? 6515

I sey, and swerð him ful rape,
 That riche men han more tecches
 Of sinne, than han pore wrecches,
 And han of counseil more mister;
 And therefore I wol drawe hem ner. 6520

But as gret hurt, it may so be,
 Hath þsoul in right gret povertē,
 As soul in gret richesse, forsothe,
 Al-be-it that they hurten bothe.

For richesse and mendicitees 6525
 Ben cleped two extremitees;
 The mene is cleped suffisaunce,
 Ther lyth of vertu the aboundaunce.

For Salamon, ful wel I woot,
 In his Parables us wroot, 6530

As it is knowe of many a wight,
 In his þthrittethe chapitre right:

‘Godel, thou me kepe, for thy poustoe,
 Fro richesse and mendicitee;

For if a riche man him dressoe 6535
 To thenke to moche on [his] richesse,
 His herte on that so fer is set,
 That he his creatour foryet;

that þat þat wol ay greve,
 le I by his word him leve? 6540
 hat he nis a micher,
 or elles þat god is lyer."
 Salamon[es] sawes;
 le writen in no lawes,
 ly in our Cristen lay— 6545
 a 'ye,' I dar sey 'nay')—
 , ne his apostles dere,
 t they walkede in erthe here,
 r seen her bred begging,
 olde beggen for no-thing. 6550
 thus were men wont to teche;
 is wyse wolde it preche
 res of divinitee
 in Paris the citee.
 men wolde ther-geyn appose
 l text, and lete the glose, 6556
 sone assoiled be;
 nay wel the sothe see,
 le, they mighte axe a thing
 rth, without begging. 6560
 veren goddes herdes dere,
 of soules hadden here,
 e no-thing begge hir fode;
 Crist was don on rode,
 þat propre hondes they wrought,
 travel, and elles nought, 6566
 en all hir sustenance,
 on forth in hir penaunce,
 amenaunt þat yve away
 ore þat folk alwey. 6570
 er bidden tour ne halle,
 in houses smale withalle.
 man, that can and may,
 th his honde and body alway
 n his food in laboring, 6575
 ave rent or sich a thing,
 he be religious,
 o serven curious.
 e he don, or do trespas,
 e in certeyn cas, 6580
 a reherce, if mister be,
 , whan the tyme I see.
 he book of Seynt Austin,
 per or perchemin, 6584
 he writ of these worchinges,
 t seen that non excusinges
 an ne shulde seke
 , ne by dedes eke,
 he be religious,

And god to serven curious, 6590
 That he ne shal, so mote I go,
 With propre hondes and body also,
 Gete his food in laboring,
 If he ne have propretee of thing.
 Yit shulde he selle al his substaunce, 6595
 And with his swink have sustenance,
 If he be parfit in bountee.
 Thus han tho bookes tolde me:
 For he that wol gon ydilly,
 And useth it ay besily 6600
 To haunten other mennes table,
 He is a trechour, ful of fable;
 Ne he ne may, by gode resoun,
 Excuse him by his orisoun.
 For men bihoveth, in som gyse, 6605
 þat Som-tyme leven goddes servyse
 To gon and purchasen her nede.
 Men mote eten, that is no drede,
 And slepe, and eek do other thing;
 So longe may they leve praying. 6610
 So may they eek hir prayer blinne,
 While that they werke, hir mete to winne.
 Seynt Austin wol therto accorde,
 In thilke book that I recorde.
 Justinian eek, that made lawes, 6615
 Hath thus forboden, by olde dawes,
 "No man, up peyne to be deed,
 Mighty of body, to begge his breed,
 If he may swinke, it for to gete;
 Men shulde him rather mayme or bete,
 Or doon of him apert justice, 6621
 Than suffren him in such malice."
 They don not wel, so mote I go,
 That taken such almesse so,
 But if they have som privelege, 6625
 That of the peyne hem wol allege.
 But how that is, can I not see,
 But-if the prince disseyved be;
 Ne I ne wene not, sikerly,
 That they may have it rightfully. 6630
 But I wol not determyne
 Of princes power, ne defyne,
 Ne by my word comprende, y-wis,
 If it so fer may strecche in this.
 I wol not entremete a del; 6635
 But I trowe that the book seith wel,
 Who that taketh almesses, that be
 Dewe to folk that men may see
 Lame, feble, wery, and bare,
 Pore, or in such maner care, 6640

(That conne winne hem nevermo,
 For they have no power therto),
 He eteth his owne dampning,
 But-if he lye, that made al thing.
 And if ye such a truaunt finde, 6645
 Chastise him wel, if ye be kinde.
 But they wolde hate you, percas,
 And, if ye fillen in hir laas,
 They wolde eftsones do you scathe,
 If that they mighte, late or rathe ; 6650
 For they be not ful pacient,
 That han the world thus foule blent.
 And witeth wel, [wher] that god had
 The good man selle al that he had,
 And folowe him, and to pore it yive, 6655
 He wolde not therfore that he live
 To serven him in mendience,
 For it was never his sentence ;
 But he bad wirken whan that nede is,
 And folwe him in goode dedes. 6660
 Seynt Poule, that loved al holy chirche,
 He hade th'apostles for to wirche,
 And winnen hir lyfode in that wyse,
 And hem defended truaundyse, 6664
 And seide, "Wirketh with your honden ;"
 Thus shulde the thing be understonden.
 He nolde, y-wis, †bidde hem begging,
 Ne sellen gospel, ne preching,
 Lest they berafte, with hir asking,
 Folk of hir catel or of hir thing. 6670
 For in this world is many a man
 That yeveth his good, for he ne can
 Werne it for shame, or elles he
 Worde of the asker delivered be ;
 And, for he him encombreth so, 6675
 He yeveth him good to late him go :
 But it can him no-thing profyte,
 They lese the yift and the meryte.
 The goode folk, that Poule to preched,
 Profred him ofte, whan he hem teched,
 Som of hir good in charite ; 6681
 But therof right no-thing took he ;
 But of his hondwerk wolde he gete
 Clothes to wryen him, and his mete.'

Amour. 'Tel me than how a man may
 liven, 6685
 That al his good to pore hath yiven,
 And wol but only bidde his bedes,
 And never with †hond laboure his nedes :
 May he do so ?'

F. Sem. 'Ye, sir.'

Amour. 'And how ?'
F. Sem. 'Sir, I wol gladly telle yow :—
 Seynt Austin seith, a man may be 6691
 In houses that han propretee,
 As templers and hospitalers,
 And as these chanouns regulers,
 Or whyte monkes, or these blake— 6695
 (I wole no mo ensamples make)—
 And take therof his sustening,
 For therinne lyth no begging ;
 But other-weyes not, y-wis,
 †Yif Austin gabbeth not of this. 6700
 And yit ful many a monk laboureth,
 That god in holy chirche honoureth ;
 For whan hir swinking is agoon,
 They rede and singe in chirche anoon.
 'And for ther hath ben greet discord,
 As many a wight may bere record, 6706
 Upon the estate of †mendience,
 I wol shortly, in your presence,
 Telle how a man may begge at nede,
 That hath not wherwith him to fede, 6710
 Maugre his felones jangelinges,
 For sothfastnesse wol non hidinges ;
 And yit, percas, I may abeye
 That I to yow sothly thus seye.
 'Lo, here the cans especial : 6715
 If a man be so bestial
 That he of no craft hath science,
 And nought desyreth ignorance,
 Than may he go a-begging yerne,
 Til he som maner craft can lerne, 6720
 Thurgh which, without[e] truaunding,
 He may in trouthe have his living.
 Or if he may don no labour,
 For elde, or syknesse, or langour,
 Or for his tendre age also, 6725
 Than may he yit a-begging go.
 'Or if he have, peraventure,
 Thurgh usage of his noriture,
 Lived over deliciously,
 Than oughten good folk comunly 6730
 Han of his mischeef som pitee,
 And suffren him also, that he
 May gon aboute and begge his breed,
 That he be not for hungur deed.
 Or if he have of craft cunning, 6735
 And strengthe also, and desiring
 To wirken, as he hadde what,
 But he finde neither this ne that,
 Than may he begge, til that he

eten his necessitee. 6740
 If his winning be so lyte,
 his labour wol not acqyte
 ently al his living,
 y he go his breed begging ;
 re to dore he may go trace, 6745
 the remenaunt may purchace.
 man wolde undertake
 apryse for to make,
 rescous of our lay,
 defenden as he may, 6750
 ith armes or lettrura,
 or covenable cure,
 so he pore be,
 may he begge, til that he
 ide in trouthe for to swinke, 6755
 te him clothe[s], mete, and drinke.
 he with hondes corporel,
 t with hondes espirituel.
 d this[e] caas, and in semblables,
 ther ben mo resonables, 6760
 r begge, as I telle you here,
 es nought, in no manere ;
 liam Seynt Amour wolde preche,
 e wolde dispute and teche
 matere alle openly 6765
 is ful solemp[nely].
 so god my soule blesse,
 ad, in this stedfastnesse,
 ord of the universitee,
 the puple, as semeth me. 6770
 good man oughte it to refuse,
 hte him therof to excuse,
 oth or blythe who-so be ;
 rol speke, and telle it thee,
 de I dye, and be put down, 6775
 seynt Poul, in derk prisoun ;
 xiled in this caas
 wrong, as maister William was,
 y moder Ypocrisye
 ned for hir greet envye. 6780
 moder flemed him, Seynt Amour :
 ble dide such labour
 eyne ever the loyaltee,
 to moche agilte me.
 le a book, and leet it wryte, 6785
 his lyf he dide al wryte,
 olde ich reneyed begging,
 ed by my traveyling,
 had rent ne other good.
 wened he that I were wood ? 6790

For labour might me never plese,
 I have more wil to been at ese ;
 And have wel lever, sooth to sey,
 Bifore the puple patre and prey,
 And wrye me in my foxerye 6795
 Under a cope of papelardye.
 Quod Love, ' What devel is this I here?
 What wordes tellest thou me here ? '
 F. Sem. ' What, sir ? '
 Amour. ' Falsnesse, that apert is ;
 Than dredest thou not god ? '
 F. Sem. No, certes : 6800
 For selde in greet thing shal he spede
 In this world, that god wol drede.
 For folk that hem to vertu yiven,
 And truly on her owne liven,
 And hem in goodnesse ay contene, 6805
 On hem is litel thrift y-sene ;
 Such folk drinken gret misese ;
 That lyf [ne] may me never plese.
 But see what gold han usurers,
 And silver eek in [hir] garners, 6810
 Taylagiers, and these monyours,
 Bailifs, bedels, provost, countours ;
 These liven wel nygh by ravyne ;
 The smale puplo hem mote enclyne,
 And they as wolves wol hem eten. 6815
 Upon the pore folk they geten
 Ful moche of that they spende or kepe ;
 Nis none of hem that he nil strepe,
 And twryen him-self wel atte fulle ;
 Without[e] scalding they hem pulle. 6820
 The stronge the feble overgoth ;
 But I, that were my simple cloth,
 Robbe bothe trobbed and robbours,
 And gyle tgyled and gylours.
 By my treget, I gadre and thresto 6825
 The greet tresour into my cheste,
 That lyth with me so faste bounde.
 Myn highe paleys do I founde,
 And my delytes I fulfille
 With wyne at feestes at my wille, 6830
 And tables fulle of entremees ;
 I wol no lyf, but ese and pees,
 And winne gold to spende also.
 For whan the grete bagge is go,
 It cometh right [eft] with my japes. 6835
 Make I not wel tumble myn apes ?
 To winne is alwey myn entent ;
 My purchas is better than my rent ;
 For though I shulde beten be,

Oversal I entremete me, 6840
 Withoute I may no wight dure,
 I walke soules for to cure
 Of al the worlde care have I
 In breue and lengthe, boldly
 I wol bothe preche and eek counceillen,
 With handes wille I not travelen, 6846
 For of the pope I have the lulle;
 I ne nolde not my wittes dulle.
 I wol not stinten, in my lyve,
 These emperours for to shryve 6850
 Or kynges, dukes, and herces grete;
 But pere folk al quyte I lete.
 I love no such shryving, pardee,
 But for other cause be
 I rekke not of pere men, 6855
 Hir estate is not worth an hen
 Where fyndest thou a swinker of labour
 Have me unto his contessour
 But emperesses, and duchesses,
 These queenes, and eek countesses,
 These ablesses, and eek Bigyns, 6860
 These grete ladyes pallasys
 These poly knyghtes, and bullyves,
 These nounes, and these lurgis wyves,
 That richen and eek plesing, 6865
 And these maners welwaring,
 Wherso they chad or nased be,
 Uncommed goth ther noon fro me,
 And, for her soules savete,
 At lord and lady, and hir mernee, 6870
 I take, when they hem to me shryve,
 The propretee of al hir lyve,
 And make hem trowe, bothe meest and
 leest,
 Hir parochi-prest nis but a beest
 Avens me and my company, 6875
 That shrewes been as greet as I,
 For whiche I wol not hyde in hel
 No privete that me is told,
 That I by word or sign, y-wis,
 Nid make hem knowe what it is, 6880
 And they wolen also tellen me,
 They hele fro me no privete.
 And for to make yow hem perceyven,
 That usen folk thus to discyven,
 I wol you seyn, withouten drede, 6885
 What men may in the gospel rede
 Seynt Mathew, the gospelere,
 That seith, as I shal you se here
 Upon the cloure of Moyses -

Thus is it glosed douteles 6890
 That is the olde testament,
 For therby is the chaire ment
 Sitte Scribes and Phariseen,
 That is to seyn, the cursed men
 Whiche that we ypotites calle- 6895
 Both that they preche, I rede you alle
 But both not as they don a del,
 That been not wery to seve wel,
 But to do wel, no wile have they;
 And they wole hem leen talk alwey
 That ben to [be] legyled aye, 6900
 + Burdens that ben importable,
 On folkes shuldres thinges they conelien
 That they nil with her fingres touchen
 'Amour, ' And why wol they not touche
 it?'
 'F. Sem. ' Why? 6905
 For hem ne list not, sikerly;
 For saule + burlens that men taken
 Make folkes shuldres aken.
 And if they do ought that good be,
 That is for folk it shuld see- 6910
 Her thowkes larger maken they,
 And make hir hemmes wyde alwey,
 And liven ayes at the table,
 The firste and the best honurable,
 And for to han the firste chaires 6915
 In synagges, to hem ful here is,
 And wolen that folk hem laude, and grete,
 When that they passen thurgh the strete,
 And wolen be chad 'Master' also,
 But they shuld not wiken so, 6920
 The gospel is ther agayns I gesse
 That sheweth wel hir wikkednesse
 'Another custon use we
 Of hem that wel avens us be,
 We hate them deedly evericheon, 6925
 And we wol werry them, as oon
 Him that oon lateth, hate we aye,
 And conjecte how to doon him faine,
 And if we seen him wipen honour,
 Richesse or preys, thurgh his valour, 6930
 Provende, rent, or lightee,
 Ful lust y-wis, compassen we
 By what ladler he is clomben so,
 And for to maken himoun to go,
 With traisoun we wole him defame, 6935
 And doon him lese his gode name,
 Thus from his ladder we him take
 And thus his freendes foes we make

ne wite shal he noon,
 s freendes been his foon. 6940
 dide it openly,
 t have blame redily;
 e he wist of our malyce,
 him kept, but he were nyce.
 er is this, that, if so falle 6945
 be oon among us alle
 a good turn, out of drede,
 it is our alder dede.
 y, though he it feyned,
 im list, or that him deynd 6950
 urch him avaunced be;
 le parceners be we,
 n folk, wher-so we go,
 thurgh us is sprongen so.
 o have of men preysing, 6955
 ace, thurgh our flatering,
 nen, of gret poustee,
 o witnesse our bountee;
 an weneth, that may us see,
 vertu in us be. 6960
 y pore we us feyne;
 so that we begge or pleyne,
 he folk, without lesing,
 uring have without having.
 e dred of the puple, y-wis. 6965
 y my purpos is this:—
 h no wight, but he
 l and tresour gret plentee;
 yntaunce wel love I;
 oche my desyr, shortly. 6970
 te me of brocages,
 es and mariages,
 ly executour,
 y tymes procuratour;
 tyme messenger; 6975
 th not to my mister.
 y tymes I make enquestes;
 at office not honest is;
 ith other mennes thing,
 me a gret lyking. 6980
 at ye have ought to do
 hat I repeire to,
 peden thurgh my wit,
 s ye have told me it.
 e serve me to pay, 6985
 e shal be your alway.
 o wol chastyse me.
 r love lost hath he;
 no man in no gyse,

That wol me repreve or chastyse; 6990
 But I wolde al folk undertake,
 And of no wight no teching take;
 For I, that other folk chastye,
 Wol not be taught fro my folye.
 'I love noon hermitage more; 6995
 Alle desertes, and holtes hore,
 And grete wodes everichoon,
 I lete hem to the Baptist Iohan.
 I quethe him quyte, and him relese
 Of Egipt al the wildirnesse; 7000
 To fer were alle my mansiouns
 Fro alle citees and goode tounes.
 My paleis and myn hous make I
 There men may renne in openly,
 And sey that I the world forsake. 7005
 But al amidde I bilde and make
 My hous, and swimme and pley therinne
 Bet than a fish doth with his finne.
 'Of Antecristes men am I,
 Of whiche that Crist seith openly, 7010
 They have abit of holinesse,
 And liven in such wikkednesse.
 Outward, lambren semen we,
 Fulle of goodnesse and of pitee,
 And inward we, withouten fable, 7015
 Ben gredy wolves ravisable.
 We environne bothe londe and see;
 With al the world †werreyen we;
 We wol ordeyne of alle thing,
 Of folkes good, and her living. 7020
 'If ther be castel or citee
 Wherin that any bougerons be,
 Although that they of Milayne were,
 For ther-of ben they blamed there:
 Or if a wight, out of mesure, 7025
 Wolde lene his gold, and take usure,
 For that he is so coveitous:
 Or if he be to leccherous,
 Or †these, or haunte simonye;
 Or provost, ful of trecherye, 7030
 Or prelat, living jolily,
 Or prest that halt his quene him by;
 Or olde hores hostilers,
 Or other bawdes or bordillers,
 Or elles blamed of any vyce, 7035
 Of whiche men shulden doon justyce:
 By alle the seyntes that we pray,
 But they defende †hem with lamprey,
 With luce, with eles, with samouns.
 With tendre gees, and with capouns, 7040

With tartes, or with †cheses fat,
 With deynte flawnes, brode and flat,
 With caleweys, or with pullaille,
 With coninges, or with fyn vitaille,
 That we, under our clothes wyde, 7045
 Maken thurgh our golet glyde :
 Or but he wol do come in haste
 Roo-venisoun, [y]-bake in paste :
 Whether so that he loure or groine,
 He shal have of a corde a loigne, 7050
 With whiche men shal him binde and
 lede,
 To brenne him for his sinful dede,
 That men shulle here him crye and rore
 A myle-wey aboute, and more.
 Or elles he shal in prisoun dye, 7055
 But-if he wol [our] frendship bye,
 Or smerten that that he hath do,
 More than his gilt amounteth to.
 But, and he couthe thurgh his sleight
 Do maken up a tour of height, 7060
 Noughtroughte I whether of stone or tree,
 Or erthe, or turves though it be,
 Though it were of no vounde stone
 Wrought with squyre and scantilone,
 So that the tour were stuffed wel 7065
 With alle richesse temporel ;
 And thanne, that he wolde updresse
 Engyns, bothe more and lesse,
 To caste at us, by every syde—
 To bere his goode name wyde— 7070
 Such sleightes [as] I shal yow nevene,
 Barelles of wyne, by sixe or sevene,
 Or gold in sakkes gret plente,
 He shulde sone delivered be
 And if he have noon sich pitaunces, 7075
 Late him study in equipolences,
 And lete lyes and fallaces,
 If that he wolde deserve our graces ;
 Or we shal bere him such witnesse
 Of sinne, and of his wrecchidnesse, 7080
 And doon his loos so wyde renne,
 That al quik we shulde him brenne,
 Or elles yeve him suche penaunce,
 That is wel wors than the pitaunce.
 ' For thou shalt never, for no-thing,
 Con knowen aright by her clothing 7086
 The traitours fulle of trecherye,
 But thou her werkes can aspye.
 And ne hadde the good keping be
 Whylom of the universitee, 7090

That kepeth the key of Cristendome,
 †They had been turmented, alle and some.
 Suche been the stinking [fals] prophetis ;
 Nis non of hem, that good prophete is ;
 For they, thurgh wikked entencioun, 7095
 The yeer of the incarnacioun
 A thousand and two hundred yeer,
 Fyve and fifty, ferther ne ner,
 Broughten a book, with sory grace,
 To yeven ensample in comune place, 7100
 That seide thus, though it were fable :—
 " This is the Gospel Perdurable,
 That fro the Holy Goost is sent."
 Wel were it worth to ben [y]-brent !
 Entitled was in such manere 7105
 This book, of which I telle here.
 Ther nas no wight in al Parys,
 Biforn Our Lady, at parvys,
 †That [he] ne mighte bye the book,
 †To copy, if him talent took. 7110
 Ther might he see, by greet tresoun,
 Ful many fals comparisoun :—
 " As moche as, thurgh his grete might,
 Be it of hete, or of light,
 The sunne surmounteth the mone, 7115
 That troubler is, and chaungeth sone,
 And the note-kernel the shelle—
 (I scorne nat that I yow telle)—
 Right so, withouten any gyle,
 Surmounteth this noble Evangyle 7120
 The word of any evangelist."
 And to her title they token Christ ;
 And many such comparisoun,
 Of which I make no mencioniun,
 Might men in that boke finde, 7125
 Who-so coude of hem have minde.
 ' Th' universitee, that tho was aslepe,
 Gan for to braide, and taken kepe ;
 And at the noys the heed up-caste,
 Ne never sithen slepte it faste, 7130
 But up it sterte, and armes took
 Ayens this fals horrible book,
 Al redy batail for to make,
 And to the juge the book to take.
 But they that broughten the book there
 Hente it anon away, for fere ; 7136
 They nolde shewe it more a del,
 But thenne it kepte, and kepen wil,
 Til such a tyme that they may see
 That they so stronge woxen be, 7140
 That no wight may hem wel withstonde ;

at book they durst not stonde.
 y gonne it for to bere,
 ne durste not answere
 icionn þne glose 7145
 hat clerkes wole appose
 e cursednesse, y-wis,
 hat boke writen is.
 I not, ne I can not see
 ner ende that there shal be 7150
 [boke] that they hyde ;
 lgate they shal abyde
 they may it bet defende ;
 se I best, wol be hir ende.
 Antecrist abyden we, 7155
 en alle of his meynee ;
 t man that wol not be so,
 ne he shal his lyf forgo.
 a puple þon him areyse,
 gh our gyle doon him seise, 7160
 on sharpe speres ryve,
 -weyes bringe him fro lyve,
 at he wol folowe, y-wis,
 our boke writen is.
 che wol our book signifye, 7165
 sl [that] Peter hath maistrye,
 er Johan shewe wel his might.
 have I you declared right
 ing of the bark and rinde
 keth the entencionns blinde. 7170
 at erst I wol biginne
 me you the pith withinne :—
 st, by Peter, as I wene,
 e himself we wolden mene,]
] the seculers comprehende, 7175
 stes lawe wol defende,
 lde it kepen and mayntenen
 hem that al sustenen,
 ly to the puple techen.
 han bitokeneth hem þthat pre- 7180
 r nis lawe covenable
 e Gospel Perdurable,
 the Holy Gost was sent
 folk that been miswent.
 gthe of Johan they undirstonde
 ce in which, they seye, they
 de, 7186
 h the sinful folk converte,
 to Jesus Crist reverte.
 any another horriblete
 in that boke see, 7190

That ben comaunded, douteles,
 Ayens the lawe of Rome expres ;
 And alle with Antecrist they holden,
 As men may in the book biholden.
 And than comaunden they to sleen 7195
 Alle tho that with Peter been ;
 But they shal nevere have that might,
 And, god toforn, for stryf to fight,
 That they ne shal y-nough [men] finde
 That Peters lawe shal have in minde, 7200
 And ever holde, and so mayntene,
 That at the last it shal be sene,
 That they shal alle come therto,
 For ought that they can speke or do.
 And thilke lawe shal not stonde, 7205
 That they by Johan have undirstonde ;
 But, mangre hem, it shal adoun,
 And been brought to confusioun.
 But I wol stinte of this matere,
 For it is wonder long to here ; 7210
 But hadde that ilke book endured,
 Of better estate I were ensured ;
 And freendes have I yit, pardee,
 That han me set in greet degree.
 ' Of al this world is emperour 7215
 Gyle my fader, the trechour,
 And emp[c]resse my moder is,
 Mangre the Holy Gost, y-wis.
 Our mighty linage and our route
 Regneth in every regne aboute ; 7220
 And wel is þworth we maistres be,
 For al this world governe we,
 And can the folk so wel disceyve,
 That noon our gyle can perceyve ;
 And though they doon, they dar not
 saye ; 7225
 The sothe dar no wight biwreya.
 But he in Cristis wrath him ledeth,
 That more than Crist my bretheren dre-
 deth.
 He nis no ful good champioun,
 That dredeth such similacioun : 7230
 Nor that for payne wole refusen
 Us to correcten and accusen.
 He wol not entremete by right,
 Ne have god in his eye-sight,
 And therefore god shal him punyce ; 7235
 But me ne rekketh of no vyce,
 Sithen men us loven comunably,
 And holden us for so worthy,
 That we may folk repreve echoon,

And we nil have repref of noon. 7240
Whom shulden folk worshipen so
But us, that stinten never mo
To patren whyl that folk us see,
Though it not so bihinde hem be?

'And where is more wood folye, 7245
Than to enhaunce chivalrye,
And love noble men and gay,
That joly clothes weren alway?
If they be sich folk as they semen,
So clene, as men her clothes demen, 7250
And that her wordes folowe her dede,
It is gret pite, out of drede,
For they wol be noon ypocrites!

Of hem, me thinketh [it] gret spite is;
I can not love hem on no syde. 7255

But Beggars with these hodes wyde,
With sleighe and pale faces lene,
And greye clothes not ful clene,
But fretted ful of tatarwagges,
And highe shoes, knopped with dagges,
That frouncen lyke a quaile-pype, 7261
Or botes riving as a gype;

To such folk as I you devyse
Shulde princes and these lordes wyse
Take alle her londes and her thinges, 7265
Bothe werre and pees, in governinges;
To such folk shulde a prince him yive,
That wolde his lyf in honour live.

And if they be not as they seme,
That serven thus the world to queme, 7270
There wolde I dwelle, to disceyve
The folk, for they shal not perceyve.

'But I ne speke in no such wyse,
That men shulde humble abit dispysse,
So that no pryde ther-under be. 7275

No man shulde hate, as thinketh me,
The pore man in sich clothing.
But god ne preiseth him no-thing,
That seith he hath the world forsake,
And hath to worldly glorie him take, 7280
And wol of siche delyces use;

Who may that Begger wel excuse?
That papelard, that him yeldeth so,
And wol to worldly ese go,
And seith that he the world hath left,
And gredily it grypeth eft, 7286
He is the hound, shame is to seyn,
That to his casting goth ageyn.

'But unto you dar I not lye:
But mighte I felen or aspye 7290

That ye perceyved it no-thing,
Ye shulde[n] have a stark lesing
Right in your hond thus, to biginne,
I nolde it lette for no sinne.'

The god lough at the wonder tho, 7295
And every wight gan laughe also,
And seide:—'Lo here a man aright
For to be trusty to every wight!'

'Fals Semblant,' quod Love, 'sey to me,
Sith I thus have avaunced thee, 7300
That in my court is thy dwelling,
And of ribaudes shalt be my king,
Wolt thou wel holden my forwardes?'

F. Sem. 'Ye, sir, from hennes fore-
wardes;

Hadde never your fader here-biforn 7305
Servaunt so trewe, sith he was born'

Amour. 'That is ayeines al nature.'

F. Sem. 'Sir, put you in that aven-
ture;

For though ye borowes take of me,
The sikerer shal ye never be 7310
For ostages, ne sikirnesse,
Or chartres, for to bare witnessa.
I take your-self to record here,
That men ne may, in no manere,
Teren the wolf out of his hyde, 7315
Til he be †flayn, bak and syde,
Though men him bete and al defyle;
What? wene ye that I wole bigyle?

For I am clothed mekely,
Ther-under is al my trechery; 7320
Myn herte chaungeth never the mo
For noon abit, in which I go.

Though I have chere of simplenesse,
I am not wery of shrewednesse.
My lemman, Streyned-Abstinence, 7325
Hath mister of my purveaunce;
She hadde ful longe ago be deed,
Nere my councel and my reed;
Lete hir allone, and you and me.'

And Love answerde, 'I truste thee 7330
Without[e] borowe, for I wol noon.'
And Fals-Semblant, the thief, anon,
Right in that ilke same place,
That hadde of tresoun al his face 7334
Right blak withinne, and whyt withoute,
Thanketh him, gan on his knees loute.

Than was ther nought, but 'Every man
Now to assaut, that sailen can,'
Quod Love, 'and that ful hardily.'

med they hem communly 7340
 armour as to hem fel.
 hey were armed, fers and fel,
 nte hem forth, alle in a route,
 te the castel al aboute ;
 l nought away, for no drede, 7345
 be that they ben dede,
 ey have the castel take.
 re batels they gan make,
 ted hem in foure anoon,
 e her way, and forth they goon,
 re gates for to assaile, 7351
 he the keepers wol not faile ;
 r ben neither syke ne dede,
 dy folk, and stronge in dede.
 role I seyn the countenaunce 7355
 Semblant, and Abstinaunce,
 n to Wikkid-Tonge went.
 t they helde her parlement,
 r it to done were
 n hem be knownen there, 7360
 walken forth disguised.
 he laste they devysed,
 ey wold goon in tapinage,
 re in a pilgrimage,
 d and holy folk unfeyned. 7365
 me Abstinence-Streyned
 a robe of camelyne,
 i hir tgraithe as a Begyne.
 coverchief of threde
 pped al aboute hir hede, 7370
 forgat not hir sautere ;
 of bedes eek she bere
 lace, al of whyt threde,
 h that she hir bedes bede ;
 ne boughte hem never a del, 7375
 r were geven her, I wot wel,
 , of a ful holy frere,
 de he was hir fader dere,
 n she hadde after went
 y frere of his covent. 7380
 visyted hir also,
 ny a sermoun seide hir to ;
 e lette, for man on lyve,
 ne wolde hir ofte shryve
 h so gret devocion 7385
 de(n) her confession,
 y had ofte, for the nones,
 es in one hood at ones.
 : shape I tdevyse her thee,
 of face somtyme was she ; 7390

That false traitouresse untrewe
 Was lyk that salowe hors of hewe,
 That in the Apocalips is shewed,
 That signifyeth ttho folk beshrewed,
 That been al ful of trecherye, 7395
 And pale, thurgh hypocrisie ;
 For on that hors no colour is,
 But only deed and pale, y-wis.
 Of suche a colour enlangoured
 Was Abstinence, y-wis, coloured ; 7400
 Of her estat she her repented,
 As her visage represented.
 She had a burdoun al of Thefte,
 That Gyle had yeve her of his yefte ;
 And a scrippe of Fainte Distresse, 7405
 That ful was of elengenesse,
 And forth she walked sobrelly :
 And False-Semblant saynt, *is vous dy*,
 tHad, as it were for such mistere,
 Don on the cope of a frere, 7410
 With chere simple, and ful pitous ;
 His looking was not disdeinous,
 Ne proud, but meke and ful pesible.
 About his nekke he bar a bible,
 And squierly forth gan he gon ; 7415
 And, for to reste his limmes upon,
 He had of Treson a potente ;
 As he were feble, his way he wente.
 But in his sleve he gan to thringe
 A rasour sharp, and wel bytinge, 7420
 That was forged in a forge,
 Which that men clepen Coupe-gorge.
 So longe forth hir way they nomen,
 Til they to Wicked-Tonge comen,
 That at his gate was sitting, 7425
 And saw folk in the way passing.
 The pilgrimes saw he faste by,
 That beren hem ful mekely,
 And tthumblely they with him mette.
 Dame Abstinence first him grette, 7430
 And sith him False-Semblant salued,
 And he hem ; but he not tremued,
 For he ne dredde hem not a-del.
 For when he saw hir faces wel,
 Alway in herte him thoughte so, 7435
 He shulde knowe hem bothe two ;
 For wel he knew Dame Abstinaunce,
 But he ne knew not Constreynaunce.
 He knew nat that she was constrained,
 Ne of her theves lyfe feyned, 7440
 But wende she com of wil al free ;

But she com in another degree ;
 And if of good wil she began,
 That wil was failed her as, than.
 And Fals-Semblant had he seyn als,
 But he knew nat that he was fals. 7446
 Yet fals was he, but his falsnesse
 No man he not espye nor gesse,
 For Semblant was so soye wrought,
 That falsnesse he ne espyed nought. 7450
 But haddest thou knowen him befor,
 Thou woldest on a lake have sworn,
 When thou him saugh in thalke array
 That he, that whylom was so gay,
 And of the gaunce Joly Robyn, 7455
 Was the becomen a Jacobin
 But sochely, what so men him calle,
 Frere[s] Prechours been good men alle,
 Hir order wikkedly they beren,
 Suche minstrelles if [that] they weren.
 So been Augustins and Cordileres, 7461
 And Carnes, and eek Sakked Freres,
 And alle freres, shoulde and bare,
 Though some of hem ben grete and
 squar.
 For holy men, as I hem deme, 7465
 Everich of hem wolde good man seme.
 But shalt thou never of apparence
 Seen conclude good consequence
 In none argument, as wis,
 If existence al tailed is. 7470
 For men may finde alway sophyme
 The consequence to envynne,
 Whoso that hath the subtiltee
 The double sentence for to see.
 When the pilgrymes comen were 7475
 To Wicked-Tonge, that dwelled there,
 His barneis nigh hem was algate,
 By Wicked-Tonge adoun they sate,
 That bad hem ner him for to come,
 And of tydinges telle him some, 7481
 And sayde hem — What ens maketh
 you
 To come into this place now ?
 Sir, sayde Strained-Abstinence,
 We for to drye our penaunce,
 With hertes pitous and devoute, 7485
 Are comen, as pilgrimes gon aboute,
 Wel nigh en fute alway we go,
 For lusty been our heles two
 And thus bothe we ben sent
 Throughtout this world that is miswent,

To yee ensample, and preche also. 7491
 To fisshen sinful men we go,
 For other fisshing'ne fische we,
 And, sir, for that charitee,
 As we be wont, herberwe we crave, 7495
 Your lyt to amende, Crist it save !
 And, so it shal be you nat displese,
 We wolden, if it were your ese,
 A short sermoun unto you seyn
 And Wikked-Tonge answerde ageyn,
 'The hous,' quod he, 'such as ye see, 7501
 Shal nat be warned you for me,
 Sey what you list, and I wol here'
 'Grant mercy, swete sire dere'
 Quod alderfirst Dame Abstinence, 7505
 And thus began she hir sentence
 'Concl. Abstinence. 'Sir, the first vertue,
 certeyn,
 The gretest, and most sovereyn
 That may be founde in any man,
 For having, or for wit he can, 7511
 That is, his tonge to refreyne ;
 Therto ought every wight him payne,
 For it is better stille be
 Than for to spoken harm, pardes'
 And he that larkeneth it gladly, 7515
 He is no good man, sikerly
 And, sir, above al other stane,
 In that art thou most guilty man
 Thou spake a jape not long ago,
 'And, sir, that was right yvel in 7520
 Of a yong man that here repaired,
 And never yet this place apaired
 Thou seydest he awaited nothing
 But to deceyve Fair-Welcoming
 Ye seyde nothing sooth of that, 7525
 But, sir, ye ho — I trow you plat,
 He ne cometh no more, ne goth, pardes !
 I trow ye shal him never see.
 Fair-Welcoming in prison is,
 That ofte hath played with you, er this,
 The fairest games that he coude, 7531
 Withoute filthe, stils or launde,
 Now dar the nat himself solace,
 Ye han also the man de chace,
 That he dar neither come ne go, 7535
 What mevethe you to hate him so
 But properly your wikked thought,
 That many a fals lesing hath thought ?
 That mevethe your foole eloquence,
 That jangleth ever in audience, 7540

the folk areyseth blame,
 with hem dishonour and shame,
 thing that may have no preving,
 klinesse, and contriving.
 lar seyn, that Reason demeth, 7545
 not al sooth thing that semeth
 is sinne to controve
 that is [for] to reprove ;
 not ye wel ; and, sir, therefore
 to blame [wel] the more. 7550
 wathelasse, he rekketh lyte ;
 seth nat now thereof a myte ;
 he thoughte harm, parfay,
 lde come and gon al day ;
 lde him-selfe nat abstene. 7555
 ometh he nat, and that is sene,
 ne taketh of it no cure,
 it be through aventure,
 se than other folk, algate.
 ou here watchest at the gate, 7560
 pere in thyne arest alway ;
 muse, musard, al the day.
 wakest night and day for thought ;
 thy traveyl is for nought.
 elousye, withouten faile, 7565
 ever quyte thee thy travaile.
 athe is, that Fair-Welcoming,
 ut[en] any trespassing,
 rongfully in prison be,
 repeth and languisseth he. 7570
 ough thou never yet, y-wis,
 t man no more but this,
 not a-greef) it were worthy
 te thee out of this baily,
 terward in prison lye, 7575
 ttre thee til that thou dye ;
 ou shalt for this sinne dwelle
 in the devils ers of helle,
 that thou repente thee.' 7579
 say, thou lvest falsly !' quod he.
 ? welcome with mischaunce now !
 therfore herbered you
 : me shame, and eek reprove ?
 ory happe, to your bihove,
 o-day your herbergere ! 7585
 ther you elleswhere than here,
 an a lyer called me !
 getours art thou and he,
 myn hous do me this shame,
 r my soth-sawe ye me blame. 7590
 the sermoun that ye make ?

To alle the develles I me take,
 Or elles, god, thou me confounde :
 But er men diden this castel founde,
 It passeth not ten dayes or twelve, 7595
 But it was told right to my-selve,
 And as they seide, right so tolde I,
 He kiste the Rose privily !
 Thus seide I now, and have seid yore ;
 I not wher he dide any more. 7600
 Why shulde men sey me such a thing,
 If it hadde been gabbing ?
 Right so seide I, and wol seye yit ;
 I trowe, I lyed not of it ;
 And with my memes I wol blowe 7605
 To alle neighboris a-rowe,
 How he hath bothe comen and gon.'
 Tho spak Fals-Semblant right anon,
 ' Al is not gospel, out of doute,
 That men seyn in the toune aboute ; 7610
 Ley no deaf ere to my speking ;
 I swere yow, sir, it is gabbing !
 I trowe ye wot wel certeynly,
 That no man loveth him tenderly
 That seith him harm, if he wot it, 7615
 Al be he never so pore of wit.
 And sooth is also sikerly,
 (This knowe ye, sir, as wel as I),
 That lovers gladly wol visyten
 The places ther hir loves habyten. 7620
 This man you loveth and eek honoureth ;
 This man to serve you laboureth ;
 And clepeth you his freend so dere,
 And this man maketh you good chere,
 And every-wher that [he] you meteth,
 He you saleweth, and he you greteth. 7626
 He preseth not so ofte, that ye
 Ought of his come encombred be ;
 Ther presen other folk on yow
 Ful oftter than [that] he doth now. 7630
 And if his herte him streyned so
 Unto the Rose for to go,
 Ye shulde him seen so ofte nede,
 That ye shulde take him with the dede.
 He coude his coming not forbere, 7635
 Though ye him thrilled with a spere :
 It nere not thanne as it is now.
 But trusteth wel, I swere it yow,
 That it is clene out of his thought.
 Sir, certes, he ne thenketh it nought :
 No more ne doth Fair-Welcoming, 7641
 That sore abyeth al this thing.

And if they were of oon assent,
 Ful sone were the Rose hent ;
 The mangre youres wolde be. 7645
 And sir, of othing herkeneth me :—
 Sith ye this man, that loveth yow,
 Han send such harm and shame now,
 Witeth wel, if he gessad it,
 Ye may wel demen in your wit, 7650
 He neide no-thing love you so,
 Ne callen you his freend also,
 But night and day he þwolve wake,
 The castel to destroye and take,
 If it were sooth as ye devyse, 7655
 Or som man in som maner wyse
 Might it warne him everydel,
 Or by him-self perceyven wel.
 For sith he might not come and gon
 As he was whylom went to don, 7660
 He might it sone wite and see,
 But now al other wyse doth he,
 Than have tye, sir, al-outerly
 Deserved helle, and jolyly
 The deeth of helle, donteles, 7665
 That thraillen folk so gütteles.
 Fals-Semblant proveth so this thing
 That he can noon answering,
 And seeth alwey such apparaunce,
 That nygh he fol in repentance, 7670
 An I seide him :—' Sir, it may wel be.

Semblant, a good man semen ye,
 And, Abstinence, ful wyse ye seme
 Of o talent you bothe I deme. 7674
 What counceill wole ye to me geven ?'
 F. Sem. ' Right here anon thou shalt
 be shriven,
 And sey thy sinne withoute more ;
 Of this shalt thou repente sore ;
 For I am preest, and have poustee
 To shryve folk of most dignitee 7680
 That been, as wyde as world may dure
 Of al this world I have the cure,
 And that had never yt persoun,
 No vicarie of no maner toun,
 And, god wot, I have of thee 7685
 A thousand tymes more pitee
 Than hath thy preest parochial,
 Though he thy freend be special.
 I have avauntage, in o wyse,
 That your prelates ben not so wyse 7690
 Ne half so lettred as am I.
 I am licenced boldely
 In divinitee to rede,
 And to confessen, out of drede,
 If ye wol you now confesse, 7695
 And leve your sinnes more and lesse
 Without abood, knele down anon,
 And you shal have absolucion.' 7700

Explicit.

THE MINOR POEMS.

I. AN A. B. C.

Incipit carmen secundum ordinem literarum Alphabeti.

Almyghty and al merciablen quene,
To whom that al this world fleeth for
 socour,
To have relees of sinne, sorwe and tene,
Glorious virgine, of alle floures flour,
To thee I flee, confounded in erroun;
Help and releve, thou mighty ~~lebonaire~~ ^{lebonaire},
Have mercy on my perilous langour!
Venquished m' hath my cruel adversaire.

Bountee so fix hath in thyn herte his
 tente,
That wel I wot thou wolt my socour be, 10
Thou canst not warne him that, with
 good entente,
Axeth thyn help. Thyn herte is ay so free,
Thou art largesse of pleyn felicitee,
Haven of refut, of quiete and of reste.
Lo, how that theves seven chasen me! 15
Help, lady bright, er that my ship to-
 breste!

Comfort is noon, but in yow, lady dere;
For lo, my sinne and my confusioun,
Which oughten not in thy presence ap-
 pere,
Han take on me a grevous accioun 20
Of verrey right and desperacioun;
And, as ~~by~~ right, they mighten wel sus-
 tene
That I were worthy my dampnacioun,
Nere mercy of you, blisful hevne quene.

Doute is ther noon, thou-queen of miseri-
 corde, 25
That thou n'art cause of grace and mercy
 here;
God vouched sauf thurgh thee with us
 t'acorde.
For certes, Cristes blisful moder dere,
Were now the bowe bent in swich manere,
As it was first, of justice and of yre, 30
The rightful God nolde of no mercy here;
But thurgh thee han we grace, as we
 desyre.

Ever hath myn hope of refut been in thee,
For heer-biforn ful ofte, in many a wyse,
Hast thou to misericorde receyved me. 35
But mercy, lady, at the grete assyse,
Whan we shul come bifore the hye jus-
 tise!
So litel fruit shal thanne in me be founde,
That, but thou er that day me + wel
 chastyse,
Of verrey right my werk me wol con-
 founde. 40

Fleeing, I flee for socour to thy tente
Me for to hyde from tempest ful of drede,
Biseching you that ye you not absente,
Though I be wikke. Ohelp yit at this nede!
Al have I been a beste in wille and dede,
Yit, lady, thou me clothe with thy grace.
Thyn enemy and myn (lady, tak hede) 47
Un-to my deeth in poynt is me to chace.

1. m. to

Glorious mayde and moder, which that
never

Were bitter, neither in erthe nor in see, 50
But ful of swetnesse and of mercy ever,
Help that my fader be not wroth with me!
Spek thou, for I ne dar not him y-see.
So have I doon in erthe, allas ther-whyle!
That certes, but-if thou my socour be, 55
To stink eterne he wol my gost exyle.

He vouched sauf, tel him, as was his wille,
Bicome a man, to have our alliaunce,
And with his precious blood he wroot the
bille

Up-on the crois, as general acquitaunce
To every penitent in ful cresaunce, 60
And therfor, lady bright, thou for us
praye.

Than shalt thou bothe stinte al his grev-
aunce,
And make our foo to failen of his praye

I wot it wel, thou wolt ben our socour, 65
Thou art so ful of bountee, in certeyn.
For, whan a soule falleth in errour,
Thy pitee goth and haleth him ayeyn.
Than makest thou his pees with his
sovereyn,
And bringest him out of the crooked
strete. 70

Who-so thee loveth he shal not love in
veyn,
That shal he finde, as he the lyf shal lete.

Kalenderes enlumined ben they
That in this world ben lighted with thy
name,

And who-so goth to you the righte wey, 75
Him thar not drede in soule to be lame.
Now, queen of comfort, sith thou art that
same

To whom I seche for my medicyne,
Lat not my foo no more my wounde en-
tame,

Myn hele in-to thyn hand al I resigne. 80

Lady, thy sorwe can I not portreye
Under the cros, ne his grevous penaunce.
But, for your bothes peynes, I you preye,
Lat not our alder foo make his bobauce,
That he hath in his listes of mischaunce 85
Convict that ye bothe have bought so
dere.

As I seide erst, thou ground of our sub-
staunce,

Continue on us thy pitous eyen clere!

Moises, that saugh the bush with flaumes
rede

Brenninge, of which ther never a stikke
brende, 90

Was signe of thyn unwemmed maiden-
hede.

Thou art the bush on which ther gan
descende

The Holy Gost, the which that Moises
wende

Had ben a-fyr; and this was in figure.
Now lady, from the fyr thou us defende 95
Which that in helle eternally shal dure.

Noble princesse, that never haddest pere,
Certes, if any comfort in us be,
That cometh of thee, thou Cristes moder
dere,

We han non other melodye or glee 100
Us to rejoyse in our adversitee,
N' advocat noon that wol and dar so prey
For us, and that for litel hyre as ye,
That helpen for an Ave-Marie or tweye.

O verrey light of eyen that ben blinde, 105
O verrey lust of labour and distresse,
O tresorere of bountee to mankinde,
Thee whom God chees to moder for
humblesse!

From his ancille he made thee maistresse
Of hevene and erthe, our bille up for to
bede. 110

This world awaiteth ever on thy good-
nesse,

For thou ne failest never wight at nede.

Purpos I have sum tyme for t'enquere,
Wherfore and why the Holy Gost thee
soughte,

Whan Gabrielles vois cam to thyn ere. 115
He not to werre us swich a wonder
wroughte,

But for to save us that he sithen boughte.
Than nedeth us no wepen us for to save,
But only ther we did not, as us oughte,
Do penitence, and mercyaxe and have. 120

Queen of comfort, yit whan I me bithink
That I agilt have bothe, him and thee,

II. The Complaynte unto Pite.

81

And that my soule is worthy for to synke
 Allas, I, caitif, whider may I flee? *mediam*
 Who shal un-to thy sone my mene be? 125
 Who, but thy-self, that art of pitee welle?
 Thou hast more reuthe on our adversitee
 Than in this world mighte any tunge telle.

Redresse me, moder, and me chastyse,
 For, certeynly, my fadres chastisinge 130
 That dar I nought abyden in no wyse:
 So hidous is his rightful rekeninge.
 Moder, of whom our mercy gan to springe,
 Beth ye my juge and eek my soules leche;
 For ever in you is pitee haboundinge 135
 To ech that wol of pitee you biseche.

Soth is, that God ne graunteth no pitee
 With-oute thee; for God, of his goodnesse,
 Forgiveth noon, but it lyke un-to thee.
 He hath thee maked vicaire and mais-
 tresse 140

Of al the world, and eek governeresse
 Of hevene, and he represeth his justyse
 After thy wille, and therefore in witnesse
 He hath thee crowned in so ryal wyse.

Temple devout, ther god hath his won-
 inge, *prayed* 145
 Fro which these misbileved pryved been,
 To you my soule penitent I bringe.

Receyve me! I can no ferther flee!
 With thornes venomous, O hevene queen,
 For which the erthe acursed was ful yore,
 I am so wounded, as ye may wel seen, 151
 That I am lost almost;—it smert so sore.

Virgine, that art so noble of appaile,
 And ledest us in-to the hye tour 154

guide
 Of Paradys, thou me ~~wisse~~ and counsaile,
 How I may have thy grace and thy socour;
 Al have I been in filthe and in errour.
 Lady, un-to that court thou me ajourne
 That cleped is thy bench, O fresshe flour!
 Ther-as that mercy ever shal sojourne. 160

Xristus, thy sone, that in this world
 alighte,
 Up-on the cros to suffre his passioun, *handed*
 And teek, that Longius his herte pighte,
 And made his herte blood to renneadoun;
 And al was this for my salvacioun; 165
 And I to him am fals and eek unkinde,
 And yit he wol not my dampnacioun—
 This thanke I you, socour of al mankinde.

Ysaac was figure of his deeth, certeyn, *type*
 That so fer-forth his fader wolde obeye 170
 That him ne roughete no-thing to be slayn;
 Right so thy sone list, as a lamb, to deye.
 Now lady, ful of mercy, I you preye,
 Sith he his mercy mesured so large, *might*
 Be ye not ~~skant~~; for alle we singe and
 seye 175

That ye ben from vengeance ay our targe. *defe*

Zacharie you clepeth the open welle
 To wasshe sinful soule out of his gilt.
 Therefore this lessoun oughte I wel to telle
 That, nere thy tender herte, we weren
 spilt. 180

Now lady brighte, sith thou canst and wilt
 Ben to the seed of Adam merciable,
 So bring us to that palais that is bilt
 To penitents that ben to mercy able.
 Amen. 184

Explicit carmen.

II. THE COMPLEYNTE UNTO PITE.

Pite, that I have sought so yore ago,
 With herte sore, and ful of besy payne,
 That in this world was never wight so wo
 With-oute dethe; and, if I shal not feyne, 5
 My purpos was, to Pite to compleyne
 Upon the crueltee and tirannye
 Of Love, that for my trouthe doth me dye.

And when that I, by lengthe of certeyn
 yeres, *... ..*
 Had eyer in oon a tyme sought to speke,
 To Pite ran I, al bespreynt with teres, 10
 To preyen hir on Crueltee m'awreke.
 But, er I might with any worde out-
 breke,

Or tellen any of my peynes smerte,
I fand hir deed, and buried in an herte.

Agoun I fel, when that I saugh the herse,
Deed as a stoon, whyl that the swogh me
laste, 16

But up I roos, with colour ful diverse,
And pitously on hir myn yēn caste,
And ner the corps I gan to presen faste,
And for the soule I shoop me for to
preye, 20

I tinas but lorn, ther tinas no more to
seya.

Thus am I slayn, sith that Pite is deed;
Allas! that day! that ever hit shulde
falle!

What maner man dar now holde up his
heed?

To whom shal any sorwful herte calle? 25
Now Crueltee hath east to sleen us alle,
In ydel hope, folk redeles of peyne—
Sith she is deed—to whom shal we com-
pleyne?

But yet encreseth me this wonder newe,
That no wight woot that she is deed, but I,
So many men as in hir tyme hir knewe,
And yet she dyed not so sodeynly; 32
For I have sought hir ever ful besly
Sith first I hadde wit or mannes munde;
But she was deed, or that I coude hir
finde, 35

Aboute hir herse ther stoden lustily,
Withouten any wo, as thoughte me,
Bountee parfit, wel armed and richely,
And freshe Beantee, Lust, an I Jolitee,
Assured Maner, Youthe, and Honestee, 40
Wisdom, Estaat, [and] Dreed, and Go-
vernaunce,

Confedred bothe by bonde and alliance.

A compleynt hadde I, writen, in myn
hand,

For to have put to Pite as a bille,
But whan I al this companye ther fond,
That rather wolden al my cause spille 46
Than to me help, I held my pleynte stille,
For to that folk, withouten any kille,
Withoute Pite may no bille availe.

Then love I al these virtues, sauf Pite, 50
Keping the corps, as ye have herd me seyn,

Confedred alle by bonde of Crueltee,
And loon assented that I shal be sleyn.
And I have put my compleynt up ageyn;
For to my foos my bille I dar not shewe,
Theffect of which seith thus, in wordes
fewe.— 56

The Bille

¶ Humblast of herte, hiest of reverence,
Benigne flour, coroune of vertues alle,
Sheweth unto your rial excellence
Your servaunt, if I darste me so callie, on
His mortal harm, in which he is y-falle.
And noght al only for his evel fare,
But for your renoun, as he shal declare.

¶ Hit stondeth thus: your contraire,
Crueltee,

Allyed is ageynst your regalye 65
Under colour of womanly Beantee,
For men [ne] shuld not knowe hir
tirannye,

With Bountee, Gentilesse, and Curtesye,
And hath deprieved you now of your place
That hight "Beantee, apertenant to
Grace." 70

¶ For kindly, by your heritage right
Ye been annexed ever unto Bountee
And vermayly ye oughte do your night
To helpe Trouthe in his adversitee.
Ye been also the corouns of Beantee 75
And certes if ye wanten in this tweyne,
The world is lore, ther tins no more to
seyne.

¶ Eek what availeth Maner and Gen-
tlesse

Withoute you, benigne creature?
Shal Crueltee be your governesses? 80
Allas! what herte may hit longe endure?
Wherfor, but ye the rather take cure
To breke that perilous alliance,
Ye sleen hem that ben in your obeisance.

¶ And further over, if ye suffre this, 85
Your renoun is fordo than in a throwe,
Ther shal no man wite wel what Pite is.
Allas! that your renoun shuld be so lowe!
Ye be than fro your heritage y-throwe
By Crueltee, that occupieth your place 90
And we despoired, that soken to your
grace.

Have mercy on me, thou Herennus quene,
That you have sought so tenderly and
yore ;

Let som stream of your light on me be sene
That love and drede you, ay lenger the
more. 95

For, sothly for to sayne, I bere the sore,
And, though I be not cunning for to
pleyne,
For goddes love, have mercy on my peyne !

My peyne is this, that what so I desire
That have I not, ne no-thing lyk therto ;
And ever set Desire myn herte on fire ;
Ek on that other syde, wher-so I go, 102
What maner thing that may encrease wo
That have I redy, unsought, everywhere ;
Me [ne] lakketh but my deth, and than
my bere. 105

What nedeth to shewe parcel of my
peyne ?

Sith every wo that herte may bethinke
I suffre, and yet I dar not to you pleyne ;
For wel I woot, al-though I wake or
winke,

Ye rekke not whether I flete or sinke. 110
But natheles, my trouthe I shal sustene
Unto my deeth, and that shal wel be
sene.

This is to sayne, I wol be youres ever ;
Though ye me slee by Crueltee, your fo,
Algate my spirit shal never dissever 115
Fro your servyse, for any peyne or wo.
Sith ye be deed—allas ! that hit is so !—
Thus for your deth I may wel wepe and
pleyne 118
With herte sore and ful of besy peyne.'

Here endeth the exclamacion of the Deth of Pyte.

III. THE BOOK OF THE DUCHESSE.

The Proem.

I have gret wonder, by this lighte,
How that I live, for day ne nighte
I may nat slepe wel nigh nocht ;
I have so many an ydel thocht
Purely for defaute of slepe, 5
That, by my trouthe, I take þkepe
Of no-thing, how hit cometh or goth,
Ne me nis no-thing leef nor loth. 10
Al is y-liche good to me—
Joye or sorowe, wherso hit be—
For I have feling in no-thing, 15
But, as it were, a massed thing,
Always in point to falle a-down ;
For þeory imaginacioun
Is alway hoolly in my minde. 20
And wel ye woot, agaynes kinde
Hit were to liven in this wyse ;
For nature wolde nat suffyse
To noon erthely creature
Not longe tyme to endure

Withoute slepe, and be[en] in sorwe ;
And I ne may, ne night ne morwe,
Slepe; and þthus melancolye,
And dreed I have for to dye,
Defaute of slepe, and hevynesse 25
Hath sleyn my spirit of quiknesse,
That I have lost al lustihede.
Suche fantasyes ben in myn hede
So I not what is best to do.
But men mighte axe me, why so 30
I may not slepe, and what me is ?
But natheles, who aske this
Leseth his asking trewely.
My-selven can not telle why 35
The sooth ; but trewely, as I gesse,
I holdē hit be a siknesse
That I have suffred this eight yere,
And yet my bote is never the nere ;
For ther is phisicien but oon,
That may me hele ; but that is doon. 40
Passe we over until eft ;
That wil not be, moot nede be left ;

Our first matere is good to kepe.

So whan I saw I might not slope,
Til now late, this other night, 45
Upon my bedde I sat upright,
And bad oon reche me a book,
A romaunce, and he hit me took
To rede and dryve the night away ;
For me thoghte it better play 50
Then playe[n] either at chesse or tables.

And in this boke were writen fables
That clerkes hadde, in olde tyme,
And other poets, put in ryme
To rede, and for to be in minde 55
Whyl men loved the lawe of kinde.
This book ne spak but of such thinges,
Of quenes lyves, and of kinges,
And many othere thinges smale.
Amonge al this I fond a tale 60
That me thoughte a wonder thing.

This was the tale : Ther was a king
That highte Seys, and hadde a wyf,
The beste that mighte bere lyf ;
And this quene highte Alcyone. 65
So hit befel, thereafter sone,
This king wolde wenden over see.
To tellen shortly, whan that he
Was in the see, thus in this wyse,
Soche a tempest gan to ryse 70
That brak hir mast, and made it falle,
And clefte hir ship, and dreinte hem allo,
That never was founden, as it telles,
Bord ne man, ne nothing elles.
Right thus this king Seys loste his lyf. 75

Now for to speken of his wyf :—
This lady, that was left at home,
Hath wonder, that the king ne come
Hoom, for hit was a longe terme.
Anon her herte gan to erme ; 80
And for that hir thoughte evermo
Hit was not wel the dwelte so,
She longed so after the king
That certes, hit were a pitous thing
To telle hir hertely sorwful lyf 85
That hadde, alas ! this noble wyf ;
For him she loved alderbest.
Anon she sente bothe eest and west
To seke him, but they founde nought.

'Alas !' quoth she, 'that I was wrought !
And wher my lord, my love, be deed ? 91
Certes. I nil never ete breed,
I make a-vowe to my god here,

But I mowe of my lorde here !'
Such sorwe this lady to her took 95
That trewely I, which made this book,
Had swich pite and swich rowthe
To rede hir sorwe, that, by my trowthe,
I ferde the worse al the morwe
After, to thenken on her sorwe. 100

So whan she coude here no word
That no man mighte finde hir lord,
Ful oft she swouned, and seide 'alas !'
For sorwe ful nigh wood she was ; 105
Ne she coude no reed but oon ;
But down on knees she sat anoon,
And tweep, that pite was to here.

'A ! mercy ! swete lady dere !'
Quod she to Juno, hir goddessse ;
'Help me out of this distresse, 110
And yeve me grace my lord to see
Sone, or wite wher-so he be,
Or how he fareth, or in what wyse,
And I shal make you sacrificse,
And hoolly youres become I shal 115
With good wil, body, herte, and al ;
And but thou wilt this, lady swete,
Send me grace to slepe, and mete
In my slepe som certeyn sweven,
Wher-through that I may knowen even
Whether my lord be quik or deed.' 121
With that word she heng down the heed,
And fil a-swown as cold as ston ;
Hir women caughte her up anon,
And broghten hir in bed al naked, 125
And she, forweped and forwaked,
Was wery, and thus the dede sleep
Fil on her, or she toke keep,

Through Juno, that had herd hir bone,
That made hir [for] to slepe sone ; 130
For as she prayde, so was don,
In dede ; for Juno, right anon,
Called thus her messagere
To do her crande, and he com nere.
Whan he was come, she bad him thus : 135
'Go bet,' quod Juno, 'to Morpheus,
Thou knowest him wel, the god of sleep ;
Now understond wel, and tak keep.
Sey thus on my halfe, that he
Go faste into the grete see, 140
And bid him that, on alle thing,
He take up Seys body the king,
That lyth ful pale and no-thing rody.
Bid him crepe into the body,

And do it goon to Alcyone 145
 The quene, ther she lyth alone,
 And shewe hir shortly, hit is no nay,
 How hit was dreynt this other day ;
 And do the body speke þso
 Right as hit was wont to do, 150
 The whyles that hit was on lyve.
 Go now faste, and by thee blyve ! *quichly*
 This messenger took leve and wente
 Upon his wey, and never ne stente
 Til he com to the derke valeye 155
 That stant bytwene roches tweye,
 Ther never yet grew corn ne gras,
 Ne tree, ne þnothing that ought was,
 Beste, ne man, ne þnothing elles,
 Save ther were a fewe welles 160
 Came renning fro the clifles adoun,
 That made a deedly sleping soun,
 And ronnen down right by a cave
 That was under a rokke y-grave
 Amid the valey, wonder depe. 165
 Ther thise goddes laye and slepe,
 Morpheus, and Eclympasteyre,
 That was the god of slepes heyre,
 That slepe and did non other werk.
 This cave was also as derk
 As helle pit over-al aboute *quichly*
 They had good leyser for to ronte *quichly*
 To envye, who might slepe beste ;
 Some henge hir chin upon hir breste *quichly*
 And talepe upright, hir heed y-hed, 175
 And some lay[e] naked in hir bed,
 And slepe whyles the dayes laste.
 This messenger com flying faste,
 And cryed, ' O ho ! awak anon ! ' 179
 Hit was for noght ; ther herde him non.
 ' Awak ! ' quod he, ' who is, lyth there ? '
 And blew his horn right in hir ere,
 And cryed ' awaketh ! ' wonder hye.
 This god of slepe, with his oon y8
 Cast up, taxed, ' who clepeth there ? ' 185
 ' Hit am I, ' quod this messagere ;
 ' Jaso had thou shuldest goon '—
 And tolde him what he shulde doon
 As I have told yow here-tofore ;
 Hit is no need reherse hit more ; 190
 And wente his wey, whan he had sayd. *quichly*
 Anon this god of slepe a-brayd *quichly*
 Out of his slepe, and gan to goon,
 And did as he had bede him doon ;
 Took up the dreynte body sone, 195

And bar hit forth to Alcyone,
 His wyf the quene, ther-as she lay,
 Right even a quarter before day,
 And stood right at hir beddes fete,
 And called hir, right as she hete, 200
 By name, and seyde, ' my swete wyf,
 Awak ! let be your sorwful lyf !
 For in your sorwe ther lyth no reed ;
 For certes, swete, I þnam but deed ;
 Ye shul me never on lyve y-see. 205
 But good swete herte, [look] that ye
 Bury my body, þat whiche a tyde
 Ye mowe hit finde the see besyde ;
 And far-wel, swete, my worldes blisse !
 I praye god your sorwe lisse ; *quichly* 210
 To litel whyl our blisse lasteth ! '
 With that hir eyen up she casteth,
 And saw noght ; ' þA ! ' quod she, ' for
 sorwe ! '
 And deyed within the thridde morwe.
 But what she sayde more in that swow
 I may not telle yow as now, 216
 Hit were to longe for to dwelle ;
 My first matere I wil yow telle,
 Wherfor I have told this thing
 Of Alcione and Seys the king. 220
 For thus moche dar I say[e] wel,
 I had be dolyen everydel,
 And deed, right through defaute of sleep,
 If I nad red and take[n] keep
 Of this tale next before : 225
 And I wol telle yow wherfore ;
 For I ne might, for bote no bale, *quichly*
 Slepe, or I had red this tale
 Of this dreynte Seys the king,
 And of the goddes of sleping. 230
 Whan I had red this tale wel,
 And over-loked hit everydel,
 Me thoughte wonder if hit were so ;
 For I had never herd speke, or tho,
 Of no goddes that coude make 235
 Men [for] to slepe, ne for to wako ;
 For I ne knew never god but oon.
 And in my game I sayde anon—
 And yet me list right evel to pleye—
 ' Rather then that I shulde deyo 240
 Through defaute of sleping thus,
 I wolde yive thilke Morpheus,
 Or his goddesse, dame Juno,
 Or som wight elles, I ne roghte who—
 To make me slepe and have som reste—

I wil yive him the alder-beste 246
 Yift that ever he abood his lyve,
 And here on warde, right now, as blyve ;
 If he wol make me slepe a lyte,
 Of downe of pure dowves whyte 250
 I wil yive him a fether-bed,
 Rayed with golde, and right wel cled
 In fyn blak satin ~~doutremere~~,
 And many a pilow, and every bere
 Of clothe of Reynes, to slepe softē ; 255
 Him thar not nede to turnen ofte.
 And I wol yive him al that falles
 To a chambre ; and al his halles
 I wol do peynte with pure golde,
 And tapite hem ful many folde 260
 Of oo sute ; this shal he have,
 If I wiste wher were his cave,
 If he can make me slepe sone,
 As did the goddesse †Alcione.
 And thus this ilke god, Morpheus, 265
 May winne of me mo feēs thus
 Than ever he wan ; and to Juno,
 That is his goddesse, I shal so do.
 I trow that she shal holde her payd.
 I hadde unneth that word y-sayd 270
 Right thus as I have told hit yow,
 That sodeynly, I niste how,
 Swich a lust anoon me took
 To slepe, that right upon my book
 I fil aslepe, and therwith even 275
 Me mette so inly swete a sweven,
 So wonderful, that never yit
 I trowe no man hadde the wit
 To conne wel my sweven rede ;
 No, not Joseph, withoute drede, 280
 Of Egipte, he that redde so
 The kinges meting Pharaο,
 No more than coude the leste of us ;
 Ne nat scarsly Macrobeus,
 (He that wroot al th'avisioun 285
 That he mette, king Scipioun,
 The noble man, the Affrican—
 Swiche mervayles fortunod than)
 I trowe, a-rede my dremes even.
 Lo, thus hit was, this was my sweven. 290

The Dream.

Me thoughte thus :—that hit was May,
 And in the dawning ther I lay,
 Me mette thus, in my bed al naked :—

†I loked forth, for I was waked
 With smale foules a gret hepe,
 That had affrayed me out of †alepe
 Through noyse and swetnesse of hir son
 And, as me mette, they sate among,
 Upon my chambre-roof withoute,
 Upon the tyles, †al a-boute, 3
 And songen, everich in his wyse,
 The moste solempne servyse
 By note, that ever man, I trowe,
 Had herd ; for som of hem song lowe,
 Som hye, and al of oon acorde. 3
 To telle shortly, at oo worde,
 Was never y-herd so swete a steven,
 But hit had be a thing of heaven ;—
 So mery a soun, so swete entunes,
 That certes, for the toun of Tewnes, 31
 I nolde but I had herd hem singe ;
 For al my chambre gan to ringe
 Through singing of hir armonye.
 For instrument nor melodye
 Was nowher herd yet half so swete
 Nor of acorde half so mete ; 32
 For ther was noon of hem that feyned
 To singe, for ech of hem him peyned,
 To finde out mery crafty notes ; 33
 They ne spared not hir throttes.
 And, sooth to seyn, my chambre was
 Ful wel depeynted, and with glas
 Were al the windowes wel y-glased,
 Ful clere, and nat an hole y-crased, 34
 That to beholde hit was gret joye.
 For hoolly al the storie of Troye
 Was in the glasing y-wroght thus,
 Of Ector and †king Priamus,
 Of Achilles and †Lamedon,
 Of †Medea and of Jason, 35
 Of Paris, Eleyne, and Lavyne.
 And †alle the walles with colours fyne
 Were peynted, bothe text and glose, 36
 †Of al the Romaunce of the Rose.
 My windowes weren shet echon,
 And through the glas the sunne shon
 Upon my bed with brighte bemes,
 With many glade gilden stremes ;
 And eek the welken was so fair,
 Blew, bright, clere was the air, 37
 And ful atempre, for sothe, hit was ;
 For nother †cold nor hoot hit nas,
 Ne in al the welken was a cloude.
 And as I lay thus, wonder loude

e I herde an hunte blowe 345
 s horn, and for to knowe
 t were clere or hors of sounne.
 goinge, up and doune,
 houndes, and other thing;
 speken of hunting, 350
 wolde slee the hert with
 he,
 ie hert had, upon lengthe,
 mposed, I not now what.
 , whan I herde that,
 hey wolde on hunting goon,
 glad, and up anoon; 356
 hors, and forth I wente
 chambre; I never stente
 the feld withoute.
 ok I a gret route 360,
 nd eek of foresters,
 relays and lymers,
 em to the forest faste,
 hem;—so at the laste
 , ladde a lymere:— 365
 , who shal hunte[n] here?'
 d he answerde ageyn,
 erour Octovien,
 nd is heer faste by.' . . .
 alfe, in good tyme,' quod I,
 e!' and gan to ryde. 371
 ame to the forest-ryde,
 dide, right anoon,
 ng fil to doon.
 r-hunte anoon, fot-hoot, 375
 t horne blew three moot
 upling of his houndes.
 hyl the hert [y]-founde is,
 and rechased faste
 ; and tat the laste, 380
 used and stal away
 houndes a prevy way,
 s had overshote hem alle,
 n a defaute y-falle;
 he hunte wonder faste 385
 oyn at the laste.
 walked fro my tree,
 ente, ther cam by me
 at fauned me as I stood,
 y-folowed, and coude no good.
 d creep to me as lowe, 391
 it hadde me y-knowe,
 his heed and joyned his cress,
 al smothe doun his heres.

I wolde han caught hit, and anoon 395
 Hit fledde, and was fro me goon;
 And I him folwed, and hit forth wente
 Doun by a floury grene wente *just th*
 Ful thikke of gras, ful softe and swete,
 With floures fele, faire under fete, 400
 And litel used, hit seemed thus;
 For bothe Flora and Zephirus,
 They two that make floures growe,
 Had mad hir dwelling ther, I trowe;
 For hit was, on to beholde, 405
 As thogh the erthe envye wolde
 To be gayer than the heven,
 To have mo floures, swiche ~~seven~~
 As in the welken sterres be.
 Hit had forgete the povertie 410
 That winter, through his colde morwes,
 Had mad hit suffre[n], and his sorwes;
 Al was forgotten, and that was sene.
 For al the wode was waxen grene,
 Swetnesse of dewe had mad it waxe. 415
 Hit is no need eek for to axe
 Wher ther were many grene greves,
 Or thikke of trees, so ful of leves;
 And every tree stood by him-selve
 Fro other wel ten foot or twelve. 420
 So grete trees, so huge of strengthe,
 Of fourty or fifty fadme lengthe,
 Clene withoute bough or stikke,
 With croppes brode, and eek as thikke—
 They were nat an inche a-sonder— 425
 That hit was shadwe over-al under;
 And many an hert and many an hinde
 Was both before me and bihinde.
 Of founes, soures, bukkes, doës *... ..*
 Was ful the wode, and many roës. 430
 And many squerelles, that sete
 Ful hye upon the trees, and ete,
 And in hir maner made festes.
 Shortly, hit was so ful of bestes,
 That thogh Argus, the noble countour,
 Sete to rekene in his countour, 436
 And rekene[d] with his figures ten—
 For by the figures mowe al ken,
 If they be crafty, rekene and noumbre,
 And telle of every thing the noumbre—
 Yet shulde he fayle to rekene even 441
 The wondres, me mette in my sweven.
 But forth they romed twonder faste
 Doun the wode; so at the laste
 I was war of a man in blak, 445

That sat and had y-turned his bak
 To an oke, an huge tree.
 'Lord,' thoghte I, 'who may that be?
 What ayleth him to sitten here?'
 Anoon-right I wente nere; 450
 Than fond I sitte even upright
 A wonder wel-faringe knight—
 By the maner me thoughte so—
 Of good mochel, and tyong therto,
 Of the age of four and twenty year. 455
 Upon his berde but litel heer,
 And he was clothed al in blakke.
 I stalked even unto his bakke,
 And ther I stood as stille as ought,
 That, sooth to saye, he saw me nought,
 For-why he heng his heed adoun. 461
 And with a deedly sorwful sounne
 He made of ryme ten vers or twelve,
 Of a compleynt to him-selve,
 The moste pite, the moste rowthe, 465
 That ever I herde; for, by my trowthe,
 Hit was gret wonder that nature
 Might suffre[n] any creature
 To have swich sorwe, and be not deed.
 Ful pitous, pale, and nothing reed, 470
 He sayde a lay, a maner song,
 Withoute note, withoute song,
 And hit was this; for twel I can
 Reherse hit; right thus hit began.—
 'I have of sorwe so gret woon, 475
 That joye gete I never noon,
 Now that I see my lady bright,
 Which I have loved with al my might,
 Is fro me deed, and is a-goon.† 479
 'Allas, [o] deeth! what ayleth thee, 481
 That thou noldest have taken me,
 Whan that thou toke my lady swete?
 That was so fayr, so fresh, so free,
 So good, that men may wel [y]-see 485
 Of al goodnesse she had no mete!'—
 Whan he had mad thus his complaynte,
 His sorowful herte gan faste faynte,
 And his spirites wexen dede;
 The blood was fled, for pure drede, 490
 Doun to his herte, to make him warm—
 For wel hit feled the herte had harm—
 To wite eek why hit was a-drad
 By kinde, and for to make hit glad;
 For hit is membre principal 495
 Of the body; and that made al
 His hewe chaunge and wexe grene

And pale, for †no blood was sene
 In no maner lime of his.

Anoon therwith whan I saw this, ^{an}
 He ferde thus ovel ther he sete, ^{felt}
 I wente and stood right at his fete,
 And grettē him, but he spak noght,
 But argued with his owne thoght,
 And in his witte disputed faste 505
 Why and how his lyf might laste:
 Him thoughte his sorwes were so smerte
 And lay so colde upon his herte;
 So, through his sorwe and hevy thoght,
 Made him that he ne herde me noght:
 For he had wel nigh lost his minde, 511
 Thogh Pan, that men clepe god of kinde,
 Were for his sorwes never so wrooth.

But at the laste, to sayn right sooth,
 He was war of me, how I stood 515
 Before him, and dide of myn hood,
 And †grettē him, as I best coude.
 Debonairly, and no-thing loude,
 He sayde, 'I prey thee, be not wrooth,
 I herde thee not, to sayn the sooth, 520
 Ne I saw thee not, sir, trewely.'

'A! goode sir, no fors,' quod I,
 'I am right sory if I have ought
 Destroubled yow out of your thought;
 For-yive me if I have mis-take.' 525

'Yis, th' amendes is light to make,' ^{well}
 Quod he, 'for ther lyth noon ther-to; ^{now}
 Ther is no-thing missayd nor do.'

Lo! how goodly spak this knight,
 As it had been another wight: 530
 He made it nouthen tough no queynte ^{hard}
 And I saw that, and gan me aquee[n]te ^{well}
 With him, and fond him so trefable, ^{much}
 Right wonder skilful and resonable, ^{so}
 As me thoghte, for al his bale. 535

Anoon-right I gan finde a tale
 To him, to loke wher I might ought
 Have more knowing of his thought.

'Sir,' quod I, 'this game is doon;
 I holde that this hert be goon; 540
 Thise huntēs conne him nowher see.'

'I do no fors therof,' quod he,
 'My thought is ther-on never a del.'

'By our lord,' quod I, 'I trow yow wel,
 Right so me thinketh by your chere. 545
 But, sir, oo thing wol ye here?
 Me thinketh, in gret sorwe I yow see
 But certes, [good] sir, yif that ye

and 548

Discure me your wo, *revel*
 his god helpe me so, 550
 yif I can or may;
 I've hit by assay.
 ronthe, to make yow hool,
 by power hool;
 me of your sorwes smerte,
 hit may ese your herte, 556
 ful seke under your syde.
 he loket on me asyde,
 b, 'nay, that wol not be.'
 rcy, gode frend,' quod he,
 see that thou woldest so, 561
 never the rather he do.
 my sorwe glade,
 b my hewe to falle and
 yn understanding lorn, 565
 so that I was born!
 make my sorwes slyde,
 remedies of Ovyde;
 god of melodye,
 with tplayes slye, *delusion* 570
 may tphincien,
 as, no Galien,
 at I live houres twelve;
 wol assaye him-selve
 herte can have pite 575
 e, lat him see me,
 hat deeth hath mad al naked
 that was ever maket,
 orste of alle wightes, *delusion*
 y dayes and my nightes, 580
 lustes be me lothe,
 re and I be wrothe.
 sth is so tmy fo, *delusion*
 olde drey, hit wolde not so;
 folwe hit, hit wol fleo; 585
 e thit, hit nil not me
 weyne withoute need, *delusion*
 ig, and be not deed,
 hua, that lyth in helle,
 more sorwe telle. 590
 wiste al, by my trouthe,
 at he hadde routhe
 my sorwes smerte,
 ath a feendly herte.
 seeth me first on morwe 595
 is bath [y]-met with sorwe;
 rwe and sorwe is I.
 nd I wol telle the why;

My t-song is turned to pleyning,
 And al my laughter to weping, 600
 My glade thoughtes to hevynesse,
 In travaile is myn ydelnesse *happiness*
 And eek my reste; my wele is wo.
 My good is harm, and ever-mo
 In wrathe is turned my playing, 605
 And my delyt in-to sorwing.
 Myn hele is turned into seeknesse,
 In drede is al my sikernes. *confidence*
 To derke is turned al my light,
 My wit is foly, my day is night, 610
 My love is hate, my sleep waking.
 My mirthe and meles is fasting,
 My countenance is nyete, *delusion*
 And al aboved wher-so I be, *confidence*
 My pees, in plying and in werre; 615
 Allas! how mighte I fare werre?
 'My boldnesse is turned to shame,
 For fals Fortune hath playd a game
 Atte ches with me, allas! the whye!
 The trayteresse fals and ful of gyle, 620
 That al behoteth and no-thing halt,
 She goth upright and yet she halt, *delusion*
 That baggeth soule and loketh faire, *delusion*
 The dispitous debonaire, *kind person*
 That scorneth many a creature
 An ydole of fals portraiture
 Is she, for she wil sone wryen, *delusion*
 She is the monstres heed y-wryen, *delusion*
 As filth over y-strawed with floures;
 Hir moete worship and hir tflour is *delusion*
 To lyen, for that is hir nature;
 Without feyth, lawe, or mesure
 She is fals; and ever laughinge
 With oon eye, and that other wepinge.
 That is broght up, she set al down. 635
 I lykne hir to the scorpion,
 That is a fals flatering best;
 For with his hede he maketh feste,
 But al amid his flatering
 With his tayle he wol stinge, 640
 And envynme; and so wol she.
 She is th' envyous charite
 That is ay fals, and semeth wele
 So turneth she hir falso whele
 About, for it is no-thing stable, 645
 Now by the fyre, now at table;
 Ful many oon hath she thus y-blent, *delusion*
 She is pley of enchauntement,
 That semeth oon and is nat so,

The false thief! what hath she do, 650
Trowest thou? by our lord, I wol thee
seye.

Atte ches with me she gan to pleye;
With hir false draughtes divers
She stal on me, and took my fers *gillen*
And whan I saw my fers aweye, 655
Alas! I couthe no lenger pleye,
But seyde, "farwel, sweto, y-wis,
And farwel al that ever ther is!"
Therwith Fortune seyde "chek here!"
And "mate!" in †mid pointe of the
chekkere 660

With a poune erraunt, alas!
Ful craftier to pley she was
Than Athalus, that made the game
First of the ches: so was his name.
But god wolde I had ones or twyes 665
in w Y-koud and knowe the jeopardyes
That coude the Grek Pithagores!
I shulde have pleyd the bet at ches,
And kept my fers the bet therby;
And thogh wherto? for trewely 670
I hold that wish nat worth a stree *h*
Hit had be never the bet for me.
For Fortune can so many a wyle,
Ther be but fewe can hir begyle,
And eek she is the las to blame; 675
My-self I wolde have do the same,
Before god, hadde I been as she;
She oghte the more excused be.
For this I say yet more therto,
Hadde I be god and mighte have do 680
My wille, whan †my fers she caughte,
I wolde have drawe the same draughte.
For, also wis god yive me reste,
I dar wel swere she took the beste!

'But through that draughte I have
lorn 685

My blisse; alas! that I was born!
For evermore, I trowe trewly,
For al my wil, my lust hoolly
Is turned; but yet, what to done?
By our lord, hit is to deye sone! 690
For no-thing I [ne] leve it noght,
But live and deye right in this thocht.
†Ther nis planete in firmament,
Ne in air, ne in erthe, noon element,
That they ne yive me a yift echoon 695
Of weping, whan I am aloon.

For whan that I avyse me wel,

And bethenke me every-del,
How that ther lyth in rekening,
In my sorwe, for no-thing; 700
And how ther leveth no gladnesse
May gladde me of my distresse,
And how I have lost *suffisance* *conscience*
And therto I have no plesance,
Than may I say, I have right noght. 705
And whan al this falleth in my thocht,
Allas! than am I overcome!
For that is doon is not to come! *Thaf*
I have more sorowe than Tantale.'

And whan I herde him telle this tale
Thus pitously, as I yow telle, 710
Unnethe mighte I lenger dwelle,
Hit dide myn herte so moche wo.

'A! good sir!' quod I, 'say not so!
Have som pite on your nature 715
That formed yow to creature;
Remembre yow of Socrates;
For he ne counted nat three strees
Of noght that Fortune coude do.'

'No,' quod he, 'I can not so.' 720
'Why so? good sir! †parde!' quod I;

'Ne say noght so, for trewely,
Thogh ye had lost the ferses twelve,
And ye for sorwe mordred your-selve,
Ye sholde be dampned in this cas 725
By as good right as Medea was,
That slow hir children for Jason;
And Phyllis †als for Demophon
Heng hir-self, so weylaway! *alas*
For he had broke his terme-day 730

To come to hir. Another rage
Had Dydo, †quene eek of Cartage,
That slow hir-self, for Eneas
Was fals; [a!] whiche a fool she was!
And Ecquo dyed for Narcisus 735
Nolde nat love hir; and right thus
Hath many another folly don.

And for Dalida dyed Sampson,
That slow him-self with a pilere.
But ther is †noon a-lyve here 740
Wolde for a fers make[n] this wo!'

'Why so?' quod he; 'hit is nat so;
Thou wost ful litel what thou menest;
I have lost more than thou wenest.'
'Lo, †sir, how may that be?' quod I; 745
'Good sir, tel me al hoolly
In what wyse, how, why, and wherfore
That ye have thus your blisse lorn.'

'quod he, 'com sit adoun ;
 up condicioun 750
 thoolly, with al thy wit,
 tent to harkene hit.'
 'Swere thy trouthe ther-to.'
 'Do than holde her-to !'
 ht blythly, so god me save, 755
 th al the witte I have,
 as wel as I can.'
 'a half!' quod he, and began —
 he, 'with first I couthe
 maner wit fro youthe, 760
 understanding
 hende, in any thing,
 was, in myn owne wit,
 I have ever yit 765
 ry, and yiven rente
 olly with gode entente,
 gh plesures become hit thral,
 wil, body, herte, and al
 atte in his servage,
 orde, and dide homage ; 770
 outly I prayde him to,
 besette myn herte so,
 saunce to him wore,
 up to my lady dera.
 is was longe, and many a year—
 yn herte was set o-wher, 775
 thus, and niste why ;
 t cam me kindly.
 I was therto t'able
 wal or a table ; 780
 redy to cacche and take
 n wil therin make,
 en wol portreys or paynte
 rkes never so queynte, 785
 ilke tyme I ferde t'oo
 to have lerned tho,
 ve coude as wel or better,
 other art or letter.
 re cam first in my thought,
 forgot it nought. 790
 e to my firste craft,
 t is with me {y}-left.
 took hit of so yong age,
 e hadde my corage
 yme turned to no-thing 795
 o mochel knowleching.
 yme Youthe, my maistresse,
 me in ydelnesse ;
 us in my firste youthe,

And the ful litel good I couthe ; 800
 For al my werkes were fittinge,
 †And al my thoughtes varyinge ;
 Al were to me y-liche good,
 That I knew tho ; but thus hit stood.
 'Hit happed that I cam t'a day 805
 Into a place, ther †I say,
 Trewly, the fayrest companye
 Of ladies, that ever man with y^e
 Had seen togedres in oo place.
 Shal I clepe hit hap other grace 810
 That broghte me ther ? nay, but Fortune,
 That is to lyen ful comune,
 The fals trayterous, pervers,
 God wolde I coude clepe hir wers !
 For now she worchoth me ful wo, 815
 And I wol telle sone why so.
 'Among thise ladies thus echoon,
 Soth to sayn, I saw [ther] oon
 That was lyk noon of [al] the route ;
 For I dar swere, withoute doute, 820
 That as the someres sonne bright
 Is fairer, clerer, and hath more light
 Than any t'planete, [is] in heven,
 The mone, or the starres seven,
 For al the worlde, so had she 825
 Surmounted hem alle of beaute,
 Of maner and of comliness,
 Of stature and t'wel set gladnesse,
 Of goodlibede t'oo wel besere—
 Shortly, what shal I more seye ? 830
 By god, and by his halwes twelve,
 It was my swete, right as hir-selve !
 She had so stedfast countenance,
 So noble port and meyntenance, 835
 And Love, that had herd my bone,
 Had espyed me thus sone,
 That she ful sone, in my thought,
 As helpe me god, so was y-caught
 So axenly, that I ne took
 No maner t'reed but at hir look 840
 And at myn herte ; for-why hir even
 So gladly, I trow, myn herte seyen,
 That purely the myn owne thought
 Seyde hit were t'bet serve hir for nought
 Than with another to be wel. 845
 And hit was sooth, for, everydel,
 I wil anon-right telle thee why.
 'I saw hir daunce so comlyly,
 Carole and singe so swetely,
 Laughe and pleye so womanly, 850

And like so debonairely,
 So goodly speke and so frendly,
 That certes I trow that evermore
 Nas seyn so blisful a trewe
 For every heer upon hir hede, 855
 Soth to seyn, hit was not rede,
 Ne neither yew, ne broun hit nas;
 Me thoghte, most lyk gold hit was,
 And whiche even my lady hadde!
 Debonair, goodly, glade, and sadde, 860
 Simple, and good moche, nocht to wyde;
 Therto hir look nas not a-ryde,
 No verthwart, but beset so wel,
 Hit trow and took up every del,
 Aile that on hir gan beholde 865
 Hir eyen semed anon she wolde
 Have mercy, fodes weiden so;
 But hit was never the rather do.
 Hit nas no countrefeted thing,
 It was hir owne pure lokyng, 870
 That the goddesse, Nature,
 Had made here open by mesure,
 And close, for were she never so glad,
 Hir lokyng was not folde spryng
 Ne widely, thogh that she pleyde: 875
 But ever, me thoghte, hir even seyde,
 "By god, ny wrathe is al for-yive!"
 Therwith hir liste so wel to live,
 That anlesse was of hir a-drad.
 She nas to sobre ne to glad, 880
 In alle thinges more mesure
 Had never, I trowe, creature.
 But many oon with hir loken she herte,
 And that sat hir ful lyte at herte,
 For she knew no-thing of hir thought, 885
 But whether she knew, or knew hit noght,
 Algate she no roghte of hem a stree!
 To gete hir love no ner nas he
 That wored at home, than he in lode;
 The formost was alway behinde, 890
 But gode folk, over al other,
 She loved as man may do his brother;
 Of whiche love she was wonder large,
 In skilful places that bere charge.
 "Which a visage had she ther-to!" 895
 Alas! myn herte is wonder woe
 That I ne can descryven hit!
 Me likketh bothe English and wit
 For to unde hit at the fulle
 And eek my spirits be so dulle 900
 So greet a thing for to devyse.

I have no wit that can satisfyse
 To comprehenden] hir beaute.
 But thus moche I seyn, that she
 Was troy, fresh, and lyvely hewed, 905
 And every day hir beaute newed
 And negh hir face was alder-best
 For certes, Nature had swich lest
 To make that fair, that trowly she
 Was hir cheef patron of beaute, 910
 And cheef ensample of al hir werke,
 And moustre, for be hit never so delyte,
 Me thinketh I see hir ever-mo.
 And yet more-over, thogh alle the
 That ever lived were now a-lyve, 915
 [They] ne sholden have funde to dyscryve
 In al hir face a wikked signe,
 For hit was sail, simple and benigne
 And which a goodly softe speche
 Had that swete my lyves leche! 920
 So frendly, and so wel y-grounded
 Up al reson so wel y-founded,
 And so trowtable to alle gode,
 That I dar swere þy the rode
 Of eloquence was never founde 925
 So swete a sowninge facounde,
 Ne trower tonged, ne scorned lasse.
 No bet coude he, that, by the masse
 I durste swere, thogh the pope hit sene,
 That ther was never through hir tounge
 Man ne woman gretly harmed 930
 As for hir, [ther] was al harm hid,
 Ne lasse flatering in hir worde,
 That purely hir simple recorde
 Was funde as trewe as any word,
 Or trouthe of any mannes honde.
 Ne chyd she coude never a del,
 That knoweth al the world ful wel.
 But swich a fairnesse of a nekke
 Had that swete that boon nor brekke
 Nas ther non sene, that mis-sat 935
 Hit was whyt, smoth, streght, and nat,
 Withonten hole, and canel-boon.
 As by seming, had she noon
 Hir throte, as I have now memoire 940
 Semed a round tear of yvoire,
 Of good gretnesse and nocht to grette.
 And gode faire Warre she hete,
 That was my lady name right,
 She was bothe fair and ligh, 945
 She hadde not hir name wrong
 Right faire shuldres, and body

and armes, every lith, *lith*
 esshy, not greet therwith;
 te handes, and nayles rede, 955
 testes; and of good brede
 s were, a streight flat bak.
 hir non other lak
 ir limmes nere *in proportion* *sewing*
 as I had knowing. 960
 she coude so wel pleye,
 at hir liste, that I dar seye,
 was lyk to torche bright,
 y man may take of light
 nd hit hath never the lesse. 965
 ner and of comlinessse
 ferde my lady dere; *ferde*
 wight of hir manere
 che ynogh, if that he wolde,
 eyen hir to beholde. 970
 tsweren, if that she
 ng ten thousand be,
 s have be, at the leste,
 airour of al the feste,
 ey had stonden in a rowe, 975
 es eyen that coude have knowe.
 so men had pleyd or waked,
 te the felawship as naked
 n hir, that saw I ones,
 one withoute stones. 980
 she was, to myn yē,
 p fenix of Arabye, *self*
 liveth never but oon;
 as she ne knew I noon.
 ke of goodnesse; trewly she 985
 moche debonaire
 ad Hester in the bible,
 e, if more were possible.
 to seyne, therwith-al
 wit so general, 990
 nclyned to alle gode,
 ir wit was set, by the rode,
 malice, upon gladnesse;
 saw never yet a lesse
 than she was in doing. 995
 that she ne had knowing
 as harm; or elles she
 no good, so thinketh me.
 rewly, for to speke of trouthe,
 ad had, hit had be rounthe. 1000
 e had so moche hir del—
 r seyn and swere hit wel—
 athe him-self, over al and al,

Had chose his maner principal
 In hir, that was his resting-place. 1005
 Ther-to she hadde the moste grace,
 To have stedfast perseveraunce,
 And esy, atempre governaunce, *self*
 That ever I knew or wiste yit; *perfect*
 So pure suffraunt was hir wit. 1010
 And reson gladly she understood,
 Hit folowed wel she coude good.
 She used gladly to do wel;
 These were hir maners every-del.
 'Therwith she loved so wel right, 1015
 She wrong do wolde to no wight;
 No wight might do hir no shame,
 She loved so wel hir owne name.
 Hir luste to holde no wight in honde;
 Ne, be thou siker, she tⁿolde fonde 1020
 To holde no wight in balaunce, *in balance*
 By half word ne by countenaunce,
 But-if men wolde upon hir lye;
 Ne sende men in-to Walakye,
 To Pruyse and in-to Tartarye, 1025
 To Alisaundre, ne in-to Turkye,
 And bidde him faste, anoon that he
 Go hoodles tⁿ to the drye see,
 And come hoom by the Carrenare;
 And seye, "Sir, be now right ware 1030
 That I may of yow here seyn
 Worship, or that ye come ageyn!"
 She ne used no suche knakkes smale.
 'But wherfor that I telle my tale?
 Right on this same, as I have seyde, 1035
 Was hoolly al my love leyde;
 For certes, she was, that swete wyf,
 My suffisaunce, my lust, my lyf,
 Myn hap, myn hele, and al my blisse,
 My worldes welfare and my tⁿlisse, 1040
 And I hirs hoolly, everydel.'
 'By our lord,' quod I, 'I trowe yow wel!
 Hardely, your love was wel beset,
 I not how ye mighte have do bet.'
 'Bot? ne no wight so wel!' quod he. 1045
 'I trowe hit, sir,' quod I, 'parde!'
 'Nay, leve hit wel!' 'Sir, so do I;
 I leve yow wel, that trewely
 Yow thoghte, that she was the beste,
 And to beholde the alderfaireste, 1050
 Who so had loked tⁿwith your eyen.'
 'With myn? nay, alle that hir seyn
 Seyde, and swore[n] hit was so.
 And thogh they ne hadde, I wolde tho

- Have loved best my lady fre, 1055
 Thogh I had had al the beautee
 That ever had Alcipyades,
 And al the strengthe of Ercules,
 And therto had the worthinesse 1060
 Of Alisaundre, and al the richesse
 That ever was in Babiloyne,
 In Cartage, or in Macedoyne,
 Or in Rome, or in Ninive;
 And therto al-so hardy be
 As was Ector, so have I joye, 1065
 That Achilles slow at Troye—
 And therfor was he slayn also
 In a temple, for bothe two
 Were slayn, he and †Antilogus,
 And so seyth Dares Frigius, 1070
 For love of [hir] Polixena—
 Or been as wys as Minerva,
 I wolde ever, withoute drede,
 Have loved hir, for I moste nede!
 “Nede!” nay, †I gabbe now, 1075
 “Noght “nede,” and I wol telle how,
 For of good wille myn herte hit wolde,
 And eek to love hir I was holde
 As for the fairest and the beste.
 ‘She was as good, so have I reste, 1080
 As ever was Penelope of Grece,
 Or as the noble wyf Lucrece,
 That was the beste—he telleth thus,
 The Romain Tytus Livius—
 She was as good, and no-thing lyke, 1085
 Thogh hir stories be autentyke;
 Algate she was as trewe as she.
 ‘But wherfor that I telle thee
 Whan I first my lady sey?
 I was right yong, [the] sooth to sey, 1090
 And ful gret need I hadde to lerne;
 Whan my herte wolde yerne
 To love, it was a greet empyrse.
 But as my wit coude best suffyse,
 After my yonge childly wit, 1095
 Withoute drede, I besette hit
 To love hir in my beste wyse,
 To do hir worship and servyse
 That I †tho coude, by my trouthe,
 Withoute feyning outhur sloutho; 1100
 For wonder fayn I wolde hir see.
 So mochel hit amended me,
 That, whan I saw hir first a-morwe,
 I was warished of al my sorwe
 Of al day after, til hit were eve; 1105
- Me thoghte no-thing mighte me greve
 Were my sorwes never so smerte.
 And yit she sit so in myn herte,
 That, by my trouthe, I nolde noght,
 For al this worlde, out of my thought 11
 Leve my lady; no, trewly!’
 ‘Now, by my trouthe, sir,’ quod I, 112
 ‘Me thinketh ye have such a chaunce
 As shrift withoute repentaunce.’
 ‘Repentaunce! nay fy,’ quod he; 113
 ‘Shulde I now repente me
 To love? nay, certes, than were I wel
 Wers than was Achitofel,
 Or Anthenor, so have I joye,
 The traytour that betraysed Troye, 114
 Or the false Genelon,
 He that purchased the treson
 Of Rowland and of Oliver.
 Nay, why! I am a-lyve here
 I nil foryete hir never-mo.’ 115
 ‘Now, gode sir,’ quod I [right] tho,
 ‘Ye han wel told me her-before.
 It is no need rehearse hit more
 How ye sawe hir first, and where;
 But wolde ye telle me the manere, 116
 To hir which was your firste speche—
 Therof I wolde yow be-seche—
 And how she knewe first your thought,
 Whether ye loved hir or noght,
 And telleth me eek what ye have lore;
 I herde yow telle her-before.’ 117
 ‘Ye,’ seyde he, ‘thou nost what thou
 menest;
 I have lost more than thou wenest.’
 ‘What los is that, [sir]?’ quod I tho;
 ‘Nil she not love yow? is hit so? 118
 Or have ye oght [y-]doon amis,
 That she hath left yow? is hit this?
 For goddes love, tel me al.’
 ‘Before god,’ quod he, ‘and I shal.
 I saye right as I have seyde, 119
 On hir was al my love leyde;
 And yet she niste hit †never a del
 Noght longe tyme, leve hit wel.
 For be right siker, I durste noght 120
 For al this worlde telle hir my thought,
 Ne I wolde have wratthed hir, trewly.
 For wostow why? she was lady
 Of the body; she had the herte,
 And who hath that, may not asterte.
 ‘But, for to kepe me fro ydelnesse, 121

did my besinesse
 onges, as I best coude,
 yme I song hem loude ;
 songes a gret del,
 I coude not make so wel 1160
 I knowe the art al,
 Lamekes sone Tubal,
 out first the art of songe ;
 s brothers hamers ronge
 anvelt up and down, 1165
 took the firste soun ;
 as seyn, Pictagoras,
 he firste finder was
 t ; Aurora telleth so,
 of no fors, of hem two. 1170
 onges thus I made
 ing, myn herte to glade ;
 this was [the] alther-firte,
 er [that] hit were the werste.—
 hit maketh myn herte light,
 henke on that swete wight 1176
 so semely on to see ;
 ushe to god hit might so be,
 wolde holde me for hir knight,
 that is so fair and bright !"—
 have I told thee, sooth to saye,
 song. Upon a days 1182
 hte me what wo
 re that I suffred tho
 and yet she wiste hit nocht, 1185
 hir durste I nat my thoght.
 I thoughte I, "I can no reed ;
 I telle hir, I þnam but deed ;
 telle hir, to seye þsooth,
 red she wol be wrooth, 1190
 hat shal I thanne do?"
 is debat I was so wo,
 hte myn herte braste a-tweyn !
 aste, soth to seyn,
 hoghte that nature 1195
 ed never in creature
 e beaute, trowely,
 ate, withouten mercy.
 ge of that, my tale I tolde
 rwe, as that I never sholde, 1200
 ce, and, mangree my heed,
 have told hir or be deed.
 I how that I began,
 reherse[n] hit I can ;
 as helpe me god with-al, 1205
 hit was in the dismal,

That was the ten woundes of Egipte ;
 For many a word I over-skipte
 In my tale, for pure fere
 Lest my wordes mis-set were. 1210
 With sorweful herte, and woundes dede,
 Softe and quaking for pure drede
 And shame, and stinting in my tale
 For ferde, and myn hewe al pale,
 Ful ofte I wex bothe pale and reed ; 1215
 Bowing to hir, I heng the heed ;
 I durste nat ones loke hir on,
 For wit, manere, and al was gon.
 I seyde "mercy !" and no more ;
 Hit nas no game, hit sat me sore 1220
 ' So atte laste, sooth to seyn,
 Whan that myn herte was come ageyn,
 To telle shortly al my speche,
 With hool herte I gan hir besече
 That she wolde be my lady swete ; 1225
 And swor, and gan hir bertely hete
 Ever to be stedfast and trewe,
 And love hir alwey freshly newe,
 And never other lady have,
 And al hir worship for to save 1230
 As I best coude ; I swor hir this—
 " For youres is al that ever ther is
 For evermore, myn horte swete !
 And never þfalse yow, but I mete,
 I nil, as wis god helpe me so ! " 1235
 ' And whan I had my tale y-do,
 God wot, she accounted nat a stree
 Of al my tale, so thoghte me,
 To telle shortly þas hit is,
 Trowly hir answer, hit was this ; 1240
 I can not now wel counterfete
 Hir wordes, but this was the grete
 Of hir answer ; she sayde, " nay " *ab. i. 117*
 Al-quenterly. Allas ! that day
 The sorwe I suffred, and the wo ! 1245
 That trowly Cassandra, that so
 Bewayled the destruccio[n]
 Of Troye and of Iloun,
 Had never swich sorwe as I thu.
 I durste no more say therto 1250
 For pure fere, but stal away ;
 And thus I lived ful many a day :
 That trowely, I hadde no need
 Ferther than my beides heed
 Never a day to seehe sorwe ; 1255
 I fond hit redy every morwe,
 For-why I loved hir in no gere.

unlucky day

31. 11

'So hit befel, another yere,
 I thoughte ones I wolde fonde
 To do hir knowe and understonde 1260
 My wo; and she wel understood
 That I ne wilned thing but good,
 And worship, and to kepe hir name
 Over þal thing, and drede hir shame,
 And was so besy hir to serve;— 1265
 And pite were I shulde sterve,
 Sith that I wilned noon harm, y-wis.
 So whan my lady knew al this,
 My lady yaf me al hoolly
 The noble yift of hir mercy, 1270
 Saving hir worship, by al weyes;
 Dredles, I mene noon other weyes.
 And therwith she yaf me a ring;
 I trowe hit was the firste thing;
 But if myn herte was y-waxe 1275
 Glad, that is no need to axe!
 As helpe me god, I was as blyve,
 Reysed, as fro dethe to lyve,
 Of alle happes the alder-beste,
 The gladdest and the moste at reste. 1280
 For trewely, that swete wight,
 Whan I had wrong and she the right,
 She wolde alwey so goodely
 For-yeve me so debonairly. *... den*
 In alle my youthe, in alle chaunce, 1285
 She took me in hir governaunce.

'Therwith she was alway so trewe,
 Our joye was ever y-liche newe;
 Our hertes wern so even a payre,
 That never nas that oon contrayre 1290
 To that other, for no wo.
 For sothe, y-liche they suffred tho
 Oo blisse and eek oo sorwe bothe;
 Y-liche they were bothe gladde and
 wrothe;
 Al was us oon, withoute were.. 1295
 And thus we lived ful many a yere

So wel, I can nat telle how.'
 'Sir,' quod I, 'wher is she now?'
 'Now!' quod he, and stinte anon.
 Therwith he wex as deed as stoon, 1300
 And seyde, 'allas! that I was bore!
 That was the los, that her-before
 I tolde thee, that I had lorn.
 Bethenk how I seyde her-beforn, 1304
 "Thou wost ful litel what thou menest;
 I have lost more than thou wenest"—
 God wot, alas! right that was she!'

'Allas! sir, how? what may that be?'
 'She is deed!' 'Nay!' 'Yis, by my
 trouthe!'
 'Is that your los? by god, hit is routhe!'
 And with that worde, right anon, 1311
 They gan to strake forth; al was doon,
 For that tyme, the hert-hunting.
 With that, me thoghte, that this king
 Gan [quikly] hoomward for to ryde 1315
 Unto a place þther besyde,
 Which was from us but a lyte,
 A long castel with walles whyte,
 By seynt Johan! on a riche hil,
 As me mette; but thus it fil 1320
 Right thus me mette, as I yow telle,
 That in the castel þwas a belle,
 As hit had smiten houres twelve.—

Therwith I awook my-selve,
 And fond me lying in my bed; 1325
 And the book that I had red,
 Of Aleyone and Seys the king,
 And of the goddes of sleping,
 I fond it in myn honde ful even. *... Tuall*
 Thoghte I, 'this is so queynt a sweven,
 That I wol, by processe of tyme, 1331
 Fonde to putte this sweven in ryme
 As I can best; and that anon.'—
 This was mysweven; now hit is doon. 1334

Explicit the Boke of the Duchesse.

IV. THE COMPLEYNT OF MARS.

The Proem.

allea, of the morow gray,
 n among yon rowes rede !
 ashe, honoureth ye this
 onne uprist, then wol ye
 at lye in any drede, 5
 ked tonges yow espye ;
 me, the candel of jelowsye !
 ee, and with a wounded
 e : and, with soynt John
 it of your sorowes smerte,
 ft, that cese shal your
 11
 ht is worth an hevye
 ie ' a foul thus herde I
 sonne gan up-sprunge, —
 il ' I rede yow a-wake,
 n not chosen in humble
 16
 ting cheseth yow your
 n ful chosen as I devyse,
 renoyleth your servyse ;
 rpetuely to dure, 4 : 20
 aketh your aventure,
 ship of this hye feate,
 v briddes wyse, singe
 t the compleynt, at the
 t made atte departinge 25
 ns in a morweninge,
 with his fyry torches rede,
 lover in his drede.

The Story.

thridde hevences lord
 ash revolucoun 30

As by desert, hath wonne Venus his love,
 And she hath take him in subjeccioun,
 And as a maistresse taught him his
 lessoun,
 Comaunding him that never, in hir ser-
 vyse,
 He nere so bold no lover to despyse. 35
 For she forbad him jelowsye at alle,
 And crueltie, and bost, and tyrannye ;
 She made him at hir lust so humble and
 talle, *down*
 That when hir dayned caste on him hir yf,
 He took in pacience to live or dye ; 40
 And thus she brydeleth him in hir man-
 ere,
 With no-thing but with scourging of hir
 chere.
 Who regneth now in blisse but Venus,
 That hath this worthy knight in govern-
 aunce ?
 Who singeth now but Mars, that serveth
 thus 45
 The faire Venus, causer of plesaunce ?
 He bynt him to perpetual obeisaunce,
 And she bynt hir to loven him for ever,
 But so be that his traspas hit discever.
 Thus be they knit, and regnen as in heven
 By lokyng most, til hit til, on a tyde, 51
 That by hir bothe assent was set a stoven,
 That Mars shal entre, as faste as he may
 glyde,
 Into hir nexte paleys, to abyde,
 Walking his cours til she had him a-take, 56
 And he preyde hir to haste hir for his
 sake.
 Then seyde he thus : " myn hertes lady
 swete,
 Ye knowe wel my mischef in that place ;
 For aikerly, til that I with yow mete, 59
 My lyf stant ther in aventure and grace ;
 But when I see the beaute of your face,
 Ther is no drede of deeth may do me
 smerte,
 For al your lust is ese to myn herte."

She hath sogret compassion of hir knight,
That dwelleth in solitude til she come ; 65
For hit stood so, that ilke tyme, no wight
Counseyled him, ne seyde to him welcome,
That nigh hir wit for wo was overcome ;
Wherfore she spedde hir as faste in hir
weye,

Almost in oon day, as he dide in tweye. 70

The grete joye that was betwix hem two,
Whan they be met, ther may no tunge
telle,

Ther is no more, but unto bed they go,
And thus in joye and blisse I lete hem
dwelle ;

This worthy Mars, that is of knightthod
welle, 75

The flour of fairnes lappeth in his armes,
And Venus kisseth Mars, the god of armes.

Sojourned hath this Mars, of which I rede,
In chambre amid the paleys prively
A certeyn tyme, til him fel a drede, 80
Through Phebus, that was comen hastily
Within the paleys-yates sturdely,
With torche in honde, of which the
stremes brighte

On Venus chambre knockeden ful lighte.

The chambre, ther as lay this fresshe
quene, 85

Depeynted was with whyte boles grete,
And by the light she knew, that shoon
so shene,

That Phebus cam to brenne hem with his
hete ;

This sely Venus, †dreynt in teres wete,
Enbraceth Mars, and seyde, " alas ! I dye !
The torch is come, that al this world wol
wrye." 91

Up sterte Mars, him liste not to slepe,
Whan he his lady herde so compleyne ;
But, for his nature was not for to wepe,
In stede of teres, fro his eyen tweyne 95
The fyry sparkes brosten out for peyne ;
And hente his hauberk, that lay him be-
syde ;

Flee wolde he not, ne mighte him-selven
hyde.

He throweth on his helm of huge wighte,
And girt him with his swerde ; and in
his honde 100

His mighty spere, as he was wont
fighte,
He shaketh so that almost it to-wonder : *flew in*
Ful hevy he was to walken over londe ;
He may not holde with Venus company
But bad hir fleen, lest Phebus hir espys

O woful Mars ! alas ! what mayst thou
seyn, 10

That in the paleys of thy disturbaunce
Art left behinde, in peril to be sleyn ?

And yet ther-to is double thy penaunce,
For she, that hath thyn herte in govern-
aunce, 11

Is passed halfe the streames of thyn yea
That thou nere swift, wel mayst thou
wepe and cryen.

Now fleeth Venus un-to Cylenius-tour,
With voide cours, for fere of Phebus light
Alas ! and ther ne hath she no socour, 12
For she ne fond ne saw no maner wight
And eek as ther she had but litil might
Wher-for, hir-selven for to hyde and se-
Within the gate she fledde into a cave.

Derk was this cave, and smoking as t-
helle, 13

Not but two pas within the gate hit stoo
A naturel day in derk I lete hir dwelle
Now wol I speke of Mars, furious as
wood ;

For sorow he wolde have seen his hert
blood ;

Sith that he mighte †hir don no com-
panye, 14

He ne roghte not a myte for to dye.

So feble he wex, for hete and for his we
That nigh he swelt, he mighte unnet-
endure ;

He passeth but oo steyre in dayes two,
But ner the les, for al his hevy armure, 15
He foloweth hir that is his lyves cure ;
For whos departing he took gretter yre
Thanne for al his brenning in the fyre.

After he walketh softly a pas,
Compleyning, that hit pite was to here. 16
He seyde, " O lady bright, Venus ! alas !
That ever so wyde a compas is my spere
Alas ! whan shal I mete yow, herte der
This twelfte day of April I endure,
Through jelous Phebus, this misaventure

IV. The Complaynt of Mars.

99

pe god sely Venus allone ! 141
od wolde, hit happed for to be,
yl that Venus weping made hir
ryding in his chevauchè, 144
is valance mighte his paleys see,
as he salueth, and maketh chere,
receyveth as his frend ful dere.

elleth forth in his adversitee,
ning ever on hir departinge ;
at his complaynt was, remem-
h me ; 150
rfore, in this lusty morweninge,
t can, I wol hit seyn and singe,
er that I wol my leve take ;
d yeve every wight joye of his
ke !

The Complaynt of Mars.

The Proem of the Complaynt.

rdre of complaynt requireth skil-
ly, 155
a wight shal pleyne pitously,
mot be cause wherfor that men
rne ;
may deme he pleyneith folily
seles ; alas ! that am not I !
for the ground and cause of al
f payne, 160
my troubled wit may hit ateyne,
herse ; not for to have redresse,
leclare my ground of hevinesse.

Devotion.

ste tyme, alas ! that I was wroght,
certeyn effectes hider broght 165
m that lordeth ech intelligence,
y trewe servise and my thought,
ermore—how dere I have hit
ht !—
r, that is of so gret excellence,
what wight that first sheweth his
sence, 170
she is wroth and taketh of him no
re,
not longe in joye of love endure.
no feyned mater that I telle ;
y is the verrey sours and welle

Of beaute, lust, fredom, and gentil-
nesse, 175
Of riche aray—how dere men hit selle !—
Of al disport in which men frendly dwello,
Of love and pley, and of benigne hum-
blesse,
Of sounne of instruments of al swetnesse ;
And there ~~is a~~ ^{of good} ~~lower~~ ^{dispos} ~~fortuned~~ ~~and thewed~~,
That through the world hir goodnesse is
y-shewed. 181

What wonder is then, thogh that I be-
sette
My servise on suche oon, that may me
knette ^{even}
To wele or wo, sith hit lyth in hir
might ? 184
Therfor my herte for ever I to hir hette ;
Ne trewly, for my dethe, I shal not lette
To ben hir trewest servaunt and hir
knight.
I flater noght, that may wite every
wight ;
For this day in hir servise shal I dye ;
But grace be, I see hir never with yē. 190

A Lady in fear and woe.

¶ To whom shal I than pleyne of my dis-
tresse ?
Who may me helpe, who may my harm
redresse ?
Shal I compleyne unto my lady free ?
Nay, certes ! for she hath such hevinesse,
For fere and eek for wo, that, as I gesse,
In litil tyme hit wol hir bane be. 196
But were she sauf, hit wer no fors of me.
Alas ! that ever lovers mote endure,
For love, so many a perilous aventure !
For thogh so be that lovers be as trewe 200
As any metal that is forged newe,
In many a cas hem tydeth ofte sorowe.
Somytyme hir ladies will not on hem rewe,
Somytyme, yif that jelosye hit knowe,
They mighten lightly leye hir heed to
borowe ; 205
Somytyme envyon folke with tinges
horowe ^{deprave}
Depraven hem ; alas ! whom may they
plese ?
But he be fals, no lover hath his ose.

But what availeth suche a long sermoun
Of adventures of lovē, up and down? 210

I wol returne and speken of my peyne;
The point is this of my destruccioun,
My righte lady, my salvacioun,

Is in affray, and not to whom to pleyne.

O herte swete, O lady sovereyne! 215

For your disese, wel oghte I swoune and
swelte,

Thogh I non other harm ne drede felte.

Instability of Happiness.

¶ To what fyn made the god that sit so
hye,

Benethen him, love other companye,

And streyneth folk to love, malgre hir
hede? 220

And then hir joye, for oght I can espye,
Ne lasteth not the twinkeling of an yē,

And somme han never joye til they be
dede.

What meneth this? what is this misti-
hede?

Wherto constreyneth he his folk so faste
Thing to desyre, but hit shulde laste? 226

And thogh he made a lover love a thing,
And maketh hit seme stedfast and during,

Yet putteth he in hit such misaventure,
That reste nis ther noon in his yeving. 230

And that is wonder, that so just a king
Doth such hardnesse to his creature.

Thus, whether love breke or elles dure,
Algates he that hath with love to done
Hath after wo then changed is the mone.

Hit semeth he hath to lovers enmite, 236

And lyk a fissher, as men alday may sec,

Baiteth his angle-hook with som ples-
aunce,

Til mony a fish is wood til that he be 239
Sesed ther-with; and then at erst hath he

Al his desyr, and ther-with al mis-
chaunce;

And thogh the lyne breke, he hath
penaunce;

For with the hoke he wounded is so sore,
That he his wages hath for ever-more.

The Brooch of Thebes.

¶ The broche of Thebes was of suche a
kinde, 245

So ful of rubies and of stones Inde,

That every wight, that sette on hit an
yē,

He wende anon to worthe out of his
minde;

So sore the beaute wolde his herte binde,
Til he hit hadde, him thoughte he moste
dye; 250

And whan that hit was his, than shulde
he drye

Such wo for drede, ay whyl that he hit
hadde,

That welnigh for the fere he shulde
madde.

And whan hit was fro his possessioun,
Than had he double wo and passioun; 255

For he so fair a tresor had forgo;

But yet this broche, as in conclusioun,
Was not the cause of this confusioun;

But he that wroghte hit enfortuned hit
so,

That every wight that had hit shuld
have wo; 260

And therfor in the worcher was the vyce,
And in the covetour that was so nyce.

So fareth hit by lovers and by me;

For thogh my lady have so gret beaute,

That I was mad til I had gete hir
grace, 265

She was not cause of myn adversitee,

But he that wroghte hir, also met I
thee,

That putte suche a beaute in hir face,

That made me to covete and purchase

Myn owne deth; him wyte I that I
dye, 270

And myn unwit, that ever I clomb so
hye

An Appeal for Sympathy.

¶ But to yow, hardy knightes of renown,
Sin that ye be of my divisioun,

Al be I not worthy to grete a name,

Yet, seyn these clerkes, I am your pa-
troun; 275

Ther-for ye oghte have som compassion
Of my disese, and take it noht a-ga-
me

The proudest of yow may be mad ful
tame;

Wherfor I prey yow, of your gentilesse,

That ye compleyne for myn hevynesse. 280

V. The Parlement of Foules.

101

And ye, my ladies, that ben trewe and
stable,
By way of kinde, ye oghten to be able
To have pite of folk that be in peyne :
Now have ye cause to clothe yow in sable ;
Sith that your emperice, the honorable,
Is desolat, wel oghte ye to pleyne ; 286
Now shuld your holy teres falle and
reyne.
Alas ! your honour and your emperice,
Nigh deed for drede, ne can hir not
chevisa.

Accomplish her desire

Together
Compleyneth eek, ye lovers, al in-~~tere~~ 290
For hir that, with unfeyned humble chere,
Was ever redy to do yow socour ;
Compleyneth hir that ever hath had yow
dare ;
Compleyneth beaute, fredom, and ~~manere~~ ;
Compleyneth hir that endeth your la-
bour ; 295
Compleyneth thilke ensample of al
honour,
That never dide but al gentillesse ; 297
Kytheth therfor on hir som kindenesse.'

goodly con

V. THE PARLEMENT OF FOULES.

The Proem.

Ther lyf so short, the craft so long to lerne,
Th'assay so hard, so sharp the conquering,
The dredful joye, that alwey slit so ~~yerne~~,
Al this mene I by love, that my feling 4
Astonyeth with his wonderful worching
So sore y-wis, that whan I on him thinke,
Nat wot I wel wher that I wake or winke.

For al be that I knowe not love in dede,
Ne wot how that he quytheth folk hir hyre,
Yet happeth me ful ofte in bokes rede 10
Of his miracles, and his cruel yre ;
Ther rede I wel he wol be lord and syre,
I dar not seyn, his strokes been so sore,
But god save swich a lord ! I can no
more.

Of usage, what for luste what for lore, 15
On bokes rede I ofte, as I yow tolde.
But wherfor that I speke al this ? not yore
Agon, hit happed me for to beholde
Upon a boke, was write with lettres olde ;
And ther-upon, a certeyn thing to lerne, 20
The longe day ful faste I radde and yerne.

For out of olde felde, as men seith,
Cometh al this newe corn fro yeer to yere ;
And out of olde bokes, in good feith,
Cometh al this newe science that men
lere. 25

But now to purpos as of this matere—
To rede forth hit gan me so delyte,
That al the day me thoughte but a lyte.

This book of which I make mencion,
Entitled was al thus, as I shal telle, 30
'Tullius of the dreame of Scipioun' ;
Chapitres seven hit hadde, of hevene and
helle,

And erthe, and soules that therinne
dwelle,

Of whiche, as shortly as I can hit trete, 34
Of his sentence I wol you seyn the grete.

First telleth hit, whan Scipioun was come
In Afrik, how he mette Massinisse,
That him for joye in armes hath y-nome.
Than telleth hit hir speche and al the
blisse

That was betwix hem, til the day gan
misse ; 40

And how his auncestre, African so dere,
Gan in his slepe that night to him appere.

Than telleth hit that, fro a sterry place,
How African hath him Cartage shewed,
And warned him before of al his grace, 45
And seyde him, what man, lered other
lewed,

That loveth comun profit, wel y-thewed,
He shal unto a blisful place wende,
Ther as joye is that last withouten ende.

Than asked he, if folk that heer be dede
Have lyf and dwelling in another place; 51
And African seyde, 'ye, withoute drede,'
And that our present worldes lyves space
Nis but a maner deth, what wey we trace,
And rightful folk shal go, after they dye,
To heven; and showed him the galaxye. 56

Than shewed he him the litel erthe, that
heer is,

At regard of the hevenes quantite;
And after shewed he him the nyne speres,
And after that the melodye herde he 60
That cometh of thilke speres thryes three,
That welle is of musyke and melodye
In this world heer, and cause of armonye.

Than bad he him, sin erthe was so lyte,
And ful of torment and of harde grace, 65
That he ne shulde him in the world
delyte.

Than tolde he him, in certeyn yeres space,
That every sterre shulde come into his
place

Ther hit was first; and al shulde out of
minde 69
That in this worlde is don of al mankinde.

Than prayde him Scipioun to telle him al
The way to come un-to that hevене blisse;
And he seyde, 'know thy-self first im-
mortal,

And loke ay besily thou werke and wisse
To comun profit, and thou shalt nat misse
To comen swiftly to that place dero, 76
That ful of blisse is and of soules clere.

But brekers of the lawe, soth to seyne,
And lecherous folk, after that they be
dede, 79

Shul alwey whirle about eth'erthe in peyne,
Til many a world be passed, out of drede,
And than, for-yeven alle hir wikked dede,
Than shul they come unto that blisful
place,

To which to comen god thee sende his
grace!'—

The day gan failen, and the derke night,
That reveth bestes from hir besinesse, 86
Berafte me my book for lakke of light,
And to my bedde I gan me for to dresse,
Fulfilde of thought and besy heviness; ;

For bothe I hadde thing which tha-
nolde,
And eek I ne hadde that thing tha-
wolde.

But fynally my spirit, at the laste,
For-wery of my labour al the day,
Took rest, that made me to slepe faste,
And in my slepe I mette, as I lay,
How African, right in that selfe aray
That Scipioun him saw before the
tyde,
Was comen, and stood right at my beddes
syde.

The wery hunter, slepinge in his bed,
To wode ayein his minde goth anoon; 100
The juge dremeth how his plees ben
sped;
The carter dremeth how his cartes goon;
The riche, of gold; the knight fight with
his foon,
The seke met he drinketh of the tonne;
The lover met he hath his lady wonne. 105

Can I nat seyn if that the cause were
For I had red of African beforne,
That made me to mete that he stood
there;

But thus seyde he, 'thou hast thee so
wel born

In loking of myn olde book to-torn, 110
Of which Macrobie roghte nat a lyte,
That somdel of thy labour wolde I
quyte!'—

Citherea! thou blisful lady swete,
That with thy fyr-brand dauntest whom
thee lest,
And madest me this sweven for to mete.
Be thou my help in this, for thou mayst
best; 116

As wisly as I saw thee north-north-west,
When I began my sweven for to wryte,
So yif me might to ryme hit and endyte!

The Story.

This forseid African me hente anoon, 12
And forth with him unto a gate broghte
Right of a parke, walled with grene stoor
And over the gato, with lettres larg
y-wroghte,
Ther weren vers y-writen, as me thoghte

On eyther halfe, of ful gret difference, 125
Of which I shal yow sey the pleyne sen-
tence.

'Thorgh me man goon in-to that blisful
place
Of hertes hale and dedly woundes cure ;
Thorgh me men goon unto the welle of
Grace,
Ther grene and lusty May shal ever
endure ; 130
This is the way to al good aventure ;
Be glad, thou reder, and thy sorwe of-
caste,
Al open am I ; passe in, and hy the
faste !'

'Thorgh me men goon,' than spak that
other syde,
'Unto the mortal strokes of the spere, 135
Of which Disdayn and Daunger is the
gyde,
Ther tree shal never fruit ne leves bere.
This stream you ledeth to the sorwful
were,
Ther as the fish in prison is al drye ;
Th'eschewing is only the remedye.' 140

Thisevers of gold and blak y-written were,
The whiche I gan a stounde to beholde,
For with that oon encresed ay my fere,
And with that other gan myn herte bolde ;
That oon me hette, that other did me
colde, 145
No wit had I, for error, for to chese,
To entre or flee, or me to save or lese.

Right as, betwixen adamauntes two
Of even might, a pece of iren y-set, 149
That hath no might to meve to ne fro—
For what that on may hale, that other
let—

Ferde I, that niste whether me was bet,
To entre or leve, til African my gyde
Me hente, and shoof in at the gates
wyde,

And seyde, 'hit stondeth written in thy
face, 155
Thyn error, though thou telle it not to
me ;
But dred thee nat to come in-to this
place,

For this wryting is no-thing ment by
thee,
Ne by noon, but he Loves servant be ;
For thou of love hast lost thy tast, I
gesse, 160
As seek man hath of swete and bitter-
nesse.

But natheles, al-though that thou be
dulle,
Yit that thou canst not do, yit mayst
thou see ;
For many a man that may not stonde
a pulle,
Yit lyketh him at the wrastling for
to be, 165
And demeth yit wher he do bet or he ;
And if thou haddest cunning for t'endyte,
I shal thee shewen mater of to wryte.'

With that my hond in his he took anoon,
Of which I comfort caughte, and wente
in faste ; 170
But lord ! so I was glad and wel begoon !
For over-al, wher that I myn eyen caste,
Were trees clad with leves that ay shal
laste,
Eche in his kinde, of colour fresh and
grene
As emeraude, that joye was to sene. 175

The bilder ook, and eek the hardy asshe ;
The piler elm, the cofre unto careyne ;
The boxtree piper ; holm to whippes
lasshe ;
The sayling firr ; the cipres, deth to
pleyne ; 179
The shoter ew, the asp for shaftes pleyne ;
The olyve of pees, and eek the drunken
vyne,
The victor palm, the laurer to devyne.

A garden saw I, ful of blosmy bowes,
Upon a river, in a grene mede, 184
Ther as that swetnesse evermore y-now is,
With floures whyte, blewe, yelow, and
rede ;
And colde welle-stremes, no-thing dede,
That swommen ful of smale fisshes lighte,
With finnes rede and scales silver-brighte.

On every bough the briddes herde I singe,
With voys of aungel in hir armonye, 191

Som beeyed hem hir brüdes forth to
bringe,
The litel conyes to hir play gunne hye,
And further al aboute I gan espye
The dredful roo, the buk, the hert and
hinde, 195
Squerels, and bestes smale of gentil kinde.

Of instruments of strenges in acord
Herde I so pleye a ravishing sweetness,
That god, that maker is of al and lord,
Ne herde never better, as I gesse; 200
Therwith a wind, unnethe hit might be
lease,

Made in the leves grene a noise softe
Acoordant to the foules songe on-lofte.

The air of that place so attempre was
That never was grevaunce of boot ne
cold; 205

Ther wax eek every holsum spyce and
gras,

Ne no man may ther wexe soek ne old;
Yet was ther joye more a thousand fold
Then man can telle; ne never wolde it
nighte,

But ay cleer day to any mannes sighte.

Under a tree, besyde a welle, I say 210
Cupyde our lord his arwes forge and fyle;
And at his fete his bowe al redy lay,
And wel his doghter tempred al the whyle
The hedes in the welle, and with hir
wyle 215

She couched hem after as they shulde
serve,

Som for to slee, and som to wounde and
kerve.

The was I war of Plesaunce anon-right,
And of Aray, and Lust, and Curtesye,
And of the Craft that can and hath the
might 220

To doon by force a wight to do folye—
Disfigurat was she, I nil not lye;
And by him-self, under an oke, I gesse,
Sawe I Delyt, that stood with Gentil-
nesse.

I saw Beantee, withouten any atyr, 225
And Yonthe, ful of game and Iolyte,
Fool-hardinesse, Flatery, and Desyr,
Messagerye, and Mede, and other three—
Hir names shul nocht here betold for me—

And upon pilers grete of jasper longe st;
I saw a temple of bras y-founded stronge.

Aboute the temple daunced an alway
Wommen y-nowe, of whiche somme ther
were

Faire of hem-self, and somme of hem
were gay;

In kirtels, al disshevle, wente they
there— 235

That was hir office alway, yeer by yeer—
And on the temple, of doves whyte and
faire

Saw I sittinge many a hundred paire

Before the temple-dore ful soberly
Dame Pees sat, with a curteyn in hir
hond; 240

And hir besyde, wonder discretly,
Dame Pacience sitting ther I fond
With face pale, upon an hille of sond:
And alder-next, within and eek with-
oute, 244

Behest and Art, and of hir folke a route.

Within the temple, of ayghes hote as fyr
I herde a swogh that gan aboute renne.
Which ayghes were engendred with desyr,
That maden every anter for to brenne
Of newe flaume; and wel aspyed I thenn
That al the cause of sorwes that they
drye 250

Com of the bitter goddesse Jalonsye.

The god Priapus saw I, as I wente,
Within the temple, in soverayn place
stonde,

In swich aray as when the asse his
shente 255

With crye by night, and with his ceptir
in honde;

Ful besily men gunne assaye and fonde
Upon his hede to sette, of sondry hewe,
Garlondes ful of fresche floures newe.

And in a privee corner, in disporte, 260
Fond I Venus and hir porter Richesse,
That was ful noble and hauteyn of h
porte;

Derk was that place, but afterward high
nesse

I saw a lyte, unnethe hit might be less
And on a bed of golde she lay to reste, 265
Til that the hote sonne gan to weste.

e heres with a golden threde
den were, untressed as she lay,
ked fro the breste unto the hede
ight hir see; and, sothly for to
270

enant wel kevered to my pay
with a subtil kerchief of Valence,
as no thikker cloth of no de-
ce

ce yaf a thousand savours swote,
chus, god of wyn, sat hir besyde,
eres next, that doth of hunger
e;
276

I seide, amiddes lay Cipryde,
om on knees two yonge folkes
de
hir help; but thus I leet hir lye,
rther in the temple I gan espye

n dispyte of Diane the chaste, 281
ny a bowe y-broke heng on the
l
dens, suche as gunne hir tymes
ste
servyse; and peynted over al
y a story, of which I touche shal
as of Calixte and Athalaunte, 286
ny a mayde, of which the name I
nte;

mus, Candace, and Ercules,
Dido, Tisbe and Piramus,
m, Isoude, Paris, and Achilles, 290
Cleopatre, and Troilus,
nd eek the moder of Romulus—
ese were peynted on that other
le,
hir love, and in what plyte they
le.

I was come ayen into the place 295
of spak, that was so swote and
ne,
welk I tho, my-selven to solace.
as I war wher that ther sat a
ene
s of light the somer-sonne shene
the sterre, right so over mesure
rer was than any creature. 301

a launde, upon an hille of floures,
t this noble goddess Nature;

Of braunches were hir halles and hir
bours,
Y-wrought after hir craft and hirmesure;
Ne ther nas foul that cometh of en-
gendrure, 306

That they ne were prest in hir presence,
To take hir doom and yeve hir audience.

For this was on seynt Valentynes day,
Whan every foul cometh ther to chese
his make, 310

Of every kinde, that men thenke may;
And that so huge a noyse gan they
make,
That erthe and see, and tree, and every
lake

So ful was, that unnethe was ther space
For me to stonde, so ful was al the place.

And right as Aleyn, in the Pleynt of
Kinde, 316
Devyseth Nature of aray and face,
In swich aray men mighte[n] hir ther
finde.

This noble emperesse, ful of grace,
Bad every foul to take his owne place, 320
As they were wont alwey fro yeer to
yere,
Seynt Valentynes day, to stonden there.

That is to sey, the foules of ravyne
Were hyest set; and than the foules
smale,
That eten as hem nature wolde enclyne,
As worm, or thing of whiche I telle no
tale; 326
But water-foul sat lowest in the dale;
And foul that liveth by seed sat on the
grene,
And that so fele, that wonder was to
sene.

Ther mighte men the royal egle finde,
That with his sharpe look perceth the
sonne; 331
And other egles of a lower kinde,
Of which that clerkes wel devysen conne.
Ther was the tyraunt with his fethres
donne

And greye, I mene the goshawk, that
doth pyne 335
To briddes for his outrageous ravyne.

The gentil fancon, that with his feet
distreyneth
The kinges hond ; the hardy sperhawk
eke,
The quayles foo ; the merlion that payneth
Him-self ful ofte, the larks for to seke ;
Ther was the douve, with hir eyen
meke ; 341
The jalous swan, ayens his deth that
singeth ;
The oule eek, that of dethe the bode
bringeth ;
The crane the geaunt, with his trompes
sounes ;
The theef, the chogh ; and eek the jang-
ling pye ; 345
The scorning jay ; the alas foo, the
herounne ;
The false lapwing, ful of trecherye ;
The sterc, that the counseyl can bowrys ;
The tame ruddok ; and the coward kyte ;
The cok, that orloge is of thorpes lyte ; 350
The sparrow, Venus sone ; the nightin-
gale,
That clepeth forth the freshe leves newe ;
The swallow, mordrer of the flyes smale
That maken hony of floures freshe of
hewe ;
The wedded turtel, with hir herte trewe ;
The pecock, with his aungels fethres
brighte ; 356
The fesaunt, scorner of the cok by nighte ;
The waker goos ; the cukkow ever un-
kinde ;
The popinjay, ful of delicasye ;
The drake, stroyer of his owne kinde ; 360
The stork, the wroker of aventurye ;
The hote cormeraunt of glotonye ;
The raven wys, the crow with vois of
care ;
The throstel olde ; the frosty faldefare,
What shulde I seyn ? of foules every
kinde 365
That in this worlde han fethres and
stature,
Men mighten in that place assembled
finde
Before the noble goddesse Nature,
And everich of hem did his besy cure

Benignely to chese or for to take. 370
By hir acord, his formel or his make.
But to the poynt—Nature held on hir
honde
A formel egle, of shap the gentileste
That ever she among hir werkis fonde,
The most benigne and the goodlieste ;
In hir was every vertu at his reste. 375
So ferforth, that Nature hir-self had
blisse
To loken on hir, and ofte hir bek to kisse.
Nature, the vicaire of th'almyghty lord,
That hoot, cold, hevy, light, [and] moist
and dreye 380
Hath knit by even noumbre of acorde,
In eay vois began to speke and seye,
'Foules, tak hede of my sentence, I
preye,
And, for your ese, in furthering of your
nede, 384
As faste as I may speke, I wol me speke.
Ye know wel how, seynt Valentynes day.
By my statut and through my gover-
naunce,
Ye come for to chese—and flee your way—
Your makes, as I prik yow with plesaunce.
But natheles, my rightful ordenaunce 390
May I not lete, for al this world to winne,
That he that most is worthy shal begiinne.
The tercel egle, as that ye knowen wel,
The foul royal above yow in degree,
The wyse and worthy, secree trewe as
stel, 395
The which I formed have, as ye may see,
In every part as hit best lyketh me,
Hit nedeth noght his shap yow to devyse,
He shal first chese and speken in his
gyse,
And after him, by order shul ye chese, 400
After your kinde, everich as yow lyketh.
And, as your hap is, shul ye winne or
lese ;
But which of yow that love most en-
tryketh,
God sende him hir that sorest for him
syketh.'
And therwith-al the tercel gan she calle,
And seyde, 'my sone, the choys is to
thee falle. 405

neles, in this condicioun
he choys of everich that is here,
I agree to his eleccioun, 409
he be that shulde been hir fere;
our usage alwey, fro yeer to yere;
so so may at this time have his
re,

al tyme he com in-to this place.'

and enclyned and with ful humble
re

al tercel spak and taried nought;
my sovereyn lady, and noght my

and chese with wille and herte
thought,

mel on your hond so wel y-
ught,

am al and ever wol hir serve,
I hir list, to do me live or sterve.

ing hir of mercy and of grace, 421
hat is my lady sovereyne;

he dye present in this place.

es, long may I not live in payne;

yn herte is corven every veyne;

eward[al] only to my trouthe, 426

herte, have on my wo som
he.

hat I to hir be founde untrewed,
want, or wilful neg'ligent,

ur, or in proces love a newe, 430

you this be my judgement,

h these foules I be al to-rent,

e day that ever she me finde

ntrewed, or in my gilte unkinda.

that noon loveth hir so wel as I,

e never of love me behette, 436

ghte she be myn thourgh hir

ty,

r bond can I noon on hir knette.

r, for no wo, ne shal I lette 439

n hir, how fer so that she wende;

t yow list, my tale is at an ende.'

the fresshe, rede rose newe

er-somme coloured is,

for shame al wexen gan the

e

ormel, whan she herde al this;

ther answerde 'wel,' ne seyde

446

So sore abashed was she, til that Nature
Seyde, 'doghter, drede yow noght, I yow
assure.'

Another tercel egle spak anoon
Of lower kinde, and seyde, 'that shal
not be; 450

I love hir bet than ye do, by seynt John,
Or atte leste I love hir as wel as ye;
And lenger have served hir, in my degrec,
And if she shulde have loved for long
loving, 454

To me allone had been the guerdoning.

I dar eek seye, if she me finde fals,
Unkinde, jangler, or rebel any wyse,
Or jalous, do me hongen by the hals!
And but I bere me in hir servyse
As wel as that my wit can me suffyse, 460
Fro poynt to poynt, hir honour for to
save,

Tak she my lyf, and al the good I have.'

The thridde tercel egle answerde tho,
'Now, sirs, ye seen the litel leyser here;
For every foul cryeth out to been a-go 465
Forth with his make, or with his lady
dere;

And eek Nature hir-self ne wol nought
here,

For taryng here, noght half that I wolde
seye;

And but I speke, I mot for sorwe deye.

Of long servyse avaunte I me no-thing,
But as possible is me to dye to-day 471
For wo, as he that hath ben languishing
Thise twenty winter, and wel happen may
A man may serven bet and more to pay
In half a yere, al-though hit were no more,
Than som man doth that hath served ful
yore. 476

I ne say not this by me, for I ne can
Do no servyse that may my lady plesse;
But I dar seyn, I am hir trewest man
As to my dome, and feynest wolde hir ese;
At shorte wordes, til that deth me sese, 481
I wol ben hires, whether I wake or winke,
And trewe in al that herte may bethinke.'

Of al my lyf, sin that day I was born,
So gentil plee in love or other thing 485
Ne herde never no man me beforne,

Woe [so] that had le lever and cunning
 For to rehearse hir chere and hir speaking
 And from thence morwagin this speche last
 The loanward, drew the sonne wnder faste
 The noyse of foules for to bendelivered 401
 So shee sing, 'have down and let us
 wende'

That wel wende I the wode had al to-
 slivered.

One of ' they cryle, 'allas' y wil us
 shinde'

Whan shal your cursed pleding have an
 ende? 405

How shulde a jage either party leve,
 For yee or nay, with-outen any preve?

The goos, the cukkow, and the doko also
 Cryen 'kek, kek!' 'kukkow!' 'quck,
 quck' hie,

That thogh theye rest the noyse wente the
 For goos seyde, 'al this nis not worth a
 flye' 501

But I can shape hereof a remedye,
 And I wol sey my verlit faure and swythe
 For water-foul, whoso be wrooth or
 llythe

And I for worm-foul, seyde the fool
 cukkow, 505

For I wel, of myn owne auctorite,
 For comune speme, take the charge now,
 For to delivere us is gret charite.'

Ye may abyde a while yet, jage'
 For the tartel, 'it hit be your wille 510
 A wight may speke, him were as good be
 stille

For a seel-foul, oon the unworthieste,
 That wot I wel, and litle of kunninge,
 Hit bet is that a wighes tinge rest
 Than entrementen him of such dange 515
 Of which he neyther rede can nor singe.
 And who-so doth, ful foule himself acoly-
 eth,

For office uncommitted ofte annoyeth.'

Nature which that alway had an ere
 To murmur of the lewenes behinde 520
 With facound voys seide, 'hold your
 tonges there'

And I shal sone, I hope, a counsail finde
 To delivers, and fro this noyse un-
 lunde

I jage, of every folk men shal oon cade
 To seyn the verdit for you foules and 525

Assented were to this conclusioun
 The briddes alle, and foules of ravyne
 Han chesen first, by pleyn eleccioun
 The terelet of the faucoun, to diffende 530
 Al hir sentence, and as han list, to stonde;
 And to Nature him gommen to presente,
 And she accepteth him with glad entente.

The terelet seile than in this maner:
 'Ful hard were hit to preve hit by resour
 Who loveth best this gentil forme here,
 For everich hath swich replacioun 535
 That noon by skilles may be brought
 a-down,

I can not seen that arguments awaye
 Than semeth hit ther moste be batayle'

'Al redy' quod these egles terelets the
 'Nay sirs' quod he, 'if that I durste it
 seye, 541

Ye don me wrong my tale is not vane'
 For sirs, ne taketh noght a-gref, I praye,
 It may noght gon as ye wolle, in this
 weye,

Oure is the voys that han the charge in
 honde, 545

And to the juges dome ye moten stonde,

And therfor poes I seye as to my wit.
 Me wolde thynke how hit the worthieste
 Of knighthode, and biggest hath used hit,
 Moste of estat, of thole the gretteste 550
 Were sittingest for hit, in that hir bestie,
 And of these three shewat hir-self I trowe,
 Which that he be, for hit is light to
 knowe'

The water-foules han her hedes leyd
 Togeder, and at short avysement, 555

Whan everich had his large golow seyl
 They seyden sothis, al by oon assent
 How that 'the goos, with hir facounde
 gent,

That so lesyrouth to pronounce our assaie,
 Shal telle our tale, and preyde 'god hir
 spede.' 560

And for these water-foules the began
 The goos to speke and in hir cakelunge
 She seyde, 'pees! now tak kepe every
 man,

And herkeneth which a reson I shal
bringe;

My wit is sharp, I love no taryinge; 565

I seye, I rede him, though he were my
brother,

But she wol love him, lat him love
another!

'Lo here! a parfit reson of a goos!'

Quod the sperhawk; 'never mot she thee!

La swich hit is to have a tonge loos! 570

Now parde, fool, yet were hit bet for
thee

Have holde thy pees, than shewed thy
aycete!

Hit lyth not in his wit nor in his wille,

But sooth is seyde, "a fool can noght be
stille."

The laughter aroos of gentil foules alle,
And right anon the seed-foul chosen
hadde 576

The turtel trewe, and gunne hir to hem
calle,

And preyden hir to seye the sothe sadde
Of this matere, and asked what she radde;

And she answerde, that pleyndly hir en-
tente 580

She wolde shewe, and sothly what she
mente.

'Say, god forbede a lover shulde chaunge!'

The turtel seyde, and wex for shame al
reed;

Though that his lady ever-more be
straunge, 584

Yet let him serve hir ever, til he be deed;

For sothe, I preyse noght the gooses reed;

For thogh she deyed, I wolde non other
make,

I wol ben hires, til that the deth me take.'

'Wel boarded!' quod the doke, 'by my
hat! 589

That men shulde alwey loven, causeles,

Who can a reson finde or wit in that?

Launceth he mury that is mirtheles?

Who shulde recche of that is reccheles?

'a. quek!' yit quod the doke, ful wel and
faire,

There been mo sterres, god wot, than a
jaire! 595

'Now fy, cherl!' quod the gentil tercelet,

'Out of the dunghil com that word ful
right,

Thou canst noght see which thing is wel
be-set:

Thou farest by love as oules doon by light.
The day hem blent, ful wel they see by
night; 600

Thy kind is of so lowe a wrechednesse.

That what love is, thou canst nat see ne
gesse.'

Tho gan the cuckow putte him forth in
pees

For foul that eteth worm, and seide blyve,

'So I,' quod he, 'may have my make in
pees, 605

I recche not how longe that ye stryve:

Lat ech of hem be soleynd al hir lyve,

This is my reed, sin they may not acorde:

This shorte lesson nedeth noght recorde.'

'Ye! have the glotoun fild ynogh his
paunche, 610

Than are we wel!' seyde the merlioun:

'Thou morderer of the leysugge on the
braunche

That broghte thee forth, thou þrewtheles
glotoun!

Live thou soleynd, wormes corrupcioun'

For no fors is of lakke of thy nature: 615

Go, lewed be thou, whyl the world may
dure!'

'Now pees,' quod Nature, 'I comaunde
here;

For I have herd al your opinioun,

And in effect yet be we never the nere:

But fynally, this is my conclusioun, 620

That she hir-self shal han the eleccioun

Of whom hir list, who-so be wrooth or
blythe,

Him that she cheest, he shal hir have
swythe.

For sith hit may not here discussed be

Who loveth hir best, as seide the tercelet.

Than wol I doon hir this favour, that
she 625

Shal have right him on whom hir herte
is set,

And he hir that his herte hath on hir
knet.

This juge I, Nature, for I may not lyȝ ;
To noon estat I have non other yȝ. 630

But as for counseyl for to chese a make,
If hit were reson, certes, than wolde I
Counseyle yow the royal tercel take,
As seide the tercelet ful skilfully,
As for the gentilest and most worthy, 635
Which I have wrought so wel to my ples-
aunce ;

'That to yow oghte been a suffisaunce.'

With dredful vois the formel hir an-
swerde,

'My rightful lady, goddesse of Nature,
Soth is that I am ever under your yerde,
Lyk as is everiche other creature, 641
And moot be youres whyl my lyf may
dure ;

And therfor graunteth me my firste bone,
And myn entente I wol yow sey right
sone.'

'I graunte it you,' quod she ; and right
anoon 645

This formel egle spak in this degree,
'Almighty quene, unto this yeer be doon
I aske respit for to avysen me.
And after that to have my choys al
free ;

This al and som, that I wolde speke and
seye ; 650
Ye gete no more, al-though ye do me deye.

I wol noght serven Venus ne Cupyde
For sothe as yet, by no manere wey.'
'Now sin it may non other wyse betyde,'
Quod tho Nature, 'here is no more to
sey ; 655

Than wolde I that these foules were a-wey
Ech with his make, for taryng lenger
here'—

And seyde hem thus, as ye shul after here.

'To you speke I, ye tercelets,' quod
Nature,

'Beth of good herte and serveth, alle
three ; 660

A yeer is not so longe to endure,
And ech of yow peyne him, in his degree,
For to do wel ; for, god wot, quit is she

Fro yow this yeer ; what after so befallē,
This entremes is dressed for you alle.' 665

And whan this werk al broght was to an
ende,

To every foule Nature yaf his make
By even acorde, and on hir wey they
wende.

A ! lord ! the blisse and joye that they
make ! 669

For ech of hem gan other in winges take,
And with hir nekkes ech gan other winde,
Thanking alwey the noble goddesse of
kinde.

But first were chosen foules for to singe,
As yeer by yere was alwey hir usaunce
To singe a roundel at hir departinge, 675
To do Nature honour and plesaunce.
The note, I trowe, maked was in Fraunce ;
The wordes were swich as ye may heer
finde,

The nexte vers, as I now have in mindē.

Qui bien aime a tard oublie.

'Now welcom somer, with thy sonne
softe, 680

That hast this wintres weders over-shake,
And driven away the longe nightes blake !
Seynt Valentyn, that art ful hy on-
lofte ;—

Thus singen smale foules for thy sake—
Now welcom somer, with thy sonne softe, 685
That hast this wintres weders over-shake.

Wel han they cause for to gladen ofte,
Sith ech of hem recovered hath his make :
Ful blisful may they singen whan they
wake ;

Now welcom somer, with thy sonne softe, 690
That hast this wintres weders over-shake,
And driven away the longe nightes blake.'

And with the showting, whan hir song
was do,

That foules maden at hir flight a-way,
I wook, and other bokes took me to 695
To rede upon, and yet I rede alway ;
I hope, y-wis, to rede so som day
That I shal mete som thing for to fare 698
The bet ; and thus to rede I nil not spare.

Explicit tractatus de congregacione Volucrum die sancti Valentini.

VI. A COMPLAINT TO HIS LADY.

I. (*In seven-line stanzas.*)

Tux longe night, whan every creature
 Shulde have hir rest in somewhat, as by
 kinde,
 Or elles ne may hir lyf nat long endure,
 Hit falleth most in-to my woful minde
 How I so fer have broght my-self be-
 hinde,
 That, sauf the deeth, ther may no-thing⁵
 me lisse, *comfyt*
 So desespaiied I am from alle blisse.

This same thoght me lasteth til the
 morwe,

And from the morwe forth til hit be eve;
 Ther nedeth me no care for to borwe,¹⁰
 For bothe I have good leyser and good
 laye; *periswim*
 Ther is no wight that wol me wo bereve
 To wepe y-nogh, and wailen al my fille;
 The sore spark of peyne †doth me spille.

II. (*In Terza Rima; imperfect.*)

†The sore spark of peyne doth me spille;]
 This Love hath [eek] me set in swich a
 place¹⁶
 That my desyr [he] never wol fulfille;
 For neither pitee, mercy, neither grace
 Can I nat finde; and †fro my sorwful
 herte,
 For to be deed, I can hit nat arace.²⁰
 The more I love, the more she doth me
 smerte;
 Through which I see, with-oute remedye,
 That from the deeth I may no wyse
 asterte;
 †For this day in hir servise shal I dye].

III. (*In Terza Rima; imperfect.*)

†Thus am I slain, with sorwes ful dy-
 vers;²⁵
 And longe agoon I oghte have taken

Now sothly, what she hight I wol re-
 herse;

Hir name is Bountee, set in womanhede,
 Sadnesse in youthe, and Beautee pryde-
 lees,

And Plesaunce, under governaunce and
 drede; *unwillingly*³⁰

Hir surname eek is Faire Rewthelees, *impity*
 The Wyse, y-knit un-to Good Adventure,
 That, for I love hir, †sleeth me giltelees.
 Hir love I best, and shal, whyl I may
 dure,

Bet than my-self an hundred thousand
 deel,³⁵

Than al this worldes richesse or crea-
 ture.

Now hath nat Love me bestowed weel
 To love, ther I never shal have part?

Allas! right thus is turned me the wheel,
 Thus am I slayn with loves fyry dart.⁴⁰

I can but love hir best, my swete fo;
 Love hath me taught no more of his art
 But serve alwey, and stinte for no wo.

IV. (*In ten-line stanzas.*)

[With]-in my trewe careful herte ther is
 So moche wo, and [eek] so litel blis,⁴⁵

That wo is me that ever I was bore;
 For al that thing which I desyre I mis,
 And al that ever I wolde nat, I-wis,
 That finde I redy to me evermore;

And of al this I not to whom me pleyne.⁵⁰
 For she that mighte me out of this
 bringe

Ne reccheth nat whether I wepe or
 singe;

So litel rewthe hath she upon my peyne.

Allas! whan sleping-time is, than I wake,
 Whan I shulde daunce, for fere than I
 quake;⁵⁵

†Yow rekketh never wher I flete or
 sinke;]

This hevy lyf I lede for your sake,
 Thogh ye ther-of in no wyse hede take,

+For on my wo yow deyneth not to
 thanke 59
 My hertes lady and hool my lyves quene!
 For trowly dorste I seye, as that I fele,
 Me smeth that your swete herte of stole
 Is whotted now ageynes me to kene.
 My dere herte, and best beloved I fo,
 Why lyketh yow to do me al this wo, 64
 What have I don that greveth yow, or
 sayd,
 But for I serve and love yow and no mo?
 And whylst I live I wol +do ever so;
 And therfor, swete, be both nat evil
 slyd 67
 For so good and so fair as [that] ye be, 70
 Hit were [a] right gret wonder but ye
 hadde
 Of alle servants, bothe good and badde,
 And leest worthy of alle hem, I am he.
 But never-the-les, my righte lady swete,
 Thogh that I be uncomyn good and swete 75
 To serve as I best coude my your hy-
 nesse,
 Yit is ther fayner noon, that wolde I hetp,
 Than I to do fy, wese, or elles late 78
 What so I wiste wen to fyaw distresse
 And haide I might as good as I have wille,
 Than shoulde ye kile wher it wer so or
 noon, 81
 For thur this worlde living is ther noon
 That fayr er wolde your hertes wyl fulfilla.
 For bothe I love and lack dreed yow so
 sore,
 And algates meet, and have doon yow,
 ful vere, 85
 That bet loved is noon, no never shal
 And yit I wolle beserche yow of no more
 But leveth wel, and be nat wrooth ther-
 fore.
 And lat me serve yow forth; lo! this
 is al
 For I am nat so lardy ne so wood 90
 For to desire that ye shoulde love me
 For wel I wot, allas! that may nat be
 I am, so litel worthy, and ye so good.
 For ye be on the worthiest on-lyve,
 Ar I the most unlykly for to thryve 95
 Yit for al this, [now] witeth ye right
 wole,

That ye ne abul me from your service
 dryve
 That I nil ay, with alle my wittes for—
 Serve yow trowly, what wo so that I fee.
 For I am set on yow in swich manere 100
 That, thogh ye never wil upon me rewe,
 I meste yow love, and +ever been as
 trowe
 As any can or may on-lyve [here].
 +The more that I love yow, goodly me—
 The lasse flode I that ye have me 105
 Allas! whan shal that hardle wit
 mende?
 Wher is now al your wommanly pity
 Your gentillesse and your debonairete
 Wil ye no thing ther-of upon me
 spende?
 And so hool, swete, as I am yowres al—
 And so gret wil as I have yow to serve,
 Now, certes, and ye lete me thus stonde,
 Yit have ye wonne thar-on but a smol
 For, at my knowing I do +no-thing
 why,
 And thus I wol beseeche yow hertely 115
 That, ther ever ye finde, whyl ye live
 A trower servant to yow than am I,
 Leveth [me] thanke, and sleeth me
 hardely,
 And I my deeth to you wol al fygive
 And if ye finde no trower +man than me
 [Whyl] will ye suffre than that I thus
 spelle,
 And for no maner gilt but my good
 wille?
 As good wer thanne untrews as trowe
 to be.
 But I, my lyf and deeth, to yow obeys
 And with right baxen herte hoolly I
 preys, 125
 As [is] your moste plesure, so doth by me
 +Wel lever is me lyken yow and I leys
 Than for to any thing er thynke er see
 That +michte yow offende in any mane.
 And therfor, swete, rewe on my paynes
 smerte, 130
 And of your grace granteth me som
 drope
 For elles may me hate +blis ne hope
 No +dwellen in my trouble careful herte

VII. ANELIDA AND ARCITE.

The Complaynt of feire Anelida
and fals Arcite.*Proem.*

erse god of armes, Mars the rede,
 n the frosty country called Trace,
 n thy grisly temple ful of drede
 red art, as patroun of that place!
 hy Bellona, Pallas, ful of grace, 5
 ent, and my song continue and
 ;
 beginning thus to thee I crye.

ful depe is sonken in my minde,
 itous herte in English for t'endyte
 le storie, in Latin which I finde, 10
 e Anelida and fals Arcite,
 de, which that al can frete and
 e,
 ath freten mony a noble storie,
 gh devoured out of our memorie.

able eek, thou Polymnia, 15
 also that, with thy sustres glade,
 on, not fer from Cirrea,
 with vois memorial in the shade,
 the laurer which that may not
 ,
 hat I my ship to haven winne; 20
 low I Stace, and after him
 nne.

The Story.

lomos patrias, &c.; Statii Thebais,
 xii. 519.

Theseus, with werres longe and
 e,
 e folk of Cithe had over-come,
 rrer crowned, in his char gold-

his contre-houses is y-come;— 25
 h the peple blisful, al and somme,
 n, that unto the sterres hit wente,
 a to honouren dide al hir en-
 e;—

Beorn this duk, in signe of hy victorie,
 The trompes come, and in his baner large
 The image of Mars; and, in token of
 glorie, 31
 Men mighten seen of tresor many a
 charge,
 Many a bright helm, and many a spere
 and targe,
 Many a fresh knight, and many a blisful
 route,
 On hors, on fote, in al the felde aboute. 35

Ipolita his wyf, the hardy quene
 Of Cithia, that he conquered hadde,
 With Emelye, hir yonge suster shene,
 Faire in a char of golde he with him ladde,
 That al the ground aboute hir char she
 spradde 40
 With brightnesse of the beautee in hir
 face,
 Fulfild of largesse and of alle grace.

With his triumphe and laurer-crowned
 thus,
 In al the floure of fortunes yevinge,
 Lete I this noble prince Theseus 45
 Toward Athenes in his wey rydinge,
 And founde I wol in shortly for to bringe
 The slye wey of that I gan to wryte,
 Of quene Anelida and fals Arcite.

Mars, which that through his furious
 course of yre, 50
 The olde wrath of Juno to fulfille,
 Hath set the peples hertes bothe on fyre
 Of Thebes and Grece, everich other to
 kille
 With blody speres, ne rested never stille,
 But throng now her, now ther, among
 hem bothe, 55
 That everich other slough, so wer they
 wrothe.

For whan Amphiorax and Tydeus,
 Ipomedon, Parthonopee also
 Were dede, and slayn [was] proud Cam-
 paneus,

And whan the wrecches Thebans, brethren two, 60
Were slayn, and king Adrastus hoom
a-go,
So desolat stood Thebes and so bare,
That no wight coude remedie of his care.

And whan the olde Creon gan espye
How that the blood royal was brought
adoun, 65

He held the cite by his tirannye,
And did the gentils of that regioun
To been his frendes, and dwellen in the
toun.

So what for love of him, and what for awe,
The noble folk wer to the toun y-drawe.

Among al these, Anahla the quene 71
Of Erimony was in that toun dwellinge,
That fairer was then is the sonne shene,
Through-out the world so gan hir name
springe,

That hir to seen had every wight lykinge;
For as of trouthe, is ther noon hirliche, 76
Of al the women in this worlde riche.

Yong was this quene, of twenty yeer of
elde,

Of middel stature, and of swich fairnesse,
That nature had a joye hir to behelde; 80
And for to spoken of hir stedfastnesse,
She passed hath Penelope and Laceresse,
And shortly, if she shal be comprehended,
In hir no mighte no-thing been amended.

This Theban knight [Arcite] seek, sooth to
seyn, 85

Was yong, and ther-with-al a lusty knight,
But he was double in love and no-thing
pleyn,

And subtil in that crafte over any wight,
And with his cunning wan this lady
bright,

For so ferforth he gan hir trouthe assure,
That she him trust over any creature. 91

What shuld I seyn? she loved Arcite so,
That, whan that he was absent any threwe,
Anon hir thoghte hir herte brast a-two,
For in hir sight to hir he bar him lowe, 95
So that she wende have al his herte
y-knowe,

But he was fals, it nas but feyned chere,
As nedeth not to men such craft to lere.

But never-the-les ful mikel businessse
Had he, er that he mighte his lady wanne,
And swoor he wolde dyen for distresse, 101
Or from his wit he seyde he wolde twinne.
Alas, the whyle! for hit was routhe and
sinne,

That she upon his sorowes wolde rewe,
But no-thing thenketh the fals as doth
the trowe. 105

Hir fredom fond Arcite in swich manere,
That al was his that she hath, moche or
lyte,

Ne to no creature made she there
Ferther than that hit lyked to Arcite
Ther was no lak with which he mighte
hir wyte, 110

She was so ferforth yeven him to plesse
That al that lyked him, hit did hir esse.

Ther nas to hir no maner lettre y-sent
That touched love, from any maner
wight,

That she no shewed hit him, er hit was
brent, 115

So pleyn she was, and did hir falle might,
That she nil hyden nothing from hir
knight,

Lest he of any untrouthe hir upbreyde,
Withouten bode his heste she obeyde.

And eske he made him jelous over here, 120
That, what that any man had to hir seyde,
Anon he wolde preyen hir to swere
What was that word, or make him evel
apayd,

Than wende she out of hir wit have brayd:
But al this nas but sleight and flaterye,
Withouten love he feyned jelosye. 125

And al this took she so debonerly,
That al his wille, hir thoghte hit skilful
thing,

And ever the lenger loved him tenderly,
And did him honour as he were a king. 130
Hir herte was wedded to him with a ring.
So ferforth upon trouthe is hir entente,
That wher he goth, hir herte with him
wente.

Whan she shal ote, on him is so hir
thoght, 134
That wel unnethe of mete took she kepe;

And whan that she was to hir reste
brought,
On him she thoughte alwey til that she
sleep;

Whan he was absent, prevely she weep;
Thus liveth fair Anelida the quene 139
For fals Arcite, that did hir al this tene.

This fals Arcite, of his new-fangelnesse,
For she to him so lowly was and trewe,
Took lesse deyntee for hir stedfastnesse,
And saw another lady, proud and newe,
And right anon he cladde him in hir
hewe— 145

Wot I not whether in whyte, rede, or
grene—

And falsed fair Anelida the quene.

But never-the-les, gret wonder was hit
noon

Thogh he wer fals, for hit is kinde of
man, 149

Sith Lamek was, that is so longe ageon,
To been in love as fals as ever he can;
He was the firste fader that began
To loven two, and was in bigamy; e
And he found tentes first, but-if men lye.

This fals Arcite sumwhat moste he feyne,
Whan he wex fals, to covere his trai-
torye, 156

Right as an hors, that can both byte and
pleyne;

For he bar hir on honde of trecherye,
And swoor he coude hir doublenesse
espye,

And al was falsnes that she to him mente;
Thus swoor this theef, and forth his way
he wente. 161

Alas! what herte might endure hit,
For routhe or wo, hir sorow for to telle?
Or what man hath the cunning or the
wit?

Or what man might with-in the chambre
dwelle. 165

If I to him rehersen shal the helle,
That suffreth fair Anelida the quene
For fals Arcite, that did hir al this tene?

She wepeth, wailleth, swowneth pitously,
To grounde deed she falleth as a stoon;

Al crampissheth hir limes crokedly, 171
She speketh as hir wit were al agoon;

Other colour then asshen hath she noon,
Noon other word †she speketh moche or
lyte,

But 'mercy, cruel herte myn, Arcite!' 175

And thus endureth, til that she was so
mate

That she ne hath foot on which she may
sustene;

But forth languisshing ever in this estate,
Of which Arcite hath nother routhe ne
tene;

His herte was elles-where, newe and
grene, 181

That on hir wo ne deyneth him not to
thinke,

Him rekketh never wher she flete or
sinke.

His newe lady holdeth him so narowe

Up by the brydel, at the staves ende,

That every word, he dradde hit as an
arowe; 185

Hir daunger made him bothe bowe and
bende,

And as hir liste, made him turne or
wende;

For she ne graunted him in hir livinge
No grace, why that he hath lust to singe;

But drof him forth, unnethe liste hir
knowe 190

That he was servaunt †to hir ladyshippe,
But lest that he wer proude, she held
him lowe;

Thus serveth he, withouten fee or shipe.
She sent him now to londe, now to

shippe; 194

And for she yaf him daunger al his fille,
Therfor she had him at hir owne wille.

Ensample of this, ye thrifty wimmen alle,
Take here Anelida and fals Arcite,

That for hir liste him 'dere herte' calle,
And was so meek, therfor he loved hir

lyte; 200

The kinde of mannes herte is to delyte
In thing that straunge is, also god mo
save!

For what he may not gete, that wolde he
have.

Now turne we to Anelida ageyn,

That pyneth day by day in languisshing:

But whan she saw that hir ne gat no
geyn, 206
Upon a day, ful sorowfully weping,
She caste hir for to make a compleyning.
And with hir owne honde she gan hit
wryte;
And sente hit to hir Theban knight
Arcite. 210

**The Complaynt of Anelida the quene
upon fals Arcite.**

Proem.

So thirleth with the poynt of remem-
braunce,
The sword of sorowe, y-whet with fals
plesaunce,
Myn herte, bare of blis and blik of
howe,
That turned is in quaking al my launce,
My suretee in a-whaped countenaunce, 215
Sith hit availleth not for to ben trewe,
For who-so trewest is, hit shal hir
rewe,
That serveth love and doth hir observ-
aunce
Alwey to oon, and chaungeth for no
newe,

(Strophe.)

1

I wot my-self as wel as any wight; 220
For I loved oon with al my herte and
might
More then my-self, an hundred thou-
sand sythe,
And called him my hertes lyf, my knight,
And was al his, as fer as hit was right,
And whan that he was glad, than was
I blythe, 225
And his disese was my deeth as swythe,
And he ayein his trouthe me had plight
For ever-more, his lady me to kythe

2.

Now is he fals alas' and causeles,
An let my wo he is so routheles, 230
That with a word he list not ones
deyne
To bring ayein my sorowful herte in pees,
For he is caught up in a-nother lees.

Right as him list, he laugheth at my
peyne, 234
And I ne can myn herte not restreynen,
That I ne love him alwey, never-the-les,
And of al this I not to whom me pleyne

3.

And shal I pleyne—alas' the hard
stonde—
Un-to my foe that yaf my herte a wounde,
And yet dosythreth that myn harm be
more? 240
Nay, certes' further wol I never trowe
Non other help, my sores for to sounde.
My destinee hath shapen it ful yore
I wil non other medecyne ne lore
I wil ben ay ther I was ones bounde, 245
That I have seid, be seid for ever-more!

4.

Alas' wher is become your gentillesse?
Your wordes fulle of plesance and hum-
blasse?
Your observaunces in so low manere
And your awayting and your besileasse 250
Upon me, that ye cadden your maistressa,
Your soveryn lady in this worlde here?
Alas! and is ther nother word ne chere
Ye vouchesauf upon myn besynesse?
Alas' your love, I bye hit al to dere 255

5.

Now certes, swete, thogh that ye
Thus causeles the cause be
Of my dedly adversitee,
Your manly reson oughte it to respyte
To slee your frend, and namely me, 260
That never yet in no degree
Offended yow, as wisly I,
That al wot, out of wo my soule quyte'
¶ But for I shewed yow, Arcite,
Al that men wolde to me wryte, 265
And was so lesy, yow to delyte -
My honour save—make, kinde, and free,
Therfor ye putte on me the wyte,
And of me recche not a myte,
Thogh that the sword of sorow hyte 270
My woful herte through your crueltee.

6.

My swete foe, why do ye so, for shame?
And thanke ye that furthered be your
name,

To love a newe, and been untrewe?
 nay!
 And putte yow in sclaunder now and
 blame, 275
 And do to me adversitee and grame,
 That love yow most, god, wel thou
 wost! alway?
 Yet turn ayeyn, and be al pleyn som
 day,
 And than shal this that now is mis be
 game, 279
 And al for-yive, whyl that I live may.

(Antistrophe.)

1.

Lo! herte myn, al this is for to seyne,
 As whether shal I preye or elles pleyne?
 Whiche is the way to doon yow to be
 trewe?
 For either mot I have yow in my cheyne,
 Or with the dethe ye mot departe us
 tweyne; 285
 Ther ben non other mene weyes newe;
 For god so wisly on my soule rewe,
 As verily ye aleen me with the peyne;
 That may ye see unfeyned of myn hewe.

2.

For thus ferforth have I my deth [y]-
 soght, 290
 My-self I mordre with my prevy thoght;
 For sorow and routhe of your unkinde-
 nesse
 I wepe, I wake, I faste; al helpeth noght;
 I weyve joye that is to speke of oght,
 I voyde companye, I flee gladnesse; 295
 Who may avaunte hir bet of hevinesse
 Then I? and to this plyte have ye me
 broght,
 Withoute gilt; me nedeth no witnesse.

3.

And sholde I preye, and weyve woman-
 hede?
 Nay! rather deth then do so foul a dede,
 And axe mercy gilteles! what nede? 301
 And if I pleyne what lyf that I lede,
 Yow rekketh not; that know I, out of
 drede;
 And if I unto yow myn othes bede

For myn excuse, a scorn shal be my
 mede; 305
 Your chere floureth, but hit wol not sede;
 Ful longe agoon I oghte have take hede.

4.

For thogh I hadde yow to-morow ageyn,
 I might as wel holde Averill fro reyn,
 As holde yow, to make yow stedfast. 310
 Almighty god, of trouthe sovereyn,
 Wher is the trouthe of man? who hath
 hit sleyn?
 Who that hem loveth shal hem fynde
 as fast
 As in a tempest is a roten mast.
 Is that a tame best that is ay feyn 315
 To renne away, when he is leest agast?

5.

Now mercy, swete, if I misseye,
 Have I seyde oght amis, I preye?
 I not; my wit is al aweye.
 I fare as doth the song of *Chaunte-pleure*.
 For now I pleyne, and now I pleye, 321
 I am so mased that I deye,
 Arcite hath born away the keye
 Of al my worlde, and my good aventure!
 ¶ For in this worlde nis creature 325
 Wakinge, in more discomfiture
 Then I, ne more sorow endure;
 And if I slope a furlong wey or tweye,
 Than thinketh me, that your figure
 Before me stant, clad in asure, 330
 To profren eft a newe assure
 For to be trewe, and mercy me to preye.

6.

The longe night this wonder sight I
 drye,
 And on the day for this afray I dye, 334
 And of al this right noght, y-wis, ye
 recche.
 Ne never mo myn yēn two be drye,
 And to your routhe and to your trouthe
 I crye.
 But welaway! to fer be they to fecche;
 Thus holdeth me my destinee a
 wrecche. 339
 But me to rede out of this drede or gye
 Ne may my wit, so weyk is hit, not
 strecche.

Conclusion.

Than ende I thus, sith I may do no
 more,
 I yeve hit up for now and ever-more;
 For I shal never eft putten in balaunce
 My sekernes, ne lerne of love the
 lore. 345
 But as the swan, I have herd seyde ful
 yore,
 Ayeins his deth shal singe in his
 penaunce,
 So singe I here my destiny or chaunce,

How that Arcite Anelida so sore
 Hath thirled with the poynt of remem-
 braunce! 350

The story continued.

Whan that Anelida this woful quene
 Hath of hir hande writen in this wyse,
 With face deed, betwixe pale and grene,
 She fel a-swowe; and sith she gan to ryse,
 And unto Mars avoweth sacrificye 355
 With-in the temple, with a sorowful
 chere,
 That shapen was as ye shal after here. 357

(Unfinished.)

VIII. CHAUCERS WORDES UNTO ADAM, HIS OWNE SCRIVEYN.

ADAM scriveyn, if ever it thee bifalle
 Boece or Troilus to wryten newe,
 Under thy lokkes thou most have the
 scalle,
 But after my making thou wryte trewe.

So ofte a daye I mot thy werk renewe, 5
 Hit to correcte and eek to rubbe and
 scrape;
 And al is through thy negligence and
 rape. *For the*

IX. THE FORMER AGE.

A BLISFUL lyf, a paisible and a swete
 Ledden the peples in the former age;
 They helde hem payed of frutes, that
 they ete,
 Which that the feldes yave hem by usage;
 They ne were nat forpampred with out-
 rage; 5
 Unknowen was the quern and eek the
 melle;
 They eten mast, hawes, and swich poun-
 age,
 And dronken water of the colde welle.

Yit nas the ground nat wounded with
 the plough,
 But corn up-sprong, unsowe of mannes
 hond, 10
 The which they *gulted* ~~gniden~~, and eete nat
 half y-nough.
 No man yit knew the *furrow* ~~forwes~~ of his lond;
 No man the fyr out of the flint yit
 fond;
 Un-korven and un-grobbed lay the vyne;
 No man yit in the mortar spyces grond 15
 To clarre, ne to sause of galantyne.

No mader, welde, or wood no listers
 No knew; the flece was of his former
 hewe,
 flesh ne wiste offence of egges or sperre;
 corn ne knew man which was fals or
 trewe,
 ship yit karf the wawes grene and
 blew;e
 marchant yit ne fette outlandish
 ware;
 trompes for the werres folk ne knewe,
 toures haye, and walles rounde or
 square.

What sholde it han awayled to werreye? 35
 For lay no profit, ther was no richesse,
 but cursed was the tyme, I dar wel seye,
 That men first dide hir swety bynesse
 To grobbe up metal, lurkinges in dark-
 nesse,

And in the riveres first gemmes soghte. 30
 Allas! than sprong up al the cursednesse
 Of covetyse, that first our sorwe broghte!

These tyrants putte hem gladly nat in
 pres. 35
 No wilddnesse, ne no bushes for to winne
 Ther povertie is, as seith Diogenes,
 Ther as vitaille is eek so skars and thinne
 That noght but maat or apples is ther-
 inne.

But, ther as bagges been and fat vitaille,
 Ther wol they gon, and spare for no sinne
 With al hir ost the cite for t'assaille. 40

Yit were no palais-chaumbres, ne non
 halles;

In caves and [in] wodes softe and swete
 Slepten this blassed folk with-oute walles,
 On gras or leves in parfit tquiete.

No doun of fetheres, ne no bleched
 shete 45

Was kid to hem, but in seurtee they
 slepte;

Hir hartes were al oon, with-oute galles,
 Everich of hem his feith to other kepte.

Unforged was the hauberk and the plate;
 The lambish peple, voyd of alle vyce, 50
 Hadden no fantasye to debate,

But ech of hem wolde otheer wel cheryce;
 No pryde, non envye, non avaryce,

No lord, no taylage by no tyrannye;
 Humblesse and pees, good faith, the em-
 perice, 55

[+Fulfilled erthe of olds curtesye.]
 Yit was not Jupiter the likerous,

That first was fader of delicacye, 60
 Come in this world; ne Nambrot, de-
 sirous

To reynen, had nat maad his toures
 hye. 65

Allas, allas! now may men wepe and
 crye!

For in our dayes nis but covetyse
 [And] doubleness, and tresoun and envye,

Poyseoun, manslaughtre, and mordre in
 sondry wyse. 64

Finis Etas prima. Chaucer.

X. FORTUNE.

Ballades de visage sans peinture.

I. Le Plaignif countre Fortune.

This wrecched worldes transmutacioun,
 As wale or we, now povre and now
 honour,

With-oute ordre or wys discrecioun
 Governed is by Fortunes arrow; 5
 But nathales, the lak of hir favour

Ne may nat don me singen, though I dye,
 'Iay tout perdu mon temps et mon labour.'
 For fynally, Fortune, I thee defye!

Yit is me left the light of my rescoun,
 To knowen frend fro fo in thy mirour. 10
 So muche hath yit thy whirling up and
 doun

Y-taught me for to knowen in an hour,
 But trewely, no force of thy reddour

To him that over him-self hath the maye-
trye!

My suffisaunce shal be my socour : 15
For fynally, Fortune, I thee defy!

O Socrates, thou stedfast champion,
She never mighte be thy tormentour;
Thou never dreddest hir oppressioun,
Ne in hir chere founde thou no savour. 20
Thou knewe wel deceit of hir colour,
And that hir moste worshipec is to lye.
I knowe hir eek a fals dissimulour:
For fynally, Fortune, I thee defy!

II. La respounse de Fortune au Pleintif.

No man is wretched, but him-self hit
wene, 25

And he that hath him-self hath suf-
fisaunce.

Why seyestow thanne I am to thee so
kene,

That hast thy-self out of my governaunce?
Sey thus: 'Graunt mercy of thyn ha-
boundaunce

That thou hast lent or this.' Why wolt
thou stryve? 30

What wostow yit, how I thee wol
avauunce?

And eek thou hast thy beste frend alyve!

I have thee taught divisioun bi-twene
Frend of effect, and frend of counten-
aunce;

Thee nedeth nat the galle of noon
hyene, 35

That careth eyen derke fro hir penaunce;
Now seestow cleer, that were in ignor-
aunce

Yit halt thyn ancre, and yit thou mayst
arryve

Ther bountee berth the keye of my sub-
staunce. 39

And eek thou hast thy beste frend alyve.

How many have I refused to sustene,
Sin I thee fostred have in thy plesaunce!
Woltow than make a statut on thy quene
That I shal been ay at thyn ordinaunce?
Thou born art in my regne of variaunce,

Aboute the wheal with other most th
dryve.

My lore is bet than wikke is thy gr
aunce,

And eek thou hast thy beste frend aly

III. La respounse du Pleintif countr Fortune.

Thy lore I dampne, hit is adversitee
My frend maystow nat reyn, blind
desse!

That I thy frendes knowe, I thank
thee.

Tak hem agayn, lat hem go lye on pre
The negardye in keping hir richesse

Preseint, thou wolt hir tour assaile
Wikke appetyt comth ay before aknesse

In general, this reule may nat fayle. 5

La respounse de Fortune countr le Pleintif.

Thou pinchest at my mutabilitee,
For I thee lense a drope of my riches
And now me lyketh to with-drawe me
Why sholdestow my realtee oppresse?
The see may ebbe and flowen more or les.
The welkne hath might to shyne, reyne
or hayle;

Right so mot I kythen my ^{richesse} ~~hoptelnesse~~.
In general, this reule may nat fayle.

Lo, th'exercucion of the mageste
That al purveyeth of his rightwisnesse
That same thing 'Fortune' clepen ye
Ye blinde bestes, ful of lewednesse!
The hevene hath propretee of sikernes
This world hath ever resteles travayle,
Thy laste day is ende of myn intresse.
In general, this reule may nat fayle.

Leavoy de Fortune.

Princes, I prey you of your gentillesse,
Lat nat this man on me thus crye and
pleyne,

And I shal quyte you your bisinesse 75

At my requeste, as thre of you or twayne;

And, but you list releve him of his peyne

Preyeth his beste frend, of his noblesse

That to som beter estat he may attayne.

Explicit.

I. **MERCILES BEAUTE: A TRIPLE ROUNDEL.**

I. *Captivity.*

In two wol slee me sodenly,
 the beaute of hem not sustene,
 nedeth hit through-out my herte
 a.

your word wol helen hastily
 as wounde, whyl that hit is grene,
 for two wol slee me sodenly, 6
 the beaute of hem not sustene.

your trouthe I sey yow feithfully,
 men of my lyf and deeth the quene;
 my deeth the trouthe shal besene.
 for two wol slee me sodenly, 11
 the beaute of hem not sustene,
 nedeth hit through-out my herte kene.

II. *Rejection.*

your beaute fro your herte chaced
 at me ne availeth not to pleyne;
 unger halt your mercy in his
 me. 16

my deeth thus han ye me pur-
 ed;
 v sooth, me nedeth not to feyne;

*So hath your beaute fro your herte chaced
 Pitee, that me ne availeth not to pleyne. 20*

Allas! that nature hath in yow com-
 passed

So greet beaute, that no man may atteyne
 To mercy, though he starve for the peyne.

*So hath your beaute fro your herte chaced
 Pitee, that me ne availeth not to pleyne; 25
 For Daunger halt your mercy in his cheyne.*

III. *Escape.*

Sin I fro Love escaped am so fat,
 I never thenk to ben in his prison lene;
 Sin I am free, I counte him not a bene.

He may answer, and seye this or that; 30
 I do no fors, I speke right as I mene.

*Sin I fro Love escaped am so fat,
 I never thenk to ben in his prison lene.*

Love hath my name y-strike out of his
 sclat,

And he is strike out of my bokes clene 35
 For ever-mo; forther is non other mene.

*Sin I fro Love escaped am so fat,
 I never thenk to ben in his prison lene;
 Sin I am free, I counte him not a bene. 39*

Explicit.

XII. **TO ROSEMOUNDE. A BALADE.**

ye ben of al beaute shryne
 encircled is the mappemounde;
 the cristal glorious ye shyne,
 the ruby ben your chekes rounde.
 how ye ben so mery and so jocounde,
 how a revel whan that I see you
 once, 6
 bynment unto my wounde,
 how to me ne do no daliaunce.

For thogh I wepe of teres ful a tync,
 Yet may that wo myn herte nat con-
 founde; 10

Your forseemly voys that ye so forsmall out-
 twyne *utter*

Maketh my thoght in joye and blis
 habounde.

So curteisly I go, with love bounde,
 That to my-self I sey, in my penaunce,

Suffyseth me to love you, Rosemounde, 15
Thogh ye to me ne do no daliaunce.

Nas never pyk walwed in galauntyne
As I in love am walwed and y-wounde ;
For which ful ofte I of my-self divyne

Tregentil.

cooled down
That I am trewe Tristram the secounde. 20
My love may not refreyd be nor afounde
I brenne ay in an amorous plesaunce.
Do what you list, I wil your thral be
founde,
Thogh ye to me ne do no daliaunce. 24

Chaucer.

XIII. TRUTH.

sort of Balade de bon conseyl.

my FLEE fro the prees, and dwelle with soth-
fastnesse,

Suffyce unto thy good, though hit be
smal;

will For hord hath hate, and climbing tikel-
nesse, *in the trust* *desired*

lesson Prees hath envye, and wile blent overal ;
Savour no more than thee bihove shal ; 5

will Werk wel thy-self, that other folk canst
rede ;

And trouthe shal deliver, hit is no drede.

to be a *myself* ~~Tempest~~ thee noght al croked to redresse,
In trust of hir that turneth as a bal :

Gret reste stant in litel besinesse ; 10

will And eek be war to sporne ageyn an al ;

Stryve noght, as doth the crokke with
the wal. *crack*

will Daunte thy-self, that dauntest otheres
dede ;

And trouthe shal deliver, hit is no drede.

submission
That thee is sent, receyve in buxumnesse,
The wrastling for this worlde axeth a
fal. 16

Her nis non hoom, her nis but wilder-
nesse :

Forth, pilgrim, forth ! Forth, beste, out
of thy stal !

Know thy contree, look up, thank God
of al ;

Hold the hye wey, and lat thy gost thee
lede : 20

And trouthe shal deliver, hit is no drede.

heart
Envoy

Therefore, thou vache, leve thyn old
wrecchednesse

Unto the worlde ; leve now to be thral ;

Crye him mercy, that of his hy goodnesse

Made thee of noght, and in especial 25

Draw unto him, and pray in general

For thee, and eek for other, hevenlich
mede ; 27

And trouthe shal deliver, hit is no drede.

Explicit Le bon counsell de G. Chaucer.

XIV. GENTILESSE.

Moral Balade of Chaucer.

THE firste stok, fader of gentilesse—

What man that claymeth gentil for to be,
Must folowe his trace, and alle his wittes
dresse

Vertu to sewe, and vyces for to flee.

For unto vertu longeth dignitee, 5

And noght the revers, saufly dar I deme,
Al were he mytre, croune, or diademe.

This firste stok was ful of rightwisnesse.
Trewe of his word, sobre, pitous, and
free,

Clene of his goste, and loved besinesse, 10

Against the vyce of slouthe, in honestee ;

And, but his heir love vertu, as dide he,
He is noght gentil, thogh he riche seme,
Al were he mytre, croune, or diademe.

Vyce may wel be heir to old richesse; 15
But ther may no man, as men may wel see,

Bequethe his heir his vertuons noblesse
That is appropred unto no degree,
But to the firste fader in magestee,
That maketh him his heir, that can him
queme, *please* 20
Al were he mytre, croune, or diademe.

XV. LAK OF STEDFASTNESSE

stability

Balade.

Som tyme this world was so stedfast and
stable,

That mannes word was obligacioun,
And now hit is so fals and deceivable,
That word and deed, as in conclusioun,
Ben no-thing lyk, for turned up so doun 5
Is al this world for mede and wilfulnesse,
That al is lost for lak of stedfastnesse.

What maketh this world to be so variable,
But lust that folk have in dissensioun?
Among us now a man is holde unable, 10
But-if he can, by som collusioun,
Don his neighbour wrong or oppressioun.
What causeth this, but wilful wrecched-
nesse,
That al is lost, for lak of stedfastnesse?

Trouthe is put down, resoun is holden
fable; 15

Vertu hath now no dominacioun,
Pitee exyled, no man is merciabile.
Through covetyse is blent discrecioun;
The world hath mad a permutacioun
Fro right to wrong, fro trouthe to fikel-
nesse, 20
That al is lost, for lak of stedfastnesse.

Lenvoy to King Richard.

O prince, desyre to be honourable,
Cherish thy folk and hate extorcioun!
Suffre no thing, that may be reprevable
To thyn estat, don in thy regioun. 25
Shew forth thy sward of castigacioun,
Dred God, do law, love trouthe and worthi-
nesse, 27
And wed thy folk agein to stedfastnesse.

Explicit.

XVI. LENVOY DE CHAUCER A SCOGAN.

~~To beoken~~ been the statuts hye in hevene
That ~~great~~ were eternally to dure,
Sith that I see the brighte goddes sevene
Now wepe and wayle, and passioun en-
dure,
As may in erthe a mortal creature. 5
Allas, fro whennes may this thing pro-
cede?
Of whiche errour I deye almost for drede.

By worde eterne whylom was hit shape
That fro the fifte cercle, in no manere,
Ne mighte a drope of teres doun es-
cape. 10
But now so wepeth Venus in hir spere,
That with hir teres she wol drenche us
here.
Allas, Scogan! this is for thyn offence!
Thou causest this deluge of pestilence.

Hast thou not seyde, in blasphemie of this
 goddes, 15
 Through pryde, or through thy grete
 rakelnesse, ~~rakennes~~
 Swich thing as in the lawe of love for-
 bode is?
 That, for thy lady saw nat thy distresse,
 Therfor thou yave hir up at Michelmesse!
 Allas, Scogan! of olde folk ne yonge 20
 Was never erst Scogan blamed for his
 tonge!

Thou drowe in scorn Cupyde eek to record
 Of thilke rebel word that thou hast spoken,
 For which he wol no lenger be thy lord.
 And, Scogan, thogh his bowe be nat
 broken, 25
 He wol nat with his arwes been y-wroken
 On thee, ne me, ne noon of our figure;
 We shul of him have neyther hurt ne cure.
 Now certes, frend, I drede of thyn un-
 happe,
 Lest for thy gilt the wreche of Love pro-
 cede 30
 On alle hem that ben hore and rounde of
 shape,

That ben so lykly folk in love to spede.
 Than shul we for our labour han no mede
 But wel I wot, thou wilt answer and seyn
 'Lo! olde Grisel list to ryme and pleye!'

Nay, Scogan, sey not so, for I m'excuse, 35
 God help me so! in no rym, doutelees,
 Ne thinke I never of slepe wak my muse.
 That rustoth in my shethe stille in pees.
 Why! I was yong, I putte hir forth in
 prees, 40
 But al shal passe that men prose or ryme
 Take every man his turn, as for his tyme.

Envoy.

Scogan, that knelest at the stremes heed¹
 Of grace, of alle honour and worthinesse;
 In th'ende of which streme² I am dul as
 deed, 45
 Forgete in solitarie wilderness;
 Yet, Scogan, thenke on Tullius kinde-
 nesse,
 Minne thy frend, ther it may fructifye!
 Far-wel, and lok thou never eft Love
 defye! 49

¹ I. e. Windsor.

² I. e. Greenwich.

~~Lenovo de~~

XVII. LENVOY DE CHAUCER A BUKTON.

The counsell of Chaucer touching
 Mariage, which was sent to Bukton.

My maister Bukton, whan of Criste our
 kinge
 Was axed, what is trouthe or sothfast-
 nesse,
 He nat a word answerde to that axinge,
 As who saith: 'no man is al trewe,'
 I gesse.
 And therfor, thogh I highte to expresse
 The sorwe and wo that is in mariage, 6
 I dar not wryte of hit no wikkednesse,
 Lest I my-self falle eft in swich dotage.
 I wol nat seyn, how that hit is the cheyne
 Of Sathanas, on which he gnaweth ever, 10

But I dar seyn, were he out of his peyne,
 As by his wille, he wolde be bounde
 never.

But thilke doted fool that eft hath lever
 Y-cheyned be than out of prisoun crepe,
 God lete him never fro his wo dissever, 15
 Ne no man him bewayle, though he wepe

But yit, lest thou do worse, tak a wyf;
 Bet is to wedde, than brenne in wors
 wyse.

But thou shalt have sorwe on thy flesh
 thy lyf,

And been thy wyves thral, as seyn thes
 wyse; 20

And if that holy writ may nat suffyse,
 Experience shal thee teche, so may happ

were lever to be take in Fryse
o falle of wedding in the trappe.

Envoy.

writ, proverbes, or figure 25
u, tak kepe of hit, I rede :

Unwys is he that can no wele endure.
If thou be siker, put thee nat in drede.
The Wyf of Bathe I pray you that ye rede
Of this matere that we have on honde. 30
God graunte you your lyf frely to lede
In fredom; for ful hard is to be bonde.

Explicit.

XVIII. THE COMPLEYNT OF VENUS.

(The Lover's worthiness.)

o hy comfort to my plesaunce,
t I am in any hevinesse,
ave leyser of remembraunce
manhod and the worthinesse,
routhe, and on the stedfastnesse
os I am al, whyl I may dure; 6
e blame me no creature,
wight preiseth his gentilesse.

bountee, wisdom, governaunce
then any mannes wit can gesse;
hath wold so forforth him
ce 11
ighthode he is parfit richesse.
onoureth him for his noblesse;
wel hath formed him Nature,
his for ever, I him assure, 15
wight preiseth his gentilesse.

withstanding al his suffisaunce,
herte is of so greet humblesse
orde, in werke, in contenaunce,
serve is al his besinesse, 20
set in verrey sikernesse.
e I blesse wel myn aventure,
him list me serven and honoure;
wight preiseth his gentilesse.

(Inquietude caused by Jealousy.)

s, Love, hit is right covenable
ful dere bye thy noble thing, 26
bedde, and fasten at the table,
to laughe, and singe in com-
ing,
to caste visage and loking,

Often to chaungen hewe and contenaunce,
†Pleyne in sleping, and dremen at the
daunce, 31
Al the revers of any glad feling.

Jalousye be hanged by a cable!
She wolde al knowe through hir espying;
Ther doth no wight no-thing so resonable,
That al nis harm in hir imagening. 36
Thus dere abought is lovè, in yeving,
Which ofte he yiveth, with-oute ordin-
aunce, *consideration*
As sorow ynogh, and litel of plesaunce,
Al the revers of any glad feling. 40

A litel tyme his yift is agreable,
But ful encomberous is the using;
For sotel Jalousye, the deceyvable,
Ful often-tyme causeth destourbing.
Thus be we ever in drede and suffering.
In nouncerteyn we languisshe in pen-
aunce, 46
And han ful often many an hard mes-
chaunce,
Al the revers of any glad feling.

III. (Satisfaction in Constancy.)

But certes, Love, I sey nat in such wyse
That for t'escape out of your lace I mente;
For Iso longe have been in your servyse 51
That for to lete of wol I never assente;
No force thogh Jalousye me tormente;
Suffyceth me to see him whan I may, 54
And therefore certes, to myn ending-day
To love him best ne shal I never repente.

And certes, Love, whan I me wel avyse
On any estat that man may represente,

Than have ye maked me, through your
tranchevee,

Chese the best that ever on erthe wente.
Now love wel, herte, and look thou never
stente ;

And let the jelous putte hit in assay
That, for no payne wol I nat sey nay ;
To love him best ne shal I never repente.

Herte, to thee hit eghte y-nogh suffyso 65
That Love so by a grace to thee sente,
To chese the worthiest in alle wyse
And most agreable unto myn entente.

Seche no farther, neyther way no wente,
Sith I have suffisaunce unto my pay 70
Thus wol I ende this compleynt or lay ;
To love him best ne shal I never repente.

Lenvoy.

Princess, receyveth this compleynt in
gros, *warman*

Unto your excellent benigneite

Direct after my litel suffisaunce.

For eld, that in my spirit lalleth a.

Hath of endyting al the soteltee

Wel ny bereft out of my remem-
braunce,

And eek to me hit is a greet pen-
aunce,

Sith rym in English hath swich scarsitee
To folowe word by word the curiositee

Of Graunson, flour of hem that make
in France.

XIX. THE COMPLEINT OF CHAUCER TO HIS EMPTY PURSE.

To you, my purse, and to non other wight
Compleyne I, for ye be my lady dere !
I am so sory, now that ye be light,
For certes, but ye make me hevy chere,
Me were as leef be leyd up-on my here, 5
For whiche un-to your mercy thus I crye.
Beth hevy ageyn, or elles mot I dye !

Now voucheth sauf this day, or hit be
night,

That I of you the blisful soun may here,
Or see your colour lyk the sonne bright,
That of yelownesse hadde never pere. 11
Ye be my lyf, ye be myn hertes stere,
Queene of comfort and of good companye
Beth hevy ageyn, or elles mot I dye !

Now purs, that be to me my lyves light 10
And saveour, as down in this world here
Out of this tounse help me through your
might,

Sin that ye wole nat been my tresorer :
For I am shave as nye as any frere.
But yet I pray un-to your courtesye : 20
Beth hevy ageyn, or elles mot I dye !

Lenvoy de Chaucer.

O conquerour of Brutes Albion !
Which that by lyne and free eleccion
Ben verray king, this song to you I sente ;
And ye, that mowen al our harm unelde-
Have munde up-on my supplicacion 30

XX. PROVERBS.

Proverbe of Chaucer.

I.

What shal this clothes many-fold,
Lo ! this note somers lay ?
After greet heat cometh cold,
No man caste his pilche away 4

II.

Of al this world the wyde compass
Hit wol not in myn armes twayne,—
Who-so muchel wol embrace
Litel therof he shal distreyne.

APPENDIX.

[The following Poems are also probably genuine ; but are placed here
for lack of external evidence.]

XXI. AGAINST WOMEN UNCONSTANT.

Balade.

LADAME, for your newe-fangelnesse,
Many a servaunt have ye put out of grace,
Take my leve of your unstedfastnesse,
For wel I wot, whyl ye have lyves space,
Ye can not love ful half yeer in a place ; 5
To newe thing your lust is ever kene ;
In stede of blew, thus may ye were al
grene.

Right as a mirour nothing may enpresse,
But lightly as it cometh, so mot it pace,
So fareth your love, your werkes bereth
witness. 10

Ther is no feith that may your herte en-
brace ;

But, as a wedercok, that turneth his face
With every wind, ye fare, and that is
sene ;
In stede of blew, thus may ye were al
grene.

Ye might be shryned, for your brotelnesse,
Bet than Dalyda, Creseide or Candace ; 16
For ever in chaunging †stant your siker-
nesse,

That tache may no wight fro your herte
arace ; 20

If ye lese oon, ye can wel tweyn purchace ;
Al light for somer, ye woot wel what I
mene, 20

In stede of blew, thus may ye were al
grene.

Explicit.

XXII. AN AMOROUS COMPLEINT. (COMPLEINT
DAMOURS.)An amorous Compleint, made at
Windsor.

I, WHICH that am the sorwefulleste
man

That in this world was ever yit livinge,
And leest recoverer of him-selven can,
Beginne †thus my deedly compleininge
On hir, that may to lyf and deeth me
bringe, 5

Which hath on me no mercy ne no rewthe
That love hir best, but sleeth me for my
trewthe.

Can I noght doon ne seye that may yow
lyke,

†For certes, now, alas ! alas ! the whyle !
Your plesaunce is to laughen whan I
syke, 10

And thus ye me from al my blisse exyle.

Ye han me cast in thilke spitous ylo
 Ther never man on lyve mighte astate ;
 This have I for I lovë you, swete herte !

Sooth is, that wel I woot, by lyklinesse,
 If that it were thing possible to do 16
 T'acompte youre beutee and goodnesse,
 I have no wonder thogh ye do me wo ;
 Sith I, th'unworthiest that may ryde or go,
 Durste ever thinken in so hy a place, 20
 What wonder is, thogh ye do me no grace ?

Allas ! thus is my lyf brought to an ende,
 My deeth, I see, is my conclusioun ;
 I may wel singe, 'in sory tyme I spende
 My lyf ;' that song may have confusioun !
 For mercy, pitee, and deep affeccioun, 26
 I sey for me, for al my deedly chere, 31
 Alle thise diden, in that, me love yow dere.

And in this wyse and in dispayre I live
 In lovë ; nay, but in dispayre I dye ! 30
 But shal I thus [to] yow my deeth for-give,
 That causeles doth me this sorow drye ?
 Ye, certes, I ! For she of my folye
 Hath nought to done, although she do me
 sterve ;

Hit is nat with hir wil that I hir serve ! 35
 Than sith I am of my sorowe the cause
 And sith that I have this, withoute hir
 reed,

Than may I seyn, right shortly in a clause,
 It is no blame unto hir womanheed
 Though swich a wrecche as I be for hir
 deed ; 40

[And] yet alwey two thinges doon me dyë,
 That is to seyn, hir beutee and myn yë.

So that, algates, she is the verray rote
 Of my disese, and of my dethe also ;
 For with oon word she mighte be my bote,
 If that she vouched sauf for to do so. 46
 But [why] than is hir gladnesse at my wo ?
 It is hir wone plesaunce for to take,
 To seen hir servants dyen for hir sake !

But certes, than is al my wonderinge, 50
 Sithen she is the fayrest creature
 As to my dome, that ever was livinge,
 The benignest and beste eek that nature
 Hath wrought or shal, whyl that the
 world may dure,

Why that she lefte pite so behinde ? 55
 It was, y-wis, a greet defaute in kinde.

Yit is al this no lak to hir, pardee,
 But god or nature sore wolde I blame ;
 For, though she shewe no pite unto me,
 Sithen that she doth othere men the same,
 I ne oughte to despyse my ladies game ; 61
 It is hir pley to laughen whan men syketh,
 And I assente, al that hir list and lyketh !

Yit wolde I, as I dar, with sorweful herte
 Biseche un-to your meke womanhede 65
 That I now dorste my sharpe sorwes
 smerte

Shewe by worde, that ye wolde ones rede
 The pleynte of me, the which ful sore
 drede

That I have seid here, through myn un-
 conninge,

In any worde to your displesinge. 70

Lothest of anything that ever was loth
 Were me, as wisly god my soule save !
 To seyn a thing through which ye might
 be wroth ;

And, to that day that I be leyd in grave,
 A trewer servaunt shulle ye never have ;
 And, though that I on yow have pleynd
 here, 76

Forgiveth it me, myn owne lady dere !

Ever have I been, and shal, how-so I
 wende,

Outher to live or dye, your humble trewe :
 Ye been to me my ginning and myn ende,
 Sonne of the sterre bright and clere of
 hewe, 81

Alwey in oon to love yow freshly newe,
 By god and by my trouthe, is myn entente ;
 To live or dye, I wol it never repente !

This compleynt on seint Valentynes day.
 Whan every foul [ther] chesen shal his
 make, 80

To hir, whos I am hool, and shal alwey.
 This woful song and this compleynt I
 make,

That never yit wolde me to mercy take :
 And yit wol I [for] evermore her serve 90
 And love hir best, although she do me
 sterve.

Explicit.

XXIII. A BALADE OF COMPLEYNT.

[This is added as being a good example of a Complaynt in Chaucer's style.]

COMPLEYNT ne coude, ne might myn herte
 never
 My peynes halve, ne what torment I have,
 Though that I sholde in your presence
 ben ever,
 My hertes lady, as wisly he me save
 That bountee made, and beutee list to
 grave 5
 In your persone, and bad hem bothe infere
 Ever t'awayte, and ay be wher ye were.
 As wisly he gye alle my joyes here
 As I am youres, and to yow sad and trewe,
 And ye, my lyf and cause of my good
 chere, 10

And deeth also, whan ye my peynes newe,
 My worldes joye, whom I wol serve and
 sewe,
 My heven hool, and al my suffisaunce,
 Whom for to serve is set al my plesaunce.
 Beseching yow in my most humble wyse
 T'accepte in worth this litel povre dyte, 16
 And for my trouthe my service nat de-
 spyse,
 Myn observaunce eek have nat in despyte,
 Ne yit to long to suffren in this plyte;
 I yow beseche, myn hertes lady, here, 20
 Sith I yow serve, and so wil yeer by
 yere.

XXIV. WOMANLY NOBLESSE.

[This genuine poem was first printed in June, 1894.]

Balade that Chaucier made.

No hath my herte caught in rémembraunce
 Your beaute hool, and stedfast govern-
 aunce, *del. control*
 Your vertues alle, and your hy noblesse,
 That you to serve is set al my plesaunce;
 So wel me lykth your womanly conten-
 aunce, 5
 Your fresshe fetures and your com-
 liness,
 That, whyl I live, my herte to his
 maistresse,
 You hath ful chose, in trow perséveraunce,
 Never to change, for no maner dis-
 tresse.
 And sith I [you] shal do this ob-
 servaunce 10
 Al my lyf, withouten displesaunce,
 You for to serve with al my besinesse,
 Taketh me, lady, in your obeisaunce]
 And have me somewhat in your souven-
 aunce.
 My woful herte suffreth greet duress; 15
 And [loke] how humbl[ely], with al
 simplesse,

My wil I cónforme to your ordenaunce,
 As you best list, my peynes † to redressa *And*

Considring eek how I hange in balaunce
 In your servycé; swich, lo! is my
 chaunce, 20
 Abyding grace, whan that your gentil-
 nesse
 Of my gret wo list doon allegeaunce,
 And with your pitè me som wyse avaunce,
 In ful rebating of my heviness;
 And think †resoun, that wommanly
 noblesse 25
 Shuld nat desyre †for to doon outrance
 Ther-asshe findeth noon unbuxumnesse.

S. Lenvoye
 Anoteur of norture, lady of plesaunce,
 Sovereaine of beaute, flour of womman-
 hede,
 Take ye non hede unto myn ignoraunce, 30
 But this receyveth of your goodlihede,
 Thinking that I have caught in re-
 membraunce
 Your beaute hool, your stedfast govern-
 aunce.

BOETHIUS DE CONSOLATIONE PHILOSOPHIE.

BOOK I.

METRE I. *Carmina qui quondam studio florente peregi.*

ALLAS ! I, weping, am constreined to
biginnen vers of sorowful matere, that
whylom in florisching studie made delit-
able ditees. For lo ! rendinge Muses of
5 poetes endyten to me thinges to be
writen ; and drery vers of wrecchednesse
weten my face with verray teres. At
the leeste, no drede ne mighte over-
comen tho Muses, that they ne weren
10 felawes, and folweden my wey, *that is*
to seyn, whan I was exyled ; they that
weren glorie of my youthe, whylom wele-
ful and grene, comforten now the sorow-
ful werdes of me, olde man. For elde
15 is comen unwarly upon me, hasted by
the harmes that I have, and sorow hath
comaunded his age to be in me. Heres
hore ben shad overtymeliche upon myn
heved, and the slake skin trembleth upon
20 myn emptied body. Thilke deeth of men
is weleful that ne cometh not in yeres
that ben swete, but cometh to wrecches,
often y-cleped. Allas ! allas ! with how
deef an ere deeth, cruel, torneth away
25 fro wrecches, and naiteth to closen
wepingo eyen ! Whyl Fortune, unfeith-
ful, favored me with lighte goodes, the
sorowful houre, *that is to seyn, the deeth*,
hadde almost dreynt myn heved. But
30 now, for Fortune cloudy hath chaunged

hir deceyvable chere to me-ward, myn
unpitous lyf draweth a-long unagreable
dwellinges in me. O ye, my frendes, what
or whertoavauntede ye me to ben weleful?
for he that hath fallen stood nat in
stedefast degree.

PROSE I. *Hec dum mecum tacitus ipse reputarem.*

Whyle that I stille recordede thise
thinges with my-self, and markede my
weeply compleynte with office of pointel,
I saw, stondinge aboven the heighte of
myn heved, a woman of ful greet re- 5
verence by semblaunt, hir eyen bren-
ninge and cleer-seinge over the comune
might of men ; with a lyfly colour, and
with swich vigour and strengthe that it
ne mighte nat ben emptied ; al were it
so that she was ful of so greet age, that
men ne wolde nat trowen, in no manere,
that she were of oure elde. The stature
of hir was of a doutous jugement ; for
som-tyme she constreinede and shronk 15
hir-selven lyk to the comune mesure of
men, and sum-tyme it semede that she
touchede the hevене with the heighte of
hir heved ; and whan she heef hir heved
hyer, she percede the selve hevене, so 20
that the sighte of men looking was in
ydel. Hir clothes weren makied of right
delye thredes and subtil crafte, of per-
durable matere ; the whiche clothes she

I hadde woven with hir owene hondes, as
 I knew wel after by hir-self, declaringe
 and shewing to me the beautee; the
 whiche clothes a derknesse of a forleten
 and dispysed elde hadde dusked and
 derked, as it is wont to derken bi-
 smokede images. In the nethereste
 hem or bordure of thise clothes men
 rdden, y-woven in, a Grekissh P, *that*
signifyeth the lyf Actif; and aboven that
 letre, in the heyeste bordure, a Grekissh
 T, *that signifyeth the lyf Contemplatif*.
 And bi-twixen these two lettres ther
 weren seyn degrees, nobly y-wroght in
 manere of laddres; by whiche degrees
 men mighten climben fro the nethereste
 letre to the uppereste. Natheles, handes
 of some men hadde corven that cloth
 by violence and by strengthe; and
 everiche man of hem hadde born away
 swiche peces as he mighte geten. And
 forsothe, this forseide woman bar smale
 bokes in hir right hand, and in hir left
 hand she bar a ceptre. And whan she
 my thise poetical Muses aprochen aboute
 my bed, and endytinge wordes to my
 wepinges, she was a litel amoved, and
 glowede with cruel eyen. 'Who,' quod
 she, 'hath suffred aprochen to this syke
 man thise comune strompetes of swich
 a place that men clepen the theatre?
 The whiche nat only ne asswagen nat
 his sorwes with none remedies, but they
 wolden feden and norisshen hem with
 swete venom. Forsothe, thise ben tho
 that with thornes and prikkinges of
 talents or affeccions, whiche that ne
 ben no-thing fructefyinge nor profitable,
 destroyen the corn plentevous of frutes
 of resoun; for they holden the hertes
 of men in usage, but they ne delivere
 nat folk fro maladye. But if ye Muses
 hadden withdrawn fro me, with your
 flateryes, any uncunninge and unprofit-
 able man, as men ben wont to finde
 comunly amonges the poeple, I wolde
 wene suffre the lasse grevously; for-why,
 in swiche an unprofitable man, myn
 ententes ne weren no-thing endamaged.
 But ye withdrawn from me this man,
 that hath be norisshed in the studies or

scoles of Eleaticis and of Achademicis in
 Grece. But goth now rather away, ye
 mermaidenes, whiche that ben swete til
 it be at the laste, and suffreth this man
 to be cured and heled by myne Muses,' 80
that is to seyn, by notable sciences. And
 thus this companye of Muses y-blamed
 casten wrothly the chere downward to
 the erthe; and, shewing by reednesse
 hir shame, they passeden sorowfully the 85
 threshfold. And I, of whom the sighte,
 plounged in teres, was derked so that
 I ne mighte not knowen what that
 womman was, of so imperial auctoritee,
 I wex al abaissed and astoned, and caste 90
 my sighte doun to the erthe, and bigan
 stille for to abyde what she wolde don
 afterward. Tho com she ner, and sette
 hir doun up-on the uttereste corner of
 my bed; and she, biholdinge my chere, 95
 that was cast to the erthe, hevy and
 grevous of wepinge, compleinede, with
 thise wordes that I shal seyn, the per-
 turbacioun of my thought.

METRE II. *Heu quam precipiti mersa*
profundo.

'Allas! how the thought of man, dreint
 in over-throwinge deepnesse, dulleth, and
 forleteth his propre cleernesse, mintinge
 to goon in-to foreine derknesses, as ofte
 as his anoyous businesse wexeth with- 5
 oute mesure, that is driven to and fro
 with worldly windes! This man, that
 whylom was free, to whom the hevene
 was open and knowen, and was wont
 to goon in haveneliche pathes, and saugh 10
 the lightnesse of the rede sonne, and
 saugh the sterres of the colde mone, and
 whiche sterre in hevene useth wandering
 recourses, y-flit by dyverse speres—this
 man, overcomer, hadde comprehended 15
 al this by noumbre of *accountinge in astro-*
nomye. And over this, he was wont to
 seken the causes whennes the souning
 windes moeven and bisien the smothe
 water of the see; and what spirit torneth 20
 the stable hevene; and why the sterre
 aryseth out of the rede cest, to fallen in
 the westrene wawes; and what atemproth

the lusty houres of the firste somer
 25 sesoun, that highteth and apparailleth
 the erthe with rosene flowres; and who
 maketh that plentevouse autompne, in
 fulle yeres, fleteth with hevy grapes.
 And eek this man was wont to telle the
 30 dyverse causes of nature that weren
 y-hidde. Allas! now lyeth he emptied of
 light of his thought; and his nekke is
 pressed with hevy cheynes; and bereth
 his chere enclyned adoun for the grete
 35 weighte, and is constrained to looken on
 the fool erthe!

PROSE II. *Set medicine, inquit, tempus est.*

But tyme is now,' quod she, 'of medicine more than of compleinte.' Forsothe than she, entendinge to me-ward with alle the lookinge of hir eyen, seide:—'Art
 5 nat thou he,' quod she, 'that whylom y-norissed with my milk, and fostered with myne metes, were escaped and comen to corage of a parfit man? Certes, I yaf thee swiche armures that, yif thou
 10 thy-self ne haddest first cast hem a-vey, they shulden han defended thee in sikernes that may nat ben over-comen. Knowest thou me nat? Why art thou stille? Is it for shame or for astoninge?
 15 It were me lever that it were for shame; but it semeth me that astoninge hath oppressed thee.' And whan she say me nat only stille, but with-uten office of tunge and al doumb, she leide hir hand
 20 softly upon my brest, and seide: 'Here nis no peril,' quod she; 'he is fallen into a litargie, whiche that is a comune sykenes to hertes that ben deceived. He hath a litel foryeten him-self, but certes
 25 he shal lightly remembren him-self, yif so be that he hath knowen me or now; and that he may so don, I wil wypen a litel his eyen, that ben derked by the cloude of mortal thinges.' Thise wordes
 30 seide she, and with the lappe of hir garment, y-plyted in a frounce, she dryede myn eyen, that weren fulle of the wawes of my wepinges.

METRE III. *Tunc me discussa liquerem nocte tenebra.*

Thus, whan that night was discusse and chased a-vey, derknesses forleft me, and to myn eyen repeirede ayein hi firste strengthe. And, right by ensaumple as the sonne is hid whan the sterres be clustred (*that is to seyn, whan sterres be covered with cloudes*) by a swifte wind that highte Chorus, and that the firmament stant derked by wete ploung cloudes, and that the sterres nat appere up-on hevene, so that the night semeth sprad up-on erthe: yif thanne the wind that highte Borias, y-sent out of the caves of the contree of Trace, beteth this night (*that is to seyn, chaseth it a-vey*), and discovereth the closed day: than shyneth Phebus y-shaken with sodein light, and smyteth with his bemes in merveling eyen.

PROSE III. *Haud aliter tristicie nebulis dissolutis.*

Right so, and non other wyse, the cloudes of sorwe dissolved and don a-vey. I took hevene, and receivede minde to knowen the face of my fysicien; so that I sette myn eyen on hir, and fastnede my lookinge. I beholde my norice Philosophie, in whos houses I hadde conversed and haunted fro my youthe; and I seide thus. 'O thou maistresse of alle vertues descended from the sovereign sete, why artow comen in-to this solitarie place o myn exil? Artow comen for thou art maked coupable with me of false blames?

Phil. 'O,' quod she, 'my norry, shold I forsaken thee now, and sholde I departen with thee, by comune travaile, the charge that thou hast suffred for envie of my name? Certes, it nere not leveful n sittinge thing to Philosophie, to lete with-uten companye the wey of him that is innocent. Sholde I thanne redoute my blame, and agrysen as though ther were bifallen a newe thing? *quasi diceret, non* For trowestow that Philosophie be no alderfirst assailed in perils by folk of wikkede maneres? Have I nat strive

with ful greet stryf, in olde tyme, bifore
 the age of my Plato, ayeines the foolhardi-
 nesse of folye? And eek, the same Plato
 livinge, his maister Socrates deservede
 victorie of unrightful deeth in my pre-
 sence. The heritage of which Socrates—
the heritage is to seyn the doctrine of the
whiche Socrates in his opinioun of Felicitee,
that I clepe wolefulness—whan that the
 peple of Epicuriens and Stoiciens and
 many othre enforceden hem to go ravisshen
 everich man for his part—that is to seyn,
that everich of hem wolden drawen to the
defiance of his opinioun the wordes of
Socrates—they, as in partie of hir preye,
 to-drowen me, cryingng and debatinge
 ther-ayeins, and corven and to-renten my
 clothes that I hadde woven with myn
 handes; and with tho cloutes that they
 hadden araced out of my clothes they
 wenten away, weninge that I hadde gon
 with hem everydel. In whiche *Epi-*
curiens and Stoiciens, for as moche as ther
 semede some traces or steppes of myn
 habite, the folye of men, weninge tho *Epi-*
curiens and Stoiciens my famuleres, per-
 verted (*sc. persequendo*) some through the
 error of the wikkede or uncunninge
 multitude of hem. *This is to seyn that,*
for they semede philosophres, they weren
permed to the deeth and slayn. So yif thou
 hast nat knowen the exilinge of Anaxo-
 gora, ne the enpoysoninge of Socrates, ne
 the tourments of Zeno, for they weren
 strangeres: yit mightestow han knowen
 the Seneciens and the Canios and the
 Thorasos, of whiche folk the renoun is
 neither over-olde ne unsolempne. The
 whiche men, no-thing elles ne broughte
 hem to the deeth but only for they weren
 enformed of myne maneres, and seme-
 den most unlyke to the studies of wik-
 kede folk. And forthy thou oughtest nat
 to wondren though that I, in the bittre
 see of this lyf, be fordriven with tem-
 pestes blowinge aboute, in the whiche
 tempestes this is my most purpos, *that is*
to seyn, to displeen to wikkede men. Of
 whiche shrewes, al be the ost never so
 greet, it is to dispyse; for it nis governed
 with no leder of resoun, but it is ravished

only by fletinge errour folylly and lightly.
 And if they som-tyme, makinge an ost
 ayeins us, assaile us as strenger, our leder
 draweth to-gidere hise riches in-to his
 tour, and they ben ententif aboute sar-
 pulers or sachels unprofitable for to taken.
 But we that ben heye aboven, siker fro
 alle tumulte and wode noise, warnestored
 and enclosed in swich a palis, whider as
 that chateringe or anoyinge folye ne may
 nat atayne, we scorne swiche raveres
 and henteres of fouleste thinges.

METRE IV. *Quisquis composito serenus euo.*

Who-so it be that is cleer of vertu, sad,
 and wel ordinat of livinge, that hath put
 under foot the proude werdes and looketh
 upright up-on either fortune, he may
 holde his chere undiscomfited. The rage
 ne the manaces of the see, commoevinge
 or chasinge upward hete fro the botme,
 ne shal not moeve that man; ne the
 unstable mountaigne that highte Vesevus,
 that wrytheth out through his brokene
 chiminees smokinge fyres. Ne the wey
 of thonder-leyt, that is wont to smyten
 heye toures, ne shal nat moeve that man.
 Wher-to thanne, o wrecches, drede ye
 tiranntes that ben wode and felonous
 with-oute any strengthe? Hope after
 no-thing, ne drede nat; and so shaltow
 desarmen the ire of thilke unmighty
 tiraunt. But who-so that, quakinge,
 dredeth or desireth thing that nis nat
 stable of his right, that man that so doth
 hath cast away his sheld and is remoeved
 fro his place, and enlaceth him in the
 cheyne with the which he may ben
 drawn.

PROSE IV. *Sentient, inquit, hec.*

Felastow,' quod she, 'thise thinges,
 and entren they aught in thy corage?
 Artow lyke an asse to the harpe? Why
 wepestow, why spillestow teres? Yif
 thou abydest after help of thy leche, thee
 bihoveth discovere thy wounde.' Tho
 I, that hadde gadered strengthe in my
 corage, answered and seide: 'And
 nedeth it yit,' quod I, 'of rehersingo or
 of amonicioun; and sheweth it nat

y-nough by him-self the sharpnesse of Fortune, that wexeth wood ayeins me? Ne meeveth it nat thee to seen the face or the manere of this place: prison? Is this the librarie whiche that thou haddest chosen for a right certein sote to thee in myn hous. ther-as thou desputedest ofte with me of the sciences of thinges touchinge livinitee and touchinge man- kinde? Was thanno myn habite swich as it is now? Was than my face or my chere swiche as now (*quasi diceret, non*, whan I soughte with thee secrets of nature, whan thou enformedest my maneres and the rescoun of alle my lyf to the ensaample of the ordre of hevene? Is nat this the guerdoun that I referre to thee, to whom I have be obeisant? Certes, thou confermedest, by the mouth of Plato, this sentence, *that is to seyn*, that comune thinges or comunaltiese weren blisful, yif they that hadden studied al fady to wisdom governelen thulke thinges, or elles yif it so befalle that the governours of comunaltiese studieden to geten wisdom. Thou sekest eek, by the mouth of the same Plato, that it was a necessarie cause, wyse men to taken and desire the governaunce of comune thinges, for that the governements of citees y-left in the handes of felonous tormentours citizenes, ne sholde nat bringe in pestilence and destruccoun to gode folk. And therfor I, folwinge thulke auctoritee *sc. Platonis*, desired to putten forth in execucoun and in acte of comune administracoun thulke thinges that I hadde lerned of thee among my secrete resting-whyles. Thou, and god that putte thee in the thoughtes of wyse folk, ben knowinge with me, that nothing ne broughte me to maistrie or dignitee, but the comune studie of alle goodnesse. And ther-of comth it that bi-twixen wikked folk and me han ben grevous discordes, that ne mighten ben releved by prayeres, for this libertee hath the freedom of conscience, that the wrutthe of mere mighty folk hath alwey ben despysed of me for savacioun of right. How ofte have I resisted and withstonde thulke man that highte Conigaste, that made

alwey assantes ayeins the prospre fortunes of pore feble folk? How ofte eek have I put of or cast out him, Trigwille, provost of the kinges hous, bothe of the wronges that he hadde begunne to don, and eek fully performed? How ofte have I covered and defended by the auctoritee of me, put ayeins perils *that is to seyn*, put myn auctoritee in peril for the wroched pore folk, that the covetyse of straungeres unpunished tormenteden alwey with miscyses and grevaunces out of nombre? Never man ne drew me yif fro right to wronge. Whan I say the fortunes and the richesces of the people of the provinces ben harmed or amended, outhur by pryves ravynes or by comune tributes or cariages, as sory was I as they that suffreden the harm. — *Glossa.* Whan that Theodoric, the king of Gothes, in a dere yere, hadde his gernerces ful of corn, and comandede that no man ne sholde byen no corn til his corn were sold, and that at a grevous dere prys, Doree withstode that ordinaunce, and over-com it, knowinge of this the king him-self. — *Textus.* Whan it was in the sore hungry tyme, ther was established or cryed grevous and inhytable coempcioun, that men saven wel it sholde greetly tarmenten and endamagen al the provinces of Campaigne, I took stryf ayeins the provost of the pretorie for comune profit. And, the king knowinge of it, I overcom it, so that the coempcioun ne was not axed ne took effect. — [*Glossa.*] † Coempcioun *that is to seyn*, comune achat er bying to-gidre, that were established up-on the people by swiche a manere impositioun, as who-so bought a bushel corn, he muste yeeve the king the fift part. — [*Textus.*] Paulin, a counsellor of Rome, the richesces of the whiche Paulin the boundes of the puiays, *that is to seyn*, the officeres, wolden han devoured by hope and covetise, yif drew I him out of the jowes *sc. faucibus* of hem that gapeden. And for as moche as the peyne of the accusacioun ajuged bifore us sholde nat sodenly henten ne punisshen wrongfully Albin, a counsellor of Rome, I putte me ayeins the hates and indig-

accusours of the accusor Ciprian. Is it nat
thane y-nough y-seyn, that I have pur-
chased grete discordes ayeins my-self?
But I oughte be the more assured ayeins
alle othre folk (*sc. Romayns*), that for the
love of rightwisesse I ne reserved never
nothing to my-self to hemward of the
kinges halle, *sc. officers*, by the whiche
I were the more siker. But thorough tho
same accusours accusinge, I am con-
demned. Of the noumbir of the whiche
accusours oon Basilius, that whylom was
chased out of the kinges service, is now
compelled in accusinge of my name, for
sede of foreine moneye. Also Opilion and
Gaudencius han accused me, al be it so
that the justice regal hadde whylom
damned hem bothe to go in-to exil for hir
trecheries and fraudes withoute noumbir.
To whiche jugement they nolden nat
cheye, but defendeden hem by the siker-
nesse of holy houses, *that is to seyn, fledden
into sanctuaries*; and whan this was aper-
ceived to the king, he comaundede, that
but they voidede the citee of Ravenne by
certein day assigned, that men sholde
merken hem on the forheved with an hoot
yren and chasen hem out of the toun.
Now what thing, semeth thee, mighte ben
lykned to this crueltee? For certes, thilke
same day was received the accusinge of
my name by thilke same accusours. What
may ben seid her-to? (*quasi diceret, nichil*).
Hath my studie and my cunnigne de-
served thus; or elles the forseide damp-
nacioun of me, made that hem rightful
accusours or no? (*quasi diceret, non*). Was
not Fortune ashamed of this? Certes, al
hadde nat Fortune ben ashamed that
innocence was accused, yit oughte she
han had shame of the filthe of myne
accusours.

But, axestow in somme, of what gilt
I am accused, men seyn that I wolde save
the companye of the senatours. And
desirest thou to heren in what manere?
I am accused that I sholde han des-
toured the accusor to beren lettres, by
whiche he sholde han makid the sena-
tours guilty ayeins the kinges real ma-
jeste. O maistresse, what demestow of

this? Shal I forsake this blame, that I ne
be no shame to thee? (*quasi diceret, non*). 165
Certes, I have wold it, *that is to seyn, the
savacioun of the senat*, ne I shal never
leten to wilne it, and that I confesse and
am aknowe; but the entente of the
accusor to be destourbed shal cese. For 170
shal I clepe it thanne a felonie or a sinne
that I have desired the savacioun of the
ordre of the senat? (*quasi diceret, dubito
quid*). And certes yit hadde thilke same
senat don by me, thorough hir decrets and 175
hir jugements, as though it were a sinne
or a felonie; *that is to seyn, to wilne the
savacioun of hem (sc. senatus)*. But folye,
that lyeth alwey to him-self, may not
chaunge the merite of thinges. Ne I trowe 180
nat, by the jugement of Socrates, that it
were lefel to me to hyde the sothe,
ne assente to lesinges. But certes, how
so ever it be of this, I putte it to gessen or
preisen to the jugement of thee and of 185
wyse folk. Of whiche thing al the ordi-
nauce and the sothe, for as moche as
folk that ben to comen after our dayes
shullen knowen it, I have put it in scrip-
ture and in remembraunce. For touching 190
the lettres falsly makid, by whiche lettres
I am accused to han hoped the fredom of
Rome, what aperteneth me to speke ther-
of? Of whiche lettres the fraude hadde
ben shewed apertly, yif I hadde had 195
libertee for to han used and been at the
confessioun of myne accusours, the
whiche thing in alle nedes hath greet
strengthe. For what other fredom may
men hopen? Certes, I wolde that som 200
other fredom mighte ben hoped. I wolde
thane han answered by the wordes
of a man that highte Canius; for whan
he was accused by Gaius Cesar, Ger-
meynes sone, that he (*Canius*) was know- 205
inge and consentinge of a conjuracioun
y-makid ayeins him (*sc. Gaius*), this
Canius answerede thus: "Yif I hadde
wist it, thou haddest nat wist it." In
which thing sorwe hath nat so dilled my 210
wit, that I pleyne only that shrewede folk
aparailen felonies ayeins vertu; but I
wondro greetly how that they may per-
forme thinges that they hadde hoped for to

215 don. For-why, to wilne shrewednesse,
that comth peraventure of oure defaute;
but it is lyk a monstre and a mervaille,
how that, in the present sighte of god,
may ben acheved and performed swiche
220 thinges as every felonous man hath con-
ceived in his thought ayeins innocents.
For which thing oon of thy famileres nat
unskilfully axed thus: "Yif god is,
whennes comen wikkede thinges? And
225 yif god ne is, whennes comen gode
thinges?" But al hadde it ben leueful
that felonous folk, that now desiren the
blood and the deeth of alle gode men and
eek of alle the senat, han wilned to gon
230 destroyen me, whom they han seyen
alwey batailen and defenden gode men
and eek al the senat, yit had I nat
desserved of the faderes, *that is to seyn, of*
the senatoures, that they sholden wilne my
235 destruccioun.

Thou remembrest wel, as I gesse, that
whan I wolde doon or seyen any thing,
thou thyself, alwey present, rewledest me.
At the city of Verone, whan that the
240 king, gredy of comune slaughter, caste
him to transporten up al the ordre of the
senat the gilt of his real majestee, of the
whiche gilt that Albin was accused, with
how gret sikernes of peril to me de-
245 fendede I al the senat! Thou wost wel
that I seye sooth, ne I ne avauntede me
never in preysinge of my-self. For alwey,
whan any wight receiveth precious renoun
in avauntinge him-self of his werkes, he
250 amenuseth the secree of his conscience.
But now thou mayst wel seen to what
ende I am comen for myne innocence;
I receive payne of fals felonye for guerdon
of verray vertu. And what open con-
255 fessioun of felonye hadde ever juges so
acordaunt in crueltee, *that is to seyn, as*
myn accusinge hath, that either errour of
mannes wit or elles condicioun of For-
tune, that is uncertein to alle mortal
260 folk, ne submittede some of hem, *that is*
to seyn, that it ne enclynede som juge to han
pitee or compassioun? For al-thogh I
hadde ben accused that I wolde brenne
holy houses, and strangle preestes with
265 wikkede swerde, or that I hadde greythed

deeth to al gode men, algates the sentence
sholde han punisshed me, present, con-
fessed, or convict. But now I am remewed
fro the citee of Rome almost fyve hundred
thousand pas, I am with-oute defence
dampned to proscriptioun and to the
deeth, for the studie and bountees that
I have doon to the senat. But O, wel ben
they worthy of merite (*as who seith, sey*),
ther mighte never yit non of hem be
convict of swiche a blame as myne is! Of
whiche trespas, myne accusours sayen ful
wel the dignitee; the whiche dignitee,
for they wolden derken it with medeling
of som felonye, they baren me on hand,
and lyeden, that I hadde polut and de-
fouled my conscience with sacrilege, for
coveitise of dignitee. And certes, thou thy-
self, that art plaunted in me, chacedest
out of the sege of my corage al coveitise of
mortal thinges; ne sacrilege hadde no
leve to han a place in me biforn thyne
eyen. For thou droppedest every day in
myne eres and in my thought thilke
comaundement of Pictagoras, *that is to*
seyn, men shal serve to godde, *and not to*
goddes. Ne it was nat convenient, *ne no*
nede, to taken help of the foulest spirites;
I, that thou hast ordeined and set in
swiche excellence that thou makedest me
lyk to god. And over this, the right clene
secree chaumbre of myne hous, *that is to*
seyn, my wyf, and the compaignie of myn
honest freendes, and my wyves fader, as
wel holy as worthy to ben revered
thorough his owne dedes, defenden me
from alle suspicioun of swich blame. But
O malice! For they that accusen me
taken of thee, *Philosophie*, feith of so gret
blame! For they trowen that I have had
affinitee to malefice or *enchauntement*,
by-cause that I am replenished and
fulfilled with thy techinges, and enformed
of thy maneres. And thus it suffiseth not
only, that thy reverence ne availe me not,
but-yif that thou, of thy free wille, rather
be blemished with myn offencioun. But
certes, to the harmes that I have, ther
bitydeth yit this encrees of harm, that
the gessinge and the jugement of moche
folk ne looken no-thing to the desertes of

things, but only to the aventure of fortune; and jagen that only swiche thinges ben purveyed of god, whiche that temporel welefulnesse commendeth.—

Gloss. *As thus: that, yif a wight have prosperitee, he is a good man and worthy to han that prosperitee; and who-so hath adversitee, he is a wikked man, and god hath forsake him, and he is worthy to han that adversitee. This is the opinioun of some folk.*—And ther-of comth that

god gessinge, first of alle thing, forsaketh wrecches: certes, it greveth me to thinke right now the dyverse sentences that the people seith of me. And thus moche I seye, that the laste charge of contrarious fortune is this: that, whan that any blame is leyd upon a caitif, men wenen that he hath deserved that he suffreth.

And I, that am put away fro gode men, and despoiled of dignitees, and defouled of my name by gessinge, have suffred torment for my gode dedes. Certes, me cometh that I see the felonous covines of wikked men habounden in joye and in gladnesse. And I see that every lorel shapeth him to finde out newe fraudes for to accuse gode folk. And I see that gode men beth overthrowen for drede of my peril; and every luxurious tourmentour dar doon alle felonye unpunished and ben excited therto by yiftes; and innocents be ben not only despoiled of siker-
ness but of defence; and therefore me list to cryen to god in this wyse:—

METRE V. *O stelliferi conditor orbis.*

O thou maker of the whele that bereth the sterres, which that art y-fastned to thy perdurable chayer, and tornest the hevене with a ravissching sweigh, and constrainest the sterres to suffren thy lawe: so that the mone som-tyme shyning with hir ful hornes, meting with alle the beames of the sonne hir brother, hydeth the sterres that ben lesse; and somtyme, whan the mone, pale with hir derke hornes, approacheth the sonne, leseth hir lightes; and that the eve-sterre Hesperus, whiche that in the firste tyme of the night

bringeth forth hir colde arysinges, cometh eft ayein hir used cours, and is pale by
the morice at the rysing of the sonne, and is thanne cleped Lucifer. Thou restreineest the day by shorter dwelling, in the tyme of colde winter that maketh the leves to falle. Thou dividest the swifte tydes of
the night, whan the hote somer is comen. Thy might atempreth the variannts sesons of the yere; so that Zephirus the deboneir wind bringeth ayein, in the first
somer season, the leves that the wind that
highte Boreas hath reft away in autumpne,
that is to seyn, in the laste ende of somer; and the sedes that the sterre that highte Arcturus saw, ben waxen heye cornes
whan the sterre Sirius eschaufeth hem. Ther nis no-thing unbounde from his olde
lawe, ne forleteth the werke of his propre estat. O thou governour, governinge
alle thinges by certein ende, why refusestow only to governe the werkes of
men by dewe manere? Why suffrest thou that slydinge fortune torneth so
grete entrechaunginges of thinges, so that anoyous payne, that sholde dewely
punisse felouns, punissheth innocents? And folk of wikkede maneres sitten in
heye chayres, and anoyinge folk treden, and that unrightfully, on the nekkes of
holy men? And vertu, cler-shyninge naturally, is hid in derke derkenesses, and
the rightful man bereth the blame and the payne of the feloun. No forsweringe
ne the fraude, covered and kembd with a fals colour, ne anoyeth nat to shrewes;
the whiche shrewes, whan hem list to
usen hir strengthe, they rejoyssen hem to putten under hem the sovereyne kinges,
whiche that poeple with-oute nonombre dreden. O thou, what so ever thou
be that knittest alle bondes of thinges,
loke on this wrecchede erthes; we men that ben nat a foule party, but a fayr
party of so grete a werk, we ben tormented in this see of fortune. Thou governour,
withdraw and restreyn the ravissching
flodes, and fastne and ferme thise erthes stable with thilke bonde, with whiche
thou governest the hevене that is so large.

PROSE V. *Hic ubi continuato dolore
delectatur.*

Whan I hadde, with a continual sorwe,
sobbed or borken out thise thinges, she
with hir chere pasible, and no-thing
amoeved with my complaintes, seide thus
5 'Whan I say thee,' quod she, 'sorweful
and wepinge, I wiste anon that thou were
a wrecche and exiled, but I wiste never
how for thyne exile was, yif thy tale ne
hadde shewed it to me. But certes, al be
10 thou for fro thy contree, thou nat nat
put out of it; but thou hast failed of thy
weye and gon astray. And yif thou hast
lever for to wene that thou be put out of
thy contree, than hast thou put out thy-
15 self rather than any other wight hath. For
no wight but thy-self ne mighte never
han don that to thee. For yit thou re-
membere of what contree thou art born, it
nis nat governed by emperours, ne by
20 governement of multitude, as weren the
contrees of hem of Athens, but oo lord
and oo king, and that is god, that is lord of
thy contree, whiche that rejoyseth him
of the dwelling of hise citezenes, and nat
25 for to putte hem in exile, of the whiche
lorde it is a severayne freedom to be
governed by the brydel of him and obeye
to his justice. Hastow forgeten thulke
right olde lawe of thy citee, in the whiche
30 citee it is ordeined and established, that
for what wight that hath lever founnen
ther-in his sete or his hous than elles-
wher, he may nat be exiled by no right
from that place? For who-so that is
35 contened in-with the paleis and the ches of
thulke citee, ther nis no drede that he
may deserve to ben exiled. But who-so
that leteth the wil for to inhabite there,
he forleteth also to deserve to ben citezen
40 of thulke citee. So that I sey, that the
face of this place ne moveth me nat so
moche as thyne owne face. Ne I axe nat
rather the walles of thy librarie, apar-
ayled and wrought with yvery and with
45 glas, than after the sete of thy thought.
In whiche I putte nat whylom bokes, but
I putte that that maketh bokes worthy of
prys or precious, that is to seyn, the

sentence of my bokes. And certainly of
thy desertes, bestowed in comune good,
thou hast seid sooth, but after the multi-
tude of thy gode dooes, thou hast seid
fewe, and of the honestee or of the fals-
nesse of thinges that ben aposed ayens
thee, thou hast remembred thinges that
ben knowen to alle folk. And of the
felonyes and fraudes of thyne accusours,
it semeth thee have y-touched it forsothe
rightfully and shortly, al mighten the
same thinges batere and more plenti-
vously ben couth in the mouthe of the
people that knoweth al this. Thou hast
eek blamed gretly and compleined of the
wrongful dede of the senat. And thee
hast sorwed for my blame, and thou hast
wopen for the damage of thy renoun that
is apayred and thy laste sorwe eschaufed
ayens fortune, and compleinest that
guerdounis ne ben nat evenliche yolden to
the desertes of folk. And in the laste
ende of thy wode Muse, thou preycest
that thulke poes that governeth the hevene
sholde governe the erthe. But for that
many tribulaciounis of affectiounis han
assailed thee, and sorwe and ire and
wepinge to-drawen thee dyversely; as
thou art now feble of thought, mightiest
remedies ne shullen nat yit touchen thee,
for whiche we wol usen sounder lighter
medicines so that thulke passions that
ben woxen harde in swellinge, by pertur-
baciounis flowing in-to thy thought,
mowen wexen esy and softe, to recover
the strengthe of a more mighty and more
egre medicine, by an esier touchinge.

METRE VI.

*Cum Phebi radius graue
Cancri sidus inestuat.*

Whan that the hevy starre of the
Cancre eschaufeth by the beames of Phe-
bus, that is to seyn, whan that Phebus the
sonne is in the signe of the Cancre, who-so
yeveth thanne largely hise seides to the
feldes that refusen to receiven hem, let
him gon, bigyled of trust that he hadde
to his corn, to acorns of okes. Yif thou
wolt gadre violettes, ne go thou not to

the purper wode whan the feld, chirk-
inga, agryseth of colde by the falnesse of
the winde that highte Aquilon. Yif thou
dearest or wolt usen grapes, ne seke thou
nat, with a glotonous hond, to streyne
and presse the stalke of the vine in the
first somer season; for Bacchus, the god
of wyne, hath rather yeven hise yiftes to
sumpnes, the later ende of somer. God
knoweth and assigneth the tymes, ablinge
hem to hir propres offices; ne he ne
suffreth nat the stoundes whiche that
him-self hath devyded and constreyned
to ben y-medled to-gidere. And forthy
is that forleteth certein ordinaunce of
things by over-throwinge wey, he ne hath
no glade issue or ende of his werkes.

PROSE VI. *Primum igitur poteram me
pauculis rogacionibus.*

First woltow suffre me to touche and
move the estat of thy thought by a fewe
demandes, so that I may understonde
what be the manere of thy curacioun?

Ans. 'Aye me,' quod I, 'at thy wille,
what thou wolt, and I shal answer.'

She seide she thus: 'Whether we-
know,' quod she, 'that this world be
governed by foolish happes and for-
tunes, or elles that there be in it any
governement of reson?' 'Certes,'
quod I, 'I ne trowe nat in no manere,
that so certein thinges sholde be mooved
by fortounous fortune, but I wot wel that
god, maker and mayster, is governour of
his werk. Ne never nas yit day that
might putte me out of the sothnesse of
that sentence.'

So is it,' quod she; 'for the same
thing souge thou a litel her-bifore, and
bewyledest and biweptest, that only men
were put out of the cure of god. For of
alle other thinges thou ne doutdest nat
that they were governed by reson. But
why! (i. pope) I wondre gretly, certes,
why that thou art syk, sin that thou art
yet in so holson a sentence. But lat us
seken depper; I conjecte that ther lak-
eth I not nere what. But sey me this:
that thou ne doutest nat that this

world be governed by god, with whiche
governailles takestow hede that it is
governed?' 'Unneth,' quod I, 'knowe
I the sentence of thy question; so that
I no may nat yit answeren to thy de- 35
maundes.'

'I nas nat deceived,' quod she, 'that
ther be faileth somewhat, by whiche the
maladye of thy perturbacioun is crept
in-to thy thought, so as the strengthe of 40
the palis chynynge is open. But sey me
this: remembreth thou what is the ende
of thinges, and whider that the enten-
cioun of alle kinde tendeth?' 'I have
herd it told som-tyme,' quod I; 'but 45
drerinesse hath dalled my memoria.'

'Certes,' quod she, 'thou wost wel
whennes that alle thinges ben comen and
procedeth?' 'I wot wel,' quod I, and
answerede, that 'god is beginning of al.' 50

'And how may this be,' quod she, 'that,
sin thou knowest the beginning of
thinges, that thou ne knowest nat what
is the ende of thinges? But swiche ben
the customes of perturbaciouns, and this 55
power they han, that they may moove
a man out of his place, that is to seyn, fro
the stablesnes and perfeccioun of his know-
inge, but, certes, they may nat al arnee
him, ne alieno him in al. But I wolde 60
that thou woldest answer to this:
remembrethow that thou art a man?'
'Why sholde I nat remembre that?'
quod I.

'Maystow nat telle me thanne,' quod 65
she, 'what thing is a man?' 'Axestow
me nat,' quod I, 'whether that I be
a resonable mortal beest? I woot wel, and
I confesse wel that I am it.'

'Wistestow never yit that thou were 70
any other thing?' quod she. 'No,'
quod I.

'Now woot I,' quod she, 'other cause of
thy maladye, and that right grete. Thou
hast left for to knowen thy-self, what 75
thou art; thorough whiche I have pleyntly
founded the cause of thy maladye, or elles
the entree of recoveringe of thyn hede.
For-why, for thou art confounded with
foryeting of thy-self, for-why sorwestow 80
that thou art exiled of thy propre goodes.

And for thou ne wost what is the ende of
 tanges, for-thy demestow that felonous
 and wikked men ben myghty and weleful.
 85 And for thou hast foryeten by whiche
 governements the world is governed, for-
 thy wemestow that these mutaciouns of
 fortune fleten with-oute governour. These
 ben grete causes not only to maladye,
 90 but, certes, grete causes to deeth. But
 I thanke the auctor and the maker of
 helle, that nature hath not al foryeten
 thee. I have grete misshanges of thyn
 helle and that is, the sothe sentence of
 95 governaunce of the worlde, that thou
 bilevest that the governinge of it nis nat
 subject ne underput to the falshe of these
 happes aventurons, but to the resoun of
 god. And ther-for doute thee no-thing,
 100 for of this litel spark thyn hate of lyl
 shal shyne. But for as moche as it is
 nat tyme yit of faster remedies and the
 nature of thoughtes deceived is this,
 that as ofte as they casten away sothe
 105 opiniouns, they clothen hem in false
 opiniouns, of which false opiniouns the
 darkenesse of perturbacioun waxeth up,
 that confoundeth the verray insighte,
 and that darkenesse shal I assaye som-
 110 what to maken thinne and wayk by
 lighte and meneliche remedies, so that,

after that the darkenesse of deceyvynge
 desiringes is don away, thou mowe knowe
 the shyninge of verray light.

METRE VII. *Nubibus atris*

The sterres, covered with blacke cloudes,
 ne mowen yeten a-doun no light. Yif the
 trouble wind that hight Auster turning
 and walwing the see, medleth the lute,
 that is to seyn, the boyling up from the
 botme, the wawes, that whylom weren
 clere as glas and lyke to the faire clere
 dayes, withstande an in the sightes of men
 by the fliche and ordure that is resoled.
 And the fletinge stream, that roweth
 down diversly fro heye mountaignes, is
 arrested and resisted ofte tyme by the
 encountringe of a stoon that is departed
 and fallen from som roche. And fur-
 thy, yif thou wilt loken and demen
 sooth with clere light, and holden the
 way with a right path, weye thou jora,
 dryf fro thee urede, flemme thou hope, ne
 lat no sorwe aproche, that is to seyn, let
 non of thine four passions over-come thee
 or blende thee. For cloudy and clerke is
 thulke thought, and bounde with byrdes,
 where-as these thinges regnen.'

Explicit Liber Primus.

BOOK II.

PROSA I. *Postea paulisper conticuit.*

After this she stinte a litel, and, after
 that she hadde gadored by atempre stille-
 nesse myn attencioun, she seide thus:
 As who mighte seyn thus. After this
 5 thinges she stinte a litel, and when she
 apperceived by atempre stillnesse that I was
 intentif to herkene hir, she began to speke in
 this wyse. 'Yif I, quod she, have under-
 stonden and knowen outrely the causes
 10 and the habit of thy maladye, thou
 languishest and art deteted for desyr and
 talent of thy rather fortune. She, that

like Fortune only, that is chaunged, as
 thou seynest, to thee-ward, hath perverted
 the clornesse and the estat of thy courage.
 I understonde the fele-folde colours and
 decores of thulke mercedous trouthe
 Fortune, and how she useth fild flateringe
 familiaritee with hem that she enjoureth
 to bigye, so longe, til that she confounde
 with unsufferable sorwe hem that she
 hath left in despayr unpurveyed. And yif
 thou remembrest wel the kinde of
 maneres, and the desert of thulke Fortune,
 thou shalt wel knowe that as in o 2,
 thou never ne haddest ne hast y-lost any
 fair thing. But, as I trowe, I shal not

gretly travailen to do thee remembren on these thinges. For thou were wont to hurtelen and despysen hir, with manly wordes, whan she was blaundissinge and present, and pursewedest hir with sentences that were drawn out of myn entree, *that is to seyn, out of myn information.* But no sodein mutacioun ne litydeth nat with-oute a manere chaunginge of corages; and so is it befallen that thou art a litel departed fro the pees of thy thought.

But now is tyme that thou drinke and taste some softe and delitable thinges; so that, whan they ben entred with-in thee, it mowe maken way to strengere drinke of medicynes. Com now forth therefore the suasioun of swetenesse retherien, whiche that goth only the right way, whyl she forsaketh nat myne estatute. And with Rhetorice com forth Marice, a damisel of our hous, that singeth nowlighter moedes *or prolaciouns*, now bevyer. What eyleth thee, man? What is it that hath cast thee in-to morninge and in-to wepinge? I trowe that thou hast seyn som newe thing and uncout. Thou wenest that Fortune be chaunged ayein thee; but thou wenest wrong, yif thou that wene. Alwey thou ben hir maneres; she hath rather kept, as to thee-ward, hir propre stablenesse in to the chaunginge of hir-self. Right swich was she whan she flattered thee, and deceived thee with unleveful lykinges of fals welefulnesse. Thou hast now known and staynt the doutous or double visage of thilke blinde goddesse Fortune. She, that yit covereth hir and wimpleth hir to other folk, hath shewed hir everydel to thee. Yif thou aprovest hir and thankest that she is good, use hir maneres and pleyne thee nat. And yif thou agryest hir false trecherye, despyse and cast away hir that pleyeth so harmfully; for she, that is now cause of so muche sorwe to thee, sholde ben cause to thee of pees and of joye. She hath forsaken thee, forsothe; the whiche that never man may ben siker that she ne shal forsake him.—Glose. But natheles, some bokes

han the text thus: For sothe, she hath forsaken thee, ne ther nis no man siker that she ne hath nat forsaken.—

Holdestow than thilke welefulnesse precious to thee that shal passen? And is present Fortune dereworthe to thee, which that nis nat feithful for to dwelle; and, whan she goth away, that she bringeth a wight in sorwe? For sin she may nat ben with-holden at a mannes wille, she maketh him a wrecche whan she departeth fro him. What other thing is fittinge Fortune but a maner shewing of wrecchednesse that is to comen? No it ne suffyseth nat only to loken on thinge that is present biforn the eyen of a man. But wisdom loketh and amasureth the ende of thinges; and the same chaunginge from oon in-to an-other, *that is to seyn, from adversitee in-to prosperitee*, maketh that the manaces of Fortune ne ben nat for to dreden, ne the flateringes of hir to ben desired. Thus, at the laste, it bihoveth thee to suffren with even wille in pacience al that is don in-with the floor of Fortune, *that is to seyn, in this world*, sin thou hast ones put thy nekke under the yok of hir. For yif thou wolt wryten a lawe of wendinge and of dwellinge to Fortune, whiche that thou hast chosen frely to ben thy lady, artow nat wrongful in that, and makest Fortune wroth and aspere by thyn inpatience, and yit thou mayst nat chaunge hir? Yif thou committest and bitakest thy sailes to the winde, thou shalt be shoven, not thider that thou woldest, but whider that the wind shoveth thee. Yif thou castest thy sedes in-to the felde, thou sholdest han in minde that the yeres ben, amonges, other-whyle plentevous and other-whyle bareyne. Thou hast bitaken thy-self to the governaunce of Fortune, and for-thy it bihoveth thee to ben obeisaunt to the maneres of thy lady. Enforcest thou thee to aresten or with-holden the swiftnesse and the sweigh of hir turninge whole? O thou fool of alle mortal fooles, if Fortune bigan to dwelle stable, she cesede thanne to ben Fortune!

METRE I. *Hec cum superba uerterit uices
dextra.*

Whan Fortune with a proud right hand hath torned hir chaunginge stoundes, she fareth lyk the maneres of the boilinge Eurype.—Glosa. *Eurype*
5 *is an arm of the see that ebbeth and floweth; and som-tyme the stream is on o syde, and som-tyme on the other.*—
Text. She, cruel Fortune, casteth adoun kinges that whylom weren y-drad; and
10 she, deceivable, enhaunseth up the humble chere of him that is discomfited. Ne she neither hereth ne rekketh of wrecchede wepinges; and she is so hard that she laugheth and scorneth the wep-
15 inges of hem, the whiche she hath maked wepe with hir free wille. Thus she pleyeth, and thus she proeveth hir strongthes; and sheweth a greet wonder to alle hir servauntes, yif that a wight
20 is seyn weleful, and overthrowe in an houre.

PROSE II. *Vellem autem pauca tecum.*

Certes, I wolde platen with thee a fewe thinges, usinge the wordes of Fortune; tak hede now thy-self, yif that she axeth right. “O thou man, wherfore makest
5 thou megilty by thyne every-dayes pleyn-inges? What wrong have I don thee? What goodes have I bireft thee that weren thyne? Stryf or plete with me, bifore what juge that thou wolt, of the
10 possessioun of riches or of dignitees. And yif thou mayst shewen me that ever any mortal man hath received any of the thinges to ben hise in propre, than wol I graunte frely that alle thilke thinges
15 weren thyne whiche that thou axest. Whan that nature broughte thee forth out of thy moder wombe, I receyved thee naked and nedy of alle thinges, and I norisshe thee with my riches,
20 and was redy and ententif through my favour to susteyne thee; and that maketh thee now impacient ayeins me; and I enviroude thee with alle the aboun-

dance and shyninge of alle goodes that ben in my right. Now it lyketh me to with-drawn my hand; thou hast had grace as he that hath used of foreine goodes; thou hast no right to pleyne thee, as though thou haddest outrelly forlorn alle thy thinges. Why pleyneest thou thanne? I have done thee no wrong. Richesses, honours, and swiche other thinges ben of my right. My servauntes knowen me for hir lady; they come with me, and departen whan I wende. I dar wel affermen hardily, that yif the thinges, of which thou pleyneest that thou hast forlorn, hadde ben thyne, thou haddest not lorn hem. Shal I thanne only ben defended to usen my right? Certes, it is lefeul to the hevene to make clere dayes, and, after that, to coveren the same dayes with derke nightes. The yeer hath eek leve to apparailen the visage of the erthe, now with floures and now with fruit, and to confounden hem som-tyme with reynes and with coldes. The see hath eek his right to ben som-tyme calme and blaundishing with smothe water, and som-tyme to ben horrible with wawes and with tempestes. But the covetise of men, that may nat ben stanchid, shal it binde me to ben stedefast, sin that stedefastnesse is uncouth to my maneres? Swich is my strengthe, and this pley I pleye continually. I torne the whirlinge wheel with the torning cercle; I am glad to chaungen the lowest to the heyest, and the heyest to the lowest. Worth up, if thou wolt, so it be by this lawe, that thou ne holde nat that I do thee wronge thogh thou descende adoun, whan the resoun of my pley axeth it. Wistest thou nat how Cresus, the king of Lydiens, of whiche king Cyrus was ful sore agast a litel biforn, that this rewliche Cresus was caught of Cyrus and lad to the fyr to ben brent, but that a rayn descended doun fro hevene that rescowede him? And is it out of thy minde how that Paulus, consul of Rome, whan he hadde taken the king of Perciens, weep pitously for the captivitee of the self kinge?

What other thing biwailen the cryinges of tragedies but only the dedes of Fortune, that with an unwar stroke overtorneth realmes of grete nobley?—Glose. *Tragedie is to seyn, a ditee of a prosperitee for a tyme, that endeth in wrecchednesse.*—

Lernedest nat thou in *Greke*, whan thou were yonge, that in the entree, or in the celere, of Jupiter, ther ben couched two tonnes; that on is ful of good, that other is ful of harm? What right hast thou to pleyne, yif thou hast taken more plenteously of the gode syde, *that is to seyn, of my riches and prosperitee*; and what eek if I ne be nat al departed fro thee?

What eek yif my mutabilitee yiveth thee rightful cause of hope to han yit beter thinges? Natheles dismaye thee nat in thy thought; and thou that art put in the comune realme of alle, ne desyre nat to liven by thyn only propre right.

METRE II. *Si quantas rapidis flatibus incitus.*

Though Plentee, *that is goddess of riches*, hielde adoun with ful horn, and withdraweth nat hir hand, as many riches as the see torneth upward sandes whan it is moeved with ravissheinge blastes, or elles as many riches as ther shynen brighte sterres on hevene on the sterry nightes; yit, for al that, mankinde nolde not cese to wepe wrecchede pleyntes. And al be it so that god receyveth gladly hir preyers, and yiveth them (as fool-large) moche gold, and aparailleth coveitous men with noble or clere honours: yit semeth hem haven y-geten no-thing, but alwey hir cruel ravyne, devouringe al that they han gotten, sheweth other gapinges; *that is to seyn, gopen and desyren yit after mo riches.* What brydles mighten withholden, to any certein ende, the desordenee covetise of men, whan, ever the rather that it fleteth in large yiftes, the more ay brenneth in hem the thirst of haveinge? Certes he that, quakinge and dredful, weneth him-selven nedy, he ne liveth never-more riche."

PROSE III. *Hic igitur si pro se tecum Fortuna loqueretur.*

Therfor, yif that Fortune spake with thee for hir-self in this manere, for-sothe thou ne haddest nat what thou mightest answer. And, if thou hast any-thing wherwith thou mayest rightfully defenden thy compleint, it behoveth thee to shewen it; and I wol yeven thee space to tellen it.' Boece. 'Certeynly,' quod I thanne, 'thise beth faire thinges, and enointed with hony swetenesse of rethorike and musike; and only whyl they ben herd they ben delicious. But to wrecches is a depper felling of harm; *this is to seyn, that wrecches felen the harmes that they suffren more grevously than the remedies or the delites of thise wordes mowen gladen or comforten hem*; so that, whan thise thinges stinten for to soune in eres, the sorwe that is inset greveth the thought.'

Phil. 'Right so is it,' quod she. 'For thise ne ben yit none remedies of thy maladye; but they ben a maner norissheinges of thy sorwe, yit rebel ayein thy curacioun. For whan that tyme is, I shal moeve swiche thinges that percen hem-self depe. But natheles, that thou shalt not wilne to leten thy-self a wrecche, hast thou foryeten the nnumber and the manere of thy wefulness? I holde me stille, how that the soverayne men of the citee token thee in cure and kepinge, whan thou were orphelin of fader and moder, and were chosen in affinitee of princes of the citee; and thou bigunne rather to be leef and dere than forto ben a neighbour; the whiche thing is the most precious kinde of any propinquitee or alyaunce that may ben. Who is it that ne seide tho that thou were right weleful, with so grete a nobleye of thy fadres-in-lawe, and with the chastitee of thy wyf, and with the oportunitie and noblesse of thy masculin children, *that is to seyn, thy sones*? And over al this—me list to passen the comune thinges—how thou haddest in thy youthe dignitees that

weren werned to olde men But it de-
 lyteth me to comen now to the singular
 50 uphepinge of thy welefulnesse. Yif any
 frut of mortal thinges may han any
 weighte or prys of welefulnesse, mightest
 thou ever foryeten, for any charge of
 harm that mighte bisalle, the remem-
 55 braunce of thilke day that thou saye thy
 two sones makel conseilores, and y-hul
 to-gedere fro thy house under so greet
 assemblee of senatoures and under the
 blythenesse of poeple, and when thou
 60 saye hem set in the court in here chayeres
 of dignitees? Then, rethorien or pro-
 nouncere of kinges preysinges deservedest
 glorie of wit and of eloquence, when
 thou, sittinge bitwene thy two sones, con-
 65 seilores, in the place that highte Circo,
 fulfuldest the abydinge of the mul-
 titude of poeple that was sprad abouten
 thee, with so large preysinge and laude,
 as men singen in victories. Tho yave
 70 thou wordes to Fortune, as I trowe,
 that is to seyn, *thou seffedest thou Fortune*
with gluminge wordes and deceivedest hir,
 when she acenyde thee and norishede
 thee as hir owne delyces. Thou bere
 75 away of Fortune a yifte, that is to seyn,
suche querdoun, that she never yaf to
 priven man Wilt thou therfor leve
 a rekeninge with Fortune? She hath
 now twinkled first upon thee with a wik-
 80 kede eye. Yif thou considere the noum-
 bre and the manere of thy blisses and of
 thy sorwes, thou mayst nat forsaken that
 thou art yit blisful. For if thou therfor
 wenest thy-self nat weleful, for thinges
 85 that the semeden joyful ben passed, ther
 ma nat why thou sholdest wene thy-self
 a wrecche, for thinges that semen now
 sorye passen also. Art thou now comen
 first, a sodein gest, into the shadwe or
 90 tabernacle of this lyf or trowest thou
 that any stedefastnesse be in mannes
 thinges, when ofte a swift houre dis-
 solveth the same man, that is to seyn,
when the soule departeth fro the body?
 95 For, al-though, that selde is ther any feith
 that fortunous thinges wolen dwellen, yit
 natheles the laste day of a mannes lyf is
 a manere death to Fortune, and also to

thilke that hath dwelt And therfor,
 what, wenestow, thar [thou] roche, yif
 thou forlete hir in deyinge, or elles that
 she, Fortune, forlete thee in flecinge
 away?

METRE III. *Cum polo Phobus*
rosas quadrigis.

When Phobus, the sonne, biginnet to
 spreden his cleernesse with rosene char-
 ettes, thanne the sterre y-dimmed puth
 hir whyte cheres, by the flambes of the
 sonne that overcometh the sterre-light.
 This is to seyn, when the sonne is risen,
 the dry-sterre weareth pale, and loseth hir
 light for the grete brightness of the sonne.
 When the wode waxeth rody of rosene
 floures, in the first somer seson thorough
 the brathe of the winde Zephus that
 waxeth warm yif the cloudy wind Anser
 blowe felliche, than goth away the faire-
 nesse of thornes. Ofte the see is cleer
 and calm withoute moovinge flocles and
 ofte the horrible wind Aquilon moeveth
 boilinge tempestes and over-wholeveth the
 see. Yif the forme of this worlde is so
 selde stable, and yif it turneth by so
 many entrechaunginges, wolt thou thanne
 trusten in the temblinge fortunes of
 men? Wolt thou trowen on flittinge
 goodes? It is certein and established
 by lawe perdurable, that no-thing that is
 engendred nis stedefast no stable.

PROSE IV. *Tunc ego, uero,*
inquam, commemoras.

Thanne seide I thus. 'O notice of alle
 vertues, thou soust ful sooth, no I ne may
 nat forsake the right swifte cours of my
 prosperitee, that is to seyn, that prosperitee
 ne be comen to me wonder secretly and soon.
 But this is a thing that greetly smerteth
 me when it remembreth me. For in alle
 adversitee of fortune, the most unsely
 kinde of contrarious fortune is to ha-
 ben weleful.'

Phil. 'But that thou,' quod she, 'a'yest
 thus the torment of thy false opinions,
 that mayst thou nat righttully blame
 ne arotten to thinges: as who seith, for

yit many habundaunces of thinges.

For al be it so that the ydel venturous welefulnesse moeveth it is leveful that thou rekne of how manye grete thinges yit plentee. And therfor, yif e thing that thou haddest for sious in al thy richesse of forget to thee yit, by the grace of emmed and undefouled, mayst ne pleyne rightfully upon the f Fortune, sin thou hast yit thy ges? Certes, yit liveth in good ke precious honour of man-macus, thy wyves fader, which an maket alle of sapience and the whiche man thou woldest ly with the prys of thyn owne wayleth the wronges that men e, and nat for him-self; for he ikernesse of any sentences put m. And yit liveth thy wyf, mpre of wit, and passinge other n clennessse of chastetee; and losen shortely hir bountees, she ir fader. I telle thee wel, that looth of this lyf, and kepeth to hir goost; and is al maat and a by wepinge and sorwe for thee, in the whiche thing only anten that thy welefulnesse is . What shal I seyn eek of thy conseilours, of whiche, as of of hir age, ther shyneth the of the wit of hir fader or of hir er? And sin the sovereyn cure rtel folk is to saven hir owen ow weleful art thou, yif thou y goodes! For yit ben ther welled to thee-ward, that no teth that they ne ben more e to thee than thyn owen lyf. by drye thy teres, for yit nis ch fortune al hateful to thee- over greet tempest hath nat yit n thee, whan that thyn ances te, that neither wolen suffren ort of this tyme present ne the yme cominge to passen ne to

Boece. 'And I preye,' quod I, ste moten they halden; for

whyles that they halden, how-so-ever that thinges ben, I shal wel fleten forth and escapen; but thou mayst wel seen how grete aparayles and aray that me lak-keth, that ben passed away fro me.' 70

Phil. 'I have som-what avaunsed and forthered thee,' quod she, 'yif that thou anoye nat or forthinke nat of al thy fortune: *as who seith, I have som-what comforted thee, so that thou tempest thee* 75 *nat thus with al thy fortune, sin thou hast yit thy beste thinges.* But I may nat suffren thy delices, that pleynest so wepinge and anguissous, for that ther lakketh som-what to thy welefulnesse. For what man 80 is so sad or of so parfit welefulnesse, that he ne stryveth and pleyne on som halve ayen the qualitee of his estat? For-why ful anguissous thing is the condicioun of mannes goodes; for either it cometh nat 85 al-togider to a wight, or elles it last nat perpetuel. For sum man hath grete riches, but he is ashamed of his ungentel linage; and som is renowned of noblesse of kinrede, but he is enclosed in 90 so grete anguisshe of nede of thinges, that him were lever that he were unknowe. And som man haboundeth both in riches and noblesse, but yit he bewaileth his chaste lyf, for he ne hath no wyf. 95 And som man is wel and selily y-maried, but he hath no children, and norissheth his riches to the eyres of strange folkes. And som man is gladed with children, but he wepeth ful sory for the 100 trespas of his sone or of his doughter. And for this ther ne acordeth no wight lightly to the condicioun of his fortune; for alwey to every man ther is in som-what that, unassayed, he ne wot nat; or 105 elles he dredeth that he hath assayed. And adde this also, that every weleful man hath a ful delicat felinge; so that, but-yif alle thinges bifalle at his owne wil, for he is impacient, or is nat used to 110 han non adversitee, anon he is throwen adoun for every litel thing. And ful litel thinges ben tho that withdrawen the somme or the perfeccioun of blisfulnesse fro hem that ben most fortunat. How 115 many men, trowest thou, wolden demen

hem-self to ben almost in hevene, yif they mighten atayne to the leest party of the remnaunt of thy fortune? This same
 120 place that thou clepest exil, is contree to hem that enhabiten heer, and forthy nothing [is] wrecched but whan thou wenest it: *as who seith, thou thy-self, ne no wight elles, nis a wrecche, but whan he*
 125 *weneth him-self a wrecche by reputacioun of his corage.* And ayeinward, alle fortune is blisful to a man by the agreabletee or by the egalitee of him that suffreth it. What man is that, that is so weleful,
 130 that nolde changen his estat whan he hath lost pacience? The swetnesse of mannes welefulnesse is sprayned with many biternesses; the whiche welefulnesse, al-though it seme swete and joyful
 135 to hem that useth it, yit may it nat ben with-holden that it ne goth away whan it wole. Thanne is it wel sene, how wrecched is the blisfulnesse of mortal thinges, that neither it dureth perpetuel with hem
 140 that every fortune receiven agreablely or egaly, ne it delyteth nat in al to hem that ben anguissous. O ye mortal folk, what seke ye thanne blisfulnesse out of your-self, whiche that is put in your-self?
 145 Error and folye confoundeth yow.

I shal shewe thee shortely the poynt of sovereyne blisfulnesse. Is ther any-thing more precious to thee than thy-self? Thou wolt answer, "nay." Thanne,
 150 yif it so be that thou art mighty over thy-self, *that is to seyn, by tranquillitee of thy soule,* than hast thou thing in thy power that thou noldest never lesen, ne Fortune ne may nat beneme it thee.
 155 And that thou mayst knowe that blisfulnesse ne may nat standen in thinges that ben fortunous and temporel, now understonde and gader it to-gidere thus: Yif blisfulnesse be the sovereyn good of nature
 160 that liveth by resoun, ne thilke thing nis nat sovereyn good that may be taken away in any wyse, (for more worthy thing and more digne is thilke thing that may nat ben taken away); than sheweth
 165 it wel, that the unstableness of fortune may nat atayne to receiven verray blisfulnesse. And yit more-over: what man

that this tounbling welefulnesse ledeth, either he woot that it is chaungeable, or elles he woot it nat. And yif he woot it nat, what blisful fortune may ther be in the blindnesse of ignorance? And yif he woot that it is chaungeable, he moot alwey ben adrad that he ne lese that thing that he ne doubteth nat but that he may lesen it; *as who seith, he mot ben alwey agast, lest he lese that he wot wel he may lese it.* For which, the continual dreed that he hath ne suffreth him nat to ben weleful. Or yif he lese it, he weneth to be dispysed and forleten. Certes eek, that is a ful litel good that is born with evene herte whan it is lost; *that is to seyn, that men do no more fore of the lost than of the havinge.* And for as moche as thou thy-self art he, to whom it hath ben shewed and proved by ful manye demonstraciouns, as I wot wel, that the sowles of men ne mowe nat deyen in no wyse; and eek sin it is cleer
 170 and certein, that fortunous welefulnesse endeth by the deeth of the body; it may nat ben douted that, yif that deeth may take away blisfulnesse, that alle the kinde of mortal thinges ne descendeth in-to
 175 wrecchednesse by the ende of the deeth. And sin we knowen wel, that many a man hath sought the fruit of blisfulnesse nat only with suffringe of deeth, but eek with suffringe of peynes and tormentes; how mighte than this present lyf maken men blisful, sin that, whan thilke selve lyf is ended, it ne maketh folk no wrecches?

METRE IV. *Quisquis uolet perennem.*

What maner man, stable and war, that wole founden him a perdurable sete, and ne wole nat ben cast down with the loude blastes of the wind Eurus; and wole despyse the see, manasinge with flodes; lat him eschewen to bilde on the cop of the mountaigne or in the moiste sandes. For the felle wind Auster tormenteth the cop of the mountaigne with all his strengthes; and the lause sandes refusen to beren the hevy wighte. And forthy,

wolt flee the perilous aventure,
seyn, of the worlde; have minde
 to flicchen thyn hous of a merye
 lowe stoon. For al-though the
 oubling the see, thondre with
 wings, thou that art put in
 and weleful by strengthe of thy
 alt leden a cleer age, scorninge
 lnesses and the ires of the eyr.

V. *Set cum rationum iam in te.*

or as moche as the norissinges
 souns descenden now in-to thee,
 it were tyme to usen a litel
 medicynes. Now understond
 were it so that the yiftes of
 ne were nat brutel ne transitorie,
 ther in hem that may be thyn
 yme, or elles that it nis foul, yif
 e considered and loked perfytly?
 a, ben they precious by the nature
 self, or elles by the nature of
 What is most worth of riches-
 at gold or might of moneye
 ed? Certes, thilke gold and
 oneye shyneth and yeveth betere
 to hem that despenden it thanne
 folk that mokeren it; for avar-
 th alwey mokereres to ben hated,
 esse maketh folk cleer of renoun.
 that swich thing as is transferred
 man to another ne may nat
 with no man; certes, thanne is
 oneye precious whan it is trans-
 o other folk and stenteth to ben
 usage of large yevinge *of him*
 yeven it. And also: yif that al
 eye that is over-al in the worlde
 dered toward o man, it sholde
 alle other men to ben nedy as of
 And certes a voys al hool, *that*
 a, *with-oute amensinge*, fulfilleth
 the hering of moche folk; but
 youre riches-esses ne mowen nat
 a-to moche folke with-oute amen-
 And whan they ben apassed,
 ey maken hem pore that for-gon
 esses. O! streite and nedy clepe
 ichesse, sin that many folk ne
 t han it al, ne al may it nat

comen to o man with-uten povertie of 40
 alle other folk! And the shyninge of
 gemmes, *that I clepe precious stones*,
 draweth it nat the eyen of folk to hem-
 ward, *that is to seyn, for the beautee*? But
 certes, yif ther were beautee or bountee 45
 in the shyninge of stones, thilke cleer-
 nesse is of the stones hem-self, and nat
 of men; for whiche I wondre gretly that
 men mervailen on swiche thinges. For-
 why, what thing is it, that yif it wanteth 50
 moeving and joynture of sowle and body,
 that by right mighte semen a fair crea-
 ture to him that hath a sowle of resoun?
 For al be it so that gemmes drawn to
 hem-self a litel of the laste beautee of the 55
 world, through the entente of hir creatour
 and through the distinccioun of hem-self;
 yit, for as mochel as they ben put under
 youre excellence, theyne han nat deserved
 by no way that ye sholden mervailen on 60
 hem. And the beautee of feldes, delyteth
 it nat mochel un-to yow?

Boeca. 'Why sholde it nat delyten us,
 sin that it is a right fair porcioun of the
 right faire werke, *that is to seyn, of this* 65
world? And right so ben we gladed som-
 tyme of the face of the see whan it is
 cleer; and also mervailen we on the
 hevene and on the sterres, and on the
 sonne and on the mone.'

Philosophye. 'Aperteneth,' quod she,
 'any of thilke thinges to thee? Why
 darst thou glorifyen thee in the shyninge
 of any swiche thinges? Art thou dis-
 tingwed and embelised by the springinge 75
 floures of the first somer sesoun, or
 swelleth thy plentee in the frutes of
 somer? Why art thou ravished with
 ydeljoyes? Why embracest thou straunge
 goodes as they weren thyne? Fortune ne 80
 shal never maken that swiche thinges
 ben thyne, that nature of thinges hath
 makid foreine fro thee. Sooth is that,
 with-uten doute, the frutes of the erthe
 owen to ben to the norissinge of bestes. 85
 And yif thou wolt fulfille thy nede after
 that it suffyseth to nature, than is it no
 nede that thou seke after the superfluitee
 of fortune. For with ful fewe things
 and with ful litel thinges nature halt hir 90

apayed; and yif thou wolt achoken the
 fulfillinge of nature with superfluitees,
 certes, thilke thinges that thou wolt
 thresten or pouren in-to nature shullen
 95 ben unjoyful to thee, or elles anoyous.
 Wenest thou eek that it be a fair thing
 to shyne with dyverse clothinge? Of
 whiche clothinge yif the beautee be
 agreeable to loken up-on, I wol mervailen
 100 on the nature of the matere of thilke
 clothes, or elles on the werkman that
 wroughte hem. But also a long route of
 meynee, maketh that a blisful man? The
 whiche servants, yif they ben vicious of
 105 condicions, it is a great charge and a
 distruccioun to the hous, and a greet
 enemy to the lord him-self. And yif they
 ben goode men, how shal straunge or
 foreine goodnesse ben put in the noumbre
 110 of thy riches? So that, by all these
 forseide thinges, it is clearly y-shewed,
 that never oon of thilke thinges that
 thou acountedest for thyne goodes nas
 nat thy good. In the whiche thinges,
 115 yif ther be no beautee to ben desyred,
 why sholdest thou ben sory yif thou lose
 hem, or why sholdest thou rejoysen thee
 to holden hem? For yif they ben faire
 of hir owne kinde, what aperteneth that
 120 to thee? For al so wel sholden they han
 ben faire by hem-selve, though they weren
 departed fram alle thyne riches. For-
 why faire ne precious ne weren they nat,
 for that they comen among thy riches;
 125 but, for they semeden faire and precious,
 ther-for thou haddest lever rekne hem
 amonges thy riches. But what de-
 sirest thou of Fortune with so grete a
 noise, and with so grete a fare? I trowe
 130 thou seke to dryve away nede with ha-
 bundaunce of thinges; but certes, it
 torneth to you al in the contrarie.
 Forwhy certes, it nedeth of ful manye
 helpinges to kepen the diversitee of
 135 precious ostelments. And sooth it is,
 that of manye thinges han they nede
 that manye thinges han; and ayeinward,
 of litel nedeth hem that mesuren hir fille
 after the nede of kinde, and nat after
 140 the outrage of coveityse. Is it thanne so,
 that ye men ne han no proper good

y-set in you, for which ye moter
 outward youre goodes in forein
 subgit thinges? So is thanne t
 dicioun of thinges torned up-s
 that a man, that is a devyne b
 merite of his resoun, thinketh th
 self nis neither faire ne noble,
 it be thorough possessioun of oste
 that ne han no sowles. And ce
 other thinges ben apayed of hi
 beautee; but ye men, that ben ser
 to god by your resonable thought,
 to aparailen your excellent kinde
 lowest thinges; ne ye understand
 how greet a wrong ye don t
 creatour. For he wolde that ma
 were most worthy and noble of an
 erthely thinges; and ye threste
 your dignitees benethe the lowest t
 For yif that al the good of every
 be more precious than is thilke
 whos that the good is: sin ye
 that the fouleste thinges ben
 goodes, thanne submitten ye and
 your-selven under tho fouleste
 by your estimacioun; and certe
 tydeth nat with-oute youre desert
 certes, swiche is the condicioun
 mankinde, that only whan it hath
 inge of it-selve, than passeth
 noblesse alle other thinges; and
 it forleteth the knowinge of it-sel
 is it brought binethen alle beestes
 why al other livinge beestes han o
 to knowe nat hem-self; but wh
 men leten the knowinge of hem
 cometh hem of vico. But how
 sheweth the errour and the folye
 men, that wenen that any thir
 ben aparailed with straunge a
 ments! But for sothe that may
 doon. For yif a wight shynet
 thinges that ben put to him, as
thilke thinges shynen with which a
aparailed, certes, thilke thing
 comended and preysed with whic
 aparailed; but natheles, the thir
 is covered and wrapped unde
 dwelleth in his filthe. And I
 that thilke thing be good that a
 him that hath it. Gabbe I o

Thou wolt seye "nay." Certes, riches
han anoyed ful ofte hem that han tho
richesses; sin that every wikked shrewe,
(and for his wikkednesse the more gredy
after other folkes riches, wher-so ever
it be in any place, be it gold or precious
stones), weneth him only most worthy
that hath hem. Thou thanne, that so
bisy dredest now the sward and now the
spere, yif thou haddest entred in the
path of this lyf a voide wayferinge man,
than woldest thou singe befor the theef;
as who seith, a pore man, that berth no
riche on him by the weye, may boldely
singe biforn theves, for he hath nat wherof
to ben robbed. O precious and right cleer
is the blisfulnesse of mortal riches,
that, whan thou hast geten it, than hast
thou lorn thy sikernes!

METRE V. *Felix nimium prior etas.*

Blisful was the first age of men! They
helden hem apayed with the metes that
the trewe felde broughten forth. They
ne distroyede nor deceivede nat hem-self
with outrage. They weren wont lightly
to slaken hir hunger at even with acornes
of okes. They ne coude nat medly the
yifte of Bachus to the cleer hony; that
is to seyn, they coude make no piment nor
clarres; ne they coude nat medle the
bryghte fleeces of the contree of Seriens
with the venim of Tyrie; this is to seyn,
they coude nat deyen whyte fleeces of Serien
contree with the blode of a maner shelfleshe
that men finden in Tyrie, with whiche blood
men deyen purpur. They slepen hoolsom
slepes up-on the gras, and dronken of the
renninge wateres; and layen under the
shadwes of the heye pyn-trees. Ne no
gest ne straungere ne carf yit the heye
see with ores or with shippes; ne they
ne hadde seyn yit none newe strondes,
to leden marchaundyse in-to dyverse
contrees. Tho weren the cruel clariouns
ful hust and ful stille, ne blood y-shad
by egre hate ne hadde nat deyed yit
armures. For wher-to or which wood-
nesse of enemys wolde first moeven armes,
whan they seyen cruel woundes, ne none

medes be of blood y-shad? I wolde 30
that oure tymes sholde torne ayein to
the olde maneres! But the anguissous
love of havinge brenneth in folk more
cruely than the fyr of the mountaigne
Ethna, that ay brenneth. Allas! what 35
was he that first dalf up the gobetes or
the weightes of gold covered under erthe,
and the precious stones that wolden han
ben hid? He dalf up precious perils.
That is to seyn, that he that hem first up 40
dalf, he dalf up a precious peril; for-why
for the preciousnesse of swiche thinge, hath
many man ben in peril.

PROSE VI. *Quid autem de dignitatibus.*

But what shal I seye of dignitees and
of powers, the whiche ye men, that
neither knowen verray dignitee ne verray
power, areysen hem as heye as the
hevene? The whiche dignitees and 5
powers, yif they comen to any wikked
man, they don as grete damages and
destruccionis as doth the flaumbe of the
mountaigne Ethna, whan the flaumbe
walweth up; ne no deluge ne doth so 10
cruel harmes. Certes, thee remembreth
wel, as I trowe, that thilke dignitee that
men clepen the imperie of consulers, the
whiche that whylom was biginninge of
fredom, youre eldres covciteden to han 15
don away that dignitee, for the pryde of
the consulers. And right for the same
pryde your eldres, biforn that tyme,
hadden don away, out of the citee of
Rome, the kinges name; that is to seyn, 20
they nolde han no lenger no king. But now,
yif so be that dignitees and powers be
yeven to goode men, the whiche thing
is ful selde, what agreable thing is ther
in the dignitees or powers but only the 25
goodnesse of folkes that usen hem? And
therior it is thus, that honour ne comth
nat to vertu for cause of dignitee, but
ayeinward honour comth to dignitee for
cause of vertu. But whiche is thilke 30
youre dereworthe power, that is so cleer
and so requerable? O ye ertheliche
bestes, considere ye nat over which
thinge that it semeth that ye han power?

35 Now yif thou saye a mons amonges other
mys, that chalaunged to him-self-ward
right and power over alle other mys,
how greet scorn woldest thou han of it?

Glossa. So fareth it by men; the body hath
40 power over the body. For yif thou loke
wel up-on the body of a wight, what
thing shalt thou finde more free than is
mankind, the whiche men wel ofte ben
slayn with bytangs of smale flies, or elles
45 with the entringe of creeping wormes
in-to the priveteas of mannes body? But
wher shal man finden any man that may
exercen or haunte any right up-on
another man, but only up-on his body,
50 or elles up-on thinges that ben lower
than the body, the whiche I clepe for-
tunous possessions? Mayst thou ever
have any comaundement over a free
corage? Mayst thou remuen fro the estat
55 of his propre reste a thought that is
clyvinge to-gidere in him-self by stede-
fast resoun? As whylom a tyrant
wende to confounde a free man of corage,
and wende to constreyne him by torment,
60 to maken him discoveren and acense folk
that wisten of a conspiracioun, which I
clepe a confederacie, that was cast ayeins
this tyrant, but this free man boot of
his owne tonge and caste it in the visage
65 of thilke wode tyrant, so that the tor-
ments that this tyrant wende to han
makid matere of crueltee, this wyse man
makid it matere of vertu.

But what thing is it that a man may
70 don to another man, that he ne may
receyven the same thing of othre folk
in him-self, or thus, what may a man don
to folk that folk ne may don him the same?
I have herl told of Busirides, that was
75 went to sleen his gastes that herberweden
in his hous, and he was sleyn him-self
of Eracles that was his gest. Regulus
hulde taken in bataille many men of
Affrike and cast hem in-to fetores, but
80 some after he moste yave his handes to
ben bounde with the cheynes of hem that
he hulde whylom overcomen. Wenest
thou thanne that he be mighty, that
hath no power to don a thing, that othre
85 ne may don in him that he doth in othre?

And yit more-over, yif it so were that
thise dignitees or poweres hadlen any
propre or natural goodnesse in hem-self,
never nolden they comen to shrewes.
For contrarious thinges ne ben nat wont
to ben y-feluwshipped to-gidere. Nature
refuseth that contrarious thinges ben
y-joined. And so, as I am in certen
that right wikked folk han dignitees ofte
tyme, than sheweth it wel that dignitees
and powers ne ben nat goode of hir owne
kinde, sin that they suffren hem-self to
elegen or joinen hem to shrewes. And
certes, the same thing may I most
digneliche jugen and seyn of alle the
yiftes of fortune that most pletteously
comen to shrewes, of the whiche yiftes,
I trowe that it oughte ben considered,
that no man douteth that he nis strong
in whom he seeth strengthe, and in
whom that swiftnesse is, sooth it is that
he is swift. Also musike maketh mu-
siciens, and phisike maketh phisiciens,
and rethorike rethoriciens. For-why the
nature of every thing maketh his pro-
pretee, no it is nat entremedled with the
effects of the contrarious thinges and,
as of wil, it chaseth out thinges that ben
to it contrarie. But certes, richesse may
not restreyne avarice unstanchid, ne
power ne maketh nat a man mighty
over him-self, whiche that vicious lustes
holden destreynd with cheynes that ne
mowen nat be unbounden. And digni-
tees that ben geven to shrewede folk nat
only ne maketh hem nat digne, but it
sheweth rather al openly that they ben
unworthy and undigne. And why is it
thus? Certes, for ye han joye to clepen
thinges with false names that baren hem
alle in the contrarie, the whiche names
ben ful ofte reprooved by the effecte of
the same thinges, so that these ilke
richesses ne oughten nat by right to ben
cleped richesces, ne swich power ne
oughte nat ben cleped power, ne swich
dignitee ne oughte nat ben cleped dig-
nitee. And at the laste, I may con-
clude the same thing of alle the yiftes
of Fortune, in which ther nis nothing
to ben desired, ne that hath in him-self

natural bountee, as it is ful wel y-sene. For neither they ne joignen hem nat alwy to goode men, ne maken hem alwy goode to whom that they ben y-joined.

MEERE VI. *Nouimus quantas dederit ruinas.*

We han wel knowen how many grete harmes and destruccions weren don by the emperor Nero. He leet brenne the cite of Rome, and made sleen the mastoures. And he, cruel, whylom slew his brother; and he was maked moist with the blood of his moder; *that is to seyn, he leet sleen and slitten the body of his moder, to seen wher he was conceived;* and he loked on every halve up-on her colde dede body, ne no tere ne wette his face, but he was so hard-herted that he mighte ben domes-man or juge of hir dede beautee. And natheles, yit governede this Nero by ceptre alle the poeples that Phebus the sonne may seen, cominge from his outereste arysinge til he hyde his bemes under the wawes; *that is to seyn, he governed alle the poeples by a ceptre imperial that the sonne goth aboute, from est to west.* And eek this Nero governed by ceptre alle the poeples that ben under the colde sterres that highten "septem triones"; *this is to seyn, he governed alle the poeples that ben under the party of the north.* And eek Nero governed alle the poeples that the violent wind Scythus scorkleth, and baketh the brenning sandes by his drye hete; *that is to seyn, alle the poeples in the south.* But yit he mighte nat al his hye power torne the woodnesse of this wikked Nero. Allas! it is a grevous fortune, as ofte as wikked swerd is joined to cruel venim; *that is to seyn, venomous crueltee to lordshippe.'*

PROSE VII. *Tum ego, scis, inquam.*

Thanne seyde I thus: 'Thou wost wel thy-self that the coveitise of mortal thinges ne hadde never lordshippe of me; but I have wel desired matere of thinges to done, as scho seith, I desire to han

matere of governaunce over comunalitees, for vertu, stille, ne sholde nat elden; *that is to seyn, that [him] leste that, or he wex olde, his vertu, that lay now ful stille, ne should nat perisse unexercised in governaunce of comune; for which men mighten speken or wryten of his goode government.*

Philosophye. 'For sothe,' quod she, 'and that is a thing that may drawen to governaunce swiche hertes as ben worthy and noble of hir nature; but natheles, it may nat drawen or tollen swiche hertes as ben y-brought to the fulle perfeccioun of vertu, that is to seyn, coveitise of glorie and renoun to han wel administred the comune thinges or don gode desertes to profit of the comune. For see now and considere, how litel and how voide of alle prys is thilke glorie. Certain thing is, as thou hast lerned by the demonstracioun of astronomye, that al the envioninge of the erthe aboute ne halt nat but the resoun of a prikke at regard of the greetnesse of hevene; that is to seyn, that yif ther were maked comparisoun of the erthe to the greetnesse of hevene, men wolden jugen in al, that the erthe ne helde no space. Of the whiche litel region of this worlde, the ferthe partye is enhabited with living bestes that we knowen, as thou thyself hast y-lerned by Tholomee that proveth it. And yif thou haddest with-drawn and abated in thy thought fro thilke ferthe partye as moche space as the see and the mareys contenen and over-goon, and as moche space as the region of droughte over-streccheth, *that is to seyn, sandes and desertes,* wel unnethe sholde ther dwellen a right streit placo to the habitacioun of men. And ye thanne, that ben envioned and closed with-in the leste prikke of thilke prikke, thinken ye to manifesten your renoun and don youre name to ben born forth? But your glorie, that is so narwe and so streite y-throngen in-to so litel boundes, how mochel coveiteth it in largesse and in greet doinge? And also setto this there-to: that many a nacioun, dyverso

of tonge and of maneres and eek of
 resoun of hir livinge, ben enhabited in
 the clos of thilke lilei hahtacle, to the
 60 whiche nacouns, what for difficultee of
 weyes and what for dyversitee of lan-
 gages, and what for defaute of unusage
 and entrecomanings of marchandise,
 nat only the names of singuler men ne
 65 may nat strecchen, but eek the fame of
 citees ne may nat strecchen. At the
 laste, certes, in the tyme of Marius
 Tullius, as him-self writ in his booke, that
 the renoun of the comyn of Rome ne
 70 hadde nat yit passed ne clemben over
 the mountaigne that highte Caucasus,
 and yit was, thilke tyme, Rome wel
 waxen and greetly redouted of the Parthes
 and eek of other folk enhabitinge aboute.
 75 Seestow nat thanne how streit and how
 compressed is thilke glorie that ye trav-
 ailen aboute to shewe and to multiplie?
 May thanne the glorie of a singuler
 Romaine strecchen thider as the fame
 80 of the name of Rome may nat clomben
 ne passon? And eek, seestow nat that
 the maneres of dyverse folk and eek hir
 lawes ben discordaunt among hem-self,
 so that thilke thing that som men jugen
 85 worthy of preysinge, other folk jugen
 that it is worthy of torment? And ther-
 of comth it that, though a man delyste
 him in preysinge of his renoun, he may
 nat in no wyse bringen forth ne spreden
 90 his name to many maner peoples. There-
 for every man oughte to ben apayed of
 his glorie that is published among his
 owne neighbours, and thilke nolle re-
 noun shal ben restreynd within the
 95 boundes of a manere folke. But how
 many a man, that was ful noble in his
 tyme, hath the wrecched and nedý
 forgetinge of wyteres put out of minde
 and don awey. Al be it so that, certes,
 100 thilke wrytinges þrofiten litel, the whiche
 wrytinges long and derk olde doth awey,
 bothe hem and eek hir autours. But ye
 men semen to geten yow a perdurabletee,
 when ye thinken that, in tyme to-
 105 cominge, your fame shal lasten. But
 natheles, yif thou wolt maken compari-
 son to the endeles spaces of eternitee,

what thing hast thou by whiche thou
 mayst rejoyssen thee of long lastinge of
 thy name? For yif ther were naked
 comparisoun of the abydinge of a moment
 to ten thousand winter, for as moche as
 bothe the spaces ben ended, yit hath the
 moment som potensoun of it, al-though it
 litel be. But natheles, thilke selve noun-
 bre of yeres, and eek as many yeres as
 ther-to may be multipliyed, ne may nat,
 certes, ben comparisouned to the perdur-
 abletee that is endeles; for of thinges that
 han ende may be makid comparisoun,
 but of thinges that ben withouten ende,
 to thinges that han ende, may be makid
 no comparisoun. And forthy is it that,
 al-though renoun, of as long tyme as ever
 thee list to thinken, were thought to the
 regard of eternitee, that is unstaunchable
 and infinit, it ne sholde nat only seem
 litel, but pleyneche right naught. But
 ye men, certes, ne conne don nothing
 a-right, but-yif it be for the auhence
 of peple and for ydel rumours and
 ye forsaken the grete worthinesse of
 conscience and of vertu, and ye soken
 your guardouns of the smale wordes of
 straunge folk. Have now heer and
 understonde, in the lightnesse of swich
 pryde and veyne glorie, how a man
 scornede festynly and morly swich vani-
 tee. Whylein ther was a man that
 hadde assayed with stryvinge wordes
 another man the whiche, nat for usage
 of verray vertu but for proud veyne
 glorie, had taken up-on him falsly the
 name of a philosophre. This rather man
 that I spak of thoughte he wolde assaye,
 wher he, thilke, were a philosophre or
 no; that is to seyn, yif that he wolde
 han suffred lightly a pacience the
 wronges that weren don un-to him. This
 feynede philosophre took pacience a litel
 while, and, when he hadde receyved
 wordes of outrage, he, as in stryvinge
 ayein and rejoyssinge of him-self seyde
 at the laste right thus: "understonde
 thou nat that I am a philosophre?" That
 other man answerde ayein ful bytyngly
 and seyde: "I hadde wel understonde
 it, yif thou haddest holden thy tonge"

but what is it to thise noble
 in (for, certes, of swiche folke
 hat seken glorie with vertu?
 ?' quod she; 'what atteyneth
 riche folk, whan the body is
 the deeth at the laste? For
 e that men dyen in al, *that*
body and soule, the whiche
 reson defendeth us to bileven,
 her no glorie in no wyse. For
 e *thilke glorie ben*, whan he,
 bilke glorie is seyde to be, nis
 ht in no wyse? And yif the
 he that hath in it-self science
 werkes, unbounden fro the
 he erthe, wendeth frely to the
 spyseth it nat thanne alle
 cupacioun; and, being in
 joyseth that it is exempt fro
 7 things? *As who seith, thanne*
soule of no glorie of renown
ld.

VII. *Quicumque solam mente
 praecipiti petit.*

that, with overthrowinge
 only seketh glorie of fame,
 h that it be sovereyn good:
 en up-on the brode shewing
 hevene, and up-on the streite
 is erthe; and he shal ben
 f the encrees of his name, that
 alfille the litel compas of the
 what coveiten proude folk to
 ir nekkes in ydel in the dedly
 worlde? For al-though that
 prad, passinge to ferne poeples,
 rverse tonges; and al-though
 houses or kinredes shynen
 titles of honours; yit, natheles,
 yseth alle heye glorie of fame:
 wrappeth to-gidere the heye
 and the lowe, and maketh egal
 the heyeste to the loweste.
 en now the bones of trewe
 What is now Brutus, or
 toun? The thinne fame, yit
 f hir ydel names, is marked
 re lettres; but al-though that
 lowen the faire wordes of the

fames of hem, it is nat yeven to knowe
 hem that ben dede and consumpte. Lig-
 geth thanne stille, al outrely unknow-
 able; ne fame ne maketh yow nat knowe.
 And yif ye wene to liven the longer for 30
 winde of your mortal name, whan o
 cruel day shal ravisshe yow, thanne is
 the seconde deeth dwellinge un-to yow.'
 Glose. *The first deeth he clepeth heer the*
departinge of the body and the soule; and 35
the seconde deeth he clepeth, as heer, the
stinting of the renown of fame.

PROSE VIII. *Set ne me inexorabile contra
 fortunam.*

'But for as mochel as thou shalt nat
 wenen,' quod she, 'that I bere untretable
 bataile ayeins fortune, yit som-tyme it
 bifalleth that she, deceyvable, deserveth
 to han right good thank of men; and 5
 that is, whan she hir-self opneth, and
 whan she discovereth hir frount, and
 sheweth hir maneres. Peraventure yit
 understondest thou nat that I shal seye.
 It is a wonder that I desire to telle, and 10
 forthy unnethe may I unpleyten my
 sentence with wordes; for I deme that
 contrarious Fortune profiteth more to
 men than Fortune debonaire. For al-
 wey, whan Fortune semeth debonaire, 15
 than she lyeth falsly in bihetinge the
 hope of welefulnesse; but forsothe con-
 trarious Fortune is alwey soothfast, whan
 she sheweth hir-self unstable thorough
 hir chaunginge. The amiable Fortune 20
 deceyveth folk; the contrarie Fortune
 techeth. The amiable Fortune bindeth
 with the beautees of false goodes the
 hertes of folk that usen hem; the con-
 trarie Fortune unbindeth hem by the 25
 knowinge of freele welefulnesse. The
 amiable Fortune mayst thou seen alwey
 + windy and flowinge, and ever mis-
 knowinge of hir-self; the contrarie For-
 tune is atempre and restreyned, and wys 30
 thorough exercise of hir adversitee. At
 the laste, amiable Fortune with hir
 flateringes draweth miswandringe men
 fro the sovereyne good; the contrarious
 Fortune ledeth ofte folk ayein to sooth- 35

fast goodes, and haleth hem ayein as
 with an hooke. Wenest thou thanne
 that thou oughtest to leten this a litel
 thing, that this aspre and horrible
 40 Fortune hath discovered to thee the
 thoughtes of thy trewe freendes? For-
 why this ilke Fortune hath departed
 and uncovered to thee bothe the certein
 visages and eek the doutous visages of
 45 thy felawes. Whan she departed away
 fro thee, she took away hir freendes, and
 lafte thee thyne freendes. Now whan
 thou were riche and weleful, as thee
 semede, with how mochel woldest thou
 50 han bought the fulle knowinge of this,
that is to seyn, the knowinge of thy verray
freendes? Now pleyne thee nat thanne
 of richesse y-lorn, sin thou hast founden
 the moste precious kinde of riches,ses,
 55 that is to seyn, thy verray freendes.

METRE VIII. *Quod mundus stabili*
fide.

That the world with stable feith varieth
 acordable chaunginges; that the con-
 trarious qualitee of elements holden

among hem-self aliaunce perdurable; the
 Phebus the sonne with his goldene charis
 bringeth forth the rosene day; that th
 mone hath commaundement over th
 nightes, which nightes Hesperus the ew
 sterre hath brought; that the see, greed
 to flowen, constreyneth with a certai
 ende hise fiodes, so that it is nat lefve
 to strecche hise brode termes or bounde
 up-on the erthes, *that is to seyn, to come*
at the erthe:—al this acordaunce
 thinges is bounden with Love, the
 governeth erthe and see, and hath al
 commaundements to the hevenes. An
 yif this Love slakede the brydeles, all
 thinges that now loven hem to-geders
 wolden maken a bataile continually, an
 stryven to fordoon the fasoun of thi
 worlde, the whiche they now leden i
 acordable feith by faire moevinges. Thi
 Love halt to-gideres poeples joigned wit
 an holy bond, and knitteth sacramen
 of mariages of chaste loves; and Lov
 endyteth lawes to trewe felawes. O
 weleful were mankinde, yif thilke Lov
 that governeth hevene governed your
 corages!

Explicit Liber secundus.

BOOK III.

PROSE I. *Iam cantum illa finierat.*

By this she hadde ended hir song,
 whan the sweetnesse of hir ditee hadde
 thorough-perced me that was desirous of
 herkninge, and I astoned hadde yit
 5 streighte myn eres, *that is to seyn, to*
herkne the bet what she wolde seye; so
 that a litel here-after I seyde thus: 'O
 thou that art sovereyn comfort of an-
 guissous corages, so thou hast remounted
 10 and norisshed me with the weighte of
 thy sentences and with delyt of thy
 singinge; so that I trowe nat now that
 I be unparigal to the strokes of Fortune:
as who seyth, I dar wel now suffren al the
 15 *assautes of Fortune, and wel defende me*

fro hir. And tho remedies whiche the
 thou seydest her-biforn weren right
 sharpe, nat only that I am nat a-grie
 of hem now, but I, desirous of hering
 axe gretely to heren the remedies.' Tha
 seyde she thus: 'That felede I ful wel
 quod she, 'whan that thou, ententif an
 stille, ravisshest my wordes; and
 abood til that thou haddest swich habit
 of thy thought as thou hast now; or ell
 til that I my-self hadde maked to the
 the same habit, which that is a mo
 verray thing. And certes, the remensa
 of thinges that ben yit to seye ben swich
 that first whan men tasten hem they be
 bytinge, but whan they ben receyve
 withinne a wight, than ben they swet

But for thou seyst that thou art so desirous to herkne hem, with how gret henninge woldest thou glowen, yif thou wistest whider I wol leden thee!' 'Whider is that?' quod I.

'To thilke verray welefulnesse,' quod she, 'of whiche thyn herte dremeth; but for as moche as thy sighte is ocupied and distorbed by imaginacioun of *erthely* things, thou mayst nat yit seen thilke *welefulnesse*.' 'Do,' quod I, 'and shewe me what is thilke verray welefulnesse, I preye thee, with-oute taryinge.'

'That wole I gladly don,' quod she, 'for the cause of thee; but I wol first warnen thee by wordes and I wol enformen me to enformen thee thilke *false* cause of *blisfulnesse* that thou more knowest; so that, whan thou hast fully biholden thilke false goodes, and torned thyn eyen to that other syde, thou mowe knowe the cleernesse of verray blisfulnesse.'

METRE I. *Qui serere ingenuum uolet agrum.*

Who-so wole sowe a feeld plentivous, let him first delivere it fro thornes, and hawe asunder with his hook the bussches and the fern, so that the corn may comen levy of eres and of greynes. Hony is the more swete, yif mouthes han first tasted savoures that ben wikkid. The sterres shynen more agreably whan the wind Nothus leteth his ploungy blastes; and after that Lucifer the day-sterre hath chased away the derke night, the day the fairere ledeth the rosene hors of the sounne. And right so thou, biholdinge first the false goodes, begin to with-drawen thy nekke fro the yok of *erthely* affeccions; and after-ward the verray goodes shollen entren in-to thy soules.

PROSE II. *Tunc desiro paullulum uisu.*

The fastnede she a litel the sighte of hir eyen, and with-drow hir right as it were in-to the streite sete of hir thought;

and bigan to speke right thus: 'Alle the cures,' quod she, 'of mortal folk, whiche 5 that travaylen hem in many maner studies, goon certes by diverse weyes, but natheles they enforcen hem alle to comen only to oon ende of blisfulnesse. And blisfulnesse is swiche a good, that 10 who-so that hath geten it, he ne may, over that, no-thing more desyre. And this thing is forsothe the sovereign good that conteyneth in him-self alle maner goodes; to the whiche good yif ther 15 failede any thing, it mighte nat ben cleped sovereign good: for thanne were ther som good, out of this ilke sovereign good, that mighte ben desired. Now is it cleer and certain thanne, that blisful- 20 nesse is a parfit estat by the congregacioun of alle goodes; the whiche blisfulnesse, as I have seyde, alle mortal folk enforcen hem to geten by diverse weyes. For-why the coveitise of verray 25 good is naturelly y-plaunted in the hertes of men; but the miswandringe errour mis-ledeth hem in-to false goodes. Of the whiche men, som of hem wenen that sovereign good be to liven with-oute nede 30 of any thing, and travaylen hem to be haboundaunt of riches. And som other men demen that sovereign good be, for to ben right digne of reverence; and enforcen hem to ben revered 35 among hir neighbours by the honours that they han y-geten. And som folk ther ben that holden, that right heigh power be sovereign good, and enforcen hem for to regnen, or elles to joignen 40 hem to hem that regnen. And it semeth to some other folk, that noblesse of renoun be the sovereign good; and hasten hem to geten glorious name by the arts of werre and of pees. And many folk 45 mesuren and gessen that sovereign good be joye and gladnesse, and wenen that it be right blisful thing to ploungen hem in voluptuous delyt. And ther ben folk that entrechaungen the causes and the 50 endes of thise forseyde goodes, as they that desiren riches to han power and delytes; or elles they desiren power for to han moneye, or for cause of renoun.'

55 In thise thinges, and in swiche othre
 thinges, is tord alle the entencioun of
 desiringes and of werkes of men; as
 thus: noblesse and favour of people,
 whiche that yeveth to men, as it semeth
 60 hem, a maner cleernesse of renoun; and
 wyf and children, that men desiren for
 cause of delyt and of merinesse. But
 forsothe, frendes ne sholden nat be
 rekned a-mong the godes of fortune, but
 65 of vertu; for it is a ful holy maner thing.
 Alle thise othre thinges, forsothe, ben
 taken for cause of power or elles for
 cause of delyt. Certes, now am I redy
 to referren the goodes of the body to thise
 70 forseide thinges aboven; for it semeth
 that strengthe and gretnesse of body
 yeven power and worthinesse, and that
 beautee and swiftnesse yeven noblesse
 and glorie of renoun; and hele of body
 75 semeth yeven delyt. In alle thise thinges
 it semeth only that blisfulnesse is desired.
 For-why thilke thing that every man
 desireth most over alle thinges, he
 demeth that it be the sovereyn good;
 80 but I have desynged that blisfulnesse is
 the sovereyn good; for which every wight
 demeth, that thilke estat that he desireth
 over alle thinges, that it be blisfulnesse.
 Now hast thou thanne biforn thyn eyen
 85 almost al the purposed forme of the wele-
 fulnesse of man-kinde, that is to seyn,
 riches, honours, power, and glorie, and
 delyts. The whiche delyt only considerede
 Epicurus, and juged and establisshed that
 90 delyt is the sovereyn good; for as moche
 as alle othre thinges, as him thoughte,
 bi-refte away joye and mirthe fram the
 herte. But I retorne ayein to the studies
 of men, of whiche men the corage alwey
 95 reherseth and seketh the sovereyn good,
 al be it so that it be with a derked
 memorie; but he not by whiche path,
 right as a dronken man not nat by
 whiche path he may retorne him to his
 100 hous. Semeth it thanne that folk folyen
 and erren that enforcen hem to have
 nede of nothing? Certes, ther nis non
 other thing that may so wel performe
 blisfulnesse, as an estat plentivous of alle
 105 goodes, that ne hath nede of non other

thing, but that is suffisaunt
 unto him-self. And folyen
 thanne, that wenen that th
 that is right good, that it be
 worthy of honour and of
 Certes, nay. For that thing
 foul ne worthy to ben despise
 neigh al the entencioun of
 travaylen for to geten it. I
 oughte nat that eek to be
 amonges goodes? What elle
 is nat to wene that thilke thi
 most worthy of alle thinges, b
 with-oute strengthe. And cl
 renoun, oughte that to ben
 Certes, ther may no man fors
 thing that is right excellent
 that it ne semeth to ben righ
 renommed. For certes, it ned
 seye, that blisfulnesse be [nat]
 ne drery, ne subgit to greva
 sorwes, sin that in right li
 folk seken to have and to use
 delyten hem. Certes, this
 thinges that men wolen and
 geten. And for this cause d
 riches, dignitees, regnes,
 delices. For therby wenen t
 suffisaunce, honour, power, r
 gladnesse. Than is it good,
 seken thus by so many dive
 In whiche desyr it may l
 shewed how gret is the st
 nature; for how so that men
 sentences and discordinge, a
 acorden alle in lovinge the en

METRE II. *Quantas rerum flect*

It lyketh me to shewe, by
 with slakke and delitable soun
 how that Nature, mighty, en
 flitteth the governements of t
 by whiche lawes she, purveya
 the grete world; and how she
 restreyneth alle thinges by a
 may nat ben unbounde. Al b
 the lyouns of the contre of l
 the faire chaynes, and taken
 the handes of folk that yev
 and dreden hir sturdy maystre

en wont to suffren betinges: yif
 ir horrible mouthes ben be-bled,
to seyn, of bestes devoured, hir
 of time passed, that hath ben ydel
 ted, repeyareth ayein; and they
 revously and remembren on hir
 and slaken hir nekkes fram hir
 unbounde; and hir mayster, first
 with bloody tooth, assayeth the
 athes of hem; *this is to seyn,*
in hir mayster. And the jange-
 id that singeth on the heye
 s, *that is to seyn, in the wode,*
 is enclosed in a streyt cage:
 that the pleyinge bisnesse of
 eth hem honiede drinkes and
 es with swete studie, yit nathe-
 ulke brid, skipinge out of hir
 ge, seeth the agreables shadewes
 des, she defouleth with hir feet
 y-shad, and seketh mourninge
 wode; and twitereth, desiringe
 with hir swete vois. The yerde
 that is haled a-doun by mighty
 , boweth redily the crop a-doun:
 at the hand of him that it bente
 ayein, anon the crop loketh
 to hevene. The sonne Phebus,
 eth at even in the westrene
 torneth ayein eftsones his carte,
 path, ther-as it is wont aryse.
 ges seken ayein to hir propre
 d alle thinges rejoysen hem of
 unge ayein to hir nature. Ne
 aunce nis bitaken to thinges,
 that hath joyned the endinge
 ginninge, and hath maketh the
 it-self stable, *that it chaungeth*
his propre kinde.

. *Vos quoque, o terrena animalia.*

Also ye men, that ben ertheliche
 remen alwey youre beginninge,
 it be with a thinne imagina-
 id by a maner thoughte, al be
 erly ne parfitly, ye loken fram
 ulke verray fyn of blisfulnesse;
 fore naturel entencioun ledeth
 hilke verray good, but many
 rours mis-torneth you ther-fro.

Consider now yif that by thilke thinges, 10
 by whiche a man weneth to geten him
 blisfulnesse, yif that he may comen to
 thilke ende that he weneth to come by
 natura. For yif that moneye or honours,
 or thise other forseide thinges bringen 15
 to men swich a thing that no good ne
 fayle hem ne semeth fayle, certes than
 wole I graunte that they ben maketh
 blisful by thilke thinges that they han
 geten. But yif so be that thilke thinges 20
 ne mowen nat performen that they bi-
 heten, and that ther be defaute of manye
 goodes, sheweth it nat thanne cleerly
 that fals beautee of blisfulnesse is knowen
 and steint in thilke thinges? First and 25
 forward thou thy-self, that haddest ha-
 bundaunces of riches nat long agon,
 I axe yif that, in the habundaunce of alle
 thilke riches, thou were never an-
 guissous or sory in thy corage of any 30
 wrong or grevaunce that bi-tidde thee on
 any syde? 'Certes,' quod I, 'it ne re-
 membreth me nat that evere I was so
 free of my thought that I ne was alwey
 in anguiss of som-what.' 35

'And was nat that,' quod she, 'for that
 thee lakked som-what that thou noldest
 nat han lakked, or elles thou haddest
 that thou noldest nat han had?' 'Right
 so is it,' quod I. 40

'Thanne desiredest thou the presence
 of that oon and the absence of that
 other?' 'I graunte wel,' quod I.

'Forsothe,' quod she, 'than nedeth
 ther som-what that every man desireth?' 45
 'Ye, ther nedeth,' quod I.

'Certes,' quod she, 'and he that hath
 lakke or nede of aught nis nat in every
 wey suffisaunt to himself?' 'No,'
 quod I. 50

'And thou,' quod she, 'in al the plentee
 of thy riches haddest thilke lakke of
 suffisaunce?' 'What elles?' quod I

'Thanne may nat riches maken that
 a man nis nedy, ne that he be suffisaunt 55
 to him-self; and that was it that they
 bi-highten, as it semeth. And eek certes
 I trowe, that this be gretly to considere,
 that moneye ne hath nat in his owne
 kinde that it ne may ben bi-nomen of 60

hem that han it, maugre hem?' 'I bi-knowe it wel,' quod I.

'Why sholdest thou nat bi-knownen it,' quod she, 'whan every day the strengere folk bi-nemen it fro the febler, maugre hem? For whennes comen elles alle thise foreyne compleyntes or quereles of pletinges, but for that men axen ayein here moneye that hath ben bi-nomen hem by
70 force or by gyle, and alwey maugre hem?' 'Right so is it,' quod I.

'Than,' quod she, 'hath a man nede to seken him foreyne helpe by whiche he may defende his moneye?' 'Who may
75 sey nay?' quod I.

'Certes,' quod she; 'and him nedede non help, yif he ne hadde no moneye that he mighte lese?' 'That is douteles,' quod I.

80 'Than is this thinge torned in-to the contrarye,' quod she. 'For richesces, that men wenen sholde make suffisaunce, they maken a man rather han nede of foreyne help! Which is the manere or
85 the gyse,' quod she, 'that richesce may dryve away nede? Riche folk, may they neither han hunger ne thirst? Thise riche men, may they fele no cold on hir limes on winter? But thou wolt answeren,
90 that riche men han y-now wher-with they may staunchen hir hunger, slaken hir thirst, and don a-wey cold. In this wyse may nede be counforted by richesces; but certes, nede ne may nat al outrely
95 ben don a-wey. For though this nede, that is alwey gapinge and gredy, be fulfild with richesces, and axe any thing, yit dwelleth thanne a nede that mighte be fulfild. I holde me stille, and telle
100 nat how that litel thing suffiseth to nature; but certes to avarice y-nough no suffiseth no-thing. For sin that richesces ne may nat al don away nede, but richesces maken nede, what may it thanne
105 be, that ye wenen that richesces mowen yeven you suffisaunce?

METRE III. *Quamvis fluente diues auri gurgite.*

Al were it so that a riche covetous man hadde a river fletinge al of gold, yit

sholde it never staunchen his covetous and though he hadde his nekke charged with precious stones of the rewee, and though he do ere his feldes plaitivous with an hundred oxen, never shal his bytinge businessse for-leten him whyl he liveth, ne the lighte richesces sholle nat beren him companye whan he is deed.

PROSE IV. *Set dignitates.*

But dignitees, to whom they ben comen maken they him honorable and reverent. Han they nat so gret strengthe, that they may putte vertues in the hertes of fol that usen the lordshipes of hem? (elles may they don a-wey the vices. Certes, they ne be nat wont to don awe wikkednesse, but they ben wont rather to shewen wikkednesse. And thercomth it that I have right grete dedeyn that dignitees ben yeven ofte to wikked men; for which thing Catullus cleped a consul of Rome, that highte Nonius "postum" or "boch"; as who seyth, I cleped him a congregacioun of vices in his brest, as a postum is ful of corrupcioun. Al were this Nonius set in a chayre of dignitee. Seest thou nat thanne he gret vilenye dignitees don to wikked men? Certes, unworthinesse of wikked men sholde be the lasse y-sene, yif they nere renommed of none honours. Certes thou thyself ne mightest nat ben brought with as manye perils as thou mightest suffren that thou woldest beren the magistrat with Decorat; that is to sey that for no peril that mighte befallen thee by offence of the king Theodorike, thou noldest nat be felawe in governaunce with Decorat; whan thou saye that he hadde wikked corage of a likerous shrowe as of an accuser. Ne I ne may nat, for swiche honours, jugen hem worthy reverence, that I deme and holde unworthy to han thilke same honours. Ne yif thou saye a man that were fulfild with wisdom, certes, thou ne mightest not deme that he were unworthy to the honour, or elles to the wisdom of whiche

fuld?—'No,' quod I.—'Certes, *tes*, quod she, 'apartienen proprely *re*, and vertu transporteth dignitee to thilke man to which she hir-self yjigned. And for as moche as *re* of poeple ne may nat maken folk of honour, it is wel seyn clerly hey ne han no propre beautee of *re*. And yit men oughten taken heed in this. For yif it so be that al wight be so mochel the foulere + more out-cast, that he is despysed t folk, so as dignitee ne may nat shrewes digne of reverence, the shrewes dignitee sheweth to moche hanne maketh dignitee shrewes so moche more despysed than l; and forsothe nat unpunished: *for to seyn, that shrewes reengen discord up-on dignitee*; for they ayein to dignitee as gret guer-ran they bi-spotten and defoulen es with hir vilenye. And for as as thou mowe knowe that thilke reverence ne may nat comen by hadewy transitorie dignitees, and now thus. yif that a man bailde id had many maner dignitees of *re*, and were comen peraventure e straunge nacionna, sholdo thilke • maken him worshipful and re-of straunge folk? Certes, yif amour of poeple were a naturel dignitee, it ne mighte never owher amonges no maner folk to office, right as fyr in every con- stanteth nat to eschaufen and hoot. But for as moche as for holden honourable or reverent uth nat to folk of hir propre he of nature, but only of the false m of folk, *that is to seyn, that scenen milles maken folk digne of honour*; herfore when that they comen folk ne knowen nat thilke digni- ir honours vanishesen away, and on. But that is amonges straunge syst thou seyn, but amonges hem hey weren born, ne duren nat dignitees alwey? Certes, the dig- of the provostrie of Rome was

whylom a gret power; now is it nothing but an ydel name, and the rente of the senatorie a gret charge. And yif a wight whylom hadde the office to taken hede to the vitales of the poeple, as of corn and 95 other thinges, he was holden amonges grete; but what thing is now more out-cast thanne thilke provostrie? And, as I have seyde a litel her-biforn, that thilke thing that hath no propre beautee of 100 him-self receiveth som-tyme pryse and shyninge, and som-tyme leseth it by the opinioun of usauces. Now yif that dignitees thanne ne mowen nat maken folk digne of reverence, and yif that dignitees 105 wexen foule of hir wille by the filthe of shrewes, and yif that dignitees lessen hir shyninge by chaunginge of tymes, and yif they wexen foule by estimacioun of poeple: what is it that they han in hem- 110 self of beautee that oughte ben desired? as who seyth, non; thanne ne mowen they yeven no beautee of dignitee to non other.

METAZ IV. *Quamvis es, Tyrus superbus ostro.*

Al be it so that the proude Nero, with alle his wode luxurie, kembde him and aparalede him with saure purpres of Tirie, and with whyte perles, algetes yit throf he hateful to alle folk: *this is to seyn, that al was he behated of alle folk*. Yit this wikked Nero hadde gret lordship, and yaf whylom to the reverents sena-tours the unworshipful setes of dignitees. *Unworshipful setes he clepeth here, for that 10 Nero, that was so wikked, yaf the dignitees*. Who-so wolde thanne reasonably wenen, that blisfulnesse were in swiche honours as ben yeven by vicious shrewes?

PROSE V. *An uero regna regumque familiaritas.*

But regnes and familiaritees of kinges, may they maken a man to ben mighty? How elles, when hir blisfulnesse dureth perpetuely? But certes, the olde age of tyme passed, and eek of present tyme 5 now, is ful of ensamples how that

kinges ben chaunged in-to wrecchednesse
 out of hir welefulnesse. O! a noble thing
 and a cleer thing is power, that is nat
 10 founden mighty to kepen it-self! And
 yif that power of reumes be auctour and
 maker of blisfulnesse, yif thilke power
 lakkoth on any syde, amenuseth it nat
 thilke blisfulnesse and bringeth in
 15 wrecchednesse? But yit, al be it so
 that the reumes of mankinde strecchen
 brode, yit mot ther nede ben moche folk,
 over whiche that every king no hath no
 lordshipe ne comaundement. And certes,
 20 up-on thilke syde that power failleth,
 which that maketh folk blisful, right
 on that same syde noun-power entreth
 under-nethe, that maketh hem wrecches;
 in this manere thanne moten kinges han
 25 more porcioun of wrecchednesse than of
 welefulnesse. A tyrant, *that was king*
of Sicile, that hadde assayed the poril
 of his estat, shewede by similitudo the
 dredes of reumes by gastnesse of a sword
 30 that heng over the heved *of his familier*.
 What thing is thanne this power, that
 may nat don away the bytinges of biis-
 nesse, ne eschewe the prikkes of drede?
 And certes, yit wolden they liven in
 35 sikernesse, but they may nat; and yit
 they glorifye hem in hir power. Holdest
 thou thanne that thilke man be mighty,
 that thou seest that he wolden don that
 he may nat don? And holdest thou
 40 thanne him a mighty man, that hath
 enviroynede his sydes with men of armes
 or serjaunts, and dredeth more hem that
 he maketh agast than they dreden him,
 and that is put in the handes of his
 45 servaunts for he sholde seme mighty?
 But of familieres or servaunts of kinges
 what sholde I telle thee anything, un-
 that I myself have shewed thee that
 reumes hem-self ben ful of gret fellesse?
 50 The whiche familieres, certes, the ryal
 power of kinges, in hool estat and in
 estat abated, ful ofte throweth adown.
 Nero constreynede Senek, his familier
 and his mayster, to chesen on what deeth
 55 he wolden deyen. Antonius comaundede
 that knightes slown with hir swordes
 Papinian *his familier*, which Papinian

hadde ben longe tyme ful might
 amonges hem of the court. And yit
 certes, they wolden bothe han renouned
 hir power; of whiche two Senek
 forcede him to yeven to Nero his rich-
 esses, and also to han gon in-to solitarie
 exil. But whan the grete weighte, *that*
is to seyn, of lordes power or of fortune,
 draweth hem that shullen falle, neither
 of hem ne mighte do that he wolden.
 What thing is thanne thilke power, that
 though men han it, yit they ben agast
 and whanne thou woldest han it, thou
 hast nat siker; and yif thou woldest
 forloren it, thou mayst nat eschuen it!
 But whether swiche men ben frendes
 at nede, as ben conseyled by fortune
 and nat by vertu? Certes, swiche folk
 weleful fortune maketh freendes, con-
 trarious fortune maketh hem enemyes.
 And what pestilence is more mighty
 to anoye a wight than a familier enemy!

METRE V. *Qui se uolet esse potentem.*

Who-so wol be mighty, he mot deserte
 his cruel corage, ne putte nat his nekk
 overcomen, under the foule reynes
 of lecherye. For al-be-it so that thy lord
 aliye strecche so far, that the contray
 of Inde quakoth at thy comaundement
 or at thy lawes, and that the last *ile*
the see, that *hight* Tyle, be thral to the
 yit, yif thou mayst nat putten away the
 foule derke desyrs, and dryven out of
 thee wrecched complaintes, certes, it is
 no power that thou hast.

PROSE VI. *Gloria uero quam fallax avaritia.*

But glorie, how deceivable and how
 foul is it ofte! For which thing is
 unskilfully a tragedien, *that is to seyn*
a maker of dities that highten tragedie
 cryde and seide "O glorie, glorie," quoth
 he, "thou art nothing elles to thousand
 of folkes but a greet sweller of erres.
 For manye han had ful gret renoun
 the false opinoun of the poeple, and whiche
 thing may ben thought fouler than swich
 preysinge? For thilke folk that be
 preyed falaly, they moten nedes be

f' hir preysinges. And yif that
 geten hem thonk or preysinge
 wertes, what thing hath thulke
 d or encreased to the conscience
 folk, that mesuren hir good,
 he rumour of the poeple, but
 thfastnesse of conscience? And
 is a fair thing, a man to han
 and spred his name, than fol-
 bat it is demed to ben a foul
 it ne be y-sprad and encreased.
 seyde a litel her-biforn that, sin
 nedes ben many folk, to whiche
 renoun of a man ne may nat
 befaileth that he, that thou
 glorious and renommed, semeth
 the partie of the erthes to ben
 glorie and with-oute renoun.
 tes, amonges these thinges I ne
 that the prys and grace of the
 a neither worthy to ben re-
 ne cometh of wyse jugement,
 e perdurably. But now, of this
 gentilesse, what man is it that
 wel seen how weyn and how
 thing it is? For yif the name
 me be referred to renoun and
 of linage, thanne is gentil name
 ine thing, *that is to seyn, to hem*
from hem of her linage. For it
 nat gentilesse be a maner prey-
 a comth of the deserte of an-
 And yif preysinge maketh
 , thanne moten they nedes be
 a ben preysed. For which thing
 a, that yif thou ne have no
 of thy-self, *that is to seyn, prayse*
of thy deserte, foreine gentilesse
 b thes nat gentil. But certes,
 e any good in gentilesse, I trowe
 aly this, that it semeth us that
 necessitee be imposed to gentil
 that they ne sholden nat out-
 forliven fro the virtues of hir
 rede.

VI. *Omne hominum genus in
terris.*

linage of men that ben in erthe
 emblable birthe. On allone is
 thinges. On allone ministreth

alle thinges. He yaf to the sonne his
 beemes; he yaf to the mone hir hornes. 5
 He yaf the men to the erthe; he yaf the
 starres to the hevena. He encloseth with
 membres the soules that comen fro his
 hye sete. Thanne comen alle mortal folk
 of noble sede; why noisen ye or bosten of 10
 youre eldres? For yif thou loke your
 beginninge, and god your auctor and your
 maker, thanne nis ther no forlived wight,
 but-yif he norishe his corage un-to vyces,
 and forlete his propre burthe. 15

PROSE VII. *Quid autem de corporis
voluptatibus.*

But what shal I seye of delices of body,
 of whiche delices the desiringes ben ful
 of anguisshe, and the fulfillinges of hem
 ben ful of penaunce? How greet syk-
 nesse and how grete sorwes unsufferable, 5
 right as a maner fruit of wikkednesse,
 ben thulke delices wont to bringen to the
 bodies of folk that usen hem! Of whiche
 delices I not what joye may ben had of
 hir moevinge. But this wot I wel, that 10
 who-so-ever wole remembre him of hisse
 luxures, he shal wel understonde that
 the issues of delices ben sorwful and
 sorye. And yif thulke delices mowen
 maken folk blisful, than by the same 15
 cause moten these bestes ben cloped blis-
 ful, of whiche bestes al the entencion
 hasteth to fulfillen hir bodily jolitee. And
 the gladnesse of wyf and children were
 an honest thing, but it hath ben seyde 20
 that it is over muchel ayeins kinde, that
 children han ben founden tormentours to
 hir fadres, I not how manye: of whiche
 children how bytinge is every condicioun,
 it nedeth nat to tellen it thee, that hast 25
 or this tyme assayed it, and art yit now
 anguissous. In this approve I the sen-
 tence of my disciple Euripidis, that seyde,
 that "He that hath no children is weleful
 by infortune." 30

METRE VII. *Habet omnis hoc voluptas.*

Everydelyth hath this, that it anguissbeth
 ham with prikkes that usen it. It re-
 sembleth to these flyinge flyes that we

clopen been, that, after that he hath shad
 5 his agreable honies, he fleeth away and
 stingeth the hertes, or ben that ben
 y-smite with bytinge overlonge holdinge.

PROSE VIII. *Nihil igitur dubium est.*

Now is it no doute thanne that these
 weyes ne ben a maner muselinges to
 blisfulnesse, ne that they ne mowe nat
 leden folk thider as they bihten to leden
 5 hem. But with low grete harmes these
 forseyle weyes ben enlaced. I shal shewe
 thee shortly. For why yif thou enforcest
 thee to useable moneve, thou most bi-
 reven him his moneye that hath it. And
 10 yif thou wolt shyner with dignitees, thou
 most lasechen and supplien hem that
 yeven the dignitees. And yif thou cover-
 test thy labour to god liforn, other folk,
 thou shalt detour thy self thorough hum-
 15 blesse of axinge. Yif thou desirist power,
 thou shalt be awaytes of thy subgits
 annoyably ben east under manye periles.
 Awest thou glorie? Thou shalt ben so
 destrat by aspre thinges that thou shalt
 20 forgoon sikernes. And yif thou wolt
 leden thy lyf in liches, every wight shal
 despisen thee and ferleten thee, as thou
 that art tiral to thang that is right foul
 and brotel, that is to seyn, servant to
 25 thy body. Now is it thanne wel seen,
 how litel and how brotel possessionen they
 covenen, that putten the goodes of the
 body aboven hir owne resoun. For mayst
 thou sormounten these olivants in pret-
 30 nesse or weight of body? Or mayst thou
 ben stronger than the bole? Mayst thou
 ben swifter than the tygre? Bihele the
 spaces and the stablenesse and the swift
 cours of the hevne, and stant souetyne
 35 to wondren on foule thinges, the which
 hevne, certes, nis nat rather for these
 thinges to ben wondred upon, than for
 the resoun by which it is governed. But
 the shyning of thy forme, that is to seyn,
 40 the beaute of thy body, how swiftly pass-
 inge is it and how transitory, certes, it
 is more flitinge than the nuntableness of
 flowers of the somer sesoun. For so Aris-
 totle telleth, that yif that men hadden

even of a best that highte lynx, so that
 the lookinge of folk might percen thorough
 the thinges that withstonen it, whiche
 liked thanne in the entranses of the body
 of Alcibiades, that was and layr in the
 superfiice with oute, it shold seme right
 foul. And tertly, yif thou semest farr,
 thy nature maketh nat that, but the
 deservance of the febleness of the even
 that taken. But preysse the goodes of the
 body as muchel as ever thou list, so that
 thou knowe algates that, what-so it be,
 that is to seyn, of the goodes of thy body,
 which that thou woldrest up-on, may
 ben destroyed or dissolved by the hete of
 a fevre of three layes. Of alle whiche
 forseyle thinges I may reducen this
 shortly in a somme, that these worldly
 goodes, whiche that be mowen nat yeven
 that they bihten, ne ben nat part by
 the congregacion of alle goodes, nat
 they ne ben nat weyes no pathes that
 bringen men to blisfulnesse, ne maken
 men to ben blisful.

METRE VIII. *Eheu! quas miros
 tramite deos.*

Allas! which folye and which igno-
 rance misledeth wandringe wrecches
 fro the path of verray goode! Certes,
 ye ne soken no gold in grete trees, ne ye
 ne gaderen nat precious stones in the
 vynes, ne ye ne hyden nat your goode
 in the hye mountaignes to cacchen hit
 of whiche ye may maken riche tresser.
 And yif yow lyketh to hunte to roes ye
 ne gen nat to the fordes of the water that
 highte Tyrene. And over this, men
 knowen wel the crykes and the cavernes
 of the see y-had in the floudes, and knowen
 eek which water is most plentivous of
 whyte perles, and knowen which water
 haboundeth most of rede purple, that is to
 seyn, of a maner shelle-fish with which men
 dyen purple, and knowen which streame
 habounden most with tendre fishhes, or of
 sharpe fishhes that lighten echilas. Not
 folk suffren hem-self to ben so blisful,
 that sem ne receth nat to knowe whiche
 thulke goodes ben y-had whiche that they

but ploungen hem in erthe and
 e thilke good that sormounteth
 e that bereth the sterres. What
 ay I maken that be digne to
 houghtes of men? But I preye
 coveiten riches and honours,
 han they han geten tho false
 h greet travaile, that ther-by
 knowen the verray goodes.

. *Hactenus mendacis formam.*

th that I have shewed hider-to
 of false welefulnesse, so that,
 ke now cleerly, the order of
 cioun requireth from hennes-
 ewen thee the verray weleful-
 'For sothe,' quod I, 'I see wel
 uffisaunce may nat comen by
 ie power by reames, ne rever-
 mitees, ne gentillesse by glorie,
 delices.'

st thou wel knownen the causes,
 'why it is?' . 'Certes, mo
 od I, 'that I see hem right as
 vere thorough a litel clifte; but
 ver knownen hem more openly

quod she, 'the resoun is al
 thilke thing that simply is
 ith-outen any devisioun, the
 folye of mankinde departeth
 eth it, and misledeth it and
 h from verray and parfit good
 that ben false and unparfit.
 this. Wenest thou that he,
 nede of power, that him no
 -thing?' 'Nay,' quod I.
 quod she, 'thou seyst a-right.
 e that ther is a thing, that in
 be febler of power, certes, as
 not nedes ben nedy of foreine
 Right so is it,' quod I.

nce and power ben thanne of
 'So semeth it,' quod I.
 mest thou,' quod she, 'that
 t is of this manere, *that is to*
sunt and mighty, oughte ben
 relles that it be right digne of
 boven alle thinges?' 'Certes,'

quod I, 'it nis no doute, that it is right
 worthy to ben reverenced.'

40

'Lat us,' quod she, 'adden thanne
 reverence to suffisaunce and to power, so
 that we demen that thise three thinges
 ben al o thing.' 'Certes,' quod I, 'lat us
 adden it, yif we wolen graunten the sothe.'

45

'What demest thou thanne?' quod
 she; 'is that a derk thing and nat noble,
that is suffisaunt, reverent, and mighty, or
 elles that it is right noble and right
 cleer by celebritee of renoun? Consider
 thanne,' quod she, 'as we han graunted
 her-biforn, that he that ne hath nede of
 no-thing, and is most mighty and most
 digne of honour, yif him nedeth any
 cleernesse of renoun, which cleernesse he
 mighte nat graunten of him-self, so that,
 for lakke of thilke cleernesse, he mighte
 seme the febler on any syde or the more
 out-cast?' Glose. *This is to seyn, nay;*
for who-so that is suffisaunt, mighty, and
reverent, cleernesse of renoun folweth of the
forseyde thinges; he hath it al redy of his
suffisaunce. Boece. 'I may nat,' quod
 I, 'denye it; but I mot graunte as it is,
 that this thing be right celebrable by
 cleernesse of renoun and noblesse.'

55

60

65

'Thanne folweth it,' quod she, 'that we
 adden cleernesse of renoun to the three
 forseyde thinges, so that ther no be
 amonges hem no difference?' 'This is
 a consequence,' quod I.

70

'This thing thanne,' quod she, 'that ne
 hath nede of no foreine thing, and that
 may don alle thinges by hise strengthes,
 and that is noble and honourable, nis nat
 that a mery thing and a joyful?' 'But
 whennes,' quod I, 'that any sorwe mighte
 comen to this thing that is swiche, certes,
 I may nat thinke.'

75

'Thanne moten we graunte,' quod she,
 'that this thing be ful of gladnesse, yif
 the forseyde thinges ben sothe; and
 certes, also mote we graunten that suffi-
 saunce, power, noblesse, reverence, and
 gladnesse ben only dyverse by names, but
 hir substaunce hath no diversitee.' 'It
 mot needly been so,' quod I.

80

85

'Thilke thing thanne,' quod she, 'that
 is oon and simple in his nature, the

90 wikkednesse of men departeth it and
devydeth it; and whan they enforcen
hem to geten partye of a thing that ne
hath no part, they ne geten hem neither
thilke partye that nis non, ne the thing
95 al hool that they ne desire nat.' 'In
which manere?' quod I.

'Thilke man,' quod she, 'that secheth
richesses to flee povertie, he ne tra-
vailleth him nat for to gete power; for he
100 hath lever ben derk and vyl; and eek
withdraweth from him-self many naturel
delyts, for he nolde lese the moneye that
he hath assembled. But certes, in this
manere he ne geteth him nat suffisaunce
105 that power forleteth, and that molestie
prikketh, and that filthe maketh out-cast,
and that derkenesse hydeth. And certes,
he that desireth only power, he wasteth
and scatereth richesse, and despyseth
110 delyts, and eek honour that is with-oute
power, ne he ne preysseth glorie no-thing.
Certes, thus seest thou wel, that manye
thinges faylen to him; for he hath som-
tyme defaute of many necessitees, and
115 many anguissches byten him; and whan
he ne may nat don the defautes a-wey, he
forleteth to ben mighty, and that is the
thing that he most desireth. And right
thus may I maken semblable resouns of
120 honours, and of glorie, and of delyts.
For so as every of thise forseyde thinges
is the same that thise other thinges ben,
that is to seyn, al oon thing, who-so that
ever seketh to geten that oon of thise,
125 and nat that other, he ne geteth nat that
he desireth.' Boece. 'What seyst thou
thanne, yif that a man coveiteth to geten
alle thise thinges to-gider?'

Philosophie. 'Certes,' quod she, 'I
130 wolde seye, that he wolde geten him
sovereyn blisfulnesse; but that shal he
nat finde in tho thinges that I have
shewed, that ne mowen nat yeven that
they beheten.' 'Certes, no,' quod I.

135 'Thanne,' quod she, 'ne sholden men
nat by no wey seken blisfulnesse in swiche
thinges as men wene that they ne mowen
yeven but o thing senglely of alle that
men seken.' 'I graunte wel,' quod I;
140 'ne no sother thing ne may ben sayd.'

'Now hast thou thanne,' quod she, 'the
forme and the causes of false weleful-
nesse. Now torne and flitte the eye
of thy thought; for ther shalt thou
seen anon thilke verray blisfulnesse that
I have bihight thee.' 'Certes,' quod I,
'it is cleer and open, thogh it were to
a blinde man; and that shewedest thou
me ful wel a lital her-biforn, whan thou
enforcedest thee to shewe me the cause
of the false blisfulnesse. For but-yif I
be bigyled, thanne is thilke the verray
blisfulnesse parfit, that parfitly maketh
a man suffisaunt, mighty, honourable,
noble, and ful of gladnesse. And, for
thou shalt wel knowe that I have wel
understonden thise thinges with-in my
herte, I knowe wel that thilke blisful-
nesse, that may verrayly yeven oon of
the forseyde thinges, sin they ben al oon,
I knowe, douteles, that thilke thing is
the fulle blisfulnesse.'

'O my norie,' quod she, 'by this
opinioun I seye that thou art blisful, yif
thou putte this ther-to that I shal seyn.'
'What is that?' quod I.

'Trowest thou that ther be any thing
in thise erthely mortal tounbling thinges
that may bringen this estat?' 'Certes,'
quod I, 'I trowe it naught; and thou
hast shewed me wel that over thilke good
ther nis no-thing more to ben desired.'

'Thise thinges thanne,' quod she, '*that*
is to seyn, erthely suffisaunce and power and
swiche thinges, either they semen lyke-
nesses of verray good, or elles it semeth
that they yeve to mortal folk a maner of
goodes that ne ben nat parfit; but thilke
good that is verray and parfit, that may
they nat yeven.' 'I acorde me wel,'
quod I.

'Thanne,' quod she, 'for as moche as
thou hast knowen which is thilke verray
blisfulnesse, and eek whiche thilke
thinges ben that lyen falsly blisfulnesse
that is to seyn, that by deceite semen verray
goodes, now behoveth thee to know
whennes and where thou mowe sek
thilke verray blisfulnesse.' 'Certes,'
quod I, 'that desire I greetly, and have
abiden longe tyme to herknen it.'

But for as moche,' quod she, 'as it cometh to my disciple Plato, in his book of *Timæo*, that in right litel thinges we sholden lasechen the help of god, what jugest thou that be now to done, so that we may deserve to finde the sote of like verray good?' 'Certes,' quod I, 'deme that we shullen clepen the fader alle goodes, for with-outen him nis no-thing founden a-right.'

'Thou seyst a-right,' quod she; and began anon to singen right thus:—

METRE IX. *O qui perpetua mundum ratione gubernas.*

O thou fader, creator of hevenc and of erthes, that governest this world by perverable resoun, that comandest the tymes to gon from sin that age hadde beginninge, thou that dwellest thy-self stedfast and stable, and yevest alle othere thinges to ben moeved, ne foraine causes necesseden thee never to compounen of flotinge matere. but only the forme of soverain good y-set with-in thee with-oute envye, that *mooved thee freely*. Thou that art alder-sayrest, beringe the this world in thy thought, forandest this world to the lyknesse semblable of that faire world in thy thought. Thou sawest al thing of thy soverain exemplar, and comandest that this worl, parfitliche y-maked, have freely and absolut his parfit parties. Thou underst the elements by nombres proportionaties, that the colde thinges shoven acorden with the hote thinges, and the drye thinges with the moiste thinges; that the fyr, that is purest, ne be nat over hve, ne that the hevynesse drawe nat adoun over-lowe the erthes that ben plounged in the wateres. Thou hittest to-guder the mene sowle of treble mode, moevinge alle thinges, and deddest it by membres acordinge; and when it is thus levyded, it hath assembled moevinge in-to two roundes; it goth to the ayen to him-self, and envircouneth ful deep thought, and torneth the

hevenc by semblable image. Thou by evene-lyke causes enhansest the sowles and the lasse lyves, and, ablinge ham beye by lighte cartes, thou sowest ham in-to hevenc and in-to erthe, and when they ben converted to thee by thy benigne lawe, thou makest hem retorne ayen to thee by ayen-ledinge fyr. O fader, yve thou to the thought to styen up in-to thy streite sote, and graunte ham to envircoun the welle of good; and, the lighte y-founde, graunte ham to fichen the clere sightes of his corage in thee. And scatter thou and to-broke thou the weightes and the cloudes of erthely hevynesse, and shyne thou by thy brightnesse. For thou art cleernesse, thou art peysible reste to debonaire folk, thou thy-self art biginninge, berer, leder, path, and terme; to loke on thee, that is our ende.

PROSE X. *Quoniam igitur quæ sit imperfecti.*

For as moche thanus as thou hast seyn, which is the forme of good that nis nat parfit, and which is the forme of good that is parfit, now trowe I that it were good to shewe in what this perfeccioun of blisfulnesse is set. And in this thing, I trowe that we sholden first enquire for to witen, yif that any swiche maner good as thilke good that thou hast diffinissed a litel heer-biforn, that is to seyn, soverain good, may ben founde in the nature of thinges; for that veyn imaginacioun of thought ne deceyve us nat, and putte us out of the sothfastnesse of thilke thing that is submitted unto us. But it may nat ben deneyed that thilke good ne is, and that it nis right as welle of alle goodes. For al thing that is cleped inparfit is prooved inparfit by the amensunge of perfeccioun or of thing that is parfit. And ther-of comth it, that in every thing general, yif that men seen any thing that is inparfit, certes, in thilke general ther mot ben som-thing that is parfit, for yit so be that perfeccioun is don away, men may nat thinke ne seye fro whennes thilke thing is that is cleped inparfit. For the nature

of thinges ne took nat hir beginnunge of
thinges unmeasured and imparfit, but it
30 proceedeth of thinges that ben al hoole
and absolut, and descendeth so down in-to
outterest thinges, and in-to thinges empty
and withouten frut. But, as I have
y-snewen a litel her-before that yif ther
35 be a blisfulnesse that be frele and veyn
and imparfit, ther may no man doute that
ther nis som blisfulnesse that is sad,
stedefast, and parfit.' Boece. 'This is
concluded,' quod I, 'firmely and soth-

40 fasty.'
Philosophie. 'But considere also,' quod
she, 'in whom this blisfulnesse en-
habiteth. The comune acordance and
conceite of the corages of men prooveth
45 and graunteth that god, prince of alle
thinges, is good. For, so as nothing ne
may ben thought better than god, it may
nat ben doubted thanne that he, that
hathing nis better, that he nis good.
50 Certes, reson sheweth that god is so
good, that it proveth by verray force that
parfit good is in him. For yif god no is
swich, he no may nat ben prince of alle
thinges, for certes som-thing possessing
55 in it-self parfit good, shoulde ben more
worthy than god, and it shoulde seemen that
thilke thing were first, and oller than
god. For we han shewed apertly that
alle thinges that ben parfit ben first or
60 thinges that ben unparfit; and for-thy,
for us moche as that my reson or my
proces ne go nat a wey withoute an ende,
we owen to graunten that the sovereign
god is right ful of sovereign parfit good.
65 And we han establisshed that the sovereign
good is verray blisfulnesse. thanne mot it
nede be, that verray blisfulnesse is in
soverein god.' 'This take I wel,' quod
I, 'ne this ne may nat ben withseid in no
70 manere.'

'But I praye,' quod she, 'see now how
thou mayst prooven, holiy and with-out
corapoun, this that I have seyd, that
the sovereign god is right ful of sovereign
75 good.' 'In which manere?' quod I.

'Wenest thou aught,' quod she, 'that
this prince of alle thinges have y take
thilke sovereign good any-where out of him-

self, of which sovereign good men proveth
that he is ful, right as thou mightest
thinken that god, that hath blisfulnesse
in him-self, and thilke blisfulnesse that
is in him, weren dyvers in substance?
For yif thou wene that god have received
thilke good out of him-self, thou mayst
wene that he that yif thilke good to god
be more worthy than is god. But I am
bi-knowen and confesse, and that right
dignely, that god is right worthy to have
alle thinges, and, yif so be that this good
be in him by nature, but that it is dyvers
fro him by weninge reson, sin we speke
of god prince of alle thinges: feigne who-
so feigne may, who was he that hath
conjoyned these dyverse thinges to-gidre?
And eek, at the laste, see wel that a thing
that is dyvers from any thing, that thilke
thing nis nat that same thing fro which
it is understonden to ben dyvers. Thanne
folweth it, that thilke thing that by his
nature is dyvers fro sovereign good, that
that thing nis nat sovereign good, but
certes, that were a felonous corseidnesse
to thinken that of him that nothing is
more worth. For alwey, of alle thinges,
the nature of hem ne may nat ben better
than his beginning, for which I may
concluden, by right verray reson, that
thilke that is beginning of alle thinges,
thilke same thing is sovereign good in his
substance.' 'Thou hast seyd right-
fully,' quod I.

'But we han graunted,' quod she, 'that
the sovereign good is blisfulnesse.' 'And
that is sooth,' quod I.

'Thanne,' quod she, 'moten we wiles
graunten and confessen that thilke same
soverein good be god.' 'Certes,' quod
I, 'I no may nat denye ne withstonde
the resonns purpose; and I see wel that
it folweth by strengthe of the premisses.'

'Loke now,' quod she, 'yif this be
proved yit more firmly thus: that ther
no mowen nat ben two sovereign goodes
that ben dyverse amonge hem-self. For
certes, the goodes that ben dyverse
amonge hem-self, that oon nis nat that
that other is, thanne ne may neither of
hem ben parfit, so as either of hem lak-

er. But that that nis nat
ay seen apertly that it nis

The thinges, thanne, that
ly goode, ne mowen by no
erse. But I have wel con-
lisfulnesse and god ben the
l; for whiche it mot nedes
erein blisfulnesse is sovereign

'Nothing,' quod I, 'nis
st than this, ne more ferme
e a more worthy thing than
ben concluded.'

se thinges thanne,' quod she,
se geometriens, whan they
air proposiciouns, ben wont
a thinges that they clepen

declaraciouns of forseide
so wole I yeve thee heer as
or a mede of coroune. For-
noche as by the getinge of
nen ben makid blisful, and
s divinitee: thanne is it
open, that by the getinge of
ben makid blisful. Right
tinge of justice [they ben
and by the getinge of sa-
ben makid wyse: right so,
e semblable resoun, whan
n divinitee, they ben makid
inne is every blisful man
tes, by nature, ther nis but
by the participacioun of
er ne let ne desturbeth
ther ne ben manye goddes.'

quod I, 'a fair thing and
epe it as thou wolt; be it
rollarie,' *or mede of coroune*

od she, 'nothing nis fayrer
ing that by resoun sholde
o thise forseide thinges.'

'?' quod I.
she, 'as it semeth that blis-
neth many thinges, it were

whether that alle thise
n or conjoignen as a maner
fulnesse, by dyversitee of
membres; or elles, yif that
ilke thinges be swich that it
y him-self the substaunce of
that alle thise othre thinges

ben referred and brought to blisfulnesse,'
that is to seyn, as to the cheef of hem.
'I wolde,' quod I, 'that thou makedest
me cleerly to understonde what thou
seyst, and that thou recordedest me the 185
forseyde thinges.'

'Have I nat juged,' quod she, 'that
blisfulnesse is good?' 'Yis, forsothe,'
quod I; 'and that sovereign good.'

'Adde thanne,' quod she, 'thilke good, 190
that is makid blisfulnesse, to alle the for-
seyde thinges; for thilke same blisful-
nesse that is demed to ben sovereign
suffisaunce, thilke selve is sovereign power,
soverein reverence, sovereign cleernesse *or* 195
noblesse, and sovereign delyt. **Conclusio.**

What seyst thou thanne of alle thise
thinges, that is to seyn, suffisaunce,
power, and this othre thinges; ben they
thanne as membres of blisfulnesse, or ben 200
they referred and brought to sovereign
good, right as alle thinges that ben
brought to the chief of hem?' 'I under-
stonde wel;' quod I, 'what thou pur-
posest to seke; -but I desire for to herkne 205
that thou shewe it me.'

'Tak now thus the discrecioun of this
question,' quod she. 'Yif alle thise
thinges,' quod she, 'weren membres to
felicitee, than weren they dyverse that 210
oon from that other; and swich is the
nature of parties or of membres, that
dyverse membres compounen a body.'
'Certes,' quod I, 'it hath wel ben shewed
heer-biforn, that alle thise thinges ben 215
alle o thing.'

'Thanne ben they none membres,' quod
she; 'for elles it sholde seme that blis-
fulnesse were conioigned al of on mem-
bre allone; but that is a thing that may 220
nat be don.' 'This thing,' quod I, 'nis
nat doutous; but I abyde to herkennen the
remnaunt of thy questioun.'

'This is open and cleer,' quod she,
'that alle othre thinges ben referred and 225
brought to good. For therefore is suffi-
saunce requered, for it is demed to ben
good; and forthy is power requered, for
men trowen also that it be good; and this
same thing mowen we thinken and con- 230
jecten of reverence, and of noblesse, and

of delyt. Thanne is sovereign good the
 somme and the cause of al that aughte
 ben desired; for-why thilke thing that
 235 with-holdeth no good in it-self, ne sem-
 blaunce of good, it ne may nat wel in no
 manere be desired ne requered. And the
 contrarie: for thogh that thinges by hir
 nature ne ben nat goode, algates, yif men
 240 wene that ben goode, yit ben they desired
 as though that they weren verrayliche
 goode. And therfor is it that men
 oughten to wene by right, that bountee
 be the sovereign fyn, and the cause of alle
 245 the thinges that ben to requeren. But
 certes, thilke that is cause for which men
 requeren any thing, it semeth that thilke
 same thing be most desired. As thus: yif
 that a wight wolde ryden for cause of
 250 hele, he ne desireth nat so mochel the
 moevinge to ryden, as the effect of his
 hele. Now thanne, sin that alle thinges
 ben requered for the grace of good, they
 ne ben nat desired of alle folk more
 255 thanne the same good. But we han
 graunted that blisfulnesse is that thing,
 for whiche that alle thise othre thinges
 ben desired; thanne is it thus: that,
 certes, only blisfulnesse is requered and
 260 desired. By whiche thing it showeth
 cleerly, that of good and of blisfulnesse is
 al oon and the same substaunce.' 'I see
 nat,' quod I, 'wherfore that men mighten
 discorden in this.'

265 'And we han shewed that god and
 verray blisfulnesse is al oo thing.' 'That
 is sooth,' quod I.

'Thanne mowen we conclude sikerly,
 that the substaunce of god is set in thilke
 270 same good, and in non other place.

✓ METRE X. *Huc omnes pariter uenite capti.*

O cometh alle to-gider now, ye that ben
 y-caught and y-bounde with wikkede
 cheynes, by the deceivable delyt of erthely
 thinges enhabitinge in your thought!
 5 Heer shal ben the reste of your labours,
 heer is the havene stable in peysible
 quiete; this allone is the open refut to
 wrecches. Glosa. *This is to seyn, that
 ye that ben combred and deceived with*

*worldely affeccions, cometh now to this
 sovereign good, that is god, that is refut to
 hem that wolen comen to him. Textus.*
 Alle the thinges that the river Tagus
 yeveth yow with his goldene gravailles, or
 elles alle the thinges that the river
 Hermus yeveth with his rede brinke, or
 that Indus yeveth, that is next the hote
 party of the world, that medleth the
 grene stones with the whyte, ne sholde
 nat cleeren the lookinge of your thought,
 but hyden rather your blinde corages
 with-in hir derknesse. Al that lyketh
 yow heer, and excyteth and moeveth your
 thoughtes, the erthe hath norished it in
 hise lowe caves. But the shyninge, by
 whiche the hevene is governed and
 whennes he hath his strengthe, that
 eschueth the derke overthrowinge of the
 sowle; and who-so may knowen thilke
 light of blisfulnesse, he shal wel seyn,
 that the whyte bemes of the sonne ne ben
 nat cleer.'

PROSE XI. *Assentior, inquam.*

Boece. 'I assente me,' quod I; 'for
 alle thise thinges ben strongly bounden
 with right ferme resouns.'

Philosophie. 'How mochel wilt thou
 preysen it,' quod she, 'yif that thou
 knowe what thilke good is?' 'I wol
 preyse it,' quod I, 'by prys with-outen
 ende, yif it shal bityde me to knowe also
 to-gider god that is good.'

'Certes,' quod she, 'that shal I do thee
 by verray resoun, yif that tho thinges
 that I have concluded a litel her-bifore
 dwellen only in hir first graunting.'
 'They dwellen graunted to thee,' quod I;
*this is to seyn, as who seith: I graunte thy
 forseide conclusiouns.*

'Have I nat shewed thee,' quod she,
 'that the thinges that ben requered of
 many folkes ne ben nat verray goodes ne
 parfite, for they ben dyverse that oon fro
 that othre; and so as ech of hem is lak-
 kinge to other, they ne han no power to
 bringen a good that is ful and absolut!
 But thanne at erst ben they verray good
 whanne they ben gadered to-gider all'

in-to o forme and in-to oon wirkinge, so that thilke thing that is suffiaunce, thilke same be power, and reverence, and noblesse, and mirthe; and forsothe, but- yif alle these thinges ben alle oon same thing, they ne han nat wherby that they mowen ben put in the noumber of thinges that oughten ben requered or desired.' 'It is shewed,' quod I; 'ne her-of may ; ther no man doute.'

'The thinges thanne,' quod she, 'that ne ben no goodes whanne they ben dyverse, and whan they begynnen to ben alle oon thing thanne ben they goodes, ne comth it hem nat thanne by the getinge of unites, that they ben makid goodes?' 'So it semeth,' quod I.

'But al thing that is good,' quod she, 'grauntest thou that it be good by the participacioun of good, or no?' 'I graunte it,' quod I.

'Thanne most thou graunte,' quod she, 'by semblable resoun, that oon and good be oo same thing. For of thinges, o of whiche that the effect nis nat naturelly diverse, nedes the substance mot be oo same thing.' 'I ne may nat denye that,' quod I.

'Hast thou nat knowen wel,' quod she, 'that al thing that is hath so longe his dwellinge and his substance as longe as it is oon; but whan it forletoth to ben oon, it mot nedes dyen and corump to-gider?' 'In which manere?' quod I.

'Right as in bestes,' quod she, 'whan the soule and the body ben conjoined in oon and dwellen to-gider, it is cleped a best. And whan hir unites is destroyed by the disseverance of that oon from that other, than sheweth it wel that it is a ded thing, and that it nis no lenger so best. And the body of a wight, whyl it dwelleth in oo forme by conjunccioun of membres, it is wel seyn that it is a figure of man-kinde. And yif the parties of the body ben so devyded and discevered, that oon fro that other, that they destroyen unites, the body forleteth to ben that it was biforn. And, who-so wolde renne in the same manere by alle thinges, he sholde seen that, with-oute

doute, every thing is in his substance as longe as it is oon; and whan it forleteth to ben oon, it dyeth and perissbeth.' 'Whan I considere,' quod I, 'manye so thinges, I see non other.'

'Is ther any-thing thanne,' quod she, 'that, in as moche as it liveth naturelly, that forleteth the talent or appetyt of his beinge, and desireth to come to deeth and to corrupcioun?' 'Yif I considere,' quod I, 'the beestes that han any maner nature of wilninge and of nillinge, I ne finde no best, but-yif it be constreined fro with-oute forth, that forleteth or despyseth the entencioun to liven and to duren, or that wole, his thankes, hasten him to dyen. For every best travailleth him to deffande and kepe the savacioun of his lyf, and eschnoth deeth and destruccioun. But certes, I doute me of herbes and of trees, that is to seyn, that I am in a doute of swiche thinges as herbes or trees, that ne han no felinge sowles, ne no naturel wirkinges servinge to appetytes as bestes han, whether they han appetyt to dwellen and to duren.'

'Certes,' quod she, 'ne ther-of thar thee nat doute. Now loke up-on these herbes and these trees, they waxen first in swiche places as ben covenable to hem, in whiche places they ne mowen nat sone dyen ne dryen, as longe as hir nature may deffenden hem. For som of hem waxen in feldes, and som in mountaignes, and othre waxen in mareys, and othre cleven on roches, and somme waxen plantivous in sondes; and yif that any wight enforce him to beren hem in-to othre places, they waxen drye. For nature yeveth to every thing that that is convenient to him, and travailleth that they ne dye nat, as longe as they han power to dwellen and to liven. What woltow seyn of this, that they drawn alle hir norishinges by hir rotes, right as they halden hir mouthes y-plounged with-in the erthes, and sheden by hir maryes hir wode and hir bark? And what woltow seyn of this, that thilke thing that is right soft, as the marye is, that is alwey hid in the sete, al with-

inne, and that is defended fro with-oute
 by the stedfastnesse of wode, and that
 130 the uttereste bark is put ayeins the de-
 temperaunce of the hevne, as a defendour
 mighty to suffren harm? And thus,
 certes, maystow wel seen how greet is
 the diligence of nature, for alle thinges
 135 renovelene and puplisschen hem with seed
 y-multiplied: nother nis no man that ne
 wot wel that they ne ben right as
 a fundament and edifice, for to duren
 nat only for a tyme, but right as for
 140 to duren perdurably by generacioun. And
 the thinges eek that men wenen ne haven
 none sowles, no desire they nat ech of
 hem by semblable resoun to kepen that
 is hire, *that is to seyn, that is acordinge to*
 145 *hir nature in conservacioun of hir beinge*
and enduringe? For wher-for elles bereth
 lightnesse the flaumes up, and the
 weighte presseth the erthe a-down, but
 for as moche as thilke places and thilke
 150 moevinges ben covenable to everich of
 hem? And forsothe every thing kepeth
 thilke that is acordinge and propre to
 him, right as thinges that ben contraries
 and enemys corompen hem. And yit the
 155 harde thinges, as stones, clyven and
 holden hir parties to-gider right faste and
 harde, and defenden hem in withstand-
 inge that they ne departe nat lightly
 a-twinne. And the thinges that ben
 160 softe and fetinge, as is water and eyr,
 they departen lightly, and yeven place
 to hem that braken or devyden hem;
 but natheles, they retournen some ayein
 in-to the same thinges fro whennes they
 165 ben arraced. But fyr fleeth and refuseth
 al devisioun. Ne I ne trete nat heer
 now of wilful moevinges of the sowle
 that is knowinge, but of the naturel
 entencioun of thinges, as thus: right as
 170 we swolve the mete that we receiven and
 ne thinke nat on it, and as we drawen
 our breeth in slepinge that we wite it
 nat whyle we slepen. For certes, in the
 beestes, the love of hir livinges ne of hir
 175 beinges ne comth nat of the wilninges
 of the sowle, but of the beginninges of
 nature. For certes, thorough constrain-
 inge causes, wil desireth and embraceth

ful ofte tymes the deeth that nature
 dredeth, *that is to seyn as thus: that*
a man may ben constreyned so, by some
cause, that his wil desireth and taketh the
deeth which that nature hateth and dred-
eth ful sore. And somtyme we seeth
 the contrarye, as thus: that the wil of
 a wight destorbeth and constreyneth that
 that nature desireth and requereth al-
 wey, *that is to seyn, the werk of gener-*
acioun, by the whiche generacioun only
dwelleth and is sustened the long duri-
bletee of mortal thinges. And thus this
 charitee and this love, that every thing
 hath to him-self, ne comth nat of the
 moevinge of the sowle, but of the en-
 tencioun of nature. For the purvioune
 of god hath yeven to thinges that ben
 creat of him this, that is a ful gret cause
 to liven and to duren; for which they
 desiren naturelly hir lyf as longe as ever
 they mowen. For which thou mayst nat
 drede, by no manere, that alle the
 thinges that ben anywhere, that they ne
 requeren naturelly the ferme stabi-
 lene of perdurable dwellinge, and eek the
 eschuinge of destruccioun. 'Now con-
 fesse I wel,' quod I, 'that I see now wel
 certainly, with-oute doutes, the thinges
 that whylom sameden uncertain to me.'

'But,' quod she, 'thilke thing that
 desireth to be and to dwellen perdurably,
 he desireth to ben oon, for yif that that
 oon were destroyed, certes, beinge ne
 shulde ther non dwellen to no wight.'
 'That is sooth,' quod I.

'Thanne,' quod she, 'desiren alle
 thinges oon?' 'I assente,' quod I.

'And I have shewed,' quod she, 'that
 thilke same oon is thilke that is good!'
 'Ye, for sothe,' quod I.

'Alle thinges thanne,' quod she, 're-
 quiren good, and thilke good thanne
 mayst thou deservyn right thus: good
 is thilke thing that every wight desireth.'
 'Ther ne may be thought,' quod I, 'no
 more verray thing. For either alle
 thinges ben referred and brought to
 nought, and fleteren with-oute governaunce,
 despoiled of oon as of hir propre heved;
 or elles, yif ther be any thing to which

hinges tenden and hyen, that
e ben the sovereign good of alle

seyde she thus: 'O my nory,
I have gret gladnesse of thee;
ast flicched in thyn herte the
thfastnesse, *that is to seyn*, the
at this thing hath ben des-
thee, in that thou seydest
wistest nat a litel her-biforn.'
'that?' quod I.

'ou ne wistest nat,' quod she,
as the ende of thinges; and
is the thing that every wight
nd for as mochel as we han
d comprehended that good is
g that is desired of alle, thanne
nedes confessen, that good is
alle thinges.

*L. Quisquis profunda mentis
uestigat uerum.*

that seketh sooth by a deep
l coveiteth nat to ben deceived
-weyes, lat him rollen and
ith-inne him-self the light of
sight; and lat him gadere
lyninge in-to a compas, the
vinges *of his thoughtes*; and
then his corage that he hath
nd hid in his tresors, al that
seth or seketh fro with-oute.
e thilke thinge, that the blake
rrouer whylom hadde y-covered,
n more clearly thanne Phebus
e shyneth. Glosa. *Who-so
he deep grounde of sooth in his
id wol nat be deceived by fals
as that goon amis fro the trouthe,
d examine and rolle with-inne
nature and the propretees of the
l lat him yit eftsones examine
his thoughtes by good delibera-
at he deme; and lat him techen
at it hath, by natural principles
y-hid with-in it-self, alle the
whiche he imagineth to ben in
h-oute. And thanne alle the
f his misknowinge shal seme more
o sighte of his understandinge*

*thanne the sonne ne semeth to sighte with-
oute-forth.* For certes the body, bring- 30
inge the weighte of foryetinge, ne hath
nat chased out of your thoughte al the
cleernesse *of your knowinge*; for certainly
the seed of sooth baldeth and clyveth
with-in your corage, and it is awaked 35
and excyted by the winde and by the
blastes of doctrine. For wherfor elles
demen ye of your owne wil the rightes,
whan ye ben axed, but-yif so were that
the norisshinge *of resoun* ne livede y- 40
plounged in the depthe of your herte?
*this is to seyn, how sholden men demen the
sooth of any thing that were axed, yif ther
nere a rote of soothfastnesse that were y-
plounged and hid in naturel principles, the* 45
*whiche soothfastnesse lived with-in the deep-
nesse of the thought.* And yif so be that
the Muse and the doctrine of Plato
singeth sooth, al that every wight lerneth,
he ne doth no-thing elles thanne but 50
recordeth, as men recorden thinges that
ben foryeten.'

PROSE XII. *Tum ego, Platoni, inquam.*

Thanne seide I thus: 'I acorde me
gretly to Plato, for thou remembreth
and recorderst me thise thinges yit the
secounde tyme; *that is to seyn*, first whan
I loste my memorie by the contagious 5
conjunccioun of the body with the sowle;
and eftsones afterward, whan I loste it,
confounded by the charge and by the
burdene of my sorwe.'

And thanne seide she thus: 'yif thou 10
loke,' quod she, 'first the thinges that
thou hast graunted, it ne shal nat ben
right fer that thou ne shalt remembre
thilke thing that thou seydest that thou
nistest nat.' 'What thing?' quod I. 15

'By whiche government,' quod she,
'that this world is governed.' 'Me
remembreth it wel,' quod I; 'and I con-
fesse wel that I ne wiste it naught. But
al-bo-it so that I see now from a-fer what 20
thou purposest, algates, I desire yit to
herkene it of thee more pleyntly.'

'Thou ne wendest nat,' quod she,
'a litel her-biforn, that men sholden

25 doute that this world was governed by
god. 'Certes quod I be yit ned unto
I y taught, no I nol never wene that
it were to doute *as who seith, but I wol*
30 *wel that god governeth this world* and
I shal shortly answeren thee by what
reasons I am brought to this. This
world, quod I, 'if so manye dyverse and
contrarious parties, ne mighte never han
ben assembled in o forme, but yif ther
35 more on that conjoynede so manye dy-
verse thinges, and the same dyversitee
of hir natures, that so discorden that
oot fro that other, muste departen and
urjournen the thinges that ben con-
40 joyned, yif ther ne were on that con-
tenence that he hita conjoined and y-
bounde. Ne the certein ordre of nature
ne sholde nat bringe forth so ordene
moevinges, by places, by tymes, by
45 joinges, by spaces, by qualitees, yif ther
ne were on that were by at-least
dwellinge, that ordernede and disponede
these dyversitees of moevinges. And
thilke thing what-so-ever it be, by which
50 that alle thinges ben y-maked and y-lad,
I clepe him 'god', that is a word that
is used to alle folk.

Thanne seide she: 'sin thou selest
thus these thinges,' quod she, 'I trowe
55 that I have litle more to done that thou,
mighty of weifulnesse, loud and sounde,
ne see otheses thy contree. But lat us
loken the thinges that we han purposed
her-hilern. Have I nat nombred and
60 seyde, quod she, 'that suffisaunce is in
blisfulnesse, and we han acorded that
god is thilke same blisfulnesse?' 'Yis,
forsothe' quod I.

'And that, to governen this world,'
65 quod she, 'ne shal he never han nede
of non help fro with-oute? For elles,
yif he hadde nede of any help, he ne
sholde nat have no ful suffisaunce?'
Yis, thus it mot nedes be,' quod I.

'Thanne ordaineth he by him-self al-
70 le alle thinges?' quod she. 'That
may nat be denyed,' quod I.

And I have shewed that god is the
same good?' 'It remembreth me wel,'
75 quod I.

'Thanne ordaineth he alle thinges by
thilke good,' quod she, 'sin he, which
that we han acorded to be good, governeth
alle thinges by him-self, and he is at
a keye and a store by which that the
edifice of this world is y-kept stable
and with-oute coroumpinge.' 'I acorde
me greetly,' quod I, 'at I I apercevede
a litle her-hilern that thou waldest seye
thus, al-be-it so that it were by a thilke
suspicion.'

'I trowe it wel,' quod she. 'for as
I trowe, thou ledest now more entently
thyne eye to loken the verray good.
But natheles the thing that I shal telle
thee yit ne sheweth nat laese to loken.'
'What is that?' quod I.

'So as men trowen,' quod she, 'and
that rightfully, that god governeth alle
thinges by the keye of his goodnesse,
and alle these same thinges, as I have
taught thee, hasten hem by naturel in-
tencion to comen to good: ther may o
man doute that they ne be governed
voluntarily, and that they ne converten
hem of hir owne wil to the wil of our
ordenour, as they that ben acordinge and
enclaynge to hir governour and hir
king.' 'It mot nedes be so,' quod I;
'for the reaume ne sholde nat seemen
blisful yif ther were a volk of mis-
drawinges in dyverse parties; ne the
savyng of obedient thinges ne sholde nat
be.'

'Thanne is ther nothing' quod she,
that kepeth his nature, that enforceth
him to given-ayen god?' 'Nay,' quod I.

'And yet that any-thing enforced him
to with-stande god mighte it availen at
the laste ayens him, that we han
graunted to ben almighty by the right
of blisfulnesse?' 'Certes, quod I, 'at
outrely it ne mighte nat availen him.'

'Thanne is ther no-thing,' quod she,
'that either wole or may with-standen
to this sovereign good?' 'I trowe nat,'
quod I.

'Thanne is thilke the sovereign good,'
quod she, 'that alle thinges governeth
strongly, and ordeyneth hem softly.'
Thanne seide I thus: 'I delyte me'

nat only in the endes or in the
the resouns that thou hast
and proeved, but thilke wordes
usest delyten me moche more ;
laste, fooles that sumtyme
rete thinges oughten ben a-
hem-self ;' *that is to seyn, that*
that reprehenden wikkedly the
it touchen goddes governaunce,
ne ben ashamed of our-self: as
yde that god refuseth only the
men, and ne entremeteth nat of

last wel herd,' quod she, 'the
the poetes, how the giaunts
the hevene *with the goddes* ;
he, the debonair force of god
hem, as it was worthy ; *that is*
estroyede the giaunts, as it was
but wilt thou that we joignen
ilke same resouns ? For per-
of swich conjuncioun may
som fair sparkle of sooth.'
I, 'as thee liste.'

thou,' quod she, 'that god ne
y ? No man is in doute of it.'
quod I, 'no wight ne douteth
e in his minde.'

'quod she, 'that is almighty,
nothing that he ne may ?'
with,' quod I.

d don yvel ?' quod she. 'Nay,
quod I.

is yvel nothing,' quod she,
he ne may nat don yvel that
lle thinges.' 'Scornest thou
d I ; 'or elles pleyest thou or
ou me, that hast so woven me
resouns the hous of Dedalus,
ced that it is unable to be un-
on that other-whyle entrest
isest, and other-whyle isest
entrest, ne foldest thou nat
replicacioun of wordes, a maner
cercle or environinge of the
devyne ? For certes, a litel
whan thou bigunne at blisful-
u seydest that it is sovereign
seydest that it is set in sovereign
seydest that god him-self is
god ; and that god is the fulle

blisfulnesse ; for which thou yave me as
a covenable yift, *that is to seyn*, that no
wight nis blisful but-yif he be god also 180
ther-with. And seidest eek, that the
forme of good is the substaunce of god
and of blisfulnesse ; and seidest, that
thilke same oon is thilke same good,
that is requered and desired of alle the 185
kinde of thinges. And thou proevedest,
in disputinge, that god governeth all the
thinges of the world by the governements
of bountee, and seydest, that alle thinges
wolen obeyen to him ; and seydest, that 190
the nature of yvel nis no-thing. And
thise thinges ne shewedest thou nat with
none resouns y-taken fro with-oute, but
by proeves *in cercles* and hoomlich knowen ;
the whiche proeves drawn to hem-self 195
hir feith and hir acord, everich of hem
of other.'

Thanne seyde she thus : 'I ne scorne
thee nat, *ne pleye, ne deceive thee* ; but
I have shewed thee the thing that is 200
grettest over alle thinges by the yift of
god, that we whylom preyeden. For this
is the forme of the devyne substaunce,
that is swich that it ne slydeth nat in-to
outterest foreine thinges, ne ne receiveth 205
no straunge thinges in him ; but right
as Parmenides seyde *in Greek* of thilke
devyne substaunce ; he seyde thus : that
"thilke devyne substaunce torneth the
world and the moevable cercle of thinges, 210
whyl thilke devyne substaunce kepeth
it-self with-oute moevinge ;" *that is to*
seyn, that it ne moeveth never-mo, and yit it
moeveth alle othre thinges. But natheles,
yif I have stired resouns that ne ben nat 215
taken fro with-oute the compas of thing
of which we treten, but resouns that ben
histowed with-in that compas, ther nis
nat why that thou sholdest merveilen ;
sin thou hast lerned by the sentence of 220
Plato, that "nedes the wordes moten be
cosines to the thinges of which they
spoken."

METRE XII. *Felix, qui potuit boni.*

Blisful is that man that may seen the
clere welle of good ; blisful is he that

may unbinden him fro the bondes of the
 hevy erthe. The poete of Trace, *Orpheus*,
 5 that whylom hadde right greet sorwe
 for the deeth of his wyf, after that he
 hadde maked, by his weeply songes, the
 wodes, moevable, to rennen; and hadde
 maked the riveres to stonden stille; and
 10 hadde maked the hertes and the hindes
 to joignen, dredeles, hir sydes to cruel
 lyouns, *for to herkennen his songe*; and
 hadde maked that the hare was nat agast
 of the hounde, which that was plesed by
 15 his songe: so, whan the moste ardaunt
 love of his wif brende the entrailes of his
 brest, ne the songes that hadden over-
 comen alle thinges ne mighten nat as-
 swagen hir lord *Orpheus*, he pleynede
 20 him of the hevene goddes that weren
 cruel to him; he wente him to the houses
 of helle. And there he temprede hise
 blaundisshinge songes by resowninge
 strenges, and spak and song in wepinge
 25 al that ever he hadde received and laved
 out of the noble welles of his moder
Calliope the goddesse; and he song with
 as mochel as he mighte of wepinge, and
 with as moche as love, that doubledde his
 30 sorwe, mighte yeve him and techen him;
 and he commoevede the helle, and re-
 querede and bisoughte by swete preyere
 the lordes of sowles in helle, of relesinge;
that is to seyn, to yilden him his wyf.
 35 *Cerberus*, the porter of helle, with his
 three hevedes, was caught and al abayst
 for the newe song; and the three god-
 desses, *Furies*, and vengeresses of felonyes,
 that tormenten and agasten the sowles
 40 by anoy, woxen sorwful and sory, and

wepen teres for pitee. Tho ne was nat
 the heved of *Ixion* y-tormented by the
 overthrowinge wheel; and *Tantalus*, that
 was destroyed by the woodnesse of long
 thirst, despyseth the flodes to drinke;
 the fowl that highte *voltor*, that eateth
 the stomak or the giser of *Tityus*, is so
 fulfild of his song that it nil eten ne
 tyren no more. At the laste the last
 and juge of sowles was moeved to miseri-
 cordes and cryde, "we ben overcome,"
 quod he; "yive we to *Orpheus* his wyf
 to bere him companye; he hath wel y-
 bought hir by his song and his dities;
 but we wol putte a lawe in this, and
 covenannt in the yifte: *that is to seyn*,
 that, til he be out of helle, yif he lete
 behinde him, that his wyf shal come
 ayein unto us." But what is he that
 may yive a lawe to loveres? Love is
 a gretter lawe and a strengier to him-self
 than any lawe that men may yeven. Alas!
 whan *Orpheus* and his wyf weren almost
 at the termes of the night, *that is to seyn*,
 at the laste boundes of helle, *Orpheus*
 lokede abakward on *Eurydice* his wyf,
 and loste hir, and was deed.

This fable aperteineth to yow alle, who-
 so-ever desireth or seketh to lede his
 thought in-to the sovereign day, *that is to*
seyn, to cleernesse of sovereign good. For
 who-so that ever be so overoomen that
 he fleche his eyen into the putte of helle,
that is to seyn, who-so sette his thoughts in
erthely thinges, al that ever he hath
 drawn of the noble good celestial, he
 leseth it whan he loketh the helles, *that*
is to seyn, in-to lowe thinges of the erthe.

Explicit Liber tercius.

BOOK IV.

PROSE I. *Hec cum Philosophia, dignitate uultus.*

WHAN Philosophye hadde songen softly
 and delitably the forseide thinges, kepinge
 the dignitee of hir chere and the weighte
 of hir wordes, I thanne, that ne hadde

nat al-outerly foryeten the wepinge and
 the mourninge that was set in myn
 herte, forbrak the entencioun of hir that
 entendede yit to seyn some othre thinges
 'O,' quod I, 'thou that art gyderesse of
 verrey light; the thinges that thou hast
 seid me hider-to ben so clere to me and

so shewing by the devyne lookinge of hem, and by thy resouns, that they ne mowen ben overcomen. And thilke
 5 thinges that thou toldest me, al-be-it so that I hadde whylom foryeten hem, for the sorwe of the wrong that hath ben don to me, yit natheles they ne weren nat al-outruly unknownen to me. But this
 10 same is, namely, a right greet cause of my sorwe, so as the governour of thinges is good, yif that yveles mowen ben by any weyes; or elles yif that yveles passen with-oute punisshinge. The whiche thing
 15 only, how worthy it is to ben wondred up-on, thou considerest it wel thy-self certainly. But yit to this thing ther is yit another thing y-joined, more to ben wondred up-on. For felonye is emperesse,
 20 and floureth ful of riches; and vertunis nat al-only with-oute medes, but it is cast under and fortroden under the feet of felonous folk; and it abyeth the torments in stede of wikkede felonnes.
 25 Of alle whiche thinges ther nis no wight that may merveylen y-nough, ne compleine, that swiche thinges ben doon in the regne of god, that alle thinges woot and alle thinges may, and ne wole nat
 30 but only gode thinges.'

Thanne seyde she thus: 'Certes,' quod she, 'that were a greet merveyle, and an enbasahinge with-uten ende, and wel more horrible than alle monstres, yif it
 35 were as thou wenest; that is to seyn, that in the right ordenee hous of so mochel a fader and an ordenour of meynes, that the vesseles that ben foule and vyle sholden ben honoured and heried, and
 40 the precious vesseles sholden ben defouled and vyle; but it nis nat so. For yif tho thinges that I have concluded a litel her-biforn ben kept hole and unraced, thou shalt wel knowe by the
 45 autoritee of god, of the whos regne I speke, that certes the gode folk ben alwey mighty, and shrewes ben alwey out-cast and feble; ne the vyces ne ben never-mo with-oute payne, ne the vertues
 50 ne ben nat with-oute mede; and that blisfulneses comen alwey to goode folk, and infortune comth alwey to wikked

folk. And thou shalt wel knowe many thinges of this kinde, that shollen cesen thy pleintes, and strengthen thee with
 55 stedefast sadnesse. And for thou hast seyn the forme of the verray blisfulnesse by me, that have whylom shewed it thee, and thou hast knowen in whom blisfulnesse is y-set, alle thinges y-treted that
 60 I trowe ben necessarie to putten forth, I shal shewe thee the way that shal bringen thee ayein un-to thyn hous. And I shal flicchen fetheres in thy thought, by whiche it may arysen in heighte, so
 65 that, alle tribulacioun y-don away, thou, by my gydinge and by my path and by my sledes, shalt mowe retorne hool and sound in-to thy contree.

METRE I. *Sunt etenim pennas volucres mihi.*

I have, forsothe, swifte fetheres that surmounten the heighte of hevne. Whan the swifte thought hath clothed it-self in the fetheres, it despyseth the hateful
 5 erthes, and surmounteth the roundnesse of the grete ayr; and it seeth the cloudes behinde his bak; and passeth the heighte of the region of the fyr, that eschaufeth by the swifte moevinge of the firmament,
 10 til that he areyseth him in-to the houses that beren the sterres, and joyneth his weyes with the sonne Phebus, and felawshipeth the way of the olde colde Saturnus; and he y-maked a knight of the
 15 clere sterre; that is to seyn, that the thought is maked goddes knight by the seekinge of trouthe to comen to the verray knowleche of god. And thilke thought
 20 renneth by the cercle of the sterres, in alle places ther-as the shyninge night is peinted; that is to seyn, the night that is cloudeles; for on nightes that ben cloudeles it semeth as the hevne were peinted with
 25 diverse images of sterres. And whanne he hath y-doon ther y-nough, he shal forleten the laste hevne, and he shal pressen and wenden on the bak of the swifte firmament, and he shal ben maked
 30 parfit of the worshipful light of god. Ther halt the lord of kinges the ceptre

of his might, and atempreth the governements of the world, and the shyninge juge of thinges, stable in him-self, governeth the swifte cart or wayn, *that is to*
 35 *seyn, the circular moevings of the sonne.*
 And yif thy wey ledeth thee ayein so that thou be brought thider, thanne wolt thou seye now that that is the contree that thou requerest, of which
 40 thou ne haddest no minde: "but now it remembreth me wel, heer was I born, heer wol I fastne my degree, heer wole I dwelle." But yif thee lyketh thanne to loken on the derknesse of the erthe
 45 that thou hast forleten, thanne shalt thou seen that thise felonous tyraunts, that the wrecchede peple dredeth, now shollen ben exyled fro thilke fayre contree.'

PROSE II. *Tum ego, Papae, inquam.*

Than seyde I thus: 'owh! I wondre me that thou bihetest me so grete thinges; ne I ne doute nat that thou ne mayst wel performe that thou bihetest. But
 5 I preye thee only this, that thou ne tarye nat to telle me thilke thinges that thou hast moeved.'

'First,' quod she, 'thou most nedes knowen, that goode folk ben alwey
 10 stronge and mighty, and the shrewes ben feble and desert and naked of alle strengthes. And of thise thinges, certes, everich of hem is declared and shewed by other. For so as good and yvel ben
 15 two contraries, yif so be that good be stedefast, than sheweth the feblesse of yvel al openly; and yif thou knowe cleerly the frelenesse of yvel, the stedefastnesse of good is knowen. But for as
 20 moche as the fey of my sentence shal be the more ferme and haboundaunt, I will gon by that oo wey and by that other; and I wole conferme the thinges that ben purposed, now on this syde and
 25 now on that syde. Two thinges ther ben in whiche the effect of alle the dedes of mankinde standeth, that is to seyn, wil and power; and yif that oon of thise two fayleth, ther nis nothing that may be

don. For yif that wil lakketh, ther nis no wight that undertaketh to don that he wol nat don; and yif power fayleth, the wil nis but in ydel and stant for naught. And ther-of cometh it, that yif thou see a wight that wolde geten that he may nat geten, thou mayst nat doute that power ne fayleth him to haven that he wolde.' 'This is open and cleer, quod I; 'ne it may nat ben deneyed in no manere.'

'And yif thou see a wight,' quod she 'that hath doon that he wolde doon thou nilt nat doute that he ne hath had power to don it?' 'No,' quod I.

'And in that that every wight may in that men may holden him mighty as who seyth, in so moche as man is mighty to don a thing, in so moche men halt his mighty; and in that that he ne may, in that men demen him to be feble.' 'I confesse it wel,' quod I.

'Remembreth thee,' quod she, 'that I have gadered and shewed by forseyd resouns that al the entencioun of the wil of mankinde, which that is lad by dyvers studies, hasteth to comen to blisfulnesse! 'It remembreth me wel,' quod I, 'that hath ben shewed.'

'And recordeth thee nat thanne,' quod she, 'that blisfulnesse is thilke same goode that men requeren; so that, whan the blisfulnesse is requered of alle, that goode also is requered and desired of alle.' 'It ne recordeth me nat,' quod I; 'for I have it gretly alwey ficched in my memorie.'

'Alle folk thanne,' quod she, 'good and eek badde, enforcen hem without difference of entencioun to comen to good?' 'This is a verray consequence,' quod I.

'And certein is,' quod she, 'that by the getinge of good ben men y-maked goode.' 'This is certein,' quod I.

'Thanne geten goode men that they desiren?' 'So semeth it,' quod I.

'But wikkede folk,' quod she, 'yif they geten the good that they desiren, they mowe nat be wikkede?' 'So is it,' quod I.

as that oon and that
a, 'desiren good, and the
a good, and nat the wikke
is it no doute that the
ben mighty and the wik-
feble?' 'Who-so that
'douteth of this, he ne
ere the nature of thinges
ence of resouna.'
s quod she, 'Yif that ther
that han oo same purpose
that oon of hem pursueth
h thilke same thing by
and that other ne may nat
tural office, but folweth, by
thanne is convenable to
nat accomplissheth his pur-
id yit he ne accomplissheth
purpos: whether of this
for more mighty?' 'Yif
e,' quod I, 'that thou wilt
yit I desire to herkno it
of thee.'
nat thanne deneye,' quod
moovement of goinge nis in
' 'No, forsothe,' quod I.
ne doutest nat,' quod she,
atural office of goinge ne
feet?' 'I no doute it
and she, 'yif that a wight
moeve and goth upon his
er, to whom thilke naturel
lakketh, enforceth him to
up-on his handes: which
oughte to ben holden the
by right?' 'Knut forth
t,' quod I, 'for no wight ne
is that may gon by naturel
ne be more mighty than he
at.'
overein good,' quod she,
liche purposed to the gode
alde, the gode folk seken it
fice of vertues, and the
reen hem to geten it by
yow *asfethely thinges*, which
atural office to geten thilke
good. Trowestow that it
wyse?' 'Nay,' quod I,
sequence is open and shew-

inge of thinges that I have granted;
that nedes gode folk moten ben mighty,
and shrewes feeble and unmighty.'

'Thou rennest a-right biforn me,' quod 135
she, 'and this is the jugement; *that is to*
seyn, I juge of thee right as thise leches
ben wont to hopen of *syke folk*, when
they aperceyven that nature is redressed
and withstondeth to the maladya. But, 140
for I see thee now al redy to the under-
standinge, I shal shewe thee more thikke
and continual resouna. For loke now how
greetly sheweth the feblesse and in-
firmitee of wikkede folk, that ne mowen 145
nat comen to that hir naturel entencion
ledeth hem, and yit almost thilke naturel
entencion constreinet hem. And what
were to demen *thanne of shrewes*, yif thilke
natural help hadde forleten hem, the 150
which *natural help of intencion* goth
away biforn hem, and is so greet that
unnethe it may ben overcome? Consider
thanne how greet defeaute of power and
how greet feblesse ther is in wikkede 155
felonous folk; *as icho sayth, the gretter thing*
that is covetied and the desire nat acom-
plisshed, of the lasse might is he that
coveteth it and may nat accomplishe. And
forthy Philosophie sayth thus by overein 160
good: No shrewes ne requeren nat lighte
medes ne veyne games, whiche they ne
may folwen ne holden; but they failen of
thilke somme and of the heighte of
thinges, *that is to seyn, overein good*, ne 165
thise wrecches ne comen nat to the affect
of *overein good*, the which they enforen
hem only to geten, by nightes and by
dayes; in the getinge of which good the
strengthe of good folk is ful wel y-sene. 170
For right so as thou mightest demen him
mighty of goinge, that gooth on his feet
til he mighte come to thilke place, fro the
whiche place ther ne laye no wey farther
to ben gon, right so most thou nedes 175
demen him for right mighty, that geteth
and ateyneth to the ende of alle thinges
that ben to desire, biyonde the whiche ende
ther nis nothing to desire. Of the which
power of good folk men may conclude, that 180
the wikked men semen to be bareine and
naked of alle strengthe. For-why for-

leten they vertues and folwen vyces? Nis it nat for that they ne knowen nat
 185 the goodes? But what thing is more feble and more caitif thanne is the blindnesse
 of ignoraunce? Or elles they knowen ful wel whiche thinges that they oughten
 folwe, but lecherye and coveityse over-
 190 throweth hem mistorned; and certes, so doth distemperaunce to feble men, that
 ne mowen nat wrastlen ayeins the vyces. Ne knowen they nat thanne wel that they
 forleten the good wilfully, and tornen
 195 hem wilfully to vyces? And in this wyse they ne forleten nat only to ben mighty,
 but they forleten al-outruly in any wyse for to ben. For they that forleten the
 comune fyn of alle thinges that ben, they
 200 forleten also therwith-al for to ben. And per-aventure it sholde semen to som folk
 that this were a merveile to seyn: that shrewes, whiche that contienen the more
 partye of men, ne ben nat ne han no
 205 beinge; but natheles, it is so, and thus stant this thing. For they that ben
 shrewes, I deneye nat that they ben shrewes; but I deneye, and seye simplye
 and plainly, that they ne ben nat, ne han
 210 no beinge. For right as thou mightest seyn of the carayne of a man, that it
 were a deed man, but thou ne mightest nat simplye callen it a man; so graunte
 I wel forsothe, that vicious folk ben wik-
 215 ked, but I ne may nat graunten absolutly and simplye that they ben. For thilke
 thing that with-holdeth ordre and kepeth nature, thilke thing is and hath beinge;
 but what thing that failleth of that, *that*
 220 *is to seyn, that he forleteth naturel ordre,* he forleteth thilke thing that is set in his
 nature. But thou wolt seyn, that shrewes mowen. Certes, that ne deneye I nat;
 but certes, hir power ne descendeth nat
 225 of strengthe, but of feblesse. For they mowen don wikkednesses; the whiche
 they ne mighte nat don, yif they mighten dwellen in the forme and in the doinge of
 good folk. And thilke power sheweth ful
 230 evidently that they ne mowen right naught. For so as I have gadered and
 proeved a litel her-biforn, that yvel is naught; and so as shrewes mowen only

but shrewednesses, this conclusioun is al cleer, that shrewes ne mowen right
 naught, ne han no power. And for as moche as thou understonde which is the
 strengthe of this power of shrewes, I have definissed a litel her-biforn, that nothing
 is so mighty as sovereign good.' 'That is sooth,' quod I.

'And thilke same sovereign good may don non yvel?' 'Certes, no,' quod I.

'Is ther any wight thanne,' quod she, 'that weneth that men mowen doon alle
 thinges?' 'No man,' quod I, 'but yf he be out of his witta.'

'But, certes, shrewes mowen don yvel,' quod she. 'Ye, wolde god,' quod I, 'that they mighten don non!'
 '

'Thanne,' quod she, 'so as he that is mighty to doon only but goode thinges
 may don alle thinges; and they that ben mighty to don yvele thinges ne mowen
 nat alle thinges: thanne is it open thing and manifest, that they that mowen don
 yvel ben of lasse power. And yit, to provee *this conclusioun*, ther helpeth me this, that
 I have y-shewed her-biforn, that alle power is to be noumbred among thinges
 that men oughten requere. And I have shewed that alle thinges, that oughten
 ben desired, ben referred to good, right as to a maner heighte of hir nature. But for
 to mowen don yvel and felonye ne may nat ben referred to good. Thanne nis nat
 yvel of the noumbir of thinges that oughte ben desired. But alle power
 oughte ben desired and requered. Than is it open and cleer that the power ne the
 mowing of shrewes nis no power; and of alle these thinges it sheweth wel, that the
 goode folke ben certainly mighty, and the shrewes douteles ben unmighty. And it
 is cleer and open that thilke opinioun of Plato is verray and sooth, that seith, that
 only wyse men may doon that they desiren; and shrewes mowen haunten
 that hem lyketh, but that they desiren, *that is to seyn, to comen to sovereign good,*
 they ne han no power to accomplisshen that. For shrewes don that hem list,
 whan, by the thinges in which they delyten, they wenen to ataine to thilke

285 good that they desiren ; but they ne geten
ne steinen nat ther-to, for vyces ne comen
nat to blisfulnesse.

MIRRA II. *Quos uides sedens celos.*

Who-so that the covartounes of hir
veyne aparailles mighte strepen of thise
pronde kinges, that thou seest sitten on
heigh in hir chaires gliteringe in shynings
5 purpre, environned with sorwful armures,
manasinge with cruel month, blowinge
by woodnesse of herte, he shulde seen
thanne that thilke lordes beren with-inne
hir corages ful streite chaines. For
10 lecherye tormenteth hem in that oon
syde with gredy venims ; and troublable
ire, that araiseth in him the fiodas of
troublings, tormenteth up-on that other
syde hir thought ; or sorwe halt hem wery
15 and y-caught ; or slydinge and deceyvinge
hope tormenteth hem. And therfore, sen
thou seest oon heed, *that is to seyn*, oon
tyraunt, beren so manye tyrannies,
thanne ne doth thilke tyraunt nat that
20 he desireth, sin he is cast down with so
manye wikkede lordes ; *that is to seyn*,
with so manye cyces, *that han so wikkedly*
lordshipes over him.

PROSE III. *Videamus igitur quanto in
ceno.*

Seestow nat thanne in how grete filthe
thise shrewes ben y-wrapped, and with
which cleernesse thise good folk shynen ?
In this sheweth it wel, that to goode folk
5 ne lakketh never-mo hir medes, ne
shrewes lakken never-mo torments. For
of alle thinges that ben y-doon, thilke
thing, for which any-thing is don, it
semeth as by right that thilke thing be
10 the mede of that, as thus : yif a man
renneth in the stadio, or in the furlong,
for the corone, thanne lyth the mede in
the corone for which he renneth. And
I have shewed that blisfulnesse is thilke
15 same good for which that alle thinges
ben doon. Thanne is thilke same good
purposed to the workes of mankinde
right as a comune mede ; which mede ne
may ben discovered fro good folk. For no

wight as by right, fro thannes-forth that 20
him lakketh goodnesse, ne shal ben
cleped good. For which thing, folk of
goode maneres, hir medes ne forsaken hem
never-mo. For al-be-it so that shrewes
waxen as wode as hem list ayeins goode 25
folk, yit never-the-lesse the corone of
wyse men shal nat fallen ne faden. For
foreine shrewednesse ne binimeth nat fro
the corages of goode folk hir propre
honour. But yif that any wight rejoyse 30
him of goodnesse that he hadde take fro
with-oute (*as who seith, yif that any wight*
hadde his goodnesse of any other man than
of him-self), certes, he that yaf him thilke
goodnesse, or elles som other wight, 35
mighte binime it him. But for as moche
as to every wight his owne propre bountee
yeveth him his mede, thanne at erst shal
he failen of mede whan he forleteth to
ben good. And at the laste, so as alle 40
medes ben requered for men wenen that
they ben goode, who is he that wolde
deme, that he that is right mighty of good
were part-les of mede ? And of what
mede shal he be guerdoned ? Certes, of 45
right faire mede and right grete aboveu
alle medes. Remembre thes of thilke
noble corolarie that I yaf thee a litel
her-bisorn ; and gader it to-gider in this
manere :—so as good him-self is blisful- 50
nesse, thanne is it cleer and certein, that
alle good folk ben makid blisful for they
ben goode, and thilke folk that ben blis-
ful, it acordeth and is covenable to ben
goddes. Thanne is the mede of goode 55
folk swich that no day shal enpeiren it,
ne no wikkednesse ne shal derken it, ne
power of no wight ne shal nat amenusen
it, *that is to seyn*, to ben makid goddes.
And sin it is thus, *that goode men ne faulen* 60
never-mo of hir mede, certes, no wys man
ne may doute of undepartable payne of
the shrewes ; *that is to seyn*, *that the payne*
of shrewes ne departeth nat from hem-self
never-mo. For so as goode and yvel, and 65
payne and medes ben contrarye, it mot
nedes ben, that right as we seen bityden
in guardoun of goode, that also mot the
payne of yvel answarey, by the contrarye
party, to shrewes. Now thanne, so as 70

bountee and prowesse ben the mede to
 goode folk, al-so is shrewednesse it-self
 torment to shrewes. Thanne, who-so that
 ever is entecched and defouled with
 75 peyne, he no douteth nat, that he is
 entecched and defouled with yvel. Yif
 shrewes thanne wolen preysen hem-self,
 may it semen to hem that they ben with-
 outen party of torment, sin they ben
 80 swiche that the uttereste wikkednesse
*(that is to seyn, wikkede thewes, which that
 is the uttereste and the worste kinde of
 shrewednesse)* ne defouleth ne enteccheth
 nat hem only, but infecteth and en-
 85 venimeth hem gretly? And also look on
 shrewes, that ben the contrarie party of
 goode men, how greet peyne felawshipeth
 and folweth hem! For thou hast lerned
 a litel her-biforn, that al thing that is
 90 and hath beinge is oon, and thilke same
 oon is good; thanne is this the conse-
 quence. that it semeth wel, that al that is
 and hath beinge is good; *this is to seyn,
 as who seyth, that beinge and unitee and*
 95 *goodnesse is al oon.* And in this manere
 it folweth thanne, that al thing that
 faileth to ben good, it stinteth for to be
 and for to han any beinge: wherfore it
 is, that shrewes stinten for to ben that
 100 they weren. But thilke other forme of
 mankinde, that is to seyn, the forme of
 the body with-oute, sheweth yit that thise
 shrewes weren whylom men; wher-for,
 whan they ben perverted and torned in-to
 105 malice, certes, than han they forlorn the
 nature of mankinde. But so as only
 bountee and prowesse may enhaunsen
 every man over other men; thanne mot
 it nedes be that shrewes, which that
 110 shrewednesse hath cast out of the con-
 dicioun of mankinde, ben put under the
 merite and the desert of men. Thanne
 bitydeth it, that yif thou seest a wight
 that be transformed into vyces, thou no
 115 mayst nat wene that he be a man. For
 yif he be ardaunt in avaryce, and that he
 be a ravinour by violence of foreine
 richesse, thou shalt seyn that he is lyke
 to the wolf. And yif he be felonous and
 120 with-oute reste, and exercyse his tonge
 to chydinges, thou shalt lykne him to the

hound. And yif he be a prevey awaitour
 y-hid, and rejoyseth him to ravisshe by
 wyles, thou shalt seyn him lyke to the
 fox-whelpes. And yif he be distempre
 12 and quaketh for ire, men shal wene that
 he bereth the corage of a lyoun. And yif
 he be dredful and fleinge, and dredeth
 thinges that ne oughten nat to ben dred,
 men shal holden him lyk to the hert. 13
 And yif he be slow and astoned and
 laeche, he liveth as an asse. And yif he
 be light and unstedfast of corage, and
 chaungeth ay his studies, he is lykned to
 briddes. And if he be plounged in foule 14
 and unclene luxuries, he is with-holden
 in the foule delycles of the foule sowe.
 Thanne folweth it, that he that forleteth
 bountee and prowesse, he forleteth to ben
 a man; sin he may nat passen in-to the 14
 condicioun of god, he is torned in-to
 a beest.

METRE III. *Vela Neritii dulcis.*

Eurus the wind aryvede the sailes of
Ulixes, duk of the contree of Narice, and
 his wandringe shippes by the see, in-to
 the ile ther-as *Circes*, the faire goddessse,
 doughter of the sonne, dwelleth; that 5
 modleth to hir newe gestic drinks that
 ben touched and maked with enchaunte-
 ments. And after that hir hand, mighty
 over the herbes, hadde chaunged hir
 gestic in-to dyverse maneres; that oon of 10
 hem, is covered his face with forme of
 a boor; that other is chaunged in-to
 a lyoun of the contree of Marmorike, and
 his nayles and his teeth wexen; that
 other of hem is neweliche chaunged in-to 15
 a wolf, and howleth whan he wolde wepe;
 that other goth debonairely in the hous
 as a tygre of Inde. But al-be-it so that
 the godhed of *Mercurie*, that is cleped the
 brid of Arcadie, hath had mercy of the 20
 duke *Ulixes*, biseged with dyverse yvels,
 and hath unbounden him fro the pesti-
 lence of his ostesse, algates the roweres
 and the marineres hadden by this y-
 drawn in-to hir mouthes and dronken 25
 the wikkede drinks. They that weren
 woxen swyn hadden by this y-chaunged

hir mete of breed, for to eten akornes of
okes. Non of hir limes ne dwelleth with
hem hole, but they han lost the voice and
the body; only hir thought dwelleth with
hem stable, that wepeth and biweileth
the monstrous chaunginge that they
suffren. O overlight hand (*as who seyth,*
15 *O! feble and light is the hand of Circes the*
enchauiteresse, that chaungeth the bodyes of
folkes in-to bestes, to regard and to com-
parisoun of mutacioun that is maked by
vycs); ne the herbes of Circes ne ben nat
40 mighty. For al-be-it so that they may
chaungen the limes of the body, algates
yit they may nat chaunge the hertes; for
with-inne is y-hid the strengthe and vigor
of men, in the secree tour of hir hertes;
45 *that is to seyn, the strengthe of resoun.* But
thilke venims of vycs to-drawen a man
to hem more mightily than the venim of
Circes; for vycs ben so cruel that they
percen and thorough-passen the corage
50 with-inne; and, thogh they ne anoye nat
the body, yit vycs wooden to *destroye men*
by wounde of thought.'

PROSE IV. *Tum ego, Fateor, inquam.*

Than seyde I thus: 'I confesse and am
a-knowe it,' quod I; 'ne I ne see nat
that men may sayn, as by right, that
shrewes ne ben chaunged in-to bestes
5 by the qualitee of hir soules, al-be-it so
that they kepen yit the forme of the body
of mankinde. But I nolde nat of shrewes,
of which the thought cruel woodeth
al-wey in-to destruccioun of goode men,
10 that it were levelful to hem to don that.'

'Certes,' quod she, 'ne is nis nat levelful
to hem, as I shal wel shewe thee in coven-
able place; but natheles, yif so were that
thilke that men wenen be levelful to
15 shrewes were binomen hem, so that they
ne mighte nat anoyen or doon harm to goode
men, certes, a greet partye of the peyne to
shrewes sholde ben allegged and releved.
For al-be-it so that this ne seme nat
20 credible thing, per-aventure, to some
folk, yit moot it nedes be, that shrewes
ben more wrecches and unsely whan they
may doon and performe that they co-

veiten, than yif they mighte nat com-
plisshen that they coveiten. For yif so 25
be that it be wrecchednesse to wilne to
don yvel, than is more wrecchednesse to
mowen don yvel; with-oute whiche mow-
inge the wrecched wil sholde languisshe
with-oute effect. Than, sin that everiche 30
of thise thinges hath his wrecchednesse,
that is to seyn, wil to don yvel and mowinge
to don yvel, it moot nedes be that they ben
constreyned by threo unselinesses, that
wolen and mowen and performen felonyes 35
and shrewednesses.' 'I acorde me,'
quod I; 'but I desire gretly that shrewes
losten sone thilke unseliness, *that is to*
seyn, that shrewes weren despoyled of
mowinge to don yvel.' 40

'So shullen they,' quod she, 'soner, per-
aventure, than thou woldest; or soner
than they hem-self wene to lakken *mow-*
inge to don yvel. For ther nis no-thing so
late in so shorte boundes of this lyf, that 45
is long to abyde, nameliche, to a corage
inmortel; of whiche shrewes the grete
hope, and the hye compassinges of
shrewednesses, is ofte destroyed by a
sodeyn ende, or they ben war; and that 50
thing establen to shrewes the ende of hir
shrewednesse. For yif that shrewednesse
maketh wrecches, than mot he nedes ben
most wrecched that lengest is a shrewe;
the whiche wikked shrewes wolde I demen 55
aldermost unsely and caitifs, yif that hir
shrewednesse ne were finissed, at the
leste wey, by the outtereste deeth. For
yif I have concluded sooth of the unseli-
nesse of shrewednesse, than sheweth it 60
clearly that thilke wrecchednesse is with-
outen ende, the whiche is certain to ben
perdurable.' 'Certes,' quod I, 'this
conclusioun is hard and wonderful to
graunte; but I knowe wel that it acordeth 65
moche to the thinges that I have graunted
her-biforn.'

'Thou hast,' quod she, 'the right esti-
macioun of this; but who-so-ever wene
that it be a hard thing to acorde him to 70
a conclusioun, it is right that he shewe
that some of the premisses ben false; or
elles he moot shewe that the collacioun
of proposiciouns nis nat speedful to a

75 necessarie conclusioun. And yif it be nat
so, but that the premisses ben y-graunted,
ther is not why he sholde blame the
argument. For this thing that I shal
telle thee now ne shal nat same lasse
80 wonderful; but of the thinges that ben
taken also it is necessarie;’ *as who seyth,*
it foloweth of that which that is purposed
biforn. ‘What is that?’ quod I.

‘Certes,’ quod she, ‘that is, that thise
85 wikked shrewes ben more blisful, *or elles*
lasse wrecches, that abyen the torments
that they han deserved, than yif no payne
of justice ne chastysede hem. Ne this ne
seye I nat now, for that any man mighte
90 thenke, that the maners of shrewes ben
coriged and chastysed by veniaunce, and
that they ben brought to the right wey by
the drede of the torment, ne for that they
yeven to other folk ensaumple to fleen
95 fro vyces; but I understande yit in
another manere, that shrewes ben more
unsely whan they ne ben nat punisshed,
al-be-it so that ther ne be had no resoun
or lawe of correccioun, ne non ensaumple
100 of lokinge.’ ‘And what manere shal
that ben,’ quod I, ‘other than hath be
told her-biforn?’

‘Have we nat thanne graunted,’ quod
she, ‘that goode folk ben blisful, and
105 shrewes ben wrecches?’ ‘Yis,’ quod I.

‘Thanne,’ quod she, ‘yif that any good
were added to the wrecchednesse of any
wight, nis he nat more weleful than he
that ne hath no medlinge of good in his
110 solitarie wrecchednesse?’ ‘So semeth it,’
quod I.

‘And what seystow thanne,’ quod she,
‘of thilke wrecche that lakketh alle
goodes, *so that no good nis medled in his*
115 *wrecchednesse*, and yit, over al his wikked-
nesse for which he is a wrecche, that ther
be yit another yvel anexed and knit to
him, shal nat men demen him more
unsely than thilke wrecche of whiche the
120 unseliness is releved by the participa-
cioun of som good?’ ‘Why sholde he
nat?’ quod I.

‘Thanne, certes,’ quod she, ‘han
shrewes, whan they ben punisshed, som-
125 what of good anexed to hir wrecched-

nesse, that is to seyn, the same payne
that they suffren, which that is good by
the resoun of justice; and whan thilke
same shrewes ascapen with-oute torment,
than han they som-what more of yvel yit 130
over the wikkednesse that they han don,
that is to seyn, defaute of payne; which
defaute of payne, thou hast graunted, is
yvel for the deserte of felonye.’ ‘I ne may
nat denye it,’ quod I. 135

‘Moche more thanne,’ quod she, ‘ben
shrewes unsely, whan they ben wrong-
fully delivered fro payne, than whan
they ben punisshed by rightful ven-
jaunce. But this is open thing and cleer, 140
that it is right that shrewes ben pun-
ished, and it is wikkednesse and wrong
that they escapen unpunished.’ ‘Who
mighte deneye that?’ quod I.

‘But,’ quod she, ‘may any man denye 145
that al that is right nis good; and also
the contrarie, that al that is wrong is
wikke?’ ‘Certes,’ quod I, ‘these
thinges ben clere y-nough; and that we
han concluded a litel her-biforn. But 150
I praye thee that thou telle me, yif thou
acordest to leten no torment to sowles,
after that the body is ended by the
deeth;’ *this is to seyn, understandestow*
aught that sowles han any torment after the 155
deeth of the body?

‘Certes,’ quod she, ‘ye; and that right
greet; of which sowles,’ quod she, ‘I
trowe that some ben tormented by aspre-
nesse of payne; and some sowles, I trowe, 160
ben exercised by a purginge mekenesse.
But my conseil nis nat to determinye of
thise peynes. But I have travailed and
told yit hiderto, for thou sholdest knowe
that the mowinge of shrewes, which 165
mowinge thee semeth to ben unworthy,
nis no mowinge: and eek of shrewes, of
which thou pleinedest that they ne were
nat punisshed, that thou woldest seen
that they ne weren never-mo with-uten 170
the torments of hir wikkednesse: and of
the licence *of the mowinge to don yvel*, that
thou preydest that it mighte sone ben
ended, and that thou woldest fayn lernen
that it ne sholde nat longe dure: and 175
that shrewes ben more unsely yif they

were of lenger duringe, and most unsely
yif they weren perdurable. And after
this, I have shewed thee that more unsely
180 ben shrewes, whan they escapen with-
oute hir rightful payne, than whan they
ben punisshed by rightful venjaunce.
And of this sentence folweth it, that
thanne ben shrewes constreined at the
185 laste with most grevous torment, whan
men wene that they ne be nat punisshed.
'Whan I consider thy resouns,' quod I,
'I ne trowe nat that men seyn any-thing
more verayly. And yif I torne ayein to
190 the studies of men, who is he to whom it
sholde seme that he ne sholde nat only
leven thise thinges, but eek gladly herkne
hem?'

'Certes,' quod she, 'so it is; but men
195 may nat. For they han hir eyen so wont
to the darknesse of *erthely thinges*, that
they ne may nat liften hem up to the
light of cleer sothfastnesse; but they ben
lyke to briddes, of which the night light-
200 neth hir lokinge, and the day blindeth
hem. For whan men loken nat the ordre
of thinges, but hir lustes and talents, they
wene that either the leve or the mowinge
to don wikkednesse, or elles the scapinge
205 with-outte payne, be weleful. But con-
sider the jugement of the perdurable lawe.
For yif thou conferme thy corage to the
beste thinges, thou ne hast no nede of no
juge to yeven thee prys or mede; for
210 thou hast joyned thy-self to the most
excellent thing. And yif thou have en-
clyned thy studies to the wikked thinges,
ne seek no foreyne wreker out of thy-
self; for thou thy-self hast thrist thy-self
215 in-to wikke thinges: right as thou
mightest loken by dyverse tymes the
soule erthe and the hevene, and that alle
other thinges stinten fro with-outte, so
that thou were neither in hevene ne in erthe,
220 as says no-thing more; than it sholde
semen to thee, as by only resoun of
lokinge, that thou were now in the sterres
and now in the erthe. But the poeple ne
loketh nat on thise thinges. What
225 thanne? Shal we thanno aprochen us to
hem that I have shewed that they ben lyk
to bestes? And what woltow seyn of

this: yif that a man hadde al forlorn his
sighte and hadde foryeten that he ever
saugh, and wende that no-thing ne fayl- 230
ede him of perfeccioun of mankinde, now
we that mighten seen the same thinges,
wolde we nat wene that he were blinde?
Ne also ne acordeth nat the poeple to
that I shal seyn, the which thing is sus- 235
tened by a stronge foundement of resouns,
that is to seyn, that more unsely ben they
that don wrong to othre folk than they
that the wrong suffren.' 'I wolde
heren thilke same resouns,' quod I. 240

'Denyestow,' quod she, 'that alle
shrewes ne ben worthy to han torment?'
'Nay,' quod I.

'But,' quod she, 'I am certein, by
many resouns, that shrewes ben unsely.' 245
'It acordeth,' quod I.

'Thanne ne doutestow nat,' quod she,
'that thilke folk that ben worthy of tor-
ment, that they ne ben wrecches?' 'It
acordeth wel,' quod I. 250

'Yif thou were thanne,' quod she,
'y-set a juge or a knower of thinges,
whether, trowestow, that men sholden
tormenten him that hath don the wrong,
or elles him that hath suffred the wrong?' 255
'I ne doute nat,' quod I, 'that I nolde
don suffisaunt satisfaccioun to him that
hadde suffred the wrong by the sorwe of
him that hadde don the wrong.'

'Thanne semeth it,' quod she, 'that the 260
doere of wrong is more wrecche than he
that suffred wrong?' 'That folweth
wel,' quod I.

'Than,' quod she, 'by these causes and
by othre causes that ben enforced by the 265
same rote, filthe or sinne, by the propre
nature of it, maketh men wrecches; and
it sheweth wel, that the wrong that men
don nis nat the wrecchednesse of him
that receyveth the wrong, but the 270
wrecchednesse of him that doth the
wrong. But certes,' quod she, 'thise
orateurs or advocats don al the con-
trarye: for they enforcen hem to com-
moeve the juges to han pitee of hem that 275
han suffred and receyved the thinges that
ben grevous and aspre, and yit men
sholden more rightfully han pitee of hem

that don the grevaunces and the wronges;
 280 the whiche shrewes, it were a more
 covenable thing, that the accours or
 advocats, nat wroth but pitous and de-
 bonair, ledde the shrewes that han don
 wrong to the jugement, right as men
 285 leden syke folk to the leche, for that they
 sholde seken out the maladyes of sinne
 by torment. And by this covenant,
 either the entente of deffendours or advo-
 cats sholde faylen and cesen in al, or
 290 elles, yif the office of advocats wolde
 better profiten to men, it sholde ben
 turned in-to the habite of accusacioun;
that is to seyn, they sholden accuse shrewes,
and nat excuse hem. And eek the shrewes
 295 hem-self, yif hit were lefel to hem to
 seen at any clifte the vertu that they han
 forleten, and sawen that they sholden
 putten adoun the filthes of hir vyces by
 the torments of peynes, they ne oughte
 300 nat, right for the recompensacioun for to
 geten hem bountee and prowess which
 that they han lost, demen ne holden that
 thilke peynes weren torments to hem;
 and eek they wolden refuse the attend-
 305 aunce of hir advocats, and taken hem-self
 to hir juges and to hir accusors. For
 which it bitydeth that, as to the wyse
 folk, ther nis no place y-leten to hate;
that is to seyn, that ne hate hath no place
 310 *amonges wyse men.* For no wight nil
 haten goode men, but-yif he were over-
 mochel a fool; and for to haten shrewes,
 it nis no resoun. For right so as lan-
 guissinge is maladye of body, right so ben
 315 vyces and sinne maladye of corage. And
 so as we ne deme nat, that they that ben
 syke of hir body ben worthy to ben hated,
 but rather worthy of pitee: wel more
 worthy, nat to ben hated, but for to ben
 320 had in pitee, ben they of whiche the
 thoughtes ben constreined by felonous
 wikkednesse, that is more cruel than any
 languissinge of body.

METRE IV. *Quid tantos iuvat excitare
 motus.*

What delyteth you to excyten so grete
 moevinges of *hateredes*, and to hasten and

bisien the fatal disposicioun of your deeth
 with your propre handes? *that is to seyn,*
by batailes or by contek. For yif ye axen 5
 the deeth, it hasteth him of his owne wil;
 ne deeth ne tarieth nat his swifte hora.
 And the men that the serpent and the
 lyoun and the tygre and the bere and the
 boor seken to sleen with hir teeth, yit 10
 thilke same men seken to sleen everich of
 hem other with sward. Lo! for hir
 maneres ben dyverse and descordaunt,
 they moeven unrightful ostes and cruel
 batailes, and wilnen to perisshe by entre- 15
 chaunginge of dartes. But the resoun of
 crueltee nis nat y-nough rightful. Wiltow
 thanne yelden a covenable guerdoun to
 the desertes of men? Love rightfully
 goode folk, and have pitee on shrewes.' 20

PROSE V. *Hic ego uideo inquam.*

'Thus see I wel,' quod I, 'either what
 blisfulnesse or elles what unselinesse is
 establissed in the desertes of goode men
 and of shrewes. But in this ilke fortune
 of poeple I see somewhat of good and som- 5
 what of yvel. For no wyse man hath
 lever ben exyled, poore and nedy, and
 nameles, than for to dwellen in his citee
 and flouren of riches, and be redoutable
 by honour, and strong of power. For in 10
 this wyse more cleerly and more witnes-
 fully is the office of wyse men y-treded,
 whan the blisfulnesse and the poustee of
 governours is, as it were, y-shad amonges
 poeples that be neighbours *and subgits*; 15
 sin that, namely, prisoun, lawe, and thise
 othre torments of laweful peynes ben
 rather owed to felonous citezeins, for the
 whiche felonous citezeins tho peynes ben
 establissed, *than for good folk.* Thanne 20
 I mervaille me greetly,' quod I, 'why that
 the thinges ben so mis entrechaunged,
 that torments of felonyes pressen and
 confounden goode folk, and shrewes
 ravisschen medes of vertu, *and ben in* 25
honours and in gret estats. And I desyre
 eek for to witen of thee, what semeth thee
 to ben the resoun of this so wrongful
 a conclusioun? For I wolde wondre wel
 the lasse, yif I trowede that al thise 30

things weren medled by fortuous happe,
 but now hepeth and encreaseth myn as-
 tonyinge god, governour of thinges, that,
 so as god yeveth ofte tymes to gode men
 15 godes and mirthes, and to shrewes
 yvels and aspre thinges; and yeveth
 eyenward to gode folk hardnesse, and
 to shrewes he graunteth hem hir wil and
 that they deyren: what difference thanne
 40 may ther be bitwixen that that god doth,
 and the happe of fortune, yif men ne
 knows nat the cause why that it is?

'Ne it nis no mervalla,' quod she,
 'though that men wenen that ther be
 45 somewhat folisch and confuse, whan the
 resoun of the ordre is unknowe. But
 al-though that thou ne knows nat the
 cause of so greet a disposicioun, natheles,
 for as moche as god, the gode governour,
 50 stempreth and governeth the world, ne
 doute thee nat that alle thinges ben doon
 a-right.

METAS V. *Si quis Arcturi sidera nascit.*

Who-so that ne knows nat the sterres
 of Arcture, y-torned neigh to the soverain
 outree or point, *that is to seyn, y-torned*
neigh to the soverain pool of the firmament,
 5 and wot nat why the sterre Bootes passeth
 or gadereth his weynes, and drencheth
 his late flambe in the see, and why that
 Bootes the sterre unfoldeth his over-swifte
 arysinges, thanne shal he wondren of the
 10 laws of the heye eyr. And sek, yif that
 he ne knows nat why that the hornes of the
 fulle mone waxen pale and infect by the
 boundes of the derke night; and how the
 mone, derk and confuse, discovereth the
 15 sterres that she hadde y-covered by hir
 clere visage. The comune erreur moeveth
 folk, and maketh wery hir basins of bras
 by thikke strokes; *that is to seyn, that*
ther is a maner of poeple that lighte Cori-
 20 *bantes, that wenen that, whan the mone is in*
the eclipses, that it be enchanted; and ther-
fore, for to recovere the mone, they beten hir
basins with thikke strokes. Ne no man
 ne wondreth whan the blastes of the
 25 wind Chorus beten the strondes of the
 see by quakinge fodes; ne no man ne

wondreth whan the weighte of the snowe,
 y-harded by the colde, is resolved by the
 brenninge hate of Phebus the sonne; for
 heer seen men redely the causes. But 30
 the causes y-hid, *that is to seyn, in hevenc,*
 troublen the brestes of men; the moev-
 able poeple is astoned of alle thinges that
 comen selde and sodeinly in our age.
 But yif the troublly errour of our igno- 35
 rance departede fro us, *so that we wisten*
the causes why that solche thinges bi-tyden,
 certes, they sholden cese to seme won-
 dres.

PROSE VI. *Ita est, inquam.*

'Thus is it,' quod I. 'But so as thou
 hast yeven or bi-hight me to unwrappen
 the hid causes of thinges, and to dis-
 covere me the rescouns covered with derk-
 nesses, I prey thee that thou devyse and 5
 jugs me of this matere, and that thou do
 me to understonden it; for this miracle
 or this wonder troubleth me right gretly.'

And thanne she, a litel what smylinge,
 seyde: 'thou clepest me,' quod she, 'to 10
 telle thing that is grettest of alle thinges
 that mowen ben axed, and to the whiche
 questioun unnethes is ther aught y-nough
 to laven it, *as who seyth, unnethes is ther*
suffauntly anything to answers partly to 15
thy questioun. For the matere of it is
 swich, that whan o doute is determined
 and out away, ther waxen other doutes
 with-oute number; right as the hevedes
 waxen of Ydre, *the serpent that Hercules* 20
slough. Ne ther ne were no manere ne
 non ende, but-yif that a wight con-
 streinede the doutes by a right lyfly and
 quik fyr of thought; *that is to seyn, by*
vigour and strengthe of wil. For in this 25
 manere men weren wont to maken ques-
 tions of the simplicitee of the purvaunce
 of god, and of the order of destinee, and
 of sodein happe, and of the knowinge and
 predestinacioun divyne, and of the libertee 30
 of free wille; the whiche thinges thou
 thy-self aperceyvest wel, of what weight
 they ben. But for as moche as the
 knowinge of these thinges is a maner
 porcioun of the medicine of thee, al-be-it 35

so that I have litle tyme to don it, vit
nathieles I wol enforcen me to shewe
somewhat of it. But al-thogh the ne-
cessarynges of dates of musike deliveth
4 thec, thou most suffren and forberen
a litle of thilke deliveth, whyle that I were
to thee reasons y-knit by ordre.' 'As
it lyketh to thee,' quod I, 'so do.'

The spak she right as by another
45 bigynninge, and seide thus. 'The en-
gendinge of alle thinges,' quod she, 'and
alle the progressionis of muable nature,
and al that moeveth in any manere,
taketh his causes, his ordre, and his
50 formes, of the stableness of the divyne
thought, and thilke divyne thought, that
is y-set and put in the tear, that is to seyn,
in the heighte, of the simplicitee of god,
stablissheth many maner gyces to thinges
55 that ben to lene, the whiche maner,
whan that men loken it in thilke pure
clennesse of the divyne intel ligence, it is
y-cleped purvaunce, but whan thilke
maner is referred by men to thinges that
60 it moeveth and dispeneth, thanne of old
men it was cleped destinee. The whiche
thinges, yif that any wight loketh wel in
his thought the strengthe of that oon and
of that other, he shal lightly-moven seen
65 that these two thinges ben diverse. For
purvaunce is thilke divyne reson that is
established in the soverain prince of
thinges, the whiche purvaunce dis-
poneth alle thinges. But destinee is the
70 disposicion and ordinaunce clyvinge to
moevable thinges by the whiche dispo-
sicion the purvaunce knitteth alle
thinges in hir ordres for purvaunce
embraceth alle thinges to-bepe al-thogh
75 that they ben diverse, and al-thogh they
ben infinite but destinee departeth and
orderneth alle thinges singularly, and
divyded in moevinges, in places, in
formes, in tymes, as thus. But the un-
80 foldinge of temporal ordinaunce, assem-
bled and ooned in the lokinge of the
divyne thought, is cleped purvaunce;
and thilke same assemblinge and oon-
ing is divyded and unfolded by tymes, lat
85 that ben called destinee. And al be it so
that these thinges ben diverse, yet nathe-

les hangeth that oon on that other, for
why the order destinal procedeth of the
simplicitee of purvaunce. For right as
a workman, that sperceyveth in his
thoght the forme of the thing that he
wol make, and moeveth the effect of the
werk, and ledeth that he hadde loked
biforn in his thought simply and pre-
sently, by temporal ordinaunce certes,
right so god disponeth in his purvaunce,
singularly and stally, the thinges that
ben to done, but he annisteth in many
maneres and in diverse tymes, by des-
tinee, thilke same thinges that he hath
disponed. Tlanne, whether that des-
tinee be exerceysed rather by some living
spirits, servants to the divyne pur-
vaunce, or elles by son, sowle, or elles by
alle nature servinge to god, or elles by
the celestial moevinges of sterres, or elles
by the vertu of angesles, or elles by the
diverse subtilitee of devyles, or elles by
any of hem, or elles by aem alle the
destinal ordinaunce is y-woven and accom-
plished. Certes, it is open thing that
the purvaunce is an unmoevable and
simple forme of thinges to lene and the
moevable bond and the temporal ordi-
naunce of thinges, whiche that the
divyne simplicitee of purvaunce hath
ordeyned to done, that is destinee. For
whiche it is, that alle thinges that ben
put under destinee ben, certes, subgit to
purvaunce, to whiche purvaunce des-
tinee itself is subgit and under. But
some thinges ben put under purvaunce
that surmounten the ordinaunce of des-
tinee, and the ben thilke that stably be
y-ficched negh to the firste godhead they
surmounten the ordre of destinal moe-
vablete. For right as of cerceles that
tornen a-boute a same centre or a-boute
a poynt, thilke cercele that is innerest of
most with-inne joyueth to the simplicitee
of the middel, and is, as it were, a centre
or a poynt to that other cerceles that
tornen a-bouten him and thilke that is
outterest, compassed by larger moev-
inge, is unfolded by larger spaces, and
moche as it is forthest fro the middel
simplicitee of the poynt, and yif ther be

any-thing that knitteth and felawship-
peth him-self to thilke middel poynt, it
is constrained in-to simplicitie, that is to
seyn, in-to unmovable, and it cometh to
be shad and to flaten dyversely: right so,
by semblable reason, thilke thing that
departeth forthest fro the first thought of
god, it is unfolden and submitted to
gretter bondes of destinee: and in so
moche is the thing more free and laus
fro destinee, as it axoth and holdeth him
ner to thilke centre of thinges, that is to
seyn, god. And yif the thing clyveth to
the steadfastnesse of the thought of god,
and be with-oute moevinge, certes, it sur-
mounteth the necessitee of destinee.
Thanne right swich comparisoun as it is
of skillinge to understandinge, and of
thing that is engendred to thing that is,
and of tyme to eternitee, and of the cercle
to the centre, right so is the ordre of
moevable destinee to the stable sim-
plicitie of purviance. Thilke ordi-
nanunce moeveth the hevene and the
sterres, and atemproth the elements to-
gider amonges hem-self, and transformeth
hem by entrochaungeable mutacioun;
and thilke same ordre neweth ayen alle
thinges growinge and fallinge a-down, by
semblable progressiouns of sodes and of
ages, that is to seyn, male and female.
And this ilke ordre constraineth the for-
tunes and the dedes of men by a bond of
causes, nat able to ben unbounde; the
whiche destinal causes, whan they passen
out fro the biginninges of the unmovable
purviance, it mot nedes be that they ne
be nat mutable. And thus ben the
thinges ful wel y-governed, yif that the
simplicitie dwellinge in the divyne thought
sheweth forth the ordre of causes, unable
to ben y-bowed; and this ordre con-
straineth by his propre stabletee the
moevable thinges, or elles they sholden
been folly. For which it is, that alle
thinges armen to ben confus and trouble
to us men, for we ne mowen nat considere
thilke ordinaunce; natheles, the propre
maier of every thinge, dressinge hem to
gode, disponeth hem alle.

For ther nis no-thing don for cause of

yvel; ne thilke thing that is don by wik-
kede folk *is not don for god*. The whiche
shrewes, as I have shewed ful plenti-
fully, saken good, but wikked errour
mistorneth hem, ne the ordre cominge
fro the poynt of sovereign good ne de-
clyneth nat fro his biginninge. But thou
mayst seyn, what unreste may ben a
worse confusioun than that gode men han
sometyme adversitee and sometyme pros-
peritee, and shrewes also now han
thinges that they desiren, and now
thinges that they haten? Whether men
liven now in swich hoodnesse of thought,
(as *who seyth, ben men now so wyes*), that
swiche folk as they demen to ben gode
folk or shrewes, that it mooste nodes ben
that folk ben swiche as they wenen?
But in this manere the domes of men
discorden, that thilke men that some
folk demen worthy of mede, other folk
demen hem worthy of torment. But lat
us graunte, I pose that som man may wel
demon or knowen the gode folk and the
badde; may he thanne knowen and seen
thilke innereste atemprance of corages,
as it hath ben wont to be seyd of bodies,
as *who seyth, may a man speken and deter-*
minen of atemprances in corages, as men
were wont to demon or speken of com-
placiouns and atemprances of bodies? No
it ne is nat an unlyk miracle, to hem
that ne knowen it nat, (as *who seith, but*
it is lyke a merveil or a miracle to hem that
ne knowen it nat), why that swete thinges
ben covenable to some bodies that ben
hole, and to some bodies bittere thinges
ben covenable; and also, why that some
ayke folk ben holpen with lighte medi-
cynes, and some folk ben holpen with
sharpe medicynes. But natheles, the
leeche that knoweth the manere and the
atemprance of hele and of maladye, ne
mervelleth of it no-thing. But what
other thing semeth hele of corages but
honntes and prowesse? And what other
thing semeth maladye of corages but
vyces? Who is elles kepere of good or
dryver away of yvel, but god, governour
and locher of thoughtes? The whiche god,
whan he hath biholden from the heye

240 tour of his purveaunce, he knoweth what
 is covenable to every wight, and leneth
 hem that he wot that is covenable to
 hem. Lo, her-of comth and her-of is don
 this noble miracle of the ordre destinal,
 245 whan god, that al knoweth, doth swiche
 thing, of which thing that unknowinge
 folk ben astoned. But for to constreine,
 as *who seyth, but for to comprehend* and
 telle a fewe thinges of the divyne deep-
 250 nesse, the whiche that mannes resoun
 may understonde, thilke man that thou
 wenest to ben right juste and right kep-
 inge of equitee, the contrarie of that
 semeth to the divyne purveaunce, that al
 255 wot. And Lucan, my familer, telleth
 that "the victorious cause lykede to the
 goddess, and the cause overcomen lykede
 to Catoun." Thanne, what-so-ever thou
 mayst seen that is don in this world
 260 unhoped or unwened, certes, it is the
 right ordre of thinges, but, as to thy
 wikkede opinioun, it is a confusioun. But
 I suppose that som man be so wel
 y-thewed, that the divyne jugement and
 265 the jugement of mankinde acorden hem
 to-gider of him, but he is so unstedfast
 of corage, that, yif any adversitee come
 to him, he wol forleten, par-aventure, to
 continue innocens, by the whiche he ne
 270 may nat with-holden fortune. Thanne
 the wyse dispensacioun of god spareth
 him, the whiche man adversitee mighte
 onpoyren, for that god wol nat suffren
 him to travaile, to whom that travaile
 275 nis nat covenable. Another man is parfit
 in alle vertues, and is an holy man, and
 negh to god, so that the purveaunce of
 god wolde demen, that it were a felonye
 that he were touched with any adver-
 280 sitee, so that he wol nat suffre that
 swich a man be moeved with any bodily
 maladye. But so as seyde a philosophe,
 the more excellent by mo' *he seyde in*
Grek, that "vertues han edified the body
 285 of the holy man." And ofte tyme it
 bitydeth, that the somme of thinges that
 ben to done is taken to governe to gode
 folk, for that the malice haboundant of
 shrewes sholde ben abated. And god
 290 yeveth and departeth to othre folk pros-

peritees and adversitees y-medled to-
 hepe, after the qualitee of hir corages, and
 remembreth som folk by *adversitee*, for they
 ne sholde nat wexen proude by large
 welofulnesse. And other folk he suffreth
 to ben travailed with harde thinges for
 that they sholden confermen the vertues
 of corage by the usage and exercitacioun
 of pacience. And other folk leden more
 than they oughten + that whiche they
 mighten wel beren and somme inspire
 that they mowe nat beren and thilke
 folk god ledeth in-to experience of him-
 self by aspre and sorful thinges. And
 many othre folk han bought honourable
 renoun of this world by the prys of
 glorious deeth. And som men, that ne
 mowen nat ben overcomen by *temptacioun*,
 have yeven ensauple to othre folk that
 vertu may nat ben overcomen by adver-
 sitees, and of alle thinges ther is no
 doute, that they ne ben don rightlly
 and ordenely, to the profit of hem to
 whom we seen thise thinges buty le. For
 certes, that adversitee comth somtyme
 to shrewes, and somtyme that that they
 desiren, it comth of thise forselde causes.
 And of sorful thinges that *butylen to*
shrewes, certes, no man ne wonneth for
 alle men wenen that they han wel re-
 served it, and that they ben of wikkede
 merite of whiche shrewes the torment
 somtyme agaasteth othre to don felonyes,
 and somtyme it amendeth hem that
 suffren the torments. And the pro-
 peritee that is yeven to shrewes sheweth
 a greet argument to gode folk, what thing
 they sholde demen of thilke welofulnesse,
 the whiche prosperitee men seen ofte
 serve to shrewes. In the which thing
 I trowe that god dispenseth, for, per-
 aventure, the nature of som man is so
 overthrowinge to yel, and so unconvenc-
 able, that the nedy povertie of his
 household mighte rather egren him to do
 felonyes. And to the maladye of him god
 putteth remedie, to yeven him *re-busset*.
 And som other man beholdeth his con-
 science defouled with synnes, and maketh
 comparisoun of his fortune and of him-
 self, and dredeth, per-aventure, that he

blisfulnesse, of which the usage is joyeful
to him, that the lesinge of thilke blisful-
nesse ne be nat sorwful to him; and
345 therfor he wol chaunge his maneres, and,
for he dredeth to lese his fortune, he for-
leteth his wikkednesse. To othre folk is
welefulnesse y-yeven unworthily, the
whiche overthroweth hem in-to distruc-
350 cion that they han deserved. And to som
othre folk is yeven power to punisshen,
for that it shal be cause of *continua-*
cions and exercysinge to gode folk and
cause of torment to shrewes. For so as
355 ther nis non alyaunce by-twixe gode folk
and shrewes, ne shrewes ne mowen nat
acorden amonges hem-self. And why
nat? For shrewes discorden of hem-self
by hir vyces, the whiche vyces al to-
360 renden hir consciences; and don ofte
tyme thinges, the whiche thinges, whan
they han don hem, they demen that tho
thinges ne sholden nat han ben don. For
which thing thilke sovereign purveaunce
365 hath maketh ofte tyme fair miracle; so
that shrewes han maketh shrewes to ben
gode men. For whan that som shrewes
seen that they suffren wrongfully felonies
of othre shrewes, they waxen eschaufed
370 in-to hate of hem that anoyeden hem, and
retornen to the frut of vertu, whan they
studien to ben unlyk to hem that they
han hated. Certes, only this is the divyne
might, to the whiche might yveles ben
375 thanne gode, whan it useth tho yveles
covenably, and draweth out the effect of
any gode; *as who seyth, that yvel is good*
only to the might of god, for the might of god
ordeyneth thilke yvel to good. For oon
380 ordre embraseth alle thinges, so that
what wight that departeth fro the resoun
of thilke ordre which that is assigned to
him, algates yit he slydeth in-to another
ordre, so that no-thing nis levelful to folye
385 in the reame of the divyne purviaunce;
as who seyth, nothing nis with-uten ordi-
naunce in the reame of the divyne pur-
viaunce; sin that the right stronge god
governeth alle thinges in this world. For
390 it nis nat levelful to man to compre-
henden by wit, ne unfolden by word, alle
the subtil ordinaunces and disposicions

of the divyne entente. For only it oughte
suffise to han loket, that god him-self,
maker of alle natures, ordeineth and 395
dresseth alle thinges to gode; whyl that
he hasteth to with-holden the thinges
that he hath maketh in-to his semblaunce,
that is to seyn, for to with-holden thinges
in-to good, for he him-self is good, he 400
chaseth out al yvel fro the boundes of his
comunality by the ordre of necessitee
destinable. For which it folweth, that
yif thou loke the purviaunce ordeininge
the thinges that men wenen ben out- 405
rageous or haboundant in erthes, thou ne
shalt not seen in no place no-thing of
yvel. But I see now that thou art
charged with the weight of the ques-
tioun, and wery with the lengthe of my 410
resoun; and that thou abydest som sweet-
nesse of songe. Tak thanne this draught;
and whan thou art wel refreshed and
refect, thou shal be more stedefast to styte
in-to heyere questionns. 415

METRE VI. *Si vis celsi iura tonantis.*

If thou, wys, wilt demen in thy pure
thought the rightes or the lawes of the
heye thonderer, *that is to seyn, of god,* loke
thou and bihold the heightes of the
soverein hevene. There kepen the sterres, 5
by rightful alliaunce of thinges, hir olde
pees. The sonne, y-mooved by his rody
fyr, ne distorbeth nat the colde cercle of
the mone. Ne the sterre y-cleped 'the
Bere,' that enclyneth his ravissinge 10
courses abouten the sovereign heighte of
the worlde, ne the same sterre Ursa nis
never-mo wasshen in the depo westrene
see, ne coveiteth nat to deyen his flaumbes
in the see of the occian, al-thogh he see 15
othre sterres y-plounged in the see. And
Hesperus *the sterre* bodeth and telleth
alwey the late nightes; and Lucifer *the*
sterre bringeth ayein the clere day. And
thus maketh Love entrechaungeable the 20
perdurable courses; and thus is discord-
able bataille y-put out of the contree of
the sterres. This acordaunce atempred
by evenelyk maneres the elements, that
the moiste thinges, stryvinge with the 25

drye thinges, yeven place by stoundes; and the colde thinges joynen hem by feyth to the hote thinges; and that the lighte fyr aryseth in-to heichte; and the
 30 hevy erthes avalen by hir weightes. By thise same causes the floury yeer yildeth swote smelles in the firste somer-sesoun warminge; and the hote somer dryeth the cornes; and autumpne comth ayein,
 35 hevy of apples; and the fleting reyn bideweth the winter. This atempraunce norissheth and bringeth forth al thing that þ bretheth lyf in this world; and thilke same atempraunce, ravisshinge,
 40 hydeth and binimeth, and drencheth under the laste deeth, alle thinges y-born. Amonges thise thinges sitteth the heye maker, king and lord, welle and beginninge, lawe and wys juge, to don equitee;
 45 and governeth and enclyneth the brydles of thinges. And tho thinges that he stereth to gon by moevinge, he withdraweth and aresteth; and affermeth the moevable or wandringe thinges. For yif
 50 that he ne clepede ayein the right goinge of thinges, and yif that he ne constrainede hem nat eft-sones in-to roundnesses enclynede, the thinges that ben now continued by stable ordinaunce, they
 55 sholden departen from hir welle, *that is to seyn, from hir biginninge*, and faylen, *that is to seyn, torne in-to nought*. This is the comune Love to alle thinges; and alle thinges axen to ben holden by the fyn of
 (x) good. For elles ne mighten they nat lasten; yif they ne come nat eft-sones ayein, by Love retorned, to the cause that hath yeven hem beinge, *that is to seyn, to god*.

PROSE VII. *Iamne igitur uides.*

Seestow nat thanne what thing folweth alle the thinges that I have seyde? 'Boece. 'What thing?' quod I.

'Certes,' quod she, 'al-outruly, that alle
 5 fortune is good.' 'And how may that be?' quod I.

'Now understand,' quod she, 'so as alle fortune, whether so it be joyeful fortune or aspre fortune, is yeven either by cause

of guerdoning or elles of exercysinge of 10 good folk, or elles by cause to punisshen or elles chastysen shrewes; thanne is alle fortune good, the whiche fortune is certain that it be either rightful or elles profitable.' 'Forsothe, this is a ful 15 verray resoun,' quod I; 'and yif I consider the purviaunce and the destinee that thou taughtest me a litel her-biforn, this sentence is sustened by stedefast resouns. But yif it lyke unto thee, lat us 20 noumbren hem amonges thilke thinges, of whiche thou seydest a litel her-biforn, that they ne were nat able to ben wened to the poeple.'

'Why so?' quod she. 'For that the 25 comune word of men,' quod I, 'misuseth this *maner speche of fortune*, and seyn ofte tymes that the fortune of som wight is wikkede.'

'Wiltow thanne,' quod she, 'that I 30 aproche a litel to the wordes of the poeple, so that it seme nat to hem that I be overmoche departed as fro the usage of mankinde?' 'As thou wolt,' quod I.

'Demestow nat,' quod she, 'that al 35 thing that profiteth is good?' 'Yis,' quod I.

'And certes, thilke thing that exercyseth or corigeth, profiteth?' 'I confesse it wel,' quod I. 40

'Thanne is it good?' quod she. 'Why nat?' quod I.

'But this is the fortune,' quod she, 'of hem that either ben put in vertu and batailen ayeins aspre thinges, or elles of 45 hem that eschuen and declynen fro vyces and taken the wey of vertu.' 'This ne may I nat denye,' quod I.

'But what seystow of the mery fortune that is yeven to good folk in guerdoun? 50 Demeth aught the poeple that it is wikked?' 'Nay, forsothe,' quod I; 'but they demen, as it sooth is, that it is right good.'

'And what seystow of that other for- 55 tune,' quod she, 'that, al-though that it be aspre, and restraineth the shrewes by rightful torment, weneth aught the poeple that it be good?' 'Nay,' quod I, 'but the poeple demeth that it is most 60

wreathed of alle thinges that may ben thought.'

'War now, and loka wel,' quod she, 'last that we, in folwinge the opinioun of the poeple, have confessed and concluded thing that is unable to be wened to the poeple.' 'What is that,' quod I.

'Certes,' quod she, 'it folweth or cometh of thinges that ben graunted, that alle fortune, what-so-ever it be, of hem that ben either in possessionn of vertu, or in the encres of vertu, or elles in the purchasing of vertu, that thilke fortune is good; and that alle fortune is right wikede to hem that dwellen in shrewedness; as who seyth, and thus weneþ nat the poeple. 'That is sooth,' quod I, 'albeit so that no man dar confesse it ne biknownen it.'

'Why so?' quod she; 'for right as the stronge man ne semeth nat to abaisse or disdainen as ofte tyme as he hereth the noise of the bataile, ne also it ne semeth nat, to the wyse man, to beren it greuously, as ofte as he is lad in-to the stryf of fortune. For bothe to that oon man and ook to that other thilke difficultee is the matere; to that oon man, of encres of his glorious renoun, and to that other man, to confirme his sapience, that is to seyn, to the aspreness of his estat. For therfore is it called "vertu," for that it susteneth and enforseth, by hiso strengthes, that it nis nat overcomen by adversitees. Ne certes, thou that art put in the encres or in the heighte of vertu, ne hast nat comen to fleten with delices, and for to welken in bodily luste; thou sowest or plantest a ful egre bataile in thy courage ayeins every fortune: for that the sorwful fortune ne confounde thee nat, ne that the merye fortune ne corampe thee nat, occupye the mene by stedefast strengthes. For al that ever is under the mene, or elles al that overpasseth the mene, despyseth welesfulness as who seyth, it is vicious, and ne hath no mede of his travaile. For it is set in your hand, as who seyth, it lyth in your power; what fortune yow is levest, that is to seyn, good or yuel. For alle fortune that semeth

sharp or aspre, yif it ne exerceye nat the gode folk ne chastyseth the wikked folk, it punissheth.

METRE VII. *Bella bis quinque operatus annis.*

The wreker Attrides, that is to seyn, Agamenon, that wroughte and continued the batailes by ten year, recovered and purged in wrekinge, by the destruccioun of Troye, the loste chaumbres of mariage of his brother; this is to seyn, that he, Agamenon, was ayein Eleyne, that was Menelaus wyf his brother. In the mene whyle that thilke Agamenon desirede to yeven sayles to the Grekissh navye, and boughte ayein the windes by blood, he unclothede him of pitee of fader; and the sory preest yiveth in sacrificyng the wreched cuttynge of throte of the doughter; that is to seyn, that Agamenon let cutten the throte of his doughter by the preest, to maken allyaunce with his goddes, and for to han wind with whiche he mighte wenden to Troye. Itacus, that is to seyn, Ulixes, hwepte his felawes y-lorn, the whiche felawes the ferse Poliphemus, ligginge in his grete cave, hadde freten and dreynt in his empty wombe. But natheles Poliphemus, wood for his blinde visage, yald to Ulixes joye by his sorwful termes, that is to seyn, that Ulixes smoot out the eye of Poliphemus that stood in his forehed, for which Ulixes hadde joye, when he saw Poliphemus wepyng and blinde. Hercules is celebrable for his harde travailes; he daunted the proude Centaures, half hors, half man; and he birafted the dispoylinge fro the cruel lyoun, that is to seyn, he slough the lyoun and raste him his skin. He smoot the briddes that highten Arpyes with certoin arwes. He ravishede apples fro the wakyng dragoun, and his hand was the more hevy for the goldene metal. He drow Cerberus, the hound of helle, by his treble cheyne. He, overcomen, as it is seyde, hath put an unmeke lord foddre to his cruel hors; this is to seyn, that Hercules slough Diomedes, and made his hors to freten him. And he,

45 Hercules, slough Ydra the serpent, and
 brende the venum. And Achelous the
 flood, defouled in his forhed, lreynthe his
 shamefast visage in his stondes this is
 to seyn, that Achelous coude transfigure
 50 him-self in-to diverse lyknesses, and, as he
 fought with Hercules, at the laste he turnede
 him in-to a bale, and Hercules brak of oon
 of his hornes, and he, for shame hidde him
 in his river. And he, Hercules, caste
 55 adoun Antaeus the gyanut in the
 stondes of Libie, and Cacus apaysede
 the wratthes of Eyander this is to seyn,
 that Hercules slough the monstre Cacus, and
 apaysede with that deeth the wratthe of
 60 Eyander. And the bristrede boor markede
 with scomes the shuldres of Hercules, the

whiche shuldres the hete cerole of Lerey
 sholde thruste. And the luste of his la-
 bours was, that he sustened the hevene
 up-on his nakke unbowed, and he
 servede eft-sones the hevane, to ben the
 prys of his laste travaile. Godh we
 thanne, ye stronge men, ther-as the boye
 wey of the grote ensaunple ledeth you.
 O nyte men, why make ye youre bakkes
 As che seyth O ye slowe and debest men
 why flee ye adversitees, and ne fighten not
 ayens hem by vertu, to winnen the meye of
 the hevne? For the erthe, overcomen
 yeveth the sterres, this is to seyn, that
 whan that erthely lud is overcomen, a man
 is naked worthy to the hevne.

BOOK V.

PROSE I. *Dixerat, orationisquo
cursum.*

She hadde seyð, and torped the cours
 of hir resoun to some othre thinges to ben
 treted and to ben y-sped. Thanne seyde
 I, 'Certes, rightful is thyn amonestinge
 5 and ful digne by auctoritee. But that
 thou sendest whylom, that the question
 of the divyne purvaunce is enlaced with
 many other questiouns, I understonde
 wel and provee it by the same thing. But
 10 I axe yif that thou wenest that hap be
 any thing in any weys, and, yif thou
 wenest that hap be anything what is
 it?'

Thanne quod she 'I haste me to yilden
 15 and assoulen to thee the dette of my
 bihest, and to shewen and open the way,
 by which way thou mayst come ayen to
 thy contree. But al-be-it so that the
 thinges which that thou axest ben right
 20 profitable to knowe, yat ben they diverse
 somewhat fro the path of my purpos, and
 it is to doute that thou ne be maked
 wery by mis-weyes, so that thou ne mayst
 nat suffyce to mesuren the right wey'
 25 'Ne doute thes ther-of nothing,' quod I.

'For, for to knowen thulke thinges to
 godere, in the whiche thinges I desire
 greetly, that shal ben to me in stede of
 reste, sin it is nat to doute of the
 thinges folwinge, whan every syde of the
 disputacioun shal ben stedfast to me
 by undoutous feith'

Thanne seyde she, 'That manere we
 I den thee', and bigan to speken right
 thus. 'Certes' quod she, yif any wyght
 diffinisabe hap in this manere that is
 seyn, that "hap is luydinge y-brought
 forth by foolish moevinge and by
 knettinge of causes," I canferme that be
 nis right naught in no wyse and I can
 ni-outrely that hap nis, ne dwelleth be
 a voice, as who seith but an ydel word
 with-outen any significacioun or thing
 submitted to that vois. For what place
 mighte ben left, or dwellinge, to thyng
 and to disorderaunce sin that god lede
 and constreyneth alle thinges by care.
 For this sentence is verray and I seith
 that "nothing ne lath his beinge"
 naught", to the watche sentence noon
 of thise olde folk ne withseyde nam
 al-be-it so that they ne understoden
 meneden it naught by god, prince or

beginners of workings, but they casten
 5 [it] as a manere foundement of subject
 material, that is to seyn, of the nature of
 alle resoun. And yif that any thing is
 woxen or comen of no causes, than shal it
 10 ~~seme~~ that thilke thing is comen or woxen
 of naught; but yif this ne may nat ben
 don, thanne is it nat possible, that hap
 be any swich thing as I have diffinissed
 a lital heer-biforn.' 'How shal it
 15 thanne be?' quod I. 'Nis ther thanne
 no-thing that by right may be cleped
 either "hap" or elles "aventure of for-
 tune"; or is ther aught, al-be-it so that
 it is hid fro the peple, to which these
 wordes ben couenable?'

20 'Myn Aristotulis,' quod she, 'in the
 book of his Phisik, diffinisseth this thing
 by short resoun, and neigh to the sothe.'
 'In which manere?' quod I.

'As ofte,' quod she, 'as men doon any
 25 thing for grace of any other thing, and
 an-other thing than thilke thing that
 men entenden to don bitydeth by some
 causes, it is cleped "hap." Right as
 a man dalf the erthe by cause of tilyinge
 30 of the feeld, and founde ther a gobet of
 gold bidolven, thanne wenen folk that it
 is bifalle by fortunous bitydinge. But,
 for sothe, it nis nat of naught, for it hath
 his propre causes; of whiche causes the
 35 cours unforeseyn and unwar semeth to
 han maked hap. For yif the tilyere of
 the feeld ne dolve nat in the erthe, and yif
 the hyder of the gold ne hadde hid the
 gold in thilke place, the gold ne hadde
 40 nat been founde. These ben thanne the
 causes of the abregginge of fortuit hap,
 the which abregginge of fortuit hap
 cometh of causes encountringe and flow-
 inge to-gidere to hem-self, and nat by the
 45 entencoun of the deer. For neither the
 hyder of the gold ne the delver of the
 feeld ne understoden nat that the gold
 sholde han ben founde; but, as I sayde,
 it bitidde and ran to-gidere that he dalf
 50 ther-as that other hadde hid the gold.
 Now may I thus diffinishe "hap." Hap
 is an unwar bitydinge of causes assem-
 bled in thinges that ben don for som
 other thing. But thilke ordre, proceedinge

by an uneschuable bindinge to-gidere, 105
 which that descendeth fro the walls of
 purviaunce that ordeineth alle thinges in
 hir places and in hir tymes, maketh that
 the causes rennen and assemblen to-
 gidere. 110

METAS I. *Rupis Achemenis scopulis,*
ubi versa sequentum.

Tigris and Eufates resolven and
 springen of on welle, in the craggis of the
 roche of the contree of Achemenie, ther-as
 the fleinge bataile flocheth hir darters,
 returned in the brostes of hem that fol- 5
 wen hem. And soon after the same
 riveres, Tigris and Eufates, unjoinen and
 departen hir wateres. And yif they
 comen to-gidere, and ben assembled and
 cleped to-gidere into o cours, thanne 10
 moten thilke thinges fleten to-gidere
 which that the water of the entre-
 chaunginge flood bringeth. The shippes
 and the stokkes arraced with the flood
 moten assemblen; and the wateres y- 15
 medled wrappeth or implyeth many for-
 tunel happes or maneres, the whiche
 wandringe happes, natheles, thilke de-
 clyninge lownesse of the erthe and the
 flowinge ordre of the slydinge water 20
 governeth. Right so Fortune, that someth
 as that it fleteth with alaked or un-
 governede brydles, it suffereth brydles,
 that is to seyn, to be governed, and passeth
 by thilke lawe, that is to seyn, by thilke 25
 diuine ordenaunce.'

PROSE II. *Animaduerto, inquam.*

'This understonde I wel,' quod I, 'and
 I acorde wel that it is right as thou
 seyst. But I axe yif ther be any libertee
 of free wil in this ordre of causes that
 clyven thus to-gidere in hem-self; or 5
 elles I wolde witen yif that the destinal
 chayne constreinet the movinges of the
 corages of men?'

'Yis,' quod she; 'ther is libertee of
 free wil. Ne ther ne was nevere no 10
 nature of resoun that it ne hadde libertee

of free wil. For every thing that may naturely usen resoun, it hath doom by which it decerneth and demeth every
 15 thing; thanne knoweth it, by it-self, thinges that ben to fleen and thinges that ben to desiren. And thilke thing that any wight demeth to ben desired, that axeth or desireth he; and fleeth
 20 thilke thing that he troweth ben to fleen. Wherfore in alle thinges that resoun is, in hem also is libertee of willinge and of nillinge. But I ne ordeyne nat, *as who seyth, I ne graunte nat*, that this libertee
 25 be evene-lyk in alle thinges. Forwhy in the sovereignes devynes substaunces, *that is to seyn, in spirits*, jugement is more cleer, and wil nat y-corumped, and might redy to speden thinges that ben desired.
 30 But the soules of men moten nedes be more free whan they loken hem in the speculacioun or lokinge of the devyne thought, and lasse free whan they slyden in-to the bodies; and yit lasse free whan
 35 they ben gadered to-gidere and comprehended in erthely membres. But the laste servage is whan that they ben yeven to vyces, and han y-falle from the possessioun of hir propre resoun. For after
 40 that they han cast away hir eyen fro the light of the sovereyn soothfastnesse to lowe thinges and derke, anon they derken by the cloude of ignoraunce and ben troubled by felonous talents; to the
 45 whiche talents whan they aprochen and asenten, they hepen and encresen the servage which they han joyned to hemself; and in this manere they ben caitifs fro hir propre libertee. The whiche
 50 thinges, nathellesse, the lokinge of the devyne purviaunce seeth, that allethinges biholdeth and seeth fro eterne, and ordeineth hem everich in hir merites as they ben predestinat: *and it is seyd in*
 55 *Greek*, that "alle thinges he seeth and alle thinges he hereth."

METRE II. *Puro clarum lumine Phebum.*

Homer with the hony mouth, *that is to seyn, Homer with the swete dillees*, singeth, that the sonne is cleer by pure light;

natheles yit ne may it nat, by the infirm light of his bemes, braken or percen the inwarde entrailes of the erthe, or elles the sea. So ne seeth nat god, maker of the grete world: to him, that loketh all thinges from an heigh, ne withstondet nat no thinges by hevynesse of erthe; ne the night ne withstondet nat to him by the blake cloudes. *Thilke god* seeth, in oo strok of thought, alle thinges that be or weren, or sholle comen; and *thilke god*, for he loketh and seeth alle thinges alone, thou mayst seyn that he is the verray sonne.'

PROSE III. *Tum ego, en, inquam.*

Thanne seyde I, 'now am I confounde by a more hard doute than I was.'

'What doute is that?' quod she. 'For certes, I conjecte now by whiche thinges thou art troubled.'

'It semeth,' quod I, 'to repugnen an to contrarien greetly, that god knowet biforn alle thinges, and that ther is an freedom of libertee. For yif so be that god loketh alle thinges biforn, ne god may nat ben desseived in no maner than mot it nedes been, that alle thinges bityden the whiche that the purviaunce of god hath seyn biforn to comen. For which, yif that god knoweth biforn not only the werkes of men, but also his conseiles and hir willes, thanne ne shal ther be no libertee of arbitre; ne, certes, ther ne may be noon other dede, ne no wil, but thilke which that the divyn purviaunce, that may nat ben desseived, hath feled biforn. For yif that the mighten wrythen away in othre maner than they ben purveyed, than sholde there be no stedefast prescience of thinges to comen, but rather an uncertein opinioun the whiche thing to trowen of god, I dem it felonye and unleveful. Ne I ne proev nat thilke same resoun, *as who seyth, I ne alowe nat, or I ne preyse nat, thilke same resoun*, by which that som men wene that they mowen assoilen and unknitte the knotte of this questioun. For, certes

For that thing nis nat to comen
the purviaunce of god hath seyn
that is to comen, but rather the
re, *and that is this*: that, for that
g is to comen, therefore ne may it

hid fro the purviaunce of god;
his manere this necessitee slydeth
to the contrarye partye: ne it
veth nat, nedes, that thinges bi-
nat ben purvyed, but it bihoveth,
that thinges that ben to comen
urveyed: but as it were y-travailed,
eyth, that thilke answers procedeth

thogh men travaileden, or weren
equeren, the whiche thing is cause
whiche thing:—as, whether the
ce is cause of the necessitee of

to comen, or elles that the
ce of thinges to comen is cause
urviaunce. But I ne enforce me
to shewen it, that the bitydinge
es y-wist biforn is necessarie, how
what manere that the ordre of
nath it-self; al-though that it ne
at that the prescience bringe in
ce of bitydinge to thinges to

For certes, yif that any wight
it bihoveth by necessitee that the
be sooth of him that conjecteth
sitteth; and ayeinward also is it
contrarye: yif the opinioun be
any wight for that he sitteth,
eth by necessitee that he sitte.

is heer necessitee in that oon
that other: for in that oon is
ce of sittinge, and, certes, in that
necessitee of sooth. But therefore
th nat a wight, for that the
of the sittinge is sooth; but the
is rather sooth, for that a wight
biforn. And thus, al-though that
ce of the sooth cometh of that
de (*as who seyth, that al-though the*
sooth comth of the sitting, and nat
vice opinioun), algates yit is ther

necessitee in that oon and in
er. Thus sheweth it, that I may
mblable skiles of the purviaunce
and of thinges to comen. For

that, for that thinges ben to
her-fore ben they purveyed, nat,

certes, for that they ben purveyed, ther- 85
fore ne bityde they nat. Yit natheles,
bihoveth it by necessitee, that either the
thinges to comen ben y-purveyed of god,
or elles that the thinges that ben pur-
veyed of god bityden. And this thing 90
only suffiseth y-nough to destroyen the
freedom of oure arbitre, *that is to seyn, of*
oure free wil. But now, certes, *sheweth it*
wel, how fer fro the sothe and how up-so-
doun is this thing that we seyn, that the 95
bitydinge of temporel thinges is cause of
the eterne prescience. But for to wenen
that god purvyeth the thinges to comen
for they ben to comen, what other thing
is it but for to wene that thilke thinges 100
that bitidden whylom ben causes of thilke
soverein purviaunce *that is in god*? And
her-to *I adde yit this thing* that, right
as whan that I wot that a thing is, it
bihoveth by necessitee that thilke selve 105
thing be; and eek, whan I have knowe
that any thing shal bityden, so byhoveth
it by necessitee that thilke thing bityde:
—so folweth it thanne, that the bitydinge
of the thing y-wist biforn ne may nat 110
ben eschued. And at the laste, yif that
any wight wene a thing to ben other
weyes thanne it is, it is nat only un-
science, but it is deceivable opinioun ful
diverse and fer fro the sothe of science. 115
Wherefore, yif any thing be so to comen,
that the bitydinge of hit ne be nat cer-
tein ne necessarie, who may weten biforn
that thilke thing is to comen? For right
as science ne may nat ben medled with 120
falsnesse (*as who seyth, that yif I wot*
a thing, it ne may nat be false that I ne wot
it), right so thilke thing that is conceived
by science ne may nat ben non other
ways than as it is conceived. For that is 125
the cause why that science wanteth lesing
(*as who seyth, why that witinge ne receiveth*
nat lesinge of that it wot); for it bihoveth,
by necessitee, that every thing be right
as science comprehendeth it to be. What 130
shal I thanne seyn? In whiche manere
knoweth god biforn the thinges to comen,
yif they ne be nat certain? For yif that
he deme that they ben to comen un-
eschewably, and so may be that it is 135

possible that they ne shollen nat comen, god is deceived. But nat only to trowen that god is deceived, but for to spake it with mouth, it is a felonous sinne. But
 140 yif that god wet that, right so as thinges ben to comen, so shullen they comen so that he wite egaly, *as who seyth, indifferently*, that thinges mowen ben doon or elles nat y-doon what is thilke prescience
 145 that ne comprehendeth no certein thing ne stable? Or elles what difference is ther bitwixe the prescience and thilke jape-worthy divyninge of Tiresie the divynour, *that seyde* · "Al that I seye,"
 150 quod he, "either it shal be, or elles it ne shal nat be?" Or elles how mochel is worth the deryne prescience more than the opinioun of mankinde, yif so be that it demeth the thinges uncertein, as
 155 men doon, of the whiche domes of men the bitydinge nis nat certein? But yif so be that non uncertein thing ne may ben in him that is right certein welle of alle thinges, thanne is the bitydinge
 160 certein of thilke thinges whiche he hath wist bifore firmly to comen. For which it folweth, that the freedom of the consules and of the werkes of mankinde nis non, sin that the thought of god, that
 165 seeth alle thinges without errour of falsnesse, bindeth and constraineth hem to a lutydinge *by necessitee*. And yif this thing be ones y-graunted and received, *that is to seyn, that ther nis no free wille*,
 170 than sheweth it wel, how greet destruction and how grete damages ther folwen of thinges of mankinde. For in ydel ben ther thanne purposed and bihight medes to gode folk, and peynes to badde folk.
 175 sin that no moevings of free corage voluntarie ne hath nat deserved hem, *that is to seyn, neither mede ne peyne*, and it sholde seme thanne, that thilke thing is alderworst, which that is now demed
 180 for aldermost just and most rightful, *that is to seyn*, that shrewes ben punished, or elles that gode folk ben y-gardoned; the whiche folk, sin that hir propre wil ne sent hem nat to that oon ne to that
 185 other, *that is to seyn, neither to gode ne to harm*, but constraineth hem certein

necessitee of thinges to comen · thanne ne shollen ther nevere ben, ne nevere weren, vyce ne vertu, but it sholde rather ben confusioun of alle desertes medled with-outen discrecioun. And yit *ther foloweth an-other inconvenient*, þthan whiche ther ne may ben thought no more felonous ne more wikke; *and that is this* that, as the ordre of thinges is y-led and cometh of the purviuance of god, ne that no-thing nis lefel to the consules of mankinde (*as who seyth, that men han no power to doon no-thing, ne wille no-thing*, than folweth it, thatoure vyces ben referred to the maker of alle good (*as who seyth, than foloweth it, that god oughte han the blame ofoure vyces, sin he constraineth us by necessitee to doon vyces*). Thanne is ther no resoun to hopen in god, ne for to preye to god, for what sholde any wight hopen to god, or why sholde he preye to god, sin that the ordinaunce of destinee, which that ne may nat ben inclyned, knitteth and streineth alle thinges that men may desiren? Thanne sholde ther be doon away thilke only allyaunce bitwixen god and men, that is to seyn, to hopen and to preye. But by the prys of rightwisnesse and of verray mekenesse we deserven the gardoun of the divyne grace, which that is inestimable, *that is to seyn, that it is a greet, that it ne may nat ben ful y-preyed*. And this is only the manere, *that is to seyn, hope and preyes*, for which semeth that men mowen speke with god, and by resoun of supplicacioun be conjoined to thilke cleer nesse, that nis not aproched no rather or that men beseech it and impetren it. And yif men wet nat that hope ne preyes ne han no strengthes, by the necessitee of thinges to comen y-receved, what thing is that thanne by whiche we mowen ben conjoined and clyven to thilke soverain prince of thinges? For which it bihoveth by necessitee, that the linage of mankinde, as thou songe a litel her-bifore be departed and unjoined from his wel and fallen of his byfyrmynges, *that is to seyn, god*.

MARCUS III. *Quenam discors federa rerum.*

What discordable cause hath to-rent and unjoined the bindinge, or the alliance, of thinges, *that is to seyn, the conjuncconioun of god and man?* Whiche god hath established so greet hataile bitwixen these two soothfast or verray thinges, *that is to seyn, bitwixen the purvaunce of god and free wil,* that they ben singular and devyded, ne that they ne wolen nat be medeled ne coupled to-gidres? But ther nis no discord to the verray thinges, but they clyven, certein, alway to hem-self. But the thought of man, confounded and overthrowen by the dirke membres of the body, ne may nat, by fyr of his derked looking, *that is to seyn, by the rigour of his insighte, whyl the soule is in the body,* knowe the thynne subtil knyttinges of thinges. But wherfore enchaufeth it us, by so greet love, to finden thilke notes of sooth y-covered, *that is to seyn, wherfore enchaufeth the thoght of man by so greet desyr to knowen thilke notificaciouns that ben y-hid under the covertoures of seith?* Wot it aught thilke thing that it, anguissous, desireth to knowe? *As who seith, nay, for no man travaileth for to witen thinges that he wot. And therfore the text seith thus* but who travaileth to witen thinges y-knowe? And yif that he ne knoweth hem nat, what seketh thilke blinde thoght? What is he that desireth any thing of which he wot right naught? *As who seith, who so desireth any thing, nedes, somewhat he knoweth of it, or elles, he ne coude nat desire it. Or who may s-iden thinges that ne ben nat y-wist? And thogh that he seke tho thinges, wher shal he finde hem? What wight, that is al unconnyng and ignoraunt, may knowen the forme that is y-founde? But whan the soule biholdeth and seeth the laye thoght, that is to seyn, god, than knoweth it to-gidres the somme and the singularitees, that is to seyn, the principles and everich by him-self.* But now, whyl the soule is hid in the cloude and in the darkenesse of the membres of the body, it ne hath nat al for-yeten it-self, but

it with-holdeth the somme of thinges, 50 and leseth the singularitees. Thanne, who-so that seeketh soothnesse, he nis in neither nother habite; for he noot nat al, ne he ne hath nat al for-yeten but yit him remembreth the somme of thinges 55 that he with-holdeth, and axeth conseil, and retreteth deepliche thinges y-seyn biforn, *that is to seyn, the grete somme in his minde* so that he mowe adden the parties that he hath for-yeten to thilke 60 that he hath with-holden.

PROSE IV. *Tum illa: Vetus, inquit, hec est.*

Thanne seide she: 'this is,' quod she, 'the olde question of the purvaunce of god, and Marcus Tullius, whan he devyded the divynaciouns, *that is to seyn, in his book that he wroot of divynaciouns,* he 5 moevede gretly this questioun, and then thy-self has y-sought it mochel, and outrely, and lenge, but yit ne hath it nat ben determined ne y-sped fermely and diligently of any of yow. And the 10 cause of this derkenesse and of this difficultee is, for that the moevinge of the resoun of mankinde ne may nat moeven to *(that is to seyn, applyen or joinen to)* the simplicitee of the devyne prescience; the 15 whiche simplicitee of the devyne prescience, yif that men mighten thinken it in any maner, *that is to seyn, that yif men mighten thinken and comprehend the thinges as god seith hem,* thanne ne shoulde ther 20 dwellen outrely no doute. the whiche resoun and cause of difficultee I shal assaye at the laste to shewe and to speden, whan I have first y-spended and answered to the resouns by which thou art y- 25 moeved. For I axe why thou wenest that thilke resouns of hem that assoilen this questioun ne ben nat speedful y-nough ne sufficient. the whiche solucioun, or 30 the whiche resoun, for that it demeth that the prescience nis nat cause of necessee to thinges to comen, than ne weneth it nat that freedom of wil be destorbed or y-let by prescience. For ne drawestow nat arguments from elles-where of the 35 necessee of thinges to-comen *(as who*

seith, any other way than thus) but that
 thilke thinges that the prescience wot
 beforne ne mowen nat unbityde? *That is*
 40 *to seyn, that they moten bityde* But
 thanne, yif that prescience ne putteth
 no necessitee to thinges to comen, as
 thou thy-self hast confessed it and bi-
 knownen a litel her-biforn, what cause or
 45 what is it (as *who seith, ther may no cause*
be, by which that the endes voluntarie of
 thinges mighten be constrained to certain
 bitydinge? For by grace of position, so
 that thou mowe the betere understonde
 50 this that folweth, I pose, *per impossibile*,
 that ther be no prescience. Thanne axe
 I, quod she, 'in as moche as apertieneth
 to that, sholden thanne thinges that
 comen of free wil ben constrained to bi-
 55 tyden by necessitee?' Boece, 'Nay,'
 quod I.

'Thanne ayeinward,' quod she, 'I sup-
 pose that ther be prescience, but that it
 ne putteth no necessitee to thinges,
 60 thanne trowe I, that thilke selve freedom
 of wil shal dwellen al hool and absolut
 and unbounden. But thou wolt seyn
 that, al-be-it so that prescience nis nat
 cause of the necessitee of bitydinge to
 65 thinges to comen algates yit it is a signe
 that the thinges ben to bityden by
 necessitee. By this manere thanne, al-
 though the prescience ne hadde never
 y-ben, yit *algate or at the leeste weye* it
 70 is certein thing, that the endes and
 bitydinges of thinges to comen shal ben
 ben necessarie. For every signe sheweth
 and signifyeth only what the thing is,
 but it ne maketh nat the thing that it
 75 signifyeth. For which it bihoveth first
 to shewen, that no-thing ne litydeth
 that it ne lity loth by necessitee, so that
 it may appere that the prescience is signe
 of this necessitee or elles, yif ther were
 80 no necessitee, certes, thilke prescience
 ne mighte nat be signe of thing that nis
 nat. But certes, it is now certein that
 the prove of this, y-sustened by stedefast
 reson, ne shal nat ben lad ne proved
 85 by signes ne by arguments y-taken fro
 with-oute, but by causes covenable and
 necessarie. But thou mayest seyn, how

may it be that the thinges
 nat that ben y-purveyed to comen
 certes, right as we trowen
 thinges which that the pur-
 biforn to comen ne ben nat
 but that ne sholden we nat
 rather, al-though that they
 yit ne have they no necessitee
 kinde to bityden. And this
 lightly aperceiven by this
 seyn. For we seen many thinges
 they ben don biforn oure eyes
 men seen the carters work-
 torninge or atempringe or
 huse cartes or charietes. And
 manere (as *who seith, mayston*
 of alle othere workmen. Is
 any necessitee, as *who seith,*
 lokinge, that constreyneth or
 any of thilke thinges to be
 Boece. 'Nay,' quod I; 'for
 in veyn were al the effect of
 that alle thinges weren moore
 streyninge' *that is to seyn, by*
of oure eyes or of oure sight.

'The thinges thanne,' quod
 whan men don hem, ne have
 sitee that men don hem, of
 thinges, first or they ben don
 to comen with-oute necessitee
 ther ben summe thinges to
 which the endes and the bity-
 den ben absolut and quit of
 sitee. For certes, I ne trowe
 any man wolle seyn this
 thinges that men don now,
 ne weren to bityden first or
 y-down; and thilke same
 though that men had y-wist
 yit they han free bitydinges,
 as science of thinges present
 in no necessitee to thinges
 don, right so the prescience
 to comen ne bringeth in no
 thinges to bityden. But thou
 that of thilke same it is y-
 whether that of thilke thinges
 han non issues al bitydinges
 yif ther-of may ben any prove
 certes, they semen to discorde
 thou weneest that, yif that

y-seyn biforn, that necessitee folweth
 140 hem; and yif necessitee faileth hem,
 they ne mighten nat ben wist biforn,
 and that no-thing ne may ben compre-
 hended by science but certein; and yif
 the thinges that ne han no certein bi-
 145 tydinges ben purveyed as certein, it
 sholde ben dirknesse of opinioun, nat
 soothfastnesse of science. And thou
 weneest that it be diverse fro the hool-
 nesse of science that any man sholde
 150 deme a thing to ben other-ways thanne
 it is it-self. And the cause of this erreure
 is, that of alle the thinges that every
 wight hath y-knowe, they wenen that
 the thinges been y-knowe al-oonly by the
 155 strengthe and by the nature of the
 thinges that ben y-wist or y-knowe; and
 it is al the contrarie. For al that ever
 is y-knowe, it is rather comprehended
 and knowen, nat after his strengthe and
 160 his nature, but after the facultee, *that*
is to seyn, the power and the nature, of hem
 that knowen. And, for that this thing
 shal mowen shewen by a shortensample:
 the same roundnesse of a body, other-
 165 weys the sighte of the eye knoweth it,
 and other-weyes the touchinge. The
 lokinge, by castinge of his bemes, waiteth
 and seeth from afer al the body to-gidere,
 with-oute moevinge of it-self; but the
 170 touchinge clyveth and conjoineth to the
 rounde body, and moeveth aboute the
 envirominge, and comprehendeth by
 parties the roundnesse. And the man
 him-self, other-ways wit biholdeth him,
 175 and other-ways imaginacioun, and other-
 weys resoun, and other-ways intelligence.
 For the wit comprehendeth withoute-
 forth the figure of the body of the man
 that is establised in the matere subject;
 180 but the imaginacioun comprehendeth
 only the figure withoute the matere.
 Resoun surmounteth imaginacioun, and
 comprehendeth by universal lokinge the
 comune spece that is in the singuler
 185 peces. But the eye of intelligence is
 heyere; for it surmounteth the environ-
 inge of the universitee, and looketh, over
 that, by pure subtilitee of thoght, thilke
 same simple forme of man that is per-

durably in the divyne thoght. In whiche 190
 this oughte greetly to ben considered,
 that the heyeste strengthe to compre-
 henden thinges enbraseth and contieneth
 the lowere strengthe; but the lowere
 strengthe ne aryseth nat in no manere 195
 to heyere strengthe. For wit ne may
 no-thing comprehende out of matere, ne
 the imaginacioun ne loketh nat the uni-
 versels spesces, ne resoun taketh nat the
 simple forme *so as intelligence taketh it*; 200
 but intelligence, that looketh al aboven,
 whan it hath comprehended the forme,
 it knoweth and demeth alle the thinges
 that ben under that forme. But *she*
knoweth hem in thilke manere in the 205
 whiche it comprehendeth thilke same
 simple forme that ne may never ben
 knowen to none of that other; *that is to*
seyn, to none of the three forseide thinges
of the soule. For it knoweth the univer- 210
 sitee of resoun, and the figure of the
 imaginacioun, and the sensible material
conceived by wit; ne it ne useth nat nor
 of resoun ne of imaginacioun ne of wit
 withoute-forth; but it biholdeth alle 215
 thinges, so as I shal seye, by a strok of
 thought formely, *withoute discours or col-*
lacioun. Certes resoun, whan it looketh
 any-thing universel, it ne useth nat of
 imaginacioun, nor of witte, and algates 220
 yit it comprehendeth the thinges imagin-
 able and sensible; for resoun is she that
 diffiniseth the universel of hir conseyte
 right thus:—man is a resonable two-
 foted beest. And how so that this 225
 knowinge is universel, yet nis ther no
 wight that ne woot wel that a man is
 a thing imaginable and sensible; and
 this same considereth wel resoun; but
 that nis nat by imaginacioun nor by wit, 230
 but it looketh it by a resonable concep-
 cioun. Also imaginacioun, al-be-it so that
 it taketh of wit the beginniges to seen
 and to formen the figures, algates, al-
 though that wit ne were nat present, yit 235
 it environeth and comprehendeth alle
 thinges sensible; nat by resoun sensible
 of deminge, but by resoun imaginatif.
 Seestow nat thanne that alle the thinges,
 in knowinge, usen more of hir facultee 240

or of hir power than they doon of the
facultee or power of thinges that ben y-
 knowe? Ne that nis nat wrong, for so
 as every jugement is the dede or doinge
 245 of him that demeth, it bihoveth that
 every wight performe the werk and his
 entencioun, nat of foreine power, but of
 his propre power.

METRE IV. *Quondam porticus attulit.*

The Porche, that is to seyn, a gate of
 the town of Athenes ther-as philosophres
 hadden hir congregacioun to disputen,
 thilke Porche broughte som-tyme olde
 5 men, ful derke in hir sentences, that
 is to seyn, philosophres that highten
 Stoiciens, that wenden that images and
 sensibilittees, that is to seyn, sensible imagin-
 acions, or elles imaginaciouns of sensible
 10 thinges, weren empreinted in-to sowles
 fro bodies withoute-forth, as who seith,
 that thilke Stoiciens wenden that the soule
 hadde ben naked of it-self, as a mirour or
 a clene parchemin, so that alle figures
 15 mosten first comen fro thinges fro withoute-
 forth in-to sowles, and ben empreinted in-to
 sowles. Text: right as we ben went som-
 tyme, by a swifte pointel, to flechen
 lettres empreinted in the smothernesse or
 20 in the plainnesse of the table of wax or
 in parchemin that no hath no figure ne
 note in it. Glouc But now argueth
 Boece ayeins that opinioun, and seith thus:
 But yif the thryvinge soule no un-
 25 ployteth no-thing, that is to seyn, no doth
 no-thing, by his propre moevinges, but
 suffreth and lyth subgit to the figures
 and to the notes of bodies withoute-forth,
 and yaldeth images ydel and veyn in the
 30 manere of a mirour, whennes thryveth
 thanne or whennes comith thilke know-
 inge in our soule, that discerneth and
 biholdeth alle thinges? And whennes is
 thilke strengthe that biholdeth the singu-
 35 lar thinges, or whennes is the strengthe
 that devydoth thinges y-knowe and
 thilke strengthe that gadereth to-gedere
 the thinges devyded; and the strengthe
 that cheseth his entrechaunged wey?

For som-tyme it heveth up the heved,
 that is to seyn, that it heveth up the inten-
 cioun to right heye thinges, and som-tyme
 it descendeth in-to right lowe thinges.
 And whan it retorneth in-to him-self,
 it reproeveth and destroyeth the false
 thinges by the trewe thinges. Certes,
 this strengthe is cause more efficient,
 and mochel more mighty to seen and to
 knowe thinges, than thilke cause that
 suffreth and receiveth the notes and the
 figures impressed in maner of matere.
 Algetes the passioun, that is to seyn, the
 suffraunce or the wit, in the quike body,
 goth biforn, excitange and moevinge the
 strengthes of the thought. Right so as
 whan that cleernesse smyteth the eyen
 and moeveth hem to seen, or right so as
 vois or soun hurteleth to the eres and
 commoeveth hem to herkne, than is the
 strengthe of the thought y-moeved and
 excited, and clepeth forth, to semblable
 moevinges, the spesces that it halt with-
 inne it-self; and addeth the spesces to
 the notes and to the thinges withoute-
 forth, and medleth the images of thinges
 withoute-forth to the formes y-hidde
 with-inne him-self.

PROSE V. *Quod si in corporibus sentiendū.*

But what yif that in bodies to ben
 feled, that is to seyn, in the takinge of
 knowelechinge of bodily thinges, and al-be-
 it so that the qualitees of bodies, that
 ben objects fro withoute-forth, moeven
 and entalenten the instruments of the
 wittes; and al-be-it so that the passioun
 of the body, that is to seyn, the wit or the
 suffraunce, goth to-forn the strengthe of
 the workinge corage, the which passioun
 or suffraunce clepeth forth the dede of
 the thought in him-self, and moeveth and
 exciteth in this mene whyle the formes
 that resten withinne-forth, and yif that
 in sensible bodies, as I have seyd, our
 corage nis nat y-taught or empreinted
 by passioun to knowe these thinges, but
 demeth and knoweth, of his owne
 strengthe, the passioun or suffraunce

subject to the body: moche more thanne
the thinges that ben absolut and quite
fro alle talents or affeccions of bodies,
as god or his angesles, ne folwen nat in
discerninge thinges object fro withoute-
forth, but they accomplisshen and speden
the dede of hir thoght. By this resoun
thanne ther comen many maner know-
inges to dyverse and differinge sub-
stances. For the wit of the body, the
whiche wit is naked and despoiled of
alle other knowinges, thilke wit comth
to beestes that ne mowen nat moeven
hem-self her and ther, as oystres and
muscles, and other swiche shelle-fish of
the see, that clyven and ben norissched
to roches. But the imaginacioun comth
to remuable beestes, that semen to han
talent to flee or to desiren any thing.
But resoun is al-only to the linage of
mankinde, right as intelligence is only
[to] the devyne nature: of which it fol-
weth, that thilke knowinge is more worth
than thise othre, sin it knoweth by his
propre nature nat only his subject, as
who seith, it ne knoweth nat al-only that
spertieneth properly to his knowinge, but
it knoweth the subjects of alle other
knowinges. But how shal it thanne be,
yif that wit and imaginacioun stryven
ayen resoninge, and seyn, that of thilke
universel thing that resoun weneth to
seen, that it nis right naught? For wit
and imaginacioun seyn that that, that is
sensible or imaginable, it ne may nat be
universel. Thanne is either the juge-
ment of resoun sooth, ne that ther nis
nothing sensible; or elles, for that resoun
wot wel that many thinges ben subject
to wit and to imaginacioun, thanne is
the concepcioun of resoun veyn and false,
which that loketh and comprehendeth
that that is sensible and singuler as
universel. And yif that resoun wolde
answeren ayen to thise two, that is to
seyn, to witte and to imaginacioun, and
seyn, that soothly she hir-self, that is to
seyn, resoun, loketh and comprehendeth,
by resoun of universalitee, bothe that
that is sensible and that that is imagin-
able; and that thilke two, that is to seyn.

wit and imaginacioun, ne mowen nat
strecchen ne enhansen hem-self to the
knowinge of universalitee, for that the
knowinge of hem ne may exceden ne
surmounte the bodily figures: certes, of
the knowinge of thinges, men oughten
rather yeven credence to the more stede-
fast and to the more parfit jugement.
In this maner stryvinge thanne, we
that han strengthe of resoninge and of
imagininge and of wit, that is to seyn,
by resoun and by imaginacioun and by wit,
we sholde rather preyse the cause of
resoun; as who seith, than the cause of
wit and of imaginacioun.

85

Semblable thing is it, that the resoun
of mankinde ne weneth nat that the
devyne intelligence bi-holdeth or know-
eth thinges to comen, but right as the
resoun of mankinde knoweth hem. For
thou arguest and seyst thus: that yif
it ne seme nat to men that some thinges
han certein and necessarie bitydinges,
they ne mowen nat ben wist biforn cer-
teinly to bityden. And thanne nis ther
no prescience of thilke thinges; and yif
we trowe that prescience be in thise
thinges, thanne is ther no-thing that it
ne bitydeth by necessitee. But certes,
yif we mighten han the jugement of the
devyne thoght, as we ben parsoneres of
resoun, right so as we han demed that
it behoveth that imaginacioun and wit
be binethe resoun, right so wolde we
demen that it were rightful thing, that
mannes resoun oughte to submitten it-
self and to ben binethe the divyne
thoght. For which, yif that we mowen,
as who seith, that, yif that we mowen,
I counseyle, that we enhance us in-to the
heighte of thilke sovereyn intelligence;
for ther shal resoun wel seen that, that
it ne may nat biholden in it-self. And
certes that is this, in what maner the
prescience of god seeth alle thinges cer-
teins and diffinissed, al-thogh they ne
han no certein issues or bitydinges; ne
this is non opinioun, but it is rather the
simplicitee of the sovereyn science, that
nis nat enclosed nor y-shet within none
boundes.

115

120

METRE V. *Quam uariis terris animalia permeant figura.*

The beestes passen by the erthes by ful diverse figures. For som of hem han hir bodies straught and crepen in the dust, and drawen after hem a tras or a foruh
 5 y-continued; *that is to seyn, as nadres or snakes.* And other beestes, by the wandringe lightnesse of hir winges, beten the windes, and over-swimmen the spaces of the longe eyr by moist fleeinge. And other
 10 beestes gladen hem-self to diggen hir tras or hir steppes in the erthe with hir goings or with hir feet, and to goon either by the grene felde, or elles to walken under the wodes. And al-be-it so that thou
 15 seest that they alle discorden by diverse formes, algates hir faces, enclined, hevieth hir dulle wittes. Only the linage of man heveth heyeste his heye heved, and stondeth light with his up-right body,
 20 and biholdeth the erthes under him. And, but-yif thou, erthely man, wexest yvel out of thy wit, this figure amonesteth thee, that axest the hevne with thy righte visage, and hast areysed thy fore-
 25 heved, to beren up a-heigh thy corage; so that thy thoght ne be nat y-heved ne put lowe under fote, sin that thy body is so heye areysed.

PROSE VI. *Quoniam igitur, uti paullo ante.*

Therfor thanne, as I have shewed a litel her-biforn, that al thing that is y-wist nis nat knowen by his nature propre, but by the nature of hem that
 5 comprehenden it, lat us loke now, in as mochel as it is levelful to us, *as who seith, lat us loke now as we mowen*, which that the estat is of the devyne substaunce; so that we mowen eek knowen what his
 10 science is. The commune jugement of alle creatures resonables thanne is this: that god is eterne. Lat us considere thanne what is eternitee; for certes that shal shewen us to-gidere the devyne
 15 nature and the devyne science. Eternitee, thanne, is parfit possessioun and al-

togidere of lyf interminable; and that sheweth more cleerly by the comparisoun or the collacioun of temporel thinges. For al thing that liveth in tyme it is present, and procedeth fro preterits in-to
 futures, *that is to seyn, fro tyme passed in-to tyme cominge*; ne ther nis no-thing established in tyme that may embracen
 to-gider al the space of his lyf. For certes, yit ne hath it taken the tyme of
 to-morwe, and it hath lost the tyme of yisterday. And certes, in the lyf of this day, ye ne liven no more but right as in the moevable and transitorië moment.
 Thanne thilke thing that suffreth temporel condicioun, al-thogh that it never bigan to be, ne thogh it never cese for to be, as Aristotle demed of the world, and al-thogh that the lyf of it be strecched
 with infinitee of tyme, yit algates nis
 it no swich thing that men mighten trowen by right that it is eterne. For al-thogh that it comprehende and embrace the space of lyf infinit, yit algates
 ne embraceth it nat the space of the lyf
 al-togider; for it ne hath nat the futures that ne ben nat yit, *ne it ne hath no longer the preterits that ben y-doon or y-passed.* But thilke thing thanne, that hath and comprehendeth to-gider al the plentee of
 the lyf interminable, to whom ther ne failleth naught of the future, and to whom ther nis naught of the preterit escaped nor y-passed, thilke same is y-witnessed and y-proeved by right to be eterne. And
 it bihoveth by necessitee that thilke thing be al-vey present to him-self, and compotent; *as who seith, al-vey present to him-self, and so mighty that al be right at his plesaunce*; and that he have al present
 the infinitee of the moevable tyme. Wher-for som men trowen wrongfully that, whan they heren that it semede to Plato that this world ne hadde never
 beginninge of tyme, ne that it never shal han failinge, they wenen in this maner that this world be makid coeterne with his maker; *as who seith, they wene that this world and god ben makid togider eterne, and that is a wrongful weninge.* For other thing is it to ben y-lad by lyf

interminable, as Plato graunted to the world, and other thing is it to embrace to-gider al the present of the lyf interminable, the whiche thing it is cleer and manifest that it is propre to the devyne thought.

Ne it ne sholde nat semen to us, that god is elder thanne thinges that ben y-maked by quantitee of tyme, but rather by the propretee of his simple nature. For this ilke infinit moevinge of temporel thinges folweth this presentarie estat of lyf unmoevable; and so as it ne may nat be countrefeten it ne feynen it ne be evenlyke to it for the inmoevabletee, *that is to seyn, that is in the eternitee of god*, it faileth and falleth in-to moevinge fro the simplicitee of the presence of god, and disincreaseth in-to the infinit quantitee of fature and of preterit: and so as it ne may nat han to-gider al the plentee of the lyf, algates yit, for as moche as it ne ceaseth never for to ben in som maner, it semeth som-del to us, that it folweth and resembleth thilke thing that it ne may nat atayne to ne fulfillen, and bindeth it-self to som maner presence of this litel and swifte moment: the which presence of this litel and swifte moment, for that it bereth a maner image or lyknesse of the ay-dwellinge presence of god, it graunteth, to swiche maner thinges as it bitydeth to, that it semeth hem as thise thinges ben y-ben, and ben.

And, for that the presence of swich litel moment ne may nat dwelle, ther-for it ravished and took the infinit wey of tyme, *that is to seyn, by successioun*; and by this maner is it y-doon, for that it sholde continue the lyf in goinge, of the whiche lyf it ne mighte nat enbrace the plentee in dwellinge. And for-thy, yif we wollen putten worthy names to thinges, and folwen Plato, lat us seye thanne soothly, that god is eterne, and the world is perpetuel. Thanne, sin that every jugement knoweth and comprehendeth by his owne nature thinges that ben subject un-to him, ther is soothly to god, al-weys, an eterne and presentarie estat; and the science of him, that over-passeth

al temporel moevement, dwelleth in the simplicitee of his presence, and embraceth and considereth alle the infinit spaces of tymes, preterits and futures, and loketh, in his simple knowinge, alle thinges of preterit right as they weren y-doon presently right now. Yif thou wolt thanne thenken and avyse the prescience, by which it knoweth alle thinges, thou ne shal nat demen it as prescience of thinges to comen, but thou shalt demen it more rightfully that it is science of presence or of instaunce, that never ne faileth. For which it nis nat y-cleped "previdence," but it sholde rather ben cleped "purviance," that is establisshed ful fer fro right lowe thinges, and biholdeth from a-fer alle thinges, right as it were fro the heye heighte of thinges. Why axestow thanne, or why desputestow thanne, that thilke thinges ben doon by necessitee whiche that ben y-seyn and knowen by the devyne sighte, sin that, forsothe, men ne maken nat thilke thinges necessarie which that they seen ben y-doon in hir sighte? For addeth thy biholdinge any necessitee to thilke thinges that thou biholdest presente? 'Nay,' quod I.

Philosophia. 'Certes, thanne, if men mighte maken any digne comparisoun or collacioun of the presence devyne and of the presence of mankinde, right so as ye seen some thinges in this temporel present, right so seeth god alle thinges by his eterne present. Wher-fore this devyne prescience ne chaungeth nat the nature ne the propretee of thinges, but biholdeth swiche thinges present to him-ward as they shullen bityde to yow-ward in tyme to comen. Ne it confoundeth nat the jugement of thinges; but by sighte of his thought, he knoweth the thinges to comen, as wel necessarie as nat to-gider a man walken on the erthe and the sonne aysen in the hevene, al-be-it so that ye seen and biholden that oon and that other to-gider, yit natheles ye demen and discernen that that oon is voluntarie and that other necessarie. Right so thanne the devyne lookinge, biholdinge

alle thinges under him, ne troubleth nat
 170 the qualitee of thinges that ben certainly
 present to him-ward ; but, as to the con-
 dicioun of tyme, forsothe, they ben
 future. For which it folweth, that this
 nis noon opinioun, but rather a stedefast
 175 knowinge, y-strengthened by soothnesse,
 that, whanne that god knoweth anything
 to be, he ne unwot nat that thilke thing
 wanteth necessitee to be ; *this is to seyn,*
that, whan that god knoweth any thing to
 180 *bityde, he wot wel that it ne hath no neces-*
sitee to bityde. And yif thou seyst heer,
 that thilke thing that god seeth to
 bityde, it ne may nat unbityde (*as who*
seith, it mot bityde), and thilke thing that
 185 ne may nat unbityde it mot bityde by
 necessitee, and that thou streyne me by
 this name of necessitee : certes, I wol wel
 confessen and biknowe a thing of ful sad
 trowthe, but unnethe shal ther any wight
 190 mowe *seen it* or come ther-to, but-yif that
 he be biholder of the devyne thoght. For
 I wol answeren thee thus : that thilke
 thing that is future, whan it is referred
 to the devyne knowinge, thanne is it
 195 necessarie ; but certes, whan it is under-
 stonden in his owne kinde, men seen
 it is outrely free, and absolut *fro alle*
necessitee.

For certes, ther ben two maneres of
 200 necessitee. That oon necessitee is simple,
 as thus : that it bihoveth by necessitee,
 that alle men be mortal *or deedly.*
 Another necessitee is conditionel, as thus :
 yif thou wost that a man walketh, it
 205 bihoveth by necessitee that he walke.
 Thilke thing thanne that any wight hath
 y-knowe to be, it ne may ben non other
 weyes thanne he knoweth it to be. But
 this condicioun ne draweth nat with hir
 210 thilke necessitee simple. For certes, this
 necessitee *conditionel*, the propre nature
 of it ne maketh it nat, but the adjeccioun
 of the condicioun *maketh it.* For no ne-
 cessitee ne constreyneth a man to gon,
 215 that goth by his propre wil ; al-be-it so
 that, whan he goth, that it is necessarie
 that he goth. Right on this same maner
 thanne, yif that the purviaunce of god
 seeth any thing present, than mot thilke

thing ben by necessitee, al-thogh that it
 ne have no necessitee of his owne nature.
 But certes, the futures that bityden by free-
 dom of arbitre, god seeth hem alle to-gider
 present. Thise thinges thanne, yif they
 ben referred to the devyne sighte, thanne
 220 ben they makid necessarie by the con-
 dicioun of the devyne knowinge. But
 certes, yif thilke thinges be considered by
 hem-self, they ben absolut *of necessitee,*
 and ne forleten nat ne cesen nat of the
 225 libertee of hir owne nature. Thanne,
 certes, with-oute doute, alle the thinges
 shollen ben doon which that god wot
 biforn that they ben to comen. But som
 of hem comen and bityden of free arbitre
 230 *or of free wille*, that, al-be-it so that they
 bityden, yit algates ne lese they nat hir
 propre nature in beinge ; by the which
 first, or that they weren y-doon, they
 hadden power nat to han bitid.' *Bocc.* 24
 'What is this to seyn thanne,' quod I,
 'that thinges ne ben nat necessarie *by hir*
propre nature, so as they comen in alle
 maneres in the lyknesse of necessitee by
 the condicioun of the devyne science?' 24

'This is the difference,' quod she ; 'that
 tho thinges that I purposede thee a litel
 heer-biforn, that is to seyn, the sonne
 arysinge and the man walkinge, that,
 ther-whyles that thilke thinges been y-
 25 doon, they ne mighte nat ben undoon ;
 natheles, that oon of hem, or it was
 y-doon, it bihoved by necessitee that it
 was y-doon, but nat that other. Right so
is it here, that the thinges that god hath
 260 present, with-oute doute they shollen
 been. But som of hem descendeth of the
 nature of thinges, *as the sonne arysinge* ;
 and som descendeth of the power of the
 doeres, *as the man walkinge.* Thanne 26
 seide I no wrong, that yif these thinges
 ben referred to the devyne knowinge,
 thanne ben they necessarie ; and yif they
 ben considered by hem-self, thanne ben
 they absolut fro the bond of necessitee. 26
 Right so as alle thinges that apereth or
 sheweth to the wittes, yif thou referre it
 to resoun, it is universel ; and yif thou
 referre it or loke it to it-self, than is it
 singular. But now, yif thou seyst thus, 27

that yif it be in my power to chaunge my
purpos, than shal I voide the purviaunce
of god, whan that, peraventure, I shal
han-chaunged the thinges that he know-
75 eth biforn, thanne shal I answer thee
thus. Certes, thou mayst wel chaunge
thy purpos; but, for as mochel as the
present soothnesse of the devyne pur-
viaunce biholdeth that thou mayst
to chaunge thy purpos, and whether thou
wolt chaunge it or no, and whiderward
that thou torne it, thou ne mayst nat
eschuen the devyne prescience; right as
thou ne mayst nat fleen the sighte of the
85 presente eye, al-though that thou torne
thy-self by thy free wil in-to dyverse
acciouns. But thou mayst seyn ayein:
"How shal it thanne be? Shal nat the
devyne science be chaunged by my dis-
90 posicioun, whan that I wol o thing now,
and now another? And thilke prescience,
ne semeth it nat to entrechaunge stoundes
of knowinge;"' as *who seith, ne shal it nat
come to us, that the devyne prescience entre-*
95 *chaungeth his dyverse stoundes of know-*
inge, so that it knowe sum-tyme o thing and
sum-tyme the contrarie of that thing?
'No, forsothe,' quod I.

Philosophie. 'For the devyne sighte
100 renneth to-forn and seeth alle futures,
and clepeth hem ayein, and retorneth
hem to the presence of his propre know-
inge; ne he ne entrechaungeth nat, so as
thou wenest, the stoundes of forknow-
105 inge, as now this, now that; but he ay-
dwellinge comth biforn, and embraceth
at o strook alle thy mutaciouns. And this
presence to comprehenden and to seen
alle thinges, god ne hath nat taken it of
110 the bitydinge of thinges to come, but of his

propre simplicitee. And her-by is assoiled
thilke thing that thou puttest a litel
her-biforn, *that is to seyn*, that it is un-
worthy thing to seyn, that our futures
yeven cause of the science of god. For 315
certes, this strengthe of the devyne
science, which that embraceth alle
thinges by his presentarie knowinge,
establissheth maner to alle thinges, and
it ne oweth naught to latter thinges; and 320
sin that these thinges ben thus, *that is to*
seyn, sin that necessitee nis nat in thinges by
the devyne prescience, than is ther freedom
of arbitre, that dwelleth hool and un-
wemmed to mortal men. Ne the lawes ne 325
purposen nat wikkedly medes and peynes
to the willinges of men that ben un-
bounden and quite of alle necessitee. And
god, biholder and for-witer of alle thinges,
dwelleth above; and the present eternitee 330
of his sighte renneth alwey with the
dyverse qualitee of oure dedes, dispens-
inge and ordeyninge medes to goode men,
and torments to wikked men. Ne in ydel
ne in veyn ne ben ther nat put in god 335
hope and preyeres, that ne mowen nat
ben unspeedful ne with-oute effect, whan
they ben rightful. Withstond thanne
and eschue thou vyces; worshipe and love
thou virtues; areys thy corage to right- 340
ful hopes; yilde thou humble preyeres
a-heigh. Gret necessitee of prowessse
and vertu is encharged and commaunded
to yow, yif ye nil nat dissimulen; sin
that ye worken and doon, *that is to seyn*, 345
your dedes or your workes, biforn the eyen
of the juge that seeth *and demeth* alle
thinges.' *To whom be glorie and worshipe*
by infinit tyme. AMEX.

TROILUS AND CRISEYDE.

BOOK I.

1. THE double sorwe of Troilus to tellen,
That was the king Priamus sone of
Troye,

In lovinge, how his adventures fellen
Fro wo to wale, and after out of joye,
My purpos is, er that I parte fro ye. 5
Thesiphone, thou help me for t'endyte
These woful vers, that wepan as I wryte!

2. To thee clepe I, thou goddesse of tor-
ment,

Thou cruel Furie, sorwing ever'in payne;
Help me, that am the sorwful instrument
That helpeth lovers, as I can, to pleyne!
For wel sit it, the sothe for to seyne, 12
A woful wight to han a drery fere,
And, to a sorwful tale, a sory chere.

3. For I, that god of Loves servaunts serve,
Ne dar to Love, for myn unlyklinesse, 16
Preyen for speed, al sholde I therfor
sterve,

So fer am I fro his help in derknesse;
But natheles, if this may doon gladnesse
To any lover, and his cause avayle, 20
Have he my thank, and myn be this tra-
vayle!

4. But ye loveres, that bathen in glad-
nesse,

If any drope of pitee in yow be,
Remembreth yow on passed hevinesse
That ye han felt, and on the adversitee 25
Of othere folk, and thenketh how that ye
Han felt that Love dorste yow displese;
Or ye han wonne him with to greet an ese.

5. And preyeth for hem that ben in the cas
Of Troilus, as ye may after here, 30

That love hem bringe in hevene to solas,
And eek for me preyeth to god so dere,
That I have might to shewe, in som
manera,

Swich payne and wo as Loves folk endure,
In Troilus unsely aventure. 35

6. And biddeth eek for hem that been
despeyred

in love, that never nil recovered be, *like*
And eek for hem that falsly been apeyred
Thorugh wikked tonges, be it he or she,
Thus biddeth god, for his benignitee, 40
To graunte hem sone out of this world to
pace,

That been despeyred out of Loves grace.

7. And biddeth eek for hem that been at
ese,

That god hem graunte ay good perseve-
raunce,
And sende hem might hir ladies so to
plese, 45

That it to Love be worship and plesaunce.
For so hope I my soule best avaunce, *like*
To preye for hem that Loves servaunts be,
And wryte hir wo, and live in charitee.

8. And for to have of hem compassion 50

As though I were hir owene brother dere.
Now herkeneth with a gode entencioun,
For now wol I gon streight to my matere,
In whiche ye may the double sorwes here

Of Troilus, in loving of Criseyde, 55
And how that she forsook him er she
deyde.

—♦—

9. It is wel wist, how that the Grekes
stronge

In armes with a thousand shippes wente
To Troye-wardes, and the citee longe
Assageden neigh ten yearer they stente, 60
And, in diverse wyse and oon entente,
The ravynshing to wreken of Eleyne,
By Paris doon, they wroughten al hir
peyne.

10. Now fil it so, that in the toun ther was
Dwellinge a lord of greet auctoritee, 65
A gret devyn that cleped was Calkas,
That in science so expert was, that he
Knew wel that Troye sholde destroyed be,
By answeere of his god, that highte thus,
Daun Phebus or Apollo Delphicus. 70

11. So whan this Calkas knew by calcu-
linge,

And eek by answeere of this Appollo,
That Grekes sholden swich a peple bringe,
Thorough which that Troye moste been
for-do,

He caste anon out of the toun to go; 75
For wel wiste he, by sort, that Troye
sholde

Destroyed been, ye, wolde who-so nolde.

12. For which, for to departen softlye, 80
Took purpos ful this forknowinge wyse,
And to the Grekes ost ful prively
He stal anon; and they, in curteys wyse,
Him deden bothe worship and servyse,
In trust that he hath conning hem to rede
In every peril which that is to drede.

13. The noyse up roos, whan it was first
aspyed, 85

Thorough al the toun, and generally was
spoken,

That Calkas traytor fled was, and allyed
With hem of Grece; and casten to ben
wroken

On him that falsly hadde his feith so
broken;

And seyden, he and al his kin at ones 90
Ben worthy for to brennen, fel and bones.

14. Now hadde Calkas left, in this mes-
chaunce,

Al unwist of this false and wikked dede,
His doughter, which that was in gret
penaunce,

For of hir lyf she was ful sore in drede, 95
As she that niste what was best to rede;
For bothe a widowe was she, and allone
Of any freend, to whom she dorste hir
mone.

15. Criseyde was this lady name a-right; 100
As to my dome, in al Troyes citee

Nas noon so fair, for passing every wight
So aungellyk was hir natyf beautee,
That lyk a thing immortal semed she,
As doth an hevenish parfit creature,
That down were sent in scorning of
nature. 105

16. This lady, which that al-day herde at
ere

Hir fadres shame, his falsnesse and
tresoun,

Wel nigh out of hir wit for sorwe and fere,
In widewes habit large of samit broun,
On knees she fil biforn Ector a-down; 110
With pitous voys, and tendrely wepinge,
His mercy bad, hir-selven excusinge.

17. Now was this Ector pitous of nature,
And saw that she was sorwfully bigoon,

And that she was so fair a creature; 115
Of his goodnesse he gladed hir anon,

And seyde, 'lat your fadres treson goon
Forth with mischaunce, and ye your-self,
in joye,

Dwelleth with us, whyl you good list, in
Troye.

18. And al th'onour that men may doon
yow have, 120

As ferforth as your fader dwelled here,
Ye shul han, and your body shal men save,

As fer as I may ought enquire or here.
And she him thonked with ful humble
chere,

And after wolde, and hadde ben his
wille, 125

And took leve, and hoom, and held
hir stille.

skin

19. And in hir hous she abood with swich
meynee
As to hir honour nede was to holde;
And whyl she was dwellinge in that citee,
Kepte hir estat, and bothe of yonge and
olde 130

Ful wel beloved, and wel men of hir tolde.
But whether that she children hadde or
noon,
I rede it nought; therefore I lete it goon.

20. The thinges fallen, as they doon of
werre,
Bitwixen hem of Troye and Grekes
ofte; 135
For som day boughten they of Troye it
derre,
And eft the Grekes founden no thing softe
The folk of Troye; and thus fortune on-
lofte,
And under eft, gan hem to wheelen bothe
After hir cours, ay whyl they were wrothe.

21. But how this toun com to destruc-
cioun 141
Ne falleth nought to purpos me to telle;
For it were here a long digressioun
Fro my matere, and yow to longe dwelle.
But the Troyane gestes, as they felle, 145
In Omer, or in Dares, or in Dyte,
Who-so that can, may rede hem as they
wryte.

22. But though that Grekes hem of Troye
shetten,
And hir citee bisegede al a-boute,
Hir olde usage wolde they not letten, 150
As for to honoure hir goddes ful devoute;
But aldermost in honour, out of doute,
They hadde a relik hight Palladion,
That was hir trist a-boven everichon.

23. And so bifel, whan comen was the
tyme 155
Of April, whan clothed is the mede
With newe grene, of lusty Ver the pryme,
And wote smellen floures whyte and rede,
In sonne wyse shewed, as I rede,
The folk of Troye hir observaunces olde,
Palladiones feste for to holde. 161

24. And to the temple, in al hir beste wyse,
In general, ther wente many a wight,

To herkennen of Palladion the servyse;
And namely, so many a lusty knight, 165
So many a lady fresh and mayden bright,
Ful wel arrayed, bothe moste and leste,
Ye, bothe for the seson and the feste.

25. Among thise othere folk was Criseyda,
In widewes habite blak; but nathelless,
Right as our firste lettre is now an A, 171
In beautee first so stood she, makeless;
Hir godly looking gladede al the prees.
Nas never seyn thing to ben preyed derre,
Nor under cloude blak so bright a sterre

26. As was Criseyde, as folk seyde everich-
oon 176
That hir bihelden in hir blake wede;
And yet she stood ful lowe and stille
alloon,

Bihinden othere folk, in litel brede, *space*
And neigh the dore, ay under shames
drede, *fachful simple*
Simple of a-tyr, and debonaire of chere,
With ful assured loking and manere.

27. This Troilus, as he was wont to gyde
His yonge knightes, ladde hem up and
doun
In thilke large temple on every syde, 185
Biholding ay the ladyes of the toun,
Now here, now there, for no devocioun
Hadde he to noon, to reven him his reste,
But gan to preyse and lakken whom him
leste. *U name*

28. And in his walk ful fast he gan to
wayten 190
If knight or squyer of his companye
Gan for to syke, or lete his eyen bayten
On any woman that he coude aspye;
He wolde smyle, and holden it folye,
And seye him thus, 'god wot, she slepeth
softe 195
For love of thee, whan thou tornest ful
ofte!

29. 'I have herd told, pardieu, of your
livinge,
Ye lovers, and your lewede observaunces, *or devotion*
And which a labour folk han in winninge
Of love, and, in the keping, which dou-
taunces; *captivity* 200

And whan your preye is lost, wo and
penaunces ;

O verrey foles ! nyce and blinde be ye ;
Ther nis not oon can war by other be.'

30. And with that word he gan cast up
the browe,

Ascaunces, 'lo ! is this nought wysly
spoken ?' 205

At which the god of love gan loken rowe
Right for despyt, and shoop for to ben
wroken ;

He kidde anon his bowe nas not broken ;
For sodeynly he hit him at the fulle squary
And yet as prond a pekok can he pulle. 210

31. O blinde world, O blinde entencioun !
How ofte falleth al th'effect contraire
Of surquidrye and foul presumpcioun ;
For caught is prond, and caught is de-
bonaire.

This Troilus is clomben on the staire, 215
And litel weneth that he moot descenden.
But al-day fayleth thing that foles
wenden.

32. As proude Bayard ginneth for to
skippe

Out of the wey, so priketh him his corn,
Til he a lash have of the longe whippe, 220
Than thenketh he, 'though I prauunce al
biforn

First in the trays, ful fat and newe shorn,
Yet am I but an hors, and horses lawe
I moot endure, and with my fares drawe.'

33. So ferde it by this fers and proude
knight ; 225

Though he a worthy kinges sone were,
And wende no-thing hadde had swiche
might

Ayens his wil that sholde his herte stere,
Yet with a look his herte wex a-fere,
That he, that now was most in pryde
above, 230

Wex sodeynly most subget un-to love.

34. For-thy ensample taketh of this man,
Ye wyse, proude, and worthy folkes alle,
To scornen Love, which that so sone can
The freedom of your hertes to him thralle ;
For ever it was, and ever it shal bifalle,

That Love is he that alle thing may
binde ;

For may no man for-do the lawe of kinde. *ann*

35. That this be sooth, hath preved and
doth yit ; 239

For this trowe I ye knowen, alle or some,
Men reden not that folk han gretter wit
Than they that han be most with love
-nome ;

And strangest folk ben therwith overcome,
The worthiest and grettest of degree ; 244
This was, and is, and yet men shal it see.

36. And trewelich it sit wel to be so ;
For alderwysest han ther-with ben plesed ;
And they that han ben aldermost in wo,
With love han been confortid most and
essed ; 249

And ofte it hath the cruel herte apesed,
And worthy folk maad worthier of name,
And causeth most to dreden vyce and
shame.

37. Now sith it may not goodly be with-
stonde,

And is a thing so vertuous in kinde,
Refuseth not to Love for to be bonde, 255
Sin, as him-selven list, he may yow binde.
The yerde is bet that bowen wole and
winde

Than that that brest ; and therfor I yow
rede

To folwen him that so wel can yow lede.

38. But for to tellen forth in special 260
As of this kinges sone of which I tolde,
And leten other thing collateral,
Of him thenke I my tale for to holde,
Bothe of his joye, and of his cares colde ;
And al his werk, as touching this matere,
For I it gan, I wil ther-to refere. 266

39. With-inne the temple he wente him
forth pleyinge,

This Troilus, of every wight aboute,
On this lady and now on that lokinge,
Wher-so she were of toune, or of with-
oute : 270

And up-on cas bifel, that thorough a route
His eye perced, and so depe it wente,
Til on Criseyde it smoot, and ther it
stente.

40. And sodeynly he wex ther-with
astoned,
And gan hire bet biholde in thrifty wyse :
'O mercy, god!' thoughte he, 'wher
hastow woned, 276
That art so fair and goodly to devyse?'
Ther-with his herte gan to sprede and
ryse,
And softe sighed, lest men mighte him
here,
And caughte a-yein his firste pleyinge
chere. 280

41. She nas not with the leste of hir
stature,
But alle hir limes so wel answeringe
Weren to womanhode, that creature
Was never lasse mannish in seminge. 284
And eek the pure wyse of here meninge
Shewed wel, that men might in hir gesse
Honour, estat, and wommanly noblesse.

42. To Troilus right wonder wel with-alle
Gan for to lyke hir mening and hir
chere,
Which somdel deynous was, for she leet
falle 290
Hir look a lite a-side, in swich manere,
Ascaunces, 'what! may I not stonden
here?'
And after that hir loking gan she lighte,
That never thoughte him seen so good
a sighte.

43. And of hir look in him ther gan to
quiken 295
So greet desir, and swich affeccoun,
That in his hertes botme gan to stiken
Of hir his fixe and depe impressioun :
And though he erst hadde poured up
and down, 299
He was the glad his hornes in to shrinke ;
Unnethes wiste he how to loke or winke.

44. Lo, he that leet him-selven so kon-
ninge,
And scorned hem that loves peynes dryen,
Was ful unwar that love hadde his
dwellinge
With-inne the subtile stremes of hir yēn ;
That sodeynly him thoughte he felte
dyen, 306

Right with hir look, the spirit in his
herte;
Blessed be love, that thus can folk con-
verte!

45. She, this in blak, lykinge to Troilus,
Over alle thing he stood for to biholde ;
Ne his desir, ne wherfor he stood thus,
He neither chere made, ne worde tolde ;
But from a-fer, his maner for to holde,
On other thing his look som-tyme he caste,
And eft on hir, whyl that servyse laste. 315

46. And after this, not fulliche al a-
whaped,
Out of the temple al esiliche he wente,
Repentinge him that he hadde ever y-
japed
Of loves folk, lest fully the descende *lord*
Of scorn fille on him-self; but, what he
mente, 320
Lest it were wist on any maner syde,
His wo he gan dissimulen and hyde.

47. Whan he was fro the temple thus
departed,
Hestreyght anon un-to his paleystorneth,
Right with hir look thurgh-shoten and
thurgh-darted, 325
Al feyneth he in lust that he sojorneth ;
And al his chere and speche also he
borneth ;
And ay, of loves servants every whyle,
Him-self to wrye, at hem he gan to smyle.

48. And seyde, 'lord, so ye live al in lest,
Ye loveres! for the conningest of yow, 331
That serveth most ententifich and best,
Him tit as often harm ther-of as prow ;
Your hyre is quit ayein, ye, god wot how!
Nought wel for wel, but scorn for good
servyse ; 335
In feith, your ordre is ruled in good wyse!

49. In noun-certeyn ben alle your ob-
servaunces,
But it a sely fewe poyntes be ;
Ne no-thing asketh so grete attendaunces
As doth your lay, and that knowe alle ye ;
But that is not the worste, as mote I thee ;
But, tolde I yow the worste poynt, I leve,
Al seyde I sooth, ye wolden at me greve!

50. But tak this, that ye loveres ofte
~~eachwe~~ *do*
 Or elles doon of good entencioun, 345
 Ful ofte thy lady wole it misconstrue,
 And deme it harm in hir opinioun;
 And yet if she, for other ~~enchesoun~~, *re*
 Be wrooth, than shalt thou han a groyn
 anoon:

Lord! wel is him that may be of yow oon!

51. But for al this, whan that he say his
 tyme, 351
 He held his pees, non other bote him
 gayned;

For love bigan his fetheres so to lyme,
 That wel unnethe un-to his folk he feyned
 That othere besye nedes him destrayned;
 For wo was him, that what to doon he
 niste, 356
 But bad his folk to goon wher that hem
 liste.

52. And whan that he in chaumbre was
 allone,

He doun up-on his beddes feet him sette,
 And first he gan to syke, and eft to
 grone, 360

And thoughte ay on hir so, with-uten
 lette,

That, as he sat and wook, his spirit mette
 That he hir saw a temple, and al the wyse
 Right of hir loke, and gan it newe avyse.

53. Thus gan he make a mirour of his
 minde, 365

In which he saugh al hoolly hir figure;
 And that he wel coude in his herte finde,
 It was to him a right good aventure
 To love swich oon, and if he dide his cure
 To serven hir, yet mighte he falle in
 grace, 370

Or elles, for oon of hir servants pace.

54. Imagininge that travaille nor ~~grame~~ *g*
 Ne mighte, for so goodly oon, be lorn
 As she, ne him for his desir ne shame,
 Al were it wist, but in prys and up-born
 Of alle lovers wel more than biforn; 376
 Thus argumented he in his ginninge,
 Ful unavysed of his wo cominge.

55. Thus took he purpos loves craft to
 suwe,
 And thoughte he wolde werken prively,

First, to hyden his desir in muwe *conged up* 381
 From every wight y-born, al-outruly,
 But he mighte ought recovered be therby;
 Remembring him, that love to wyde y-
 blowe

Velt bittre fruyt, though swete seed be
 sowe. 385

56. And over al this, yet muchel more he
 thoughte

What for to speke, and what to holden
 inne,

And what to arten hir to love he soughte,
 And on a song anoon-right to biginne, 389
 And gan loude on his sorwe for to winne;
 For with good hope he gan fully assente
 Criseyde for to love, and nought repente.

57. And of his song nought only the
 sentence,

As writ myn autour called Lollius,
 But pleyndly, save our tonges difference,
 I dar wel sayn, in al that Troilus 396
 Seyde in his song; lo! every word right
 thus

As I shal seyn; and who-so list it here,
 Lo! next this vers, he may it finden here.

Cantus Troili.

58. 'If no love is, O god, what fele I so?
 And if love is, what thing and whiche
 is he? 401

If love be good, from whennes comth my
 wo?

If it be wikke, a wonder thinketh me,
 When every torment and adversitee
 That cometh of him, may to me savory
 thinke; 405

For ay thirst I, the more that I it drinke.

59. And if that at myn owene lust I
 brenne,

Fro whennes cometh my wailing and my
 pleynte?

If harme agree me, wher-to pleyne I
 thenne?

I noot, ne why unwery that I feynte. 410
 O quike deeth, o swete harm so queynte.
 How may of thee in me swich quantitee,
 But-if that I consente that it be?

60. And if that I consente, I wrongfully
 Complayne, y-wis; thus passed to and fro,

Al sterelees with-inne a boot am I 416
 A-mid the see, by-twixen windes two,
 That in contrarie stonden ever-mo.
 Allas! what is this wonder maladye? 419
 For hete of cold, for cold of hete, I dye.'

61. And to the god of love thus seyde he
 With pitous voys, 'O lord, now youres is
 My spirit, which that oughte youres be.
 Yow thanke I, lord, that han me brought
 to this;

But whether goddesse or womman, y-wis,
 She be, I noot, which that ye do me
 serve; 426

But as hir man I wole ay live and sterve.

62. Ye stonden in hire eyen mightily,
 As in a place un-to your vertu digne;
 Wherfore, lord, if my servyse or I 430
 May lyke yow, so beth to me benigne;
 For myn estat royal here I resigne
 In-to hir hond, and with ful humble chere
 Bicome hir man, as to my lady dere.' 434

63. In him ne deyned sparen blood royal
 The fyr of love, wher-fro god me blesse,
 Ne him forbar in no degree, for al
 His vertu or his excellent prowessse;
 But held him as his thral lowe in distresse,
 And brende him so in sondry wyse ay
 newe, 440

That sixty tyme a day he loste his hewe.

64. So muche, day by day, his owene
 thought,
 For lust to hir, gan quiken and encrease,
 That every other charge he sette at nought;
 For-thy ful ofte, his hote fyr to cese, 445
 To seen hir goodly look he gan to prese;
 For ther-by to ben esed wel he wende,
 And ay the neer he was, the more he
 brende.

65. For ay the neer the fyr, the hotter is,
 This, trowe I, knoweth al this companye.
 But were he fer or neer, I dar seye this,
 By night or day, for wysdom or folye, 452
 His herte, which that is his brestes yð,
 Was ay on hir, that fairer was to sene
 Than ever was Eleyne or Polixene. 455

66. Eek of the day ther passed nought an
 houre
 That to him-self a thousand tyme he seyde,

'Good goodly, to whom serve I and la-
 boure, 458

As I best can, now wolde god, Criseyde,
 Ye wolden on me rewe er that I deyde!
 My dere herte, allas! myn hele and hewe
 And lyf is lost, but ye wole on me rewe.'

67. Alle othere dredes weren from him
 fledde,
 Bothe of th'assege and his savacioun;
 Ne in him desyr noon othere fownes
 bredde 465

But arguments to this conclusioun,
 That she on him wolde han compassioun,
 And he to be hir man, whyl he may dure;
 Lo, here his lyf, and from the deeth his
 cure! 469

68. The sharpeshoures felle of armes preve,
 That Ector or his othere bretheren diden,
 Ne made him only ther-fore ones meve;
 And yet was he, wher-so men wente or
 riden,

Founde oon the best, and lengest tyme
 abiden 474

Ther peril was, and dide eek such travayle
 In armes, that to thenke it was mervayle.

69. But for non hate he to the Grekes
 hadde,

Ne also for the rescous of the toun,
 Ne made him thus in armes for to madde,
 But only, lo, for this conclusioun, 480
 To lyken hir the bet for his renoun;
 Fro day to day in armes so he spedde,
 That alle the Grekes as the deeth him
 dredde.

70. And fro this forth tho refte him love
 his sleep,

And made his mete his foo; and eek his
 sorwe 485

Gan multiplie, that, who-so toke keep,
 It shewed in his hewe, bothe eve and
 morwe;

Therfor a title he gan him for to borwe
 Of other syknesse, lest of him men wende
 That the hote fyr of love him brende. 490

71. And seyde, he hadde a fever and ferde
 amis;

But how it was, certayn, can I not seye,

If that his lady understood not this,
Or feyned hir she niste, oon of the tweye;
But wel I rede that, by no maner weye,
Ne semed it [as] that she of him roughte,
Nor of his payne, or what-so-ever he
thoughte.

72. But than fel to this Troilus such wo,
That he was wel neigh wood; for ay his
drede 499
Was this, that she som wight had loved so,
That never of him she wolde have taken
hede;
For whiche him thoughte he felte his
herte blede.
Ne of his wo ne dorste he not biginne
To tellen it, for al this world to winne.

73. But whanne he hadde a space fro his
care, 505
Thus to him-self ful ofte he gan to pleyne;
He sayde, 'O fool, now art thou in the
snare,
That whilom japedest at loves payne;
Now artow hent, now gnaw thyn owene
cheyne;
Thou were ay wont eche love-reprehende
Of thing fro which thou canst thee nat
defende. 511

74. What wole now every lover seyn of
thee,
If this be wist, but ever in thyn absence
Laughen in scorn, and seyn, "lo, ther
gooth he,
That is the man of so gret sapience, 515
That held us loveres leest in reverence!
Now, thonked be god, he may goon in the
daunce
Of hem that Love list feibly for to avaunce!

75. But, O thou woful Troilus, god wolde,
Sin thou most loven thurgh thy destinee,
That thou beset were on swich oon that
sholde 521
Knowe al thy wo, al lakkede hir pitee:
But al so cold in love, towardes thee,
Thy lady is, as frost in winter mone, 524
And thou fordoon, as snow in fyr is sone."

76. God wolde I were aryved in the port
Of deeth, to which my sorwe wil me lede!

A, lord, to me it were a greet comfort;
Then were I quit of languisshing in drede.
For by myn hidde sorwe y-blowe on brede
I shal bi-japed been a thousand tyme 531
More than that fool of whos folye men
ryme.

77. But now help god, and ye, swete, for
whom
I pleyne, y-caught, ye, never wight so
faste! 534
O mercy, dere herte, and help me from
The deeth, for I, whyl that my lyf may
laste,
More than my-self wol love yow to my
laste.
And with som freendly look gladeth me,
swete,
Though never more thing ye me bi-hete!"

78. This wordes and ful manye an-other to
He spak, and called ever in his com-
pleynte 541
Hir name, for to tellen hir his wo,
Til neigh that he in salte teres dreynte.
Al was for nought, she herde nought his
pleynte;
And whan that he bithoughte on that,
folye, 545
A thousand fold his wo gan multiplie.

79. Bi-wayling in his chambre thusallone,
A freend of his, that called was Pandare,
Com ones in unwar, and herde him grone,
And sey his freend in swich distresse and
care: 550
'Allas!' quod he, 'who causeth al this
fare?
O mercy, god! what unhap may this
mene?
Han now thus sone Grekes maad yow
lene?

80. Or hastow som remors of conscience,
And art now falle in som devocioun, 555
And waylest for thy sinne and thyn
offence,
And hast for ferde caught attricioun?
God save hem that bi-seged han our toun.
And so can leye our jolytee on presse,
And bring our lusty folk to holinesse!"

81. These wordes seyde he for the nones
 alle, 561
 That with swich thing he mighte him
 angry maken,
 And with an angre don his sorwe falle,
 As for the tyme, and his corage awaken ;
 But wel he wiste, as fer as tonges spaken,
 Ther nas a man of gretter hardinesse 566
 Than he, ne more desired worthinesse.

82. 'What cas,' quod Troilus, 'or what
 aventure
 Hath gyded thee to see my languissinge,
 That am refus of every creature? 570
 But for the love of god, at my prayinge,
 Go henne a-way, for certes, my deyinge
 Wol thee disease, and I mot nedes deye ;
 Ther-for go wey, ther is no more to seye.

83. But if thou wene I be thus syk for
 drede, 575
 It is not so, and ther-for scorne nought ;
 Ther is a-nother thing I take of hede
 Wel more than ought the Grekes han
 y-wrought,
 Which cause is of my deeth, for sorwe
 and thought.
 But though that I now telle thee it ne
 leste, 580
 Be thou nought wrooth, I hyde it for the
 beste.'

84. This Pandare, that neigh malt for wo
 and routhe,
 Ful often seyde, 'allas ! what may this be?
 Now freend,' quod he, 'if ever love or
 trouthe
 Hath been, or is, bi-twixen thee and me,
 No do thou never swiche a crueltee 586
 To hyde fro thy freend so greet a care ;
 Wostow nought wel that it am I, Pandare?

85. I wole parten with thee al thy payne,
 If it be so I do thee no comfort, 590
 As it is freendes right, sooth for to seyne,
 To entreparten wo, as glad desport.
 I have, and shal, for trewe or fals report,
 In wrong and right y-loved thee al my
 lyve ; 594
 Hyd not thy wo fro me, but telle it blyve.'

86. Then gan this sorwful Troilus to syke,
 And seyde him thus, 'god leve it be my
 beste

To telle it thee ; for, sith it may thee
 lyke,
 Yet wole I telle it, though myn herte
 breste ; 599
 And wel wot I thou mayst do me no reste.
 But lest thou deme I truste not to thee,
 Now herkne, freend, for thus it stant with
 me.

87. Love, a-yeins the which who-so de-
 fendeth
 Him-selven most, him alder-lest avayleth,
 With desespier so sorwfully me offendeth,
 That streyght un-to the deeth myn herte
 sayleth. 606
 Ther-to desyr so brenningly me assaylleth,
 That to ben slayn it were a gretter joye
 To me than king of Grece been and Troye !

88. Suffiseth this, my fulle freend Pandare,
 That I have seyde, for now wostow my wo ;
 And for the love of god, my colde care 612
 So hyd it wel, I telle it never to mo ;
 For harmes mighte folwen, mo than two,
 If it were wist ; but be thou in gladnesse,
 And lat me sterve, unknowe, of my dis-
 tresse.' 616

89. 'How hastow thus unkindely and
 longe
 Hid this fro me, thou fool?' quod Pan-
 darus ;
 'Paraunter thou might after swich oon
 longe,
 That myn avys anon may helpen us.' 620
 'This were a wonder thing,' quod Troilus,
 'Thou coudest never in love thy-selven
 wisse ;
 How devel maystow bringen me to blisse?'

90. 'Ye, Troilus, now herke,' quod Pan-
 dare,
 'Though I be nyce ; it happeth ofte so, 625
 That oon that exces doth ful yvle fare
 By good counseyl can kepe his freend
 ther-fro.
 I have my-self eek seyn a blind man go
 Ther-as he fel that coude loke wyde ;
 A fool may eek a wys man ofte gyde. 630

91. A whetston is no kerving instrument,
 And yet it maketh sharpe kerving-tolis.

And ther thou woost that I have ought
miswent,
Eschewe thou that, for swich thing to
thee scole is ;

Thus ofte wyse men ben war by folis. 635
If thou do so, thy wit is wel biwarded ;
By his contrarie is every thing declared.

92. For how might ever sweetnesse have
be knowe

To him that never tasted bitternesse ?
Ne no man may be inly glad, I trowe, 640
That never was in sorwe or som distresse ;
Eek whyt by blak, by shame eek worthi-
nesse,
Ech set by other, more for other semeth ;
As men may see ; and so the wyse it
demeth.

93. Sith thus of two contraries is a lore,
I, that have in love so ofte assayed 646
Grevauces, oughte conne, and wel the
more

Counsayllen thee of that thou art amayed.
Eek thee ne oughte nat ben yvel apayed,
Though I desyre with thee for to bere 650
Thyn hevy charge ; it shal the lasse dere.

94. I woot wel that it fareth thus by me
As to thy brother Parys an herdesse,
Which that y-cleped was Oënone, 654
Wroot in a compleynt of hir hevinesse :
Ye sey the lettre that she wroot, y gesse ?
'Nay, never yet, y-wis,' quod Troilus.
'Now,' quod Pandare, 'herkneth ; it was
thus.—

95. "Phebus, that first fond art of medi-
cyne,"

Quod she, "and coude in every wightes
care 660

Remede and reed, by herbes he knew fyne,
Yet to him-self his conninge was ful bare ;
For love hadde him so bounden in a snare,
Al for the doughter of the kinge Admete,
That al his craft ne coude his sorwe
beta."— 665

96. Right so fare I, unhappily for me ;
I love oon best, and that me smerteth sore ;
And yet, paraunter, can I rede thee,
And not my-self ; reprove me no more. 669
I have no cause, I woot wel, for to sore

As doth an hawk that listeth for to
pleye,
But to thyn help yet somewhat can I seye.

97. And of o thing right siker maystow be,
That certayn, for to deyen in the peyne,
That I shal never-mo discoveren thee ; 675
Ne, by my trouthe, I kepe nat restreyne
Thee fro thy love, thogh that it were
Eleyne,

That is thy brotheres wyf, if ich it wiste ;
Be what she be, and love hir as thee liste.

98. Therefore, as freend fullich in me
assure, 680

And tel me plat what is thyn enchesoun,
And final cause of wo that ye endure ;
For douteth no-thing, myn entencioun
Nis nought to yow of reprehencioun
To speke as now, for no wight may
bireve 685

A man to love, til that him list to leve.

99. And witeth wel, that bothe two ben
vyces,

Mistrusten alle, or elles alle leve ;
But wel I woot, the mene of it no vyce is,
For for to trusten sum wight is a preve 690
Of trouthe, and for-thy wolde I fayn re-
meve

Thy wrong conceyte, and do thee som
wight triste,

Thy wo to telle ; and tel me, if thee liste.

100. The wyse seyth, "wo him that is
allone,

For, and he falle, he hath noon help to
ryse ;" 695

And sith thou hast a felawe, tel thy mone ;
For this nis not, certeyn, the nexte wyse
To winnen love, as techen us the wyse,
To walwe and wepe as Niobe the quene,
Whos teres yet in marbel been y-sene. 700

101. Lat be thy weping and thy drerinesse,
And lat us lissen wo with other speche ;
So may thy woful tyme seme lesse.

Delyte not in wo thy wo to seche, 704

As doon thise foles that hir sorwes eche
With sorwe, whan they han misaventure,
And listen nought to seche hem other
cure.

102. Men seyn, "to wrecche is conso-
lacioun

To have an-other felawe in his peyne;"
That oughte wel ben our opinioun, 710
For, bothe thou and I, of love we pleyne;
So ful of sorwe am I, soth for to seyne,
That certeynly no more harde grace
May sitte on me, for-why ther is no
space.

103. If god wole thou art not agast of me,
Lest I wolde of thy lady thee bigyle, 716
Thow wost thy-self whom that I love,
pardee,

As I best can, gon sithen longe whyle.
And sith thou wost I do it for no wyle, 719
And sith I am he that thou tristest most,
Tel me sumwhat, sin al my wo thou wost.'

104. Yet Troilus, for al this, no word
seyde,

But longe he lay as stille as he ded were;
And after this with sykinge he abreyde,
And to Pandarus voys he lente his ere, 725
And up his eyen casto he, that in fere
Was Pandarus, lest that in frenesye
He sholde falle, or elles sone dyo :

105. And cryde 'a-wake' ful wonderly
and sharpe ;

'What? slombrestow as in a lytargye?
Or artow lyk an asse to the harpe, 731
That heroth soun, whan men the strenges
plye,

But in his minde of that no melodye
May sinken, him to glade, for that he
So dul is of his bestialitee?' 735

106. And with that Pandare of his wordes
stente ;

But Troilus yet him no word answerde,
For-why to telle nas not his entente
To never no man, for whom that he so
ferde. 739

For it is seyde, 'man maketh ofte a yerde
With which the maker is him-self y-beten
In sondry maner,' as thise wyse treten,

107. And namely, in his counseyl tellinge
That toucheth love that oughte be secree ;
For of him-self it wolde y-nough out-
springe, 745

But-if that it the bet governed be.
Eek som-tyme it is craft to seme flee
Fro thing which in effect men hunte faste;
Al this gan Troilus in his herte casta.

108. But nathelees, whan he had herd
him crye 750

'Awake!' he gan to syke wonder sore,
And seyde, 'freend, though that I stille
lye,

I am not deaf; now pees, and cry no more;
For I have herd thy wordes and thy lore;
But suffre me my mischef to biwayle, 755
For thy proverbes may me nought avayle.

109. Nor other cure canstow noon for me.
Eek I nil not be cured, I wol deye ;
What knowe I of the quene Niobe?
Lat be thyne olde ensaumples, I thee
preye.' 760

'No,' quod tho Pandarus, 'therfore I seye,
Swich is delyt of foles to biwepe
Hir wo, but seken bote they ne kepe.

110. Now knowe I that ther reson in thee
fayleth.

But tel me, if I wiste what she were 765
For whom that thee al this misaunter
ayleth,

Dorstestow that I tolde hir in hir ere
Thy wo, sith thou darst not thy-self for
fere,
And hir bisoughte on thee to han som
routhe?' 770

'Why, nay,' quod he, 'by god and by my
trouthe!' 770

111. 'What? not as bisily,' quod Pandarus,
'As though myn owene lyf lay on this
nede?'

'No, certes, brother,' quod this Troilus.
'And why?'—'For that thou sholdest
never spede.'

'Wostow that wel?'—'Ye, that is out of
drede,' 775

Quod Troilus, 'for al that ever ye conne,
She nil to noon swich wrecche as I be
wonne.'

112. Quod Pandarus, 'allas! what may
this be,

That thou despeyred art thus causeless?

What? liveth not thy lady? *benedicite!* 780
 How wostow so that thou art gracelees?
 Swich yvel is not alwey botelees.
 Why, put not impossible thus thy cure,
 Sin thing to come is ofte in aventure.

113. I graunte wel that thou endurest wo
 As sharp as doth he, Ticius, in helle, 786
 Whos stomak foules tyren ever-mo
 That highte volturis, as bokes telle.
 But I may not endure that thou dwelle
 In so unskilful an opinioun 790
 That of thy wo is no curacioun.

114. But ones niltow, for thy coward
 herte,
 And for thyn ire and folish wilfulnesse,
 For wantrust, tellen of thy sorwes smerte,
 Ne to thyn owene help do bisnesse 795
 As muche as speke a resoun more or lesse,
 But lyest as he that list of no-thing recche.
 What womman coude love swich a
 wrecche?

115. What may she demen other of thy
 deeth,
 If thou thus deye, and she not why it is, 800
 But that for fere is yolden up thy breeth,
 For Grekes han biseged us, y-wis?
 Lord, which a thank than shaltow han of
 this!
 Thus wol she seyn, and al the toun at
 ones,
 "The wrecche is deed, the devel have his
 bones!" 805

116. Thou mayst allone here wepe and
 crye and knele;
 But, love a woman that she woot it
 nought,
 And she wol quyte that thou shalt not
 fele;
 Unknowe, unkist, and lost that is un-
 sought.
 What! many a man hath love ful dere
 y-bought 810
 Twenty winter that his lady wiste,
 That never yet his lady mouth he kiste.

117. What? shulde he therfor fallen in
 despeyr,
 Or be recreaunt for his owene tene,

Or sleen him-self, al be his lady fayr? 815
 Nay, nay, but ever in oon be fresh and
 grene

To serve and love his dere hertes quene,
 And thenke it is a guerdoun hir to serve
 A thousand-fold more than he can deserve.'

118. And of that word took hede Troilus,
 And thoughte anon what folye he was
 inne, 821
 And how that sooth him seyde Pandarus,
 That for to sleen him-self mighte he not
 winne,

But bothe doon unmanhod and a sinne, 824
 And of his deeth his lady nought to wyte;
 For of his wo, god woot, she knew ful lyte.

119. And with that thought he gan ful
 sore syke,
 And seyde, 'allas! what is me best to do?'
 To whom Pandare answerde, 'if thee lyke,
 The best is that thou telle me thy wo; 830
 And have my trouthe, but thou it finde so,
 I be thy bote, or that it be ful longe,
 To peces do me drawe, and sithen honge!'

120. 'Ye, so thou seyst,' quod Troilus tho,
 'allas!
 But, god wot, it is not the rather so; 835
 Ful hard were it to helpen in this cas,
 For wel finde I that Fortune is my fo,
 Ne alle the men that ryden conne or go
 May of hir cruel wheel the harm with-
 stonde;
 For, as hir list, she pleyeth with free and
 bonde.' 840

121. Quod Pandarus, 'than blamestow
 Fortune
 For thou art wrooth, ye, now at erst I see;
 Wostow nat wel that Fortune is commune
 To every maner wight in som degree? 844
 And yet thou hast this comfort, lo, pardee!
 That, as hir joyes moten over-goon,
 So mote hir sorwes passen everichoon.

122. For if hir wheel stinte any-thing to
 torne,
 Than cessed she Fortune anon to be:
 Now, sith hir wheel by no wey may
 sojorne, 850
 What wostow if hir mutabilitee
 Right as thy-selven list, wol doon by thee,

Or that she be not fer fro thyn helpinge?
Paraunter, thou hast cause for to singe!

123. And therfor wostow what I thee
beseche? 855

Lat be thy wo and turning to the grounde;
For who-so list have helping of his leche,
To him bihoveth first unwrye his wounde.
To Cerberus in helle ay be I bounde,
Were it for my suster, al thy sorwe, 860
By my wil, she sholde al be thyn to-morwe.

124. Loke up, I seye, and tel me what she is
Anoon, that I may goon aboute thy nede;
Knowe ich hir ought? for my love, tel me
this; 864

Than wolde I hopen rather for to'spede.'
Tho gan the veyne of Troilus to blede,
For he was hit, and wex al reed for shame;
'A ha!' quod Pandare, 'here biginneth
game!'

125. And with that word he gan him for
to shake,
And seyde, 'theef, thou shalt hir name
telle.' 870

But tho gan sely Troilus for to quake
As though men sholde han lad him in-to
helle,

And seyde, 'allas! of al my wo the welle,
Than is my swete fo called Criseyde!'

And wel nigh with the word for fere he
deyde. 875

126. And whan that Pandare herde hir
name nevene,

Lord, he was glad, and seyde, 'freend so
dere,

Now fare a-right, for Joves name in hevene,
Love hath biset thee wel, be of good chere;
For of good name and wysdom and
manere 880

She hath y-nough, and eek of gentillesse;
If she be fayr, thow wost thy-self, I gesse.

127. No I never saw a more bountevous
Of hir estat, ne a gladder, ne of speche
A freendlier, ne a more gracious 885
For to do wel, ne lasse hadde nede to
secho

What for to doon; and al this bet to eche,
In honour, to as fer as she may strecche,
A kinges herte semeth by hires a wroccho.

128. And for-thy loke of good comfort
thou be; 890

For certainly, the firste poynt is this
Of noble corage and wel ordeyne,
A man to have pees with him-self, y-wis;
So oughtest thou, for nought but good it is
To loven wel, and in a worthy place; 895
Thee oughte not to clepe it hap, but grace.

129. And also thenk, and ther-with glade
thee,

That sith thy lady vertuous is al,
So folweth it that ther is som pitee
Amonges alle thise othere in general; 900
And for-thy see that thou, in special,
Requere nought that is ayein hir name;
For vertue streccheth not him-self to
shame.

130. But wel is me that ever I was born,
That thou biset art in so good a place; 905
For by my trouthe, in love I dorste have
sworn,

Thee sholde never han tid thus fayr a
grace;

And wostow why? for thou were wont to
chace

At love in scorn, and for despyt him
callo

"Seynt Idiot, lord of thise foles alle." 910

131. How often hastow maad thy nyce
japes,

And seyde, that loves servants everichone
Of nycetee ben verray goddes apes;

And some wolde monche hir mete alone,
Ligging a-bedde, and make hem for to
grone; 915

And som, thou seydest, hadde a blancher
fevere,

And preydest god he sholde never kevere!

132. And some of hem toke on hem, for
the colde,

More than y-nough, so seydestow ful ofte;
And some han feyned ofte tyme, and tolde
How that they wake, whan they slepen
softe; 921

And thus they wolde han brought hem-
self a-lofte,

And nathelees were under at the laste;
Thus seydestow, and japedest ful faste.

133. Yet seydestow, that, for the more
part, 925

These lovers wolden speke in general,
And thoughten that it was a siker art,
For fayling, for to assayen over-al.
Now may I jape of thee, if that I shal!
But natheles, though that I sholde deye,
That thou art noon of tho, that dorste I
seya. 931

134. Now best thy brest, and say to god
of love,
"Thy grace, lord! for now I me repente
If I mis spak, for now my-self I love:"
Thus sey with al thyn herte in good en-
tente. 935

Quod Troilus, 'a! lord! I me consente,
And pray to thee my japes thou foryive,
And I shal never-more whyl I live.'

135. 'Thow seyst wel,' quod Pandare, 'and
now I hope

That thou the goddess wratthe hast al
apased; 940

And sithen thou hast wepen many a drole,
And seyde swich thing wher-with thy god
is plesed,

Now wolde never god but thou were seed,
And think wel, she of whom rist al thy wo
Here-after may thy comfort been al-so. 945

136. For thilke ground, that bereth the
wedes wikke,

Bereth eek thise holsum herbes, as ful ofte
Next the foule netle, rough and thikke,
The rose waxeth swote and smoth and
soft; 950

And next the valey is the hil a-lofte; 950
And next the derke night the glade
morwe;

And also joye is next the fyn of sorwe.

137. Now loke that atempre be thy brydel,
And, for the beste, ay suffre to the tyde,
Or elles al our labour is on ydel; 955

Be hasteth wel that wysly can abyde;
Be diligent, and trewe, and ay wel hyde.
Be lusty, free, persevere in thy servyse,
And al is wel, if thou werke in this wyse.

138. But he that parted is in every
place 960

Is no-wher hool, as writen clerkes wyse;

What wonder is, though swich oon have
no grace?

Eek wostow how it fareth of som servyse?
As plaunte a tre or herbe, in sondry wyse,
And on the morwe pulle it up as blyve, 965
No wonder is, though it may never thryve.

139. And sith that god of love hath thee
bistowed

In place digne un-to thy worthinesse,
Stond faste, for to good port hastow rowed;
And of thy-self, for any hevynesse, 970
Hope alwey wel; for, but-if dreddynesse
Or over-haste our bothe labour shende,
I hope of this to maken a good ende.

140. And wostow why I am the lasse a-
fered

Of this matere with my nece trete? 975
For this have I hard seyde of wyse y-lered,
"Was never man ne woman yet bigete
That was unapt to suffren loves hete
Celestial, or elles love of kinde;" 979
For-thy som grace I hope in hir to finde.

141. And for to speke of hir in special,
Hir beautee to biþinken and hir youthe,
It sit hir nought to be celestial

As yet, though that hir liste bothe and
couthe; 984

But trewely, it sets hir wel right nouthe
A worthy knight to loven and cheryce,
And but she do, I holde it fur a vyce.

142. Wherefore I am, and wol be, ay redy
To payne me to do yow this servyse;

For bothe yow to pless thus hope I 990
Her-afterward, for ye beth bothe wyse,
And conne it counseyll kepe in swich a
wyse,

That no man shal the wyser of it be;
And so we may be gladd alle three.

143. And, by my trouthe, I have right
now of thee 995

A good conceyt in my wit, as I gesse,
And what it is, I wol now that thou see.
I thanke, sith that love, of his goodnesse,
Hath thee converted out of wikkednesse,
That thou shalt be the beste post, I
love, 1000

Of al his lay, and most his foes to-grove

144. Ensample why, see now these wyse
clerkes,
That erren aldermost a-yein a lawe,
And ben converted from hir wikked
werkes

Thorough grace of god, that list hem to
him drawe, 1005
Than arn they folk that han most god in
awe,

And strengest-feythed been, I under-
stonde,
And conne 'an errour alder-best with-
stonde.'

145. Whan Troilus had herd Pandare
assented

To been his help in loving of Criseyde, 1010
Wex of his wo, as who seyth, untormented,
But hotter wex his love, and thus he seyde,
With sobre chere, al-though his herte
pleyde,

'Now blisful Venus helpe, er that I sterve,
Of thee, Pandare, I may som thank de-
serve. 1015

146. But, dere frend, how shal myn wo
ben lesse

Til this be doon? and goode, eek tel me
this,

How wiltow seyn of me and my destresse?
Lest she be wrooth, this drede I most,
y-wis,

Or nil not here or trowen how it is. 1020
Al this drede I, and eek for the manere
Of thee, hir eem, she nil no swich thing
here.'

147. Quod Pandarus, 'thou hast a ful
gret care

Lest that the cherl may falle out of the
mone! 1024

Why, lord! I hate of thee thy nyce fare!
Why, entremete of that thou hast to done!
For goddes love, I bidde thee a bone,
So lat me alone, and it shal be thy beste.—
'Why, freend,' quod he, 'now do right as
thee leste.

148. But herke, Pandare, o word, for I
nolde 1030

That thou in me wendest so greet folye,
That to my lady I desiren sholde

That toucheth harm or any vilenye;
For dredelees, me were lever dye 1034
Than she of me ought elles understode
But that, that mighte sounen in-to gode.'

149. Tho lough this Pandare, and anoon
answerde,

'And I thy borw? fy! no wight dooth
but so;

I roughte nought though that she stode
and herde 1039

How that thou seyst; but fare-wel, I wol go.
A-dieu! be glad! god spede us bothe two!
Yif me this labour and this besinesse,
And of my speed be thyn al that swetnesse.'

150. Tho Troilus gan down on knees to
falle, 1044

And Pandare in his armes hente faste,
And seyde, 'now, fy on the Grekes alle!
Yet, pardee, god shal helpe us at the laste;
And dredelees, if that my lyf may laste,
And god to-forn, lo, som of hem shal
smerte;

And yet me athinketh that this avaunt
me asterte! 1050

151. Now, Pandare, I can no more seye,
But thou wys, thou wost, thou mayst,
thou art al!

My lyf, my deeth, hool in thyn honde
I leye;

Help now,' quod he. 'Yis, by my trouthe,
I shal.'

'God yelde thee, freend, and this in
special,' 1055

Quod Troilus, 'that thou me recomaunde
To hir that to the deeth me may
comaunde.'

152. This Pandarus tho, desirous to serve
His fulle freend, than seyde in this manere,
'Far-wel, and thenk I wol thy thank
deserve; 1060

Have here my trouthe, and that thou
shalt wel here.—

And wente his wey, thenking on this
matere,

And how he best mighte hir beseche of
grace,

And finde a tyme ther-to, and a place.

153. For every wight that hath an hous
to founde 1065
Ne renneth nought the werk for to bi-
ginne

With rakel hond, but he wol byde a
stounde,

And sende his hertes lyne out fro with-inne
Alderfirst his purpos for to winne. 1069
Al this Pandare in his herte thoughte,
And caste his werk ful wysly, or he
wroughte.

154. But Troilus lay the no lenger down,
But up anon up-on his stede bay,
And in the feld he pleyde the leoun;
Wo was that Greek that with him mette
that day. 1075

And in the toun his maner the forth ay
So goodly was, and gat him so in grace,
That ech him lovede that loked on his face.

155. For he bicom the frendlyeste wight,
The gentileste, and eek the moste free, 1080
The thriftieste and oon the beste knight,
That in his tyme was, or mighte be.
Dede were his japes and his crueltee,
His heighe port and his manere
estraunge,
And ech of the gan for a vertu chaunge.

156. Now lat us stinte of Troilus a
stounde, 1086
That fareth lyk a man that hurt is
sore,
And is somdel of akinge of his wounde
Y-lissed wel, but heled no del more:
And, as an esy pacient, the lore 1090
Abit of him that gooth aboute his cure;
And thus he dryveth forth his aventure.

Explicit Liber Primus.

BOOK II.

Incipit prohemium Secundi Libri.

1. Our of these blake wawes for to sayle,
O wind, O wind, the weder ginneth clere;
For in this see the boot hath swich tra-
vayle,

Of my conning that unnethe I it stere:
This see clepe I the tempestous matere 5
Of desespere that Troilus was inne:
But now of hope the calendes biginne.

2. O lady myn, that called art Cleo,
Thou be my speed fro this forth, and my
muse,

To ryme wel this book, til I have do; 10
Me nedeth here noon other art to use.
For why to every lover I me excuse,
That of no sentement I this endyte,
But out of Latin in my tonge it wryte.

3. Wherefore I nil have neither thank ne
blame 15

Of al this werk, but pray yow mekely,
Disblameth me, if any word be lame,
For as myn auctor seyde, so seye I.
Eek though I speke of love unfelingly,

No wonder is, for it no-thing of newe is; 20
A blind man can nat juggen wel in hewis.

4. Ye knowe eek, that in forme of speche
is chaunge
With-inne a thousand yeer, and wordes
tho

That hadden prys, now wonder nyce and
straunge

Us thinketh hem; and yet they spake
hem so, 25

And spedde as wel in love as men now do;
Eek for to winne love in sondry ages,
In sondry londes, sondry been usages.

5. And for-thy if it happe in any wyse,
That here be any lover in this place 30
That herkeneth, as the story wol devyse,
How Troilus com to his lady grace,
And thenketh, so nolde I nat love pur-
chace,

Or wondreth on his speche and his doinge,
I noot; but it is me no wonderinge; 35

6. For every wight which that to Rome
went,
Halt nat o path, or alwey o manere;

Eek in som lond were al the gamen shent,
 If that they ferde in love as men don here,
 As thus, in open doing or in chere, 40
 In visitinge, in forme, or seyde hir sawes;
 For-thy men seyn, ech contree hath his
 lawes.

7. Eek scarsly been ther in this place three
 That han in love seyde lyk and doon in al;
 For to thy purpos this may lyken thee, 45
 And thee right nought, yet al is seyde or
 shal;

Eek som men grave in tree, som in stoon
 wal,

As it bitit; but sin I have begonne,
 Myn auctor shal I folwen, if I conne.

Explicit prohemium Secundi Libri.

Incipit Liber Secundus.

8. In May, that moder is of monthes glade,
 That fresshe floures, blewe, and whyte,
 and rede, 51

Ben quike agayn, that winter dede made,
 And ful of bawme is fletinge every mede;
 Whan Phebus doth his brighte bemes
 sprede

Right in the whyte Bole, it so bitidde 55
 As I shal singe, on Mayes day the thridde,

9. That Pandarus, for al his wyse speche,
 Felte eek his part of loves shottes kene,
 That, coude he never so wel of loving
 preche,

It made his hewe a-day ful ofte grene; 60
 So shoop it, that him fil that day a tene
 In love, for which in wo to bedde he wente,
 And made, er it was day, ful many a wente.

10. The swalwe Proigné, with a sorwfull lay,
 Whan morwe com, gan make hir wey-
 mentinge, 65

Why she forshapen was; and ever lay
 Pandare a-bedde, half in a slomeringe,
 Til she so neigh him made hir chiteringe
 How Tereus gan forth hir suster take,
 That with the noyse of hir he gan a-wake;

11. And gan to calle, and dresse him up
 to ryse, 71

Remembringe him his erand was to done
 From Troilus, and eek his greet empyrse;

And caste and knew in good plyt was the
 mone

To doon viage, and took his wey ful sone
 Un-to his neces paleys ther bi-syde; 76
 Now Janus, god of entree, thou him gyde!

12. Whan he was come un-to his neces
 place,

'Wher is my lady?' to hir folk seyde he;
 And they him tolde; and he forth in gan
 pace, 80

And fond, two othere ladyes sete and she
 With-inne a paved parlour; and they three
 Herden a mayden reden hem the geste
 Of the Sege of Thebes, whyl hem leste. 84

13. Quod Pandarus, 'madame, god yow see,
 With al your book and al the companye!'
 'Ey, uncle myn, welcome y-wis,' quod she,
 And up she roos, and by the hond in hye
 She took him faste, and seyde, 'this night
 thrye,

To goode mote it turne, of yow I mette!'
 And with that word she doun on bench
 him sette. 91

14. 'Ye, nece, ye shal fare wel the bet,
 If god wole, al this yeer,' quod Pandarus;
 'But I am sorry that I have yow let 94
 To herkennen of your book ye preysen thus;
 For goddes love, what seith it? tel it us.
 Is it of love? O, som good ye me lere!'
 'Uncle,' quod she, 'your maistresse is not
 here!'

15. With that they gonnen laughe, and
 tho she seyde, 99

'This romaunce is of Thebes, that we rede;
 And we han herd how that king Laius
 deyde

Thurgh Edippus hissone, and al that dede;
 And here we stenten at these lettres rede,
 How the bisshop, as the book can telle,
 Amphiorax, filthurgh the ground to helle.'

16. Quod Pandarus, 'al this knowe I my-
 selve, 106

And al th'assege of Thebes and the care;
 For her-of been ther made bokest twelve:—
 But lat be this, and tel me how ye fare;
 Do wey your barbe, and shew your face
 bare; 110

Do way your book, rys up, and let us
daunce,
And let us don to May som observaunce.'

17. 'A! god forbede!' quod she, 'be ye
mad?

Is that a widewes lyf, so god you save?
By god, ye maken me right sore a-drad, 115
Ye ben so wilde, it semeth as ye rave!
It sete me wel bet ay in a cave
To bidde, and rede on holy seyntes lyves:
Let maydens gon to daunce, and yonge
wyves.'

18. 'As ever thryve I,' quod this Pandarus,
'Yet coude I telle a thing to doon you
playe.'

'Now uncle dere,' quod she, 'tel it us
For goddes love; is than th'assege aweye?
I am of Grekes so ferd that I dye.'

'Nay, nay,' quod he, 'as ever mote I
thryve! 125
It is a thing wel bet than swiche fyve.'

19. 'Ye, holy god!' quod she, 'what thing
is that?

What? bet than swiche fyve? ey, nay,
y-wis!

For al this world ne can I reden what
it sholde been; som jape, I trowe, is this;
And but your-selven telle us what it is, 131
My wit is for to arede it al to lene;
As help me god, I noot nat what ye mene.'

20. 'And I your borow, ne never shal,
for me,

This thing be told to yow, as mote I
thryve! 135

'And why so, uncle myn? why so?' quod
she,

'By god,' quod he, 'that wole I telle as
blyve;

For prouder womman were ther noon on-
lyve,

And ye it wiste, in al the toun of Troye;
I jape nought, as ever have I joye! 140

21. Tho gan she wondren more than bi-
forn

A thousand fold, and down hir eyen caste;
For ever, with the tyme that she was born,
To knowe thing desired she so faste; 144

And with a syk she seyde him at the laste,
'Now, uncle myn, I nil yow nought dis-
plesa,
Nor axen more, that may do yow disese.'

22. So after this, with many wordes glade,
And freendly tales, and with mery chere,
Of this and that they pleyde, and gunnen
wade 150

In many an unkouth glad and deep
matere,

As freendes doon, whan they ben met
y-fere;

Til she gan axen him how Ector ferde,
That was the tonnes wal and Grekes yerde.

23. 'Ful wel, I thanke it god,' quod Pan-
darus, 155

'Save in his arm he hath a litel wounde;
And eek his fresche brother Troilus,
The wyse worthy Ector the secounde,
In whom that every vertu list abounde,
As alle trouthe and alle gentillesse, 160
Wydom, honour, fredom, and worthi-
nesse.'

24. 'In good feith, eem,' quod she, 'that
lyketh me;

They faren wel, god save hem bothe two!
For trewely I holde it greet deyntee

A kinges sone in armes wel to do, 165
And been of good condicions ther-to;

For greet power and moral vertu here
Is selde y-seye in o persone y-fere.'

25. 'In good feith, that is sooth,' quod
Pandarus;

'But, by my trouthe, the king hath sones
tweye, 170

That is to mene, Ector and Troilus,
That certainly, though that I sholde deye,

They been as voyde of vyces, dar I seye,
As any men that liveth under the sonne,

Hir might is wyde y-knowe, and what
they conne. 175

26. Of Ector nedeth it nought for to telle;
In al this world ther nis a bettre knight

Than he, that is of worthinesse welle;
And he wel more vertu hath than might.

This knoweth many a wys and worthy
wight. 180

The same prys of Troilus I seye,
God help me so, I knowe not swiche
tweye.'

27. 'By god,' quod she, 'of Ector that is
sooth ;

Of Troilus the same thing trowe I ;
For dredeles, men tellen that he dooth
In armes day by day so worthily, 186
And bereth him here at hoom so gentilly
To every wight, that al the prys hath he
Of hem that me were levest preysed be.'

28. 'Ye sey right sooth, y-wis,' quod Pan-
darus ; 190

'For yesterday, who-so hadde with him
been,

He might have wondred up-on Troilus ;
For never yet so thikke a swarm of been
Ne fleigh, as Grekes fro him gonne fleen ;
And thorough the feld, in every wightes
ere, 195

Ther nas no cry but "Troilus is there!"

29. Now here, now there, he hunted hem
so faste,

Ther nas but Grekes blood ; and Troilus,
Now hem he hurte, and hem alle doun he
caste ;

Ay where he wente it was arayed thus : 200
He was hir deeth, and sheld and lyf for us ;
That as that day ther dorste noon with-
stonde,

Whyl that he held his bloody sward in
honde.

30. Therto he is the freendlieste man
Of grete estat, that ever I saw my lyve ;
And wher him list, best felawshipe can 206
To suche as him thinketh able for to
thryve.'

And with that word tho Pandarus, as
blyve,

He took his leve, and seyde, 'I wol go
henne :'

'Nay, blame have I, myn uncle,' quod she
thenne. 210

31. 'What eyleth yow to be thus wery
sone,

And namelich of wommen ? wol ye so ?
Nay, sitteth down ; by god, I have to done

With yow, to speke of wisdom er ye go.'
And every wight that was a-boute hem
tho, 215

That herde that, gan for a-wey to stonde,
Whyl they two hadde al that hem liste
in honde.

32. Whan that hir tale al brought was to
an ende

Of hire estat and of hir governaunce, 219
Quod Pandarus, 'now is it tyme I wende ;
But yet, I seye, aryseth, lat us daunce,
And cast your widwes habit to mis-
chaunce :

What list yow thus your-self to disfigure,
Sith yow is tid thus fair an aventure ?'

33. 'A ! wel bithought ! for love of god,'
quod she, 225

'Shal I not witen what ye mene of this ?'
'No, this thing axeth layser,' tho quod he,
'And eek me wolde mucche greve, y-wis,
If I it tolde, and ye it toke amis.

Yet were it bet my tonge for to stille 230
Than seye a sooth that were ayeins your
wille.

34. For, nece, by the goddesse Minerve,
And Juppiter, that maketh the thonder
ringe,

And by the blisful Venus that I serve,
Ye been the womman in this world
livinge, 235

With-oute paramours, to my witinge,
That I best love, and lothest am to greve,
And that ye witen wel your-self, I leve.'

35. 'Y-wis, myn uncle,' quod she, 'grant
mercy ;

Your freendship have I founden ever yit ;
I am to no man holden trewely 241
So mucche as yow, and have so litel
quit ;

And, with the grace of god, emforth my
wit,

As in my gilt I shal you never offende ;
And if I have er this, I wol amende. 245

36. But, for the love of god, I yow be-
seche,

As ye ben he that I most love and triste,
Lat be to me your fremde maner speche,

And sey to me, your nece, what yow liste :'
And with that word hir uncle anon hir
kiste, 250
And seyde, 'gladly, love nece dere,
Tak it for good that I shal seye yow here.'

37. With that she gan hir eyen down to
caste,
And Pandarus to coghe gan a lyte, 254
And seyde, 'nece, alwey, lo! to the laste,
How-so it be that som men hem delyte
With subtil art hir tales for to endyte,
Yet for al that, in hir entencionn,
Hir tale is al for som conclusioun.

38. And sithen th'ende is every tales
strengthe, 260
And this matere is so bihovely,
What sholde I paynte or drawen it on
lengthe
To yow, that been my freend so feithfully?'
And with that word he gan right inwardly
Biholden hir, and loken on hir face, 265
And seyde, 'on suche a mirour goode
grace!'

39. Than thoughte he thus, 'if I my tale
endyte
Ought hard, or make a proces any whyle,
She shal no savour han ther-in but lyte,
And trowe I wolde hir in my wil bigyle.
For tandre wittes wenen al be wyle 271
Ther-as they can nat pleyntly understonde;
For thy hir wit to serven wol I fonde'—

40. And loked on hir in a besy wyse, 274
And she was war that he byheld hir so,
And seyde, 'lord! so faste ye me avyse!
Seyye me never er now? what seyye, no?'
'Yes, yes,' quod he, 'and bet wole er I go;
But, by my trouthe, I thoughte now
if ye
Be fortunat, for now men shal it see. 280

41. For to every wight som goodly aven-
ture
Som tyme is shape, if he it can receyven;
And if that he wol take of it no cure,
When that it cometh, but wilfully it
weyven,
Is neither cas nor fortune him deceyven,

But right his verray slouth and wrecched-
nesse; 286
And swich a wight is for to blame, I gesse.

42. Good aventure, O bele nece, have ye
Ful lightly founden, and ye conne it take,
And, for the love of god, and eek of me,
Cocche it anon, lest aventure slake. 291
What sholde I langer proces of it make?
Yif me your hond, for in this world is
noon,
If that you list, a wight so wel begoon. 294

43. And sith I speke of good entencionn,
As I to yow have told wel here-biforn,
And love as wel your honour and renoun
As creature in al this world y-born;
By alle the othes that I have yow sworn,
And ye be wrooth therfore, or wene I lye,
Ne shal I never seen yow eft with yé. 301

44. Beth nought agast, ne quaketh nat;
wher-to?
Ne chaungeth nat for fere so your hewe;
For hardely, the werste of this is do;
And though my tale as now be to yow
newe, 305
Yet trist alwey, ye shal me finde trowe;
And were it thing that me thoughte
unsittinge,
To yow nolde I no swiche tales bringe.'

45. 'Now, my good eem, for goddes love,
I preye,' 309
Quod she, 'com of, and tel me what it is,
For bothe I am agast what ye wol seye,
And eek me longeth it to wite, y-wis.
For whether it be wel or be amis,
Sei on, lat me not in this fere dwelle:'
'So wol I doon, now harkneth, I shal
telle: 315

46. Now, nece myn, the kinges dere sone,
The goode, wyse, worthy, freshe, and free,
Which alwey for to do wel is his wone,
The noble Troilus, so loveth thee,
That, bot ye helpe, it wol his bane be. 320
Lo, here is al, what sholde I more seye?
Doth what yow list, to make him live or
deye.

47. But if ye lete him deye, I wol sterve:
Have her my trouthe, nece, I nil not lye,

Al sholde I with this knyf my throte
 kerve'— 325
 With that the teres braste out of his yēn,
 And seyde, 'if that ye doon us bothe
 dyen,
 Thus giltelees, than have ye flashed faire;
 What mende ye, though that we bothe
 apeyre?

48. Allas! he which that is my lord so
 dere, 330
 That trewe man, that noble gentil knight,
 That nought desireth but your freendly
 chere,
 I see him deye, ther he goth up-right,
 And hasteth him, with al his fulle might,
 For to be slayn, if fortune wol assente; 335
 Allas! that god yow swich a beautee
 sente!

49. If it be so that ye so cruel be,
 That of his deeth yow liste nought to
 recche,
 That is so trewe and worthy, as ye see,
 No more than of a japere or a wrecche, 340
 If ye be swich, your beautee may not
 strecche
 To make amendes of so cruel a dede;
 Avysement is good bfore the nede.

50. Wo worth the faire gemme vertulees!
 Wo worth that herbe also that dooth no
 bote! 345
 Wo worth that beautee that is rountheles!
 Wo worth that wight that tret ech under
 fote!
 And ye, that been of beautee crop and
 rote,
 If therwith-al in you ther be no routhe,
 Than is it harm ye liven, by my trouthe!

51. And also thenk wel, that this is no
 gande; 351
 For me were lever, thou and I and he
 Were hanged, than I sholde been his
 baude,
 As heye, as men mighte on us alle y-see:
 I am thyn eem, the shame were to me, 355
 As wel as thee, if that I sholde assente,
 Thorough myn abet, that he thyn honour
 shente.

52. Now understand, for I yow nought
 requere
 To binde yow to him thorough no baheste,
 But only that ye make him bettre chere 360
 Than ye han doon er this, and more feste,
 So that his lyf be saved, at the leste.
 This al and som, and playnly our entente;
 God helpe me so, I never other mente. 364

53. Lo, this request is not but skile, y-wis,
 Ne doute of reson, pardee, is ther noon.
 I sette the worste that ye dredden this,
 Men wolden wondren seen him come or
 goon:
 Ther-ayeins answer I thus a-noon, 369
 That every wight, but he be fool of kinde,
 Wol deme it love of freendship in his
 minde.

54. What? who wol deme, though he see
 a man
 To temple go, that he the images eteth?
 Thenk eek how wel and wysly that he can
 Governe him-self, that he no-thing for-
 yeteth, 375
 That, wher he cometh, he prys and thank
 him geteth;
 And eek ther-to, he shal come here so
 selde,
 What fors were it though al the toun
 behelde?

55. Swich love of freendes regneth al this
 toun;
 And wrye yow in that mantel ever-mo;
 And, god so wis be my savacioun, 381
 As I have seyde, your beste is to do so.
 But alwey, goode nece, to stinte his wo,
 So lat your daunger sucred ben a lyte,
 That of his deeth ye be nought for to
 wyte.' 385

56. Criseyde, which that herde him in
 this wyse,
 Thoughte, 'I shal fele what he meneth,
 y-wis.'
 'Now, eem,' quod she, 'what wolde ye
 devyse,
 What is your reed I sholde doon of this?'
 'That is wel seyde,' quod he, 'certayn,
 best is 390

That ye him love ayein for his lovings,
As love for love is skilful guardonings.

57. Thenk eek, how elde wasteth every
houre

In eche of yow a party of beantes;
And therfore, er that age thes devoure, 395
Go love, for, olde, ther wol no wight of
thes.

Let this proverbe a lore un-to yow be;
To late y-war, quod Beantes, whan it
paste;"

And elde daunteth daunger at the laste.

58. The kinges fool is woned to cryen
loude, 400

Whan that him thinketh a womman
bereth hir hye,

"So longe mote ye live, and alle proude,
Til crows feet be growe under your ye,
And sende yow thanne a mirour in to
pye" 404

In whiche ye may see your face-a-morwe!"
Neca, I bid wishe yow no more sorwa.'

59. With this he stente, and caste adoun
the heed,

And she bigan to breste a-wepe anon.
And seyde, 'allas, for wo! why nere I
deed?

For of this world the feith is al agoon! 410
Allas! what sholden straunge to me doon,
When he, that for my beste freend I
wende,

Bet me to love, and sholde it me defende?

60. Allas! I wolde han trusted, douteles,
That if that I, thurgh my disaventure, 415
Had loved other him or Achilles,

Ector, or any mannes creature,
Ye nolde han had no mercy ne mesure
On me, but alwey had me in reprove;
This false world, allas! who may it leve?

61. What? is this al the joye and al the
feste? 421

Is this your reed, is this my blisful cas?
Is this the verray mede of your behesto?

Is al this peynted proces seyde, allas! 424
Right for this fyn? O lady myn, Pallas!

Thou in this dredful cas for me purveye,
For so astonied am I that I deye!"

62. With that she gan ful sorwfully to
syke;

'Al may it be no bet?' quod Pandarus;
'By god, I shal no-more come here this
wyke, 430

And god to-forn, that am mistrusted thus;
I see ful wel that ye sette lyte of us,
Or of our deeth! Allas! I woful wrecche!
Mighte he yet live, of me is nought to
recche.

63. O cruel god, O dispitouse Marte, 435
O Furies thres of helle, on yow I crye!

So lat me never out of this hous departe,
If that I mente harm or vilanye!

But sith I see my lord mot nedes dye,
And I with him, here I me shryve, and
seye 440

That wikkedly ye doon us bothe deye.

64. But sith it lyketh yow that I be
deed,

By Neptunus, that god is of the see,
Fro this forth shal I never eten breed

Til I myn owene herte blood may see; 445
For certayn, I wole deye as sone as he—

And up he starte, and on his way he
raughte,

Til she agayn him by the lappe caughte.

65. Criseyde, which that wel neigh starf
for fere,

So as she was the ferfulleste wight 450
That mighte be, and herde eek with hir
ore,

And saw the sorwful ernest of the knight,
And in his prayere eek saw noon unright,
And for the harm that mighte eek fallen
more,

She gan to rewe, and dradde hir wonder
sore; 455

66. And thoughte thus, 'unhappes fallen
thikke

Alday for love, and in swich maner cas,
As men ben cruel in hem-self and wikke;

And if this man also here him-self, allas!
In my presence, it wol be no solas. 460

What men wolde of hit deme I can nat
seye;

It nedeth me ful slepyly for to playe.'

67. And with a sorwful syk she seyde
thrye,
'A! lord! what me is tid a sory chaunce!
For myn estat now lyth in jupartye, 465
And eek myn emes lyf lyth in balaunce;
But nathelees, with goddes governaunce,
I shal so doon, myn honour shal I kepe,
And eek his lyf;' and stinte for to wepe.
68. 'Of harmes two, the lesse is for to
chese; 470
Yet have I lever maken him good chere
In honour, than myn emes lyf to lese;
Ye seyn, ye no-thing elles me requere?'
'No, wis,' quod he, 'myn owene nece dere.'
'Now wel,' quod she, 'and I wol doon my
peyne; 475
I shal myn herte ayeins my lust con-
streyne,
69. But that I nil not holden him in
honde,
Ne love a man, ne can I not, ne may
Ayeins my wil; but elles wol I fonde,
Myn honour sauf, plesse him fro day to
day; 480
Ther-to nolde I nought ones have seyde nay,
But that I dredde, as in my fantasye;
But cesse cause, ay cesseth maladye.
70. And here I make a protestacioun,
That in this proces if ye depper go, 485
That certaynly, for no savacioun
Of yow, though that ye starve bothe two,
Though al the world on o day be my fo,
Ne shal I never on him han other
routhe.'—
'I graunte wel,' quod Pandare, 'by my
trouthe. 490
71. But may I truste wel ther-to,' quod he,
'That, of this thing that ye han hight me
here,
Ye wol it holden trewly un-to me?'
'Ye, doutelees,' quod she, 'myn uncle
dere.'
'Ne that I shal han cause in this matere,'
Quod he, 'to pleyne, or after yow to
preche?' 496
'Why, no, pardoe; what nedeth more
speche?'
72. Tho fillen they in othere tales glade,
Til at the laste, 'O good eem,' quod she
tho,
'For love of god, which that us bothe
made, 500
Tel me how first ye wisten of his wo:
Wot noon of hit but ye?' He seyde,
'no.'
'Can he wel speke of love?' quod she,
'I preye,
Tel me, for I the bet me shal purveye.'
73. Tho Pandarus a litel gan to smyle,
And seyde, 'by my trouthe, I shal yow
telle. 506
This other day, nought gon ful longe
whyte,
In-with the paleys-gardyn, by a welle,
Gan he and I wel half a day to dwelle,
Right for to speken of an ordenaunce, 510
How we the Grekes mighte disavaunce.
74. Sone after that bigonne we to lepe,
And casten with our dartes to and fro,
Til at the laste he seyde, he wolde slepe,
And on the gres a-doun he leyde him tho;
And I after gan rome to and fro 516
Til that I herde, as that I welk allone,
How he bigan ful wofully to grone.
75. Tho gan I stalke him softly bihinde,
And sikerly, the sothe for to seyne, 520
As I can clepe ayein now to my minde,
Right thus to Love he gan him for to
pleyne;
He seyde, "lord! have routhe up-on my
peyne,
Al have I been rebel in myn entente;
Now, *mea culpa*, lord! I me repente. 525
76. O god, that at thy disposicioun
Ledest the fyn, by juste purveyaunce,
Of every wight, my lowe confessioun
Accepte in gree, and send me swich
penaunce 529
As lyketh thee, but from desesperaunce,
That may my goost departe away fro thee,
Thou be my sheld, for thy benignitee.
77. For certes, lord, so sore hath she me
wounded
That stod in blak, with loking of hir yën,

That to myn hertes botme it is y-sounded,
Thorough which I woot that I mot nedes
dyen ; 536

This is the worste, I dar me not bi-wryen ;
And wel the hotter been the gledes rede,
That men hem wryen with asshen pale
and dede."

78. With that he smoot his heed adoun
anoon, 540
And gan to motre, I noot what, trewely.
And I with that gan stille away to goon,
And leet ther-of as no-thing wist hadde I,
And come ayein anoon and stood him by,
And seyde, "a-wake, ye slepen al to
longe ; 545

It semeth nat that love dooth yow longe,

79. That slepen so that no man may yow
wake.

Who sey ever or this so dul a man ?"

"Ye, freend," quod he, "do ye your hedes
ake

For love, and lat me liven as I can." 550
But though that he for wo was pale and
wan,

Yet made he tho as fresh a contenaunce
As though he shulde have led the newe
daunce.

80. This passed forth, til now, this other
day,

It fel that I com roming al allone 555
Into his chaumbre, and fond how that he
lay

Up-on his bed ; but man so sore grone
Ne herde I never, and what that was his
mone,

Ne wiste I nought ; for, as I was cominge,
Also deyntly he lefte his compleyninge. 560

81. Of which I took somewhat suspicioun,
And neer I com, and fond he wepte sore ;
And god so wis be my savacioun,
As never of thing hadde I no routh more.
For neither with engyn, ne with no lore,
Unethes mighte I fro the deeth him
kepe ; 566

That yet fele I myn herte for him wepe.

82. And god wot, never, sith that I was
born,

Was I so bisy no man for to preche,

Ne never was to wight so depe y-sworn,
Or he me tolde who mighte been his
leche. 571

But now to yow rehersen al his speche,
Or alle his woful wordes for to soune,
Ne bid me not, but ye wol see me swowne.

83. But for to save his lyf, and elles
nought, 575

And to non harm of yow, thus am I
driven ;

And for the love of god that us hath
wrought,

Swich chere him dooth, that he and I
may liven.

Now have I plat to yow myn herte
schriven ; 579

And sin ye woot that myn entente is clene,
Tak hede ther-of, for I non yvel mene.

84. And right good thrift, I pray to god,
have ye,

That han swich oon y-caught with-oute
net ;

And be ye wys, as ye ben fair to see,
Wel in the ring than is the ruby set. 585

Ther were never two so wel y-met,
Whan ye ben his al hool, as he is youre :
Ther mighty god yet graunte us see that
houre !'

85. 'Nay, therof spak I not, a, ha !' quod
she,

'As helpe me god, ye shenden every deel !'

'O mercy, dere nece,' anoon quod he, 591

'What-so I spak, I mente nought but
weel,

By Mars the god, that helmed is of steel ;
Now beth nought wrooth, my blood, my
nece dere.'

'Now wel,' quod she, 'foryeven be it here !'

86. With this he took his leve, and hoom
he wente ; 596

And lord, how he was glad and wel bi-
goon !

Criseyde aroos, no lenger she ne stente,
But straught in-to hir closet wente anoon,
And sette here down as stille as any stoon,
And every word gan up and down to
winde, 601

That he hadde seyde, as it com hir to
minde ;

87. And wex somdel astonied in hir
thought,
Right for the newe cas; but whan that
she
Was ful avysed, tho fond she right nought
Of peril, why she oughte afered be. 606
For man may love, of possibilitee,
A womman so, his herte may to-breste,
And she nought love ayein, but-if hir leste.

88. But as she sat allone and thoughte
thus, 610
Th'ascry aroos at skarmish al with-oute,
And men cryde in the strete, 'see, Troilus
Hath right now put to flight the Grekes
route!'
With that gan al hir meynee for to shoute,
'A! go we see, caste up the latis wyde;
For thurgh this strete he moot to palays
ryde; 616

89. For other way is fro the yate noon
Of Dardanus, ther open is the cheyne.'
With that com he and al his folk anoon
An esy pas rydinge, in routes tweyne, 620
Right as his happy day was, sooth to seyne,
For which, men say, may nought dis-
turbed be
That shal bityden of necessitee.

90. This Troilus sat on his baye stede,
Al armed, save his heed, ful richely, 625
And wounded was his hors, and gan to
blede,
On whiche he rood a pas, ful softly;
But swich a knightly sighte, trewely,
As was on him, was nought, with-outen
faile, 629
To loke on Mars, that god is of batayle.

91. So lyk a man of armes and a knight
He was to seen, fulfild of heigh prowessse;
For bothe he hadde a body and a might
To doon that thing, as wel as hardinesse;
And eek to seen him in his gere him
dresse, 635
So fresh, so yong, so weldy semed he,
It was an heven up-on him for to see.

92. His helm to-hewen was in twenty
places,
That by a tissow heng, his bak bihinde,

His sheld to-dasshed was with swerdes
and maces, 640
In which men mighte many an arwe
finde
That thirled hadde horn and nerf and
rinde;
And ay the peple cryde, 'here cometh our
joye,
And, next his brother, holdere up of
Troye!'

93. For which he wex a litel reed for
shame, 645
Whan he the peple up-on him herde
cryen,
That to biholde it was a noble game,
How sobrelieche he caste doun his yēn.
Cryseyda gan al his chere aspyen,
And leet so softe it in hir herte sinke, 650
That to hir-self she seyde, 'who yaf me
drinke?'

94. For of hir owene thought she wex al
reed,
Remembringe hir right thus, 'lo, this is
he
Which that myn uncle swereth he moot
be deed,
But I on him have mercy and pitee;' 655
And with that thought, for pure a-shamed,
she
Gan in hir heed to pulle, and that as
faste,
Whyl he and al the peple for-by pasta,

95. And gan to caste and rollen up and
doun
With-inne hir thought his excellent
prowesse, 660
And his estat, and also his renoun,
His wit, his shap, and eek his gentillesse;
But most hir favour was, for his distresse
Was al for hir, and thoughte it was a
routhe
To sleen swich oon, if that he mente
trouthe. 665

96. Now mighte som envyous jangle thus,
'This was a sodeyn love, how mighte it be
That she so lightly lovede Troilus
Right for the firste sighte; ye, pardee?'

Now who-so sayth so, mote he never
thee ! 670

For every thing, a ginning hath it nede
Er al be wrought, with-uten any drede.

97. For I sey nought that she so sodeynly
Yaf him hir love, but that she gan enclyne
To lyke him first, and I have told yow
why ; 675

And after that, his manhod and his pyne
Made love with-inne hir for to myne,
For which, by proces and by good servyse,
He gat hir love, and in no sodeyn wyse.

98. And also blisful Venus, wel arrayed, 680
Sat in hir seventhe hous of hevnes tho,
Disposed wel, and with aspectes payed,
To helpen sely Troilus of his wo.
And, sooth to seyn, she nas nat al a fo
To Troilus in his nativitee ; 685
God woot that wel the soner spedde he.

99. Now lat us stinte of Troilus a throwe,
That rydeth forth, and lat us tourne faste
Un-to Criseyde, that heng hir heed ful
lowe,

Ther-as she sat allone, and gan to caste 690
Wher-on she wolde apoynte hir at the
laste,

If it so were hir eem ne wolde cessa,
For Troilus, up-on hir for to pressa.

100. And, lord ! so she gan in hir thought
argue

In this matere of which I have yow
told, 695

And what to doon best were, and what
eschue,

That plyted she ful ofte in many fold.
Now was hir herte warm, now was it cold,
And what she thoughte somewhat shal I
wryte,

As to myn anctor listeth for to endyte. 700

101. She thoughte wel, that Troilus per-
sone

She knew by sighte and eek his gentil-
lesse,

And thus she seyde, ' al were it nought to
done,

To graunte him love, yet, for his worthi-
nesse,

It were honour, with play and with glad-
nesse, 705

In honestee, with swich a lord to dele,
For myn estat, and also for his hele.

102. Eek, wel wot I my kinges sone is he ;
And sith he hath to see me swich delyt,
If I wolde utterly his sighte fle, 710
Paraunter he mighte have me in dispyt,
Thurgh which I mighte stonde in worse
plyt ;

Now were I wys, me hate to purchace,
With-uten nede, ther I may stonde in
grace ?

103. In every thing, I woot, ther lyth
mesure. 715

For though a man forbode dronkenesse,
He nought for-bet that every creature
Be drinkelesse for alwey, as I gesse ;
Eek sith I woot for me is his distresse,
I ne oughte not for that thing him des-
pyse, 720

Sith it is so, he meneth in good wyse.

104. And eek I knowe, of longe tyme
agoon,

His thewes goode, and that he is not nyce.
Ne avauntour, seyth men, certein, is he
noon ;

To wys is he to do so gret a vyce ; 725
Ne als I nel him never so cheryce,
That he may make avaunt, by juste cause ;
He shal me never binde in swiche a clause.

105. Now set a cas, the hardest is, y-wis,
Men mighten deme that he loveth me : 730
What dishonour were it un-to me, this ?
May I him lette of that ? why nay, pardee !
I knowe also, and alday here and see,
Men loven wommen al this toun aboute,
Be they the wers ? why, nay, with-uten
doute. 735

106. I thank eek how he able is for to
have

Of al this noble toun the thriftieste,
To been his love, so she hir honour save ;
For out and out he is the worthieste, 740
Save only Ector, which that is the beste.
And yet his lyf al lyth now in my cure,
But swich is love, and eek myn aventure.

107. Ne me to love, a wonder is it nought ;
 For wel wot I my-self, so god me spede,
 Al wolde I that noon wist of this thought,
 I am oon the fayreste, out of drede, 746
 And goodlieste, who-so taketh hede;
 And so men seyn in al the toun of Troye.
 What wonder is it though he of me have
 joye?

108. I am myn owene woman, wel at ese,
 I thanke it god, as after myn estat ; 751
 Right yong, and stonde unteyd in lusty
 lese,

With-uten jalousye or swich debat;
 Shal noon housbonde seyn to me "chek-
 mat!"

For either they ben ful of jalousye, 755
 Or maisterful, or loven novelrye.

109. What shal I doon? to what fyn live
 I thus?

Shal I nat loven, in cas if that me leste?
 What, *par dieux*! I am nought religious!
 And though that I myn herte sette at
 reste 760
 Upon this knight, that is the worthieste,
 And kepe alwey myn honour and my
 name,
 By alle right, it may do me no shame.'

110. But right as whan the sonne shyneth
 brighte,
 In March, that chaungeth ofte tyme his
 face, 765
 And that a cloud is put with wind to
 flighte

Which over-sprat the sonne as for a space,
 A cloudy thought gan thorough hir soule
 pacc,
 That over-spradde hir brighte thoughtes
 alle,
 So that for fere almost she gan to falle. 770

111. That thought was this, 'allas! sin
 I am free,
 Sholde I now love, and putte in jupartye
 My sikernesse, and thrallen libertee?
 Allas! how dorste I thenken that folye?
 May I nought wel in other folk aspye 775
 Hir dredful joye, hir constreynt, and hir
 peyne?
 Ther loveth noon, that she nath why to
 pleyne.

112. For love is yet the moste stormy lyf,
 Right of him-self, that ever was bigonne;
 For ever som mistrust, or nyce stryf, 780
 Ther is in love, som cloud is over the
 sonne:

Ther-to we wrecched wommen no-thing
 conne,
 Whan us is wo, but wepe and sitte and
 thinke;
 Our wreche is this, our owene wo to
 drinka.

113. Also these wikked tonges been so
 prest 785

To speke us harm, eek men be so untrewa,
 That, right anon as cessed is hir lest,
 So cesseth love, and forth to love a newe:
 But harm y-doon, is doon, who-so it rewa.
 For though these men for love hem first
 to-rende, 790

Ful sharp biginning braketh ofte at ende.

114. How ofte tyme hath it y-knowen be,
 The treson, that to womman hath be do?
 To what fyn is swich love, I can nat see,
 Or wher bicomth it, whan it is ago; 795
 Ther is no wight that woot, I trowe so,
 Wher it bycomth; lo, no wight on it
 sporneth;

That erst was no-thing, in-to nought it
 torneth.

115. How bisy, if I love, eek moste I be
 To plesen hem that jangle of love, and
 demen, 800
 And coye hem, that they sey non harm of
 me?

For though ther be no cause, yet hem
 semen

Al be for harm that folk hir freendes
 quemen;

And who may stoppen every wikked tonge,
 Or soun of belles whyl that they be
 ronge? 805

116. And after that, hir thought bigan to
 clere,
 And seyde, 'he which that no-thing
 under-taketh,
 No-thing ne acheveth, be him looth or
 dera.'

And with an other thought hir herte
quaketh;

Than slepeth hope, and after dreed
awaketh; 810

Now hoot, now cold; but thus, bi-twixen
tweye,

She rist hir up, and went hir for to pleye.

117. Adoun the steyre anoon-right tho
she wente

In-to the gardin, with hir neces thre,
And up and down ther made many a

wente, 815

Flexippe, she, Tharbo, and Antigone,

To pleyen, that it joye was to see;

And othere of hir women, a gret route,
Hir folwede in the gardin al aboute.

118. This yerd was large, and rayled alle
the aleyes, 820

And shadwed wel with bloomy bowes
grene,

And benched newe, and sonded alle the
weyes,

In which she walketh arm in arm bi-
twene;

Til at the laste Antigone the shene
Gan on a Trojan song to singe clere, 825

That it an heven was hir voys to here.—

119. She seyde, 'O love, to whom I have
and shal

Ben humble subgit, trewe in myn entente,
As I best can, to yow, lord, yave ich al

Forever-more, myn hertes lust to rente. 830

For never yet thy grace no wight sente

So blisful cause as me, my lyf to lede

In alle joye and seurtee, out of drede.

120. Ye, blisful god, han me so wel beset
In love, y-wis, that al that bereth lyf 835

Imaginen ne cowde how to ben bet;

For, lord, with-outen jalounye or stryf,

I love oon which that is most ententyf

To serven wel, anwary or unfeyned,

That ever was, and leest with harm dis-
treyned. 840

121. As he that is the well of worthinesse,
Of trethe ground, mirour of goodliheed,

Of wit Appollo, stoon of sikernesse,

Of vertu rote, of lust findere and heed,

Thurgh which is alle sorwe frome deed, 845

Y-wis, I love him best, so doth he me;

Now good thrift have he, wher-so that he

be!

122. Whom shelde I thanke but yow, god
of love,

Of al this blisse, in which to bathe I
ginne?

And thanked be ye, lord, for that I love! 850

This is the righte lyf that I am inne,

To flemen alle manere vyce and sinne:

This doth me so to vertu for to entende,

That day by day I in my wil amende.

123. And who-so seyth that for to love is
vyce, 855

Or thraldom, though he fele in it dis-
trese,

He outhur is envyous, or right nyce,

Or is unmighty, for his shrewednesse,

To loven; for swich maner folk, I gesse,

Defamen love, as no-thing of him knowe;

They spoken, but they bente never his
bowe. 860

124. What is the sonne wers, of kinde
righte,

Though that a man, for feblesse of his
yē,

May nought endure on it to see for
bryghte?

Or love the wers, though wrecches on it
cryen? 865

No wole is worth, that may no sorwe
dryen.

And for-ty, who that hath an heed of
verre,

Fro cast of stones war him in the werre'

125. But I with al myn herte and al my
might, 869

As I have sayd, wol love, un-to my laste,

My dere herte, and al myn owene knight,

In which myn herte grown is so faste,

And his in me, that it shal ever laste.

Al dredde I first to love him to liginne,

Now woot I wel, ther is no peril inne.' 875

126. And of hir song right with that word
she stente,

And therwith-al, 'now, nece,' quod Cri-
seyde,

'Who made this song with so good entente?'

Antigone answerde anon, and seyde,
'Ma dame, y-wis, the goodlieste mayde 880
Of greet estat in al the toun of Troye;
And let hir lyf in most honour and joye.'

127. 'Forsothe, so it semeth by hir song,'
Quod tho Criseyde, and gan ther-with to
syke,
And seyde, 'lord, is there swich blisse 885
among
These lovers, as they conne faire endyte?'
'Ye, wis,' quod fresh Antigone the whyte,
'For alle the folk that han or been on lyve
Ne conne wel the blisse of love discryve.

128. But wene ye that every wrecche
woot 890
The parfit blisse of love? why, nay, y-wis;
They wenen al be love, if oon be hoot;
Do wey, do wey, they woot no-thing of
this!

Men mosten axe at seyntes if it is
Aught fair in hevене; why? for they
conne telle; 895
And axen fendes, is it foul in helle.'

129. Criseyde un-to that purpos nought
answerde,
But seyde, 'y-wis, it wol be night as
faste.'

But every word which that she of hir
herde,

She gan to prenten in hir herte faste; 900
And ay gan love hir lasse for to agaste
Than it dide erst, and sinken in hir herte,
That she wex somewhat able to converte.

130. The dayes honour, and the hevenes yē,
The nightes fo, al this clepe I the sonne, 905
Gan westren faste, and downward for to
wrye,

As he that hadde his dayes cours y-ronne;
And whyte thinges wexen dimme and
donne

For lak of light, and sterres for to appere,
That she and al hir folk in wente y-fere.

131. So whan it lyked hir to goon to reste,
And voyded weren they that voyden
oughte, 912

She seyde, that to slepe wel hir leste.
Hir wommen sone til hir bed hir broughte.
Whan al was hust, than lay she stille, and
thoughte 915
Of al this thing the manere and the wyse.
Reherce it nedeth nought, for ye ben wyse.

132. A nightingale, upon a cedre grene,
Under the chambre-wal ther as she lay,
Ful loude sang ayein the mone shene, 920
Paraunter, in his briddes wyse, a lay
Of love, that made hir herte fresh and gay.
That herkned she so longe in good entente,
Til at the laste the dede sleep hir hente.

133. And, as she sleep, anon-right tho
hir mette, 925
How that an egle, fethered whyt as boon,
Under hir brest his longe clawes sette,
And out hir herte he rente, and that
a-noon,

And dide his herte in-to hir brest to goon,
Of which she nought agroos ne no-thing
smerte, 930
And forth he fleigh, with herte left for
herte.

134. Now lat hir slepe, and we our tales
holde
Of Troilus, that is to paleys riden,
Fro the scarmuch, of the whiche I tolde,
And in his chambre sit, and hath abiden
Til two or three of his messages yeden 936
For Pandarus, and soughten him ful faste,
Til they him founde, and broughte him at
the laste.

135. This Pandarus com leping in at ones
And seide thus, 'who hath ben wel y-bete
To-day with swerdes, and with alinge-
stones, 941
But Troilus, that hath caught him an
hete?'

And gan to jape, and seyde, 'lord, so ye
swete!

But rys, and lat us soupe and go to reste;'
And he answerde him, 'do we as thee
leste.' 945

136. With al the haste goodly that they
mighte,
They spedde hem fro the souper un-to
bedde;

And every wight out at the dore him
dighte,
And wher him list upon his way he
spedde;
But Troilus, that thoughte his herte
bladde 950
For wo, til that he herde som tydinge,
He seyde, 'frend, shal I now wepe or
singe?'

137. Quod Pandarus, 'ly stille, and lat me
slope,
And don thyn hood, thy nedes spedde be;
And chese, if thou wolt singe or daunce or
lepe; 955
At shorte wordes, thou shalt trowe me.—
Sire, my nece wol do wel by thee,
And love thee best, by god and by my
trutha,
But lak of pursuit make it in thy sloutha.

138. For thus ferforth I have thy work
bigonne, 960
Pro day to day, til this day, by the morwe,
Hir love of freendship have I to thee
wonne,
And also hath she leyd hir feyth to borwe.
Algate a foot is hameled of thy sorwe.'
What sholde I lenger sermon of it holde?
As ye han hard bifore, al he him tolde. 966

139. But right as floures, thorough the
colde of night
Y-closed, stoupen on hir stalkes lowe,
Redressen hem a-yein the sonne bright,
And spreden on hir kinde cours by rowe;
Right so gan the his eyen up to throwe 971
This Troilus, and seyde, 'O Venus dere,
Thy might, thy grace, y-heried be it here!'

140. And to Pandarus he held up bothe his
bondes,
And seyde, 'lord, al thyn be that I have; 975
For I am hool, al brosten been my bondes;
A thousand Troians who so that me yave,
Ecce after other, god so wis me save,
He mighte me so gladen; lo, myn herte,
It spredeth so for joye, it wol to-starte! 980

141. But lord, how shal I doon, how shal
I liven?
When shal I next my dere herte see?

How shal this longe tyme a-wey be driven,
Til that thou be ayein at hir fro me?
Thou mayst answer, "a-byd, a-byd," but
he 985
That hangeth by thenekke, sooth to seyne,
In grete disease abydeth for the payne.'

142. 'Al esily, now, for the love of Marte,'
Quod Pandarus, 'for every thing hath
tyme; 989
So longe abyd til that the night departe;
For al so siker as thou lyst here by me,
And god toforen, I wol be there at pryme,
And for thy werk somewhat as I shal seye,
Or on som other wight this charge laye.

143. For pardee, god wot, I have ever
yit 995
Ben redy thee to serve, and to this night
Have I nought fayned, but amforth my
wit
Don al thy lust, and shal with al my
might.
Do now as I shal seye, and fare a-right;
And if thou nilt, wyte al thy-self thy care,
On me is nought along thyn yvel fare. 1001

144. I woot wel that thou wyser art than I
A thousand fold, but if I were as thou,
God helpe me so, as I wolde ontrelly,
Right of myn owane hond, wryte hir
right now 1005
A lettre, in which I wolde hir tellen how
I ferde amis, and hir beseche of rounthe;
Now help thy-self, and leve it not for
sloutha.

145. And I my-self shal ther-with to hir
goon;
And whan thou wost that I am with hir
there, 1010
Worth thou up-on a courser right anon,
Ye, hardily, right in thy beste gere,
And ryd forth by the place, as nought ne
were,
And thou shalt finde us, if I may, sittinge
At som windowe, in-to the strete lokinga.

146. And if thee list, than maystow us
saluwe, 1016
And up-on me make thy contenance,

But, by thy lyf, be war and faste eschuwe
To tarien ought, god shilde us fro mis-
chaunce!

Ryd forth thy wey, and hold thy govern-
aunce; 1020

And we shal speke of thee som-what, I
trowe,

Whan thou art goon, to do thyne eres
glowe!

147. Touching thy lettre, thou art wys
y-nough, 1023

I woot thou wilt it digneliche endyte;
As make it with thise argumentes tough;
Ne scrivenish or craftily thou it wryte;
Beblotte it with thy teres eek a lyte;
And if thou wryte a goodly word al softe,
Though it be good, reherce it not to ofte.

148. For though the beste harpour upon
lyve 1030

Wolde on the beste souned joly harpe
That ever was, with alle his fingres fyve,
Touche ay o streng, or ay o werbul harpe,
Were his nayles poynted never so sharpe,
It shulde maken every wight to dulle, 1035
To here his glee, and of his strokes fulle.

149. Ne jompre eek no discordaunt thing
y-fere,

As thus, to usen fermes of phisyk;
In loves termes, hold of thy matere
The forme alwey, and do that it be
lyk; 1040

For if a peyntour wolde peynte a pyk
With asses feet, and hede it as an ape,
It cordeth nought; so nere it but a jape.'

150. This counseyl lyked wel to Troilus;
But, as a dreedful lover, he seyde this:—
'Allas, my dere brother Pandarus, 1046
I am ashamed for to wryte, y-wis,
Lest of myn innocence I seyde a-mis,
Or that she nolde it for despyt receyve;
Thanne were I deed, ther mighte it no-
thing weyve.' 1050

151. To that Pandare answerde, 'if thee
lest,

Do that I seye, and lat me therwith goon;
For by that lord that formed est and west,
I hope of it to bringe answer anon

Right of hir hond, and if that thou wilt
noon, 1055

Lat be; and sory mote he been his lyve,
Ayeins thy lust that helpeth thee to
thryve.'

152. Quod Troilus, '*Depardieu*, I assente;
Sin that thee list, I will aryse and wryte;
And blisful god preye ich, with good
entente, 1060

The vyage, and the lettre I shal endyte,
So spede it; and thou, Minerva, the whyte,
Yif thou me wit my lettre to devyse: '
And sette him down, and wroot right in
this wyse.—

153. First he gan hir his righte lady
calle, 1065

His hertes lyf, his lust, his sorwes leche,
His blisse, and eek this othere termes
alle,

That in swich cas these loveres alle seche;
And in ful humble wyse, as in his speche,
He gan him recomaunde un-to hir grace;
To telle al how, it axeth muchel space. 1071

154. And after this, ful lowly he hir
prayde

To be nought wrooth, though he, of his
folye,

So hardy was to hir to wryte, and seyde,
That love it made, or elles moste he dye,
And pitously gan mercy for to crye; 1076
And after that he seyde, and ley ful loude,
Him-self was litel worth, and lesse he
coude;

155. And that she sholde han his conning
excused,

That litel was, and eek he dredde hir so,
And his unworthinesse he ay acused; 1081
And after that, than gan he telle his wo;
But that was endeles, with-uten ho
And seyde, he wolde in trouthe alwey him
holde;—

And radde it over, and gan the lettre
folde. 1085

156. And with hissalte teres gan he batho
The ruby in his signet, and it sette
Upon the wax deliverliche and rathe;
Ther-with a thousand tymes, er he lette,

He kiste the the lettre that he shette, 1090
And seyde, 'lettre, a blisful destinee
Thee shapen is, my lady shal thee see.'

157. This Pandarus took the lettre, and
that by tyme
A-morwe, and to his neeces paleys starte,
And faste he swoor, that it was passed
pryme, 1095
And gan to jape, and seyde, 'y-wis, myn
herte,
So fresh it is, al-though it sore smerte,
I may not slepe never a Mayes morwe;
I have a joly wo, a lusty sorwe.'

158. Criseyde, whan that she hir uncle
herde, 1100
With dredful herte, and desirous to here
The cause of his cominge, thus answerde,
'Now by your feyth, myn uncle,' quod
she, 'dere,
What maner windes gydeth yow now
here? 1104
Tel us your joly wo and your penaunce,
How farforth be ye put in loves daunce.'

159. 'By god,' quod he, 'I hoppe alway
bihinde!'
And she to-laugh, it thoughte hir herte
breste.
Quod Pandarus, 'loke alway that ye finde
Game in myn hood, but herkneth, if yow
leste; 1110
Ther is right now come in-to tounes gaste,
A Greek espye, and telleth newe thinges,
For which come I to telle yow tydinges.

160. Into the gardin go we, and we shal
here,
Al prevely, of this a long sermoun.' 1115
With that they wenten arm in arm y-fere
In-to the gardin from the chaumbre down.
And whan that he so fer was that the
soun
Of that he speke, no man here mighte,
He seyde hir thus, and out the lettre
plighte, 1120

161. 'Lo, he that is al hoolly youre free
Him recomaundeth lowly to your grace,
And sent to you this lettre here by me;
Avyeth you on it, whan ye han space,

And of som goodly answer yow purchace;
Or, helpe me god, so playnly for to seyne,
He may not longe liven for his payne.'

162. Ful dredfully the gan she stonde
stille,
And took it nought, but al hir humble
chere
Gan for to chaunge, and seyde, 'scrit ne
bille, 1130
For love of god, that toucheth swich
matere,
Ne bring me noon; and also, uncle
dere,
To myn estat have more reward, I preye,
Than to his lust; what sholde I more
seye?

163. And loketh now if this be reson-
able, 1135
And letteth nought, for favour ne for
slouth,
To seyn a sooth; now were it covenable
To myn estat, by god, and by your trouthe,
To taken it, or to han of him routhe,
In harming of my-self or in repreve? 1140
Ber it a-yein, for him that ye on leve!'

164. This Pandarus gan on hir for to
stare,
And seyde, 'now is this the grettest
wonder
That ever I sey! lat be this nyce fare!
To deethe mote I smiten be with thonder,
If, for the citee which that stondeth
yonder, 1146
Wolde I a lettre un-to yow bringe or take
To harm of yow; what list yow thus it
make?

165. But thus ye faren, wel neigh alle and
some, 1149
That he that most desireth yow to serve,
Of him ye recche leest wher he bcome,
And whether that he live or elles sterve,
But for al that that ever I may deserve,
Refuse it nought,' quod he, and hente hir
faste,
And in hir bosom the lettre down he
thruste, 1155

166. And seyde hir, 'now cast it away
anoon,
That folk may seen and gauren on us
tweye.'

Quod she, 'I can abyde til they be goon,
And gan to smyle, and seyde him, 'eem,
I preye,

Swich answeere as yow list your-self pur-
veye, 1160

For trewely I nil no lettre wryte.'

'No? than wol I,' quod he, 'so ye endyte.'

167. Therwith she lough, and seyde, 'go
we dyne.'

And he gan at him-self to jape faste, 1164

And seyde, 'nece, I have so greet a pyne

For love, that every other day I faste'—

And gan his beste japes forth to caste;

And made hir so to langhe at his folye,

That she for laughter wende for to dye.

168. And whan that she was comen in-to
halle, 1170

'Now, eem,' quod she, 'we wol go dyne
anoon;'

And gan some of hir women to hir calle,
And streyght in-to hir chaumbre gan she
goon;

But of hir businesses, this was oon

A-monges othere thinges, out of drede,

Ful prively this lettre for to rede; 1176

169. Avysed word by word in every lyne,
And fond no lak, she thoughte he coude
good;

And up it putte, and went hir in to dyne.

And Pandarus, that in a study stood, 1180

Er he was war, she took him by the
hood,

And seyde, 'ye were caught er that ye
wiste;'

'I vouche sauf,' quod he, 'do what yow
liste.'

170. Tho wesshen they, and sette hem
doun and ete;

And after noon ful sleyly Pandarus 1185

Gan drawe him to the window next the
strete,

And seyde, 'nece, who hath arayed thus
The yonder hous, that stant afor-yeyn us?'

'Which hous?' quod she, and gan for to
biholde,
And knew it wel, and whos it was him
tolde, 1190

171. And fillen forth in speche of thinges
smale,

And seten in the window bothe tweye.

Whan Pandarus saw tyme un-to his tale,

And saw wel that hir folk were alle
aweye,

'Now, nece myn, tel on,' quod he, 'I
seye, 1195

How lyketh yow the lettre that ye woot?

Can he ther-on? for, by my trouthe, I
noot.'

172. Therwith al rosy hewed tho wex she,
And gan to humme, and seyde, 'so I
trowe.'

'Aquyte him wel, for goddes love,' quod
he; 1200

'My-self to medes wol the lettre sowe,'

And held his hondes up, and sat on
knowe,

'Now, goode nece, be it never so lyte,
Yif me the labour, it to sowe and plyte.'

173. 'Ye, for I can so wryte,' quod she
tho; 1205

'And eek I noot what I sholde to him
seye.'

'Nay, nece,' quod Pandare, 'sey not so;
Yet at the leste thanketh him, I preye,
Of his good wil, and doth him not to deye.
Now for the love of me, my nece dere, 1210
Refuseth not at this tyme my preyere.'

174. '*Depar-dieux*,' quod she, 'god leve al
be wel!

God helpe me so, this is the firste lettre
That ever I wroot, ye, al or any del.'

And in-to a closet, for to avyse hir bettre,
She wente allone, and gan hir herte un-
fette 1216

Out of disdaynes prison but a lyte;

And sette hir doun, and gan a lettre wryte,

175. Of which to telle in short is myn
entente 1219

Th'effect, as fer as I can understonde:—
She thonked him of al that he wel mente

Towardes hir, but holden him in honde
She nolde nought, ne make hir-selven
bonde

In love, but as his suster, him to plesse,
She wolde fayn, to doon his herte an ese.

176. She shette it, and to Pandarus gan
goon, 1226

There as he sat and loked in-to strete,
And down she sette hir by him on a stoon
Of jaspere, up-on a quissahin gold y-bete,
And seyde, 'as wisly helpe me god the
grete, 1230

I never dide a thing with more payne
Than wryte this, to which ye me con-
streyn;'

177. And took it him: he thonked hir
and seyde,

'God woot, of thing ful ofte looth bigonne
Cometh ende good; and nece myn, Cri-
seyde, 1235

That ye to him of hard now ben y-wonne
Oughte he be glad, by god and yonder
sonne!

For-why men seyth, "impressioun[e]s
lighte

Ful lightly been ay redy to the flighte."

178. But ye han played tyraunt neigh to
longe, 1240

And hard was it your herte for to grave;
Now stint, that ye no longer on it honge,
Al wolde ye the forme of daunger save.

But hasteth yow to doon him joye have;
For trusteth wel, to longe y-doon hard-
nesse 1245

Causeth despyt ful often, for distresse.'

179. And right as they declamed this
matere,

Lo, Troilus, right at the stretes ende,
Com ryding with his tenthe some y-fere,
Al softely, and thiderward gan bende 1250
Ther-as they sete, as was his way to wende
To paleys-ward; and Pandare him aspyde,
And seyde, 'nece, y-see who cometh here
ryde!

180. O flee not in, he seeth us, I suppose;
Lest he may thinke that ye him eschuwe.'

'Nay, nay,' quod she, and wax as reed as
rose. 1256

With that he gan hir humbly to saluwe,
With dreedful chere, and ofte his hewes
muwe;

And up his look debonairly he caste,
And bakked on Pandare, and forth he
paste. 1260

181. God woot if he sat on his hors a-right,
Or goodly was beseyn, that ilke day!
God woot wher he was lyk a manly
knight!

What sholde I drecche, or telle of his
aray?

Criseyde, which that alle these thinges
say, 1265

To telle in short, hir lyked al y-fere,
His persone, his aray, his look, his chere,

182. His goodly manere and his gentil-
lesse,

So wel, that never, sith that she was born,
Ne hadde she swich rounthe of his dis-
tresse; 1270

And how-so she hath hard ben her-biforn,
To god hope I, she hath now caught a
thorn.

She shal not pulle it out this nexte wyke;
God sende mo swich thornes on to pyke!

183. Pandare, which that stood hir faste
by, 1275

Felte iren hoot, and he bigan to smyte,
And seyde, 'nece, I pray yow hertely,
Tel me that I shal axen yow a lyte.

A womman, that were of his deeth to
wyte,

With-uten his gilt, but for hir lakked
routhe, 1280

Were it wel doon?' Quod she, 'nay, by
my trouthe!'

184. 'God helpe me so,' quod he, 'ye sey
me sooth.

Ye felen wel your-self that I not lye;
Lo, yond he rit!' Quod she, 'ye, so he
dooth.'

'Wel,' quod Pandare, 'as I have told yow
thrye, 1285

Lat be your nyce shame and your folye,
And spek with him in esing of his herte;
Lat nycetee not do yow bothe smerte.'

185. But ther-on was to heven and to
done;
Considered al thing, it may not be; 1290
And why, for shame; and it were eek to
sone

To graunten him so greet a libertee.
'For playnly hir entente,' as seyde she,
Was for to love him unwist, if she mighte,
And guerdon him with no-thing but with
sighte.' 1295

186. But Pandarus thoughte, 'it shal not
be so,
If that I may; this nyce opinioun
Shal not be holden fully yeres two.'
What sholde I make of this a long ser-
moun?

He moste assente on that conclusioun 1300
As for the tyme; and whan that it was eve,
And al was wel, he roos and took his leve.

187. And on his way ful faste homward he
spedde,
And right for joye he felte his herte
daunce;
And Troilus he fond alone a-bedde, 1305
That lay as dooth these loveres, in a
traunce,
Bitwixen hope and derk desesperaunce.
But Pandarus, right at his in-cominge,
He song, as who seyth, 'lo! sumwhat
I bringe.'

188. And seyde, 'who is in his bed so
sone 1310
Y-buried thus?' 'It am I, freend,' quod
he.

'Who, Troilus? nay helpe me so the
mone,'
Quod Pandarus, 'thou shalt aryse and see
A charme that was sent right now to thee,
The which can helen thee of thyn ac-
cesse, 1315
If thou do forth-with al thy besinesse.'

189. 'Ye, through the might of god!'
quod Troilus.
And Pandarus gan him the lettre take,
And seyde, 'pardee, god hath holpen us;
Have here a light, and loke on al this
blake.' 1320
But ofte gan the herte glade and quake

Of Troilus, whyl that he gan it rede,
So as the wordes yave him hope or drede.

190. But fynally, he took al for the beste
That she him wroot, for sumwhat he bi-
held 1325
On which, him thoughte, he mighte his
herte reste,
Al covered she the wordes under sheld.
Thus to the more worthy part he held,
That, what for hope and Pandarus bi-
heste,
His grete wo for-yede he at the leste. 1330

191. But as we may alday our-selven see,
Through more wode or col, the more fyr;
Right so encrees of hope, of what it be,
Therwith ful ofte encreseth eek desyr;
Or, as an ook cometh of a litel spyr, 1335
So through this lettre, which that she
him sente,
Encresen gan desyr, of which he brente.

192. Wherefore I seye alwey, that day and
night
This Troilus gan to desiren more
Than he dide erst, thurgh hope, and dide
his might 1340
To pressen on, as by Pandarus lore,
And wryten to hir of his sorwes sore
Fro day to day; he leet it not refreyde,
That by Pandare he wroot somwhat or
seyde;

193. And dide also his othere obser-
vaunces 1345
That to a love longeth in this cas;
And, after that these dees turnede on
chaunces,
So was he outhur glad or seyde 'allas!'
And held after his gestes ay his pas;
And aftir swiche answeres as he hadde,
So were his dayes sory outhur gladde. 1351

194. But to Pandare alwey was his recours,
And pitously gan ay til him to pleyne,
And him bisoughte of rede and som
socours;
And Pandarus, that sey his wode payne,
Wex wel neigh deed for routh, sooth to
seyne, 1356

And bisily with al his herte caste
Sorn of his wo to sleem, and that as faste ;

195. And seyde, 'lord, and freend, and
brother dere,
God woot that thy disease doth me wo. 1360
But woltow stinten al this woful chere,
And, by my trouthe, or it be dayes two,
And god to-forn, yet shal I shape it so,
That thou shalt come in-to a certayn
place,
Ther-as thou mayst thy-self hir preye of
grace. 1365

196. And certainly, I noot if thou it wost,
But tho that been expert in love it seye,
It is oon of the thinges that furthereth
most,
A man to have a leysur for to preye,
And aiker place his wo for to biwreye ; 1370
For in good herte it moot som rounthe
imprese,
To here and see the gittles in distresse.

197. Paraunter thenkestow : though it
be so
That kinde wolde doon hir to biginne
To han a maner rounthe up-on my wo, 1375
Seyth Daunger, "Nay, thou shalt me
never winne ;
So reuleth hir hir hertes goost with-inne,
That, though she bende, yet she stant on
rote ;
What in effect is this un-to my bote ?"

198. Think here-ayeins, whan that the
sturdy ook, 1380
On which men hakketh ofte, for the
nonce,
Receyved hath the happy falling strook,
The grete sweigh doth it come al at ones,
As doon these rokkes or these milne-stones.
For swifter cours cometh thing that is of
wights, 1385
Whan it descendeth, than don thinges
lights.

199. And reed that boweth down for every
blast,
Ful lightly, cesse wind, it wol aryse ;
But so nil not an ook whan it is cast ;
It nedeth me nought thee longe to forbyso.

Men shal rejoysen of a greet empyse 1391
Acheved wel, and stant with-outen doute,
Al han men been the lenger ther-about.

200. But, Troilus, yet tel me, if thee lest,
A thing now which that I shal axen
thee ; 1395
Which is thy brother that thou lovest
best
As in thy verray hertes privetee ?
'Y-wis, my brother Deiphebus,' quod he.
'Now,' quod Pandarus, 'er houres twyes
twelve,
He shal thee see, unwist of it him-selfe.

201. Now lat me allone, and werken as
I may, 1401
Quod he ; and to Deiphebus wente he tho
Which hadde his lord and grete freend
ben ay ;
Save Troilus, no man he lovede so.
To telle in short, with-outen wordes mo,
Quod Pandarus, 'I pray yow that ye be
Freend to a cause which that toucheth
me.' 1407

202. 'Yis, pardee,' quod Deiphebus, 'wel
thow wost,
In al that ever I may, and god to-fore,
Al nere it but for man I love most, 1410
My brother Troilus ; but sey wherfore
It is ; for sith that day that I was bore,
I nas, ne never-mo to been I thinke,
Ayeins a thing that mighte thee for-
thinke.'

203. Pandarus gan him thonke, and to
him seyde, 1415
'Lo, sire, I have a lady in this toun,
That is my nece, and called is Criseyde,
Which sommen wolden doon oppressioun.
And wrongfully have hir possessioun :
Wherfor I of your lordship yow biseche
To been our freend, with-oute more
speche.' 1421

204. Deiphebus him answerde, 'O, is not
this,
That thow spekest of to me thus
straungely,
Criseyda, my freend ?' He seyde, 'Yis.'
'Than nedeth,' quod Deiphebus hardely,

Na-more to speke, for trusteth wel, that I
Wel be hir championn with spore and
yarde; 1427
I roughte nought though alle hir foes it
herde

205. But tel me, thou that woost al this
matere,
How I might best avaylen? now lat see.
Quod Pandarus, 'if ye, my lord so dere,
Wolden as now don this honour to me,
To prayen hir to-morwe. lo, that she
Com un-to yow hir pleyntes to devyse,
Hir adversaries wolde of hit agryse. 1435

206. And if I more dorste preye as now,
And chargen yow to have so greet tra-
vayle,
To han som of your bretheren here with
yow,
That mighten to hir cause bet avayle,
Than, woot I wel, she mighte never fayle
For to be holpen, what at your instaunce,
What with hir othere freendes govern-
aunce. 1442

207. Deiphebus, which that comen was,
of kinde,
To al honour and bountes to consente,
Answerde, 'it shal be doon; and I can
finde 1445
Yet gretter help to this in myn entente.
What wolt thou seyn, if I for Eleyne
sente

To speke of this? I trow it be the beste;
For she may leden Paris as hir leste.

208. Of Ector, which that is my lord, my
brother, 1450
It nedeth nought to preye him freend
to be,
For I have herd him, o tyme and eek othere,
Speke of Criseyde swich honour, that he
May seyn no bet, swich hap to him hath
she.
It nedeth nought his helpes for to
crave; 1455
He shal be swich, right as we wole him
have.

209. Spek thou thy-self also to Troilus
On my bihalve, and pray him with us
dyne.'

'Sirs, al this shal be doon,' quod Pan-
darus;
And took his leve, and never gan to
fyna, 1460
But to his neeces hous, as streght as lyne,
He com; and fond hir fro the mete aryse;
And sette him down, and spak right in
this wyse.

210. He sayde, 'O veray god, so have
I ronne!
Lo, nece myn, see ye nought how I swete?
I noot whether ye the more thank me
conne. 1466
Be ye nought war how that fals Poliphete
Is now aboute eft-sones for to plate,
And bringe on yow advocacyes newe?'
'I? no,' quod she, and chaunged al hir
hewe. 1470

211. 'What is he more aboute, me to
drecche
And doon me wrong? what shal I do,
allas?
Yet of him-self no-thing ne wolde I recche,
Nere it for Antenor and Eneas,
That been his freendes in swich maner
cas; 1475
But, for the love of god, myn uncle dere,
No fors of that, lat him have al y-fere;

212. With-oute that, I have ynough for
us.
'Nay,' quod Pandarus, 'it shal no-thing
be so 1479
For I have been right now at Deiphebus,
And Ector, and myne othere lordes me,
And shortly maked eche of hem hit
That, by my thrift, he shal it noon
For ought he can, when that he
ginne.'

213. And as they casten whiche way
done,
Deiphebus, of his owene curteisie,
Com hir to preye, in his pryve
To 1480 the morwe
holde ne
eye
n.

214. Whanne this was doon, this Pandare
up a-noon,
To telle in short, and forth gan for to
wende

To Troilus, as stille as any stoon,
And al this thing he tolde him, word and
ende; 1495

And how that he Deiphebus gan to blende;
And seyde him, 'now is tyme, if that thou
conne,
To bare thee wel to-morwe, and al is
wonne.

215. Now spek, now prey, now pitously
compleyne;

Lat not for nyce shame, or drede, or
slouth; 1500

Som-tyme a man mot telle his owene
peyne;

Bileve it, and she shal han on thee routhe;
Thou shalt be saved by thy feyth, in
trouthe.

But wel wot I, thou art now in a drede;
And what it is, I leye, I can arede. 1505

216. Thow thinkest now, "how sholde
I doon al this?

For by my cheres mosten folk aspye,
That for hir love is that I fare a-mis;
Yet hadde I lever unwist for sorwe dye."
Now thenk not so, for thou dost greet
folye. 1510

For right now have I founden o manere
Of sleighte, for to coveren al thy chere.

217. Thow shalt gon over night, and that
as blyve,

Un-to Deiphebus hous, as thee to pleye,
Thy maladye a-wey the bet to dryve, 1515
For-why thou semest syk, soth for to seye.
Sone after that, doun in thy bed thee leye,
And sey, thow mayst no lenger up endure,
And lye right there, and byde thyn aven-
ture.

218. Sey that thy fever is wont thee for
to take 1520

The same tyme, and lasten til a-morwe;
And lat see now how wel thou canst
it make,

For, par-dee, syk is he that is in sorwe.

Go now, farewel! and, Venus here to
borwe, 1524

I hope, and thou this purpos holde ferme,
Thy grace she shal fully ther conferme.'

219. Quod Troilus, 'y-wis, thou nedeless
Counseylest me, that sykliche I me feyne!

For I am syk in earnest, douteless,
So that wel neigh I sterve for the peyne.'
Quod Pandarus, 'thou shalt the better
pleyne, 1531

And hast the lasse nede to countrefete;
For him men demen hoot that men seen
swete.

220. Lo, holde thee at thy triste cloos,
and I

Shal wel the deer un-to thy bowe dryve.'
Therwith he took his leve al softly, 1536
And Troilus to paleys wente blyve.

So glad ne was he never in al his lyve;
And to Pandarus reed gan al assente,
And to Deiphebus hous at night he
wente. 1540

221. What nedeth yow to tellen al the
chere

That Deiphebus un-to his brother made,
Or his accesse, or his syklich manere,
How men gan him with clothes for to
lade,

Whan he was leyd, and how men wolde
him glade? 1545

But al for nought, he held forth ay the
wyse

That ye han herd Pandare er this devyse.

222. But certeyn is, er Troilus him leyde,
Deiphebus had him prayed, over night,
To been a freend and helping to Criseyde.
God woot, that he it graunted anon-
right, 1551

To been hir fulle freend with al his might.
But swich a nede was to preye him
thenne,

As for to bidde a wood man for to renne.

223. The morwen com, and neighen gan
the tyme 1555

Of meel-tyd, that the faire quene Eleyne
Shoop hir to been, an houre after the
pryme,

With Deiphebus, to whom she nolde
feyne;
But as his suster, hoomly, sooth to seyne,
She com to diner in hir playn entente. 1560
But god and Pandare wiste al what this
mente.

224. Come eek Criseyde, al innocent of
this,
Antigone, hir sister Tarbe also;
But fleo we now prolixitee best is,
For love of god, and lat us faste go 1565
Right to the effect, with-oute tales mo,
Why al this folk assembled in this place;
And lat us of hir saluinges pace.

225. Gret honour dide hem Deiphebus,
certeyn,
And fedde hem wel with al that mighte
lyke. 1570
But ever-more, 'allas!' was his refreyn,
'My goode brother Troilus, the syke,
Lyth yet'—and therewith-al he gan to
syke;
And after that, he peyned him to glade
Hem as he mighte, and chere good he
made. 1575

226. Compleyned eek Eleyne of his syk-
nesse
So feithfully, that pitee was to here,
And every wight gan waxen for accesse
A leche anon, and seyde, 'in this manere
Men curen folk; this charme I wol yow
lere.' 1580
But there sat oon, al list hir nought to
teche,
That thoughte, best coude I yet been his
leche.

227. After compleynt, him gonnen they
to preyse,
As folk don yet, whan som wight hath
bigonne
To preyse a man, and up with prys him
reyse 1585
A thousand fold yet hyer than the sonne:—
'He is, he can, that fewe lordes conne.'
And Pandarus, of that they wolde afferme,
He not for-gat hir preysing to conferme.

228. Herde al this thing Criseyde wel
y-nough, 1590
And every word gan for to notifie;
For which with sobre chere hir herte
lough;
For who is that ne wolde hir glorifye,
To mowen swich a knight don live or
dye?
But al passe I, lest ye to longe dwelle; 1595
For for o fyn is al that ever I telle.

229. The tyme com, fro diner for to ryse,
And, as hem oughte, arisen everychoon,
And gonne a whyl of this and that devyse.
But Pandarus brak al this speche anon,
And seyde to Deiphebus, 'wole ye goon,
If yourẽ wille be, as I yow preyde, 1602
To speke here of the nedes of Criseyde?'

230. Eleyne, which that by the hond hir
held,
Took first the tale, and seyde, 'go we
blyve;' 1605
And goodly on Criseyde she biheld,
And seyde, 'Joves lat him never thryve,
That dooth yow harm, and bringe him
sone of lyve!
And yeve me sorwe, but he shal it rewe,
If that I may, and alle folk be trewe.' 1610

231. 'Tel thou thy neces cas,' quod Dei-
phebus
To Pandarus, 'for thou canst best it
telle.'—
'My lordes and my ladyes, it stant thus;
What sholde I lenger,' quod he, 'do yow
dwelle?'
He rong hem out a proces lyk a belle, 1615
Up-on hir fo, that highte Poliphete,
So hēynous, that men mighte on it speke

232. Answerde of this ech worse of
than other,
And Poliphete they gonnen thus
warren,
'An-honged be he, were he
brother
And so he shal not varie
What shal he tarien
Pleynt
To be
m

233. Spak than Eleyne, and seyde, 'Pan-
darus, 1635
Woot ought my lord, my brother, this
matere,
I mene, Ector? or woot it Troilus?'
He seyde, 'ye, but wole ye now me here?
Me thinketh this, sith Troilus is here,
It were good, if that ye wolde assente, 1630
She tolde hir-self him al this, or she wente.

234. For he wole have the more hir grief
at herte,
By cause, lo, that she a lady is;
And, by your leve, I wol but right in
starte,
And do yow wite, and that anon, y-
wis, 1635
If that he slepe, or wole ought here of
this.'
And in he lepte, and seyde him in his
ere,
'God have thy soule, y-brought have I
thy here!'

235. To smylen of this gan the Troilus,
And Pandarus, with-oute rekeninge, 1640
Out wente anon t' Eleyne and Deiphebus,
And seyde hem, 'so there be no taryinge,
Ne more prece, he wol wel that ye bringe
Criseyde, my lady, that is here;
And as he may enduren, he wole here. 1645

236. But wel ye woot, the channbre is
but lyte,
And fewe folk may lightly make it warm;
Now loketh ye, (for I wol have no wyte,
To bringe in prece that mighte doon him
harm
Or him disceen, for my bettre arm), 1650
Wher it be bet she byde til eft-sones;
Now loketh ye, that knowen what to
doon is.

237. I say for me, best is, as I can knowe,
That no wight in ne wente but ye tweye,
But it were I, for I can, in a throwe, 1655
Reberce hir cas, unlyk that she can seye;
And after this, she may him ones preye
To ben good lord, in short, and take hir
leve;
This may not muchel of his ceo him reve.

238. And eek, for she is straunge, he wol
forbere 1660
His ese, which that him thar nought for
yow;
Eek other thing, that toucheth not to
here,
He wol me telle, I woot it wel right now,
That secret is, and for the tounes prow.'
And they, that no-thing knewe of this
entente, 1665
With-oute more, to Troilus in they wente.

239. Eleyne in al hir goodly softe wyse,
Gan him saluwe, and womanly to pleye,
And seyde, 'ywia, ye mooste alweyes aryse!
Now sayre brother, beth al hool, I preye!'
And gan hir arm right over his sholder
leye, 1670
And him with al hir wit to recomforte;
As she best coude, she gan him to dis-
porte.

240. So after this quod she, 'we yow
biseke,
My dere brother, Deiphebus, and I, 1675
For love of god, and so doth Pandare eke,
To been good lord and freend, right
hertely,
Un-to Criseyde, which that certainly
Receyveth wrong, as woot wel here Pan-
dare,
That can hir cas wel bet than I declare.'

241. This Pandarus gan newe his tungen
affyle, 1680
And al hir cas rehrece, and that anon;
Whan it was seyde, sone after, in a whyle,
Quod Troilus, 'as sone as I may goon,
I wol right fayn with al my might ben
oon, 1685
Have god my tronthe, hir cause to sustene.'
'Good thrift have ye,' quod Eleyne the
quene.

242. Quod Pandarus, 'and it your wille be,
That she may take hir leve, er that she
go?'
'Or elles god for-bede,' the quod he, 1690
'If that she vouche sauf for to do so.'
And with that word quod Troilus, 'ye two,
Deiphebus, and my suster leef and dere,
To yow have I to speke of o matere,

243. To been avysed by your reed the
bette':— 1695
And fond, as hap was, at his beddes heed,
The copie of a tretis and a lettre,
That Ector hadde him sent to axen reed,
If swich a man was worthy to ben deed,
Woot I nought who; but, in a grisly wyse
He preyede hem anon on it avyse. 1701

244. Deiphebus gan this lettre to unfolde
In earnest greet; so dide Eleyne the quene;
And rominge outward, fast it gan biholde,
Downward a steyre, in-to an herber
grene. 1705

This ilke thing they redden hem bi-twene;
And largely, the mountaunce of an houre,
They gonne on it to reden and to poure.

245. Now lat hem rede, and turne we
anon

To Pandarus, that gan ful faste pryde 1710
That al was wel, and out he gan to goon
In-to the grete chambre, and that in hye,
And seyde, 'god save al this companye!
Com, nece myn; my lady quene Eleyne
Abydeth yow, and eek my lordes tweyne.

246. Rys, take with yow your nece An-
tigone, 1716

Or whom yow list, or no fors, hardily;
The lasse prees, the bet; com forth with
me,

And loke that ye thonke humbly 1719
Hem alle three, and, whan ye may goodly
Your tyme y-see, taketh of hem your leve,
Lest we to longe his restes him bireve.'

247. Al innocent of Pandarus entente,
Quod tho Criseyde, 'go we, uncle dere';
And arm in arm inward with him she
wente, 1725

Avysed wel hir wordes and hir chere;
And Pandarus, in earnestful manere,
Seyde, 'alle folk, for goddes love, I preye,
Stinteth right here, and softly yow pleye.

248. Aviseth yow what folk ben here
with-inne, 1730
And in what plyt oon is, god him a-
mende!

And inward thus ful softly biginne;
Neece, I conjure and heighly yow defende,
On his half, which that sowle us alle
sende,

And in the vertue of coronnes tweyne,
Slee nought this man, that hath for yow
this payne! 1736

249. Fy on the devel! thank which oon
he is,

And in what plyt he lyth; com of anon;
Thanke al swich taried tyd, but lost it nis!
That wol ye bothe seyn, whan ye ben oon.
Secoundelich, ther yet devyneth noon 1741
Up-on yow two; com of now, if ye conne;
Whyl folk is blent, lo, al the tyme is
wonne!

250. In titering, and pursuite, and de-
layes,

The folk devyne at wagginge of a stree;
And though ye wolde han after merye
dayes, 1746

Than dar ye nought, and why? for she,
and she

Spak swich a word; thus loked he, and he;
Lest tyme I loste, I dar not with yow dele;
Com of therfore, and bringeth him to hele.'

251. But now to yow, ye lovers that ben
here, 1751

Was Troilus nought in a carkedort,
That lay, and mighte whispringe of hem
here,

And thoughte, 'O lord, right now renneth
my sort

Fully to dye, or han anon comfort'; 1755
And was the firste tyme he shulde be
preye

Of love; O mighty god, what shal he say

Explicit Secundus Liber.

BOOK III.

Incipit Prohemium Tercii Libri.

1. O blisful light, of whiche the beames
clare

Adorneth al the thridde hevne faire !
O sonnes leef, O Joves doughter dera,
Pleasance of love, O goodly debonaire,
In gentil hertes ay redy to repaire ! 5
O verray cause of hale and of gladnesse,
Y-hailed be thy might and thy goodnesse !

2. In hevne and helle, in erthe and
salte see

Is felt thy might, if that I wel descerne ;
As man, brid, best, fish, herbe and grene
tree 10

Thee fele in tymes with vapour sterna.
God loveth, and to love wol nought werne ;
And in this world no lyves creatura,
With-outen love, is worth, or may endure.

3. Ye Joves first to thilke effectes glade, 15
Thorough which that thinges liven alle
and be,

Comeveden, and amorous þim made
On mortal thing, and as yow list, ay ye
Yeve him in love ese or adversitee ;
And in a thousand formes donn him sente
For love in erthe, and whom yow liste,
he hente. 21

4. Ye fierse Mars apeysen of his ire,
And, as yow list, ye maken hertes digne ;
Algate, hem that ye wol sette a-fyre,
They dreden shame, and vices they re-
signe ; 25

Ye do hem corteys be, freshe and benigne,
And hys or lowe, after a wight entendeth ;
The joyes that he hath, your might him
sendeth.

5. Ye holden regne and hons in unitee ;
Ye soothfast cause of frendship been also ;
Ye knowe al thilke covered qualitee 31
Of thinges which that folk on wondren so,

Whan they can not construe how it may jo,
She loveth him, or why he loveth here ;
As why this fish, and nought that, cometh
to were. 35

6. Ye folk a lawe han set in universa,
And this knowe I by hem that loveres be,
That who-so stryveth with yow hath the
werse.

Now, lady bright, for thy benignitee,
At reverence of hem that serven thee, 40
Whos clerk I am, so techeth me devyse
Som joye of that is felt in thy servyse.

7. Ye in my naked herte sentement
Inhelde, and do me shewe of thy sweet-
nesse.—

Calliope, thy vois be now present, 45
For now is nede ; sestow not my destresse,
How I mot telle anon-right the gladnesse
Of Troilus, to Venus heryinge ?
To which gladnes, who nede hath, god
him brings !

Explicit prohemium Tercii Libri.

Incipit Liber Tercius.

8. Lat al this mene whyle Troilus, 50
Recordinge his lessoun in this manere,
'Ma fey!' thought he, 'thus wole I seye
and thus ;

Thus wole I playne un-to my lady dera,
That word is good, and this shal be my
chere ;

This nil I not foryeten in no wyse.' 55
God leve him werken as he gan devyse.

9. And lord, so that his herte gan to
quappe,
Heringe hir come, and shorte for to syke !
And Pandarus, that ladde hir by the
lappe,

Com neer, and gan in at the curtin pyke,
And seyde, 'god do bote on alle syke!' 61
See, who is here yow comen to visyte ;
Lo, here is she that is your deeth to wyte.'

10. Ther-with it semed as he wepte almost ;

'A ha,' quod Troilus so rewfully, 65

'Wher me be wo, O mighty god, thou wost !

Who is al there ? I see nought trewely.'

'Sire,' quod Criseyde, 'it is Pandare and I.'

'Ye, swete herte ? alas, I may nought ryse To knele, and do yow honour in som wyse.' 70

11 And dressedo him upward, and sho right tho

Gan bothe here hondes softo upon him leye,

'O, for the love of god, do ye not so To me,' quod she, 'ey ! what is this to seye ?

Sire, come am I to yow for causes tweye ; First, yow to thonke, and of your lordshipe eke 76

Continuance I wolde yow biseke.'

12. This Troilus, that herde his lady preye

Of lordship him, wex neither quik ne deed,

Ne mighte a word for shame to it seye, 80

Al-though men sholde smyten of his heed.

But lord, so he wex sodeinliche reed,

And sire, his lesson, that he wende conne,

To preyen hir, is thurgh his wit y-ronne.

13. Criseyde al this aspyede wel y-nough, For she was wys, and lovede him neverthe-lasse, 86

Al nere he malapert, or made it tough,

Or was to bold, to singe a fool a masse.

But whan his shame gan somewhat to passe,

His resons, as I may my rymes holde, 90

I yow wol telle, as techen bokes olde.

14. In chaunged vois, right for his verrey drede,

Which vois eek quook, and ther-to his manere

Goodly abayst, and now his hewes rede,

Now pale, un-to Criseyde, his lady dere, 95

With look down cast and humble yolden chere,

Lo, th'alderfirste word that him asterte Was, twyes, 'mercy, mercy, swete herte !'

15. And stinte a whyl, and whan he mighte out-bringe, 99

The nexte word was, 'god wot, for I have, As feythfully as I have had konninge,

Ben youres, also god my sowle save ;

And shal, til that I, woful wight, be grave.

And though I dar ne can un-to yow pleyne,

Y-wis, I suffre nought the lasse peyno. 105

16. Thus muche as now, O wommanliche wyf,

I may out-bringe, and if this yow displese, That shal I wreke upon myn owne lyf

Right sone, I trowe, and doon your herte an ese, 109

If with my deeth your herte I may apese. But sin that ye han herd me som-what seye,

Now recche I never how sone that I deye.'

17 Ther-with his manly sorwe to biholde, It mighte han maad an herte of stoon to rewe ; 114

And Pandare weep as he to watre wolde, And poked ever his nece newe and newe.

And seyde, 'wo bigon ben hertes trewe ! For love of god, make of this thing an ende,

Or slee us bothe at ones, er that ye wende.'

18. 'I ? what ?' quod she, 'by god and by my trouthe, 120

I noot nought what ye wilne that I seye.'

'I ? what ?' quod he, 'that ye han on him routhe,

For goddes love, and doth him nought to deye.'

'Now thanne thus,' quod she, 'I wolde him preye

To tello me the syn of his entente ; 125

Yet wiste I never of the mente.'

19. 'What herte dere ?'

Quod Troi

That, wit

Ye wolde

And thanne agreeth that I may ben he,
With-oute branche of vyce in any wyse,
In trouthe alwey to doon yow my servyse

20. As to my lady right and chief resort,
With al my wit and al my diligence, 135
And I to han, right as yow list, comfort,
Under your yerde, egal to myn offence,
As deeth, if that I breke your defence;
And that ye deigne me so muche honoure,
Me to comanden ought in any houre. 140

21. And I to been your varray humble
trews,
Secret, and in my paynes patient,
And ever-mo desire freshly newe,
To serven, and been ty-lyke ay diligent,
And, with good herte, al holly your
talent 145
Receyven wel, how sore that me smerte,
Lo, this mene I, myn owne swete herte.'

22. Quod Pandarus, 'lo, here an hard
request,
And resonable, a lady for to werne!
Now, nece myn, by natal Joves fest, 150
Were I a god, ye sholde starve as yerne,
That heren wel, this man wol no-thing
yerne
But your honour, and seen him almost
starve,
And been so looth to suffren him yow
serve.'

23. With that she gan hir eyen on him
caste 155
Ful esily, and ful debonairly,
Avyng hir, and hyed not to faste
With never a word, but seyde him softly,
'Myn honour sauf, I wol wel trewely,
And in swich forme as he can now
devyse, 160
Receyven him fully to my servyse,

24. Biseching him, for goddes love, that
he
Wolde, in honour of trouthe and gentil-
esse,
As I wel mene, eek mene wel to me, 164
And myn honour, with wit and besinesse,
Ay kepe; and if I may don him gladnesse,

From hennes-forth, y-wis, I nil not feyne
Now beeth al hool, no lenger ye ne pleyne.

25. But natheles, this warne I yow,
quod she,
'A kinges sone al-though ye be, y-wis, 170
Ye shul na-more have soverainetee
Of me in love, than right in that cas is;
Ne I nil forbere, if that ye doon a-mis,
To wrathen yow; and whyl that ye me
serve,
Cheryen yow right after ye deserve. 175

26. And shortly, derð herte and al my
knight,
Beth glad, and draweth yow to lustinesse,
And I shal trewely, with al my might,
Your bittre tornen al in-to swetnesse; 179
If I be she that may yow do gladnesse,
For every wo ye shal recovers a blisse';
And him in armes took, and gan him

27. Fil Pandarus on knees, and up his
yēn
To hevne threw, and held his bondes
hye,
'Immortal god!' quod he, 'that mayst
nought dyen, 185
Cupide I mene, of this mayst glorifye;
And Venus, thou mayst make melodye,
With-uten hond, me semeth that in
towne,
For this merveyle, I here ech belle sowne.

28. But he! no more as now of this
matere, 190
For-why this folk wol comen up anon,
That han the lettre red: lo, I ham here.
But I conjure thee, Criseyde, and oon,
And two, thou Troilus, whan thou mayst
goon,
That at myn hous ye been at my warn-
inge, 195
For I ful wel shal shape your cominge;

29. And eseth ther your hertes right
y-nough;
And lat see which of yow shal bere the
To speke of love a-right!' ther-with he
lough,

'For ther have ye a layser for to telle.' 200
 Quod Troilus, 'how longe shal I dwelle
 Er this be doon?' Quod he, 'whan thou
 mayst ryse,
 This thing shal be right as I yow devyse.'

30. With that Eleyne and also Deiphebus
 Tho comen upward, right at the steyres
 ende; 205
 And lord, so than gan grone Troilus,
 His brother and his suster for to blende.
 Quod Pandarus, 'it tyme is that we
 wende;
 Tak, nece myn, your leve at alle three,
 And lat hem speke, and cometh forth
 with me.' 210

31. She took hir leve at hem ful thriftily,
 As she wel coude, and they hir reverence
 Un-to the fulle diden hardely,
 And spoken wonder wel, in hir absence,
 Of hir, in preysing of hir excellence, 215
 Hir governaunce, hir wit; and hir man-
 ere
 Commendeden, it joye was to here.

32. Now lat hir wende un-to hir owne
 place,
 And torne we to Troilus a-yein, 219
 That gan ful lightly of the lettre passe
 That Deiphebus hadde in the gardin seyn.
 And of Eleyne and him he wolde fayn
 Delivered been, and seyde, that him leste
 To slepe, and after tales have reste.

33. Eleyne him kiste, and took hir leve
 blyve, 225
 Deiphebus eek, and hoom wente every
 wight;
 And Pandarus, as faste as he may dryve,
 To Troilus tho com, as lyne right;
 And on a paillet, al that glade night,
 By Troilus he lay, with mery chere, 230
 To tale; and wel was hem they were
 y-fere.

34. Whan every wight was voided but
 they two,
 And alle the dores were faste y-shette,
 To telle in short, with-oute wordes mo,
 This Pandarus, with-uten any lette, 235
 Up roos, and on his beddes syde him sette,

And gan to speken in a sobre wyse
 To Troilus, as I shal yow devyse.

35. 'Myn alderlevest lord, and brother
 dera,
 God woot, and thou, that it sat me so
 sore, 240
 When I thee saw so languissching to-yere,
 For love, of which thy wo wex alwey
 more;
 That I, with al my might and al my lore,
 Hath ever sithen doon my businessse
 To bringe thee to joye out of distresse;

36. And have it brought to swich plyt as
 thou wost, 246
 So that, thorough me, thou stondest now
 in weye
 To fare wel, I seye it for no bost,
 And wostow why? for shame it is to seye,
 For thee have I bigonne a gamen pleye
 Which that I never doon shal eft for
 other, 251
 Al-though he were a thousand fold my
 brother.

37. That is to seye, for thee am I bicomen,
 Bitwixen game and earnest, swich a mene
 As maken wommen un-to men to comen;
 Al sey I naught, thou wost wel what I
 mene. 256
 For thee have I my nece, of vyces clene,
 So fully maad thy gentillesse triste,
 That al shal been right as thy-selve liste.

38. But god, that al wot, take I to wit-
 nesse, 261
 That never I this for covcittyse wroughte,
 But only for to abregge that distresse,
 For which wel nygh thou deydest, as me
 thoughte.
 But gode brother, do now as thee ought
 For goddes love, and keep hir out of
 blame, 266
 Sin thou art wys, and save alwey hir
 name.

39. For wote I as yet
 of hir
 Among
 For the
 That ev

But wo is me, that I, that cause al this,
May thenken that she is my nece dere,
And I hir eem, and traytor eek y-fere !

40. And were it wist that I, through myn
engyn,
Hadde in my nece y-put this fantasye, 275
To do thy lust, and hoodly to be thyn,
Why, al the world up-on it wolde crye,
And seye, that I the worste trecherye
Dide in this cas, that ever was bigonne,
And she for-lost, and thou right nought
y-wonne. 280

41. Whar-fere, er I wol farther goon a
pee,
Yet aft I thee biseche and fully seye,
That privete go with us in this cas,
That is to seye, that thou us never wreye;
And be nought wrooth, though I thee
ofte preye 285
To holden secree swich an heigh matere;
For skilful is, thou wost wel, my preyere.

42. And think what we ther hath bitid
er this,
For makinge of avauntes, as men rede;
And what mischaunce in this world yet
ther is, 290
Pro day to day, right for that wikked
dede;
For which these wyse clerkes that ben
dede
Han ever yet proverbed to us yonge,
That "firste vertu is to kepe tonge."

43. And, nere it that I wilne as now
t'abregge 295
Diffusioun of speche, I coude almost
A thousand olde stories thee alegge
Of women lost, thorough fals and folis
best;
Proverbes canst thy-self y-nowe, and wost,
Ayns that vyce, for to been a labbe, 300
Al seyde men sooth as often as they gabbe.

44. O tonge, alas ! so often here-biforn
Hastow made many a lady bright of hewe
seyd, "welaway ! the day that I was born !"
And many a maydes sorwes for to newe ;
And, for the more part, al is untrewes 306

That men of yelde, and it were brought
to prove ;
Of kinde non avauntour is to leve.

45. Avauntour and a lyere, al is on ; 309
As thus : I pose, a womman graunte me
Hir love, and seyth that other wol she non,
And I am sworn to holden it secree,
And after I go telle it two or three ;
Y-wis, I am avauntour at the laste,
And lyere, for I breke my biheste. 315

46. Now loke thanne, if they be nought
to blame,
Swich maner folk ; what shal I clepe
hem, what,
That hem avaunte of wommen, and by
name,
That never yet bihighte hem this ne that,
Ne knewe hem more than myn olde hat ?
No wonder is, so god me sende hale, 321
Though women drede with us men to dela.

47. I say not this for no mistrust of yow,
Ne for no wys man, but for folis nyce,
And for the harm that in the world is
now, 325
As wel for foly ofte as for malysce ;
For wel wot I, in wyse folk, that vyce
No womman drat, if she be wel avysed ;
For wyse ben by folis harm chastysed.

48. But now to purpos ; leve brother dere,
Have al this thing that I have seyde in
mynde, 331
And keep thee clos, and be now of good
chere,
For at thy day thou shalt me trewe finde.
I shal thy proces sette in swich a kinde,
And god to-forn, that it shall thee suffyse,
For it shal been right as thou wolt de-
vyse. 336

49. For wel I woot, thou menest wel,
parde ;
Therefore I dar this fully undertake.
Thou wost eek what thy lady graunted
thee,
And day is set, the chartres up to make.
Have now good night, I may no lenger
wake ; 341

And bid for me, sin thou art now in blisse,
That god me sende deeth or sone lisse.'

50. Who mighte telle half the joye or feste
Which that the sowle of Troilus tho felte,
Heringe th'effect of Pandarus biheste? 346
His olde wo, that made his herte swelte,
Gan tho for joye wasten and to-melte,
And al the richesse of his sykes sore
At ones fledde, he felte of hem no more.

51. But right so as these holtes and these
hayes, 351
That han in winter dede been and dreye,
Revesten hem in grene, whan that May is,
Whan every lusty lyketh best to pleye:
Right in that selve wyse, sooth to seye, 355
Wex sodeynliche his herte ful of joye,
That gladder was ther never man in Troye.

52. And gan his look on Pandarus up
caste
Ful sobrelly, and frendly for to see, 359
And seyde, 'freend, in Aprille the laste,
As wel thou wost, if it remembre thee,
How neigh the deeth for wo thou founde
me;
And how thou didest al thy businessse
To knowe of me the cause of my distresse.

53. Thou wost how longe I it for-bar to
seye 365
To thee, that art the man that I best
triste;
And peril was it noon to thee by-wreye,
That wiste I wel; but tel me, if thee liste,
Sith I so looth was that thy-self it wiste,
How dorste I mo tellen of this matere, 370
That quake now, and no wight may us
here?

54. But natheles, by that god I thee swere,
That, as him list, may al this world
governe,
And, if I lye, Achilles with his spere
Myn herte cleve, al were my lyf eterne,
As I am mortal, if I late or yerne 376
Wolde it biwreye, or dorste, or sholde
conne,
For al the good that god made under
sonne;

55. That rather deye I wolde, and de-
termyne,

As thinketh me, now stokked in presoun,
In wrecchednesse, in filthe, and in ver-
myne, 381

Caytif to cruel king Agamenoun;
And this, in alle the temples of this
toun,

Upon the goddes alle, I wol thee swere,
To-morwe day, if that thee lyketh here. 385

56. And that thou hast so muche y-doon
for me,

That I ne may it never-more deserve,
This knowe I wel, al mighte I now for
thee

A thousand tymes on a morwen starve,
I can no more, but that I wol thee serve
Right as thy sclave, whider-so thou
wende, 391

For ever-more, un-to my lyves ende!

57. But here, with al myn herte, I thee
biseche,

That never in me thou deme swich folye
As I shal seyn; me thoughte, by thy
speche, 395

That this, which thou me dost for com-
panye,

I sholde wene it were a bauderye;
I am nought wood, al-if I lewed be;
It is not so, that woot I wel, pardee.

58. But he that goth, for gold or for
richesse, 400

On swich message, calle him what thee
list;

And this that thou dost, calle it gentillesse,
Compassioun, and felawship, and trist;
Departe it so, for wyde-where is wist
How that there is dyversitee requered.
Bitwixen thinges lyke, as I have lered.

59. And, that thou knowe I then
nought re-

That this is no more jape,

I have my name as Cassandre; 405

Be she

Tel me

To ha

60. But sin that thou hast don me this
servyse, 414

My lyf to save, and for noon hope of mede,
So, for the love of god, this grete empryse
Parforme it out; for now is mooste nede.
For high and low, with-outen any drede,
I wol alwey thyne hestes alle kepe;
Have now good night, and lat us bothe
slepe.' 420

61. Thus held him ech with other wel
apayed,
That al the world ne mighte it bet
amende;
And, on the morwe, whan they were
arayed,
Ech to his owene nedes gan entende.
But Troilus, though as the fyr he brende
For sharp desyr of hope and of plesaunce,
He not for-gat his gode governaunce. 427

62. But in him-self with manhod gan
restreyne
Ech rakel dede and ech unbrydled chere,
That alle tho that liven, sooth to seyne,
Ne sholde han wist, by word or by manere,
What that he mente, as touching this
matere. 432
From every wight as far as is the cloude
He was, so wel dissimulen he coude.

63. And al the whyl which that I yow
devyse, 435
This was his lyf; with al his fulle might,
By day he was in Martes high servyse,
This is to seyn, in armes as a knight;
And for the more part, the longe night
He lay, and thoughte how that he mighte
serve 440
His lady best, hir thank for to deserve.

64. Nil I nought swere, al-though he lay
softe,
That in his thought he nas sumwhat
dissed,
Ne that he tornede on his pilwes ofte,
And wolde of that him missed han ben
sased; 445
But in swich cas man is nought alwey
plesed,
For ought I wot, no more than was he;
That can I deme of possibilitee.

65. But certeyn is, to purpos for to go,
That in this whyle, as writen is in
geste, 450
He say his lady som-tyme; and also
She with him spak, whan that she dorste
or leste,
And by hir bothe avys, as was the beste,
Apoynteden ful warly in this nede,
So as they dorste, how they wolde pro-
ceede. 455

66. But it was spoken in so short a wyse,
In swich awayt alwey, and in swich fere,
Lest any wyght divynen or devyse
Wolde of hem two, or to it leye an ere,
That al this world so leef to hem ne
were 460
As that Cupido wolde hem grace sende
To maken of hir speche aright an ende.

67. But thilke lital that they speke or
wroughte,
His wyse goost took ay of al swich hede,
It semed hir, he wiste that she thoughte
With-outen word, so that it was no nede
To bidde him ought to done, or ought
forbode; 467
For which she thoughte that love, al
come it late,
Of alle joye hadde opned hir the yate.

68. And shortly of this proces for to
pace, 470
So wel his werk and wordes he bisette,
That he so ful stode in his lady grace,
That twenty thousand tymes, or she lette,
She thonked god she ever with him
mette;
So coude he him governe in swich ser-
vyse, 475
That al the world ne mighte it bet
devyse.

69. For-why she fond him so discreet in al.
So secret, and of swich obeisaunce,
That wel she felte he was to hir a wal
Of steel, and sheld from every disple-
saunce; 480
That, to ben in his gode governaunce,
So wys he was, she was no more aferd,
I mene, as fer as oughte ben requered.

70. And Pandarus, to quike alwey the fyr,
Was ever y-lyke prest and diligent; 485
To ese his frend was set al his desyr.
He shoof ay on, he to and fro was sent;
He lettres bar whan Troilus was absent.
That never man, as in his freendes nede,
Ne bar him bet than he, with-outen
drede. 490

71. But now, paraunter, som man wayten
wolde
That every word, or sonde, or look, or
chere
Of Troilus that I rehersen sholde,
In al this whyle, un-to his lady dere;
I trowe it were a long thing for to
here; 495
Or of what wight that stant in swich dis-
joynte,
His wordes alle, or every look, to poynte.

72. For sothe, I have not herd it doon er
this,
In storye noon, ne no man here, I wene;
And though I wolde I coude not, y-wis;
For ther was som epistel hem bitwene, 501
That wolde, as seyth myn auctor, wel
contene
Neigh half this book, of which him list
not wryte;
How sholde I thanne a lyne of it endyte?

73. But to the grete effect: than sey I
thus, 505
That stonding in concord and in quiete
Thise ilke two, Criseyde and Troilus,
As I have told, and in this tyme swete,
Save only often mighte they not mete,
Ne layser have hir speches to fulfelle, 510
That it befel right as I shal yow telle,

74. That Pandarus, that ever dide his
might
Right for the fyn that I shal speke of
here,
As for to bringe to his hous som night
His faire nece, and Troilus y-fore, 515
Wher-as at leyser al this heigh matere,
Touching hir love, were at the fulle up-
bounde,
Hadde out of doute a tyme to it founde.

75. For he with gret deliberacioun
Hadde every thing that her-to mighte
avayle 520
Forn-cast, and put in execucioun,
And neither laft for cost ne for travayle;
Come if hem lest, hem sholde no-thing
fayle;
And for to been in ought espyed there,
That, wiste he wel, an impossible were.

76. Dredeless, it cleer was in the wind
Of every pye and every lette-game; 527
Now al is wel, for al the world is blind
In this matere, bothe fremed and tame.
This timber is al redy up to frame; 530
Us lakketh nought but that we witen
wolde
A certein houre, in whiche she comen
sholde.

77. And Troilus, that al this purveyaunce
Knew at the fulle, and waytede on it ay,
Hadde here-up-on eek made gret orde-
naunce, 535
And founde his cause, and ther-to his
aray,
If that he were missed, night or day,
Ther-whyte he was aboute this servyse,
That he was goon to doon his sacrificyse,

78. And moste at swich a temple alone
wake, 540
Answered of Appollo for to be;
And first, to seen the holy laurer quake,
Er that Appollo spak out of the trec,
To telle him next whan Grekes sholden
flee;
And forthy lette him no man, god for-
bede, 545
But preye Appollo helpen in this nede.

79. Now is ther litel more for to done,
But Pandare up, and shortly for to seyne,
Right sone upon the chaunging of the
mone,
Whan lightles is the world a night or
tweyne, 550
And that tyme for to
reyne,
He streig
went
Ye han

80. Whan he was come, he gan anon to
pleye

As he was wont, and of him-self to jape;
And fynally, he swor and gan hir seye, 556
By this and that, she sholde him not
escape,

Ne lenger doom him after hir to gape;
But certeynly she moste, by hir leve,
Come soupen in his hous with him at
eve. 560

81. At whiche she lough, and gan hir
faste excuse,
And seyde, 'it rayneth; lo, how sholde
I goon?'

'Let be,' quod he, 'ne stond not thus to
muse;
This moot be doon, ye shal be ther anon.'
So at the laste her-of they felle at oon, 565
Or elles, softe he swor hir in hir ere,
He nolde never come ther she were.

82. Some after this, to him she gan to
rowne,
And asked him if Troilus were there?
He swor hir, 'nay, for he was out of
towne,' 570

And seyde, 'necce, I pose that he were,
Yow þthurfte never have the more fere,
For rather than men mighte him ther
aspye,
Me were lever a thousand-fold to dye.'

83. Nought list myn auctor fully to
declare 575
What that she thoughte whan he seyde
so,

That Troilus was out of town y-fare,
As if he seyde ther-of sooth or no;
But that, with-outeawayt, with him to go,
She graunted him, sith he hir that bi-
soughte, 580
And, as his nece, obeyed as hir oughte

84. But natheless, yet gan she him bi-
seche,
Although with him to goon it was no fere,
For to be war of goosish peples speche,
That dremen thinges whiche that never
were, 585
And wel avyse him whom he broughte
there;

And seyde him, 'eem, sin I mot on yow
triste,
Loke al be wel, and do now as yow liste.'

85. He swor hir, 'yis, by stokkes and by
stones,

And by the goddes that in hevene dwelle,
Or elles were him lever, soule and bones,
With Pinto king as depe been in helle 592
As Tantalus'' What sholde I more telle?
Whan al was wel, he roos and took his
leve,
And she to souper com, whan it was eve,

86. With a certayn of hir owene men, 596
And with hir faire nece Antigone,
And others of hir wommen nyne or ten;
But who was glad now, who, as trowe ye,
But Troilus, that stood and mighte it
see 600

Thurgh-out a litel windowe in a stewe,
Ther he bi-set, sin midnight, was in
mewe,

87. Unwist of every wight but of Pandaro?
But to the poynt; now whan she was
y-come

With alle joye, and alle frendes fare, 605
Hir eem anon in armes hath hir nome,
And after to the souper, alle and some,
Whan tyme was, ful softe they hem sette;
God wot, ther was no deyntee for to fette.

88. And after souper gonne they to
ryse, 610

At ese wel, with hertes fresshe and glade,
And wel was him that coude best devyse
To lyken hir, or that hir laughen made.
He song, she pleyde; he tolde tale of
Wade.

But at the laste, as every thing hath
ende, 615
She took hir leve, and nedes wolde wende.

89. But O, Fortune, excentrice of wierdes,
O influences of this hevenes hye!
Soth is, that, under god, ye ben our
hierdes,

Though to us bestes been the causes
wrye. 620

This mene I now, for she gan hoomward
hye,

But execut was al bisyde hir leve,
At the goddes wil ; for which she moste
bleve.

90. The bente mone with hir hornes pale,
Saturne, and Jove, in Cancro joyned
were, 625

That swich a rayn from hevne gan avale,
That every maner womman that was there
Hadde of that smoky reyn a verray fere ;
At which Pandare tho lough, and seyde
thenne,

'Now were it tyme a lady to go henne! 630

91. But goode nece, if I mighte ever plesse
Yow any-thing, than prey I yow,' quod he,
'To doon myn herte as now so greet an
ese

As for to dwelle here al this night with me,
For-why this is your owene hous, pardee.
For, by my trouthe, I sey it nought a-
game, 636

To wende as now, it were to me a shame.'

92. Criseyde, whiche that coude as muche
good

As half a world, tok hede of his preyere ;
And sin it ron, and al was on a flood, 640
She thoughte, as good chep may I dwellen
here,

And graunte it gladly with a freendes
chere,

And have a thank, as grucche and thanne
abyde ;

For hoom to goon it may nought wel
bityde.

93. 'I wol,' quod she, 'myn uncle leef
and dere, 645

Sin that yow list, it skile is to be so ;
I am right glad with yow to dwellen here ;
I seyde but a-game, I wolde go.'

'Y-wis, graunt mercy, nece!' quod he
tho ; 649

'Were it a game or no, soth for to telle,
Now am I glad, sin that yow list to dwelle.'

94. Thus al is wel ; but tho bigan aright
The newe joye, and al the feste agayn ;
But Pandarus, if goodly hadde he might,
He wolde han hyed hir to bedde fayn, 655
And seyde, 'lord, this is an huge rayn !

This were a weder for to slepen inne ;
And that I rede us sone to biginne.

95. And nece, woot ye wher I wol yow
leye, 659

For that we shul not liggen fer asonder,
And for ye neither shullen, dar I seye,
Heren noise of raynes nor of thonder ?
By god, right in my lyte closet yonder.
And I wol in that outer hous allone
Be wardeyn of your wommen everichone.

96. And in this middel chaumbre that ye
see 666

Shul youre wommen slepen wel and softe ;
And ther I seyde shal your-selve be ;
And if ye liggen wel to-night, com ofte,
And careth not what weder is on-lofte. 670
The wyn anon, and whan so that yow
leste,

So go we slepe, I trowe it be the beste.'

97. Ther nis no more, but here-after sone,
The voyde dronke, and travers drawe
anon,

Gan every wight, that hadde nought to
done 675

More in that place, out of the chaumber
gon.

And ever-mo so sternelich it ron,
And blew ther-with so wonderliche loude.
That wel neigh no man heren other coude.

98. The Pandarus, hir eem, right as him
oughte, 680

With women swiche as were hir most
aboute,

Ful glad un-to hir beddes syde hir
broughte,

And took his leve, and gan ful lowe loute,
And seyde, 'here at this closet-dore with-
oute,

Right over-thwart, your wommen liggen
alle, 685

That, whom yow liste of hem, ye may
here calle.'

99. So whan the closet
leyd, 690

And alle
de-
nau'

A-bedde

There was no more to skippen nor to
trance, 690

But boden go to bedde, with mischaunce,
If any wight was steringe any-where,
And late hem slepe that a-bedde were.

100. But Pandarus, that wel coude eche
a del

The olde daunce, and every poynt ther-
inne, 695

Whan that he sey that alle thing was wel,
He thoughte he wolde up-on his werk
biginne,

And gan the stowe-dors al softe un-pinne,
And stille as stoon, with-oute lenger
lette,

By Troilus a-doun right he him sette. 700

101. And, shortly to the poynt right for
to gon,

Of al this werk he tolde him word and
ende,

And seyde, 'make thee redy right anon,
For thou shalt in-to hevene blisse wende.'

'Now blisful Venus, thou me grace
sende,' 705

Quod Troilus, 'for never yet no nede
hadde I er now, ne halvendel the drede.'

102. Quod Pandarus, 'ne drede thee never
a del,

For it shal been right as thou wilt desyre;
So thryve I, this night shal I make it
wel, 710

Or casten al the gruwel in the fyre.'

'Yit blisful Venus, this night thou me
enspyre,'

Quod Troilus, 'as wis as I thee serve,
And ever bet and bet shal, til I sterve.

103. And if I hadde, O Venus ful of
mirthe, 715

Aspectes badde of Mars or of Saturne,
Or thou combust or let were in my birthe,

Thy fader pray al thilke harm disturne
Of grace, and that I glad ayein may
turne,

For love of him thou lovedest in the
shawe, 720

I mene Adoon, that with the boor was
slawe.

104. O Jove oek, for the love of faire
Europe,

The whiche in forme of hole away thou
fette;

Now help, O Mars, thou with thy bloody
cope,

For love of Cipris, thou me nought ne
lette; 725

O Phebus, thenk whan Dane hir-solven
shette

Under the bark, and laurer wax for drede,
Yet for hir love, O help now at this nede!

105. Mercurie, for the love of Hiersé eke,
For which Pallas was with Aglauros

wrooth, 730

Now help, and oek Diane, I thee biseke,
That this viage be not to thee looth.

O fatal sustren, which, er any clooth
Me shapen was, my destenè me sponne,

So helpeth to this werk that is bi-gonne!

106. Quod Pandarus, 'thou wrecched
mouses herte, 735

Art thou agast so that she wol thee lyte?
Why, don this furred cloke up-on thy
sherte,

And folowe me, for I wol han the wyte,
But byd, and lat me go bifore a lyte.' 740

And with that word he gan un-do a
trappe,

And Troilus he broughte in by the lappe.

107. The sterne wind so loude gan to
route

That no wight other noyse mighte here,
And they that layen at the dore with-
oute, 745

Ful sikerly they slepten alle y-fere;

And Pandarus, with a ful sobre chere,
Goth to the dore anon with-oute lette,

Ther-as they laye, and softly it shotte.

108. And as he com ayeinward prively,
His nece awook, and asked 'who goth
there?' 750

'My dere nece,' quod he, 'it am I;
Ne wondreth not, ne have of it no fore,'

And ner he com, and seyde hur in hir ere,
'No word, for love of god I yow biseche,

Lat no wight ryse and heren of our
speche.' 755

109. 'What! which wey be ye comen,
benedicite?'

Quod she, 'and how thus unwist of hem
alle?'

'Here at this secree trappe-dore,' quod he.
Quod tho' Criseyde, 'lat me som wight
calle.' 760

'Ey! god forbede that it sholde falle,'
Quod Pandarus, 'that ye swich foly
wroughte!

They mighte deme thing they never er
thoughte!

110. It is nought good a sleping hound to
wake,

Ne yeve a wight a cause to devyne; 765
Your wommen slepen alle, I under-take,
So that, for hem, the hous men mighte
myne;

And slepen wolen til the sonne shyne.
And whan my tale al brought is to an
ende,

Unwist, right as I com, so wol I wende.

111. Now nece myn, ye shul wel under-
stonde,' 771

Quod he, 'so as ye wommen demen alle,
That for to holde in love a man in honde,
And him hir "leef" and "dere herte"
calle,

And maken him an howve above a calle,
I mene, as love an other in this whylo, 776
She doth hir-self a shame, and him a gyle.

112. Now wherby that I telle yow al this?
Ye woot your-self, as wel as any wight,
How that your love al fully graunted is
To Troilus, the worthieste knight, 781
Oon of this world, and ther-to trouthe
plyght,

That, but it were on him along, ye nolde
Him never falsen, whyl ye liven sholde.

113. Now stant it thus, that sith I fro
yow wente, 785

This Troilus, right platly for to seyn,
Is thurgh a goter, by a privè wente,
In-to my chaumbre come in al this reyn,
Unwist of every maner wight, certeyn,
Save of my-self, as wisly have I joye, 790
And by that feith I shal Pryam of Troye!

114. And he is come in swich peyne and
distresse

That, but he be al fully wood by this,
He sodeynly mot falle in-to wodnesse,
But-if god helpe; and cause why this is,
He seyth him told is, of a freend of his,
How that ye sholde love oon that hatte
Horaste, 797
For sorwe of which this night shalt been
his laste.'

115. Criseyde, which that al this wonder
herde,

Gan sodeynly aboute hir herte colde, 800
And with a syk she sorwfully answerde,
'Allas! I wende, who-so tales tolde,
My dere herte wolde me not holde
So lightly fals! alas! conceytes wronge,
What harm they doon, for now live I to
longe! 805

116. Horaste! alas! and falsen Troilus?
I knowe him not, god helpe me so,' quod
she;

'Allas! what wikked spirit tolde him
thus?

Now certes, eem, to-morwe, and I him see,
I shal ther-of as ful excusen me 810
As ever dide womman, if him lyke';
And with that word she gan ful sore syke.

117. 'O god!' quod she, 'so worldly seli-
nesse,

Which clerkes callen fals felicitee,
Y-medled is with many a bitternesse! 815
Ful anguissous than is, god woot,' quod
she,

'Condicoun of veyn prosperitee;
For either joyes comen nought y-fere,
Or elles no wight hath hem alwey here.

118. O brotel wele of mannes joye un-
stable! 820

With what wight so thou be, or how thou
pleye,

Either he woot art mu-
able,

Or woot it r; ;
Now if he v

That he hat
That is of

119. Now if he woot that joye is transi-
torie,
As every joye of worldly thing mot fleo,
Than every tyme he that hath in me-
morie,
The drede of lesing maketh him that he
May in no parfit selynesse be. 831
And if to lese his joye he set a myte,
Than semeth it that joye is worth ful
lyte.

120. Wherefore I wol deffyne in this
matere,
That trowely, for ought I can espye, 835
Ther is no verray wel in this world here.
But O, thou wikked serpent Jalousye,
Thou misbeloved and envious folye,
Why hastow Troilus me mad untriste,
That never yet agilte him, that I wiste?

121. Quod Pandarus, 'thus fallen is this
cas.' 841
'Why, uncle myn,' quod she, 'who tolde
him this?
Why doth my dere herte thus, alas?'
'Ye woot, ye nece myn,' quod he, 'what is;
I hope al shal be wel that is amis. 845
For ye may quenche al this, if that yow
leste,
And doth right so, for I holde it the
beste.'

122. 'So shal I do to-morwe, y-wis,' quod
she,
'And god to-forn, so that it shal suffyse.'
'To-morwe? alas, that were a fayr,' quod
he, 850
'Nay, nay, it may not stonden in this
wyse;
For, nece myn, thus wryten clerkes wysse,
That peril is with drecching in y-drawe;
Nay, swich abodes been nought worth an
hawe.

123. Nece, al thing hath tyme, I dar
avowe; 855
For whan a chaumber a-fyr is, or an halle,
Wel more nede is, it soleyntly rescowe
Than to dispute, and axe amonges alle
How is this candel in the straw y-falle?
A' *benedicite*! for al among that fare 860
The harm is doon, and fare-wel feldefare!

124. And, nece myn, ne take it not a-
greef,
If that ye suffre him al night in this wo,
God help me so, ye hadde him never leef,
That dar I seyn, now there is but we
two; 865
But wel I woot, that ye wol not do so,
Ye been to wys to do so gret folye,
To putte his lyf al night in jupartye.'

125. 'Hadde I him never leef? By god,
I wene
Ye hadde never thing so leef,' quod she.
'Now by my thrift,' quod he, 'that shal
be sene; 871
For, sin ye make this ensample of me,
If I al night wolde him in sorwe see
For al the tresour in the toun of Troye,
I bidde god, I never mote have joye! 875

126. Now loke thanne, if ye, that been
his love,
Shul putte al night his lyf in jupartye
For thing of nought! Now, by that god
above,
Nought only this delay comth of folye,
But of malyce, if that I shal nought lye.
What, platly, and ye suffre him in dis-
tresse, 881
Ye neither bountee doon ne gentilesse!'

127. Quod the Criseyde, 'wote ye doon
o thing,
And ye therwith shal stinte al his disese;
Have here, and bereth him this blew
ring, 885
For ther is no-thing mighte him bettre
plese,
Save I my-self, ne more his herte apose;
And sey my dere herte, that his sorwe
Is causeles, that shal be seen to-morwe.'

128. 'A ring?' quod he, 'ye, hasel-wodes
shaken! 890
Ye, nece myn, that ring mooste han a stoon
That mighte dede men alyve maken,
And swich a ring, trowe I that ye have
noon.
Discrecioun out of your heed is goon;
That fele I now,' quod he, 'and that is
routhe. 895
O tyme y-lost, wel maystow cursen
slonthe!

129. Wot ye not wel that noble and heigh
corage

Ne sorweth not, ne stinteth eek for lyte?
But if a fool were in a jalous rage,
I nolde setten at his sorwe a myte, 900
But feffe him with a fewe wordes whyte
Another day, whan that I mighte him
finde :

But this thing stont al in another kinde.

130. This is so gentil and so tendre of
herte,

That with his deeth he wol his sorwes
wreke; 905

For trusteth wel, how sore that him
smerte,

He wol to yow no jalouse wordes speke.

And for-thy, nece, er that his herte breke,
So spek your-self to him of this matere ;
For with o word ye may his herte stere.

131. Now have I told what peril he is
inne, 911

And his coming unwist is t' every wight ;
Ne, pardee, harm may ther be noon ne
sinne ;

I wol my-self be with yow al this night.

Ye knowe eek how it is your owne knight,
And that, by right, ye moste upon him
triste, 916

And I al prest to fecche him whan yow
liste.'

132. This accident so pitous was to here,
And eek so lyk a sooth, at pryme face,
And Troilus hir knight to hir so dere, 920
His prive coming, and the siker place,
That, though that she dide him as
thanne a grace,

Considered alle thinges as they stode,
No wonder is, sin she dide al for gode.

133. Cryseyde answerde, 'as wisly god at
reste 925

My sowle bringe, as me is for him wo !

And eem, y-wis, fayn wolde I doon the
beste,

If that I hadde grace to do so.

But whether that ye dwelle or for him go,
I am, til god me bettre minde sende, 930
At dulcarnon, right at my wittes ende.'

134. Quod Pandarus, 'ye, nece, wol ye
here?

Dulcarnon called is "fleminge of
wrecches" ;

It semeth hard, for wrecches wol not lere
For verray slouthe or othere wilful
tecches ; 935

This seyde by hem that be not worth two
fecches.

But ye ben wys, and that we han on
honde

Nis neither hard, ne skilful to withstonde.'

135. 'Thanne, eem,' quod she, 'doth her-
of as yow list ;

But er he come I wil up first aryse ; 940

And, for the love of god, sin al my trist

Is on yow two, and ye ben bothe wyse,

So wircheth now in so discreet a wyse,

That I honour may have, and he ples-
aunce ;

For I am here al in your governaunce.'

136. 'That is wel seyde,' quod he, 'my
nece dere, 945

Ther good thrift on that wyse gentil
herte !

But liggeth stille, and taketh him right
here,

It nedeth not no ferther for him sterte ;

And ech of yow ese otheres sorwes smerte,

For love of god ; and, Venus, I thee
herie ; 951

For sone hope I we shulle ben alle merie.'

137. This Troilus ful sone on knees him
sette

Ful sobrelly, right by hir beddes heed,

And in his beste wyse his lady grette ; 955

But lord, so she wex sodeynliche reed !

Ne, though men sholden smyten of hir
heed,

She coude nought a word a-right out-
bringe

So sodeynly, for his sodeyn cominge.

138. But Pandarus coude fele
In every thing

And seyde, ' 961
knele !

Now, for y
man !'

And with that word he for a quisschen
ran,
And seyde, 'kneleth now, whyl that yow
leste, 965
Ther god your hertes bringe sone at
reste!'

139. Can I not seyn, for she bad him not
ryse,
If sorwe it putte out of hir remembraunce,
Or elles if she toke it in the wyse
Of duëtee, as for his observaunce; 970
But wel finde I she dide him this
plessaunce,
That she him kiste, al-though she syked
sore;
And bad him sitte a-doun with-uten more.

140. Quod Pandarus, 'now wol ye wel
biginne;
Now doth him sitte, gode nece dere, 975
Upon your beddes syde al there with-
inne,
That ech of yow the bet may other here.'
And with that word he drow him to the
fere,
And took a light, and fond his conten-
aunce
As for to loke up-on an old romaunce. 980

141. Criseyde, that was Troilus lady right,
And cleer stood on a ground of sikernesse,
Al thoughte she, hir servaunt and hir
knight
Ne sholde of right non untrouthe in hir
gesse, 984
Yet nathelees, considered his distresse,
And that love is in cause of swich folye,
Thus to him spak she of his jelousye:

142. 'Lo, herte myn, as wolde the excel-
lence
Of love, ayeins the which that no man
may,
Ne oughte eek goodly maken resistence;
And eek bycause I felte wel and say 991
Your grette trouthe, and servyse every day;
And that your herte al myn was, sooth to
seyne,
This droof me for to rewe up-on your
peyne.

143. And your goodnesse have I founde
alwey yit, 995
Of whiche, my dere herte and al my
knight,
I thonke it yow, as fer as I have wit,
Al can I nought as mucche as it were right;
And I, emforth my conninge and my
might,
Have and ay shal, how sore that me
smerte, 1000
Ben to yow trewe and hool, with al myn
herte;

144. And dredelees, that shal be founde
at preve.—
But, herte myn, what al this is to seyne
Shal wel be told, so that ye noght yow
greve,
Though I to yow right on your-self com-
pleyne. 1005
For ther-with mene I fynally the payne,
That halt your herte and myn in hevi-
nesse,
Fully to sleen, and every wrong redresse.

145. My goode, myn, not I for-why ne
how
That Jalousye, alas! that wikked wivere,
Thus causelees is copen in-to yow; 1011
The harm of which I wolde fayn deliver!
Allas! that he, al hool, or of him slivere,
Shuld have his refut in so digne a place,
Ther Jove him sone out of your herte
arace! 1015

146. But O, thou Jove, O auctor of nature,
Is this an honour to thy deitee,
That folk ungiltif suffren here injure,
And who that giltif is, al quit goth he?
O were it leful for to pleyne on thee, 1020
That undeserved suffrest jalousye,
And that I wolde up-on thee pleyne and
crye!

147. Eek al my wo is this, that folk now
usen
To seyn right thus, "ye, Jalousye is
Love!" 1024
And wolde a busschel venim al excusen,
For that o greyn of love is on it shove!
But that wot heighe god that sit above,

If it be lyker love, or hate, or grame ;
And after that, it oughte bere his name.

148. But certeyn is, som maner jalouslye
Is excusable more than som, y-wis. 1031
As whan cause is, and som swich fantasye
With pietee so wel repressed is,
That it unnethe dooth or seyth amis,
But goodly drinketh up al his distresse ;
And that excuse I, for the gentillesse. 1036

149. And som so ful of furie is and despyt,
That it sourmounteth his repressioun ;
But herte myn, ye be not in that plyt,
That thanke I god, for whiche your
passioun 1040

I wol not calle it but illusioun,
Of habundaunce of love and bisy cure,
That dooth your herte this disese endure.

150. Of which I am right sory, but not
wrooth ; 1044
But, for my devoir and your hertes reste,
Wher-so yow list, by ordal or by ooth,
By sort, or in what wyse so yow leste,
For love of god, lat preve it for the beste !
And if that I be giltif, do me deye, 1049
Allas ! what mighte I more doon or seye ?'

151. With that a fewe brighte teres newe
Out of hir eyen fille, and thus she seyde,
'Now god, thou wost, in thought ne dede
untrewe

To Troilus was never yet Criseyde.'
With that hir heed down in the bod she
leyde, 1055
And with the shete it wreigh, and syghed
sore,
And held hir pees ; not o word spak she
more.

152. But now help god to quenchen al
this sorwe,
So hope I that he shal, for he best may ;
For I have seyn, of a ful misty morwe 1060
Folwen ful ofte a mery someres day ;
And after winter folweth grene May.
Men seen alday, and reden eek in stories,
That after sharpe shoures been victories.

153. This Troilus, whan he hir wordes
herde, 1065
Have ye no care, him liste not to slepe ;

For it thoughte him no strokes of a yerde
To here or seen Criseyde his lady wepe ;
But wel he felte aboute his herte crepe,
For every teer which that Criseyde a-
sterte, 1070
The crampe of deeth, to streyne him by
the herte.

154. And in his minde he gan the tyme
acurse

That he cam therē, and that he was born ;
For now is wikke y-turned in-to worse,
And al that labour he hath doon biforn,
He wende it lost, he thoughte he nas but
lorn. 1076

'O Pandarus,' thoughte he, 'allas ! thy
wyle
Serveth of nought, so weylawey the
whyle !'

155. And therewithal he heng a-down the
heed,
And fil on knees, and sorwfully he sighte ;
What mighte he seyn ? he felte he nas
but deed, 1081
For wrooth was she that shulde his sorwes
lighte.

But natheles, whan that he spoken
mighte,
Than seyde he thus, 'god woot, that of
this game,
Whan al is wist, than am I not to blame !'

156. Ther-with the sorwe so his herte
shette, 1086
That from his eyen fil ther not a tere,
And every spirit his vigour in-knette,
So they astoned and oppressed were.
The feling of his sorwe, or of his fere, 1090
Or of ought elles, fied was out of towne ;
And down he fel al sodeynly a-swowne.

157. This was no litel sorwe for to see ;
But al was hust, and Pandarus up as faste.
'O nece, pees, or we be lost,' quod he, 1095
'Beth nought agast at this laste,
laste,
For this or the
And seyde, '
herte ?'
And of he re

158. And seyde, 'nece, but ye helpe us
now, 1100

Allas, your owne Troilus is lorn !'

'Y-wis, so wolde I, and I wiste how,
Ful fayn,' quod she; 'allas! that I was
born !'

'Ye, nece, wol ye pullen out the thorn
That stiketh in his herte?' quod Pandare;
'Sey "al foryeve," and stint is al this
fare!' 1106

159. 'Ye, that to me,' quod she, 'ful
lever were

Than al the good the sonne aboute gooth';
And therwith-al she swoor him in his ere,
'Y-wis, my dere herte, I am nought
wrooth, 1110

Have here my trouthe and many another
ooth;

Now speak to me, for it am I, Criseyde !'
But al for nought; yet mighte he not
a-breyde.

160. Therwith his pous and pawmes of
his hondes

They gan to frote, and wete his temples
tweyne, 1115

And, to deliveren him from bittre bondes,
She ofte him kiste; and, shortly for to
seyne,

Him to revoken she dide al hir peyne.

And at the laste, he gan his breeth to
drawe,

And of his swough sone after that adawe,

161. And gan bet minde and reson to him
take, 1121

But wonder sore he was abayst, y-wis.

And with a syk, whan he gan bet a-wake,
He seyde, 'O mercy, god, what thing is
this?'

'Why do ye with your-selven thus amis?'
Quod tho Criseyde, 'is this a mannes
game? 1126

What, Troilus! wol ye do thus, for
shame?'

162. And therwith-al hir arm over him
she leyde,

And al foryaf, and ofte tyme him keste.

He thonked hir, and to hir spak, and
seyde 1130

As fil to purpos for his herte reste.

And she to that answerde him as hir
leste;

And with hir goodly wordes him dispo~~nte~~
She gan, and ofte his sorwes to comforte.

163. Quod Pandarus, 'for ought I can
espyen, 1135

This light nor I ne serven here of nought;
Light is not good for syke folkes yēn.

But for the love of god, sin ye be brought
In thus good plyt, lat now non hev~~y~~
thought

Ben hanginge in the hertes of yow
tweye:' 1140

And bar the candel to the chimeneye.

164. Sone after this, though it no nede
were,

Whan she swich othes as hir list devyse
Hadde of him take, hir thoughte tho no
fere,

Ne cause eek non, to bidde him thennes
ryse. 1145

Yet lesse thing than othes may suffyso
In many a cas; for every wight, I gesse,
That loveth wel meneth but gentillesso.

165. But in effect she wolde wite anon
Of what man, and eek where, and also
why 1150

He jelous was, sin ther was cause noon;
And eek the signe, that he took it by,
She had him that to telle hir bisily,
Or elles, certeyn, she bar him on honde,
That this was doon of malis, hir to fonde.

166. With-uten more, shortly for to
seyne, 1156

He moste obeye un-to his lady heste;
And for the lasse harm, he moste feyne.
He seyde hir, whan she was at swiche
a feste

She mighte on him han loked at the
leste; 1160

Not I not what, al dere y-nough a risshe,
As he that nedes moste a cause fisshe.

167. And she answerde, 'swete, al were
it so,

What harm was that, sin I non yvel
mene?

For, by that god that boughte us bothe
two, 1165
In alle thinge is myn entente clene.
Swich arguments ne been not worth a
beno;
Wol ye the childish jalous contrefete?
Now were it worthy that ye were y-bete.'

168. Tho Troilus gan sorwfully to syke,
Lest she be wrooth, him thoughte his
herte deyde; 1171
And seyde, 'allas! upon my sorwes syke
Have mercy, swete herte myn, Criseyde!
And if that, in the wordes that I seyde,
Be any wrong, I wol no more trespase;
Do what yow list, I am al in your grace.'

169. And she answerde, 'of gilt miseri-
corde!
That is to seyn, that I foryeve al this;
And ever-more on this night yow recorde,
And beth wel war ye do no more amis.' 1180
'Nay, dere herte myn,' quod he, 'y-wis.'
'And now,' quod she, 'that I have do
yow smerte,
Foryeve it me, myn owene swete herte.'

170. This Troilus, with blisse of that sup-
prysed, 1184
Put al in goddes hond, as he that mente
No-thing but wel; and, sodeynly avysed,
He hir in armes faste to him hente.
And Pandarus, with a ful good entente,
Leyde him to slepe, and seyde, 'if ye ben
wyse,
Swowneth not now, lest more folk aryse.'

171. What mighte or may the sely larke
seye, 1191
Whan that the sparhawk hath it in his
foot?
I can no more, but of thise ilke tweye,
To whom this tale sucre be or soot,
Though that I tarie a yeer, som-tyme
I moot, 1195
After myn auctor, tellen hir gladnesse,
As wel as I have told hir hevinesse.

172. Criseyde, which that felte hir thus
y-take,
As writen clerkes in hir bokes olde,

Right as an aspes leef she gan to quake,
Whan she him felte hir in his armes
folde. 1201
But Troilus, al hool of cares colde,
Gan thanken tho the blisful goddes
sevene;
Thus sondry peynes bringen folk to
hevene.

173. This Troilus in armes gan hir
streyn, 1205
And seyde, 'O swete, as ever mote I goon.
Now be ye caught, now is ther but we
tweyne;
Now yeldeth yow, for other boot is noon.'
To that Criseyde answerde thus anon,
'Ne hadde I er now, my swete herte
dere, 1210
Ben yolde, y-wis, I were now not here!'

174. O! sooth is seyde, that heled for to be
As of a fevre or othere greet syknesse,
Men moste drinke, as men may often see,
Ful bittre drink; and for to han glad-
nesse, 1215
Men drinken often payne and greet dis-
tresse;
I mene it here, as for this aventure,
That thourgh a payne hath founden al
his cure.

175. And now swetnesse semeth more
swete,
That bitternesse assayed was biforn; 1220
For out of wo in blisse now they flete.
Non swich they felten, sith they were
born;
Now is this bet, than bothe two be lorn!
For love of god, take every womman
hede
To werken thus, if it comth to the nede.

176. Criseyde, al quit from every drede
and tene, 1226
As she that justie cause hadde him to triste,
Made him swich feste that he was to sene,
Whan she his trespas entente
wiste. 1229
And as about
Bitrent and
Gan eche of

177. And as the newe abaysshed nightin-
gale,

That stinteth first whan she biginneth
singe,

Whan that she hereth any herde tale, 1235
Or in the hegge any wight steringe,
And after siker dooth hir voys out-ringe;
Right so Criseyde, whan hir drede stente,
Opned hir herte, and tolde him hir entente.

178. And right as he that seeth his deeth
y-shapen, 1240

And deys moot, in ought that he may
gesse,

And sodeynly rescous doth him escapen,
And from his deeth is brought in siker-
nese,

For al this world, in swich present glad-
nese 1244

Was Troilus, and hath his lady swete;
With worse hap god lat us never mete!

179. Hir armes smale, hir streyghte bak
and softe,

Hir sydes longe, fleshly, smothe, and
whyte

He gan to stroke, and good thrift had ful
ofte

Hir snowish throte, hir brestes rounde and
lyte; 1250

Thus in this hevone he gan him to delyte,
And ther-with-al a thousand tyme hir
kiste;

That, what to done, for joye unnethe he
wiste.

180. Than seyde he thus, 'O, Love, O,
Charitee,

Thy moder eek, Citherea the swete, 1255
After thy-self next beried he she,

Venus mene I, the wel-willy planete;
And next that, Imenens, I thee grete;

For never man was to yow goddes holde
As I, which ye han brought fro cares
colde. 1260

181. Benigne Love, thou holy bond of
thinges,

Who-so wol grace, and list thee nought
honouren,

La his desyr wol see with-outen winges.

For, noldestow of bountee hem secouren
That serven best and most alwey labouren,
Yet were al lost, that dar I wel seyn.
certes, 1266

But-if thy grace passed our desertes.

182. And for thou me, that coude leest
deserve

Of hem that nombred been un-to thy
grace,

Hast holpen, ther I lykly was to sterve,
And me bistowed in so heygh a place 1271

That thilke boundes may no blisse pace,
I can no more, but laude and reverence
Be to thy bounte and thyn excellence!

183. And therwith-al Criseyde anon he
kiste, 1275

Of which, certeyn, she felte no disce.
And thus seyde he, 'now wolde god I

wiste,
Myn herte swete, how I yow mighte please!

What man,' quod he, 'was ever thus at ase
As I, on whiche the faireste and the

beste 1280
That ever I say, deyneth hir herte reste.

184. Here may men seen that mercy
passoth right;

The experience of that is felt in me,
That am unworthy to so swete a wight

But herte myn, of your benignitee, 1285
So thenketh, though that I unworthy be,

Yet mot I nede amenden in som wyse,
Right thorough the vertu of your haygh
servyse.

185. And for the love of god, my lady
dere,

Sin god hath wrought me for I shal yow
serve, 1290

As thus I mene, that ye wol be my stere,
To do me live, if that yow liste, or sterve,

So techeth me how that I may deserve
Your thank, so that I, thurgh myn

ignorance, 1294
Ne do no-thing that yow be displeaunce.

186. For certes, fresshe wommanliche wyf,
Thus dar I seye, that trouthe and dili-

gence,
That shal ye finden in me al my lyf,

No I wol not, certeyn, breken your defence ;

And if I do, present or in absence, 1300
For love of god, lat slee me with the dede,
If that it lyke un-to your womanhede.'

187. 'Y-wis,' quod she, 'myn owne hertes list,

My ground of ese, and al myn herte dere,
Graunt mercy, for on that is al my trist ; 1305

But late us falle away fro this matere ;
For it suffyseth, this that seyde is here.
And at o word, with-uten repentaunce,
Wel-come, my knight, my pees, my suffisaunce !'

188. Of hir delyt, or joyes oon the leste
Were impossible to my wit to seye ; 1311
But juggeth, ye that han ben at the feste
Of swich gladnesse, if that hem listepleye !
I can no more, but thus thise ilke tweye
That night, be-twixen dreed and siker-
nesse, 1315
Felten in love the grete worthinesse.

189. O blisful night, of hem so longe y-sought,
How blithe un-to hem bothe two thou were !

Why ne hadde I swich on with my soule y-bought,
Ye, or the leeste joye that was there ? 1320
A-vey, thou foule daunger and thou fere,
And lat hem in this hevene blisse dwelle,
That is so heygh, that al ne can I telle !

190. But sooth is, though I can not tellen al,
As can myn auctor, of his excellence, 1325
Yet have I seyde, and, god to-forn, I shal
In every thing al hoolly his sentence.
And if that I, at loves reverence,
Have any word in echid for the beste,
Doth therwith-al right as your-selven leste. 1330

191. For myne wordes, here and every part,
I speke hem alle under correccioun
Of yow, that feling han in loves art,
And putte it al in your discrecioun
T' encrese or maken diminucioun 1335

Of my langage, and that I yow bi-seche ;
But now to purpos of my rather speche.

192. Thise ilke two, that ben in armes laft,

So looth to hem a-sonder goon it were,
That ech from other wende been biraft,
Or elles, lo, this was hir moste fere, 1341
That al this thing but nyce dremes were ;
For which ful ofte ech of hem seyde, 'O swete,

Clippe ich yow thus, or elles I it mete ?'

193. And, lord ! so he gan goodly on hir see, 1345

That never his look ne bleynte from hir face,

And seyde, 'O dere herte, may it be
That it be sooth, that ye ben in this place ?'

'Ye, herte myn, god thank I of his grace !'
Quod tho Criseyde, and therwith-al him kiste, 1350

That where his spirit was, for joye he niste.

194. This Troilus ful ofte hir eyen two
Gan for to kisse, and seyde, 'O eyen clere,
It were ye that wroughte me swich wo,
Ye humble nettes of my lady dere ! 1355
Though ther be mercy writen in your chere,

God wot, the text ful hard is, sooth, to finde,

How coude ye with-uten bond me binde ?'

195. Therwith he gan hir faste in armes take, 1359

And wel an hundred tymes gan he syke,
Nought swiche sorwful sykes as men make
For wo, or elles whan that folk ben syke,
But esy sykes, swiche as been to lyke,
That shewed his affeccioun with-inne ;
Of swiche sykes coude he nought bilinne.

196. Sone after this they speke of sondry thinges, 1360

As fil to purpos of this aventure,
And pleyinge entrecchaunce hir ringes,
Of which I can not write the scripture ;
But wel I wote, 1365
In whiche a Criseyde hi sherte.

197. Lord ! trowys, a covaitous, a wrecche,
That blameth love and holt of it despyt,
That, of the pens that he can make and
keoche, 1375
Was ever yet y-yeve him swich delyt,
As is in love, in oo poynt, in som plyt ?
Nay, douteless, for also god me save,
So parfit joye may no nigard have !

198. They wol say 'yis,' but lord ! so
that they lye, 1380
The bisy wrecches, ful of wo and drede !
They callen love a woodnesse or folye,
But it shal falle hem as I shal yow rede ;
They shul forge the whyte and eke the
rede,
And live in wo, ther god yeve hem mis-
chaunce, 1385
And every lover in his trouthe avaanee !

199. As wolde god, the wrecches, that
dispyne
Serryse of love, hadde eres al-so longe
As hadde Myda, ful of covsityse ;
And ther-to drunken hadde as hoot and
stronge 1390
As Crassus dide for his affectis wronge,
To techen hem that they ben in the vyce,
And loveres nought, al-though they holde
hem nyce !

200. Thise ilke two, of whom that I yow
seye, 1394
Whan that hir hertes wel assured were,
The gonne they to speken and to pleye,
And eek rehercen how, and whanne, and
where,
They knewe hem first, and every wo and
fere
That passed was ; but al swich hevynesse,
I thanke it god, was touned to gladnesse.

201. And ever-mo, whan that hem fel to
speke 1401
Of any thing of swich a tyme agoon,
With kissing al that tale sholde breke,
And fallen in a newe joye anon,
And diden al hir might, sin they were
oon, 1405
For to recoveren blisse and been at ese,
And passed wo with joye countrepeyse.

202. Reason wil not that I speke of sleep,
For it accordeth nought to my matere ;
God woot, they toke of that ful litel keep,
But lest this night, that was to hem so
dere, 1411
Ne sholde in veyn escape in no manere,
It was biset in joye and businessse
Of al that souneth in-to gentilnesse. 1414

203. But whan the cok, comuneastrologer,
Gan on his brest to bete, and after crowe,
And Lucifer, the dayes messenger,
Gan for to ryse, and out hir bernes
throwe ;
And estward roos, to him that coude it
knowe, 1419
Fortuna maior, þthan anon Criseyde,
With herte sore, to Troilus thus seyde :—

204. 'Myn hertes lyf, my trist and my
plesaunce,
That I was born, alas ! what me is wo,
That day of us mot make desseverance !
For tyme it is to ryse, and hennes go, 1425
Or elles I am lost for evermo !
O night, alas ! why niltow over us hove,
As longe as whanne Almena lay by Jove ?

205. O blake night, as folk in bokes rede,
That shapen art by god this world to
hyde 1431
At certeyn tymes with thy derke wede,
That under that men mighte in reste
abyde,
Wel oughte bestes pleyne, and folk thee
chyde,
That there-as day with labour wolde us
breste,
That thou thus fleest, and deynest us
nought reste ! 1435

206. Thou dost, alas ! to shortly thyn
offyce,
Thou rakel night, ther god, makere of
kinde,
Thee, for thyn hast and thyn unkinde
vyce,
So faste ay to our hemi-spere binde,
That never-more under the ground thou
winde ! 1440
For now, for thou so hyest out of Troye,
Have I forgon thus hastily my joye !'

207. This Troilus, that with tho wordes
felte,

As thoughte him tho, for piētous distresse,
The bloody teres from his herte melte, 1445
As he that never yet swich hevinesse
Assayed hadde, out of so greet gladnesse,
Gan therwith-al Criseyde his lady dere
In armes streyne, and seyde in this
manere:—

208. 'O cruel day, accusour of the joye
That night and love han stole and faste
y-wryen, 1451

A-cursed be thy coming in-to Troye,
For every bore hath oon of thy bright yē!
Envyous day, what list thee so to spyen?
What hastow lost, why sekestow this
place, 1455
Ther god thy lyght so quenche, for his
grace?

209. Allas! what han thise loveres thee
agilt,

Dispitous day? thyn be the pyne of helle!
For many a love-re hastow shent, and
wilt;

Thy pouring in wol no-wher lete hem
dwell. 1460

What proferestow thy light here for to
selle?

Go selle it hem that smale seles graven,
We wol thee nought, us nedeth no day
haven.'

210. And eek the sonne Tytan gan he
chyde,

And seyde, 'O fool, wel may men thee
dispyse, 1465

That hast the Dawing al night by thy
syde,

And suffrest hir so sone up fro thee ryse,
For to disesen loveres in this wyse.

What! hold your bed ther, thou, and eek
thy Morwe!

I bidde god, so yeve yow bothe sorwe!'

211. Therwith ful sore he sighte, and
thus he seyde, 1471

'My lady right, and of my wele or wo
The welle and rote, O goodly myn, Criseyde,
And shal I ryse, allas! and shal I go?

Now fele I that myn herte moot a-two! 1475

For how sholde I my lyf an houre save,
Sin that with yow is al the lyf I have?

212. What shal I doon, for certes, I not
how,

Ne whanne, allas! I shal the tyme see,
That in this plyt I may be eft with yow;
And of my lyf, god woot how that shal
be, 1481

Sin that desyr right now so byteth me,
That I am deed anoon, but I retourne.
How sholde I longe, allas! fro yow so-
journe?

213. But nathelees, myn owene lady
bright, 1485

Yit were it so that I wiste outrely,
That I, your humble servaunt and your
knight,

Were in your herte set so fermely
As ye in myn, the which thing, trewely,
Me lever were than thise worldes tweyne,
Yet sholde I bet enduren al my payne.'

214. To that Criseyde answerde right
anoon, 1492

And with a syk she seyde, 'O herte dere,
The game, y-wis, so ferforth now is goon,
That first shal Phebus falle fro his spere,
And every egle been the dowves fere, 1496
And every roche out of his place sterte,
Er Troilus out of Criseydes herte!

215. Ye be so depe in-with myn herte
grave,

That, though I wolde it turne out of my
thought, 1500

As wisly verray god my soule save,
To dyen in the payne, I coude nought!
And, for the love of god that us hath
wrought,

Lat in your brayn non other fantasye
So crepe, that it cause me to dye! 1505

216. And that ye me wolde han as faste
in minde

As I have yow, that  bi-seche;
And, if I wiste so 

God mighte n-

But, herte my

Beth to me t

For I am thy

217. Beth glad for-thy, and live in siker-
nesse;

Thus seyde I never er this, ne shal to
me; 1514

And if to yow it were a gret gladnesse
To turne ayein, soone after that ye go,
As fayn wolde I as ye, it were so,
As wisly god myn herte bringe at reste!
And him in armes took, and ofte keste.

218. Agayns his wil, sin it moot nedes be,
This Troilus up roos, and faste him
cledde, 1521

And in his armes took his lady free
An hundred tyme, and on his way him
spedde,

And with swich wordes as his herte
bledde,
He seyde, 'farewel, my dere herte swete,
Ther god us grannte sounde and sone to
mete!' 1526

219. To which no word for sorwe she
answerde,

So sore gan his parting hir destreyne;
And Troilus un-to his palays ferde,
As woo bigon as she was, sooth to seyne;
So hard him wrong of sharp desyr the
peyne 1531

For to ben eft there he was in plesaunce,
That it may never out of his remem-
braunce.

220. Retorned to his real palais, sone 1534
He softe in-to his bed gan for to slinke,
To slepe longe, as he was wont to done,
But al for nought; he may wel ligge and
winke,

But sleep ne may ther in his herte
sinke;

Thenkinge how she, for whom desyr him
brende,

A thousand-fold was worth more than he
wende. 1540

221. And in his thought gan up and down
to winde

Hir wordes alle, and every contenaunce,
And fermely impressen in his minde
The laste poynt that to him was plesaunce;
And varrayliche, of thilke remembrance,

Desyr al newe him brende, and lust to
brede 1546

Gan more than erst, and yet took he non
hede.

222. Criseyde also, right in the same wyse,
Of Troilus gan in hir herte shette 1549

His worthinesse, his lust, his dedes wyse,
His gentillesse, and how she with him
mette,

Thenkinge love he so wel hir bisette;
Desyring eft to have hir herte dere

In swich a plyt, she dorste make him
chera.

223. Pandare, a-morwe which that comen
was 1555

Un-to his nece, and gan hir fayre grete,
Seyde, 'al this night so reyned it, alas!
That al my drede is that ye, nece swete,
Han litel layser had to slepe and mete;
Al night,' quod he, 'hath reyn so do me
wake, 1560

That som of us, I trowe, hir hedes ake.'

224. And ner he com, and seyde, 'how
stont it now

This mery morwe, nece, how can ye fare?'
Criseyde answerde, 'never the bet for yow,
For that ye been, god yeve your herte
care! 1565

God helpe me so, ye caused al this fare,
Trow I,' quod she, 'for alle your wordes
whyte;

O! who-so seeth yow knoweth yow ful
lyte!'

225. With that she gan hir face for to
wrye

With the shete, and wex for shame al
reed; 1570

And Pandarus gan under for to pry,
And seyde, 'nece, if that I shal ben deed,
Have here a swerd, and smyteth of myn
heed.'

With that his arm al sodeynly he thriste
Under hir nekke, and at the laste hir
kiste. 1575

226. I passe al that which chargeth
nought to seye,

What! God foryaf his deeth, and she
al-so

Foryaf, and with hir uncle gan to pleye,
 For other cause was ther noon than so.
 But of this thing right to the effect to go,
 Whan tyme was, hom til hir hous she
 wente, 1581
 And Pandarus hath fully his entente.

227. Now torne we ayein to Troilus,
 That restelees ful longe a-bedde lay,
 And prevely sente after Pandarus, 1585
 To him to come in al the haste he may.
 He com anoon, nought ones seyde he
 ' nay,'
 And Troilus ful sobrelly he grette,
 And down upon his beddes syde him
 sette. 1589

228. This Troilus, with al the affeccioun
 Of frendes love that herte may devyse,
 To Pandarus on kneës fil adoun,
 And er that he wolde of the place aryse,
 He gan him thonken in his beste wyse;
 A hondred sythe he gan the tyme blesse,
 That he was born to bringe him fro
 distresse. 1596

229. He seyde, 'O frend, of frendes th'
 alderbeste
 That ever was, the sothe for to telle,
 Thou hast in hevne y-brought my soule
 at reste
 Fro Flegiton, the fery flood of helle; 1600
 That, though I mighte a thousand tymes
 selle,
 Upon a day, my lyf in thy servyse,
 It mighte nought a mote in that suffyse.

230. The sonne, which that al the world
 may see,
 Saw never yet, my lyf, that dar I leye,
 So inly fair and goodly as is she, 1606
 Whos I am al, and shal, til that I deye;
 And, that I thus am hires, dar I seye,
 That thanked be the heighe worthinesse
 Of love, and eek thy kinde businesse. 1610

231. Thus hastow me no litel thing y-yive,
 Fo which to thee obliged be for ay
 My lyf, and why? for thorough thyn help
 I live;
 For elles deed hadde I be many a day.'

And with that word down in his bed he
 lay, 1615
 And Pandarus ful sobrelly him herde
 Til al was seyde, and thanne he him
 answerde:

232. 'My dere frend, if I have doon for
 thee
 In any cas, god wot, it is me leef;
 And am as glad as man may of it be, 1620
 God help me so; but tak now not a-greef
 That I shal seyn, be war of this myscheef,
 That, there-as thou now brought art in-to
 blisse,
 That thou thy-self ne cause it nought to
 misse.

233. For of fortunes sharp adversitee 1625
 The worst kinde of infortune is this,
 A man to have ben in prosperitee,
 And it remembren, whan it passed is.
 Thou art wys y-nough, for-thy do nought
 amis;
 Be not to rakel, though thou sitte
 warne, 1630
 For if thou be, certeyn, it wol thee
 harne.

234. Thou art at ese, and hold thee wel
 ther-inne.
 For also seur as reed is every fyr,
 As greet a craft is kepe wel as winne;
 Brydle alwey wel thy speche and thy
 desyr. 1635
 For worldly joye halt not but by a wyr;
 That preveth wel, it brest alday so ofte;
 For-thy nede is to werke with it softe.'

235. Quod Troilus, 'I hope, and god to-
 forn,
 My dere frend, that I shal so me bere,
 That in my gilt ther shal no thing be
 lorn, 1641
 N' I nil not racle as for to greven here;
 It nedeth not this matere ofte tere;
 For wistestow myn herte wel, Pandare,
 God woot, of this thou woldest litel care.'

236. Tho gan he 1645
 night.
 And wher-of fi
 how,

And seyde, 'freend, as I am trewe knight,
And by that feyth I shal to god and yow,
I hadde it never half so hote as now; 1650
And ay the more that desyr me byteth
To love hir best, the more it me delyteth.

237. I noot my-self not wisly what it is;
But now I fele a newe qualitee,
Ye, al another than I dide er this.' 1655
Pandare answerde, and seyde thus, that he
That ones may in hevene blisse be,
He feleth other weyes, dar I leye,
Than thilke tyme he first herde of it seye.

238. This is o' word for al; this Troilus
Was never ful, to speke of this matere,
And for to preysen un-to Pandarus 1662
The bountee of his righte lady dere,
And Pandarus to thanke and maken
chere.

This tale ay was span-newe to biginne 1665
Til that the night departed hem a-twinne.

239. Sone after this, for that fortune it
wolde,
I-comen was the blisful tyme swete,
That Troilus was warned that he sholde,
Ther he was erst, Criseyde his lady
mete; 1670
For which he felte his herte in joye
flete;
And feythfully gan alle the goddes herie;
And lat see now if that he can be merie.

240. And holden was the forme and al
the wyse,
Of hir cominge, and eek of his also, 1675
As it was erst, which nedeth nought
devyse.

But playnly to the effect right for to go,
In joye and seurte Pandarus hem two
A-bedde broughte, whan hem bothe leste,
And thus they ben in quiete and in
reste. 1680

241. Nought nedeth it to yow, sin they
ben met,
To aske at me if that they blythe were;
For if it erst was wel, tho was it bet
A thousand-fold, this nedeth not enquere.
A-pon was every sorwe and every fere;

And bothe, y-wis, they hadde, and so
they wende, 1686
As muche joye as herte may comprende.

242. This is no litel thing of for to seye,
This passeth every wit for to devyse; 1689
For eche of hem gan otheres lust obeye;
Felicitee, which that thise clerkes wyse
Commenden so, ne may not here suffyse.
This joye may not writen been with inke,
This passeth al that herte may bithinke.

243. But cruel day, so wel-away the
stounde! 1695
Gan for to aproche, as they by signes
knewe,
For whiche hem thoughte felen dethes
wounde;
So wo was hem, that changen gan hir
hewe, 1698
And day they gonnen to dispyse al newe,
Calling it traytour, envyous, and worse,
And bitterly the dayes light they curse.

244. Quod Troilus, 'allas! now am I war
That Pirous and tho swifte stedes three,
Whiche that drawn forth the sonnes
char,
Han goon som by-path in despyt of me;
That maketh it so sone day to be; 1706
And, for the sonne him hasteth thus to
ryse,
Ne shal I never doon him sacrificyse!'

245. But nedes day departe moste hem
sone,
And whanne hir speche doon was and hir
chere, 1710
They twinne anon as they were wont to
done,
And setten tyme of meting eft y-fere;
And many a night they wroughte in this
manere.
And thus Fortune a tyme ladde in joye
Criseyde, and eek this kinges sone of
Troye. 1715

246. In suffisaunce, in blisse, and in sing-
inges,
This Troilus gan al his lyf to lede;
He spendeth, justeth, maketh †festey-
inges;

He yeveth frely ofte, and chaungeth
wede, 1719
And held aboute him alwey, out of drede,
A world of folk, as cam him wel of kinde,
The fressheste and the beste he coude
finde ;

247. That swich a voys was of him and
a stevene
Thorough-out the world, of honour and
largesse, 1724
That it up rong un-to the yate of hevene.
And, as in love, he was in swich gladnesse,
That in his herte he demede, as I gesse,
That there nis love in this world at ese
So wel as he, and thus gan love him
plese.

248. The godlihede or beautee which that
kinde 1730
In any other lady hadde y-set
Can not the mountaunce of a knot un-
binde,
A-boute his herte, of al Criseydes net.
He was so narwe y-masked and y-knet,
That it undoon on any manere syde, 1735
That nil not been, for ought that may
betyde.

249. And by the hond ful ofte he wolde
take
This Pandarus, and in-to gardin lede,
And swich a feste and swich a proces
make 1739
Him of Criseyde, and of hir womanhede,
And of hir beautee, that, with-uten drede,
It was an hevene his wordes for to here ;
And thanne he wolde singe in this
manere

250. 'Love, that of erthe and see hath
governaunce,
Love, that his hestes hath in hevene hye,
Love, that with an holsom alliaunce 1746
Halt peples joyned, as him list hem gye,
Love, that knetteth lawe of companye,
And couples doth in vertu for to dwelle,
Bind this acord, that I have told and
telle ; 1750

251. That that the world with feyth,
which that is stable,
Dyverseth so his stoundes concordinge,

That elements that been so discordable
Holden a bond perpetuely duringe,
That Phebus mote his rosy day forth
bringe, 1755
And that the mone hath lordship over
the nightes,
Al this doth Love ; ay heried be his
mightes !

252. That that the see, that gredy is to
flowen,
Constreyneth to a certeyn ende so 1759
His flodes, that so fersly they ne growen
To drenchen erthe and al for ever-mo ;
And if that Love ought lete his brydel go,
Al that now loveth a-sonder sholde lepe,
And lost were al, that Love halt now to-
hepe.

253. So wolde god, that auctor is of
kinde, 1765
That, with his bond, Love of his vertu
liste
To cerclen hertes allo, and faste binde,
That from his bond no wight the wey out
wiste.
And hertes colde, hem wolde I that he
twiste
To make hem love, and that hem leste ay
rewe 1770
On hertes sore, and kepe hem that ben
trewe.'

254. In alle nedes, for the tounes werre,
He was, and ay the firste in armes dight ;
And certeynly, but-if that bokes erre, 1774
Save Ector, most y-drad of any wight ;
And this encroes of hardinesse and might
Cam him of love, his ladies thank to
winne,
That altered his spirit so with-inne.

255. In tyme of trewe, on haukinge wolde
he ryde,
Or elles huntten boor, bere, or lyoun ; 1780
The smale bestes leet he gon bi-syde.
And whan that he com in-to
toun,
Ful ofte his lady,
As fresh as fauco
Ful redy was, hi

256. And most of love and vertu was his
 speche,
 And in despyt hadde alle wrecchednesse;
 And douteles, no nede was him biseche
 To honouren hem that hadde worthi-
 nesse, 1789
 And can hem that weren in distresse.
 And glad was he if any wight wel ferde,
 That lover was, whan he it wiste or herde.
 257. For sooth to seyn, he lost held every
 wight
 But-if he were in loves heigh servyse,
 I mene folk that oughte it been of right.
 And over al this, so wel coude he de-
 vyse 1796
 Of sentement, and in so unkouth wyse
 Al his array, that every lover thoughte,
 That al was wel, what-so he sayde or
 wroughte.
 258. And though that he be come of
 blood royal, 1800
 Him liste of pryde at no wight for to
 chase;
 Benigne he was to ech in general,

For which he gat him thank in every
 place.
 Thus wolde Love, y-heried be his grace,
 That Pryde, Envy, Ire, and Avaryce 1805
 He gan to flee, and every other vyce.
 259. Thou lady bright, the doughter to
 Dione,
 Thy blinde and winged sone ask, daun
 Cupyde;
 Ye sustren nyne ask, that by Elicone
 In hyl Parnaso listen for to abyde, 1810
 That ye thus fer han dayned me to gyde,
 I can no more, but sin that ye wol wende,
 Ye heried been for ay, with-outen ende!
 260. Thourgh yow have I seyde fully in
 my song
 Th'effect and joye of Troilus servyse, 1815
 Al be that ther was som disease among,
 As to myn auctor listeth to devyse.
 My thridde book now ende ich in this
 wyse;
 And Troilus in luste and in quiete 1819
 Is with Criseyde, his owne harte swete.
 Explicit Liber Tercius.

BOOK IV.

[Prohemium.]

1. Brev al to litel, weylawey the whyle,
 Lasteth swich joye, y-thanked be For-
 tune!
 That semeth trewest, whan she wol
 bygyle,
 And can to foles so hir song entune,
 That she hem hent and blent, traytour
 comune; 5
 And whan a wight is from hir wheel
 y-throwe,
 Than laugheth she, and maketh him the
 mowe.
 2. From Troilus she gan hir brighte face
 Away to wrythe, and took of him non
 hede,

But caste him clene oute of his lady
 grace, 10
 And on hir wheel she sette up Diomedo.
 For which right now myn herte ginneth
 blede,
 And now my penne, alas! with which
 I wryte,
 Quaketh for drede of that I moot endyte.
 3. For how Criseyde Troilus forsook, 15
 Or at the leste, how that she was un-
 kinde,
 Not hennes-forth ben matere of my
 book,
 As wryten folk thourgh which it is in
 minde.
 Alas! that they shulde ever cause
 finde

To speke hir harm ; and if they on hir
lye, 20
Y-wis, hem-self sholde han the vilanye.

4. O ye Herines, Nightes doughtren three,
That endelees compleynen ever in pyne,
Megera, Alete, and eek Thesiphone ;
Thou cruel Mars eek, fader to Quiryne, 25
This ilke ferthe book me helpeth fyne,
So that the los of lyf and love y-fere
Of Troilus be fully shewed here.

Explicit † prohemium. Incipit Quartus
Liber.

5. LIGGINGE in ost, as I have seyde er this,
The Grekes stronge, aboute Troye toun, 30
Bifel that, whan that Phebus shynynge is
Up-on the brest of Hercules Lyoun,
That Ector, with ful many a bold baroun,
Caste on a day with Grekes for to fighte,
As he was wont to greve hem what he
might. 35

6. Not I how longe or short it was bi-
twene
This purpos and that day they fighte
mente ;
But on a day wel armed, bright and
shene,
Ector, and many a worthy wight out
wente,
With spere in hond and bigge bowes
bente ; 40
And in the berd, with-oute lenger lette,
Hir fomen in the feld anon hem mette.

7. The longe day, with speres sharpe
y-grounde,
With arwes, dartes, swerdes, maces felle,
They fighte and bringen hors and man
to grounde, 45
And with hir axes out the braynes quelle.
But in the laste shour, sooth for to telle,
The folk of Troye hem-selven so mis-
ledde,
That with the worse at night homward
they fledde.

8. At whiche day was taken Antenor, 50
Maugre Polydamas or Monesteo,
Santippe, Sarpedon, Polynestor,

Polyte, or eek the Trojan daun Ripheo,
And othere lasse folk, as Phebuseo.
So that, for harm, that day the folk of
Troye 55
Dredde to lese a greet part of hir joye.

9. Of Pryamus was yeve, at Greek re-
queste,
A tyme of trewe, and tho they gonnen
trete,
Hir prisoner to chaungen, moste and
leste, 59
And for the surplus yeven sommes grete.
This thing anon was counth in every
strete,
Bothe in th'assage, in toune, and every-
where,
And with the firste it cam to Calkas ere.

10. Whan Calkas knew this tretis sholde
holde,
In consistorie, among the Grekes, sone 65
He gan in thringe forth, with lordes olde,
And sette him there-as he was wont to
done ;
And with a chaunged face hem bad a
bone,
For love of god, to don that reverence,
To stinte noyse, and yeve him audience.

11. Thanne seyde he thus, 'lo ! lordes
myne, I was 71
Trojan, as it is knowen out of drede ;
And if that yow remembre, I am Calkas,
That alderfirst gaf comfort to your nede,
And tolde wel how that ye sholden spede.
For dredelees, thorough yow, shal, in a
stounde, 76
Ben Troye y-brend, and beten down to
grounde.

12. And in what forme, or in what maner
wyse
This town to shende, and al your lust to
acheve,
Ye han er this wel herd it me devyse ; 80
This knowe ye, my lordes, as I leve.
And for the Grekes
I com my-self in
To teche in this
done ;

13. Havinge un-to my tresour ne my
rente 85

Right no resport, to respect of your ese.
Thus al my good I loste and to yow
wente,

Wening in this you, lordes, for to plesse.
But al that los ne doth me no disese.
I vouche-sauf, as wisly have I joye, 90
For you to lese al that I have in Troye,

14. Save of a doughter, that I lafte, alas!
Slepinge at hoom, whanne out of Troye
I sterte.

O sterne, O cruel fader that I was!
How mighte I have in that so hard an
herte? 95

Allas! I ne hadde y-brought hir in hir
sherte!

For sorwe of which I wol not live to
morwe,

But-if ye lordes rewe up-on my sorwe.

15. For, by that cause I say no tyme er
now

Hir to deliver, I holden have my pees;
But now or never, if that it lyke yow, 101
I may hir have right sone, doutelees.

O help and grace! amonges al this prees,
Rewe on this olde caitif in destresse,
Sin I through yow have al this hevynesse!

16. Ye have now caught and fetered in
prisoun 106

Trojans y-nowe; and if your willes be,
My child with oon may have redempcioun.
Now for the love of god and of bountee,
Oon of so fele, alas! so yeve him me. 110
What nede were it this preyere for to
werne,

Sin ye shul bothe han folk and toun as
yerne?

17. On peril of my lyf, I shal not lye,
Appollo hath me told it feithfully;

I have eek founde it by astronomye, 115
By sort, and by angurie eek trewely,
And dar wel seye, the tyme is faste by,
That fyr and flaumbe on al the toun shal
sprede;

And thus shal Troye turne in asshen
dede.

18. For certeyn, Phebus and Neptunus
bothe, 120

That makeden the walles of the toun,
Ben with the folk of Troye alwey so
wrothe,

That thei wol bringe it to confusioun,
Right in despyt of king Lameadoun. 124
By-cause he nolde payen hem hir hyre,
The toun of Troye shal ben set on-fyre.'

19. Telling his tale alwey, this olde greye,
Humble in speche, and in his lokinge eke,
The salte teres from his eyen tweye 129

Ful faste ronnen down by eyther cheke.
So longe he gan of socour hem by-seke
That, for to hele him of his sorwes sore,
They yave him Antenor, with-oute more.

20. But who was glad y-nough but Calkas
tho?

And of this thing ful sone his nedes
leyde 135

On hem that sholden for the tretis go,
And hem for Antenor ful ofte preyde
To bringen hoom king Toas and Criseyde;
And whan Pryam his save-garde sente,
Th'embassadours to Troye streyght they
wente. 140

21. The cause y-told of hir cominge, the
olde

Pryam the king ful sone in general
Let here-upon his parlement to holde,
Of which the effect rehersen yow I shal.
Th'embassadours ben answered for fynal,
Th'eschaunge of prisoners and al this
nede 146

Hem lyketh wel, and forth in they pro-
cede.

22. This Troilus was present in the place,
Whan axed was for Antenor Criseyde,
For which ful sone chaungen gan his face.
As he that with tho wordes wel neigh
deyde. 151

But nathelees, he no word to it seyde,
Lest men sholde his affeccioun espye;
With mannes herte he gan his sorwes
drye.

23. And ful of anguish and of grisly
drede 155

Abod what lordes wolde un-to it seye;

And if they wolde graunte, as god forbede,
Th'eschaunge of hir, than thoughte he thinges tweye,
First, how to save hir honour, and what weye

He mighte best th'eschaunge of hir withstonde ; 160
Ful faste he caste how al this mighte stonde.

24. Love him made al prest to doon hir byde,
And rather dye than she sholde go ;
But resoun seyde him, on that other syde,
'With-oute assent of hir ne do not so, 165
Lest for thy werk she wolde be thy fo,
And seyn, that thorough thy medling is y-blowe
Your bother love, ~~There~~ it was erst unknowe.'

25. For which he gan deliberen, for the beste,
That though the lordes wolde that she wente, 170
He wolde late hem graunte what hem leste,
And telle his lady first what that they mente.
And whan that she had seyde him hir entente,
Ther-after wolde he werken also blyve,
Though al the world ayein it wolde stryve, 175

26. Ector, which that wel the Grekes herde,
For Antenor how they wolde han Criseyde,
Gan it withstonde, and sobrely answerde :—
'Sires, she nis no prisoner,' he seyde ;
'I noot on yow who that this charge leyde, 180
But, on my part, ye may eft-sone him telle,
We usen here no wommen for to sella.'

27. The noyse of peple up-stirte thanne at ones,
As brewe as blase of straw y-set on fyre ;

For infortune it wolde, for the nones, 185
They sholden hir confusioun desyre.
'Ector,' quod they, 'what goost may yow enspyre,
This womman thus to shilde and doon us lese
Daun Antenor?—a wrong wey now ye chese—

28. That is so wys, and eek so bold baroun,
And we han nede of folk, as men may see ; 191
He is eek oon, the grettest of this toun ;
O Ector, lat tho fantasyes be !
O king Pryam,' quod they, 'thus seggen we, 194
That al our voys is to for-gon Criseyde ;'
And to deliveren Antenor they preyde.

29. O Juvenal, lord ! trewe is thy sentence,
That litel witen folk what is to yerne
That they ne finde in hir desyr offence ;
For cloud of errour lat hem not descerne
What best is ; and lo, here ensample as yerne. 201
This folk desiren now deliveraunce
Of Antenor, that broughte hem to mischaunce !

30. For he was after traytour to the toun
Of Troye ; alas ! they quitte him out to rathe ; 205
O nyce world, lo, thy discrecioun !
Criseyde, which that never dide hem skathe,
Shal now no lenger in hir blisse bathe ;
But Antenor, he shal com hoom to toun,
And she shal out : thus seyden here and howne. 210

31. For which delibered was by parlement,
For Antenor to yelden up Criseyde,
And it pronounced by the president,
Al-theigh that Ector 'nay' ful ofte preyde.
And fynaly, what wight ~~the~~ withseyde,
It was for nought ;
sholde ;
For substaunce of th

32. Departed out of parlement echous,
This Troilus, with-oute wordes mo,
Un-to his chaumbre spedde him faste
allone, 230

But-if it were a man of his or two,
The whiche he had out faste for to go,
By-cause he wolde slepen, as he seyde,
And hastily up-on his bed him leyde.

33. And as in winter leues been biraft, 235
Eche after other, til the tree be bare,
So that ther nis but bark and braunche
y-left,

Lyth Troilus, biraft of ech wel-fare,
Y-bounden in the blake bark of care,
Disposed wood out of his wit to breyde,
So sore him sat the chaunginge of Cri-
seyde. 231

34. He rist him up, and every dore he
shette

And windowe cek, and tho this sorweful
man

Up-on his beddes syde a-doun him sette,
Ful lyk a deed image pale and wan; 235
And in his brest the heped wo bigan
Out-breste, and he to werken in this
wyse

In his woodnesse, as I shal yow devyse.

35. Right as the wilde bole biginneth
springe

Now here, now there, y-darted to the
herte, 240

And of his deeth roreth in compleyninge,
Right so gan he aboute the chaumbre
starte,

Smyting his brest ay with his festes
smerte;

His heed to the wal, his body to the
grounde

Ful ofte he swapte, him-selven to con-
founde. 245

36. His eyen two, for pitee of his herte,
Out stremeden as swifte welles twaye;
The heighe sobbes of his sorwes smerte
His speche him rafte, unnethes mighte
he seye, 249

'O deeth, alas! why wiltow do me deye?
A-cursed be the day which that nature
Shoop me to ben a lyves creature!'

37. But after, whan the furie and the
rage

Which that his herte twists and faste
threste, 254

By lengthe of tyme somewhat gan asswage,
Up-on his bed he leyde him doun to reste;
But the bigonne his teres more out-breste,
That wonder is, the body may suffyse
To half this wo, which that I yow devyse.

38. Than seyde he thus, 'Fortune! alas
the whyle! 260

What have I doon, what have I thus
a-gilt?

How mightestow for renthe me bigyle?
Is ther no grace, and shal I thus be spilt?
Shal thus Criseyde away, for that thou
wilt? 264

Allas! how maystow in thyn herte finde
To been to me thus cruel and unkinde?

39. Have I thee nought honoured al my
lyve,

As thou wel wost, above the goddes alle?
Why wiltow me fro joye thus deprive?

O Troilus, what may men now thee calle
But wrecche of wrecches, out of honour
falle 271

In-to miserie, in which I wol biwayle
Criseyde, alas! til that the breeth me
fayle?

40. Allas, Fortune! if that my lyf in joye
Displeased hadde un-to thy foule envye,
Why ne haddestow my fader, king of
Troye, 276

By-raft the lyf, or doon my bretheren dye,
Or slayn my-self, that thus compleyne
and crye,

I, combre-world, that may of no-thing
serve,

But ever dye, and never fully sterve? 280

41. If that Criseyde allone were me last,
Nought roughthe I whider thou woldest
me sterve;

And hir, alas! than hastow me biraft.
But ever-more, lo! this is thy manere,

To reve a wight that most is to him dore,
To prove in that thy gerful violence. 286
Thus am I lost, ther helpeth no defence.

42. O verray lord of love, O god, alas !
That knowest best myn herte and al my
thought,
What shal my sorwful lyf don in this cas
If I for-go that I so dere have bought? 291
Sin ye Cryseyde and me han fully brought
In-to your grace, and bothe our hertes
seled,

How may ye suffre, alas ! it be repeled ?

43. What I may doon, I shal, why! I may
dure 295

On lyve in torment and in cruel peyne,
This infortune or this disaventure,
Allone as I was born, y-wis, compleyne ;
Ne never wil I seen it shyne or reyne ;
But ende I wil, as Edippe, in derknesse
My sorwful lyf, and dyen in distresse. 301

44. O wery goost, that errest to and fro,
Why niltow fleen out of the wofulleste
Body, that ever mighte on grounde go?
O soule, lurkinge in this wo, unneste, 305
Flee forth out of myn herte, and lat it
breste,

And folwe alwey Criseyde, thy lady dere ;
Thy righte place is now no lenger here !

45. O wofulle eyen two, sin your disport
Was al to seen Criseydes eyen brighte,
What shal ye doon but, for my discom-
fort, 311

Stonden for nought, and wepen out your
sighte?

Sin she is queynt, that wont was yow to
lighte,

In veyn fro-this-forth have I eyen tweye
Y-formed, sin your vertue is a-weye. 315

46. O my Criseyde, O lady sovereyne
Of thilke woful soule that thus cryeth,
Who shal now yeven comfort to my peyne?
Allas, no wight ; but when myn herte
dyeth,

My spirit, which that so un-to yow hyeth,
Receyve in gree, for that shal ay yow
serve ; 321

For-thy no fors is, though the body sterve.

47. O ye loveres, that heighe upon the
wheel

Ben set of Fortune, in good aventure,

God leve that ye finde ay love of steel, 325
And longe mot your lyf in joye endure !
But whan ye comen by my sepulture,
Remembreth that your felawe resteth
there ;

For I lovede eek, though I unworthy
were. 329

48. O olde unholosom and mislyved man,
Calkas I mene, alas ! what eyleth thee
To been a Greek, sin thou art born
Trojan ?

O Calkas, which that wilt my bane be,
In cursed tyme was thou born for me !
As wolde blisful Jove, for his joye, 335
That I thee hadde, where I wolde, in
Troye !'

49. A thousand sykes, hottere than the
glede,

Out of his brest ech after other wente,
Medled with pleyntes newe, his wo to
fede, 339

For which his woful teres never stente ;
And shortly, so his peynes him to-rente,
And wex so mat, that joye nor penaunce
He feleth noon, but lyth forth in a traunce.

50. Pandare, which that in the parlement
Hadde herd what every lord and burgeys
seyde, 345

And how ful graunted was, by oon assent,
For Antenor to yelden so Criseyde,

Gan wel neigh wood out of his wit to
breyde,

So that, for wo, he niste what he mente ;
But in a rees to Troilus he wente. 350

51. A certeyn knight, that for the tyme
kepte

Thechaumbre-dore, un-dide it him anon ;
And Pandare, that ful tendreliche wepte,
In-to the derke chaumbre, as stille as
ston,

Toward the bed gan softly to goon, 355
So confus, that he niste what to seye ;
For verray wo his wit was neigh aweye.

52. And with his cher-
to-torn,

For sorwe of this, as
folden,

He stood this woful Troilus biforn, 360
And on his pitous face he gan biholden;
But lord, so often gan his herte colden,
Seing his freend in wo, whos hevynesse
His herte slow, as thoughte him, for dis-
tresse.

53. This woful wight, this Troilus, that
felte 365
His freend Pandare y-comen him to see,
Can as the snow ayein the sonne melte,
For which this sorwful Pandare, of pitee,
Can for to wepe as tendrelliche as he;
And specheles thus been thise ilke twaye,
That neyther mighte o word for sorwe
seye. 371

54. But at the laste this woful Troilus,
Ney deed for smart, gan bresten out to
rore,
And with a sorwful noyse he seyde thus,
Among his sobbes and his sykkes sore, 375
'Lo! Pandare, I am deed, with-outen
more.
Hastow nought herd at parlement,' he
seyde,
'For Antenor how lost is my Criseyde?'

55. This Pandarus, ful deed and pale of
hewe,
Ful pitously answerde and seyde, 'yis!
As wisly were it fals as it is trewe, 381
That I have herd, and wot al how it is.
O mercy, god, who wolde have trowed
this?
Who wolde have wend that, in so litel
a throwe, 384
Fortune our joye wolde han over-throwe?

56. For in this world ther is no creature,
As to my doom, that ever saw ruyne
Strangere than this, thorough cas or
aventure.
But who may al eschewe or al devyne?
Swich is this world; for-thy I thus de-
fyne, 390
†Ne truste no wight finden in Fortune
Ay propretee; hir yestes been comune.

57. But tel me this, why thou art now so
mad
To sorwen thus? Why lystow in this
wyse,

Sin thy desyr al holly hastow had, 395
So that, by right, it oughte y-now suffyse?
But I, that never felte in my servyse
A frendly chere or loking of an yē,
Let me thus wepe and wayle, til I dye.

58. And over al this, as thou wel wost
thy-selve, 400
This town is ful of ladies al aboute;
And, to my doom, fairer than swiche
twelve
As ever she was, shal I finde, in som
route,
Ye, oon or two, with-outen any doute. 404
For-thy be glad, myn owene dere brother,
If she be lost, we shul recovere another.

59. What, god for-bede alwey that ech
pleasaunce
In o thing were, and in non other wight!
If oon can singe, another can wel daunce;
If this be goodly, she is glad and light;
And this is fayr, and that can good
a-right. 411
Ech for his vertu holden is for dore,
Bothe heroner and faucon for rivere.

60. And ask, as writ Zanzis, that was ful
wys,
"The newe love out chaceth ofte the
olde;" 415
And up-on newe cas lyth newe avys.
Thenk eek, thy-self to saven artow holde;
Swich fyr, by proces, shal of kinde colde.
For sin it is but casuel pleasaunce,
Som cas shal putte it out of remem-
braunce. 420

61. For al-so seur as day cometh after
night,
The newe love, labour or other wo,
Or elles selde seinge of a wight,
Don olde affeccionns alle over-go.
And, for thy part, thou shalt have oon of
tho 425
To abrigge with thy bittre peynes smerte;
Absence of hir shal dryve hir out of herte.'

62. Thise wordes seyde he for the nones
alle,
To helpe his freend, lest he for sorwe
deyde.

For doutelees, to doon his wo to falle, 430
He roughete not what unthrift that he
seyde.

But Troilus, that neigh for sorwe deyde,
Tok litel hede of al that ever he mente;
Oon ere it herde, at the other out it
wente:—

63. But at the laste answerde and seyde,
'freend, 435

This lechecraft, or heled thus to be,
Were wel sitting, if that I were a feend,
To traysen hir that trewe is unto me!
I pray god, lat this consayl never y-thee;
But do me rather sterve anon-right
here 440

Er I thus do as thou me woldest lere.

64. She that I serve, y-wis, what so thou
seye,

To whom myn herte enhabit is by right,
Shal han me holly hires til that I deye.
For, Pandarus, sin I have trouthe hir
hight, 445

I wol not been untrewe for no wight;
But as hir man I wol ay live and sterve,
And never other creature serve.

65. And ther thou seyst, thou shalt as
faire finde

As she, lat be, make no comparisoun 450
To creature y-formed here by kinde.

O leve Pandare, in conclusioun,
I wol not be of thyn opinioun,
Touching al this; for whiche I thee bi-
seche,

So hold thy pees; thou sleest me with
thy speche. 455

66. Thou biddest me I sholde love an-
other

Al freshly newe, and lat Criseyde go!
It lyth not in my power, leve brother.
And though I mighte, I wolde not do so.
But canstow pleyen raket, to and fro, 460
Netle in, dokke out, now this, now that,
Pandare?

Now foule falle hir, for thy wo that care!

67. Thou farest eek by me, thou Pan-
darus,

As he, that whan a wight is wo bi-gooun,

He cometh to him a pas, and seyth right
thus, 465

"Thenk not on smert, and thou shalt fele
noon."

Thou most me first transmuwen in a
stoon,

And reve me my passiounes alle,
Er thou so lightly do my wo to falle.

68. The deeth may wel out of my brest
departe 470

The lyf, so longe may this sorwe myne;
But fro my soule shal Criseydes darte
Out never-mo; but down with Proserpyne,
Whan I am deed, I wol go wone in pyne;
And ther I wol eternally compleyne 475
My wo, and how that twinned be we
tweyne.

69. Thou hast here maad an argument,
for fyn,

How that it sholde lasse payne be
Criseyde to for-gooun, for she was myn,
And live in ese and in felicitee. 480

Why gabbestow, that seydest thus to me
That "him is wors that is fro wele y-
throwe,

Than he hadde erst non of that wele
y-knowe?"

70. But tel me now, sin that thee thinketh
so light

To chaungen so in love, ay to and fro, 485

Why hastow not don bisily thy might

To chaungen hir that doth thee al thy wo?

Why niltow lete hir fro thyn herte go?

Why niltow love an-other lady swete,

That may thyn herte setten in quiete?

71. If thou hast had in love ay yet mis-
chaunce, 491

And canst it not out of thyn herte dryve,
I, that livede in lust and in plesaunce

With hir as mucche as creature on-lyve,

How sholde I that foryete, and that so
blyve? 495

O where hastow ben hid so longe in muwe,
That canst so wel and formely ~~argue~~?

72. Nay, nay, god wot,
thy reed,

For which, for what t

With-outen wordes me, I wol be deed. 500
O deeth, that endere art of sorwes alle,
Com now, sin I so ofte after thee calle;
For sely is that deeth, soth for to seyne,
That, ofte y-cleped, cometh and endeth
peyne.

73. Wel wot I, wnyl my lyf was in quite,
Er thou me slowe, I wolde have yeven
hyre; 506
But now thy cominge is to me so swete,
That in this world I no-thing so desyre.
O deeth, sin with this sorwe I am a-fyre,
Thou ontherdome anon in teres drence,
Or with thy colde strook myn hete
quenche! 511

74. Sin that thou sleest so fele in sondry
wyse
Ayens hir wil, unpreyed, day and night,
Do me, at my requeste, this servyse,
Delivere now the world, so dostow right,
Of me, that am the wofulleste wight 516
That ever was; for tyme is that I starve,
Sin in this world of right nought may
I serve.'

75. This Troilus in teres gan distille,
As licour out of alambyk ful faste; 520
And Pandarus gan holde his tunge stille,
And to the ground his eyen down he
caste.
But natheles, thus thoughte he at the
laste,
'What, parde, rather than my felawe
deye,
Yet shal I som-what more un-to him seye:'

76. And seyde, 'freend, sin thou hast
swich distresse, 526
And sin thee hast myn arguments to blame,
Whynilt thy-selven helpen doon redresse,
And with thy manhod letten al this
game?
Goraviashe hir ne canstow not for shame!
And outhur lat hir out of toun fare, 531
Or hold hir stille, and leve thy nyce fare.

77. Artow in Troye, and hast non hardi-
ment
To take a womman which that loveth
thee,

And wolde hir-selven been of thyn assent?
Now is not this a nyce vanitee? 536
Rys up anon, and lat this weping be,
And ~~know~~ thou art a man, for in this
houre
I wil be deed, or she shal ~~be~~ ^{be} ~~even~~ ^{even} oure.'

78. To this answerde him Troilus ful
softe, 540
And seyde, 'parde, love brother dere,
Al this have I my-self yet thought ful ofte,
And more thing than thou devysest here.
But why this thing is left, thou shalt wel
here; 544
And whan thou me hast yeve an audience,
Ther-after mayst thou telle al thy sen-
tence.

79. First, sin thou wost this toun hath al
this warre
For ravishyng of women so by might.
It sholde not be suffred me to erre, 549
As it stant now, ne doon so gret unright.
I sholde han also blame of every wight,
My fadres graunt if that I so withstode,
Sin she is chaunged for the tounes goode.

80. I have eek thought, so it were hir
assent,
To aske hir at my fader, of his grace; 555
Than thenke I, this were hir accusament,
Sin wel I woot I may hir not purchace.
For sin my fader, in so heigh a place
As parlement, hath hir eschaunge ensleed,
He nil for me his lettre be repeled. 560

81. Yet drede I most hir herte to per-
tourbe
With violence, if I do swich a game,
For if I wolde it openly distourbe,
It moste been disclaundre to hir name.
And me were lever deed than hir defame,
As nolde god but-if I sholde have 566
Hir honour lever than my lyf to save.'

82. Thus am I lost, for ought that I can
see;
For certeyn is, sin that I am hir knight,
I moste hir honour lever han than me
In every cas, as lovers oughte of right. 571
Thus am I with desyr and reoun twight,

Desyr for to distourben hir me redeth,
And reson nil not, so myn herte dredeth.'

83. Thus wepinge that he coude never
cesse, 575
He seyde, 'allas! how shal I, wrecche,
fare?

For wel fele I alwey my love encresse,
And hope is lasse and lasse alwey, Pan-
dare!

Encressen eek the causes of my care;
So wel-a-vey, why nil myn herte breste?
For, as in love, ther is but litel reste.' 581

84. Pandare answerde, 'freend, thou
mayst, for me,
Don as thee list; but hadde ich it so hote,
And thyn estat, she sholde go with me;
Though al this toun cryede on this thing
by note, 585

I nolde sette at al that noyse a grote.
For when men han wel cryed, than wol
they rounne;
A wonder last but nyne night never in
tounne.

85. Devyne not in reson ay so depe
Ne curteysly, but help thy-self anoon; 590
Bet is that othere than thy-selven wepe,
And namely, sin ye two been al oon.
Rys up, for by myn heed, she shal not
goon;
And rather be in blame a lyte y-founde
Than sterve here as a gnat, with-oute
wounde. 595

86. It is no shame un-to yow, ne no vyce
Hir to with-holden, that ye loveth most.
Paraunter, she mighte holden thee for
nyce
To lete hir go thus to the Grekes ost.
Thenk eek Fortune, as wel thy-selven
wost, 600
Helpeth hardy man to his empryse,
And weyveth wrecches, for hir cowardyse.

87. And though thy lady wolde a litel hir
greve,
Thou shalt thy pees ful wel here-after
make,
But as for me, certayn, I can not leve 605
That she wolde it as now for yvel take.

Why sholde than for ferd thyn herte
quake?

Thenk eek how Paris hath, that is thy
brother,
A love; and why shaltow not have
another?

88. And Troilus, o thing I dar thee
swere, 610
That if Criseyde, whiche that is thy leef,
Now loveth thee as wel as thou dost here,
God helpe me so, she nil not take a-greef,
Though thou do bote a-noon in this
mischeef.

And if she wilneth fro thee for to passe,
Thanne is she fals; so love hir wel the
lasse. 616

89. For-thy tak herte, and thenk, right as
a knight,
Thourgh love is broken alday every lawe.
Kyth now sumwhat thy corage and thy
might,
Have mercy on thy-self, for any awe. 620
Lat not this wrecched wo thin herte
gnawe,

But manly set the world on sixe and
sevene;
And, if thou deye a martir, go to hevene.

90. I wol my-self be with thee at this
dede,
Though ich and al my kin, up-on a
stounde, 625
Shulle in a strete as dogges liggen dede,
Thourgh-girt with many a wyd and bloody
wounde.

In every cas I wol a freend be founde.
And if thee list here sterven as a wrecche,
A-dieu, the devel spede him that it
recche!' 630

91. This Troilus gan with tho wordes
quiken,
And seyde, 'freond, graunt mercy, ich
assente;
But certaynly thou mayst not me so
priken,
Ne payne noon ne may 635
That, for no cas, it is
At shorte wordes, th
To ravisshe hir, but-

92. 'Why, so mene I,' quod Pandarus, 'al
this day.

But tel me than, hastow hir wel assayed,
That sorwest thus?' And he answerde,
'nay.' 640

'Wher-of artow,' quod Pandarus, 'thah
a-mayed,

That noot not that she wol ben yvel
apayed

To ravish hir, sin thou hast not ben
there,

But-if that Jove tolde it in thyn ere?

93. For-thy rys up, ^{for thy ryghte} as nought ne were,
anoon, 645

And wash thy face, and to the king thou
wende,

Or he may wondren whider thou art goon.
Thou most with wisdom him and othere
blende;

Or, up-on cas, he may after thee sende
Er thou be war; and shortly, brother
dere, 650

Be glad, and lat me werke in this matere.

94. For I shal shape it so, that sikerly
Thou shalt this night som tyme, in som
manere,

Com spake with thy lady prevaly,
And by hir wordes eek, and by hir chere,
Thou shalt ful sone aparceyve and wel
here 656

Al hir entente, and in this cas the beste;
And fare now wel, for in this point I
reste.'

95. The swifte Fame, whiche that false
thinges

Egal reporteth lyk the thinges trewe, 660
Was thorough-out Troye y-fled with preste
winges

From man to man, and made this tale al
newe,

How Calcas doughter, with hir brighte
hewe,

At parlement, with-oute wordes more,
I-granted was in chaunge of Antenor. 665

96. The whiche tale anoон-right as Cri-
seyde

Had herd, she which that of hir fader
roughte,

As in this cas, right nought, ne whanne
he deyde,

Ful bisily to Juppiter bisoughte
Yeve him mischaunce that this tretis
broughte. 670

But shortly, lest thise tales sothe were,
She dorste at no wight asken it, for fere;

97. As she that hadde hir herte and al hir
minde

On Troilus y-set so wonder faste,
That al this world ne mighte hir love
unbinde, 675

Ne Troilus out of hir herte caste;
She wol ben his, whyl that hir lyf may
laste.

And thus she brenneth bothe in love and
drede,

So that she niste what was best to rede.

98. But as men seen in toune, and al
aboute, 680

That women usen frendes to visyte,
So to Criseyde of women com a route
For ^{for} joye, and wenden hir delyte;
And with hir tales, dere y-nough a myte,
These women, whiche that in the cite
dwelle, 685

They sette hem down, and seyde as I shal
telle.

99. Quod first that oon, 'I am glad,
trewely,

By-cause of yow, that shal your fader see.'
A-nother seyde, 'y-wis, so nam not I;
For al to litel hath she with us be.' 690

Quod the the thridde, 'I hope, y-wis,
that she

Shal bringon us the pees on every syde,
That, whan she gooth, almighty god hir
gyde!'

100. The wordes and the wommannishe
thinges,

She herde hem right as though she
thennes were; 695

For, god it wot, hir herte on other thing
is,

Although the body sat among hem there.
Hir advertence is alwey elles-where;

For Troilus ful faste hir soule soughte;
With-uten word, alwey on him she
thoughte, 700

101. Thise wommen, that thus wenden
hir to plesse,
Aboute nought gonne alle hir tales
spende ;

Swich vanitee ne can don hir non ese,
As she that, al this mene whyle, brende
Of other passioun than that they wende,
So that she felte almost hir herte dye 706
For wo, and wery of that companye.

102. For which no lenger mighte she
restreyne

Hir teres, so they gonnen up to welle,
That yeven signes of the bitter peyne 710
In whiche hir spirit was, and moste
dwelle ;

Remembring hir, fro heven unto which
helle

She fallen was, sith she forgoth the
sighte

Of Troilus, and sorowfully she sighte. 714

103. And thilke foles sittinge hir aboute
Wenden, that she wepte and syked sore
By-cause that she sholde out of that route
Departe, and never pleye with hem more.
And they that hadde y-knowen hir of yore
Seyd hir so wepe, and thoughte it kinde-
nesse, 720

And eke of hem wepte eek for hir dis-
tresse ;

104. And bisily they gonnen hir conforten
Of thing, god wot, on which she litel
thoughte ;

And with hir tales wenden hir disporten,
And to be glad they often hir bisoughte.

But swich an ese ther-with they hir
wroughte 726

Right as a man is esed for to fele,
For ache of heed, to clawen him on his
helo !

105. But after al this nyce vanitee
They took hir leve, and hoom they wenten
alle. 730

Criseyde, ful of sorweful pitee,
In-to hir chaumbre up wente out of the
halle,

And on hir bed she gan for deed to falle,
In purpos never thennes for to ryse ;

And thus she wroughte, as I shal yow
devyse. 735

106. Hir ounded heer, that sonnish was
of hewe,
She rente, and eek hir fingres longe and
smale

She wrong ful ofte, and bad god on hir
rewere,

And with the deeth to doon bote on hir
bale.

Hir hewe, whylom bright, that tho was
pale, 740

Bar witnes of hir wo and hir constreynte ;
And thus she spak, sobbinge, in hir com-
pleynte :

107. 'Alas !' quod she, 'out of this
region

I, woful wrecche and infortuned wight.
And born in corsed constellacioun, 745

Mot goon, and thus departen fro my
knight ;

Wo worth, alas ! that ilke dayes light
On which I saw him first with eyen
tweyne,

That causeth me, and I him, al this
peyne !'

108. Therwith the teres from hir eyen
two 750

Doun fille, as shour in Aperill, ful swythe :
Hir whyte brest she bet, and for the wo

After the deeth she cryed a thousand
sythe,

Sin he that went hir wo was for to lythe,
She mot for-goon ; for which disaventure

She held hir-self a forlost creature. 756

109. She seyde, 'how shal he doon, and
I also ?

How sholde I live, if that I from him
twinne ?

O dere herte eek, that I love so,
Who shal that sorwe sleen that ye ben
inne ? 760

O Calkas, fader, thyn be al this sinne !
O moder myn, that cleped were Argyve,

Wo worth that day that thou me bere on
lyve !

110. To what fyn shol
thus ?

How sholde a fish w
What is Criseyde w

How sholde a plaunte or lyves creature
Live, with-oute his kinde noriture?
For which ful oft a by-word here I soye,
That, "rotelesse, mot grene sone daye." 770

111. I shal don thus, sin neither sward ne
darte
Dar I non handle, for the ^{violence} crueltee,
That ilke day that I from yow departe,
If sorwe of that nil not my hanc be,
Than shal no mete or drinke come in
me 775
Til I my soule out of my breste unshethe;
And thus my-selven wol I do to deth.

112. And, Troilus, my clothes evericheon
Shul blake been, in tokeninge, herte
swete,
That I am as out of this world agoon, 780
That wont was yow to setten in quite;
And of myn ordre, ay til deeth me mete,
The observaunce ever, in your absence,
Shal sorwe been, compleynte, and absti-
nence.

113. Myn herte and eek the woful goost
ther-inne 785
Biquethe I, with your spirit to compleyne
Eternally, for they shul never twinne.
For though in erthe ytwinned be we
as in Dante's Inferno
As in the feld of pitee, out of peyne,
That hight Elysos, shul we been y-fere, 790
As Orpheus and Erudice his fere.

114. Thus herte myn, for Antenor, allas!
I sone shal be chaunged, as I wene.
But how shul ye don in this sorwful
cas,
How shal your tendre herte this sustene?
But herte myn, for-yet this sorwe and
tene, 795
And me also; for, soothly for to seyn,
So ye wel fare, I recche not to deye.'

115. How mighte it ever y-red ben or
y-songe,
The pleynte that she made in hir dis-
trese? 800
I noot; but, as for me, my litel tonge,
If I discreven wolde hir hevynesse,
It sholde make hir sorwe some lesse

Than that it was, and childishly deface
Hir heigh compleynte, and therfore I it
paca. 805

116. Pandare, which that sent from
Troilus
Was to Criseyde, as ye han herd devyse,
That for the beste it was accorded thus,
And he ful glad to doon him that servyse,
Un-to Criseyde, in a ful secree wyse, 810
Ther-as she lay in torment and in rage,
Com hir to telle al hoolly his message.

117. And fond that she hir-selven gan to
tete
Ful pitously; for with hir salte tores
Hir brest, hir face y-bathed was ful
wete; 815
The mighty tresses of hir sonnish herea,
Unbroyden, hangen al aboute hir eres.
Which gaf him verray signal of martyre
Of deeth, which that hir herte gan
desyre.

118. Whan she him saw, she gan for sorwe
anoon 820
Hir tery face a-twixe hir armes hyde,
For which this Pandare is so wo bi-goon,
That in the hous he mighte unnethe
abyde,
As he that pitee felte on every syde.
For if Criseyde hadde erst compleyned
sore, 825
Tho gan she pleyne a thousand tymes
more.

119. And in hir aspre pleynte than she
seyde,
'Pandare first of joyes me than two
Was cause causinge un-to me, Criseyde,
That now transmuwed been in cruel
wo. 830
Wher shal I seye to yow "wel come" or
no,
That alderfirst me broughte in-to servyse
Of love, allas! that endeth in swich wyse?

120. Endeth than love in wo? Ye, or men
lyoth! 835
And alle worldly blisse, as thinketh me.
The ende of blisse ay sorwe it occupyeth
And who-so troweth not that it so be.

Lat him upon me, woful wrecche, y-see,
That my-self hate, and ay my birthe
acorse,
Feling alwey, fro wikke I go to worse.

121. Who-so me seeth, he seeth sorwe al
at ones, 841

Peyne, torment, pleynte, wo, distresse.
Out of my woful body harm ther noon is,
As anguish, langour, cruel bitternesse,
A-noy, smert, drede, fury, and eek sik-
nesse. 845

I trowe, y-wis, from hevne teres reyne,
For pitee of myn aspre and cruel peyne !'

122. 'And thou, my suster, ful of dis-
comfort,' 848

Quod Pandarus, 'what thenkestow to do?
Why ne hastow to thy-selven som resport,
Why woltow thus thy-selve, alas, for-do?
Leef al this werk and tak now hede to
That I shal seyn, and herkne, of good
entente,
This, which by me thy Troilus thee
sente.'

123. Torned hir tho Criseyde, a wo
makinge 855

So greet that it a deeth was for to see :—
'Allas !' quod she, 'what wordes may ye
bringe ?

What wol my dere herte seyn to me,
Which that I drede never-mo to see ? 859
Wol he have pleynte or teres, er I wende ?
I have y-nowe, if he ther-after sende !'

124. She was right swich to seen in hir
visage

As is that wight that men on here binde ;
Hir face, lyk of Paradys the image,
Was al y-chaunged in another kinde. 865
The pleye, the laughtre men was wont to
finde

In hir, and eek hir joyes everychone,
Ben fled, and thus lyth now Criseyde
allone.

125. Aboute hir eyen two a purple ring
Bi-trent, in sothfast tokninge of hir
peyne, 870

That to biholde it was a dedly thing,
For which Pandare mighte not restreyne

The teres from his eyen for to reyne.
But nathelless, as he best mighte, he seyde—
From Troilus thise wordes to Criseyde. 875

126. 'Lo, nece, I trowe ye han herd al
how

The king, with othere lordes, for the
beste,

Hath mad eschaunge of Antenor and
yow,

That cause is of this sorwe and this
unreste.

But how this cas doth Troilus moleste, 880
That may non erthely mannes tonge
seye ;

For verray wo his wit is al aweye.

127. For which we han so sorwed, he
and I,

That in-to litel bothe it hadde us slawe :
But thurgh my conseil this day, fynally.
He somewhat is fro weping now with-
drawe. 884

And semeth me that he desyreth fawe
With yow to been al night, for to devyse
Remede in this, if ther were any wyse.

128. This, short and pleyne, th'effect of
my message, 890

As ferforth as my wit can comprehende.
Forye, that been of torment in swich rage,
May to no long prologe as now entende ;
And her-upon ye may answeere him sende.
And, for the love of god, my nece dere,
So leef this wo er Troilus be here.' 896

129. 'Gret is my wo,' quod she, and sighte
sore,

As she that feleth dedly sharp distresse ;
'But yet to me his sorwe is muchel more,
That love him bet than he him-self.
I gesse. 900

Allas ! for me hath he swich hevinesse ?
Can he for me so pitously compleyne ?
Y-wis, this sorwe doubleth al my peyne.

130. Grevous to me, god wot, is for to
twinne,'

Quod she, 'but yet it b—
To seen that sorwe w
For wel wot I, it wo
And deye I wol in c'

But bidde him come, er deeth, that thus
me threteth,
Dryve out that goost, which in myn herte
beteth.' 910

131. Thise wordes seyde, she on hir armes
two *from*
Fil grete, and gan to wepe pitously.
Quod Pandarus, 'allas! why do ye so,
Syn wel ye wot the tyme is faste by,
That he shal come? Arys up hastely, 915
That he yow nat biwopen thus ne finde,
But ye wol han him wood out of his
minde!

132. For wiste he that ye ferde in this
manere,
He wolde him-selve slee; and if I wende
To han this fare, he sholde not come
here 920
For al the good that Pryam may despende.
For to what fyn he wolde anon pretende,
That knowe I wel; and for-thy yet I seye,
So leef this sorwe, or platly he wol deye.

133. And shapeth yow his sorwe for to
abregge, 925
And nought encresse, leve nece swete;
Beth rather to him cause of flat than
egge,
And with som wysdom ye his sorwes bete.
That helpeth it to wepen ful a strete,
Er though ye bothe in salte teres dreynte?
Bet is a tyme of cure ay than of pleynte. 931

134. I mene thus; whan I him hider
bringe,
Syn ye ben wyse, and bothe of oon assent,
So shapeth how distourbe your goinge,
Or come ayen, sone after ye be went. 935
Wommen ben wyse in short avysement;
And lat sen how your wit shal now
avayle;
And what that I may helpe, it shal not
fayle.'

135. 'Go,' quod Criseyde, 'and uncle,
trewely,
I shal don al my might, me to restreyne
From weping in his sight, and bisily, 941
Him for to glade, I shal don al my payne,
And in myn herte seken every veyne;

If to this soor ther may be founden salve,
It shal not lakken, certain, on myn
halve.' 945

136. Goth Pandarus, and Troilus he
soughte,
Til in a temple he fond him allone,
As he that of his lyf no lenger roughte;
But to the ~~grosse~~ *grosse* goddes everichone
Ful ~~zandraly~~ *zandraly* he preyde, and made his
mone, 950
To doon him sone out of this world to
pace;
For wel he thoughte ther was non other
grace.

137. And shortly, al the sothe for to seye,
He was so fallen in despeyr that day,
That outrely he shoop him for to deye. 955 *substantive*
For right thus was his argument alwey:
He seyde, he nas but loren, waylawey!
'For al that comth, comth by necessitee;
Thus to be lorn, it is my destinee.

138. For certaynly, this wot I wel,' he
seyde, 960
'That for-sight of divyne purveyaunce
Hath seyn alwey me to for-gon Criseyde,
Sin god seeth every thing, out of dout-
aunce,
And hem desponeth, thourgh his orde-
naunce,
In hir merytes sothly for to be, 965
As they shul comen by predestinee.

139. But nathelees, alas! whom shal I
leve?
For ther ben grete clerkes many oon,
That destinee thourgh argumentes preve;
And som men seyn that nedely ther is
noon; 970
But that free choys is yeven us everichoon.
O, welaway! so sleye arn clerkes olde,
That I not whos opinion I may holde.

140. For som men seyn, if god seth al
biforn,
Ne god may not deceyved ben, pardee, 975
Than moot it fallen, though men hadde it
sworn,
That purveyaunce hath seyn bifore to be.
Wherfor I seye, that from eterne if he

leave

Hath wist biforn our thought eek as our dede,
We have no free chois, as these clerkes rede. 980

141. For other thought nor other dede also

Might never be, but swich as purveyaunce,
Which may not ben deceyved never-mo,
Hath feled biforn, with-uten ignoraunce.
For if ther mighte been a variaunce 985
To wrythen out fro goddes purveyinge,
Ther nere no prescience of thing cominge;

142. But it were rather an opinioun
Uncerteyn, and no stedfast forseinge;
lee doct And certes, that were an abusioun, 990
That god shuld han no parfit cleer witinge
More than we men that han doutous weninge. .

But swich an errour up-on god to gesse
Were fals and foul, and wikked corsed-
nesse.

143. Eek this is an opinioun of somme 995
That han hir top ful heighe and smothe
y-shore;

They seyn right thus, that thing is not to
come

For that the prescience hath seyn bfore
That it shal come; but they seyn, that
therfore

That it shal come, therefore the purvey-
aunce 1000

Wot it biforn with-uten ignoraunce;

144. And in this manere this necessitee
Retorneth in his part contrarie agayn.
For needfully bihoveth it not to be
That thilke thinges fallen in certayn 1005
That ben purveyed; but nedely, as they
seyn,

Bihoveth it that thinges, whiche that
falle,

That they in certayn ben purveyed alle.

145. I mene as though I laboured me in
this,

To enqueren which thing cause of which
thing be; 1010

As whether that the prescience of god is
The certayn cause of the necessitee

Of thinges that to comen been, pardee;
Or if necessitee of thing cominge
Be cause certeyn of the purveyinge. 1015

146. But now ne enforce I me nat in
showinge

How the ordre of causes stant; but wel
wot I,

That it bihoveth that the bifallinge
Of thinges wist biforen certeynly
Be necessarie, al seme it not ther-by 1020
That prescience put falling necessaire
To thing to come, al falle it foule or
faire.

147. For if ther sit a man yond on a see,
Than by necessitee bihoveth it
That, certes, thyn opinioun soth be, 1025
That wenest or coniectest that he sit;
And ferther-over now ayenward yit,
Lo, right so it is of the part contrarie,
As thus; (now herkne, for I wol not
tarie):

148. I seye, that if the opinioun of thee
Be sooth, for that he sit, than seye ~~■~~
this, 1030 ~~■~~

That he mot sitten by necessitee;
And thus necessitee in either is.
For in him nede of sitting is, y-wis,
And in thee nede of sooth; and thus, for —
sothe, 1035 ~~■~~
Ther moot necessitee ben in yow bothe.

149. But thou mayst seyn, the man sit
not therfore,

That thyn opinion of sitting soth is;
But rather, for the man sit ther bfore,
Therefore is thyn opinion sooth, y-wis. 1040
And I seye, though the cause of sooth of
this

Comth of his sitting, yet necessitee
Is entrechaunged, bothe in him and thee.

150. Thus on this same wyse, out of
doutaunce,

I may wel maken, as it semeth me, 1045
My resoninge of goddes purveyinge

And of the thinges that ~~■~~
By whiche reson men

That thilke thinges;
That by necessitee t

151. For al-though that, for thing shal
come, y-wis,

Therefore is it purveyed, certaynly,
Nat that it comth for it purveyed is :
Yet natheles, bihoveth it nedfully,
That thing to come be purveyed, trewely ;
Or elles, thinges that purveyed be, 1056
That they biyden by necessitee.

152. And this suffyeth right y-now,
certeyn,

For to destroye our free chois every del. —
But now is this abusion to seyn, 1060
That fallinge of the thinges temporel
Is cause of goddes prescience eternal.
Now trewely, that is a fals sentence,
That thing to come sholde cause his
prescience.

153. What mighte I wene, and I hadde
swich a thought, 1065

But that god purveyth thing that is to
come

For that it is to come, and elles nought ?
So mighte I wene that thinges alle and
some,

That whylom been bifalle and over-come,
Ben cause of thilke sovereyn purvey-
aunce, 1070

That for-wot al with-uten ignoraunce.

154. And over al this, yet seye I more
herto,

That right as whan I woot ther is a
thing,

Y-wis, that thing mot nedefully be so,
Lik right so, whan I woot a thing
coming, 1075

So mot it come ; and thus the bifalling
Of thinges that ben wist bfore the tyde,
They mowe not been eschewed on no
syde.

155. Than seyde he thus, 'almighty Jove
in trone,

That woot of al this thing the soothfast-
nesse, 1080

Rewe on my sorwe, or do me deye sone,
Or bring Criseyde and me fro this dis-
trasse.

And whyl he was in al this hevynesse,

Disputinge with him-self in this matere,
Com Pandare in, and seyde as ye may
here. 1085

156. 'O mighty god,' quod Pandarus, 'in
trone,

Ey ! who seigh ever a wys man faren so ?
Why, Troilus, what thenkestow to done ?
Hastow swich lust to been thyn owene fo ?
What, parde, yet is not Criseyde a-go ! 1090
Why lust thee so thy-self for-deon for
drede,

That in thyn heed thyn eyen semen dede ?

157. Hastow not lived many a yeer bi-
forn

With-uten hir, and ferd ful wel at ese ?
Artow for hir and for non other born ?

Hath kind thee wroughte al-only hir to
plese ? 1096

Lat be, and thank right thus in thydisee
That, in the dees right as ther fallen
chaunces,

Right so in love, ther come and goon
pleasaunces.

158. And yet this is a wonder most of alle,
Why thou thus sorwest, sin thou nost
not yit, 1101

Touching hir goinge, how that it shal
falle,

Ne if she can hir-self disturben it.

Thou hast not yet assayed al hir wit.

A man may al by tyme his nekke bede 1105
Whan it shal of, and sorwen at the nede.

159. For-thy take hede of that that I shal
seye ;

I have with hir y-spoke and longe y-be,
So as accorded was bitwixe us tweye.

And ever-mo me thinketh thus, that she
Hath som-what in hir hertes prevetes,

Wher-with she can, if I shal right arede,
Distorbe al this, of which thou art in
drede. 1113

160. For which my counsail is, whan it is
night,

Thou to hir go, and make of this an
ende ;

And blisful Juno, thorough hir grete
mighte, 1116

Shal, as I hope, hir grace un-to us sende.
Myn herte seyth, "certeyn, she shal not
wende ;"

And for-thy put thyn herte a whyle in
reste ; 1119

And hold this purpos, for it is the beste.'

161. This Troilus answerde, and sighte
sore,

'Thou seyst right wel, and I wil do right
so ;'

And what him liste, he seyde un-to it
more.

And whan that it was tyme for to go,
Ful prevely him-self, with-uten mo, 1125
Un-to hir com, as he was wont to done ;
And how they wroughte, I shal yow telle
sone.

162. Soth is, that whan they gonne first
to mete, 1128

So gan the payne hir hertes for to twiste,
That neither of hem other mighte grete,
But hem in armes toke and after kiste.

The lasse wofulle of hem bothe niste
Wher that he was, ne mighte o word
out-bringe,

As I seyde erst, for wo and for sobbinge.

163. Tho woful teres that they leten
fallo 1135

As bittre weren, out of teres kinde,
For payne, as is ligne-aloës or galle.
So bittre teres weep nought, as I finde,
The woful Myrra through the bark and
rinde.

That in this world ther nis so hard an
herte, 1140

That nolde han rewed on hir peynes
smerte.

164. But whan hir woful wery gostes
tweyne

Retorned been ther-as hem oughte dwelle,
And that som-what to wayken gan the
payne

By lengthe of pleynte, and ebben gan the
welle 1145

Of hire teres, and the herte unswelle,
With broken voys, al hoors for-shright,
Criseyde

To Troilus thise ilke wordes seyde :

165. 'O Jove, I deye, and mercy I be-
seche !

Help, Troilus!' and ther-with-al hir face
Upon his brest she leyde, and loste
speche ; 1151

Hir woful spirit from his propre place,
Right with the word, alwey up poynt to
pace.

And thus she lyth with hewes pale and
grene,

That whylom fresh and fairest was to
sene. 1155

166. This Troilus, that on hir gan biholde,
Clepinge hir name, (and she lay as for-
deed,

With-oute answer, and felte hir limes-
colde,

Hir eyen throwen upward to hir heed),
This sorwful man can now noon other
reed, 1160

But ofte tyme hir colde mouth he kiste ;
Wher him was wo, god and him-self it
wiste !

167. He rist him up, and long streight he
hir leyde ;

For signe of lyf, for ought he can or
may,

Can he noon finde in no-thing on Cri-
seyde, 1165

For which his song ful ofte is 'weylaway !'
But whan he saugh that specheles she
lay,

With sorwful voys, and herte of blisse al
bare,

He seyde how she was fro this world
y-fare !

168. So after that he longe hadde hir
compleyned, 1170

His hondes wronge, and seyde that was to
seye,

And with his teres salte hir brest bi-
reyned,

He gan tho teres wyppen of ful dreye,
And pitously gan for the soule preye,

And seyde, 'O lord, that set art in thy
trone, 1175

Rewe eek on me, for I shal folwo hir
sone !'

169. She cold was and with-uten sente-
ment,
For aught he woot, for breeth ne felte he
noon;
And this was him a preignant argument
That she was forth out of this world
agoon; 1180
And whan he seigh ther was non other
woon,
He gan hir limes dresse in swich manere
As men don hem that shul be leyd on bere.

170. And after this, with sterne and cruel
herte,
His sword a-noon out of his shethe he
twichte, 1185
Him-self to sleen, how sore that him
smerte,
So that his sowle hir sowle folwen mighte,
Ther-as the doom of Mynos wolde it dighte;
Sin love and cruel Fortune it ne wolde,
That in this world he langer liven sholde.

171. Thanne seyde he thus, fulfild of
heigh daynyn, 1191
'O cruel Jove, and thou, Fortune adverse,
This al and som, that falsly have ye
slayn
Criseyde, and sin ye may do me no werse,
Py on your might and werkes so di-
verse! 1195
Thus cowardly ye shul me never winne;
Ther shal no deeth me fro my lady twinne.

172. For I this world, sin ye han slayn hir
thus,
Wol lete, and folowe hir spirit lowe or hye;
Shal never lover seyn that Troilus 1200
Dar not, for fere, with his lady dye;
For certeyn, I wol bere hir companye.
But sin ye wol not suffre us liven here,
Yet suffreth that our soules ben y-fere.

173. And thou, citee, whiche that I leve
in wo, 1205
And thou, Pryam, and bretheren al y-fere,
And thou, my moder, farewell! for I go;
And Attropos, make redy thou my bere!
And thou, Criseyde, o swete herte dere,
Receyve now my spirit!' wolde he seye,
With sword at herte, al redy for to dye.

174. But as god wolde, of swough ther-
with she abreyde, 1212
And gan to syke, and 'Troilus' she cryde;
And he answerde, 'lady myn Criseyde,
Live ye yet?' and leet his sword doun
glyde. 1215

'Ye, herte myn, that thanked be Cypyde!
Quod she, and ther-with-al she sore sighte;
And he bigan to glade hir as he mighte;

175. Took hir in armes two, and kiste hir
ofte,
And hir to glade he dide al his entente;
For which hir goost, that flikered ay
on-lofte, 1221
In-to hir woful herte ayain it wente.
But at the laste, as that hir eyen glente
A-syde, anon she gan his sword aspye,
As it lay bare, and gan for fere crye, 1225

176. And asked him, why he it hadde
out-drawe?
And Troilus anon the cause hir tolde,
And how himself ther-with he wolde
have slawe.

For which Criseyde up-on him gan bi-
holds,
And gan him in hir armes faste folde, 1230
And seyde, 'O mercy, god, lo, which a
dede!
Allas! how neigh we were bothe dede!

177. Thanne if I ne hadde spoken, as
grace was,
Ye wolde han slayn your-self anon?'
quod she.

'Ye, douteless;' and she answerde, 'allas!
For, by that ilke lord that made me, 1236
I nolde a forlong way on-lyve han be,
After your deeth, to han be crowned quene
Of al the lond the sonne on shyneth shene.

178. But with this selve sword, which
that here is, 1240
My-selve I wolde have slayn!'—quod she
tho;

'But ho, for we han right y-now of this,
And late us ryse and streight to bedde go,
And theris lat us speken of our wo.
For, by the mortar which that I see
brenne, 1245

Knowe I ful wel that day is not far henne.'

179. Whan they were in hir bedde, in
armes folde,
Nought was it lyk tho nightes here-biforn;
For pitously ech other gan biholde, 1249
As they that hadden al hir blisse y-lorn,
Biwaylinge ay the day that they were born.
Til at the last this sorwful wight Criseyde
To Troilus these ilke wordes seyde:—

180. 'Lo, herte myn, wel wot ye this,'
quod she, 1254
'That if a wight alwey his wo compleyne,
And seketh nought how holpen for to be,
It nis but folye and encrees of payne;
And sin that here assembled be we tweyne
To finde bote of wo that we ben inne,
It were al tyme sone to biginne. 1260

181. I am a womman, as ful wel ye woot,
And as I am avysed sodeynly,
So wol I telle yow, whyl it is hoot.
Me thinketh thus, that neither ye nor I
Oughte half this wo to make skilfully. 1265
For there is art y-now for to redresse
That yet is mis, and sleen this hevinesso.

182. Sooth is, the wo, the whiche that we
ben inne,
For ought I woot, for no-thing elles is
But for the cause that we sholden twinne.
Considered al, ther nis no-more amis. 1271
But what is thanne a remede un-to this,
But that we shape us sone for to mete?
This al and som, my dere herte swete.

183. Now that I shal wel bringen it
about 1275
To come ayein, sone after that I go,
Ther-of am I no maner thing in doute.
For dredeles, with-inne a wonke or two,
I shal ben here; and, that it may be so
By alle right, and in a wordes fewe, 1280
I shal yow wel an heap of weyes shewe.

184. For which I wol not make long
sermoun,
For tyme y-lost may not recovered be;
But I wol gon to my conclusioun, 1284
And to the beste, in ought that I can see.
And, for the love of god, for-yeve it me
If I speke ought ayein your hertes reste;
For trewely, I speke it for the beste;

185. Makinge alwey a protestacioun,
That now these wordes, whiche that I shal
seye, 1291
Nis but to shewe yow my mocion,
To finde un-to our helpe the beste weye;
And taketh it non other wyse, I preye.
For in effect what-so ye me comande,
That wol I doon, for that is no demaunde.

186. Now herkeneth this, ye han wel
understonde, 1296
My going graunted is by parlement
So ferforth, that it may not be with-sonde—
For al this world, as by my jugement.
And sin ther helpeth noon avysement 1301
To letten it, lat it passe out of minde;
And lat us shape a bettre wey to finde.

187. The sothe is, that the twinninge of
us tweyne
Wol us disese and cruelliche anoye.
But him bihoveth som-tyme han a payne,
That serveth love, if that he wol have
joye. 1306
And sin I shal no ferthere out of Troye
Than I may ryde ayein on half a morwe
It oughte lasse causen us to sorwe:

188. So as I shal not so ben hid in mawe,
That day by day, myn owene herte dere,
Sin wel ye woot that it is now a truwe,
Ye shul ful wel al myn estat y-here. 1313
And er that truwe is doon, I shal ben here.
And thanne have ye bothe Antenor y-
wonne
And me also; beth glad now, if ye conne;

189. And thenk right thus, "Criseyde is
now agoon, 1317
But what! she shal come hastely ayein;"
And whanne, allas? by god, lo, right
anoon,
Er dayes ten, this dar I sauffy seyn. 1320
And thanne at erste shul we been so fayn,
So as we shulle to-gederes ever dwelle,
That al this world ne mighte our blisse
telle.

190. I see that ofte, ther-as we ben now,
That for the beste, our conseil for to hyde,
Ye speke not with me, nor I with yow 1326
In fourtenight; ne see yow go ne ryde.

May ye not ten dayes thanne abyde,
For myn honour, in swich an aventure?
Y-wis, ye mowen elles lyte endure! 1330

191. Ye knowe eek how that al my kin is
here,
But-if that onliche it my fader be;
And eek myn othere thinges alle y-fere,
And nameliche, my dere herte, ye,
Whom that I nolde leven for to see 1335
For al this world, as wyd as it hath space;
Or elles, see ich never Joves face!

192. Why trowe ye my fader in this wyse
Coveiteth so to see me, but for drede 1339
Lest in this toun that folkes me dispyse
By-cause of him, for his unhappy dede?
What woot my fader what lyf that I lede?
For if he wiste in Troye how wel I fare,
Us neded for my wending nought to care.

193. Ye seen that every day eek, more
and more, 1345
Men trete of pees; and it supposed is,
That men the quene Eleyne shal restore,
And Grekes us restore that is mis.
So though ther nere comfort noon but
this, 1349
That men purposen pees on every syde,
Ye may the better at ese of herte abyde.

194. For if that it be pees, myn herte
dere,
The nature of the pees mot nedes dryve
That men moste entrecomunen y-fere,
And to and fro eek ryde and gon as blyve
Alday as thikke as been fien from an
hyve; 1356
And every wight han libertee to bleve
Wher-as him list the bet, with-uten leve.

195. And though so be that pees ther may
be noon,
Yet hider, though ther never pees ne
were, 1360
I moste come; for whider sholde I goon,
Or how mischaunce sholde I dwelle there
Among tho men of armes ever in fere?
For which, as wisly god my soule rede,
I can not seen wher-of ye sholden drede.

196. Have here another way, if it so be
That al this thing ne may yow not suffyse.

My fader, as ye knowen wel, pardee,
Is old, and elde is ful of coveityse.
And I right now have founden al the
gyse, 1370
With-oute net, wher-with I shal him
hente;
And herkeneth how, if that ye wole
assente.

197. Lo, Troilus, men seyn that hard it is
The wolf ful, and the wether hool to have;
This is to seyn, that men ful ofte, y-wis.
Mot spenden part, the remenaunt for to
save. 1376
For ay with gold men may the herte
grave
Of him that set is up-on coveityse;
And how I mene, I shal it yow devyse.

198. The moeble which that I have in
this toun 1380
Un-to my fader shal I take, and seye,
That right for trust and for savacioun
It sent is from a freend of his or tweye,
The whiche freendes ferventliche him
preye
To senden after more, and that in hye,
Whyl that this toun stant thus in ju-
partye. 1386

199. And that shal been an huge
quantitee,
Thus shal I seyn, but, lest it folk aspyde,
This may be sent by no wight but by me;
I shal eek shewen him, if pees bityde, 1390
What freendes that ich have on every syde
Toward the court, to doon the wrathe
pace
Of Priamus, and doon him stonde in
grace.

200. So, what for o thing and for other,
swete,
I shal him so enchaunten with my sawes,
That right in hevne his sowle is, shal he
mete! 1396
For al Appollo, or his clerkes lawes,
Or calculinge avayleth nought three
hawes;
Desyr of gold shal so his sowle blende.
That, as me lyst, I shal wel make an
ende. 1400

201. And if he wolde ought by his sort it
preve
If that I lye, in certayn I shal fonde

Distorben him, and plukke him by the
sleve,

Makinge his sort, and beren him on
honde,

He hath not wel the goddes understonde.

For goddes speken in amphibologyes, 1406

And, for a sooth, they tellen twenty lyes.

202. Eek drede fond first goddes, I sup-
pose,

Thus shal I seyn, and that his coward
herte

Made him amis the goddes text to glose,

Whan he for ferde out of his Delphos
sterte. 1411

And but I make him sone to converte,

And doon my reed with-inne a day or
tweye,

I wol to yow oblige me to deye.'

203. And treweliche, as writen wel I finde,
That al this thing was seyde of good en-
tente; 1416

And that hir herte trewe was and kinde
Towardes him, and spak right as she
mente,

And that she starf for wo neigh, whan
she wente,

And was in purpos ever to be trewe; 1420

Thus writen they that of hir werkis
knewe.

204. This Troilus, with herte and eres
spradde,

Herde al this thing devysen to and fro;

And verraylich him semed that he hadde

The selve wit; but yet to lete hir go 1425

His herte misforyaf him ever-mo.

But fynally, he gan his herte wreste

To trusten hir, and took it for the beste.

205. For which the grete furie of his
penaunce

Was queynt with hope, and ther-with
hem bitwene 1430

Bigan for joye the amoureuse daunce.

And as the briddes, whan the sonne is
shene,

Delyten in hir song in leves grene,

Right so the wordes that they spake
y-fere

Delyted hem, and made hir hertes clere.

206. But natheles, the wending of Cri-
seyde, 1436

For al this world, may nought out of his
minde;

For which ful ofte he pitously hir preyde,
That of hir heste he might hir trewe
finde. 1439

And seyde hir, 'certes, if ye be unkinde,

And but ye come at day set in-to Troye,

Ne shal I never have hele, honour, ne
joye.

207. For al-so sooth as sonne up-rist on
morwe,

And, god! so wisly thou me, woful
wrecche, 1444

To reste bringe out of this cruel sorwe,

I wol my-selven slee if that ye drecche.

But of my deeth though litel be to recche,

Yet, er that ye me cause so to smerte,

Dwel rather here, myn owene swete herte!

208. For trewely, myn owene lady dere.

Tho sleighes yet that I have herd yow
stere 1451

Ful shaply been to failen alle y-fere.

For thus men seyn, "that oon thenketh
the bere,

But al another thenketh his ledere."

Your sire is wys, and seyde is, out of drede,

"Men may the wyse at-renne, and not at-
rede." 1456

209. It is ful hard to halten unespyed

Bifore a crepul, for he can the craft;

Your fader is in sleighte as Argus yed;

For al be that his moeble is him biraft,

His olde sleighte is yet so with him laft,

Ye shal not blende him for your woman-
hede, 1462

Ne feyne a-right, and that is al my drede.

210. I noot if pees shal ever-mo bityde;

But, pees or no, for earnest ne for game,

I woot, sin Calkas on the Grekes syde

Hath ones been, and lost so foule his
name, 1467

He dar no more come here ayein for
shame;
For which that weye, for ought I can
espye,
To trusten on, nis but a fantasye. 1470

211. Ye shal eek seen, your fader shal
yow glose
To been a wyf, and as he can wel preche,
He shal som Greek so preyse and wel
alose,
That ravisschen he shal yow with his
speche, 1474
Or do yow doon by force as he shal teche.
And Troilus, of whom ye nil han routhen,
Shal causeles so sterven in his trouthe!

212. And over al this, your fader shal
despyse
Us alle, and seyn this citee nis but lorn;
And that th'assege never shal aryse, 1480
For-why the Grekes han it alle sworn
Til we be slayn, and doun our walles torn.
And thus he shal you with his wordes
fere,
That ay drede I, that ye wol bleve there.

213. Ye shul eek seen so many a lusty
knight 1485
A-mong the Grekes, ful of worthinesse,
And eche of hem with herte, wit, and
might
To plesen yow don al his besinesse,
That ye shul dullen of the rudenesse
Of us sely Trojanes, but-if routhen 1490
Remorde yow, or vertue of your trouthe.

214. And this to me so grevous is to
thinke,
That fro my brest it wol my soule rende;
Ne dredeles, in me ther may not sinke
A good opinioun, if that ye wende; 1495
For-why your faderes sleighte wol us
shende.

And if ye goon, as I have told yow yore,
So thenk I nam but deed, with-oute more.

215. For which, with humble, trewe, and
pitous herte, 1499
A thousand tymes mercy I yow preye;
So rcweth on myn aspre peynos smerte,

And doth somewhat, as that I shal yow
seye,
And lat us stele away bitwixe us tweye;
And thenk that folye is, whan man may
chese, 1504
For accident his substaunce ay to lese.

216. I mene this, that sin we mowe er
day
Wel stele away, and been to-gider so,
What wit were it to putten in assay,
In cas ye sholden to your fader go,
If that ye mighte come ayein or no? 1510
Thus mene I, that it were a gret folye
To putte that sikernes in jupartye.

217. And vulgarly to speken of substaunce
Of tresour, may we bothe with us lede
Y-nough to live in honour and plesaunce,
Til in-to tyme that we shul ben dede;
And thus we may eschewen al this
drede.
For everich other wey ye can recorde.
Myn herte, y-wis, may not ther-with
acorde. 1519

218. And hardily, ne dredeth no poverté,
For I have kin and freendes elles-where
That, though we comen in our bare sherte,
Us sholde neither lakke gold ne gere,
But been honoured whyl we dwelten
there. 1524
And go we anon, for, as in myn entente,
This is the beste, if that ye wole assente.'

219. Criseyde, with a syk, right in this
wyse 1527
Answerde, 'y-wis, my dero herte trewe,
We may wel stele away, as ye devyse,
And finde swiche unthrifty weyes newe;
But afterward, ful sore it wol us rewe.
And help me god so at my moste nede
As causeles ye suffren al this drede!

220. For thilke day that I for chorisslinge
Or drede of fader, or of other wight, 1535
Or for estat, delyt, or for weddinge
Be fals to yow, my Troilus, my knight,
Saturnes doughter, Juno, thorough hir
might,
As wood as Athamante do me dwelle
Eternaly in Stix, the put of helle! 1540

221. And this on every god celestial
I swere it yow, and eek on eche goddessse,
On every Nymphe and deite infernal,
On Satiry and Fauny more and lesse,
That halve goddes been of wildernessse ;
And Attropos my threed of lyf to-breste
If I be fals ; now trowe me if thow leste !

222. And thou, Simoys, that as an arwe
clere 1548
Thorough Troye rennest ay downward to
the see,

Ber witnessse of this word that seyde is
here, 1550

That thilke day that ich untrewe be
To Troilus, myn owene herte free,
That thou retorne bakwarde to thy welle,
And I with body and soule sinke in helle !

223. But that ye speke, away thus for
to go 1555
And leten alle your freendes, god for-
bede,

For any womman, that ye sholden so,
And namely, sin Troye hath now swich
nede

Of help ; and eek of o thing taketh hede,
If this were wist, my lif laye in balaunce,
And your honour ; god shilde us fro mis-
chaunce ! 1561

224. And if so be that pees her-after take,
As alday happeth, after anger, game,
Why, lord ! the sorwe and wo ye wolden
make, 1564

That ye ne dorste come ayein for shame !
And er that ye juparten so your name,
Beth nought to hasty in this hote fare ;
For hasty man ne wanteth never care.

225. What trowe ye the peple eek al
aboute 1569
Wolde of it seye ? It is ful light to arede.
They wolden seye, and swere it, out of
doute,

That love ne droof yow nought to doon
this dede,
But lust voluptuous and coward drede.
Thus were al lost, y-wis, myn herte dere,
Your honour, which that now shyneth so
clere. 1575

226. And also thenketh on myn honestee.
That floureth yet, how foule I sholde it
shende,

And with what filthe it spotted sholde be.
If in this forme I sholde with yow wende.
Ne though I livede un-to the worldes
ende, 1580

My name sholde I never ayeinward
winne ;

Thus were I lost, and that were routhe
and sinne.

227. And for-thy slee with reson al this
hete ;

Men seyn, "the suffraunt overcometh,"
pardee ;

Eek "who-so wol han leef, he leef mot
lete ;" 1585

Thus maketh vertue of necessitee
By pacience, and thenk that lord is he
Of fortune ay, that nought wol of hir
recche ;

And she ne daunteth no wight but a
wrecche.

228. And trusteth this, that certes, herte
swete, 1590

Er Phebus suster, Lucina the shene,
The Leoun passe out of this Ariete,

I wol ben here, with-uten any wene.

I mene, as helpe me Juno, hevenes quene,
The tenthe day, but-if that deeth me
assayle, 1595

I wol yow seen, with-uten any fayle.'

229. 'And now, so this be sooth,' quod
Troilus,

'I shal wel suffre un-to the tenthe day,
Sin that I see that nede it moot be thus.
But, for the love of god, if it be may, 1600
So lat us stele prively away ;

For ever in oon, as for to live in reste,
Myn herte seyth that it wol been the
beste.'

230. 'O mercy, god, what lyf is this?'
quod she ; 1604

'Allas, ye slee me thus for verray tene !

I see wel now that ye mistrusten me ;

For by your wordes it is wel y-sene.

Now, for the love of Cynthia the shene,

Mistrust me not thus causeles, for routhe;
Sin to be trewe I have yow plight my
trouthe. 1610

231. And thenketh wel, that som tyme it
is wit

To spende a tyme, a tyme for to winne;
Ne, pardee, lorn am I nought fro yow yit,
Though that we been a day or two
a-twinne.

Dryf out the fantasyes yow with-inne; 1615
And trusteth me, and leveth eek your
sorwe,

Or here my trouthe, I wol not live til
morwe.

232. For if ye wiste how sore it doth me
smerte,

Ye wolde cesse of this; for god, thou
wost,

The pure spirit wepeth in myn herte, 1620
To see yow wepen that I love most,
And that I moot gon to the Grekes ost.

Ye, nere it that I wiste remedye
To come ayein, right here I wolde dye!

233. But certes, I am not so nyce a wight
That I ne can imaginen a way 1626

To come ayein that day that I have hight.
For who may holde thing that wol a-way?

My fader nought, for al his queynte pley.
And by my thrift, my wending out of
Troye 1630

Another day shal torne us alle to joye.

234. For-thy, with al myn herte I yow
beseke,

If that yow list don ought for my preyere,
And for the love which that I love yow
eke,

That er that I departe fro yow here, 1635
That of so good a comfort and a chere
I may you seen, that ye may bringe at
reste

Myn herte, which that is at point to
breste.

235. And over al this, I pray yow,' quod
she tho, 1639

'Myn owene hertes soothfast suffisaunce,
Sin I am thyn al hool, with-outen mo,
That whyl that I am absent, no plesaunce

Of othere do me fro your remembraunce.
For I am ever a-gast, for-why men rede,
That "love is thing ay ful of bisy drede."

236. For in this world ther liveth lady
noon, 1646

If that ye were untrewe, as god defende!
That so bitraysed were or wo bigoon
As I, that alle trouthe in yow entende.
And douteles, if that ich other wende,
I nere but deed; and er ye cause finde,
For goddes love, so beth me not un-
kinde.'

237. To this answerde Troilus and seyde,
'Now god, to whom ther nis no cause
y-wrye, 1654

Me glade, as wis I never un-to Criseyde,
Sin thilke day I saw hir first with yē,
Was fals, ne never shal til that I dye.
At shorte wordes, wel ye may me leve;
I can no more, it shal be founde at preve.'

238. 'Graunt mercy, goode myn, y-wis,'
quod she, 1660

'And blisful Venus lat me never sterve
Er I may stonde of plesaunce in degree
To quyte him wel, that so wel can deserve;
And whyl that god my wit wol me con-
serve,

I shal so doon, so trewe I have yow
founde, 1665

That ay honour to me-ward shal rebounde.

239. For trusteth wel, that your estat
royal

Ne veyn delyt, nor only worthinesse
Of yow in werre, or torney marcial, 1669
Ne pompe, array, nobley, or eek richesse,
Ne made me to rewe on your distresse;
But moral vertue, grounded upon trouthe,
That was the cause I first hadde on yow
routhe!

240. Eek gentil herte and manhod that ye
hadde,

And that ye hadde, as me thoughte, in
despyt 1675

Every thing that souned in-to badde,
As rudenesse and poeplish appetyt;
And that your reson brydled your delyt,

This made, aboven every creature,
That I was your, and shal, whyl I may
dure. 1680

241. And this may lengthe of yeres not
for-do,
Ne remuable fortune deface;
But Juppiter, that of his might may do
The sorwful to be glad, so yeve us grace,
Er nightes ten, to meten in this place,
So that it may your herte and myn suf-
fyse; 1686
And fareth now wel, for tyme is that ye
ryse.'

242. And after that they longe y-pleyned
hadde,
And ofte y-kist and streite in armes folde,
The day gan ryse, and Troilus him
cladde, 1690

And rewfulliche his lady gan biholde,
As he that felte dethes cares colde.
And to hir grace he gan him recomaunde;
Wher him was wo, this holde I no de-
maunde. 1694

243. For mannes heed imaginen ne can,
Ne entendement considere, ne tonge
telle
The cruel peynes of this sorwful man,
That passen every torment down in
helle. 1698
For whan he saugh that she ne mighte
dwelle,
Which that his soule out of his herte
rente,
With-uten more, out of the chaumbre
he wente. 1701

Explicit Liber Quartus.

BOOK V.

Incipit Liber Quintus.

1. Aprochen gan the fatal destinee
That Joves hath in disposicioun,
And to yow, angry Parcas, sustren three,
Committeth, to don execucioun;
For which Criseyde moste out of the
toun, 5
And Troilus shal dwelle forth in pyne
Til Lachesis his threed no lenger twyne.—

2. The golden-tressed Phebus heighe on-
lofte
Thryës hadde alle with his bemes sheno
The snowes molte, and Zephirus as ofte 10
Y-brought ayein the tendre leves grene,
Sin that the sone of Ecuba the quene
Bigan to love hir first, for whom his sorwe
Was al, that she departe sholde a-morwe.

3. Ful redy was at pryme Dyomede, 15
Criseyde un-to the Grekes ost to lede,
For sorwe of which she felte hir herte
blede,
As she that niste what was best to rede.
And trewely, as men in bokes rede,

Men wiste never womman han the care, 20
Ne was so looth out of a toun to fare.

4. This Troilus, with-uten reed or lore,
As man that hath his joyes eek forlore,
Was waytinge on his lady ever-more
As she that was the soothfast crop and
more 25
Of al his lust, or joyes here-tofore.
But Troilus, now farewell al thy joye,
For shaltow never seen hir eft in
Troye!

5. Soth is, that whyl he bood in this
manere,
He gan his wo ful manly for to hyde, 30
That wel unnethe it seen was in his
chere;
But at the yate ther she sholde oute
ryde 35
With certeyn folk, he ~~hoved~~ *waited* hir ~~vabyde~~,
So wo bigoon, al wolde he nought him
pleyne,
That on his hors unnethe he sat for
peyne. 35

6. For ire he quook, so gan his herte
gnaue,

Whan Diomedes on horse gan him dresse,
And seyde un-to him-self this ilke sawe,
'Allas,' quod he, 'thus foul a wrecched-
neme

Why suffre ich it, why nil ich it re-
dresse? 40

Were it not bet at ones for to dye
Than ever-more in langour thus to drye?

7. Why nil I make at ones riche and
poore. *Everybody*

To have y-nough to done, or that she go?
Why nil I bringe al Troye upon a rore? 45

Why nil I sleen this Diomedes also?

Why nil I rather with a man or two

Stele hir a-way? Why wol I this endure?

Why nil I helpen to myn owene cure?

8. But why he nolde doon so fel a dede,
That shal I seyn, and why him liste it
spare: 51

He hadde in herte alway a maner drede,

Lest that Criseyde, in remour of this gre

Sholde han ben slayn; lo, this was al his

care.

And elles, certeyn, as I seyde yore, 55

He hadde it doon, with-oute wordes

more.

9. Criseyde, whan she redy was to ryde,

Ful sorwfully she sighte, and seyde

'allas!'

But forth she moot, for ought that may

bityde,

And forth she rit ful sorwfully a pas. 60

Ther nis non other remedie in this cas.

What wonder is though that hir sore

smerte,

Whan she forgoth hir owene swete herte?

10. This Troilus, in wyse of curteisye,

With hauke on hond, and with an huge

route 65

Of knyghtes, rood and dide hir compaigne,

Passinge al the valey fer with-oute,

And farther wolde han riden, out of

doute,

Ful fayn, and wo was him to goon so

soone;

But torne he moste, and it was eek to

done. 70

11. And right with that was Antenor
y-come

Out of the Grekes ost, and every wight
Was of it glad, and seyde he was wel-
come.

And Troilus, al nere his herte light,

He peyned him with al his fulle might 75

Him to with-holde of wepinge at the

leste,

And Antenor he kiste, and made feste.

12. And ther-with-al he moste his leve
take,

And caste his eye upon hir pitously,

And near he rood, his herte for to make,

To take hir by the honde al sobrelly. 81

And lord! so she gan wepen tendrelly *with*

And he ful softe and sleighly gan hir

seye,

'Now hold your day, and dooth me not to

deye.'

13. With that his courser torned he

a-boute 85

With face pale, and un-to Diomedes

No word he spak, ne noon of al his rout;

Of which the sone of Tydeus took hede,

As he that conde more than the crede *a lounde*

In swich a craft, and by the reyne hir

hente; 90

And Troilus to Troye homwarde he wente.

14. This Diomedes, that ladde hir by the

brydel,

Whan that he saw the folk of Troye

aweye,

Thoughte, 'al my labour shal not been

on ydel, *in vain*

If that I may, for somewhat shal I seye. 95

For at the worste it may yet shorte our

weye.

I have herd seyde, eek tymes twyfe twelve,

"He is a fool that wol for-yete him-

selve."

15. But natheles this thoughte he wel

ynough,

'That certaynly I am aboute nought 100

If that I speke of love, or make it tough;

For douteles, if she have in hir thought

Him that I gesse, he may not been

y-brought

So sone away ; but I shal finde a mene,
That she not wite as yet shal what I
mene.' 105

13. This Diomedes, as he that coude his
good,
Whan this was doon, gan fallen forth in
speche
Of this and that, and asked why she
stood
In swich disese, and gan hir eek biseche,
That if that he encrease mighte or eche 110
With any thing hir ese, that she sholde
Comaunde it him, and seyde he doon it
wolde.

17. For trewely he swoor hir, as a knight,
That ther nas thing with whiche he
mighte hir plesse,
That he nolde doon his peyne and al his
might 115
To doon it, for to doon hir herte an ese.
And preyede hir, she wolde hir sorwe
apese,
And seyde, 'y-wis, we Grekes con have
joye
To honouren yow, as wel as folk of Troye.'

18. He seyde eek thus, 'I woot, yow
thinketh straunge, 120
No wonder is, for it is to yow newe,
Th'aqueintaunce of these Trojanes to
chaunge,
For folk of Grece, that ye never knewe.
But wolde never god but-if as trewe
A Greke ye shulde among us alle finde 125
As any Trojan is, and eek as kinde.

19. And by the cause I swoor yow right,
lo, now,
To been your freend, and helply, to my
might,
And for that more acquaintance eek of
yow
Have ich had than another straunger
wight, 130
So fro this forth I pray yow, day and
night,
Comaundeth me, howsore that me smerte,
To doon al that may lyke un-to your
herte ;

20. And that ye me wolde as your brother
trete,
And taketh not my frendship in despyt ;
And though your sorwes be for thinges
grete, 136
Noot I not why, but out of more respyt,
Myn herte hath for to amende it greet
delyt.
And if I may your harmes not redresse,
I am right sory for your hevynesse. 140

21. And though ye Trojans with us
Grekes wrothe
Han many a day be, alwey yet, pardee,
O god of love in sooth we serven bothe.
And, for the love of god, my lady free,
Whom so ye hate, as beth not wroth with
me. 145
For trewely, ther can no wight yow
serve,
That half so looth your wraththe wolde
deserve.

22. And nore it that we been so neigh the
tente
Of Calkas, which that seen us bothe
may,
I wolde of this yow telle al myn entente ;
But this enseled til another day. 151
Yeve me your hond, I am, and shal ben
ay,
God help me so, whyl that my lyf may
dure,
Your owene aboven every creature.

23. Thus seyde I never er now to womman
born ; 155
For god myn herte as wisly glade so,
I lovede never womman here-biforn
As paramours, ne never shal no mo.
And, for the love of god, beth not my fo ;
Al can I not to yow, my lady dere, 160
Compleyne aright, for I am yet to lere.

24. And wondreth not, myn owene lady
bright,
Though that I speke of love to you thus
blyve ;
For I have herd of this of many a wight,
Hath loved thing he never saugh his
lyve. 165
Eek I am not of power for to stryve

Ayens the god of love, but him obeys
I wol alwey, and mercy I yow praye.

25. Ther been so worthy knyghtes in this
place, 169

And ye so fair, that everich of hem alle
Wol paynen him to stonden in your grace.
But mighte me so fair a grace falls,
That ye me for your servannt wolde calle,
So lowly ne so trewely you serve
Nil noon of hem, as I shal, til I sterve.' 175

26. Criseyde an-to that purpos lyte an-
swerde,

As she that was with sorwe oppressed so
That, in effect, she nought his tales herde,
But here and there, now here a word or
two.

Hir thoughte hir sorwful herte brast
a-two. 180

For whan she gan hir fader fer aspye,
Wel neigh doun of hir hors she gan to
seye.

27. But natheles she thonked Diomedes
Of al his travaile, and his goode chere,
And that him liste his friendship hir to
hede; 185

And she accepteth it in good manere,
And wolde do fayn that is him leef and
dere;

And trusten him she wolde, and wel she
mighte,
As seyde she, and from hir hors she
alighte.

28. Hir fader hath hir in his armes nome,
And tweyntye tyme he kiste his daughter
swete, 191

And seyde, 'O dere daughter myn, wel-
come!'

She seyde eek, she was fayn with him to
mete,

And stood forth mevet, mildre, and man-
suete. 195

But here I leve hir with hir fader dwelle,
And forth I wol of Troilus yow telle. 196

29. To Troye is come this woful Troilus.
In sorwe aboven alle sorwes smerte,
With felon look, and face dispitoun.

The sodainly doun from his hors he
sterde, 200

And thorough his paleys, with a swollen
herte,

To chambre he wente; of no-thing took
he hede,

Ne noon to him dar speke a word for
dreda.

30. And there his sorwes that he spared
hadde

He gaf an issue large, and 'deeth!' he
cryde; 205

And in his throwes frenetyk and madde

He cursed Jove, Appollo, and eek Cupyde,

He cursed Ceres, Bacus, and Cipryde, 210

Hir burthe, him-self, his fate, and eek
nature,

And, save his lady, every creature. 210

31. To bedde he goth, and weyleth there
and torneth

In furie, as dooth he, Ixion, in helle;

And in this wyse he neigh til day so-
jorneth.

But the bigan his herte a lyte unswelle
Thorough teres which that gonnen up to
welle; 215

And pitously he cryde up-on Criseyde,
And to him-self right thus he spak, and
seyde:—

32. 'Wher is myn owene lady hef and
dere,

Wher is hir whyte breast, wher is it,
where?

Wher been hir armes and hir eyen clere,
That yesternight this tyme with me
were? 221

Now may I wepe allone many a tere,
And graspe aboute I may, but in this
place,

Save a pilowe, I finde nought t'enbrace.

33. How shal I do? Whan shal she com
ayeyn? 225

I noot,allas! why leet ich hir to go?

As wolde god, ich hadde as tho be sleyn!

O herte myn, Criseyde, O swete fo!

O lady myn, that I love and no mo! 229

To whom for ever-mo myn herte I dows;

See how I deye, ye nil me not rescowe!

34. Who seeth yow now, my righte lode-
sterre?
Who sit right now or stant in your
presence?

Who can conforten now your hertes
werre?

Now I am gon, whom yeve ye audience?
Who speketh for me right now in myn
absence? 236

Allas, no wight; and that is al my care;
For wel wot I, as yvel as I ye fare.

35. How shulde I thus ten dayes ful
endure,
Whan I the firste night have al this
tene? 240

How shal she doon eek, sorwful creature?
For tendernesse, how shal she this sus-
tene,

Swich wo for me? O pitous, pale, and
grene

Shal been your fresshe wommanliche face
For langour, er ye torne un-to this
place.' 245

36. And whan he fil in any slomeringes,
Anoon biginne he sholde for to grone,
And dremen of the dredfulleste thinges
That mighte been; as, mete he were
allone

In place horrible, makinge ay his mone,
Or meten that he was amonges alle 251
His enemys, and in hir hondes falle.

37. And ther-with-al his body sholde
sterte,
And with the stert al sodeinliche awake,
And swich a tremour fele aboute his
herte, 255

That of the feer his body sholde quake;
And there-with-al he sholde a noyse
make,

And seme as though he sholde falle depe
From heighe a-lofte; and than he wolde
wepe,

38. And rewen on him-self so pitously, 260
That wonder was to here his fantasye.
Another tyme he sholde mightily
Conforte him-self, and seyn it was folye,
So causeles swich drede for to drye,

And eft biginne his aspre sorwes newe,
That every man mighte on his sorwes
rewe. 266

39. Who coude telle aright or ful dis-
cryve

His wo, his pleynte, his langour, and his
pyne?

Nought al the men that han or been on-
lyve.

Thou, redere, mayst thy-self ful wel
devyne 270

That swich a wo my wit can not defyne.
On ydel for to wryte it sholde I swinke,
Whan that my wit is wery it to thinke.

40. On hevene yet the sterres were sene,
Al-though ful pale y-waxen was the
mone; 275

And whyten gan the orisonte shene
Al estward, as it woned is to done.

And Phebus with his rosy carte sone
Gan after that to dresse him up to fare,
Whan Troilus hath sent after Pandare.

41. This Pandare, that of al the day
biforn 281

No mighte have comen Troilus to see,
Al-though he on his heed it hadde y-sworn,
For with the king Pryam alday was he,
So that it lay not in his libertee 285
No-wher to gon, but on the morwe he
wente

To Troilus, whan that he for him sente.

42. For in his herte he coude wel devyne,
That Troilus al night for sorwe wook;
And that he wolde telle him of his pyne.
This knew he wel y-nough, with-oute
book. 291

For which to chaumbre streight the wey
he took,

And Troilus tho sobreliche he grette,
And on the bed ful sone he gan him sette.

43. 'My Pandarus,' quod Troilus, 'the
sorwe 295

Which that I drye, I may not longe
endure.

I trowe I shal not liven til to-morwe;

For whiche I wolde alwey, on aventure,
To thee devysen of my sepulture

The forme, and of my moeble thou dis-
pone 300

Right as thee semeth best is for to done.

44. But of the fyr and flaumbe funeral
In whiche my body brenneshal to gleder,
And of the feste and pleyes palestral 304
At my vigila, I pray thee take good hede
That al be wel; and offro Mars my stede,
My sword, myn helm, and, leve brother
dere,
My sheld to Pallas yef, that shyneth
clere.

45. The pondre in which myn herte y-
brend shal torne,
That praye I thee thou take and it con-
serve 310
In a vessel, that men clepeth an urne,
Of gold, and to my lady that I serve,
For love of whom thus pitously I sterve,
So yere it hir, and do me this plessaunce,
To praye hir kepe it for a remembraunce.

46. For wel I fele, by my maladye, 316
And by my dremes now and yere ago,
Al certainly, that I mot nedes dye.
The owle eek, which that hight Ascapilo,
Hath after me shright alle thise nightes
two. 320
And, god Mercurie! of me now, woful
wrecche,
The soule gyde, and, whan thee list, it
fecche!

47. Pandare answerde, and seyde, 'Troilus,
My dere freend, as I have told thee yore,
That it is folye for to sorwen thus, 325
And causeles, for whiche I can no more.
But who-so wol not trowen reed ne lore,
I can not seen in him no remedye,
But lete him worthen with his fantasia.

48. But Troilus, I pray thee tel me now,
If that thou trowe, er this, that any
wight 331
Hath loved paramours as wel as thou?
Ye, god wot, and fro many a worthy
knight
Hath his lady goon a fourtenight,
And he not yet made halvendel the
fare. 335
What nede is thee to maken al this care?

49. Sin day by day thou mayst thy-selven
see

That from his love, or elles from his wyf,
A man mot twinnen of necessites,
Ye, though he love hir as his owene lyf; 340
Yet nil he with him-self thus maken
stryf.

For wel thou wost, my leve brother dere,
That alwey freendes may nought been
y-fere.

50. How doon this folk that seen hir loves
wedded

By freendes might, as it bi-tit ful ofte, 345
And seen hem in hir spouses bed y-bedded?
God woot, they take it wyaly, faire and
softe.

For-why good hope halt up hir herte on-
lofte,

And for they can a tyme of sorwe endure;
As tyme hem hurt, a tyme doth hem
cure. 350

51. So sholdestow endure, and late slyde
The tyme, and fonde to ben glad and
light.

Ten dayes nis so long not t'abyde.
And sin she thee to comen hath bihight,
She nil hir hestes breken for no wight. 355
For dred thee not that she nil finden weye
To come ayein, my lyf that dorste I leye.

52. Thy swevenes eek and al swich fan-
tasye

Dryf out, and lat hem faren to mis-
chaunce;

For they procede of thy malencolye, 360
That doth thee fele in sleep al this pen-
aunce.

A straw for alle swevenes signifaunce!
God helpe me so, I counthe hem not a
bene,

Ther woot no man aright what dremes
mene.

53. For prestes of the temple tellen this,
That dremes been the revelaciouns 366

Of goddes, and as wel they telle, y-wis,
That they ben infernals illusionis;
And leches seyn, that of complexiouns
Proceden they, or fast, or glotonye. 370
Who woot in sooth thus what they
signifye?

F. 2

54. Eek othere seyn that thorough im-
pressiouns,
As if a wight hath faste a thing in minde,
That ther-of cometh swiche avisionns;
And othere seyn, as they in bokes finde,
That, after tymes of the yeer by kinde,
Men dreme, and that th'effect goth by the
mone; 377

But leve no dreem, for it is nought to
done.

55. Wel worth of dremes ay thise olde
wyves,
And treweliche eek angurie of thise
foules; 380
For fere of which men wenen lese her
lyves,
As ravenes qualm, or shryking of thise
oules.

To trowen on it bothe fals and foul is.
Allas, allas, so noble a creature
As is a man, shal drede swich ordure! 385

56. For which with al myn herte I thee
beseche,

Un-to thy-self that al this thou foryive;
And rys up now with-oute more speche,
And lat us caste how forth may best be
drive

This tyme, and eek how freshly we may
live 390

Whan that she cometh, the which shal
be right sone;

God help me so, the beste is thus to done.

57. Rys, lat us speke of lusty lyf in Troye
That we han lad, and forth the tyme
dryve;

And eek of tyme cominge us rejoye, 395
That bringen shal our blisse now so blyve;
And langour of these twyës dayes fyve
We shal ther-with so foryete or oppresse,
That wel unnethe it doon shal us duresse.

58. This toun is ful of lordes al aboute,
And trewes lasten al this mene whyle.

Go we pleye us in som lusty route 402
To Sarpedon, not hennes but a myle.

And thus thou shalt the tyme wel bigyle,
And dryve it forth un-to that blisful
morwe, 405

That thou hir sec, that cause is of thy
sorwe.

59. Now rys, my dere brother Troilus;
For certes, it noon honour is to thee
To wepe, and in thy bed to jouken thus.
For trewely, of o thing trust to me, 410
If thou thus ligge a day, or two, or three,
The folk wol wene that thou, for
cowardyse,
Thee feynest syk, and that thou darst
not ryse.'

60. This Troilus answerde, 'O brother
dere,

This knowen folk that han y-suffred
peyne, 415

That though he wepe and make sorwful
chere,

That feleth harm and smert in every
veyne,

No wonder is; and though I ever pleyne,
Or alwey wepe, I am no-thing to blame,
Sin I have lost the cause of al my game.

61. But sin of fyne force I moot aryse,
I shal aryse, as sone as ever I may; 422

And god, to whom myn herte I sacrifyse,
So sende us hastely the tenthe day!

For was ther never fowl so fayn of May,
As I shal been, whan that she cometh in
Troye, 426

That cause is of my torment and my joye.

62. But whider is thy reed,' quod Troilus,
'That we may pleye us best in al this
toun?'

'By god, my conseil is,' quod Pandarus,
'To ryde and pleye us with king Sarpe-
doun.' 431

So longe of this they spoken up and down,
Til Troilus gan at the laste assente

To ryse, and forth to Sarpedoun they
wente.

63. This Sarpedoun, as he that honourable
Was ever his lyve, and ful of heigh
prowesse, 436

With al that mighte y-served been on
table,

That deyntee was, al coste it greet
richesse,

He fedde hem day by day, that swich
noblesse,

As seyden bothe the mooste and eek the
leste, 440

Was never er that day wist at any feste.

64. Nor in this world ther is non instru-
ment

Delicious, through wind, or touche, or
cords,

As far as any wight hath ever y-went,
That tonge telle or herte may recorde, 445

That at that feste it nas wel herd acorde;
Ne of ladies eek so fayr a companye

On daunces, er tho, was never y-seyn with
y^e.

65. But what awayleth this to Troilus,
That for his sorwe no-thing of it roughte?

For ever in con his herte pi^{ti}ous 451

Ful bisily Criseyde his lady soughte,
On hir was ever al that his herte thoughte.

Now this, now that, so faste imagininge,
That glade, y-wis, can him no festeyinge.

66. These ladies eek that at this feste
been, 456

Sin that he saw his lady was a-weye,
It was his sorwe upon hem for to seen,

Or for to here on instrumentz so pleye.
For she, that of his herte berth the keye,

Was absent, lo, this was his fantasye, 461

That no wight sholde make melodye.

67. Nor ther nas houre in al the day or
night,

Whan he was ther-as no wight mighte
him here,

That he ne seyde, 'O lufsom lady bright,
How have ye faren, sin that ye were

here? 466

Wel-come, y-wis, myn owene lady dere.'

But welaway, al this nas but a mase;
Fortune his howve entended bet to glasse.

69. The lettres eek, that she of olde tyme
Hadde him y-sent, he wolde allone rede,

An hundred sythe, a-twixen noon and
pryme; 472

Refiguringe hir shap, hir womanhede,
With-inne his herte, and every word and

dede

That passed was, and thus he droof to an
ende 475

The ferthe day, and seyde, he wolde
wende,

69. And seyde, 'leve brother Pandarus,
Intendestow that we shul her^e bleve

Til Sarpedoun wol forth congeyen us?

Yet were it fairer that we toke our leve,
For goddes love, lat us now sone at eve

Our leve take, and homward lat us torne;
For trewely, I nil not thus sojorne.' 483

70. Pandare answerde, 'be we comen
hider

To fecchen fyr, and rennen hoom ayeyn?

God helpe me so, I can not tellen whider
We mighten goon, if I shal soothly seyn,

Ther any wight is of us more fayn
Than Sarpedoun; and if we hennes hye

Thus sodeinly, I holde it vilanye, 490

71. Sin that we seyden that we wolde
bleve

With him a wonke; and now, thus
sodeinly,

The ferthe day to take of him our leve,
He wolde wondren on it, trewely! 494

Lat us holde forth our purpos fermely;
And sin that ye bihighten him to byde,

Hold forward now, and after lat us ryde.'

72. Thus Pandarus, with alle peyne and
wo,

Made him to dwelle; and at the wonkes
ende,

Of Sarpedoun they toke hir leve tho, 500

And on hir way they spedden hem to
wende,

Quod Troilus, 'now god me grace sende,
That I may finden, at myn hom-cominge,

Criseyde comen!' and ther-with gan he
singe.

73. 'Ye, hasel-wode!' thoughte this Pan-
dare, 505

And to him-self ful softely he seyde,
'God woot, refreyden may this hote fare

Er Calkas sende Troilus Criseyde!'

But natheles, he japed thus, and seyde,
And swor, y-wis, his herte him wel

bihighte, 510

She wolde come as sone as ever she
mighte.

74. Whan they un-to the pалеys were
y-comen

Of Troilus, they down of hors alighte,

And to the chambre hir wey than han
they nomen.
And in-to tyme that it gan to nighte, 515
They spaken of Criseyde the brighte.
And after this, whan that hem bothe
leste,
They spedde hem fro the soper un-to
reste.

75. On morwe, as sone as day bigan to
clere,
This Troilus gan of his sleep t'abreyde, 520
And to Pandare, his owene brother dere,
'For love of god,' ful pitously he seyde,
'As go we seen the paleys of Criseyde;
For sin we yet may have namore feste,
So lat us seen hir paleys at the leste.' 525

76. And ther-with-al, his meynee for to
blende,
A cause he fond in tounne for to go,
And to Criseydes hous they gonnen wende.
But lord! this sely Troilus was wo!
Him thoughte his sorweful herte braste
a-two. 530
For whan he saugh hir dores sperred alle,
Wel neigh for sorwe a-doun he gan to
falle.

77. Therwith whan he was war and gan
biholde
How shet was every windowe of the place,
As frost, him thoughte, his herte gan to
colde; 535
For which with chaunged deedlich pale
face,
With-uten word, he forth bigan to pace;
And, as god wolde, he gan so faste ryde,
That no wight of his contenance aspyde.

78. Than seyde he thus, 'O paleys desolat,
O hous, of houses whylom best y-hight,
O paleys empty and disconsolat, 542
O thou lanterne, of which queynt is the
light,

O paleys, whylom day, that now art night,
Wel oughtestow to falle, and I to dye, 545
Sin she is went that wont was us to gye!

79. O paleys, whylom croune of houses alle,
Enlumined with sonne of alle blisse!

O ring, fro which the ruby is out-falle,
O cause of wo, that cause hast been of
lisse! 550
Yet, sin I may no bet, fayn wolde I kisse
Thy colde dores, dorste I for this route;
And fare-wel shryne, of which the seynt
is oute!'

80. Ther-with he caste on Pandarus his yē
With chaunged face, and pitous to biholde;
And whan he mighte his tyme aright
aspye, 556
Ay as he rood, to Pandarus he tolde
His newe sorwe, and eek his joyes olde,
So pitously and with so dede an hewe,
That every wight mighte on his sorwe rewe.

81. Fro thennesforth he rydeth up and
doun, 561
And every thing com him to remem-
braunce
As he rood forth by places of the toun
In whiche he whylom hadde al his ples-
aunce. 564
'Lo, yond saugh I myn owene lady daunce;
And in that temple, with hir eyen clere,
Me caughte first my righte lady dere.

82. And yonder have I herd ful lustily
My dere herte laughe, and yonder pleye
Saugh I hir ones eek ful blisfully. 570
And yonder ones to me gan she seye,
"Now goode swete, love me wel, I preye."
And yond so goodly gan she me biholde,
That to the deeth myn herte is to hir holde.

83. And at that corner, in the yonder hous,
Herde I myn alderlevest lady dere 576
So wommanly, with voys melodious,
Singen so wel, so goodly, and so clere,
That in my soule yet me thinketh I here
The blisful soun; and, in that yonder
place, 580
My lady first me took un-to hir grace.'

84. Thanne thoughte he thus, 'O blisful
lord Cupyde,
Whanne I the proces have in my memorie,
How thou me hast werreyed on every syde,
Men mighte a book make of it, lyk a storie.
What nede is thee to seke on me victorie,

Sin I am thyn, and hoolly at thy wille?
What joye hastow thyn owene folk to
spille? 588

85. Wel hastow, lord, y-wroke on me thyn
ire,
Thou mighty god, and dredful for to greve!
Now mercy, lord, thou wost wel I desire
Thy grace most, of alle lntes leve. 592
And live and days I wol in thy bilove;
For which I n'axe in guerdon but a bone,
That thou Criseyde ayein me sende sone.

90. Distreyne hir herte as faste to retorne
As thou dost myn to longen hir to see;
Than woot I wel, that she nil not sojorne.
Now, blisful lord, so cruel thou ne be
Un-to the blood of Troye, I preye thee, 600
As Juno was un-to the blood Thebane,
For which the folk of Thebes caughte hir
bane.'

87. And after this he to the yates wente
Ther-as Criseyde out-rood a ful good pass,
And up and down ther made he many
a wente, 605
And to him-self ful ofte he seyde 'allas!
From hennes rood my blisse and my solas!
As wolde blisful god now, for his joye,
I mighte hir seen ayein come in-to Troye.

93. And to the yonder hille I gan hir gyde,
Allas! and there I took of hir my leve!
And yond I saugh hir to hir fader ryde,
For sorwe of which myn herte shal to-
cleve. 613
And hider hoom I com whan it was eve;
And here I dwalle out-cast from alle joye,
And shal, til I may seen hir eft in Troye.'

98. And of him-self imagined he ofte
To ben defet, and pale, and waxen lesse
Than he was wont, and that men seyde
softe,
'What may it be? who can the sothe
gesse 620
Why Troilus hath al this hevynesse?'
And al this nas but his malencolye,
That he hadde of him-self swich fantasye.

90. Another tyme imaginen he wolde
That every wight that wente by the weye

Had of him routhe, and that they seyen
sholde, 626

'I am right sory Troilus wol deye.'
And thus he droof a day yet forth or tweye.
As ye have herd, swich lyf right gan he lede,
As he that stood bitwixen hope and drede.

91. For which him lyked in his songes
shewe 631
Th'encheson of his wo, as he best mighte,
And make a song of wordes but a fewe,
Somwhat his woful herte for to lighte.
And whan he was from every mannes
sight, 635
With softe voys he, of his lady dere,
That was absent, gan singe as ye may here.

92. 'O sterre, of which I lost have al the
light,
With herte soor wel oughte I to bewayle,
That ever derk in torment, night by night,
Toward my deeth with wind in stere I
sayle; 641
For which the tenthe night if that I fayle
The gyding of thy bemes brighte an houre,
My ship and me Caribdis wol devour.'

98. This song when he thus songen hadde,
sone 645
He fil ayein in-to his sykes olde;
And every night, as was his wone to done,
He stood the brighte mone to beholde,
And al his sorwe he to the mone tolde;
And seyde, 'y-wis, whan thou art horned
newe, 650
I shal be glad, if al the world be trewe!'

94. I saugh thyn hornes olde oek by the
morwe,
Whan hennes rood my righte lady dere,
That cause is of my torment and mysorwe;
For whiche, O brighte Lucina the clere, 655
For love of god, ren faste aboute thy spere!
For whan thyn hornes newe ginne springe,
Than shal she come, that may my blisse
bringe!'

95. The day is more, and longer every
night,
Than they be wont to be, him thoughte
the; 660

And that the sonne wente his course
unright

By lenger wey than it was wont to go ;
And seyde, 'y-wis, me dredeth ever-mo,
The sonnes sone, Pheton, be on-lyve,
And that his fadres cartamis he dryve.' 665

96. Upon the walles faste eek wolde he
walke,

And on the Grekes ost he wolde see,
And to him-self right thus he wolde talke,
'Lo, yonder is myn owene lady free,
Or elles yonder, ther tho tentes be! 670
And thennes comth this eyr, that is so
sote,

That in my soule I fele it doth me bote.

97. And hardely this wind, that more and
more

Thus stoundemele encreseth in my face,
Is of my ladyes depe sykes sore. 675
I preve it thus, for in non othere place
Of al this toun, save onliche in this space,
Fele I no wind that souneth so lyk payne;
It seyth, "allas! why twinned be we
tweyne?"

98. This longe tyme he dryveth forth right
thus, 680

Til fully passed was the nynthe night ;
And ay bi-syde him was this Pandarus,
That bisily dide alle his fulle might
Him to comforte, and make his herte light ;
Yevinge him hope alwey, the tenth morwe
That she shal come, and stinten al his
sorwe. 686

99. Up-on that other syde eek was Cri-
seyde,

With wommen fewe, among the Grekes
stronge ;

For which ful ofte a day 'allas!' she seyde,
'That I was born! Wel may myn herte
longe 690

After my deeth; for now live I to longe!
Allas! and I ne may it not amende;
For now is wors than ever yet I wende.

100. My fader nil for no-thing do me grace
To goon ayein, for nought I can him
queme; 695

And if so be that I my terme passe,

My Troilus shal in his herte deme 697
That I am fals, and so it may wel seme.
Thus shal I have unthank on every syde;
That I was born, so weylawey the tyde!

101. And if that I me putte in jupartye,
To stele away by nighte, and it bifalle
That I be caught, I shal be holde a spye;
Or elles, lo, this drede I most of alle,
If in the hondes of som wrecche I falle,
I am but lost, al be myn herte trewe; 706
Now mighty god, thou on my sorwe rewe!"

102. Ful pale y-waxen was hir brighte face,
Hir limes lene, as she that al the day
Stood whan she dorste, and loked on the
place 710

Ther she was born, and ther she dwelt
hadde ay.

And al the night wepinge, alas! she lay.
And thus despeired, out of alle cure,
She ladde hir lyf, this woful creature.

108. Ful ofte a day she sighte eek for
destresse, 715

And in hir-self she wente ay portrayinge
Of Troilus the grete worthinesse,
And alle his goodly wordes recordinge
Sin first that day hir love bigan to springe.
And thus she sette hir woful herte a-fyre
Thorugh remembraunce of that she gan
desyre. 721

104. In al this world ther nis so cruel
herte

That hir hadde herd compleynen in hir
sorwe,

That nolde han wopen for hir peynes
smerte,

So tendrely she weep, bothe eve and morwe.
Hir nedede no teres for to borwe. 726

And this was yet the worste of al hir payne,
Ther was no wight to whom she dorste hir
pleyne.

105. Ful rewfully she loked up-on Troye,
Biheld the toures heighe and eek the
halles; 730

'Allas!' quod she, 'the plesaunce and the
joye

The whiche that now al torned in-to
galle is,

Have I had ofte with-inne yonder walles!
O Troilus, what dostow now,' she seyde;
'Lord! whether yet thou thanke up-on
Criseyde? 735

106. Allas! I ne hadde trowed on your lore,
And went with yow, as ye me radde er this!
Thanne hadde I now not syked half so sore.
Who mighte have seyde, that I had doon
a-mis

To stele away with swich on as he is? 740
But al to late cometh the letuarie,
Whan men the cors un-to the grave carie.

107. To late is now to speke of this matere;
Prudence, allas! oon of thyn eyen three
Me lakked alwey, er that I cam here; 745
On tyme y-passed, wel remembred me;
And present tyme eek coude I wel y-see.
But futur tyme, er I was in the snare,
Coude I not seen; that causeth now my
care. 749

108. But natheles, bityde what bityde,
I shal to-morwe at night, by est or weste,
Out of this ost stele on som maner syde,
And go with Troilus wher-as him leste.
This purpos wol I holde, and this is beste.
No fors of wikked tonges janglerye, 755
For ever on love han wrecches had envye.

109. For who-so wole of every word take
hede,
Or rewlen him by every wightes wit,
Ne shal he never thryven, out of drede.
For that that som men blamen ever yit,
Lo, other maner folk commenden it. 761
And as for me, for al swich variaunce,
Felicitee clepe I my suffisaunce.

110. For which, with-outen any wordes mo,
To Troye I wol, as for conclusioun.' 765
But god it wot, er fully monthes two,
She was ful fer fro that entencioun.
For bothe Troilus and Troye toun
Shal knotteles through-out hir herte
slyde;

For she wol take a purpos for t'abyde. 770

111. This Diomed, of whom yow telle
I gan,
Goth now, with-inne him-self ay arguinge

With al the sleighte and al that ever he
can,
How he may best, with shortest taryinge.
In-to his net Criseydes herte bringe. 775
To this entente he coude never fyne;
To fasshen hir, he leyde out hook and lyne.

112. But natheles, wel in his herte he
thoughte,
That she nas nat with-oute a love in Troye.
For never, sithen he hir thennes broughte,
Ne coude he seen her laughe or make
joye. 781
He niste how best hir herte for t'acoye.
'But for t'assaye,' he seyde, 'it nought
ne greveth;
For he that nought n'assayeth, nought
n'acheveth.'

113. Yet seide he to him-self upon a night,
'Now am I not a fool, that woot wel how
Hir wo for love is of another wight,
And here-up-on to goon assaye hir now?
I may wel wite, it nil not been my prow.
For wyse folk in bokes it expresse, 790
'Menshal not wowe a wight in hevinesse.'

114. But who-so mighte winnen swich
a flour
From him, for whom she morneth night
and day,
He mighte seyn, he were a conquerour.'
And right anon, as he that bold was ay,
Thoughte in his herte, 'happe, how happe
may, 796
Al sholde I deye, I wole hir herte seche;
I shal no more lesen but my speche.'

115. This Diomed, as bokes us declare,
Was in his nedes prest and corageous;
With sterne voys and mighty limes square,
Hardy, testif, strong, and chevalrous
Of dedes, lyk his fader Tideus.
And som men seyn, he was of tunge large;
And heir he was of Calidone and Arge. 805

116. Criseyde mene was of hir stature,
Ther-to of shap, of face, and eek of chere,
Ther mighte been no fairer creature.
And ofte tyme this was hir manere,
To gon y-tressed with hir heres clere 810

Down by hir coler at hir bak bihinde,
Which with a threde of gold she wolde
binde.

117. And, save hir browes joyneden y-fere,
Ther nas no lak, in ought I can espyen ;
But for to speken of hir eyen clere, 815
Lo, trewely, they writen that hir syen,
That Paradys stood formed in hir yän.
And with hir riche beautee ever-more
Strof love in hir, ay which of hem was
more.

118. She sobre was, eek simple, and wys
with-al, 820
The beste y-norissched eek that mighte be,
And goodly of hir speche in general,
Charitable, estatliche, lusty, and free ;
Ne never-mo ne lakkede hir pitee ;
Tendre-herted, slydinge of corage ; 825
But trewely, I can not telle hir age.

119. And Troilus wel waxen was in highte,
And complet formed by proporcioun
So wel, that kinde it not amenden mighte ;
Yong, fresshe, strong, and hardy as lyoun ;
Trewes as steel in ech condicioun ; 831
On of the beste enteched creature,
That is, or shal, whyl that the world may
dure.

120. And certainly in storie it is y-founde,
That Troilus was never un-to no wight, 835
As in his tyme, in no degree secounde
In durring don that longeth to a knight.
Al mighte a geannt passen him of might,
His horte ay with the firste and with the
beste 839
Stod paregal, to durre don that him leste.

121. But for to tellen forth of Diomedé :—
It fil that after, on the tenthe day,
Sin that Criseyde out of the citee yede,
This Diomedé, as fresshe as braunche in
May,
Com to the tente ther-as Calkas lay, 845
And feyned him with Calkas han to done ;
But what he mente, I shal yow telle sone.

122. Criseyde, at shorte wordes for to telle,
Welcomed him, and down by hir him sette ;
And he was ethe y-nough to maken dwelle.

And after this, with-outen longe lette, 851
The spyces and the wyn men forth hem
fette ;
And forth they speke of this and that
y-fere,
As freendes doon, of which som shal ye
here.

123. He gan first fallen of the werre in
speche 855
Bitwixe hem and the folk of Troye toun ;
And of th'assege he gan hir eek byseche,
To telle him what was hir opinioun.
Fro that demaunde he so descendeth down
To asken hir, if that hir straunge thoughte
The Grekes gyse, and werkes that they
wroughte ? 861

124. And why hir fader tarieth so longe
To wedden hir un-to som worthy wight ?
Criseyde, that was in hir peynes stronge
For love of Troilus, hir owene knight, 865
As fer-forth as she conning hadde or
might,
Answerde him tho ; but, as of his entente,
It semed not she wiste what he mente.

125. But natheles, this ilke Diomedé
Gan in him-self assure, and thus he seyde.
' If ich aright have taken of yow hede, 871
Me thinketh thus, O lady myn, Criseyde,
That sin I first hond on your brydel
leyde,
Whan ye out come of Troye by the morwe,
Ne coude I never seen yow but in sorwe.

126. Can I not seyn what may the cause
be 876
But-if for love of som Trojan it were,
The which right sore wolde athinken me
That ye, for any wight that dwelleth
there,
Sholden spille a quarter of a tere, 880
Or pitously your-selven so bigyle ;
For dredelees, it is nought worth the
whyle.

127. The folk of Troye, as who seyth, alle
and some
In preson been, as ye your-selven see ;
For thennes shal not oon on-lyve come 885

For al the gold bitwixen sonne and see.
Trusteth wel, and understondeth me,
Ther shal not oon to mercy goon on-lyve,
Al were he lord of worldes twyfe fyve!

128. Swich wreche on hem, for fecching
of Eleyne, 890
Ther shal be take, er that we hennes
wende,
That Manes, which that goddes ben of
payne,
Shal been agast that Grekes wol hem
abonda.

And men shul drede, un-to the worldes
ende, 894
From hennes-forth to ravisshe any quene,
So cruel shal our wreche on hem be sene.

129. And but-if Calcas lede us with am-
bages,
That is to seyn, with double wordes alye,
Swich as men clepe a "word with two
vimages,"
Ye shul wel knowen that I nought na-
lye, 900
And al this thing right seen it with your
ye,
And that anon; ye nil not trowe how
sone;

• Now taketh heed, for it is for to done.

130. What wane ye your wyse fader
wolde
Han yeven Antenor for yow anon, 905
If he ne wiste that the citee sholde
Destroyed been? Why, nay, so mote
I goon!
He knew ful wel ther shal not scapen oon
That Troyan is, and for the grete fere,
He dorste not, ye dwelte langer thern. 910

131. What wole ye more, luffom lady
dare?
Let Troye and Troyan fro your herte
pace!
Dryf out that bittre hope, and make good
chere,
And clepe ayain the beautee of your face,
That ye with salte teres so deface. 915
For Troye is brought in swich a jupartye,
That, it to save, is now no remedye.

132. And thenketh wel, ye shal in Grekes
finde

A more parfit love, er it be night,
Than any Troyan is, and more kinde, 920
And bet to serven yow wol doon his
might.
And if ye vouche sauf, my lady bright,
I wol ben he to serven yow my-selve,
Ye, lever than he lord of Greces twelve!

133. And with that word he gan to waxen
reed, 925
And in his speche a litel wight he quook,
And caste a-eyde a litel wight his heed,
And stinte a whyle; and afterward awook,
And sobreliche on hir he threw his look,
And seyde, 'I am, al be it yow no joye,
As gentil man as any wight in Troye. 931

134. For if my fader Tydeus,' he seyde,
'Y-lived hadde, I hadde been, er this,
Of Calidone and Arge a king, Criseyde!
And so hope I that I shal yet, y-wis. 935
But he was slayn, alas! the more harm
is,
Unhappily at Thebes al to rathe,
Polymites and many a man to scathe.

135. But herte myn, sin that I am your
man,
And been the ferste of whom I seeke
grace, 940
To serven you as hertely as I can,
And ever shal, whyl I to live have space,
So, er that I departe out of this place,
Ye wol me graunte, that I may to-morwe,
At better leyser, telle yow my sorwe.' 945

136. What shold I telle his wordes that he
seyde?
He spak y-now, for o day at the meste,
It preveth wel, he spak so that Criseyde
Graunted, on the morwe, at his requeste,
For to spoken with him at the leste, 950
So that he nolde speke of swich matere:
And thus to him she seyde, as ye may
here:

137. As she that hadde hir herte on
Troilus
So faste, that ther may it noon arace;
And straungely she spak, and seyde thus:

'O Diomedes, I love that ilke place 956
 Ther I was born; and Joves, for his
 grace,
 Deliver it sone of al that doth it care!
 (God, for thy might, so leve it wel to fare!

138. That Grekes wolde hir wraththe on
 Troye wreke, 960
 If that they mighte, I knowe it wel,
 y-wis.
 But it shal not bifallen as ye spake;
 And god to-forn, and ferther over this,
 I wot my fader wys and redy is;
 And that he me hath bought, as ye me
 tolde, 965
 So dere, I am the more un-to him holde.

139. That Grekes been of heigh con-
 dicionun,
 I woot eek wel; but certein, men shal
 finde
 As worthy folk with-inne Troye toun,
 As conning, and as parfit and as kinde,
 As been bitwixen Orcades and Inde. 971
 And that ye coude wel your lady serve,
 I trowe eek wel, hir thank for to deserve.

140. But as to speke of love, y-wis,' she
 seyde,
 'I hadde a lord, to whom I wedded was,
 The whos myn herte al was, til that he
 deyde; 976
 And other love, as helpe me now Pallas,
 Ther in myn herte nis, ne never was.
 And that ye been of noble and heigh
 kinrede,
 I have wel herd it tellen, out of drede. 980

141. And that doth me to han so gret a
 wonder,
 That ye wol scornen any womman so.
 Eek, god wot, love and I be fer a-sonder;
 I am disposed bet, so mote I go,
 Un-to my deeth, to pleyne and maken
 wo. 985
 What I shal after doon, I can not seye;
 But trewely, as yet me list not pleye.

142. Myn herte is now in tribulacioun,
 And ye in armes bisy, day by day.
 Here-after, whan ye wonnen han the
 toun, 990

Paraunter, thanne so it happen may,
 That whan I see that I never er say,
 Than wole I werke that I never wroughte!
 This word to yow y-nough suffysen
 oughte.

143. To-morwe eek wol I speke with yow
 fayn, 995
 So that ye touchen nought of this matere.
 And whan yow list, ye may come here
 ayeyn;
 And, er ye gon, thus muche I seye yow
 here:
 As helpe me Pallas with hir heres clere,
 If that I sholde of any Greek han routhe,
 It sholde be your-selven, by my trouthe!

144. I sey not therfore that I wol yow
 love, 1002
 Ne I sey not nay, but in conclusioun,
 I mene wel, by god that sit above:—
 And ther-with-al she caste hir eyen
 down,
 And gan to syke, and seyde, 'O Troye
 toun, 1006
 Yet bidde I god, in quiete and in reste
 I may yow seen, or do myn herte breste.'

145. But in effect, and shortly for to seye,
 This Diomedes al freshly newe ayeyn 1010
 Gan pressen on, and faste hir mercy
 preye; 1011
 And after this, the sothe for to seyn,
 Hir glove he took, of which he was ful
 fayn.
 And fynally, whan it was waxen eve,
 And al was wel, he roos and took his
 love. 1015

146. The brighte Venus folwede and ay
 taughte
 The wey, ther brode Phebus down alighte;
 And Cynthea hir char-hors over-raughte
 To whirle out of the Lyon, if she mighte;
 And Signifer his candeless shewed brighte,
 Whan that Criseyde un-to hir bedde
 wente 1021
 In-with hir fadres faire brighte tente.

147. Retorning in hir soule ay up and
 down
 The wordes of this sodein Diomedes,

His greet estat, and peril of the toun, 1025
And that she was allone and hadde nede
Of freendes help; and thus bigan to
brede

The cause why, the sothe for to telle,
That she tok fully purpos for to dwelle.

148. The morwe com, and goostly for to
speke, 1030

This Diomede is come un-to Criseyde,
And shortly, lest that ye my tale broke,
So wel he for him-selve spak and seyde,
That alle hir sykes sore adoun he leyde.
And fynally, the sothe for to sayne, 1035
He rafte hir of the grete of al hir peyne.

149. And after this the story telleth us,
That she him yaf the faire baye stede,
The which he ones wan of Troilus;
And eek a broche (and that was litel
nede) 1040
That Troilus was, she yaf this Diomede.
And eek, the bet from sorwe him to
releve,
She made him were a pencil of hir sleve.

150. I finde eek in the stories elles-where,
Whan through the body hurt was Dio-
mede 1045
Of Troilus, the weep she many a tere,
Whan that she saugh his wyde woundes
blede;
And that she took to kepen him good
hede,
And for to hele him of his sorwes smerte.
Men seyn, I not, that she yaf him hir
herte. 1050

151. But trewely, the story telleth us,
Ther made never womman more wo
Than she, whan that she falsed Troilus.
She seyde, 'allas! for now is clene a-go
My name of trouthe in love, for ever-mo!
For I have falsed con, the gentileste
That ever was, and con the worthieste!

152. Allas, of me, un-to the worldes ende,
Shal neither been y-written nor y-songe
No good word, for thise bokes wol me
shende, 1060
O, rolled shal I been on many a tonge!

Through-out the world my balle shal be
ronge;
And wommen most wol hate me of alle.
Allas, that swich a cas me sholde falle!

153. They wol seyn, in as muche as in
me is, 1065
I have hem doon dishonour, weylawey!
Al be I not the firste that dide amis,
What helpeth that to do my blame away?
But sin I see there is no better way,
And that to late is now for me to rewe,
To Diomede algate I wol be trewe. 1071

154. But Troilus, sin I no better may,
And sin that thus departen ye and I,
Yet preye I god, so yave yow right good
day
As for the gentileste, trewely, 1075
That ever I say, to serven feithfully,
And best can ay his lady honour kepe '—
And with that word she braut anon to
wepe.

155. 'And certes, yow ne haten shal I
never,
And freendes love, that shal ye han of
me, 1080
And my good word, al mighte I liven ever.
And, trewely, I wolde sory be
For to seen yow in adversitee.
And gilteles, I woot wel, I yow leve;
But al shal passe; and thus take I my
leve.' 1085

156. But trewely, how longe it was bi-
twene,
That she for-sook him for this Diomede,
Ther is non auctor telleth it, I wone.
Take every man now to his bokes hede;
He shal no terme finden, out of drede.
For though that he bigan to wowe hir
sone, 1091
Er he hir wan, yet was ther more to done.

157. Ne me ne list this sely womman
chyde
Ferther than the story wol devyse.
Hir name, allas! is published so wyde,
That for hir gilt it oughte y-now suffyso.
And if I mighte excuse hir any wyse,

For she so sory was for hir untrouthe,
Y-wis, I wolde excuse hir yet for routhe.

158. This Troilus, as I biforn have told,
Thus dryveth forth, as wel as he hath
might. 1101

But often was his herte hoot and cold,
And namely, that ilke nynthe night,
Which on the morwe she hadde him
byhight

To come ayein : god wot, ful litel roste
Hadde he that night ; no-thing to slepe
him leste. 1106

159. The laurer-crowned Phebus, with his
hete,
Gan, in his course ay upward as he wente,
To warmen of þ' est see the wawes wete ;
And Nisus doughter song with fresh en-
tente, 1110

Whan Troilus his Pandare after sente ;
And on the walles of the toun they
pleyde,
To loke if they can seen ought of Criseyde.

160. Til it was noon, they stoden for to
see

Who that ther come ; and every maner
wight, 1115

That cam fro fer, they seyden it was she,
Til that they coude knowen him a-right,
Now was his herte dul, now was it light ;
And thus by-japed stonden for to stare
Abouto nought, this Troilus and Pandare.

161. To Pandarus this Troilus tho seyde,
'For ought I wot, bi-for noon, sikerly,
In-to this toun no comth nought here
Criseyde.

She hath y-now to done, hardily, 1124
To winnen from hir fader, so trowe I ;
Hir olde fader wol yet make hir dyne
Er that she go ; god yeve his herte pyne !'

162. Pandare answerde, 'it may wel be,
certeyn ;
And for-thy lat us dyne, I thee biseche ;
And after noon than mayst thou come
ayeyn.' 1130

And boom they go, with-oute more
speche ;

And comen ayein, but longe may they
seche

Er that they finde that they after cape ;
Fortune hem bothe thenketh for to jape.

163. Quod Troilus, 'I see wel now, that
she 1135

Is taried with hir olde fader so,
That er she come, it wol neigh even be.
Com forth, I wol un-to the yate go.
Thise portours been unkonninge ever-mo ;
And I wol doon hem holden up the yate
As nought ne were, al-though she come
late.' 1141

164. The day goth faste, and after that
comth eve,

And yet com nought to Troilus Criseyde.
He loketh forth by hegge, by tree, by
greve,

And fer his heed over the wal he leyde.
And at the laste he torned him, and
seyde, 1146

'By god, I woot hirmening now, Pandare !
Al-most, y-wis, al newe was my care.

165. Now douteles, this lady can hir
good ;

I woot, she menoth ryden prively. 1150

I comende hir wysdom, by myn hood !

She wol not maken peple nycely
Gaure on hir, whan she comth ; but
softoly

By nighte in-to the toun she thenketh
ryde.

And, dere brother, thenk not longe t'
abyde. 1155

166. We han nought elles for to doon,
y-wis.

And Pandarus, now woltow trowen me ?
Have here my trouthe, I see hir ! yond
she is.

Heve up thyn eyen, man ! maystow not
see ?'

Pandare answerde, 'nay, so mote I thee !
Al wrong, by god ; what seystow, man.
wher art ? 1161

That I see yond nis but a fare-cart.'

167. 'Allas, thou seist right sooth,' quod
Troilus ;

'But hardely, it is not al for nought 1164

That in myn herte I now rejoyse thus.
It is agayn som good I have a thought.
Noot I not how, but ain that I was
wrought,
Ne felte I swich a confort, dar I seye;
She comth to-night, my lyf, that dorste
I leye!

169. Pandare answerde, 'it may be wel,
y-nough'; 1170
And held with him of al that ever he
seyde;
But in his herte he thoughte, and softe
lough,
And to him-self ful sobrely he seyde:
'From hasel-wode, ther Joly Robin pleyde,
Shal come al that that thou abydest
here; 1175
Ye, fare-wel al the snow of ferne yere!'

169. The wardein of the yates gan to calle
The folk which that with-oute the yates
were,
And had hem dryven in hir bestes alle,
Or al the night they moste bleven there.
And fer with-in the night, with many
a tere, 1181
This Troilus gan boomward for to ryde;
For wel he seeth it helpeth nought t'a-
byde.

170 But natheles, hegladdened him in this;
He thoughte he misaccounted hadde his
day, 1185
And seyde, 'I understonde have al a-mis.
For thilke night I last Criseyde say,
She seyde, "I shal ben here, if that I
may,
Er that the mone, O dere herte swete!
The Lyon passe, out of this Ariete." 1190

171. For which she may yet holde al hir
biheste.'
And on the morwe un-to the yate he
wente,
And up and down, by west and eek by
este,
Up-on the walles made he many a wente.
But al for nought; his hope alwey him
blante; 1195

For which at night, in sorwe and sykes
sore

He wente him boom, with-oute any

172. This hope al cleue out of his herte
fledde,

He nath wher-on now lenger for to honge;
But for the peyne him thoughte his herte
bledde, 1201

So were his throwes sharpe and wonder
stronge.

For when he saugh that she abood so
longe,

He niste what he juggen of it mighte,
Sin she hath broken that she him bi-
highte.

173. The thridde, ferthe, fift, sixte day
After the dayes ten, of which I tolde,
Bitwixen hope and drede his herte lay.
Yet som-what trustinge on hir heestes olde.
But whan he saugh she nolde hir terme
holde,

He can now seen non other remedye, 1210
But for to shape him sone for to dye.

174. Ther-with the wikked spirit, god us
blesse,

Which that men clepeth wode jalousye,
Gan in him crepe, in al this hevynesse,
For which, by-cause he wolde sone dye,
He ne eat no dronk, for his malencolye,
And eek from every companye he fledde;
This was the lyf that al the tyme he
ledde.

175. He so defet was, that no maner man
Unnethe mighte him knowe ther he
wente; 1220

So was he lene, and ther-to pale and wan,
And feble, that he walketh by potente
And with his ire he thus him-selven
shente.

And who-so axed him wher-of him smerte,
He seyde, his harm was al aboute his
herte. 1225

176. Pryam ful ofte, and eek his moder
derr,

His brotheren and his sustren gonne him
freyne

Why he so sorwful was in al his chere,
And what thing was the cause of al his
peyne?

But al for nought; he nolde his cause
pleyne, 1230

But seyde, he felte a grevous maladye
A-boute his herte, and fayn he wolde dye.

177 So on a day he leyde him down to
slepe,

And so bifel that in his sleep him
thoughte,

That in a forest faste he welk to wepe 1235
For love of hir that him these peynes
wroughte;

And up and down as he the forest soughte,
He mette he saugh a boor with tuskes
grete,

That sleep ayein the bright sonnes hete.

178. And by this boor, faste in his armes
folde, 1240

Lay kissing ay his lady bright Criseyde:
For sorwe of which, whan he it gan
biholde,

And for despyt, out of his slepe he breyde,
And loude he cryde on Pandarus, and
seyde,

'O Pandarus, now knowe I crop and
rote! 1245

I nam but deed, ther nis non other bote!

179. My lady bright Criseyde hath me
bitrayed,

In whom I trusted most of any wight,
She elles-where hath now hir herte
apayed;

The blisful goddes, through hir grete
might, 1250

Han in my dreem y-shewed it ful right.
Thus in my dreem Criseyde I have
biholde'—

And al this thing to Pandarus he tolde.

180. 'O my Criseyde, alas! what subtil-
tee,

What newe lust, what beautee, what
science, 1255

What wratthe of juste cause have ye to
me?

What gilt of me, what fel experience
Hath from me raft, alas! thyn advertence?

O trust, O feyth, O depe asēuraunce,
Who hath me rest Criseyde, al my ple-
saunce? 1260

181. Allas! why lect I you from hennes
go,

For which wel neigh out of my wit I
breyde?

Who shal now trowe on any othes mo?
God wot I wende, O lady bright, Criseyde,

That every word was gospel that ye seyde!
But who may bet bigylen, if him liste, 1266

Than he on whom men weneth best to
triste?

182. What shal I doon, my Pandarus,
allas!

I fele now so sharpe a newe peyne,
Sin that ther is no remedie in this cas,
That bet were it I with myn hondes
tweyne 1271

My-selven slow, than alwey thus to playne.
For through my deeth my wo sholde han
an ende,

Ther every day with lyf my-self I shende.'

183. Pandare answerde and seyde, 'allas
the whyle 1275

That I was born; have I not seyde er this.
That dremes many a maner man bigyle?
And why? for folk expounden hem a-mis.
How darstow seyn that fals thy lady is,
For any dreem, right for thyn owene
drede? 1280

Lat be this thought, thou canst no dremes
rede.

184. Paraunter, ther thou dremest of this
boor,

It may so be that it may signifye
Hir fader, which that old is and eek boor,
Ayein the sonne lyth, on poynt to dye, 1285
And she for sorwe ginneth wepe and crye,
And kisseth him, ther he lyth on the
grounde;

Thus shuldestow thy dreem a-right ex-
pounde.'

185. 'How mighte I thanne do?' quod
Troilus,

'To knowe of this, ye, were it never so
lyte?' 1290

' Now seystow wysly,' quod this Pandarus,
' My reed is this, sin thou canst wel
endyte,

That hastely a lettre thou hir wryte,
Thorough which thou shalt wel bringen it
aboute,
To knowe a sooth of that thou art in
doute. 1395

138. And see now why; for this I dar wel
seyne,

That if so is that she untrewes be,
I can not trowe that she wol wryte ayein.
And if she wryte, thou shalt ful sone see,
As whether she hath any libertes 1390
To come ayein, or elles in som clause,
If she be let, she wol assigne a cause.

137. Thou hast not writen hir ain that
she wente,

Nor she to thee, and this I dorste lye,
Ther may swich cause been in hir en-
tente, 1395

That hardely thou wolt thy-selven seye,
That hir a-bood the beste is for yow tweye.
Now wryte hir thanne, and thou shalt
fele sone

A sothe of al; ther is no more to done.'

136. Accorded been to this conclusioun, 1310
And that anon, these ilke lordes two;
And hastely sit Troilus adoun,
And rolleth in his herte to and fro,
How he may best discryven hir his wo.
And to Criseyde, his owene lady dere, 1315
He wroot right thus, and seyde as ye may
here.

135. ' Right fresche flour, whos I have
been and shal,

With-oute part of elles-where servyse,
With herte, body, lyf, lust, thought, and
al,

I, woful wight, in every humble wyse 1320
That tonge telle or herte may devyse,
As ofte as matere occupyeth place,
Me recomaunde un-to your noble grace.

130. Lyketh it yow to witen, swete herte,
As ye wel knowe how longe tyme agoon
That ye me laste in aspre peynes smerte,

Whan that ye wente, of which yet bote
noon 1317

Have I non had, but ever wene bigoon
Fro day to day am I, and so met dwelle,
While it yow list, of wale and wo my
welle! 1330

131. For which to yow, with dredful
herte trewe,

I wryte, as he that sorwe dryfth to wryte,
My wo, that every houre encreseth newe,
Compleyninge as I dar or can endyte.

And that defaced is, that may ye wyte 1335
The termes, which that fro myn eyen reyne,
That wolde speke, if that they coude, and
pleyne.

132. Yow first bischope I, that your eyen
clere

To look on this defouled ye not holde;
And over al this, that ye, my lady dere,
Wol vouchen-sauf this lettre to biholde. 1340

And by the cause seek of my cares colde,
That sleeth my wit, if ought amis me
asterte,

For-yeve it me, myn owene swete herte.

133. If any servant dorste or oughte of
right 1345

Up-on his lady pitously compleyne,
Than wene I, that ich oughte be that
wight,

Considered this, that ye these monthes
tweyne

Han taried, ther ye seyden, sooth to
seyne,

But dayes ten ye nolde in ost sojourne, 1350
But in two monthes yet ye not retourne.

134. But for-as-muche as me mot nedes
lyke

Al that yow list, I dar not playne more,
But humblely with sorwful sykes syke.

Yow wryte ich myn unresty sorwes sore,
Fro day to day desyring ever-more 1356

To knowen fully, if your wil it were,
How ye han ferd and doon, whyl ye be
there.

135. The whos wel-fare and hele eek god
encrese 1359

In honour swich, that upward in degree

It growe alwey, so that it never cesse;
 Right as your herte ay can, my lady free,
 Devyse, I prey to god so mote it be.
 And graunte it that ye sone up-on me
 rewe

As wisly as in al I am yow trewe. 1365

196. And if yow lyketh knowen of the fare
 Of me, whos wo ther may no wight dis-
 cryve,

I can no more but, cheste of every care,
 At wrytinge of this lettre I was on-lyve,
 Al redy out my woful gost to dryve; 1370
 Which I delaye, and holde him yet in
 honde,

Upon the sight of matere of your sonde.

197. Myn eyen two, in veyn with which
 I see,

Of sorweful teres salte arn waxen welles;
 My song, in pleynte of myn adversitee;
 My good in harm; myn ese eek waxen
 helle is. 1376

My joye, in wo; I can sey yow nought
 elles,

But turned is, for which my lyf I warie,
 Everich joye or ese in his contrarie.

198. Which with your cominge hoom
 ayein to Troye 1380

Ye may redresse, and, more a thousand
 sythe

Than ever ich hadde, encreasen in me joye.
 For was ther never herte yet so blythe
 To han his lyf, as I shal been as swythe
 As I yow see; and, though no maner
 route 1385

Commeve yow, yet thinketh on your
 trouthe.

199. And if so be my gilt hath deeth
 deserved,

Or if you list no more up-on me see,
 In gnerdon yet of that I have you served,
 Biseche I yow, myn hertes lady free, 1390
 That here-upon ye wolden wryte me,
 For love of god, my righte lode-sterre,
 Ther deeth may make an ende of al my
 werre.

200. If other cause aught doth yow for to
 dwelle, 1394

That with your lettre ye me recomforte;

For though to me your absence is an helle,
 With pacience I wol my wo comporte,
 And with your lettre of hope I wol
 desporte.

Now wryteth, swete, and lat me thus not
 pleyne;

With hope, or deeth, delivereth me fro
 peyne. 1400

201. Y-wis, myn owene dere herte trewe,
 I woot that, whan ye next up-on me see.
 So lost have I myn hele and eek myn hewe,
 Criseyde shal nought conne knowe me!

Y-wis, myn hertes day, my lady free, 1405
 So thursteth ay myn herte to biholde
 Your beautee, that my lyf unnethe I holde.

202. I sey no more, al have I for to seye
 To you wel more than I telle may; 1409

But whether that ye do me live or deye,
 Yet pray I god, so yeve yow right good day.
 And fareth wel, goodly fayre fresshe may,
 As ye that lyf or deeth me may comaunde;
 And to your trouthe ay I me recomaunde

203. With hole swich that, but ye yeven
 me 1415

The same hele, I shal noon hele have.
 In you lyth, whan yow list that it so be.
 The day in which me clothen shal my
 grave.

In yow my lyf, in yow might for to save
 Me from disese of alle peynes smerte; 1420
 And fare now wel, myn owene swete herte!

Le vostre T.

204. This lettre forth was sent un-to
 Criseyde,

Of which hir answer in effect was this;
 Ful pitously she wroot ayein, and seyde.
 That al-so sone as that she might, y-wis,
 She wolde come, and mende al that was
 mis. 1426

And fynally she wroot and seyde him
 thanne,

She wolde come, ye, but she niste whanne.

205. But in hir lettre made she swich
 festes,

That wonder was, and swereth she loveth
 him best, 1430

Of which he fond but botmelees bihestes.

But Troilus, thou mayst now, est or west,
 Pype in an ivy leef, if that thee lest;
 Thus gooth the world; god shilde us fro
 mischaunce,
 And every wight that meneth trouthe
 avaunce! 1435

206. Encreasen gan the we fro day to night
 Of Troilus, for taryinge of Criseyde;
 And lemen gan his hope and eek his
 might,
 For which al down he in his bed him
 leyde;
 He ne set, ne dronk, ne sleep, ne word he
 seyde, 1440
 Imagininge ay that she was unkinde;
 For which wel neigh he wax out of his
 minde.

207. This dreem, of which I told have eek
 biforn,
 May never come out of his remembraunce;
 He thoughte ay wel he hadde his lady
 lorn, 1445
 And that Joves, of his purveyaunce,
 Him shewed hadde in sleep the signifi-
 cance
 Of hir untrouthe and his disaventure,
 And that the boor was shewed him in
 figure.

208. For which he for Sibille his suster
 sente, 1450
 That called was Cassandre eek al aboute,
 And al his dreem he tolde hir er he stente,
 And hir bisoughte assoilen him the doute
 Of the stronge boor, with tuskes stoute;
 And fynally, with-inne a litel stounde,
 Cassandre him gan right thus his dreem
 expounde. 1456

209. She gan first smyle, and seyde, 'O
 brother dere,
 If thou a sooth of this desyrest knowe,
 Thou most a fewe of olde stories here,
 To purpos, how that fortune over-throwe
 Hath lordes olde; through which, with-
 inne a throwe, 1461
 Thou wel this boor shalt knowe, and of
 what kinde
 He comen is, as men in bokes finde.

210. Diane, which that wrooth was and in
 ■■■
 For Grekes nolde doon hir sacrificye, 1465
 Ne encens up-on hir auter sette a-fyre,
 She, for that Grekes gonne hir so dispyse,
 Wrak hir in a wonder cruel wyse.
 For with a boor as greet as oxe in stalle
 She made up frete hir corn and vynes alle.

211. To also this boor was al the contree
 reysed, 1471
 A-monges which ther com, this boor to see,
 A mayde, oon of this world the best
 y-preysed;
 And Meleagre, lord of that contree,
 He lovede so this freshe mayden free 1475
 That with his manhod, er he wolde stente,
 This boor he slow, and hir the heed he
 sente;

212. Of which, as olde bokes tellen us,
 Ther roos a contek and a greet envye;
 And of this lord descended Tydeus 1480
 By ligne, or elles olde bokes lys;
 But how this Meleagre gan to dye
 Thorough his moder, wel I yow not telle,
 For al to long it were for to dwelle.'

[Argument of the 12 Books of Statius'
 Thebais.]

*Associat profugum Tideo primus Polimi-
 tem;*
Tides legatum docet insidiasque secundus;
*Tercius Hemoniden canit et vates lati-
 tantes;*
*Quartus habet reges ineuntes prelia sep-
 tem;* 4
Mox furis Lenne quinto narratur et anguis;
Archimori bustum sexto ludique laguntur;
Dat Graios Thebes et vatem septimus
vimbris;
Octavo cecidit Tideus, spes, vita Pelasgis;
*Ypomedon nono moritur cum Partho-
 nopeo;* 9
Fulmine percussus, decimo Capaneus
superatur;
Undecimo sese perimunt per vulnera
fratres;
Arginam flentem narrat duodevus et
ignem. 12

213. She tolde eek how Tydens, er she
stente, 1485

In the stronge citee of Thebes,
To cleyme kingdom of the citee, wente.
For his felawe, daun Polymtes,
Of which the brother, daun Ethyocles,
Ful wrongfully of Thebes held the
strength, 1490
This tolde she by proces, al by lengthe

214. She tolde eek how Hemonides sterte,
When Tydens slough fifty knightes sterte
to telle eek al the prophesyes by herte,
And how that sevene kinges, with hir
route, 1495
Disegoden the citee al aboute,
And of the holy serpent, and the welle.
And of the furies, al she gan him telle.

215. Of Archimoris larynge and the
pleyes,
And how Amphiorax fl through the
grounde, 1500
How Tydens was slayn, lord of Argeyes,
And how Ypomedoun in litel stounde
Was dreynt, and deed Parthoipe of
wounle,
And also how Cappaneus the proude
With thonder-dint was slayn, that cryde
loude, 1505

216. She gan eek telle him how that
either brother,
Ethyocles and Polmyte also,
At a scarmyng, al he of hem slough other.
And of Argeyes wepinge and hir wo,
And how the town was brent she tolde
eek to. 1510
And so descendeth down from gestes olde
To Diomede, and thus she spak and tolde.

217. 'This like boer bitokneth Diomede,
Tydens sone, that down descended is
Fro Meleagre, that made the boer to
blede. 1515
And thy lady, wher-so she be, y-wis,
Thus Diomede hir herte hath, and she his
Weep if thou wilt, or leet, for out of
doute,
This Diomede is inne, and thou art oute'

218. 'Thou seyst nat sooth, quod he,
'thou sorceresse,

With al thy false goost of prophesye
Thou wenest been a greet devynesse.
Now seestow nat this rool of fantasye
Peyneth hir on ladyes for to lye?
Awey,' quod he, 'ther Joves yere the
sorwe'
Thou shalt be fals, paraunter, yif
morwe'

219. As wel thou mightest lye on Aeneas
That was of creatures, but men lye
That ever werven, kindest and the best,
For whanne hir housbonde was in
partye
To dye himself, but-if she wolde dye
She chees for him to dye and go to
helh,
And start anon, as us the bookes tell

220. Cassandre goth, and he with erde
herte
For-yat his wo for angre of hir speel
And from his bed al solemnly he sterte
As though al hool him hadde a
leche
And day by day he gan enquire as I have
A sooth of this, with al his fulle cure
And thus he dryeth forth his aventur

221. Fortune, whiche that permuteth
Of thinges hath, as it is hir committed
Through purveyaunce and disposicion
Of heigh Jove, as regnes shal be, fithel
Fro folk in folk, or whan they shal be
smitted,
Gan palle away the fetheres brighte
Troye
Fro day to day til they be bare of joye

222. Among al this, the fyn of the parde
Of Ector gan apperhen wonder lye.
The fate wolde his soule sholden not
An lshapen had le a mene it out to fow
Ayens which fate him helpeth not to
stryve,
But on a day to fighten gan he wende
At which, althas' he caughte his ende.

23. For which me thinketh every maner
wight 1553

that haunteth armes oughte to biwayle
the deeth of him that was so noble
a knight;

'or as he drough a king by th'aventayle,
'nwar of this, Achilles through the mayle
and through the body gan him for to
ryve; 1560

and thus this worthy knight was brought
of lyve.

24. For whom, as olde bokes tellen us,
Was maad swich wo, that tonge it may
not telle;

and namely, the sorwe of Troilus, 1564
that next him was of worthinesse welles.
and in this wo gan Troilus to dwelle,
that, what for sorwe, and love, and for
unreste,

'ul ofte a day he bad his herte breste.

25. But natheles, though he gan him
dispeyre, 1569

and dradde ay that his lady was untrewed,
let ay on hir his herte gan repeyre.

and as these loveres doon, he soughte ay
newe

'o gete ayein Criseyde, bright of hewe.
and in his herte he wente hir excusinge,
that Calcas causede al hir taryinge. 1575

26. And ofte tyme he was in purpos
grete

himselfen lyk a pilgrim to disgyse,
'o seen hir; but he may not contrefete
'o been unknowen of folk that weren
wyse, 1579

'e finde excuse aright that may suffyso,
'e among the Grekes knowen were;
'or which he weep ful ofte many a tere.

27. To hir he wroot yet ofte tyme al
newe

'ul pitously, he left it nought for slouthe,
disceching hir that, sin that he was trewe,
she wolde come ayein and holde hir
trouthe. 1586

'or which Criseyde up-on a day, for
routhe,

'ake it so, touchinge al this matere,
'rot him ayein, and seyde as ye may
here.

228. 'Cupydes sone, ensample of goodli-
hede, 1590

O swerd of knighthod, sours of gentilesse!
How mighte a wight in torment and in
drede

And helelees, yow sende as yet gladnesse?
I hertelees, I syke, I in distresse; 1594
Sin ye with me, nor I with yow may dele,
Yow neither sende ich herte may nor hele.

229. Your lettres ful, the papir al
pleynted,

Conseyved hath myn hertes pittee;
I have eek seyn with teres al depeynted
Your lettre, and how that ye requeren me
To come ayein, which yet ne may not be.
But why, lest that this lettre founden
were, 1602

No mencion ne make I now, for fere.

230. Grevous to me, god woot, is your
unreste,

Your haste, and that, the goddes or-
denaunce, 1605

It semeth not ye take it for the beste.

Nor other thing nis in your remem-
braunce,

As thinketh me, but only your plesaunce.
But beth not wrooth, and that I yow
bische; 1608

For that I tarle, is al for wikked speche.

231. For I have herd wel more than I
wende,

Touchinge us two, how thinges han
stonde;

Which I shal with dissimulinge amende.
And beth nought wrooth, I have eek
understode, 1614

How ye ne doon but holden me in honde.
But now no fors, I can not in yow geese
But alle trouthe and alle gentilesse.

232. Comen I wol, but yet in swich dis-
joynte

I stonde as now, that what yeer or what
day

That this shal be, that can I not apoynte.
But in effect, I prey yow, as I may, 1621
Of your good word and of your frendship
ay.

For trewely, whyl that my lyf may dure,
As for a freend, ye may in me assure.

233. Yet preye I yow on yve: ye ne take,
That it is short which that I to yow
wryte; 1626

I dar not, ther I am, wel lettres make.
Ne never yet ne coude I wel endyte.
Eek greet effect men wryte in place lyte.
Th'entente is al, and nought the lettres
space; 1630
And fareth now wel, god have you in his
grace!

La vostre C.'

234. This Troilus this lettre thoughte al
straunge,
Whan he it saugh, and sorwefully he
sighte;
Him thoughte it lyk a kalendes of
change;
But fynally, he ful ne trowen mighte 1635
That she no wolde him holden that she
highte;
For with ful yvel wil list him to leve
That loveth wel, in swich cas, though
him greve.

235. But natheles, men seyn that, at the
laste, 1639
For any thing, men shal the sothe see;
And swich a cas bitidde, and that as faste,
That Troilus wel understood that she
Nas not so kinde as that hir oughte be.
And fynally, he woot now, out of doute,
That al is lost that he hath been aboute.

236. Stood on a day in his malencolye 1646
This Troilus, and in suspecion
Of hir for whom he wende for to dye.
And so bifel, that through-out Troye toun,
As was the gyse, y-bore was up and down
A maner cote-armure, as seyth the storie,
Biforn Deiphebe, in signe of his victorie,

237. The whiche cote, as telleth Lollus,
Deiphebe it hadde y-rent from Diomedes
The same day; and whan this Troilus 1655
It saugh, he gan to taken of it hede,
Avysing of the lengthe and of the brede,
And al the werk; but as he gan biholde,
Ful sodeinly his herte gan to colde.

238. As he that on the coler fond with-
inno 1660

A broche, that he Criseyde yaf that morwe
That she from Troye moste nedes twinne,
In remembraunce of him and of his sorwe:
And she him leyde ayein hir feyth to
borwe 1664
To kepe it ay; but now, ful wel he wiste,
His lady nas no lenger on to triste.

239. He gooth him hoom, and gan ful
sone sende

For Pandarus; and al this newe chaunce,
And of this broche, he tolde him word
and ende, 1669

Compleyninge of hir hertes variaunce,
His longe love, his trouthe, and his pen-
aunce;
And after deeth, with-uten wordes more,
Ful faste he cryde, his reste him to restore.

240. Than spak he thus, 'O lady myn
Criseyde,
Wher is your feyth, and wher is your
biheste? 1675
Wher is your love, wher is your trouthe?'
he seyde;

'Of Diomedes have ye now al this feste!
Allas, I wolde have trowed at the leste,
That, sin ye nolde in trouthe to me stonde,
That ye thus nolde han holden me in
honde! 1680

241. Who shal now trowe on any othes
mo?

Allas, I never wolde han wend, er this,
That ye, Criseyde, coude han chaunged so;
Ne, but I hadde a-gilt and doon amis, 1684
So cruel wende I not your herte, y-wis,
To slee me thus; allas, your name of
trouthe
Is now for-doon, and that is al my routhe.

242. Was ther non other broche yow liste
lete

To feffe with your newe love,' quod he, 1689
'But thilke broche that I, with teres wete,
Yow yaf, as for a remembraunce of me?
Non other cause, allas, ne hadde ye
But for despyt, and eek for that ye mente
Al-outrely to shewen your entente!

243. Through which I see that cleue out
of your minde 1695

Ye han me cast, and I ne can nor may,
For al this world, with-in myn herte finde
T' unloven yow a quarter of a day!
In cursed tyme I born was, weylaway!
That ye, that doon me al this wo endure,
Yet love I best of any creature. 1701

244. Now god,' quod he, 'me sende yet
the grace

That I may meten with this Diomede!
And trewely, if I have might and space,
Yet shal I make, I hope, his sydes blede.
O god,' quod he, 'that oughtest taken hede
To fortheren trouthe, and wronges to
punye, 1707
Why niltow doon a vengeance on this
vyce?

245. O Pandare, that in dremes for to
triste

Me blamed hast, and went art ofte up-
breyde, 1710

Now maystow see thy-selve, if that thee
liste,

How trewe is now thy nece, bright Cri-
seyde!

In sondry formes, god it woot,' he seyde,
'The goddes shewen bothe joye and tene
In slepe, and by my dreame it is now sene.

246. And certaynly, with-oute more
speche, 1716

From hennes-forth, as ferforth as I may,
Myn owene deeth in armes wol I seche;
I recche not how sone be the day!

But trewely, Criseyde, swete may, 1720
Whom I have ay with al my might y-
served,

That ye thus doon, I have it nought
deserved.'

247. This Pandarus, that alle these thinges
herde,

And wiste wel he seyde a sooth of this,
He nought a word ayein to him answerde;
For sory of his frendes sorwe he is, 1726
And shamed, for his nece hath doon a-mis;
And stant, astoned of these causes twaye,
As stille as stoon; a word ne coude he
seye.

248. But at the laste thus he spak, and
seyde, 1730

'My brother dere, I may thee do no-more.
What shulde I seyn? I hate, y-wis,
Criseyde!

And god wot, I wol hate hir evermore!
And that thou me bisoughtest doon of
yore, 1734

Havinge un-to myn honour ne my reste
Right no reward, I dide al that thee leste.

249. If I dide ought that mighte lyken
thee,

It is me leef; and of this treason now,
God woot, that it a sorwe is un-to me!
And dredelees, for hertes ese of yow, 1740
Right sayn wolde I amende it, wiste I how.
And fro this world, almighty god I preye,
Delivere hir sone; I can no-more seye.'

250. Gret was the sorwe and playnt of
Troilus;

But forth hir cours fortune ay gan to
holde. 1745

Criseyde loveth the sone of Tydeus,
And Troilus mot wepe in cares colde.
Swich is this world; who-so it can bi-
holde,

In eche estat is lital hertes reste; 1749
God leve us for to take it for the beste!

251. In many cruel batayle, out of drede,
Of Troilus, this ilke noble knight,
As men may in these olde bokes rede,
Was sene his knighthod and his grate
might.

And dredelees, his ire, day and night, 1755
Ful cruelly the Grekes ay aboughte;
And alway most this Diomede he soughte.

252. And ofte tyme, I finde that they
mette 1758

With blodystrokes and with wordes grete,
Assayinge how hir speres weren whotte;
And god it woot, with many a cruel hete
Gan Troilus upon his helm to-bete.
But natheles, fortune it nought ne wolde,
Of otheres hond that either deyensholde.—

253. And if I hadde y-taken for to wryte
The armes of this ilke worthy man, 1766

Than wolde I of his batailles endyte.
But for that I to wryte first bigan
Of his love, I have seyde as that I can. 1769
His worthy dedes, who-so list hem here,
Reed Dares, he can telle hem alle y-fere.

254. Bisechinge every lady bright of hewe,
And every gentil womman, what she be,
That al be that Criseyde was untrewed,
That for that gilt she be not wrooth with
me. 1775

Ye may hir gilt in othere bokes see ;
And gladlier I wol wryten, if yow leste,
Penelope's trouthe and good Alceste.

255. Ne I sey not this al-only for these
men,
But most for wommen that bitraysed be
Through false folk ; god yeve hem sorwe,
amen ! 1781

That with hir grete wit and subtiltee
Bitrayse yow ! and this commeveth me
To speke, and in effect yow alle I preye,
Beth war of men, and herkeneth what
I seye !— 1785

256. Go, litel book, go litel myn tregedie,
Ther god thy maker yet, er that he dye,
So sende might to make in som comedie !
But litel book, no making thou n'envyde,
But subgit be to alle poesye ; 1790
And kis the steppes, wher-as thou seest
pace
Virgile, Ovyde, Omer, Lucan, and Stace.

257. And for ther is so greet diversitee
In English and in wryting of our tonge,
So preye I god that noon miswryte thee,
Ne thee mismetre for defaute of tonge. 1796
And red wher-so thou be, or elles songe,
That thou be understonde I god beseeche !
But yet to purpos of my rather speche.—

258. The wraththe, as I began yow for to
seye, 1800
Of Troilus, the Grekes boughten dere ;
For thousandes his hondes maden deye,
As he that was with-outen any pere,
Save Ector, in his tyme, as I can here.
But weylaway, save only goddes wille, 1805
Dispitously him slough the fiers Achille.

259. And whan that he was slayn in this
manere,
His lighte goost ful blisfully is went
Up to the holownesse of the seventh spere,
In convers letinge every element ; 1810
And ther he saugh, with ful avysement,
The erratik sterres, herkeninge armonye
With sownes fulle of hevenish melodye.

260. And down from thennes faste he gan
avyse 1814
This litel spot of erthe, that with the see
Enbraced is, and fully gan despyse
This wretched world, and held al vanitee
To respect of the pleyn felicitee
That is in hevene above ; and at the laste,
Ther he was slayn, his loking doun he
caste ; 1820

261. And in him-self he lough right at
the wo
Of hem that wepten for his deeth so faste ;
And dampned al our werk that folweth so
The blinde lust, the which that may not
laste, 1824
And sholden al our herte on hevene caste.
And forth he wente, shortly for to telle,
Ther as Mercurie sorted him to dwelle.—

262. Swich fyn hath, lo, this Troilus for
love,
Swich fyn hath al his grete worthinesse :
Swich fyn hath his estat real above, 1830
Swich fyn his lust, swich fyn hath his
noblesse ;
Swich fyn hath false worldes brotelnesse.
And thus bigan his lovinge of Criseyde,
As I have told, and in this wyse he deyde.

263. O yonge fresshe folkes, he or she, 1835
In which that love up groweth with your
age,
Repeyareth loom from worldly vanitee,
And of your herte up-casteth the visage
To thilke god that after his image
Yow made, and thinketh al nis but
a fayre 1840
This world, that passeth sone as floures
fayre.

264. And loveth him, the which that
right for love
Upon a cros, our soules for to beye,

First starf, and roos, and sit in hevene
 a-bove ;
 For he nil falsen no wight, dar I seye, 1845
 That wol his herte al hoolly on him leye.
 And sin he best to love is, and most meke,
 What nedeth feyned loves for to seke?

265. Lo here, of Payens corsed olde rytes,
 Lo here, what alle hir goddes may availle ;
 Lo here, these wrecched worldes appe-
 tytes ; 1851
 Lo here, the fyn and guerdon for travaille
 Of Jove, Appollo, of Mars, of swich
 rascaille !

Lo here, the forme of olde clerkes speche
 In poetrye, if ye hir bokes seche.— 1855

266. O moral Gower, this book I directe
 To thee, and to the philosophical Strode,
 To vouchen sauf, ther nede is, to corecte,

Of your benignitees and zeles gode.
 And to that sothfast Crist, that starf on
 rode, 1860
 With al myn herte of mercy ever I preye ;
 And to the lord right thus I speke and
 seye :

267. Thou oon, and two, and three, eterne
 on-lyve,
 That regnest ay in three and two and
 oon,
 Uncircumscrip, and al mayst circum-
 scripve, 1865
 Us from visible and invisible foon
 Defende ; and to thy mercy, everychoon,
 So make us, Jesus, for thy grace, digne,
 For love of mayde and moder thyn
 benigne ! Amen.

Explicit Liber Troilli et Criseydis.

THE HOUS OF FAME.

BOOK I.

God turne us every dreem to gode !
For hit is wonder, by the rode,
To my wit, what causeth swevenes
Either on morwes, or on evenes ;
And why th'effect folweth of somme, 5
And of somme hit shal never come ;
Why that is an avisioun,
And †this a revelacioun ;
Why this a dreem, why that a sweven,
And nat to every man liche even ; 10
Why this a fantom, †these oracles,
I noot ; but who-so of these miracles
The causes knoweth bet than I,
Devyne he ; for I certainly
Ne can hem noght, ne never thinke 15
To besily my wit to swinke,
To knowe of hir signifiante
The gendres, neither the distaunce
Of tymes of hem, ne the causes
For-why this †more than that cause is ; 20
As if folkes complexiouns
Make hem dreme of reflexiouns ;
Or elles thus, as other sayn,
For to greet feblenesse of †brayn,
By abstinence, or by seeknesse, 25
Prison, stewe, or greet distresse ;
Or elles by disordinaunce
Of naturel acustomaunce,
That som man is to curious
In studie, or melancolious, 30
Or thus, so inly ful of drede,

That no man may him bote bede ; *proffer*
Or elles, that devocioun
Of somme, and contemplacioun
Causeth swiche dremes ofte ;
Or that the cruel lyf unsofte *harsh* 35
Which these ilke lovers leden
That hopen over mucho or dreden,
That purely hir impressiouns
Causeth hem avisiouns ; 40
Or if that spirits have the might
To make folk to dreme a-night ;
Or if the soule, of propre kinde,
Be so parfit, as men finde,
That hit forwot that is to come, 45
And that hit warneth alle and somme
Of everiche of hir adventures
By avisiouns, or by figures,
But that our flesh ne hath no might
To understonden hit aright, 50
For hit is warned to derkly ;—
But why the cause is, noght wot I.
Wel worthe, of this thing, grete clerkes.
That trete of this and other werkes ;
For I of noon opinioun 55
Nil as now make mencoun,
But only that the holy rode
Turne us every dreem to gode !
For never, sith that I was born,
Ne no man elles, me biforn, 60
Mette, I trowe stedfastly,
So wonderful a dreem as I

The tenthe day [dide] of Decembre,
The which, as I can now remembre,
I wol yow tellen every del.

65

The Invocation.

But at my ginning, trusteth wel,
I wol make invocacioun,
With special devocioun,
Unto the god of slepe anoon,
That dwelleth in a cave of stoon 70
Upon a streem that comth fro Lete,
That is a flood of helle unswete ;
Besyde a folk men clepe Cimerie,
Ther slepeth ay this god unmerie *And*
With his slepy thousand sones 75
That alway for to slepe hir wone is—
And to this god, that I of rede,
Preye I, that he wol me spede
My sweven for to telle aright,
If every dreem stonde in his might. 80
And he, that mover is of al
That is and was, and ever shal,
So yive hem joye that hit here
Of alle that they dreme to-yere, *this year*
And for to stonden alle in grace 85
Of hir loves, or in what place
That hem wer levest for to stonde, *disgrace*
And shelde hem fro †povert and shonde,
And fro unhappe and ech disease,
And sende hem althat may hem plesse, 90
That take hit wel, and scorne hit noght,
Ne hit misdeemen in her thoght *misdemeanor*
Through malicious entencionn.
And who-so, through presumpcioun,
Or hate or scorne, or through envye, 95
Dispyt, or jape, or vilanye,
Misdeme hit, preye I Jesus god
That (dreme he barfoot, dreme he shod),
That every harm that any man
Hath had, sith [that] the world began, 100
Befalle him therof, or he sterve,
And graunte he mote hit ful deserve,
Lo! with swich a conclusioun
As had of his avisioun
Cresus, that was king of Lyde, 105
That high upon a gebet dyde! *gallows*
This prayer shal he have of me;
I am no bet in charite!

Now herkneth, as I have you seyde,
What that I mette, or I abreyd.

110

The Dream.

Of Decembre the tenthe day,
Whan hit was night, to slepe I lay
Right ther as I was wont to done,
And fil on slepe wonder sone,
As he that wery was for-go 115
On pilgrimage myles two
To the corseynt Leonard, *shrine*
To make lythe of that was hard.

But as I †asleep, me mette I was
Within a temple y-mad of glas; 120
In whiche ther were mo images
Of gold, stondinge in sondry stages,
And mo riche tabernacles,
And with perree mo pinacles, *jewelry*
And mo curious portreytures, 125
And queynte maner of figures
Of olde werke, then I saw ever.

For certeynly, I niste never
Wher that I was, but wel wiste I,
Hit was of Venus redely, 130
The temple; for, in portreyture,
I saw anoon-right hir figure
Naked fletinge in a see.

And also on hir heed, pardee,
Hir rose-garlond whyt and reed, 135
And hir comb to kembe hir heed,
Hir dowves, and daun Cupido,
Hir blinde sone, and Vulcano,
That in his face was ful broun.

But as I romed up and down, 140
Fond that on a wal ther was
Thus writen, on a table of bras:
'I wol now singe, if that I can,
The armes, and al-so the man,
That first cam, through his destinee, 145
Fugitif of Troye contree,
In Itaile, with ful moche pyne,
Unto the strondes of Lavyne.'
And tho began the story anoon,,
As I shal telle yow echoon. 150

First saw I the destruccioun
Of Troye, through the Greek Sinoun,
[That] with his false forsweringe,
And his chere and his lesinge
Made the hors broght into Troye, 155
Thorgh which Troyens loste al hir joye.
And after this was grave, allas!
How Ilioun assailed was
And wonne, and king Priam y-slayn,

noted from my copy

And Polites his sone, certayn, 160
Dispitously, of dan Pirrus.

And next that saw I how Venus,
Whan that she saw the castel brende,
Doun fro the hevene gan descende,
And bad hir sone Eneas flee ; 165
And how he fledde, and how that he
Escaped was from al the pres,
And took his fader, Anchises,
And bar him on his bakke away,
Cryinge, 'Allas, and welaway !' 170
The whiche Anchises in his honde
Bar the goddes of the londe,
Thilke that unbrende were.

And I saw next, in alle this fere,
How Creusa, daun Eneas wyf, 175
Which that he lovede as his lyf,
And hir yonge sone Iulo,
And eek Ascanius also,
Fledden eek with drery chere,
That hit was pitee for to here ; 180
And in a forest, as they wente,
At a turninge of a wente,
How Creusa was y-lost, allas !
That deed, [but] noot I how, she was ;
How he hir soughte, and how hir gost 185
Bad him to flee the Grekes ost,
And seyde, he moste unto Itaille,
As was his destinee, sauns faille ;
That hit was pitee for to here,
Whan hir spirit gan appere, 190
The wordes that she to him seyde,
And for to kepe hir sone him preyde.
Ther saw I graven eek how he,
His fader eek, and his meynee,
With his shippes gan to sayle 195
Toward the contree of Itaille,
As streight as that they mighte go.

Ther saw I thee, cruel Juno,
That art daun Jupiteres wyf,
That hast y-hated, al thy lyf, 200
Al the Troyanisshe blood,
Renne and crye, as thou were wood,
On Eolus, the god of windes,
To blowen out, of alle kindes,
So loude, that he shulde drenche 205
Lord and lady, grome and wenche
Of al the Troyan nacioun,
Withoute any savacioun.

Ther saw I swich tempeste aryse,
That every herte mighte agryse, 210

To see hit peynted on the walle.

Ther saw I graven eek withalle,
Venus, how ye, my lady dere,
Wepinge with ful woful chere,
Prayen Jupiter an hye 215
To save and kepe that navye
Of the Troyan Eneas,
Sith that he hir sone was.

Ther saw I Joves Venus kisse, 220
And graunted of the tempest lisse.
Ther saw I how the tempest stente,
And how with alle pyne he wente,
And prevely took arrivago
In the contree of Cartage ;
And on the morwe, how that he 225
And a knight, hight Achatee,
Metten with Venus that day,
Goinge in a queynt array,
As she had ben an hunteresse,
With wind blowinge upon hir tresse ; 230
How Eneas gan him to pleyne,
Whan that he knew hir, of his peyne ;
And how his shippes dreynte were,
Or elles lost, he niste where ;
How she gan him comforte tho, 235
And bad him to Cartage go,
And ther he shuldë his folk findo,
That in the see were left behindo.

And, shortly of this thing to pace,
She made Eneas so in graco 240
Of Dido, quene of that contree,
That, shortly for to tellen, she
Becam his love, and leet him do
That that wedding longeth to.
What shulde I speke more queynte, 245
Or peyne me my wordes peynte,
To speke of love? hit wol not be ;
I can not of that facultee.

And eek to telle the manero
How they aqueynteden in-fero, 250
Hit were a long proces to telle,
And over long for yow to dwelle.

Ther saw I grave, how Eneas
Tolde Dido every cas,
That him was tid upon the sea. 255

And after grave was, how she
Made of him, shortly, at oo word,
Hir lyf, hir love, hir lust, hir lord :
And dide him al the reverence,
And leyde on him al the dispenche. 260
That any woman mighte do,

And then

is with help

Waninge hit had al be so,
 As he hir swoor; and her-by demed
 That he was good, for he swich seemed
 Allas! what harm doth apperance, 265
 Whan hit is fals in existence!
 For he to hir a traitour was;
 Wherfor she slow hir-self, allas!
 Lo, how a woman doth amis,
 To love him that unknownen is! 270
 For, by Crist, lo! thus hit fareth;
 'Hit is not al gold, that glareth.'
 For, al-so brouke I wel myn heed,
 Ther may be under goodliheed
 Keivered many a shrewed vyce; 275
 Therfor be no wight so nyce,
 To take a love only for chere,
 For speche, or for frendly manere;
 For this shal every woman finde
 That som man, of his pure kinde, 280
 Wol shewen outward the faireste,
 Til he have caught that what him leste;
 And thanne wol he causes finde,
 And swere how that she is unkinde,
 Or fals, or prevy, or double was. 285
 Al this seye I by Eneas
 And Dido, and hir nyce lest,
 That lovede al to sone a gest;
 Therfor I wol seye a proverbe,
 That 'he that fully knoweth th'erbe 290
 May sauffy leye hit to his y8',
 Withoute dreed, this is no lye.
 But let us speke of Eneas,
 How he betrayed hir, allas!
 And lefte hir ful unkindely.
 So whan she saw al-utterly, 295
 That he wolde hir of trouthe faille,
 And wende fro hir to Itaile,
 She gan to wringe hir hondes two.
 'Allas!' quod she, 'what me is wo! 300
 Allas! is every man thus trewe,
 That every yere wolde have a newe,
 If hit so longe tyme dure,
 Or elles three, peraventure?
 As thus of oon he wolde have fame 305
 In magnifying of his name,
 Another for frendship, seith he;
 And yet ther shal the thridde be,
 That shal be taken for delyt,
 Lo, or for singular profyt.' 310
 In swiche wordes gan to pleyne
 Dido of hir grete payne,

As me mette redely;
 Non other auctour alegge I.
 'Allas!' quod she, 'my swete herte, 315
 Have pitee on my sorwes smerte,
 And ales me not! go noght away!
 O woful Dido, wel away!
 Quod she to hir-selve tho.
 'O Eneas! what wil ye do? 320
 O, that your love, ne your bonde,
 That ye han sworn with your right bonde,
 Ne my cruel deeth,' quod she,
 'May holde yow still heer with me!
 O, haveth of my deeth pitee! 325
 Y-wis, my dere herte, ye
 Knownen ful wel that never yit,
 As fer-forth as I hadde wit,
 Agilte [I] yow in thought ne deed. 330
 O, have ye men swich goodliheed
 In speche, and never a deel of trouthe?
 Allas, that ever hadde rounthe
 Any woman on any man!
 Now see I wel, and telle can,
 We wrecched wimmen conne non art; 335
 For certeyn, for the more part,
 Thus we be served everichone.
 How sore that ye man conne grone,
 Anoon, as we have yow receyved,
 Certainly we ben decayved, 340
 For, though your love laste a sesoun,
 Wayte upon the conclusioun,
 And eek how that ye determynen,
 And for the more part diffynen.
 'O, welaway that I was born! 345
 For through yow is my name lorn,
 And alle myn actes red and songe
 Over al this lond, on every tonge.
 O wikke Fame! for ther nis
 Nothing so swift, lo, as she is! 350
 O, sooth is, every thing is wist,
 Though hit be keivered with the mist.
 Eek, thogh I mighte duren ever,
 That I have doon, rekever I never,
 That I ne shal be seyde, allas, 355
 Y-shamed be through Eneas,
 And that I shal thus juged be—
 "Lo, right as she hath doon, now she
 Wol do estaones, hardily;" 360
 Thus seyth the peple prevely —
 But that is doon, nis not to done,
 †Al hir compleynt ne al hit mone,
 Certeyn, availleth hir not a stree.

And whan she wiste sothly he
 Was forth unto his shippes goon, 365
 She †in hir chambre wente anoon,
 And called on hir suster Anne,
 And gan hir to compleyne thanne;
 And seyde, that she cause was
 That she first lovede †Eneas, 370
 And thus counseilled hir therto.
 But what! when this was seyde and do,
 She roof hir-selve to the herte,
 And deyde through the wounde smerte.
 But al the maner how she deyde, 375
 And al the wordes that she seyde,
 Who-so to knowe hit hath purpos,
 Reed Virgile in Eneidos
 Or the Epistle of Ovyde,
 What that she wroot or that she dyde: 380
 And nere hit to long to endyte,
 By god, I woldë hit here wryte.

But, welaway! the harm, the routho,
 That hath betid for swich untroutho,
 As men may ofte in bokes rede, 385
 And al day seen hit yet in dede,
 That for to thenken hit, a tene is. 390

Lo, Demophon, duk of Athenis,
 How he forswor him ful falsly
 And trayed Phillis wikkedly, 390
 The kinges doghter was of Trace,
 And falsly gan his terme pace;
 And when she wiste that he was fals,
 She heng hir-self right by the hals,
 For he had do hir swich untroutho; 395
 Lo! was not this a wo and routho?

Eek lo! how fals and reccheles
 Was to Briseida Achilles,
 And Paris to †Oënone;
 And Jason to Isiphile; 400
 And eft Jason to Medea;
 And Ercules to Dyanira;
 For he lefte hir for Iöle,
 That made him cacche his deeth, pardee.

How fals eek was he, Theseus; 405
 That, as the story telleth us,
 How he betrayed Adriane;
 The devel be his soules bane!
 For had he laughed, had he loured,
 He mostë have be al devoured, 410
 If Adriane no had y-be!
 And, for she had of him pitee,
 She made him fro the dethe escape,
 And he made hir a ful fals jape;

For after this, within a whyle 415
 He lefte hir alepinge in an yle,
 Deserte alone, right in the see,
 And stal away, and leet hir be;
 And took hir suster Phedra tho
 With him, and gan to shippe go. 420
 And yet he had y-sworn to here,
 On al that ever he mighte swere,
 That, so she saved him his lyf,
 He wolde have take hir to his wyf;
 For she desired nothing elles, 425
 In certein, as the book us tellea.

But to excusen Eneas
 Fulliche of al his greet trespas,
 The book seyth, Mercurie, sauns faile,
 Bad him go into Itaile, 430
 And leve Auffrykes regionn,
 And Dido and hir faire toun.

Tho saw I grave, how to Itaile
 Daun Eneas is go to saile;
 And how the tempest al began, 435
 And how he loste his steresman,
 Which that the stere, or he took keep,
 Smot over-bord, lo! as he sleep.

And also saw I how Sibylo
 And Eneas, besyde an yle, 440
 To helle wente, for to seo
 His fader, Anchises the free.
 How he ther fond Palinurus,
 And Dido, and eek Deiphebus;
 And every tourment eek in helle 445
 Saw he, which is long to telle.
 Which who-so willetl for to knowe,
 He moste rede many a rowe
 On Virgile or on Claudian,
 Or Daunte, that hit telle can. 450

Tho saw I grave al th'arivaile
 That Eneas had in Itaile;
 And with king Latine his trettee,
 And alle the batailles that he
 Was at him-self, and eek his knightes, 455
 Or he had al y-wonne his rightes;
 And how he Turnus refte his lyf,
 And wan Lavyna to his wyf;
 And al the marvelous signals
 Of the goddes celestials; 460
 How, mangre Juno, Eneas,
 For al hir sleighte and hir compas,
 Acheved al his aventure;
 For Jupiter took of him cure
 At the prayere of Venus 465

The which I preye alway save us,
 And us ay of our sorwes lighte !
 Whan I had seyen al this sighte
 In this noble temple thus,
 'A, Lord !' thoughte I, 'that madest us,
 Yet saw I never swich noblesse 471
 Of images, ne swich richesse,
 As I saw graven in this chirche ;
 But not woot I who dide hem wirche,
 Ne wher I am, ne in what contree. 475
 But now wol I go out and see,
 Right at the wicket, if I can
 See o-wher stering any man,
 That may me telle wher I am.'
 When I out at the dores cam, 480
 I faste aboute me beheld.
 Then saw I but a large feld,
 As far as that I mighte see,
 Withouten toun, or hous, or tree, 485
 Or bush, or gras, or *gravel* lond ;
 For al the feld nas but of sond
 As smal as man may see yet lye

In the desert of Libye ;
 Ne I no maner creature,
 That is y-formed by nature, 490
 Ne saw, me [for] to rede or wisse.
 'O Crist,' thoughte I, 'that art in blisse,
 Fro fantom and illusionn
 Me save !' and with devocioun
 Myn yēn to the heaven I caste. 495
 Tho was I war, lo ! at the laste,
 That faste by the sonne, as hye
 As kenne mighte I with myn yē,
 Me thoughte I saw an egle sore,
 But that hit semed moche more 500
 Then I had any egle seyn.
 But this as sooth as deeth, certeyn,
 Hit was of golde, and shoon so brighte,
 That never saw men such a sighte,
 But-if the heaven hadde y-wonne 505
 Al newe of golde another sonne ;
 So shoon the egles fethres brighte,
 And somewhat downward gan hit lighte.
 Explicit liber primus.'

BOOK II.

Incipit liber secundus.

Proem.

Now herkneþ, every maner man
 That English understonde can, 510
 And listeth of my dream to lare,
 For now at erste shul ye here
 So *truly* an avisioun, *wonderful*
 That I saye, ne Scipioun,
 Ne king Nabugodonosor, 515
 Pharo, Turnus, ne Eleanor,
 Ne mette swich a dreem as this !
 Now faire blisful, O Cipris, 520
 So be my favour at this tyme !
 And ye, me to endyte and ryme
 Helpeth, that on Parnaso dwelle
 By Elicon the clere welle.
 O Thought, that wroot al that I mette,
 And in the tresorie hit shette
 Of my brayn ! now shal men see 525
 If any vertu in thee be,
 To tellen al my dream aright ;
 Now kythe thyn engyn and might ! 530

The Dream.

This egle, of which I have yow told,
 That shoon with fethres as of gold, 530
 Which that so hye gan to sore,
 I gan beholde more and more,
 To see hir beantes and the wonder ;
 But never was ther dint of thonder,
 Ne that thing that men calle foudre, 535
 That smoot somtyme a tour to pou dre,
 And in his swifte coming brende,
 That so swythe gan descende, 540
 As this foul, whan hit behelde
 That I a-roume was in the felde ;
 And with his grimme pawes stronge,
 Within his sharpe nayles longe,
 Me, fleinge, at a swappe he hente, 545
 And with his soure agayn up wente,
 Me caryinge in his clawes starke
 As lightly as I were a lark,
 How high, I can not telle yow,
 For I cam up, I niste how,
 For so astonied and a-sweved *clap* 550

Waltz
Was every vertu in my heved, 550
What with this sours and with my drede,
That al my feling gan to dede ;
For-why hit was to greet affray.

Thus I longe in his clawes lay,
Til at the laste he to me spak 555
In mannes vois, and seyde, 'Awak !
And be not †so a-gast, for shame !'
And called me tho by my name. (50)
And, for I sholde the bet abreyde—
Me mette—'Awak,' to me he seyde, 560
Right in the same vois and stevene
That useth oon I coude nevene ; *nam*
And with that vois, soth for to sayn,
My minde cam to me agayn ;
For hit was goodly seyde to me, 565
So nas hit never wont to be.

And herewithal I gan to stere, *stir*
And he me in his feet to bere, (60)
Til that he felte that I had hete,
And felte eek tho myn herte bete. 570
And tho gan he me to disporte,
And with wordes to comforte,
And sayde twyës, 'Seynte Marie !
Thou art noyous for to carie,
And nothing nedeth hit, pardee ! 575
For al-so wis god helpe me
As thou non harm shalt have of this ;
And this cas, that betid thee is, (70)
Is for thy lore and for thy prow ;—
Let see ! darst thou yet loke now ? 580
Be ful assured, boldely,
I am thy frend.' And therewith I
Gan for to wondren in my minde.
'O god,' thoughte I, 'that madest kinde,
Shal I non other weyes dye ? 585
Wher Joves wol me stellifye,
Or what thing may this signifye ?
I neither am Enok, ne Elye, (80)
Ne Romulus, ne Ganymede
That was y-bore up, as men rede, 590
To hevене with dan Jupiter,
And maad the goddes boteler.'

Lo ! this was tho my fantasye !
But he that bar me gan espye
That I so thoghte, and seyde this :— 595
'Thou demest of thy-self amis ;
For Joves is not ther-about—
I dar wel putte thee out of doute— (90)
To make of thee as yet a sterre.
But er I bere thee moche ferre, 600

I wol thee telle what I am,
And whider thou shalt, and why I cam
To †done this, so that thou take
Good herte, and not for fere quake.'
'Gladly,' quod I. 'Now wel,' quod he :—
'First I, that in my feet have thee, 606
Of which thou hast a feer and wonder,
Am dwelling with the god of thonder,
Which that men callen Jupiter, (101)
That dooth me flee ful ofte fer 610
To do al his comaundement.
And for this cause he hath me sent
To thee : now †herkne, by thy trouthe !
Certeyn, he hath of thee route,
That thou so longe trewely
Hast served so ententify *attentively* 615
His blinde newew Cupido,
And fair Venus [goddesse] also, (110)
Withoute guerdoun ever yit,
And nevertheles hast set thy wit— 620
Although that in thy hede ful †lyte is—
To make bokes, songes, dytees,
In ryme, or elles in cadence,
As thou best canst, in reverence
Of Love, and of his servants eke, 625
That have his servise soght, and seke ;
And peynest thee to preyse his art,
Although thou haddest never part ; (120)
Wherfor, al-so god me blesse,
Joves halt hit greet humblesse 630
And vertu eek, that thou wolt make
A-night ful ofte thyn heed to ake,
In thy studie so thou wrytest,
And ever-mo of love endytest,
In honour of him and preysinges, 635
And in his folkes furtheringes,
And in hir matere al devyest, (129)
And noght him nor his folk despyest,
Although thou mayst go in the daunce
Of hem that him list not avaunce. 640
'Wherfor, as I seyde, y-wis,
Jupiter considereth this,
And also, beau sir, other thinges ;
That is, that thou hast no tydinges
Of Loves folk, if they be glade, 645
Ne of noght elles that god made ;
And noght only fro fer contree
That ther no tyding comth to thee, (140)
But of thy verray neyghebores,
That dwellen almost at thy dores, 650
Thou herest neither that ne this ;

For whan thy labour doon al is,
 And hast y-maad thy rekeninges,
 In stede of reste and newe thinges,
 Thou gost hoom to thy hous anoon ; 655
 And, also domb as any stoon,
 Thou sittest at another boke,
 Til fully daswed is thy loke, *confused* (150)
 And livest thus as an hermyte,
 Although thyn abstinence is lyte. 660
 ' And therfor Joves, through his grace,
 Wol that I bere thee to a place,
 Which that hight THE Hous of FAME,
 To do thee som disport and game,
 In som recompensacioun 665
 Of labour and devocioun
 That thou hast had, lo ! causeles,
 To Cupido, the reccheles ! (160)
 And thus this god, thorgh his meryte,
 Wol with som maner thing thee quyte,
 So that thou wolt be of good chere. 671
 For truste wel, that thou shalt here,
 When we be comen ther I seye,
 Mo wonder thinges, dar I leye,
 Of Loves folke mo tydinges, *tr. 1675*
 Bothe soth-sayes and lesinges ;
 And mo loves newe begonne,
 And longe y-served loves wonne, (170)
 And mo loves casuelly
 That been betid, no man wot why, 680
 But as a blind man stert an hare ;
 And more jolytee and fare, *frankly*
 Whyl that they finde love of stele,
 As thinketh hem, and over-al wele ;
 Mo discords, and mo jelousyes, 685
 Mo murmurs, and mo novelryes,
 And mo dissimulaciouns,
 And feyned reparaciouns ; (180)
 And mo berdes in two houres
 Withoute rasour or sisoures 690
 Y-maad, then greynes be of sondes ;
 And eke mo holdinge in hondes,
 And also mo renovelaunces. *11*
 Of olde forleten aqneyntaunces ;
 Mo love-dayes and acordes 695
 Then on instruments ben cordes ;
 And eke of loves mo eschaunges
 Than ever cornes were in graunges ; (190)
 Unethe maistow trowen this ?— 699
 Quod he. ' No, helpe me god so wis !—
 Quod I. ' No ? why ? ' quod he. ' For hit
 Were impossible, to my wit,

Though that Fame hadde al the pyes
 In al a realme, and al the spyes,
 How that yet she shulde here al this, 705
 Or they espye hit.' ' O yis, yis !'
 Quod he to me, ' that can I preve
 By resoun, worthy for to leve, (200)
 So that thou yeve thyn advertence *att. time*
 To understonde my sentence. 710
 ' First shalt thou heren wher she dwell-
 eth,
 And so thyn owne book hit telleth ;
 Hir paleys stant, as I shal seye,
 Right even in middes of the weye
 Betwixen hevене, erthe, and see ; 715
 That, what-so-ever in al these three
 Is spoken, in privee or aperte,
 The wey therto is so overt, *open* (210)
 And stant eek in so juste a place,
 That every soun mot to hit pace, 720
 Or what so comth fro any tonge, *whispered*
 Be hit rouned, red, or songe,
 Or spoke in seurtee or drede,
 Certein, hit moste thider nede.
 ' Now herkne wel ; for-why I willo 725
 Tellen thee a propre skile, *reason*
 And tworthy demonstracioun
 In myn imagynacioun. (220)
 ' Geffrey, thou wost right wel this,
 That every kindly thing that is, 730
 Hath a kindly stede ther he
 May best in hit conserved be ;
 Unto which place every thing,
 Through his kindly enclyning,
 Moveth for to come to, 735
 Whan that hit is away therfro ;
 As thus ; lo, thou mayst al day see
 That any thing that hevy be, (230)
 As stoon or leed, or thing of wighte,
 And ber hit never so hye on highte, 740
 Lat go thyn hand, hit falleth down.
 ' Right so seye I by fyre or soun,
 Or smoke, or other thinges lighte,
 Alwey they seke upward on highte ;
 Whyl ech of hem is at his large, 745
 Light thing up, and downward charge.
 ' And for this cause mayst thou see,
 That every river to the see (240)
 Enclyned is to go, by kinde.
 And by these skilles, as I finde, 750
 Hath fish dwellinge in floode and see,
 And treës eek in erthe be.

Thus every thing, by this resoun,
 Hath his propre mansioun,
 To which hit seketh to repaire,
 As ther hit shulde not apaire. 755
 Lo, this sentence is knowne conthe
 Of every philosophres mouthe, (250)
 As Aristotle and dan Platon,
 And other clerkes many oon ; 760
 And to confirme my resoun,
 Thou wost wel this, that speche is soun,
 Or elles no man mighte hit here ;
 Now þherkne what I wol thee lere.
 'Soun is noght but air y-broken, 765
 And every speche that is spoken,
 Loud or privee, foul or fair,
 In his substaunce is but air ; (260)
 For as flaumbe is but lighted smoke,
 Right so soun is air y-broke. 770
 But this may be in many wyse,
 Of which I wil thee two devyse,
 As soun that comth of pype or harpe.
 For whan a pype is blowen sharpe,
 The air is twist with violence, 775
 And rent ; lo, this is my sentence ;
 Eek, whan men harpe-strings smyte,
 Whether hit be moche or lyte, (270)
 Lo, with the strook the air to-breketh ; 779
 Right so hit breketh whan men speketh.
 Thus wost thou wel what thing is speche.
 'Now hennesforth I wol thee teche.
 How every speche, or noise, or soun,
 Through his multiplicacioun.
 Thogh hit were pyped of a mouse, 785
 Moot nede come to Fames House.
 I preve hit thus—tak hede now—
 By experience ; for if that thou (280)
 Throwe on water now a stoon,
 Wel wost thou, hit wol make anon 790
 A litel roundel as a cercle,
 Paraventure brood as a covercle ;
 And right anon thou shalt see weel,
 That wheel wol cause another wheel,
 And that the thridde, and so forth,
 brother, 795
 Every cercle causing other,
 Wyder than himselve was ;
 And thus, fro roundel to compas, (290)
 Ech aboute other goinge,
 Caused of otheres steringe, 800
 And multiplying ever-mo,
 Til that hit be so fer y-go

That hit at bothe brinkes be.
 Al-though thou mowe hit not y-see
 Above, hit goth yet alway under, 805
 Although thou thenke hit a gret wonder.
 And who-so seith of trouthe I varie,
 Bid him proven the contrarie. (300)
 And right thus every word, y-wis,
 That loude or privee spoken is, 810
 Moveth first an air aboute,
 And of this moving, out of doute,
 Another air anon is meved,
 As I have of the water preved,
 That every cercle causeth other. 815
 Right so of air, my leve brother ;
 Everich air in other stereth (309)
 More and more, and speche up bereth,
 Or vois, or noise, or word, or soun,
 Ay through multiplicacioun, 820
 Til hit be atte House of Fame ;—
 Tak hit in earnest or in game.
 'Now have I told, if thou have minde,
 How speche or soun, of pure kinde,
 Enclyned is upward to meve ; 825
 This, mayst thou fele, wel I preve.
 And that þthe mansioun, y-wis,
 That every thing enclyned to is, (320)
 Hath his kindeliche stede : *material*
 þThan sheweth hit, withouten drede, 830
 That kindly the mansioun
 Of every speche, of every soun,
 Be hit either foul or fair,
 Hath his kinde place in air.
 And sin that every thing, that is 835
 Out of his kinde place, y-wis,
 Moveth thider for to go
 If hit a-weye be therfro, (330)
 As I before have preved thee,
 Hit seweth, every soun, pardee, *following* 840
 Moveth kindly to pace
 Al up into his kindly place.
 And this place of which I telle,
 Ther as Fame list to dwelle,
 Is set amiddes of these three, 845
 Heven, erthe, and eek the see,
 As most conservatif the soun.
 Than is this the conclusioun, (340)
 That every speche of every man
 As I thee telle first began, 850
 Moveth up on high to pace
 Kindely to Fames place.
 'Telle me this feithfully,

Have I not proved thus simply,
 Withouten any subtiltee 855
 Of speche, or gret prolixitee
 Of termes of philosophye,
 Of figures of poetrye, (350)
 Or colours of rethoryke?
 Pardee, hit oughthe thee to lyke; 860
 For hard langage and hard matere
 Is encombrous for to here
 At ones; wost thou not wel this?
 And I answerde, and seyde, 'Yis.'
 'A ha!' quod he, 'lo, so I can 865
 Lewedly to a lewed man
 Speke, and shewe him swiche skilles,
 That he may shake hem by the byles, (360)
 So palpable they shulden be.
 But tel me this, now pray I thee, 870
 How thinkst thee my conclusioun?'
 {Quod he}. 'A good persuasioun,'
 Quod I, 'hit is; and lyk to be
 Right so as thou hast proved me.'
 'By god,' quod he, 'and as I leve, 875
 Thou shalt have yit, or hit be eve,
 Of every word of this sentence
 A preve, by experience; (370)
 And with thyn eres heren wel
 Top and tail, and everydel, 880
 That every word that spoken is
 Comth into Fames Hous, y-wis,
 As I have seyde; what wilt thou more?'
 And with this word upper to sore
 He gan, and seyde, 'By Seynt Jame! 885
 Now wil we spoken al of game.'
 'How farest thou?' quod he to me.
 'Wel,' quod I. 'Now see,' quod he, (380)
 'By thy trouthe, yond adoun,
 Wher that thou knowest any toun, 890
 Or hous, or any other thing.
 And whan thou hast of ought knowing,
 Loke that thou warpe me, . . .
 And I anon shal telle thee
 How fer that thou art now therfro.' 895
 And I adoun +gan loken tho,
 And beheld feldes and plaines, (389)
 And now hilles, and now mountaines,
 Now valeys, and now forestes,
 And now, unethes, grete bestes: 900
 Now riveres, now citees,
 Now tonnes, and now grete trees,
 Now shippes sailinge in the see.
 But thus sone in a whyle he

Was flowen fro the grounde so hye, 905
 That al the world, as to myn ye,
 No more seemed than a prikke;
 Or elles was the air so thikke (400)
 That I ne mighte not discerne.
 With that he spak to me as yerne, 910
 And seyde: 'Seestow any toun
 Or ought thou knowest yonder doun?'
 I seyde, 'Nay.' 'No wonder nis,'
 Quod he, 'for half so high as this
 Was Alexander Macedo;
 Ne the king, dan Scipio, ^{with great men}
 That saw in dreame, at point dawns, 915
 Helle and erthe, and paradys; (410)
 Ne eek the wrecche Dedalus,
 Ne his child, nyce Icarus, 920
 That fleigh so highe that the hete
 His winges melt, and he fel wate
 In-mid the see, and ther he dreynte,
 For whom was makid moch compleynte.
 'Now turn upward,' quod he, 'thy face,
 And behold this large place, 925
 This air; but loke thou ne be
 Adrad of hem that thou shalt see, (420)
 For in this region, certain,
 Dwalleth many a citesein, 930
 Of which that speketh dan Plato.
 These ben the eyrish bestes, lo!'
 And so saw I al that meynes
 Bothe goon and also fleo.
 'Now,' quod he tho, 'cast up thyn ye; 935
 See yonder, lo, the Galaxye,
 Which men clepeth the Milky Wey,
 For hit is whyt; and somme, parfey, (430)
 Callen hit Watlinge Strete:
 That ones was y-brent with hete, 940
 Whan the sonnes sone, the rede, ^{red} . . . 945
 That highte Pheton, wolde lede
 Algate his fader cart, and gye.
 The cart-hors gonne wel espye
 That he ne coude no governaunce, 950
 And gonne for to lepe and launce,
 And boren him now up, now doun,
 Til that he saw the Scorpioun, (440)
 Which that in heven a signe is yit.
 And he, for ferde, loste his wit, 955
 Of that, and leet the reynes goon
 Of his hors; and they anon
 Gonne up to mounte, and doun descende
 Til bothe the eyr and erthe brende;
 Til Jupiter, lo, atte laste, 960

Him slow, and fro tne carte caste.
Lo, is it not a greet mischaunce,
To lete a fole han governaunce (450)
Of thing that he can not demeine?'

And with this word, soth for to seyne,
He gan alway upper to sore, 961
And gladded me ay more and more,
So feithfully to me spak he.

Tho gan I loken under me,
And beheld the eyrish bestes, 965
Cloudes, mistes, and tempestes,
Snowes, hailes, reines, windes,
And th'engendring in hir kindes, (460)
And al the way through whiche I cam;
'O god,' quod I, 'that made Adam, 970
Moche is thy might and thy noblesse!'

And tho thoughte I upon Boëce,
That writ, 'a thought may flee so hyë,
With fetheres of Philosophye,
To passen everich element; 975
And whan he hath so fer y-went,
Than may be seen, behind his bak,
Cloud, and al that I of spak.' (470)

Tho gan I wexen in a were,
And seyde, 'I woot wel I am here; 980
But wher in body or in gost
I noot, y-wis; but god, thou wost!'
For more cleer entendement. *pace*
Nadde he me never yit y-sent.
And than thoughte I on Marcian, 985
And eek on Antecaudian,
That sooth was hir descripcioun
Of al the hevenes region, (480)
As fer as that I saw the preve;
Therfor I can hem now beleve. 990

With that this egle gan to crye:
'Lat be,' quod he, 'thy fantasye;
Wilt thou lere of sterres aught?'
'Nay, certainly,' quod I, 'right naught;
And why? for I am now to old.' 995
'Elles I wolde thee have told,'
Quod he, 'the sterres names, lo,
And al the hevenes signes to, (490)
And which they been.' 'No fors,' quod I.
'Yis, pardee,' quod he; 'wostow why? 1000
For whan thou redest poetrye,
How goddes gonne stellifye
Brid, fish, beste, or him or here,
As the Raven, or either Bere,
Or Ariones harpe fyn, 1005
Castor, Pollux, or Delphyn,

Or †Atlantes doughtres sevene,
How alle these arn set in hevene; (500)
For though thou have hem ofte on honde,
Yet nostow not wher that they stonde.'

'No fors,' quod I, 'hit is no nede: 1011
I leve as wel, so god me spede,
Hem that wryte of this matere,
As though I knew hir places here;
And eek they shynen here so brighte, *del*
Hit shulde shenden al my sighte, 1016
To loke on hem.' 'That may wel be,'
Quod he. And so forth bar he me (510)

A whyl, and than he gan to crye,
That never herde I thing so hye, 1020
'Now up the heed; for al is wel;
Seynt Julyan, lo, bon hostel!
See here the House of Fame, lo!
Maistow not heren that I do?'

'What?' quod I. 'The grete soun,' 1025
Quod he, 'that rumbleth up and down
In Fames Hous, ful of tydinges,
Bothe of fair speche and chydinges, (520)
And of fals and soth compounded.

Herkne wel; hit is not rouned. 1030
Herestow not the grete swogh? *more*
'Yis, pardee,' quod I, 'wel y-nogh.'
'And what soun is it lyk?' quod he.

'Peter! lyk beting of the see,'
Quod I, 'again the roches holowe, 1035
Whan tempest doth the shippes swalowe:
And lat a man stonde, out of doute,
A myle thens, and here hit route; (530)
Or elles lyk the last humblinge
After the clappe of a thundringe, 1040
When Joves hath the air y-bete;
But hit doth me for fere swete.'

'Nay, dred thee not therof,' quod he,
'Hit is nothing wil byten thee;
Thou shalt non harm have, trewely.' 1045

And with this word bothe he and I
As nigh the place arryved were
As men may casten with a spere. (540)
I nistë how, but in a strete
He sette me faire on my fete, 1050
And seyde, 'Walke forth a pas,
And tak thyn aventure or cas,
That thou shalt finde in Fames place.'

'Now,' quod I, 'whyl we han space
To speke, or that I go fro thee, 1055
For the love of god, tel me,
In sooth that wil I of thee lere,

If this noise that I here (550)
 Be, as I have herd thee tellen,
 Of folk that doun in erthe dwellen, 1060
 And comth here in the same wyse
 As I thee herde or this devyso;
 And that ther lyves body nis
 In al that hous that yonder is,
 That maketh al this loude fare?' 1065
 'No,' quod he, 'by Seynte Clare,
 And also wis god rede me!
 But o thinge I wil warne thee (560)
 Of the which thou wolt have wonder.
 Lo, to the House of Fame yonder 1070
 Thou wost how cometh every speche,
 Hit nedeth noght thee eft to teche.
 But understond now right wel this;
 Whan any speche y-comen is

Up to the paleys, anon-right 1075
 Hit wexeth lyk the same wight
 Which that the word in erthe spak,
 Be hit clothed reed or blak; (570)
 And hath so verray his lyknesse
 That spak the word, that thou wilt gesse
 That hit the same body be, 1081
 Man or woman, he or she.
 And is not this a wonder thing?'
 'Yis,' quod I tho, 'by hevene king!'
 And with this worde, 'Farwel,' quod he,
 'And here I wol abyden thee; 1086
 And god of hevene sende thee grace,
 Som good to lernen in this place.' (580)
 And I of him took leve anoon,
 And gan forth to the paleys goon. 1090

Explicit liber secundus.

BOOK III.

Incipit liber tercius.

Invocation.

O god of science and of light,
 Apollo, through thy grete might,
 This litel laste book thou gye!
 Nat that I wilne, for maistrye, *desire*
 Here art poetical be shewed; 1095
 But, for the rym is light and lawed, *lawed*
 Yit make hit sumwhat agreable,
 Though som vers faile in a sillable;
 And that I do no diligence
 To shewe craft, but o sentence. (10) 1100
 And if, divyne vertu, thou
 Wilt helpe me to shewe now
 That in myn hede y-marked is—
 Lo, that is for to menen this,
 The Hous of Fame to descryve— 1105
 Thou shalt see me go, as blyve,
 Unto the nexte laure I see,
 And kisse hit, for hit is thy tree;
 Now entreth in my breste anoon!—

The Dream.

Whan I was fro this egle goon, (20) 1110
 I gan beholde upon this place.

And certein, or I ferther pace,
 I wol yow al the shap devyse
 Of hous and +site; and al the wyse
 How I gan to this place aproche 1115
 That stood upon so high a roche,
 Hyer stant ther noon in Spaine.
 But up I clomb with alle paine,
 And though to climbe hit greved me,
 Yit I ententif was to see, (30) 1120
 And for to pouren wonder lowe,
 If I coude any weyes knowe
 What maner stoon this roche was;
 For hit was lyk a thing of glas,
 But that hit shoon ful more clere; 1125
 But of what congeled matere
 Hit was, I niste redely. *truly*

But at the laste espyed I,
 And found that hit was, every deel,
 A roche of yse, and not of steel. (40) 1130
 Thoughte I, 'By Seynt Thomas of Kent!
 This were a feble foundement
 To bidden on a place hye;
 He oughte him litel glorifye
 That her-on bilt, god so me save!' 1135

Tho saw I al the half y-grave
 With famous folkes names fele, *verry*
 That had y-been in mochel wele,

And hir fames wyde y-blowe.
 But wel unethes coude I knowe (50) 1140
 Any lettres for to rede
 Hir names by ; for, out of drede,
 They were almost of-thowed so,
 That of the lettres oon or two
 Was molte away of every name, 1145
 So unfamous was wexe hir fame ;
 But men seyn, ' What may ever laste ? '
 Tho gan I in myn herte caste,
 That they were molte away with hete,
 And not away with stormes bete. (60) 1150
 For on that other syde I sey
 Of this hille, that northward lay,
 How hit was writen ful of names
 Of folk that hadden grete fames
 Of olde tyme, and yit they were 1155
 As fresshe as men had writen hem
 there
 The selve day right, or that houre
 That I upon hem gan to poure.
 But wel I wiste what hit made ;
 Hit was conserved with the shade— (70)
 Al this wrytinge that I sy— 1161
 Of a castel, that stood on hy,
 And stood eek on so cold a place,
 That hete mighte hit not deface.
 Tho gan I up the hille to goon, 1165
 And fond upon the coppe a woon,
 That alle the men that ben on lyve
 Ne han the cunning to descryve
 The beautee of that ilke place,
 Ne coude casten no compace (80) 1170
 Swich another for to make,
 That mighte of beautee be his make,
 Ne [be] so wonderliche y-wrought ;
 That hit astonieth yit my thought,
 And maketh al my wit to swinke 1175
 On this castel to bethinke.
 So that the grete craft, beautee,
 The cast, the curiositee
 Ne can I not to yow devyse,
 My wit ne may me not suffyse. (90) 1180
 But natheles al the substance
 I have yit in my remembrance ;
 For-why me thoughte, by Seynt Gyle !
 Al was of stone of beryle,
 Bothe castel and the tour, 1185
 And eek the halle, and every bour,
 Withouten peces or joininges.
 But many subtil compassinges,

† Babewinnes and pinaoles,
 Imageries and tabernacles, (100) 1190
 I saw ; and ful eek of windowes,
 As flakes falle in grete snowes.
 And eek in ech of the pinaoles
 Weren sondry habitacles, niches
 In whiche stoden, al withoute— 1195
 Ful the castel, al aboute—

Of alle maner of minstrales,
 And gestiours, that tellen tales
 Bothe of weping and of game,
 Of al that longeth unto Fame. (110) 1200

Ther herde I pleyen on an harpe
 That souned bothe wel and sharpe,
 Orpheus ful craftely,
 And on his syde, faste by,
 Sat the harper Orion, 1205

And Eacides Chiron,
 And other harpers many oon,
 And the Bret Glascurion ;
 And smale harpers with her gleës

† Seten under hem in seës, seats 1210
 And gonne on hem upward to gape,
 And countrefete hem as an ape,
 Or as craft countrefeteth kinde.

Tho saugh I stonden hem behinde,
 A-fer fro hem, al by hemsele, 1215
 Many thousand tymes twelve,

That maden loude menstralcyes
 In cornemuse, and shalmys,
 And many other maner pype, shawm

That craftely begunne pype (130) 1220
 Bothe in doucet and in rede, dulcet
 That ben at festes with the brede ;

And many floute and liting-horne, flute
 And pypes made of grene corne,
 As han thise litel herde-gromes, herden 1225
 That kepen bestes in the bromes.

Ther saugh I than Atiteris,
 And of Athenes dan Pseustis,
 And Marcia that lost her skin,
 Bothe in face, body, and chin, (140) 1230

For that she wolde envyen, lo !
 To pypen bet then Apollo.

Ther saugh I famous, olde and yonge,
 Pypers of the Duché tonge,
 To lerne love-daunces, springes, 1235
 Reyes, and these straunge thinges.

Tho saugh I in another place
 Stonden in a large space,
 Of hem that maken blody soun

In trumpe, bame, and clarionn; (130) 1240
For in fight and blood-shedinge
Is used gladly clarioninge.

Ther herde I trumpen Messenus,
Of whom that speketh Virgilius.
Ther herde I Joab trumpe also, 1245
Theodomas, and other mo;
And alle that used clarion
In Cataloigne and Aragon,
That in hir tyme famous were
To lerne, saugh I trumpe there. (160) 1250

Ther saugh I sitte in other seles,
Pleyinge upon sondry glees,
Whiche that I cannot nevene,
Mo then sterres been in hevens,
Of whiche I nil as now not ryme, 1255
For ese of yow, and losse of tyme:
For tyme y-lost, this knowen ys,
By no way may recovered be.

Ther saugh I tpleyen jogelours
Magiciens and tregetours, 1260
And phitonesses, charmeresses,
Olde wicches, sorceresses,

That use exorcisaciouns 1265
And eek this fumigaciouns;
And clerkes eek, which conne wel
Al this magyke naturel,

That craftely don hir ententes,
To make, in certeyn ascendentes,
Images, lo, through which magyk
To make a man ben hool or syk. (180) 1270
Ther saugh I thece, queen Medea,
And Circes eke, and Calipso;
Ther saugh I Hermes Ballanus,
Lymote, and eek Simon Magnus. 1274

Ther saugh I, and knew hem by name,
That by such art don men han fame,
Ther saugh I Colle tregetour
I'pon a table of sicamour

Pleye an uncouth thing to telle;
I saugh him carien a wind-melle (190) 1280
Under a walsh-note shale.

What shuld I make lenger tale
Of al the peple that I say,
Fro hennes in-to domesday?

Whan I had al this folk beholds, 1285
And fond me long, and noght y-holds,
And eft y-mused longe whylo
Upon these walles of beryle,
That shoon ful lighter than a glas,
And made wel more than hit was (200)

To semen, every thing, y-wis, 1291
As kinde thing of fames is;
I gan forth romen til I fond
The castel-yate on my right hond,
Which that so wel corven was 1295
That never swich another nas;
And yit hit was by aventure
Y-wrought, as often as by cure.

Hit nedeth noght yow for to tellen,
To make yow to longe dwellen, (210) 1300
Of this yates florisschinges,
No of compasses, ne of kervinges,
No how they thatte in masoneries,
As, corbets fulle of imageries. 1305
But, lord! so fair hit was to shewe,
For hit was al with gold behewe.

But in I wente, and that anon;
Ther mette I crying many oon,
'A larges, larges, hold up wel' 1310
God save the lady of this pel,
Our owne gentil lady Fame,
And hem that wilnen to have name
Of us!' Thus herde I cryen alle,
And faste comen out of halle,
And shoken nobles and sterlinges. 1315
And somme crowned were as kinges,
With crownes wrought ful of losenges;
And many riban, and many frenches
Were on hir clothes trewely.

Tho atte laste aspyed I (230) 1320
That pursauntes and heraudes,
That cryen riche folkes laudes,
Hit weren alle; and every man
Of hem, as I yow tellen can,
Had on him throwen a vesture, 1325
Which that men clepe a cote-armure,
Enbrowded wonderliche riche,
Al-though they nere nought y-liche.

But noght nil I, so mote I thryve,
Been aboute to discryve (240) 1330
Al these armes that ther weren,
That they thus on hir cotes beren,
For hit to me were impossible;
Men mighte make of hem a bible
Twenty foot thikke, as I trowe. 1335

For certeyn, who-so coude y-knowe
Mighte ther alle the armes seen
Of famous folk that han y-been
In Aufrike, Europe, and Asye,
Sith first began the chevalrye. (250) 1340
Lo! how shulde I now telle al this?

Ne of the halle eek what nede is
 To tellen yow, that every wal
 Of hit, and floor, and roof and al
 Was plated half a fote thikke 1345
 Of gold, and that nas no-thing wikke,
 But, for to prove in alle wyse,
 As fyn as ducat in Venyse,
 Of whiche to lyte al in my pouche is?
 And they wer set as thikke of nouchis (260)
 Fulle of the fynest stones faire, 1351
 That men rede in the Lapidaire,
 As greses growen in a mede;
 But hit were al to longe to rede
 The names; and therefore I pace. 1355
 But in this riche lusty place,
 That Fames halle called was,
 Ful moche prees of folk ther nas,
 Ne crouding, for to mochil prees.
 But al on hye, above a dees, (270) 1360
 † Sitte in a see imperial,
 That maad was of a rubee al,
 Which that a carbuncle is y-called,
 I saugh, perpetually y-stalled,
 A feminyne creature; 1365
 That never formed by nature
 Nas swich another thing y-seye.
 For altherfirst, soth for to seye,
 Me thoughte that she was so lyte,
 That the lengthe of a cubyte (280) 1370
 Was lenger than she semed be;
 But thus sone, in a whyle, she
 Hir tho so † wonderliche streighte,
 That with hir feet she th'erthe reighte,
 And with hir heed she touched hevene,
 Ther as shynen sterres sevene. 1376
 And ther-to eek, as to my wit,
 I saugh a gretter wonder yit,
 Upon hir eyen to beholde;
 But certeyn I hem never tolde; (290) 1380
 For as fele eyen hadde she
 As fetheres upon foules be,
 Or weren on the bestes foure,
 That goddes trone gunne honoure,
 As John writ in th'apocalips. 1385
 Hir heer, that oundy was and crips,
 As burned gold hit shoon to see.
 And sooth to tellen, also she
 Had also fele up-standing eres
 And tonges, as on bestes heres; (300) 1390
 And on hir feet wexen saugh I
 Partriches winges redely

But, lord! the perrie and the richesse
 I saugh sitting on this goddesse!
 And, lord! the hevenish melodye 1395
 Of songes, ful of armonye,
 I herde aboute her trone y-songe,
 That al the paleys-walles ronge!
 So song the mighty Muse, she
 That cleped is Caliopee, (310) 1400
 And hir eighte sustren eke,
 That in hir face semen meke;
 And evermo, eternally,
 They songe of Fame, as tho herde I;
 'Heried be thou and thy name, 1405
 Goddesse of renoun and of fame!'
 Tho was I war, lo, atte laste,
 As I myn eyen gan up caste,
 That this ilke noble quene
 On hir shuldres gan sustene (320) 1410
 Bothe th'armes and the name
 Of tho that hadde large fame;
 Alexander, and Hercules
 That with a sherte his lyf lees!
 † Thus fond I sitting this goddesse, 1415
 In nobley, honour, and richesse;
 Of which I stinte a whyle now,
 Other thing to tellen yow.
 Tho saugh I stonde on either syde,
 Streight down to the dores wyde, (330) 1420
 Fro the dees, many a pileer
 Of metal, that shoon not ful cleer;
 But though they nere of no richesse,
 Yet they were maad for greet noblesse,
 And in hem greet [and hy] sentence; 1425
 And folk of digne reverence,
 Of whiche I wol yow telle fonde,
 Upon the piler saugh I stonde.
 Alderfirst, lo, ther I sigh,
 Upon a piler stonde on high, (340) 1430
 That was of lede and yren fyn,
 Him of secte Saturnyn,
 Th' Ebrayk Josephus, the olde,
 That of Jewes gestes tolde;
 And bar upon his shuldres hye 1435
 The fame up of the Jewerye.
 And by him stoden other sevene,
 Wyse and worthy for to nevene,
 To helpen him bere up the charge,
 Hit was so hevy and so large. (350) 1440
 And for they writen of batailes,
 As wel as other olde mervailles,
 Therfor was, lo, this pileer,

Of which that I yow telle heer,
 Of lede and yren bothe, y-wis. 1445
 For yren Martes metal is,
 Which that god is of bataile;
 And the leed, withouten faile,
 Is, lo, the metal of Saturne,
 That hath ful large wheel to turne. (360)
 The stoden forth, on every rowe, 1451
 Of hem which that I coude knowe,
 Thogh I hem noght by ordre telle,
 To make yow to long to dwelle.

These, of whiche I ginne rede, 1455
 Ther saugh I stonden, out of drede:
 Upon an yren piler strong,
 That peynted was, al endelong,
 With tygres blode in every place,
 The Tholosan that highte Stace, (370) 1460
 That bar of Thebes up the fame
 Upon his shuldres, and the name
 Also of cruel Achilles.

And by him stood, withouten lees,
 Ful wonder hye on a pileer 1465
 Of yren, he, the gret Omeer;
 And with him Dares and Tytus
 Before, and eek he, Lollius,
 And Guido eek de Columpnis,
 And English Gaufride eek, y-wis; (380) 1470
 And ech of these, as have I joye,
 Was besy for to bere up Troye.

So hevy ther-of was the fame,
 That for to bere hit was no game.
 But yit I gan ful wel espye, 1475
 Betwix hem was a litel envye.
 Oon seyde, Omere made lyes,
 Feyninge in his poetryes,
 And was to Grekes favorable;
 Therfor held he hit but fable. (390) 1480

Tho saugh I stonde on a pileer,
 That was of tinned yren cleer,
 That Latin poete, [dan] Virgyle,
 That bore hath up a longe whyle
 The fame of Pius Eneas. 1485

And next him on a piler was,
 Of coper, Venus clerk, Ovyde,
 That hath y-sowen wonder wyde
 The grete god of Loves name.
 And ther he bar up wel his fame, (400)
 Upon this piler, also hye 1491
 As I might see hit with myn yē:
 For-why this halle, of whiche I rede
 Was woxe on þhighte, lengthe and brede,

Wel more, by a thousand del, 1495
 Than hit was erst, that saugh I wel.

Tho saugh I, on a piler by,
 Of yren wrought ful sternely,
 The grete poete, daun Lucan,
 And on his shuldres bar up than, (410)
 As highe as that I mighte see, 1501
 The fame of Julius and Pompee.
 And by him stoden alle these clerkes,
 That writen of Romes mighty werkes,
 That, if I wolde hir names telle, 1505
 Al to longe moste I dwelle.

And next him on a piler stood
 Of ~~soulfre~~ lyk as he were wood, *and he was*
 Dan Claudian, the soth to telle,
 That bar up al the fame of helle, (420) 1510
 Of Pluto, and of Proserpyne,
 That quene is of the derke pyne.

What shulde I more telle of this?
 The halle was al ful, y-wis,
 Of hem that writen olde gestes, 1515
 As ben on treës rokes nestes;
 But hit a ful confus matere
 Were al the gestes for to here,
 That they of write, and how they
 highte.

But whyl that I beheld this sighte, (430)
 I herde a noise aprochen blyve, 1521
 That ferde as been don in an hyve,
 Agen her tyme of out-fleyinge;
 Right swiche a maner murmuringe,
 For al the world, hit semed me. 1525

Tho gan I loke aboute and see,
 That ther com entring þin the halle
 A right gret company with-alle,
 And that of sondry regionis,
 Of alleskinnes condiciouns, (440) 1530
 That dwelle in erthe under the mone,
 Pore and ryche. And also sone
 As they were come into the halle,
 They gonne down on kneës falle
 Before this ilke noble quene, 1535
 And seyde, 'Graunte us, lady shene,
 Ech of us, of thy grace, a bone!'
 And somme of hem she graunted
 sone,

And somme she werned wel and faire;
 And somme she graunted the contraire
 Of hir axing utterly. (451) 1541
 But thus I seye yow trewely,
 What hir cause was, I niste.

For this folk, ful wel I wiste,
 'They hadde good fame ech deserved, 1545
 Although they were diversly served ;
 Right as hir suster, dame Fortune,
 Is wont to serven in comune.

Now harkne how she gan to paye
 That gonne hir of hir grace praye ; (460)
 And yit, lo, al this companye 1551
 Seyden sooth, and noght a lye.

'Madame,' seyden they, 'we be
 Folk that heer besechen thee,
 That thou graunte us now good fame, 1555
 And lete our werkes han that name ;
 In ful recompensacioun
 Of good werk, give us good renoun.'
 'I werne yow hit,' quod she anoon,
 'Ye gete of me good fame noon, (470) 1560
 By god ! and therfor go your wey.'

'Alas,' quod they, 'and welaway !
 Telle us, what may your cause be ?'

'For me list hit noght,' quod she ;
 'No wight shal speke of yow, y-wis, 1565
 Good ne harm, ne that ne this.'
 And with that word she gan to calle
 Hir messenger, that was in halle,
 And bad that he shulde faste goon,
 †Up peyne to be blind anoon, (480) 1570
 For Eolus, the god of winde ;—
 'In Trace ther ye shul him finde,
 And bid him bringe his clarioun,
 That is ful dyvers of his soun,
 And hit is cleped Clere Laude, 1575
 With which he wont is to heraude
 Hem that me list y-preised be :
 And also bid him how that he
 Bringe his other clarioun,
 That highte Sclaundre in every toun, (490)
 With which he wont is to diffame 1581
 Hem that me list, and do hem shame.'

This messenger gan faste goon,
 And founnd wher, in a cave of stoon,
 In a contree that highte Trace, 1585
 This Eolus, with harde grace,
 Held the windes in distresse,
 And gan hem under him to presse,
 That they gonne as beres rore,
 He bond and pressed hem so sore. (500)

This messenger gan faste crye, 1591
 'Rys up,' quod he, 'and faste hye,
 Til that thou at my lady be ;
 And tak thy clarions eek with thee,

And speed thee forth.' And he anon 1595
 Took to a man, that hight Triton,
 His clariouns to bere tho,
 And leet a certeyn wind to go,
 That blew so hidously and hye,
 That hit ne lefte not a skye (510) 1600
 In al the welken longe and brood.

This Eolus no-wher abood
 Til he was come at Fames feet,
 And eek the man that Triton heet ;
 And ther he stood, as still as stoon. 1605
 And her-withal ther com anoon
 Another huge companye
 Of gode folk, and gunne crye,
 'Lady, graunte us now good fame,
 And lat our werkes han that name (520)
 Now, in honour of gentillesse, 1611
 And also god your soule blesse !
 For we han wel deserved hit,
 Therfor is right that we ben quit.'

'As thryve I,' quod she, 'ye shal
 faile,
 Good werkes shal yow noght availe 1616
 To have of me good fame as now.
 But wite ye what? I graunte yow,
 That ye shal have a shrewed fame 1618
 And wikked loos, and worse name, (530)
 Though ye good loos have wel deserved.
 Now go your wey, for ye be served ;
 And thou, dan Eolus, let see !

Tak forth thy trumpe anon,' quod she,
 'That is y-cleped Sclaunder light, 1625
 And blow hir loos, that every wight
 Speke of hem harm and shrewednesse,
 In stede of good and worthinesse.
 For thou shalt trumpe al the contraire
 Of that they han don wel or faire.' 1630

'Alas,' thoughte I, 'what adventures
 Han these sory creatures ! (542)
 For they, amonges al the pres,
 Shul thus be shamed gilteles !
 But what ! hit moste nedes be.' 1635

What did this Eolus, but he
 Tok out his blakke trumpe of bras,
 That fouler than the devil was,
 And gan this trumpe for to blowe,
 As al the world shulde overthrowe ; (550)
 That through-out every regioun 1641
 Wente this foule trumpes soun,
 As swift as pelet out of gonne,
 Whan fyr is in the poudre ronne.

And swiche a smoke gan out-wende 1615
 Out of his foule trumpes enda,
 Blak, blo, grenish, swartish reed, *dark*
 As doth wher that men melts lead,
 Lo, al on high fro the tuel! *chamney*
 And therto oo thing caught I wel, (560) 1650
 That, the fether that hit ran,
 The gretter waxen hit began,
 As doth the river from a well,
 And hit stank as the pit of helle.
 Alas, thus was hir shame y-ronge, 1655
 And gylteless, on every tonge.

The oom the thridde companye,
 And gunne up to the dees to hye,
 And down on knees they fille anon,
 And seyde, 'We ben everichon (570) 1660
 Folk that han ful trewely
 Deserved fame rightfully,
 And praye yow, hit mot be knowe,
 Right as hit is, and forth y-blowe.'
 'I graunte,' quod she, 'for me list 1665
 That now your gode þwerk be wist;
 And yit ye shul han better loos,
 Right in dispyt of alle your focs,
 Than worthy is; and that anon:
 Lat now,' quod she, 'thy trumpe goon, (580)
 Thou Eolus, that is so blak; 1671
 And out thyn other trumpe tak
 That highte Laude, and blow hit so
 That through the world hir fame go
 Al esely, and not to faste, 1675
 That hit be knowne atte laste.'

'Ful gladly, lady myn,' he seyde;
 And out his trumpe of golde he brayde
 Anon, and sette hit to his mouth,
 And blew hit est, and west, and southe, (590)
 And north, as loude as any thunder, 1681
 That every wight hadde of hit wonder,
 So brode hit ran, or than hit stent
 And, certes, al the breeth that wente
 Out of his trumpes mounthe smalde 1685
 As men a pot-ful þhawme helde
 Among a basket ful of rees;
 This favour dide he til *his* *mouth* *of them*

And right with this I gan aspye,
 Ther oom the ferthe companye—(600) 1690
 But certeyn they were wonder fewe—
 And gonne stonden in a rewe,
 And seyden, 'Certes, lady brighte,
 We han don wel with al our mighte;
 But we ne kepen have no fame. 1695

Hyd our werkes and our name,
 For goddes love! for certes we
 Han certeyn doon hit for bountee *good deeds*
 And for no maner other thing.'
 'I graunte yow al your asking,' (610) 1700
 Quod she; 'let your þwerk be deed.'

With that aboute I clew myn heed, *rubbed*
 And saugh anon the fift route
 That to this lady gonne loute, *how*
 And down on knees anon to falle; 1705
 And to hir the besoughten alle
 To hyde hir gode werkes eek,
 And seyde, they yeven noght a leek
 For fame, ne for swich renoun;
 For they, for contemplacioun (620) 1710
 And goddes love, hadde y-wrought;
 Ne of fame wolde they nought.

'What?' quod she, 'and be ye wood?
 And wene ye for to do good,
 And for to have of that no fame?
 Have ye dispyt to have my name? 1715
 Nay, ye shul liven everichon!
 Blow thy trumpe and that anon,'
 Quod she, 'thou Eolus, I hote,
 And ring this folkes þwerk by note, (630)
 That al the world may of hit here.' 1721
 And he gan blowe hir loos so clere
 In his golden clarioun,
 That through the world wente the soun,
 þSo kenely, and eek so softe; 1725
 But atte laste hit was on-lofte.

Theo oom the sexte companye,
 And gonne faste on Fame crye.
 Right verraily, in this manere
 They seyden: 'Mercy, lady dere' (640) 1730
 To telle certein, as hit is,
 We han don neither that ne this,
 But ydol al our lyf y-be.
 But, natheles, yit preye we,
 That we mowe han so good a fame, 1735
 And greet renoun and knownen name,
 As they that han don noble gastes,
 And achaved alle hir lestes,
 As wel of love as other thing;
 Al was us never broche ne ring, (650) 1740
 Ne elles nought, from wimmen sent,
 Ne ones in hir herte y-ment
 To make us only frendly chere, *it will*
 But nighte tamen us on here;
 Yit lat us to the peple seme 1745
 Swiche as the world may of us deme,

That wimmen loven us for wood.
 Hit shal don us as moche good,
 And to our herte as moche availe
 To countrepeise ese and travaile, (660) 1750.
 As we had yonne hit with labour;
 For that is dere boght honour
 At regard of our grete ese.
 And yit thou most us more plesse;
 Let us be holden eek, therto, 1755
 Worthy, wyse, and gode also,
 And riche, and happy unto love.
 For goddes love, that sit above,
 Though we may not the body have
 Of wimmen, yet, so god yow save! (670) 1760
 Let men glewe on us the name;
 Suffyceth that we han the fame.'

'I graunte,' quod she, 'by my trouthe!
 Now, Eolus, with-uten slouth,
 Tak out thy trumpe of gold, †let see, 1765
 And blow as they han axed me,
 That every man wene hem at ese,
 Though they gon in ful badde lese,'
 This Eolus gan hit so blowe, (679) 1769
 That through the world hit was y-
 knowe.

Tho com the seventh route anoon,
 And fel on kneës everichoon,
 And seyde, 'Lady, graunte us sone
 The same thing, the same bone,
 That [ye] this nexte folk han doon.' 1775
 'Fy on yow,' quod she, 'everichoon!
 Ye masty swyn, ye ydel wrecches,
 Ful of roten slowe tecches! Characteristich
 What? false theves! wher ye wolde
 Be famous good, and no-thing nolde (690)
 Deserve why, ne never roughte? 1781
 Men rather yow to-hangen oughte!
 For ye be lyk the sweynte cat, 1785
 That wolde have fish; but wostow what?
 He wolde no-thing wete his clowes.
 Yvel thrift come on your jowes,
 And eek on myn, if I hit graunte,
 Or do yow favour, yow to avaunte.
 Thou Eolus, thou king of Trace!
 Go, blow this folk a sory grace,' (700) 1790
 Quod she, 'anoon; and wostow how?
 As I shal telle thee right now;
 Sey: "These ben they that wolde honour
 Have, and do noskinnes labour,
 Ne do no good, and yit han laude; 1795
 And that men wende that bele Isaude

Ne coude hem noght of love werne
 And yit she that grint at a querne
 Is al to good to ese hir herte."

This Eolus anon up sterte, (710) 1800
 And with his blakke clarioun
 He gan to blasen out a soun,
 As loude as belweth wind in helle.
 And eek therwith, [the] sooth to telle,
 This soun was [al] so ful of japes, 1805
 As ever mowes were in apes.
 And that wente al the world aboute,
 That every wight gan on hem shoute,
 And for to laughe as they were wode;
 Such game fonde they in hir hode. (720)

Tho com another compagne, 1811
 That had y-doon the traiterye,
 The harm, the †gretest wikkednesse
 That any herte couthe gesse;
 And preyed hir to han good fame, 1815
 And that she nolde hem doon no
 shame,

But yeve hem loos and good renoun,
 And do hit blowe in clarioun.
 'Nay, wis!' quod she, 'hit were a
 vyce;

Al be ther in me no justyce, (730) 1820
 Me listeth not to do hit now,
 No this nil I not graunte you.'

Tho come ther lepinge in a route,
 And gonne choppen al aboute
 Every man upon the croune, 1825
 That al the halle gan to sonne,
 And seyden: 'Lady, lefe and dere.
 We ben swich folk as ye mowe here.
 To tellen al the tale aright,
 We ben shrewes, every wight, (740) 1830
 And han delyt in wikkednesse,
 As gode folk han in goodnesse:
 And joye to be knowen shrewes,
 And fulle of vyce and wikked thewes,
 Wherfor we preyen yow, a-rowe, 1835
 That our fame swich be knowe
 In alle thing right as hit is.'

'I graunte hit yow,' quod she, 'y-wis.
 But what art thou that seyst this tale,
 That werest on thy hose a pale, (750) 1840
 And on thy tipet swiche a belle!'
 'Madame,' quod he, 'sooth to telle,
 I am that ilke shrowe, y-wis,
 That brende the temple of Isidis
 In Athenes, lo, that citee.' 1845

wherfor didest thou so?' quod he.
 e.
 y thrift,' quod he, 'madame,
 e fayn han had a fame,
 er folk hadde in the town,
 gh they were of greet renoun (860)
 r vertu and for hir thewes (865)
 hte I, as greet a fame han shrowes,
 hit be þat for shrewednesse,
 o folk han for goodnesse;
 th I may not have that oon, (865)
 ther nil I nocht for-goon.
 r to gette of Fames hyre,
 mple sette I al a-fyre.
 o our loos be blownen swythe,
 ly be thou ever blythe,' (774) (865)
 y,' quod she; 'thou Eolus,
 ow not what they preyen us?'
 me, yis, ful wel,' quod he,
 I wil trumpen hit, parde!' (865)
 k his blakke trumpe faste,
 an to puffen and to blaste,
 was at the worldes ende.
 h that I gan aboute wende;
 n that stood right at my bak,
 yghte, goodly to me spak, (780) (870)
 syde: 'Frend, what is thy name?'
 come hider to han fame?'
 for-sothe, frend!' quod I;
 a nocht hider, graunt mercy!
 swich cause, by my heed! (875)
 eth me, as I were deed,
 no wight have my name in
 nde.
 my-self best how I stonde; (875)
 hat I drye or what I thinke,
 my-selven al hit drinke, (790) (880)
 n, for the more part,
 forth as I can myn art.'
 what dost thou here than?' quod he.
 I, 'that wol I tellen thee,
 use why I stondē here (885)
 ewe tydings for to lere:—
 ewe þinges, I not what,
 ges, other this or that,
 e, or swiche thinges glade.
 rteynly, he that me made (890) (890)
 nen hider, seyde me,
 de bothe here and see,
 s place, wonder thinges,
 bease be no swiche tydinges

As I mene of.' 'No?' quod he. (895)
 And I answerde, 'No, pardes!
 For wel I þwiste, ever yit,
 Bith that first I hadde wit,
 That som folk han desyred fame
 Dyveraly, and loot, and name; (810) (900)
 But certeynly, I niste how
 Ne whar that Fame þdwalte, er now;
 Ne eek of hir descripcioun,
 Ne also hir condicioun,
 Ne the ordre of hir dome, (905)
 Unto the tyme I hider come.'
 'þWhiche be, lo, these tydinges,
 That thou now [thus] hider bringes,
 That thou hast herd?' quod he to me;
 'But now, no fors; for wel I see (820) (910)
 What thou desyrest for to here.
 Com forth, and stond no longer here,
 And I wol thee, with-outen drede,
 In swich another place lede,
 Ther thou shalt here many oon.' (915)
 The gan I forth with him to goon
 Out of the castel, soth to seye.
 The saugh I stonde in a valeye,
 Under the castel, faste by,
 An hous, that *domus Dedali*, (830) (920)
 That *Laborintus* cleped is,
 Nas maad so wonderliche, y-wis,
 Ne half so queynteliche y-wrought.
 And evermo, so swift as thought,
 This queynste hous aboute wente, (925)
 That never-mo hit stille stente.
 And ther-out com so greet a noise,
 That, had hit stonden upon Oise,
 Men mighte hit han herd esely
 To Rome, I trowe sikerly. (840) (930)
 And the noyse which that I herde,
 For al the world right so hit ferde,
 As doth the ronting of the stoon
 That from th'engyn is leten goon.
 And al this hous, of whiche I rede, (935)
 Was made of twigges, falwe, rede,
 And grene eek, and som weren whyte,
 Swiche as men to these cages thwyte,
 Or maken of these paniers, (940)
 Or elles þottes or dousers; (850) (940)
 That, for the swough and for the
 twigges, (945)
 This hous was also ful of giggers,
 And also ful eek of chirkinges,
 And of many other werkinges;

And eek this hous hath of entrees 1945
 As fele as leves been on trees
 In somer, whan they grene been ;
 And on the roof men may yit seen
 A thousand holes, and wel mo,
 To leten wel the soun out go. (860) 1950

And by day, in every tyde,
 Ben al the dores open wyde,
 And by night, echoon, unshette ;
 Ne porter ther is non to lette
 No maner tydings in to pace ; 1955
 No never reste is in that place,

That hit nis fild ful of tydings,
 Other loude, or of whispringes ;
 And, over alle the houses angles,
 Is ful of ronninges and of jangles (870) 1960
 Of †werre, of pees, of mariages,

Of †reste, of labour of viages,
 Of abood, of deeth, of lyfe,
 Of love, of hate, acorde, of stryfe,
 Of loos, of lore, and of winninges, 1965
 Of hele, of sekenesse, of bildinges,

Of faire windes, †of tempestes,
 Of qualme of folk, and eek of bestes ;
 Of dyvers transmutaciouns

Of estats, and eek of regionis ; (880) 1970
 Of trust, of drede, of jelousye,
 Of wit, of winninge, of folye ;
 Of plentee, and of greet famyne,
 Of chene, of derth, and of ruyne ;
 Of good or †mis gouvernement, 1975
 Of fyr, of dyvers accident.

And lo, this hous, of whiche I wryte,
 Siker be ye, hit nas not lyte ;
 For hit was sixty myle of lengthe ;
 Al was the timber of no strengthe, (890) 1980
 Yet hit is founded to endure
 Whyl that it list to Aventure,
 That is the moder of tydings,
 As the see of welles and springes, -
 And hit was shapen lyk a cage. 1985

'Certes,' quod I, 'in al myn age,
 Ne saugh I swich a hous as this.'
 And as I wondred me, y-wis,
 Upon this hous, tho war was I
 How that myn egle, faste by, (900) 1990
 Was perched hye upon a stoon ;
 And I gan streighte to him goon
 And seyde thus : 'I preye thee
 That thou a whyl abyde me
 For goddes love. and let me seen 1995

What wondres in this place been ;
 For yit, paraventure, I may lere
 Som good ther-on, or sumwhat here
 That leef me were, or that I wente.'

'Peter ! that is myn entente,' (910) 2000
 Quod he to me ; 'therfor I dwelle ;
 But certein, oon thing I thee telle,
 That, but I bringe thee ther-inne,
 Ne shalt thou never kunne ginne
 To come in-to hit, out of doute, 2005
 So faste hit whirleth, lo, aboute.

But sith that Joves, of his grace,
 As I have seyde, wol thee solace
 Fynally with †swiche thinges,
 Uncounthe sightes and tydings, (920) 2010
 To passe with thyn hevynesse ;
 Suche routhe hath he of thy distresse,
 That thou suffrest debonairly—
 And wost thy-selven utterly
Disesperat of alle blis, 2015

Sith that Fortune hath maad a-mis
 The †fruit of al thyn hertes reste
 Languisshe and eek in point to breste—
 That he, through his mighty meryte,
 Wol do thee ese, al be hit lyte, (930) 2020
 And †yaf expres commaundement,
 To whiche I am obedient,
 To furthre thee with al my might,
 And wisse and teche thee aright
 Wher thou maist most tydings here ; 2025
 Shaltow †anoon heer many oon lere.'

With this worde he, right anoon,
 Hente me up bitwene his toon,
 And at a windowe in me broghte, 2030
 That in this hous was, as me thoghte—(940)
 And ther-withal, me thoghte hit stente.

And no-thing hit aboute wente—
 And me sette in the flore adoun.
 But which a congregacioun
 Of folk, as I saugh rome aboute, 2035

Some within and some withoute,
 Nas never seen, ne shal ben eft ;
 That, certes, in the world nis left
 So many formed by Nature,
 Ne deed so many a creature ; (950) 2040
 That wel unethe, in that place,
 Hadde I oon foot-brede of space ;
 And every wight that I saugh there
 Rouned ech in otheres ere
 A newe tyding prevely, 2045
 Or elles tolde al openly

thus, and seyde : ' Nost not
 thou
 is betid, lo, late or now ? '—
 ' quod †the other, ' tel me what ; '—
 ' han he tolde him this and that, (960)
 ' woor ther-to that hit was sooth—
 ' hath he seyd '—and ' Thus he
 ' sooth '— 2052
 ' is shal hit be '—' †Thus herde I
 ' eye '—
 ' shal be found '—' That dar I
 ' eye : '—
 ' al the folk that is a-lyve 2055
 ' in the cunning to discryve
 ' henges that I herde there,
 ' aloude, and what in ere.
 ' l the wonder-most was this :—
 ' i oon had herd a thing, y-wis, (970)
 ' m †forth to another wight, 2061
 ' an him tellen, anoon-right,
 ' ame that to him was told,
 ' t a furlong-way was old,
 ' an somewhat for to echo 2065
 ' is tyding in this speche
 ' than hit ever was.
 ' at so sone departed nas
 ' he fro him, that he ne mette
 ' the thridde ; and, or he lette (980)
 ' tounde, he tolde him als ; 2071
 ' the tyding sooth or fals,
 ' olde he telle hit nathelees.
 ' vermo with more encrees
 ' hit was erst. Thus north and
 ' outhe 2075
 ' every †word fro mouth to mouthe,
 ' hat encresing ever-mo,
 ' r is wont to quikke and go
 ' a sparke spronge amis,
 ' a citee brent up is. (990) 2080
 ' d, whan that was ful y-spronge,
 ' oxen more on every tonge
 ' ever hit was, †hit wente anoon
 ' a windowe, out to goon ;
 ' at hit mighte out ther pace, 2085
 ' an out crepe at som crevace,
 ' fleigh forth faste for the nones.
 ' d somtyme saugh I tho, at onen
 ' ing and a sad soth-sawe,
 ' gonne of aventure drawe (1000) 2090
 ' at a windowe for to pace ;
 ' when they metten in that place,

They were a-chekked bothe two,
 And neither of hem moste out go ;
 For other so they gonne croude, 2095
 Til eche of hem gan cryen loude,
 ' Lat me go first ! ' ' Nay, but lat me
 And here I wol ensuren thee
 With the nones that thou wolt do so,
 That I shal never fro thee go, (1010) 2100
 But be thyn owne sworn brother !
 We wil medle us ech with other,
 That no man, be he never so wrothe,
 Shal han †that oon of two, but bothe
 At ones, al beside his leve, 2105
 Come we a-morwe or on eve,
 Be we cryed or stille y-rouned.
 Thus saugh I fals and sooth com-
 pounded
 Togeder fle for oo tydinge.
 Thus out at holes gonne wringe (1020)
 Every tyding streight to Fame ; 2111
 And she gan yeven eche his name,
 After hir disposicioun,
 And yaf hem eek duracioun,
 Some to waxe and wane sone, 2115
 As dooth the faire whyte mone,
 And leet hem gon. Ther mighte I
 seen
 Wenged wondres faste fleen,
 Twenty thousand in a route,
 As Eolus hem blew aboute. (1030) 2120
 And, lord ! this hous, in alle tymes,
 Was ful of shipmen and pilgrymes,
 With scrippes bret-ful of lesinges, 2125
 Entremedled with tydinges,
 And eek alone by hem-selve.
 O, many a thousand tymes twelve
 Saugh I eek of these pardoneres,
 Curroures, and eek messangeres,
 With boistes crammed ful of lyes 2130
 As ever vessel was with lyes
 And as I alther-fastest wente
 Aboute, and dide al myn entente
 Me for to pleye and for to lere,
 And eek a tyding for to here,
 That I had herd of som contree 2135
 That shal not now be told for me ;—
 For hit no nede is, redely ;
 Folk can singe hit bet than I ;
 For al mot out, other late or rathe, 2140
 Alle the sheves in the lathe ;—
 I herde a gret noise withalle

on the condition

large

dir

soon

In a corner of the halle,
 Ther men of love tydings tolde,
 And I gan thiderward beholde;
 For I saugh renninge every wight, 2145
 As faste as that they hadden might;
 And everich cryed, 'What thing is
 that?'
 And som seyde I not never what.
 And whan they were alle on an hepe,
 Tho behinde gonne up lepe, (1060) 2150

And clamben up on othere faste,
 And up the þnose on hye caste,
 And troden faste on othere heles
 And stampe, as men don after eles.

Atte laste I saugh a man, 2155
 Which that I [nevene] naught ne can;
 But he semed for to be
 A man of greet auctoritee . . . (1068) 215

(Unfinished.)



THE LEGEND OF GOOD WOMEN.

TEXT A (*Earlier Version*).

Prologue of .ix. goode Wimmen.

A THOUSAND sythes have I herd men
saye,
That ther is joye in heven, and payne in
helle;
And I acorde wel that hit is so;
But natheles, yit wot I wel also,
That ther nis noon that dwelloth in this
contree,
That either hath in heven or helle y-be,
Of hit non other weyes witen,
But as he hath herd seyde, or founde hit
writen;
For by assay ther may no man hit prove.
But god forbode, but men shulde love
Wel more thing then men han seen with
ye!
Men shal nat wenen every-thing a lyge
But-if him-self hit seeth, or olles dooth;
For, god wot, thing is never the lasse
sooth,
Thogh every wight ne may hit nat y-see.
Bernard the monk ne saugh nat al, parde!
Than mote we to bokes that we finde,
Through which that olde thinges been in
minde,
And to the doctrine of these olde wyse,
Yeve credence, in every skilful wyse,
That tellen of these olde approved stories,
Of holynesse, of regnes, of victories,
Of love, of hate, of other sundry thinges,
Of which I may not maken rehersinges.
And if that olde bokes were a-woye,
Y-loren were of remembraunce the keye.
Wel oghte us than on olde bokes leve,

TEXT B (*Later Version*).

The prologue of .ix. goode Wimmen.

A THOUSAND tymes have I herd men
telle,
That ther is joye in heven, and payne in
helle;
And I acorde wel that hit is so;
But natheles, yit wot I wel also,
That ther nis noon dwelling in this
contree,
That either hath in heven or helle y-be,
Ne may of hit non other weyes witen,
But as he hath herd seyde, or founde hit
writen;
For by assay ther may no man hit prove.
But god forbode but men shulde love
Wel more thing then men han seen with
ye!
Men shal nat wenen every-thing a lyge
But-if him-self hit seeth, or olles dooth;
For, god wot, thing is never the lasse
sooth,
Thogh every wight ne may hit nat y-see.
Bernard the monk ne saugh nat al, parde!
Than mote we to bokes that we finde,
Through which that olde thinges been in
minde,
And to the doctrine of these olde wyse,
Yeve credence, in every skilful wyse,
That tellen of these olde approved stories,
Of holynesse, of regnes, of victories,
Of love, of hate, of other sundry thinges,
Of which I may not maken rehersinges.
And if that olde bokes were a-woye,
Y-loren were of remembraunce the keye.
Wel oghte us than honouren and beleve

Ther-as ther is non other ~~assay~~ by preve.

And, as for me, though that my wit be
lyte,

On bokes for to rede I me delyte, 30
And in myn herte have hem in reverence;

And to hem yeve swich lust and swich
credence,

That ther is wel unethe game noon
That from my bokes make me to goon,
But hit be other up-on the haly-day, 35
Or elles in the joly tyme of May;

Whan that I here the smale foules singe,

And that the floures ginne for to springe,
Farwel my studie, as lasting that sesoun!

Now have I therto this condicioun 40
That, of alle the floures in the mede,
Than love I most these floures whyte and
rede,

Swiche as men callen daysies in our toun.
To hem have I so greet affeccioun, 44
As I seyde erst, whan comen is the May,
That in my bed ther daweth me no day
That I nam up, and walking in the mede
To seen these floures agein the sonne
sprede,

Whan it up-riseth by the morwe shene, 49
The longe day, thus walking in the grene.
And whan the sonne ginneth for to weste,
Than closeth hit, and draweth hit to reste,
So sore hit is afered of the night,
Til on the morwe, that hit is dayes light.

This dayesye, of alle floures flour, 55
Fulild of vertu and of alle honour,
And ever y-lyke fair and fresh of hewe,
As wel in winter as in somer newe,

[Cf. ll. 51-3, above.]

These bokes, ther we han non other preve.

And as for me, thogh that I can but
lyte,

On bokes for to rede I me delyte, 30
And to hem yeve I feyth and ful
credence,

And in myn herte have hem in reverence

So hertely, that ther is game noon
That fro my bokes maketh me to goon,
But hit be seldom, on the holyday; 35
Save, certeynly, whan that the month
May

Is comen, and that I here the foul
singe,

And that the floures ginnen for to spring
Farwel my book and my devocioun!

Now have I than swich a condicioun,
That, of alle the floures in the mede, 40
Than love I most these floures whyte an
rede,

Swiche as men callen daysies in our toun
To hem have I so greet affeccioun, 44
As I seyde erst, whan comen is the May,
That in my bed ther daweth me no day
That I nam up, and walking in the mede
To seen this flour agein the sonne sprede

Whan hit uprysseth erly by the morwe;
That blisful sighte softneth al my sorwe,
So glad am I whan that I have presence
Of hit, to doon al maner reverence, 50

As she, that is of alle floures flour,
Fulfilled of al vertu and honour, 55
And ever y-lyke fair, and fresh of hewe;
And I love hit, and ever y-lyke newe,
And ever shal, til that myn herte dye;
Al swere I nat, of this I wol nat lye,
Ther loved no wight hotter in his lyve.

And whan that hit is eve, I renne
blyve, 60

As sone as ever the sonne ginneth weste,
To seen this flour, how it wol go to reste,
For fere of night, so hateth she derknesse!
Hir chere is pleyntly sprad in the bright-
nesse

Of the sonne, for ther hit wol uncloze. 65
Allas! that I ne had English, ryme or
prose,

Fain wolde I preisen, if I coude aright; 59
But wo is me, hit lyth nat in my might!

For wel I wot, that folk han her-beforn
Of making ropen, and lad a-vey the corn;
And I come after, glening here and
there,
And am ful glad if I may finde an ere
Of any goodly word that they han left. 65
And, if hit happe me rehersen eft
That they han in her freshe songes sayd,
I hope that they wil nat ben evel apayd,
Sith hit is seid in forthering and honour
Of hem that either serveñ leef or flour. 70

[Cf. p. 354, col. 2, ll. 188-196.]

For trusteth wel, I ne have nat under-
take

As of the leef, ageyn the flour, to make;
Ne of the flour to make, ageyn the leef,
No more than of the corn ageyn the
sheef.

For, as to me, is leofer noon ne lother; 75
I am with-holde yit with never nother.
I not who serveth leef, ne who the flour;
That nis nothing the entent of my labour
For this werk is al of another tunne, 79
Of olde story, or swich stryf was begunne.

But wherfor that I spak, to yove cre-
dence

To bokes olde and doon hem reverence,
Is for men shulde autoritees beleve,
Ther as ther lyth non other assay by
prove.

For myn entent is, or I fro yow fare, 85
The naked text in English to declare
Of many a story, or elles of many a geste,
As entours seyn, leveth hem if yow leste!

Suffisant this flour to preysse aright!
But helpeth, ye that han conning and
might,

Ye lovers, that can make of sentement;
In this cas oghte ye be diligent 70
To forthren me somewhat in my labour,
Whether ye ben with the leef or with the
flour.

For wel I wot, that ye han her-biforn
Of making ropen, and lad away the corn;
And I come after, glening here and
there, 75

And am ful glad if I may finde an ere
Of any goodly word that ye han left.
And thogh it happen me rehersen eft
That ye han in your freshe songes sayd,
For-bereth me, and both nat evel apayd,
Sin that ye see I do hit in the honour 81
Of love, and eek in service of the flour,
Whom that I serve as I have wit or
might.

She is the clernessee and the verray light,
That in this derke worlde me wynt and
ledeth, 85

The herte in-with my sorowful brest yow
dredeth,

And loveth so sore, that ye ben verrayly
The maistresse of my wit, and nothing I.
My word, my werk, is knit so in your
bonde,

That, as an harpe obeyeth to the honde 90
And maketh hit sounne after his finger-
inge,

Right so mowe ye out of myn herte
bringe

Swich vois, right as yow list, to langhe
or pleyne.

Be ye my gyde and lady sovereyne;
As to myn erthly god, to yow I calle, 95
Bothe in this werke and in my sorwes
alle.

But wherfor that I spak, to give cre-
dence

To olde stories, and doon hem reverence,
And that men mosten more thing beleve
Then men may seen at eye or elles prove?

That shal I seyn, whan that I see my
tyme; 101

I may not al at ones speke in ryme.
My beyn gost, that thursteth alwey newe

Whan passed was almost the month of
 May,
 And I had romed, al the someres day, 90
 The grene medew, of which that I yow
 tolde,
 Upon the fresshe daysy to beholde,
 And that the sonne out of the south gan
 weste,
 And closed was the flour and goon to
 reste
 For derknesse of the night, of which she
 dredde, 95
 Hoom to myn hous ful swiftly I me
 spedde ;
 And, in a litel erber that I have,
 Y-benched newe with turves fresshe y-
 grave,
 I bad men shulde me my couche make ;
 For deyntee of the newe someres sake, 100
 I had hem strowe floures on my bed.
 Whan I was layd, and had myn eyen hed,
 I fel a-slepe with-in an houre or two.
 Me mette how I was in the medew tho,
 And that I romed in that same gyse, 105
 To seen that flour, as ye han herd devysa.
 Fair was this medew, as thoughte me
 overal ;
 With floures swote enbrowded was it al ;

 As for to speke of gomme, or erbe, or
 tree,
 Comparisoun may noon y-maked be. 110
 For hit surmounted pleynty alle odoures,
 And eek of riche beaute alle floures.
 Forgeten had the erthe his pore estat
 Of winter, that him naked made and mat,
 And with his swerd of cold so sore had
 greved. 115
 Now had the atempre sonne al that re-
 leved,
 And clothed him in grene al newe agayn.
 The smale foules, of the seson fayn,
 That from the panter and the net ben
 scaped, 119
 Upon the fouler, that hem made a-whaped
 In winter, and distroyed had hir brood,

To seen this flour so yong, so fresh of
 hewe,
 Constreyned me with so gledy desyr, 105
 That in my herte I fele yit the fyr,
 That made me to ryse er hit wer day—
 And this was now the firste morwe of
 May—

With dredful herte and glad devocioun,
 For to ben at the resureccioun 110
 Of this flour, whan that it shuld unclose
 Agayn the sonne, that roos as rede as
 rose,
 That in the brest was of the beste that-
 day,
 That Agenores doghter ladde away. 115
 [Cf. p. 354, col. 2, ll. 197-210.]

And down on knees anon-right I me sette.
 And, as I coude, this fresshe flour I grette :
 Kneling alwey, til hit unclosed was,
 Upon the smale softe swote gras,
 That was with floures swote enbrouded al.

Of swich swetnesse and swich odour
 over-al, 120
 That, for to speke of gomme, or herbe, or
 tree,
 Comparisoun may noon y-maked be ;
 For hit surmounteth pleynty alle odoures,
 And eek of riche beautee alle floures.
 Forgeten had the erthe his pore estat 125
 Of winter, that him naked made and mat.
 And with his swerd of cold so sore greved :

Now hath the atempre sonne al that re-
 leved
 That naked was, and clad hit new agayn.
 The smale foules, of the seson fayn, 130
 That from the panter and the net ben
 scaped,
 Upon the fouler, that hem made a-whaped
 In winter, and distroyed had hir brood,

s despyt, hem thoughte hit did hem
 good
 nge of him, and in hir song despyse
 foule cherl that, for his covetyse, 124
 hem betrayed with his sophistrye.
 was hir song—' the fouler we defye!'
 ne songen [layes] on the braunches
 clere
 ve and [May], that joye hit was to
 here,
 orship and in preysing of hir make,
 of the newe blisful someres sake, 130

songen, 'blissed be seynt Valentyn!
 at his day I chees yow to be myn,
 withoute repenting, myn herte swete!
 therwith-al hir bekes gonnen mete.
 y dide honour and humble obei-
 saunces, 135
 after diden other observaunces

it [pleasing] un-to love and to nature;
 ch of hem [doth wel] to creature.
 song to herkne I dide al myn
 entento, 139
 why I mette I wiste what they mente.

In his despyt, hem thoughte hit did hem
 good 134
 To singe of him, and in hir song despyse
 The foule cherl that, for his covetyse,
 Had hem betrayed with his sophistrye.
 This was hir song—' the fouler we defye,
 And al his craft!' And somme songen
 clere 139
 Layes of love, that joye hit was to here,

In worshipinge and preisinge of hir make.
 And, for the newe blisful somers sake,
 Upon the braunches ful of blozmes softe,
 In hir delyt, they turned hem ful ofte, 144
 And songen, 'blissed be seynt Valentyn!
 For on his day I chees yow to be myn,
 Withouten repenting, myn herte swete!
 And therwith-al hir bekes gonnen mete, *at myn*
 Yelding honour and humble obeisaunces

To love, and diden hir other obser-
 vaunces 150
 That longeth unto love and to nature;
 Construeth that as yow list, I do no cure.
 And tho that hadde doon unkinde-
 nesse—

As dooth the tydif, for new-fangelnesse—
 Besoghte mercy of hir trespassinge, 155
 And humbly songen hir repentinge,
 And sworn on the blozmes to be trewe,
 So that hir makes wolde upon hem rowe,
 And at the laste maden hir acord.
 Al founde they Daunger for a tyme a
 lord, 160
 Yet Pitee, through his stronge gentil
 might,
 Forgaf, and made Mercy passen Right,
 Through innocence and ruled curtesye.
 But I ne clepe nat innocence folys,
 Ne fals pitee, for 'verte is the mene,' 165
 As Etik saith, in swich manere I mene.
 And thus thise foules, voide of al malyce,
 Acordeden to love, and laften vyce
 Of hate, and songen alle of oon acord,
 'Wolcome, somer, our governour and
 lord!' 170

And Zephirus and Flora gentilly
 Yaf to the floures, softe and tenderly,
 Hir swote breth, and made hem for to
 sprode,
 As god and goddesse of the floury mede;

[Cf. p. 351, col. 1, ll. 71-80.]

[Cf. p. 352, col. 1, ll. 93-106.]

Til at the laste a larke song above : 141
 'I see,' quod she, 'the mighty god of love!
 Lo! yond he cometh, I see his winges
 sprede!'

Tho gan I loken endelong the mede,

In which me thoghte I mighte, day b
 day, 17
 Dwellen alwey, the joly month of May,
 Withouten sleep, withouten mete o
 drinke.

A-doun ful softly I gan to sinke;
 And, leninge on myn elbowe and m
 syde, 17

The longe day I shoop me for to abyde
 For nothing elles, and I shal nat lye,
 But for to loke upon the dayesye,
 That wel by reson men hit calle may
 The 'dayesye' or elles the 'ye of day,'
 The emperice and flour of floures alle. 18
 I pray to god that faire mot she falle,
 And alle that loven floures, for hir sake
 But natheles, ne wene nat that I make
 In preysing of the flour agayn the leef,
 No more than of the corn agayn the
 sheef : 19

For, as to me, nis lever noon ne lother;
 I nam with-holden yit with never nother
 Ne I not who serveth leef, ne who the
 flour;

Wel brouken they hir service or labour;
 For this thing is al of another tonne, 19
 Of olde story, er swich thing was be-
 gone.

Whan that the sonne out of the south
 gan weste,
 And that this flour gan close and goon to
 reste

For derknesse of the night, the which she
 dredde,

Hoom to myn hous ful swiftly I me
 speide 20

To goon to reste, and erly for to ryse,
 To seen this flour to sprede, as I devyse.

And, in a litel herber that I have,
 That benched was on turves fresshe y-
 grave, 204

I bad men sholde me my couche make;
 For deyntee of the newe someres sake,
 I bad hem strawen floures on my bed.

Whan I was leyd, and had myn eyen
 hed,

I fel on slepe in-with an houre or two;
 Me mette how I lay in the medew tho, 210
 To seen this flour that I so love and drede.

And from a-fer com walking in the mede

.w him come, and in his hond a
 vne, 145
 l in ryal abite al of grene.
 f gold she hadde next hir heer,
 on that a whyt coroun she beer
 any flouris, and I shal nat lye;
 he world, right as the dayesye 150
 ed is with whyte leves lyte,
 were the flouris of hir coroun
 yte.
 o perle fyn and oriental
 yte coroun was y-maked al;
 ich the whyte coroun, above the
 ne, 155
 ir lyk a daysie for to sene,
 red eek the fret of gold above.
 thed was this mighty god of love
 y-brouded ful of grene graves 160
 nd on his heed of rose-leves
 al with lillie flouris newe;
 his face I can nat seyn the hewe.

irly his face shoon so brighte,

ith the gleem a-stoned was the
 hte; 164
 ng-wey I mighte him nat beholde.
 the laste in hande I saw him
 de 168
 ry darter, as the gledes rede;
 ngellich his wenges gan he sprede.

be that men seyn that blind is he,
 me thoughte he mighte wel y-see;
 nely on me he gan biholde, 171
 his lokyng doth myn herte colde.
 y the hande he held the noble
 ne,
 ed with whyte, and clothed al in
 ne,
 anly, so benigne, and so meke, 175
 . this world, thogh that men wolde
 e,
 r beautees shulde men nat finde
 ture that formed is by kinde,
 me was Alceste the debonayre;
 o god that ever falle she fayre! 180
 hadde confort been of hir pre-
 ice,
 e deed, withouten any defence,

The god of love, and in his hande a
 quene;

And she was clad in real habit grene.
 A fret of gold she hadde next hir heer, 215
 And upon that a whyt coroun she beer
 With flouris smale, and I shal nat lye;
 For al the world, ryght as a dayesye
 Y-corouned is with whyte leves lyte, 219
 So were the flouris of hir coroun
 whyte.

For of o perle fyne, oriental,
 Hir whyte coroun was y-maked al;
 For which the whyte coroun, above the
 grene,

Made hir lyk a daysie for to sene,
 Considered eek hir fret of gold above. 225

Y-clothed was this mighty god of love
 In silke, enbrouded ful of grene graves,
 In-with a fret of rede rose-leves,
 The freshest sin the world was first
 bigonne. 229

His gilte heer was corouned with a sonne,
 In-stede of gold, for hevynesse and wighte;
 Therwith me thoughte his face shoon so
 brighte .

That wel unnethes mighte I him beholde;
 And in his hande me thoughte I saugh
 him holde

Two fyry darter, as the gledes rede, 235
 And aungellyke his wenges saugh I
 sprede.

And al be that men seyn that blind is he,
 Al-gate me thoughte that he mighte see;
 For sternely on me he gan biholde,
 So that his lokyng doth myn herte colde.
 And by the hande he held this noble
 quene, 241

Corouned with whyte, and clothed al in
 grene,

So womanly, so benigne, and so meke,
 That in this world, thogh that men wolde
 seke,

Half hir beautees shulde men nat finde 245
 In creature that formed is by kinde,

[Cf. p. 357, col. 2, ll. 276-9.]

For drede of Loves wordes and his chere,
 As, when tyme is, her-after ye shal here.
 By land this god of love, upon this grene,
 I saw cominge of lady's nyntene 186
 In ryal abite, a ful esy pas,
 And after hem com of women swich a tras
 That, sin that god Adam made of erthe.
 The thredde part of women, ne the ferte, 191
 Ne wende I nat by possiblitee
 Hidden ever in this world y-be
 And trewe of love these women were
 echoon

Now whether was that a wonder thing
 or noon,
 That, right anon as that they gonne
 espye 195
 This flour, which that I clepe the dayesye,
 Ful sodainly they stanten alle at-ones,
 And kneled adoun, as it were for the
 nones,
 And after that they wenten in compas,
 Dancesinge aboute this flour an esy pas, 200
 And songen, as it were in carole-wyse,
 This balade, which that I shal yow devyse

Balade

Hyd, Absolon, thy gilte tresses clere,
 Ester, ley thou thy meknesse al a-doun,
 Hyd Jonathas, al thy frendly manere 205
 Penelopee, and Marcia Catoun,
 Mak of your wythod no comparisoun,
 Hyde ye your beautes, Isonde and Elegne,
 Alceste is here, that al that may desteyne.

Thy faire bodye, lat hit nat appere, 210
 Lavyne and thou, Lucresse of Rome
 tonn,
 And Polixene, that boughten love so dere,
 Eek Cleopatre, with al thy passoun
 Hyde ye your trouthe in love and your
 renoun,
 An I thou, Tisba, that hast for love swich
 peyne. 215
 Alceste is here, that al that may desteyne.

Herro, Dido, Laudomia, alle in fere,
 Eek Phyllis, hanging for thy Demophoun,
 And Canace, espyed by thy chere,
 Ysiphile, betrayed with Jasoun, 220

[Cf. p. 157, col. 1, ll. 180-201.]

And therfor may I seyn, as thinketh me,
 This song in preysing of this ladye

Balade

Hyd, Absolon, thy gilte tresses clere 225
 Ester, ley thou thy meknesse al a-doun.
 Hyd Jonathas, al thy frendly manere
 Penelopee, and Marcia Catoun
 Mak of your wythod no comparisoun.
 Hyde ye your beautes Isonde and Elegne.
 My lady cometh, that al this may be
 teyne. 230

Thy faire body, lat hit nat appere
 Lavyne and thou Lucresse of Rome
 tonn,
 And Polixene, that boughten love so dere
 And Cleopatre, with al thy passoun
 Hyde ye your trouthe of love and
 renoun. 235
 And thou, Tisbe, that hast of love swich
 peyne.
 My lady cometh, that al this may be
 teyne

Herro, Dido, Laudomia, alle in fere
 And Phyllis, hanging for thy Demophoun
 And Canace, espyed by thy chere
 Ysiphile, betrayed with Jasoun

ak of your trouthe in love no best ne
soun ;
or Ypermistre or Adriane, ne pleyne ;
Iceste is here, that al that may desteyne.

When that this balade al y-songen was,

[Cf. pp. 355-6, col. 1, ll. 179-198.]

'pon the softe and swote grene gras, 225
hey setten hem ful softly adoun,
by ordre alle in compas, alle enveroun.
First sat the god of love, and than this
quene
With the whyte coron, clad in grene ;
And sithen al the remenant by and by,
As they were of degree, ful curteisly ; 231

Maketh of your trouthe neyther boost ne
soun ;
Nor Ypermistre or Adriane, ye twayne ;
My lady cometh, that al this may dis-
teyne.

This balade may ful wel y-songen be, 270
As I have seyde erst, by my lady free ;
For certeynly, alle these now nat suffyse
To apperen with my lady in no wyse.
For as the sonne wol the fyr disteyne,
So passeth al my lady sovereyne, 275
That is so good, so fair, so debonaire ;
I prey to god that ever falle hir faire !
For, hadde comfort been of hir presence,
I had ben deed, withouten any defence,
For drede of Loves wordes and his chere ;
As, when tyme is, her-after ye shal here.

Behind this god of love, upon the grene,
I saugh cominge of ladyes nyntene
In real habit, a ful esy pass ;
And after hem com of women swich a
traas, 285
That, sin that god Adam had maad of
erthe,
The thridde part of mankynd, or the
ferthe,
Ne wende I nat by possibilitee,
Had ever in this wyde worlde y-be ;
And trewe of love thise women were
echoon. 290

Now whether was that a wonder thing
or noon,
That, right anon as that they gonne
espye
This flour, which that I clepe the dayesye.
Ful sodeinly they stinten alle at ones,
And kneled down, as it were for the
nones, 295
And songen with o vois, ' Hele and honour
To trouthe of womanbede, and to this flour
That berth our alder prys in figuringe !
Hir whyte coron berth the witnessinge !'

And with that word, a-compas en-
vironn, 300
They setten hem ful softly adoun.
First sat the god of love, and sith his
quene
With the whyte coron, clad in grene ;
And sithen al the remenant by and by,
As they were of estat, ful curteisly ; 305

Ne nat a word was spoken in the place
The mountance of a furlong-vey of space.

'I, leneing faste by under a bente,
Abood, to knowen what this peple mente,
As stille as any stoon; til at the laste, 236
The god of love on me his eye caste,
And seyde, 'who resteth ther?' and I
answerde

Un-to his axing, whan that I him herde,
And seyde, 'sir, hit am I'; and cam him
neer, 240
And salued him. Quod he, 'what dostow
heer

In my presence, and that so boldely?
For it were better worthy, trewely,
A worm to comen in my sight than
thou.'

'And why, sir,' quod I, 'and hit lyke
yow?' 245

'For thou,' quod he, 'art ther-to nothing
able.

My servaunts been alle wyse and honour-
able.

Thou art my mortal fo, and me warreyest,

And of myne olde servaunts thou mis-
seyest,

And hinderest hem, with thy translacioun,
And lettest folk to han devocioun 251

To serven me, and haldest hit folye
To troste on me. Thou mayst hit nat
denye;

For in pleyn text, hit nedeth nat to
glose,

Thou hast translated the Romauns of the
Rose, 255

That is an heresyge ageyns my lawe,
And makest wyse folk fro me withdrawe.
And thinkest in thy wit, that is ful cool,
That he nis but a verray propre fool
That loveth paramours, to harde and
hote. 260

Wel wot I ther-by thou beginnest dote
As olde foles, whan hir spirit fayloth;
Than blame they folk, and wite nat what
hem ayleth.

Hast thou nat mad in English eek the
book

How that Crisseyde Troilus forcook, 265
In shewingge how that wemen han don
mis?

Ne nat a word was spoken in the place
The mountance of a furlong-vey of space—

I kneling by this flour, in good entente—
Abood, to knowen what this peple mente —
As stille as any stoon; til at the laste, 311—
This god of love on me his eyen caste,
And seyde, 'who kneleth ther?' and I
answerde

Unto his asking, whan that I hit herde,
And seyde, 'sir, hit am I'; and com him
neer,
And salued him. Quod he, 'what dostow
heer 315—

So nigh myn owne flour, so boldely?
For it were better worthy, trewely,
A worm to neghen neer my flour than
thou.'

'And why, sir,' quod I, 'and hit lyke
yow?' 320—

'For thou,' quod he, 'art ther-to nothing
able. 325—

Hit is my relik, digno and delytable,

And thou my fo, and al my folk wer-
reyst,

And of myn olde servaunts thou mis-
seyest,

And hindrest hem, with thy translacioun,
And lettest folk from hir devocioun 325—

To serve me, and holdest hit folye
To serve Love. Thou mayst hit nat denye;

For in pleyn text, with-outen nede of
glose,

Thou hast translated the Romaunce of
the Rose,

That is an heresyge ageyns my lawe, 330—
And makest wyse folk fro me withdrawe.

And of Crisseyde thou hast seyde as thee
liste,

That maketh men to wommen lasse triste,
That ben as trewe as ever was any steel.

But natheles, answer me now to this,
Why noldest thou as wel han seyde good-
nesse

Of women, as thou hast seyde wikkednesse?
Was ther no good matere in thy minde,
Ne in alle thy bokes coudest thou nat
finde 271

Sum story of women that were goode and
trewe?

Yis! god wot, sixty bokes olde and newe
Hast thou thy-self, alle fulle of stories
grete,

That bothe Romaines and eek Grekes
tete 275

Of sundry women, which lyf that they
ladde,

And ever an hundred gode ageyn oon
badde.

This knoweth god, and alle clerkes eke,
That usen swiche materes for to seke. 279

What seith Valerie, Titus, or Claudian?

What seith Jerome ageyns Jovinian?

How clene maydens, and how trewe
wyves, 282

How stedfast widwes during al hir lyves,
Telleth Jerome; and that nat of a fewe,

But, I dar seyn, an hundred on a rewe;

That hit is pitee for to rede, and routhe,

The wo that they enduren for hir trouthe.

For to hir love were they so trewe,

That, rather than they wolde take a
newe,

They chosen to be dede in sundry wyse,

And deyden, as the story wol devyse; 291

And some were brend, and some were cut
the hals,

And some dreynt, for they wolden nat be
fals.

For alle keped they hir maydenhed,

Or elles wedlok, or hir widwehed. 295

And this thing was nat kept for holi-
nesse,

But al for verray vertu and clenness,

And for men shulde sette on hem no lak;

And yit they weren hethen, al the pak,

That were so sore adrad of alle shame. 300

These olde women kepte so hir name,

That in this world I trow men shal nat
finde

A man that coude be so trewe and kinde,
As was the leste woman in that tyde.

Of thyn answer avyse thee right weel;

What seith also the epistels of Ovyde 305
Of trewe wyves, and of hir labour?
What Vincent, in his Storial Mirour?
Eek al the world of autours maystow

here,
Cristen and hethen, trete of swich matere;
It nedeth nat alday thus for t'endyte. 310
But yit I sey, what eyleth thee to wryte
The draf of stories, and forgo the corn?
By seint Venus, of whom that I was born,
Although [that] thou reneyed hast my
lay,
As othere olde foles many a day, 315

Thou shalt repente hit, that hit shal be
sene!'

Than spak Alceste, the worthieste
quene,
And seyde, 'god, right of your curtesye,
Ye moten herknen if he can replye
Ageyns these points that ye han to him
meved; 320

A god ne sholde nat be thus agreved,
But of his deitee he shal be stable,
And therto rightful and eek merciabe.
He shal nat rightfully his yre wreke 324
Or he have herd the tother party speke.
Al ne is nat gospel that is to yow pleynd;
The god of love herth many a tale
y-feyned.

For in your court is many a losengeour,
And many a queynte totelere accusour,
That tabouren in your eres many a thing
For hate, or for jelous imaginig, 331
And for to han with yow som daliaunce.
Envye (I prey to god yeve hir mischaunce!)

Is lavender in the grete court alway.
For she ne parteth, neither night ne day,
Out of the hous of Cesar; thus seith
Dante; 336

Who-so that goth, alwey she moot [nat]
wante.

This man to yow may wrongly been
accused,

Ther as by right him oghte been excused.
Or elles, sir, for that this man is nyce, 340
He may translate a thing in no malyce,
But for he useth bokes for to make,

For, thogh that thou reneyed hast my
lay, 336
As other wrecches han doon many a day,
By seynt Venus, that my moder is,
If that thou live, thou shalt repenten
this

So cruelly, that hit shal wel be sene!' 340

Tho spak this lady, clothed al in grene,

And seyde, 'god, right of your curtesye,
Ye moten herknen if he can replye
Agayns al this that ye han to him
meved;

A god ne sholde nat be thus agreved, 345
But of his deitee he shal be stable,
And therto gracious and merciabe.

And if ye nere a god, that knowen al,
Than mighte hit be, as I yow tellen shal;
This man to you may falsly been ac-
cused, 350

Ther as by right him oghte been excused
For in your court is many a losengeour,
And many a queynte totelere accusour,
That tabouren in your eres many a soun.
Right after hir imaginacioun, 355
To have your daliance, and for envye;
These been the causes, and I shall nat
lye.

Envye is lavender of the court alway;
For she ne parteth, neither night ne day,
Out of the hous of Cesar; thus seith
Dante; 360

Who-so that goth, algate she wol nat
wante.

[Cf. ll. 350-1 above.]

And eek, paraunter, for this man is nyce,
He mighte doon hit, gessing no malyce,
But for he useth thinges for to make;

non heed of what matere he
 e wroot the Rose and seek
 vde
 ce, and niste what he seyde ;
 sboden make thilke tweye 346
 zone, and durste hit nat with-
 h written many a book er this.
 a nat doon so greuously amis
 en that olde clerkes wryten, 350
 hat he of malice wolde endyten
 love, and hadde him-self y-
 t.
 le a rightwys lord han in his
 t,
 o lyk tiraunts of Lumbardy, e,
 wilfulhed and tiranny, 355
 it king or lord is naturel,
 : nat be tiraunt ne cruel,
 mour, to doon the harm he can.
 thinke hit is his lige man,
 um oweth, of verray ductes, 360
 a peple playn benignitee,
 o here hir excusaciouns,
 mpleyntes and peticiouns,
 tyme, whan they shal hit profre.
 : sentence of the philosophre :
 tepe his liges in justyce ; 366
 n doute, that is his offyce.
 o is a king ful depe y-sworn,
 an hundred winter heer-bitorn ;
 : kepe his lonles hir degree, 370
 ight and skilful that they be
 d and honoured, and most
 -
 ben half-goddes in this world
 -
 he doon, bothe to pore [and]
 her estat be nat a-liche, 375
 of pore folk compassion.
 e gentil kind of the leoun !
 a flye offendeth him or byteth,
 is tayl away the flye smyteth
 for, of his genterye, 380
 eth nat to wreke him on a flye,
 curra or elles another beste.
 orage oghte been areste,
 n every thing by equitee,
 han reward to his owen degree.

Him rekketh noght of what matere he
 take ; 365

Or him was boden maken thilke tweye
 Of som persone, and durste hit nat with-
 seys ;
 Or him repenteth utterly of this.
 He ne hath nat doon so greuously amis
 To translaten that olde clerkes wryten, 370
 As thogh that he of malice wolde endyten
 Despyt of love, and had him-self hit
 wrought.
 This shulde a rightwys lord have in his
 thocht,
 And nat be lyk tiraunts of Lumbardy,
 Than han no reward but at tiranny. 375
 For he that king or lord is naturel,
 Him oghte nat be tiraunt ne cruel,
 As is a fermour, to doon the harm he can.
 He moste thinke hit is his lige man,

And is his tresour, and his gold in cofre.
 This is the sentence of the philosophre : 381
 A king to kepe his liges in justyce ;
 With-outen doute, that is his offyce.

Al wol he kepe his lordes hir degree,
 As hit is right and skilful that they be 385
 Enhaunced and honoured, and most
 dere—
 For they ben half-goddes in this world
 here—
 Yit mot he doon bothe right, to pore and
 riche,
 Al be that hir estat be nat y-liche,
 And han of pore folk compassion. 390
 For lo, the gentil kynd of the leoun !
 For whan a flye offendeth him or byteth,
 He with his tayl away the flye smyteth
 Al esily ; for, of his genterye, 394
 Him deyneth nat to wreke him on a flye,
 As doth a curra or elles another beste.
 In noble corage oghte been areste,
 And weyen every thing by equitee,
 And ever han reward to his owen degree.

For, sir, hit is no maystrie for a lord 386
To dampne a man with-oute answere or
word ;

And, for a lord, that is ful foul to use.
And if so be he may him nat excuse,
[But] axeth mercy with a sorweful herte,
And profreth him, right in his bare
sherte, 391

To been right at your owne jugement,
Than oghte a god, by short avysement,
Considre his owne honour and his trespas.
For sith no cause of deeth lyth in this
cas, 395

Yow oghte been the lighter merciable ;
Leteth your yre, and beth somewhat
tretable !

The man hath served yow of his conning,
And forthered your lawe with his making.
Whyl he was yong, he kepte your estat ;
I not wher he be now a renegat. 401

But wel I wot, with that he can endyte,
He hath maked lewed folk delyte
To serve you, in preysing of your name.
He made the book that hight the Hous of
Fame, 405

And eek the Deeth of Blaunche the
Duchesse,

And the Parlement of Foules, as I gesse,
And al the love of Palamon and Arcyte
Of Thebes, thogh the story is knowen lyte ;
And many an ympne for your halydayes,
That highten Balades, Roundels, Vire-
layes ; 411

And for to speke of other besinesse,
He hath in prose translated Boëce ;
And of the Wretched Engendring of Man-
kinde,

As man may in pope Innocent y-finde ; 415
And mad the Lyf also of seynt Cecyle ;
He made also, goon sithen a greet whyl,
Origenes upon the Maudeleyne ;
Him oghte now to have the lesse peyne ;
He hath mad many a lay and many a
thing. 420

Now as ye been a god, and eek a king,
I, your Alceste, whylom quene of Trace,
I axe yow this man, right of your grace,
That ye him never hurte in al his lyve ;
And he shal sweren yow, and that as
blyve, 425

He shal no more agilten in this wyse ;

For, sir, hit is no maystrie for a lord 400
To dampne a man with-oute answere of
word ;

And, for a lord, that is ful foul to use.
And if so be he may him nat excuse,
But asketh mercy with a dredful herte,
And profreth him, right in his bare
sherte, 405

To been right at your owne jugement,
Than oghte a god, by short avysement,
Considre his owne honour and his trespas.
For sith no cause of deeth lyth in this
cas, 405

Yow oghte been the lighter merciable ; 410
Leteth your yre, and beth somewhat tret-
able !

The man hath served yow of his conning,
And forthred wel your lawe in his making.

Al be hit that he can nat wel endyte,
Yet hath he maked lewed folk delyte 415
To serve you, in preysing of your name.
He made the book that hight the Hous of
Fame,

And eek the Deeth of Blaunche the
Duchesse,

And the Parlement of Foules, as I gesse,
And al the love of Palamon and Arcyte 420
Of Thebes, thogh the story is knowen lyte ;
And many an ympne for your halydayes,
That highten Balades, Roundels, Vire-
layes ;

And, for to speke of other holynesse,
He hath in prose translated Boëce, 425

And mad the Lyf also of seynt Cecyle ;
He made also, goon sithen a greet whyl,
Origenes upon the Maudeleyne ;
Him oghte now to have the lesse peyne ;
He hath mad many a lay and many
a thing. 430

' Now as ye been a god, and eek a king,
I, your Alceste, whylom quene of Trace,
I aske yow this man, right of your grace,
That ye him never hurte in al his lyve ;
And he shal sweren yow, and that as
blyve, 435

He shal no more agilten in this wyse ;

But he shal maken, as ye wil devyse,
Of women trewe in lovinge al hir lyve,
Wher-so ye wil, of maiden or of wyve,
And forthren yow, as muche as he mis-
seyde 430

Or in the Rose or elles in Criseyde.'

The god of love answerde hir thus
anoon,

'Madame,' quod he, 'hit is so long agoon
That I yow knew so charitable and trewe,
That never yit, sith that the world was
news, 435

To me ne fond I better noon than ye.
That, if that I wol save my degree,
I may ne wol nat warne your requeste;
Al lyth in yow, doth with him what yow
leste, 439

And al foryeve, with-outen langer space;
For who-so yeveth a yift, or doth a grace,
Do hit by tyme, his thank is wel the
more;

And demeth ye what he shal do therfore.
Go thanke now my lady heer,' quod he.

I roos, and down I sette me on my
knee, 445

And seyde thus: 'Madame, the god above
Forgyelde yow, that ye the god of love
Han makid me his wrathe to foryive;
And yeve me grace so long for to live,
That I may knowe soothly what ye be, 450
That han me holpen, and put in swich
degree.

But trewely I wende, as in this cas,
Naught have agilt, ne doon to love
trespas.

Forwhy a trewe man, with-outen drede,
Hath nat to parten with a theves dede;
Ne a trewe lover oghte me nat blame, 455
Thogh that I speke a fals lover som shama.
They oghte rather with me for to holde,
For that I of Cresseide wroot or tolde,
Or of the Rose; what-so myn auctour
mente, 460

Algate, god wot, hit was myn entente
To forthren trouthe in love and hit
cheryce;

And to be war fro falsnesse and fro vyce
By swich ensample; this was my men-
inge.'

And she answerde, 'lat be thyn argu-
inge; 465

But he shal maken, as ye wil devyse,
Of woman trewe in lovinge al hir lyve,
Wher-so ye wil, of maiden or of wyve,
And forthren yow, as muche as he mis-
seyde 440

Or in the Rose or elles in Cresseide.'

The god of love answerde hir thus
anoon,

'Madame,' quod he, 'hit is so long agoon
That I yow knew so charitable and trewe,
That never yit, sith that the world was
news, 445

To me ne fond I better noon than ye.
If that I wolde save my degree,
I may ne wol nat werne your requeste;
Al lyth in yow, doth with him as yow
leste.

I al foryeve, with-outen langer space; 450
For who-so yeveth a yift, or doth a grace,
Do hit by tyme, his thank is wel the
more;

And demeth ye what he shal do therfore.
Go thanke now my lady heer,' quod he.

I roos, and down I sette me on my
knee, 455

And seyde thus: 'Madame, the god above
Forgyelde yow, that ye the god of love
Han makid me his wrathe to foryive;
And yeve me grace so long for to live,
That I may knowe soothly what ye be, 460
That han me holpe and put in this
degree.

But trewely I wende, as in this cas,
Naught have agilt, ne doon to love
trespas.

Forwhy a trewe man, with-outen drede,
Hath nat to parten with a theves dede;
Ne a trewe lover oghte me nat blame, 465
Thogh that I speke a fals lover som shama.
They oghte rather with me for to holde,
For that I of Cresseide wroot or tolde,
Or of the Rose; what-so myn auctour
mente, 470

Algate, god wot, hit was myn entente
To forthren trouthe in love and hit
cheryce;

And to be war fro falsnesse and fro vyce
By swich ensample; this was my men-
inge.'

And she answerde, 'lat be thyn argu-
inge; 475

For Love ne wol nat countrepleted be
In right ne wrong ; and lerne this at me !
Thou hast thy grace, and hold thee right
ther-to.

Now wol I seyn what penance thou shalt
do

For thy trespass, and understond hit here :
Thou shalt, whyl that thou livest, yeer by
yere, 471

The moste party of thy lyve spende
In making of a glorious Legende
Of Gode Wemen, maidenés and wyves, 474
That were trewe in lovinge al hir lyves ;
And telle of false men that hem bitrayen,
That al hir lyf ne doon nat but assayen
How many wemen they may doon a
shame ;

For in your world that is now holden
game.

And thogh thee lesteth nat a lover be, 480
Spek wel of love ; this penance yeve
I thee.

And to the god of love I shal so preye,
That he shal charge his servants, by any
weye,

To forthren thee, and wel thy labour
quyte ;

Go now thy wey, thy penance is but lyte.'

The god of love gan smyle, and than he
seyde, 486

' Wostow,' quod he, ' wher this be wyf or
mayde,

Or quene, or countesse, or of what degree,
That hath so litel penance yeven thee,
That hast deserved sorer for to smerte ?
But pitee renneth sone in gentil herte ;
That mayst thou seen, she kytheth what
she is.'

And I answerde, ' nay, sir, so have I blis,
No more but that I see wel she is good.'

' That is a trewe tale, by myn hood,' 495
Quod Love, ' and that thou knowest wel,
pardee,

If hit be so that thou avyse thee.

Hastow nat in a book, lyth in thy cheste,
The gret goodnesse of the quene Alceste,
That turned was into a dayesye : 500
She that for hir husbonde chees to dye,

For Love ne wol nat countrepleted be
In right ne wrong ; and lerne that of me !
Thou hast thy grace, and hold thee right
ther-to.

Now wol I seyn what penance thou shalt
do

For thy trespass, and understond hit here :
Thou shalt, whyl that thou livest, yeer
by yere, 481

The moste party of thy tyme spende
In making of a glorious Legende
Of Gode Wommen, maidenés and wyves,
That weren trewe in lovinge al hir lyves ;
And telle of false men that hem bitrayen,
That al hir lyf ne doon nat but assayen
How many wommen they may doon a
shame ;

For in your world that is now holde a
game.

And thogh thee lyke nat a lover be, 490
Spek wel of love ; this penance yive I
thee.

And to the god of love I shal so preye,
That he shal charge his servants, by any
weye,

To forthren thee, and wel thy labour
quyte ;

Go now thy wey, this penance is but lyte.
And whan this book is maad, yive hit the
quene 496

On my behalfe, at Eltham, or at Shene'.
The god of love gan smyle, and than he
seyde,

' Wostow,' quod he, ' wher this be wyf or
mayde,

Or quene, or countesse, or of what degree,
That hath so litel penance yiven thee, 501
That hast deserved sorer for to smerte ?
But pitee renneth sone in gentil herte ;
That maystow seen, she kytheth what
she is.'

And I answerde, ' nay, sir, so have I blis,
No more but that I see wel she is good.'

' That is a trewe tale, by myn hood,'
Quod Love, ' and that thou knowest wel,
pardee,

If hit be so that thou avyse thee. 509

Hastow nat in a book, lyth in thy cheste,
The grete goodnesse of the quene Alceste,
That turned was into a dayesye :
She that for hir husbonde chees to dye,

And eek to goon to helle, rather than he,
And Ercules rescued hir, pardee,
And broghte hir out of helle agayn to
blis?' 504

And I answerde ageyn, and seyde, 'yis,
Now knowe I hir! And is this good
Alceste,

The dayesye, and myn owne hertes reste?
Now fele I wel the goodnesse of this wyf,
That bothe after hir deeth, and in hir lyf,
Hir grete bountee doubleth hir renoun!
Wel hath she quit me myn affeccoun
That I have to hir flour, the dayesye!
No wonder is thogh Jove hir stellifye,
As telleth Agaton, for hir goodnesse!
Hir whyte coroun berth of hit witesse;
For also many vertues hadde she, 516
As smale floures in hir coroun be.

In remembraunce of hir and in honour,
Cibella made the dayesy and the flour 519
Y-coroned al with whyt, as men may see;
And Mars yaf to hir coroun reed, pardee,
In stede of rubies, set among the whyte.'

Therwith this quene wex reed for shame
a lyte, 523

Whan she was preysed so in hir presence.
Than seyde Love, 'a ful gret negligence
Was hit to thee, to write unstedfastnesse
Of women, sith thou knowest hir good-
nesse

By preef, and eek by stories heer-biforn;
Let be the chaf, and wryt wel of the corn.
Why noldest thou han writen of Alceste,
And leten Criseide been a-slepe and
reste? 531

For of Alceste shulde thy wryting be,
Sin that thou wost that kalender is she
Of goodnesse, for she taughte of fyn
lovinge,

And namely of wyfhood the livinge, 535
And alle the boundes that she oghte kepe;
Thy litel wit was thilke tyme a-slepe.
But now I charge thee, upon thy lyf,
That in thy Legend thou make of this
wyf,

Whan thou hast othere smale maad be-
fore; 540

And fare now wel, I charge thee no more.

And eek to goon to helle, rather than he,
And Ercules rescowed hir, pardee, 515
And broghte hir out of helle agayn to
blis?'

And I answerde ageyn, and seyde, 'yis,
Now knowe I hir! And is this good
Alceste, 518

The dayesye, and myn owne hertes reste?
Now fele I wel the goodnesse of this wyf,
That bothe after hir deeth, and in hir lyf,
Hir grete bountee doubleth hir renoun!
Wel hath she quit me myn affeccoun
That I have to hir flour, the dayesye!
No wonder is thogh Jove hir stellifye, 525
As telleth Agaton, for hir goodnesse!
Hir whyte coroun berth of hit witesse;
For also many vertues hadde she,
As smale floures in hir coroun be. 529

In remembraunce of hir and in honour,
Cibella made the dayesy and the flour
Y-coroned al with whyt, as men may see;
And Mars yaf to hir coroun reed, pardee,
In stede of rubies, set among the whyte.'

Therwith this quene wex reed for shame
a lyte, 535

Whan she was preysed so in hir presence.
Than seyde Love, 'a ful gret negligence
Was hit to thee, that ilke tyme thou
made 538

"Hyd, Absolon, thy tresses," in balade,
That thou forgete hir in thy song to sette,
Sin that thou art so gretly in hir dette,

And wost so wel, that kalender is she
To any woman that wol lover be
For she taughte al the craft of fyn
lovinge,

And namely of wyfhood the livinge, 545
And alle the boundes that she oghte kepe;
Thy litel wit was thilke tyme a-slepe.
But now I charge thee, upon thy lyf,
That in thy Legend thou make of this
wyf,

Whan thou hast other smale y-maad be-
fore; 550

And fare now wel, I charge thee no more.

But er I go, thus muche I wol thee
telle,

Ne shal no trewe lover come in helle.

At Cleopatre I wol that thou beginne;
 And so forth; and my love so shalt thou
 winne.'

543

And with that word of sleep I gan a-awake,
 And right thus on my Legend gan I make.

Thise other ladies sittinge here arowe
 Ben in thy balade, if thou canst hem
 knowe, 555
 And in thy bokes alle thou shalt hem
 finde;
 Have hem now in thy Legend alle in
 minde,
 I mene of hem that been in thy knowinge.
 For heer ben twenty thousand mo sittinge
 Than thou knowest, that been good
 wommen alle 560
 And trewe of love, for aught that may
 befall; ;

Make the metres of hem as the leste.
 I mot gon hoom, the sonne draweth weste,
 To Paradys, with al this companye;
 And serve alwey the freshe dayesye. 565
 At Cleopatre I wol that thou beginne;
 And so forth; and my love so shalt thou
 winne.

For lat see now what man that lover be,
 Wol doon so strong a peyne for love as
 she.

I wot wel that thou mayst nat al hit
 ryme, 570

That swiche lovers diden in hir tyme;
 It were to long to reden and to here;
 Suffyceth me, thou make in this manere.
 That thou reherce of al hir lyf the grete,
 After thise olde auctours listen to trete.
 For who-so shal so many a storie telle, 576
 Sey shortly, or he shal to longe dwelle.'

And with that word my bokes gan I take.
 And right thus on my Legend gan I make.

Explicit prohemium.

I. THE LEGEND OF CLEOPATRA.

*Incipit Legenda Cleopatrie, Martiris,
 Egipti regine.*

AFTER the deeth of Tholomee the king, 580
 That al Egipte hadde in his governing,
 Regned his quene Cleopataras;
 Til on a tyme besel ther swiche a cas,
 That out of Rome was sent a senatour,
 For to conqueren regnes and honour 585
 Unto the toun of Rome, as was usaunce,
 To have the world unto her obeisaunce;

And, sooth to soye, Antonius was his
 name.

So fil hit, as Fortune him oghte a
 shame (10)

Whan he was fallen in prosperitee, 590
 Rebel unto the toun of Rome is he.

And over al this, the suster of Cesar,
 He lafte hir falsly, or that she was war,
 And wolde algates han another wyf;
 For whiche he took with Rome and Cesar
 stryf. 595

Natheles, for-sooth, this ilke senatour
Was a ful worthy gentil werreyour,
And of his deeth hit was ful greet damage.
But love had broght this man in swiche
a rage,

And him so narwe bounden in his las, ^{snare} (20)
Al for the love of Cleopatras, 601

That al the world he sette at no value.
Him thoughte, nas to him no thing so
due

As Cleopatras for to love and serve; 604
Him roghte nat in armes for to sterve
In the defence of hir, and of hir right.

This noble quene eek lovede so this
knight, ^{meit}

Through his desert, and for his chivalrye;
As certainly, but-if that bokes lye, (30)

He was, of persone and of gentillesse, 610
And of discrecioun and hardinesse,
Worthy to any wight that liven may.

And she was fair as is the rose in May.
And, for to maken shortly is the beste,

She wex his wyf, and hadde him as hir
leste. 615

The wedding and the feste to devise,
To me, that have y-take swiche emprys

Of so many a storie for to make, (39)
Hit were to long, lest that I sholde slake

Of thing that bereth more effect and
charge; 620

For men may overlade a ship or barge;
And forthy to th'effect than wol I skipe,

And al the remenant, I wol lete hit
slippe.

Octovian, that wood was of this dede,
Shoop him an ost on Antony to lede 625

Al-outerly for his destruccioun,
With stoute Romans, cruel as leoun;

To ship they wente, and thus I let hem
saile.

Antonius was war, and wol nat faile (50)
To meten with thise Romans, if he

may; 630
Took eek his reed, and bothe, upon

a day,
His wyf and he, and al his ost, forth

wente
To shippe anon, no lenger they ne stente;

And in the see hit happed hem to mete—
Up goth the trompe—and for to shoute

and shete, ^{shot} 635

And peynen hem to sette on with the
sonne. ^{horrible}

With grisly soun out goth the grete
gonne,

And heterly they hurtlen al at ones, ^{fiercely}
And fro the top down cometh the grete

stones. (60)

In goth the grapenel so ful of crokes 640 ^{hooks}
Among the ropes, and the shering-hokes.

In with the polax presseth he and he;
Behind the mast beginneth he to flee,

And out agayn, and dryveth him over-
borde; 644

He stingeth him upon his speres orde; ^{point}
He rent the sail with hokes lyke a sythe;

He bringeth the cuppe, and biddeth hem
be blythe; ^{peace}

He poureth resen upon the hacches slider;
With pottes ful of lym they goon to-

gider; ^{quickly} (70)
And thus the longe day in fight they

spende 650
Til, at the laste, as every thing hath ende,

Antony is shent, and put him to the
flight,

And al his folk to-go, that best go mighte.
Fleeth eek the queen, with al her

purpre sail,
For strokes, which that wente as thikke

as hail; 655
No wonder was, she mighte hit nat endure.

And whan that Antony saw that aven-
ture,

'Allas!' quod he, 'the day that I was
born!

My worshipec in this day thus have I
lorn!' (80)

And for dispeyr out of his witte he sterte,
And roof him-self anon through-out the

herte 661
Er that he ferther wente out of the

place.
His wyf, that coude of Cesar have no

grace,
To Egipte is fled, for drede and for dis-

trese;
But herkneth, ye that speke of kinde-

nesse. 665
Ye men, that falsly sweren manyan ooth

That ye wol dye, if that your love be
wrooth, ^{any}

Heer may ye seen of women whiche a
 trouthe!
 This woful Cleopatre hath mad swich
 rounthe (90)
 That ther nis tonge noon that may hit
 telle. 670
 But on the morwe she wol no lenger
 dwelle,
 But made hir subtil werkmen make a
 shryne
 Of alle the rubies and the stones fyne
 In al Egipte that she coude espye;
 And putte ful the shryne of spycerye, 675
 And leet the cors embaume; and forth
 she fette
 This dede cors, and in the shryne hit
 shette.
 And next the shryne a pit than doth she
 grave;
 And alle the serpents that she mighte
 have, (100)
 She putte hem in that grave, and thus
 she seyde: 680
 'Now love, to whom my sorweful herte
 obeyde
 So ferforthly that, fro that blisful houre
 That I yow swor to been al frely youre,
 I mene yow, Antonius my knight! 684
 That never waking, in the day or night.

Ye nere out of myn hertes remembraunce
 For wele or wo, for carole or for daunce;
 And in my-self this covenant made I
 tho, (109)
 That, right swich as ye felten, wele or wo,
 As ferforth as hit in my power lay, 690
 Unreprovable unto my wyfhood ay,
 The same wolde I felen, lyf or deeth.
 And thilke covenant, whyl me lasteth
 breeth,
 I wol fulfille, and that shal wel be sene:
 Was never unto hir love a trewer quene.
 And with that word, naked, with ful
 good herte, 696
 Among the serpents in the pit she sterte,
 And ther she chees to han hir buryinge,
 Anoon the neddres gonne hir for to
 stinge, (120)
 And she hir deeth receyveth, with good
 chere, 700
 For love of Antony, that was hir so dere.
 And this is storial sooth, hit is no fable.
 Now, er I finde a man thus trewe and
 stable,
 And wol for love his deeth so freely
 take,
 I pray god lat our hedes never ake! 705
Explicit Legenda Cleopatric. Martiris.

II. THE LEGEND OF THISBE OF BABYLON.

Incipit Legenda Tesbe Babilonie, Martiris.

At Babiloine whylom fil it thus,
 The whiche toun the queen Semiramus
 Leet dichen al about, and walles make
 Ful hye, of harde tyles wol y-bake.
 Ther weren dwellinge in this noble toun
 Two lordes, which that were of greet
 renoun, 711
 And woneden so nigh, upon a grene,
 That ~~ther was~~ but a stoon-wal hem bi-
 twene,
 As ofte in grete tonnes is the wone.
 And sooth to seyn, that o man hadde
 a sone, 715
 Of al that londe oon of the lustieste. (11)
 That other hadde a doghter, the faireste,

That estward in the world was the dwel-
 linge.
 The name of everich gan to other springe
 By wommen, that were neighebores
 aboute. 720
 For in that contree yit, withouten doute,
 Maidens been y-kept, for jelosye,
 Ful streite, lest they diden som folye.
 This yonge man was cleped Piramus,
 And Tisbe hight the maid, Naso seith
 thus; 725
 And thus by report was hir name y-shove.
 That, as they waxe in age, wax hir
 love; (22)
 And certein, as by reson of hir age,
 Ther mighte have been bitwix hem
 mariage, 729

But that hir fadres nolde hit nat assente;
And bothe in love y-lyke sore they brante,
That noon of alle hir frendes mighte hit
lette

But prively somtyme yit they mette
By sleighte, and speken som of hir desyr;
As, wry the gleed, and hotter is the fyr;
Forbode a love, and it is ten so wood. 736

This wal, which that bitwix hem bothe
stood, (32)

Was cloven a-two, right fro the toppe
adoun,

Of olde tyme of his fundacioun;

But yit this clifte was so narwe and
lyte, 740

It nas nat sene, dere y-nogh a myte.

But what is that, that love can nat espye?

Ye lovers two, if that I shal nat lye,

Ye founden first this lital narwe clifte;

And, with a soun as softe as any shrifte,

They lete hir wordes through the clifte

pace, (41) 746

And tolden, whyl that they stode in the
place,

Al hir compleynt of love, and al hir wo,

At every tyme whan they dorste so.

Upon that o syde of the wal stood he,

And on that other syde stood Tisbe, 751

The swote soun of other to receyve,

And thus hir wardeins wolde they de-
ceyve.

And every day this wal they wolde threte,

And wishe to god, that it were doun
y-beta. (50) 755

Thus wolde they seyn--'allas! thou

wikked wal,

Through thyn envye thou us lettest al!

Why nilt thou cleve, or fallen al a-two?

Or, at the leste, but thou woldest so,

Yit woldestow but ones lete us mete, 760

Or ones that we mighte kissen swete,

Than were we covered of our cares colde.

But natheles, yit be we to thee holde

In as muche as thou suffrest for to goon

Our wordes through thy lyme and eek

thy stoon. (60) 765

Yit oghte we with thee ben wel apayd.'

And whan thise ydel wordes weren sayd,

The colde wal they wolden kisse of stoon,

And take hir leve, and forth they wolden
goon.

And this was gladly in the even-tyde 770
Or wonder erly, lest men hit espyde;
And longe tyme they wroghte in this
manere

Til on a day, whan Phebus gan to clere,

Aurora with the streames of hir hete

Had dryed up the dew of herbes wete, 775

Unto this clifte, as it was wont to be, (71)

Com Pyramus, and after com Tisbe,

And pligheten trouthe fully in hir fey

That ilke same night to stele away,

And to begyle hir wardeins everichoon, 780

And forth out of the citee for to goon;

And, for the feldees been so brode and

wyde,

For to mete in o place at o tyde,

They sette mark hir meting sholde be

Ther king Ninus was graven, under a

tree; (80) 785

For olde payens that ydoles heried

Useden the in feldees to ben beried;

And faste by this grave was a welle.

And, shortly of this tale for to telle,

This covenant was affermed wonder

faste; 790

And longe ham thoughte that the sonne

laste,

That hit nere goon under the see adoun.

This Tisbe hath so greet affeccoun

And so greet lyking Piramus to see,

That, whan she seigh her tyme mighte

be, (90) 795

At night she stal away ful prively

With her face y-wimpled subtilly;

For alle her frendes—for to save her

trouthe—

She hath for-sake; alas! and that is

ronthe

That ever woman wolde be so trewe 800

To trusten man, but she the bet him

knewe!

And to the tree she goth a ful good pas,

For love made her so hardy in this cas,

And by the welle adoun she gan her

dressen. 804

Allas! than comth a wilde leonesse (100)

Out of the wode, withouten more areste,

With bloody monthes, of strangling of a

beste,

To drinken of the welle, ther as she sat;

And, whan that Tisbe had espyed that,

She rist her up, with a ful drery herte, 810
And in a cave with dredful foot she sterte,
For by the mone she seigh hit wel with-
alle. 812

And, as she ran, her wimpel leet she falle,
And took noon heed, so sore she was
a-whaped. (109)

And eek so glad of that she was escaped ;
And thus she sit, and darketh wonder
stille. 816

Whan that this leonesse hath dronke her
fille,

Aboute the welle gan she for to winde,
And right anon the wimpel gan she
finde,

And with her bloody mouth hit al to-
rente. 820

Whan this was doon, no lenger she ne
stente,

But to the wode her way than hath she
nome.

And, at the laste, this Piramus is come,
But al to longe, alas ! at hoom was he.

The mone shoon, men mighte wel y-see, 825
And in his weye, as that he com ful
faste, (121)

His eyen to the grounde adoun he caste,
And in the sonde, as he beheld adoun,
He seigh the steppes brode of a leoun,

And in his herte he sodeinly agroos, 830
And pale he wex, therwith his heer
aroos,

And neer he com, and fond the wimpel
torn.

'Allas !' quod he, 'the day that I was
born !

This o night wol us lovers bothe slee !
How sholde I axen mercy of Tisbe 835
Whan I am he that have yow slain, alas !
My bidding hath yow slain, as in this
cas. (132)

Allas ! to bidde a woman goon by nighte
In place ther as peril fallen mighte,

And I so slow ! alas, I ne hadde be 840
Here in this place a furlong-wey or ye !

Now what leoun that be in this foreste,
My body mote he trenden, or what beste
That wilde is, gnawen mote he now myn
herte !'

And with that worde he to the wimpel
sterte, (140) 845

And kiste hit ofte, and weep on hit ful
sore,

And seide, 'wimpel, alas ! ther nis no
more

But thou shalt fele as wel the blood
of me

As thou hast felt the bleding of Tisbe !'
And with that worde he smoot him to the
herte. 850

The blood out of the wounde as brode
sterte

As water, whan the conduit broken is.

Now Tisbe, which that wiste nat of
this,

But sitting in her drede, she thoghte thus,
'If hit so falle that my Piramus 855

Be comen hider, and may me nat y-finde,
He may me holden fals and eek unkinde.'

And out she comth, and after him gan
espyen (153)

Bothe with her herte and with her yēn,
And thoghte, 'I wol him tellen of my
drede 860

Bothe of the leonesse and al my dede.'
And at the laste her love than hath she

founde
Beting with his heles on the grounde,

Al bloody, and therwith-al a-bak she sterte.
And lyke the wayes quappe gan her

herte, *that repeated* 865
And pale as box she wex, and in a throwe

Avysed her, and gan him wel to knowe,
That hit was Piramus, her herte dere.

Who coude wryte whiche a deedly chere
Hath Tisbe now, and how her heer she
rente, 870

And how she gan her-selve to turmente,
And how she lyth and swowneth on the

grounde,
And how she weep of teres ful his wounde,

How medeleth she his blood with her
compleynte,

And with his blood her-selven gan she
peynte ; (170) 875

How clippeth she the dede cors, alas !

How doth this woful Tisbe in this cas !

How kisseth she his frosty mouth so cold !
'Who hath doon this, and who hath

been so bold 879
To sleen my leef ? O spek, my Piramus !

I am thy Tisbe, that thee calleth thus !'

And therwith-al she lifteth up his heed.
 This woful man, that was nat fully
 deed,
 Whan that he herde the name of Tisbe
 cryen,
 On her he caste his hevy deedly yēn 885
 And down again, and yeldeth up the
 gost. (181)
 Tisbe rist up, withouten noise or host,
 And seigh her wimpel and his empty
 shetha,
 And eek his sward, that him hath doon
 to deeth;
 Than spak she thus: 'My woful hand,'
 quod she, 890
 'Is strong y-nogh in swiche a werk to
 me;
 For love shal yive me strengthe and
 hardinesse
 To make my wounde large y-nogh, I gesse.
 I wol thee folwen deed, and I wol be
 felawe and cause eek of thy deeth,' quod
 she. (190) 895
 'And though that nothing save the deeth
 only
 Mighte thee fro me departe trewely,
 Thou shalt no more departe now fro
 me
 Than fro the deeth, for I wol go with
 thee!

'And now, ye wretched jelous fadres
 ours, 900
 We, that weren whylom children youre,
 We prayen yow, withouten more envye,
 That in o grave y-fere we moten lye,
 Sin love hath brought us to this pitous
 ende! (199)
 And rightwis god to every lover sende, 905
 That loveth trewely, more prosperitee
 Than ever hadde Piramus and Tisbe!
 And let no gentil woman her assure
 To putten her in swiche an aventure,
 But god forbode but a woman can 910
 Been as trewe and loving as a man!
 And, for my part, I shal anon it kythe!'
 And, with that worde, his sward she took
 as swythe,
 That warm was of her loves blood and
 hoot, (209)
 And to the herteshe her-selven smoot. 915
 And thus ar Tisbe and Piramus ago.
 Of trewe men I finde but fewe mo
 In alle my bokes, save this Piramus,
 And therfor have I spoken of him thus.
 For hit is deyntee to us men to finde 920 *rare*
 A man that can in love be trewe and
 kinde.
 Heer may ye seen, what lover so he be,
 A woman dar and can as wel as he.
Explicit legenda Tisbe.

III. THE LEGEND OF DIDO, QUEEN OF CARTHAGE.

*Incipit Legenda Didonis Martiris,
 Cartaginie regine.*

Glowr and honour, Virgil Mantuan,
 Be to thy name! and I shal, as I can, 925
 Folow thy lantern, as thou gost biforn,
 How Eneas to Dido was forsworn.
 In thyn Eneid and Naso wol I take *outline*
 The tenour, and the grete effectes
 make.
 Whan Troye broght was to destruc-
 cioun 930
 By Grekes sleighte, and namely by
 Sincoun,
 Feyning the hors y-offred to Minerve,
 Through which that many a Trojan
 moste starve; (10)

And Ector had, after his deeth, appered,
 And fyr so wood, it mighte nat be
 stered, 935
 In al the noble tour of Ilioun,
 That of the citee was the cheef dungeoun;
 And al the contree was so lowe y-broght,
 And Priamus the king fordoon and *shin*
 noght;
 And Eneas was charged by Venus 940
 To fleen away, he took Ascanius,
 That was his sone, in his right hand, and
 fledde;
 And on his bakke he bar and with him
 ledde (20)
 His olde fader, cleped Anchises,
 And by the weye his wyf Creusa he
 lea. 945

And mochel sorwe hadde he in his minde
Er that he coude his felawshippe finde.
But, at the laste, whan he had hem
founde, 948

He made him redy in a certein stonde,
And to the see ful faste he gan him hye,
And sailoth forth with al his companye
Toward Itaile, as wolde destinee.
But of his aventures in the see (30)
Nis nat to purpos for to speke of here,
For hit acordeth nat to my matere. 955
But, as I seide, of him and of Dido
Shal be my tale, til that I have do.

So longe he sailed in the salte see
Til in Libye unnethe aryved he,
With shippes seven and with no more
navye; 960

And glad was he to londe for to hye,
So was he with the tempest al to-shake.
And whan that he the haven had y-
take, (40)

He had a knight, was called Achates; 964
And him of al his felawshippe he chees
To goon with him, the contre for tespye;
He took with him no more companye.
But forth they goon, and lafte his shippes
ryde,

His fere and he, with-uten any gyde. 969
So longe he walketh in this wildernessse
Til, at the laste, he mette an hunteresse.
A bowe in honde and arwes hadde she,
Her clothes cutted were unto the knee; (50)
But she was yit the fairest creature
That ever was y-formed by nature; 975
And Eneas and Achates she grette,
And thus she to hem spak, whan she hem
mette.

'Sawe ye,' quod she, 'as ye han walked
wyde,

Any of my sustren walke yow besyde,
With any wilde boor or other beste 980
That they han hunted to, in this foreste,
Y-tukked up, with arwes in her cas?' (59)

'Nay, soothly, lady,' quod this Eneas;
'But, by thy beaute, as hit thinketh me,
Thou mightest never erthely womman be,
But Phebus suster artow, as I gesse. 986
And, if so be that thou be a goddesse,
Have mercy on our labour and our wo.'

'I nam no goddes, soothly,' quod she
tho;

'For maidens walken in this contree here,
With arwes and with bowe, in this
manere. 991

This is the regne of Libie, ther ye been,
Of which that Dido lady is and queen'—
And shortlytolde him al the occasioun (71)
Why Dido com into that region, 995
Of which as now me lusteth nat to ryme;
Hit nedeth nat; hit nere but los of tyme.
For this is al and som, it was Venus,
His owne moder, that spak with him thus;
And to Cartage she bad he sholde him
dighte, 1000

And vanished anon out of his sighte.
I coude folwe, word for word, Virgyle,
But it wolde lasten al to longe a whyle. (80)

This noble queen, that cleped was Dido,
That whylom was the wyf of Sitheo, 1005
That fairer was then is the brighte sonne,
This noble toun of Cartage hath begonne;
In which she regneth in so greet honour,
That she was holde of alle quenes flour,
Of gentillesse, of freedom, of beautee; 1010
That wel was him that mighte her ones
see;

Of kinges and of lordes so desyred, (89)
That al the world her beaute hadde y-
fyred;

She stood so wel in every wightes grace.

Whan Eneas was come un-to that
place, 1015

Unto the maister-temple of al the toun
Ther Dido was in her devocioun,
Ful prively his wey than hath he nome.

Whan he was in the large temple come,
I can nat seyn if that hit be possible, 1020
But Venus hadde him maked invisible—
Thus seith the book, with-uten any lees.

And whan this Eneas and Achates (100)
Hadden in this temple been over-al,

Than founde they, depeynted on a wal,
How Troye and al the lond destroyed was.

'Allas! that I was born,' quod Eneas, 1027
'Through-out the world our shame is kid

so wyde, *made known*
Now it is peynted upon every syde!

We, that weren in prosperitee, 1030
Be now dislaundred, and in swich degree,

No lenger for to liven I ne kepe!' *well*
And, with that worde, he brast out for to
wepe (110)

So tendrely, that routh hit was to
sene.

This fresshe lady, of the citee quene, 1035
Stood in the temple, in her estat royal,
So richely, and eek so fair with-al,
So yong, so lusty, with her eyen glade,
That, if that god, that heven and erthe
made,
Wolde han a love, for beaute and good-
nesse, 1040
And womanhod, and trouthe, and seemli-
nesse,
Whom sholde he loven but this lady
swete?

There nis no womman to him half so
meta. (120)

Fortune, that hath the world in govern-
aunce,
Hath sodeinly broght in so newe a
chaunce, 1045
That never was ther yit so fremd a cas.
For al the companye of Eneas,
Which that he wende han loren in the
see,

Aryved is, nat fer fro that citee;
For which, the grettest of his lordes some
By aventure ben to the citee come, 1051
Unto that same temple, for to seke
The quene, and of her socour her beseke;
Swich renoun was ther spronge of her
goodnesse. (131)

And, whan they hadden told al hir dis-
tresse, 1055
And al hir tempest and hir harde cas,
Unto the quene appered Eneas,
And openly beknew that hit was he.
Who hadde joye than but his meynee,
That hadden founde hir lord, hir gover-
nour? 1060

The quene saw they dide him swich
honour,
And had herd ofte of Eneas, er tho,
And in her herte she hadde routh and
wo (140)

That ever swich a noble man as he
Shal been disherited in swich degree; 1065
And saw the man, that he was lyk a
knight,

And suffisaunt of persone and of might,
And lyk to been a veray gentil man;
And wel his wordes he besette can,

And had a noble visage for the nones, 1070
And formed wel of braunes and of bones.
For, after Venus, hadde he swich fair-
nesse,

That no man might be half so fair, I
gesso. (150)

And wel a lord he semed for to be.
And, for he was a straunger, somewhat
she 1075

Lyked him the bet, as, god do bote,
To som folk ofte newe thing is swote.
Anoon her herte hath pitee of his wo,
And, with that pitee, love com in also;
And thus, for pitee and for gentillesse, 1080
Refresshed moste he been of his distresse.
She seide, certes, that she sory was
That he hath had swich peril and swich
cas; (160)

And, in her frendly speche, in this manere
She to him spak, and seide as ye may
here. 1085

'Be ye nat Venus sone and Anchises?
In good feith, al the worship and encrees
That I may goodly doon yow, ye shul
have.

Your shippes and your meynee shal I
save;'

And many a gentil word she spak him to;
And comaunded her messageres go 1091
The same day, with-outen any faile,
His shippes for to seke, and hem vitaille.
She many a beste to the shippes sente, (171)
And with the wyn she gan hem to pre-
sente; 1095

And to her royal paleys she her spedde,
And Eneas alwey with her she ledde.
What nedeth yow the feste to descryve?
He never beter at ese was his lyve.
Ful was the feste of deyntees and rich-
esse, 1100

Of instruments, of song, and of gladnesse,
And many an amorous loking and devys.
This Eneas is come to Paradys (180)
Out of the swolow of helle, and thus in
joye 1104

Remembreth him of his estat in Troye.
To dauncing-chambres ful of parements,
Of riche beddes, and of ornaments,
This Eneas is lad, after the mete.
And with the quene whan that he had
sete,

And spyces parted, and the wyn agoon,
Unto his chambres was he lad anoon 1111
To take his ese and for to have his reste,
With al his folk, to doon what so hem
leste. (190)

Ther nas coursere wel y-brydled noon,
Ne stede, for the justing wel to goon, 1115
Ne large palfrey, esy for the nones,
Ne juwel, fretted ful of riche stones,
Ne sakkes ful of gold, of large wighte,
Ne ruby noon, that shynede by nighte,
Ne gentil hautein faucon heronere, 1120
Ne hound, for hert or wilde boor or
dore,

Ne coupe of gold, with florins newe y-bete,
That in the lond of Libie may be gete,
That Dido ne hath hit Eneas y-sent; (201)
And al is payed, what that he hath spent.
Thus can this noble quene her gestes
calle, 1126

As she that can in freedom passen alle.
Eneas sothly eek, with-outen lees,
Hath sent un-to his shippe, by Achates,
After his sone, and after riche thinges,
Both ceptre, clothes, broches, and eek
ringes, 1131
Som for to were, and som for to presente
To her, that all these noblo thinges him
sente; (210)
And bad his sone, how that he sholde
make

The presenting, and to the quene hit
take. 1135

Repaired is this Achates again,
And Eneas ful blisful is and fain
To seen his yonge sone Ascanius.
But natheles, our antour telleth us,
That Cupido, that is the god of love, 1140
At preyere of his moder, hye above,
Hadde the lyknes of the child y-take,
This noble quene enamoured to make (220)
On Eneas; but, as of that scripture,
Be as be may, I make of hit no cure. 1145
But sooth is this, the quene hath mad
swich chere

Un-to this child, that wonder is to here;
And of the present that his fader sente
She thanked him ful ofte, in good entente.

Thus is this quene in plesaunce and in
joye, 1150
With al this newe lusty folk of Troye.

And of the dedes hath she more en-
quered
Of Eneas, and al the story lered (230)
Of Troye; and al the longe day they
tweye

Entendeden to speken and to pleye; 1155
Of which ther gan to bredden swich a fyr,
That sely Dido hath now swich desyr
With Eneas, her newe gest, to dele,
That she hath lost her hewe, and eek her
hele.

Now to th'effect, now to the fruit of al, 1160
Why I have told this story, and tellen
shal.

Thus I beginne; hit fil, upon a night,
When that the mone up-reysed had her
light, (240)

This noble quene un-to her reste wente;
She syketh sore, and gan her-self tur-
mente. 1165

She waketh, walweth, maketh many a
brayd,

As doon thise loveres, as I have herd sayd.
And at the laste, unto her suster Anne
She made her moon, and right thus spak
she thanne.

'Now, dere suster myn, what may hit
be 1170

That me agasteth in my dreame?' quod
she.

'This ilke Troyan is so in my thoght,
For that me thinketh he is so wel
y-wroght, (250)

And eek so lykly for to be a man,
And therwithal so mikel good he can, 1175
That al my love and lyf lyth in his cure.
Have ye not herd him telle his aventure?
Now certes, Anne, if that ye rede hit me,
I wolde fain to him y-wedded be; 1179
This is th'effect; what sholde I more seye?
In him lyth al, to do me live or deye.'

Her suster Anne, as she that coude her
good,

Seide as her thoughte, and somdel hit
with-stood. (260)

But her-of was so long a sermoning,
Hit were to long to make rehersing; 1185
But fynally, hit may not been with-
stonde;

Love wol love—for no wight wol hit
wonde.

The dawening up-rist out of the see ;
This amorous quene chargeth her meynec
The nettes dresse, and speres brode and
kene ; 1190

An hunting wol this lusty fresshe quene ;
So priketh her this newe joly wo.
To hors is al her lusty folk y-go ; (270)
Un-to the court the houndes been y-brought,
And up-on coursers, swift as any thocht,
Her yonge knightes hoven al aboute, 1196
And of her wommen eek an huge route.
Up-on a thikke palfrey, paper-whyte,
With sadel rede, enbrouded with delyt,
Of gold the barres up-enbossed hye, 1200
Sit Dido, al in gold and perre wrye ;
And she is fair, as is the brighte morwe,
That helethe seke folk of nightes sorwe. (280)

Up-on a courser, startlyng as the fyr,
Men mighte turne him with a litel wyf, 1206
Sit Eneas, lyk Phebus to devyse ;
So was he fresshe arrayed in his wyse.
The fomy brydel with the bit of gold
Governeth he, right as him-self hath
wold.

And forth this noble quene thus lat I
ryde 1210

An hunting, with this Troyan by her syde.
The herd of hertes founden is anon,
With 'hey ! go bet ! prik thou ! lat goon,
lat goon ! (290)

Why nil the leoun comen or the bere,
That I mighte ones mete him with this
spere ? ' 1215

Thus seyn thise yonge folk, and up they
kille

These þ hertes wilde, and han hem at hir
wille.

Among al this to-romblen gan the
heven,

The thunder rored with a grisly steven ;
Doun com the rain, with hail and sleet
so faste, 1220

With hevenes fyr, that hit so sore agaste
This noble quene, and also her meynec,
That ech of hem was glad a-wey to flee. (300)

And shortly, fro the tempest her to save,
She fledde her-self into a litel cave, 1225

And with her wente this Eneas al-so ;
I noot, with hem if ther wente any mo ;

The antour maketh of hit no mencion.
And heer began the depe affeccion

Betwix hem two ; this was the firste
morwe 1230

Of her gladnesse, and ginning of her
sorwe.

For ther hath Eneas y-kneled so, (309)
And told her al his herte, and al his wo,

And sworn so depe, to her to be trewe,
For wele or wo, and chaunge for no
newe, 1235

And as a fals lover so wel can pleyne,
That sely Dido rewed on his peyne,

And took him for husband, þ to been his
wyf

For ever-mo, whyl that hem laste lyf.
And after this, whan that the tempest
stente, 1240

With mirth out as they comen, hoom
they wente.

The wikked fame up roos, and that
anon, (319)

How Eneas hath with the quene y-gon
In-to the cave ; and demed as hem liste ;

And whan the king, that Yarbass hight,
hit wiste, 1245

As he that had her loved ever his lyf,
And wowed her, to have her to his wyf,

Swich sorwe as he hath maked, and swich
chere,

Hit is a routhe and pitee for to here.
But, as in love, al-day hit happeth so, 1250

That oon shal laughen at anothers wo ;
Now laugheth Eneas, and is in joye

And more richesse than ever he was in
Troye. (330)

O sely womman, ful of innocence, 1254
Ful of pitee, of trouthe, and conscience,

What maked yow to men to trusten so ?
Have ye swich routhe upon hir feined wo,

And han swich olde ensamples yow
beforn ?

See ye nat alle, how they been for-sworn ?
Wher see ye oon, that he ne hath laft his
leef, 1260

Or been unkinde, or doon hir som mis-
cheef,

Or pillid her, or bosted of his dede ? (339)
Ye may as wel hit seen, as ye may rede ;

Tak heed now of this grete gentil-man,
This Troyan, that so wel her plesen can,

That feineth him so trewe and obeising,
So gentil and so privy of his doing, 1267

And can so wel doon alle his obeisaunces,
 And waiten her at festes and at daunces,
 And when she goth to temple and hoom
 ageyn, 1270
 And fasten til he hath his lady seyn,
 And bere in his devyses, for her sake,
 Noot I nat what; and songes wolde he
 make, (350)
 Justen, and doon of armes many thinges,
 Sende her lettres, tokens, broches, ringes—
 Now herkneth, how he shal his lady
 serve! 1276
 Ther-as he was in peril for to sterve
 For hunger, and for mischeef in the
 see,
 And desolat, and fled from his contree,
 And al his folk with tempest al to-driven,
 She hath her body and eek her reame
 yiven 1281
 In-to his hond, ther-as she mighte have
 been
 Of other lond than of Cartage a queen,
 And lived in joye y-nogh; what wolde ye
 more? (361)
 This Eneas, that hath so depe y-swore,
 Is wery of his craft with-in a throwe; 1286
 The hote earnest is al over-blowe.
 And prively he doth his shippes dighte,
 And shapeth him to stele a-way by nighte.
 This Dido hath suspencion of this, 1290
 And thoughte wel, that hit was al a-mis;
 For in his bedde he lyth a-night and
 syketh;
 She asketh him anon, what him mis-
 lyketh— (370)
 'My dere herte, which that I love most?'
 'Certes,' quod he, 'this night my fadres
 gost 1295
 Hath in my sleep so sore me tormented,
 And eek Mercurie his message hath pre-
 sented,
 That nedes to the conquest of Itaile
 My destinee is sone for to saile;
 For which, me thinketh, brosten is myn
 herte!' 1300
 Ther-with his false teres out they sterte;
 And taketh her with-in his armes two.
 'Is that in earnest,' quod she; 'wil ye
 so? (380)
 Have ye nat sworn to wyve me to take,
 Alas! what womman wil ye of me make?

I am a gentil-woman and a queen, 1306
 Ye wil nat fro your wyf thus foule fleen?
 That I was born! alas! what shal I do?'
 To telle in short, this noble queen Dido,
 She seketh halwes, and doth sacrifise;
 She kneleth, cryeth, that routhe is to
 devyse; 1311
 Conjureth him, and profreth him to be
 His thral, his servant in the leste gree;
 She falleth him to fote, and swowneth
 there (391)
 Dischevele, with her brighte gilte here,
 And seith, 'have mercy! let me with
 yow ryde! 1316
 These lordes, which that wonen me besyde
 Wil me destroyen only for your sake.
 And, so ye wil me now to wyve take,
 As ye han sworn, than wol I yive yow
 leve 1320
 To sleen me with your sword now sone at
 eve!
 For than yit shal I dyen as your wyf.
 I am with childe, and yive my child his
 lyf. (400)
 Mercy, lord! have pite in your thought!
 But al this thing availeth her right noght;
 For on a night, slepinge, he let her lye,
 And stal a-way un-to his compagne, 1327
 And, as a traitour, forth he gan to saile
 Toward the large contree of Itaile.
 Thus hath he laft Dido in wo and pyne;
 And wedded ther a lady hight Lavyne.
 A cloth he lafte, and eek his sword
 standing, (409) 1332
 Whan he fro Dido stal in her sleping,
 Right at her beddes heed, so gan he hye
 Whan that he stal a-way to his navye;
 Which cloth, whan sely Dido gan awake,
 She hath hit kist ful ofte for his sake;
 And seide, 'O cloth, whyl Jupiter hit
 leste,
 Tak now my soule, unbind me of this
 unreste! 1339
 I have fulfild of fortune al the cours.'
 And thus, alas! with-uten his socours,
 Twentytyme y-swowned hath she thanne.
 And, whan that she un-to her suster
 Anne (420)
 Compleyned had, of which I may nat
 wryte— 1344
 So greet a routhe I have hit for t'endyte—

And bad her norice and her suster goon
To fecchen fyr and other thing anon,
And seide, that she wolde sacrifys.
And, whan she mighte her tyme wel
espye,
Up-on the fyr of sacrifys she starte, 1391
And with his sword she roof her to the
herte.
But, as myn antour seith, right thus
she seyde; (429)
Or she was hurt, before that she deyde,
She wroot a lattu anon, that thus be-
gan :—
'Right so,' quod she, 'as that the whyte
swan 1355
Ayeins his deeth beginneth for to singe,
Right so to yow make I my compleyninge.

Nat that I trowe to geten yow again,
For wel I woot that it is al in vain,
Sin that the goddes been contraire to me,
But sin my name is lost through yow.'
quod she, 1361
'I may wel lese a word on yow, or letter,
Al-be-it that I shal be never the better,
For thilke wind that blew your ship
a-wey, (441)
The same wind hath blowe a-wey your
fey.'— 1365
But who wol al this letter have in
minde,
Rede Ovide, and in him he shal hit finde.

*Explicit Legenda Didonis Martiris,
Cartagine regine.*

IV. THE LEGEND OF HYPsipYLE AND MEDEA.

*Incipit Legenda Isiphille et Medee,
Martirum.*

PART I. THE LEGEND OF HYPsipYLE.

Thou rote of false lovers, duk Jason!
Thou sly devourer and confusoun
Of gentil-wommen, tender creatures, 1370
Thou madest thy reclaming and thy
lures *entremette*
To ladies of thy statly apparaunce,
And of thy wordes, farced with plesaunce,
And of thy feyned trouthe and thy
manere,
With thyn obeisaunce and thy humble
chere, (8) 1375
And with thy counterfeted payne and wo.
Ther other falsen con, thou falsest two!
O! ofte swore thou that thou woldest dye
For love, whan thou ne foltest maladye
Save foul delyt, which that thou callest
love! 1380
If that I live, thy name shal be shove
In English, that thy sleighte shal be
knows!
Have at thee, Jason! now thyn horn is
blow!
But certes, hit is bothe routhe and wo
That love with false loveres werketh so;

For they shul have wel better love and
chere 1396
Than he that hath aboght his love sul-
dern, (20)
Or had in armes many a bloody box.
For ever as tendre a capoun et the fox.
Though he be fals and hath the foul be-
trayed, 1401
As shal the good-man that ther-for hath
payed;
Al have he to the capoun skille and
right,
The false fox wol have his part at night.
On Jason this ensample is wel y-sene
By Isiphile and Medea the quene. 1405
In Tessalye, as Guido telleth us,
Ther was a king that highte Pellens, (21)
That had a brother, which that highte
Eson;
And, whan for age he mighte unnethes
gon,
He yaf to Pellens the governing 1410
Of al his regne, and made him lord and
king.
Of which Eson this Jason gotten was,
That, in his tyme, in al that lond, ther nas
Nat swich a famous knight of gentilesse,
Of freedom, and of strengthe and lusti-
nesse. 1405

After his fader deeth, he bar him so (39)
 That ther nas noon that liste been his fo,
 But dide him al honour and companye ;
 Of which this Pelleus hath greet envye,
 Imagining that Jasoun mighte be 1410
 Enhaunsed so, and put in swich degree
 With love of lordes of his regioun,
 That from his regne he may be put adoun.
 And in his wit, a-night, compassed he
 How Jasoun mighte best destroyed be 1415
 Withoute slaunder of his compasment.
 And at the laste he took avisement (50)
 To senden him in-to som for contree
 Ther as this Jasoun may destroyed be.
 This was his wit ; al made he to Jasoun
 Gret chere of love and of affeccoun, 1421
 For drede lest his lordes hit espyde.
 So fil hit so, as fame renneth wyde,
 Ther was swich tyding over-al and swich
 los, 1422
 That in an yle that called was Colcos, 1425
 Beyonde Troye, estward in the see,
 That ther-in was a ram, that men mighte
 see, (60)
 That had a flees of gold, that shoon so
 brighte,
 That no-wher was ther swich an-other
 sighte ; 1429
 But hit was kept alway with a dragoun,
 And many othere merveils, up and doun,
 And with two boles, maked al of bras,
 That spitten fyr, and moche thing ther
 was.
 But this was eek the tale, nathelees,
 That who-so wolde winne thilke flees, 1435
 He moste bothe, or he hit winne mighte,
 With the boles and the dragoun fighte ;
 And king Oëtes lord was of that yle. (71)
 This Pelleus bethoghte upon this wyle ;
 That he his nevew Jasoun wolde enhorte
 To sailen to that lond, him to disporte,
 And seide, ' Nevew, if hit mighte be
 That swich a worship mighte fallen thee,
 That thou this famous tresor mightest
 winne, 1444
 And bringen hit my regioun with-inne,
 Hit were to me gret plesaunce and honour ;
 Than were I holde to quyte thy labour. (80)
 And al the cost I wol my-selven make ;
 And chees what folk that thou wilt with
 thee take ; 1449

Lat see now, darstow taken this viage ?
 Jasoun was yong, and lusty of corage,
 And under-took to doon this ilke em-
 pryse.

Anoon Argus his shippes gan devyse ;
 With Jasoun wente the stronge Ercules,
 And many an-other that he with him
 chees. 1455

But who-so axeth who is with him gon,
 Lat him go reden Argonauticon, (90)
 For he wol telle a tale long y-now.
 Philotetes anoon the sail up-drow,
 Whan that the wind was good, and gan
 him hye 1460

Out of his contree called Tessalye.
 So long he sailed in the salte see
 Til in the yle † Lemnoun aryved he—
 Al be this nat rehersed of Guido,
 Yet seith Ovyde in his Epistles so— 1465
 And of this yle lady was and quene
 The faire yonge Isiphilee, the shene, (100)
 That whylom Thoas doghter was, the
 king.

Isiphilee was goon in her playing ; 1460
 And, roming on the clyves by the see,
 Under a banke anoon espyed she
 Wher that the ship of Jasoun gan aryve.
 Of her goodnesse adoun she sendeth blyve
 To witen yif that any straunge wight 1474
 With tempest thider were y-blowe a-night,
 To doon him socour ; as was her usaunce
 To forthren every wight, and doon ple-
 saunce (110)

Of veray bountee and of curtesye.

This messagere adoun him gan to hye,
 And fond Jasoun, and Ercules also, 1480
 That in a cogge to londe were y-go *enough*
 Hem to refresshen and to take the eyr.
 The morwening atempre was and fair ;
 And in his wey the messagere hem mette.
 Ful cunningly thise lordes two he grette,
 And dide his message, axing hem anoon
 Yif they were broken, or oght wo begoon,
 Or hadde nede of lodesmen or vitaile ; (121)
 For of socour they shulde no-thing faile,
 For hit was utterly the quenes wille. 1490

Jasoun answerde, mekely and stille,
 ' My lady,' quod he, ' thanke I hertely
 Of hir goodnesse ; us nedeth, trewely,
 No-thing as now, but that we wery be,
 And come for to pleye, out of the see, 1495

Til that the wind be better in our weye.

This lady rometh by the clif to pleye, (130)
With her meynne, endelong the stronde,
And fynt this Jasoun and this other
stonde, 1499

In spekinge of this thing, as I yow tolde.
This Ercules and Jasoun gan beholde
How that the quene hit was, and faire
her grette

Anon-right as they with this lady mette;
And she took heed, and knew, by hir
manere,

By hir aray, by wordes and by chere, 1505
That hit were gentil-men, of greet degree.
And to the castel with her ledeth she
Thise straunge folk, and doth hem greet
honour, (141)

And axeth hem of travail and labour
That they han suffred in the salte see; 1510
So that, within a day, or two, or three,
She knew, by folk that in his shippes be,

That hit was Jasoun, ful of rancour, 1515
And Ercules, that had the grette los.
That soghten the aventures of Colcos;
And dide hem honour more then before,
And with hem daled ever longer the
more, (150)

For they ben worthy folk, with-outen lees.
And namely, most she spak with Ercules,
To him her herte bar, he sholde be 1520
Sad, wys, and trewe, of wordes avise,
With-outen any other affeccioun
Of love, or evil imaginacioun.

This Ercules hath so this Jasoun preyed,
That to the sonne he hath him up
areysed, 1525

That half so trewe a man ther nas of love
Under the cope of heven that is above,
And he was wys, hardy, secree, and
riche.— (161)

Of thise three pointes ther nas noon him
liche;

Of freedom passed he, and lustihede, 1530
Alle tho that liven or ben dede;

Ther-to so greet a gentil-man was he,
And of Tessalie lykly king to be.

Ther nas no lak, but that he was agast
To love, and for to speke shamefast. 1535
He hadde lever him-self to mordre, and
dye (169)

Than that menshulde a lover him espye:—

'As wolde almighty god that I had yive
My blood and flesh, so that I mighte live,
With the nones that he hadde o-
ther a wyf on the conditioun

For his estat; for swich a lusty lyf
She sholde lede with this lusty knight!'

And al this was compassed on the
night

Betwixe him Jasoun and this Ercules, 1540
Of thise two heer was mad a shrewed lees
To come to hous upon an innocent;
For to be-dote this quene was hir assent.

And Jasoun is as coy as is a maide, (181)
He loketh pitously, but noght he saide,
But frely yaf he to her conseillesses 1550
Yiftes grete, and to her officeres.

As wolde god I leiser hadde, and tyme,
By proces al his wowing for to ryme.
But in this hous if any fals lover be,
Right as him-self now doth, right so dide
he, 1555

With feyning and with every sotil dede.
Ye gete no more of me, but ye wil rede
Th'original, that telleth al the cas. (191)

The somme is this, that Jasoun wedded
was

Unto this quene, and took of her sub-
staunce 1560

Wher-so him liste, unto his purveyaunce;
And upon her begat he children two,
And drow his sail, and saw her never-mo.

A lettre sente she to him certain,
Which were to long to wryten and to
sein, 1565

And him repreveth of his grete untrouthe,
And preyeth him on her to have som
routhe. (200)

And of his children two, she seide him
this,

That they be lyke, of alle thing, y-wis,
To Jasoun, save they coude nat begyle;
And preyed god, or hit were longe whyle,
That she, that had his herte y-raft her fro,

Moste finden him to her untrewe al-so,
And that she moste bothe her children
spille, 1574

And alle tho that suffreth him his wille.
And trow to Jasoun was she al her lyf,

And ever kepte her chast, as for his wyf,
Ne never had she joye at her herte, (211)

But dyed, for his love, of sorwes smerte.

*picked
a very
happy*

PART II. THE LEGEND OF MEDEA.

lines
To Colcos comen is this duk Jasoun,
That is of love devourer and dragoun. 1581
As matere ~~appetyt~~ forme al-vey,
And from forme in-to forme hit passen
may,

Or as a welle that were botomlees,
Right so can fals Jasoun have no pees.
For, to desyren, through his appetyt, 1586
To doon with gentil wommen his delyt,
This is his lust and his felicitee. (221)

Jasoun is romed forth to the citee,
That whylom cleped was Jaconitos, 1590
That was the maister-toun of al Colcos,
And hath y-told the cause of his coming
Un-to Oëtes, of that contre king,
Preying him that he moste doon his
assay 1594

To gete the flees of gold, if that he may;
Of which the king assenteth to his bone,
And doth him honour, as hit is to done,
So ferforth, that his doghter and his eyr,
Medea, which that was so wys and fair
That fairer saw ther never man with yë,
He made her doon to Jasoun companye
At mete, and sitte by him in the halle.

Now was Jasoun a semely man with-
alle, (236)
And lyk a lord, and had a greet renoun,
And of his loke as real as leoun, 1605
And goodly of his speche, and famulore,
And coude of love al craft and art plener
With-oute boke, with everich observaunce.
And, as fortune her oghte a foul mes-
chaunce,

*with
all*
She wex enamoured upon this man. 1610
'Jasoun,' quod she, 'for ought I see or
can,

As of this thing the which ye been aboute,
Ye han your-self y-put in moche doute.
For, who-so wol this aventure achieve,
He may nat wel asterten, as I leve, 1615
With-uten deeth, but I his helpe be. (249)
But natheles, hit is my wille,' quod she,
'To forthren yow, so that ye shal nat dye,
But turnen, sound, hoom to your Tessalye.'

'My righte lady,' quod this Jasoun tho,
'That ye han of my dothe or of my wo
Any reward, and doon me this honour,
I wot wel that my might ne my labour

May nat deserve hit in my lyves day; 1624
God thanke yow, ther I ne can ne may.
Your man am I, and lowly you beseche,
To been my help, with-oute more speche;
But certes, for my deeth shal I nat
spare.'

from beginning
Tho gan this Medea to him declare
The peril of this cas, fro point to point,
And of his batail, and in what disjoint *per*
He mote stande, of which no creature,
Save only she, ne mighte his lyf assure.
And shortly, to the point right for to go,
They been accorded ful, betwix hem two.
That Jasoun shal her wedde, as trewe
knight; 1636

And term y-set, to come sone at night (271)
Unto her chambre, and make ther his
ooth,
Upon the goddes, that he, for leef ne
looth, *medea* 1639
Ne sholde her never fallen, night ne day.
To been her husbond, whyl he liven may.
As she that from his deeth him saved
here.

And her-upon, at night they mette y-ferre,
And doth his ooth, and goth with her to
bedde. 1644

And on the morwe, upward he him spedde:
For she hath taught him how he shal
nat faile (279)
The flees to winne, and stinten his bataile;
And saved him his lyf and his honour;
And gat him greet name as a conquerour
Right through the sleight of her en-
chantement. 1650

Now hath Jasoun the flees, and hoom *she*
is went
With Medea, and tresor ful gret woon.
But unwist of her fader is she goon
To Tessaly, with duk Jasoun her leef,
That afterward hath brought her to mes-
cheef. 1655

For as a traitour he is from her go,
And with her laite his yonge children
two, (290)
And falsly hath betrayed her, alas!
And ever in love a cheef traitour he was:
And wedded yit the thriddle wyf anon, 1660
That was the doghter of the king Creon.

This is the meed of loving and guerdoun
That Medea received of Jasoun

recompense

Right for her trouthe and for her kinde-
ness,
That loved him better than her-self, I
gesse, 1665
And lafte her fader and her heritage.
And of Jason this is the vassalage, (300)
That, in his dayes, nas ther noon y-founde
So fals a lover going on the grounde.
And therfor in her lettre thus she
seyde 1670
First, whan she of his falsnesse him um-
brayde, *reparched*
'Why lyked me thy yelow heer to see
More then the boundes of myn honestee,

Why lyked me thy youthe and thy fair-
nesse,
And of thy tonge the infinit gracious-
nesse? 1675
O, haddest thou in thy conquest deed
y-be,
Ful mikel untrouthe had ther dyed with
thee!' (310)
Wol can Ovyde her lettre in vers endyte,
Which were as now to long for me to
wryte.

*Explicit Legenda Ysophile et Medee,
Martirum.*

V. THE LEGEND OF LUCRETIA.

Incipit Legenda Lucretie Rome, Martiris.

Now moot I seyn the exiling of kinges
Of Rome, for hir horrible doinges, 1681
And of the laste king Tarquinius,
As saith Ovyde and Titus Livius.
But for that cause telle I nat this storie,
But for to preise and drawen to memorie
The verray wyf, the verray trewe Lucrese,
That, for her wyfhood and her stedfast-
nesse, 1687
Nat only that thise payens her comende,
But ha, that cleped is in our legende (10)
The grete Austin, hath greet compas-
sion 1690
Of this Lucrese, that starf at Rome toun;
And in what wyse, I wol but shortly trete,
And of this thing I touche but the grete.

Whan Ardea beseged was aboute
With Romans, that ful sterne were and
skute, 1695
Ful longe lay the sege, and litel wroghte,
So that they were half ydel, as hem
thoghte; (18)

And in his pley Tarquinius the yonge
Gan for to jape, for he was light of tonge,
And seyde, that 'it was an ydel lyf; 1700
No man did ther no more than his wyf;
And lat us speke of wyves, that is best;
Praise every man his owne, as him lest,
And with our speche lat us ese our herte.'

A knight, that highte Colatyne, up
sterie, 1705

And seyde thus, 'nay, for hit is no node
To trowen on the word, but on the
dede.

I have a wyf,' quod he, 'that, as I trowe,
Is holden good of alle that ever her
knowe; (30)

Go we to-night to Rome, and we shal
see.' 1710

Tarquinius answerde, 'that lyketh me.'
To Rome be they come, and faste hem
dighte

To Colatynes hous, and down they lighte,
Tarquinius, and eek this Colatyne. *over part*
The husband knew the estres wel and
fyna, 1715

And prively into the hous they goon,
Nor at the gate porter was ther noon,
And at the chambre-dore they abyde. (30)

This noble wyf sat by her beddes syde
Dischevelle, for no malice she ne thoghte.
And softe wolfe our book seith that she
wroghte 1721

To kopen her fro slouthe and ydelnesse;
And bad her servants doon hir businesse,
And axeth hem, 'what tydings heren ye?
How seith men of the sege, how shal hit
be? 1725

God wolde the walles weren falle adoun;
Myn husband is so longe out of this toun,
For which the dreed doth me so sore
smerte,

Right as a sward hit stingeth to myn
herte (31).

Whan I think on the sege or of that place;
God save my lord, I preye him for his
grace :— 1731

And ther-with-al ful tenderly she weep,
And of her werk she took no more keep,
But mekely she leet her eyen fulle;
And thilke semblant sat her wel with-allo.
And eek her teres, ful of honestee, 1736
Embelissed her wyfly chastitee;
Her countenaunce is to her herte digne,
For they acordeden in dede and signe. (60)
And with that word her husbond Colatyn,
Or she of him was war, com sterting in,
And seide, 'dreed thee noght, for I am
here!' 1742

And she anon up roos, with blisful chere,
And kiste him, as of wyves is the wone.

Tarquinius, this pronde kinges sone,
Conceived hath her beautee and her
chere, 1746

Her yelow hoer, her shap, and her manere,
Her hew, her wordes that she hath com-
pleyned,

And by no crafte her beautee nas nat
feyned; (70)

And caughte to this lady swich desyr,
That in his herte brende as any fyr 1751
So woodly, that his wit was al forgeten.
For wel, thoghte he, she sholde nat be
geten;

And ay the more that he was in dispair,
The more he coveteth and thoghte her
fair. 1755

His blinde lust was al his covetinge.

A-morwe, whan the brid began to singe,
Unto the sege he comth ful privily,
And by himself he walketh sobrelly, (80)
Th' image of her recording alwey newe;

'Thus lay her heer, and thus fresh was
her hewe; 1761

Thus sat, thus spak, thus span; this was
her chere,

Thus fair she was, and this was her
manere.'

Al this conceit his herte hath now y-take.
And, as the see, with tempest al to-shake,
That, after whan the storm is al ago, 1766
Yet wol the water quappe a day or two,
Right so, thogh that her forme wer
absent, (89)

The plesaunce of her forme was present;

But natheles, nat plesaunce, but delyt, *longi*
Or an unrightful talent with despyt; 1771
'For, maugre her, she shal my lemman
be;

Hap helpeth hardy man alday,' quod he; *cham*
'What ende that I make, hit shal be so;
And girt him with his swerde, and gan
to go; 1775

And forth he rit til he to Rome is come,
And al aloon his wey than hath he nome
Unto the house of Colatyn ful right.

Down was the sonne, and day hath lost
his light; (100)

And in he com un-to a privy halke, 1780
And in the night ful theefly gan he stalke,
Whan every night was to his reste broght,
Ne no wight had of tresoun swich a
thoght.

Were hit by window or by other gin, *entranc* 1784

With swerde y-drawe, shortly he comth in
Ther as she lay, this noble wyf Lucrese.

And, as she wook, her bed she felte presse.
'What beste is that,' quod she, 'that
weyeth thus?'

'I am the kinges sone, Tarquinius,' (110)
Quod he, 'but and thou crye, or noise
make, 1790

Or if thou any creature awake,
By thilke god that formed man on lyve.
This swerd through-out thyn herte shal
I ryve.'

And ther-withal unto her throte he sterte,
And sette the point al sharp upon her
herte. 1795

No word she spak, she hath no might
therto.

What shal she sayn? her wit is al ago.
Right as a wolf that fynt a lomb aloon.
To whom shal she compleyne, or make
moon? (120)

What! shal she fighte with an hardy
knight? 1800

Wel wot men that a woman hath no
might.

What! shal she crye, or how shal she
asterte

That hath her by the throte, with swerde
at herte?

She axeth grace, and seith al that she can.
'No wolt thou nat,' quod he, this cruel
man, 1805

'As wily Jupiter my soule save,
As I shal in the stable slee thy knave,
And leye him in thy bed, and loude crye,
That I thee finde in suche avonterye; (130)
And thus thou shalt be deed, and also
lese 1810

Thy name, for thou shalt non other chese.'
Thise Romain wyves loveden so hir
name

At thilke tyme, and dredden so the shame,
That, what for fere of slaundre and drede
of deeth, 1814

She loste bothe at-once wit and breeth,
And in a swough she lay and wex so
deed,

Men mighte smytten of her arm or heed;
She feleth no-thing, neither foul ne fair.

Tarquinius, that art a kinges eyr, (140)
And sholdest, as by linage and by right,
Doon as a lord and as a verray knight,
Why hastow doon dispyt to chivalrye?
Why hastow doon this lady vilanye?
Allas! of thee this was a vilains dede!

But now to purpos; in the story I rede,
Whan he was goon, al this mischaunce is
falle. 1826

This lady sente after her frendes alle,
Fader, moder, husband, al y-fere; (149)
And al dischovelde, with her heres clere,
In habit swich as women used the 1830
Unto the buryng of her frendes go,
She sit in halle with a sorweful sighte.
Her frendes axen what her aylen mighte,
And who was deed? And she sit ay
wepinge.

A word for shame ne may she forth out-
bringe, 1835

Ne upon hem she dorste nat beholde.
But atte laste of Tarquiny she hem tolde,
This rewful cas, and al this thing horrible.
The wo to tellen hit were impossible, (160)
That she and alle her frendes made
stones. 1840

Al hadde folkes hertes been of stones,
Hit mighte have makid hem upon her
rewe,

Her herte was so wyfly and so trewe.
She seide, that, for her gilt ne for her
blame,

Her husband sholde nat have the foule
name, 1845

That wolde she nat suffre, by no wey.
And they answerden alle, upon hir fey,
That they foryeve hit her, for hit was
right; (169)

Hit was no gilt, hit lay nat in her might;
And seiden her ensamples many oon. 1850
But al for noght; for thus she seide
anon,

'Be as be may,' quod she, 'of forgiving.
I wol nat have no forgift for no-thing.'

But prively she caughte forth a knyfe, 1854
And tharwith-al she rafte her-self her lyf;
And as she fel adoun, she caste her look,
And of her clothes yit she hede took;
For in her falling yit she hadde care
Lest that her feet or swiche thing lay
bare; (180)

Sowel she loved clenness and eek trouthe.
Of her had al the toon of Rome rounthe,
And Brutus by her chaste blode hath
swore 1862

That Tarquin sholde y-baniht be ther-fore,
And al his kin; and let the peple calle,
And openly the tale he tolde hem alle,
And openly let carie her on a bere 1866
Through al the toun, that men may see
and here

The horrible deed of her oppressioun.
Ne never was ther king in Rome toun (190)
Sin thilke day, and she was holden there
A seint, and ever her day y-halwed dere
As in hir lawe: and thus endeth Lucrese,
The noble wyf, as Titus bereth witnesse.

I tell hit, for she was of love so trewe,
Ne in her wille she chaunged for no newe.
And for the stable herte, sad and kinde,
That in these women men may alday
finde; 1877

Ther as they caste hir herte, ther hit
dwelleth.

For wel I wot, that Crist †him-selfe
telleth, (200)

That in Israel, as wyf as is the lond, 1880
That so gret feith in al the lond he ne
find

As in a woman; and this is no lye.
And as of men, loketh which tyrannye
They doon alday; assay hem who so liste,
The trawest is ful brotel for to triste. 1885

Explicit Legenda Lucretie Rome, Martiris.

1 c h l

VI. THE LEGEND OF ARIADNE.

Incipit Legenda Adriane de Athenes.

JUGE infernal, Minos, of Crete king,
Now cometh thy lot, now comestow on
the ring;

Nat for thy sake only wryte I this storie,
But for to clepe agein unto memorie 1889
Of Theseus the grete untrouthe of love;
For which the goddes of the heven above
Ben wrothe, and wreche han take for thy
sinne.

Be reed for shame! now I thy lyf beginne.

Minos, that was the mighty king of
Crete,
That hadde an hundred citees stronge
and grete, (10) 1895

To scole hath sent his sone Androgeus,
To Athenes; of the whiche hit happed
thus,

That he was slayn, lerning philosophye,
Right in that citee, nat but for envye.

The grete Minos, of the whiche I speke,
His sones deeth is comen for to wreke;
Alcathoe he bisegeth harde and longe.
But natheles the walles be so stronge,
And Nisus, that was king of that citee,
So chivalrous, that litel dredeth he; 1905
Of Minos or his ost took he no cure, (21)

Til on a day befel an aventure,
That Nisus doghter stood upon the wal,
And of the sege saw the maner al. 1909
So happed hit, that, at a scarmishing,
She caste her herte upon Minos the king,
For his beautee and for his chivalrye,
So sore, that she wende for to dye.

And, shortly of this proces for to pace,
She made Minos winnen thilke place, 1915
So that the citee was al at his wille, (31)
To saven whom him list, or elles spille;
But wikkedly he quitte her kindenesse,
And let her drenche in sorowe and dis-
tresse, 1919

Nere that the goddes hadde of her pite;
But that tale were to long as now for me.

Athenes wan this king Minos also,
And Alcathoe and other tounes mo;

And this th'effect, that Minos hath so
driven

Hem of Athenes, that they mote him
yiven (40) 1925

Fro yere to yere her owne children dere
For to be slayn, as ye shul after here.

This Minos hath a monstre, a wikked
beste,

That was so cruel that, without ~~grete~~ *his kin*,
Whan that a man was broght in his
presence, 1931

He wolde him ete, ther helpeth no de-
fence.

And every thridde yeer, with-outen doute,
They casten lot, and, as hit com aboute
On riche, on pore, he moste his sone
take, (49) 1934

And of his child he moste present make
Unto Minos, to save him or to spille,
Or lete his beste devoure him at his
wille.

And this hath Minos don, right in despyt:
To wreke his sone was set al his delyt,
And maken hem of Athenes his thral 1940
Fro yere to yere, whyl that he liven shal:
And hoom he sailoth whan this toun is
wonne.

This wikked custom is so longe y-ronne
Til that of Athenes king Egeus
Mot sende his owne sone, Theseus, 1945
Sith that the lot is fallen him upon, (61)
To be devoured, for grace is ther non.

And forth is lad this woful yonge knight
Unto the court of king Minos ful right,
And in a prison, fetered, cast is he 1950
Til thilke tyme he sholde ~~y-freten~~ *be* *ent*.

Wel maystow wepe, O woful Theseus,
That art a kinges sone, and dampned
thus.

Me thinketh this, that thou were depe
y-holde 1954

To whom that saved thee fro cares colde!
And now, if any woman helpe thee, (71)

Wel oughtestow her servant for to be,
And been her trowe lover yeer by yeer!
But now to come ageyn to my matere.

The tour, ther as this Theseus is throwe
 Doun in the botom derke and wonder
 lowe,
 Was joyning in the walle to a *suster chambre* forayne;
 And hit was longing to the doghtren
 twayne
 Of king Minos, that in hir chambres grete
 Dwelten above, toward the maister-
 strete, (80) 1965
 In mochel mirth, in joye and in solas.
 Not I nat how, hit happed ther, per cas,
 As Theseus compleyned him by nighte,
 The kinges doghter, Adrian that highte,
 And eek her suster Phedra, herden al 1970
 His compleyning, as they stode on the wal
 And lokeden upon the brighte mone;
 Hem leste nat to go to bedde sone.
 And of his wo they had compassion;
 A kinges sone to ben in swich prisoun
 And be devoured, thoughte hem gret
 pitee. (91) 1976

Then Adrian spek to her suster free,
 And seyde, 'Phedra, leve suster dera,
 This woful lordes sone may ye nat here,
 How pitously compleyneth he his kin,
 And eek his pore estat that he is in, 1981
 And giltelass? now certes, hit is routhe!
 And if ye wol assenten, by my trouthe,
 He shal be holpen, how so that we do!'

Phedra answerde, 'y-wis, me is as wo
 For him as ever I was for any man; 1986
 And, to his help, the beste reed I can (103)
 Is that we doon the gayler prively
 To come, and speke with us hastily,
 And doon this woful man with him to
 come. 1990
 For if he may this monstre overcome,
 Than were he quit; ther is noon other
 bote.

Let us wel taste him at his herte-rote,
 That, if so be that he a wepen have,
 Wber that he dar, his lyf to kepe and
 save, (110) 1995

Fighten with this fend, and him defende.
 For, in the prison, ther he shal descende,
 Ye wite wel, that the beste is in a place
 That nis nat derk, and bath roum eek
 and space

To welde an ax or sword or staf or knyf,
 So that, me thinketh, he sholde save his
 lyf; 2001

If that he be a man, he shal do so.
 And we shul make him halles eek also
 Of wexe and tow, that, whan he gapeth
 faste, 2004

Into the bestes throte he shal hem caste
 To slake his hunger and encombe his
 teeth; (121)

And right anon, whan that Theseus seeth
 The beste achoked, he shal on him lepe
 To sleen him, or they comen more to-hepe.

This wepen shal the gayler, or that tyde,
 Ful privily within the prison hyde; 2011
 And, for the hous is crinkled to and fro,
 And hath so queinte weyes for to go—

For hit is shapen as the mase is wrought—
 Therto have I a remedie in my thought,
 That, by a clewe of twyne, as he hath
 goon, (131) 2016

The same wey he may returne anon,
 Folwing alwey the threed, as he hath
 come.

And, whan that he this beste hath over-
 come,

Then may he fleen away out of this drede,
 And eek the gayler may he with him
 lede, 2021

And him avaanoe at hoom in his contree,
 Sin that so greet a lordes sone is he.
 This is my reed, if that he dar hit take.'

What sholde I lenger sermoun of hit
 make? 2025

The gayler cometh, and with him Theseus.
 And whan thise thinges been acorded
 thus, (142)

Adoun-sit Theseus upon his knee:—

'The righte lady of my lyf,' quod he,
 'I, sorweful man, y-dampned to the deeth,
 Fro yow, whyl that me lasteth lyf or
 breath, 2031

I wol nat twinne, after this aventure, 2034
 But in your servise thus I wol endure,
 That, as a wrecche unknowe, I wol yow
 serve 2034

For ever-mo, til that myn herte sterve,
 Forsake I wol at hoom myn heritage, (151)

And, as I seide, ben of your court a page,
 If that ye vouche-sauf that, in this place,
 Ye graunte me to han so gret a grace

That I may han nat but my mete and
 drinke, 2040

And for my sustenance yit wol I swinke,

Right as yow list, that Minos ne no
wight—

Sin that he saw me never with eyen
sight—

Ne no man elles, shal me conne espye;
So slyly and so wel I shal me gye, 2045
And me so wel disfigure and so lowe, (161)
That in this world ther shal no man me
knowe,

To han my lyf, and for to han presence
Of yow, that doon to me this excellence.
And to my fader shal I senden here 2050
This worthy man, that is now your gay-
lere,

And, him to guerdon, that he shal wel be
Oon of the grettest men of my contree.

And yif I dorste seyn, my lady bright,
I am a kinges sone, and eek a knight;
As wolde god, yif that hit mighte be (171)

Ye weren in my contree, alle three,
And I with yow, to bere yow companye,
Than shulde ye seen yif that I ther-of lye!
And, if I profre yow in low manere 2060
To ben your page and serven yow right
here,

But I yow serve as lowly in that place,
I prey to Mars to yive me swiche a grace
That shames deeth on me ther mote
falle,

And deeth and povert to my frendes
alle; 2065

And that my spirit by nighte mote go (181)
After my deeth, and walke to and fro;
That I mote of a traitour have a name,
For which my spirit go, to do me shame!
And yif I ever claime other degree, 2070
But-if ye vouche-sauf to yive hit me,
As I have seid, of shames deeth I deye!
And mercy, lady! I can nat elles seye!

A seemly knight was Theseus to see,
And yong, but of a twenty yeer and
three; 2075

But who-so hadde y-seyn his counten-
aunce, (191)

He wolde have wept, for routhe of his
penaunce;

For which this Adriane in this manere
Answerde to his profre and to his chere.

'A kinges sone, and eek a knight,'
quod she, 2080

'To been my servant in so low degree,

God shilde hit, for the shame of women
alle!

And leve me never swich a cas befall! -
But sende yow grace and sleighte of
herte also,

Yow to defende and knightly sleen your
fo, 2085

And leve hereafter that I may yow finde
To me and to my suster here so kinde,
That I repente nat to give yow lyf! (209)
Yit were hit better that I were your
wyf,

Sin that ye been as gentil born as I, 2090
And have a rēaume, nat but faste by,

Then that I suffred giltles yow to sterve,
Or that I let yow as a page serve;

Hit is not profit, as unto your kinrede;
But what is that that man nil do for
drede? 2095

And to my suster, sin that hit is so (211)
That she mot goon with me, if that I go,

Or elles suffre deeth as wel as I,
That ye unto your sone as trewely 2099

Doon her bewedded at your hoom-coming.
This is the fynal ende of al this thing;

Ye swere hit heer, on al that may be
sworn.'

'Ye, lady myn,' quod he, 'or elles torn
Mote I be with the Minotaur to-morwe!

And haveth her-of my herte-blood to
borwe, (220) 2105

Yif that ye wile; if I had knyf or spere,
I wolde hit leten out, and ther-on swere,

For than at erst I wot ye wil me leve.
By Mars, that is the cheef of my bileve,

So that I mighte liven and nat faile 2110
To-morwe for t'acheve my bataille,

I nolde never fro this place flee,
Til that ye shuld the verray preve see.

For now, if that the sooth I shal yow say,
I have y-loved yow ful many a day, 2115

Thogh ye ne wiste hit nat, in my contree.
And aldermost desyred yow to see (232)

Of any erthly living creature; 2118
Upon my trouthe I swere, and yow assure,

This seven yeer I have your servant be;
Now have I yow, and also have ye me,

My dere herte, of Athenes duchesse!

This lady smyleth at his stedfastnesse,
And at his hertly wordes, and his chere,
And to her suster seide in this manere,

Al softly, 'now, suster myn,' quod she,
 'Now be we duchesses, bothe I and ye,
 And sikered to the regals of Athenes, (243)
 And bothe her-after lykly to be quenes,
 And saved fro his deeth a kinges sone,
 As ever of gentil women is the yone 2137
 To save a gentil man, ~~emforn~~ ⁱⁿ his right,
 In honest cause, and namely in his right.
 He thinketh no wight oghte her-of us
 blame,
 Ne beren us ther-for an evel name.' 2135
 And shortly of this matere for to make,
 This Theseus of her hath love y-take, (252)
 And every point performed was in dede
 As ye have in this covenant herd me rede.
 His wepen, his clew, his thing that I have
 said, 2140
 Was by the gayler in the hous y-laid
 Ther as this Minotaur hath his dwelling,
 Right faste by the dore, at his entring.
 And Theseus is lad unto his deeth, 2144
 And forth un-to this Minotaur he geeth,
 And by the teching of this Adriane (261)
 He overcom this beste, and was his bane;
 And out he cometh by the clewe again
 Ful prevely, whan he this beste hath
 slain; 2149
 And by the gayler gotten hath a barge,
 And of his wyves tresor gan hit charge,
 And took his wyf, and eek her suster free,
 And eek the gayler, and with hem alle
 three
 Is stole away out of the lond by nighte,
 And to the contre of Ennopye him
 dighte 2155
 Ther as he had a frend of his knowinge.
 Ther festen they, ther dauncen they and
 singe; (272)
 And in his armes hath this Adriane,
 That of the beste hath kept him from his
 bane; 2159
 And gat him ther a newe barge anon,
 And of his contree-folk a ful gret woun,
 And taketh his leve, and homward sail-
 eth he.
 And in an yle, amid the wilde see,
 Ther as ther dwelte creature noon
 Save wilde bestes, and that ful many
 oon, 2165
 He made his ship a-londe for to sette;
 And in that yle half a day he lette, (282)

And seide, that on the lond he moste him
 reste.
 His mariners han doon right as him
 leste;
 And, for to tallen shortly in this cas, 2170
 Whan Adriane his wyf a-slepe was,
 For that her suster fairer was than she,
 He taketh her in his hond, and forth
 goth he
 To shippe, and as a traitour stal his way
 Why! that this Adriane a-slepe lay, 2175
 And to his contree-ward he mileth
 blyve— (291)
 A twenty devil way the wind him
 dryve!—
 And fond his fader drenched in the see.
 He list no more to speke of him, parde;
 These false lovers, poison be hir bane!
 But I wol turne again to Adriane 2181
 That is with slepe for werinesse atake.
 Ful sorwefully her herte may awake.
 Allas! for thee my herte hath now
 pite!
 Right in the dawening awaketh she, 2185
 And gropeth in the bedde, and fond right
 noght. (301)
 'Allas!' quod she, 'that ever I was
 wrought!
 I am betrayed!' and her heer to-rente,
 And to the stronde bar-fot faste she
 wente,
 And cryed, 'Theseus! myn herte swete!
 Wher be ye, that I may nat with yow
 mete, 2191
 And mighte thus with bestes been y-
 slain?'
 The holwe rokkes answerde her again;
 No man she saw, and yit shyned the
 mone, 2194
 And hys upon a rokke she wente sone,
 And saw his barge sailing in the see. (311)
 Cold wex her herte, and right thus seide
 she.
 'Mekere than ye finde I the bestes wilde!'
 Hadde he nat sinne, that her thus be-
 gylde?
 She cryed, 'O turne again, for routhe and
 sinne! 2200
 Thy barge hath nat al his meiny inne!'
 Her kerchief on a pole up stikked she,
 Asaunce that he sholde hit wel y-see,

And him remembre that she was behinde,
 And turne again, and on the stronde her
 finde; (320) 2205
 But al for noght; his wey he is y-goon.
 And doun she fil a-swown upon a stoon;
 And up she rist, and kiste, in al her care,
 The steppes of his feet, ther he hath fare,
 And to her bedde right thus she speketh
 tho:— 2210
 'Thou bed,' quod she, 'that hast receyved
 two,
 Thou shalt answere of two, and nat of
 oon!
 Wher is thy gretter part away y-goon?
 Allas! wher shal I, wrecched wight, be-
 come!
 For, thogh so be that ship or boot heer
 come, 2215

Hoom to my contree dar I nat for
 drede; (331)
 I can my-selven in this cas nat rede!
 What shal I telle more her complein-
 ing?
 Hit is so long, hit were an hevy thing.
 In her epistle Naso telleth al; 2220
 But shortly to the ende I telle shal.
 The goddes have her holpen, for pitee;
 And, in the signe of Taurus, men may
 see
 The stones of her coroun shyne clere.—
 I wol no more speke of this matere;
 But thus this false lover can begyle 2226
 His trewe love. The devil þ him quyte
 his whyle! (342)

Explicit Legenda Adriane de Athenes.

VII. THE LEGEND OF PHILOMELA.

Incipit Legenda Philomene.

Deus dator formarum.

Thou yiver of the formes, that hast
 wrought
 The faire world, and bare hit in thy
 thoght
 Eternally, or thou thy werk began, 2230
 Why madest thou, unto the slaundre of
 man,
 Or—al be that hit was not thy doing,
 As for that fyn to make swiche a
 thing—
 Why suffrest thou that Tereus was bore,
 That is in love so fals and so forswore,
 That, fro this world up to the firste
 hevene, 2236
 Corrupmeth, whan that folk his name
 nevene? (10)
 And, as to me, so grisly was his dede,
 That, whan that I his foule story rede,
 Myn eyen wexen foule and sore also; 2240
 Yit last the venim of so longe ago,
 That hit enfecteth him that wol beholde
 The story of Tereus, of which I tolde.
 Of Trace was he lord, and kin to Marte,
 The cruel god that stant with bloody
 darte; 2245

And wedded had he, with a blisful chere,
 King Pandiones faire doghter dere, (20)
 That highte Progne, flour of her contree,
 Thogh Juno list nat at the feste be,
 Ne Ymeneus, that god of wedding is;
 But at the feste redy been, y-wis, 2251
 The furies three, with alle hir mortel
 brond.
 The owle al night aboute the balkes wond,
 That prophet is of wo and of mischaunce.
 This revel, ful of songe and ful of daunce,
 Lasteth a fourtenight, or litel lasse. 2256
 But, shortly of this story for to passe, (30)
 For I am wery of him for to telle,
 Five yeer his wyf and he togeder dwelle,
 Til on a day she gan so sore longe 2260
 To seen her suster, that she saw nat longe,
 That for desyr she niste what to seye.
 But to her husband gan she for to preye,
 For goddes love, that she moste ones
 goon 2264
 Her suster for to seen, and come anoon,
 Or elles, but she moste to her wende,
 She preyde him, that he wolde after her
 sende; (40)
 And this was, day by day, al her prayere
 With al humblesse of wyfhood, word, and
 chore. 2269

This Tereus let make his shippes yare,
And into Grece him-self is forth y-fare
Unto his fader in lawe, and gan him
preye

To vouches-sauf that, for a month or
tweye,

That Philomene, his wyves suster, mighte
On Progne his wyf but ones have a
sighte—

'And she shal come to yow again anon.
Myself with her wol bothe come and
goon,

And as myn hertes lyf I wol her kepe.'
This olde Pandion, this king, gan
wepe

For tendernes of herte, for to leve 2280
His doghter goon, and for to yive her
love;

Of al this world he lovede no-thing so;
But at the laste leve hath she to go.

For Philomene, with salte teres eke,
Gan of her fader grace to beseke 2285

To seen her suster, that her longeth so;
And him embraceth with her armes two.

And therwith-al so yong and fair was she
That, whan that Tereus saw her beautee,
And of array that ther was noon her
liche,

And yit of bountee was she two so riche,
He caste his fyry herte upon her so

That he wol have her, how so that hit go,
And with his wyles kneled and so preyde,
Till at the laste Pandion thus seyde:—

'Now, sone,' quod he, 'that art to me
so dere,

I thee betake my yonge doghter here, (70)
That bereth the key of al my hertes lyf.

And grete wel my doghter and thy wyf,
And yive her leve somtyme for to playe,

That she may seen me ones er I deye.'
And soothly, he hath mad him riche

faste, 2302
And to his folk, the moste and oek the
laste,

That with him com; and yaf him yiftes
grete,

And him conveyeth through the maister-
strete 2305

Of Athenes, and to the see him broughte,
And turneth hoom; no malice he ne
thoughte,

(80)

The ores pulleth forth the vessel faste,
And into Trace arriveth at the laste,
And up into a forest he her ledde, 2310

And to a cave privily him spedde;
And, in this derke cave, yif her leste,

Or leste noht, he bad her for to raste;
Of whiche her herte agroos, and seyde
thus,

'Wher is my suster, brother Tereus?' 2315
And therwith-al she wepte tenderly,

And quook for fere, pale and pitously,
Right as the lamb that of the wolf is
biten;

Or as the colver, that of the eagle is
smiten,

And is out of his clawes forth escaped, 2320
Yet hit is aferd and awhaped

Lest hit be hent eft-sones, so sat she.
But utterly hit may non other be.

By force hath he, this traitour, doon that
dede,

That he hath reft her of her mayden-
hede, 2325

Maugree her heed, by strengthe and by
his might,

Lo! here a dede of men, and that a right!
She cryeth 'suster!' with ful loud
stevens,

And 'fader dere!' and 'help me, god in
hevene!'

Al helpeth nat; and yet this false theef
Hath doon this lady yet a more mischeaf,

For fere lest she sholde his shame crye,
And doon him openly a vilanye,

And with his sword her tong of kerveth
he,

And in a castel made her for to be 2335
Ful privily in prison evermore,

And kepte her to his naage and his
store,

So that she mighte him nevermore asterte.
O sely Philomene! wo is thyn herte;

God wreke thee, and sende thee thy
bone!

Now is hit tyme I make an ende sone.
This Tereus is to his wyf y-come,

And in his armes hath his wyf y-nome,
And pitously he weep, and shook his
heed,

And swor her that he fond her suster
deed;

2345

For which this sely Progne hath swich
 wo, (119) 2346
 That ny her sorweful herte brak a-two;
 And thus in teres lete I Progne dwelle,
 And of her suster forth I wol yow tella.
 This woful lady lerned had in youthe
 So that she werken and enbrouden couthe,
 And weven in her stole the radayora
 As hit of women hath be woned yore.
 And, shortly for to seyn, she hath her
 fille
 Of mete and drink, and clothing at her
 wille, 2355
 And coude eek rede, and wel y-nogh
 endyte,
 But with a penne coude she nat wryte;
 But lettres can she weven to and fro, (131)
 So that, by that the yeer was al a-go,
 She had y-woven in a stamin large 2360
 How she was broght from Athenes in a
 barge,
 And in a cave how that she was broght;
 And al the thing that Tereus hath wroght,
 She waf hit wel, and wroot the story
 above,
 How she was served for her suster love;
 And to a knave a ring she yaf anon, 2366
 And prayed him, by signes, for to goon (140)
 Unto the quene, and beren her that clooth,
 And by signes swor him many an ooth,
 She sholde him yeve what she geten
 mighte. 2370
 This knave anon unto the quene him
 dighte,

And took hit her, and al the maner tolde.
 And, whan that Progne hath this thing
 beholde,
 No word she spak, for sorwe and eek for
 rage;
 But feyned her to goon on pilgrimage 2375
 To Bachus temple; and, in a litel
 stounde,
 Her dombe suster sitting hath she founde,
 Weping in the castel her aloon. (151)
 Allas! the wo, the complaint, and the
 moon
 That Progne upon her dombe suster
 maketh! 2380
 In armes everich of hem other taketh,
 And thus I lete hem in hir sorwe dwelle.
 The remenant is no charge for to
 telle, *consequenter*
 For this is al and som, thus waf she
 served,
 That never harm a-gilte ne deserved 2385
 Unto this cruel man, that she of wiste.
 Ye may be war of men, yif that yow
 liste. (160)
 For, al be that he wol nat, for his shame,
 Doon so as Tereus, to lese his name,
 Ne serve yow as a mordreour or a knave,
 Ful litel whyle shul ye trewe him have,
 That wol I seyn, al were he now my
 brother, 2392
 But hit so be that he may have non
 other. (166)

Explicit Legenda Philomena.

VIII. THE LEGEND OF PHYLLIS.

Incipit Legenda Phillis.

By preve as wel as by auctoritee,
 That wikked fruit cometh of a wikked
 tree, 2395
 That may ye finde, if that it lyketh
 yow.
 But for this ende I speke this as now,
 To telle you of false Demophon.
 In love a falsen herde I never non,
 But-if hit were his fader Theseus. 2400

'God, for his grace, fro swich oon kepe
 us!'
 Thus may thise women prayen that hit
 here. (9)
 Now to th'effect turne I of my matere.
 Destroyed is of Troye the citee; 2404
 This Demophon com sailing in the see
 Toward Athenes, to his paleys large;
 With him com many a ship and many a
 barge

Ful of his folk, of which ful many oon
Is wounded sore, and seek, and wo be-
goon. 2409

And they han at the sege longe y-lain.
Behinde him com a wind and eek a rain
That shoof so sore, his sail ne mighte
stonde, (19)

Him were lever than al the world a-londe,
So hunteth him the tempest to and fro.
So derk hit was, he coude nowher go; 2415
And with a wawe brosten was his stere.
His ship was rent so lowe, in swich
manere,

That carpenter ne coude hit nat amende.
The see, by nighte, as any torche brende
For wood, and posseth him now up now
down, 2420

Til Neptune hath of him compassioun,
And Thetis, Chorus, Triton, and they
alle,

And maden him upon a lond to falle, (30)
Wher-of that Phillis lady was and quene,
Ligurgus doghter, fairer on to sene 2425
Than is the flour again the brighte sonne.
Unnethe is Demophon to londe y-wonne,
Wayk and eek wery, and his folk for-
pyned

Of werinesse, and also enfamyned; 2429
And to the deeth he almost was y-driven.
His wyse folk to conseil han him yiven
To seken help and socour of the queen,
And loken what his grace mighte been, (40)
And maken in that lond som chevisaunce,
To kepen him fro wo and fro mischaunce.
For seek was he, and almost at the deeth;
Unnethe mighte he speke or drawe his
breeth, 2437

And lyth in Rodopeya him for to reste.
Whan he may walke, him thoughte hit
was the beste

Unto the court to seken for socour. 2440
Men knewe him wel, and diden him
honour;

For at Athenes duk and lord was he,
As Theseus his fader hadde y-be, (50)
That in his tyme was of greet renoun,
No man so greet in al his regioun; 2445
And lyk his fader of face and of stature,
And fals of love; hit com him of nature;
As doth the fox Renard, the foxes sone,
Of kinde he coude his olde faders wone

Withoute lore, as can a drake swimme,
Whan hit is caught and caried to the
brimme. 2451

This honourable Phillis doth him chere,
Her lyketh wel his port and his manere.
But for I am agroted heer-biforn (61)
To wryte of hem that been in love for-
sworn, 2455

And eek to haste me in my legende,
Which to performe god me grace sende,
Therfor I passe shortly in this wyse;
Ye han wel herd of Theseus devyse
In the betraising of fair Adriane, 2460
That of her pite kepte him from his
bane.

At shorte wordes, right so Demophon
The same wey, the same path hath gon (70)
That dide his false fader Theseus.

For unto Phillis hath he sworn thus, 2465
To wedden her, and her his trouthe
plighte,

And piked of her al the good he mighte,
Whan he was hool and sound and hadde
his reste;

And doth with Phillis what so that him
leste.

And wel coude I, yif that me leste so, 2470
Tellen al his doing to and fro.

He seide, unto his contree moste he
saile,

For ther he wolde her wedding apparaile
As fil to her honour and his also. (81)

And openly he took his leve tho, 2475
And hath her sworn, he wolde nat sojorne,
But in a month he wolde again retorne.

And in that lond let make his ordinaunce
As verray lord, and took the obeisaunce
Wel and hoomly, and let his shippes
dighte, he purposed 2480

And hoom he goth the nexte wey he
mighte;

For unto Phillis yit ne com he noght.
And that hath she so harde and sore
aboght, 2485

Allas! that, as the stories us recorde,
She was her owne deoth right with a
corde, 2485

Whan that she saw that Demophon her
trayed.

But to him first she wroot and fasto
him prayed

He wolde come, and her deliver of payne,
As I rehearse shal a word or tweyne.
Me list nat vouche-sauf on him to swinke,
Ne spende on him a penne ful of inke, 2491
For fals in love was he, right as his syre;
The devil sette hir soules bothe a-fyre!
But of the lettre of Phillis wol I wryte
A word or tweyne, al-thogh hit be but
lyte. (102) 2495

'Thyn hostesse,' quod she, 'O Demophon,
Thy Phillis, which that is so wo begon,
Of Rodopeye, upon yow moot compleyne,
Over the terme set betwix us tweyne,
That ye ne holden forward, as ye seyde;
Your anker, which ye in our haven
leyde, 2501
Highte us, that ye wolde comen, out of
doute,

Or that the mone ones wente aboute. (110)
But tymes foure the mone hath hid her
face

Sin thilke day ye wente fro this place, 2503
And foure tymes light the world again.
But for al that, yif I shal soothly sain,
Yit hath the streem of Sitho nat y-brought
From Athenes the ship; yit comth hit
nogh.

And, yif that ye the terme rekne wolde,
As I or other trewe lovers sholde, 2511
I pleyne not, god wot, befor my day.—

But al her lettre wryten I ne may (120)
By ordre, for hit were to me a charge;
Her lettre was right long and ther-to
large; 2515

But here and there in ryme I have hit
laid,
Ther as me thoughte that she wel hath
said.—

She seide, 'thy sailes comen nat again,
Ne to thy word ther nis no fey certain;
But I wot why ye come nat,' quod she;
'For I was of my love to you so free. 2521
And of the goddes that ye han forswore,
Yif that hir vengeance falle on yow ther-
fore, (130)
Ye be nat suffisaunt to bere the payne.
To moche trusted I, wel may I pleyne, 2525

Upon your linage and your faire tonge,
And on your teres falsly out y-wronge.
How coude ye wepe so by craft?' quod
she;

'May ther swiche teres feyned be?
Now cartes, yif ye wolde have in memorie,
Hit oghte be to yow but lital glorie 2531
To have a sely mayde thus betrayed!
To god,' quod she, 'preye I, and ofte have
prayed, (140)

That hit be now the grettest prys of alle,
And moste honour that ever yow shal
befalle! 2535

And whan thyn olde auncestres peynted
be,

In which men may hir worthinesse see.
Than, preye I god, thou peynted be also,
That folk may reden, for-by as they go,
"Lo! this is he, that with his flaterye 2540
Betrayed hath and doon her vilanye
That was his trewe love in thoghte and
dede!"

But sothly, of oo point yit may they rede,
That ye ben lyk your fader as in this; (151)
For he begyled Adriane, y-wis, 2545
With swiche an art and swiche sotelte
As thou thy-selven hast begyled me.

As in that point, al-thogh hit be nat fayr,
Thou folwest him, certein, and art his eyr.
But sin thus sinfully ye me begyle, 2550

My body mote ye seen, within a whyle,
Right in the haven of Athenes fletinge,
With-uten sepulture and buryinge; (160)
Thogh ye ben harder then is any stoon.'

And, whan this lettre was forth sent
anoon, 2555

And knew how brotel and how fals he
was,

She for dispeyr for-dide herself, alas!
Swich sorwo hath she, for she besette her
so. *disposit of*

Be war, ye women, of your sotil fo, 2559
Sin yit this day men may ensample see;
And trusteth, as in love, no man but
me. (168)

Explicit Legenda Phillis.

IX. THE LEGEND OF HYPERMNESTRA.

Incipit Legenda Ypermistre.

In Grece whylom weren brethren two,
Of whiche that oon was called Danao,
That many a sone hath of his body wonne,
As swiche false lovers ofte conne. 2565
Among his sones alle ther was oon
That aldermost he lovede of everichoon.
And when this child was born, this Danao
Shoop him a name, and called him
Lino.
That other brother called was Egiste, 2570
That was of love as fals as ever him
liste, (10)
And many a doghter gat he in his lyve;
Of which he gat upon his righte wyve
A doghter dore, and dide her for to calle
Ypermistre, yongest of hem alle; 2575
The whiche child, of her nativitee,
To alle gode thewes born was she, *in the*
As lyked to the goddess, or she was born,
That of the shefe she sholde be the
corn; (18)
The Wirdee, that we clepen Destinee, 2580
Hath shapen her that she mot nedes be
Pitouse, sadde, wyse, and trewe as steel;
And to this woman hit accordeth weel.
For, though that Venus yaf her greet
beautee,
With Jupiter compouned so was she 2585
That conscience, trouthe, and dreed of
shame,
And of her wyfhood for to kepe her name,
This, thoughte her, was felicitie as here.
And rede Mars was, that tyme of the
yere,
So feble, that his malice is him raft, 2590
Repressed hath Venus his cruel craft; (30)
†What with Venus and other oppressoun
Of houses, Mars his venim is adoun,
That Ypermistre dar nat handle a knyf
In malice, thogh she sholde lese her lyf.
But natheles, as heven gan the turne, 2596
To badde aspectes hath she of Saturne,

That made her for to deyen in prisoun,
As I shal after make mencionn.

To Danao and Egiste also— 2600
Al-though so be that they were brethren
two, (40)
For thilke tyme nas spared no linage—
Hit lyked hem to maken mariage
Betwix Ypermistre and him Lino,
And casten swiche a day hit shal be so; 2605
And ful accorded was hit witterly: *truly*
The array is wrought, the tyme is faste by.
And thus Lino hath of his fadres brother
The doghter wedded, and ech of hem
hath other.

The torches brennen and the lampes
bryghte, 2610
The sacrifices been ful redy dighte; (30)
Th'encens out of the fyre reketh aote,
The flour, the leef is rent up by the
rote

To maken garlands and coronees hye;
Ful is the place of soun of minstralcye,
Of songes amorous of mariage, 2616
As thilke tyme was the pleyn usage.
And this was in the paleys of Egiste,
That in his hous was lord, right as him
liste;

And thus the day they dryven to an
ende; 2620
The frendes taken leve, and hoom they
wende. (60)
The night is come, the bryd shal go to
bedde;

Egiste to his chambre faste him spedde,
And privily he let his doghter calle.
Whan that the hous was voided of hem
alle, 2625
He loked on his doghter with glad
chere,

And to her spak, as ye shul after here.
'My righte doghter, tresor of myn
herte!
Sin first that day that shapen was my
sherte,

Or by the fatal suturen had my doom, 2630
So ny myn herte never thing me com (70)
As thou, myn Ypermistra, doghter
dare!

Tak heed what I thy fader say thee
here,

And werk after thy wyser ever-mo.
For alderfirste, doghter, I love thee so 2635
That al the world to me nis half so leef;
Ne I nolde rede thee to thy mischeef
For al the gode under the colde mone;
And what I mene, hit shal be seid right
sone,

With protestacioun, as in this wyse, 2640
That, but thou do as I shal thee devyse,
Thou shalt be deed, by him that al hath
wrought!

At shorte wordes, thou n'escapest nocht
Out of my paleys, or that thou be deed,
But thou consente and werke after my
reed; 2645

Tak this to thee for ful conclusioun.'

This Ypermistra ceste her eyen down,
And quook as dooth the leef of aspe
grene;

Deed wex her hewe, and lyk as ash to
sone, 2649

And seyde, 'lord and fader, al your wille,
After my might, god wot, I shal fulfille,
So hit to me be no confusioun.'

'Inil,' quod he, 'have noon excepcioun';
And out he caughte a knyf, as rasour kene;
'Hyd this,' quod he, 'that hit be nat y-
sene; 2653

And, whan thyn husband is to bedde y-go,
Whyl that he slepeth, cut hithrote a-two.
For in my dremes hit is warned me
How that my nevew shal my bane be,
But whiche I noot, wherfor I wol be
siker. 2660

Yif thou say nay, we two shul have a
biker *quarrel* (100)

As I have seyde, by him that I have
sworn.'

This Ypermistra hath ny her wit forlon;
And, for to passen harmles of that place,
She graunted him; ther was non other
grace. 2665

And *therwith* *all* a *congrat* taketh he,
And *seyde*, 'herof a draught, or two or
three;

Yif him to drinke, whan he goth to
reste,

And he shal slepe as longe as ever thee
leste,

The narcotike and opies been so stronge:
And go thy way, lest that him thinke
longe.' (120) 2671

Out comth the bryd, and with ful sober
chere,

As is of maidens ofte the manere,
To chambre is brought with revel and with
songe,

And shortly, lest this tale be to longe, 2675
This Idno and she ben some brought to
bedde;

And every wight out at the dore him
spedde.

The night is wasted, and he fal a-slepe;
Ful tenderly beginneth she to wepe.

She rist her up, and dredfully she
quaketh, 2680

As doth the braunche that Zephirus
shaketh, (120)

And husht were alle in Argon that citee.
As cold as any frost now wereth she;

For pite by the herte her streyneth so,
And dred of deeth doth her so moche wo,
That thryes down she fil in swiche a
wepe. *mental struggle* 2686

She rist her up, and stakereth heer and
there,

And on her handes faste loketh she.
'Allas! and shul my handes bloody be?

I am a maid, and, as by my nature, 2690
And by my semblant and by my vesture,

Myn handes been nat shapen for a knyf,
As for to reve no man fro his lyf. (132)

What devil have I with the knyf to do?
And shal I have my throte corvé a-two?

Then shal I blede, alas! and me be-
shende; *brought to murder* 2696

And nedes cost this thing mot have an
ende;

Or he or I mot nedes lese our lyf.

Now certes,' quod she, 'sin I am his wyf,
And hath my feith, yit is it bet for me

For to be deed in wyfly honestee (140) 2703
Than be a traitour living in my shama.

Be as be may, for earnest or for game,
He shal awake, and ryse and go his way

Out at this *gater*, or that hit be day!'

gater

2671

*unseen
flask*

And weep ful tenderly upon his face, 2706
And in her armes gan him to embrace,
And him she roggeth and awaketh softs ;
And at the window leep he fro the
lofte

Whan she hath warned him, and doon
him bote, 2710

This Linc swifte was, and light of fote,
And from his wyf he ran a ful good pee.
This sely woman is so wayk, alas ! (152)
And halples so, that, or that she fer
wante,

Her cruel fader dide her for to hente. 2715

Alas ! Linc ! why art thou so unkinde ?
Why ne haddest thou remembered in thy
minde
To taken her, and lad her forth with
thee ?

For, whan she saw that goon away was he,
And that she mighte nat so faste go, 2720
Ne folwen him, she sette her down right
tho, (160)

Til she was caught and fetered in prisoun.
This tale is seid for this conclusioun. . .

(Unfinished.)

A TREATISE ON THE ASTROLABE.

PROLOGUS.

LITEL Lowis my sone, I have perceived wel by certeyne evidences thyn abilite to lerne sciencez touchinge noumbres and proporciouns; and as wel considere I thy
5 hisy preyere in special to lerne the Tretis of the Astrolabie. Than, for as mechel as a filosofre seith, 'he wrappeth him in his frend, that condescendeth to the rightful prayers of his frend,' ther-for
10 have I geven thee a suffisaunt Astrolabie as for oure orizonte, compowned after the latitude of Oxenford; up-on which, by mediacion of this litel tretis, I purpose to teche thee a certain nombre of conclu-
15 sions apertening to the same instrument. I seye a certain of conclusiouns, for three causes. The furste cause is this: truste wel that alle the conclusiouns that han ben founde, or elles possibly mighten be
20 founde in so noble an instrument as an Astrolabie, ben un-knowe perfilty to any mortal man in this regioun, as I suppose. A-nother cause is this; that sothly, in any tretis of the Astrolabie that I have seyn,
25 there ben some conclusions that wole nat in alle thinges performen hir bihestes; and some of hem ben to harde to thy tendre age of ten yeer to conseyye. This tretis, divided in fyve parties, wole I shewe
30 thee under ful lighte rewles and naked wordes in English; for Latin ne canstow

yit but smal, my lyte sone. But natheles, suffyse to thee thise trewe conclusiouns in English, as wel as suffyseth to thise noble clerkes Grekes thise same conclusiouns in 35 Greek, and to Arabiens in Arabik, and to Jewes in Ebrew, and to the Latin folk in Latin; whiche Latin folk han hem furst out of othre diverse langages, and writen in hir owne tonge, that is to sein, in 40 Latin. And god wot, that in alle thise langages, and in many mo, han thise conclusiouns ben suffisantly lerned and taught, and yit by diverse rewles, right as diverse pathes leden diverse folk the 45 righte way to Rome. Now wol I prey meekly every discreet persone that redeth or hereth this litel tretis, to have my rewde endyting for excused, and my superfluite of wordes, for two causes. The 50 furste cause is, for that curious endyting and hard sentence is ful hevy atones for swich a child to lerne. And the seconde cause is this, that sothly me semeth betre to wryten un-to a child twyes a good 55 sentence, than he forgete it ones. And Lowis, yif so be that I shewe thee in my lighte English as trewe conclusiouns touching this matere, and naught only as trewe but as many and as subtil con- 60 clusiouns as ben shewed in Latin in any commune tretis of the Astrolabie, con me

the more thank; and preys god save the
king, that is lord of this langage, and alle
65 that him feyth bereth and obeyeth, ever-
ech in his degree, the more and the laste.
But considere wel, that I ne usurpe nat to
have founde this werk of my labour or of
myn engyn. I nam but a lewd com-
70 pilatour of the labour of olde Astro-
logiens, and have hit translated in myn
English only for thy doctrine; and with
this sword shal I sleen envye.

I. The firste partie of this tretis shal
75 reherse the figures and the membres of
thyn Astrolabie, bi-cause that thou shalt
han the grette knowing of thyn owne
instrument.

II. The second partie shal teche thee
80 werken the verrey practik of the forseide
conclusiouns, as ferforth and as narwe
as may be shewed in so smal an instru-
ment portatif aboute. For wel wot every
astrologien that smalest fraccions ne wol
85 nat ben shewed in so smal an instrument,
as in subtil tables calculd for a cause.

III. The thridde partie shal contien
diverse tables of longitudes and latitudes
of sterres fixe for the Astrolabie, and
90 tables of declinacions of the sonne, and
tables of longitudes of citees and of
townes; and as wel for the governance

of a klokke as for to finde the altitude
meridian; and many another notable
conclusioun, after the kalendres of the 95
reverent clerkes, frere I. Somer and frere
N. Lenne.

IV. The ferthe partie shal ben a theoric
to declare the moevings of the celestial
bodies with the causes. The whiche 100
ferthe partie in special shal shewen a
table of the verrey moeving of the mone
from houre to houre, every day and in
every signe, after thyn almenak; upon
which table ther folwith a canon, suffi- 105
sant to teche as wel the maner of the
wyrking of that same conclusioun, as to
knowe in oure orizonte with which de-
gree of the zodiac that the mone ariseth
in any latitude; and the arising of any 110
planete after his latitude fro the ecliptik
lyne.

V. The fifte partie shal ben an intro-
ductorie after the statuts of oure doctours,
in which thou maist lerne a gret part of 115
the general rewles of theoric in astrologie.
In which fifte partie shaltow finde tables
of equacions of houses after the latitude
of Oxenford; and tables of dignetes of
planetes, and other noteful thinges, yif 120
god wol vouchesauf and his modur the
mayde, mo than I behete, &c.

PART I

HERE BEGINNETH THE DESCRIPTION OF THE ASTROLABIE.

1. Thyn Astrolabie hath a ring to
putten on the thombe of thy right
hand in taking the heighte of thinges.
And tak keep, for from hennes-forthward,
5 I wol clepe the heighte of any thing that
is taken by thy rewle, the altitude, with-
oute mo wordes.

2. This ring renneth in a maner turet,
fast to the moder of thyn Astrolabie, in
so rowin a space that hit desturbeth nat
the instrument to hangen after his righte
5 centre.

3. The Moder of thyn Astrolabie is the
thikkeste plate, perced with a large hole,
that resseyveth in hir wombe the thinne
plates compowned for diverse clymatz,
and thy rist shapen in manere of a net or 5
of a webbe of a loppe; and for the more
declaracioun, lo here the figura.

4. This moder is devyded on the bak-
half with a lyne, that cometh dessend-
inge fro the ring down to the nethereste
bordure. The whiche lyne, fro the for-
seide ring un-to the centre of the large 5
hole amidde, is cleped the south lyne, or
elles the lyne meridional. And the
remenant of this lyne downe to the bor-

dure is cleped the north lyne, or elles the
 10 lyne of midnight. And for the more
 declaracioun, lo here the figure.

5. Over-thwart this for-seide longe
 lyne, ther crosseth him another lyne of
 the same lengthe from est to west. Of
 the whiche lyne, from a lital croys + in
 5 the bordure un-to the centre of the large
 hole, is cleped the Est lyne, or elles the
 lyne Orientale; and the remenant of this
 lyne fro the forside + un-to the bordure,
 is cleped the West lyne, or the lyne Occi-
 10 dentale. Now hastow here the foure
 quarters of thin astrolabie, devyded after
 the foure principals plages or quarters of
 the firmament. And for the more declar-
 acioun, lo here thy figure.

6. The est side of thyn Astrolabie is
 cleped the right side, and the west side
 is cleped the left side. Forget nat this,
 lital Lowis. Put the ring of thyn Astro-
 5 labie upon the thombe of thy right
 hand, and thanne wole his right syde be
 toward thy left syde, and his left syde
 wol be toward thy right syde; tak this
 rewle general, as wel on the bak as on
 10 the wombe-side. Upon the ende of this
 est lyne, as I first seide, is marked a lital
 +, wher-as evere-mo generally is con-
 sidered the entring of the first degree in
 which the sonne aryseth. And for the
 15 more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

7. Fro this lital + up to the ende of
 the lyne meridional, under the ring,
 shaltow finden the bordure devyded with
 90 degrees; and by that same proporcioun
 5 is every quarter of thin Astrolabie de-
 vyded. Over the whiche degrees ther
 ben noumbres of angrim, that devyden
 thilke same degrees fro fyve to fyve, as
 sheweth by longe strykes by-twene. Of
 10 whiche longe strykes the space by-twene
 contienith a mile-wey. And every degree
 of the bordure contieneth foure minutes,
 that is to seyn, minutes of an houre.
 And for more declaracioun, lo here the
 15 figure.

8. Under the compas of thilke degrees
 ben writen the names of the Twelve
 Signes, as Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer,
 Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius,

Capricornus, Aquarius, Pisces; and the 5
 nombres of the degrees of the signes ben
 writen in angrim above, and with longe
 devisiouns, fro fyve to fyve; devyded fro
 tyme that the signe entreth un-to the
 laste ende. But understond wel, that 10
 thise degrees of signes ben everich of hem
 considered of 60 minutes, and every
 minute of 60 secondes, and so forth in-to
 smale fraccions infinit, as seith Alka-
 bucius. And ther-for, know wel, that 15
 a degree of the bordure contieneth foure
 minutes, and a degree of a signe con-
 tieneth 60 minutes, and have this in
 minde. And for the more declaracioun,
 lo here thy figure. 20

9. Next this folweth the Cerole of the
 Dayes, that ben figured in maner of
 degrees, that contienen in noumbre 365;
 divyded also with longe strykes fro fyve
 to fyve, and the nombres in angrim 5
 writen under that cerole. And for more
 declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

10. Next the Cerole of the Dayes, fol-
 weth the Cercle of the names of the
 Monthes; that is to seyn, Januare,
 Februare, Marcius, Aprile, Mayus, Juin,
 Julius, Augustus, Septembre, October, 5
 Novembre, Decembre. The names of
 thise monthes were cleped in Arabiens,
 somme for hir propretees, and some by
 statutz of lordes, some by other lordes of
 Rome. Eek of thise monthes, as lyked 10
 to Julius Cesar and to Cesar Augustus,
 some were compowned of diverse nom-
 bres of dayes, as Juil and August. Thanne
 hath Januare 31 dayes, Februare 28,
 March 31, Aprile 30, May 31, Junius 30, 15
 Julius 31, Augustus 31, September 30,
 Octobre 31, Novembre 30, December 31.
 Natheles, al-though that Julius Cesar
 took 2 dayes out of Feverer and put hem
 in his moneth of Juille, and Augustus 20
 Cesar cleped the moneth of August after
 his name, and ordeyned it of 31 dayes,
 yit truste wel, that the sonne dwelleth
 ther-for nevere the more ne lesse in oon
 signe than in another. 25

11. Than folwen the names of the
 Halidayes in the Kalender, and next
 hem the lettres of the Abc. on which

they fallen. And for the more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

12. Next the forseide Cercle of the Abc., under the cros-lyne, is marked the scale, in maner of two squyres, or elles in manere of laddres, that serveth by hise
5 12 poyntes and his devisiouns of ful many a subtil conclusioun. Of this forseide scale, fro the cros-lyne un-to the verre angle, is cleped *tumbra versa*, and the nether partie is cleped the *tumbra*
10 *recta*, or elles *umbra extensa*. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

13. Thanne hastow a brood Rewle, that hath on either ende a square plate perced with a certein holes, some more and some lesse, to resseyven the strames
5 of the sonne by day, and eek by mediacioun of thyn eye, to knowe the altitude of sterres by nighte. And for the more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

14. Thanne is ther a large Pyn, in maner of an extree, that goth thorow the hole, that halt the tables of the clymates and the riet in the wombe of
5 the Moder, thorw which Pyn ther goth a litel wegge which that is cleped 'the hora,' that streyneth alle thise parties to-hepe; this forseide grete Pyn, in maner of an extree, is imagined to be the Pol
10 Artik in thyn Astrolabia. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

15. The wombe-side of thyn Astrolabie is also devyded with a longe croys in foure quarters from est to west, fro south to north, fro right syde to left syde, as is
5 the bak-syde. And for the more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

16. The bordure of which wombe-side is devyded fro the poynt of the est lyne un-to the poynt of the south lyne under the ring, in 90 degrees; and by that same
5 proporcioun is every quarter devyded as is the bak-syde, that amonteth 360 degrees. And understond wel, that degrees of this bordure ben answering and consentrik to the degrees of the Equinoxial,
10 that is devyded in the same nombre as every othere cercle is in the heye hevene. This same bordure is devyded also with 23 lettres capitals and a smal croys +

above the south lyne, that sheweth¹ the 24 houres equals of the klokke; and, as
15 I have said, 5 of thise degrees maken a mile-wey, and 3 mile-wey maken an houre. And every degree of this bordure conteneth 4 minutes, and every minut 60 secoundes; now have I told thee twye.
20 And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

17. The plate under thy riet is descryved with 3 principal cercles; of whiche the leste is cleped the cercle of Cancer, by-cause that the heved of Cancer turneth evermor consentrik up-on the same
5 cercle. In this heved of Cancer is the grettest declinacioun northward of the sonne. And ther-for is he cleped the Solsticioun of Somer; whiche declinacioun, aftur Ptholome, is 23 degrees
10 and 50 minutes, as wel in Cancer as in Capricorne. This signe of Cancer is cleped the Tropik of Somer, of *tropos*, that is to seyn 'agaynward;' for thanne by-ginneth the sonne to passe fro us
15 ward. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

The middel cercle in wyddesse, of thise 3, is cleped the Cercle Equinoxial; up-on whiche turneth evermo the hedes of
20 Aries and Libra. And understond wel, that evermo this Cercle Equinoxial turneth justly fro verrey est to verrey west; as I have shewed thee in the spere solide. This same cercle is cleped also the Weyere,
25 *equator*, of the day; for whan the sonne is in the hevedes of Aries and Libra, than ben the dayes and the nightes ilyke of lengthe in al the world. And therefore ben thise two signes called the
30 Equinoxies. And alle that moeveth within the hevedes of thise Aries and Libra, his moeving is cleped north-ward; and alle that moeveth with-oute thise hevedes, his moeving is cleped south-ward as fro
35 the equinoxial. Tak keep of thise latitudes north and south, and forget it nat. By this Cercle Equinoxial ben considered the 24 houres of the klokke; for evermo the arysing of 15 degrees of the equinoxial
40 maketh an houre equal of the klokke. This equinoxial is cleped the girdel of

the firste moeving, or elles of the *angulus primi motus vel primi mobilis*. And nota,
 45 that firste moeving is cleped 'moeving' of the firste moeuable of the 8 spere, whiche moeving is fro est to west, and eft agayn in-to est; also it is clepid 'girdel' of the first moeving, for it
 50 departeth the firste moeuable, that is to seyn, the spere, in two ilyke parties, evne-distantz fro the poles of this world.

The wydeste of thise three principal cercles is cleped the Cercl of Capricorne,
 55 by-cause that the heved of Capricorne turneth evermo consentrik up-on the same cercla. In the heved of this forseide Capricorne is the grettest declinacioun southward of the sonne, and ther-
 60 for is it cleped the Solsticioun of Winter. This signe of Capricorne is also cleped the Tropik of Winter, for thanne bygineth the sonne to come agayn to us-ward. And for the more declaracioun, lo here
 65 thy figure.

18. Upon this forseide plate ben compassed certein cercles that highten Almicanteras, of which som of hem semen perfit cercles, and somme semen inperfit.
 5 The centre that standith a-middes the narwest cercla is cleped the Senith; and the netherest cercla, or the firste cercla, is clepid the Orisonte, that is to seyn, the cercla that devydeh the two emi-
 10 speries, that is, the partie of the hevene a-bowe the erthe and the partie be-nethe. This Almicanteras ben compowned by two and two, al-be-it so that on divers Astrolabies some Almicanteras ben de-
 15 vyded by oon, and some by two, and somme by three, after the quantite of the Astrolabie. This forseide senith is imaged to ben the verrey point over the crowne of thyn heved; and also this
 20 senith is the verrey pool of the orisonte in every region. And for the more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

19. From this senith, as it semeth, ther come a maner crokede strykes lyke to the clawes of a loppe, or elles like to the werk of a womanes calle, in kerving over-
 5 thwart the Almikanteras. And thise same strykes or divisious ben cleped

Asimuthz. And they devyden the orisonte of thyn Astrolabie in four and twenty divisious. And thise Asimuthz serven to knowe the costes of the firma-
 10 ment, and to othre conclusiouns, as for to knowe the cenith of the sonne and of every sterre. And for more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

20. Next thise asimuthz, under the Cercl of Cancer, ben ther twelve divisious embelif, moche like to the shap of the asimuths, that shewen the spaces of the houres of planetes; and for more
 5 declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

21. The Riet of thyn Astrolabie with thy zodiak, shapen in maner of a net or of a loppe-webbe after the olde descripcioun, which thou mayst tornen up and down as thy-self lyketh, conteneth
 5 certein nombre of sterres fixes, with hir longitudes and latitudes determinat; yif so be that the makere have nat erred. The names of the sterres ben writen in the margin of the riet ther as they sitte;
 10 of whiche sterres the smale poynt is cleped the Centre. And understond also that alle sterres sittinge with-in the zodiak of thyn Astrolabie ben cleped 'sterres of the north,' for they arysen
 15 by northe the est lyne. And alle the remenant fixed, out of the zodiak, ben cleped 'sterres of the south;' but I sey nat that they arysen alle by southe the est lyne; witnesse on Aldeberan and
 20 Algomeysa. Generally understond this rewle, that thilke sterres that ben cleped sterres of the north arysen rather than the degree of hir longitude, and alle the sterres of the south arysen after the
 25 degree of hir longitude; this is to seyn, sterres fixed in thyn Astrolabie. The mesure of this longitude of sterres is taken in the lyne ecliptik of hevene, under which lyne, whan that the sonne
 30 and the mone ben lyne-right or elles in the superfi ce of this lyne, than is the eclips of the sonne or of the mone; as I shal declare, and eek the cause why. But sothly the Ecliptik Lyne of thy
 35 zodiak is the outtereste bordure of thy zodiak, ther the degrees ben marked.

Thy Zodiak of thyn Astrolabie is shapen
as a compas which that conteneth a large
40 brede, as after the quantite of thyn
Astrolabie; in ensample that the zodiak
in hevne is imagened to ben a superfice
conteneng a latitude of twelve degrees,
wheras al the remenant of cercoles in the
45 hevne ben imagined verrey lynes with-
oute eny latitude. Amiddes this celestial
zodiak ys imagined a lyne, which that is
cleped the Ecliptik Lyne, under which
lyne is evermo the way of the sonne.
50 Thus ben ther six degrees of the zodiak
on that oon side of the lyne, and six
degrees on that other. This zodiak is
devided in twelve principal devisiouns,
that departen the twelve signes. And,
55 for the streitnes of thin Astrolabie, than
is every smal devisioun in a signe de-
partid by two degrees and two; I mene
degrees conteneng sixty minutes. And
this forseide hevenissh zodiak is cleped
60 the Cercle of the Signes, or the Cercle
of the Bestes; for *zodia* in langage of
Greek sowneth 'bestes' in Latin tonge;
and in the zodiak ben the twelve signes
that han names of bestes; or elles, for
65 whan the sonne entreth in any of the
signes, he taketh the propretee of swich
bestes; or elles, for that the sterres that
ben there fixed ben disposed in signes of
bestes, or shape like bestes; or elles,
70 whan the planetes ben under thilke
signes, they causen us by hir influence
operaciouns and effectes lyk to the opera-
ciouns of bestes. And understonde also,
that whan an hot planete cometh in-to
75 an hot signe, than encresseth his hete;

and yif a planete be cold, thanne amen-
useth his coldnesse, by-cause of the hote
signe. And by this conclusioun maystow
take ensample in alle the signes, be they
moist or drye, or moeble or fix; rekeneng 80
the qualitee of the planete as I first
seide. And everich of these twelve signes
hath respecte to a certein parcelle of the
body of a man and hath it in governance;
as Aries hath thyn heved, and Taurus thy 85
nekke and thy throte, Gemini thyn
armholes and thyn armes, and so forth;
as shal be shewed more pleyne in the fifte
partie of this tretis. This zodiak, which
that is part of the eighte spere, over- 90
kerveth the equinoxial; and he over-
kerveth him again in evene parties; and
that on half declineth southward, and
that other northward, as pleyne de-
clareth the tretis of the spere. And for 95
more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

22. Thanne hastow a label, that is
schapen lyk a rewle, save that it is streit
and hath no plates on either ende with
holes; but, with the smale point of the
forseide label, shaltow calcule thyne 5
equaciouns in the bordure of thin Astro-
labie, as by thyn almury. And for the
more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

23. Thyn Almury is cleped the Denticle
of Capricorne, or elles the Calcule. This
same Almury sit fix in the heed of Capri-
corne, and it serveth of many a neces-
sarie conclusioun in equaciouns of thinges, 5
as shal be shewed; and for the more
declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

*Here endeth the description of the
Astrolabie.*

PART II.

HERE BEGINNEN THE CONCLUSIONS OF THE ASTROLABIE.

1. *To fynde the degree in which the sonne is
day by day, after hir cours a-boute.*

Rekene and knowe which is the day
of thy monthe; and ley thy rewle up
that same day; and thanne wol the
verray point of thy rewle sitten in the

bordure, up-on the degree of thy sonne. 5
Ensample as thus; the yeer of oure lord
1391, the 12 day of March at midday,
I wolde knowe the degree of the sonne.
I soughte in the bak-half of myn Astro-
labie, and fond the cercle of the dayes, 10
the which I knowe by the names of the
monthes written under the same cercle.
Tho leide I my rewle over this forseide

day, and fond the point of my rewle in
 15 the bordure up-on the firste degree of
 Aries, a litel with-in the degree; and
 thus knowe I this conclusioun. Another
 day, I wolde knowe the degree of my
 sonne, and this was at midday in the
 20 13 day of Decembre; I fond the day of
 the monthe in maner as I seide; the
 leide I my rewle up-on this forseide 13
 day, and fond the point of my rewle in
 the bordure up-on the first degree of
 25 Capricorne, a lite with-in the degree;
 and than hadde I of this conclusioun the
 ful experience. And for the more declar-
 acioun, lo here thy figure.

*2. To knowe the altitude of the sonne, or
 of othere celestial bodies.*

Put the ring of thyn Astrolabie up-on
 thy right thombe, and turne thy lift
 syde agayn the light of the sonne. And
 remeve thy rewle up and down, til that
 5 the stremes of the sonne shyne thorgh
 bothe holes of thy rewle. Loke thanne
 how many degrees thy rewle is areised
 fro the litel crois up-on thyn est line, and
 tak ther the altitude of thy sonne. And
 10 in this same wyse maistow knowe by
 nighte the altitude of the mone, or of
 brightesterres. This chapitre is so general
 ever in oon, that ther nedith no more
 declaracion; but forget it nat. And for
 15 the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

*3. To knowe every tyme of the day by light
 of the sonne, and every tyme of the night
 by the sterres fixe, and eke to knowe by
 night or by day the degree of any signe
 that assendeth on the Est Orisonte, which
 that is cleped communly the Assendent,
 or elles Oruscupum.*

Tak the altitude of the sonne whan
 thee list, as I have said; and set the
 degree of the sonne, in cas that it be
 by-forn the middel of the day, among
 5 thyn almikanteras on the est side of thyn
 Astrolabie; and yif it be after the middel
 of the day, set the degree of thy sonne
 up-on the west side; tak this manere of
 setting for a general rewle, ones for
 10 evere. And whan thou hast set the

degree of thy sonne up as many almi-
 kanteras of heyghte as was the altitude
 of the sonne taken by thy rewle, lay over
 thy label, up-on the degree of the sonne;
 and thanne wol the point of thy label 15
 sitten in the bordure, up-on the verrey
 tyd of the day. Ensample as thus: the
 year ofoure lord 1391, the 12 day of
 March, I wold knowe the tyd of the day.
 I took the altitude of my sonne, and 20
 fond that it was 25 degrees and 30 of
 minutes of heyghte in the bordure on the
 bak-syde. Tho turnede I myn Astrola-
 bie, and by-cause that it was by-forn
 midday, I turnede my riht, and sette the 25
 degree of the sonne, that is to seyn, the
 1 degree of Aries, on the right syde of
 myn Astrolabie, up-on that 25 degrees
 and 30 of minutes of heyghte among myn
 almikanteras; the leide I my label up-on 30
 the degree of my sonne, and fond the
 poynte of my label in the bordure, up-on
 a capital lettre that is cleped an X; the
 rekened I alle the capitalles lettres fro
 the lyne of midnight un-to this forseide 35
 lettre X, and fond that it was 9 of the
 klokke of the day. Tho loked I down
 up-on the est orisonte, and fond there
 the 20 degree of Geminis assending;
 which that I tok for myn assendent. 40
 And in this wyse hadde I the experience
 for ever-mo in which maner I sholde
 knowe the tyd of the day, and eek myn
 assendent. Tho wolde I wite the same
 night folwing the hour of the night, and 45
 wroughte in this wyse. Among an heep
 of sterres fixe, it lyked me for to take the
 altitude of the feire white sterre that is
 cleped Alhabor; and fond hir sitting on
 the west side of the lyne of midday, 50
 †18 degrees of heighte taken by my rewle
 on the bak-syde. Tho sette I the centre
 of this Alhabor up-on †18 degrees among
 myn almikanteras, up-on the west syde;
 by-cause that she was founden on the 55
 west syde. Tho leide I my label over
 the degree of the sonne that was de-
 scended under the weste orisonte, and
 rikened alle the lettres capitals fro the
 lyne of midday un-to the point of my 60
 label in the bordure; and fond that it

sed 48 of the clokke the space of
 sea. Tho loked I down up-on myn
 mte, and fond ther 43 degrees of
 ascending, whom I tok for myn
 nt; and thus lerned I to knowe
 ever in which manere I shuld
 the houre of the night and to
 ascendent; as verreyly as may be
 y so smal an instrument. But
 a, in general, wolde I warne thee
 re, ne mak thee nevere bold to
 ake a just ascendent by thyn
 his, or elles to have set justly
 re, whan any celestial body by
 that thou weneest governe thilke
 ben ney the south lyne; for trust
 han that the sonne is ney the
 mal lyne, the degree of the sonne
 i so longe consentrik up-on the
 sterres, that sothly thou shalt erre
 just ascendent. This same con-
 nsey I by the centre of any starre
 right; and more-over, by experi-
 wot wel that in oure orizonte,
 of the clokke un-to con of the
 in taking of a just ascendent in
 this Astrolabe, hit is to hard to
 I mene, from 11 of the clokke
 the houre of noon til con of the
 next folwing. And for the more
 cion, lo here thy figure.

special declaracion of the ascendent.

ascendent sothly, as wel in alle
 as in questions and elecciouns
 es, is a thing which that thise
 gians gretly observen; wharfore
 soth convenient, sin that I speke
 ascendent, to make of it special
 cionn. The ascendent sothly, to
 at the largeste, is thilke degree
 ascendeth at any of thise forseide
 upon the east orizonte; and there-
 that any planet ascende at that
 yme in thilke for-seide 4 degrees of
 ngitude, men seyn that thilke
 is in horoscopo. But sothly, the
 f the ascendent, that is to seyn,
 the hous or the east angle, is a thing
 brood and large. For after the
 of astrologiens, what celestial body

that is 5 degree above thilke degree that
 ascendeth, or with-in that noumbre, that 20
 is to seyn, nere the degree that ascendeth,
 yit rikne they thilke planet in the as-
 cendent. And what planete that is under
 thilke degree that ascendith the space
 of 45 degrees, yit seyn they that thilke 25
 planete is lyk to him that is in the hous
 of the ascendent; but sothly, yif he passe
 the bondes of thise forseide spaces, above
 or byneth, they seyn that the planete is
 falling fro the ascendent. Yit sein thise 30
 astrologiens, that the ascendent, and ake
 the lord of the ascendent, may be shapen
 for to be fortunat or infortunat, as thus:
 a fortunat ascendent clepen they whan
 that no wikkid planete, as Saturne or 35
 Mars, or elles the Tail of the Dragonn,
 is in the hous of the ascendent, ne that
 no wikkid planete have non aspecte of
 enenite up-on the ascendent; but they
 wol caste that they have a fortunat 40
 planete in hir ascendent and yit in his
 felicitie, and than sey they that it is wel.
 Forther-over, they seyn that the infor-
 tuning of an ascendent is the contrarie
 of thise forseide thinges. The lord of 45
 the ascendent, sey they, that he is for-
 tunat, whan he is in good place fro the
 ascendent as in angle; or in a succedent,
 where-as he is in his dignitee and con-
 comforted with frendly aspectes of planetes 50
 and wel receaved, and eak that he may
 seen the ascendent, and that he be nat
 retrograd ne combust, ne joigned with
 no shrews in the same signe; ne that he
 be nat in his descencioun, ne joigned with 55
 no planete in his discepcioun, ne have
 up-on him non aspecte infortunat; and
 than sey they that he is wel. Natheles,
 thise ben observaunces of judicial matiere
 and rytes of payens, in which my spirit 60
 ne hath no felth, ne no knowing of hir
 horoscopum; for they seyn that every
 signe is departed in 3 evene parties by
 10 degrees, and thilke porcioun they clepe
 a Face. And al-though that a planete 65
 have a latitude fro the ecliptik, yit sey
 some folk, so that the planete aryse in
 that same signe with any degree of the
 forseide face in which his longitude is

70 rekned, that yit is the planete in *horoscopo*, be it in nativite or in eleccioun, &c. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

5. *To knowe the verrey equacioun of the degree of the sonne, yif so be that it falle by-twix thyn Almikanteras.*

For as moche as the almikanteras in thyn Astrolabe been compounded by two and two, where-as some almikanteras in sondry Astrolabes ben compounded by 5 oon and oon, or elles by two and two, it is necessarie to thy larning to teche thee first to knowe and worke with thyn owne instrument. Wher-for, whan that the degree of thy sonne falleth by-twix 10 two almikanteras, or elles yif thyn almikanteras ben graven with over gret a point of a compas, (for bothe thise thinges may causen error as wel in knowing of the tyd of the day as of the 15 verrey assendent), thou most werken in this wyse. Set the degree of thy sonne up-on the heyer almikanteras of bothe, and waite wel wher as thin almury toucheth the bordure, and set 20 ther a prikke of inke. Set down agayn the degree of thy sonne up-on the nethere almikanteras of bothe, and set ther another prikke. Remewe thanne thyn almury in the bordure evene amid- 25 des bothe prikkes, and this wol lede justly the degree of thy sonne to sitte by-twix bothe almikanteras in his right place. Ley thanne thy label over the degree of thy sonne; and find in the 30 bordure the verrey tyde of the day or of the night. And as verreyly shaltow finde up-on thyn est orizonte thyn assendent. And for more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

6. *To knowe the spring of the dawing and the ends of the evening, the which ben called the two crepusculis:*

Set the nadir of thy sonne up-on 18 degrees of heighte among thyn almikanteras on the west syde, and ley thy label on the degree of thy sonne, and thanne 5 shal the poynt of thy label schewe the spring of day. Also set the nadir of thy

sonne up-on 18 degrees of heighte among thyn almikanteras on the est side, and ley over thy label up-on the degree of the sonne, and with the point of thy label 10 find in the bordure the ende of the evening, that is, verrey night. The nadir of the sonne is thilke degree that is opposit to the degree of the sonne, in the seven the signe, as thus: every degree 15 of Aries by ordre is nadir to every degree of Libra by ordre; and Taurus to Scorpion; Gemini to Sagittare; Cancer to Capricorne; Leo to Aquarie; Virgo to Pices; and yif any degree in thy zodiak 20 be dirk, his nadir shal declare him. And for the more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

7. *To knowe the arch of the day, that some folk callen the day artificial, from the sonne arysing til hit go to reste.*

Set the degree of thy sonne up-on thyn est orizonte, and ley thy label on the degree of the sonne, and at the poynt of thy label in the bordure set a prikke. Turn thanne thy riet aboute til the 5 degree of the sonne sit up-on the west orizonte, and ley thy label up-on the same degree of the sonne, and at the point of thy label set a-nother prikke. Rakne thanne the quantitee of tyme in 10 the bordure by-twix bothe prikkes, and tak ther thyn ark of the day. The remenant of the bordure under the orizonte is the ark of the night. Thus maistow rekne bothe arches, or every porcion, 15 of whether that thee lyketh. And by this manere of wyrking maistow see how longe that any sterre fix dwelleth a-bove the erthe, fro tyme that he ryseth til he go to reste. But the day natural, that 20 is to seyn 24 houres, is the revolucioun of the equinoxial with as moche partie of the zodiak as the sonne of his propre moevinge passeth in the mene whyle. And for the more declaracioun, lo here 25 thy figure.

8. *To turn the houres in-equales in houres equales.*

Knowe the nombre of the degrees in the houres in-equales, and departe hem

by 15, and tak ther thyn houres equales. And for the more declaracioun, lo here
5 thy figure.

9. *To knowe the quantitee of the day vulgar, that is to seyn, from spring of the day un-to verrey night.*

Know the quantitee of thy crepusculis, as I have taught in the chapitre bi-forn, and adde hem to the arch of thy day artificial; and tak ther the space of alle
5 the hole day vulgar, un-to verrey night. The same manere maystow worke, to knowe the quantitee of the vulgar night. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

10. *To knowe the quantitee of houres inequales by day.*

Understond wel, that thise houres inequales ben cleped houres of planetes, and understond wel that som-tyme ben they lengere by day than by night, and
5 som-tyme the contrarie. But understond wel, that evermo, generally, the hour in-equal of the day with the hour in-equal of the night contenen 30 degrees of the bordure, whiche bordure is ever-mo
10 answering to the degrees of the equinoxial; wher-for departe the arch of the day artificial in 12, and tak ther the quantitee of the hours in-equal by day. And yif thou abate the quantitee of the
15 hours in-equal by daye out of 30, than shal the remenant that levethe performe the hours in-equal by night. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

11. *To knowe the quantitee of houres equales.*

The quantitee of houres equales, that is to seyn, the houres of the klokke, ben departed by 15 degrees al-redy in the bordure of thyn Astrolabe, as wel by
5 night as by day, generally for evere. What nedeth more declaracioun? Wher-for, whan thee list to know how manye houres of the klokke ben passed, or any part of any of thise houres that ben
10 passed, or elles how many houres or parties of houres ben to come, fro swich a tyme to swich a tyme, by day or by night, knowe the degree of thy sonne,

and ley thy label on it; turne thy riet aboute joyntly with thy label, and with 15 the point of it rekne in the bordure fro the sonne aryse un-to the same place ther thou desirest, by day as by night. This conclusioun wol I declare in the laste chapitre of the 4 partie of this tretis 20 so openly, that ther shal lakke no worde that nedeth to the declaracioun. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

12. *Special declaracioun of the houres of planetes.*

Understond wel, that evere-mo, fro the arysing of the sonne til it go to reste, the nadir of the sonne shal shewe the houre of the planeta, and fro that tyme forward
al the night til the sonne aryse; than 5 shal the verrey degree of the sonne shewe the houre of the planeta. Ensample as thus. The 13 day of March fil up-on a Saterdag per aventure, and, at the arising of the sonne, I fond the secunde 10 degree of Aries sitting up-on myn est orizonte, al-be-it that it was but lite; than fond I the 2 degree of Libra, nadir of my sonne, descending on my west orizonte, up-on which west orizonte every 15 day generally, at the sonne ariste, entreth the houre of any planeta, after which planeta the day bereth his name, and endeth in the nexte stryk of the plate under the forseide west orizonte; and 20
evere, as the sonne climbeth uppere and uppere, so goth his nadir donnere and donnere, teching by swich strykes the houres of planetes by ordre as they sitten in the hevne. The first hours in-equal 25 of every Saterdag is to Saturne; and the secunde, to Jupiter; the 3, to Mars, the 4, to the Sonne; the 5, to Venus; the 6, to Mercurius; the 7, to the Mone, and thanne agayn, the 8 is to Saturne; the 9, 30 to Jupiter; the 10, to Mars; the 11, to the Sonne; the 12, to Venus; and now is my sonne gon to reste as for that Saterdag. Thanne sheweth the verrey degree of the sonne the houre of Mercurie 35 entring under my west orizonte at eve; and next him succedeth the Mone; and so

forth by ordre, planete after planete, in
 40 sonne aryse. Now ryseth the sonne that
 Sondag by the morwe; and the nadir of
 the sonne, up-on the west orizonte,
 sheweth me the entring of the houre of
 the forseide sonne. And in this maner
 45 succedeth planete under planete, fro
 Saturne un-to the Mone, and fro the
 Mone up a-gayn to Saturne, houre after
 houre generally. And thus knowe I this
 conclusioun. And for the more declara-
 50 cioun, lo here the figure.

18. *To knowe the altitude of the sonne in
 middes of the day, that is cleped the
 altitude meridian.*

Set the degree of the sonne up-on the
 lyne meridional, and rikene how many
 degrees of almikanteras ben by-twixe
 thyn est orizonte and the degree of the
 5 sonne. And tak ther thyn altitude
 meridian; this is to seyne, the heyest of
 the sonne as for that day. So maystow
 knowe in the same lyne, the heyest
 cours that any sterre fix climbeth by
 10 night; this is to seyn, that whan any
 sterre fix is passed the lyne meridional,
 than by-ginneth it to descende, and so
 doth the sonne. And for the more
 declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

14. *To knowe the degree of the sonne by
 thy riet, for a maner curiositee, &c.*

Sek bysily with thy rewle the heyest
 of the sonne in midde of the day; turne
 thanne thyn Astrolabie, and with a
 prikke of ink marke the nombre of that
 5 same altitude in the lyne meridional.
 Turne thanne thy riet aboute til thou
 fynde a degree of thy zodiak acord-
 ing with the prikke, this is to seyn, sittinge
 on the prikke; and in sooth, thou shalt
 10 finde but two degrees in al the zodiak
 of that condicioun; and yit thilke two
 degrees ben in diverse signes; than
 maistow lightly by the sesoun of the yere
 knowe the signe in whiche that is the
 15 sonne. And for the more declaracioun,
 lo here thy figure.

15. *To know which day is lyt to which day
 as of lengthe, &c.*

Loke whiche degrees ben y-lyke fer fro
 the hevedes of Cancer and Capricorn;
 and lok, whan the sonne is in any of
 thilke degrees, than ben the dayes y-lyke
 of lengthe. This is to seyn, that as long 5
 is that day in that monthe, as was swich
 a day in swich a month; ther varieth
 but lite. Also, yif thou take two dayes
 naturally in the yere y-lyke fer fro eyther
 pointe of the equinoxial in the opposit 10
 parties, than as long is the day artificial
 of that on day as is the night of that
 othere, and the contrarie. And for the
 more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

16. *This chapitre is a maner declaracioun
 to conclusiouns that folowen.*

Understond wel that thy zodiak is
 departid in two halfe cercles, as fro the
 heved of Capricorne un-to the heved of
 Cancer; and agaynward fro the heved of
 Cancer un-to the heved of Capricorne. 5
 The heved of Capricorne is the lowest
 point, wher-as the sonne goth in winter;
 and the heved of Cancer is the heyest
 point, in whiche the sonne goth in somer.
 And ther-for understond wel, that any 10
 two degrees that ben y-lyke fer fro any
 of these two hevedes, truste wel that
 thilke two degrees ben of y-lyke decli-
 nacioun, be it southward or northward;
 and the dayes of hem ben y-lyke of 15
 lengthe, and the nightes also; and the
 shadwes y-lyke, and the altitudes y-lyke
 at midday for evere. And for more
 declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

17. *To knowe the verrey degree of any
 maner sterre straunge or unstraunge after
 his longitude, though he be indeterminat
 in thyn Astrolabie; sothly to the trouthe,
 thus he shal be knowe.*

Tak the altitude of this sterre whan he
 is on the est side of the lyne meridional,
 as ney as thou mayst gesse; and tak
 an assendent a-non right by som maner
 sterre fix which that thou knowest; and 5
 for-get nat the altitude of the firste sterre,
 ne thyn assendent. And whan that this
 is don, espye diligently whan this same

firste sterre passeth any-thing the south
westward, and hath him a-non right in
the same nombre of altitude on the
west side of this lyne meridional as he
was caught on the east side; and tak
a newe ascendent a-non right by som
maner sterre fixe which that thou know-
est; and forget nat this secounde as-
cendent. And when that this is don,
rikne thanne how manye degrees ben
by-twize the firste ascendent and the
seconde ascendent, and rikne wel the
middeldegree by-twene bothe ascendentes,
and set thilke middel degree up-on thin
east orizonte; and waite thanne what
degree that sit up-on the lyne meri-
dional, and tak ther the varrey degree
of the ecliptik in which the sterre stond-
eth for the tyme. For in the ecliptik
is the longitude of a celestial body
rekened, evens fro the heved of Aries
un-to the ende of Pisces. And his latitude
is rikned after the quantites of his decli-
nacion, north or south to-wards the
poles of this world; as thus. Yif it be
of the sonne or of any fixe sterre, rekena
his latitude or his declinacioun fro the
equinoxial cercle; and yif it be of a
planete, rekne than the quantites of his
latitude fro the ecliptik lyne. Al-be-it
so that fro the equinoxial may the decli-
nacion or the latitude of any body cele-
stial be rikned, after the site north or
south, and after the quantites of his de-
clinacion. And right so may the latitude
or the declinacion of any body celestial,
save only of the sonne, after his site
north or south, and after the quantites
of his declinacioun, be rekned fro the
ecliptik lyne, fro which lyne alle planetes
som tyme declynen north or south, save
only the for-seide sonne. And for the
more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

18. *To knowe the degrees of the longitudes
of fixe sterres after that they ben deter-
mined in thin Astrolabe, yif so be that
they ben trevely set.*

Set the centre of the sterre up-on the
lyne meridional, and tak keep of thy
zodiak, and loke what degree of any signe

that sit on the same lyne meridional at
that same tyme, and tak the degree in
which the sterre standeth; and with
that same degree comth that same sterre
un-to that same lyne fro the orizonte.
And for more declaracioun, lo here thy
figure

19. *To knowe with which degree of the zodiak
any sterre fixe in thin Astrolabe aryeth
up-on the east orizonte, al-though his dwell-
ing be in a-nother signe.*

Set the centre of the sterre up-on the
east orizonte, and loke what degree of any
signe that sit up-on the same orizonte at
that same tyme. And understand wel,
that with that same degree aryeth that
same sterre; and this merveyllous arysing
with a strange degree in another signe
is by-cause that the latitude of the sterre
fix is either north or south fro the equi-
noxial. But sothly, the latitudes of
planetes ben comunly rekned fro the
ecliptik, bi-cause that non of hem de-
clineth but fewe degrees out fro the brede
of the zodiak. And tak good keep of
this chapitre of arysing of the celestial
bodies; for truste wel, that neyther mone
ne sterre as in oure embelif orizonte
aryeth with that same degree of his
longitude, save in oo cas, and that is,
when they have no latitude fro the
ecliptik lyne. But natheles, som tyme
is everiche of these planetes under the
same lyne. And for more declaracioun,
lo here thy figure.

20. *To knowe the declinacioun of any degree
in the zodiak fro the equinoxial cercle, &c.*

Set the degree of any signe up-on the
lyne meridional, and rikne his altitude
in almikanteras fro the east orizonte up
to the same degree set in the for-seide
lyne, and set ther a prikke. Turne up
thanne thy rist, and set the heved of
Aries or Libra in the same meridional
lyne, and set ther a-nother prikke. And
when that this is don, considere the
altitudes of hem bothe; for sothly the
difference of thilke altitudes is the decli-
nacion of thilke degree fro the equinoxial.
And yif so be that thilke degree be north-

ward fro the equinoxial, than is his
 15 declinacion north; yif it be southward,
 than is it south. And for the more
 declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

21. To knowe for what latitude in any
 region the almikanteras of any table
 ben compounded.

Rikne how manye degrees of almikan-
 teras, in the meridional lyne, be fro the
 circle equinoxial un-to the senith; or
 elles fro the pool artik un-to the north
 5 orizonte; and for so gret a latitude or for
 so smal a latitude is the table compounded.
 And for more declaracion, lo here thy
 figure.

22. To knowe in special the latitude of
 oure countrey, I mene after the latitude
 of Oxenford, and the heighte of oure pol.

Understond wel, that as far is the heved
 of Aries or Libra in the equinoxial from
 oure orizonte as is the senith from the pole
 artik; and as hey is the pol artik fro the
 5 orizonte, as the equinoxial is far fro the
 senith. I prove it thus by the latitude
 of Oxenford. Understond wel, that the
 heyghte of oure pool artik fro oure north
 orizonte is 51 degrees and 50 minutes;
 10 than is the senith from oure pool artik
 38 degrees and 10 minutes; than is the
 equinoxial from oure senith 51 degrees
 and 50 minutes, than is oure south
 orizonte from oure equinoxial 38 degrees
 15 and 10 minutes. Understond wel this
 rekning. Also for-get nat that the senith
 is 90 degrees of heyghte fro the orizonte,
 and oure equinoxial is 90 degrees from
 oure pool artik. Also this shorte rowle
 20 is soth, that the latitude of any place in
 a region is the distance fro the senith
 unto the equinoxial. And for more
 declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

23. To prove evidently the latitude of any
 place in a region, by the prove of the
 heyghte of the pol artik in that same
 place.

In some winters night, whan the fir-
 mament is clere and thikke-sterrid, waite
 a tyme til that any sterre fix sit lyne-right
 perpendicular over the pol artik, and
 5 clepe that sterre A. And wayte a-nother

sterre that sit lyne-right under A, and
 under the pol, and clepe that sterre F.
 And understond wel, that F is nat con-
 sidered but only to declare that A sit
 evene overe the pool. Tak thanne a-noon 20
 right the altitude of A from the orizonte,
 and forget it nat. Let A and F go furwel
 til agayns the dawning a gret whyle;
 and come thanne agayn, and abyde til
 that A is evene under the pol and under 15
 F; for sothly, than wol F sitte over the
 pool, and A wol sitte under the pool.
 Tak than eft-sones the altitude of A from
 the orizonte, and note as wel his seconde
 altitude as his firste altitude; and whan 20
 that this is don, rikne how manye degrees
 that the firste altitude of A exceedeth
 his seconde altitude, and tak half thilke
 pordoun that is exceeded, and add it to
 his seconde altitude; and tak ther the 25
 elevacioun of thy pool, and eke the
 latitude of thy region. For thise two
 ben of a nombre; this is to seyn, as
 many degrees as thy pool is elevat, so
 muchel is the latitude of the region. 30
 Ensample as thus: par aventure, the
 altitude of A in the evening is 56 degrees
 of heyghte. Than wol his seconde altitude
 or the dawning be 48, that is 8 lasses than
 56, that was his firste altitude at even. 35
 Take thanne the half of 8, and add it to
 48, that was his seconde altitude, and
 than hastow 52. Now hastow the heyghte
 of thy pol, and the latitude of the region.
 But understond wel, that to prove this 40
 conclusioun and many a-nother fair con-
 clusioun, thou most have a plomet hang-
 ing on a lyne beyer than thin heved
 on a perche; and thilke lyne mot
 hange evene perpendicular by-twixe the 45
 pool and thyn eye; and thanne shaltow
 seen yif A sitte evene over the pool and
 over F at evene; and also yif F sitte
 evene over the pool and over A or day.
 And for more declaracion, lo here thy 50
 figure.

24. Another conclusioun to prove the heighte
 of the pool artik fro the orizonte.

Tak any sterre fixe that nevere dis-
 sendeth under the orizonte in thilke

region, and considere his heyest altitude
and his lowest altitude fro the orizonte;
5 and make a nombre of bothe thise alti-
tudes. Tak thanne and abate half that
nombre, and tak ther the elevacioun of
the pol artik in that same region. And
for more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

25. *A nother conclusioun to prove the
latitude of the region, &c.*

Understond wel that the latitude of
any place in a region is verreyly the
space by-twix the senith of hem that
dwellen there and the equinoxial cerke,
5 north or south, taking the mesure in
the meridional lyne, as sheweth in the
almikantaras of thyn Astrolabie. And
thilke space is as moche as the pol artik
is hey in the same place fro the orizonte.
10 And than is the depressioun of the pol
antartik, that is to seyn, than is the pol
antartik by-nethe the orizonte, the same
quantite of space, neither more ne lesse.
Thanne, yif thou desire to knowe this
15 latitude of the region, tak the altitude
of the sonne in the middel of the day,
whan the sonne is in the hevedes of
Aries or of Libra, (for thanne moeveth
the sonne in the lyne equinoxial); and
20 abate the nombre of that same sonnes
altitude out of 90, and thanne is the
remenant of the nombre that levethe
the latitude of the region. As thus:
I suppose that the sonne is thilke day
25 at noon 38 degrees and 10 minutes of
heyghte. Abate thanne thise degrees and
minutes out of 90; so levethe there 51
degrees and 50 minutes, the latitude.
I say nat this but for ensample; for wel
30 I wot the latitude of Oxenforde is certein
minutes lesse, as I mighte prove. Now
yif so be that thee semeth to long a tary-
inge, to abyde til that the sonne be in
the hevedes of Aries or of Libra, thanne
35 waite whan the sonne is in any other
degree of the zodiak, and considere the
degree of his declinacion fro the equi-
noxial lyne; and yif it so be that the
sonnes declinacion be northward fro the
40 equinoxial, abate thanne fro the sonnes
altitude at noon the nombre of his de-

clinacion, and thanne hastow the heyghte
of the hevedes of Aries and Libra. As
thus: my sonne is, par aventure, in the
†firste degree of Leoun, †38 degrees and 45
10 minutes of heyghte at noon and his
declinacion is almost †20 degrees north-
ward fro the equinoxial; abate thanne
thilke †20 degrees of declinacion out
of the altitude at noon, than levethe thee 50
38 degrees and odder minutes; lo ther the
heved of Aries or Libra, and thyn equi-
noxial in that region. Also yif so be
that the sonnes declinacioun be south-
ward fro the equinoxial, adde thanne 55
thilke declinacion to the altitude of the
sonne at noon; and tak ther the hevedes
of Aries and Libra, and thyn equinoxial.
Abate thanne the heyghte of the equi-
noxial out of 90 degrees, and thanne 60
leveth there the distans of the pole, 51
degrees and 50 minutes, of that region
fro the equinoxial. Or elles, yif thee
lest, take the heyest altitude fro the
equinoxial of any sterre fix that thou 65
knowest, and tak his nethere elongacioun
lengthing fro the same equinoxial lyne,
and wirke in the maner forsaide. And
for more declaracion, lo here thy figure.

26. *Declaracioun of the ascendoun of
signes, &c.*

The excellence of the spere solide,
amonges other noble conclusiouns, shew-
eth manifeste the diverse ascendaciouns
of signes in diverse places, as wel in the
righte cerke as in the embelif cerke. 5
Thise auctours wryten that thilke signe
is cleped of right ascendacioun, with which
more part of the cerke equinoxial and
lesse part of the zodiak ascendeth; and
thilke signe ascendeth embelif, with 10
whiche lesse part of the equinoxial and
more part of the zodiak ascendeth.
Further-over they seyn, that in thilke
cuntry where as the senith of hem that
dwellen there is in the equinoxial lyne, 15
and her orizonte passing by the poles
of this worlde, thilke folke han this right
cerke and the right orizonte; and evere-
mo the arch of the day and the arch of the
night is ther y-like long, and the sonne 20

twyes every yeer passinge thorow the senith of her heved; and two someres and two winteres in a yeer han this forseide poeple. And the almikanteras
 25 in her Astrolabies ben streighte as a lyne, so as sheweth in this figure. The utilite to knowe the assenciouns in the righte cercele is this: truste wel that by media-
 30 logiens, by hir tables and hir instrumentz, knowen verreyly the assencioun of every degree and minut in al the zodiak, as shal be shewed. And *nota*, that this forseid righte orisonte, that is cleped
 35 *orison rectum*, divydeth the equinoxial in-to right angles; and the embelif orisonte, wher-as the pol is enhansed up-on the orisonte, overkerveth the equinoxial in embelif angles, as sheweth in the figure.
 40 And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

27. *This is the conclusioun to knowe the assenciouns of signes in the right cercele, that is, circulus directus, &c.*

Set the heved of what signe thee liste to knowe his assending in the right cercele up-on the lyne meridional; and waite wher thyn almury toucheth the bordure,
 5 and set ther a prikke. Turne thanne thy riēt westward til that the ende of the forseide signe sitte up-on the meridional lyne; and eft-sones waite wher thyn almury toucheth the bordure, and set
 10 ther another prikke. Rikne thanne the nombre of degrees in the bordure by-twixe bothe prikkes, and tak the assencioun of the signe in the right cercele. And thus maystow wyrke with every
 15 porcioun of thy zodiak, &c. And for the more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

28. *To knowe the assencions of signes in the embelif cercele in every regioun, I mene, in circulo obliquo.*

Set the heved of the signe which as thee list to knowe his ascensioun up-on the est orisonte, and waite wher thyn almury toucheth the bordure, and set
 5 ther a prikke. Turne thanne thy riet upward til that the ende of the same

signe sitte up-on the est orisonte, and waite eft-sones wher as thyn almury toucheth the bordure, and set ther a-nother prikke. Rikne thanne the
 10 noubre of degrees in the bordure by-twixe bothe prikkes, and tak ther the assencioun of the signe in the embelif cercele. And understond wel, that alle signes in thy zodiak, fro the heved of
 15 Aries unto the ende of Virgo, ben cleped signes of the north fro the equinoxial; and these signes arysen by-twixe the verrey est and the verrey north in oure orisonte generally for evere. And alle
 20 signes fro the heved of Libra un-to the ende of Pisces ben cleped signes of the south fro the equinoxial; and thise signes arysen over-mo by-twixe the verrey est and the verrey south in oure orisonte.
 25 Also every signe by-twixe the heved of Capricorne un-to the ende of Geminis aryseth on oure orisonte in lasse than two houres equales; and thise same signes, fro the heved of Capricorne un-to the
 30 ende of Geminis, ben cleped 'tortuos signes' or 'croked signes,' for they arisen embelif on oure orisonte; and thise crokede signes ben obedient to the signes that ben of right assencioun. The signes
 35 of right assencioun ben fro the heved of Cancer to the fende of Sagittare; and thise signes arysen more upright, and they ben called eke sovereyn signes; and overich of hem aryseth in more space
 40 than in two houres. Of which signes, Gemini obeyeth to Cancer; and Taurus to Leo; Aries to Virgo; Pisces to Libra; Aquarius to Scorioun; and Capricorne to Sagittare. And thus ever-mo two
 45 signes, that ben y-lyke fer fro the heved of Capricorne, obeyen everich of hem til other. And for more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

29. *To knowe justly the foure quarters of the world, as est, west, north, and south.*

Take the altitude of thy sonne whan thee list, and note wel the quarter of the world in which the sonne is for the tyme by the azimuth. Turne thanne thyn Astrolabe, and set the degree of the 5

sonne in the almikantoras of his altitude, on thilke side that the sonne stant, as is the manere in taking of houres; and ley thy label on the degree of the sonne, and rikene how many degrees of the bordure ben by-twixe the lyne meridional and the point of thy label; and note wel that nombre. Turne thanne a-gayn thyn Astrolabie, and set the point of thy gret rewle, ther thou takest thyne altitudes, up-on as many degrees in his bordure fro his meridional as was the point of thy label fro the lyne meridional on the wombe-ryde. Tak thanne thyn Astrolabie with bothe handes sadly and aley, and let the sonne shyne thorow bothe holes of thy rewle; and aleyly, in thilke shyninge, let thyn Astrolabie couch adoun evene up-on a smothe ground, and thanne wol the verrey lyne meridional of thyn Astrolabie lye evene south, and the est lyne wole lye est, and the west lyne west, and north lyne north, so that thou werke softly and avisely in the couching; and thus hastow the 4 quarters of the firmament. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

80. To knowe the altitude of planetes fro the way of the sonne, whether so they be north or south fro the forside way.

Lok whan that a planete is in the lyne meridional, yif that hir altitude be of the same heyghte that is the degree of the sonne for that day, and than is the planete in the verrey way of the sonne, and hath no latitude. And yif the altitude of the planete be heyere than the degree of the sonne, than is the planete north fro the way of the sonne swich a quantite of latitude as sheweth by thyn almikanteras. And yif the altitude of the planete be lasses than the degree of the sonne, thanne is the planete south fro the way of the sonne swich a quantite of latitude as sheweth by thyn almikanteras. This is to seyn, fro the way wher-as the sonne wente thilke day, but nat from the way of the sonne in every place of the zodiak. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

81. To knowe the senith of the arysing of the sonne, this is to seyn, the partie of the orizonte in which that the sonne aryseth.

Thou most first considere that the sonne aryseth nat al-wey verrey est, but some tyme by north the est, and some tyme by southe the est. Sothly, the sonne aryseth never-mo verrey est in oure orizonte, but he be in the heved of Aries or Libra. Now is thyn orizonte departed in 24 parties by thy aximutz, in significacion of 24 parties of the world, al-be-it so that shipmen rikne thilke parties in 32. Thanne is ther no more but waite in which aximut that thy sonne entreth at his arysing; and take ther the senith of the arysing of the sonne. The manere of the devisioun of thyn Astrolabie is this; I mene, as in this case. First is it divided in 4 plages principals with the lyne that goth from est to west, and than with another lyne that goth fro south to north. Than is it divided in smale parties of aximutz, as est, and est by southe, whereas is the firste aximut above the est lyne; and so forth, fro partie to partie, til that thou come agayn un-to the est lyne. Thus maistow understond also the senith of any sterre, in which partie he ryseth, &c. And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

82. To knowe in which partie of the firmament is the conjunccioun.

Considere the tyme of the conjunccion by thy kalender, as thus; lok how many houres thilke conjunccion is fro the mid-day of the day precedent, as sheweth by the canoun of thy kalender. Rikne thanne thilke nombre of houres in the bordure of thyn Astrolabie, as thou art wont to do in knowing of the houres of the day or of the night; and ley thy label over the degree of the sonne, and thanne wol the point of thy label sitte up-on the hour of the conjunccion. Loke thanne in which aximut the degree of thy sonne sitteth, and in that partie of the firmament is the conjunccioun. And for the more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

33. *To knowe the south of the altitude of the sonne, &c.*

This is no more to seyn but any tyme of the day tak the altitude of the sonne; and by the azimuth in which he stondeth, maystou seen in which partie of the firmament he is. And in the same wyse
5 maystou seen, by the night, of any sterre, whether the sterre sitte east or west or north, or any partie by-twene, after the name of the azimuth in which is the sterre.
10 And for the more declaracioun, lo here the figure.

34. *To knowe sothly the degree of the longitude of the mone, or of any planete that hath no latitude for the tyme fro the ecliptik lyne.*

Tak the altitude of the mone, and rikne thyn altitude up among thyne almikanteras on which syde that the mone stande; and set there a prikke. Tak
5 thenne anon-right, up-on the mones syde, the altitude of any sterre fix which that thou knowest, and set his centre up-on his altitude among thyn almikanteras ther the sterre is founde. Waite thanne
10 which degree of the zodiak toucheth the prikke of the altitude of the mone, and tak ther the degree in which the mone standeth. This conclusioun is verrey sooth, yif the sterres in thyn Astrolabie
15 stonden after the trowthe; of comune, tretis of Astrolabie ne make non exceptioun whether the mone have latitude, or non; ne on whether syde of the mone the altitude of the sterre fix be taken. And
20 note, that yif the mone shewe himself by light of day, than maystow wyrke this same conclusioun by the sonne, as wel as by the fix sterre. And for the more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

35. *This is the workings of the conclusioun, to knowe yif that any planete be directe or retrograde.*

Tak the altitude of any sterre that is cleped a planete, and note it wel. And tak sek anon the altitude of any sterre fix that thou knowest, and note it wel
5 also. Come thanne agayn the thridde or

the ferthe night next folwing; for thanne shaltow aperceyve wel the mooving of a planete, whether so he moove forthward or bakward. Awaite wel thanne when that thy sterre fix is in the same altitude that she was when thou toke hir firste altitude; and tak than eftsones the altitude of the forsaide planete, and note it wel. For trust wel, yif so be that the planete be on the right syde of the meridional lyne, so that his seconde altitude be lesse than his firste altitude was, thanne is the planete directe. And yif he be on the west syde in that condicion, thanne is he retrograd. And yif so be that this planete be up-on the east syde when his altitude is taken, so that his seconde altitude be more than his firste altitude, thanne is he retrograde, and yif he be on the west syde, than is he directe. But the contrarie of these parties is of the cours of the mone; for sothly, the mone moeveth the contrarie from othere planetes as in hir episicle, but in non other manere. And for the more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

36. *The conclusions of equacions of houses, after the Astrolabie, &c.*

Set the by-ginning of the degree that ascendeth up-on the ende of the 8 houre inequal; thanne wol the by-ginning of the 2 hous sitte up-on the lyne of midnight. Remove thanne the degree that ascendeth, and set him on the ende of the 10 hour inequal, and thanne wol the by-ginning of the 3 hous sitte up-on the midnight lyne. Bring up agayn the same degree that ascendeth first, and set him up-on the orizonte; and thanne wol the beginning of the 4 hous sitte up-on the lyne of midnight. Tak thanne the nadir of the degree that first ascendeth, and set him on the ende of the 2 houre inequal, and thanne wol the beginning of the 5 hous sitte up-on the lyne of midnight; set thanne the nadir of the ascendent on the ende of the 4 houre, than wol the beginning of the 6 hous sitte on the midnight lyne. The beginning of the 7 hous is nadir of the ascendent, and

the beginning of the 8 hous is nadir of the 2; and the beginning of the 9 hous is nadir of the 3; and the beginning of the 10 hous is the nadir of the 4; and the beginning of the 11 hous is nadir of the 5; and the beginning of the 12 hous is nadir of the 6. And for the more declaracion, lo here the figure.

87. *A-nother manere of equacione of houses by the Astrolabe.*

Tak thyn assendent, and thanne hastow thy 4 angles; for wel thou wost that the opposit of thyn assendent, that is to seyn, thy beginning of the 7 hous, sit up-on the west orizonte; and the beginning of the 10 hous sit up-on the lyne meridional; and his opposit up-on the lyne of midnight. Thanne ley thy label over the degree that assendeth, and rekne fro the point of thy label alle the degrees in the bordure, til thou come to the meridional lyne; and departe alle thilke degrees in 3 evene parties, and take the evene equacion of 3; for ley thy label over everich of 3 parties, and than maistow see by thy label in which degree of the zodiak [is] the beginning of everich of thise same houses fro the assendent: that is to seyn, the beginning of the 12 house next above thyn assendent; and thanne the beginning of the 11 house; and thanne the 10, up-on the meridional lyne; as I first seide. The same wyse wirke thou fro the assendent down to the lyne of midnight; and thanne thus hastow other 3 houses, that is to seyn, the beginning of the 2, and the 3, and the 4 houses; thanne is the nadir of thise 3 houses the beginning of the 3 houses that folwen. And for the more declaracion, lo here thy figure.

88. *To finde the lyne meridional to dwellle in any certein place.*

Tak a rond plate of metal; for warping, the brodere the better; and make ther-upon a just compas, a lite with-in the bordure; and ley this ronde plate up-on an evene grond, or on an evene ston, or on an evene stok fix in the gronde; and

ley it even by a level. And in centre of the compas stike an evene pin or a wyr upright; the smallere the better. Set thy pin by a plom-rawle evene upright; and let this pin be no lenger than a quarter of the diametre of thy compas, fro the centre. And waite bisily aboute 10 or 11 of the klokke; and whan the sonne shyneth, whan the shadwe of the pin entreth any-thing with-in the cercle of thy plate an heer-mele, and mark ther a prikke with inke. Abyde thanne stille waiting on the sonne after: of the klokke, til that the schadwe of the wyr or of the pin passe any-thing out of the cercle of the compas, be it never so lyte; and set ther a-nother prikke of inke. Take than a compas, and mesure evene the middel by-twixe bothe prikke; and set ther a prikke. Take thanne a rewle, and draw a stryke, evene a-lyne fro the pin un-to the middel prikke, and tak ther thy lyne meridional for evermo, as in that same place. And yif thou drawe a cros-lyne over-thwart the compas, justly over the lyne meridional, than hastow est and west and south; and, par consequence, than the nadir of the south lyne is the north lyne. And for more declaracion, lo here thy figure.

89. *Description of the meridional lyne, of longitudes, and latitudes of citees and townes from on to a-nother of clymatz.*

This lyne meridional is but a maner descripcion of lyne imagined, that passeth upon the poles of this world and by the senith of oure heved. And hit isy-cleped the lyne meridional; for in what place that any maner man is at any tyme of the yeer, whan that the sonne by mooving of the firmament cometh to his verrey meridian place, than is hit verrey midday, that we clepen oure noon, as to thilke man; and therefore is it cleped the lyne of midday. And nota, for evermo, of 2 citees or of 2 townes, of whiche that a town aprocheth more toward the east than doth that other town, truste wel that thilke townes han diverse meridians. Nota also, that the arch of the equinoxial,

that is containyd or bounded by-twix the
 5 meridiann, is cleped the longitude of
 20 the toun. And yif so be that two tounes
 have y-lyke meridian, or oon meridian,
 then is the distance of hem bothe y-lyke
 for fro the east; and the contraria. And
 in this manere they change nat her
 15 meridian, but sothly they chaungen her
 alimkanteras; for the enhauncing of the
 pool and the distance of the soune. The
 longitude of a clymat is a lyne imagined
 fro east to west, y-lyke distant by-twene
 30 them alla. The latitude of a clymat is a
 lyne imagined from north to south the
 space of the erthe, fro the hyghening of
 the firste clymat unto the varrey ende of
 the same clymat, evens directe agayns
 35 the pole artik. Thus seyn some auctours;
 and somme of hem seyn that yif men
 clepen the latitude, they mene the arch
 meridian that is containyd or intercept
 by-twix the zenith and the equinoctial.
 40 Thanne sey they that the distaunce fro
 the equinoctial unto the ende of a clymat,
 evens agayns the pole artyk, is the lati-
 tude of a clymat for sothe. And for
 more declaracioun, lo here thy figure.

40. To knowe with which degree of the
 zodiak that any planete ascendith on the
 orizonte, whether so that his latitude be
 north or south.

Knowe by thyn almenak the degree of
 the ecliptik of any signe in which that
 the planete is rekned for to be, and that
 is cleped the degree of his longitude; and
 5 knowe also the degree of his latitude fro
 the ecliptik, north or south. And by
 thise samples folwinge in special, may-
 stow wirke † for sothe in every signe of
 the zodiak. The degree of the longitude,
 10 par aventure, of Venus or of another
 planete, was 6 of Capricorne, and the
 latitude of him was northward 2 degrees
 fro the ecliptik lyne. I tok a subtil com-
 pass, and cleped that oon poynt of my
 15 compass A, and that other poynt F. Than
 tok I the point of A, and set it in the
 ecliptik lyne evens in my zodiak, in the
 degree of the longitude of Venus, that is
 to seyn, in the 6 degree of Capricorne;

and thanne sette I the point of F upward 20
 in the same signe, bycause that the lati-
 tude was north, up-on the latitude of
 Venus, that is to seyn, in the 6 degree fro
 the heved of Capricorne; and thus have
 I 2 degrees by-twix my two prikkas. 25
 Than laide I down softly my compass,
 and sette the degree of the longitude
 up-on the orizonte; the tok I and wrode
 my label in maner of a payre tables to
 receyve distinctly the prikkas of my 30
 compass. The tok I this forewilde label,
 and laide it fix over the degree of my
 longitude; the tok I up my compass, and
 sette the point of A in the wax on my
 label, as evens as I coude gesse over the 35
 ecliptik lyne, in the ende of the longi-
 tude; and sette the point of F endlang
 in my label up-on the space of the lati-
 tude, inwards and over the zodiak, that
 is to seyn, north-ward fro the ecliptik. 40
 Than laide I down my compass, and loke
 wel in the way upon the prikke of A and
 of F; the turned I my riet til that the
 prikke of F sat up-on the orizonte; than
 saw I wel that the body of Venus, in hir 45
 latitude of 2 degrees septentrionalis,
 ascendid, in the ende of the 6 degree,
 in the heved of Capricorne. And note,
 that in the same maner maistow wirke
 with any latitude septentrional in alle 50
 signes; but sothly the latitude meridional
 of a planete in Capricorne may not be
 take, by-cause of the litel space by-twix
 the ecliptik and the bordure of the Astro-
 labie; but sothly, in alle other signes it 55
 may.

Also the degree, par aventure, of Jupi-
 ter or of a-nother planete, was in the
 first degree of Pisces in longitude, and
 his latitude was 3 degrees meridional; 60
 the tok I the point of A, and sette it in
 the firste degree of Pisces on the ecliptik,
 and thanne sette I the point of F down-
 ward in the same signe, by-cause that the
 latitude was south 3 degrees, that is to 65
 seyn, fro the heved of Pisces; and thus
 have I 3 degrees by-twix bothe prikkas;
 thanne sette I the degree of the longitude
 up-on the orizonte. The tok I my label,
 and laide it fix upon the degree of the 70

longitude; tho sette I the point of A on
my label, evane over the ecliptik lyne, in
the ende evane of the degree of the longi-
tude, and sette the point of F endlang in
75 my label the space of 3 degrees of the
latitude fro the zodiak, this is to seyn,
southward fro the ecliptik, toward the
bordure; and turned my riet til the
prikke of F sat up-on the orizonte;
80 thanne saw I wel that the body of
Jupiter, in his latitude of 3 degrees
meridional, ascended with 14 degrees of
Pisces in horoscopo. And in this maner
maistow wirke with any latitude meri-
85 dional, as I first seide, save in Capricorne.
And yif thou wolt playe this craft with

the arysing of the mone, loke thou rekne
wel hir cours houre by houre; for she ne
dwelleth nat in a degree of hir longitude
but a litel whyle, as thou wel knowest; 90
but natheles, yif thou rekne hir verreye
mooving by thy tables houre after houre,
thou shalt do wel y-now.

*Explicit tractatus de Conclusionibus Astro-
labii, compilatus per Galfridum Chau-
ciers ad Filium suum Lodovicum,
scolarem tunc temporis Oxonie, ac sub
tutela illius nobilissimi philosophi Ma-
gistri N. Strode, etc.*

* * * * *

SUPPLEMENTARY PROPOSITIONS.

41. Umbra Recta.

Yif it so be that thou wilt werke by
umbra recta, and thou may come to the
bas of the toure, in this maner thou
schalt werke. Tak the altitude of the
5 tour by bothe holes, so that thy rewle
ligge even in a poynt. Ensample as
thus: I see him thorw at the poynt of 4;
than mete I the space between me and
the tour, and I finde it 20 feet; than
10 beholde I how 4 is to 12, right so is the
space betwixe thee and the tour to the
altitude of the tour. For 4 is the thridde
part of 12, so is the space between thee
and the tour the thridde part of the
15 altitude of the tour; than thryes 20 feet
is the heyghte of the tour, with adding of
thyn owne persone to thyn eye. And
this rewle is so general in umbra recta,
fro the poynt of oon to 12. And yif thy
20 rewle falle upon 5, than is 5 12-partyes of
the heyght the space between thee and
the toure; with adding of thyn owne
heyght.

42. Umbra Versa.

Another maner of werkinge, by umbra
versa. Yif so be that thou may nat come

to the bas of the tour, I see him thorw
the nombre of 1, I sette ther a prikke at
my fote; than go I neer to the tour, and 5
I see him thorw at the poynt of 2, and
there I sette a-nother prikke; and I
beholde how 1 hath him to 12, and ther
finde I that it hath him twelfe sythes;
than beholde I how 2 hath him to 12, and 10
thou shalt finde it sixe sythes; than thou
shalt finde that as 12 above 6 is the
nombre of 6, right so is the space
between thy two prikkes the space of 6
tymes thyn altitude. And note, that at 15
the ferste altitude of 1, thou settest a
prikke; and afterward, whan thou seest
him at 2, ther thou settest an-other
prikke; than thou findest between two
prikkys 60 feet; than thou shalt finde 20
that 10 is the 6-party of 60. And then is
10 feet the altitude of the tour. For
other poyntis, yif it falle in umbra versa,
as thus: I sette cas it fall upon 7, and
at the secunde upon 7; than schalt thou 25
finde that 7 is 6 partyes of 12, and 3 is 4
partyes of 12; than passeth 6 4, by
nombre of 2; so is the space between two
prikkes twyes the heyghte of the tour
And yif the differens were thryes, than 30

shulde it be three tymes; and thus mayst thou werke fro 2 to 12, and yif it be 4, 4 tymes; or 5, 5 tymes, *et sic de ceteris*.

43. *Umbra Recta.*

An-other maner of wyrking be *umbra recta*. Yif it so be that thou mayst nat come to the haas of the tour, in this maner thou schalt werke. Sette thy rowle
 5 upon 1 till thou see the altitude, and sette at thy foot a prikke. Than sette thy rowle upon 2, and beholde what is the differense be-tween 1 and 2, and thou shalt finde that it is 1. Than mete the
 10 space be-tween two prikkes, and that is the 12 partie of the altitude of the tour. And yif ther were 2, it were the 6 partye, and yif ther were 3, the 4 partye, *et sic deinceps*. And note, yif it were 5, it were
 15 the 5 party of 12; and 7, 7 party of 12; and note, at the altitude of thy conclusion, adde the stature of thyn heyghte to thyn eye.

* * * * *

44. *Another maner conclusion, to knowe the mene mote and the argumentis of any planete. To knowe the mene mote and the argumentis of every planete fro yere to yere, from day to day, from houre to houre, and from smale fraccionis infinte.*

In this maner shalt thou worche: consider thy rote first, the whiche is made the beginning of the tables fro the yere of oure lord 1397, and entere hit in-to
 5 thy slate for the laste meridio of Decem-ber, and than consider the yere of oure lord, what is the date, and be-hold whether thy date be more or lasse than the yere 1397. And yf hit so be that hit
 10 be more, loke how many yeres hit passeth, and with so many entere into thy tables in the first lyne ther as is writen *anni collecti et expansi*. And loke where the same planet is written in the hede of thy
 15 table, and than loke what thou findest in directe of the same yere of oure lord whiche is passid, be hit 8, or 9, or 10, or

what nombre that evere it be, til the tyme that thou come to 20, or 40, or 60. And that thou findest in directe +wryte
 20 in thy slate under thy rote, and adde hit to-geder, and that is thy mene mote, for the laste meridian of the December, for the same yere whiche that thou hast purposed. And if hit so be that hit passe
 25 20, consider wel that fro 1 to 20 ben *anni expansi*, and fro 20 to 3000 ben *anni collecti*. and if thy nombres passe 20, than take that thou findest in directe of 20, and if hit be more, as 6 or 18, than take that
 30 thou findest in directe thero-of, that is to sayen, signes, degrees, minutes, and se-conds, and adde to-gedere un-to thy rote; and thus to make rote. And note, that if hit so be that the yere of oure lord
 35 be +lasse than the rote, which is the yere of oure lord 1397, than shalt thou wryte in the same wyse furst thy rote in thy slate, and after entere in-to thy table in the same yere that be lasse, as I taught
 40 be-fore, and than consider how many signes, degrees, minutes, and seconds thyn entringe contyneth. And so be that ther be 2 entrees, than adde hem to-geder, and after with-drawe hem from
 45 the rote, the yere of oure lord 1397; and the residue that leveth is thy mene mote fro the laste meridio of December, the whiche thou hast purposed, and if hit so be that thou wolt weten thy mene mote
 50 for any day, or for any fraccion of day, in this maner thou shalt worche. Make thy rote fro the laste day of Decembere in the maner as I have taught, and after-ward behold how many monethes, dayes,
 55 and houres ben passed from the meridio of Decembere, and with that entere with the laste moneth that is ful passed, and take that thou findest in directe of him, and wryte hit in thy slate; and entere
 60 with as many dayes as be more, and wryte that thou findest in directe of the same planete that thou worchest for; and in the same wyse in the table of houres, for houres that ben passed, and adde alle
 65 these to thy rote; and the residue is the mene mote for the same day and the same houre.

45. *Another manere to knowe the mene mote.*

When thou wilt make the mene mote of any planete to be by Arsechiales tables, take thy rote, the whiche is for the yere of oure lord 1397; and if so be that thy yere be passed the date, wryte that date, and than wryte the numbere of the yeres. Than with-drawe the yeres out of the yeres that ben passed that rote. Ex-
 10 sampl as thus: the yere of oure lord 1400, †I wolde witen, precise, my rote; than wroot I first 1400. And under that numbere I wrote a 1397; than withdraw I the laste numbere out of that, and than fond I the residue was 3 yere; I wiste
 15 that 3 yere was passed fro the rote, the whiche was written in my tables. Then after-ward soughte I in my tables the *annis collectis et expansis*, and amonge myn expance yeres fond I 3 yere. Than tok
 20 I alle the signes, degrees, and minutes, that I fond directe under the same planete that I wroughte for, and wroot so many signes, degrees, and minutes in my slate, and after-ward added I to signes,
 25 degrees, minutes, and secondes, the whiche I fond in my rote the yere of oure lord 1397; and kepte the residue; and than had I the mene mote for the laste day of Decembere. And if thou woldest
 30 wete the mene mote of any planete in March, Aprile, or May, other in any other tyme or moneth of the yere, loke how many monethes and dayes ben passed from the laste day of Decembere, the yere
 35 of oure lord 1400; and so with monethes and dayes entere in-to thy table ther thou findest thy mene mote y-written in monethes and dayes, and take alle the signes, degrees, minutes, and secondes
 40 that thou findest y-write in directe of thy monethes, and adde to signes, degrees, minutes, and secondes that thou findest with thy rote the yere of oure lord 1400, and the residue that levethe is the mene
 45 mote for that same day. And note, if hit so be that thou woldest wete the mene mote in any yere that is lasse than thy

rote, with-drawe the numbere of so many yeres as hit is lasse than the yere of oure lord a 1397, and kepte the residue, and so
 5 many yeres, monethes, and dayes entere in-to thy tabelis of thy mene mote. And take alle the signes, degrees, and minutes, and secondes, that thou findest in directe of alle the yeres, monethes, and
 55 dayes, and wryte hem in thy slate; and above thilke numbere wryte the signes, degrees, minutes, and secondes, the whiche thou findest with thy rote the yere of oure lord a 1397; and with-drawe
 60 alle the nethere signes and degrees fro the signes and degrees, minutes, and secondes of other signes with thy rote; and thy residue that levethe is thy mene mote for that day. 65

46. *For to knowe at what houre of the day, or of the night, shal be fode or ebbe*.*

First wite thou certainly, how that haven stonde, that thou list to werke for; that is to say in whiche place of the firmament the mene being, maketh fulle
 5 see. Than awayte thou redily in what degree of the zodiak that the mene at that tyme is inne. Bringe furth than the labelle, and set the point therof in that same coast that the mene maketh
 10 fode, and set thou there the degree of the mene according with the egge of the label. Than afterward awayte where is than the degree of the sonne, at that
 15 tyme. Remove thou than the label fro the mene, and bringe and sette it justly upon the degree of the sonne. And the
 20 point of the label shal than declare to thee, at what houre of the day or of the night shal be fode. And there also maist thou wite by the same point of the
 25 label, whether it be, at that same tyme, fode or ebbe, or half fode, or quarter fode, or ebbe, or half or quarter ebbe, or ellis at what houre it was last, or shal
 30 be next by night or by day, thou than shalt easly knowe, &c. Furthermore, if it so be that thou happe to werke for this matere aboute the tyme of the conjunc-
 35 cion, bringe furthe the degree of the

* Perhaps not genuine.

30 mone with the labelle to that coste as it
is before seyde. But than thou shalt
understonde that thou may not bringe
furthe the label fro the degree of the
mone as thou dide before; for-why the
35 sonne is than in the same degree with
the mone. And so thou may at that
tyme by the point of the labelle un-
removed knowe the houre of the flode or
of the ebbe, as it is before seyde, &c. And
40 evermore as thou findest the mone passe

fro the sonne, so remeve thou the lab
than fro the degree of the mone, &
bringe it to the degree of the sonne
And worke thou than as thou dide bef
&c. Or elles knowe thou what houre
is that thou art inne, by thyn inst
ment. Than bringe thou furth
thennes the labelle and ley it upon
degree of the mone, and therby
thou wite also whan it was flode, or wh
it wol be next, be it night or day; &c.

THE CANTERBURY TALES.

GROUP A. THE PROLOGUE.

Here biginneth the Book of the Tales of Caunterbury.

WHAN that Aprille with his shoures sote
The droghte of Marche hath perced to
the rote,

And bathed every veyne in swich licour,
Of which vertu engendred is the flour ;
Whan Zephirus eek with his swete breeth 5
Inspired hath in every holt and heeth
The tendre croppes, and the yonge sonne
Hath in the Ram his halfe cours y-ronne,
And smale fowles maken melodye,
That slepen al the night with open yē, so
(So priketh hem nature in hir corages):
Than longen folk to goon on pilgrimages
(And palmers for to seken straunge
strondes)

To ferne halwes, conthe in sondry londes,
And specially, from every shires ende 15
Of Engelond, to Caunterbury they wende,
The holy blisful martir for to seke,
That hem hath holpen, whan that they
were seke.

Bifel that, in that seson on a day,
In Southwerk at the Tabard as I lay 20
Bedy to wenden on my pilgrimage
To Caunterbury with ful devout corage,
At night was come in-to that hostelrye
Wel nyne and twenty in a compaignye,
Of sondry folk, by aventure y-falle 25
In felawshipe, and pilgrims were they alle,
That toward Caunterbury wolden ryde ;
The chambres and the stables weren wyde,
And wel we weren used atte beste.
And shortly, whan the sonne was to sete,

So hadde I spoken with hem everichon, 31
That I was of hir felawshipe anon,
And made forward erly for to ryse,
To take our way, ther as I yow devyse.

But natheles, whyl I have tyme and
space, 35

Er that I ferther in this tale pace,
Me thinketh it acordant to reson,
To telle yow al the condicioun
Of ech of hem, so as it semed me,
And whiche they weren, and of what
degree ; 40

And eek in what array that they were
inne:

And at a knight than wol I first biginne.
A Knight ther was, and that a worthy
man, Knight.

That fro the tyme that he first bigan
To ryden out, he loved chivalrye, 45
Trouthe and honour, fredom and cur-
telsye.

Ful worthy was he in his lordes werre,
And therto hadde he riden (no man
ferre)

As wel in Cristendom as hethenesse,
And ever honoured for his worthinesse. 50
At Alisaundre he was, whan it was
wonne ;

Ful ofte tyme he hadde the bord bigonne
Aboven alle naciouns in Pruce.

In Lettow hadde he reysed and in Ruce,
No Cristen man so ofte of his degree. 55

In Gernade at the sege eek hadde he be

Of Algezir, and riden in Belmarye.
At Lyeyes was he, and at Satalye,
Whan they were wonne; and in the
Grete See

At many a noble aryve hadde he be. 60
At mortal batailles hadde he been fiftene,
And foughten for our feith at Tramissene
In listes thryes, and ay slayn his fo.
This ilke worthy knight had been also
Somtyme with the lord of Palatye, 65
Agoyn another hethen in Turkye :
And evermore he hadde a sovereyn prys.
And though that he were worthy, he was
wys,

And of his port as meke as is a mayde.
He never yet no vileinye ne sayde 70
In al his lyf, un-to no maner wight.
He was a verray parfit gentil knight.

But for to tellen yow of his array,
His hors were gode, but he was nat gay.
Of fustian he wered a gipoun 75

Al bismotered with his habergeoun;
For he was late y-come from his viage,
And wente for to doon his pilgrimage.

With him ther was his sone, a yong
Squyer, Squyer
A lovyere, and a lusty bachelor, 80
With lokkes crulle, as they were leyd in
presse.

Of twenty yeer of age he was, I gesse.
Of his stature he was of evene lengthe,
And wonderly deliver, and greet of
strengthe.

And he had been somtyme in chivachye, 85
In Flaundres, in Artoys, and Picardye,
And born him wel, as of so litel space,
In hope to stonden in his lady grace.
Embrouded was he, as it were a mede
Al ful of fresshe floures, whyte and rede. 90
Singing he was, or floytinge, al the day;
He was as fresh as is the month of May.
Short was his gowne, with sleeves longe
and wyde.

Wel coude he sitte on hors, and faire ryde.
He coude songes make and wel endyte, 95
Juste and eek daunce, and wel purtreye
and wryte.

So hote he lovede, that by nightertale
He sleep namore than dooth a nightingale.
Curteys he was, lowly, and servisable,
And carf biforn his fader at the table. 100

A YEMAN hadde he, and servaunts namo
At that tyme, for him liste ryde so;
And he was clad in cote and hood of
grene; Yeman.

A sheef of pecok-arwes brighte and
kene

Under his belt he bar ful thriftily; 105
(Wel coude he dresse his takel yemanly :
His arwes drouped noght with fetheres
lowe),

And in his hand he bar a mighty bowe.
A not-heed hadde he, with a broun visage.
Of wode-craft wel coude he al the usage. 110
Upon his arm he bar a gay bracer,
And by his syde a sword and a bokeler,
And on that other syde a gay daggere,
Harneised wel, and sharp as point of
spere;

A Cristofre on his brest of silver shene. 115
An horn he bar, the bawdrik was of
grene;

A forster was he, soothly, as I gesse.

Ther was also a Nonne, a Prioressse,
That of hir smyling was ful simple and
coy; Prioressse.

Hir gretteste ooth was but by seynt
Loy; 120

And she was cleped madame Eglentyne.
Ful wel she song the service divyne,
Entuned in hir nose ful semely;
And Frensh she spak ful faire and fetisly.
After the scole of Stratford atte Bowe, 125
For Frensh of Paris was to hir unknowe.
At mete wel y-taught was she with-alle;
She leet no morsel from hir lippes falle,
Ne wette hir fingres in hir sauce depe.
Wel coude she carie a morsel, and wel
kepe, 130

That no drope ne fille up-on hir brest.
In curteisye was set ful mucho hir lest.
Hir over lippe wyped she so clene,
That in hir coppe was no ferthing sene
Of grece, whan she dronken hadde hir
draughte. 135

Ful semely after hir mete she raughte,
And sikerly she was of greet disport,
And ful plesaunt, and amiable of port,
And peyned hir to countrefete chere
Of court, and been estatlich of manere, 140
And to ben holden digne of reverence.
But, for to speken of hir conscience,

She was so charitable and so pitous,
She wolde wepe, if that she sawe a monne
Caught in a trappe, if it were deed or
bledde. 145

Of smale houndes had she, that she fedde
With roasted flesh, or milk and wastel-
breed.

But sore weep she if oon of hem were
deed,

Or if men smoot it with a yerde smerte :
And al was conscience and tendre herte.
Ful somely hir wimpel pinched was ; 151
Hir nose tretys ; hir eyen greye as glas ;
Hir mouth ful smal, and ther-to softe and
reed ;

But sikerly she hadde a fair forheed .
It was almost a spanne brood, I trowe, 155
For, hardily, she was nat undergrowe.
Ful fetis was hir cloke, as I was war.
Of smal coral aboute hir arm she bar
A peire of bedes, gauded al with grene ;
And ther-on heng a broche of gold ful
shene, 160

On which ther was first write a crowned A,
And after, *Amar vincit omnia*. Nonne.

Another Noxx with hir hadde she,
That was hir chapeleyn, and *Prezentes*
trank. 3 *Preestes*.

A Monke ther was, a fair for the maistrye,
An out-rydere, that lovede venerye ; 166
A manly man, to been an abbot able.
Ful many a deyntee hors hadde he in
stable : *Monk*.

And, whan he rood, men mighte his
brydel here

Ginglen in a whistling wind as clere, 170
And eek as loude as dooth the chapel-
belle

Ther as this lord was keper of the cello.
The reule of seint Maure or of seint
Beneit,

By-cause that it was old and som-del
streit,

This ilke monk leet olde thinges pace, 175
And held after the newe world the
space.

He yaf nat of that text a pulled hen,
That seith, that hunters been nat holy
men ;

Ne that a monk, whan he is cloisterles,
Is lykned til a fish that is waterles ; 180

This is to seyn, a monk out of his cloistre.
But thilke text held he nat worth an
oistre ;

And I seyde, his opinioun was good.
What sholde he studie, and make him-
selven wood,

Upon a book in cloistre alwey to poure, 185
Or swinken with his handes, and labour.
As Austin bit ? How shal the world be
served ?

Lat Austin have his swink to him reserved
Therefore he was a pricasour aright ;
Grehoundes he hadde, as swifte as fowel
in flight ; 190

Of priking and of hunting for the hare
Was al his lust, for no cost wolde he
spare.

I seigh his sleeves purfled at the hond
With grya, and that the fyneste of a lond ;
And, for to fastne his hood under his
chin, 195

He hadde of gold y-wrought a curious pin :
A love-knotte in the gretter ende ther was.
His heed was balled, that shoon as any
glas,

And eek his face, as he had been anoint.
He was a lord ful fat and in good point ; 200
His eyen stepe, and rollinge in his heed,
That stemed as a forneys of a leed ;

His botes souple, his hors in greet estat.
Now certainly he was a fair prelat ;
He was nat pale as a for-pyned gost. 205
A fat swan loved he best of any roost.

His palfrey was as broun as is a berye
A *Freze* ther was, a wantoun and a
merye, *Frere* ✓

A limitour, a ful solempne man, 210
In alle the ordres four is noon that can
So muche of daliaunce and fair langage.

He hadde maad ful many a mariage
Of yonge women, at his owne cost.
Un-to his ordre he was a noble post.

Ful wel beloved and famulier was he 215
With frankelens over-al in his contree.
And eek with worthy women of the
town :

For he had power of confessoun,
As seyde him-self, more than a curat,
For of his ordre he was licentiat. 220

Ful swetely herde he confessoun,
And plesant was his absolucioun ;

He was an esy man to yeve penaunce
 Ther as he wiste to han a good pitaunce ;
 For unto a povre ordre for to yive 225
 Is signe that a man is wel y-shrive.
 For if he yaf, he dorste make avaunt,
 He wiste that a man was repentaunt.
 For many a man so hard is of his herte,
 He may nat wepe al-thogh him sore
 smerto. 230
 Therefore, in stede of woping and preyeres,
 Men moot yeve silver to the povre freres.
 His tipet was ay farsed ful of knyves
 And pinnes, for to yeven faire wyves.
 And certainly he hadde a mery note ; 235
 Wel coude he singe and pleyen on a rote.
 Of yeddinges he bar utterly the prys.
 His nekke whyt was as the flour-de-lys ;
 Ther-to he strong was as a champioun.
 He knew the tavernes wel in every toun,
 And everich hostiler and tappestere 241
 Bet than a lazar or a beggestere ;
 For un-to swich a worthy man as he
 Acorded nat, as by his facultee, 244
 To have with seke lazars aqueyntaunce.
 It is nat honest, it may nat avaunce
 For to delen with no swich poraille,
 But al with riche and sellers of vitaille.
 And over-al, ther as profit sholde aryse,
 Curteys he was, and lowly of servyse. 250
 Ther nas no man no-wher so vertuous.
 He was the beste beggere in his hous ;
 †And yaf a certeyn ferme for the
 graunt ; 252 b
 †Noon of his bretheren cam ther in his
 haunt ; 252 c
 For thogh a widwe hadde noght a sho,
 So plesaunt was his '*In principio*,'
 Yet wolde he have a ferthing, er he
 wente. 255
 His purchas was wel bettre than his rente.
 And rage he coude, as it were right a
 whelpe.
 In love-dayes ther coude he muchel
 helpe. (260)
 For there he was nat lyk a cloisterer,
 With a thredbar cope, as is a povre
 scoler, 260
 But he was lyk a maister or a pope.
 Of double worsted was his semi-cope,
 That rounded as a belle out of the presse.
 Somwhat he lipped, for his wantownesse,

To make his English swete up-on his
 tonge ; 265
 And in his harping, whan that he had
 songe,
 His eyen twinkled in his heed aright,
 As doon the sterres in the frosty
 night. (270)
 This worthy limitour was cleped Huberd.
 A MERCHANT was ther with a forked
 berd, Marchant
 In mottelee, and hye on horse he sat, 271
 Up-on his heed a Flaundrish bever hat ;
 His botes clasped faire and fetisly.
 His resons he spak ful solempnely, 274
 Souninge alway th'encrees of his winning.
 He wolde the see were kept for any thing
 Bitwixe Middelburgh and Orewelle.
 Wel coude he in eschaunge sheeldes
 selle. (280)
 This worthy man ful wel his wit bisette :
 Ther wiste no wight that he was in dette.
 So estatly was he of his governaunce, 281
 With his bargaynes, and with his chevi-
 saunce.
 For sothe he was a worthy man with-alle.
 But sooth to seyn, I noot how men him
 calle. Clerk.
 A CLERK ther was of Oxenford also,
 That un-to logik hadde longe y-go. 286
 As lene was his hors as is a rake,
 And he nas nat right fat, I undertake ; (290)
 But loked holwe, and ther-to soberly.
 Ful thredbar was his overest courtepy ; 291
 For he had geten him yet no benefyce,
 Ne was so worldly for to have offyce.
 For him was lever have at his beddes
 heed
 Twenty bokes, clad in blak or reed,
 Of Aristotle and his philosophye, 295
 Than robes riche, or fithele, or gay sauntrye.
 But al be that he was a philosophre,
 Yet hadde he but litel gold in cofre ; (300)
 But al that he mighte of his freendes
 hente,
 On bokes and on lerninge he it spent, 301
 And bisily gan for the soules preye
 Of hem that yaf him wher-with to scoleye.
 Of studie took he most cure and most
 hede.
 Noght o word spak he more than was
 nede,

And that was seyd in forme and rever-
ence, 305

And short and quik, and ful of hy
sentence.

Souninge in moral vertu was his speche,
And gladly wolde he lerne, and gladly
teche. **Man of Lawe.** (310)

A **SERVAUNT OF THE LAW**, war and wys,
That often hadde been at the paryys, 310
Ther was also, ful riche of excellance.

Discreet he was, and of greet reverence:
He semed swich, his wordes weren so
wyse.

Justyces he was ful often in assyse, 314
By patente, and by pleyn commissioun,
For his science, and for his heigh re-
noun

Of fees and robes hadde he many oon.
So greet a purchasour was no-wher
noon. (320)

Al was fee simple to him in effect,
His purchasyngh mighte nat been infect, 320
No-wher so bisy a man as he ther nas,
And yet he semed busier than he was.
In termes hadde he caas and domes alle,
That from the tyme of king William were
falle.

Therto he coude endyte, and make a
thing, 325

Ther coude no wight pinche at his
wryting;

And every statut coude he pleyn by rote.
He rood but hoornly in a medlee cote (330)
Girt with a ceint of silk, with barres
smale;

Of his array telle I no longer tale. 330

A **FRANKELYN** was in his companye;
Whyt was his berd, as is the dayesye.
Of his complexioun he was sangwyn.
Wel loved he by the morwe a sop in
wyn. **Frankelyn.**

To liven in delyt was ever his wone, 335
For he was Epicurus owne sone,
That heeld opinioun, that pleyn delyt
Was verrailly felicitous parfyt. (340)

An housholdere, and that a greet, was he;
Seint Julian he was in his contree. 340

His breed, his ale, was alwey after oon;
A bettre envyned man was no-wher noon.
With-oute bake mete was never his hous,
Of fish and flesh, and that so plenteuous,

It snewed in his hous of mete and
drinke, 345

Of alle deyntees that men coude thinka.
After the sondry seasons of the year, (349)
So chaunged he his mete and his soper.
Ful many a fat partrich hadde he in
mewe,

And many a breem and many a luce in
stewe. 350

Wo was his cook, but-if his sauce were
Poynaunt and sharp, and redy al his gore.
His table dormant in his halle alwey
Stood redy covered al the longe day.

At sessions ther was he lord and sire; 355
Ful ofte tyme he was knight of the shire.
An anlas and a gipsy al of silk (359)
Heng at his girdel, whyt as morne milk.

A shirreve hadde he been, and a countour;
Was no-wher such a worthy vavasour. 360

An **HABERDASHER** and a **CARPENTER**,
Haberdasher. Carpenter.

A **WEBBE**, a **DYER**, and a **TAPICER**,
Webbe. Dyer. Tapicer.

Were with us eek, clothed in o liveresee,
Of a solempne and greet fraternitee. 364
Ful fresh and newe hir gore apyked was;
Hir knyves were y-chaped noght with
bras,

But al with silver, wrought ful clene and
weel, (369)

Hir girdles and hir pouches every-deel.
Wel semed ech of hem a fair burgeys,
To sitten in a yeldhalle on a deyn. 370

Everich, for the wisdom that he can,
Was shaply for to been an alderman.

For catel hadde they y-nogh and rente,
And eek hir wyves wolde it wel assente;

And elles certein were they to blame. 375
It is ful fair to been y-clept 'ma dame,'

And goon to vigilyes al bifore,
And have a mantel royalliche y-bore. (380)

A **COOK** they hadde with hem for the
nones, **Cook.**

To boille the chiknes with the mary-
bones, 380

And poudre-marchant tart, and galingale.
Wel coude he knowe a draughte of
London ale.

He coude roste, and sethe, and broille,
and frye,

Maken mortreux, and wel bake a pye.

But greet harm was it, as it thoughte
me, 385

That on his shine a mormal hadde he;
For blankmanger, that made he with the
beste. (389)

A SHIPMAN was ther, woning fer by
weste: Shipman.

For aught I woot, he was of Dertemouthe.
He rood up-on a rouncey, as he couthe, 390
In a gowne of falding to the knee.

A daggere hanging on a laas hadde he
Aboute his nekke under his arm adoun.
The hote somer had maad his hewe al
broun;

And, certeinly, he was a good felawe. 395
Ful many a draughte of wyn had he
y-drawe

From Burdeux-ward, whyl that the chap-
man sleep.

Of nyce conscience took he no keep. (400)
If that he faught, and hadde the hyer
hond,

By water he sente hem hoom to every
lond. 400

But of his craft to rekene wel his tydes,
His stremes and his daungers him bisydes,
His herberwe and his mone, his lode-
menage,

Ther nas noon swich from Hulle to
Cartage.

Hardy he was, and wys to undertake; 405
With many a tempest hadde his berd
been shake.

He knew wel alle the havenes, as they
were, (409)

From Gootlond to the cape of Finistere,
And every cryke in Britayne and in
Spayne; 409

His barge y-cleped was the Mandelayne.

With us ther was a DOCTOR OF PHISIK,
In al this world ne was ther noon him
lyk Doctour.

To speke of phisik and of surgerye;
For he was grounded in astronomye.
He kepte his pacient a ful greet del 415
In houres, by his magik naturel.

Wel coude he fortunen the ascendent
Of his images for his pacient. (420)

He knew the cause of everich maladye,
Were it of hoot or cold, or moiste, or
drye, 420

And where engendred, and of what
humour;

He was a verrey parfit practisour.
The cause y-knowe, and of his harm the
rote,

Anon he yaf the seke man his bote.
Ful redy hadde he his apothecaries, 425

To sende him drogges and his letuaries,
For ech of hem made other for to
winne;

Hir frendschipe nas nat newe to biginne.
Wel knew he th'olde Esculapius, (431)
And Deiscorides, and eek Rufus, 430
Old Ypocras, Haly, and Galien;

Serapion, Razis, and Avicen;
Averrois, Damascien, and Constantyn;
Bernard, and Gatesden, and Gilbertyn.
Of his diete mesurable was he, 435

For it was of no superfluitee,
But of greet norissing and digestible.

His studie was but litel on the bible. (440)
In sangwin and in pers he clad was al.

Lyned with taffata and with sendal; 440
And yet he was but esy of dispence:

He kepte that he wan in pestilence.
For gold in phisik is a cordial,
Therefore he lovede gold in special. 444

A good WYF was ther of bisyde BATHE,
But she was som-del deaf, and that was
scathe. Wyf of Bathe

Of clooth-making she hadde swiche an
haunt, (450)

She passed hem of Ypres and of Gaunt.
In al the parisshe wyf no was ther
noon

That to th' offring bfore hir sholde
goon; 450

And if ther dide, certeyn, so wrooth was
she,

That she was out of alle charitee.
Hir coverchiefs ful fyne were of ground:

I dorste swere they weyeden ten pound
That on a Sonday were upon hir heed. 455

Hir hosen weren of fyn scarlet reed,
Ful streite y-teyd, and shoos ful moiste
and newe.

Bold was hir face, and fair, and reed of
hewe. (460)

She was a worthy womman al hir lyve,
Housbondes at chirche-dore she hadde
fyve, 460

Withouten other companye in youthe ;
But therof nedeth nat to speke as nonthe.
And thryes hadde she been at Jerusalem ;
She hadde passed many a straunge
stream ; 464

At Rome she hadde been, and at Boloigne,
In Galice at seint Jame, and at Coloigne.
She coude muche of wandring by the
weye :

Gat-tothed was she, soothly for to seye.
Up-on an ambler eaily she sat, (471)
Y-wimpled wel, and on hir heed an hat
As brood as is a bokeler or a targe ; 471
A foot-mantel aboute hir hipes large,
And on hir feet a paire of spores sharpe.
In felawship wel coude she laughe and
carpe.

Of remedyes of love she knew per-
chaunce, 475

For she coude of that art the olde daunce.
Person.

A good man was ther of religioun,
And was a povre PERSON of a toun ; (480)
But riche he was of holy thought and werk.
He was also a lerned man, a clerk, 480
That Cristes gospel trowely wolde preche ;
His parissheis devoutly wolde he teche.
Benigne he was, and wonder diligent,
And in adversitee ful pacient ;
And swich he was y-preved ofte sythes.
Ful looth were him to cursen for his
tythes, 486

But rather wolde he yeven, out of doute,
Un-to his povre parissheis aboute (490)
Of his offering, and eek of his substance.
He coude in litel thing han suffisaunce.
Wyd was his parisshe, and houses fer
a-sonder, 491

But he ne lafte nat, for reyn ne thonder,
In siknes nor in meschief, to visyte
The ferreste in his parisshe, muche and
lyte,

Up-on his feet, and in his hand a staf. 495
This noble ensample to his sheep he yaf,
That first he wroughte, and afterward he
taughte ;

Out of the gospel he tho wordes caughte ;
And this figure he added eek ther-to, (501)
That if gold ruste, what shal iren do ? 500
For if a preest be foul, on whom we truste,
No wonder is a lewed man to ruste ;

And shame it is, if a preest take keep,
A shiten shepherde and a clene sheep.
Wel oghte a preest ensample for to yive,
By his clenness, how that his sheep
shold live. 506

He sette nat his benefice to hyre,
And lest his sheep encombred in the
myre, (510)

And ran to London, un-to saynt Poules,
To seken him a chaunterie for soules, 510
Or with a bretherhod to been withholde,
But dwelte at hoom, and kepte wel his
folde,

So that the wolf ne made it nat miscarie ;
He was a shepherde and no mercenarie.
And though he holy were, and vertuons,
He was to sinful man nat despitous, 516
Ne of his speche daungerous ne digne,
But in his teching discreet and benigne.
To drawen folk to heven by fairnesse (521,
By good ensample, was his businessse : 520

But it were any persone obstinat,
What-so he were, of heigh or lowe estat,
Him wolde he snibben sharply for the
nones.

A bettre preest, I trowe that nowher
noon is.

He wayted after no pompe and reverence,
Ne maked him a spyced conscience, 526
But Cristes lore, and his apostles twelve,
He taughte, and first he folwed it him-
selve. (530)

With him ther was a PLOWMAN, was his
brother, PLOWMAN
That hadde y-lad of dong ful many a
fother, 530

A trowe swinker and a good was he,
LIVINGE in pees and parfit charitee.
God loved he best with al his hole herte
At alle tymes, though him gamed or
smerte,

And thanne his neighebour right as him-
selve. 535

He wolde thresshe, and ther-to dyke and
delve,

For Cristes sake, for every povre wight,
Withouten hyre, if it lay in his might.
His tythes payed he ful faire and wel, (541)
Bothe of his propre swink and his catel.
In a tabard he rood upon a mere. 541

Ther was also a Reve and a Millere,

A Somnour and a Pardoner also,
A Maunciple, and my-self; ther were
namo.

The MILLER was a stout carl, for the
noncs, Miller.
Ful big he was of braun, and eek of
bones; 546

That proved wel, for over-al ther he cam,
At wrastling he wolde have alwey the
ram. (550)

He was short-sholdred, brood, a thikke
knarre,

Ther nas no dore that he nolde heve of
harro, 550

Or breke it, at a renning, with his heed.
His berd as any sowe or fox was reed,
And ther-to brood, as though it were
a spade.

Up-on the cop right of his nose he hade
A werte, and ther-on stood a tuft of heres,
Reed as the bristles of a sowes eres; 556
His nose-thirles blake were and wyde.

A sword and bokeler bar he by his syde;
His mouth as greet was as a greet forneys.
He was a jangler and a goliardeys, 560
And that was most of sinne and har-
lotryes. (563)

Wel coude he stelen corn, and tollen
thryes;

And yet he hadde a thombe of gold,
pardee.

A whyt cote and a blew hood wered he.
A baggepype wel coude he blowe and
sowne, 565

And ther-with-al he broghte us out of
towne. Maunciple.

Agentil MAUNCIPLE was ther of a temple,
Of which achatours mighte take exemple
For to be wyse in bying of vitaille (571)
For whether that he payde, or took by
taille, 570

Algate he wayted so in his achat,
That he was ay biforn and in good stat.
Now is nat that of God a ful fair grace,
That swich a lewed mannes wit shal pace
The wisdom of an heep of lerned men? 575
Of maistres hadde he mo than thryes
ten,

That were of lawe expert and curious;
Of which ther were a doseyn in that
hous

Worthy to been stiwardes of rente and
lond (581)

Of any lord that is in Engelond, 580

To make him live by his propre good,
In honour dettelees, but he were wood,
Or live as scarsly as him list desire;
And able for to helpen al a shire

In any cas that mighte falle or happe; 585
And yit this maunciple sette hir aller
cappe. Reve.

The REVE was a solendre colerik man,
His berd was shave as ny as ever he
can. (590)

His heer was by his eres round y-shorn.
His top was dokked lyk a preest biforn.
Ful longe were his legges, and ful lene,
Y-lyk a staf, ther was no calf y-sene.

Wel coude he kepe a gerner and a binne;
Ther was noon auditour coude on him
winne.

Wel wiste he, by the droghte, and by the
reyn, 595

The yelding of his seed, and of his
greyn.

His lordes sheep, his neet, his dayerye.
His swyn, his hors, his stoor, and his
pultrye, (600)

Was hoolly in this reves governing, 590
And by his covenannt yaf the rekening.

Sin that his lord was twenty ycer of age:
Ther coude no man bringe him in
arrerage.

Ther nas baillif, ne herde, ne other hyne.
That he ne knew his sleighte and his
covyne; 604

They were adrad of him, as of the deeth.
His woning was ful fair up-on an heeth,
With grene treës shadwed was his place.
He coude bettre than his lord purchase.

Ful riche he was astored prively, (611)
His lord wel coude he plesen subtilly, 610

To yeve and lene him of his owne good,
And have a thank, and yet a cote and
hood.

In youthe he lerned hadde a good mister;
He was a wol good wrighte, a carpenter.
This reve sat up-on a ful good stot, 615
That was al pomely grey, and highte
Scot.

A long surcote of pers up-on he hade,
And by his syde he bar a rusty blade. (620)

Of Northfolk was this reve, of which I
telle, 619

Bisyde a tonn men clepen Baldeswelle.
Tukked he was, as is a frere, aboute,
And ever he rood the hindreste of our
route.

A Somnour was ther with us in that
place, Somnour.

That hadde a fyr-reed cherubynnes face,
For sawcesleem he was, with eyen narwe.
As hoot he was, and lecherous, as a
sparwe; 626

With scalled browes blake, and piled berd;
Of his visage children were aferd. (630)

Ther nas quik-silver, litarge, ne brim-
ston,

Boras, carnes, ne oille of tatre noon, 630
Ne oynement that wolde clense and
byte,

That him mighte helpen of his wheelkes
whyte,

Nor of the knobbes sittinge on his chokes.
Wel loved he garleek, oynons, and eek
lekes,

And for to drinken strong wyn, reed as
blood. 635

Than wolde he speke, and crye as he
were wood.

And whan that he wel dronken hadde the
wyn, (639)

Than wolde he speke no word but Latyn.
A fewe termes hadde he, two or three,

That he had lerned out of som decree, 640
No wonder is, he herde it al the day;

And eek ye knowen wel, how that a jay
'Can clepen 'Watte,' as well as can the
pope.

But who-so conde in other thing him
gripe, 644

Thanne hadde he spent al his philosophy;
Ay 'Quæstio quid iuris' wolde he crye.

He was a gentil harlot and a kinde; (649)

A better felawe sholde men noght finde.
He wolde suffra, for a quart of wyn,

A good felawe to have his concubyn 650
A twelf-month, and excuse him atte fulle;

Ful prively a finch eek conde he pulle.
And if he fond o-wher a good felawe,

He wolde techen him to have non awe,
In swich cas, of the erchedeknes curs, 655

But-if a mannes soule were in his purs;

For in his purs he sholde y-punished be.
'Purs is the erchedeknes helle,' seyde
he. (660)

But wel I woot he lyed right in dede;
Of cursing oghte ech gilty man him
drede— 665

For curs wol alee, right as assailing
saveth—

And also war him of a *significavit*.
In daunger hadde he at his owne gyse

The yonge girles of the diocese,
And knew hir counseil, and was al hir
reed. 665

A gerland hadde he set up-on his heed.
As greet as it were for an ale-stake;

A bokeler hadde he maad him of a cake.
With him ther rood a gentil Pardonere

Of Bouncival, his freend and his compeer
That streight was comen fro the court of
Roma. Pardonere.

Ful loude he song, 'Com hider, love, to
me.' (671) 675

This somnour bar to him a stif burdoun,
Was never trompe of half so greet a soun.

This pardonere hadde heer as yelow as
wax, 675

But smothe it heng, as dooth a strike of
flex;

By ounces henge his lokkes that he hadde,
And ther-with he his shuldres over-
spradde; (681) 685

But thinne it lay, by colpons oon and
oon;

But hood, for jolitee, ne wered he noon.
For it was trussed up in his walet. 685

Him thoughte, he rood al of the newe jet;
Dischevale, save his cappe, he rood al
bare.

Swiche glaringe eyen hadde he as an
hare.

A vernicle hadde he sowed on his cappe.
His walet lay biforn him in his lappe, 686

Bret-ful of pardoun come from Rome al
boot. (689) 690

A voys he hadde as smal as hath a goot.
No berd hadde he, ne never sholde have.

As smothe it was as it were late y-shave;
I trowe he were a gelding or a mare. 695

But of his craft, fro Berwik into Ware,
Ne was ther swich another pardonere.

For in his male he hadde a pilwe-beer,

Which that, he seyde, was our lady
 veyl : 695
 He seyde, he hadde a gobet of the seyl
 That seynt Peter hadde, when that he
 wente 699
 Up-on the see, til Jesu Crist him hente.
 He hadde a croys of latoun, ful of stones,
 And in a glas he hadde pigges bones. 700
 But with thise relikes, when that he
 fond
 A povre person dwelling up-on lond,
 Up-on a day he gat him more moneye
 Than that the person gat in monthes
 tweye,
 And thus, with feyned flaterye and japes,
 He made the person and the peple his
 apes. 706
 But trewely to tellen, atte laste, 709
 He was in chirche a noble ecclesiaste.
 Wel coude he rede a lesson or a storie,
 But alderbest he song an offertorie ; 710
 For wel he wiste, when that song was
 songe,
 He moste preche, and wel affyle his
 tonge,
 To winne silver, as he ful wel coude ;
 Therefore he song so meriely and loude.
 Now have I told you shortly, in a clause,
 Th'estat, th'array, the nombre, and eek the
 cause 716
 Why that assembled was this companye
 In Southwerk, at this gentil hostelrye,
 That highte the Tabard, faste by the
 Belle. 721
 But now is tyme to yow for to telle 720
 How that we baren us that ilke night,
 When we were in that hostelrye alight.
 And after wol I telle of our viage,
 And al the remenaunt of our pilgrimage.
 But first I pray yow, of your curteisye, 725
 That ye n'arotte it nat my vileinye,
 Thogh that I pleynly speke in this
 matere, 729
 To telle yow hir wordes and hir chere ;
 No thogh I speke hir wordes properly.
 For this ye knowen al-so wel as I, 730
 Who-so shal telle a tale after a man,
 He moot reherce, as ny as ever he can,
 Everich a word, if it be in his charge,
 Al speke he never so rudeliche and
 large ;

Or elles he moot telle his tale untrewe, 735
 Or fayne thing, or finde wordes newe.
 He may nat spare, al-though he were his
 brother ; 739
 He moot as wel seye o word as another.
 Crist spak him-self ful brode in holy
 writ,
 And wel ye woot, no vileinye is it. 740
 Eek Plato saith, who-so that can him
 rede,
 The wordes mote be couin to the dede.
 Also I pray yow to forgyve it me,
 Al have I nat set folk in hir degree
 Here in this tale, as that they sholde
 stonde ; 745
 My wit is short, ye may wel understonde.
 Greet chere made our hoste us everichon,
 And to the soper sette us anon ; 750
 And served us with vitaille at the beste.
 Strong was the wyn, and wel to drinke
 us leste. 750
 A somely man our hoste was with-alle
 For to han been a marshal in an halle ;
 A large man he was with eyen stepe,
 A fairer burgeys is ther noon in Chepe :
 Bold of his speche, and wys, and wel
 y-taught, 755
 And of manhod him lakked right naught.
 Eek therto he was right a mery man,
 And after soper pleyen he bigan, 760
 And spak of mirthes amonges othere
 thinges,
 When that we hadde maad our reken-
 inges ; 760
 And seyde thus : ' Now, lordinges, trewely,
 Ye been to me right welcome hertely :
 For by my trouthe, if that I shal nat
 lye,
 I ne saugh this yeer so mery a companye
 At ones in this herberwe as is now. 765
 Payn wolde I doon yow mirthes, wiste
 I how.
 And of a mirthes I am right now bihoght,
 To doon yow ese, and it shal coste
 noght. 770
 Ye goon to Caunterbury ; God yow
 spede,
 The blisful martir quyte yow your
 mede. 770
 And wel I woot, as ye goon by the weye,
 Ye shapen yow to taken and to pleye ;

For trewely, confort ne mirthe is noon
To ryde by the weye donmb as a stoon;
And tharfore wol I maken yow disport,
As I seyde erst, and doon yow som con-
fort. 776

And if yow lyketh alle, by oon assent,
Now for to stonden at my jugement, (780)
And for to werken as I shal yow seye,
To-morwe, whan ye ryden by the weye,
Now, by my fader soule, that is deed, 781
But ye be merye, I wol yeve yow myn
head.

Hold up your hand, withouten more
speche.

Our counseil was nat longe for to
seche;

Us thoughte it was neight worth to make
it wys, 785

And graunted him withouten more
ayys,

And bad him seye his verdit, as him
like.

'Lordinges,' quod he, 'now herkneth
for the beste; (790)

But tak it not, I prey yow, in desleyn,
This is the poynt, to spoken short and
pleyn, 790

That ech of yow, to shorte with your
weye,

In this viage, shal telle tales tweye,
To Caunterbury-ward, I mene it so,
And hom-ward he shal tallen othere
two,

Of aventures that whylom han bifalle, 795
And which of yow that bereth him best
of alle,

That is to seyn, that telleth in this cas
Tales of best sentence and most solas, (800)

Shal have a soper at our aller cost
Here in this place, sitting by this post,

Whan that we come agayn fro Caunter-
bury. 805

And for to make yow the more mery,
I wol my-salven gladly with yow ryde,
Right at myn owne cost, and be your
gyde.

And who-so wol my jugement withseye
Shal paye al that we spenden by the
weye. 806

And if ye vouche-sauf that it be so,
Tel me anon, with-outen wordes mo, (810)

And I wol erly shape me therfore.'

This thing was graunted, and our othe
swore 810

With ful glad harte, and preyden him
also

That he wold vouche-sauf for to do so,
And that he wolde been our governour.
And of our tales juge and reportour,
And sette a soper at a carteyn prys; 815
And we wold reuled been at his devys,
In heigh and lowe; and thus, by oon
assent,

We been acorded to his jugement. (820)

And ther-up-on the wyn was fet anon:
We-dronken, and to reste wente echon,
With-outen any lenger taryinge. 821

A-morwe, whan that day bigan to springe,
Up roos our host, and was our aller
cok,

And gadrede us togidre, alle in a flok,
And forth we riden, a litel more than
pas. 825

Un-to the watering of seint Thomas.

And there our host bigan his hors areste,
And seyde; 'Lordinges, herkneth, if yow
leste. (830)

Ye woot your forward, and I it yow re-
corde.

If even-song and morwe-song acorde, 830
Lat see now who shal telle the firste
tale.

As ever mote I drinke wyn or ale,
Who-so be rebel to my jugement
Shal paye for al that by the weye is
spent.

Now draweth out, er that we ferrer
twinne; 835

He which that hath the shortest shal
beginne.

Sire knight,' quod he, 'my maister and
my lord, (839)

Now draweth out, for that is myn acord.
Cometh neer,' quod he, 'my lady prior-
esse;

And ye, sir clerk, lat be your shamfast-
nesse, 840

No studieth noght; ley hond to, every
man.'

Anon to drawen every wight bigan,
And shortly for to tellen, as it was,
Were it by aventure, or sort, or cas,

I wol nat letten eek noon of this route ;
 Lat every felawe telle his tale aboute, 890
 And lat see now who shal the super
 winne ; (33)
 And ther I lefte, I wol ageyn biginne.

This duk, of whom I make mencion,
 When he was come almost unto the
 town,

In al his wele and in his moste pryde, 895
 He was war, as he caste his eye asyde,
 Wher that ther kneled in the hye weye
 A compagne of ladies, tways and tweye,
 Ech after other, clad in clothes blake ; (41)
 But swich a cry and swich a wo they
 make, 900

That in this world nis creature livinge,
 That herde swich another weymentinge ;
 And of this cry they nolde never stenten,
 Til they the reynes of his brydel henten.

'What folk ben ye, that at myn hoorn-
 cominge 905

Perturben so my feste with cryinge ?'
 Quod Theseus, 'have ye so greet envye
 Of myn honour, that thus compleyne and
 crye ? (50)

'Or who hath yow misboden, or offended ?
 And telleth me if it may been amended ;
 And why that ye ben clothed thus in
 blak ?' 911

The eldest lady of hem alle spak,
 When she hadde swowned with a deedly
 chere,

That it was routhe for to seen and here,
 And seyde : 'Lord, to whom Fortune hath
 given 915

Victorie, and as a conquerour to liven,
 Noght groveth us your glorie and your
 honour ;

But we bisoken mercy and socour. (60)
 Have mercy on our wo and our distresse.
 Som drope of pitee, thurgh thy gentil-
 esse, 920

U'pon us wrecched women lat thou falle.
 For certes, lord, ther nis noon of us alle,
 That she nath been a duchesse or a quene,
 Now be we caitifs, as it is wol sene :

Thanked be Fortune, and hir false wheel,
 That noon estat assureth to be weel. 926
 And certes, lord, t'abyden your presence,
 Here in the temple of the goddesse
 Clemence (70)

We han ben waytinge al this fourtenight ;
 Now help us, lord, sith it is in thy might.

I wrecche, which that wepe and waille
 thus, 931

Was whylom wyf to king Capaneus,
 That starf at Thebes, cursed be that day !
 And alle we, that been in this array,
 And maken al this lamentacioun, 935
 We listen alle our housbondes at that
 town,

Why! that the sege ther-aboute lay.
 And yet now th'olde Creon, weylaway !
 The lord is now of Thebes the citee, (81)
 Fulfil of ire and of iniquitee, 940

He, for despyt, and for his tirannye,
 To do the dede bodyes vileinye,
 Of alle our lordes, whiche that ben alawe,
 Hath alle the bodyes on an heep y-drawe,
 And wol nat suffren hem, by noon assent,
 Neither to been y-buried nor y-brent, 946
 But maketh houndes ete hem in despyt.'

And with that word, with-outen more
 respyt, (90)

They fillen gruf, and cryden pitously,
 'Have on us wrecched women som
 mercy, 950

And lat our sorwe sinken in thyn herte.'
 This gentil duk down from his coursier
 sterte

With herte pitous, whan he herde hem
 speke.

Him thoughte that his herte wolde breke,
 Whan he saugh hem so pitous and so
 mat, 955

That whylom weren of so greet estat.
 And in his armes he hem alle up hente,
 And hem conforteth in ful good entente,
 And swear his ooth, as he was trewe
 knight, (101)

He wolde doon so ferforthly his might 960
 U'pon the tyrant Creon hem to wreke,
 That al the peple of Grece sholde speke
 How Creon was of Theseus y-served,
 As he that hadde his deeth ful wel de-
 served. 964

And right anon, with-outen more shood,
 His baner he displayeth, and forth rood
 To Thebes-ward, and al his host biyde ;
 No near Athenes wolde he go ne ryde,
 Ne take his ese fully half a day, (111)
 But onward on his way that night he lay,

And sente anon Ipolita the quene, 971
 And Emelye hir yonge suster shene,
 Un-to the toun of Athenes to dwelle;
 And forth he rit; ther nis namore to
 telle.

The rede statue of Mars, with spere
 and targe, 973
 So shyneth in his whyte baner large,
 That alle the feeldes gliteren up and down;
 And by his baner born is his penoun (120)
 Of gold ful riche, in which ther was
 y-bete

The Minotaur, which that he slough in
 Crete. 980

Thus rit this duk, thus rit this conquerour,
 And in his host of chivalrye the flour,
 Til that he cam to Thebes, and alighte
 Faire in a feeld, ther as he thoghte fighte.
 But shortly for to speken of this thing, 985
 With Creon, which that was of Thebes
 king,

He faught, and slough him manly as
 a knight

In playn bataille, and putte the folk to
 flight; (130)

And by assaut he wan the citee after,
 And rente adoun bothe wal, and sparre,
 and rafter; 990

And to the ladyes he restored agayn
 The bones of hir housbondes that were
 slayn,

To doon obséquies, as was tho the gyse.

But it were al to long for to devyse 994

The grete clamour and the waymentinge
 That the ladyes made at the brenninge
 Of the bodyes, and the grete honour

That Theseus, the noble conquerour, (140)
 Doth to the ladyes, whan they from him
 wente; 999

But shortly for to telle is myn entente.

Whan that this worthy duk, this Theseus,
 Hath Creon slayn, and wonne Thebes
 thus,

Stille in that feeld he took al night his
 reste,

And dide with al the contree as him
 leste. 1004

To ransake in the tas of bodyes dede,
 Hem for to strepe of harneys and of wede,
 The pilours diden bisnesse and cure,
 After the bataille and disconfiture. (150)

And so bifel, that in the tas they founde,
 Thurgh-girt with many a grevous bloody
 wounde, 1010

Two yonge knightes ligging by and by,
 Bothe in oon armes, wrought ful richely,
 Of whiche two, Arcita hight that oon,
 And that other knight hight Palamon.

Nat fully quike, ne fully dede they were,
 But by hir cote-armures, and by hir gere,
 The heraudes knewe hem best in special,
 As they that weren of the blood royal (160)
 Of Thebes, and of sustren two y-born.

Out of the tas the pilours han hem torn,
 And han hem caried softe un-to the
 tente 1021

Of Theseus, and he ful sone hem sente
 To Athenes, to dwellen in prisoun
 Perpetuelly, he nolde no raunsoun.

And whan this worthy duk hath thus
 y-don, 1025

He took his host, and hoom he rood anon
 With laurer crowned as a conquerour;
 And there he liveth, in joye and in
 honour, (170)

Terme of his lyf; what nedeth wordes
 mo?

And in a tour, in angwish and in wo, 1030
 Dwellen this Palamoun and eek Arcite,
 For evermore, ther may no gold hem
 quyte.

This passeth yeer by yeer, and day by
 day,

Til it fil ones, in a morwe of May,
 That Emelye, that fairer was to sene 1035
 Than is the lilie upon his stalke grone,
 And fressher than the May with floures
 newe— (170)

For with the rose colour stroof hir hewe,
 I noot which was the fairer of hem two—

Er it were day, as was hir wone to do,
 She was arisen, and al redy dight; 1041

For May wol have no slogardye a-night.
 The sesoun priketh every gentil herte,
 And maketh him out of his sleep to sterte,
 And seith, 'Arys, and do thyn obser-
 vance.' (187) 1045

This maked Emelye have remembraunce
 To doon honour to May, and for to ryse.

Y-clothed was she fresh, for to devyse;
 Hir yelow heer was broyded in a tresse,
 Bihinde hir bak, a yerde long, I gessa.

And in the gardin, at the sonne up-riste,
She walketh up and down, and as hir
liste

She gadereth floures, party whyte and
rede,

To make a sotil gerland for hir hede,
And as an aungel heavenly she song. 1055
The grete tour, that was so thikke and
strong,

Which of the castel was the chief don-
geoun, (1099)

(Ther-as the knightes weren in prison,
Of whiche I tolde yow, and telleu shal)

Was evens joynant to the gardin-wal, 1060
Ther as this Emelye hadde hir playinge.

Bright was the sonne, and cleer that
morweninge,

And Palamon, this woful prisoner,
As was his wone, by leve of his gayler,

Was risen, and romed in a chambre on
heigh, 1065

In which he al the noble citee seigh,
And sek the gardin, ful of braunches

grene, (1099)

Ther-as this freshe Emelye the shene
Was in hir walk, and romed up and
down. 1069

This sorweful prisoner, this Palamoun,
Goth in the chambre, roming to and fro,

And to him-self compleyning of his wo;
That he was born, ful ofte he seyde, 'alas!'

And so bifel, by aventure or cas,

That thurgh a window, thikke of many
a barre 1075

Of yren greet, and square as any sparre,
He caste his eye upon Emelya,

And ther-with-al he bleynte, and cryde
'a!' (1120)

As though he stongen were un-to the
herte. 1079

And with that cry Arcite anon up-starte,
And seyde, 'Cosin myn, what eyloth

thee,

That art so pale and doedly on to see?
Why crydestow? who hath thee doom

offence?

For Goddes love, tak al in pacience 1084
Our prison, for it may non other be;

Fortune hath yeven us this adversitee.

Som wikke aspect or disposicioun

Of Saturne, by sum constellacioun, (1130)

Hath yeven us this, al-though we hadde
it sworn;

So stood the heven whan that we were
born; 1090

We moste endure it: this is the short and
pleyn.'

This Palamon answerde, and seyde
ageyn,

'Cosyn, for sothe, of this opinioun
Thou hast a veyn imaginacioun.

This prison caused me nat for to crye. 1095
But I was hurt right now thurgh-out

myn yē

In-to myn herte, that wol my bane be.
The fairnesse of that lady that I see (1140)

Yond in the gardin romen to and fro,

Is cause of al my crying and my wo. 1100
I noot wher she be womman or goddesse;

But Venus is it, soothly, as I gesse.'

And ther-with-al on kneis down he fil,
And seyde: 'Venus, if it be thy wil

Yow in this gardin thus to transfigure 1105
Bifore me, sorweful wroche creature,

Out of this prison help that we may
scapen.

And if so be my destinee be shapen (1150)
By eterne word to dyen in prison,

Of our lineage have som compassioun, 1110
That is so lowe y-brought by tyrannye.'

And with that word Arcite gan espye
Wher-as this lady romed to and fro.

And with that sighte hir beautee hurte

him so, 1114

That, if that Palamon was wounded sore,
Arcite is hurt as muche as he, or more.

And with a sigh he seyde pitously. (1159)
'The freshe beautee sleeth me sodeynly

Of hir that rometh in the yonder place;
And, but I have hir mercy and hir grace,

That I may seen hir atte leeste weye, 1121
I nam but deed; ther nis namore to seye.'

This Palamon, whan he tho wordes
herde,

Dispitously he loked, and answerde
'Whether seistow this in earnest or in

pley?' 1125

'Nay,' quod Arcite, 'in earnest, by my
fey!

God help me so, me list ful yvele pleye.'

This Palamon gan knitte his browes
tweye: (1170)

'It nere,' quod he, 'to thee no greet honour

For to be fals, ne for to be traytour 1130
To me, that am thy cosin and thy brother
Y-sworn ful depe, and sch of us til othe, 1135
That never, for to dyen in the peyne,
Til that the deeth departe shal us tweyne,
Neither of us in love to hindren othe, 1140
Ne in non other cas, my love brother;
But that thou sholdest trewely forthren me
In every cas, and I shal forthren thee. (380)
This was thyn oth, and myn also, certeyn;
I wot right wel, thou darst it nat withseyne.
Thus artow of my counsell, out of doute.
And now thou woldest falsly been aboute
To love my lady, whom I love and serve,
And ever shal, til that myn herte starve.
Now certes, fals Arcite, thou shalt nat so.
I loved hir first, and tolde thee my wo 1146
As to my counsell, and my brother sworn
To forthren me, as I have told bifore. (390)
For which thou art y-bounden as a knight
To helpen me, if it lay in thy might, 1150
Or elles artow fals, I dar wel seyn.'

This Arcite ful proudly spak ageyn,
'Thou shalt,' quod he, 'be rather fals
than I;

But thou art fals, I telle thee utterly;
For par amour I loved hir firster thow. 1155
What wiltow seyn? thou wistest nat yet
now

Whether she be a woman or goddessse!
Thyn is affeccoun of holynesse, (300)
And myn is love, as to a creature;
For which I tolde thee myn aventure 1160
As to my cosin, and my brother sworn.
I psee, that thou lovedest hir bifore;
Wostow nat wel the olde clerkes sawe,
That "who shal yeve a lover any lawe?"
Love is a gretter lawe, by my pan, 1165
Than may be yeve to any erthly man.
And therefore possitif lawe and swich
decree

Is broke al-day for love, in ech degree. (310)
A man moot nedes love, mangree his heed.
He may nat fleeen it, though he sholde be
deed, 1170

Al be she mayde, or widwe, or elles wyf.
And eek it is nat lykly, al thy lyf,
To stonden in hir grace, namore shal I;
For wel thou wost thy-selvan, veraily,

That thou and I be dampned to prisoun
Perpetually; us gayneth no raunsoun.

We stryve as dide the boundes for the
boon, 1177

They foughte al day, and yet hir part was
noon; (320)

Ther cam a kyte, whyl that they were
wrothe,

And bar away the boon bitwixe hem
bothe, 1180

And therefore, at the kinges court, my
brother,

Ech man for him-self, ther is non othe.
Love if thee list; for I love and ay shal;
And soothly, love brother, this is al.
Here in this prisoun mote we endure, 1185
And everich of us take his aventure.'

Greet was the stryf and long bitwixe
hem tweye,

If that I hadde leysur for to seye; (330)
But to th'effect. It happed on a day,

(To telle it yow as shortly as I may) 1190
A worthy duk that highte Perotheus,

That felawe was un-to duk Theseus
Sin thilke day that they were children
lyte,

Was come to Athenes, his felawe to visyte,
And for to pleye, as he was wont to do,

For in this world he loved no man so: 1196
And he loved him as tendrely ageyn.

So wel they loved, as olde bokes seyn, (340)
That whan that oon was deed, sothly to

telle,
His felawe wente and soghte him down in
helle; 1200

But of that story list me nat to wryte.
Duk Perotheus loved wel Arcite,

And hadde him knowe at Thebes yere by
yere;

And fynally, at requeste and prayere 1204
Of Perotheus, with-oute any raunsoun,

Duk Theseus him leet out of prisoun,
Freely to goon, wher that him liste over-al.

In swich a gyse, as I you tellen shal. (350)

This was the forward, pleyntly for t'en-
dyte,

Bitwixen Theseus and him Arcite: 1210
That if so were, that Arcite were y-founde

Ever in his lyf, by day or night or stounde
In any contree of this Theseus,

And he were caught, it was accorded thus,

That with a sword he sholde lese his
heed; 1315

Ther nas non other remedye ne reed,
But taketh his love, and homward he him
spedde; (359)

Let him be war, his nekke lyth to wedde!

How greet a sorwe suffreth now Arcite!
The deeth he feleth thurgh his herte
smyte; 1320

He wepeth, wayleth, cryeth pitously;
To sleen him-self he wayteth prively.

He seyde, 'Allas that day that I was born!
Now is my prison worse than biforn;
Now is me shape eternally to dwelle 1325
Noght in purgatorie, but in helle.

Allas! that ever knew I Perotheus!
For elles hadde I dwelled with Theseus
Y-fetered in his prisoun ever-mo. (371)

Than hadde I been in blisse, and nat in wo.
Only the sighte of hir, whom that I serve,
Though that I never hir grace may deserve,
Wolde han suffised right y-nough for me.
O dere cosin Palamon,' quod he,

'Thyn is the victorie of this aventure, 1335
Ful blisfully in prison maistow dure;
In prison? certes nay, but in paradys!
Wel hath fortune y-turned thee the dys,
That hast the sighte of hir, and I th'ab-
sence. (381) 1339

For possible is, sin thou hast hir presence,
And art a knight, a worthy and an able,
That by som cas, sin fortune is change-
able,

Thou mayst to thy desyre som tyme atteyne.
But I, that am exyled, and bareyne
Of alle grace, and in so greet despoir, 1345
That ther nis erthe, water, fyr, ne air,
Ne creature, that of hem maked is,
That may me helpe or doon confort in this:
Wel oughte I sterve in wanhope and dis-
trese; (391)

Farwel my lyf, my lust, and my gladnesse!

Allas, why pleyne folk so in commune
Of purveyaunce of God, or of fortune,
That yeveth hem ful ofte in many a gyse
Wel better than they can hem-self devyse?
Som man desyreth for to han richesse, 1355
That cause is of his mordre or greet sik-
nesse.

And som man wolde out of his prison fayn,
That in his hous is of his meynes slayn.

Infinite harmes been in this matere; (40.)

We witen nat what thing we preyen here.
We faren as he that dronke is as a
mous; 1361

A dronke man wot wel he hath an hous,
But he noot which the righte way is thider;
And to a dronke man the way is slider.

And certes, in this world so faren we;
We seken faste after felicitee, 1366

But we goon wrong ful often, trewely.

Thus may we seyen alle, and namely I, (410)

That wande and hadde a greet opinioun,
That, if I mighte escapen from prisoun,
Than hadde I been in joye and perfit
hale, 1371

Ther now I am exyled fro my wale.
Sin that I may nat seen yow, Emelye,
I nam but deed; ther nis no remedye.'

Up-on that other syde Palamon, 1375
Whan that he wiste Arcite was agon,
Swich sorwe he maketh, that the grote
tour

Reasoneth of his youling and clamour.

The pure fettres on his shynes grete (421)

Woren of his bittre salte teres wete. 1280

'Allas!' quod he, 'Arcite, cosin myn,

Of al our stryf, God woot, the fruyt is thyn.

Thow walkest now in Thebes at thy large,

And of my wo thou yevest litel charge.

Thou mayst, sin thou hast wisdom and
manhode, 1285

Assemblen alle the folk of our kinrede,

And make a worre so sharp on this citee,

That by som aventure, or som trettee,

Thou mayst have hir to lady and to wyf,

For whom that I þmot nedes lese my lyf.

For, as by wey of possibilitee, (433) 1291

With thou art at thy large, of prison free,

And art a lord, greet is thyn avauntage,

More than is myn, that sterve hero in a
cage. 1294

For I mot wepe and wayle, why! I live.

With al the wo that prison may me yive,

And oek with payne that love me yiveth
also, (439)

That doubleth al my torment and my wo.'

Ther-with the fyr of jelousye up-sterte

With-inne his brest, and hente him by
the herte 1300

So woodly, that he lyk was to biholde

The box-tree, or the aschen dede and colde.

The seyde he; 'O cruel goddess, that
governe
This world with binding of your word
eterne,
And wryten in the table of ethemount 1305
Your parlement, and your eterne graunt,
What is mankinde more un-to yow holde
Than is the sheep, that runneth in the
folde? (430)

For slayn is man right as another beste,
And dwelleth eek in prison and arrests,
And hath siknesse, and greet adversitee,
And ofte tymes giltylesse, pardes! 1312

What governaunce is in this prescience,
That giltylesse tormenteth innocence?
And yet encreaseth this al my penaunce,
That man is bounden to his observaunce,
For Goddess sake, to letten of his wille,
Ther as a beest may al his lust fulfillen. (460)
And whan a beest is deed, he hath no
payne;

But man after his deeth moot wepe and
playne, 1320

Though in this world he have care and wo:
With-oute doute it may stonden so.
Th' answer of this I lete to divynis,
But wel I woot, that in this world gret
payne is.

Allas! I see a serpent or a theef, 1325
That many a trowe man hath doon mes-
cheef,

Goon at his large, and wher him list may
turne. (469)

But I mot been in prison thurgh Saturne,
And eek thurgh Juno, jealous and eek wood,
That hath destroyed wel ny al the blood
Of Thebes, with his waste wallen wyde,
And Venus sleeth me on that other syde
For jelousye, and fere of him Arcite.'

Now wol I stinte of Palamon a lyte,
And lete him in his prison stille dwelle,
And of Arcite forth I wol yow telle. 1336

The somer passeth, and the nightes
longe (479)

Encreasen double wyse the paynes stronge
Bothe of the lovers and the prisoner.
I noot which hath the wofullere master.
For shortly for to seyn, this Palamon
Perpetuelly is dampned to prisoun, 1342
In cheynes and in fetters to ben deed;
And Arcite is exyled upon his heed

For ever-mo as out of that contree, 1345
He never-mo he shal his lady see.

Yow lovers are I now this questoun,
Who hath the worse, Arcite or Palamon?
That oon may seen his lady day by day,
But in prison he moot dwelle alway. 1350
That other wher him list may ryde or go,
But seen his lady shal he never-mo. (494)
Now demeth as yow liste, ye that can,
For I wol telle forth as I bigan.

Explicit prima Pars.

Sequitur pars secunda.

Whan that Arcite to Thebes comen was,
Ful ofte a day he swelte and seyde 'allas,'
For seen his lady shal he never-mo. 1357
And shortly to concluden al his wo, (500)
So muche sorwe had never creature
That is, or shal, whyl that the world may
dure. 1360

His sleep, his mete, his drink is him bihaft,
That lene he wex, and drye as is a shaft,
His eyen holwe, and grisly to biholde;
His hewe falwe, and pale as ashen colde,
And solitarie he was, and ever allone, 1365
And wailing al the night, making his
mone.

And if he herde song or instrument,
Then wolde he wepe, he mighte nat be
stent; (510)

So feble eek were his spirite, and so
lowe, 1369

And chaunged so, that no man coude knowe
His speche nor his vois, though men it
herde.

And in his gere, for al the world he ferde
Nat oonly lyk the lovers maladye
Of Hereos, but rather lyk manye
Engendred of humour malencolyk, 1375
Biforen, in his cello fantasyk.

And shortly, turned was al up-so-down
Bothe habit and eek disposicioun (520)
Of him, this woful love daun Arcite.

What sholde I al-day of his wo endyte?
Whan he endured hadde a year or two
This cruel torment, and this payne and wo,
At Thebes, in his contree, as I seyde,
Up-on a night, in sleep as he him leyde,
Him thoughte how that the winged god
Mercurie 1385

Biforn him stood, and bad him to be myrre.

That nedes-cost he moste him-selven hyde,
And til a grove, faste ther beayde, (620)
With dredful foot than stalketh Palamoun.

For shortly, this was his opinioun, 1480
That in that grove he wolde him hyde al day,
And in the night than wolde he take his way

To Thebes-ward, his freendes for to preye
On Theseus to helpe him to werreye;
And shortly, outhur he wolde lese his lyf,
Or winnen Emelye un-to his wyf; 1486
This is th'effect and his entente pleyn.

Now wol I torne un-to Arcite ageyn, (630)
That litel wiste how ny that was his care,
Til that fortune had broght him in the snare. 1490

The bisy larke, messenger of day,
Salueth in hir song the morwe gray;
And fyry Phobus ryseth up so brighte,
That al the orient laugheth of the lighte,
And with his stremes dryeth in the greves
The silver dropes, hanging on the leves.
And Arcite, that is in the court royal
With Theseus, his squyer principal, (640)
Is risen, and loketh on the myrie day.
And, for to doon his observance to May,
Remembring on the poynt of his desyr,
He on a courser, sterting as the fyr, 1502
Is riden in-to the feeldes, him to pleye,
Out of the court, were it a myle or tweye;
And to the grove, of which that I yow tolde, 1505

By aventure, his wey he gan to holde,
To maken him a gerland of the greves,
Were it of wodebinde or hawethorn-leves,
And loude he song ageyn the sonne shene:
'May, with alle thy floures and thy grene,
Wel-come be thou, faire fresshe May, 1511
I hope that I som grene gete may.' (654)
And from his courser, with a lusty herte,
In-to the grove ful hastily he sterte,
And in a path he rometh up and down, -
Ther-as, by aventure, this Palamoun 1516
Was in a bush, that no man mighte him see,

For sore afered of his deeth was he. (660)
No-thing ne knew he that it was Arcite:
God wot he wolde have trowed it ful lyte.

But sooth is seyde, gon sithen many yeres,
That 'feeld hath eyen, and the wode hath eres.' 1522

It is ful fair a man to bere him evene,
For al-day meteth men at unset stevene.
Ful litel woot Arcite of his felawe, 1525
That was so ny to herknen al his sawe,
For in the bush he sitteth now ful stille.

Whan that Arcite had romed al his fille,
And songen al the roundel lustily, (671)
In-to a studie he fil sodeynly, 1530
As doon thise loveres in hir queynte geres,
Now in the crophe, now down in the breres,
Now up, now down, as boket in a welle.
Right as the Friday, soothly for to tella,
Now it shyneth, now it reyneth faste, 1535
Right so can gery Venus overcaste
The hertes of hir folk; right as hir day
Is gerful, right so chaungeth she array.
Selde is the Friday al the wyke y-lyke.

Whan that Arcite had songe, he gan to syke, (682) 1540
And sette him down with-uten any more:
'Alas!' quod he, 'that day that I was bore!
How longe, Juno, thurgh thy crueltee,
Woltow werreyen Thebes the citee?
Allas! y-broght is to confusioun 1545
The blood royal of Cadme and Amphioun;
Of Cadmus, which that was the firste man (689)

That Thebes bulte, or first the toun bigan.
And of the citee first was crouned king,
Of his linage am I, and his of-spring 1550
By verray ligne, as of the stok royal:
And now I am so caitif and so thral,
That he, that is my mortal enemy,
I serve him as his squyer povrely. 1554
And yet doth Juno me wel more shame,
For I dar noght biknowe myn owne name;
But ther-as I was wont to highte Arcite,
Now highte I Philostrate, noght worth a myte. (700)

Allas! thou felle Mars, alas! Juno, 1559
Thus hath your ire our kinrede al fordo,
Save only me, and wrecched Palamoun,
That Theseus martyreth in prisoun.
And over al this, to sleen me utterly,
Love hath his fyry dart so brenningly
Y-stiked thurgh my trewe careful herte,
That shapen was my deeth erst than my sherte. 1566

Ye sleen me with your eyen, Emelye;
Ye been the cause wherfor that I dye. (710)
Of al the remenant of myn other care
Ne sette I nat the mountaunce of a tare,
So that I coude don aught to your plo-
saunce!' 1571

And with that word he fl down in a
traunce

A longe tyme; and after he up-sterde.

This Palamoun, that thoughte that
thurgh his herte (716) 1574

He felte a cold sward sodeynliche glyde,
For ire he quook, no lenger wolde he byde.
And whan that he had herd Arcites tale,
As he were wood, with face deed and pale,
He sterte him up out of the buskes thikke,
And seyde: 'Arcite, false traitour wikke,
Now artow hent, that lovest my lady so,
For whom that I have al this payne and
wo, 1582

And art my blood, and to my counseil
sworn,

As I ful ofte have told thee heer-biforn,
And hast by-japed here duk Theseus, 1585
And falsly chaunged hast thy name thus;
I wol be deed, or elles thou shalt dye.

Thou shalt nat love my lady Emelye, (730)
But I wol love hir only, and name;

For I am Palamoun, thy mortal fo. 1590

And though that I no wepne have in this
place,

But out of prison am astert by grace,
I drede noght that outhen thou shalt dye,
Or thou ne shalt nat loven Emelye.

Chees which thou wilt, for thou shalt nat
asterte.' 1595

This Arcite, with ful despitous herte,
Whan he him knew, and hadde his tale
hard,

As fier as leoun, pulled out a sward, (740)
And seyde thus: 'by God that sit above,
Nere it that thou art sik, and wood for love,
And eek that thou no wepne hast in this
place, 1601

Thou sholdest never out of this grove pace,
That thou ne sholdest dyen of myn hond.
For I defy the seurtee and the bond

Which that thou seyst that I have maad
to thee. 1605

What, verray fool, think wel that love is
free, (748)

And I wol love hir, mangre al thy might!
But, forasmuchethou art a worthy knight,
And wilnest to darreyne hir by batayle,
Have heer my trouthe, to-morwe I wol
nat fayle, 1610

With-oute witing of any other wight,
That here I wol be founden as a knight,
And bringan harneys right y-nough for
thee;

And chees the beste, and leve the worste
for me.

And mete and drinke this night wol I
bringe 1615

Y-nough for thee, and clothes for thy
beddinge. (758) 1620

And, if so be that thou my lady winne,
And slee me in this wode ther I am inne,
Thou mayst wel have thy lady, as for me.
This Palamon answerde: 'I graunte it
thee.' 1625

And thus they been departed til a-morwe,
When ech of hem had leyd his feith to
borwe.

O Cupide, out of alle charitee!

O regne, that wolt no felawe have with
thee!

Ful sooth is seyde, that love no lordshipe
Wol noght, his thankes, have no felawe-
shipe; 1630

Wel finden that Arcite and Palamoun.

Arcite is riden anon un-to the toun, (770)

And on the morwe, er it were dayes
light,

Ful prively two harneys hath he dight, 1635

Bothe suffisaunt and mete to darreyne

The bataille in the feeld bitwix hem
tweyna.

And on his hors, allone as he was born,

He carieth al this harneys him biforn,

And in the grove, at tyme and place y-set,

This Arcite and this Palamon ben met.

The chaungen gan the colour in hir face.

Right as the hunter in the regne of Trace

That stondeth at the gappe with a spere,

Whan hunted is the leoun or the bere,

And hereth him come rushing in the

greves, (783) 1641

And breketh bothe bowes and the leves,

And thinketh, 'heer cometh my mortel

enemy,

With-oute faille, he moot be deed, or I,

For outhur I mot sleen him at the gappe,
Or he mot sleen me, if that me mishappe :'
So ferden they, in chaunging of hir
hewe, 1647

As fer as everich of hem other knewe. (790)
Ther nas no good day, ne no saluing ;
But streight, with-uten word or rehersing,
Everich of hem halp for to armen other,
As freendly as he were his owne brother ;
And after that, with sharpe speres stronge
They foynen ech at other wonder longe.

Thou mightest wene that this Palamoun
In his fighting were a wood leoun, 1656
And as a cruel tygre was Arcite :

As wilde bores gonne they to smyte, (800)
That frothen whyte as foom for ire
wood.

Up to the ancle foghte they in hir blood.
And in this wyse Ilete hem fighting dwelle ;
And forth I wol of Theseus yow telle.

The destinee, ministre general,
That executeth in the world over-al
The purveyaunce, that God hath seyn
biforn, 1665
So strong it is, that, though the world
had sworn

The contrarie of a thing, by ye or nay,
Yet somtyme it shal fallen on a day (810)
That falleth nat eft with-inne a thousand
yere.

For certainly, our appetytes here, 1670
Be it of werre, or pees, or hate, or love,
Al is this rouled by the sighte above.
This men I now by mighty Theseus,
That for to honten is so desirous,
And namely at the grete hert in May, 1675
That in his bed ther daweth him no
day,

That he nis clad, and redy for to ryde
With hunte and horn, and houndes him
bisyde. (820)

For in his hunting hath he swich delyt,
That it is al his joye and appetyt 1680
To been him-self the grete hertes bane :
For after Mars he serveth now Diane.

Cleer was the day, as I have told er this,
And Theseus, with alle joye and blis,
With his Ipolita, the fayre quene, 1685
And Emelye, clothed al in grene,
On hunting be they riden royally.
And to the grove, that stood ful faste by,

In which ther was an hert, as men him
tolde, (831)

Duk Theseus the streighte wey hath
holde. 1690

And to the launde he rydeth him ful right,
For thider was the hert wont have his
flight,

And over a brook, and so forth on his weye.
This duk wol han a cours at him, or tweye,
With houndes, swiche as that him list
comaunde. 1695

And whan this duk was come un-to the
launde,

Under the sonne he loketh, and anon
He was war of Arcite and Palamon, (840)
That foughten breme, as it were bores two ;
The brighteswerdes wenten to and fro 1700
So hidously, that with the leeste strook
It seemed as it wolde felle an ook ;

But what they were, no-thing he ne woot.
This duk his courser with his spores
smoot,

And at a stert he was bitwix hem two, 1705
And pulled out a sword and cryed, 'ho !
Namore, up peyne of lesing of your heed.
By mighty Mars, he shal anon be deed, (850)
That smyteth any strook, that I may seen !
But telleth me what mister men ye been.
That been so hardy for to fighten here 1711
With-uten juge or other offiere,
As it were in a listes royally ?'

This Palamon answerde hastily
And seyde : 'sire, what nedeth wordes
mo ? 1715

We have the deeth deserved bothe two.
Two woful wrecches been we, two cay-
tyves, (859)

That been encombred of our owne lyves ;
And as thou art a rightful lord and juge,
No yeve us neither mercy ne refuge, 1720
But slee me first, for seynte charitee ;
But slee my felawe eek as wel as me.
Or slee him first ; for, though thou knowe
it lyte,

This is thy mortal fo, this is Arcite, 1724
That fro thy lond is banished on his heed,
For which he hath deserved to be deed.
For this is he that cam un-to thy gate,
And seyde, that he highte Philostrate. (870)
Thus hath he japed thee ful many a yeer,
And thou has makid him thy chiefsquyer :

And this is he that loveth Emelye. 1731
 For sith the day is come that I shal dye,
 I make playnly my confessioun,
 That I am thilke woful Palamoun,
 That hath thy prison broken wikkedly.
 I am thy mortal fo, and it am I 1736
 That loveth so hote Emelye the brighte,
 That I wol dye present in hir sighte. (880)
 Therefore I axe deeth and my juwyse,
 But also my felawe in the same wyse, 1740
 For bothe han we deserved to be slayn.'

This worthy duk answerde anon agayn,
 And seyde, 'This is a short conclusioun :
 Youre owne mouth, by your confessioun,
 Hath dampned you, and I wol it recorde,
 It nedeth noght to pyne yow with the
 corde. 1746
 Ye shul be deed, by mighty Mars the
 rede!'

The quene anon, for verray womman-
 hede, (890)
 Gan for to wepe, and so dide Emelye,
 And alle the ladies in the companye. 1750
 (Gret pitee was it, as it thoughte hem alle,
 That ever swich a channce sholde falle,
 For gentil men they were, of greet estat,
 And no-thing but for love was this debat,
 And sawe hir bloody woundes wyde and
 sore; 1755

And alle cryden, bothe lasse and more,
 'Have mercy, lord, up-on us women
 alle!'

And on hir bare knees adoun they falle,
 And wolde have kist his feet ther-as he
 stood, (901)

Til at the laste asked was his mood; 1760
 For pitee renneth sone in gentil herte.
 And though he first for ire quook and
 sterte,

He hath considered shortly, in a clause,
 The trespass of hem bothe, and eek the
 cause :

And al-though that his ire hir gilt
 accused, (907) 1765

Yet in his reson he hem bothe excused;
 As thus : he thoughte wel, that every man
 Wol helpe him-self in love, if that he can,
 And eek delivere him-self out of prison;
 And eek his herte had compassioun 1770
 Of women, for they wepen ever in oon;
 And in his gentil herte he thoughte anon,

And softe un-to himself he seyde : 'fy
 Up-on a lord that wol have no mercy,
 But been a leoun, bothe in word and
 dede, 1775
 To hem that been in repentaunce and
 drede

As wel as to a proud despitous man (919)
 That wol maynteyne that he first bigan !
 That lord hath litel of discrecioun,
 That in swich cas can no divisioun, 1780
 But weyeth pryde and humblesse after
 oon.'

And shortly, whan his ire is thus agoon,
 He gan to loken up with eyen lighte,
 And spak thise same wordes al on
 highte :—

'The god of love, a ! benedicite, 1785
 How mighty and how greet a lord is he !
 Ayeins his might ther gayneth none
 obstacles,

He may be cleped a god for his miracles.
 For he can maken at his owne gyse (931)
 Of everich herte, as that him list devyse.
 Lo heer, this Arcite and this Palamoun,
 That quitly weren out of my prisoun, 1792
 And mighte han lived in Thebes royally,
 And witen I am hir mortal enemy,
 And that hir deeth lyth in my might
 also; 1795

And yet hath love, mangrec hir eyen two,
 Y-brought hem hider bothe for to dye !
 Now loketh, is nat that an heigh folye ?
 Who may been a fool, but-if he love ? (941)
 Bihold, for Goddess sake that sit above, 1800
 Se how they blede ! be they noght wel
 arrayed ?

Thus hath hir lord, the god of love,
 y-payd

Hir wages and hir fees for hir servyse !
 And yet they wenen for to been ful wyse
 That serven love, for aught that may
 bifulle ! 1805

But this is yet the beste game of alle,
 That she, for whom they han this jolitee,
 Can hem ther-for as muche thank as me,
 She woot namore of al this hote fare, (951)
 By God, than woot a cokkow or an hare !
 But al mot been assayed, hoot and cold,
 A man mot been a fool, or yong or old;
 I woot it by my-self ful yore agoon : 1813
 For in my tyme a servant was I oon.

And therefore, sin I knowe of loves payne,
 And woot how sore it can a man distreynne,
 As he that hath ben caught ofte in his las,
 I yow foryeve al hoolly this trespass, (960)
 At requeste of the quene that knaleth here,
 And eek of Emelye, my suster dere. 1820
 And ye shul bothe anon un-to me swere,
 That never-mo ye shul my contree dere,
 Ne make warre up-on me night ne day,
 But been my freendes in al that ye may;
 I yow foryeve this trespass every del.' 1825
 And they him swore his axing fayre and
 wel,
 And him of lordshipe and of mercy preyde,
 And he ham graunteth grace, and thus he
 seyde: (970)

'To speke of royal linage and richesse,
 Though that she were a quene or a prin-
 cesse, 1830
 Ech of yow bothe is worthy, doubtlesse,
 To wedden whan tyme is, but nathelesse
 I speke as for my suster Emelye,
 For whom ye have this stryf and jelousye;
 Ye woot your-self, she may not wedden two
 At ones, though ye fighten ever-mo: 1836
 That oon of yow, al be him looth or leef,
 He moot go pypen in an ivy-leef; (980)
 This is to seyn, she may nat now han
 bothe,
 Al be ye never so jelous, ne so wrothe. 1840
 And for-thy I yow putte in this degree,
 That ech of yow shal have his destinee
 As him is shape; and herknoth in what
 wyse;

Lo, heer your ende of that I shal devyse.
 My wil is this, for plat conclusioun, 1845
 With-uten any replicacioun,
 If that yow lyketh, tak it for the beste,
 That everich of yow shal gon wher him
 leste (990)
 Frely, with-uten raunson or daunger;
 And this day fifty wykes, fer ne ner, 1850
 Everich of yow shal bringe an hundred
 knightes,
 Armed for listes up at alle rightes,
 Al redy to darreyne hir by bataille.
 And this bihote I yow, with-uten faille,
 I'p-on my trouthe, and as I am a knight,
 That whether of yow bothe that hath
 might, (998) 1856
 This is to seyn, that whether he or thou

May with his hundred, as I spak of now,
 Sleen his contraria, or out of listes dryve,
 Him shal I yve Emelye to wyve, 1860
 To whom that fortune yeveth so fair a
 grace.

The listes shal I maken in this place,
 And God so wily on my soule rewte,
 As I shal even jage been and trewe. 1865
 Ye shul non other ende with me maken,
 That oon of yow ne shal be deed or taken.
 And if yow thinketh this is wel y-sayd,
 Seyeth your avys, and holdeth yow apayd.
 This is your ende and your conclusioun.'

Who loketh lightly now but Palamoun?
 Who springeth up for joye but Arcite? 1871
 Who couthe telle, or who couthe it endyte,
 The joye that is made in the place
 Whan Theseus hath don so fair a grace?
 But down on knees wente every maner
 wight, 1875

And thanked him with al her herte and
 might,
 And namely the Thebens ofte mythe.
 And thus with good hope and with herte
 blythe (1020)
 They take hir love, and hom-ward gonne
 they ryde

To Thebes, with his olde walles wyde. 1880
 Explicit secunda pars.

Sequitur pars tercia.

I trowe men wolde deme it neeligance,
 If I foryete to tellen the dispence
 Of Theseus, that goth so bisily
 To maken up the listes royally;
 That swich a noble theatre as it was, 1885
 I dar wel seyn that in this world ther
 nas.

The circuit a myle was aboute, (1029)
 Walled of stoon, and diche al with-oute.
 Round was the shap, in maner of compas,
 Ful of degrees, the heighte of sixty pas, 1890
 That, when a man was set on o degree,
 He letted nat his felawe for to see.

Est-ward ther stood a gate of marbel
 whyt,
 West-ward, right swich another in the
 opposit. 1894

And shortly to concluden, swich a place
 Was noon in erthe, as in so litel space;
 For in the lond ther nas no crafty man,
 That geometrie or arismetrik can, (1040)

Ne purtreyour, ne kerver of images,
That Theseus ne yaf him mete and wages
The theatre for to maken and devyse, 1901
And for to doon his ryte and sacrificye,
He est-ward hath, up-on the gate above,
In worship of Venus, goddess of love,
Don make an auter and an oratorie; 1905
And west-ward, in the minde and in
memorie

Of Mars, he maketh hath right swich
another,

That coste largely of gold a fother. (1050)
And north-ward, in a touret on the wal,
Of alabastre whyt and reed coral 1910
An oratorie riche for to see,
In worship of Dyane of chastitee,
Hath Theseus don wrought in noble wyse.

But yet hadde I foryeten to devyse
The noble kerving, and the portreitures,
The shap, the countenaunce, and the
figures, 1916

That weren in thise oratories three.

First in the temple of Venus mayestow
see (1060)

Wrought on the wal, ful pitous to biholde,
The broken slepes, and the sykes colde;
The sacred teres, and the waymenting;
The fyry strokes of the desiring, 1922
That loves servants in this lyf enduren;
The othes, that hir covenants assuren;
Pleaunce and hope, desyr, fool-hardi-
nesse, 1925

Beautee and youthe, bauderie, richesse,
Charmes and force, leeinges, flatterye,
Dispense, blysnesse, and jelousye, (1070)
That wered of yelwe golde a garland,
And a cokkow sitting on hir hand; 1930
Festes, instruments, caroles, daunces,
Lust and array, and alle the circum-
staunces

Of love, whiche that I rekne and rekne
shal,

By ordre weren peynted on the wal, 1934
And mo than I can make of mencionn.
For soothly, al the mount of Citheroun,
Ther Venus hath hir principal dwelling,
Was shewed on the wal in portreying,
With al the gardin, and the lustynesse.
Nat was foryeten the porter Ydelnesse,
Ne Narcissus the faire of yore agon, 1941
Ne yet the folys of king Salamon, (1084)

Ne yet the grete strengthe of Hercules—
Th'enchautements of Medea and Circes—
Ne of Turnus, with the hardy fiers corage,
The riche Cresus, caytif in servage. 1946
Thus may ye seen that wisdom ne
richesse,

Beautee ne sleighte, strengthe, ne hardi-
nesse, (1088)

Ne may with Venus holde champartye;
For as hir list the world than may she
gye. 1950

Lo, alle thise folk so caught were in
hir las,

Til they for wo ful ofte seyde 'allas!'
Sufficeth heer ensamples oon or two,
And though I coude rekne a thousand mo.

The statue of Venus, glorious for to see,
Was naked fleting in the large see, 1956
And fro the navelle down all covered
was

With wawes grene, and brighte as any
glas. (1100)

A citole in hir right hand hadde she,
And on hir heed, ful samely for to see, 1960
A rose garland, fresh and wel smellinge;
Above hir heed hir dowves slikeringe.
Biforn hir stood hir sone Cupido,
Up-on his shuldres winges hadde he two;
And blind he was, as it is ofte sene; 1968
A bowe he bar and arwes brighte and
kene.

Why sholde I noight as wel eek tell
yow al

The portreiture, that was up-on the wal
With-inne the temple of mighty Mars the
rede? (1111)

Al peynted was the wal, in lengthe and
brede, 1970

Lyk to the estres of the grisly place,
That highte the grete temple of Mars in
Trace,

In thilke colde frosty regionn,
Ther-as Mars hath his sovereyn mannoun.

First on the wal was peynted a foreste,
In which ther dwelleth noither man ne
beste, 1976

With knotty knarry bareyn trees olde
Of stubbes sharpe and ludous to biholde;
In which ther ran a rumbel and a swough,
As though a storm sholde bresten every
bough: 1980

And downward from an hille, under a
bente, (1123) 1981
'Ther stood the temple of Mars armi-
potente,
Wroght al of burned steel, of which
thentree
Was long and streit, and gastly for to see.
And ther-out cam a rage and such a vese,
That it made al the gates for to rese. 1986
The northren light in at the dores shoon,
For windowe on the wal ne was ther noon,
Thurgh which men mighten any light
discerne. (1131)
The dores were alle of adamant eterne,
Y-clenched overthwart and endelong 1991
With iren tough; and, for to make it
strong,
Every piler, the temple to sustene,
Was tonne-greet, of iren bright and shene.
Ther saugh I first the derke imagining
Of felonye, and al the compassing; 1996
The cruel ire, reed as any glede; (1139)
The pykepurs, and eek the pale drede;
The smyler with the knyf under the cloke;
The shepne brenning with the blake
smoke; 2000
The treson of the mordring in the bedde;
'The open werre, with woundes al bi-
bledde;
Contek, with bloody knyf and sharp
manace;
Al ful of chirking was that sory place.
The sleere of him-self yet saugh I ther, 2005
His herte-blood hath bathed al his heer;
The nayl y-driven in the shode a-night;
The colde deeth, with mouth gaping up-
right. (1150)
Amiddes of the temple sat meschaunce,
With discomfort and sory contenaunce.
Yet saugh I woodnesse laughing in his
rage; 2011
Armed compleint, out-hees, and fiers
outrage.
The careyne in the bush, with throte
y-curve:
A thousand slayn, and nat of qualm
y-storve; 2014
The tiraunt, with the prey by force y-raft;
The toun destroyed, ther was no-thing left.
Yet saugh I brent the shippes hoppesteres;
The hunte strangled with the wilde beres:

The sowe freten the child right in the
cradel; (1161)
The cook y-scalded, for al his longe ladel.
Noght was foryeten by th'infortune of
Marte; 2021
The carter over-riden with his carte,
Under the wheel ful lowe he lay adoun.
Ther were also, of Martes divisoun,
The barbour, and the bocher, and the
smith 2025
That forgeth sharpe swerdes on his stith.
And al above, depeynted in a tour, (1169)
Saw I conquest sittinge in greet honour,
With the sharpe swerde over his heed
Hanginge by a sotil twynes threed. 2030
Depeynted was the slaughtre of Julius,
Of grete Nero, and of Antonius;
Al be that thilke tyme they were unborn,
Yet was hir deeth depeynted ther-biforn,
By manasinge of Mars, right by figure;
So was it shewed in that portreiture
As is depeynted in the sterres above, (1179)
Who shal be slayn or elles deed for love.
Suffyceth oon ensample in stories olde,
I may not rekne hem alle, thogh I wolde.
The statue of Mars up-on a carte stood,
Armed, and loked grim as he were wood;
And over his heed ther shynen two figures
Of sterres, that been cleped in scriptures,
That oon Puella, that other Rubena. 2045
This god of armes was arrayed thus:—
A wolf ther stood biforn him at his feet
With eyen rede, and of a man he eet; (1190)
With sotil pencil was depeynt this storie,
In redoutinge of Mars and of his glorie.
Now to the temple of Diane the chaste
As shortly as I can I wol me haste, 2052
To telle yow al the descripcioun.
Depeynted been the walles up and down
Of hunting and of shamfast chastitee. 2055
Ther saugh I how woful Calistopee, (1198)
Whan that Diane agreved was with here.
Was turned from a womman til a bere,
And after was she maad the lode-sterre;
Thus was it peynt, I can say yow no
ferre; 2060
Hir sone is eek a sterre, as men may see.
Ther saugh I Dane, y-turned til a tree,
I mene nat the goddesso Diane,
But Penneus doughter, which that highte
Dane. 2064

Ther saugh I Attheon an hert y-maked,
For vengeance that he saugh Diane al
naked;

I saugh how that his houndes have him
caught,

And freten him, for that they knewe him
naught. (1210)

Yet peynted was a litel forther-moor,
How Atthalante hunted the wilde boor,
And Meleagre, and many another mo, 2071
For which Diane wroghte him care and wo.
Ther saugh I many another wonder storie,
The whiche me list nat drawn to
memorie. 2074

This goddess on an hert ful hye seet,
With smale houndes al aboute hir feet;
And undernethe hir feet she hadde a
mone, (1219)

Wexing it was, and sholde wanie sone.
In gaude grene hir statue clothed was,
With bowe in honde, and arwes in a cas.
Hir eyen caste she ful lowe adoun, 2081
Ther Pluto hath his derke region.

A womman travailinge was hir biforn,
But, for hir child so longe was unborn,
Ful pitously Lucyna gan she calle, 2085
And seyde, 'help, for thou mayst best of
alle.'

Wel southe he peynten lyfly that it
wroghte, (1220)

With many a florin he the hewes boghte.
Now been thise listes maad, and
Theues,

That at his grete cost arrayed thus 2090
The temples and the theatre every del,
Whan it was doon, him lyked wonder
wel.

But stinte I wol of Theous a lyte,
And speke of Palamon and of Arcite.

The day approcheth of hir retourninge,
That everich sholde an hundred knightes
bringe, 2096

The bataille to darreyne, as I yow tolde;
And til Athènes, hir covenant for to holde,
Hath everich of hem brought an hundred
knightes (1241)

Wel armed for the werre at alle rightes.
And sikerly, ther trowed many a man 2101
That never, sithen that the world bigan,
As for to speke of knighthod of hir hond,
As for as God hath makid see or lond,

Nas, of so fewe, so noble a companye. 2105
For every wight that lovede chivalrye,
And wolde, his thanks, han a passant
name,

Hath preyed that he mighte ben of that
game; (1250)

And wel was him, that ther-to chosen was.
For if ther fille to-morwe swich a cas, 2110
Ye knowen wel, that every lusty knight,
That loveth paramours, and hath his
might,

Were it in Engeland, or elles-where,
They wolde, hir thanks, wilnen to be
there.

To fighte for a lady, ben'cite! 2115
It were a lusty sighte for to see.

And right so ferden they with Palamon.
With him ther wanten knightes many
oon; (1260)

Som wol ben armed in an habergeoun,
In a breast-plat and in a light gipoun; 2120
And somme woln have a peyre plates
large;

And somme woln have a Pruce shield, or a
targe;

Somme woln ben armed on hir legges weel,
And have an ax, and somme a mace of
steel. 2124

Ther nis no newe gyse, that it nas old.
Armed were they, as I have you told,

Everich after his opinoun.
Ther maistow seen coming with Pala-
moun (1270)

Ligurge him-self, the grete king of Trace.
Blak was his berd, and manly was his
face.

The cercles of his eyen in his heed, 2130
They gloweden bitwixe yelow and reed;

And lyk a griffon loked he aboute,
With kempe heres on his browes stoute;
His limes grete, his braunes harde and
stronge, 2135

His shuldres brode, his armes rounde and
longe.

And as the gyse was in his contree,
Ful hye up-on a char of gold stood he,
With foure whyte boles in the trays. (1281)

In-stede of cote-armure over his harnays,
With nayles yelwe and brighte as any
gold, 2141

He hadde a beres skin, col-blak, fur-old.

His hert was humbled in ande his bak,
 To any knyghtes fether I shoon for-lak.
 A myghte of gold arm-greet, of huge

Upon his heed, set ful of stones bryghte,
 Of rubies and of dynamunts.
 Aboute his char ther wenten whyte

Twenty at a moo, as grete as any steer,
 To huntun at the leoun or the deer, 2150
 And folwed him, with mycel faste

Colours of gold, and torse fyled rounde.
 An hundred lordes laddie he in his route
 Armed ful wel, with hertes sterne and

With Arete, in stories as men finde, 2155
 The grete Emetreus, the king of Inde,
 Upon a stode bay, trapped in steel,
 Covered in cloth of gold diapred weel, 2160
 Cam ryding lyk the god of armes, Mars.
 Hisoute-armure was of cloth of Tars, 2165
 Couched with perles whyte and rounde

and grete.
 His sadel was of brened gold newe y-bete
 A mantelet upon his shuldre hanginge
 Brot ful of rubies redde, as fyr sparklinge
 His crispe heer lyk ringes was y-rounde, 2165
 And that was yelow, and glitered as the

sunne.
 His nose was heigh, his eyen bright outryn,
 His lippes rounde, his colour was sangwyn.
 A fewe traknes in his face y-spreynd, 2170
 Betwixen yelow and somdel blak y-meynd,

And as a leoun he his lokyng caste 2175
 Of fyve and twenty year his age I caste.
 His berd was wel lagonne for to sprynge
 His voys was as a trompe thunderinge.

Upon his heed he wored of laurer grene
 A gerland fresh and lusty for to sene. 2175
 Upon his hand he bar for his dedayt,
 An egle tamo, as any lile whyt. 2180

An hundred lordes huddle he with him
 there,

Al armed, sauf his heddes, in al his gese,
 Ful richely in alle maner thynges. 2185
 For trusteth wel, that dukes, erles, kinges,
 Were gadered in this noble companye,
 For love and for encreas of chivalrye,
 Aboute this king ther ran on every part
 Ful many a tame leoun and lepart. 2190

And in this wyse these lordes alle and
 some,

Ben on the Sunday to the cite come 2195
 Aboute pyne, and in the town alight.

This Theseus, this duk, this worthy
 knight, 2200

When he had broght hem in-to his citee,
 And inned hem, everich in his degre.

He festeth hem, and dooth so greet labour
 To esen hem, and to doon hem al honour,

That yet men wenoth that no mannes wit
 Of noon estat ne coude amenden it. 2205

The ministralleys, the service at the feste,
 The grete yiftes to the myghte and leste,

The riche array of Theseus paleys, 2210
 Ne who sat first ne last upon the daye,

What lades farrest been or best daunsainge,
 Or which of hem can daunceen best and

synge, 2215
 Ne who most felingly speketh of love.

What hawkes sitten on the perche above,
 What houndes liggen on the floor adoun:

Of al this make I now no mencion. 2220
 But al th'effect, that thinketh me the

beste,
 Now comth the poynt, and herkeneth if

yow leste. 2225
 The Sunday night, or day began to

springe,
 When Palamon the lorde herlesynge, 2230

Although it were nat day by honours two,
 Yet song the lorde, and Palamon also.

With holy herte, and with an hight courage
 He roos, to wenden on his pilgriminge

Un-to the blisful Citherea benigne, 2235
 I mene Venus, honourable and digne.

And in his houre he walketh forth a pas
 Un-to the listes, ther his tourney was. 2240

And down he kneleth, and with humble
 chere 2245

And herte soor he seyde as ye shul here.
 Faireste of faure, o lady myn Venus,

Doughter to Jove and spouse of Vulcanus,
 Thou gladder of the mount of Citherean,

For thilke love thou haddest to Adoun
 Have pitye of my bitter teres smerte. 2250

And tak myn humble prayer at thyn herte,
 Alas! I ne have no langage to telle. 2255

Th'effectes ne the torments of myn helle,
 Myn herte may myne harmes nat biwrewe;

I am so confus, that I can noght seye. 2260

But mercy, lady bright, that knowest weel
My thought, and seest what harmes that
I feel,

Consideres al this, and rewe up-on my
sore,

As wisly as I shal for evermore, 2234
Emforth my might, thy trewe servant be,
And holden warre alway with chastitee;
That make I myn avow, so ye me helpe.
I kepe noght of armes for to yelpa, (1380)
Ne I no axe nat to-morwe to have victorie,
Ne renoun in this cas, ne veyne glorie 2240
Of pris of armes blowen up and down,
But I wolde have fully possession
Of Emelye, and dye in thy servyse;
Find thou the maner how, and in what
wyse.

I recche nat, but it may bettre be, 2245
To have victorie of hem, or they of me,
So that I have my lady in myne armes.
For though so be that Mars is god of
armes, (1390)

Your vertu is so greet in hevnes above,
That, if yow list, I shal wel have my love.
Thy temple wol I worshipec evermo, 2251
And on thyn auter, wher I ryde or go,
I wol don sacrifice, and fyres bete.
And if ye wol nat so, my lady swete, 2254
Than preye I thee, to-morwe with a spere
That Arcite me thurgh the herte bere.
Thanne rekke I noght, whan I have lost
my lyf, (1399)

Though that Arcite winne hir to his wyf,
This is th'effect and ende of my prayere,
Yif me my love, thou blisful lady dera.

Whan th'orison was doon of Palamon,
His sacrifice he dide, and that anon 2262
Ful pitously, with alle circumstaunces,
Al telle I noght as now his observaunces.
But atte laste the statue of Venus shook,
And made a signe, wher-by that he took
That his prayere accepted was that day.
For thogh the signe shewed a delay, (1410)
Yet wiste he wel that graunted was his
bone;

And with glad herte he wente him hoom
ful sone. 2270

The thridde houre inequal that Palamon
Bigan to Venus temple for to goon,
Up roos the sonne, and up roos Emelye,
And to the temple of Diane gan hye.

Hir maydens, that she thider with hir
ladde, 2275

Ful redily with hem the fyr they hadde,
Th'encens, the clothes, and the remenant
al

That to the sacrifice longen shal; (1430)
The hornes fulle of meth, as was the gyse;
Ther lakked noght to doon hir sacrifice.
Smoking the temple, ful of clothes faire,
This Emelye, with herte debonaire, 2282
Hir body weesh with water of a welle;
But how she dide hir ryte I dar nat telle,
But it be any thing in general; 2285
And yet it were a game to heren al;
To him that meneth wel, it were no
charge:

But it is good a man ben at his large. (1430)
Hir brighte heer was kempt, untressed al;
A ceroune of a grene ook cerial 2290
Up-on hir heed was set ful fair and meta.
Two fyres on the auter gan she bete,
And dide hir thinges, as men may biholde
In Stace of Thebes, and thise bokes olde.
Whan kindled was the fyr, with pitous
chere 2295

Un-to Diane she spak, as ye may here.

'O chaste goddess of the wodes grene,
To whom bothe heaven and erthe and see
is sene, (1440)

Quene of the regne of Pluto dark and
lowe,

Goddess of maydens, that myn herte hast
knowe 2300

Ful many a yeer, and woost what I desire,
As keep me fro thy vengeance and thyn
ira,

That Attheon aboughte cruelly.
Chaste goddess, wel woostow that I
Desire to been a mayden al my lyf, 2305
Ne never wol I be no love ne wyf,

I am, thou woost, yet of thy companye,
A mayde, and love hunting and venerye,
And for to walken in the wodes wilde,
And noght to been a wyf, and be with
childe. (1452) 2310

Noght wol I knowe companye of man.

Now help me, lady, sith ye may and can,
For the thre formes that thou hast in thee.
And Palamon, that hath swich love to me,
And eek Arcite, that loveth me so sore,
This grace I preye thee with-oute more,

As sende love and pees bitwixe hem two ;
 And fro me turne away hir hertes so, (1460)
 That al hir hote love, and hir desyr,
 And al hir bisy torment, and hir fyr 2320
 Be queynt, or turned in another place ;
 And if so be thou wolt not do me grace,
 Or if my destinee be shapen so,
 That I shal nedes have oon of hem two,
 As sende me him that most desireth me.
 Bihold, goddesse of clene chastitee, 2326
 The bittre teres that on my chekes falle.
 Sin thou are mayde, and keper of us alle,
 My maydenhede thou kepe and wel
 conserve, (1471)
 And whyl I live a mayde, I wol thee
 serve.' 2330

The fyres brenne up-on the auter clere,
 Whyl Emelye was thus in hir preyere ;
 But sodeinly she saugh a sighte queynte,
 For right anon oon of the fyres queynte,
 And quiked agayn, and after that anon
 That other fyr was queynt, and al agon ;
 And as it queynte, it made a whisteling,
 As doon thise wete brondes in hir bren-
 ninge, (1480)

And at the brondes ende out-ran anon
 As it were bloody dropes many oon ; 2340
 For which so sore agast was Emelye,
 That she was wel ny mad, and gan to crye,
 For she ne wiste what it signified ;
 But only for the fere thus hath she cryed,
 And weep, that it was pitee for to here.
 And ther-with-al Diane gan appere, 2346
 With bowe in hond, right as an hunter-
 esse,

And seyde : ' Doghter, stint thyn hevi-
 nesse. (1490)

Among the goddes hye it is affermed,
 And by eterne word write and confermed,
 Thou shalt ben wedded un-to oon of tho
 That han for thee so muchel care and wo ;
 But un-to which of hem I may nat telle.
 Farwel, for I ne may no lenger dwelle.

The fyres which that on myn auter
 brenne 2355

Shul thee declaren, er that thou go henne,
 Thyn aventure of love, as in this cas.'

And with that word, the arwes in the cas
 Of the goddesse clateren faste and ringe,
 And forth she wente, and made a vanissh-
 inge ; (1502) 2360

For which this Emelye astoned was,
 And seyde, ' What amounteth this, allas !
 I putte me in thy proteccioun,
 Diane, and in thy disposicioun.'
 And hoom she gooth anon the nexte
 weye. 2365

This is th'effect, ther is namore to seye.

The nexte houre of Mars folwinge this,
 Arcite un-to the temple walked is (1510)
 Of fierse Mars, to doon his sacrificye,
 With alle the rytes of his payen wyse. 2370
 With pitous herte and heigh devocioun,
 Right thus to Mars he seyde his orisoun :
 ' O stronge god, that in the regnes colde
 Of Trace honoured art, and lord y-holde,
 And hast in every regne and every lond
 Of armes al the brydel in thyn hond, 2376
 And hem fortunest as thee list devyse,
 Accept of me my pitous sacrificye. (1520)
 If so be that my youthe may deserve,
 And that my might be worthy for to
 serve 2380

Thy godhede, that I may been oon of
 thyne,

Than preye I thee to rewe up-on my pyne.
 For thilke payne, and thilke hote fyr,
 In which thou whylom brendest for desyr.
 Whan that thou usedest the grete beautee
 Of fayre yonge fresshe Venus free, 2386
 And haddest hir in armes at thy wille,
 Al-though thee ones on a tyme misfille
 Whan Vulcanus had caught thee in his
 las, (1531)

And fond thee ligging by his wyf, allas !
 For thilke sorwe that was in thyn herte.
 Have routhe as wel up-on my peynes
 smerte. 2392

I am yong and unkonning, as thou wost,
 And, as I trowe, with love offended
 most,

That ever was any lyves creature ; 2395
 For she, that dooth me al this wo endure,
 Ne reccheth never wher I sinke or flete
 And wel I woot, or she me mercy hete,
 I moot with strengthe winne hir in the
 place ; (1541)

And wel I woot, withouten help or grace
 Of thee, ne may my strengthe noght
 availle. 2401

Than help me, lord, to-morwe in my
 bataille,

For thilke fyr that whylom brente thee,
As wel as thilke fyr now brenneth me;
And do that I to-morwe have victorie. 2405
Myn be the travaille, and thyn be the
glorie!

Thy sovereign temple wol I most honouren
Of any place, and alwey most labouren
In thy plesaunce and in thy craftes
stronge, (1551)

And in thy temple I wol my baner honge,
And alle the armes of my companye; 2411
And evere-mo, un-to that day I dye,
Eterne fyr I wol biforn thee finde.
And eek to this avow I wol me binde:
My berd, myn heer that hongeth long
adoun, 2415

That never yet ne felte offensoun
Of rasour nor of shere, I wol thee yive,
And been thy trewe servant whyl I live.
Now lord, have routhe up-on my sorwes
sore, (1561)

Yif me victorie, I make thee namore.' 2420

The prayere stinte of Arcita the stronge,
The ringes on the temple-dore that honge,
And eek the dore, clatereden ful faste,
Of which Arcita som-what him agaste.
The fyres brende up-on the auter brighte,
That it gan al the temple for to lighte,
And swete smel the ground anon up-yaf,
And Arcita anon his hand up-haf, (1570)
And more encens in-to the fyr he caste,
With othere rytes mo; and atte laste 2430
The statue of Mars bigan his hauberk
ringe.

And with that soun he herde a murmur-
inge

Ful lowe and dim, that sayde thus,
'Victorie':

For which he yaf to Mars honour and
glorie.

And thus with joye, and hope wel to fare,
Arcite anon un-to his inne is fare, 2436
As fayn as fowel is of the brighte sonne.

And right anon swich stryf ther is bi-
gonne (1580)

For thilke graunting, in the hevene above,
Bitwixe Venus, the goddessse of love, 2440
And Mars, the sterne god armipotent,
That Jupiter was busy it to stente;
Til that the pale Saturnus the colde,
That knew so manye of adventures olde,

Fond in his olde experience an art, 2445
That he ful sone hath plesed every part.
As sooth is sayd, elde hath greet advantage;
In elde is bothe wisdom and usage; (1590)
Men may the olde at-renne, and noght
at-rede.

Saturne anon, to stinten stryf and drede,
Al be it that it is agayn his kynde, 2451
Of al this stryf he gan remedie fynde.

'My dere doghter Venus,' quod Saturne,
'My cours, that hath so wyde for to turne,
Hath more power than wot any man. 2455
Myn is the drenching in the see so wan;
Myn is the prison in the derke cote;
Myn is the strangling and hanging by the
throte; (1600)

The murmure, and the cherles rebelling,
The groyning, and the pryvee empoysou-
ing: 2460

I do vengeance and pleyn correccioun
Whyl I dwelle in the signe of the Lecun.
Myn is the ruine of the hye halles,
The falling of the toures and of the walles
Up-on the mynour or the carpenter. 2465
I slow Sampoun in shaking the piler;
And myne be the maladyes colde,
The derke tresons, and the castes olde;
My lokyng is the fader of pestilence. (1611)
Now weep namore, I shal doon diligence
That Palamon, that is thyn owne knight,
Shal have his lady, as thou hast him hight.
Though Mars shal helpe his knight, yet
nathelees

Bitwixe yow ther moot be som tyme pees,
Al be ye noght of o complexioun, 2475
That causeth al day swich divisionn.
I am thin ayel, redy at thy wille;
Weep thou namore, I wol thy lust ful-
fille.' (1620)

Now wol I stinten of the goddes above,
Of Mars, and of Venus, goddessse of love,
And telle yow, as pleynly as I can, 2481
The grete effect, for which that I bigan.

Explicit tercia pars.

Sequitur pars quarta.

Greet was the feste in Athenes that day,
And eek the lusty seson of that May
Made every wight to been in swich
plesaunce, 2485
That al that Monday justen they and
daunce,

And spenden it in Venus heigh servyce.
 But by the cause that they sholde ryse
 Erly, for to seen the grete fight, (1631)
 Unto hir reste wente they at night. 2490
 And on the morwe, when that day gan
 springe,
 Of hors and harnays, noyse and clateringe
 Ther was in hostelrys al aboute;
 And to the paleys rood ther many a
 route
 Of lordes, up-on stedes and palfreys. 2495
 Ther maystow seen devyng of harnays
 So uncouth and so riche, and wrought so
 weel
 Of goldsmithria, of browding, and of
 steel; (1640)
 The sheldes brighte, tastars, and trap-
 pures;
 Gold-hewen helmes, hauberkis, cote-ar-
 mures; 2500
 Lordes in paraments on hir coursers,
 Knightes of retenus, and eek squyeres
 Nailinge the speres, and helmes bokelinge,
 Gigginge of sheldes, with layneres la-
 cinge,
 Ther as need is, they weren no-thing ydel;
 The fomy stedes on the golden brydel 2506
 Gnawinge, and faste the armurers also
 With fyle and hamer prikinge to and
 fro; (1650)
 Yemen on fote, and communes many oon
 With shorte staves, thikke as they may
 goon; 2510
 Pypes, trompes, nakers, clariounes,
 That in the bataille blowen bloody sounes;
 The paleys ful of peples up and down,
 Heer thre, ther ten, holding hir ques-
 tioun,
 Divyninge of thise Theban knightes two.
 Somme seyden thus, somme seyde it shal
 be so; 2516
 Somme helden with him with the blake
 berd,
 Somme with the balled, somme with the
 thikke-herd; (1660)
 Somme sayde, he loked grim and he
 wolde fighte;
 He hath a sparth of twenty pound of
 wighte. 2520
 Thus was the halle ful of divyninge,
 Longe after that the sonne gan to springe.

The grete Theban, that of his sleep
 awaked
 With minstrelage and noyse that was
 makid,
 Held yet the chambre of his paleys riche,
 Til that the Theban knightes, bothe y-
 liche 2526
 Honoured, were into the paleys fet.
 Duk Theban was at a window set, (1670)
 Arrayed right as he were a god in trane.
 The peple presseth thider-ward ful some
 Him for to seen, and doen heigh reverence,
 And eek to herkne his heet and his
 sentence.
 An herand on a scaffold made an he,
 Til al the noyse of peple was y-do;
 And whan he saugh the peple of noyse al
 stille, 2535
 He showed he the mighty dukes wille.
 'The lord hath of his heigh discrecioun
 Considered, that it were destructioun (1680)
 To gentil blood, to fighten in the gyne
 Of mortal bataille now in this empyre;
 Wherfore, to shapen that they shal not
 dye, 2541
 He wol his firste purpos modifye.
 No man therfor, up payne of los of lyf,
 No maner shot, ne pollax, ne short knyf
 Into the listes sende, or thider bringe; 2545
 Ne short sword for to stoke, with poynt
 bytinge,
 No man ne drawe, ne bere it by his syde.
 Ne no man shal un-to his felawe ryde (1690)
 But o cours, with a sharp y-grounde spere;
 Foyne, if him list, on fote, him-self to
 were. 2550
 And he that is at mechief, shal be take,
 And noght slayn, but be brought un-to the
 stake
 That shal ben ordeyned on either syde;
 But thider he shal by force, and ther
 abyde.
 And if so falle, the chieftayn be take 2555
 On either syde, or elles slee his make,
 No longer shal the turneyinge laste.
 God spede yow; goth forth, and ley on
 faste. (1700)
 With long sword and with maces fight
 your fille.
 Goth now your way; this is the lordes
 wille.' 2560

The voys of peple touchede the hevене,
 So loude cryden they with mery stevene :
 ' God save swich a lord, that is so good,
 He wilneth no destruccioun of blood !'
 Up goon the trompes and the melodye. 2565
 And to the listes rit the companye
 By ordinaunce, thurgh-out the citee large,
 Hanged with cloth of gold, and nat with
 sarge. (1710)
 Ful lyk a lord this noble duk gan ryde,
 Thise two Thebanes up-on either syde ; 2570
 And after rood the quene, and Emelye,
 And after that another companye
 Of oon and other, after hir degree,
 And thus they passen thurgh-out the
 citee,
 And to the listes come they by tyme. 2575
 It nas not of the day yet fully pryne,
 Whan set was Theseus ful riche and hye,
 Ipolite the quene and Emelye, (1720)
 And other ladies in degrees aboute.
 Un-to the seetes preceyth al the route. 2580
 And west-ward, thurgh the gates under
 Marte,
 Arcite, and eek the hundred of his parte,
 With baner roed is entred right anon ;
 And in that selve moment Palamon
 Is under Venus, est-ward in the place, 2585
 With baner whyt, and hardy chere and
 face.
 In al the world, to seken up and down,
 No even with-outen variacioun, (1730)
 Ther nere swiche companyes tweye.
 For ther nas noon so wys that coude
 seye, 2590
 That any hadde of other avauntage
 Of worthinesse, ne of oostat, ne age,
 So even were they chosen, for to gesse.
 And in two ringes faire they hem dresse.
 Whan that hir names rad were everi-
 choon, 2595
 That in hir nombre gyle were ther noon,
 Tho were the gates shet, and cryed was
 loude :
 ' Do now your devoir, yonge knightes
 proude !' (1740)
 The heraudes lefte hir priking up and
 down ; 2599
 Now ringen trompes loude and clarionn ;
 Ther is namore to seyn, but west and est
 In goon the speres ful sadly in arrest ;

In goth the sharpe spere in-to the syde.
 Ther seen men who can juste, and who
 can ryde ;
 Ther shiveren shaftes up-on sheeldes
 thikke ; 2605
 He feloth thurgh the herte-spoon the
 prikke.
 Up springen speres twenty foot on highte ;
 Out goon the swardes as the silver
 brighte. (1750)
 The helmes they to-hewen and to-shrede ;
 Out brest the blood, with sterne streames
 rede. 2610
 With mighty maces the bones they to-
 breste.
 He thurgh the thikkeste of the throng
 gan threste.
 Ther stomblen stodes stronge, and down
 goth al.
 He rolleth under foot as dooth a bal. 2614
 He foyneth on his feet with his tronchoun,
 And he him hurtleth with his hors adoun.
 He thurgh the body is hurt, and sithen
 y-take,
 Mangree his heed, and broght un-to the
 stake, (1760)
 As forward was, right ther he moste
 abyde ;
 Another lad is on that other syde. 2620
 And som tyme dooth hem Theseus to reste,
 Hem to refreshe, and drinken if hem
 leste.
 Ful ofte a-day han thise Thebanes two
 Togidre y-met, and wrought his felawe wo ;
 Unhorsed hath ech other of hem tweye.
 Ther nas no tygre in the vale of Galgo-
 pheye, 2626
 Whan that hir whelp is stole, whan it is
 lyte,
 So cruel on the hunte, as is Arcite (1770)
 For jelous herte upon this Palamoun :
 No in Belmarye ther nis so fel leoun, 2630
 That hunted is, or for his hunger wood,
 No of his praye desireth so the blood,
 As Palamon to sleen his fo Arcite.
 The jelous strokes on hir helmes byte ;
 Out renneth blood on both hir eydes
 rede. 2635
 Som tyme an ende ther is of every dede,
 For er the sonne un-to the reste wente,
 The stronge king Emetreus gan hente

This Palamon, as he faught with Arcite,
And made his sword depe in his flesh to
byte; (1782) 2640

And by the force of twenty is he take
Unyolden, and y-drawe unto the stake.
And in the rescous of this Palamoun
The stronge king Ligurge is born adoun;
And king Emetreus, for al his strengthe,
Is born out of his sadel a swerdes lengthe,
So hitte him Palamon er he were take;
But al for noght, he was brought to the
stake. (1790)

His hardy herte mighte him helpe naught;
He moste abyde, whan that he was caught
By force, and eek by composicioun. 2651

Who sorweth now but woful Palamoun,
That moot namore goon agayn to fighte?
And whan that Theseus had seyn this
sight, 2654

Un-to the folk that foghten thus echoon
He cryde, 'Ho! namore, for it is doon!
I wol be trewe juge, and no partye.

Arcite of Thebes shal have Emelye, (1800)
That by his fortune hath hir faire y-
wonne.'

Anon ther is a noyse of peple bigonne 2660
For joye of this, so loude and heigh with-
alle,

It semed that the listes sholde falle.

What can now faire Venus doon above?
What seith she now? what dooth this
quene of love?

But wepeth so, for wanting of hir wille,
Til that hir teres in the listes fille; 2666
She seyde: 'I am ashamed, doutelees.'

Saturnus seyde: 'Doghter, hold thy pees.
Mars hath his wille, his knight hath al
his bone, (1811)

And, by myn heed, thou shalt ben esed
sone.' 2670

The trompes, with the loude minstral-
cye,
The heraudes, that ful loude yolle and
crye,

Been in hir wele for joye of daun Arcite.
But herkneth me, and stinteth now a
lyte,

Which a miracle ther bifel anon. 2675

This fierse Arcite hath of his helm y-don,
And on a courser, for to shewe his face,
He priketh endeloug the large place, (1820)

Loking upward up-on this Emelye; 2679
And she agayn him caste a freendlich yȝ,
(For wommen, as to spoken in comune,
They folwen al the favour of fortune);
And she was al his chere, as in his herte.
Out of the ground a furie infernal starte,
From Pluto sent, at requeste of Saturne,
For which his hors for fere gan to turne,
And leep asyde, and foundred as he leep;
And, er that Arcite may taken keep, (1830)
He pighte him on the pomel of his heed,
That in the place he lay as he were
deed, 2690

His brest to-brosten with his sadel-bowe.
As blak he lay as any cole or crowe,
So was the blood y-ronnen in his face.
Anon he was y-born out of the place
With herte soor, to Theseus paleys. 2695
Tho was he corven out of his harnays,
And in a bed y-brought ful faire and
blyve,

For he was yet in memorie and alyve, (1840)
And alway crying after Emelye.

Duk Theseus, with al his companye, 2700
Is comen hoom to Athenes his citee,
With alle blisse and greet solempnitee.
Al be it that this aventure was falle,
He nolde noght disconforten hem alle.
Men seyde eek, that Arcite shal nat dye;
He shal ben heled of his maladye. 2706
And of another thing they were as fayn,
That of hem alle was ther noon y-slayn,
Al were they sore y-hurt, and namely oon,
That with a spere was thirled his brest-
boon. (1852) 2710

To othere woundes, and to broken armes,
Some hadden salves, and some hadden
charmes;

Fermacies of herbes, and eek save
They dronken, for they wolde hir limes
have.

For which this noble duk, as he wel can,
Conforteth and honoureth every man, 2716
And made revel al the longe night,
Un-to the straunge lordes, as was right.
Ne ther was holden no disconfitinge, (1861)
But as a justes or a tourneyinge; 2720
For soothly ther was no disconfiture,
For falling nis nat but an aventure;
Ne to be lad with fors un-to the stake
Unyolden, and with twenty knightes take.

O persone allone, with-oute mo, 2725
And haried forth by arme, foot, and to,
And eek his stede driven forth with staves,
With footmen, bothe yemen and eek
knaves, (1870)

It nas aretted him no vileinye, 2729
Ther may no man clepen it cowardye.

For which anon duk Theseus leet crye,
To stinten alle rancour and envye,
The gree as wel of o syde as of other,
And either syde y-lyk, as otheres brother;
And yaf hem yiftes after hir degree, 2735
And fully heeld a feste dayes thre;
And conveyed the kinges worthily
Out of his toun a journee largely. (1880)
And hoom wente every man the righte
way.

Ther was namore, but 'far wel, have good
day!' 2740

Of this bataille I wol namore endyte,
But speke of Palamon and of Arcite.

Swelleth the brest of Arcite, and the
sore

Encreaseth at his herte more and more.
The clothed blood, for any lechecraft,
Corrupteth, and is in his bouk y-last, 2746
That neither veyne-blood, ne ventusinge,
Ne drinke of herbes may ben his helpinge.
The vertu expulsif, or animal, (1891)

Fro thilke vertu cleped natural 2750
Ne may the venim voyden, ne expelle.

The pyper of his longes gonne to swelle,
And every lacerte in his brest adoun
Is shent with venim and corrupcioun.
Him gayneth neither, for to gete his lyf,
Vomyt upward, ne downward laxatif; 2756

Al is to-brosten thilke regoun,
Nature hath now no dominacioun. (1890)
And certainly, ther nature wol nat wirche,
Far-wel, phisyk! go ber the man to
chirche! 2760

This al and som, that Arcite mot dye,
For which he sendeth after Emelye,
And Palamon, that was his coain dere;
Than seyde he thus, as ye shul after
here.

'Naught may the woful spirit in myn
herte 2765

Declare o poynt of alle my sorwes smerte
To yow, my lady, that I love most;
But I biquethe the service of my goot (1910)

To yow aboven every creature,
Sin that my lyf may no lenger dure. 2770
Allas, the wo! alas, the peynes stronge,
That I for yow have suffred, and so longe!
Allas, the deeth! alas, myn Emelye!
Allas, departing of our companye! 2774
Allas, myn hertes quene! alas, my wyf!
Myn hertes lady, endere of my lyf!
What is this world? what asketh men to
have?

Now with his love, now in his colde grave
Allone, with-oute any companye. (1921)
Far-wel, my swete fo! myn Emelye! 2781
And softe tak me in your armes tweye,
For love of God, and herkneth what I seye.

I have heer with my coain Palamon
Had stryf and rancour, many a day a gon,
For love of yow, and for my jelousye. 2785
And Jupiter so wis my soule gye,

To speken of a servant proprely,
With alle circumstaunces trewely, (1930)
That is to seyn, trouthe, honour, and
knighthede,

Wisdom, humblesse, estaat, and heigh
kinrede, 2791

Fredom, and al that longeth to that art,
So Jupiter have of my soule part,

As in this world right now ne knowe I non
So worthy to ben loved as Palamon, 2794

That serveth yow, and wol don al his lyf.
And if that ever ye shul been a wyf,

Foryet nat Palamon, the gentil man.' (1939)
And with that word his speche faille gan,

For from his feet up to his brest was come
The cold of deeth, that hadde him over-
come. 2800

And yet more-over, in his armes two
The vital strengthe is lost, and al ago.

Only the intellect, with-oute more,
That dwelled in his herte syk and sore,

Gan failen, when the herte felte deeth,
Dusked his eyen two, and failed breeth.

But on his lady yet caste he his ye (1949)
His laste word was, 'mercy, Emelye!'

His spirit changed hous, and wente ther,
As I cam never, I can nat tellen wher, 2810

Therfor I stinte, I nam no divinistre;
Of soules finde I nat in this registre,

Ne me ne list thilke opiniouns to telle
Of hem, though that they wryten wher
they dwella.

Arcite is cold, ther Mars his soule gye ;
Now wol I speken forth of Emelye. 2816

Shrighte Emelye, and howleth Palamon,
And Theseus his suster took anon (1960)
Swowninge, and bar hir fro the corps away.
What helpeth it to tarien forth the day,
To tellen how she weep, bothe eve and
morwe? 2821

For in swich cas wommen have swich
sorwe,
Whan that hir housbonds been from hem
ago,

That for the more part they sorwen so,
Or elles fallen in swich maladye, 2825
That at the laste certainly they dye.

Infinite been the sorwes and the teres
Of olde folk, and folk of tendre yeres, (1970)
In al the toun, for deeth of this Theban ;
For him ther wepeth bothe child and
man ; 2830

So greet a weping was ther noon, certayn,
Whan Ector was y-brought, al fresh y-slayn,
To Troye ; alas ! the pitee that was ther,
Cracching of chekes, rending eek of heer.
'Why woldestow be deed,' thise wommen
crye, 2835

'And haddest gold y-nough, and Emelye ?'
No man mighte gladen Theseus,
Savage his olde fader Egeus, (1980)
That knew this worldes transmutacioun,
As he had seyn it chaungen up and doun,
Joye after wo, and wo after gladnesse :
And shewed hem ensamples and lyknesse.

'Right as ther deyed never man,' quod
he, 2843
'That he ne livede in erthe in som degree,
Right so ther livede never man,' he seyde,
'In al this world, that som tyme he ne
deyde. (1988) 2846

This world nis but a thurghfare ful of wo,
And we ben pilgrimes, passinge to and fro ;
Deeth is an ende of every worldly sore.'
And over al this yet seyde he muchel more
To this effect, ful wysly to enhorten 2851
The peple, that they sholde hem reconforte.

Duk Theseus, with al his bisy cure,
Caste now wher that the sepulture
Of good Arcite may best y-maked be, 2855
And eek most honorable in his degree.
And at the laste he took conclusioun, (1999)
That ther as first Arcite and Palamoun

Hadden for love the bataille hem bitwene,
That in that selve grove, swote and grene,
Ther as he hadde his amorous desires, 2861
His compleynt, and for love his hote fires,
He wolde make a fyr, in which th'office
Funeral he mighte al accomplice ;
And leet comaunde anon to hakke and
hewe (2007) 2865

The okes olde, and leye hem on a rewe
In colpons wel arrayed for to brenne ;
His officers with swifte feet they renne
And ryde anon at his comaundement.
And after this, Theseus hath y-sent 2870
After a bere, and it al over-spradde
With cloth of gold, the richest that he
hadde.

And of the same suyte he cladde Arcite ;
Upon his hondes hadde he gloves whyte ;
Eek on his heed a crowne of laurer
grene, 2875
And in his hond a sword ful bright and
kene. (2018)

He leyde him bare the visage on the bere,
Therwith he weep that pitee was to here.
And for the peple sholde seen him alle,
Whan it was day, he broghte him to the
halle, 2880

That roreth of the crying and the soun.
Tho cam this woful Theban Palamoun,
With flotery berd, and ruggy ashy heres,
In clothes blake, y-dropped al with teres ;
And, passing othere of weping, Emelye,
The rewfulleste of al the companye. 2886
In as muche as the service sholde be
The more noble and riche in his degree,
Duk Theseus leet forth three stedes bringe,
That trapped were in steel al gliteringe,
And covered with the armes of daun
Arcite. (2033) 2891

Up-on thise stedes, that weren grete and
whyte,
Ther seten folk, of which oon bar his sheeld,
Another his spere up in his hondes heeld ;
The thridde bar with him his bowe Tur-
keys, 2895
Of brend gold was the cas, and eek the
harneys ; (2038)

And riden forth a pas with sorweful chere
Toward the grove, as ye shul after here.
The nobleste of the Grekes that ther were
Upon hir shuldres carieden the bere, 2900

With slakke pas, and eyen rede and wete,
Thurgh-out the citee, by the maister-strete,
That sprad was al with blak, and wonder
hye

Right of the same is al the strete y-wrye.
Up-on the right hond wente old Egeus, 2905
And on that other syde duk Theseus,
With vessels in hir hand of gold ful fyn,
Al ful of hony, milk, and blood, and wyn;
Eek Palamon, with ful greet companye;
And after that cam woful Emelye, 2910
With fyr in honde, as was that tyme the
gyse, (2053)

To do th'office of funeral servyse.

Heigh labour, and ful greet apparailinge
Was at the service and the fyr-makinge,
That with his grene top the heven raughte,
And twenty fadme of brede the armes
straughte; 2916

This is to seyn, the bowes were so brode.
Of stree first ther was leyd ful many a
lode. (2060)

But how the fyr was maked up on highte,
And eek the names how the treës highte,
As ook, firre, birch, asp, alder, holm,
popler, 2921

Wilow, elm, plane, ash, box, chasteyn,
lind, laurer,

Mapul, thorn, beech, hasel, ew, whippel-
tree,

How they weren feld, shal nat be told for
me;

Ne how the goddes ronnen up and down,
Disherited of hir habitacioun, 2926

In which they woneden in reste and pees,
Nymphes, Faunes, and Amadrides; (2070)

Ne how the bestes and the briddes alle
Fledden for fere, whan the wode was falle;

Ne how the ground agast was of the light,
That was nat wont to seen the sonne bright;

Ne how the fyr was couched first with stree,
And than with drye stokkes cloven a thre,

And than with grene wode and spycerye,
And than with cloth of gold and with
perrye, 2936

And gerlandes hanging with ful many
a flour,

The mirre, th'encens, with al so greet
odour;

Ne how Arcite lay among al this, (2081)
Ne what riches aboute his body is; 2940

Ne how that Emelye, as was the gyse,
Putte in the fyr of funeral servyse;
Ne how she swowned whan men made the
fyr,

Ne what she spak, ne what was hir desyr;
Ne what Jeweles men in the fyr tho caste,
Whan that the fyr was greet and brente
faste; 2946

Ne how som caste hir sheeld, and som hir
spere,

And of hir vestiments, whiche that they
were, (2090)

And cuppes ful of wyn, and milk, and
blood,

Into the fyr, that brente as it were wood;
Ne how the Grekes with an huge route

Thryës riden al the fyr aboute 2952
Up-on the lefthand, with a loud shoutinge,

And thryës with hir speres clateringe;
And thryës how the ladies gonne crye; 2955

Ne how that lad was hom-ward Emelye;
Ne how Arcite is brent to asshen colde;

Ne how thatliche-wake was y-holde (2100)
Al thilke night, ne how the Grekes pleye

The wake-pleyes, ne kepe I nat to seye; 2960
Who wrastleth best naked, with oille

enoynt,
Ne who that bar him best, in no disjoynt.

I wol nat tellen eek how that they goon
Hoom til Athenes, whan the pley is doon;

But shortly to the poynt than wol I wende,
And maken of my longe tale an ende. 2966

By processe and by lengthe of certeyn
yeres

Al stinted is the moorning and the teres.
Of Grekes, by oon general assent, (2111)

Than semed me ther was a parlement 2970
At Athenes, up-on certeyn poynts and cas;

Among the whiche poynts y-spoken was
To have with certeyn contrees alliaunce,

And have fully of Thebens obeisaunce.
For which this noble Theseus anon 2975

Leet senden after gentil Palamon,
Unwist of him what was the cause and

why;
But in his blake clothes sorwefully (2120)

He cam at his comaundement in hye.
Tho sente Theseus for Emelye. 2980

Whan they were set, and lust was al the
place,

And Theseus abiden hadde a space

Er any word cam from his wyse brest,
His eyen sette he ther as was his lest,
And with a sad visage he syked stille, 2985
And after that right thus he seyde his wille.

'The firste moevere of the cause above,
Whan he first made the faire cheyne of
love, (2130)

Greet was th'effect, and heigh was his
entente ;

Wel wiste he why, and what ther-of he
mente ; 2990

For with that faire cheyne of love he bond
The fyr, the eyr, the water, and the
lond

In certeyn boundes, that they may nat flee ;
That same prince and that moevere, ' quod
he,

'Hath stablissed, in this wretched world
adoun, 2995

Certeine dayes and duracioun

To al that is engendred in this place, (2139)

Over the whiche day they may nat pace,

Al mowe they yet tho dayes wel abregge ;

Ther needeth non auctoritee allegge, 3000

For it is preved by experience,

But that me list declaren my sentence.

Than may men by this ordre wel discerne,

That thilke moevere stable is and eterne.

Wel may men knowe, but it be a fool, 3005

That every part deryveth from his hool.

For nature hath nat take his beginning

Of no party ne cantel of a thing, (2150)

But of a thing that parfit is and stable,

Descending so, til it be corrupable. 3010

And therefore, of his wyse purveyaunce,

He hath so wel biset his ordinaunce,

That speses of thinges and progressiouns

Shullen enduren by successiouns,

And nat eterne be, with-oute ly8 : 3015

This maistow understonde and seen at y8.

'Lo the ook, that hath so long a noris-
shinge

From tyme that it first biginneth springe,

And hath so long a lyf, as we may see, (2161)

Yet at the laste wasted is the tree. 3020

'Considereth eek, how that the harde
stoon

Under our feet, on which we trede and
goon,

Yit wasteth it, as it lyth by the weye.

The brode river somtyme wexeth dreye.

The grete tounes see we wane and wende.
Than may ye see that al this thing hath
ende. 3026

'Of man and womman seen we wel also,
That nedeth, in oon of thise termes two,
This is to seyn, in youthe or elles age, (2171)
He moot ben deed, the king as shal a
page ; 3030

Som in his bed, som in the depe see,
Som in the large feeld, as men may se ;
Ther helpeth noght, al goth that ilke weye.
Thanne may I seyn that al this thing moot
doye. 3034

What maketh this but Jupiter the king?
The which is prince and cause of alle thing,
Converting al un-to his propre welle,
From which it is deryved, sooth to telle.

And here-agayns no creature on lyve (2181)

Of no degree availleth for to stryve. 3040

'Thanne is it wisdom, as it thinketh me,
To maken vertu of necessitee,

And take it wel, that we may nat eschue,

And namely that to us alle is due.

And who-so grucbeth ought, he dooth
folye, 3045

And rebel is to him that al may gye.

And certainly a man hath most honour

To dyen in his excellence and flour, (2190)

Whan he is siker of his gode name ;

Than hath he doon his freend, ne him, no
shame. 3050

And gladder oghte his freend ben of his
deeth,

Whan with honour up-yolden is his breeth,

Than whan his name apalled is for age :

For al forgotten is his vasselage.

Than is it best, as for a worthy fame, 3055

To dyen whan that he is best of name.

The contrarie of al this is wilfulnesse.

Why grucchen we? why have we hevi-
nesse, (2200)

That good Arcite, of chivalrye flour

Departed is, with duetee and honour, 3060

Out of this foule prison of this lyf?

Why grucchen heer his cosin and his wyf

Of his wel-fare that loved hem so weel?

Can he hem thank? nay, God wot, never
a deel,

That bothe his soule and eek hem-self
offende, 3065

And yet they mowe hir lustes nat amende.

'What may I conclude of this longeserie,
 But, after wo, I rede us to be merie, (2210)
 And thanken Jupiter of al his grace?
 And, er that we departen from this
 place, 3070
 I rede that we make, of sorwes two,
 O parfyt joye, lasting ever-mo;
 And loketh now, wher most sorwe is her-
 inne,
 Ther wol we first amenden and biginne.
 'Suster,' quod he, 'this is my fulle assent,
 With alth'avys heer of my parlement, 3076
 That gentil Palamon, your owne knight,
 That serveth yow with wille, herte, and
 might, (2220)
 And ever hath doon, sin that ye first him
 knewe, 3079
 That yeshul, of your grace, up-on him rewe,
 And taken him for housbonde and for
 lord:
 Leen me your hond, for this is our acord.
 Lat see now of your wommanly pitee.
 He is a kinges brother sone, pardes;
 And, though he were a povre bachelor, 3085
 Sin he hath served yow so many a yeer,

And had for yow so greet adversitec,
 It moste been considered, leveth me; (2230)
 For gentil mercy oghte to passen right.'
 Than seyde he thus to Palamon ful right;
 'I trowe ther nedeth litel sermoning 3091
 To make yow assente to this thing.
 Com neer, and tak your lady by the hond.'
 Bitwixen hem was maad anon the bond,
 That highte matrimoine or mariage, 3095
 By al the counseil and the baronage.
 And thus with alle blisse and melodye
 Hath Palamon y-wedded Emelye. (2240)
 And God, that al this wyde world hath
 wroght,
 Sende him his love, that hath it dere
 a-boght. 3100
 For now is Palamon in alle wele,
 Living in blisse, in richesse, and in hele;
 And Emelye him loveth so tendrely,
 And he hir serveth al-so gentilly,
 That never was ther no word hem bitwene
 Of jelousye, or any other tene. 3106
 Thus endeth Palamon and Emelye;
 And God save al this faire companye!—
 Amen. (2250)

Here is ended the Knightes Tale.

THE MILLER'S PROLOGUE.

Here folwen the wordes bitwene the Host and the Millere.

WHAN that the Knight had thus his tale
 y-told,
 In al the route nas ther yong ne old 3110
 That he ne seyde it was a noble storie,
 And worthy for to drawen to memorie;
 And namely the gentils everichoon.
 Our Hoste lough and swoor, 'so moot I goon,
 This gooth aright; unboked is the male;
 Lat see now who shal telle another tale:
 For trewely, the game is wel bigonne. 3117
 Now telleth ye, sir Monk, if that ye conne,

Sumwhat, to quyte with the Knightes
 tale.' (11)
 The Miller, that for-dronken was al
 pale, 3120
 So that unnethe up-on his hors he sat,
 He nolde avalen neither hood ne hat,
 Ne abyde no man for his curteisye,
 But in Pilates vois he gan to crye,
 And swoor by armes and by blood and
 bones, 3125
 'I can a noble tale for the nones,

With which I wol now quyte the Knightes tale.'

Our Hoste saugh that he was dronke of ale,

And seyde - 'abyd, Robin, my leve brother
Som bettre man shal telle us first another
Abyd, and lat us werken thriftily'

'By goddes soul,' quod he, 'that wol
nat I,

For I wol speke, or elles go my way.'

Our Hoste answerde: 'tel on, a devel
way'

Thou art a fool, thy wit is overcome.'

'Now harkneth,' quod the Miller, 'alle
and some!

But first I make a protestacioun

That I am dronke, I knowe it by my
soun;

And therfore, if that I mispoke or seye,
Wyte it the ale of Southwerk, I yow
preye,

For I wol telle a legende and a lyf
Bothe of a Carpenter, and of his wyf,
How that a clerk hath set the wrightes
cappa.'

The Reve answerde and seyde, stint thy
clappe,

Lat be thy lewed drunken harlotrye.

It is a synne and eek a greet folye
To asperen any man, or him diffame,
And eek to bringen wyves in swich
fame.

Thou mayst y-nogh of othere thinges
soyn.'

This drunken Miller spak falsoun ageyn,
And seyde, 'love brother Osewold,
Who hath no wyf, he is no cokewold.
But I sey nat therfore that thou art con,
Ther been ful gode wyves many con,

†And over a thousand gode ayeins
hadde,

†That knewestow wel thy-self, but-if thou
maide.

Why artow angry with my tale now?
I have a wyf, pardoe, as well as thou
Yet none I ter the oxen in my plogh.
Taken up-on me more than y-nogh
As demen of my-self that I were con
I wol beleve wel that I am noon.

An housbond shal nat been inquestid
Of goddes privetee, nor of his wyf
So he may fin le goddes foyson there,
Of the remenant nedeth nat enquire.

What sholde I more seyn, but
Millere

He nolde his wordes for no man forbere
But tolde his cherles tale in his manere;
Methinketh that I shal rehere it here
And therfore every gentil wight
preye.

For goddes love, demeth nat that I seye
Of evel entente, but that I moot rehere
Hir tales alle, be they bettre or worse
Or elles falsen som of my matere
And therfore, who-so list it nat y-bere
Turne over the leef, and chese another
tale.

For he shal finde y-nowe, grete and smale,
Of sternal thing that toucheth gentilesse
And eek moralitee and hoynesse
Blameth nat me if that ye chese amale.
The Miller is a cherl, ye knowe wel
this,

So was the Reve, and othere many con
And harlotrye they tolden bothe ten
Avyseth yow and putte me out of blame
And eek men shal nat make cruse of
gaine.

Here endeth the prologe.

THE MILLERES TALE.

Here biginneth the Millere his tale.

WHYLOM ther was dwellinge at Oxenford
A riche gnof, that gestes heeld to bord,
And of his craft he was a Carpenter.
With him ther was dwellinge a povre
scoler, 3190

Had lerned art, but al his fantasye
Was turned for to lerne astrologye,
And coude a certeyn of conclusiouns
To demen by interrogaciouns,
If that men axed him in certein houres, 3195
Whan that men sholde have droghte or
elles shoures, (10)

Or if men axed him what sholde bifalle
Of every thing, I may nat rekene hem alle.

This clerk was cleped hende Nicholas;
Of derne love he coude and of solas; 3200
And ther-to he was sleigh and ful privee,
And lyk a mayden meke for to see.

A chambro hadde he in that hostelrye
Allone, with-outen any companye,
Ful fetialy y-dight with herbes swote; 3205
And he him-self as swete as is the rote (20)
Of licorys, or any cetewale.

His Almageste and bokes grete and smale,
His astrelabie, longinge for his art,
His augrim-stones layen faire a-part 3210
On shelves couched at his beddes heed:
His presse y-covered with a falding reed.
And al above ther lay a gay sautrye,
On which he made a nightes melodye
So swetely, that al the chambre rong; 3215
And *Angelus ad virginem* he song; (30)
And after that he song the kinges note;
Ful often blessed was his mery throte.

And thus this swete clerk his tyme spent
After his freendes finding and his rente.

This Carpenter had wedded newe a wyf
Which that he lovede more than his lyf;
Of eightetene yeer she was of age.
Jalous he was, and heeld hir narwe in cage,

For she was wilde and yong, and he was
old, (39) 3225

And demed him-self ben lyk a cokewold.
He knew nat Catoun, for his wit was rude,
That bad man sholde wedde his similitude.
Men sholde wedden after hir estaat,
For youthe and elde is often at debaat. 3230
But sith that he was fallen in the snare,
He moste endure, as other folk, his care.

Fair was this yonge wyf, and ther-with-al
As any wesele hir body gent and smal.
A ceynt she werede barred al of silk, 3235
A barmclooth eek as whyt as morne milk
Up-on hir lendes, ful of many a gore. (51)
Whyt was hir smok and brouded al bifore
And eek bihinde, on hir coler aboute,
Of col-blak silk, with-inne and eek with-
oute. 3240

The tapes of hir whyte voluper
Were of the same suyte of hir coler;
Hir filet brood of silk, and set ful hie:
And sikerly she hadde a likerous yē. 3244
Ful smale y-pulled were hir browes two,
And tho were bent, and blake as any
sloo. (60)

She was ful more blisful on to see
Than is the newe pere-jonette tree; 3248
And softer than the wolle is of a wether.
And by hir girdel heeng a purs of lether
Tasseld with silk, and perled with latoun.
In al this world, to seken up and down,
There nis no man so wys, that coude
thenche

So gay a popelote, or swich a wenche. 3254
Ful brighter was the shyning of hir hewe
Than in the tour the noble y-forged newe.
But of hir song, it was as loude and yerne
As any swalwe sittinge on a berne. (72)
Ther-to she coude skippe and make game,
As any kide or calf folwinge his dame. 3260

Hir mouth was swete as bragot or the
meeth,
Or hord of apples leyd in hey or heeth.
Winsinge she was, as is a joly colt,
Long as a mast, and upright as a bolt.
A brooch she baar up-on hir lowe cooler, 3265
As brood as is the bos of a booler. (80)

Hir shoes were laced on hir legges hye;
She was a prymerole, a pigges-nye
For any lord to leggen in his bedde,
Or yet for any good yeman to wedde. 3270

Now sire, and eft sire, so bifel the cas,
That on a day this hende Nicholas
Fil with this yonge wyf to rage and playe,
Why! that hir housbond was at Oseneye,
As clerkes ben ful subtile and ful queynte;
And prively he caughte hir by the queynte,
And seyde, 'y-wis, but if ich have my
wille, (91) 3277

For derne love of thee, Iemman, I spille.'
And heeld hir harde by the haunche-bones,
And seyde, 'Iemman, love me al at-once,
Or I wol dyen, also god me save!' 3281
And she sprong as a colt doth in the trave,
And with hir heed she wryed faste away,
And seyde, 'I wol nat kisse thee, by my fey,
Why, lat be,' quod she, 'lat be, Nicholas,
Or I wol crye out "harrow" and "allas."
Do wey your handes for your curteisye!'

This Nicholas gan mercy for to crye,
And spak so faire, and profred hir so faste,
That she hir love him graunted atte
laste, (104) 3290

And swoor hir ooth, by seint Thomas of
Kent,

That she wol been at his comandement,
Whan that she may hir leyser wel espye.
'Myn housbond is so ful of jalousye,
That but ye wayte wel and been privee, 3295
I woot right wel I nam but deed,' quod she.
'Ye moste been ful derne, as in this cas.'

'Nay ther-of care thee noght,' quod
Nicholas, (112)

'A clerk had litherly biset his whyle,
But-if he coude a carpenter bigyle.' 3300
And thus they been acorded and y-sworn
To wayte a tyme, as I have told biforn.

Whan Nicholas had doon thus everydeel,
And thakked hir aboute the lendes weel,
He kist hir swete, and taketh his sautrye,
And pleyeth faste, and maketh melodye.

Than fil it thus, that to the parish-
chirche, (121)

Cristes owne werkis for to wirche,
This gode wyf wente on an haliday;
Hir forheed shoon as bright as any day, 3310
So was it wasshen whan she leet hir werk.

Now was ther of that chirche a parish-
clerk,

The which that was y-cleped Absolon.
Crul was his heer, and as the gold it shoon,
And strouted as a fanne large and brode;
Ful streight and even lay his joly shode.
His rode was reed, his eyen greye as goos;
With Powles window corven on his shoon,
In hoses rede he wente fetisly. (133)

Y-clad he was ful smal and proprely, 3320
Al in a kirtel of a light wachet;
Ful faire and thikke been the poyntes set.
And ther-up-on he hadde a gay surplys
As whyt as is the bloame up-on the ryse.
A mery child he was, so god me save, 3325
Wel coude he laten blood and clippe and
shave, (140)

And make a chartre of lond or acquitaunce.
In twenty manere coude he trippe and
daunce

After the scole of Oxenforde tho,
And with his legges casten to and fro, 3330
And pleyen songes on a small rubible;
Ther-to he song som-tyme a loud quynible;
And as wel coude he pleye on his giterne.
In al the toun nas brewhous ne tavern
That he ne visited with his solas, 3335
Ther any gaylard tappestere was. (150)
But sooth to seyn, he was somdel squaymous
Of farting, and of speche daungerous.

This Absolon, that jolif was and gay,
Gooth with a sencer on the haliday, 3340
Sensing the wyves of the parish faste;
And many a lovely look on hem he caste,
And namely on this carpenteres wyf.
To loke on hir him thoughte a mery lyf.
She was so propre and swete and likerous.
I dar wel seyn, if she had been a moun, (160)
And he a cat, he wolde hir hente anon.

This parish-clerk, this joly Absolon,
Hath in his herte swich a love-longinge,
That of no wyf ne took he noon offringe;
For curteisye, he seyde, he wolde noon.
The mone, whan it was night, ful brighte
shoon, 3352

And Absolon his giterne hath y-take,
 For paramours, he thoghte for to wake.
 And forth he gooth, jolif and amorous, 3355
 Til he cam to the carpenteres hous (170)
 A lital after cokkes hadde y-crowe;
 And dressed him up by a shot-windowe
 That was up-on the carpenteres wal.
 He singeth in his vois gentil and smal,
 'Now, dere lady, if thy wille be, 3361
 I preye yow that ye wol rewe on me,'
 Ful wel acordaunt to his giterninge.
 This carpenter awook, and herde him
 singe,
 And spak un-to his wyf, and seyde
 anon, 3365
 'What! Alison! herestow nat Absolon
 That chaunteth thus under our boures
 wal?' (181)
 And she answerde hir housbond ther-
 with-al,
 'Yis, god wot, John, I here it every-del.'
 This passeth forth; what wol ye bet
 than wel? 3370
 Fro day to day this joly Absolon
 So woweth hir, that him is wo bigon.
 He waketh al the night and al the day;
 He kempte hise lokkes brode, and made
 him gay; 3374
 He woweth hir by menes and brocage,
 And swoor he wolde been hir owne
 page; (190)
 He singeth, brokkinge as a nightingale;
 He sente hir piment, meeth, and spyced
 ale,
 And wafres, pyping hote out of the glede;
 And for she was of toune, he profred
 mede. 3380
 For som folk wol ben wonnen for richesse,
 And som for strokes, and som for gentil-
 lesse.
 Somtyme, to shewe his lightnesse and
 maistrye,
 He pleyeth Herodes on a scaffold hye.
 But what availleth him as in this cas? 3385
 She loveth so this hende Nicholas, (200)
 That Absolon may blowe the bukkes horn;
 He ne hadde for his labour but a scorn:
 And thus she maketh Absolon hir ape,
 And al his ernest turneth til a jape. 3390
 Ful sooth is this proverbe, it is no lye,
 Men seyn right thus, 'alwey the nye alye

Maketh the ferre leve to be looth.'
 For though that Absolon be wood or
 wrooth, 3394
 By-cause that he fer was from hir sighte,
 This nye Nicholas stood in his lighte. (210)
 Now bere thee wel, thou hende Nicho-
 las!
 For Absolon may waille and singe 'allas.'
 And so bifel it on a Saturday,
 This carpenter was goon til Osenay; 3400
 And hende Nicholas and Alisoun
 Acorded been to this conclusioun,
 That Nicholas shal shapen him a wyle
 This sely jalous housbond to bigyle;
 And if so be the game wente aright, 3405
 She sholde slepen in his arm al night,
 For this was his desyr and hir also. (221)
 And right anon, with-uten wordes mo,
 This Nicholas no lenger wolde tarie,
 But doth ful softe un-to his chambre
 carie 3410
 Bothe mete and drinke for a day or
 tweye,
 And to hir housbonde bad hir for to seye,
 If that he axed after Nicholas,
 She sholde seye she niste where he was,
 Of al that day she saugh him nat with yë;
 She trowed that he was in maladye, (230)
 For, for no cry, hir mayde coude him
 calle; 3417
 He nolde answer, for no-thing that
 mighte falle.
 This passeth forth al thilke Saturday,
 That Nicholas stille in his chambre lay,
 And eet and sleep, or dide what him
 leste, 3421
 Til Sonday, that the sonne gooth to reste.
 This sely carpenter hath greet mervyle
 Of Nicholas, or what thing mighte him
 eyle, 3424
 And seyde, 'I am adrad, by seint Thomas,
 It stondeh nat aright with Nicholas. (240)
 God shilde that he deyde sodeynly!
 This world is now ful tikel, sikerly;
 I saugh to-day a cors y-born to chirche
 That now, on Monday last, I saugh him
 wirche. 3430
 Go up,' quod he un-to his knave anon,
 'Clepe at his dore, or knocke with a stoon,
 Loke how it is, and tel me boldely.'
 This knave gooth him up ful sturdily,

And at the chambre-dore, whyl that he
stood, 3435
He cryde and knocked as that he were
wood :— (250)

'What! how! what do ye, maister
Nicholay?

How may ye slepen al the longe day?'

But al for noght, he herde nat a word ;
An hole he fond, ful lowe up-on a bord,
Ther as the cat was wont in for to
crepe; 3441

And at that hole he looked in ful depe,
And at the laste he hadde of him a sighte.
This Nicholas sat gaping ever up-righte,
As he had kyked on the newe mone. 3445
Adoun he gooth, and tolde his maister
sone (260)

In what array he saugh this ilke man.

This carpenter to blessen him bigan,
And seyde, 'help us, seinte Frideswyde!
A man woot litel what him shal bityde.
This man is falle, with his astromye, 3451
In som woodnesse or in som agonye ;
I thoghte ay wel how that it sholde be!
Men sholde nat knowe of goddes privetee.
Ye, blessed be alwey a lewed man, 3455
That noght but only his bileve can! (270)
So ferde another clerk with astromye ;
He walked in the feeldes for to pry
Up-on the sterres, what ther sholde bifalle,
Til he was in a marle-pit y-falle; 3460
He saugh nat that. But yet, by seint
Thomas,

Me reweth sore of hende Nicholas.

He shal be rated of his studying,

If that I may, by Jesus, hevene king!

Get me a staf, that I may underspore,
Why! that thou, Robin, hevest up the
dore. (280) 3466

He shal out of his studying, as I gesse'—
And to the chambre-dore he gan him
dresse.

His knave was a strong carl for the nones,
And by the haspe he haf it up atones ;
In-to the floor the dore fil anon. 3471

This Nicholas sat ay as stille as stoon,
And ever gaped upward in-to the eir.

This carpenter wende he were in despeir,
And hente him by the sholdres mightily,
And shook him harde, and cryde spit-
ously, (290) 3476

'What! Nicholay! what, how! what!
loke adoun!

Awake, and thenk on Cristes passioun ;
I crouche thee from elves and fro wightes!'
Ther-with the night-spal seyde he anon-
rightes 3480

On foure halves of the hous aboute,
And on the threshfold of the dore with-
oute :—

'Jesu Crist, and seynt Benedight,
Blesse this hous from every wikked
wight,
For nightes verye, the white pater-
noster!— 3485

Where wentestow, seynt Petres soster?'
And atte laste this hende Nicholas (301)
Gan for to syke sore, and seyde, 'allas!
Shal al the world be lost eftsones now?'

This carpenter answerde, 'what
seystow? 3490

What! thenk on god, as we don, men
that swinke.'

This Nicholas answerde, 'fecche me
drinke ;

And after wol I speke in privetee
Of certeyn thing that toucheth me and
thee; 3494

I wol telle it non other man, certeyn.'

This carpenter goth down, and comth
ageyn, (310)

And broghte of mighty ale a large quart ;
And whan that ech of hem had dronke
his part,

This Nicholas his dore faste shette, 3499
And doun the carpenter by him he sette.

He seyde, 'John, myn hoste lief and
dere,

Thou shalt up-on thy trouthe swere me
here,

That to no wight thou shalt this conseil
wreye ;

For it is Cristes conseil that I seye, 3504
And if thou telle it man, thou are forlore ;
For this vengauce thou shalt han ther-
fore, (320)

That if thou wreye me, thou shalt be
wood!'

'Nay, Crist forbede it, for his holy blood!'
Quod tho this sely man, 'I nam no labbe,
Ne, though I seye, I nam nat lief to
gabbe. 3510

Sey what thou wolt, I shal it never telle
To child ne wyf, by him that harwed
helle!

'Now John,' quod Nicholas, 'I wol nat
lye;

I have y-founde in myn astrologye,
As I have loked in the mone bright, 3515
That now, a Monday next, at quarter-
night, (330)
Shal falle a reyn and that so wilde and
wood,

That half so greet was never Noës flood.
This world,' he seyde, 'in lasse than in
an hour

Shal al be dreynt, so hidous is the shour;
Thus shal mankynde drenche and lese
hir lyf.' 3521

This carpenter answerde, 'allas, my wyf!
And shal she drenche? alas! myn Ali-
soun!'

For sorwe of this he fil almost adoun,
And seyde, 'is ther no remedie in this
cas?' 3525

'Why, yis, for gode,' quod hende
Nicholas, (340)

'If thou wolt werken after lore and reed;
Thou mayst nat werken after thyn owene
heed.

For thus seith Salomon, that was ful
trewe,

"Werk al by conseil, and thou shalt nat
rewa." 3530

And if thou werken wolt by good conseil,
I undertake, with-uten mast and seyl,
Yet shal I saven hir and thee and me.

Hastow nat herd how saved was Noë,
Whan that our lord had warned him
biforn 3535

That al the world with water sholde be
lorn?' (350)

'Yis,' quod this carpenter, 'ful yore
ago.'

'Hastow nat herd,' quod Nicholas, 'also
The sorwe of Noë with his felawshipe, 3539
Er that he mighte gete his wyf to shipe?
Him had be lever, I dar wel undertake,
At thilke tyme, than alle hise wetheres
blake,

That she hadde had a ship hir-self allone.
And ther-fore. wostou what is best to
done? 3544

This asketh haste, and of an hastif thing
Men may nat preche or maken taryng.

Anon go gete us faste in-to this in (361)
A kneding-trogh, or elles a kimelin,
For ech of us, but loke that they be
large,

In whiche we mowe swimme as in a barge,
And han ther-inne vitaille suffisant 3551
But for a day; fy on the remenant!

The water shal aslake and goon away
Aboute pryme up-on the nexte day.

But Robin may nat wite of this, thy
knave, (369) 3555

Ne eek thy mayde Gille I may nat save;
Axe nat why, for though thou aske me,
I wol nat tellen goddes privetee.

Suffiseth thee, but if thy wittes madde,
To han as greet a grace as Noë hadde. 3560
Thy wyf shal I wel saven, out of doute,
Go now thy wey, and speed thee heer-
aboute.

But whan thou hast, for hir and thee
and me,

Y-geten us thise kneding-tubbes three,
Than shaltow hange hem in the roof ful
hye, 3565

That no man of our purveyaunce spye.

And whan thou thus hast doon as I have
seyd, (381)

And hast our vitaille faire in hem y-leyd,
And eek an ax, to smyte the corde atwo
When that the water comth, that we
may go, 3570

And broke an hole an heigh, up-on the
gable,

Unto the gardin-ward, over the stable,
That we may frely passen forth our way
Whan that the grete shour is goon away—
Than shaltow swimme as myrie, I under-
take, 3575

As doth the whyte doke after hir drake.

Than wol I clepe, "how! Alison! how!
John! (391)

Be myrie, for the flood wol passe anon."

And thou wolt seyn, "hayl, maister
Nicholay!

Good morwe, I se thee wel, for it is day"
And than shul we be lordes al our lyf 3581
Of al the world, as Noë and his wyf.

But of o thyng I warne thee ful right,
Be wel avysed, on that ilke night 3584

That we ben entred in-to shippes bord,
That noon of us ne speke nat a word, (400)
Ne clepe, ne crye, but been in his preyere;
For it is goddes owne heste dera.

Thy wyf and thou mote hange fer
a-twinne,

For that bitwixe yow shal be no sinne
No more in looking than ther shal in
dede; 3591

This ordinance is seyde, go, god thee spede!
Tomorwe at night, whan men ben alle
aslepe,

In-to our kneding-tubbes wol we crepe,
And sitten ther, abyding goddes grace.
Go now thy way, I have no lenger space
To make of this no lenger sermoning. (411)
Men seyn thus, "send the wyse, and sey
no-thing;" 3598

Thou art so wys, it nedeth thee nat teche;
(Go, save our lyf, and that I thee biseche.)

This sely carpenter goth forth his way.
Ful ofte he seith 'allas' and 'weylaway,'
And to his wyf he tolde his privetee;
And she was war, and knew it bet than
he, (418) 3604

What al this queynte cast was for to seye.
But nathelees she ferde as she wolde deye,
And seyde, 'allas! go forth thy way anon,
Help us to scape, or we ben lost echon;
I am thy trewe verray wedded wyf;
Go, dere spouse, and help to save our
lyf.' 3610

Lo! which a greet thyng is affeccoun!
Men may dye of imaginacioun,
So depe may impressioun be take.
This sely carpenter biginneth quake; 3614
Him thinketh verrailly that he may see
No's flood come walwing as the see (430)
To drenchen Alisoun, his hony dera.
He wepeth, weyleth, maketh sory chere,
He syketh with ful many a sory swogh.
He gooth and geteth him a kneding-trogh,
And after that a tubbe and a kimelin, 3621
And prively he sente hem to his in,
And heng hem in the roof in privetee.
His owne hand he made laddres three,
To climben by the ronges and the stalkes
Un-to the tubbes hanginge in the balkes,
And hem vitailed, bothe trogh and tubbe,
With breed and chese, and good ale in
a jubbe, (442) 3628

Suffysinge right y-nogh as for a day.
But er that he had maad al this array,
He sente his knave, and eek his wenche
also, 3631

Up-on his nede to London for to go.
And on the Monday, whan it drow to
night,

He shette his dore with-oute candel-light,
And dressed al thing as it sholde be. 3635
And shortly, up they clomben alle three;
They sitten stille wel a furlong-way. (451)

'Now, *Puter-noster*, clom!' seyde Nicho-
lay,

And 'clom,' quod John, and 'clom,' seyde
Alisoun.

This carpenter seyde his devocioun, 3640
And stille he sit, and biddeth his preyere,
Awaytinge on the reyn, if he it here.

The dede sleep, for very bisinesse,
Fil on this carpenter right, as I gesse,
Aboute corfew-tyme, or litel more; 3645
For travail of his goost he groneth
sore, (460)

And eft he routeth, for his heed mislay.
Doun of the laddre stalketh Nicholay.
And Alisoun, ful softe adoun she spedde;
With-uten wordes mo, they goon to
bedde 3650

Ther-as the carpenter is wont to lye.
Ther was the revel and the melodye;
And thus lyth Alison and Nicholas,
In bisinesse of mirthe and of solas, 3654
Til that the belle of laudes gan to ringe,
And freres in the chauncel gonne singe.

This parish-clerk, this amorous Ab-
solon, (471)

That is for love alwey so wo bigon,
Up-on the Monday was at Oseneye
With companye, him to disporte and
pleye, 3660

And axed up-on cas a cloisterer
Ful prively after John the carpenter;
And he drough him a-part out of the
chirche,

And seyde, 'I noot, I saugh him here nat
wirche

Sin Saterday; I trow that he be went 3665
For timber, ther our abbot hath him
sent; (480)

For he is wont for timber for to go,
And dwellen at the grange a day or two;

Or elles he is at his hous, certeyn ; 3669
Wher that he be, I can nat sothly seyn.'

This Absolon ful joly was and light,
And thoughte, 'now is tyme wake al night;
For sikirly I saugh him nat stiringe 3673
Aboute his dore sin day bigan to springe.
So moot I thryve, I shal, at cokkes crows,
Ful prively knocken at his windowe (490)
That stant ful lowe up-on his boures wal.
To Alison now wol I tellen al

My love-longing, for yet I shal nat
misse

That at the leste wey I shal hir kisse. 3680
Som maner confort shal I have, parfay,
My mouth hath icched al this longe
day ;

That is a signe of kissing atte leste.
Al night me mette eek, I was at a feste.
Therfor I wol gon slepe an houre or
tweye, 3685
And al the night than wol I wake and
pleye.' (500)

Whan that the firste cok hath crows,
anon

Up rist this joly lover Absolon,
And him arrayeth gny, at point-devyn.
But first he cheweth greyn and lycorys,
To smellen swete, er he had kembd his
heer. 3691

Under his tonge a trewe love he beer,
For ther-by wende he to ben gracious.
He rometh to the carpenteres hous,
And stille he stant under the shot-
windows ; (509) 3695

Un-to his brest it raughte, it was so lowe,
And softe he cogheth with a semi-soun—
'What do ye, hony-comb, swete Alison ?
My faire brid, my swete cinamome,
Awaketh, lemman myn, and speke to
me ! 3700

Wel litel thanken ye up-on my wo,
That for your love I swete ther I go.
No wonder is thogh that I swelte and
swete ;

I moorne as doth a lamb after the tete.
Y-wis, lemman, I have swich love-long-
inge, 3705

That lyk a turtel trewe is my moorninge ;
I may nat ete na more than a mayde.' (521)

'Go fro the window, Jakke fool,' she
seyde,

'As help me god, it wol nat be "com be
me," 3709

I love another, and elles I were to blame,
Wel bet than thee, by Jesu, Absolon !

Go forth thy wey, or I wol caste a ston,
And let me slepe, a twenty devel wey !'

'Allas,' quod Absolon, 'and weylawey !
That trewe love was ever so yvel biset !

Than kisse me, sin it may be no bet, (530)
For Jesus love and for the love of me.'

'Wiltow than go thy wey ther-with ?'
quod she.

'Ye, certes, lemman,' quod this Ab-
solon.

'Thanne make thee redy,' quod she,
'I come anon ;' 3720

†And un-to Nicholas she seyde stille,
†'Now hust, and thou shalt laughen al
thy fille.'

This Absolon doun sette him on his
knees,

And seyde, 'I am a lord at alle degrees ;
For after this I hope ther cometh more !
Lemman, thy grace, and swete brid, thyn
ore !' (540) 3720

The window she undoth, and that in
haste,

'Have do,' quod she, 'com of, and speed
thee faste,

Lest that our neighebores thee espyc.'

This Absolon gan wype his mouth ful
drye ; 3730

Derk was the night as pich, or as the cole,
And at the window out she putte hir hole,
And Absolon, him fil no bet ne wers,
But with his mouth he kiste hir naked
ore

Ful savourly, er he was war of this. 3735
Abak he sterte, and thoughte it was
amis, (550)

For wel he wiste a woman hath no
berd ;

He felte a thing al rough and long y-herd,
And seyde, 'fy ! alas ! what have I do ?'

'Tehee !' quod she, and clapte the
window to ; 3740

And Absolon goth forth a sory pee.

'A berd, a berd !' quod hende Nicholas,
'By goddes corpus, this goth faire and
weel !'

This sely Absolon berde every deel, 3744

And on his lippe he gan for anger byte ;
And to him-self he seyde, 'I shal thee
quyte !' (560)

Who rubbeth now, who froteth now his
lippes
With dust, with sond, with straw, with
clooth, with chippes,
But Absolon, that seith ful ofte, 'allas !
My soule bitake I un-to Sathanas, 3750
But me wer lever than al this toun,'
quod he,
'Of this despyt awroken for to be !
Allas !' quod he, 'allas ! I ne hadde y-
bleynt !'

His hote love was cold and al y-queynt ;
For fro that tyme that he had kiste hir
ers, 3755

Of paramours he sette nat a kers, (570)
For he was heled of his maladye ;
Ful ofte paramours he gan daffye,
And weep as dooth a child that is y-beta.
A softe paas he wente over the strete 3760
Un-til a smith men cleped daun Gerveys,
That in his forge smithed plough-harneys ;
He sharpeth shaar and culter bisily.

This Absolon knokketh al esily,
And seyde, 'undo, Gerveys, and that
anon.' 3765

'What, who artow?' 'It am I, Ab-
solon.' (580)
'What, Absolon ! for Cristes swete tree,
Why ryse ye so rathe, ey, *ben'cite* !
What cyleth yow ? som gay gerl, god it
woot, 3669

Hath brought yow thus up-on the viritoot ;
By sēynt Note, ye woot wel what I mene.'

This Absolon ne roghte nat a bene
Of al his pley, no word agayn he yaf ;
He hadde more tow on his distaf
Than Gerveys knew, and seyde, 'freend
so dere, (589) 3775

That hote culter in the chimenee here,
As lene it me, I have ther-with to done,
And I wol bringe it thee agayn ful sone.'

Gerveys answerde, 'certes, were it gold,
Or in a poke nobles alle untold, 3780
Thou sholdest have, as I am trewe smith ;
Ey, Cristes foo ! what wol ye do ther-
with ?'

'Ther-of,' quod Absolon, 'be as be may ;
I shal wel telle it thee to-morwe day'—

And caughte the culter by the colde
stela. 3785

Ful softe out at the dore he gan to stela,
And wente un-to the carpenteres wal. (601)
He oogheth first, and knokketh ther-
with-al

Upon the window, right as he dide er.
This Alison answerde, 'Who is ther 3790
That knokketh so ? I warante it a theef.'
'Why, nay,' quod he, 'god woot, my
swete leef,
I am thyn Absolon, my dereling !
Of gold,' quod he, 'I have thee brought
a ring ;

My moder yaf it me, so god me save, 3795
Ful fyn it is, and ther-to wely-grave ; (610)
This wol I yeve thee, if thou me kisse !'

This Nicholas was risen for to pisse,
And thoghte he wolde amenden al the
jape, 3799

He sholde kisse his ers er that he scape.
And up the window dide he hastily,
And out his ers he putteth prively
Over the buttok, to the haunche-bon ;
And ther-with spak this clerk, this
Absolon,

'Spek, swete brid, I noot nat wher thou
art.' 3805

This Nicholas anon leet flee a fart, (620)
As greet as it had been a thonder-dent,
That with the strook he was almost
y-blent ;

And he was redy with his iren hoot,
And Nicholas amidde the ers he smoot.

Of gooth the skin an hande-brede
about, 3811

The hote culter brande so his tounte,
And for the smert he wende for to dye.
As he were wood, for wo he gan to crye—
'Help ! water ! water ! help, for goddes
herte !' 3815

This carpenter out of his slomber starte,
And herde oon cryen 'water' as he were
wood, (631)

And thoghte, 'Allas ! now comth Nowélis
flood !'

He sit him up with-uten wordes mo, 3819
And with his ax he smoot the corde a-two,
And doun goth al ; he fond neither to
selle,

Ne breed ne ale, til he cam to the selle

Up-on the floor; and ther aswowne he lay.

Up starte hir Alison, and Nicholay,
And cryden 'out' and 'harrow' in the
strete. (639) 3825

The neighebores, bothe smale and grette,
In rennen, for to gauren on this man,
That yet aswowne he lay, bothe pale and
wan;

For with the fal he brosten hadde his
arm;

But stonde he moste un-to his owne
harm. 3830

For whan he spak, he was anon bore
down

With hende Nicholas and Aliscoun.
They tolden every man that he was
wood,

He was agast so of 'Nowell's flood'
Thurgh fantasye, that of his vanitee 3835
He hadde y-boght him kneding-tubbes
three. (650)

And hadde hem hanged in the roof above;
And that he preyed hem, for goddes love,
To sitten in the roof, *per compagne*. 3839

The folk gan laughen at his fantasye;
In-to the roof they kyken and they gape,
And turned al his harm un-to a jape.

For what so that this carpenter answerde,
It was for noght, no man his reason herde;
With othes grette he was so sworn adoun,
That he was holden wood in al the toun;
For every clark anon-right heeld with
other. (661) 3847

They seyde, 'the man is wood, my leve
brother;'

And every wight gan laughen of this stryf.

Thus swyved was the carpenteres wyf.
For al his keping and his jalouseye; 3851

And Absolon hath kist hir nether ye;
And Nicholas is scalded in the tonte.

This tale is doon, and god save al the
route! (668) 3854

Here endeth the Millere his tale

THE REEVE'S PROLOGUE.

The prologe of the Reeve tale.

Whan folk had laughen at this nyce cas
Of Absolon and hende Nicholas, 3856
Diverse folk diversely they seyde;
But, for the more part, they loughs and
pleyde,

Ne at this tale I laugh no man him greve,
But it were only Ossewold the Reve, 3860
By-cause he was of carpenteres craft.

A lital ire is in his herte y-left,
He gan to grucche and blamed it a lyte.

'So thee'k,' quod he, 'ful wel conde
I yow quyte (10)

With blering of a proud milleres ye, 3865
If that me liste speke of ribaudye.

But ik am old, me list not pley for age;
Gres-tyme is doon, my fodder is now
forage,

This whyte top wryteth myne olde yeres,
Myn herte is al-so mowled as myne heres,
But-if I fare as dooth an open-ers; 3871
That ilke fruit is ever leng the wers,
Til it be rotan in mullok or in stree.

We olde men, I drede, so fare we; (20)
Til we be rotan, can we nat be rype; 3875
We hoppen ay, why! that the world wol
pype.

For in ours wil ther stiketh ever a nayl,
To have an hoor heed and a grene tayl,
As hath a leek; for thogh our might be
goon,

Our wil desireth folie ever in oon. 3880
For whan we may nat doon, than wol we
speke;

Yet in our aessen olde is fyr y-reke.

Foure gledes han we, whiche I shal
 devyse,
 Avaunting, lying, anger, covetysse; (30)
 Thise foure sparkles longen un-to alde.
 Our olde lemes mowe wel been unwelde,
 But wil ne shal nat failen, that is sooth.
 And yet ik have alwey a coltes tooth, 3888
 As many a year as it is passed henne
 Sin that my tappe of lyf bigan to renne.
 For sikerly, whan I was bore, anon 3891
 Deeth drogh the tappe of lyf and leet it
 gon;
 And ever sith hath so the tappe y-ronne,
 Til that almost al empty is the tonne. (40)
 The stream of lyf now droppeth on the
 chimbe; 3893
 The ealy tonge may wel ringe and chimbe
 Of wrochednesse that passed is ful yore;
 With olde folk, newe dotage, is namore.
 Whan that our host hadde herd this
 sermoning,
 He gan to speke as lordly as a king; 3900

He seide, 'what amounteth al this wit?
 What shul we speke alday of holy writ?
 The deval made a reve for to preche,
 And of a souter a shipman or a lecha. (50)
 Sey forth thy tale, and terte nat the tyme,
 Lo, Depesed! and it is half-way prync.
 Lo, Greenwich, ther many a shrewe is
 inne; 3907
 It were al tyme thy tale to biginne.'
 'Now, sires,' quod this Osewold the Reve,
 'I pray yow alle that ye nat yow greve,
 Thogh I answere and soundel sette his
 howe; 3911
 For leveful is with force force of shewe.
 This dronke millere hath y-told us hear,
 How that bigyled was a carpentear, (60)
 Peraventure in scorn, for I am oon. 3913
 And, by your leve, I shal him quyte amoon;
 Right in his cherles termes wel I speke.
 I pray to god his nakke mote breke;
 He can wel in myn yf seen a stalke, 3919
 But in his owne he can nat seen a balke.

THE REVES TALE.

Here biginneth the Reves tale.

At Trumpington, nat fer fro Cantebrigge,
 Ther goth a brook and over that a brigge,
 Up-on the whiche brook therstant a melle;
 And this is verray soth that I yow telle.
 A Miller was ther dwelling many a day;
 As eny pecok he was proud and gay. 3926
 Pypen he coude and flashe, and nettes
 bete,
 And turne coppes, and wel wrestle and
 shete;
 And by his belt he bear a long panade,
 And of a swerd ful trenchant was the
 blade. 3930
 A joly popper bear he in his pouche; (11)
 Ther was no man for peril dorste him
 touche.

A Sheffield thwitel bear he in his bece;
 Round was his face, and carme was his
 nose.
 As piled as an ape was his skulle. 3933
 He was a market-betar atte fulle,
 Ther dorste no wight hand up-on him
 legge,
 That he ne swoor he sholde anon abegge.
 A theef he was for sothe of oorn and mele.
 And that a sly, and usant for to stole.
 His name was hoten dēynous Simkin. (21)
 A wyf he hadde, y-comen of noble kin;
 The person of the toun hir name was
 With hir he yaf ful many a panne of bras,
 For that Simkin sholde in his blood allye.
 She was y-fostred in a nonnerye; 3946

For Simkin wolde no wyf, as he sayde,
 But she were wel y-norissed and a mayde,
 To saven his estaat of yomanrye. 3949
 And she was proud, and pert as is a pyc.
 A ful fair sighte was it on hem two; (31)
 On haly-dayes biforn hir wolde he go
 With his tipet bounden about his heed,
 And she cam after in a gyte of reed;
 And Simkin hadde hosen of the same.
 Ther dorste no wight clepen hir but
 'dame.' 3956
 Was noon so hardy that wente by the
 weye

That with hir dorste rage or ones pleye,
 But-if he wolde be slayn of Simkin 3959
 With panade, or with knyf, or boydekin.
 For jalous folk ben perilous evermo, (41)
 Algate they wolde hir wyves wenden so.
 And eek, for she was somdel smoterlich,
 She was as digne as water in a dich;
 And ful of hoker and of bisemare. 3965
 Hir thoughte that a lady sholde hir
 spare,
 What for hir kinrede and hir nortelrye
 That she had lerned in the nonnerye.

A doghter hadde they bitwixe hem two
 Of twenty yeer, with-uten any mo, 3970
 Savinge a child that was of half-yeer age;
 In cradel it lay and was a propre page.
 This wenche thikke and wel y-grown
 was, (53)
 With camuse nose and yën greye as glas;
 With buttokes brode and brestes rounde
 and hye, 3975
 But right fair was hir heer, I wol nat lye.

The person of the toun, for she was feir,
 In purpos was to maken hir his heir
 Bothe of his catel and his messuage, 3979
 And straunge he made it of hir mariage.
 His purpos was for to bistowe hir hye (61)
 In-to som worthy blood of auncetrye;
 For holy chirches good moot been de-
 spended
 On holy chirches blood, that is descended.
 Therefore he wolde his holy blood honoure,
 Though that he holy chirche sholde de-
 voure. 3986

Gret soken hath this miller, out of doute,
 With whete and malt of al the land aboute;
 And nameliche ther was a greet collegge,
 Men clepen the Soler-halle at Cantebregge,

Ther was hir whete and eek hir malt
 y-grounde. (71) 3991

And on a day it happed, in a stounde,
 Sik lay the maunciple on a maladye;
 Men wenden wisly that he sholde dye.
 For which this miller stal bothe male and
 corn 3995

An hundred tyme more than biforn;
 For ther-biforn he stal but curteisly,
 But now he was a theef outrageously,
 For which the wardeyn chidde and made
 fare. (79)

But ther-of sette the miller nata tare; (81)
 He craketh boost, and swoor it was nat so.

Than were ther yonge povre clerkes two,
 That dwelten in this halle, of which I seye.
 Testif they were, and lusty for to pleye,
 And, only for hir mirthe and ævelrye,
 Up-on the wardeyn bisily they crye, 4006
 To yeve hem leve but a litel stounde
 To goon to mille and seen hir corn y-
 grounde;

And hardily, they dorste leye hir nekke,
 The miller shold nat stelo hem half a
 pekke (90) 4010

Of corn by sleighte, ne by force hem reve;
 And at the laste the wardeyn yaf hem leve.
 John hight that oon, and Aleyn hight
 that other;

Of o toun were they born, that highte
 Strother, 4014
 Fer in the north, I can nat telle where.

This Aleyn maketh redy al his gere,
 And on an hors the sak he caste anon.
 Forth goth Aleyn the clerk, and also John,
 With good sword and with bokeler by hir
 syde. (99) 4019

John knew the wey, hem nedede no gyde,
 And at the mille the sak adoun he layth.
 Aleyn spak first, 'al hayl, Symond, y-fayth:
 How fares thy faire doghter and thy wyf?'

'Aleyn! welcome,' quod Simkin, 'by my
 lyf,

And John also, how now, what do ye heer?'
 'Symond,' quod John, 'by god, nede
 has na peer; 4026

Him boës serve him-selve that has na
 swayn,

Or elles he is a fool, as clerkes sayn.
 Our manciple, I hope he wil be deed, 4029
 Swa werkes ay the wanges in his heed.

And forthy is I come, and eek Alayn, (111)
To grinde our corn and carie it ham agayn;
I pray yow spede us hethen that ye
may.'

'It shal be doon,' quod Simkin, 'by my
fay; 4034

What wol ye doon whyl that it is in hande?'

'By god, right by the hoper wil I stande,'
Quod John, 'and se how that the corn
gas in;

Yet saugh I never, by my fader kin, 4038
How that the hoper wagges til and fra.'

Aleyn answerde, 'John, and wiltow swa,
Than wil I be bynethe, by my croun, (121)
And se how that the mele falles down
In-to the trough; that sal be my disport.
For John, in faith, I may been of your
sort;

I is as ille a miller as are ye.' 4045

This miller smyled of hir nyctee,
And thoghte, 'al this nis doon but for a
wyle;

They wene that no man may hem bigyle;
But, by my thrift, yet shal I blare hir y8
For al the sleighte in hir philosophye. 4050
The more queynte creakes that they make,
The more wol I stele whan I take. (132)
In stede of flour, yet wol I yeve hem
bren.

"The gretteste clerkes been noght the
wysest men,"

As whylom to the wolf thus spak the
mare; 4055

Of al hir art I counte noght a tare.'

Out at the dore he gooth ful prively,
Whan that he saugh his tyme, softely;
He loketh up and down til he hath founde
The clerkes hors, ther as it stood y-bounde
Bihinde the mille, under a levesel; 4061
And to the hors he gooth him faire and
wel; (142)

He strepeth of the brydel right anon.

And whan the hors was loos, he ginneth
gon

Toward the fen, ther wilde mares renne,
Forth with wehee, thurgh thikke and
thurgh thenne. 4066

This miller gooth agayn, no word he
seyde,

But dooth his note, and with the clerkes
pleyde,

Til that hir corn was faire and wel y-
grounde.

And whan the mele is sakked and y-
bounde, (150) 4070

This John goth out and fynt his hors away,
And gan to crye 'harrow' and 'weylaway!
Our hors is lorn! Alayn, for goddes banes,
Step on thy feet, com out, man, al at anes!
Allas, our wardeyn has his palfrey lorn.'
This Aleyn al forgat, bothe mele and corn,
Al was out of his mynde his housbondrye.
'What? whilk way is he geen?' he gan
to crye.

The wyf cam leping inward with a ren,
She seyde, 'allas! your hors goth to the
fen (160) 4080

With wilde mares, as faste as he may go.
Unthank come on his hand that bond
him so,

And he that bettre sholde han knit the
reyna.'

'Allas,' quod John, 'Aleyn, for Cristes
peyne,

Lay down thy sword, and I wil mynalswa;
I is ful wight, god waat, as is a raa; 4086
By goddes herte he sal nat scape us bathe.
Why nadstow pit the capul in the lathe?
Il-hayl, by god, Aleyn, thou is a fonne!'

This sely clerkes han ful faste y-ronne
To-ward the fen, bothe Aleyn and eek
John. (171) 4091

And whan the miller saugh that they
were gon,

He half a busshel of hir flour hath take,
And bad his wyf go knede it in a cake.
He seyde, 'I trowe the clerkes were aferd;
Yet can a miller make a clerkes berd 4096
For al his art; now lat hem goon hir weye.
Lo wher they goon, ye, lat the children
pleye;

They gete him nat so lightly, by my croun.'

Thise sely clerkes rennon up and down
With 'keep, keep, stand, stand, jossa,
warderere, (181) 4101

Ge whistle thou, and I shal kepe him
here!'

But shortly, til that it was verray night,
They coude nat, though they do al hir
might, 4104

Hir capul cacche, he ran alwey so faste,
Til in a dich they caughte him atte laste.

Wery and weest, as beste is in the reyn,
Comth sely John, and with him comth
Alayn.

'Alas,' quod John, 'the day that I was
born!

Now are we drive til hething and til
scorn. (190) 4110

Our corn is stole, men wil us foles calle,
Bathe the wardeyn and our felawes alle,
And namely the miller; weylaway!

Thus pleyneth John as he goth by the
way

Toward the mille, and Bayard in his hond.
The miller sitting by the fyr he fond, 4116
For it was night, and forther mighte they
nought;

But, for the love of god, they him bisoght
Of herberwe and of ose, as for hir peny.

The miller seyde agayn, 'if ther be eny,
Swich as it is, yet shal ye have your part.
Myn hous is streit, but ye han lerned art;
Ye conne by argumentes make a place
A myle brood of twenty foot of space. (204)
Let see now if this place may suffyze, 4125
Or make it roum with speche, as is youre
gyse.'

'Now, Symond,' seyde John, 'by seint
Cutberd,

Ay is thou mery, and this is faire answerd.
I have herd seyde, man sal tan of twa
thinges 4129

Slyk as he fyndes, or tan slyk as he bringes.
But specially, I pray thee, beste dere, (211)
Get us som mete and drinke, and make
us chere,

And we wil payen trewely atte felle.
With empty hand men may na haukes
telle;

Lo here our silver, redy for to spende.' 4135

This miller in-to toun his doghter sende
For ale and breed, and rosted hem a goos,
And bond hir hors, it sholde nat gon loos;
And in his owne chambre hem made a
bed (219) 4139

With shetes and with chalons faire y-spred,
Noght from his owne bed ten foot or twelve.
His doghter hadde a bed, al by hir-selve,
Right in the same chambre, by and by;
It mighte be no bet, and cause why, 4144
Ther was no roumer herberwe in the place.
They soupen and they speke, hem to solace,

And drinken ever strong ale atte beste.
Aboute midnight wente they to reste.

Wel hath this miller vernished his
heed;

Ful pale he was for-dronken, and nat
reed. 4150

He yezeth, and he speketh thurgh the
nose (231)

As he were on the quakke, or on the
pose.

To bedde he gooth, and with him goth
his wyf.

As any jay she light was and jolyf,
So was hir joly whistle wel y-wet. 4155

The cradel at hir beddes feet is set,
To rokken, and to yeve the child to souke.
And whan that dronken al was in the
crouke,

To bedde went the doghter right anon,
To bedde gooth Alayn and also John; 4160

Ther nas na more, hem nedede no dwale.
This miller hath so wisly bibbed ale, (242)

That as an hors he smorteth in his sleep,
Ne of his tayl bihinde he took no keep.

His wyf bar him a bardon, a ful strong,
Men mighte hir routing here two furlong;
The wenche routeth eek par compagne.

Alayn the clerk, that herd this melodyr,
He poked John, and seyde, 'alepestow?

Herdestow ever slyk a sang er now? 4170

Lo, whilk a compline is y-mel hem alle!
A wilde fyr up-on thair bodyes falle! (25)

Wha herked ever slyk a ferly thing?
Ye, they sal have the flour of il ending.

This lange night ther tydes me na reste;
But yet, na fors; al sal be for the beste.

For John,' seyde he, 'als ever moot I
thryve,

If that I may, yon wenche wil I swyve.
Som esement has lawe y-shapen us; 4179

For John, ther is a lawe that may thus,
That gif a man in a point be y-groved, (261)

That in another he sal be relaved.
Our corn is stolon, shortly, it is na nay,

And we han had an il fit al this day.
And sin I sal have neen amendement, 4185

Agayn my los I wil have esement.
By goddes saule, it sal neen other be!

This John answerde, 'Alayn, avyse ther,
The miller is a perilous man,' he seyde,

'And gif that he out of his sleep abryde

He mighte doon us bathe a vileinye.' (271)

Aleyn answerde, 'I count him nat a
flye;' 4192

And up he rist, and by the wenche he
crepte.

This wenche lay upright, and faste slepte,
Til he so ny was, er she mighte espye, 4195

That it had been to late for to crye,

And shortly for to seyn, they were at on;

Now pley, Aleyn! for I wol speke of John.

This John lyth stille a furlong-wey or
two,

And to him-self he maketh routhe and
wo: (280) 4200

'Allas!' quod he, 'this is a wikked jape;

Now may I seyn that I is but an ape.

Yet has my felawe som-what for his harm;

He has the milleris doghter in his arm.

He aunted him, and has his nedes sped,

And I lye as a draf-sek in my bed; 4206

And when this jape is tald another day,

I sal been halde a daf, a cokenay!

I wil aryse, and aunte it, by my fayth!

"Unhardy is unsely," thus men sayth.'

And up he roos and softly he wente (291)

Un-to the cradel, and in his hand it hente,

And baar it softe un-to his beddes feet.

Sone after this the wyf hir routing leet,

And gan awake, and wente hir out to
pisse, 4215

And cam agayn, and gan hir cradel misse,

And groped heer and ther, but she fond
noon.

'Allas!' quod she, 'I hadde almost mis-
goon;

I hadde almost gon to the clerkes bed.

Ey, *ben'cite!* thanne hadde I foule y-sped:'

And forth she gooth til she the cradel
fond. (301) 4221

She gropeth alwey forther with hir hond,

And fond the bed, and thoughte noght but
good,

By-cause that the cradel by it stood, 4224

And niste wher she was, for it was derk;

But faire and wel she creep in to the clerk,

And lyth ful stille, and wolde han caught
a sleep.

With-inne a whyl this John the clerk up
leep, 4228

And on this gode wyf he leyth on sore.

So mery a fit ne hadde she nat ful yore;

He priketh harde and depe as he were
mad. (311)

This joly lyf han thise two clerkes lad

Til that the thridde cok bigan to singe.

Aleyn wex wery in the daweninge, 4234

For he had swonken al the longe night;

And seyde, 'far wel, Malin, swete wight:

The day is come, I may no lenger byde;

But evermo, wher so I go or ryde,

I is thyn awen clerk, swa have I seel!'

'Now dere lemman,' quod she, 'go, far
weel! (320) 4240

But er thou go, o thing I wol thee telle,

Whan that thou wendest homward by
the melle,

Right at the entree of the dore bihinde,

Thou shalt a cake of half a busschel finde

That was y-maked of thyn owne mele,

Which that I heelp my fader for to stelic.

And, gode lemman, god thee save and
kepe!' 4247

And with that word almost she gan to
wepe.

Aleyn up-rist, and thoughte, 'er that
it dawe,

I wol go crepen in by my felawe; 4250

And fond the cradel with his hand anon.

'By god,' thoghte he, 'al wrang I have
misgon; (332)

Myn heed is toty of my swink to-night,

That maketh me that I go nat aright. 4254

I woot wel by the cradel, I have misgo.

Heer lyth the miller and his wyf also.'

And forth he goth, a twenty devel way,

Un-to the bed ther-as the miller lay.

He wende have crepen by his felawe John:

And by the miller in he creep anon, 4260

And caughte hym by the nekke, and softe
he spak: (341

He seyde, 'thou, John, thou swynes-heed,
awak

For Cristes saule, and heer a noble game.

For by that lord that called is seint
Jame,

As I have thryes, in this shorte night, 4265

Swyved the milleres doghter bolt-upright,

Whyl thou hast as a coward been agast.'

'Ye, false harlot,' quod the miller,
'hast?

A! false traitour! false clerk!' quod he,

'Thou shalt be deed, by goddes dignitee!'

Who dorste be so bold to disparage (351)
 My doghter, that is come of swich linage?'
 And by the throte-bolle he caughte Aleyn.
 And he hente hym despitously agayn,
 And on the nose he smoot him with his
 fest. 4275
 Down ran the blodystream up-on his brest;
 And in the floor, with nose and mouth
 to-broke,
 They walwe as doon two pigges in a poke.
 And up they goon, and doun agayn anon,
 Til that the miller sporned at a stoon, 4280
 And doun he fil bakward up-on his wyf,
 That wiste no-thing of this nyce stryf;
 For she was falle aslepe a lyte wight (353)
 With John the clerk, that waked hadde
 al night.
 And with the fal, out of hir sleep she
 breyde— 4285
 'Help, holy croys of Bromeholm,' she
 seyde,
 'In manus tuas! lord, to thee I calle!
 Awak, Symond! the feend is on us falle,
 Myn herte is broken, help, I nam but
 dead;
 There lyth oon up my wombe and up
 myn heed; 4290
 Help, Simkin, for the false clerkes fighte.'
 This John sterte up as faste as ever he
 mighte, (372)
 And graspeth by the wailles to and fro,
 To finde a staf; and she sterte up also,
 And knew the estres bet than dide this
 John, 4295
 And by the wal a staf she fond anon,

And saugh a lital shimering of a light,
 For at an hole in shoon the mone bright;
 And by that light she saugh hem bothe
 two,
 But sikerly she niste who was who, 4300
 But as she saugh a whyt thing in hir ye.
 And whan she gan the whyte thing espye,
 She wende the clerk hadde wered a volu-
 peer. (383)
 And with the staf she drough ay neer and
 neer, 4304
 And wende han hit this Aleyn at the fulle,
 And smoot the miller on the pyled skulle,
 That doun he gooth and cryde, 'harrow!
 I dye!'
 Thise clerkes bete him weel and lete him
 lye;
 And greythen hem, and toke hir hors anon,
 And eek hir mele, and on hir way they
 gon. (390) 4310
 And at the mille yet they toke hir cake
 Of half a bussel flour, ful wel y-bake.
 Thus is the pronde miller wel y-bete,
 And hath y-lost the grinding of the whete,
 And payed for the soper every-deel 4315
 Of Aleyn and of John, that bette him weel.
 His wyf is swyved, and his doghter als,
 Lo, swich it is a miller to be fals!
 And therefore this proverbe is seyde ful
 sooth, 4319
 'Him thar nat wene wel that yvel dooth;
 A gylour shal him-self bigyled be.' (401)
 And God, that sitteth heighe in mageste,
 Save al this companye grete and amale!
 Thus have I quit the miller in my tale.

Here is ended the Reves tale.

THE COOK'S PROLOGUE.

The prologe of the Cokes tale

THE Cook of London, whyl the Reue spak,
 For joye, him thoughte, he clawed him
 on the bak, 4326
 'Ha! ha!' quod he, 'for Cristes passioun,
 This miller hadde a sharp conclusioun
 Upon his argument of herbergage!
 Wel seyde Salomon in his langage, 4330
 "Ne bringe nat every man in-to thyn
 hous,"

For herberwing by nighte is perilous.
 Wel oghte a man avysed for to be (9)
 Whom that he broghte in-to his privetee.
 I pray to god, so yeve me sorwe and care,
 If ever, sith I highte Hogge of Ware, 4336
 Herde I a miller better y-set a-work.
 He hadde a jape of malice in the dark.
 But god forbede that we stinten here;
 And therefore, if ye vouche-sauf to here
 A tale of me, that am a povre man, 4341
 I wol yow telle as wel as ever I can
 A litel jape that fil in our citee.'

Our host answerde, and seide, 'I graunte
 it thee; (20) 4344

Now telle on, Roger, loke that it be good;
 For many a pastee hastow laten blood,
 And many a Jakke of Dover hastow sold
 That hath been twyes hoot and twyes cold.
 Of many a pilgrim hastow Cristes cure,
 For of thy persly yet they fare the worse,
 That they han eten with thy stubbel-goose;
 For in thy shoppe is many a flye lope. 43
 Now telle on, gentil Roger, by thy name.
 But yet I pray thee, be nat wrooth for game,
 A man may seye ful sooth in game and
 play.' 4353

'Thou seist ful sooth,' quod Roger, 'by
 my fey,
 But "sooth play, quoad play," as the Flem-
 ing seith; (33)
 And ther-fore, Herry Bailly, by thy faith,
 Be thou nat wrooth, er we departen heer,
 Though that my tale be of an hostiler.
 But natheles I wol nat telle it yit, 4361
 But er we parte, y-wis, thou shalt be quit.'
 And ther-with-al he lough and made chere,
 And seyde his tale, as ye shul after here.

Thus endeth the Prologe of the Cokes tale.

THE COKES TALE.

Heer bigynneth the Cokes tale.

A PARRIS whylom dwelled in our citee,
 And of a craft of vitailers was he; 4366
 Gaillard he was as goldfinch in the shawe,
 Broun as a berie, a propre short felawe,
 With lokkes blake, y-kempt ful fetisly.
 Dauncen he coude so wel and jolily, 4370
 That he was cleped Perkin Revelour.
 He was as ful of love and paramour

As is the hyve ful of hony swete;
 Wel was the wenche with him mighte
 mete. (10)
 At every brydale wolde he singe and
 hoppe, 4375
 He loved bet the tavern than the shoppe.
 For whan ther any ryding was in Chepe,
 Out of the shoppe thider wolde he lepe.

And for that day, as in that latitude,
It was ten of the clocke, he gan conclude,
And sodaynly he plighte his hors aboute.

'Lordinges,' quod he, 'I warne yow, at
this route, 16

The fourthe party of this day is goon;
Now, for the love of god and of saint
John,

Leaeth no tyme, as ferforth as ye may;
Lordinges, the tyme wasteth night and
day, 20

And steleth from us, what prively slepinge,
And what thurgh negligence in our
wakinge,

As dooth the stream, that turneth never
agayn,

Descending fro the montaigne in-to playn.
Wel can Senek, and many a philosophe 25
Biwallen tyme, more than gold in cofre.

"For los of catel may recovered be,
But los of tyme shendeth us," quod he.

It wol nat come agayn, with-outen drede,
Na more than wol Malkins maydenhede,
Whan she hath lost it in hir wantownesse;

Let us nat moulen thus in ydelnesse. 32
Sir man of lawe,' quod he, 'so have ye
blis,

Tel us a tale anon, as forward is;
Ye been submitted thurgh your free
assent 35

To stonde in this cas at my jugement,
Acquiteth yow, and holdeth your biheste,
Than have ye doon your devoir atte leste.'

'Hoste,' quod he, '*departéus* ich as-
sente,

To breke forward is not myn entente. 40
Biheste is dette, and I wol holde fayn
Al my biheste; I can no better seyn.
For swich laws as man yeveth another
wight,

He sholde him-selven usen it by right; 44
Thus wol our text; but natheles certeyn
I can right now no thrifty tale seyn,
†But Chaucer, though he can but lewedly
On metres and on ryming craftily,
Hath seyde hem in swich English as he can
Of olde tyme, as knoweth many a man. 50
And if he have not seyde hem, leve brother,
In o book, he hath seyde hem in another.
For he hath told of lovers up and down
Mo than Ovyde made of mencion

In his Epistles, that been ful olde. 45
What sholde I tellen hem, sin they bes
tolde?

In youthe he made of Ceyx and Alceia,
And sithen hath he spoke of everichon,
Thise noble wyves and thise lovers eke.
Who-so that wol his large volume sake 50
Clepeth the Seintes Legende of Cupyde,
Ther may he seen the large woundes wyde
Of Lucrece, and of Babilen Tisbe; —
The sword of Dido for the false Eneas;
The tree of Phillis for hir Demophon; 65
The pleynte of Dianire and Hermonion,
Of Adriane and of Isiphillee;
The barayne yle standing in the see;
The dreynte Leander for his Erro;
The teres of Elayne, and eek the we 70
Of Briseyde, and of thes, Ledomene;
The crueltee of thes, queen Medee,
Thy litel children hanging by the hals
For thy Jason, that was of love so fals!
O Ypermestra, Penelope, Alceste, 75
Your wyfhood he comendeth with the beste!

But certainly no word ne wryteth he
Of thilke wikke ensample of Canacee,
That lovede hir owne brother sinfully,
Of swiche cursed stories I sey "fy"; 80
Or elles of Tyro Apollonius,
How that the cursed king Antiochus
Birafted his doghter of hir maydenhede.
That is so horrible a tale for to rede,
Whan he hir threw up-on the pavement.
And therfor he, of ful avysement, 85
Nolde never wryte in none of his sermons
Of swiche unkinde abhominaciouns,
Ne I wol noon rehearse, if that I may.

But of my tale how shal I doon this day?
Me were looth he lykned, douteles, 91
To Muses that men clepe Pierides—
Metamorphoseos wot what I mene: —
But natheles, I recche nought a bene 94
Though I come after him with hawe-bakc:
I speke in prose, and let him rymes make.
And with that word he, with a sobre chere,
Bigan his tale, as ye shal after here.

The Prologe of the *Mannes Tale* of Lawe.

O hateful harm! condicion of poverté:
With thirst, with cold, with hunger so
confounded! 100

To aske help thee shameth in thy
herte;

If thou noon aske, with nede artow so
wounded,

That verray nede unwrappeth al thy
wounde hid!

Maugree thy heed, thou most for indi-
gence 104

Or stole, or begge, or borwe thy despence!

Thou blamest Crist, and seyst ful bitterly,
He misdeparteth richesse temporal;

Thy neighebour thou wytest sinfully, (:o)
And seyst thou hast to lyte, and he hath al.

'Parfay,' seistow, 'somtyme he rekne shal,
Whan that his tayl shal bredden in the
gleda, 111

For he nocht helpeth needfulle in his
nede.'

Herkne what is the sentence of the
wyse:—

'Bet is to dyen than have indigence;' 114

'Thy selve neighebour wol thee despyse;'

If thou be povre, farwel thy reverence!

Yet of the wyse man tak this sentence:—

'Alle the dayes of povre men ben wikke;'

Be war therfor, er thou come in that
prikke! (21)

'If thou be povre, thy brother hateth
thee, 120

And alle thy freendes fleen fro thee, alas!'

O riche marchaunts, ful of wele ben ye,

O noble, o prudent folk, as in this cas!

Your bagges been nat filled with ambes as,

But with *sis* cink, that renneth for your
chaunce; 125

At Cristemasse merie may ye daunce!

Ye saken lond and see for your winniges,

As wyse folk ye knowen al th'esteant (30)

Of regnes; ye ben fadres of tydinges

And tales, bothe of pees and of debat. 130

I were right now of tales desolat,

Nere that a marchaunt, goon is many a
yere,

Me taughte a tale, which that yeshal here.

THE TALE OF THE MAN OF LAWE.

Here beginneth the Man of Lawe his Tale.

As Sarrie whylom dwelte a compaye
Of chapmen riche, and therto sadde and
trewe, 135

That wyde-wher senten her spycerye,

Of clothes of gold, and satins riche of hewe;

Marchaunt was so thrifty and so newe, (40)

That every wight hath deyntee to chaffare

With hem, and eek to sellen hem hir
ware. 140

Now fel it, that the maistres of that sort

Han shapen hem to Rome for to wende;

Were it for chapmanhode or for disport,

Non other message wolde they thider
sende,

But comen hem-self to Rome, this is the
ende; 145

And in swich place, as thoughte hem
avantage

For her entente, they take her herbergage.

Sojourned han thise marchants in that
toun (50)

A certain tyme, as fel to hir plesance.

And so bifel, that th'excellent renoun 150

Of th'emperoures doghter, dame Custance,

Reported was, with every circumstance,

Un-to thise Surrien marchants in swich
wyse,

Fro day to day, as I shal yow devyse.

This was the comune vois of every
man. 155

Our Emperour of Rome, god him see
A fighter hath that, sin the world began,
For his as wel for goodnesse as beautee
Was never swich another as is she. 161
I pray to god in honour his austere. 163
And wolde she were of al Europe the
quene.

In hir is heigh beautee, with-oute pryde,
Yowthe, with-oute greynhede or folye,
To alle hir werkis vertu is hir gyde,
Humbleesse hath slayn in hir al tyranny.
She is maour of alle curteisye. 168 169
Hir herte is verray chambre of holynesse,
Hir hand, ministre of freedom for almesse.

And al this vois was soth, as god is trewe,
But now to purpos hit us turne agayn. 173
These marchants han don fraught hir
shippes. 174

And whan they han this blisful mayden
seyn.

Hoom to Surrye been they went ful fayn,
And don hir riches as they han don yore,
And liven in wel. I can see yow no more.

Now fel it, that these marchants stode in
grace. 176

Of hun, that was the sowdan of Surrye
For whan they came from any strange
place. 180

He welde, of his benigne curteisye,
Make hem good chere and lordly espye. 180
Tydings of sundry regens, for to lere
The wondrest that they might see or here.

Amonges othere thinges, specially
These marchants han him told of dame
Custance.

So gret noblesse in earnest, seriously. 185
That this sowdan hath caught so gret
plesance.

To han hir figure in his remembrance,
That al his lust and al his lase enre. 190
Was for to love hir whyl his lyf may dure.

Paraventure in thilke large book. 190
Which that men clepe the beven, y-written
was.

With sterres, whan that he his burthe
That for love shuld han his soules alle.
For in the sterres, clerer than a glas,
Is writen god wot, who shoulde trewe
The death of every man, withouten drede.

In sterres, many a winter ther lieth,
Was writen the death of Ector Achille,
Of Pompey Julius, or they were both.
The story of Thebes, and of Ercles,
Of Sampson, Turnus, and of Socrates.
The death, but mennes wittes been
dulle.

That no wight can wel rede it atte fulle.

This sowdan for his pryve caused sette
And, shortly of this mater for to seyne,
He hath to hem declared his entente.
And seyde hem certein, be he wote
have grace. 195

To han Custance with-inne a litel space
He nas but dede, and charged to be
lye.

To shapen for his lyf som remedye.

Diverse men diverse thinges seyn.
They argumenten, castenynge at a seyn.
Many a subtil reson for to seyn.
They spoken of magik and of sorcery.
But finally, as in conclusion,
They can not seen in that non-advantage.
Ne in non other way, save marriage.

Than sawe they ther-in swich a good
By way of reson, for to speke al
By cause that ther was swich a good
It wene hir bothe lawes, that they
They trowe that no cristen prynces
fayn.

Welden his child under oone lawe
That as were taught by Maoun
prophete.

And he answerde, 'rather than I see
Custance, I wol be cristened for to see.
I met ben hires, I may non other
I pray yow holde your argumens
pues.

Saveth my lyf, and beeth noght newe
To geten hit that hath my lyf in care.
For in this we I may not longe dare.

What nedeth gretter dilatacioun?
I seye, by tretis and embassadrye,
And by the popes mediacioun,
And al the chirche, and al the chivalrye,
That, in destruccioun of Maumetrye, 236
And in encrees of Cristes lawe dere,
They benacorded, so as ye shal here; (140)

How that the sowdan and his baronage
And alle his liges shulde y-cristned be, 240
And he shal han Custance in mariage,
And certein gold, I noot what quantitee,
And her-to founden suffisant seurtee;
Thissame acord was sworn on eyther syde;
Now, faire Custance, almighty god thee
gyde! 245

Now wolde som men waiten, as I gosse,
That I shulde tellen al the purveyance
That th'emperour, of his grete noblesse,
Hath shapen for his doghter dame Cus-
tance. (151)
Wel may men knowe that so gret ordin-
ance 250
May no man tellen in a litel clause
As was arrayed for so heigh a cause.

Bisshopes ben shapen with hir for to
wende,
Lordes, ladyes, knightes of renoun,
And other folk y-nowe, this is the ende;
And notified is thurgh-out the toun 256
That every wight, with gret devocioun,
Shulde preyen Crist that he this mariage
Receyve in gree, and spede this viage. (161)

The day is comen of hir departinge, 260
I sey, the woful day fatal is come,
That ther may be no lenger taryinge,
But forthward they hem dresen, alle and
some;
Custance, that was with sorwe al over-
come, 264
Ful pale arist, and dreseth hir to wende;
For wel she seeth ther is non other ende.

Allas! what wonder is it though she wepte,
That shal be sent to strange nacioun (170)
Fro freendes, that so tendrely hir kepte,
And to be bounden under subieccioun 270
Of oon, she knoweth not his condicioun.

Housbondes been alle gode, and han ben
yore,
That knowen wyves, I dar say yow no more.

'Fader,' she sayde, 'thy wrecched child
Custance,
Thy yonge doghter, fostred up so softe, 275
And ye, my moder, my soverayn plesance
Over alle thing, out-taken Crist on-lofte,
Custance, your child, hir recomandeth
ofte (180)
Un-to your grace, for I shal to Surrye,
Ne shal I never seen yow more with ye. 280

Allas! un-to the Barbre nacioun
I moste anon, sin that it is your wille;
But Crist, that starf for our redempcioun,
So yeve me grace, his hestes to fulfille;
I, wrecche womman, no fors though I
spille. 285
Wommen are born to thraldom and
penance,
And to ben under mannes governance.'

I trowe, at Troye, whan Pirrus brak the
wal (190)
Or Ylion brende, at Thebes the citee, 289
N'at Rome, for the harm thurgh Hanibal
That Romainys hath venquished tymes
three,
Nas herd swich tendre weping for pitee
As in the chambre was for hir departinge;
Bot forth she moot, wher-so she wepe or
singa.

O firste moeving cruel firmament, 295
With thy diurnal sweigh that crowdest ay
And hurlest al from Est til Occident, (199)
That naturally wolde holde another way,
Thy crowding set the heven in swich array
At the beginning of this fiers viage, 300
That cruel Mars hath slayn this mariage.

Infortunat ascendent tortuous,
Of which the lord is helples falle, alas!
Out of his angle in-to the derkest hous.
O Mars, O Atazir, as in this cas! 305
O feble mone, unhappy been thy pas!
Thou knittest thee ther thou art nat
receyved,
Ther thou were weel, fro thennes artow
weyved. (210)

Imprudent emperour of Rome, alas ! 309
 Was ther no philosopre in al thy toun ?
 Is no tyme bet than other in swich cas ?
 Of viage is ther noon eleccioun,
 Namely to folk of heigh condicioun,
 Nat whan a rote is of a birthe y-knowe ?
 Alas ! we ben to lewed or to slowe. 315

To shippe is brought this woful faire mayde
 Solempnely, with every circumstance.
 'Now Jesu Crist be with yow alle,' she
 sayde ; (320)
 Ther nis namore but 'farewel ! faire
 Custance !' 319
 She peyneth hir to make good countenance,
 And forth I lete hir sayle in this manere,
 And turne I wol agayn to my matere.

The moder of the sowdan, welle of vyces,
 Espyd hath hir sones playn entente,
 How he wol lete his olde sacrifices, 325
 And right anon she for hir conseil sente ;
 And they ben come, to knowe what she
 mente.

And when assembled was this folk in-fere,
 She sette hir down, and sayde as ye shal
 here. (331)

'Lordes,' quod she, 'ye knowen everichon,
 How that my sone in point is for to lete 331
 The holy lawes of our Alkaron,
 Yeven by goddes message Makometa.
 But oon avow to grete god I hete, 334
 The lyf shal rather out of my body sterte
 Than Makometes lawe out of myn herte !'

What shulde us tyden of this newe lawe
 But thraldom to our bodies and penance ?
 And afterward in helle to be drawe (341)
 For we reneyed Mahoun our creance ? 340
 But, lordes, wol ye maken assurance,
 As I shal seyn, assenting to my lore,
 And I shall make us sauf for evermore ?'

They sworn and assenten, every man, 344
 To live with hir and dye, and by hirstonde ;
 And everich, in the beste wyse he can,
 To strengthen hir shal alle his freendes
 fonde ;
 And she hath this empyse y-take on
 honde, (350)

Which ye shal here that I shal devyse,
 And to hem alle she spak right in this
 wyse. 350

'We shul first fayne us cristendom to take,
 Cold water shal not greve us but a lyte ;
 And I shal swich a feste and reval make,
 That, as I trowe, I shal the sowdan quyte.
 For though his wyf be cristned never so
 whyte, 355
 She shal have nede to wambe away the
 rede,
 Though she a font-ful water with hir lede.'

O sowdanesse, rote of iniquitee, (360)
 Virago, thou Samyram the secounde,
 O serpent under femininitee, 360
 Lyk to the serpent depe in helle y-bounde,
 O feyned womman, al that may confounde
 Vertu and innocence, thurgh thy makye,
 Is bred in thee, as nest of every vyce !

O Satan, envious sin thilke day 365
 That thou were chased from our heritage,
 Wel knowestow to wommen the olde way !
 Thou madest Eve bringe us in servage (370)
 Thou wolt fordoon this cristen mariage.
 Thyn instrument so, weylaway the whyle !
 Makestow of wommen, whan thou wolt
 begyle. 371

This sowdanesse, whom I thus blame and
 warie,
 Lett prively hir conseil goon hir way.
 What sholde I in this tale langer tarie ?
 She rydeth to the sowdan on a day, 375
 And seyde him, that she wolde reneye
 hir lay,
 And cristendom of preestes handes fonge,
 Repenting hir she hethen was so longe, (380)

Disceching him to doon hir that honour,
 That she mooste han the cristen men to
 feste ; 380

'To plesen hem I wol do my labour.'
 The sowdan seith, 'I wol don at your haste,'
 And kneling thanketh hir of that requeste.
 So glad he was, he niste what to seye ;
 She kiste hir sone, and boon she gooth
 hir weye. 385

Explicit prima pars. Sequitur
 pars secunda.

Arryved ben this Cristen folk to londe,
 In Surrie, with a greet solempne route,
 And hastily this sowdan sente his sonde,
 First to his moder, and al the regne
 aboute, (291)
 And seyde, his wyf was comen, out of
 doute, 390
 And preyde hir fer to ryde agayn the
 quene,
 The honour of his regne to sustene.

Gret was the prees, and riche was th'array
 Of Surriens and Romayns met y-fere;
 The moder of the sowdan, riche and gay,
 Receyveth hir with al-so glad a chere 396
 As any moder mighte hir doghter dere,
 And to the nexte citee ther bisyde (300)
 A softe pas solempnely they ryde.

Noght trowe I the triumphe of Julius, 400
 Of which that Lucan maketh swich a bost,
 Was royaller, ne more curious
 Than was th'assemblee of this blisful host.
 But this scorpioun, this wikked gost,
 The sowdanesse, for al hir flateringe, 405
 Caste under this ful mortally to stinge.

The sowdan comth him-self sone after this
 So royally, that wonder is to telle, (310)
 And welcometh hir with alle joye and blis.
 And thus in merthe and joye I lete hem
 dwelle. 410
 The fruyt of this matere is that I telle.
 Whan tyme cam, men thoughte it for the
 beste
 That revel stinte, and men goon to hir
 reste.

The tyme cam, this olde sowdanesse 414
 Ordeyned hath this feste of which I tolde,
 And to the feste Cristen folk hem dresse
 In general, ye! bothe yonge and olde. (319)
 Here may men feste and royaltee biholde,
 And deyntees mo than I can yow devyse,
 But al to dere they boughte it er they ryse.

O sodeyn wo! that ever art successour 421
 To worldly blisse, spreyned with bitter-
 nesse;
 Th'ende of the joye of our worldly labour;
 Wo occupieth the fyn of our gladnesse.
 Herke this conseil for thy sikernes, 425

Up-on thy glade day have in thy minde
 The unwar wo or harm that comth bi-
 hinde.

For shortly for to tellen at o word, (330)
 The sowdan and the Cristen everichone
 Ben al to-hewe and stiked at the bord, 430
 But it were only dame Custance allone.
 This olde sowdanesse, cursed crone,
 Hath with hir frendes doon this cursed
 dede,
 For she hir-self wolde al the contree lede.

Ne ther was Surrien noon that was con-
 verted 435
 That of the conseil of the sowdan woot,
 That he nas al to-hewe er he asterted.
 And Custance han they take anon, foot-
 hoot, (340)
 And in a shippe al sterelees, god woot,
 They han hir set, and bidde hir lerne
 sayle 440
 Out of Surrye agaynward to Itayle.

A certain tresor that she thider ladde,
 And, sooth to sayn, vitaille gret plentee
 They han hir yeven, and clothes eek she
 hadde,
 And forth she sayleth in the salte see. 445
 O my Custance, ful of benignitee,
 O emperoures yonge doghter dere, (349)
 He that is lord of fortune be thy stere!

She blesseth hir, and with ful pitous voys
 Un-to the croys of Crist thus seyde she,
 'O clere, o welful auter, holy croys, 451
 Reed of the lambes blood full of pitee,
 That wesch the world fro the olde iniquitee,
 Me fro the feend, and fro his clawes kepe,
 That day that I shal drenchen in the
 depe. 455

Victorious tree, proteccioun of trewe,
 That only worthy were for to bere (359)
 The king of heven with his woundes newe,
 The whyte lamb, that hurt was with the
 spere, 459
 Flemer of feendes out of him and here
 On which thy limes feithfully extenden,
 Me keep, and yif me might my lyf t'amen-
 den.'

Yeres and dayes fleet this creature
Thurghout the see of Grece un-to the
strayte

Of Marrok, as it was hir aventure; 465
On many a sory meel now may she bayte;
After her deeth ful often may she wayte,
Er that the wilde waves wol hir dryve
Un-to the place, ther she shal arryve. (371)

Men mighten asken why she was not
slayn? 470

Eek at the feste who mighte hir body save?
And I answer to that demaunde agayn,
Who saved Daniel in the horrible cave,
Ther every wight save he, maister and
knave, 474

Was with the leoun frete er he asterte?
No wight but god, that he bar in his herte.

God liste to shewe his wonderful miracle
In hir, for we sholde sech his mighty
werkes; (380)

Crist, which that is to every harm triacle,
By certein menes ofte, as knowen clerkes,
Doth thing for certein ende that ful
derk is 481

To mannes wit, that for our ignorance
Ne conne not knowe his prudent pur-
veyance.

Now, sith she was not at the feste y-slawe,
Who kepte hir fro the drenching in the
see? 485

Who kepte Jonas in the fisshes mawe
Til he was spouted up at Ninivee?
Wel may men knowe it was no wight
but he (390)

That kepte peple Ebraik fro hir drench-
inge,
With drye feet thurgh-out the see pass-
inge. 490

Who bad the foure spirits of tempest,
That power han t'anoyen land and see,
'Bothe north and south, and also west
and est,

Anoyeth neither see, ne land, ne tree?'
Sothly, the comaundour of that was he,
That fro the tempest ay this womman
kepte 496
As wel whan [that] she wook as whan she
slepte.

Wher mighte this womman mete and
drinke have? (400)

Three year and more how lasteth hir
vitaille? 499

Who fedde the Egipcien Marie in the cave,
Or in desert? no wight but Crist, sans
failla.

Fyve thousand folk it was as gret mer-
veille

With loves fyve and flashes two to fede.
God sente his foison at hir grete nede.

She dryveth forth in-to our ocean 305
Thurgh-out our wilde see, til, atte laste,
Under an hold that nempnen I ne can,
Fer in Northumberlond the wawe hir
caste, (410)

And in the sond hir ship stiked so faste,
That thennes wolde it noght of al a tyde,
The wille of Crist was that she shulde
abyde. 511

The constable of the castel down is fare
To seen this wrak, and al the ship he
soghte,

And fond this very womman ful of care;
He fond also the tresor that she broghte.
In hir langage mercy she bisoghte 516

The lyf out of hir body for to twinne, (419)
Hir to delivere of wo that she was inne.

A maner Latin corrupt was hir speche,
But algates ther-by was she understonde;
The constable, whan him list no lenger
seche, 521

This woful womman broghte he to the
londe;

She kneleth down, and thanketh goddes
sonde.

But what she was, she wolde no man seye,
For foul ne fair, thogh that she shulde
deye. 525

She seyde, she was so mased in the see
That she forgat hir minde, by hir trouthe;
The constable hath of hir so greet pitee,
And eek his wyf, that they wepen for
routhe, (431) 529

She was so diligent, with-uten slouth,
To serve and plesen everich in that place,
That alle hir loven that loken on hir face.

This constable and dame Hermengild his
wyf

Were payens, and that contree every-
where;

But Hermengild lovede hir right as hir
lyf, 535

And Custance hath so longe sojourned
there,

In orisons, with many a bitter tere,
Til Jesu hath converted thurgh his grace
Dame Hermengild, constablesse of that
place. (441) 539

In al that lond no Cristen durste route,
Alle Cristen folk ben fled fro that contree
Thurgh payens, that conquereden al
aboute

The plages of the North, by land and see;
To Walis fled the Cristianitee
Of olde Britons, dwellinge in this yle; 545
Ther was hir refut for the mene whyle.

But yet nere Cristen Britons so exyled (449)
That ther nere somme that in hir privetee
Honoured Crist, and hethen folk bigyled;
And ny the castel swiche ther dwelten
three. 550

That oon of hem was blind, and mighte
nat see

But it were with thilke yën of his minde,
With whiche men seen, after that they
ben blinde.

Bright was the sonne as in that someres
day, 554

For which the constable and his wyf also
And Custance han y-take the righte way
Toward the see, a furlong wey or two,
To pleyen and to romen to and fro; (460)
And in hir walk this blinde man they
mette 559

Croked and old, with yën faste y-shette.

'In name of Crist,' cryde this blinde
Britoun,

'Dame Hermengild, yif me my sighte
agayn.'

This lady wex affrayed of the soun,
Lest that hir housbond, shortly for to
sayn,

Wolde hir for Jesu Cristes love han alayn,

Til Custance made hir bold, and bad hir
werche 566

The wil of Crist, as doghter of his chirche.

The constable wex abashed of that sight,
And seyde, 'what amounteth al this fare?'
Custance answerde, 'sire, it is Cristes
might, (472) 570

That helpeth folk out of the feendes snare.'
And so ferforth she gan our lay declare,
That she the constable, er that it were eve,
Converted, and on Crist made him bileve.

This constable was no-thing lord of this
place (477) 575

Of which I speke, ther he Custance fond,
But kepte it strongly, many wintres space,
Under Alla, king of al Northumberlond,
That was ful wys, and worthy of his hond
Agayn the Scottes, as men may wel here,
But turne I wol agayn to my matere. 581

Sathan, that ever us waiteth to bigyle,
Saugh of Custance al hir perfeccioun,
And caste anon how he mighte quyte hir
whyte,

And made a yong knight, that dwelte in
that toun, 585

Love hir so hote, of foul affeccioun,
That verrailly him thoughte he shulde
spille (489)

But he of hir mighte ones have his wille.

He woweth hir, but it availleth noght,
She wolde do no sinne, by no weye; 590
And, for despyt, he compassed in his
thoght

To maken hir on shamful deth to deye.
He wayteth whan the constable was aweye,
And prively, up-on a night, he crepte 594
In Hermengildes chambre whyl she slepte.

Wery, for-waked in her orisons,
Slepeth Custance, and Hermengild also.
This knight, thurgh Sathanas tempta-
cions, (500)

Al softly is to the bed y-go,
And kitte the throte of Hermengild a-two,
And leyde the blody knyf by dame
Custance, 601

And wente his wey, ther god yeve him
meschance!

Sone after comth this constable hoom
 agayn,
 And eek Alla, that king was of that lond,
 And saugh his wyf despitously y-slayn, 605
 For which ful ofte he weep and wrong his
 hond,
 And in the bed the bloody knyf he fond
 By dame Custance; alas! what mighte
 she seye? (510)
 For verray wo hir wit was al awaye.

To king Alla was told al this meschance,
 And eek the tyme, and where, and in
 what wyse 611
 That in a ship was founden dame Custance,
 As heer-biforn that ye han herd devyse.
 The kinges herte of pitee gan agryse,
 Whan he saugh so benigne a creature 615
 Falle in disese and in misaventure.

For as the lomb toward his deeth is broght,
 So stant this innocent bifore the king;
 This false knight that hath this tresoun
 wrought (521)
 Berth hir on hond that she hath doon
 this thing. 620
 †But natheles, ther was [ful] greet
 moorning
 Among the peple, and seyn, 'they can not
 gesse
 That she hath doon so greet a wikked-
 nesse. 623

For they han seyn hir ever so vertuons,
 And loving Hermengild right as her lyf.
 Of this bar witnesse everich in that hous
 Save he that Hermengild slow with his
 knyf.
 This gentil king hath caught a gret motyf
 Of this witnesse, and thoghte he wolde
 enquere (531)
 Depper in this, a trouthe for to lere. 630

Allas! Custance! thou hast no champion,
 Ne fighte canstow nought, so weylawey!
 But he, that starf for our redempcioun
 And bond Sathan (and yit lyth ther he
 lay)
 So be thy stronge champion this day! 635
 For, but-if Crist open miracle kythe,
 Withouten gilt thou shalt be slayn as
 swythe.

She sette her down on knees, and thus
 she sayde, (540)
 'Immortal god, that savedest Susanne
 Fro false blame, and thou, merciful
 mayde, 640
 Mary I mene, doghter to Saint Anne,
 Bifore whos child sungeles singe Ommas,
 If I be giltles of this felonye,
 My socour be, for elles I shal dye!' 644

Have ye nat seyn som tyme a pale face,
 Among a prees, of him that hath be lad
 Toward his deeth, wher-as him gat no
 grace,
 And swich a colour in his face hath had,
 Men mighte knowe his face, that was
 bistad, (551)
 Amonges alle the faces in that route: 650
 So stant Custance, and loketh hir about.

O quenes, livinge in prosperitee,
 Duchesses, and ye ladies everichone,
 Haveth som routhe on hir adversitee;
 An emperoures doghter stant allone; 655
 She hath no wight to whom to make hir
 mone.
 O blood royal, that stondest in this drede,
 Fer ben thy freendes at thy grete nede!

This Alla king hath swich compassioun,
 As gentil herte is fulfild of pitee, (561) 660
 That from his yē ran the water down.
 'Now hastily do fecche a book,' quod he,
 'And if this knight wol sweren how that
 she
 This womman slow, yet wole we us avyse
 Whom that we wole that shal ben our
 justyse.' 665

A Briton book, writen with Evangyles,
 Was fet, and on this book he swoor anon
 She gilty was, and in the mene whyles
 A hand him smoot upon the nekke-boon,
 That doun he fil atones as a stoon, (572) 670
 And bothe his yē broste out of his face
 In sight of every body in that place.

A vois was herd in general audience,
 And seyde, 'thou hast desclaundred
 gilletees
 The doghter of holy chirche in hey
 presence; 675

Thus hastou doon, and yet holde I my
pees.'

Of this mervaille agast was al the prees;
As mased folk they stoden everichone, (580)
For drede of wreche, save Custance allone.

Greet was the drede and eek the repent-
ance 680

Of hem that hadden wrong suspeccioun
Upon this sely innocent Custance;
And, for this miracle, in conclusioun,
And by Custances mediacioun,
The king, and many another in that
place, 685
Converted was, thanked be Cristes grace!

This false knight was slayn for his un-
trouthe

By jugement of Alla hastifly; (590)
And yet Custance hadde of his deeth gret
routhe.

And after this Jesus, of his mercy, 690
Made Alla wedden ful solempnely
This holy mayden, that is so bright and
shene,

And thus hath Crist y-maad Custance
a quene.

But who was woful, if I shal nat lye,
Of this wedding but Donegild, and na mo,
The kinges moder, ful of tirannye? 696
Hir thoughte hir cursed herte brast a-two;
She wolde noght hir sone had do so; (600)
Hir thoughte a despit, that he sholde take
So strange a creature un-to his make. 700

Me list nat of the chaf nor of the stree
Maken so long a tale, as of the corn.
What sholde I tellen of the royaltee
At mariage, or which cours gooth biforn,
Who bloweth in a trompe or in an horn?
The fruit of every tale is for to seye; 706
They ete, and drinke, and daunce, and
singe, and pleye.

They goon to bedde, as it was skile and
right; (610)

For, thogh that wyves been ful holy
thinges,

They moste take in pacience at night 710
Swich maner necessities as been plesinges
To folk that han y-wedded hem with
ringes,

And leye a lyte hir holinesse asyde
As for the tyme; it may no bet bityde.

On hir he gat a knave-child anon, 715
And to a bishop and his constable eke
He took his wyf to kepe, whan he is goon
To Scotland-ward, his fo-men for to seke;
Now faire Custance, that is so humble
and make, (621)
So longe is goon with childe, til that stille
She halt hir chambre, abyding Cristes
wille. 721

The tyme is come, a knave-child she ber;
Mauricius at the font-stoon they him calle;
This constable dooth forth come a mes-
sager,
And wroot un-to his king, that cleped
was Alle, 725
How that this blisful tyding is bifalle,
And othere tydings speedful for to seye;
He tak 'th the lettre, and forth he gooth
his weye. (630)

This messenger, to doon his advantage, 729
Un-to the kinges moder rydeth swythe,
And salueth hir ful faire in his langage,
'Madame,' quod he, 'ye may be glad and
blythe,
And thanke god an hundred thousand
sythe;
My lady quene hath child, with-uten
doute, 734
To joye and blisse of al this regne aboute.

Lo, heer the lettres seled of this thing,
That I mot bere with al the haste I may;
If ye wol aught un-to your sone the king,
I am your servant, bothe night and day.'
Donegild answerde, 'as now at this tyme,
nay; (642) 740
But heer al night I wol thou take thy
reste,
Tomorwe wol I seye thee what me leste.'

This messenger drank sadly ale and wyn,
And stolen were his lettres prively
Out of his box, whyl he sleep as a swyn;
And countrefeted was ful subtilly 746
Another lettre, wrought ful sinfully,
Un-to the king direct of this matere (650)
Fro his constable, as ye shul after here.

The lettre spak, 'the queen delivered was
Of so horrible a feendly creature, 751
That in the castel noon so hardy was
That any whyle dorste ther endure.
The moder was an elf, by aventure
Y-come, by charmes or by sorcerye, 755
And every wight hateth hir companye.'

Wo was this king whan he this lettre
had seyn, (659)
But to no wighte he tolde his sorwes sore,
But of his owene honde he wroot ageyn,
'Welcome the sonde of Crist for evermore
To me, that am now lerned in his lore; 761
Lord, welcome be thy lust and thy
plesaunce,
My lust I putte al in thyn ordinaunce!

Kepeth this child, al be it foul or fair,
And eek my wyf, un-to myn hoom-
cominge; 765
Crist, whan him list, may sende me an
heir
More agreable than this to my lykinge.'
This lettre he seleth, prively wepinge, (670)
Which to the messenger was take sone,
And forth he gooth; ther is na more to
done. 770

O messenger, fulfild of dronkenesse,
Strong is thy breeth, thy limes faltren ay,
And thou biwreyest alle secreenesse.
Thy mind is lorn, thou janglest as a jay,
Thy face is turned in a newe array! 775
Ther dronkenesse regneth in any route,
Ther is no conseil hid, with-uten doute.

O Donegild, I ne have noon English digne
Un-to thy malice and thy tirannye! (681)
And therfor to the feend I thee resigne,
Let him endyten of thy traitorye! 781
Fy, mannish, fy! o nay, by god, I lye,
Fy, *feendly* spirit, for I dar wel telle,
Though thou heer walke, thy spirit is in
helle! 784

This messenger comth fro the king agayn,
And at the kinges modres court he lighte,
And she was of this messenger ful fayn,
And plesed him in al that over she
mighte. (690)
He drank, and wel his girdel under-
pighte.

He slepeth, and he snoreth in his gyse 790
Al night, þun-til the sonne gan aryse.

Eft were his lettres stolen everichon
And countrefeted lettres in this wyse;
'The king comandeth his constable anen,
Up payne of hanging, and on heigh juyne,
That he ne sholde suffren in no wyse 795
Custance in-with his regne for t'abyde
Thre dayes and a quarter of a tyde; (800)

But in the same ship as he hir fond,
Hir and hir yonge sone, and al hir gere,
He sholde putte, and croude hir fro the
lond, 801
And charge hir that she never eft come
there.'

O my Custance, wel may thy goost have
fere
And sleping in thy dreem been in penance,
When Donegild caste al this ordinance!

This messenger on morwe, whan he wook,
Un-to the castel halt the nexte wey, (809)
And to the constable he the lettre took;
And whan that he this pitous lettre sey,
Ful ofte he seyde 'allas!' and 'wey-
lawey!' 810

'Lord Crist,' quod he, 'how may this
world endure?

So ful of sinne is many a creature!

O mighty god, if that it be thy wille,
Sith thou art rightful juge, how may it be
That thou wolt suffren innocents to spille,
And wikked folk regne in prosperitee? 816
O good Custance, alas! so wo is me
That I mot be thy tormentour, or deye
On shames deeth; ther is noon other
weye!' (821)

Wepen bothe yonge and olde in al that
place, 820
Whan that the king this cursed lettre
sente,

And Custance, with a deedly pale face,
The ferthe day toward hir ship she wente.
But natheles she taketh in good entente
The wille of Crist, and, kneeling on the
stronde, 825
She seyde, 'lord! ay wel-com be thy
sonde!

at me kepte fro the false blame
I was on the londe amonges yow,
n me kepe from harme and eek fro
same (731)

te see, al-though I see nat how. 830
ong as ever he was, he is yet now.
n triste I, and in his moder dere,
s to me my seyl and eek my sterc.'

lrel child lay weping in hir arm, 834
neling, pitously to him she seyde.
lrel sone, I wol do thee non
arm.'

that hir kerchef of hir heed she
reyde,
ver his lrel yēn she it leyde; (740)
n hir arm she lulleth it ful faste,
n-to heven hir yēn up she caste. 840

er,' quod she, 'and mayde bright,
larye,

is that thurgh wommannes egge-
ment
ind was lorn and damned ay to dya,
hich thy child was on a croys y-
nt;

lialful yēn sawe al his torment; 845
is ther no comparisoun bitwene
re and any wo man may sustene.

sawe thy child y-slayn bifor thyn
en, (750)

ret now liveth my lrel child, parfay!
lady bright, to whom alle woful
ryēn, 850

glorie of wommanhede, thou faire
ay,

haven of refut, brighte sterre of day,
on my child, that of thy gentillesse
st on every reful in distresse!

l child, alas! what is thy gilt, 855
never wroughtest sinne as yet,
ardee,

wil thyn harde fader han thee spilt?
rey, dere constable'' quod she; (760)
at my lrel child dwelle heer with
hee;

if thou darst not save him, for
lame, 860

s him ones in his fadres name!'

Ther-with she loketh bakward to the
londe,

And seyde, 'far-wel, housbond routh-
lees!'

And up she rist, and walketh down the
stronde

Toward the ship; hir folweth al the preest,
And ever she preyeth hir child to holde
his pees; 866

And taketh hir leve, and with an holy
entente

She blesseth hir; and in-to ship she
wenta. (770)

Vitailled was the ship, it is no drede,
Habundantly for hir, ful longe space, 870
And other necessaries that sholde nede
She hadde y-nogh, heried be goddes grace!
For wind and weder almighty god pur-
chace,

And bringe hir boom! I can no bettre
seye; 874

But in the see she dryveth forth hir weye.

Explicit secunda pars.

Sequitur pars tercia.

Alla the king comth boom, sone after this,
Unto his castel of the which I tolde, (779)
And axeth wher his wyf and his child is.
The constable gan aboute his herte colde,
And pleyntly al the maner he him tolde 880
As ye han herd, I can telle it no bettre,
And sheweth the king his soel and [seek]
his lettre,

And seyde, 'lord, as ye comanded me
Up payne of deeth, so have I doon, certein.'
This messenger tormented was til he 885
Moste biknowe and tellen, plat and plain,
Fro night to night, in what place he had
leyn.

And thus, by wit and subtil enqueringe,
Ymagined was by whom this harm gan
springe. (791)

The hand was knowe that the lettre wroot,
And al the venom of this cursed dede, 891
But in what wyse, certeinly I noot.
Th'effect is this, that Alla, out of drede,
His moder slow, that men may plainly
rede,

For that she traitour was to hir ligeaunce.
Thus endeth olde Donagild with mes-
chaunce. 896

The sorwe that this Alla, night and day,
Maketh for his wyf and for his child also,
Ther is no tonge that it telle may. (801)
But now wel I un-to Custance go, 900
That fleteth in the see, in peyne and wo,
Fyve year and more, as lyked Cristes
sonde,
Er that hir ship approached un-to londe.

Under an hethen castel, atte laste,
Of which the name in my text noght
I finde, 905
Custance and sek hir child the see up-
caste.

Almighty god, that saveth al mankinde,
Have on Custance and on hir child som
minde, (810)
That fallen is in hethen land eft-sone, 909
In point to spille, as I shal telle yow sone.

Down from the castel comth ther many
a wight
To gauren on this ship and on Custance.
But shortly, from the castel, on a night,
The lordes styward—god yeve him mes-
chaunce!— 914
A theef, that had renayed our orsaunce,
Com in-to ship allone, and seyde he sholde
Hir lemman be, whar-so she wolds or
nolde. (819)

Wo was this wrecched womman tho bigon,
Hir child cryde, and she cryde pitously;
But blisful Marie heelp hir right anon;
For with hir struggling wel and mightily
The theef fil over bord al sodeinly, 922
And in the see he dreynte for vengeaunce;
And thus hath Crist unwarmed kept
Custance.

Auctor.

O foule lust of luxurie! lo, thyn ende!
Nat only that thou feyntest mannes
minde, 926
But verraily thou wolt his body shende;
Th'ende of thy werk or of thy lustes
blinde (830)
Is compleyning, how many-oon may men
finde

That noght for werk som-tyme, but for
th'entente 930
To doon this sinne, ben outhur slayn w
shente!

How may this wayke womman han this
strengthe
Hir to defende agayn this renegat?
O Goliath, unmesurable of longthe,
How mighte David make thee so met, 935
So yong and of armure so desolat?
How dorste he loke up-on thy dredful face!
Wel may men seen, it nas but goddes
grace! (840)

Who yaf Judith corage or hardynesse
To sleen him, Olofernus, in his tente, 940
And to delivaren out of wrecchednesse
The peple of god? I seye, for this entente,
That, right as god spirit of vigour sente
To hem, and saved hem out of meschaunce,
So sente he might and vigour to Custance

Forth goth hir ship thurgh-out the narwe
mouth 946
Of Jubaltar and Septe, dryving ay,
Som-tyme West, som-tyme North and
South, (850)
And som tyme Est, ful many a wery
day,
Til Cristes moder (blessed be she ay!) 950
Hath shapen, thurgh hir endelees good-
nesse,
To make an ende of al hir hevynesse.

Now lat us stinte of Custance but a throwe,
And speke we of the Romain Emperour.
That out of Surrie hath by lettres knowe
The slaughtre of Cristen folk, and dis-
honour 956
Don to his doghter by a fals traitour,
I mene the cursed wikked sowdanesse,
That at the feste leet sleen both more and
lesse, (861)

For which this emperour hath sentaunce
His senatour, with royal ordinance, 961
And othere lordes, got wot, many oon,
On Surriens to taken heigh vengeaunce.
They brennen, sleen, and bringe hem to
meschaunce

Ful many a day; but shortly, this is
the ende, 965
Homward to Rome they shapen hem to
wende.

This senatour repaireth with victorie
To Rome-ward, sayling ful royally, (870)
And mette the ship dryving, as seith the
storie,

In which Custance sit ful pitously. 970
No-thing ne knew he what she was, ne
why

She was in swich array; ne she nil seye
Of hir estaat, although she sholde deye.

He bringeth hir to Rome, and to his wyf
He yaf hir, and hir yonge sone also; 975
And with the senatour she ladde her lyf.
Thus can our lady bringen out of wo (879)
Woful Custance, and many another mo.
And longe tyme dwelled she in that place,
In holy werkis ever, as was hir grace. 980

The senatoures wyf hir aunte was,
But for al that she knew hir never the
more;

I wol no lenger tarien in this cas,
But to king Alla, which I spak of yore,
That for his wyf wopeth and syketh
sore, 985

I wol retourne, and lete I wol Custance
Under the senatoures governance.

King Alla, which that hadde his moder
slayn, (990)

Upon a day fil in swich repentance,
That, if I shortly tellen shal and plain, 990
To Rome he comth, to receyven his
penance;

And putte him in the popes ordinance
In heigh and low, and Jesu Crist bisoghte
Foryeve his wikked werkis that he
wroghte. 995

The same anon thurgh Rome toun is born,
How Alla king shal come in pilgrimage,
By herbergeours that wenten him biforn;
For which the senatour, as was usage, (900)
Hood him ageyn, and many of his lineage,
As wel to shewen his heighe magniflounce
As to don any king a reverence. 1005

Greet chere dooth this noble senatour
To king Alla, and he to him also;
Everich of hem doth other greet honour;
And so bifel that, in a day or two, 1005
This senatour is to king Alla go
To faste, and shortly, if I shal nat lye,
Custances sone wente in his companye.

Som men wolde seyn, at requeste of
Custance, (911)

This senatour hath lad this child to feste,
I may nat tellen every circumstance, 1011
Ba as he may, ther was he at the leste.
But soth is this, that, at his modres heste,
Biforn Alla, during the metes space,
The child stood, loking in the kinges face.

This Alla king bath of this child greet
wonder, 1016

And to the senatour he seyde anon,
'Whos is that faire child that stondeth
yonder?' (920)

'I noot,' quod he, 'by god, and by seint
John! 1019

A moder he hath, but fader hath he non
That I of woot'—but shortly, in a stounde,
He tolde Alla how that this child was
founde.

'But god wot,' quod this senatour also,
'So vertuous a liver in my lyf, 1024

Ne saugh I never as she, ne herde of mo
Of worldly wommen, mayden, nor of wyf;
I dar wol seyn hir hadde lever a knyf
Thurgh-out her breste, than been a wom-
man wikke; (930)

Ther is no man coude bringe hir to that
prikke.'

Now was this child as lyk un-to Custance
As possible is a creature to be. 1031

This Alla hath the face in remembrance
Of dame Custance, and ther-on mused he
If that the childes moder were aught she
That was his wyf, and prively he sighte,
And spedde him fro the table that he
mighte. 1036

'Parfay,' thoughte he, 'fantome is in myn
heed!

I oughte deme, of skilful jugement, (940)

'That in the salte see my wyf is deed.'
 And afterward he made his argument—
 'What woot I, if that Crist have hider
 y-sent 1041
 My wyf by see, as wel as he hir sente
 To my contres fro thennes that she
 wente?'

And, after noon, boon with the senatour
 Goth Alla, for to seen this wonder chaunce.
 This senatour dooth Alla greet honour,
 And hastily he sente after Custaunce.
 But trusteth wel, hir liste nat to daunce
 Whan that she wiste wherefor was that
 sonde. (951) 1049
 Unnethe up-on hir feet she mighte stonde.

When Alla saugh his wyf, faire he hir
 grette,
 And weep, that it was routhe for to see.
 For at the firste look he on hir sette
 He knew wel verrailly that it was she.
 And she for sorwe as dumb stant as a tree;
 So was hir herte shet in hir distresse 1056
 Whan she remembered his unkindenesse.

Twytis she swowned in his owne sighte;
 He weep, and him excuseth pitouly:—
 'Now god,' quod he, 'and alle his halwes
 brighte (962) 1060
 So wisly on my soule as have mercy,
 That of your harm as giltelees am I
 As is Maurice my sone so lyk your face;
 Elles the feend me fecche out of this place!'

Long was the sobbing and the bitter peyne
 Er that hir woful hertes mighte cease;
 Greet was the pitee for to here hem playne,
 Thurgh whiche pleintes gan hir wo en-
 crease. (970)
 I prey yow al my labour to releese;
 I may nat telle hir wo un-til tomorwe, 1070
 I am so wery for to speke of sorwe.

But fynally, when that the sooth is wist
 That Alla giltelees was of hir wo,
 I trowe an hundred tymes been they kist,
 And swich a bliise is ther bitwix hem two
 That, save the joys that lasteth evermo,
 Ther is non lyk, that any creature 1077
 Hath seyn or shal, whyl that the world
 may dure. (980)

The preyde she hir housbond mekely,
 In relief of hir longe pitous pyne, 1080
 That he wold preye hir fader specially
 That, of his magestee, he wolde anclene
 To vouche-sauf som day with him to dyne;
 She preyde him eek, he sholde by no weye
 Un-to hir fader no word of hir seye. 1085

Som men wold seyn, how that the child
 Maurice

Doth this message un-to this emperour
 But, as I gesse, Alla was nat so nyce (990)
 To him, that was of so sovereyn honour
 As he that is of Cristen folk the flour, 1090
 Sente any child, but it is bet to deme
 He wente him-self, and so it may wel seme

This emperour hath graunted gentilly
 To come to diner, as he him bisoghte;
 And wel rede I, he loked bisailly 1093
 Up-on this child, and on his doghter
 thoghte.

Alla goth to his in, and, as him oghte,
 Arrayed for this feste in every wyse (1094)
 As ferforth as his conning may suffyme

The morwe cam, and Alla gan him drewe,
 And eek his wyf, this emperour to mete,
 And forth they ryde in joye and in glad-
 nesse. 1102

And whan she saugh hir fader in the strete,
 She lighte down, and falleth him to fete.
 'Fader,' quod she, 'your yonge child
 Custance 1105
 Is now ful clene out of your remembrance.

I am your doghter Custance,' quod she,
 'That whylom ye han sent un-to Surrye
 It am I, fader, that in the salte see (1107)
 Was put allone and dampned for to dye
 Now, gode fader, mercy I yow crye, 1111
 Send me namore un-to non hethenesse,
 But thonketh my lord heer of his kinde-
 nesse.'

Who can the pitous joys tellen al
 Bitwix hem thre, sin they ben thus
 y-mette? 1115

But of my tale make an ende I shal;
 The day goth faste, I wol no lenger lette.
 This glade folk to diner thay hem sette,

In joye and blisse at mete I lete hem
dwelle (1021) 1119
A thousand fold wel more than I can telle.

This child Maurice was sithen emperour
Mead by the pope, and lived Cristenly.
To Cristes chirche he dide greet honour;
But I lete al his storie passen by,
Of Custance is my tale specially. 1125
In olde Romayn gestes may men finde
Maurices lyf; I bere it noght in minde.

This king Alla, when he his tymesey, (1030)
With his Custance, his holy wyf so swete,
To Engelond been they come the righte
wey, 1130
Wher-as they live in joye and in quiete.
But litel whyl it lasteth, I yow hate,
Joye of this world, for tyme wol nat
abyde;
Pro day to night it changeth as the tyde.

Who lived ever in swich delyt o day 1135
That him ne moeved outhur conscience,
Or ire, or talent, or som kin affray, (1039)
Envy, or pryde, or passion, or offence?
I ne seye but for this ende this sentence,
That litel whyl in joye or in plesance 1140
Lasteth the blisse of Alla with Custance.

For deeth, that taketh of heigh and low
his rente,
When passed was a yeer, even as I gesse,
Out of this world this king Alla he hente,
For whom Custance hath ful gret hevi-
nesse. 1145
Now lat us preyen god his soule blesse!
And dame Custance, fynally to seye,
Towards the town of Rome gooth hir weye.

To Rome is come this holy creature, (1051)
And fyndeth ther hir frendes hole and
sounde: 1150
Now is she scaped al hir aventure;
And when that she hir fader hath y-founde,
Doun on hir knees falleth she to grounde;
Weping for tendrenesse in herte blythe,
She herieth god an hundred thousand
aythe. 1155

In vertu and in holy almes-dede (1058)
They liven alle, and never a-sonder wende;
Til deeth departed hem, this lyf they lede.
And fareth now weel, my tale is at an ende.
Now Jesu Crist, that of his might may
sende 1160
Joye after wo, governe us in his grace,
And kepe us alle that ben in this place!
Amen.

Here endeth the Tale of the Man of Lawe; and next folweth the
Shipman's Prolog.

. For l. 5583 in Tyrwhitt's Text, see Group D, l. 1.

THE SHIPMAN'S PROLOGUE.

Here biginneth the Shipmannes Prolog.

* In Tyrwhitt's text, R. 12903-12924.

Our hoste up-on his stiropes stood anon,
And seyde, 'good men, herkneth everich on;

This was a thrifty tale for the nones! 1165
Sir parish prest,' quod he, 'for goddes bones,

Tel us a tale, as was thy forward yore.
I see wel that ye larned men in lore
Can moche good, by goddes dignitee!'

The Personehim answerde, 'ben'cette! 1170
What eyloth the man, so sinfully to swere?'

Our hoste answerde, 'O Jankin, be ye there? (10)

I smelle a loller in the wind,' quod he.

'How! good men,' quod our hoste, 'herkneth me;

Abydeth, for goddes dignitee panceloun, 1175
For we shal han a predicacioun;

This loller heer wil prechen us soon-what'
'Nay, by my fader soule! that shal be nat,'

Seyde the Shipman; 'heer he shal us preche,

He shal no gospel glosen heerne teche. 1180
We leve alle in the grete god,' quod he,

'He wolde sownen som difficultee, (20)

Or springen cokkel in our olene eorn;

And therfor, hoste, I warne thee bifore,

My joly body shal a tale telle, 1185

And I shal clinken yow so mary a belle,

That I shal waken al this compaigne;

But it shal nat ben of philosophye,

No *physices*, ne termes queinte of lawe.

Ther is but litel Latin in my mawe.' 1190

Here endeth the Shipman his Prolog.

THE SHIPMANNES TALE.

Here biginneth the Shipmannes Tale.

A Marchant whylom dwalled at Seint Denys,

That riche was, for which men helde him wys;

A wyf he hadde of excellent beantes,
And compaignable and revelous was she,
Which is a thing that causeth more dispence 1195

Than worth is al the chere and reverence
That men hem doon at festes and at daunces;

Swiche salutaaciouns and contenaunces
Passen as dooth a shadwe up-on the wal.

But wo is him that payen moot for al; 1200
The sely housbond, algate he mot paye.

He moot us clothe, and he moot us arraye, (10)

Al for his owene worship richely,
In which array we daunce jolily. 1204

And if that he nought may, par-aventure,
Or elles, list no swich dispence endure,

But thinketh it is wasted and y-lost,
Than moot another payen for our cost,

Or lene us gold, and that is perilous.

This noble Marchant heeld a worthy hous, (20) 1210

For which he hadde alday so greet repair
 For his largesse, and for his wyf was fair,
 That wonder is ; but herkneth to my tale.
 Amonges alle his gastes, grete and smale,
 Ther was a monk, a fair man and a bold,
 I trowe of thritty winter he was old, 1216
 That ever in oon was drawing to that place.
 This yonge monk, that was so fair of face,
 Aqueinted was so with the gode man,
 Sith that hir firste knoweliche bigan, 1220
 That in his hous as famulier was he (31)
 As it possible is any freend to be.

And for as muchel as this gode man
 And eek this monk, of which that I bigan,
 Were bothe two y-born in o village, 1225
 The monk him claimeth as for cosinage ;
 And he again, he seith nat ones nay,
 But was as glad ther-of as fowel of day ;
 For to his herte it was a greet plesaunce.
 Thus been they knit with eterne alliaunce,
 And ech of hem gan other for t'assure 1231
 Of brotherhede, whyl that hir lyf may
 dure. (42)

Free was daun John, and namely of
 dispenca,
 As in that hous ; and ful of diligence 1234
 To doon plesaunce, and also greet costage.
 He noght forgot to yeve the leeste pago
 In al that hous ; but, after hir degree,
 He yaf the lord, and sitthe al his meynec,
 When that he cam, som maner honest
 thing, 1239
 For which they were as glad of his coming
 As fowel is fayn, whan that the sonne
 up-ryseth. (51)

Na more of this as now, for it suffyseth.
 But so bifel, this marchant on a day
 Shoop him to make redy his array
 Toward the toun of Brugges for to fare, 1245
 To byen ther a porcioun of ware,
 For which he hath to Paris sent anon
 A messenger, and preyed hath daun John
 That he sholde come to Saint Denys to
 playe 1249

With him and with his wyf a day or tweye,
 Er he to Brugges wente, in alle wyse. (61)

This noble monk, of which I yow devyse,
 Hath of his abbot, as him list, licence,
 By-cause he was a man of heigh prudence,
 And eek an officer, out for to ryde, 1255
 To seen hir graunges and hir berne wyde,

And un-to Saint Denys he comth anon.
 Who was so welcome as my lord daun
 John,

Our dere cosin, ful of curteisye ? 1250
 With him broghte he a jubbe of Malvesye,
 And eek another, ful of fyn Vernage, (71)
 And volatyl, as ay was his usage.
 And thus I late hem ete and drinke and
 pleye,
 This marchant and this monk, a day or
 tweye.

The thridde day, this marchant up-
 aryseth, 1265
 And on his nedes sadly him avyseth,
 And up in-to his countour-hous goth he
 To rekene with him-self, as wel may be,
 Of thilke yeer, how that it with him stood,
 And how that he despended hadde his
 good ; 1270

And if that he encreased were or noon, (81)
 His bokes and his bagges many oon
 He leith biforn him on his counting-bord,
 Ful riche was his tresor and his hord,
 For which ful faste his countour-dore he
 shette ; 1275

And eek he nolde that no man sholde him
 lette
 Of his accountes, for the mone tyme ;
 And thus he sit til it was passed pryme.

Daun John was risen in the morwe also,
 And in the gardin walketh to and fro, 1280
 And hath his thinges seyde ful curteisly.

This gode wyf cam walking prively (92)
 In-to the gardin, ther he walketh softe,
 And him saweweth, as she hath don ofte.
 A mayde child cam in hir companye, 1285
 Which as hir list she may governe and gye,
 For yet under the yerde was the mayde.
 ' O dere cosin myn, daun John,' she sayde,
 ' What eyleth yow so rathe for to ryse ?'
 ' Nece,' quod he, ' it ighte y-nough suffys
 Fyve houres for to slepe up-on a night, (101)
 But it were for an old appalled wight,
 As been thise woddad men, that lye and
 dare

As in a forme sit a very hare,
 Were al for-straught with boundes grete
 and smale, 1295

But dere nece, why be ye so pale ?
 I trowe certes that our gode man (107)
 Hath yow laboured sith the night bigan,

That yow were neded to resten hastily? ' 1309
And with that word he lough ful merily,
And of his owene thought he wex al reed.

This faire wyf gan for to shake hir heed,
And seyde thus, 'ye, god wot al,' quod she;
'Nay, cosin myn, it stant nat so with me.
For, by that god that yaf me soule and lyf,
In al the reme of France is ther no wyf 1306
That lasse lust hath to that sory play.
For I may singe "allas" and "weylawey,
'That I was born," but to no wight,' quod she,
'Dar I nat telle how that it stant with me.
Wherfore I thinke out of this land to
wende, (121) 1311

Or elles of my-self to make an ende,
So ful am I of drede and eek of care.'

This monk bigan up-on this wyf to stare,
And seyde, 'allas, my nece, god forbede
That ye, for any sorwe or any drede, 1316
For do your-self; but telleth me your grief;
Paraventure I may, in your meschief,
Conseille or helpe, and therfore telleth me
Al your anoy, for it shal been secree; 1320
For on my porthors here I make an ooth,
That never in my lyf, for lief ne looth, (132)
Ne shal I of no conseil yow biwreye.'

'The same agayn to yow,' quod she,
'I seye; 1324

By god and by this porthors, I yow swere,
Though men me wolde al in-to peces tere,
Ne shal I never, for to goon to helle,
Biwreye a word of thing that ye me telle,
Nat for no cosinage ne alliance,
But verrailly, for love and affiance.' 1330
Thus been they sworn, and heer-upon they
kiste, (141)

And ech of hem tolde other what hem liste.

'Cosin,' quod she, 'if that I hadde
a space,

As I have noon, and namely in this place,
Than wolde I telle a legende of my lyf, 1335
What I have suffred sith I was a wyf
With myn housbonde, al be he your cosyn.'

'Nay,' quod this monk, 'by god and seint
Martyn,

He is na more cosin un-to me 1339
Than is this leef that hangeth on the tree!
I clepe him so, by Seint Denys of Fraunce,
To have the more cause of aqueintaunce
Of yow, which I have loved specially (153)
Aboven alle wommen sikerly;

This swere I yow on my professoun. 1345
Telleth your grief, lest that he come adoun,
And hasteth yow, and gooth your way
anon.'

'My dere love,' quod she, 'o my dam
John, (158)

Ful lief were me this conseil for to hyde,
But out it moot, I may namore abyde. 1350
Myn housbond is to me the worste man
That ever was, sith that the world bigan.
But sith I am a wyf, it sit nat me
To tellen no wight of our privete, 1354
Neither a-bedde, ne in non other place;
God shilde I sholde it tellen, for his grace!
A wyf ne shal nat seyn of hir housbonde
But al honour, as I can understonde;
Save un-to yow thus muche I telle
shal;

As help me god, he is noight worth at al 1360
In no degree the value of a flye. (171)

But yet me greveth most his nigardye;
And wel ye woot that wommen naturally
Desyren thinges sixe, as wel as I. 1364
They wolde that hir housbondes sholde be
Hardy, and wyse, and riche, and ther-to
free,

And buxom to his wyf, and fresh a-bedde.
But, by that ilke lord that for us bledde,
For his honour, my-self for to arraye,
A Sonday next, I moste nedes paye 1370
An hundred frankes, or elles am I lorn.
Yet were me lever that I were unborn (182)
Than me were doon a sclaundre or vil-
einye;

And if myn housbond eek it mighte espye,
I nere but lost, and therfore I yow preye
Lene me this somme, or elles moot I
deye. 1376

Daun John, I seye, lene me thise hundred
frankes;

Pardee, I wol nat faille yow my thanks,
If that yow list to doon that I yow praye.
For at a certein day I wol yow paye, 1380
And doon to yow what plesance and
servyce (191)

That I may doon, right as yow list devyse.
And but I do, god take on me vengeance
As foul as ever had Geniloun of France!'

This gentil monk answerde in this
manere; 1385

'Now, trewely, myn owene lady dere,

I have,' quod he, 'on yow so greet a routhe,
That I yow swere and plichte yow my
trouthe,

That whan your housbond is to Flaundres
fare,

I wol deliver yow out of this care; 1390
For I wol bringe yow an hundred frankes.'
And with that word he caughte hir by the
flankes, (202)

And hir embraceth harde, and kiste hir
ofte.

'Goth now your wey,' quod he, 'al stille
and softe,

And lat us dyne as sone as that ye may;
For by mychilindre it is pryme of day. 1396
Goth now, and beeth as trewe as I shal be.'

'Now, elles god forbede, sire,' quod she,
And forth she gooth, as jolif as a pye,
And bad the cokes that they sholde hem
bye, 1400

So that men mighte dyne, and that anon.
Up to hir housbonde is this wyf y-gon, (212)
And knokketh at his countour boldely.

'Qui la?' quod he. 'Peter! it am I,'
Quod she, 'what, sire, how longe wol ye
faste? 1405

How longe tyme wol ye rekene and caste
Your sommes, and your bokes, and your
things?

The devel have part of alle swiche reken-
inges!

Ye have y-nough, pardee, of goddes sonde;
Com down to-day, and lat your bagges
sonde. 1410

Ne be ye nat ashamed that daun John (221)
Shal fasting al this day elenge goon?

What! lat us here a messe, and go we
dyne.'

'Wyf,' quod this man, 'litel canstow
devyne

The curious bisnesse that we have. 1415
For of us chapmen, al-so god me save,
And by that lord that cleped is Seint
Yve,

Scarsly amonges twelve ten shul thryve,
Continuelly, lastinge un-to our age. 1419

We may wel make chere and good visage,
And dryve forth the world as it may be,
And kepen our estat in privetee, (232)

Til we be deed, or elles that we pleye
A pilgrimage, or goon out of the weye.

And therfor have I greet necessitee 1425
Up-on this queinte world t'avyse me;
For evermore we mote stonde in drede
Of hap and fortune in our chapmanhede.

To Flaundres wol I go to-morwe at day,
And come agayn, as sone as ever I may.
For which, my dere wyf, I thee biseke, (241)
As be to every wight buxom and meke,
And for to kepe our good be curious,
And honestly governe wel our hous. 1434
Thou hast y-nough, in every maner wyse,
That to a thrifty household may suffyse.
Thee lakketh noon array ne no vitaille,
Of silver in thy purs shaltow nat faille.'
And with that word his countour-dore he
shette,

And down he gooth, no lenger wolde he
lette, 1440

But hastily a messe was ther seyde, (251)
And spedily the tables were y-leyde,
And to the diner faste they hem spedde;
And richely this monk the chapman fedde.

At-after diner daun John sobrelly 1445
This chapman took a-part, and prively
He seyde him thus, 'cosyn, it standeth so,
That wel I see to Brugges wol ye go.

God and seint Austin spede yow and gyde!
I prey yow, cosin, wysly that ye ryde; 1450
Governeth yow also of your diete (261)
Atemprelly, and namely in this hete.

Bitwix us two nedeth no strange fare;
Fare-wel, cosyn; god shilde yow fro
care.

If any thing ther be by day or night, 1455
If it lye in my power and my might,
That ye me wol comande in any wyse,
It shal be doon, right as ye wol devyse.

O thing, er that ye goon, if it may be,
I wolde prey yow; for to lene me 1460
An hundred frankes, for a wyke or tweye,
For certein beestes that I moste beye, (272)
To store with a place that is oures.

God help me so, I wolde it were youres!
I shal nat faille surely of my day, 1465
Nat for a thousand frankes, a myle-way.
But lat this thing be secree, I yow preye,
For yet to-night thise beestes moot I beye;
And fare-now wel, myn owene cosin
dere,

Graunt mercy of your cost and of your
chere.' (280) 1470

This noble marchant gentilly anon
Answerde, and seyde, 'o cosin myn, daun
John,

Now sikerly this is a smal requeste ;
My gold is youre, whan that it yow leste.
And nat only my gold, but my chaffare ;
Take what yow list, god shilde that ye
spare. 1476

But o thing is, ye knowe it wel y-nogh,
Of chapman, that hir moneye is hir plogh.
We may creance whyl we have a name,
But goldles for to be, it is no game. 1480
Paye it agayn whan it lyth in your esse,
After my might ful fayn wolde I yow
please.' (202)

These hundred frankes he sette forth
anon,

And prively he took hem to daun John
No wight in al this world wiste of this
lone, 1485

Savinge this marchant and daun John
allone.

They drinke, and speke, and rome a whyle
and pleye,

Til that daun John rydeth to his abbeye.

The morwe cam, and forth this mar-
chant rydeth

To Flaundes-ward, his prentis wel him
gydeth, 1490

Til he cam in-to Brugges merily. (301)

Now gooth this marchant faste and bisily
Aboute his nede, and byeth and crean-
ceth.

He neither pleyeth at the dees ne daun-
ceth ;

But as a marchant, shortly for to telle, 1495
He let his lyf, and there I lets him dwelle.

The Sunday next this Marchant was
agon,

To Seint Denys y-comen is daun John,
With crowne and berd all fresh and newe
y-shave.

In al the hous ther nas so litel a knave, 1500
Ne no wight elles, that he nas ful fayn, (311)
For that my lord daun John was come
agayn.

And shortly to the point right for to gon,
This faire wyf accorded with daun John,
That for thise hundred frankes he sholde
al night 1505

Have hir in his armes bolt-upright ;

And this acord parfourned was in dede
In mirthe al night a bisy lyf they lede
Til it was day, that daun John wente his
way,

And bad the meynes 'fare-wel, have good
day !' (320, 1510)

For noon of hem, ne no wight in the tour,
Hath of daun John right no suspicioun.
And forth he rydeth hoom to his abbeye,
Or where him list, namore of him I seye.

This marchant, whan that ended was
the faire, 1515

To Seint Denys he gan for to repaire,
And with his wyf he maketh feste and
chere,

And telleth hir that chaffare is so dere,
That nedes moste he make a chevisaunce.
For he was bounde in a reconisaunce 1520
To paye twenty thousand sheeld anon. 331
For which this marchant is to Paris goa,
To borwe of certain frendes that he hadde
A certein frankes, and somme with him
he ladde.

And whan that he was come in-to the tour,
For greet chertes and greet affeccoun, 1526
Un-to daun John he gooth him first, to
pleye :

Nat for to axe or borwe of him moneye,
But for to wite and seen of his welfare,
And for to tellen him of his chaffare, 1531
As frendes doon whan they ben met
y-fore. (341)

Daun John him maketh feste and mery
chere ;

And he him tolde agayn ful specially,
How he hadde wel y-boght and graciously,
Thanked be god, al hool his marchandys.
Save that he moste, in alle maner wyse, 1536
Maken a chevisaunce, as for his beste,
And thanne he sholde been in joye and
reste.

Daun John answerde, 'certes, I am fayn
That ye in hele ar comen hoom agayn 1540
And if that I were riche, as have I blisse,
Of twenty thousand sheeld shold ye nat
missen, (351)

For ye so kindely this other day
Lente me gold, and as I can and may,
I thanke yow, by god and by seint Jame'
But natheles I took un-to our dame, 1546
Your wyf at hoom, the same gold agayn

Upon your bench; she woot it wel, certeyn,
By certain tokenes that I can hir telle.
Now, by your leve, I may no lenger dwelle,
Our abbot wol out of this toun anon; (361)
And in his companye moot I gon. 1552
Grete wel our dame, myn owene nece
swete,

And fare-wel, dere cosin, til we mete!'

This Marchant, which that was ful war
and wys, 1555

Creaunced hath, and payd eek in Parys,
To certeyn Lumbardes, redy in hir hond,
The somme of gold, and gat of hem his
bond;

And hoom he gooth, mery as a papejay.
For wel he knew he stood in swich array,
That nedes moste he winne in that
viage (371)

A thousand frankes above al his costage.

His wyf ful redy mette him atte gate,
As she was wont of old usage algate, 1564
And al that night in mirthe they bisette;
For he was riche and cleerly out of dette.
Whan it was day, this marchant gan
embrace

His wyf al newe, and kiste hir on hir face,
And up he gooth and maketh it ful
tough.

'Namore,' quod she, 'by god, ye have
y-nough!' 1570

And wantounly agayn with him she
pleyde; (381)

Til, atte laste, that this Marchant seyde,
'By god,' quod he, 'I am a litel wrooth
With yow, my wyf, al-thogh it be me
looth.

And woot ye why? by god, as that I
geese, 1575

That ye han maad a maner straungenesse
Bitwixen me and my cosyn daun John.

Ye sholde han warned me, er I had gon,
That he yow hadde an hundred frankes
payed

By redy tokene; and heeld him yvel
apayed, 1580

For that I to him spak of chevisaunce,
Me semed so, as by his contenaunce. (392)

But nathclees, by god our hevene king,
I thoghte nat to axe of him no-thing.

I prey the, wyf, ne do namore so; 1585
Tel me alwey, er that I fro thee go,
If any dettour hath in myn absence
Y-payd thee; lest, thurgh thy necligence,
I mighte him axe a thing that he hath
payed.' (399) 1589

This wyf was nat afered nor affrayed,
But boldely she seyde, and that anon:
'Marie, I defy the false monk, daun John!
I kepe nat of hise tokenes never a deel;
He took me certain gold, that woot I weel!
What! yvel thedom on his monkessnoute!
For, god it woot, I wende, withouten doute,
That he had yeve it me bycause of yow,
To doon ther-with myn honour and my
prow,

For cosinage, and eek for bele chere
That he hath had ful ofte tymes here. 1600

But sith I see I stonde in this disjoint, (411)
I wol answer yow shortly, to the point.

Ye han mo slakker dettours than am I!
For I wol paye yow wel and redily

Fro day to day; and, if so be I faille, 1605
I am your wyf; score it up-on my taille,

And I shal paye, as sone as ever I may.
For, by my trouthe, I have on myn array,

And nat on wast, bistowed every deel.
And for I have bistowed it so weel 1610

For your honour, for goddes sake, I seye,
As be nat wrooth, but lat us laughe and
pleye. (422)

Ye shal my joly body have to wedde;
By god, I wol nat paye yow but a-bedde.

Forgive it me, myn owene spouse dere;
Turne hiderward and maketh bettre
chere.' 1616

This marchant saugh ther was no
remedye,

And, for to chyde, it nere hut greet folye,
Sith that the thing may nat amended be.

'Now, wyf,' he seyde, 'and I foryeve it
thee; 1620

But, by thy lyf, ne be namore so large;
Keep bet our good, this yeve I thee in
charge.' (432)

Thus endeth now my tale, and god us
sende

Taling y-nough, un-to our lyves ende.
Amen.

Here endeth the Shipmannes Tale.

THE PRIORESS'S PROLOGUE.

Behold the mery wordes of the Host to the Shipman and to the
lady Prioress.

'Wen. seyð, by *corpus domini*, quod our
hoste, 1625
'Now longe moot thou sayle by the coste,
Sir gentil maister, gentil mariner!
God yeve this monk a thousand last quad
year!
A ha! felawes! both ware of swiche a
jape!
The monk putte in the mannes hood an
ape, 1630
And in his wyves eek, by seint Austin!
Draweth no monkes more un-to your in.
But now passe over, and let us seke
abouts,

Who shal now telle first, of al this
route, (16)
Another tale;' and with that word he
sayde, 1635
As curteisly as it had been a mayde,
'My lady Prioress, by your leve,
So that I wiste I sholde yow nat greve,
I wolde demen that ye tellen sholde
A tale next, if so were that ye wolde, 1640
Now wol ye vouche-sauf, my lady dere?'
'Gladly,' quod she, and seyde as ye
shal here. (17)

Explicit.

THE PRIORESSES TALE.

The Prologe of the Prioresses Tale.

Domine, dominus noster.

O Lord our lord, thy name how mer-
veillous
Is in this large worlde y-sprad—quod
she:—
For noght only thy laude precious 1645
Parfourned is by men of dignitee,
But by the mouth of children thy bountee
Parfourned is, for on the brest soukinge
Som tyme shewen they thyn heryinge.
Wherfor in laude, as I best can or may,
Of thee, and of the whyte lily flour 1651
Which that thee bar, and is a mayde
alway, (18)

To telle a storie I wol do my labour;
Not that I may encreasen hir honour;
For she hir-self is honour, and the rote
Of bountee, next hir sone, and soules
bote.— 1655
O moder mayde! o mayde moder free!
O bush unbrent, brenninge in Moyes
sighte,
That ravishedest down fro the deltee,
Thurgh thyn humblesse, the goost that in
th'alighte, 1660
Of whos vertu, whan he thyn herte
lighte,
Conceived was the fadres sapience, (20)
Help me to telle it in thy reverence!

Lady! thy bountee, thy magnificence,
 Thy vertu, and thy grete humilitee 1665
 Ther may no tonge expresse in no science;
 For som-tyme, lady, er men praye to thee,
 Thou goost biforn of thy benignitee,
 And getest us the light, thurgh thy preyere,
 To gyden us un-to thy sone so dere. 1670

My conning is so wayk, o blisful quene,
 For to declare thy grete worthinesse, (30)
 That I ne may the weighte nat sustene,
 But as a child of twelf monthe old, or
 lesse, 1674

That can unnethes any word expresse,
 Right so fare I, and therfor I yow preye,
 Gydeh my song that I shal of yow seye.

Explicit.

Here biginneth the Prioresses Tale.

Ther was in Asie, in a greet citee,
 Amonges Cristen folk, a Jewerye,
 Sustened by a lord of that contree 1680
 For foule usure and lucre of vilanye,
 Hatelful to Crist and to his companye;
 And thurgh the strete men mighte ryde
 or wende, (41)
 For it was free, and open at either ende.

A litel scole of Cristen folk ther stood
 Down at the ferther ende, in which ther
 were 1686
 Children an heep, y-comen of Cristen
 blood,

That lerned in that scole yeer by yere
 Swich maner doctrine as men used there,
 This is to seyn, to singen and to rede, 1690
 As smale children doon in hir childhede.

Among thise children was a widwes sone,
 A litel clergeon, seven yeer of age, (51)

That day by day to scole was his wone,
 And eek also, wher-as he saugh th' image
 Of Cristes moder, hadde he in usage,

As him was taught, to knele adoun and
 seye

His Ave Marie, as he goth by the weye.

Thus hath this widwe hir litel sone y-
 taught

Our blisful lady, Cristes moder dere, 1700
 To worshipec ay, and he forgat it naught,

For sely child wol alday sone lere; (60)
 But ay, whan I remembre on this matere,
 Seint Nicholas stant ever in my presence,
 For he so yong to Crist did reverence. 1705

This litel child, his litel book lerninge,
 As he sat in the scole at his prymer,
 He *Alma redemptoris* herde singe,
 As children lerned hir antiphoner;
 And, as he dorste, he drough him ner and
 ner, 1710
 And herkned ay the wordes and the note,
 Til he the firste vers coude al by rote. (70)

Noght wiste he what this Latin was to
 seye,

For he so yong and tendre was of age;
 But on a day his felaw gan he preye 1715
 T'expounden him this song in his langage,
 Or telle him why this song was in usage;
 This preyde he him to construe and de-
 clare

Ful ofte tyme upon his knowes bare.

His felaw, which that elder was than he,
 Answerde him thus: 'this song, I have
 herd seye,

Was makid of our blisful lady free, (80)
 Hir to salve, and eek hir for to preye
 To been our help and socour whan we
 deye. 1724

I can no more expounde in this matere;
 I lerne song, I can but smal grammere.'

'And is this song makid in reverence
 Of Cristes moder?' seyde this innocent;
 'Now certes, I wol do my diligence 1729
 To conne it al, er Cristemasse is went;
 Though that I for my prymer shal be
 shent,

And shal be beten thryës in an houre, (90)
 I wol it conne, our lady for to honoure.'

His felaw taughte him homward prively,
 Fro day to day, til he coude it by rote,
 And than he song it wel and boldely
 Fro word to word, acordig with the note;
 Twyës a day it passed thurgh his throte,
 To scoleward and homward whan he
 wente; 1739

On Cristes moder set was his entente.

As I have seyde, thurgh-out the Jewerye
 This litel child, as he cam to and fro, (100)
 Ful merily than wolde he singe, and crye
O Alma redemptoris ever-mo.
 The swetnes hath his herte perced so 1745
 Of Cristes moder, that, to hir to preye,
 He can nat stinte of singing by the weye.

Our firste fo, the serpent Sathanae,
 That hath in Jewes herte his waspes nest,
 Up swal, and seide, 'O Hebraik peple,
 alas! 1750
 Is this to yow a thing that is honest,
 That swich a boy shal walken as him lest
 In your despyt, and singe of swich sen-
 tence, (111)
 Which is agayn your lawes reverence?'

Fro thennes forth the Jewes han con-
 spyred 1755
 This innocent out of this world to chace;
 An homicyde ther-to han they hyred,
 That in an aley hadde a privee place;
 And as the child gan for-by for to pace,
 This cursed Jew him hente and heeld
 him faste, 1760
 And kitte his throte, and in a pit him
 caste.

I seye that in a wardrobe they him threwe
 Wher-as these Jewes purgen hir entraille.
 O cursed folk of Herodes al newe, (121)
 What may your yvel entente yow availle?
 Mordre wol out, certein, it wol nat faille,
 And namely ther th'onour of god shal
 sprede,
 The blood out cryeth on your cursed dede.

'O martir, wounded to virginitee, 1769
 Now maystou singen, folwing ever in oon
 The whyte lamb celestial,' quod she,
 'Of which the grete evangelist, seint John,
 In Pathmos wroot, which seith that they
 that goon (131)
 Biforn this lamb, and singe a song al newe,
 That never, fleschly, women they ne
 knewe.' 1775

This povre widwe awaiteth al that night
 After hir litel child, but he cam noght;
 For which, as sone as it was dayes light,

With face pale of drede and bisy thoght,
 She hath at scole and elles-wher him sought,
 Til finally she gan so far espye 1781
 That he last seyn was in the Jewerye. (140)

With modres pitee in hir brest enclosed,
 She gooth, as she were half out of hir
 minde,

To every place wher she hath supposed
 By lyklihood hir litel child to finde, 1786
 And ever on Cristes moder nake and
 kinde

She cryde, and atte laste thus she wraughte,
 Among the cursed Jewes she him soughte.

She frayneth and she preyeth pitously
 To every Jew that dwelte in thilke place,
 To telle hir, if hir child wente right for-by
 They seyde, 'nay'; but Jesu, of his grace
 Yaf in hir thought, inwith a litel space,
 That in that place after hir sone she cryde,
 Wher he was casten in a pit biayde. 1796

O grete god, that parfournest thy laude
 By mouth of innocents, lo heer thy might!
 This gemme of chastitee, this emeraude,
 And oek of martirdom the ruby bright,
 Ther he with throte y-corven lay upright,
 He '*Alma redemptoris*' gan to singe (150)
 So loude, that al the place gan to ringe.

The Cristen folk, that thurgh the strete
 wente, 1804
 In coomen, for to wondre up-on this thing,
 And hastily they for the provost sente,
 He cam anon with-outen taryng,
 And herieth Crist that is of heven king,
 And eek his moder, honour of mankinde,
 And after that, the Jewes leet he binde.

This child with pitous lamentacioun 181
 Up-taken was, singing his song alway;
 And with honour of greet processoun
 They carien him un-to the nexte abbay
 His moder swowning by the bere lay;
 Unnethe might the peple that was there
 This newe Rachel bringe fro his bere.

With torment and with shameful det-
 echon (187)
 This provost dooth thise Jewes for to
 starve 188

That of this mordre wiste, and that anon ;
 He nolde no swich cursednesse observe.
 Yvel shal have, that yvel wol deserve.
 Therfor with wilde hors he dide hem
 drawe, (181)
 And after that he heng hem by the lawe.

Up-on his bere ay lyth this innocent 1825
 Biforn the chief auter, whyl masse laste,
 And after that, the abbot with his covent
 Har sped hem for to burien him ful faste ;
 And whan they holy water on him
 caste,
 Yet spak this child, whan spreynd was
 holy water, 1830
 And song—' *O Alma redemptoris mater !*'

This abbot, which that was an holy man
 As monkes been, or elles oghten be, (191)
 This yonge child to conjure he bigan,
 And seyde, 'o dere child, I halse thee,
 In vertu of the holy Trinitee, 1836
 Tel me what is thy cause for to singe,
 Sith that thy throte is cut, to my sem-
 inge?'

'My throte is cut un-to my nekke-boon,'
 Seyde this child, 'and, as by wey of kinde,
 I sholde have deyed, ye, longe tyme agoon,
 But Jesu Crist, as ye in bokes finde, (200)
 Wil that his glorie laste and be in minde ;
 And, for the worship of his moder dere,
 Yet may I singe "*O Alma*" loude and
 clere. 1845

This welle of mercy, Cristes moder swete,
 I lovede alwey, as after my conninge ;
 And whan that I my lyf sholde forlete,
 To me she cam, and bad me for to singe
 This antem verrailly in my deyinge, 1850

As ye han herd, and, whan that I had
 songe,
 Me thoughte, she leyde a greyn up-on my
 tonge. (210)

Wherfor I singe, and singe I moot certeyn
 In honour of that blisful mayden free,
 Til fro my tonge of-taken is the greyn ;
 And afterward thus seyde she to me,
 "My litel child, now wol I fecche thee
 Whan that the greyn is fro thy tonge
 y-take ; 1858
 Be nat agast, I wol thee nat forsake."

This holy monk, this abbot, him mene I,
 Him tonge out-caughte, and took a-wey
 the greyn,
 And he yaf up the goost ful softly. (220)
 And whan this abbot had this wonder
 seyn,
 His salte teres trikked down as reyn, 1864
 And gruf he fil al plat up-on the grounde.
 And stille he lay as he had been y-bounde.

The covent eek lay on the pavement
 Weping, and herien Cristes moder dere,
 And after that they ryse, and forth ben
 went, 1869
 And toke away this martir fro his bere,
 And in a tombe of marbul-stones clere
 Enclosen they his litel body swete ; (230)
 Ther he is now, god leve us for to mete.

O yonge Hugh of Lincoln, slayn also
 With cursed Jewes, as it is notable, 1875
 For it nis but a litel whyle ago ;
 Preye eek for us, we sinful folk unstable,
 That, of his mercy, god so merciabile
 On us his grete mercy multiplie, (237)
 For reverence of his moder Marye. Amen.

Here is ended the Prioresses Tale.

PROLOGUE TO SIR THOPAS.

Behold the murye wordes of the Host to Chancer.

What seyde was al this miracle, every man
As sobre was, that wonder was to see,
Til that our hoste jopen the bigan,
And than at erst he loket up-on me,
And seyde thus, 'what man artow?' quod
he; 1885
'Thou lokest as thou woldest finde an
hare,
For ever up-on the ground I see thee stare.

Approche near, and loken up merily.
Now war yow, sirs, and let this man have
place;
He in the waast is shape as wel as I; 1890
This were a popet in an arm t'embrace (11)

For any womman, smal and fair of face,
He semeth elvish by his contenance,
For un-to no wight dooth he daliaunce.

Sey now somewhat, sin other folk han
sayd; 1895
Tel us a tale of mirth, and that anon;—
'Hoste,' quod I, 'ne beth nat yvel apayd,
For other tale certes can I noon,
But of a ryme I lerned longe agoon.'
'Ye, that is good,' quod he; 'now shal
we here 1900
Som deyntee thing, me thinketh by his
chere.' (12)

Explicit.

SIR THOPAS.

Here bigineth Chancers Tale of Thopas.

Lustre, lordes, in good entent,
And I wol telle varrayment
Of mirth and of solas;
Al of a knyght was fair and gent 1905
In bataille and in tourneyment,
His name was sir Thopas.

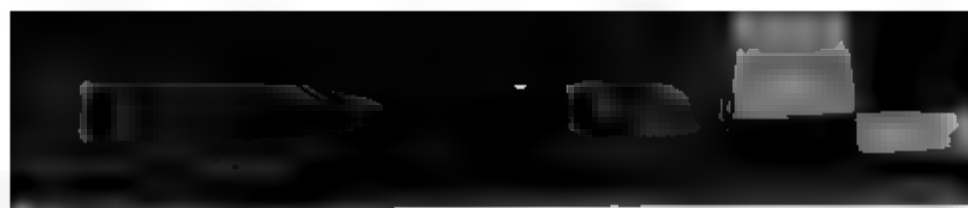
Y-born he was in far contree,
In Flaundres, al biyonde the see,
At Popering, in the place; 1910
His fader was a man ful free,
(10)
And lord he was of that contree,
As it was goddes grace.

Sir Thopas wax a doghty swayn,
Whyt was his face as payndemayn, 1915
His lippes rede as rose;

His rode is lyk scarlet in grayn,
And I yow telle in good certayn,
He hadde a semely nose.

His heer, his berd was lyk saffroun, 1920
That to his girdel raughte adoun; (20)
His shoon of Cordewane.
Of Brugges were his hosen broun,
His robe was of ciclatoun,
That coste many a jane. 1925

He coude hunte at wilde deer,
And ryde an hauking for riveer,
With grey goshauc on honde;
Ther-to he was a good archeer,
Of wrastling was ther noon his peer, 1930
Ther any ram shal stonde. (30)



Ful many a mayde, bright in bour,
They moorne for him, paramour,
Whan hem were bet to slepe;
But he was chast and no lechour,
And sweet as is the bremble-flour
That bereth the rede hepe.

1935

And so bifel up-on a day,
For sothe, as I yow telle may,
Sir Thopas wolde out ryde;
He worth upon his stede gray,
And in his honde a launcegay,
A long sword by his syde.

1940
(40)

He priketh thurgh a fair forest,
Ther-inne is many a wilde best,
Ye, bothe bukke and hare;
And, as he priketh north and est,
I telle it yow, him hadde almost
Bitid a sory care.

1945

1949

Ther springen herbes grete and smale,
The lycorys and oetewale,
And many a clowe-gilofre;
And notemuge to putte in ale,
Whether it be moyste or stale,
Or for to leye in cofre.

(50)

1955

The briddes singe, it is no nay,
The sparhawk and the papejay,
That joye it was to here;
The thrustelock made eek his lay,
The wededowve upon the spray
She sang ful loude and clere.

1960
(60)

Sir Thopas fil in love-longinge
Al whan he herde the thrustel singe,
And priked as he were wood;
His faire stede in his prikinge
So swatte that man mighte him wringe,
His sydes were al blood.

1965

Sir Thopas eek so wery was
For prikinge on the softe gras,
So fiers was his corage,
That down he leyde him in that plas
To make his stede som solas,
And yaf him good forage.

1970

(70)

'O sainte Marie, ben'cite!
What eyleth this love at me
To hinde me so sore?

1975

Me dremed al this night, pardee,
An elf-queen shal my lamman be,
And alepe under my gore.

An elf-queen wol I love, y-wis, 1980
For in this world no womman is (80)
Worthy to be my make [T. 13722
In toune; [T. 13722
Alle othere wommen I forsake, [T. 13723
And to an elf-queen I me take 1985
By dale and eek by doune!'

In-to his sadel he clamb anon,
And priketh over style and stoon
An elf-queen for t'espye,
Til he so longe had riden and goon 1990
That he fond, in a privee woon, (90)
The contree of Fairye [T. 13731
So wilde; [T. 13734
For in that contree was ther noon
†That to him dorste ryde or goon, 1995
Neither wyf ne childe.

Til that ther cam a greet geaunt,
His name was sir Olifaunt,
A perilous man of dede;
He seyde, 'child, by Termagaunt, 2000
But-if thou prike out of myn haunt, (100)
Anon I slee thy stede [T. 13743
With mace. [T. 13743
Heer is the queen of Fayerye,
With harpe and pype and symphonye 2005
Dwelling in this place.'

The child seyde, 'al-so mote I thee,
Tomorwe wol I mate thee
Whan I have myn armoure;
And yet I hope, par me fyg, 2010
That thou shalt with this lanucegay (110)
Abyen it ful soure; [T. 13752
Thy mawe [T. 13752

Shal I percen, if I may,
Er it be fully pryne of day, 2015
For heer thou shalt be slawe.'

Sir Thopas drow abak ful faste;
This geaunt at him stones caste
Out of a fel staf-slinge;
But faire escapeth child Thopas, 2020
And al it was thurgh goddes gras, (120)
And thurgh his fair beringe.

Yet listeth, lordes, to my tale Merier than the nightingale, For now I wol yow rounne How sir Thopas with eydas smale, Priking over hil and dale, Is come agayn to touna.	2025	His sadel was of rewel-boon, His brydal as the sonne sheen, Or as the mone light.	2070
His merie men comanded he To make him bothe game and glee, For nedes moste he fighte With a geaunt with hevedes thre, For paramour and jolitee Of con that sheen ful brighte.	2030 (130)	His spere was of fyn cipress, That bodeth werre, and no-thing pees, The heed ful sharpe y-grounds; His stede was al dappel-gray, It gooth an ambel in the way Ful softely and rounde In londe.	(130) 2075 [T. 1385 [T. 1385]
'Do coma,' he seyde, 'my ministrals, And gestours, for to tellen tales Anon in myn arminge; Of romances that been royales, Of popes and of cardinales, And eek of love-lykinge.'	2035 2040	Lo, lordes myne, heer is a fit! If ye wol any more of it, To telle it wol I fonde.	2080
They fette him first the swete wyn, And made eek in a masselyn, And royal spicerye Of gingebread that was ful fyn, And lycorys, and eek comyn, With sugre that is so trye.	(140) 2045	[The Second Fit.] Now hold your mouth, <i>par charitee</i> , Bothe knight and lady free, And herkneþ to my spelle; Of bataille and of chivalry, And of ladyes love-drunny Anon I wol yow telle.	(140) 2085
He dide next his whyte lere Of clooth of lake fyn and clere A breech and eek a sherte; And next his sherte an aketoun, And over that an habergeoun For percinge of his herte;	2050 (150)	Men speke of romances of pry, Of Horn child and of Ypotys, Of Bevis and sir Gy, Of sir Libeux and Fleyne-damour; But sir Thopas, he bereth the flour Of royal chivalry.	2090 (150)
And over that a fyn hanberk, Was al y-wroght of Jewes werk, Ful strong it was of plate; And over that his cote-armour As whyt as is a lily-flour, In which he wol debate.	2055	His gode stede al he bistrood, And forth upon his wey he glood As sparkle out of the bronde; Up-on his crest he bar a tour, And ther-in stiked a lily-flour, God shilde his cors fro shonde!	2095
His sheeld was al of gold so reed, And ther-in was a bores heed, A charboole bisyde; And there he swoor, on ale and breed, How that 'the geaunt shal be deed, Bityde what bityde!'	2060 (160)	And for he was a knight aunterous, He nolde slepen in non hous, But liggen in his hode; His brighte helm was his wonger, And by him balteth his dextrer Of herbes fyne and gode.	2100 (160)
His jambeux were of quirboilly, His swerdes shethe of yvory, His helm of laton bright;	2065	Him-self drank water of the wel, As did the knight sir Percivel, So worthy under wede, Til on a day—	2105 (167)

Here the Host stinteth Chaucer of his Tale of Thopas.

PROLOGUE TO MELIBEUS.

'No more of this, for goddes dignitee,'
 Quod oure hoste, 'for thou makest me 2110
 So wery of thy verray lewednesse
 That, also wisly god my soule blasse,
 Myn eres aken of thy drasty speche;
 Now swiche a rym the deuel I hiteche!
 This may wel be rym dogerel,' quod he.
 'Why so?' quod I, 'why wiltow lette me
 More of my tale than another man,
 Sin that it is the beste rym I can?' (10)
 'By god,' quod he, 'for pleynty, at
 a word,
 Thy drasty ryming is nat worth a tord;
 Thou doost nought elles but despendest
 tyme, 2121
 Sir, at o word, thou shalt no longer
 ryme.
 Lat see wher thou canst tellen aught in
 geste,
 Or telle in prose somewhat at the leste
 In which ther be som mirthe or som
 doctryne.' 2125
 'Gladly,' quod I, 'by goddes swete pyne,
 I wol yow telle a litel thing in prose,
 That oghte lyken yow, as I suppose, (20)
 Or elles, certes, ye been to daungerous.
 It is a moral tale vertuous, 2130
 Al be it told som-tyme in sondry wyse
 Of sondry folk, as I shal yow devyse.

As thus; ye woot that every evangelist,
 That telleth us the payne of Jasu Crist,
 Ne saith nat al thing as his felaw dooth,
 But natheles, hir sentence is al sooth, 2136
 And alle acorden as in hir sentence,
 Al be ther in hir telling difference. (30)
 For somme of hem seyn more, and somme
 lesse,
 Whan they his pitous passionn expresse;
 I mene of Mark [and] Mathew, Luk and
 John; 2141
 But douteles hir sentence is al con.
 Therfor, lordinges alle, I yow bisceche,
 If that ye thinke I varie as in my speche,
 As thus, thogh that I telle som-what more
 Of proverbes, than ye han herd bifore,
 Comprehended in this litel tretis here,
 To enforce with the th'effect of mymeters,
 And thogh I nat the same wordes seye (41)
 As ye han herd, yet to yow alle I preye,
 Blameth me nat; for, as in my sentence,
 Ye shul not fynden moche difference
 Fro the sentence of this tretis lyte
 After the which this mery tale I wryte.
 And therfor herkneth what that I shal
 seye, 2155
 And lat me tellen al my tale, I preye.' (48)

Explicit.

THE TALE OF MELIBEUS.

Here biginneth Chaucers Tale of Melibee.

§ 1. A yong man called Melibea,
 mighty and riche, bigat up-on his wyf
 that called was Prudence, a doghter
 which that called was Sophie./

§ 2. Upon a day bifel, that he for his
 desport is went in-to the feeldes him to
 pleye./ His wyf and eek his doghter

hath he left inwith his hous, of which the
 dores weren fast y-shette./ Three of his
 olde fous han it espyed, and setten laddres
 to the walles of his hous, and by the
 windowes been entred,/ and betten his 2160
 wyf, and wounded his doghter with fyve
 mortal woundes in fyve sondry places;/

this is to seyn, in hir feet, in hir handes, in hir eres, in hir nose, and in hir mouth; and leften hir for deed, and wenten away. /

§ 3. When Melibens retourned was in-to his hous, and saugh al this meschief, he, lyk a mad man, rendinge his clothes, gan to wepe and crye. /

§ 4. Prudence his wyf, as furforth as she dorste, bisoghte him of his weping for to stinte; / but nat for-thy he gan to
1165 crye and wepen ever longer the more. /

§ 5. This noble wyf Prudence remembered hir upon the sentence of Ovide, in his book that cleped is The Remedie of Love, wheras he seith; / 'he is a fool that discourbeth the moder to wepen in the deeth of hir child, til she have wept hir fille, as for a certain tyme; / and thanne shal man doen his diligence with amiable wordes hir to reconforte, and prayen hir of hir weping for to stinte.' / For which reson this noble wyf Prudence suffred hir housbond for to wepe and crye as for a certain space; / and whan she saugh hir tyme, she seyde him in this wyse. 'Alas, my lord,' quod she, 'why
1170 make ye your-self for to be lyk a fool? / For sothe, it aperteneth nat to a wys man, to maken swiche a sorwe. / Your doghter, with the grace of god, shal warishe and escape. / And al were it so that she right now were deed, ye ne oghte nat as for hir deeth your-self to destroye. / Senek seith: "the wise man shal nat take to greet disconfort for the deeth of his children, / but certes he sholde suffer it in pacience, as wel as he abyde the
1175 deeth of his owene propre persone." /

§ 6. This Melibens answerde anon and seyde, 'What man,' quod he, 'sholde of his weping stinte, that hath so greet a cause for to wepe? / Jesu Crist, our lord, him-self wepte for the deeth of Lazarus his freend.' / Prudence answerde, 'Certes, wel I woot, attemptee weping is no-thing defended to him that sorweful is, amonges folk in sorwe, but it is rather graunted him to wepe. / The Apostle Paul un-to the Romaines wryteth, "man shal rejoyce with hem that maken joye,

and wepen with swich folk as wepen." / But though attemptee weping be y-graunted, outrageous weping certes is defended. / Measure of weping shalde be considered, after the lore that teacheth us Senek. / "Whan that thy freend is deed," quod he, "let nat thyne eyes to moeye been of teres, ne to muche drye; although the teres come to thyne eyes, let hem nat falle." / And whan thou hast for-goon thy freend, do diligence to gete another freend; and this is more wysdom than for to wepe for thy freend which that thou hast lost; for ther-tyme is to bote. / And therefore, if ye governe yow by sapience, put away sorwe out of yow herte. / Remember yow that James Synt seith: "a man that is joyous and glad in herte, it him conserveth flourishing in his age; but soothly sorweful herte maketh his bones drye." / He seith eek this: "that sorwe in herte sleeth ful many a man." / Salomon seith: "that, right as motthes in the shenes flees anoyeth to the clothes, and the smale wormes to the tree, right so anoyeth sorwe to the herte." / Wherefore us oghte, as wel in the deeth of our children as in the loss of our goodes temporale, have pacience. /

§ 7. Remember yow up-on the pacient Job, whan he hadde lost his children and his temporel substance, and in his body endured and receyved ful many a greet tribulacioun; yet seyde he thus: / "our lord hath yeven it me, our lord hath bi-raft it me; right as our lord hath wold, right so it is doon; blessed be the name of our lord." / To thise foresaide thinges
1180 answerde Melibens un-to his wyf Prudence: 'Alle thy wordes,' quod he, 'been sothe, and ther-to profitable; but trewely myn herte is troubled with this sorwe so greuously, that I noot what to do.' / 'Let calle,' quod Prudence, 'thy trewe freendes alle, and thy linage which be been wyse; telleth your cas, and herketh what they seye in conselling, and yow governe after hir sentence. / Salomon seith: "werk alle thy thinges by counail, and thou shalt never repente." /

§ 8. Thanne, by the counail of his wyf

Prudence, this Melibeus leet callen a greet congregacioun of folk; / as surgiens, phisiciens, olde folk and yonge, and somme of hise olde enemys reconciled as by hir semblaunt to his love and in-to his
95 grace; / and ther-with-al ther comen somme of hise neighebores that diden him reverence more for drede than for love, as it happeth ofte. / Ther comen also ful many subtile flatereres, and wyse advocats lerned in the lawe. /

§ 9. And when this folk togidre assembled weren, this Melibeus in sorweful wyse shewed hem his cas; / and by the manere of his speche it seemed that in herte he bar a cruel ire, redy to doon vengeance up-on hise foes, and sodeynly desired that the werre sholde biginne; / but natheles yet axed he hir conseil upon
100 this matere. / A surgien, by licence and assent of swiche as weren wyse, up roos and un-to Melibeus seyde as ye may here. /

§ 10. 'Sir,' quod he, 'as to us surgiens aperteneth, that we do to every wight the beste that we can, wher-as we been with-holde, and to our pacients that we do no damage; / wherfore it happeth, many tyme and ofte, that whan twey men han everich wounded other, oon same surgien heleth hem bothe, / wherfore un-to our art it is nat pertinent to norice werre, no parties to supporte. / But certes, as to the warisshinge of your doghter, al-be-it so that she perilously be wounded, we shullen do so ententif bisinesse fro day to night, that with the grace of god she shal be hool and sound as sone as is
105 possible.' / Almost right in the same wyse the phisiciens answerden, save that they seyden a fewe wordes more: / 'That, right as maladyes been cured by hir contraries, right so shul men warisshen werre by vengeance.' / His neighebores, ful of envye, his feyned freendes that armeden reconciled, and his flatereres, / maden semblant of weping, and em-paireden and aggregateden muchel of this matere, in preising greetly Melibee of might, of power, of richesse, and of freendes, despysinge the power of his

adversaries, / and seiden outrely that he anon sholde wroken him on his foes and biginne werre. /

2110

§ 11. Up roos thanne an advocat that was wys, by love and by conseil of othere that were wyse, and seyde: / 'Lordinges, the nede for which we been assembled in this place is a ful hevy thing and an heigh matere, / by-cause of the wrong and of the wikkednesse that hath be doon, and eek by reson of the grete damages that in tyme cominge been possible to fallen for this same cause; / and eek by reson of the grete richesse and power of the parties bothe; / for the whiche resouns it were a ful greet peril to erren in this matere. / Wherfore, 2115 Melibeus, this is our sentence: we counseille yow aboven alle thing, that right anon thou do thy diligence in kepinge of thy propre persone, in swich a wyse that thou ne wante noon espye ne waoche, thy body for to save. / And after that we counseille, that in thyn hous thou sette sufficient garnisoun, so that they may as wel thy body as thyn hous defende. / But certes, for to moove werre, or sodeynly for to doon vengeance, we may nat demen in so litel tyme that it were profitable. / Wherfore we axen leyser and espace to have deliberacioun in this cas to deme. / For the commune proverbe seith thus: "he that sone demeth, sone shal repente." / And eek men seyn that 2120 thilke juge is wys, that sone understondeth a matere and juggeth by leyser. / For al-be-it so that alle taryng be annoyful, algate it is nat to reprove in yevinge of jugement, ne in vengeance-taking, whan it is sufficient and resonable. / And that shewed our lord Jesu Crist by ensample, for whan that the womman that was taken in avoutrie was brought in his presence, to knowen what sholde be doon with hir persone, al-be-it so that he wiste wel him-self what that he wolde answer, yet ne wolde he nat answer sodeynly, but he wolde have deliberacioun, and in the ground he wroot twyes. / And by thisse causes we axen deliberacioun, and we shal thanne,

by the grace of god, counselle thee thing that shal be profitable.' /

§ 12. Up stirten thanne the yonge folk at-once, and the mooste partie of that companye han scorned the olde wyse men, and bigonnen to make moyse, and sayden : that, / right so as whyl that iren is hoot, men sholden sayte, right so, men sholde waken hir wronges whyle that they been frambe and newe; and with loud voys they cryden, 'werre! werre!'

Up roos the oon of thise olde wyse, and with his hand made contenance that men sholde holden hem stille and yeven him audience. / 'Lordinges,' quod he, 'ther is ful many a man that cryeth "werre! werre!" that woot ful hitel what werre amounteth. / Werre at his biginning hath so greet an entre and so large, that every wight may entre when him lyketh, and lightly finde werre. / But, certes, what ende that shal ther-of bifalle, it is nat light to knowe. / For soothly, whan that werre is ones bigonne, ther is ful many a child unborn of his moder, that shal sterve yong by-cause of that ilke werre, or elles live in sorwe and dye in wretchednesse. / And ther-fore, er that any werre biginne, men mooste have greet conseil and greet delibera-coun.' / And whan this olde man wende to enforen his tale by reason, wel ny alle at-once bigonne they to ryse for to breken his tale, and beden him ful ofte his wordes for to abregge. / For soothly, he that precheth to hem that listen nat heren his wordes, his sermon hem annoyeth. / For Jesus Syrak seith : that 'musik in wepinge is annoyous thing'; this is to sayn : as muche availleth to spoken bfore folk to whiche his speche annoyeth, as dooth to singe biforn him that wepeth. / And whan this wyse man saugh that him wanted audience, al shamefast he sette him down agayn. / For Salomon seith : 'ther-as thou ne mayst have noon audience, enforce thee nat to speke.' / 'I see wel,' quod this wyse man, 'that the commune proverbe is sooth; that "good conseil wanteth whan it is most nede."'

§ 13. Yet hadde this Melibee in his conseil many folk, that prively in his owne counselled him certeyn thing, and counselled him the contrarye in general audience. /

Whan Melibee hadde herd that the gruteste partie of his conseil were accorded that he sholde maken warre, anon he comented to hir counselling, and fully affirmed hir sentence. / Thanne came Prudence, whan that she saugh how that hir housbonde shoop him for to waken him on his foot, and to biginne warre, she in ful humble wyse, whan she caught hir tyme, seide him thise wordes : / 'My lord,' quod she, 'I yow beseeche as hartely as I dar and can, ne haste yow nat to fiste, and for alle guardours as yeveth me audience. / For Pierre Abbes seith : "who-so that dooth to that othe good or harm, haste thee nat to quyte it; for in this wyse thy freend wol abyde, and thyn enemy shal the langer live in drede." / The proverbe seith : "he hasteth wel that wysely can abyde"; and in wikked haste is no profit.' /

§ 14. This Melibee answerde un-to his wyf Prudence : 'I purpose nat,' quod he, 'to werke by thy conseil, for many causes and reasons. For certes every wight wolde holde me thanne a fool; / this is to sayn, if I, for thy counselling, wold chaungen thinges that been ordeyned and affirmed by so manye wyse. / Secoundly I seye, that alle women been wikke and noon good of hem alle. For "of a thousand men," seith Salomon, "I fond a good man : but certes, of alle women, good woman fond I never." / And also certes, if I governed me by thy conseil, it sholde seme that I hadde yow to thee over me the maistrie; and god forbede that it so were. / For Jesus Syrak seith; "that if the wyf have maistrie, she is contrarious to hir housbonde." / And Salomon seith : "new in thy lyf, to thy wyf, ne to thy child, ne to thy freend, ne yow no power over thyself. For bettre it were that thy children sake of thy persons thinges that ben nedeth, than thou see thy-self in the

of thy children." / And also, if
 werke by thy conseilling, certes
 seilling moste som tyme be secree,
 ere tyme that it moste be knowe;
 ne may noght be. / [†For it is
 that "the janglerie of wommen
 den thinges that they witen
 / Furthermore, the philosophre
 in wikked conseil wommen ven-
 men"; and for this resouns I ne
 usen thy conseil.']/

Whanne dame Prudence, ful
 rly and with greet pacience,
 erd al that hir housbonde lyked
 seye, thanne axed she of him
 for to speke, and seyde in this

'My lord,' quod she, 'as to your
 soun, certes it may lightly been
 d. For I seye, that it is no folie
 unge conseil whan the thing is
 d; or elles whan the thing
 otherweyes than it was biforn. /
 re-over I seye, that though ye han
 and bihight to perfourne your
 , and natheles ye weyve to per-
 thilke same emprise by juste
 en sholde nat seyn therefore that
 a lyer ne forsworn. / For the
 ith, that "the wyse man maketh
 g whan he turneth his corage to
 re." / And al-be-it so that your

be establissed and ordeyned by
 ultitude of folk, yet thar ye nat
 lice thilke same ordinaunce but
 e. / For the trouthe of thinges
 , profit been rather founden in
 lk that been wyse and ful of
 than by greet multitude of folk,
 ry man cryeth and clatereth what
 n lyketh. Soothly swich multi-
 nat honeste. / As to the seconde

where-as ye seyn that "alle
 n been wikke," save your grace,
 e despyssen alle wommen in this
 nd "he that alle despyseth alle
 th," as seith the book. / And
 seith that "who-so wole have
 e, shal no man dispreise; but he
 dly techen the science that he
 h-outen presumpcioun or pryde. /
 iche thinges as he nought ne can,

he shal nat been ashamed to lerne hem
 and enquere of lasse folk than him-self." /
 And sir, that ther hath been many
 a good womman, may lightly be preved. /
 For certes, sir, our lord Jesu Crist wolde
 never have descended to be born of
 a womman, if alle wommen hadden ben
 wikke. / And after that, for the grete
 bountee that is in wommen, our lord Jesu
 Crist, whan he was risen fro deeth to
 lyve, appeered rather to a womman than
 to his apostles. / And though that 2265
 Salomon seith, that "he ne fond never
 womman good," it folweth nat therfore
 that alle wommen ben wikke. / For
 though that he ne fond no good womman,
 certes, ful many another man hath
 founden many a womman ful good and
 trewe. / Or elles per-aventure the en-
 tente of Salomon was this; that, as in
 sovereyn bountee, he fond no womman; /
 this is to seyn, that ther is no wight that
 hath sovereyn bountee save god allone;
 as he him-self recordeth in his Evaun-
 gelia. / For ther nis no creature so good
 that him ne wanteth somewhat of the
 perfeccioun of god, that is his maker. / 2270
 Your thridde resoun is this: ye seyn that
 "if ye governe yow by my conseil, it
 sholde seme that ye hadde yeve me the
 maistrie and the lordshipe over your
 persone." / Sir, save your grace, it is nat
 so. For if it were so, that no man sholde
 be conseilled but only of hem that hadden
 lordshipe and maistrie of his persone, men
 wolden nat be conseilled so ofte. / For
 soothly, thilke man that asketh conseil of
 a purpos, yet hath he free chois, wheither
 he wole werke by that conseil or noon. /
 And as to your fourthe resoun, ther ye
 seyn that "the janglerie of wommen hath
 hid thinges that they woot noght," as
 who seith, that "a womman can nat hyde
 that she woot"; / sir, thise wordes been
 understonde of wommen that been jan-
 gleresses and wikked; / of whiche wom- 2275
 men, men seyn that "three thinges
 dryven a man out of his hous; that is to
 seyn, smoke, dropping of reyn, and
 wikked wyves"; / and of swiche wommen
 seith Salomon, that "it were bettre

dwelle in desert, than with a woman that is riotous." / And sir, by your leve, that am nat I; / for ye han ful ofte assayed my grette silence and my grette pacience; and eek how wel that I can hyde and hale thinges that men oghte secretly to hyde. / And soothly, as to your fifthe reson, wher-as ye seyn, that "in wikked conseil women vanquish men"; god woot, thilke reson stant here in no stede. / For understond now, ye asken conseil to do wikkednesse; / and if ye wole werken wikkednesse, and your wyf restreyneth thilke wikked purpos, and overcometh yow by reson and by good conseil; / certes, your wyf oghte rather to be praised than y-blamed. / Thus sholde ye understonde the philosophre that seith, "in wikked, conseil women vanquishen hir housbondes." / And ther-as ye blamen alle women and hir reson, I shal shewe yow by manye ensamples that many a woman hath ben ful good, and yet been; and hir conseil ful hoolsome and profitable. / Eek som men han seyd, that "the conseilliche of women is outhur to dere, or elles to lital of pryse." / But al-be-it so, that ful many a woman is hadde, and hir conseil vile and noght worth, yet han men founde ful many a good woman, and ful discrete and wise in conseilliche. / Lo, Jacob, by good conseil of his moder Rebekka, wan the benison of Ysaak his fader, and the lordshipe over alle his bretheren. / Judith, by hir good conseil, delivered the citee of Bethulia, in which she dwelled, out of the handes of Olofernus, that hadde it besieged and wolde have al destroyed it. / Abigail delivered Nabal hir housbonde fro David the king, that wolde have slayn him, and apayed the ire of the king by hir wit and by hir good conseilliche. / Hester by hir good conseil enhauenced greetly the peple of god in the regne of Assuerus the king. / And the same bountee in good conseilliche of many a good woman may men telle. / And moreover, when our lord hadde creat Adam our forme-fader, he seyde in this wyse: / "it is nat good to been a man

allone; make we to him an help semblable to himself." / Here may ye see that, if that women were nat goode, and hir conseil goode and profitable, / our lord god of hevene wolde never han wrought hem, he called hem help of man, not rather confusioun of man. / And ther seyde ones a clerk in two vers: "what is better than gold? Jaspre. What is better than jaspre? Wisdom. / And what is better than wisdom? Woman. And what is better than a good woman? No-thing." / And sir, by manye of othere reson may ye seen, that manye women been goode, and hir conseil goode and profitable. / And therefore sir, if ye wil triste to my conseil, I shal restore yow your doghter hool and sound. / And eek I wol do to yow so muche, that ye shal have honour in this cause." /

§ 16. When Melibee hadde herd the wordes of his wyf Prudence, he seyde thus: / "I see wel that the word of Salomon is sooth; he seith, that "wordes that been spoken discretly by ordinaunce, been honycombes; for they yeven sweetness to the soule, and hoolsonnes to the body." / And wyf, by-cause of thy swete wordes, and eek for I have assayed and proved thy grette sapience and thy grette trouthe, I wol governe me by thy conseil in alle thing." /

§ 17. 'Now sir,' quod dame Prudence, 'and sin ye vouchsaunf to been governed by my conseil, I wol enforme yow how ye shul governe your-self in chesinge of your conseilours. / Ye shul first, in alle your werkes, mekely bioken to the heighe god that he wol be your conseilour; / and shapeth yow to swich entente, that he yeve yow conseil and confort, as taughte Thobie his sone: / "at alle tymes thou shalt blesse god, and praye him to drawe thy weyes"; and looke that alle thy conseil be in him for evermore. / Saint Jame eek seith: "if any of yow have nede of sapience, axe it of god." / And afterward thanne shul ye taken conseil in your-self, and examine wel your thoughtes, of swich thing as yow thinketh that is best for your profit. / And thanne "

shul ye dryve fro your herte three thinges that been contrarious to good conseil. / that is to seyn, ire, covetise, and hastifnesse. /

§ 18. First, he that axeth conseil of him-self, certes he mooste been with-outen ire, for manye causes. / The firste is this: he that hath great ire and wratthe in him-self, he weneth alwey that he may do thing that he may nat do. / And secondaly, he that is irous and wroth, he ne may nat wel deme; / and he that may nat wel deme, may nat wel counsille. / The thridde is this; that "he that is irous and wroth," as seith Senek, "nemaynatspeke but he blamethinges"; / and with his vicious wordes he stireth other folk to angre and to ire. / And eek sir, ye mooste dryve covetise out of your herte. / For the apostle seith, that "covetise is rote of alle harmes." / And trust wel that a covetous man ne can noght deme ne thinke, but only to fulfille the ende of his covetise; / and certes, that ne may never been accomplished; for ever the more habundaunce that he hath of richesse, the more he desyareth. / And sir, ye mooste also dryve out of your herte hastifnesse; for certes, / ye ne may nat deme for the beste a sodeyn thought that falleth in youre herte, but ye mooste avyse yow on it ful ofte. / For as ye herde bifore, the commune proverbe is this, that "he that sone demeth, sone repenteth." /

§ 19. Sir, ye ne be nat alwey in lyke disposicioun; / for certes, som thing that somtyme semeth to yow that it is good for to do, another tyme it semeth to yow the contrarie. /

§ 20. When ye han taken conseil in your-self, and han demed by good deliberacion swich thing as you semeth best, / thanne rede I yow, that ye kepe it secree. / Biwrey nat your conseil to no persone, but-if so be that ye wenen sikarly that, thurgh your biwreying, your condicioun shal be to yow the more profitable. / For Jesus Syrak seith: "neither to thy foe ne to thy freend discovere nat thy secree ne thy folie; /

for they wol yave yow audience and loking and supportacioun in thy presence, and soorne thee in thyn absence." / Another clerk seith, that "scarly shaltou finden any persone that may kepe conseil secree." / The book seith: "why! that thou kepest thy conseil in thyn herte, thou kepest it in thy prisonn; / and when thou biwreyest thy conseil to any wight, he holdeth thee in his snare." / And therefore yow is bettre to hyde your conseil in your herte, than praye him, to whom ye han biwreyed your conseil, that he wold kepen it alcece and stille. / For Seneca seith: "if so be that thou ne mayst nat thyn owene conseil hyde, how darstou prayen any other wight thy conseil secree to kepe?" / But natheles, if thou wene sikarly that the biwreying of thy conseil to a persone wol make thy condicioun to stonden in the bettre plyt, thanne shaltou tellen him thy conseil in this wyse. / First, thou shalt make no semblant whether thee were lever pees or werre, or this or that, ne shewe him nat thy wille and thyn entente; / for trust wel, that comunly thisse conseilours been flaterers, / namely the conseilours of grete lordes; / for they enforcen hem alwey rather to speken pleasaunt wordes, enclynge to the lordes lust, than wordes that been trewe or profitable. / And therefore men seyn, that "the riche man hath sold good conseil but-if he have it of him-self." / And after that, thou shalt considere thy freendes and thyne enemyes. / And as touchinge thy freendes, thou shalt considere whiche of hem been most faithful and most wyse, and eldest and most approved in conseil. / And of hem shalt thou aske thy conseil, as the case requireth. /

§ 21. I seye that first ye shul clepe to your conseil your freendes that been trewe. / For Salomon seith: that "right as the herte of a man delyteth in savour that is sote, right so the conseil of trewe freendes yemeth to the soule." / He seith also: "ther may no-thing be lykned to the trewe freend." / For

cortes, gold ne silver both nat so muche
 2150 worth as the gode wil of a trewe frend. /
 And eek he seith, that "a trewe frend
 is a strong defence; who-so that it
 findeth, eek he findeth a greet tre-
 sour." / Thanne shul ye eek considere,
 if that your trewe frendes been dis-
 crete and wyse. For the book seith:
 "axe alwey thy conseil of hem that been
 wyse." / And by this same reason shul
 ye clepen to your conseil, of your frendes
 that been of age, swiche as han sayn and
 been expert in manye thinges, and been
 approved in conseilinges. / For the
 book seith, that "in olde men is the
 sapience and in longe tyme the pru-
 dence." / And Tullius seith: that "grote
 thinges ne been nat ay accompylled by
 strengthe, ne by delivernance of body,
 but by good conseil, by auctoritee of per-
 sones, and by science; the whiche three
 thinges ne been nat feble by age, but
 2155 certes they enforcen and encreasen day
 by day." / And thanne shul ye kepe
 this for a general rule. First shul ye
 clepen to your conseil a fewe of your
 frendes that been especiale; / for Salo-
 mon seith: "manys frendes have thou;
 but among a thousand chese thee oon to
 be thy conseilour." / For al-be-it so
 that thou first ne telle thy conseil but
 to a fewe, thou mayst afterward telle it
 to mo folk, if it be nede. / But loke
 alwey that thy conseilours have thilke
 three condicions that I have seyde bifore;
 that is to sayn, that they be trewe, wyse,
 and of old experience. / And werke nat
 alwey in every nede by oon conseilour
 allone; for somtyme bihoveth it to been
 2160 consailed by manye. / For Salomon
 seith: "salvacioun of thinges is wher-as
 ther been manye conseilours." /

§ 22. Now with that I have told yow
 of which folk ye shoulde been counseilled,
 now wol I teche yow which conseil ye
 oghte to eschewe. / First ye shul eschewe
 the conseil of folis; for Salomon seith:
 "tak no conseil of a fool, for he ne can
 nocht consaille but after his owene lust
 and his affectioun." / The book seith:
 that "the propretee of a fool is this; he

treweh lightly harme of every wight,
 and lightly treweh alle boundes in him-
 self." / Thou shalt eek eschewe the con-
 seilling of alle flatereres, swiche as en-
 shreen hem rather to praise your person
 by flattery than for to telle yow the
 sothfastnesse of thinges. /

§ 23. Wherfore Tullius seith: "amonge
 alle the pestilences that been in frend-
 shipe, the greeteste is flattery." And ther-
 fore is it more nede that thou eschewe and
 drede flatereres than any other people. /
 The book seith: "thou shalt rather drede
 and fleo fro the swete wordes of flateringe
 praisours, than fro the agre wordes of thy
 frend that seith thee thy sother." /
 Salomon seith, that "the wordes of a
 flaterere is a snare to cacche with in-
 nocents." / He seith also, that "he that
 spaketh to his frend wordes of swetnesse
 and of plesance, setteth a net bifore
 his feet to cacche him." / And therfore
 seith Tullius: "enolyne nat thyne eerte
 flatereres, ne taketh no conseil of wordes
 of flattery." / And Caton seith: "saye yow
 thee wel, and eschewe the wordes of
 swetnesse and of plesance." / And eek
 thou shalt eschewe the conseil of
 thyne olde enemyes that been reconciled. /
 The book seith: that "no wight re-
 tourneth saufly in-to the grace of his
 olde enemy." / And Isope seith: "ne
 trust nat to hem to whiche thou hast
 had som-tyme werre or enmittee, ne telle
 hem nat thy conseil." / And Senec
 telleth the cause why. "It may nat be,"
 seith he, "that, where greet fyr hath
 longe tyme endured, that ther ne dwell-
 eth som vapour of warmnesse." / And
 2165 therfore seith Salomon: "in thyn olde
 foe trust never." / For sikerly, though
 thyn enemy be reconciled and maketh
 thee chere of humilitee, and louteth to
 thee with his heed, ne trust him never. /
 For certes, he maketh thilke feyned hu-
 militee more for his profit than for any
 love of thy persone; by-cause that he
 demeth to have victorie over thy persone
 by swich feyned contenance, the which
 victorie he mighte nat have by stryf or
 werre. / And Peter Alfons seith: "make

sh. pe with thyne olde enemys; /
 thou do hem bountee they wol per-
 sist in-to wikkednessa. / And eek
 eschewe the conseilung of hem
 thy servants, and beren thee
 reverence, for peraventure they
 more for drede than for love /
 seith a philosopre in this
 "ther is no wight parfitly trewe
 that he to sore dredeth." / And
 seith "ther nis no might so
 any emperour, that longe may
 bute if he have more love of the
 than drede." / Then shalt also
 the conseilung of folk that been
 shewe, for they ne can no conseil
 For Salomon seith "ther is
 devotoe ther-as regneth dronke-
 / Ye shal also han in suspect
 conseilung of swich folk as counselle
 thing prively, and counselle yow
 natrue openly / For Casandrie
 that "it is a maner sleighte to
 whan he sheweth to doon a thing
 and werketh prively the con-
 / Then shalt also have in suspect
 conseilung of wikked folk For the
 seith "the conseilung of wikked
 alwey ful of fraude." And David
 "blisful is that man that hath
 sheweth the conseilung of shrewes." /
 shalt also eschewe the conseilung
 folk, for his conseil is nat rype /
 Now sir, uth I have shewed yow
 sh folk ye shul take your conseil,
 of which folk ye shul folwe the
 / now wol I telle yow how ye
 examine your conseil, after the doc-
 of Tailur. / In the examininge
 of your counsellour, ye shul con-
 manye thinges. / Alderfirst thou
 considere, that in thiike thing that
 purposest, and upon what thing
 wolt have conseil, that verray
 be seyed and conserved this is
 telle trewely thy tale, / For he
 with fals may nat wel be conselled,
 cas of which he lyeth, / And
 this, thou shalt considere the thinges
 gorden to that thou purposest for
 by thy counsellours, if reson

accorde therto; / and eek, if thy might 2395
 may atteine ther-to; and if the more
 part and the better part of thy coun-
 sellours acorde ther-to, or no. / Thanne
 shaltou considere what thing shal folwe
 of that conseilung as hate, pees warre,
 grace, profit, or damage, and manye
 othere thinges. / And in alle these thinges
 thou shalt chese the beste, and weyve
 alle othere thinges. / Thanne shaltou
 considere of what rote is engendred the
 matere of thy conseil, and what fruit
 it may conceyve and engendre / Thou
 shalt eek considere alle these causes, fro
 whannes they been sprongen / And 2400
 whan ye han examined your conseil as
 I have seyed, and which partie is the
 better and more profitable, and hast
 approved it by manye wyse folk and
 olde, / thanne shaltou considere, if thou
 mayst parfourn it and maken of it a
 good ende. / For certes, reson wol nat
 that any man sholde biginne a thing,
 but if he mighte parfourn it as him
 oghte. / Ne no wight sholde take up-on
 hym so bevy a charge that he mighte
 nat bere it. / For the proverbe seith:
 "he that to muche embraceth, distrey-
 neth litel." / And Catoun seith "assay 2405
 to do swich thing as thou hast power to
 doon, lest that the charge oppresse thee
 so sore, that thee bihoveth to weyve
 thing that thou hast bigonne." / And
 if so be that thou be in doute, whether
 thou mayst parfourn a thing or noon,
 chese rather to suffre than biginne /
 And Piers Alphonse seith "if thou hast
 might to doon a thing of which thou
 most repente thee, it is better nay
 than ye." / this is to seyn, that thee
 is better holde thy tonge stille, than for
 to speke. / Thanne may ye understonde
 by stronger resons, that if thou hast
 power to parfourn a werk of which thou
 shalt repente, thanne is it better that
 thou suffre than biginne. / Wel seyn 2410
 they, that defenden every wight to assaye
 any thing of which he is in doute,
 whether he may parfourn it or no. /
 And after, whan ye han examined your
 conseil as I have seyed bifore, and knowen

wel that ye may parfournen youre surprise, conferme it thanne suly til it be at an ende. /

§ 25. Now is it reson and tyme that I shewe yow, whanne, and wherefore, that ye may change your conseil with-outen your reprove. / Soothly, a man may chaungen his purpos and his conseil if the cause cometh, or whan a newe case bitydeth. / For the lawe seith: that "upon thinges that newly bityden
2415 bihoveth newe conseil." / And Senek seith: "if thy conseil is comen to the eres of thyn enemy, change thy conseil." / Thou mayest also change thy conseil if so be that thou finde that, by error or by other cause, harm or damage may bityde. / Also, if thy conseil be dishonest, or elles cometh of dishonest cause, change thy conseil. / For the lawes seyn: that "alle bihestes that been dishonest been of no value." / And
2430 oek, if it so be that it be impossible, or may nat goodly be parfourned or kept. /

§ 26. And take this for a general rule, that every conseil that is affirmed so strongly that it may nat be changed, for no condicioun that may bityde, I seye that thilke conseil is wikked. /

§ 27. This Melibeus, whanne he hadde herd the doctrine of his wyf dame Prudence, answerde in this wyse. / 'Dame,' quod he, 'as yet in-to this tyme ye han wel and covenably taught me as in general, how I shal governe me in the chesinge and in the witholdinge of my conseilours. / But now wolde I fayn that ye wolde condescende in
2450 especial, / and telle me how lyketh yow, or what semeth yow, by our conseilours that we han chosen in our present nede.' /

§ 28. 'My lord,' quod she, 'I blaske yow in al humblesse, that ye wol nat wilfully replie agayn my resouns, ne distempere your herte thogh I speke thing that yow displese. / For god wot that, as in myn entente, I speke it for your beste, for your honour and for your profite eke. / And soothly, I hope that your benygntee wol taken it in pacience. /

Trusteth me wel,' quod she, 'that your conseil as in this case sholde nat, as to speke properly, be called a conseil, but a monoun or a meevyng of folys; / in which conseil ye han erred in many a sondry wyse. /

§ 29. First and forward, ye han erred in th'assemblinge of your conseilours. / For ye sholde first have clyped a fewe folk to your conseil, and after ye mighte han shewed it to mo folk, if it hadde been nede. / But certes, ye han sodaynly clyped to your conseil a great multitude of peple, ful charytant and ful anoyous for to here. / Also ye han erred, for there-as ye sholden only have clyped to your conseil your trewe freendes olde and wyse, / ye han y-clyped strange folk, and yong folk, false flaterours, and canye reconciled, and folk that decen yow reverence withouten love. / And ek
2475 also ye have erred, for ye han taught with yow to your conseil ire, covetise, and hastifnesse; / the whiche three thinges been contrarious to every conseil honeste and profitable; / the whiche three thinges ye han nat anientised or destroyed hem, neither in your-self as in your conseilours, as yow oghte. / Ye han erred also, for ye han shewed to your conseilours your talent, and your affeccioun to make werre anon and for to do vengeance; / they han espyed by your wordes to what thing ye been endyned. / And therfore han they
2495 rather counselled yow to your talent than to your profit. / Ye han erred also, for it semeth that yow suffysoth to han been counselled by thise conseilours only, and with litel avys; / wher-as, in so greet and so heigh a nede, it hadde been necessarie mo conseilours, and more deliberacioun to parfournen your surprise. / Ye han erred also, for ye han nat examined your conseil in the foregyde manere, ne in due manere as the case requireth. / Ye han erred also, for ye han makid no divisoun bitwix your conseilours; this is to seyn, bitwix your trewe freendes and your fayned
2515 conseilours; / ne ye han nat knowe a

the wil of your trewe freendes olde and wyse; / but ye han cast alle hir wordes in an hochebot, and enclyned your herte to the more part and to the gretter nombre; and ther been ye condescended. / And with ye wot wel that men shal alwey finde a gretter nombre of folles than of wyse men, / and therefore the counseils that been at congregaciouns and multitudes of folk, ther-as men take more reward to the nombre than to the sapience of persones, / ye see wel that in swiche counseillings folles han the maiestrie. / Melibeus answerde agayn, and seyde: 'I graunte wel that I have erred; / but ther-as thou hast told me heer-biforn, that he nis nat to blame that chaungeth hisse counseillours in certein cases, and for certaine juste causes, / I am al redy to chaunge my counseillours, right as thou wolt devyse. / The proverbe seith: that "for to do sinne is mannish, but certes for to persevere longe in sinne is werk of the devel." /

§ 30. To this sentence answerde anon dame Prudence, and seyde: / 'Examineth,' quod she, 'your conseil, and let us see the whiche of hem han spoken most resonably, and taught yow best conseil. / And for-as-muche as that the examinacioun is necessarie, let us biginne at the surgians and at the phisiciens, that first spoken in this matere. / I sey yow, that the surgians and phisiciens han seyde yow in your conseil discreetly, as hem oughte; / and in hir speche seyden ful wysly, that to the office of hem aperteneth to doon to every wight honour and profit, and no wight for to anoye; / and, after hir craft, to doon greet diligence un-to the cure of hem whiche that they han in hir governaunce. / And sir, right as they han answered wysly and discreetly, / right so rede I that they been highly and sovereynly guardoned for hir noble speche, / and ask for they sholde do the more ententif business in the curacioun of your doghter dere. / For al-be-it so that they been your freendes, therfore shal ye nat enffren that they serve yow for noht; /

but ye oughte the rather guardone hem and shewe hem your largesse. / And as touchinge the propositioun which that the phisiciens entreteden in this case, this is to seyn, / that, in maladyes, that contrarie is warished by another contrarie, / I wolde fayn knowe how ye understonde thilke text, and what is your sentence. / 'Certes,' quod Melibeus, 'I understonde it in this wyse: / that, right as they han doon me a contrarie, right so sholde I doon hem another. / For right as they han venged hem on me and doon me wrong, right so shal I venge me upon hem and doon hem wrong; / and thanne have I cured oon contrarie by another.' /

§ 31. 'Lo, lo!' quod dame Prudence, 'how lightly is every man enclyned to his owene desyr and to his owene pleasure! / Certes,' quod she, 'the wordes of the phisiciens ne sholde nat han been understonden in this wyse. / For certes, wikkednesse is nat contrarie to wikkednesse, ne vengeance to vengeance, no wrong to wrong; but they been semblable. / And therefore, o vengeance is nat warished by another vengeance, no o wrong by another wrong; / but everich of hem encreaseth and aggreggeth other. / But certes, the wordes of the phisiciens sholde been understonden in this wyse: / for good and wikkednesse been two contraries, and pees and werre, vengeance and suffraunce, discord and accord, and manye othere thinges. / But certes, wikkednesse shal be warished by goodnesse, discord by accord, werre by pees, and so forth of othere thinges. / And heer-to accordeth Seint Paul the apostle in manye places. / He seith: "ne yeldeth nat harm for harm, ne wikked speche for wikked speche, / but do wel to him that dooth thee harm, and blesse him that seith to thee harm." / And in manye othere places he amonesteth pees and accord. / But now wol I speke to yow of the conseil which that was yeven to yow by the men of lawe and the wyse folk, / that seyden alle by oon accord as ye han herd bifore; / that, over

alle thynges, ye sholde doon your diligence to kepen your persone and to warnestore your hous. / And seyden also, that in this case ye oughten for to werken ful avysely and with greet deliberacioun. / And sir, as to the firste point, that toucheth to the keping of your persone; / ye shul understonde that he that hath warre shal evermore mekely
 2490 and devoutly prayen bifore alle thynges, / that Jesus Crist of his grete mercy wol han him in his proteccioun, and been his soverayn helping at his nede. / For certes, in this world ther is no wight that may be counselled ne kept sufficiently withouten the keping of our lord Jesus Crist. / To this sentence accordeth the prophete David, that seith: / "if god ne kepe the citee, in ydel waketh he that it kepeth." / Now sir, thanne shul ye committe the keping of your persone to your trewe freendes that been approved and
 2495 y-knowe; / and of hem shul ye axen help your persone for to kepe. For Catoun seith: "if thou hast nede of help, axe it of thy freendes; / for ther nis noon so good a phisicien as thy trewe freend." / And after this, thanne shul ye kepe yow fro alle straunge folk, and fro lyeres, and have alwey in suspect hir companye. / For Piers Alfonse seith: "ne tak no companye by the weye of a straunge man, but-if so be that thou have knowe him of a langer tyme. / And if so be that he falle in-to thy companye paraventure
 2500 withouten thyn assent, / enquire thanne, as subtilly as thou mayst, of his conversacioun and of his lyf bifore, and feyne thy way; seye that thou goost thider as thou wolt nat go; / and if he bereth a spere, hold thee on the right syde, and if he bare a sword, hold thee on the left syde." / And after this, thanne shul ye kepe yow wysely from alle swich manere peple as I have seyde bifore, and hem and hir conseil eschewe. / And after this, thanne shul ye kepe yow in swich manere, / that for any presumpcioun of your strengthe, that ye ne dispyse nat ne accounte nat the might of your adversarie so litel, that ye lete the keping of your persone for your pre-

sumpcioun; / for every wys man dredeth his enemy. / And Salomon seith "waleful is he that of alle hath drede; / for certes, he that thurgh the hardynesse of his herte and thurgh the hardynesse of him-self hath to greet presumpcioun, him shal yvel bityde." / Thanne shal ye overman countrewyte embowments and alle espiaille. / For Senek seith: that "the wys man that dredeth harmes escheweth harmes; / ne he ne falleth in-to perils, that perils escheweth." / And al-to-it is so that it seme that thou art in other place, yet shaltow alwey do thy diligence in kepinge of thy persone; / this is to say, ne be nat negligent to kepe thy persone, nat only fro thy gretteste enemyes but fro thy leeste enemy. / Senek seith: "a man that is wel avysed, he dredeth his leeste enemy." / Ovide seith: that "the litel weele wel sles the grete hole and the wilde hert." / And the book seith: "a litel thorn may prikke a greet king ful sore; and an bound wol holde the wilde boor." / But natheles, I sey nat thou shalt be so coward that thou doute ther wher-as is no drede. / The book seith: that "somme folk han greet lust to deceyve, but yet they dreden hem to be deceyved." / Yet shaltow drede to been empoisoned, and kepe yow from the companye of scorners. / For the book seith: "with scornars make no companye, but fleo hir wordes as venim." /

§ 82. Now as to the seconde point, wher-as your wysse conseilours counselled yow to warnestore your hous with greet diligence, / I wolde fayne knowe, how that ye understonde thilke wordes, and what is your sentence. /

§ 83. Melibeus answerde and seyde, "Certes I understonde it in this wise; that I shal warnestore myn hous with tourres, swiche as han castelles and othere manere edifices, and armure and artelleries, / by whiche thynges I may my persone and myn hous so kepen and defenden, that myne enemyes shul been in drede myn hous for to approche." /

§ 34. To this sentence answerde anon Prudence; 'warnestoring,' quod she, 'of heighe toures and of grete edifices apper-
 25 teth som-tyme to pryde; / and sek men make heighe toures and grete edifices with grete costages and with greet trauaille; and whan that they been accom-
 plished, yet be they nat worth a stree, but-if they be defended by trewe freendes that been olde and wyse. / And understond wel, that the gretteste and strongeste garnison that a riche man may haue, as wel to kepen his persone as his goodes, is / that he be biloued amonges his sub-
 gys and with his neighebores. / For thus seith Tullius: that "ther is a maner garnison that no man may venquise ne discomfte, and that is, / a lord to be biloued of his citezins and of his
 30 pple." /

§ 35. Now sir, as to the thridde point; wher-as your olde and wise conseilours seyden, that yow ne oghte nat sodeynly ne hastily proceden in this nede, / but that yow oghte purveyen and apparailen yow in this case with greet diligence and greet deliberacioun; / trowely, I trowe that they seyden right wysly and right sooth. / For Tullius seith, "in every nede, or thou biginne it, apparaille thee with greet diligence." / Thanne seye I, what in vengeance-taking, in werre, in bataille, and in warnestoring, / or thou biginne, I rede that thou apparaille thee ther-to, and do it with greet delibera-
 35 cioun. / For Tullius seith: that "long apparailing biforn the bataille maketh victorie." / And Cassiodorus seith: "the garnison is stronger whan it is longe tyme avysed." /

§ 36. But now let us spoken of the conseil that was accorded by your neighebores, swiche as doon yow reverence withouten love, / your olde enemys reconciled, your flaterers / that counselled yow certeyne thinges prively, and openly counselleden yow the contrarie; / the yonge folk also, that counselleden yow to venge yow and make werre anon. / And certes, sir, as I have seyde biforn, ye han greetly
 40 wroght to han cleped swich maner folk to

your conseil; / which conseilours been y-nogh reprevd by the reasons afore-seyd. / But natheles, let us now descende to the special. Ye shuln first procede after the doctrine of Tullius. / 2545
 Certes, the trouthe of this matere or of this conseil nedeth nat diligently enquire; / for it is wel wist whiche they been that han doon to yow this trespas and vileinye, / and how manye trespasours, and in what manere they han to yow doon al this wrong and al this vileinye. / And after this, thanne shul ye examine the seconde condicioun, which that the same Tullius addeth in this matere. / For Tullius put a thing, which that he clepeth "consentingu," this is to sayn; / who been they and how manye, 2550
 and whiche been they, that consenteden to thy conseil, in thy wilfulness to doon hastif vengeance. / And let us considere also who been they, and how manye been they, and whiche been they, that consenteden to your adversaries. / And certes, as to the firste poynt, it is wel knownen whiche folk been they that consenteden to your hastif wilfulness; / for trowely, alle tho that counselleden yow to maken sodeyn werre ne been nat your freendes. / Let us now considere whiche been they, that ye holde so greetly your freendes as to your persone. / For 2555
 al-be-it so that ye be mighty and riche, certes ye ne been nat but allone. / For certes, ye ne han no child but a doghter; / ne ye ne han bretheren ne cosins germayns, ne noon other neigh kinrede, / wherfore that your enemys, for drede, sholde stinte to plete with yow or to destroye your persone. / Ye knowen also, that your riches moten been dis-
 2560 pended in diverse parties; / and whan that every wight hath his part, they ne wollen taken but litel reward to venge thy deeth. / But thyne enemys been thre, and they han manie children, bretheren, cosins, and other ny kinrede; / and, though so were that thou haddest slayn of hem two or thre, yet dwellen ther y-nowe to wroken hir deeth and to alee thy persone. / And though so be

that your kinrede be more sike and
 modest than the kin of your aduer-
 saries, / yet natheles your kinrede nis
 but a far kinrede; they been but litel sike
 2565 to you, / and the kin of your enemyes
 been ny sike to hem. And certes, as in
 that, hir condicoun is bet than yours. /
 Thanne let us considere also if the coun-
 sellling of hem that counselleden you to
 taken sodayn vengeance, whether it
 accordeth to reason? / And certes, ye
 knowe wel "nay." / For as by right and
 reason, ther may no man taken vengeance
 on no wight, but the iuge that hath the
 jurisdiction of it, / when it is granted
 him to take thilke vengeance, hastily or
 2570 attemptly, as the lawe requirith. / And
 yet more-over, of thilke word that Tullius
 clepeth "consentinge," / thou shalt con-
 sider if thy might and thy power may
 consenten and suffise to thy wilfulness
 and to thy counsellours. / And certes,
 thou mayest wel seyn that "nay." / For
 sikerly, as for to speke proprely, we may
 do no-thing but only swich thing as we
 may doon rightfully. / And certes, right-
 fully no mowe ye take no vengeance as of
 2575 your propre auctoritee. / Thanne mowe
 ye seen, that your power ne consenteth
 nat ne accordeth nat with your wilful-
 nesse. / Let us now examine the thridde
 point that Tullius clepeth "consequent." /
 Thou shalt understonde that the ven-
 geance that thou purposeth for to take
 is the consequent. / And ther-of foloweth
 another vengeance, peril, and werre;
 and othere damages with-oute nombre, of
 whiche we be nat war as at this tyme. /
 And as touchinge the fourthe point, that
 2580 Tullius clepeth "engendringe," / thou
 shalt considere, that this wrong which
 that is doon to thee is engendred of the
 hate of thyne enemyes; / and of the
 vengeance-takinge upon that wolde en-
 gendre another vengeance, and muchel
 sorwe and wastinge of richesses, as I
 seyde. /

§ 57. Now sir, as to the point that
 Tullius clepeth "causes," which that is
 the laste point, / thou shalt understonde
 that the wrong that thou hast receyved

hath certayne causes, / whiche that
 clerkes clepen *Ortus* and *Effetus*, and
Causa longinquus and *Causa propinquus*;
 this is to seyn, the far cause and the ny
 cause. / The far cause is almighty god, of
 that is cause of alle thinges. / The near
 cause is thy three enemyes. / The cause
 accidental was hate. / The cause material
 been the fyve woundes of thy daughter. /
 The cause formal is the manere of hir
 workinge, that brougten haddes and
 clowben in at thy window. / The op-
 2585 cause final was for to aise thy daughter;
 it lotted nat in as muche as in hem was. /
 But for to speken of the far cause, as to
 what ende they shal come, or what shal
 finally bityde of hem in this case, no can
 I nat deme but by conjectinge and by
 supposinge. / For we shal suppose that
 they shal come to a wicked ende, / by-
 cause that the Book of Deuterus saith:
 "alden or with great payne been caus-
 y-brought to good ende whanne they been
 haddely bigonne." /

§ 58. Now sir, if men wolde are no,
 why that god suffred men to do you this
 vileinye, certes, I can nat wel answer as
 for no sothfastnesse. / For th'apostle seith,
 that "the sciences and the iudge-
 ments of our lord god almighty been ful
 depe; / ther may no man comprehende
 ne serchen hem sufficiently." / Nathe-
 less, by certeyne presumptions and con-
 jectinges, I holde and bileve / that god,
 which that is ful of justice and of right-
 wisesse, hath suffred this bityde by
 iuste cause resonable. /

§ 59. Thy name is Melibee, this is to
 seyn, "a man that drinketh hony." /
 Thou hast y-dronke so muchel hony of
 swete temporel richesses and delices
 and honour of this world, / that thou
 art drunken; and hast forgotten Jesu
 Crist thy creatour; / thou ne hast nat
 doon to him swich honour and reverence
 as thee oughte. / Ne thou ne hast nat
 wel y-taken kepe to the wordes of Ovide,
 that seith: / "under the hony of the
 godes of the body is hid the venim that
 sleeth the soule." / And Salomon saith,
 "if thou hast founden hony, etc of it that

suffreth; / for if thou ate of it out of
 mesure, thou shalt spewe," and be nedy
 and povre. / And peraventure Crist hath
 thee in despit, and hath turned away fro
 thee his face and hisse eres of miseri-
 corde; / and also he hath suffred that
 thou hast been punished in the manere
 that thou hast y-trespased. / Thou hast
 310 doon sinne agayn our lord Crist; / for
 certes, the three enemys of mankinde,
 that is to seyn, the flesh, the feend, and
 the world, / thou hast suffred hem entre
 in-to thyn herte wilfully by the windowes
 of thy body, / and hast nat defended thy-
 self sufficiently agayns hir assentes and
 hir temptaciouns, so that they han
 wounded thy soule in fyve places; / this
 is to seyn, the deedly synnes that been
 entred in-to thyn herte by thy fyve
 wittes. / And in the same manere our
 lord Crist hath wold and suffred, that thy
 three enemys been entred in-to thyn hous
 315 by the windowes, / and han y-wounded
 thy doghter in the fore-seyde manere. /

§ 40. 'Certes,' quod Melibee, 'I see wel
 that ye enforce yow muchel by wordes to
 overcome me in swich manere, that I shal
 nat venge me of myne enemys; / shew-
 inge me the perils and the yveles that
 mighten falle of this vengeance. / But
 who-so wolde considere in alle vengeancees
 the perils and yveles that mighte sowe of
 vengeance-takinge, / a man wolde never
 320 take vengeance, and that were harm; /
 for by the vengeance-takinge been the
 wikked men discovered fro the gode
 men. / And they that han wil to do
 wikkednesses restreyne hir wikked purpos,
 whan they seen the punyngs and chas-
 tyngs of the trespassours. / [†And to
 this answerde dame Prudence: 'Certes,'
 seyde she, 'I graunte wel that of ven-
 geance cometh muchel yvel and muchel
 good; / but vengeance-takinge aperteneth
 nat unto everichoon, but only unto juges
 and unto hem that han jurisdiccioun
 upon the trespassours. / And yet seye I
 more, that right as a singular persone
 sinneth in takinge vengeance of another
 325 man, / right so sinneth the juge if he do
 no vengeance of hem that it han de-

served. / For Senek seith thus: "that
 maister," he seith, "is good that proveth
 shrewes." / And as Cassidore seith: "A
 man dredeth to do outrages, whan he
 woot and knoweth that it displeaseth to
 the juges and sovereyns." / And another
 seith: "the juge that dredeth to do right,
 maketh men shrewes." / And Saint Paule
 the apostle seith in his epistle, whan he
 wryteth un-to the Romainys: that "the
 juges beren nat the spere with-outen
 cause;" / but they beren it to punisse 363
 the shrewes and misdoeres, and for to
 defende the gode men. / If ye wol thanne
 take vengeance of your enemys, ye shul
 retourne or have your recours to the juge
 that hath the jurisdiccioun up-on hem; /
 and he shal punisse hem as the lawe
 axeth and requyreth. /

§ 41. 'A!' quod Melibee, 'this ven-
 geance lyketh me no-thing. / I biithenke
 me now and take hede, how fortune hath
 norissed me fro my childhede, and hath
 holpen me to passe many a strong pee. / 3535
 Now wol I assayn hir, trowinge, with
 goddes help, that she shal helpe me my
 shame for to venge. /

§ 42. 'Certes,' quod Prudence, 'if ye
 wol werke by my conseil, ye shul nat
 assaye fortune by no wey, / ne ye shul
 nat lene or bowe unto hir, after the word
 of Senek: / for "thinges that been folly
 doon, and that been in hope of fortune,
 shullen never come to good ende." / And
 as the same Senek seith: "the more cleer
 and the more shyning that fortune is, the
 more brotil and the sonner broken she
 is." / Trusteth nat in hir, for she nis 3540
 nat stidefast ne stable; / for whan thou
 trowest to be most seur or siker of hir
 help, she wol faille thee and deceyve
 thee. / And wheras ye seyn that fortune
 hath norissed yow fro your childhede, /
 I seye, that in so muchel shul ye the
 lasse truste in hir and in hir wit. / For
 Senek seith: "what man that is norissed
 by fortune, she maketh him a greet
 fool." / Now thanne, sin ye desyre and 3545
 axe vengeance, and the vengeance that is
 doon after the lawe and bifore the juge
 ne lyketh yow nat, / and the vengeance

that is doon in hope of fortune is perilous and uncertein, / thanne have ye noon other remedie but for to have your recours unto the sovereyn juge that vengeth alle vileinyes and wronges; / and he shal venge yow after that him-self witnesseth, wher-as he seith: / "leveth
2650 the vengeance to me, and I shal do it." /

§ 43. Melibee answerde, 'if I ne venge me nat of the vileinye that man han doon to me, / I sompne or warne hem that han doon to me that vileinye and alle othere, to do me another vileinye. / For it is writen: "if thou take no vengeance of an old vileinye, thou sompnest thyne adversaries to do thee a newe vileinye." / And also, for my suffrance, men wolden do to me so muchel vileinye, that I mighte neither bere it ne sustene; / and so sholde I been put and holden over
2655 lowe. / For men seyn: "in muchel suffringe shul manye thinges falle un-to thee whiche thou shalt nat mowe suffre." /

§ 44. 'Certes,' quod Prudence, 'I graunte yow that over muchel suffraunce nis nat good; / but yet ne folweth it nat ther-of, that every persone to whom men doon vileinye take of it vengeance; / for that aperteneth and longeth al only to the juges, for they shul venge the vileinyes and iniuries. / And therfore the two auctoritees that ye han seyde above, been
2660 only understonden in the juges; / for whan they suffren over muchel the wronges and the vileinyes to be doon withouten punisshinge, / they sompne nat a man al only for to do newe wronges, but they comanden it. / Also a wys man seith: that "the juge that correcteth nat the sinnere comandeth and biddeth him do sinne." / And the juges and sovereyns mighten in hir land so muchel suffre of the shrewes and misdoeres, / that they sholden by swich suffrance, by proces of tyme, wexen of swich power and might, that they sholden putte out the juges
2665 and the sovereyns from hir places, / and atte laste maken hem lesen hir lordshipes. /

§ 45. But lat us now putte, that ye

have leve to venge yow. / I seye ye been nat of might and power as now to venge yow. / For if ye wole maken comparisoun un-to the might of your adversaries, ye shul finde in manye thinges, that I have shewed yow of this, that hir condicioun is bettre than youre. / And therefore seye I, that it is good as now that ye suffre and be pacient. /

§ 46. Forther-more, ye knowen wel that, after the comune sawe, "it is a woodnesse a man to stryve with a strengier or a more mighty man than he is him-self; / and for to stryve with a man of evenestrength, that is to seyn, with as strong a man as he, it is peril; / and for to stryve with a weyker man, it is folie." / And therefore sholde a man flee stryvinge as muchel as he mighte. / For Salomon seith: "it is a greet worship to a man to kepen him fro noyse and stryf." / And if it so
bifalle or happe that a man of gretter might and strengthe than thou art do thee grevaunce, / studie and bisie thee rather to stille the same grevaunce, than for to venge thee. / For Senek seith: that "he putteth him in greet peril that stryveth with a gretter man than he is him-self." / And Catoun seith: "if a man of hyer estaat or degree, or more mighty than thou, do thee anoy or grevaunce, suffre him; / for he that ones hath greved thee may another tyme releve thee and helpe." / Yet sette I
caas, ye have bothe might and licence for to venge yow. / I seye, that ther be ful manye thinges that shul restreyn yow of vengeance-takinge, / and make yow for to encline to suffre, and for to han pacience in the thinges that han been doon to yow. / First and foreward, if ye wole considere the defautes that been in your owene persone, / for whiche defautes god hath suffred yow have this tribulacioun, as I have seyde yow heer-biforn. /
For the poete seith, that "we oghte patiently taken the tribulacions that comen to us, whan we thinken and consideren that we han deserved to have hem." / And Seint Gregorie seith: that "whan a man considereth wel the nombre

of his defautes and of his sinnes, / the paynes and the tribulaciouns that he suffreth semen the lesse un-to hym; / and in-as-muche as him thinketh his sinnes more hevy and grevous, / in-so-muche semeth his payne the lighter and the esier un-to him." / Also ye owen to enclyne and bowe your herte to take the pacience of our lord Jesu Crist, as seith saint Peter in his epistles: / "Jesu Crist," he seith, "hath suffred for us, and yeven ensample to every man to folwe and sewe him; / for he dide never sinne, ne never cam ther a vileinous word out of his mouth: / whan men cursed him, he cursed hem nocht; and whan men betten him, he manaced hem nocht." / Also the grete pacience, which the seintes that been in paradys han had in tribulaciouns that they han y-suffred, with-uten hir desert or gilt, / oghte muchel stiren yow to pacience. / Forthermore, ye sholde enforce yow to have pacience, / consideringe that the tribulaciouns of this world but lital whyle endure, and sone passed been and goon. / And the joye that a man seketh to have by pacience in tribulaciouns is perdurable, after that the apostle seith in his epistle: / "the joye of god," he seith, "is perdurable," that is to sayn, everlastinge. / Also troweth and bileveth stedfastly, that he nis nat wel y-norissed ne wel y-taught, that can nat have pacience or wol nat receyve pacience. / For Salomon seith: that "the doctrine and the wit of a man is knowen by pacience." / And in another place he seith: that "he that is patient governeth him by greet prudence." / And the same Salomon seith: "the angry and wrathful man maketh noyes, and the patient man attempeth hem and stilleth." / He seith also: "it is more worth to be patient than for to be right strong; / and he that may have the lordshipe of his owene herte is more to preyse, than he that by his force or strengthe taketh grete citees." / And therfore seith saint Jame in his epistle: that "pacience is a greet vertu of perfeccioun."

§ 47. 'Certes,' quod Melibee, 'I graunte yow, dame Prudence, that pacience is a greet vertu of perfeccioun; / but every man may nat have the perfeccioun that ye seken; / ne I nam nat of the nombre of right parfite men, / for myn herte may never been in pees un-to the tyme it be venged. / And al-be-it so that it was greet peril to myne enemys, to do me a vileinye in takinge vengeance up-on me, / yet token they noon hede of the peril, but fulfilleden hir wikked wil and hir corage. / And therfore, me thinketh man oghten nat reprove me, though I putte me in a lital peril for to venge me, / and though I do a greet excesse, that is to sayn, that I venge pon outrage by another.' /

§ 48. 'Al' quod dame Prudence, 'ye seyn your wil and as yow lyketh; / but in no case of the world a man sholde nat doon outrage ne excesse for to vengen him. / For Cassidore seith: that "as yvel doth he that vengeth him by outrage, as he that doth the outrage." / And therfore ye shul venge yow after the ordre of right, that is to seyn by the lawe, and nocht by excesse ne by outrage. / And also, if ye wol venge yow of the outrage of your adversaries in other maner than right comandeth, ye sinnen, / and therfore seith Senek: that "a man shal never vengen shrowednesse by shrowednesse." / And if ye seye, that right axeth a man to defenden violence by violence, and fighting by fighting, / certes ye seye sooth, whan the defense is doon anon with-uten intervalls or with-uten tarying or delay, / for to defenden him and nat for to vengen him. / And it bihoveth that a man putte swich attemperance in his defence, / that men have no cause ne matere to repreven him that defendeth him of excesse and outrage, for elles were it agayn resoun. / Pardee, ye knowen wel, that ye maken no defence as now for to defende yow, but for to venge yow; / and so seweth it that ye han no wil to do your dede attemprely. / And therfore, me thinketh that pacience is good. / For Salomon seith: that "he

that is nat pacient shal have greet harm." /

§ 49. 'Certes,' quod Melibeus, 'I graunte yow, that whan a man is impacient and wroth, of that that toucheth him nought and that aperteneth nat un-to him, though
2730 it harme him, it is no wonder. / For the lawe seith: that "he is culpable that entremetteth or medleth with swich thyng as aperteneth nat un-to him." / And Salomon seith: that "he that entremetteth him of the noyes or stryf of another man, is lyk to him that taketh an hound by the ere." / For right as he that taketh a strange hound by the ere is outhewhyle biten with the hound, / right in the same wyse is it reson that he have harm, that by his impacience medleth him of the noyes of another man, whar-as it aperteneth nat un-to him. / But ye knowen wel that this dede, that is to seyn, my grief and my disesse, toucheth
2735 me right ny. / And therfore, though I be wroth and impacient, it is no merveilla. / And savinge your grace, I can nat seen that it mighte greetly harme me though I toke vengeance; / for I am richer and more mighty than myne enemys been. / And wel known ye, that by moneye and by havinge grete possessions been all the thinges of this world governed. / And Salomon seith: that
2740 "alle thinges obeyen to moneye." /

§ 50. Whan Prudence hadde herd hir housbonde avanten him of his riches and of his moneye, dispreizinge the power of hise adversaries, she spak, and seyde in this wyse: / 'certes, dere sir, I graunte yow that ye been rich and mighty, / and that the riches been goode to hem that han wel y-geten hem and wel conne use hem. / For right as the body of a man may nat liven withoute the soule, namore may it live withoute temporel goodes. / And by riches
2745 may a man gete him grete frendes. / And therfore seith Pamphilles: "if a net-herdes doghter," seith he, "be riche, she may chesen of a thousand men which she wol take to hir housbonde; / for, of a thousand men, oon wol nat forsaken

hir ne refusen hir." / And this Pamphilles seith also: "if thou be right happy, that is to seyn, if thou be right riche, thou shalt find a greet number of schawes and frendes. / And if thy fortune change that thou were poore, fewel frendshipe and schaweshipe; / for thou shalt be allone with-outen any companye, but-if it be the companye of poore folk." / And yet seith this Pamphilles moreover: that "they that been thralle and bonde of lineage shullen been made worthy and noble by the riches." / And right so as by richesmen ther comen manye goodes, right so by poverts comen ther manye harmes and yvels. / For greet poorte constrayneth a man to do manye yvels. / And therfore clepeth Chaucoure poorte "the moder of reue," / that is to seyn, the moder of overthrowinge or fallinge down. / And therfore seith Piers Plouman: "oon of the gretteste adversitees of this world is / whan a free man, by kinde or by birth, is constrayned by poorte to eten the almshous of his enemy." / And the same seith Innocent in oon of hise booke, he seith: that "sorweful and mishappy is the condicioun of a poore beggar; / for if he axe nat his mete, he dyeth for hunger; / and if he axe, he dyeth for shame; and algates necessite constrayneth him to axe." / And therfore seith
2750 Salomon: that "bet it is to dye than for to have swich poorte." / And as the same Salomon seith: "bette it is to dye of bitter deeth than for to liven in swich wyse." / By thise reasons that I have said un-to yow, and by manye othere reasons that I coude seye, / I graunte yow that riches been goode to hem that guten hem wel, and to hem that wel use the riches. / And therfore wol I shewe yow how ye shul have yow, and how ye shul bere yow in gaderinge of riches, and in what manere ye shul use hem. / 2755

§ 51. First, ye shul geten hem withoute greet doer, by good leyser sokingly, and nat over hastily. / For a man that is to deyringe to gete riches abandoneth him first to thefte and to alle

other yveles. / And therfore seith Salomon "he that hasteth him to busily to wexe riche shal be noon innocent." / He seith also that "the richesse that hastily cometh to a man, sone and lightly gooth and passeth fro a man. / but that richesse that cometh litel and litel wexeth alwey and multiplyeth." / And sir, ye shal geten riches by your wit and by your travaille unto your profit. / and that with outen wrong or harm-donge to any other persone. For the lawe seith that "ther maketh no man himselfe riche, if he do harm to another wight" / this is to seyn that nature defendeth and forbiddeth by right, that no man make himselfe riche un-to the harm of another persone. / And Tullius seith, that "no sorwe ne no drede of deeth, ne no-thing that may falle un-to a man / is so muchel agayns nature, as a man to encreasen his owne profit to the harm of another man. / And though the grete men and the mighty men geten riches more lightly than thou, yet shalton nat been ydel ne slow to do thy profit, for thou shalt in alle wyse flee ydelnesse." / For Salomon seith that "ydelnesse techeth a man to do manye yveles." / And the same Salomon seith, that "he that travaillith and busieth him, to tilen his land, shal eten breyd, / but he that is ydel and casteth him to no businesse ne occupacioun, shal falle in to povertie, and dye for hunger." / And he that is ydel and slow can never finde covenable tyme for to doon his profit. For ther is a versifour seith: that "the ydel man excuseth hym in winter, by cause of the grete cold, and in somer by enchesoun of the hete." For thise causes seith Caton, "waketh and enclyneth nat yow over muchel for to slepe, for over muchel reeste norisseth and causeth manye vices." / And therfore seith saint Jerome, "doth somme gode dedes, that the devel which is our enemy ne finde yow nat unoccupied." / For the devel ne taketh nat rightly un-to his werkunge swiche as he findeth occupied in gode werkes." /

§ 52. Thanne thus, in getinge riches, ye mosten flee ydelnesse. /

And after-ward, ye shul use the riches, whiche ye have geten by your wit and by your travaille, in swich a manere, that men holde nat yow to scars, ne to sparinge, ne to fool large, that is to seyn, over-large a spender. / For right as men blamen an avaricious man by-cause of his crastete and chincherye, / in the same wyse is he to blame that spendeth over largely. / And therfore seith Caton "use," he seith, "thy riches that thou hast geten / in swich a manere, that men have no matere ne cause to calle thee neither wrecche ne chynche, for it is a greet shame to a man to have a povere herte and a riche purse." / He seith also, "the goodes that thou hast y-geten, use hem by mesure," that is to seyn, spende hem mesurably, / for they that folly wasten and desperen the goodes that they han, / whan they han namore propre of hir owne, they shapen hem to take the goodes of another man. / I seye thanne that ye shul flee avarice, / usunge your riches in swich manere, that men seye nat that your riches been y-burned, / but that ye have hem in your might and in your weelinge. For a wys man repreve the avaricious man, and seith thus, in two vers. / "wherto and why burneth a man his goodes by his grete avarice, and knoweth wel that nedes moste he dye / for deeth is the ende of every man as in this present lyf" / And for what cause or enchesoun joyneth he him or knitteth he him so faste un-to his goodes, / that alle his wittes mowen nat disceveren him or departen him from his goodes / and knoweth wel, or oughte to knowe, that whan he is deed, he shal no-thing bere with him out of this world? / And therfore seith saint Augustin that "the avaricious man is likned un-to helle / that the more it swelweth, the more lesyr it hath to swelwe and devour." / And as wel as ye wolde eschewe to be called an avaricious man or chynche, / as wel sholde ye kepe yow and governe yow in swich a wyse that men calle yow nat fool-large. / Therfore seith Tullius "the goodes," he seith, "of thyn hous ne

sholde nat been hid, ne kept so close but that they mighte been opened by pitee and debonairetee"; / that is to sayn, to yeven part to hem that han greet nede; / "ne thy goodes shullen nat been so opene, to been every mannes goodes." / Afterward, in getinge of your riches and in usinge hem, ye shal alwey have three thinges in your herte; / that is to sayn, our lord god, conscience, and good name. / First, ye shal have god in your herte; / and for no riches ye shullen do no-thing, which may in any manere displese god, that is your creatour and maker. / For after the word of Salomon: "it is better to have a litel good with the love of god, / than to have muchel good and tresour, and lese the love of his lord god." / And the prophete seith: that "better it is to been a good man and have litel good and tresour, / than to been holden a shrew and have grete riches." / And yet seye I furthermore, that ye sholde alwey doon your bisnesse to gete yow riches, / so that ye gete hem with good conscience. / And th'apostle seith: that "ther nis thing in this world, of which we sholden have so greet joye as whan our conscience bereth us good witnesse." / And the wyse man seith: "the substance of a man is ful good, whan sinne is nat in mannes conscience." / Afterward, in getinge of your riches, and in usinge of hem, / yow mooste have greet bisnesse and greet diligence, that your goode name be alwey kept and conserved. / For Salomon seith: that "better it is and more it availleth a man to have a good name, than for to have grete riches." / And therefore he seith in another place: "do greet diligence," seith Salomon, "in keepyng of thy frend and of thy gode name; / for it shal langer abide with thee than any tresour, be it never so precious." / And certes he sholde nat be called a gentil man, that after god and good conscience, alle thinges left, ne dooth his diligence and bisnesse to kepen his good name. / And Cassidore seith: that "it is signe of a gentil herte, whan a man loveth and desyreth to han a good name." / And

therefore with saint Augustin: that "ther been two thinges that are necessurie and needefulle, / and that is good conscience and good loor; / that is to sayn, good conscience to thyn owne persone inward, and good loor for thy neighbor out-ward." / And he that trusteth him so muchel in his gode conscience, / that he displeth and setteth at naught his gode name or loor, and raketh naught though he kepe nat his gode name, nis but a cruel cherl. /

§ 58. Sire, now have I shewed yow how ye shal do in getinge riches, and how ye shullen nam hem; / and I me wol, that for the trust that ye han in your riches, ye wole moove warre and bataille. / I counsille yow, that ye biginne no warre in trust of your riches; for they ne suffyean naught warres to magnifyen. / And therefore seith a philosophre: "that man that desyreth and wole algaies han warre, shal never have suffycesse; / for the richer that he is, the greater responses mooste he make, if he wole have worship and victoria." / And Salomon seith, that "the greater riches that a man hath, the moe despendours he hath." / And dere sire, al-be-it so that for your riches ye moove have muchel folk, / yet bihoveth it nat, ne it is nat good, to biginne warre, where-as ye moove in other manere have pees, un-to your worship and profit. / For the victories of batailles that been in this world, lyen nat in greet nombre or multitude of the peple ne in the vertu of man; / but is lyth in the wil and in the hand of our lord god almighty. / And therefore Judas Machabeus, which was goddes knight, / whan he sholde fighte agayn his adversarie that hadde a greet nombre, and a greater multitude of folk and strengw than was this peple of Machabeus, / yet he reconforted his litel companye, and seyde right in this wyse: / "als lightly," quod he, "may our lord god almighty yeve victorie to a fewe folk as to many folk, / for the victorie of batailles cometh nat by the grete nombre of peple, / but it cometh from our lord god of heven." /

r, for as muchel as there is
ein, if he be worthy that god
ctorie, [† namore than he is
ther he be worthy of the love
naught, after that Salomon
fore every man sholde greetly
to biginne. / And by-cause
lles fallen manye perils, / and
her-while, that as sone is the
leyn as the litel man ; / and,
ten in the secundo book of
is dedes of hatailles been
and nothing certeyne ; / for
oon hurt with a spere as
And for ther is gret peril in
ore sholde a man fleo and
erre, in as muchel as a
odly. / For Salomon seith :
loveth peril shal falle in

r that Dame Prudence hadde
is manere, Melibee answerde
“ I see wel, dame Prudence,
r faire wordes and by your
ye han shewed me, that the
yow no-thing ; / but I have
l your conseil, how I shal do
’ /
tes,’ quod she, ‘ I conseil
e accorde with youre adver-
hat ye have pees with hem. /
me seith in hise epistles : that
l and pees the smale richesses
, / and by debaat and discord
chesses fallen down.” / And
vel that oon of the gretteste
vereyn thing, that is in this
nitee and pees. / And ther-
oure lord Jesu Crist to hise
his wyse : / “ wel happy and
they that loven and pur-
; for they been called children
‘ A ! ’ quod Melibee, ‘ now see
ye loven nat myn honour
hipe. / Ye knowen wel that
rsaries han bigonnen this
brige by hir outrage ; / and
that they no requeren ne
at of pees, ne they asken nat
iled. / Wol ye thanne that
ke me and obeye me to hem,

and crye hem mercy ? / For sothe, that
were nat my worship. / For right as men 2875
seyn, that “ over-greet homlinesse en-
gendreth dispreysinge,” so fareth it by to
greet humylitee or mekenesse.’ /

§ 56. Thanne bigan dame Prudence to
maken semblant of wratthe, and seyde, /
‘ certes, sir, sauf your grace, I love your
honour and your profit as I do myn
owene, and ever have doon ; / ne ye ne
noon other syen never the contrarie. /
And yit, if I hadde seyde that ye sholde
han purchaced the pees and the recon-
siliacioun, I ne hadde nat muchel mis-
taken me, ne seyde amis. / For the wyse 2880
man seith : “ the dissensioun biginneth by
another man, and the reconsiling bi-
ginneth by thy-self.” / And the prophete
seith : “ flee shrewednesse and do good-
nesse ; / seke pees and folwe it, as muchel
as in thee is.” / Yet seye I nat that ye
shul rather pursue to your adversaries for
pees than they shuln to yow ; / for I
knowe wel that ye been so hard-herted,
that ye wol do no-thing for me. / And 2885
Salomon seith : “ he that hath over-hard
an herte, atte laste he shal mishappe and
mistyde.”’ /

§ 57. Whanne Melibee hadde herd dame
Prudence maken semblant of wratthe, he
seyde in this wyse, / ‘ dame, I prey yow
that ye be nat displeased of thinges that I
seye ; / for ye knowe wel that I am angry
and wrooth, and that is no wonder ; /
and they that been wrothe witen nat wel
what they doon, ne what they seyn. / 2890
Therefore the prophete seith : that “ trou-
bled eyen han no cleer sighte.” / But
seyeth and conseilith me as yow lyketh ;
for I am redy to do right as ye wol
desyre ; / and if ye repreve me of my
folye, I am the more holden to love yow
and to preyse yow. / For Salomon seith :
that “ he that repreveth him that doth
folye, / he shal finde gretter grace than
he that deceyveth him by swete wordes.”’ / 2895

§ 58. Thanne seide dame Prudence, ‘ I
make no semblant of wratthe ne anger
but for your grete profit. / For Salomon
seith : “ he is more worth, that repreveth
or chydeth a fool for his folye, shewinge

him semblant of wratthe, / than he that supporteth him and preyseth him in his misdoinge, and laugheth at his folye." / And this same Salomon seith afterward: that "by the sorweful visage of a man," that is to seyn, by the sory and hevvy countenance of a man, / "the fool correcteth and amendeth him-self." /

§ 59. Thanne seyde Melibee, 'I shal nat conne answere to so manye faire resouns as ye putten to me and shewen. / Seyeth shortly your wil and your conseil, and I am al ready to fulfille and performe it.' /

§ 60. Thanne dame Prudence discovered al hir wil to him, and seyde, / 'I conseilte yow,' quod she, 'aboven alle thinges, that ye make pees bitwene god and yow; / and beth reconciled un-to him and to his grace. / For as I have seyde yow heer-biforn, god hath suffred yow to have this tribulacioun and disese for your sinnes. / And if ye do as I sey yow, god wol sende your adversaries un-to yow, / and maken hem fallen at your feet, redy to do your wil and your comandements. / For Salomon seith: "whan the condicioun of man is plesaunt and likinge to god, / he chaungeth the hertes of the mannes adversaries, and constreyneth hem to biseken him of pees and of grace." / And I prey yow, lat me speke with your adversaries in privee place; / for they shul nat knowe that it be of your wil or your assent. / And thanne, whan I knowe hir wil and hir entente, I may conseilte yow the more seurlly.' /

§ 61. 'Dame,' quod Melibee, 'dooth your wil and your lykinge, / for I putte me hoolly in your disposicioun and ordinance.' /

§ 62. Thanne Dame Prudence, whan she saugh the gode wil of her housbonde, delibered and took avys in hir-self, / thinkinge how she mighte bringe this nede un-to a good conclusioun and to a good ende. / And whan she saugh hir tyme, she sente for thise adversaries to come un-to hir in-to a privee place, / and shewed wysly un-to hem the grete goodes that comen of pees, / and the grete

harmes and perils that been in warre; / and seyde to hem in a goodly manere, how that hem oughte have grete repentance / of the injurie and wrong that they hadden doon to Melibee hir lord, and to hir, and to hir doghter. /

§ 63. And whan they herden the goodliche wordes of dame Prudence, / they weren so surprised and ravished, and hadden so grete joye of hir, that wonder was to telle. / 'A! lady!' quod they, 'ye han shewed un-to us "the blessinge of swetnesse," after the sawe of David the prophete; / for the reconcilinge which we been nat worthy to have in no manere, / but we oghte requeren it with grete contricioun and humilitee, / ye of your grete goodnesse have presented unto us. / Now see we wel that the science and the cuninge of Salomon is ful trewe; / for he seith: that "swete wordes multiplen and encreasen freendes, and maken shrewes to be debonaire and meke." /

§ 64. Certes,' quod they, 'we putten our dede and al our matere and cause al hoolly in your goode wil; / and been redy to obeye to the speche and comandement of my lord Melibee. / And therefore, dere and benigne lady, we preyen yow and biseke yow as mekely as we conne and mowen, / that it lyke un-to your grete goodnesse to fulfille in dede your goodliche wordes; / for we consideren and knowlichen that we han offended and greved my lord Melibee out of mesure; / so ferforth, that we be nat of power to maken hise amendes. / And therefore we oblige and binden us and our freendes to doon al his wil and hise comandements. / But peraventure he hath swich hevynesse and swich wratthe to us-ward, by-cause of our offence, / that he wole enjoyne us swich a payne as we mowe nat bere ne sustene. / And therefore, noble lady, we biseke to your wommanly pitee, / to taken swich avysement in this nede, that we, ne our freendes, be nat desherited ne destroyed thurgh our folye.' /

§ 65. 'Certes,' quod Prudence, 'it is an hard thing and right perilous, / that a man putte him al outrelly in the arbi-

aggement, and in the night
 his enemya. / For Salomon
 saith me, and yeveth credence
 to seyn I seye," quod he,
 "and governours of holy
 church, to thy wyf, to thy
 thy brother / ne yeve thou
 the maistrie of thy body, whyl

Now sithen he defendeth,
 nat yeven to his brother ne
 the might of his body, / by
 he defendeth and for-
 to yeven him self to his
 and natheles I counseile you,
 truste nat my lord. / For
 he knowe verraily, that he is
 make, large, carterys. / and
 he is no covetous of good ne
 for ther nis no-thing in this
 desyreth save only worship

Forther more I knowe
 right seur, that he shal
 in this nede with-outen
 And I shal so werken in
 that, by grace of our lord
 be reconciled un-to us." /

the seyden they with o vois,
 lady, we putten us and our
 by in your wil and disposi-
 been redy to comen, what
 like un-to your noblesse to
 adigne us, / for to maken our
 and bond as strong as it
 your goodnesse, / that we
 the wille of yow and of my

And dame Prudence hadde herd
 of these men, she had
 sayn prively. / and she re-
 hir lord Melibee, and tolde
 to forl his adversaries ful
 knowlechange ful lowely hir
 traspas, and how they were
 ben al payne / requirunge
 him of mercy and pitee /

the seyde Melibee. "he is wel
 to pardon and foryifnesse
 that excuseth nat his sinne, /
 seith it and repenteth him,
 pence. / For Saneke seith
 remission and foryifnesse,

whereas confessoun is", / for confessoun 2965
 is neighebre to innocence. / And he
 seith in another place: "he that hath
 shame for his sinne and knowlecheth it,
 is worthy remission" And therefore I
 assente and conferme me to have pees; /
 but it is good that we do it nat with-outen
 the assent and wil of our freendes." /

§ 69. Thanne was Prudence right glad
 and joyeful, and seyde, / "Certes, sir,"
 quod she, "ye han wel and goodly an-
 swered. / For right as by the conseil, 2970
 assent, and help of your freendes ye han
 been stired to veigs yow and maken
 werre, / right so with-outen hir conseil
 shul ye nat accorden yow, ne have pees
 with your adversaries. / For the lawe
 seith "ther nis no-thing so good by wey
 of kinde, as a thing to been unbounde by
 him that it was y-bounde." /

§ 70. And thanne dame Prudence,
 with-outen delay or taryinge, sente anon
 hir messages for hir kin, and for hir olde
 freendes whiche that were trewe and
 wyse, / and tolde hem by ordre, in the
 presence of Melibee, al this matere as it
 is aboven expressed and declared. and 2975
 preyden hem that they wolde yeven hir
 avys and conseil, what best were to doon
 in this nede. And whan Melibee
 freendes hadde taken hir avys and de-
 liberacioun of the forsame matere, / and
 hadden examined it by greet busynesse
 and greet diligence they gave ful conseil
 for to have pees and rest. and that
 Melibee shoulde receyve with good herte
 his adversaries to foryifnesse and mercy. / 2980

§ 71. And whan dame Prudence hadde
 herd the assent of hir lord Melibee, and
 the conseil of his freendes, / accorde
 with hir wille and hir entencion. who
 was wonderly glad in hir herte, and
 seyde / "ther is an old proverbe" quod
 she, seith: that "the goodnesse that
 thou mayst do this day, do it. and
 abide nat no delaye it nat til to-morwe." / 2985
 And therefore I counseile that ye sende
 your messages, swiche as been discrete
 and wyse, / un-to your adversaries, tel-
 linge hem, on your behalf, / that if they
 wole trete of pees and of accord, / that

they shapen hem, with-outen delay or tarying, to comen un-to us.' / Which thing perfourmed was in dede. / And whanne this trespassours and repentinge folk of hir folles, that is to seyn, the adversaries of Melibee, / hadden herd what this messagers seyden un-to hem, / they weren right glad and joyful, and answereden ful mekely and benignely, / yeldinge graces and thankinges to hir lord Melibee and to al his compaignye; / and shopen hem, with-outen delay, to go with the messagers, and obeye to the comendement of hir lord Melibee. /

§ 72. And right anon they token hir way to the court of Melibee, / and token with hem summe of hir trowe freendes, to maken feith for hem and for to been hir borwes. / And whan they were comen to the presence of Melibee, he seyde hem this wordes: / 'It standeth thus,' quod Melibee, 'and sooth it is, that ye, / causeless, and with-outen skille and reason, / han doon grete injuries and wronges to me and to my wyf Prudence, and to my doghter also. / For ye han entred in-to myn hous by violence, / and have doon swich outrage, that alle men knowen wel that ye have deserved the deeth; / and therefore wol I knowe and wite of yow, / whether ye wol putte the punisshement and the chastysinge and the vengeance of this outrage in the wil of me and of my wyf Prudence; or ye wol nat?'

§ 73. Thanne the wyseste of hem three answerde for hem alle, and seyde: / 'sire,' quod he, 'we knowen wel, that we been unworthy to comen un-to the court of so greet a lord and so worthy as ye been. / For we han so greetly mistaken us, and han offended and agilt in swich a wyse agayn your heigh lordshipe, / that trowely we han deserved the deeth. / But yet, for the grete goodnesse and debonairetee that all the world witnesseth of your persone, / we submitten us to the excellence and benignitee of your gracious lordshipe, / and been redy to obeie to alle your comandements; / besekinge yow, that of your merciable pitee ye wol con-

sider our grete repentance and low submissioun, / and granten us forgiveness of our outrageous trespass and offence. / For wel we knowe, that your liberal grace and mercy stretchen hem further in-to goodnesse, than doon our outrageous gilttes and trespass in-to wickednesse; / al-be-it that cruelly and dampnably we han agilt agayn your heigh lordshipe.' /

§ 74. Thanne Melibee took hem up fro the ground ful benignely, / and receyved hir obligaciouns and hir bondes by hir othes up-on hir plagges and borwes, / and assigned hem a certayn day to retourne un-to his court, / for to accepte and receyve the sentence and jugement that Melibee wolde comande to be don on hem by the causes afore-seyd; / whiche þing ordeyned, every man returned to his hous. /

§ 75. And whan that dame Prudence sawgh hir tyme, she freyned and asked hir lord Melibee, / what vengeance he thoughte to taken of his adversaries? /

§ 76. To which Melibee answerde and seyde, 'certes,' quod he, 'I think and purpose me fully / to desherite hem of al that ever they han, and for to putte hem in exil for ever.' /

§ 77. 'Certes,' quod dame Prudence, 'this were a cruel sentence, and muchel agayn reason. / For ye been riche ynough, and han no nede of other mennes good; / and ye mighte lightly in this wyse gete yow a covetous name, / which is a vicious thing, and oghte been eschewed of every good man. / For after the sawe of the word of the apostle: "covetise is rote of alle harmes." / And therefore, it were bettre for yow to lese so muchel good of your owne, than for to taken of hir good in this manere. / For bettre it is to leen good with worshippe, than it is to winne good with vileinye and shams. / And every man oghte to doon his diligence and his bisynesse to geten him a good name. / And yet shal he nat only hysle him in kepinge of his good name, / but he shal also enforcen him alwey to do som-thing by which he

may renouvelle his good name; / for it is
 writen, that "the olde good loos or good
 name of a man is sone goon and passed,
 whan it is nat newed ne renovelled." /
 And as touchinge that ye seyn, ye wole
 exile your adversaries, / that thinketh
 me muchel agayn resoun and out of
 mesure, / considered the power that they
 han yeve yow up-on hem-self. / And it
 is writen, that "he is worthy to lesen his
 privilege that misuseth the might and
 the power that is yeven him." / And I
 sette cas ye mighte enjoyne hem that
 peyne by right and by lawe, / which I
 trowe ye mowe nat do, / I seye, ye mighte
 nat putten it to execucioun per-aven-
 ture, / and thanne were it lykly to re-
 tourne to the werro as it was biforn. /
 And therefore, if ye wole that men do yow
 obeisance, ye moste demen more cur-
 teisly; / this is to seyn, ye moste yeven
 more esy sentences and jugements. /
 For it is writen, that "he that most
 curteisly comandeth, to him men most
 obeyen." / And therefore, I prey yow
 that in this necessitee and in this nede,
 ye caste yow to overcome your herte. /
 For Senek seith: that "he that over-
 cometh his herte, overcometh twyes." /
 And Tullius seith: "ther is no-thing
 so comendable in a greet lord / as whan
 he is debonaire and meke, and appeseth
 him lightly." / And I prey yow that ye
 wole forbere now to do vengeance, / in
 swich a manere, that your goode name
 may be kept and conserved; / and that
 men mowe have cause and matere to
 preysse yow of pitee and of mercy; / and
 that ye have no cause to repente yow of
 thing that ye doon. / For Senek seith:
 "he overcometh in an yvel manere, that
 repenteth him of his victorie." / Where-
 fore I pray yow, lat mercy been in your
 minde and in your herte, / to th'effect

and entente that god almighty have
 mercy on yow in his laste jugement. /
 For seint Jame seith in his epistle:
 "jugement withouten mercy shal be
 doon to him, that hath no mercy of
 another wight." /

§ 78. Whanne Melibee hadde herd the
 grete skiles and resouns of dame Pru-
 dence, and hir wise informaciouns and
 techinges, / his herte gan enclyne to the wil
 of his wyf, consideringe hir trewe
 entente; / and conformed him anon,
 and assented fully to werken after hir
 conseil; / and thonked god, of whom
 procedeth al vertu and alle goodnesse,
 that him sente a wyf of so greet discre-
 cioun. / And whan the day cam that
 hise adversaries sholde apperen in his
 presence, / he spak unto hem ful goodly,
 and seyde in this wyse: / 'al-be-it so that
 of your pryde and presumpcioun and
 folie, and of your negligence and un-
 conninge, / ye have misborn yow and
 trespassed un-to me; / yet, for as much
 as I see and biholdo your grete humilitee,
 and that ye been sory and repentant of
 your giltes, / it constreyneth me to doon
 yow grace and mercy. / Therefore I re-
 ceyve yow to my grace, / and foryeve
 yow outrely allo the offences, injuries,
 and wronges, that ye have doon agayn
 me and myne; / to this effect and to this
 ende, that god of his endelees mercy /
 wole at the tyme of our dyinge foryeven
 us our giltes that we han trespassed to
 him in this wretched world. / For doute-
 lees, if we be sory and repentant of the
 sinnes and giltes whiche we han tres-
 passed in the sighte of our lord god, / he
 is so free and so merciabile, / that he
 wole foryeven us our giltes, / and bringen
 us to his blisse that never hath ende.
 Amen.' /

Here is ended Chaucers Tale of Melibee and of Dame Prudence.

THE MONK'S PROLOGUE.

[T. 13895-13956.]

The mery wordes of the Host to the Monk.

Was ended was my tale of Melibee,
And of Prudence and hir benignitee, 3080
Our hoste seyde, 'as I am faithful man,
And by the precious corpus *Nadrian*,
I hadde lever than a barel ale
That goode lief my wyf hadde herd this
tale!

For she nis no-thing of swich pacience
As was this Melibee's wyf Prudence. 3086
By goddes bones! whan I bete my knaves,
She bringth me forth the grete clobbered
staves, (10)

And cryeth, "alee the dogges evericheon,
And brek hem, bothe bak and every boon."
And if that any neighebor of myne 3091
Wol nat in chirche to my wyf enclyne,
Or be so hardy to hir to trespase,
Whan she comth hoom, she rampeth in
my face, 3094

And cryeth, "false coward, wreck thy wyf!
By corpus bones! I wol have thy knyf,
And thou shalt have my distaf and go
spinne!"

Fro day to night right thus she wol bi-
ginne;— (20)

"Allas!" she seith, "that ever I was shape
To wedde a milksop or a coward ape, 3100
That wol be overlad with every wight!
Thou darst nat stonden by thy wyves
right!"

This is my lyf, but-if that I wol fighte;
And out at dore anon I moot me dighte,
Or elles I am but lost, but-if that I 3105
Be lyk a wilde leoun fool-hardy.

I woot wel she wol do me alee som day
Som neighebor, and thanne go my way. (30)

For I am perillous with knyf in hande,
Al be it that I dar nat hir withstande, 3110
For she is big in armes, by my feith,
That shal he finde, that hir misdooth or
seith.

But lat us passe away fro this matere.

My lord the Monk,' quod he, 'be mery
of chere;

For ye shul telle a tale trewely. 3115

Lo! Rouchestre stant heer faste by!

Ryd forth, myn owene lord, brek nat our
game, (30)

But, by my trouthe, I knowe nat your name,
Wher shal I calle yow my lord dan John,
Or dan Thomas, or elles dan Albon? 3120
Of what hous be ye, by your fader kin?

I vow to god, thou hast a ful fair skin,
It is a gentil pasture ther thou goost;
Thou art nat lyk a penaunt or a goost.

Upon my feith, thou art som officer, 3125

Some worthy serteyn, or som celarer,

For by my fader soule, as to my doom,

Thou art a maister whan thou art at hoom;

No povre cloisterer, ne no novys, (51)

But a governour, wyly and wys. 3130

And therewithal of brawnes and of bones

A wel-faring persone for the nones;

I pray to god, yeve him confusioun

That first thee broghte un-to religioun;

Thou woldest han been a trede-soularight,

Haddestow as greet a leve, as thou hast

might 3136

To parfourne al thy lust in engendrure,

Thou haddest bigeten many a creature.

Alas! why werestow so wyd a cope? (61)

God yeve me sorwe! but, and I were a pope,

Not only thou, but every mighty man, 3141
 Though he were shorn ful hye upon his pan,
 Sholde have a wyf; for al the world is lorn!
 Religioun hath take up al the corn 3144
 Oft treading, and we borel men ben shrimper!
 Of feble trees ther comen wretched impes.
 This maketh that our heires been so
 selendre (69)
 And feble, that they may nat wel engendre.
 This maketh that our wyves wol assaye
 Religious folk, for ye may better paye 3150
 Of Venus payements than mowe we;
 God woot, no lussheburches payen ye!
 But be nat wrooth, my lord, for that I
 pleye;

Ful ofte in game a sooth I have herd seye.
 This worthy monk took al in paciance,
 And seyde, 'I wol doon al my diligence,
 As far as souneth in-to honestee, 3157
 To telle yow a tale, or two, or thre. (80)
 And if yow list to herkne hideward,
 I wol yow seyn the lyf of saint Edward;

Or elles first Tragedies wol I telle 3161
 Of whiche I have an hundred in my cello.
 Tragedie is to seyn a certeyn storie,
 As olde bokes maken us memorie,
 Of him that stood in greet prosperitee 3163
 And is y-fallen out of heigh degree
 Into miserie, and endeth wretchedly.
 And they ben versified comunly (90)
 Of six feet, which men clepe exometron.
 In prose eek been andyted many oon, 3170
 And eek in metre, in many a sondry wyse.
 Lo! this declaring oughte y-nough suffice.

Now harkneth, if yow lyketh for to here;
 But first I yow biseke in this matere, 3174
 Though I by ordre telle nat thise thinges,
 Be it of popes, emperours, or kinges,
 After hir ages, as men writen finde, (99)
 But telle hem som bifore and som bihinde,
 As it now comth un-to my remembrance;
 Have me excused of myn ignorance.' 3180

Explicit.

THE MONKES TALE.

Here bigineth the Monkes Tale, de Casibus Virorum Illustrium.

I wol biwayle in maner of Tragedie
 The harm of hem that stode in heigh de-
 gree,
 And fillen so that ther nas no remedie
 To bringe hem out of hir adversitee; 3184
 For certein, whan that fortune list to flee,
 Ther may no man the cours of hir with-
 holde;
 Let no man truste on blind prosperitee;
 Be war by thise ensamples trewe and olde.

LUCIFER.

As Lucifer, though he an angel were,
 And nat a man, at him I wol biginne; 3190
 For, though fortune may non angel dere, (11)

From heigh degree yet fel he for his sinne
 Down in-to helle, wher he yet is inne.
 O Lucifer! brightest of angels alle,
 Now artow Sathanas, that maist nat
 twinne 3195
 Out of miserie, in which that thou art falle.

ADAM.

Lo Adam, in the feld of Damassene,
 With goddes owene finger wrought was he,
 And nat bigeten of mannes sperme un-
 clene,
 And welte al Paradys, saving o tree, 3200
 Had never worldly man so heigh degree
 As Adam, til he for misgovernance (12)

Was drive out of his hye prosperitee
To labour, and to helle, and to meschaunce.

SAMPSON.

Lo Sampson, which that was annunciat
By th'angel, longe er his nativitee, 3206
And was to god almighty consecrat,
And stood in noblesse, whyl he mighte see.
Was never swich another as was he,
To speke of strengthe, and therwith hardi-
nesse; 3210

But to his wyves tolde he his secree, (31)
Through which he slow him-self, for
wrecchednesse.

Sampson, this noble almighty champion,
Withouten wepen save his hondes twaye,
He slow and al to-rente the leoun, 3215
Toward his wedding walking by the weye.
His false wyf coude him so plesse and
preye

Til she his conseil knew, and she untrew
Un-to his foe his conseil gan hiwrewe, 3219
And him forsook, and took another newe.

Three hundred foxes took Sampson for ire,
And alle hir tayles he togider bond, (42)
And sette the foxes tayles alle on fire,
For he on every tayl had knit a bond;
And they brende alle the cornes in that
lond, 3225
And alle hir oliveres and vynes eek.
A thousand men he slow eek with his hond,
And had no wepen but an asses cheek.

Whan they were slayn, so thurated him
that he 3229

Was wel ny lorn, for which he gan to preye
That god wolde on his payne han som
pitee, (51)

And sende him drinke, or elles moote he
deye;

And of this asses chake, that was drewe,
Out of a wang-tooth sprang anon a welle,
Of which he drank y-nogh, shortly to seye,
Thus heelp him god, as *Judicum* can telle.

By verray force, at Gasan, on a night, 3237
Maugree Philistiens of that citee,
The gates of the toun he hath up-plight,
And on his bak y-caried hem hath he 3240

Hye on an hille, that men mighte him
see. (61)

O noble almighty Sampson, leef and dere,
Had thou nat told to wommen thy secree,
In al this worlde no hadde been thy pere!

This Sampson never sheer drank no wyn,
Ne on his heed cam rasour noon ne shere,
By precept of the messenger divyn, 3247
For alle his strengthes in his heres were;
And fully twenty winter, yeer by yeer,
He hadde of Israel the governaunce. 3250
But none shal he wepen many a tere, (71)
For wommen shal him bringen to mes-
chaunce!

Un-to his lemman Dalida he tolde
That in his heres al his strengthe lay,
And falsly to his fo-men she him solde.
And sleping in hir barne up-on a day 3256
She made to clippe or shere his heer away,
And made his fo-men al his craft espyen;
And whan that they him fonde in this
array,

They bounde him faste, and patten out his
yēn. 3260

But er his heer were clipped or y-shave, (81)
Ther was no bond with which men might
him binde;

But now is he in prison in a cave,
Wher-as they made him at the quene
grinde. 3264

O noble Sampson, strongest of mankinde,
O whylom juge in glorie and in richesse,
Now maystow wepen with thyn yēn blinde,
Sith thou fro wale art falle in wrecched-
nesse.

Th'ende of this caytif was as I shal seye;
His fo-men made a feste upon a day, 3270
And made him as hir fool bifore hem pleye,
And this was in a temple of greet array. (92)
But atte last he made a foul affray;
For he two pilers shook, and made hem
falle, 3274
And down fil temple and al, and ther it lay,
And slow him-self, and eek his fo-men alle.

This is to seyn, the princes everichoon,
And eek three thousand bodies wer ther
slayn (98)

With falling of the grete temple of stoon.
 Of Sampson now wol I na-more seyn. 3280
 Beth war by this ensample old and playn
 That no men telle hir conseil til hir wyves
 Of swich thing as they wolde han secreo
 fayn,
 If that it touche hir limmes or hir lyves.

HERCULES.

(Of Hercules the sovereyn conquerour 3285
 Singen his workes laude and heigh renoun;
 For in his tyme of strengthe he was the
 flour.

He slow, and rafte the skin of the leoun;
 He of Centauros leyde the boost adoun;
 He Arpies slow, the cruel briddes felle; 3290
 He golden apples rafte of the dragoun; (111)
 He drow out Cerberus, the hound of helle:

He slow the cruel tyrant Busirus,
 And made his hors to frete him, flesh and
 boon;

He slow the firy serpent venimous; 3295
 Of Achelois two hornes, he brak oon;
 And he slow Cacus in a cave of stoon;
 He slow the geaunt Antheus the stronge;
 He slow the grisly boor, and that anoon,
 And bar the heven on his nekke longe. 3300

Was never wight, sith that the world
 bigan, (121)

That slow so many monstres as dide he.
 Thurgh-out this wyde world his name ran,
 What for his strengthe, and for his heigh
 bountee, 3304

And every reasume wente he for to see.
 He was so strong that no man mighte him
 lette;

At bothe the worldes endes, seith Trophée,
 In stede of boundes, he a piler sette.

A lemman hadde this noble champion,
 That highte Dianira, fresh as May; 3310
 And, as this clerk maken mencion, (131)
 She hath him sent a sherte fresh and gay.
 Allas! this sherte, allas and weylaway!
 Envenimed was so subtilly with-alle, 3314
 That, er that he had wered it half a day,
 It made his flesh al from his bones falle.

But natheles somme clerkes hir excusen
 By oon that highte Nessus, that it maked;

Be as he may, I wol hir noght accusen;
 But on his bak this sherte he wered al
 naked, 3320

Til that his flesh was for the venim blaked.
 And whan he sey noon other remedye, (142)
 In hote coles he hath him-selven raked,
 For with no venim deynd him to dye.

Thus starf this worthy mighty Hercules;
 Lo, who may truste on fortune any
 throwe? 3326

For him that solweth al this world of prees,
 Er he be war, is ofte y-leyd ful lowe.

Ful wys is he that can him-selven knowe.
 Beth war, for whan that fortune list to
 glose, 3330

Than wayteth she hir man to overthrowe
 By swich a way as he wolde leest sup-
 pose. (152)

NABUGODONOSOR (NEBUCHADNEZZAR).

The mighty trone, the precious tresor,
 The glorious ceptre and royal magestee
 That hadde the king Nabugodonosor, 3335
 With tonge unnethe may discryved be.
 He twyfe wan Jerusalem the citee;
 The vessel of the temple he with him ladde.
 At Babiloyne was his sovereyn see, 3339
 In which his glorie and his delyt he hadde.

The fairest children of the blood royal (161)
 Of Israel he leet do gelde anoon,
 And maked ech of hem to been his thral.
 Amonges othere Daniel was oon, 3344
 That was the wysest child of everichoon;
 For he the dremes of the king expounded,
 Wher-as in Chaldecy clerk ne was ther noon
 That wiste to what fyn his dremes souned.

This proude king leet make a statue of
 golde, 3349

Sixty cubytes long, and seven in brede,
 To which image bothe yonge and olde (171)
 Comaunded he to loute, and have in drede;
 Or in a fourneys ful of flambes rede
 He shal be brent, that wolde noght obeye.
 But never wolde assente to that dede 3355
 Daniel, ne his yonge felawes tweye.

This king of kinges proud was and elaat,
 He wende that god, that sit in magestee,

Ne mighte him nat bireve of his estate ;
 But sodeynly he loste his dignitee, 3360
 And lyk a beste him samed for to be, (181)
 And eet hay as an oxe, and lay ther-oute ;
 In reyn with wilde bestes walked he,
 Til certain tyme was y-come aboute.

And lyk an egles fetheres were his heres,
 His nayles lyk a briddes clawes were ; 3366
 Til god released him a certain yeres,
 And gaf him wit ; and than with many a
 tere

He thanked god, and ever his lyf in fere
 Was he to doon amis, or more trespase, 3370
 And, til that tyme he leyd was on his
 bere,
 He knew that god was ful of might and
 grace. (192)

BALTHASAR (BELSHAZZAR).

His sone, which that highte Balthasar,
 That heeld the regne after his fader day,
 He by his fader coude nought be war, 3375
 For proud he was of herte and of array ;
 And eek an ydolastre was he ay.
 His hye estate assured him in pryde.
 But fortune caste him down, and ther he
 lay,
 And sodeynly his regne gan divyde. 3380

A feste he made un-to his lordes alle (201)
 Up-on a tyme, and bad hem blythe be,
 And than his officeres gan he calle—
 'Goth, bringeth forth the vessels,' [tho]
 quod he, 3384
 'Which that my fader, in his prosperitee,
 Out of the temple of Jerusalem brafte,
 And to our hye goddes thanke we
 Of honour, that our eldres with us lafte.'

His wyf, his lordes, and his concubynes
 Ay drunken, whyl hir appetytes laste, 3390
 Out of thise noble vessels sundry wynes,
 And on a wal this king his yēn caste, (212)
 And sey an hond armlees, that wroot ful
 faste,
 For fere of which he quook and syked
 sore. 3394
 This hond, that Balthasar so sore agaste,
 Wroot *Mene, techel, phares*, and na-more.

In al that lond magician was noon
 That coude expounse what this letre
 mente ;

But Daniel expounned it anon, 3399
 And seyde, 'king, god to thy fader lente
 Glorie and honour, regne, tresour, rente
 And he was proud, and no-thing god ne
 dradde, (222)
 And therfor god gret wreche up-on him
 sente,
 And him brafte the regne that he hadde.

He was out cast of mannes companye,
 With asses was his habitacioun, 3406
 And eet hey as a beste in weet and drye,
 Til that he knew, by grace and by reason,
 That god of heven hath dominacioun
 Over every regne and every creature ; 3410
 And thanne had god of him compassioun,
 And him restored his regne and his
 figure. (232)

Eek thou, that art his sone, art proud also,
 And knowest alle thise thinges verraily,
 And art rebel to god, and art his fo. 3415
 Thou drank eek of his vessels boldely.
 Thy wyf eek and thy wenches sinfully
 Dronke of the same vessels sondry wynes,
 And heriest false goddes cursedly ; 3419
 Therfor to thee y-shapen ful gret pyne is

This hand was sent from god, that on the
 walle (241)
 Wroot *mene, techel, phares*, trusts me,
 Thy regne is doon, thou weyest night at
 alle ;
 Divyded is thy regne, and it shal be 3424
 To Medes and to Perses yeven,' quod he.
 And thilke same night this king was
 slawe,

And Darius occupyeth his degree,
 Thogh he therto had neither right ne
 lawe.

Lordinges, ensample heer-by may ye take
 How that in lordshipe is no siker-
 nesse ; 3430
 For whan fortune wol a man forsake, (251)
 She bereth away his regne and his riches,
 And eek his freendes, bothe more and
 lesse ;

or what man that hath freendes thurgh
fortune, 3434
ishap wol make hem enemye, I gesse :
his proverbe is ful sooth and ful com-
mune.

CENOBIA (ZENOBIA).

enobia, of Palimerie quene,
a writen Persiens of hir noblesse,
o worthy was in armes and so kene, 3439
hat no wight passed hir in hardinesse,
e in linage, ne in other gentillesse. (261)
of kinges blode of Perse is she descended ;
seye nat that she hadde most fairnesse,
but of hir shape she mighte nat been
amended. 3444

'rom hir childhede I finde that she fledde
Office of women, and to wode she wente ;
and many a wilde hertes blood she shedde
With arrowes brode that she to hem sente.
She was so swift that she anon hem hente,
and whan that she was elder, she wolde
kille 3450
leouns, leopardes, and bores al to-rente, (271)
and in hir armes welde hem at hir wille.

She dorste wilde beestes dennes seke,
And rennen in the montaignes al the
night,
And slepen under a bush, and she coude
eke 3455
Wrastlen by verray force and verray might
With any yong man, were he never so
wight ;
Ther mighte no-thing in hir armes stonde.
She kepte hir maydenhod from every
wight,
To no man deigned hir for to be bonde. 3460

But atte laste hir frendes han hir married
To Odenake, a prince of that contree, (282)
Al were it so that she hem longe taried ;
And ye shul understonde how that he
Hadde swiche fantasyes as hadde she. 3465
But natheles, whan they were knit in-
fere,

They lived in joye and in felicitye ;
For ech of hem hadde other leef and dere.

Save o thing, that she never wolde assente
By no way, that he sholde by hir lye 3470

But ones, for it was hir playn entente (291)
To have a child, the world to multiplie ;
And al-so sone as that she mighte espye
That she was nat with childe with that
dede,
Than wolde she suffre him deon his fan-
tasye 3475
Eft-sone, and nat but ones, out of drede.

And if she were with childe at thilke cast,
Na-more sholde he playen thilke game
Til fully fourty dayes weren past ;
Than wolde she ones suffre him do the
sama. 3480
Al were this Odenake wilde or tame, (301)
He gat na-more of hir, for thus she seyde,
' It was to wyves lecherye and shame
In other cas, if that men with hem
pleyde.' 3484

Two sones by this Odenake hadde she,
The whiche she kepte in vertu and let-
ture ;
But now un-to our tale turne we.
I seye, so worshipful a creature,
And wys therwith, and large with mesure,
So penible in the werre, and curteis
eke, 3490
Ne more labour mighte in werre endure,
Was noon, thogh al this world men sholde
seke. (312)

Hir riche array ne mighte nat be told
As wel in vessel as in hir clothing ;
She was al clad in perree and in gold, 3495
And eek she lafte noght, for noon hunting,
To have of sondry tonges ful knowing,
Whan that she leysur hadde, and for to
entende
To larnen bokes was al hir lyking, 3499
How she in vertu mighte hir lyf dispende.

And, shortly of this storie for to trete, (321)
So doughty was hir housbonde and eek
she,
That they conquered many regnes grete
In th'orient, with many a fair otee,
Apertenaunt un-to the magestes 3505
Of Rome, and with strong hond halde
hem ful faste ;
Ne never mighte hir fo-men deon hem flec,
Ay whyl that Odenakes dayes laste.

Hir batailes, who-so list hem for to rede,
Agayn Sapor the king and othere mo, 3510
And how that al this proces fil in dede, (351)
Why she conquered and what title had
therto,

And after of hir meechief and hir wo,
How that she was biseged and y-take,
Let him un-to my maister Petrark go, 3515
That writ y-nough of this, I undertake.

When Odenake was deed, she mightily
The regnes heeld, and with hir propre
honde

Agayn hir foes she faught so cruelly,
That ther nas king ne prince in al that
londn (340) 3520

That he nas glad, if that he grace fonde,
That she ne wolde up-on his lond warreye,
With hir they made alliance by bonde
To been in pees, and lete hir ryde and
pleye.

The emperour of Rome, Claudius, 3525
Ne him bifore, the Romayn Galien,
Ne dorste never been so courageous,
Ne noon Ermyrn, ne noon Egipcien,
Ne Surrien, ne noon Arabien,
Within the feld that dorste with hir fighte
Lost that she wolde hem with hir hondes
elen (351) 3531
Or with hir meynee patten hem to flighte.

In kinges habit wente hir sones two,
As heires of hir fadres regnes alle,
And Hermanno, and Thymalaß 3535
Her names were, as Persians hem calle.
But ay fortune bath in hir hony galle;
This mighty quene may no whyl endure.
Fortune out of hir regne made hir falle
To wrecchednesse and to misaventure. 3540

Aurelian, whan that the governaunce (361)
Of Rome cam in-to his hondes tweye,
He shoop up-on this quene to do van-
geaunce,

And with his legiouns he took his weye
Toward Cenobie, and, shortly for to seye,
He made hir flee, and atte laste hir
hente, 3545

And fettered hir, and eek hir children
tweye,

And wan the lond, and hom to Rome he
wente.

Amonges othere thinges that he wan,
Hir char. that was with gold wrought and
perree, (370) 3550

This grete Romsyn, this Aurelian,
Hath with him lad, for that men sholde
it see.

Biforen his triumphe walketh she
With gilte cheynes on hir nakke hanging:
Corouned was she, as after hir degree, 3555
And ful of perree charged hir clothing.

Allas, fortune! she that whylom was
Dredful to kinges and to emperoures,
Now gaureth al the peple on hir, alas!
And she that helmed was in starke
stoures, (380) 3561

And wan by force tounes stronge and
tours,
Shal on hir heed now were a vitromyte.
And she that bar the ceptre ful of
floures

Shal here a distaf, hir coat for to quyte.
(T. 14380)

(Nemo follows in T.; see p. 537.)

DE PETRO REGE IERUSAL.

O noble, o worthy Petro, glorie of
Spayne, (T. 14685)
Whom fortune heeld so hy in mageste,
Wel oughten men thy pitous deeth com-
playne! 3567

Out of thy lond thy brother made thee flee;
And after, at a sage, by subtiltee,
Thou were betrayed, and lad un-to his
fente, (395) 3571

Wher-as he with his owene hond slow thee,
Succeeding in thy regne and in thy rente.

The feeld of snow, with th'egle of blak
ther-inne, (T. 14693)

Caught with the lymrod, coloured as the
glele, 3574

He brew this cursednes and al this synne.
The 'wikked nest' was warker of this nede;
Noght Charles Oliver, that ay took hede
Of trouthe and honour, but of Armorie
Gentil Oliver, corrupt for made, 3579
Broughte this worthy king in swich a brike.

DE PETRO REGE DE CIPRO.

O worthy Petro, king of Cypre, also, (401)
That Alessandro wan by heigh maistrye,

Ful many a hethen wroghtestow ful wo,
Of which thyn owene liges hadde envye,
And, for no thing but for thy chivalrye,
They in thy bedde han slayn thee by the
morwe. 3586
Thus can fortune hir wheel governe and
gyve, [T. 14707.
And out of joye bringe men to sorwe.

DE BARNABO DE LUMBARDIA.

Of Melan grete Barnabo Viscounte, 3589
God of dalyt, and scourge of Lombardy,
Why sholde I nat thyn infortune accounte,
Sith in estat thou comest were so hye?
Thy brother sone, that was thy double
allye, (413)
For he thy nevew was, and sone-in-lawe,
With-inne his prisoun made thee to dye;
But why, ne how, noot I that thou were
slawe. 3596

DE HUGELYN, COMITE DE PYSE.

Of the erl Hugelyn of Pyse the langour
Ther may no tonge telle for pites;
But litel out of Pyse stant a tour,
In whiche tour in prisoun put was he, 3600
And with him been his litel children
thre. (421)
The eldeste scarcely fyf year was of age.
Allas, fortune! it was greet crueltee
Swiche brides for to putte in swiche a
cage! 3604

Dampned was he to deye in that prisoun,
For Roger, which that bisshop was of Pyse,
Hadde on him maad a fals suggestioun,
Thurgh which the peple gan upon him
ryse, (428)
And putten him to prisoun in swich wyse
As ye han herd, and mete and drink he
hadde 3610
So smal, that wel unnethe it may suffyse,
And therwith-al it was ful povre and
hadde.

And on a day bifl that, in that hour,
Whan that his mete went was to be brought,
The gayler shette the dores of the tour.
He herde it wel,—but he spak right noght,
And in his herte anon ther fil a thought,
That they for hunger wolde doon him dyen.

'Allas!' quod he, 'allas! that I was
wroght!' (439) 3619
Therwith the teres fillen from his yen.

His yonge sone, that thre year was of age,
Un-to him seyde, 'fader, why do ye wepe?
Whan wol the gayler bringen our potage,
Is ther no morsel breed that ye do kepe?
I am so hungry that I may nat slepe. 3625
Now wolde god that I mighte slepen ever!
Than sholde nat hunger in my wombe
crepe;
Ther is no thing, save breed, that me
were lever.'

Thus day by day this child bigan to crye,
Til in his fadres barne adoun it lay, 3630
And seyde, 'far-wel, fader, I moot dye,'
And kiste his fader, and deyde the same
day. (452)

And whan the woful fader deed it sey,
For wo his armes two he gan to byte,
And seyde, 'allas, fortune! and weylaway!
Thy false wheel my wo al may I wyte!'

His children wende that it for hunger was
That he his armes gnaw, and nat for wo,
And seyde, 'fader, do nat so, alas!
But rather eet the flesh upon us two; 3640
Our flesh thou yaf us, tak our flesh us fro
And eet y-nough:' right thus they to him
seyde, (462)
And after that, with-in a day or two,
They leyde hem in his lappe adoun, and
deyde. 3644

Him-self, despeired, eek for hunger starf;
Thus ended is this mighty Erl of Pyse;
From heigh estat fortune away him carf.
Of this Tragedie it oghte y-nough suffyse.
Who-so wol here it in a lenger wyse, (469)
Redeth the grete poete of Itaille, 3650
That highte Dant, for he can al devyse
Fro point to point, nat o word wol he faille.
[T. 14772.

(For T. 14773, see p. 542; for T. 14380,
see p. 536).

Nexo.

[T. 14381.

Al-though that Nero were as vicious
As any feend that lyth ful lowe adoun,

Yet he, as telleth us Swetonius, 3655
This wyde world hadde in subjection,
Both Est and West, þ South and Septen-
trionn;
Of rubies, saphires, and of perles whyte
Were alle his clothes brouded up and down;
For he in gemmes greetly gan delyte. 3660

More delieat, more pompous of array, (481)
More proud was never emperor than he;
That ilke cloth, that he had wored o day,
After that tyme he nolde it never see.
Nettes of gold-thred hadde he gret plentye
To fishe in Tybre, whan him liste playe.
His lustes were al lawe in his decrees,
For fortune as his freend him wolde obeye.

He Rome brende for his delicacye;
The senators he slow up-on a day, 3670
To here how men wolde wepe and crye;
And slow his brother, and by his sister
lay. (499)

His moder made he in pitous array;
For he hir wombe slitte, to biholde
Wher he conceyved was; so weillaway!
That he so litel of his moder tolde! 3676

No tere out of his yēn for that sighte
Ne cam, but seyde, 'a fair womman was
she.'

Gret wonder is, how that he coude or
mighte (499)

Be domesman of hir dede beautee. 3680
The wyn to bringen him comanded he,
And drank anon; non other wo he made.
Whan might is joyned un-to crueltee,
Allas! to depe wol the venim wade! 3684

In youthe a maister hadde this emperor,
To teche him letterure and curteisye,
For of moralitee he was the flour,
As in his tyme, but-if bokes lye;
And whyl this maister hadde of him
maistrye, 3689
He makid him so conning and so souple
That longe tyme it was er tirannye (511)
Or any vyce dorste on him uncouple.

This Seneca, of which that I devyse,
By-cause Nero hadde of him swich drede,
For he fro vyces wolde him ay chastyse
Discreetly as by worde and nat by dede;—

'Sir,' wolde he seyn, 'an emperor moot
nade 3697

Be vertuous, and hate tirannye'—
For which he in a bath made him to blede
On bothe his armes, til he mooste dye.

This Nero hadde eek of acoustumance
In youthe ageyn his maister for to ryse,
Which afterward him thoughte a gret
grevance; (523)

Therfor he made him dregen in this wyse.
But natheles this Seneca the wyse 3705
Chees in a bath to deye in this manere
Rather than han another tormentye;
And thus hath Nero slayn his maister dere.

Now fil it so that fortune list no longer
The hye pryde of Nero to charye; 3710
For though that he were strong, yet was
she stronger; (531)

She thoughte thus, 'by god, I am to aye
To sette a man that is fulfild of vyce
In heigh degree, and emperor him calle.
By god, out of his sete I wol him tryce;
When he leest weneth, sonest shal he
falle.' 3716

The peple roos up-on him on a night
For his defaute, and whan he it espyed,
Out of his dores anon he hath him dight
Alone, and, ther he wende han ben allyed,
He knocked faste, and ay, the more he
cryed, (541) 3721

The faster shette they the dores alle;
The wiste he wel he hadde him-self mis-
gyed,
And wente his wey, no longer dorste he
calle.

The peple cryde and rombled up and down,
That with his eres herde he how they
seyde, 3726

'Wher is this fals tyrant, this Neroun?'
For fere almost out of his wit he breyde,
And to his goddes pitously he prayde
For socour, but it mighte nat bityde. 3730
For drede of this, him thoughte that he
deyde, (551)

And ran in-to a gardin, him to hyde.

And in this gardin fond he charlestwey
That seten by a fyr ful gret and reed,

And to this charles two he gan to preye
To sleen him, and to girden of his heed,
That to his body, whan that he were deed,
Were no despyt y-doon, for his defame.
Him-self he slow, he coude no better reed,
Of which fortune lough, and hadde a
game. 3740

DR OLOFRNEO (HOLOFERNES).

Was never capitayn under a king (561)
That regnes mo putte in subjeccioun,
Ne strengre was in feeld of alle thing,
As in his tyme, ne gretter of renoun, 3744
Ne more pompons in heigh presumpcioun
Than Oloferne, which fortune ay kiste
So likerously, and ladde him up and down
Til that his heed was of, or that he wiste.

Nat only that this world hadde him in
awe

For lesinge of richesse or libertee, 3750
But he made every man revere his lawe.
'Nabagodonosor was god,' seyde he, (572)
'Noon other god sholde adoured be.'
Ageyns his heste no wight dar trespace
Have in Bethulia, a strong citee, 3755
Wher Eliachim a prest was of that place.

But tak kepe of the deeth of Olofern;
Amidde his host he dronke lay a night,
With-inne his tente, large as is a bern,
And yit, for al his pompe and al his
might, 3760

Judith, a woman, as he lay upright,
Sleping, his heed of smoot, and from his
tente (582)

Ful prively she stal from every wight,
And with his heed unto hir toum she
wente.

DR REOR ANTHIOCHUS ILLUSTR.

What nedeth it of King Anthiochus 3765
To telle his hye royal mageste,
His hye pryde, his werkes venomous?
For swich another was ther noon as he.
Rede which that he was in Machabee,
And rede the proude wordes that he seyde,
And why he fil fro heigh prosperitee, (591)
And in an bil how wretchedly he deyde.

Fortune him hadde enhanced so in pryde
That verrailly he wende he mighte attayne
Unto the sterres, upon every syde, 3775
And in balance weyen ech montayne,
And alle the flodes of the see restrayne.
And goddes peple hadde he most in hate,
Hem wolde he sleen in torment and in
payne,

Wening that god ne mighte his pryde
abate. (600) 3780

And for that Nichanor and Thimothee
Of Jewes weren venquished mightily,
Unto the Jewes swich an hate hadde he
That he bad greithe his char ful hastily,
And swoor, and seyde, ful despitously,
Unto Jerusalem he wolde eft-son, 3786
To wreken his ire on it ful cruelly;
But of his purpos he was let ful sone.

God for his manace him so sore smoot
With invisible wounde, ay incurable, 3790
That in his guttes carf it so and boot (611)
That his peynes weren importable.
And certainly, the wreche was resonable,
For many a mannes guttes dide he payne,
But from his purpos cursed and damp-
nable 3795
For al his smert he wolde him nat re-
streynne;

But had anon apparailen his host,
And sodeynly, er he of it was war,
God daunted al his pryde and al his host.
For he so sore fil out of his char, 3800
That it his limes and his skin to-tar, (621)
So that he neither mighte go ne ryde,
But in a chayer men aboute him bar,
Al for-brused, bothe bak and syde. 3804

The wreche of god him smoot so cruelly
That thurgh his body wikked wormes
crepts;

And ther-with-al he stank so horribly,
That noon of al his meynes that him
kepte,

Whether so he wook or elles slepte, 3809
Ne mighte noght for stink of him endure.
In this meschief he wayled and eek wepte,
And knew god lord of every creature.

To al his host and to him-self also (633)
Ful wlatson was the stink of his careyne,

No man ne mighte him here to ne fro
 And in this stink and this horrible
 payne 3816
 He starf ful wretchedly in a monteyne.
 Thus hath this robbour and this homicyde,
 That many a man made to wepe and
 pleyne, 3819
 Swich guerdon as bi-longeth unto pryde.

DR ALEXANDER.

The storie of Alisaundra is so comune,
 That every wight that hath discrecioun
 Hath herd somewhat or al of his fortune.
 This wyde world, as in conclusioun, (644)
 He wan by strengthe, or for his hye
 renoun 3823
 They weren glad for pass un-to him sende.
 The pryde of man and heste he leyde
 adoun,
 Wher-so he cam, un-to the worldes ende.

Comparisoun might never yit be makid
 Bitwixe him and another conquerour;
 For al this world for drede of him hath
 quaked, (651, 3831
 He was of knighthode and of fredom flour,
 Fortune him made the heir of hir honour,
 Save wyn and wommen, no-thing mighte
 sawage
 His hye entente in armes and labour;
 No was he ful of leonyn corage. 3836

What preys were it to him, though I yow
 tolde
 Of Darius, and an hundred thousand mo,
 Of kinges, princes, erles, dukes bolde,
 Whiche he conquered, and broghte hem
 in-to wof 3840
 I seye, as far as man may ryde or go, (661)
 The world was his, what sholde I more
 devyse?
 For though I write or tolde yon evermo
 Of his knighthode, it mighte nat suffyse.

Twelf yeer he regned, as seith Machabee;
 Philippes sone of Macedoyne he was, 3846
 That first was king in Grece the contree.
 O worthy gentil Alisaundra, alas!
 That ever sholde fallen swich a cas! 3849
 Empoisoned of thyn owene folk thou were;

Thy *sys* fortune hath turned into as, (671)
 And yit for thee ne weep she never a tere!

Who shal me yeven teres to compleyne
 The deeth of gentillesse and of fraunchyse,
 That al the world welded in his demeyne.
 And yit him thoughte it mighte nat
 suffyse? 3856
 So ful was his corage of heigh empyre.
 Allas! who shal me helpe to endyte
 False fortune, and poison to despyre,
 The whiche two of al this wo I wyte? 3860

DR JULIAN CEMAK.

By wisdom, manhede, and by great labur
 Fro humble bed to royal magester, (681)
 Up roose he, Julius the conquerour,
 That wan al th'occident by lond and see,
 By strengthe of hond, or elles by tretes,
 And un-to Rome made hem tributarye;
 And sitthe of Rome the emperor was he,
 Til that fortune wax his adversarie.

O mighty Cesar, that in Thessalye
 Ageyn Pompeius, fader thyn in lawe, 3870
 That of th'orient hadde al the chivalrye
 As fer as that the day beginneth dawe,
 Thou thurgh thy knighthode hast hem
 take and alawe, (693)
 Save fewe folk that with Pompeius fledde,
 Thurgh which thou puttost al th'orient
 in awe. 3875
 Thanke fortune, that so wel thee spedde!

But now a litel why! I wol biwaille
 This Pompeius, this noble governour
 Of Rome, which that fleigh at this bataille;
 I seye, oon of his men, a fals traitour, (700)
 His heed of smoot, to winnen him favour
 Of Julius, and him the heed he broghte.
 Allas, Pompey, of th'orient conquerour,
 That fortune unto swich a fyn thee
 broghte!

To Rome ageyn repaireth Julius 3885
 With his triumphe, laureat ful hye,
 But on a tyme Brutus Cassius,
 That ever hadde of his hye oostat envye,
 Ful prively hath maad conspiracye
 Ageins this Julius, in subtil wyse, 3890

And cast the place, in whiche he sholde
dye (711)
With boydekens, as I shal yow devyse.

This Julius to the Capitolie wente
Upon a day, as he was went to goon,
And in the Capitolie anon him hente 3895
This false Brutus, and his othere foon,
And stikede him with boydekens anon
With many a wounde, and thus they lete
him lye;

But never gronte he at no strook but oon,
Or elles at two, but-if his storie lye. 3900

So manly was this Julius at herte (721)
And so wel lovede estaatly honestee,
That, though his deedly woundes sore
smerte,

His mantel over his hippes casteth he,
For no man sholde seen his privitee. 3905
And, as he lay on deyng in a traunce,
And wiste verrailly that deed was he,
Of honestee yit hadde he remembraunce.

Lucan, to thee this storie I recomende,
And to Sweton, and to †Valerie also, 3910
That of this storie wryten word and
ende, (731)

How that to thise grete conquerours two
Fortune was first freend, and sithen fo.
No man ne trusts up-on hir favour longe,
But have hir in awayt for ever-mo. 3915
Witnessse on alle thise conquerours
stronge.

CRESUS.

This riche Cresus, whylom king of Lyde,
Of whiche Cresus Cyrus sore him dradde,
Yit was he caught amiddes al his pryde,
And to be brent men to the fyr him ladde.
But swich a reyn down fro the welkne
shadde (741) 3921

That slow the fyr, and made him to escape;
But to be war no grace yet he hadde,
Til fortune on the galwes made him gape.

When he escaped was, he can nat stente
For to biginne a newe werre agayn. 3926

He wende wel, for that fortune him sente
Swich hap, that he escaped thurgh the
reyn, (748)

That of his foes he mighte nat be alayn;
And eek a sweven up-on a night he mette,
Of which he was so proud and eek so fayn,
That in vengeance he al his herte sette.

Up-on a tree he was, as that him thoughte,
Ther Juppiter him wesch, bothe bak and
ayde, (754)

And Phebus eek a fair towaille him
broughte 3935

To drye him with, and ther-for wex his
pryde;

And to his doghter, that stood him bisyde,
Which that he knew in helgh science
habounde,

He bad hir telle him what it signifyde,
And she his dream bigan right thus ex-
pounde. 3940

'The tree,' quod she, 'the galwes is to
mene, (761)

And Juppiter bitokneth snow and reyn,
And Phebus, with his towaille so olene,
The ben the sonne streames for to seyn,
Thou shalt enhanged be, fader, certeyn.
Reyn shal thee wasche, and sonne shal
thee drye;' 3946

Thus warned she him ful plat and ful
playn,

His doghter, which that called was
Phanya.

Anhanged was Cresus, the proude king,
His royal trone mighte him nat availle,—
Tragedie is noon other maner thing, (771)
Ne can in singing crye ne biwaille, 3952
But for that fortune alwey wol assaille
With unwar strook the regnes that ben
proude;

For when men trusteth hir, than wol she
faille, 3955

And covere hir brighte face with a cloude.
[See l. 3565 on p. 536.]

Explicit Tragedia.

Here stinteth the Knight the Monk of his Tale.

THE PROLOGUE OF THE NONNE PRESTES TALE.

The prologue of the Nonne Preestes Tale.

'Ho!' quod the knight, 'good sir, na-
 more of this, 3957
 That ye han seyde is right y-nough, y-wis,
 And mochel more; for litel hevynesse
 Is right y-nough to mochel folk, I gesse.
 I seye for me, it is a greet disese 3961
 Wher-as men han ben in greet waltho
 and ese,
 To heren of hir sodeyn fal, alas!
 And the contrarie is joie and greet
 solas, 3964
 As whan a man hath been in povre estaat,
 And clymbeth up, and wexeth fortunat,
 And ther abydeh in prosperitee, (11)
 Swich thing is gladson, as it thinketh me,
 And of swich thing were goodly for to
 telle.'
 'Ye,' quod our hoste, 'by seint Poules
 belle, 3970
 Ye seye right sooth; this monk, he
 clappeth loude,
 He spak how "fortune covered with a
 cloude"
 I noot never what, and als of a "Tragedie"
 Right now ye herde, and parde! no
 remedie
 It is for to biwaille, ne compleyne 3975
 That that is doon, and als it is a peyne.
 As ye han seyde, to here of hevynesse. (21)
 Sir monk, na-more of this, so god yow
 blesse!
 Your tale anoyeth al this companye;
 Swich talking is nat worth a boterflye;
 For ther-in is ther no desport ne game.
 Wherfor, sir Monk, or dan Piers by your
 name, 3982

I preye yow hertely, telle us somewhat elles,
 For sikerly, nere clinking of your belles,
 That on your brydel hange on every syde,
 By heven king, that for us alle dyde, (30)
 I sholde er this han fallen down for slepe,
 Although the slough had never been so
 depe; 3988
 Than had your tale al be told in vayn.
 For certeinly, as that thise clerkes seyn,
 "Wher-as a man may have noon audience,
 Noght helpeth it to tellen his sentence."
 And wel I woot the substance is in me,
 If any thing shal wel reported be. 3994
 Sir, sey somewhat of hunting, I yow preye.'
 'Nay,' quod this monk, 'I have no lust
 to pleye; (40)
 Now let another telle, as I have told.'
 Than spak our host, with rude speche
 and bold,
 And seyde un-to the Nonnes Preest anon,
 'Com neer, thou preest, com hider, thou
 sir John, 4000
 Tel us swich thing as may our hertes
 glade,
 Be blythe, though thou ryde up-on a jade.
 What though thyn hors be bothe foule
 and lene, (47)
 If he wol serve thee, rekke nat a bene;
 Look that thyn herte be mery evermo.'
 'Yis, sir,' quod he, 'yis, host, so mote I go,
 But I be mery, y-wis, I wol be blamed:—
 And right anon his tale he hath attamed,
 And thus he seyde un-to us everichon,
 This swete preest, this goodly man, sir
 John. 4010

Explicit.

THE NONNE PREESTES TALE.

Here biginneth the Nonne Preestes Tale of the Cok and Hen,
Chauntecleer and Pertelote.

A ~~poore~~ widwe, somdel stape in age,
Was whylom dwelling in a narwe cotage,
Bisyde a grove, standing in a dale.
This widwe, of which I telle yow my tale,
Sin thilke day that she was last a wyf,
In pacience ladde a ful simple lyf, 4016
For litel was hir catel and hir rente;
By housbondrye, of such as God hir sente,
She fond hir-self, and eek hir doghtren
two.

Three large sowes hadde she, and namo,
Three kyn, and eek a sheep that highte
Malle, (11) 4021
Ful sooty was hir bour, and eek hir halle,
In which she eet ful many a splendro
meel.

Of poynaunt sauce hir neded never a deel.
No deyntee morsel passed thurgh hir
throthe; 4025

Hir dyete was accordant to hir cote.
Repleccioun ne made hir never syk;
Attempree dyete was al hir phisyk,
And exercyse, and hertes suffisaunce. 4029
The goute lette hir no-thing for to daunce,
N'apoplexye shente nat hir heed; (21)
No wyn ne drank she, neither whyt ne
reed;

Hir bord was served most with whyt and
blak,

Milk and broun breed, in which she fond
no lak,

Seynd bacoun, and somtyme an ey or
tweye, 4035

For she was as it were a maner deye.

A yerd she hadde, enclosed al aboute
With stikkes, and a drye dich with-oute,
In which she hadde a cok, hight Chaun-
tecleer, 4039

In al the land of crowing nas his peer. (30)
His vois was merier than the mery orgon
On messe-dayes that in the chirche gon;

Wel sikerer was his crowing in his logge,
Than is a klokke, or an abbey orlogge.

By nature knew he ech ascencioun 4045
Of equinoxial in thilke toun;
For whan degrees fiftene were ascended,
Thanne crew he, that it mighte nat ben
amended. (38)

His comb was redder than the fyn coral.
And batailed, as it were a castel-wal. 4050
His bile was blak, and as the jeet it shoon;
Lyk asur were his legges, and his toon;
His nayles whytter than the lilie flour,
And lyk the burned gold was his colour.
This gentil cok hadde in his governaunce
Sevene hennes, for to doon al his plesaunce,
Whiche were his sustres and his para-
mour, 4057

And wonder lyk to him, as of colours.
Of whiche the faireste hewed on hir throthe
Was cleped faire damoysele Perteloto.

Curteys she was, discreet, and debonaire,
And compaignable, and bar hir-self so
faire, (52)

Sin thilke day that she was seven night
old,

That trewely she hath the herte in hold
Of Chauntecleer loken in every lith; 4065
He loved hir so, that wel was him ther-
with.

But such a joye was it to here hem singe,
Whan that the brighte sonne gan to
springe, 4068

In swete accord, 'my lief is faren in londe.'
For thilke tyme, as I have understonde,
Bestes and briddes coude speke and singe.

And so bifel, that in a daweninge, (62)

As Chauntecleer among his wyves alle
Sat on his perche, that was in the halle,
And next him sat this faire Pertelote, 4075
This Chauntecleer gan gronen in his
throthe,

As man that in his dreem is drecched sore.
And whan that Pertelote thus herde him
rore, 4078

She was agast, and seyde, 'O herte dere,
What eyleth yow, to grone in this manere?
Ye been a verray sleper, fy for shame!' (71)
And he answerde and seyde thus,
'madame,

I pray yow, that ye take it nat a-grief:
By god, me mette I was in swich meschief
Right now, that yet myn herte is sore
afright. 4085

Now god,' quod he, 'my swevene recche
aright,

And keep my body out of foul prisoun!
Me mette, how that I romed up and down
Withinne our yerde, wher-as I saugh
a beste,

Was lyk an hound, and wolde han maad
areste 4090

Upon my body, and wolde han had me
deed. (81)

His colour was bitwixe yelwe and reed;
And tipped was his tail, and bothe his eres,
With blak, unlyk the remenant of his
heres;

His snowte smal, with glowinge eyen
tweye. 4095

Yet of his look for fere almost I deye;
This caused me my groning, doutelees.'

'Avoy!' quod she, 'fy on yow, herte-
lees!

Allas!' quod she, 'for, by that god above,
Now han ye lost myn herte and al my
love; 4100

I can nat love a coward, by my feith. (91)
For certes, what so any womman seith,

We alle desyren, if it mighte be,
To han housbondes hardy, wyse, and free,

And secree, and no nigard, ne no fool, 4105
Ne him that is agast of every tool,

Ne noon avauntour, by that god above!
How dorste ye seyn for shame unto your
love,

That any thing mighte make yow aferd?
Have ye no mannes herte, and han a berd?

Allas! and conne ye been agast of swe-
venis? (101) 4111

No-thing, god wot, but vanitee, in sweven
is.

Swevenes engendren of replecciouns,

And ofte of fume, and of complecciouns,
Whan humours been to habundant in a
wight. 4115

Certes this dreem, which ye han met
to-night,

Cometh of the grete superfluitee
Of youre rede colera, pardee,
Which causeth folk to dreden in here
dremes (109)

Of arwes, and of fyr with rede lemes, 4120
Of grete bestes, that they wol hem byte,

Of contek, and of whelpes grete and lyte;
Right as the humour of malencolye

Causeth ful many a man, in sleep, to crye,
For fere of blake beres, or boles blake, 4125

Or elles, blake develes wole hem take.
Of othere humours coude I telle also,

That werken many a man in sleep ful wo;
But I wol passe as lightly as I can.

Lo Catoun, which that was so wys
a man, 4130

Seyde he nat thus, ne do no fors of
dremes? (121)

Now, sire,' quod she, 'whan we flee fro
the bemes,

For Goddes love, as tak som laxatyf;
Up peril of my soule, and of my lyf, 4134

I counseille yow the beste, I wol nat lye,
That bothe of colere and of malencolye

Ye purge yow; and for ye shul nat tarie,
Though in this toun is noon apotecarie,

I shal my self to herbes techen yow,
That shul ben for your hele, and for your
prow; 4140

And in our yerd tho herbes shal I finde,
The whiche han of hir propretee, by
kinde, (132)

To purgen yow binethe, and eek above.
Forget not this, for goddes owene love!

Ye been ful colerik of compleccioun. 4145
Ware the sonne in his ascencioun

Ne fynde yow nat repleet of humours
hote;

And if it do, I dar wel leye a grote,
That ye shul have a fevere terciaine,

Or an agu, that may be youre bane. 4150
A day or two ye shul have digestyves (141)

Of wormes, er ye take your laxatyves,
Of lauriol, centauro, and fumetere,

Or elles of ellebor, that groweth there,
Of catapuce, or of gaytres beryis, 4155

If erbe yve, growing in our yard, that
mery is;
Pekke hem up right as they growe, and
ete hem in.

Be mery, housbond, for your fader kin!
Dredeþ no dreem; I can say yow na-
more.' (149)

'Madame,' quod he, 'graunt mercy of
your lora. 4160

But natheles, as touching dunn Catoun,
That hath of wisdom such a greet renoun,
Though that he had no dremes for to
drede,

By god, men may in olde bokes rede
Of many a man, more of auctoritees 4165

Than ever Catoun was, so mote I thea,
That al the revers seyn of his sentence,
And han wel founden by experience,
That dremes ben significaciouns,

As wel of joye as tribulaciouns 4170
That folk enduren in this lyf present. (161)

Ther nedeth make of this noon argument,
The verray prove sheweth it in dede.

Oon of the gretteste auctours that man
rede

Teith thus, that whylom two felawes
wento 4175

On pilgrimage, in a ful good entente;
And happed so, thay come into a toun,

Wher-as ther was swich congregacioun
Of peple, and eek so streit of herbergage

That they ne founde as muche as o cotage
In which they bothe mighte y-logged be.

Wherfor thay mosten, of necesitee, (172)

As for that night, departen compaignye;
And ech of hem goth to his hostelrye,

And took his logging as it wolde falle. 4185

That oon of hem was logged in a stalle,
Fer in a yard, with oxen of the plough;

That other man was logged wel y-nough,
As was his aventure, or his fortune, 4189

That us governeth alle as in commune.

And so bifel, that, longe er it were day,
This man mette in his bed, ther-as he lay,

How that his felawe gan up-on him
calle, (183)

And seyde, "allas! for in an oxes stalle
This night I shal be mordred ther I lye,

Now help me, dere brother, er I dye; 4196
In alle haste com to me." he seyde.

This man out of his sleep for fore abrayde;

But whan that he was wakned of his sleep,
He turned him, and took of this no keep;
Him thoughte his dreem nas but a vanitee.
Thus twyes in his sleeping dremed he. (192)

And atte thridde tyme yet his felawe
Cam, as him thoughte, and seide, "I am
now slawe;

Bihold my bloody woundes, depe and wyde!
Arys up erly in the morwe-tyde, 4200

And at the west gate of the toun," quod he,
"A carte ful of dong ther shaltow see,

In which my body is hid ful prively;
Do thilke carte aresten boldely. 4210

My gold caused my mordre, sooth to
sayn;" (201)

And tolde him every poynt how he was
slayn,

With a ful pitous face, pale of hewe.
And truste wel, his dreem he fond ful

trewe;
For on the morwe, as sone as it was day,

To his felawes in he took the way; 4216
And whan that he cam to this oxes stalle,

After his felawe he bigan to calle.
The hostiler answered him anon,

And seyde, "sire, your felawe is agon, 4220
As sone as day he wente out of the toun."

This man gan fallen in suspicioun, (212)

Remembring on his dremes that he mette,
And forth he goth, no longer wolde he

lette, 4224
Unto the west gate of the toun, and fond

A dong-carte, as it were to donge lond,
That was arrayed in the same wyse

As ye han herd the dede man devyse;
And with an hardy herte he gan to crye

Vengeance and justice of this felonye:—
"My felawe mordred is this same night,

And in this carte he lyth gapinge upright.
I crye out on the ministres," quod he, (223)

"That sholden kepe and reulen this citee,
Harrow! allas! her lyth my felawe

slayn!" 4235
What sholde I more un-to this tale sayn?

The peple out-sterste, and caste the cart to
grounde,

And in the middel of the dong they
founde

The dede man, that mordred was al newe.
O blisful god, that art so just and

trewe! 4240

Lo, how that thou biwreyest mordre
alway! (231)

Mordre wol out, that see we day by day.
Mordre is so wlatson and abhominable
To god, that is so just and resonable,
That he ne wol nat suffre it heled be; 4245
Though it abyde a yeer, or two, or three,
Mordre wol out, this my conclusioun.

And right anon, ministres of that toun
Han hent the carter, and so sore him
pyned, (239)

And eek the hostiler so sore engyned, 4250
That thay biknewe hir wikkednesse anon,
And were an-hanged by the nekke-boon.

Here may men seen that dremes been
to drede.

And certes, in the same book I rede,
Right in the nexte chapitre after this,
(I gabbe nat, so have I joye or blis,) 4256
Two men that wolde han passed over see,
For certeyn cause, in-to a fer contree,
If that the wind ne hadde been contrarie,
That made hem in a citee for to tarie, 4260
That stood ful mery upon an haven-
syde. (251)

But on a day, agayn the even-tyde,
The wind gan chaunge, and blew right
as hem leste.

Jolif and glad they wente un-to hir reste,
And casten hem ful erly for to saille; 4265
But to that oo man fil a greet mervaille.
That oon of hem, in sleping as he lay,
Him mette a wonder dreem, agayn the
day;

Him thoughte a man stood by his beddes
syde,

And him comaunded, that he sholde
abyde, 4270

And seyde him thus, "if thou to-morwe
wende, (261)

Thou shalt be dreynt; my tale is at an
ende."

He wook, and tolde his felawe what he
mette,

And preyde him his viage for to lette;
As for that day, he preyde him to abyde.
His felawe, that lay by his beddes syde,
Gan for to laughe, and scorned him ful
faste.

"No dreem," quod he, "may so myn herte
agaste,

That I wol lette for to do my thinges.

I sette not a straw by thy dreminges, 4280
For swevenes been but vanitees and japes.
Men dreme al-day of owles or of apes, (272)
And eke of many a mase therwithal;
Men dreme of thing that never was ne
shal. 4284

But sith I see that thou wolt heer abyde,
And thus for-sleuthen wilfully thy tyde.
God wot it reweth me; and have good
day."

And thus he took his leve, and wente his
way.

But er that he hadde halfe his cours
y-seyled,

Noot I nat why, ne what mischaunce it
eyled, 4290

But casuelly the shippes botme rente, (281)
And ship and man under the water wente
In sighte of othere shippes it byside,
That with hem seyled at the same tyde.

And therfor, faire Pertelote so dere, 4295
By swiche ensamples olde maistow here,
That no man sholde been to recchelees
Of dremes, for I sey thee, doutelees,
That many a dreem ful sore is for to
drede. 4300

Lo, in the lyf of seint Kenelm, I rede,
That was Kenulphus sone, the noble king
Of Mercenrike, how Kenelm mette a
thing; (292)

A lyte er he was mordred, on a day,
His mordre in his avisioun he say.

His norice him expounded every del 4305
His sweven, and bad him for to kepe him
wel

For traisoun; but he nas but seven yeer
old,

And therefore litel tale hath he told
Of any dreem, so holy was his herte.

By god, I hadde lever than my sherte 4310
That ye had rad his legende, as have I.

Dame Pertelote, I sey yow trewely, 4315
Macrobeus, that writ th'avisioun

In Affrike of the worthy Cipiou, n
Affermeth dremes, and seith that they
been 4315

Warning of thinges that men after seen.
And forther-more, I pray yow loketh
wel

In th'olde testament, of Daniel,

old dremes any vanitee. 4319
 of Joseph, and ther shul yo see
 dremes ben somtyme (I sey nat alle)
 of thinges that shul after falle.
 Egypt the king, daun Pharaon, (313)
 here and his boteler also, 4324
 he y ne felte noon effect in dremes,
 wol saken actes of sondry remes,
 de of dremes many a wonder thing
 ceus, which that was of Lyde king,
 is nat that he sat upon a tree, 4329
 signified he sholde anhangen be?
 Andromacha, Hectores wyf, (321)
 say that Ector sholde lese his lyf,
 med on the same night huforn,
 at the lyf of Ector sholde be lorn,
 e day he wente in-to bataille; 4335
 arned him, but it mighte nat
 alle,
 ite for to fighte nathelless,
 was slayn anon of Achilles.
 ilke tale is al to long to telle, 4339
 k it is ny day, I may nat dwelle.
 I seye, as for conclusioun, (331)
 shal han of this avisioun
 itee; and I seye forther-more,
 ne telle of laxatyves no store,
 y ben venimous, I woot it wel, 4345
 defye, I love hem never a del.
 let us speke of mirthes, and stinte
 this,
 e Pertelote, so have I blis,
 ing god hath sent me large grace;
 an I see the beantee of your face,
 so scarlet-reed about your yēn,
 eth al my drede for to dyen; (342)
 so siker as *In principio*,
est dominus confusio; 4354
 is, the sentence of this Latin is—
 an is mannes joye and al his blis.
 an I fele a-night your softe syde,
 t that I may nat on you ryde,
 at our perehe is moad so narwe,
 as!
 o ful of joye and of solas 4360
 defye bothe sweven and dremes.
 ith that word he fley down fro the
 em, (352)
 was day, and eek his hennes alle;
 ith a chuk he gan hem for to calle,
 had founde a corn, lay in the yerd.

Royal he was, he was namore aferd; 4366
 He fethered Pertelote twenty tyme,
 And trad as ofte, er that it was pryde.
 He loketh as it were a grim leoun; 4369
 And on his toos he rometh up and down,
 Him deynd not to sette his foot to
 grounde. (361)
 He chuketh, whan he bath a corn
 y-founde,
 And to him rennen thanno his wyves
 alle.
 Thus royal, as a prince is in his halle,
 Leve I this Chauntecleer in his pasture;
 And after wol I telle his aventure. 4376
 Whan that the month in which the
 world bigan,
 That highte March, whan god first maketh
 man,
 Was complet, and [y]-passed were also,
 Sin March bigan, thritty dayes and two,
 Bifel that Chauntecleer, in al his pryde,
 His seven wyves walking by his syde, (372)
 Caste up his eyen to the brighte sonne,
 That in the signe of Taurus hadde
 y-ronne
 Twenty degrees and oon, and somewhat
 more; 4385
 And know by kynde, and by noon other
 lore,
 That it was pryde, and crew with blisful
 stevene.
 'The sonne,' he sayde, 'is clomben up on
 hevene
 Fourty degrees and oon, and more, y-wis.
 Madame Pertelote, my worldes blis, 4390
 Hekneeth this blisful briddes how they
 singe, (381)
 And see the freshe floures how they
 springe;
 Ful is myn herte of revel and solas.
 But sodeinly him fil a sorweful cas;
 For ever the latter ende of joye is wo. 4395
 God woot that worldly joye is sone ago;
 And if a rethor coude faire endyte,
 He in a cronique sanfly mighte it wryte,
 As for a sovereyn notabilitee. 4399
 Now every wys man, lat him hekne me;
 This storie is al-so trewe, I undertake, (391)
 As is the book of Launcelot de Lake,
 That women holde in ful gret reverence.
 Now wol I torne agayn to my sentence.

A col-fox, ful of sly iniquitee, 4405
 That in the grove hadde woned yeres
 three,
 By heigh imaginacioun forn-cast,
 The same night thurgh-out the haggus
 brast
 Into the yerd, ther Chauntecleer the faire
 Was wont, and eek his wyves, to repaire;
 And in a bed of wortes stille he lay, (401)
 Til it was passed undern of the day,
 Wayting his tyme on Chauntecleer to falle,
 As gladly doon thise homicydes alle,
 That in awayt ligen to mordre men. 4415
 O false mordre, lurking in thy den!
 O newe Scarlot, newe Genillon!
 False dissimilour, O Grek Sinon,
 That broughtest Troye al outrely to sorwe!
 O Chauntecleer, acursed be that morwe,
 That thou into that yerd slough fro the
 bemes! (411) 4421
 Thou were ful wel y-warned by thy
 dreames,
 That thilke day was perilous to thee.
 But what that god forwot not nedes be,
 After the opinioun of certeyn clerkis. 4425
 Witnesse on him, that any perfit clerk is,
 That in scole is gret alteracioun
 In this matere, and gret disputacioun,
 And hath ben of an hundred thousand
 men.
 But I ne can not bulke it to the bren, 4430
 As can the holy doctour Augustyn, (421)
 Or Boece, or the bishop Bradwardyn,
 Whether that goddes worthy forwiting
 Streyneth me nedely for to doon a thing,
 Nedely clepe I simple necessitee); 4435
 Or elles, if free choys be graunted me
 To do that same thing, or do it noght,
 Though god forwot it, or that it was
 wrought;
 Or if his witing streyneth nevere a del
 But by necessitee condicionel. 4440
 I wol not han to do of swich matere; (431)
 My tale is of a cok, as ye may here,
 That took his counseil of his wyf, with
 sorwe,
 To walken in the yerd upon that morwe
 That he had met the dreem, that I yow
 tolde. 4445
 Wommannes counseils been ful oftecolde;

Wommannes counseil broughde us first to
 wo,
 And made Adam fro paradye to go,
 Ther-as he was ful mery, and waiten.—
 But for I noot, to whom it might
 displese, 4450
 If I counseil of wommen wolde blame, (441)
 Passe over, for I seyde it in my game.
 Rede anoutours, wher they trete of swich
 matere,
 And what they seyn of wommen ye may
 here.
 Thise been the cokkes wordes, and yet
 myne; 4455
 I can noon harm of no womman divyne.—
 Faire in the sond, to bathe hir merly,
 Iyth Partelote, and alle hir sesters by,
 Agayn the sonne; and Chauntecleer is
 free
 Song merier than the mermayde in the
 see; 4460
 For Philologus seith elkerly, (451)
 How that they singen wel and merly.
 And so bifel that, as he caste his yé,
 Among the wortes, on a boterflye, 4464
 He was war of this fox that lay ful lowe.
 No-thing ne liste him thanne for to croue.
 But cryde anon, 'cok, cok,' and up he
 sterte,
 As man that was affrayed in his herte.
 For naturelly a beest deyreth fleo
 Fro his contrarie, if he may it see, 4470
 Though he never erst had seyn it with
 his yé. (461)
 This Chauntecleer, whan he gan him
 espye,
 He wolde han fled, but that the fox aȝen
 Seyde, 'Gentil sire, alas! wher wol ye
 gon?
 Be ye affrayed of me that am your
 freend? 4475
 Now certes, I were worse than a feend,
 If I to yow wolde harm or vileinye.
 I am nat come your counseil for t'espye.
 But trewely, the cause of my cominge
 Was only for to herkne how that ye
 singe. (470) 4480
 For trewely ye have as mery a stevene
 As any aungel hath, that is in hevene.
 Therwith ye han in musik more felinge
 Than hadde Boece, or any that can singe.

y lord your fader (god his soule blesse!)
nd eek your moder, of hir gentillesse,
an in myn hous y-been, to my gret ese;
nd certes, sire, ful fayn wolde I yow
plesa. 4488

ut for men speke of singing, I wol saye,
I mote I brouke wel myn eyen tweye,
ave yow, I herde never man so singe,
s dide your fader in the morweninge;
ertes, it was of herte, al that he song.
nd for to make his voys the more strong,
e wolde so payne him, that with bothe
his yēn 4495

e mooste winke, so loude he wolde cryen,
nd stonden on his tiptoon ther-with-al,
nd streche forth his nekke long and
smal.

nd eek he was of swich discrecioun,
hat ther nas no man in no regioun 4500
hat him in song or wisdom mighte
passe. (491)

have wel rad in daun Burnel the Ase,
mong his vers, how that ther was a cok,
or that a preestes sone yaf him a knock
'pon his leg, whyl he was yong and
nyce, 4505

he made him for to lese his benefyce.
ut certeyn, ther nis no comparisoun
twtix the wisdom and discrecioun
f youre fader, and of his subtiltee. (499)
low singeth, sire, for seinte Charitee, 4510
et see, conne ye your fader countrefete?"
his Chauntecleer his winges gan to bete,
s man that coude his tresoun nat espye,
o was he ravished with his flaterye.

Allas! ye lordes, many a false flatour
s in your courtes, and many a losengeour,
hat plesen yow wel more, by my feith,
han he that soothfastnesse unto yow
seith.

ledeth Ecclesiaste of flaterye;
leth war, ye lordes, of hir trecherye. 4520
This Chauntecleer stood hye up-on his
toos, (511)

trecching his nekke, and heold his eyen
cloos,

nd gan to crowe loude for the nones;
nd daun Russel the fox sterte up at
ones, 4524

nd by the gargat hente Chauntecleer,
nd on his bak toward the wode him bear,

For yet ne was ther no man that him
sewed.

O destinee, that mayst nat been sechewed!
Allas, that Chauntecleer fleigh fro the
barnes! 4529

Allas, his wyf ne roghte nat of dremes!
And on a Friday fil al this meschaunce. (521)
O Venus, that art goddesse of plesaunce,
Sin that thy servant was this Chaunte-
cleer,

And in thy service dide al his poweer,
More for delyt, than world to multiplie.
Why woldestow suffre him on thy day to
dye? 4536

O Gaufred, dere mayster soverayn,
That, whan thy worthy king Richard
was slayn

With shot, compleynedest his deth so
sore,

Why ne hadde I now thy sentence and
thy lore, 4540

The Friday for to chyde, as diden ye? (531)
(For on a Friday soothly slayn was he.)

Than wolde I shewe yow how that I coude
pleyne

For Chauntecleres drede, and for his
payne.

Certes, swich cry ne lamentacioun 4545
Was never of ladies maad, whan Ilioun
Was wonne, and Pirrus with his streite
sward,

Whan he hadde hent king Priam by the
berd,

And slayn him (as saith us *Enchydos*),
As maaden alle the hennes in the clos, 4550
Whan they had seyn of Chauntecleer the
sighte. (541)

But sovereynly dame Pertelote shrighthe,
Ful louder than dide Hasdrubales wyf,
Whan that hir housbond hadde lost his lyf,
And that the Romainys hadde brend
Cartage; 4555

She was so ful of torment and of rage,
That wilfully into the fyr she sterte,
And brende hir-selven with a stedfast
herte.

O woful hennes, right so cryden ye,
As, whan that Nero brende the citee 4560
Of Rome, cryden senatoures wyves, (551)
For that hir housbondes losten alle hir
lyves;

Withouten gilt this Nero hath hem slayn.
Now wol I torne to my tale agayn :—

This ooly widwe, and eek hir doghtres
two, 4565

Herden thise hennas crye and maken wo,
And out at doreen sterten they anon,
And eyen the fox toward the grove geoun,
And bar upon his bak the cok away;
And cryden, 'Out! harrow! and wayla-
way! 4570

Ha, ha, the fox!' and after him they
ran, 4571

And eek with staves many another man;
Ben Colle our dogge, and Talbot, and
Garland,

And Malkin, with a distaf in hir hand;
Ben cow and calf, and eek the verray
hogges 4575

So were they fered for barking of the
dogges

And shouting of the man and wimmen
eke,

They ronned so, hem thoughte hir herte
breke.

They yelleden as foendes doon in helle,
The dokes cryden as men wolde hem
quelle; 4580

The gees for fere flown over the trees;
Out of the hye cam the swarm of bees;

So hidous was the noyse, a! *benedicite!*
Certes, he Jakke Straw, and his meynec,
Ne made never shoutes half so shrille, 4585

Whan that they wolden any Fleming
kille,

As thilke day was maad upon the fox.

Of bras thay broghten homes, and of box,
Of horn, of boon, in whiche they blew
and pouped,

And therewithal thay shryked and they
houped; 4590

It semed as that heven sholde falle. 4591

Now, gode men, I pray yow herkneth alle!

Lo, how fortune turneth sodeinly
The hope and pryde eek of hir enemy!

This cok, that lay upon the foxes bak, 4595

In al his drede, un-to the fox he spak,
And seyde, 'sire, if that I were as ye,

Yet sholde I seyn (as wis god helpe me),
Turneth agayn, ye proude cherles alle!

A verray pestillence up-on yow falle! 4600

Now am I come un-to this wodes eyde,
Mangree your heed, the cok shal bear
abyde; 4605

I wel him ste in feith, and that anon.—

The fox answerde, 'in feith, it shal be
don,'—

And as he spak that word, al sodeinly 4610

This cok brak from his mouth deliverly,
And heighe up-on a tree he feigh anon.

And whan the fox saugh that he was
y-gon,

'Alas!' quod he, 'O Chauntecleer, alas!

I have to yow,' quod he, 'y-doon tresped,
In-as-muche as I made yow aserd, 4615

Whan I yow hente, and broghte out of
the yerd;

But, sire, I dide it in no wikke entente;

Com down, and I shal telle yow what
I mente.

I shal seye sooth to yow, god help me a!

'Nay than,' quod he, 'I shrewe us bothe
two, 4620

And first I shrewe my-self, bothe blood
and bones,

If thou bigyle me ofter than ones.

Thou shalt na-more, thurgh thy flaterye,

Do me to singe and winke with myn yf.

For he that winketh, whan he sholde see.

Al wilfully, god lat him never thee!' 4625

'Nay,' quod the fox, 'but god yewe him
meschaunce,

That is so undiscreet of governaunce,

That jangleth whan he sholde holde his
pens.' 4630

Lo, swich it is for to be rechelesse,

And negligant, and truste on flaterye.

But ye that holden this tale a folye,

As of a fox, or of a cok and hen,

Taketh the moralitee, good men. 4635

For seint Paul seith, that al that writeth
is, 4640

To our doctryne it is y-write, y-wis.

Taketh the fruyt, and lat the chaf be
stille.

Now, gode god, if that it be thy wille.

As seith my lord, so make us alle good
men; 4645

And bringe us to his heighe blisse. Amen.

Here is ended the Nonne Preestes Tale.

EPILOGUE TO THE NONNE PREESTES TALE.

'SIR Nonnes Preest,' our hostes seyde anoon,
'Y-blessed be thy breche, and every stoon!
'This was a mery tale of Chauntecleer.
But, by my trouthe, if thou were secular,
Thou woldest been a trede-foula-right. 4641
For, if thou have corage as thou hast
 might,
Thee were nede of hennes, as I wene,
Ya. mo than seven tymes seventene.

See, whiche braunes hath this gentil
 Preest, 4645
So greet a nekke, and swich a large breest!
He loketh as a sperhawk with his yēn; (11)
Him nedeth nat his colour for to dyen
With brasil, ne with greyn of Portingale.
Now sire, faire falle yow for youre tale!
 And after that he, with ful mery chere,
Seide to another, as ye shullen here. 4652

. B. 4652 = T. 15468; C. 1 = T. 11935.

GROUP C.

THE PHISICIENS TALE.

Here folweth the Phisiciens Tale.

There was, as telleth Titus Livius,
A knight that called was Virginus,
Fulfil of honour and of worthinesse,
And strong of freendes and of greet
 richesse. [T. 11938]

This knight a doghter hadde by his wyf,
No children hadde he mo in al his lyf. 6
Fair was this mayde in excellent beautee
Aboven every wight that man may see;
For nature hath with sovereyn diligence
Y-formed hir in so greet excellence, 10
As though she wolde seyn, 'lo! I, Nature,
Thus can I forme and peynte a creature,
Whan that me list; who can me countre-
 fete?
Pigmalion noght, though he ay forge and
 bete,

Or grave, or peynte; for I dar wel seyn, 15
Apelles, Zanzis, sholde werche in veyn,
Outher to grave or peynte or forge or bete,
If they presumed me to countrefete.
For he that is the former principal
Hath makid me his vicaire general, 20
To forme and peynten erthely creaturis
Right as me list, and ech thing in my
 cure is
Under the mone, that may wane and waxe,
And for my werk right no-thing wol I axe;
My lord and I ben ful of oon accord; 25
I made hir to the worship of my lord.
So do I alle myne othere creatures,
What colour that they han, or what
 figures.—
Thus semeth me that Nature wolde seye.

This mayde of age twelf yeer was and
tweye, 30
In which that Nature hadde swich delyt.
For right as she can peynte a lillie whyt
And reed a rose, right with swich peynture
She peynted hath this noble creature
Er she were born, up-on hir limes free, 35
Wher-as by right swiche colours sholde be,
And Phebus dyed hath hir tresses grete
Lyk to the stremes of his burned hete,
And if that excellent was hir beautee,
A thousand-fold more vertuous was she. 40
In hir ne lakked no condicioun,
That is to preyse, as by discrecioun.
As wel in goost as body chast was she;
For which she floured in virginitee
With alle humilitee and abstinence, 45
With alle attemperance and pacience,
With mesure eek of bering and array.
Discreet she was in answering alway,
Though she were wys as Pallas, dar I seyn,
Hir facound eek ful wommanly and pleyn,
No countrefeted termes hadde she 51
To seme wys; but after hir degree
She spak, and alle hir wordes more and
lesse
Sonninge in vertu and in gentillesse,
Shamfast she was in maydens shamfast-
nesse, 55
Constant in herte, and ever in businessse
To dryve hir out of ydel slogardye.
Bacus hadde of hir mouth right no
maistrye,
For wyn and yonthe doon Venus oncrece,
As men in fyr wol casten oile or grece, 60
And of hir owene vertu, unconstreyned,
She hath ful ofte tyme syk hir feyned,
For that she wolde flee the companye
Wher lykly was to treten of folye,
As is at festes, revels, and at daunces. 65
That been occasions of daliaunces
Swich thinges maken children for to be
To sone rype and bold, as men may see.
Which is ful perilous, and hath ben yore,
For al to sone may she lerne lore 70
Of boldnesse, whan she woxen is a wyf.
And ye maistresses in your olde lyf,
That lordes doghtres han in governaunce,
No taketh of my wordes no displeaunce;
Thenketh that ye ben set in governinges 75
Of lurdres doghtres, only for two thinges;

Outher for ye han kept your honeste,
Or elles ye han falle in freletee,
And knowen wel y-nough the olde daunce,
And han forsaken fully swich meschaunce
For evermo; therfore, for Cristes sake, 81
To teche hem vertu lere that ye ne alake
A theef of venisoun, that hath forlast
His likerousnesse, and al his olde craft,
Can kepe a forrest best of any man. 85
Now kepeth hem wel, for if ye wol, ye can,
Lere wel that ye nn-to no vice assente,
Lest ye be dampned for your wikke en-
tente;
For who-so doth, a traitour is certeyn.
And taketh kepe of that that I shal
seyn; 91
Of alle tresons sovereyn pestilence
Is whan a wight bitrayeth innocence.
Ye fadres and ye modres seek also,
Though ye han children, be it oon or two,
Your is the charge of al hir surveyaunce, 95
Whyl that they been under your govern-
aunce.
Bath war that by ensample of your livinge,
Or by your negligence in chastisinge,
That they ne perisse; for I dar wel seye,
If that they doon, ye shul it dere abeye. 100
Under a shepherde softe and negligent
The wolf hath many a sheep and lamb
to-rent.
Suffyeth oon ensample now as here,
For I mot turne agayn to my matere.
This mayde, of which I wol this tale
expresse, 105
So kopte hir-self, hir neded no maistresse
For in hir living maydens mighten rede,
As in a book, every good word or dede,
That longeth to a mayden vertuous;
She was so prudent and so bounteous. 110
For which the fame out-sprong on every
syde
Bothe of hir beautee and hir bountee wyde,
That thurgh that land they preyed hir
echone,
That loved vertu, save envye allone,
That sory is of other mennes wele, 115
And glad is of his sorwe and his unhele.
(The doctour maketh this descripcioun.)
This mayde up-on a day wente in the toon
Toward a temple, with hir moder dore,
As is of yonge maydens the manere. 120

was ther thanne a justice in that
 un,
 governour was of that regioun.
 bifel, this juge his eyen caste
 this mayde, avysinge him ful faste,
 cam forbyther this juge stood. 125
 his herte changed and his mood,
 as he caught with beautee of this
 ayde;
 o him-self ful prively he sayde,
 mayde shal be myn, for any man.
 on the feend in-to his herte ran, 130
 caughte him sodeynly, that he by
 ighte
 ayden to his purpos winne mighte.
 rtes, by no force, ne by no mede,
 boughte, he was natable for tospede;
 e was strong of freendes, and eek she
 rmed was in swich soverayn bountee,
 wel he wiste he mighte hir never
 inne 137
 to make hir with hir body sinne.
 hich, by greet deliberacioun,
 te after a cherl, was in the toun, 140
 a that he knew for subtil and for
 old.
 age un-to this cherl his tale hath told
 ree wyse, and made him to ensure,
 olde telle it to no creature,
 fhe dide, he sholde lese his heed. 145
 that assented was this cursed reed,
 was this juge and maked him greet
 ere,
 af him yiftes precieuse and dere.
 an shapen was al hir conspiracye
 oint to point, how that his lecherye
 rned sholde been ful subtilly, 151
 shul here it after openly,
 gooth the cherl, that highte Clau-
 ius.
 false juge that highte Apius,
 s his name, (for this is no fable, 155
 nownen for historial thing notable,
 entence of it sooth is, out of doute),
 false juge gooth now faste aboute
 sten his delyt al that he may.
 o bifel sone after, on a day, 160
 false juge, as telleth us the storie,
 was wont, sat in his consistorie,
 af his domes up-on sondry cas.
 false cherl cam forth a ful greet pas,

And seyde, 'lord, if that it be your wille, 165
 As dooth me right up-on this pitous bille,
 In which I pleyne up-on Virginus.
 And if that he wol seyn it is nat thus,
 I wol it preve, and finde good witnesse,
 That sooth is that my bille wol expresse.'
 The juge answerde, 'of this, in his
 absence, 171
 I may nat yeve diffinitif sentence.
 Lat do him calle, and I wol gladly here;
 Thou shalt have al right, and no wrong
 here.' 174
 Virginus cam, to wite the juges wille,
 And right anon was rad this cursed bille;
 The sentence of it was as ye shul here.
 'To yow, my lord, sire Apius so dere,
 Sheweth your povre servant Claudius,
 How that a knight, called Virginus, 180
 Agayns the lawe, agayn al equitee,
 Holdeth, expres agayn the wil of me,
 My servant, which that is my thral by
 right,
 Which fro myn hous was stole up-on
 a night,
 Whyl that she was ful yong; this wol
 I preve 185
 By witnesse, lord, so that it nat yow greve.
 She nis his doghter nat, what so he seye;
 Wherfore to yow, my lord the juge, I preye,
 Yeld me my thral, if that it be your wille.'
 Lo! this was al the sentence of his bille.
 Virginus gan up-on the cherl biholde,
 But hastily, er he his tale tolde, 192
 And wolde have proved it, as sholdo
 a knight,
 And eek by witnessing of many a wight,
 That it was fals that seyde his adversarie,
 This cursed juge wolde no-thing tarie, 195
 Ne here a word more of Virginus,
 But yaf his jugement, and seyde thus:—
 'I deme anon this cherl his servant have;
 Thou shalt no lenger in thyn hous hir
 save. 200
 Go bring hir forth, and put hir in our
 warde,
 The cherl shal have his thral, this I
 awarde.'
 And whan this worthy knight Virginus,
 Thurgh sentence of this justico Apius,
 Moste by force his dere doghter given 205
 Un-to the juge, in lecherye to liven,

He gooth him home, and sette him in his
halle,

And leet anon his dere doghter calle,
And, with a face deed as aschen coides,
Upon hir humble face he gan biholde, 210
With fadrespiteestikingthurgh his herte,
Al wolde he from his purpos nat converte.

'Doghter,' quod he, 'Virginia, by thy
name,

Ther been two wayes, either deeth or
shame,

That thou most suffre; alas! that I was
bore!

For never thou deservedest wherfore
To dyen with a sword or with a knyf.

O dere doghter, ender of my lyf,
Which I have fostred up with swich
pleasaunce,

That thou were never out of my remem-
braunce!

O doghter, which that art my laste wo.
And in my lyf my laste joye also,
O gemme of charitee, in paciaunce

'Take thou thy deeth, for this is my sen-
tence.

For love and nat for hate, thou most be
deed;

My pitous hand mot amyten of thyn heed.
Alas! that ever Apinus thee say!

Thus hath he falsly juged thee to-day' -
And tolde hir al the cas, as ye before

'O mercy, dere fader,' quod this mayde,
And with that word she both hir armes

layde
About his nekke, as she was wont to do:

The teres broste out of hir eyen two,
And seyde, 'gode fader, shal I dye?

Is ther no grace? is ther no remedye?'
'No, certes, dere doghter myn,' quod he.

'Thanne yif me keyser, fader myn,' quod
she,

'My deeth for to compleyne a litel space;
For pardee, Jepteyaf his doghter grace

For to compleyne, or he hir slow, alas!
And god it woot, no-thing was hir trespas,

But for she ran hir fader first to see,
To welcome him with greet solempnitee.'

And with that word she fil aswowne anon,
And after, whan hir awowning is agon,

246

She ryseth up, and to hir fader seyde,
'Blessed be god, that I shal dye a mayde.
Yif me my deeth, er that I have a shame,
Doth with your child your wil, a goddes

name!' 230
And with that word she preyed him ful
ofte,

That with his sword he wolde smyte softe,
And with that word aswowne doun she fil
Hir fader, with ful sorweful herte and wil
Hir heed of smoot, and by the top it

hente, 235
And to the jugs he gan it to presente,
As he sat yet in doom in consistorie.

And whan the jugs it saugh, as with the
storie,

He bad to take him and anhangen him
faste.

But right anon a thousand peple in throte,
To save the knight, for routhe and for

pitee,
For knownen was the false iniquitee.

The peple anon hath suspect of this thing
By manere of the cherles chalanging,

That it was by th'assent of Apinus; 240
They wisten wel that he was lecherous

For which un-to this Apinus they gon,
And caste him in a prison right anon.

Wher-as he slow him-self; and Claudius
That servant was un-to this Apinus,

Was demed for to hange upon a tree,
But that Virginus, of his pitee,

So preyde for him that he was exyled;
And elles, certee, he had been bigyled.

The remenant were anhangen, more and
lese,

That were consentant of this cursed-
nese.—

Heer men may seen how sinne hath his
meryte!

Beth war, for no man woot whom god
wol smyte

In no degree, ne in which maner wyse
The worm of conscience may agryse

Of wikked lyf, though it so privee be,
That no man woot ther-of but god and he—

For he he lewed man, or elles lered,
He noot how sone that he shal been afered.

Therefore I rede yow this conseil take, 245
Forsaketh sinne, er sinne yow forsake.

Here endeth the Physicians Tale.

WORDS OF THE HOST.

The wordes of the Host to the Phisicien and the Pardoner.

Our Hoste gan to swere as he were
wood,

'Harrow!' quod he, 'by nayles and by
blood!

This was a fals oherl and a fals justyse!

As shamful deeth as herte may devyse 290

Come to thise juges and hir advocats!

Algate this sely mayde is slayn, alas!

Allas! to dere boghte she beautee!

Wherfore I seye al day, as men may see,

That yiftes of fortune or of nature 295

Ben cause of deeth to many a creature. (10)

Hir beautee was hir deeth, I dar wel sayn;

Allas! so pitously as she was slayn!

Of bothe yiftes that I speke of now

Men han ful ofte more harm than prow.

But trewely, myn owene mayster dere, 301

This is a pitous tale for to here.

But natheles, passe over, is no fors;

I prey to god, so save thy gentil cors, 304

And eek thyne urinals and thy jordanes,

Thyn Ypocras, and eek thy Galianes, (20)

And every boist ful of thy letuarie;

God blesse hem, and our lady seinte

Marie!

So mot I theen, thou art a propre man,

And lyk a prelat, by seint Ronyan! 310

Seyde I nat wel? I can nat speke in
terme;

But wel I woot, thou doost my herte to
erme,

That I almost have caught a cardiacle.

By corpus bones! but I have triacle, 314

Orelles a draught of moyste and cornyale,

Or but I here anon a mery tale, (30)

Myn herte is lost for pitee of this mayde.

Thou bel amy, thou Pardoner,' he seyde,

'Tel us som mirthe or japes right anon.'

'It shall be doon,' quod he, 'by seint
Ronyon! 320

But first,' quod he, 'heer at this ale-
stake

I wol both drinke, and eten of a cake.'

But right anon thise gentils gonne to

crye,

'Nay! lat him telle us of no ribaudye;

Tel us som moral thing, that we may
lere 325

Som wit, and thanne wol we gladly
here.' (40)

'I graunte, y-wis,' quod he, 'but I mot
thinke

Up-on som honest thing, whyl that I
drinke.'

THE PROLOGUE OF THE PARDONERS TALE.

Here foloweth the Prologue of the Pardoners Tale.

Radix malorum est Cupiditas: Ad Thimotheum, scrio.

'Lousynges,' quod he, 'in chirches whan I
preche,

I payne me to han an hauteyn speche, 330

And ringe it out as round as gooth a belle,

For I can al by rote that I telle.

My theme is alwey oon, and ever was—

"*Radix malorum est Cupiditas.*"

First I pronounce whennes that I come,

And than my bulles shewe I, alle and

roume. 336

Our lige lordes seel on my patente,

That shewe I first, my lady to warente, (10)

That no man be so bold, ne preest ne clerk.

Me to destourbe of Cristes holy werk; 340

And after that than telle I forth my tale,

Bulles of popes and of cardinales,

Of patriarkes, and bishoppes I shewe;

And in Latyn I speke a wordes fewe,

To saffron with my predicacioun, 345

And for to stire men to devocioun. (18)

Than shewe I forth my longe cristal stones,

Y-crammed ful of cloutes and of bones;

Reliks been they, as wenen they reken.

Than have I in latoun a sholder-boon 350

Which that was of an holy Jewes shepe.

"Good men," seye I, "tak of my wordes
kepe;

If that this boon be wasshe in any welle,

If cow, or calf, or sheep, or oxwelle

That any worm hath ete, or worm y-

stonge, 355

Tak water of that welle, and wash his

tonge,

And it is hool anon; and forthermore,

Of pokkes and of scabbe, and every sore (30)

Shal every sheep be hool, that of this welle
Drinketh a draughte; tak kepe eek what

I telle. 360

If that the good-man, that the bestesowth,

Wol every wike, or that the oek his

croweth,

Pastinge, drinken of this welle a draughte,

As thilke holy Jewe our eldres taughte,

His bestes and his stoor shal multiplie. 365

And, sirs, also it heleth jalonsye;

For, though a man be falle in jalous rage,

Let maken with this water his potage, 370

And never shal he more his wyf mistrise.

Though he the sooth of hir defeaute wiste.

Al had she taken preestes two or three. 371

Heer is a miteyn eek, that ye may see

He that his hond wol putte in this miteyn,

He shal have multiplying of his greyn,

Whan he hath sownen, be it whete or otes.

So that he offre pens, or elles grotas. 375

Good men and wommen, o thing warre

I yow,

If any wight be in this chirche now, 380

That hath doon sinne horrible, that he

Dar nat, for shame, of it y-shriven be, 381

Or any womman, be she yong or old,

That hath y-maad hir housbond cokewold.

Swich folk shul have no power ne no grace

To offren to my reliks in this place.

And who-so findeth him out of swich

blame, 385

He wol com up and offre in goddes name.

And I assoille him by the auctoritee

Which that by bulle y-graunted was to

me." (50)

his gaude have I wonne, yeer by
 r.
 dred mark sith I was Pardoner.
 : lyk a clerk in my pulpet, 391
 an the lewed peple is donn y-set,
 r, so as ye han herd bifore,
 le an hundred false japes more.
 cyne I me to streoche forth the
 rke, 395
 . and west upon the peple I bekke,
 a dowve sitting on a berne. (69)
 ndes and my tonge goon so yerne,
 is joye to see my bisinesse.
 yce and of swich cursednesse 400
 y preching, for to make hem free
 her pena, and namely un-to me.
 entente is nat but for to winne,
 -thing for correccioun of sinne. 404
 never, whan that they ben beried,
 , that her soules goon a-blake-
 red !
 tes, many a predicacioun 4
 ofte tyme of yvel entencioun ; (84)
 r plesaunce of folk and flaterye,
 i avaunced by ipocrisie, 410
 n forveyne glorie, and som for hate.
 an I dar non other weyes debate,
 wol I stinge him with my tonge
 erte
 hing, so that he shal nat asterte
 i defamed falsly, if that he 415
 respased to my brethren or to me.
 ough I telle noght his propre name,
 al wel knowe that it is the same (90)
 ies and by othere circumstances.
 guyte I folk that doon us dis-
 mances ; 420
 pitte I out my venim under howe
 nesse, to seme holy and trewe.
 shortly myn entente I wol devyse ;
 e of no-thing but for covetyse.
 r my theme is yet, and ever was—

"*Radix malorum est cupiditas*" 426
 Thus can I preche agayn that same vyce
 Which that I use, and that is avaryce, (100)
 But, though my-self be gilty in that sinne,
 Yet can I maken other folk to twinne 430
 From avaryce, and sore to repente.
 But that is nat my principal entente.
 I preche no-thing but for covetyse ;
 Of this matere it oughte y-nogh suffyse.
 Than telle I hem ensamples many oon
 Of olde stories, longe tyme agoon : 436
 For lewed peple loven tales olde ;
 Swich thinges can they wel reporte and
 holde. (110)
 What? trowe ye, the whyles I may preche,
 And winne gold and silver for I teche, 440
 That I wol live in povert wilfully ?
 Nay, nay, I thoghte it never trowely !
 For I wol preche and begge in sondry
 londes ;
 I wol not do no labour with myn hondes,
 Ne make baskettes, and live therby, 445
 Because I wol nat beggen ydelly.
 I wol non of the apostles counterfete ;
 I wol have money, wolfe, chese, and whete,
 Al were it yeven of the povrest pape, (121)
 Or of the povrest widwe in a village, 450
 Al sholde hir children sterve for famyne.
 Nay ! I wol drinke licour of the vyne,
 And have a joly wenche in every toun.
 But herketh, lordings, in conclusioun ;
 Your lyking is that I shal telle a tale, 455
 Now, have I dronke a draughte of corny
 ale,
 By god, I hope I shal yow telle a thing.
 That shal, by reson, been at your lyking.
 For, though myself be a ful vicious
 man,
 A moral tale yet I yow telle can, (132) 460
 Which I am wont to preche, for to winne.
 Now holde your pees, my tale I wol
 beginne.'

THE PARDONERS TALE.

Here biginneth the Pardouners Tale.

In Flaundres whylom was a compaigne
Of yonge folk, that haunteden folke,
As ryot, hasard, stowes, and tavernes, 465
Wher-as, with harpes, lutes, and giternes,
They daunce and plays at dees bothe day

and night, (159)
And ete also and drinke over hir might,
Thurgh which they doon the deval mari-
fyas

With-in that deval temple, in cursed
wyse, 470

By superfluitee abhominable ;
Hir othes been so grete and so dampnable,
That it is grisly for to here hem swere ;
Our blissed lordes body they to-tare ;
Hem thoughte Jewes rente him noght
y-nough ; 475

And ech of hem at otheres sinne lough.
And right anon than comen tombesteres
Fetys and smale, and yonge fruytes-
teres, (150)

Singers with harpes, baudes, wafereres,
Whiche been the verray deval officeres
To kindle and blowe the fyr of lecherye,
That is annexed un-to glotonye, 482

The holy writ take I to my witnesse,
That luxurie is in wyn and dronkenesse.

Lo, how that dronken Loth, unkindely,
Lay by his doghtres two, unwittingly ; 486
So dronke he was, he niste what he
wroghte. (159)

Herodes, (who-so wel the stories soghte),
Whan he of wyn was replet at his feste,
Right at his owene table he yaf his heste
To sleen the Baptist John ful gyltelesse. 491

Senek seith eek a good word douteless ;
He seith, he can no difference finde
Bitwix a man that is out of his minde

And a man which that is dronkelewe, 495
But that woodnesse, y-fallen in a shreve,
Persevereth longer than doth dronkenesse.
O glotonye, ful of cursednesse, (170)
O cause first of our confusioun,
O original of our dampnacioun, 500
Til Crist had bought us with his blood
agayn !

Lo, how dere, shortly for to sayn,
Aboght was thilke cursed vileinye ;
Corrupt was al this world for glotonye !

Adam our fader, and his wyf also, 505
Fro Paradys to labour and to wo
Were driven for that vyce, it is no drede ;
For whyl that Adam fasted, as I rede, (180)
He was in Paradys ; and whan that he
Eet of the fruyt defended on the tree, 510
Anon he was out-cast to wo and payne.
O glotonye, on thee wel oghte us playn !
O, wiste a man how many maladyes
Fulwen of excess and of glotonyes,
He wolde been the more mesurable 515
Of his diete, sittinge at his table.

Allas ! the shorte throte, the tendre
mouth,

Maketh that, Est and West, and North
and South, (190)

In erthe, in air, in water men to-swink
To gete a glotoun deyntee mete and
drinke ! 520

Of this matere, o Paul, wel canstow trete,
'Mete un-to wombe, and wombe eek un-to
mete,

Shal god destroyen bothe,' as Paulus saith.
Allas ! a foul thing is it, by my feith, 524
To seye this word, and fouler is the dede,
Whan man so drinketh of the whyte and
rede,

That of his throte he maketh his privee,
Thurgh thilke cursed superfluitee. (200)

The apostel weping seith ful pitously,
'Ther walken many of whiche yow told
have I, 530

I seye it now weping with pitous voye,
[That] they been enemys of Cristes croys,
Of whiche the ende is deeth, wombe is
her god.'

O wombe! O bely! O stinking cod,
Fulfilde of donge and of corrupcioun! 535
At either ende of thee foul is the soun.

How greet labour and cost is thee to
finde!

Thise cokes, how they stampe, and streyne,
and grinde, (210)

And turnen substaunce in-to accident,
To fulfille al thy likerous talent! 540

Out of the harde bones knocke they
The mary, for they caste noght a-way
That may go thurgh the golst cofte and
swote;

Of spicerye, of leef, and bark, and rote
Shal been his sauce y-maked by delyt, 545

To make him yet a newer appetyt
But certes, he that haunteth swich delyces
Is deed, whyl that he liveth in the vyces.

A lecherous thing is wyn, and dronke-
nesse (220) 549

Is ful of stryving and of wretchednesse.
O dronke man, disfigured is thy face,

Sour is thy breath, foul artow to embrace,
And thurgh thy dronke nose semeth the
soun

As though thou seydest ay 'Sampson,
Sampson';

And yet, god wot, Sampson drank never
no wyn. 555

Thou fallest, as it were a stiked swyn;
Thy tonge is lost, and al thyn honest cure;

For dronkenesse is verray sepulture (230)
Of mannes wit and his discrecioun. 559

In whom that drinke hath dominacioun,
He can no conseil kepe, it is no drede.

Now kepe yow fro the whyte and fro the
rede,

And namely fro the whyte wyn of Lepe,
That is to selle in Fish-strete or in Chepe.

This wyn of Spayne crepeth subtilly 565
In othere wyne, growing fuste by,

Of which ther ryseth swich fumositee,

That whan a man hath dronken draughtes
three, (240)

And weneth that he be at hoom in
Chepe,

He is in Spayne, right at the toune of
Lepe, 570

Nat at the Rochel, ne at Burdeux toune;
And thanne wol he seye, 'Sampson,

Sampson.'

But herkneth, lordings, o word, I yow
preye,

That alle the sovereyn actes, dar I seye,
Of victories in th'olde testament, 575

Thurgh verray god, that is omnipotent,
Were doon in abstinence and in prayere;

Loketh the Bible, and ther ye may it
lere. (250)

Loke, Attila, the grete conquerour,
Deyde in his sleep, with shame and dis-
honour, 580

Bledinge ay at his nose in dronkenesse;
A capitayn shoulde live in sobrenesse.

And over al this, avyseth yow right wel
What was comaunded un-to Lamuel --

Nat Samuel, but Lamuel, seye I -- 585
Redeth the Bible, and finde it expresly

Of wyn-yeving to hem that han justise.
Na-more of this, for it may wel suffyse. (260)

And now that I have spoke of glotonye,
Now wol I yow defenden hasardrye. 590

Hasard is verray moder of lesinges,
And of deceits, and cursed forsweringes,

Blaspheme of Crist, manslaughter, and
wast also

Of catel and of tyme; and forthermo,
It is repreve and contrarie of honour 595

For to ben holde a commune hasardour
And ever the hyer he is of estat,

The more is he holden desolaat. (270)
If that a prince useth hasardrye,

In alle governaunce and policye 600
He is, as by commune opinioun,

Y-holde the lasse in reputacioun.

Stilbon, that was a wys embassadour,
Was sent to Corinthe, in ful greet honour,

Fro Lacedonie, to make hir alliaunce. 605
And whan he cam, him happede, par

chaunce,
That alle the grettest that were of that

land,
Pleyinge atte hasard he hem fond. (280)

For which, as sone as it mighte be, 609
 He stal him hoom agayn to his countree,
 And seyde, 'ther wol I nat less my name;
 N' I wol nat take on me so greet defame,
 Yow for to allye un-to none hasardours.
 Sendeth othere wyse embasadours; 614
 For, by my trouthe, me were lever dye,
 Than I yow sholde to hasardours allye.
 For ye that been so glorious in honours
 Shul nat allyen yow with hasardours (590)
 As by my wil, ne as by my trette.'

This wyse philosophe thus seyde he. 620
 Loke eek that, to the king Demetrius
 The king of Parthes, as the book seith us,
 Bente him a paire of dees of gold in scorn,
 For he hadde used hazard ther-biforn;
 For which he heold his glorie or his 625
 renoun

At no value or reputacioun.
 Lordes may finden other maner play
 Honeste y-nough to dryve the day away.

Now wol I speke of othes false and
 grete (301)

A word or two, as olde bokes trette. 630
 Gret swering is a thing abhominable,
 And false swering is yet more reprevable.
 The heighe god forbad swering at al,
 Witnesse on Mathew; but in special
 Of swering seith the holy Jeremye, 635
 'Thou shalt seye sooth thyn othes, and
 nat lye,

And swere in dome, and eek in rightwis-
 nesse;'

But ydel swering is a cursednesse. (310)
 Bihold and see, that in the firste table
 Of heighe goddes hestes honourable, 640
 How that the seconde heste of him is this—
 'Tak nat my name in ydel or amis.'

Lo, rather he forbedeth swich swering
 Than homicyde or many a cursed thing;
 I seye that, as by ordre, thus it stondeþ;
 This knowen, that his hestes under-
 stondeþ, 646

How that the second heste of god is
 that.

And forther over, I wol thee telle al plat,
 That vengeance shal nat parten from his
 hous, (321)

That of his othes is to outrageous. 650
 'By goddes precious herte, and by his
 nayles,

And by the blode of Crist, that it is in
 -Hayles,

Seven is my chauce, and thyn is ek
 and treye;

By goddes armes, if thou falsly playe,
 This dagger shal thurgh-out thyn herte
 go'— 655

This fruyt cometh of the blooded banestre,
 Forswering, ire, falsnesse, homicyde. (32)
 Now, for the love of Crist that for us dye,
 Leveth your othes, bothe grete and swale;
 But, sirs, now wol I telle furth my tale. 660

Ther ryotours thre, of whiche I telle,
 Longe erst er pryme ring of any belle,
 Were set hem in a tavern for to drink;
 And as they sette, they herde a belle rille
 Biforn a corse, was caried to his grave; 665
 That oon of hem gan callen to his knee,
 'Go bet,' quod he, 'and exe redily, (33)
 What corse is this that passeth heer sekly;
 And look that thou reporte his name wel'
 'Sir,' quod this boy, 'it nedeth never-
 a-del. 670

It was me told, er ye cam heer, two hours;
 He was, pardee, an old felawe of yours;
 And soleyly he was y-slayn to-night,
 For-dronke, as he sat on his bench up
 right;

Ther cam a privee theef, man clepeth
 Deeth, 675

That in this countree al the peple sleeth,
 And with his spere he smoot his herte
 a-two, (349)

And wente his way with-outen wordes mo.
 He hath a thousand slayn this pestilence;
 And, maister, er ye come in his presence,
 Me thinketh that it were necessarie 680

For to be war of swich an adversarie:
 Beth redy for to mete him evermore.

Thus taughte me my dame, I say na-more.
 'By seinte Marie,' seyde this taverner, 685

'The child seith sooth, for he hath slayn
 this yeer,

Henne over a myle, with-in a greet village,
 Both man and womman, child and hye,
 and page. (360)

I trowe his habitacioun be there;
 To been avysed greet wisdom it were, 690
 Er that he dide a man a dishonour.'

'Ye, goddes armes,' quod this ryotour,

'Is it swich peril with him for to mete?
I shal him sake by wey and oek by strete,
I make avow to goddes digne bones! 695
Herkeneth, felawes, we three been al ones,
Lat ech of us holde up his hond til other,
And ech of us bi-comen othere's brother, (370)
And we wol sleen this false traytour Deeth;
He shal be slayn, which that so many
sleeth, 700
By goddes dignitee, er it be night.'

Togidres han thise three her trouthes
plight,
To live and dyen ech of hem for other,
As though he were his owene y-boren
brother.

And up they sterte al dronken, in this
rage, 705
And forth they goon towards that village,
Of which the taverner had spoke biforn,
And many a grisly ooth than han they
sworn, (380)

And Cristes blessed body they to-rente --
'Deeth shal be deed, if that they may him
hente.' 710

Whan they han goon nat fully half a
myle,
Right as they wolde han troden over a
style,

An old man and a povre with hem mette.
This olde man ful mekely hem grette,
And seyde thus, 'now, lordes, god yow
see!' 715

The proudest of thise ryouteures three
Answerde agayn, 'what? carl, with sory
grace, (385)

Why artow al forwrapped save thy face?
Why livestow so longe in so greet age?'

This olde man gan loken in his visage, 720
And seyde thus, 'for I ne can nat finde
A man, though that I walked in-to Inde,
Neither in citee nor in no village,
That wolde chaunge his youthe for myn
age;

And therefore moot I han myn age stille,
As longe time as it is goddes willa. 725

'Ne deeth, alas! ne wol nat han my lyf;
Thus walke I, lyk a restelees caityf, (400)
And on the ground, which is my modres
gate,

Iknokke with my staf, bothe erly and late,
And seye, "leve moder, leet me in!" 731

Lo, how I vanish, flesh, and blood, and
skin!

Allas! whan shul my bones been at reste?
Moder, with yow wolde I chaunge my
cheste, 734

That in my chambre longe tyme hath be,
Ye! for an heyre clout to wrappe me!"
But yet to me she wol nat do that grace,
For which ful pale and welked is my face.

But, sirs, to yow it is no curteisye (411)
To speken to an old man vileinye, 740

But he trespasse in worde, or elles in dede.
In holy writ ye may your-self wel rode,
"Agayns an old man, hoor upon his heed,
Ye sholde aryse;" wherfor I yewe yow
reed,

Ne dooth un-to an old man noon harm
now, 745

Na-more than ye wolde men dide to yow
In age, if that ye so longe abyde;
And god be with yow, wher ye go or ryde.
I moot go thider as I have to go.' (421)

'Nay, olde cherl, by god, thou shalt nat
so,' 750

Seyde this other hasardour anon;
'Thou partest nat so lightly, by seint John!

Thou spak right now of thilke traitour
Deeth,

That in this contree alle our frendes
sleeth.

Have heer my trouthe, as thou art his
aspye, 755

Tel wher he is, or thou shalt it abyde,
By god, and by the holy sacrament!

For soothly thou art oon of his assent, (430)
To sleen us yonge folk, thou false theef!"

'Now, sirs,' quod he, 'if that yow be so
leef 760

To finde Deeth, turne up this croked
wey,

For in that grove I lafte him, by my fey,
Under a tree, and ther he wol abyde;

Nat for your boost he wol him no-thing
hyde.

See ye that oek? right ther ye shul him
finde. 765

God save yow, that boghte agayn man-
kinde,

And yow amende! -- thus seyde this olde
man.

And everich of thise ryouteures ran, (440)

Til he cam to that tree, and ther they
 founde
 Of florins fyne of golde y-coyned rounde.
 Wel ny an eighte bumbals, as hem
 thoughte. 771
 Nolenger thanne after Deeth they soughte,
 But ech of hem so glad was of that sighte,
 For that the florins been so faire and
 brighte,
 That donn they sette hem by this precious
 hord. 775
 The worste of hem he spake the firste word.
 'Brethren,' quod he, 'tak kepe what I
 seye;
 My wit is greet, though that I bourde and
 playe. (450)
 This tresor hath fortune un-to us yiven,
 In mirthe and jolitee our lyf to liven, 780
 And lightly as it comth, so wel we spende.
 Ey! goddes precious dignitee! who wende
 To-day, that we sholde han so fair a grace?
 But mighte this gold be caried fro this
 place 784
 Hoom to myn hous, or elles un-to youre—
 For wel ye woot that al this gold is oures—
 Than were we in heigh felicittee.
 But trewely, by daye it may nat be; (460)
 Men wolde seyn that we were theves
 stronge, 789
 And for our owene tresor doon us hongre.
 This tresor moste y-caried be by nighte
 As wysly and as slyly as it mighte.
 Wherefore I rede that cut among us alle
 Be drawe, and lat see wher the cut wol
 falle;
 And he that hath the cut with herte blythe
 Shal renne to the toun, and that ful
 swythe, 796
 And bringe us breed and wyn ful prively.
 And two of us shul kepen subtilly (470)
 This tresor wel; and, if he wol nat tarie,
 When it is night, we wol this tresor
 carie 800
 By oon assent, wher-as us thinketh best.
 That oon of hem the cut broughte in his
 fest,
 And had hem drawe, and loke wher it wol
 falle;
 And it fil on the yongeste of hem alle;
 And forth toward the toun he wente anon.
 And also sone as that he was gon, 806

That oon of hem spak thus un-to that
 other,
 'Thou knowest wel thou art my swete
 brother, (480)
 Thy profit wol I telle thee anon.
 Thou woost wel that our felawe is agon;
 And heer is gold, and that ful greet
 plente, 811
 That shal departed been among us thre.
 But natheles, if I can shape it so
 That it departed were among us two,
 Hadde I nat doon a frendes torn to thee?
 That other answerde, 'I noot how that
 may be; 816
 He woot how that the gold is with us
 tweye,
 What shal we doon, what shal we to him
 seye?' (491)
 'Shal it be conseil?' seyde the firste
 shrew, 821
 'And I shal tellen thee, in wordes fewe,
 What we shal doon, and bringe it wel
 aboute.' 821
 'I graunte,' quod that other, 'out of
 doute,
 That, by my trouthe, I wol thee nat hi-
 wreyn.'
 'Now,' quod the firste, 'thou woost wel
 we be tweye, 824
 And two of us shul stronger be than oon.
 Look whan that he is set, and right anon
 Arys, as though thou woldest with him
 playe;
 And I shal ryve him thurgh the aydes
 tweye (500)
 Why! that thou stogelast with him as in
 game,
 And with thy dagger look thou do the
 same; 830
 And than shal al this gold departed be,
 My dere freend, bitwixen me and thee;
 Thus may we bothe our lustes al fulfillen,
 And playe at dees right at our owene
 willa.'
 And thus acorded been thise shrewes
 tweye 835
 To sleen the thridde, as ye han herd me
 seye,
 This yongest, which that wente un-to
 the toun,
 Ful ofte in herte he rolleth up and down

The beantes of thise florins newe and
brighte. (511)

'O lord!' quod he, 'if so were that I
mighte 840

Have al this tresor to my-self allone,
Ther is no man that liveth under the trone
Of god, that sholde live so mery as I!
And atte laste the feend, our enemy,
Putte in his thought that he shold poyson
beye, 845

With which he mighte sleen his felawes
tweye;

For-why the feend fond him in swich
lyvinge, (519)

That he had leve him to sorwe bringe,
For this was outrely his fulle entente
To sleen hem bothe, and never to repente.
And forth he gooth, no lenger wolde he
tarie, 851

Into the toun, un-to a pothecarie,
And preyed him, that he him wolde
selle

Some poyson, that he mighte his rattes
quelle;

And eek ther was a polcat in his hawe,
That, as he seyde, his capouns hadde
y-slawe, 856

And fayn he wolde wreke him, if he
mighte,

On vermin, that destroyed him by nighte.

The pothecarie answerde, 'and thou
shalt have (531)

A thing that, al-so god my soule save, 860
In al this world ther nis no creature,
That ete or dronke hath of this confiture
Noght but the mountance of a corn of
whete,

That he ne shal his lyf anon forlete;
Ye, sterve he shal, and that in lasse whyle
Than thou wolt goon a paas nat but a
myle; 866

This poyson is so strong and violent.'

This cursed man hath in his hond
y-hent (540)

This poyson in a box, and sith he ran
In-to the nexte strete, un-to a man, 870

And borwed [of] him large botels thre;
And in the two his poyson poured he;

The thridde he kepte cleue for his drinke.
For al the night he shoop him for to
swinke 874

In caryinge of the gold out of that place.
And whan this ryotour, with sory grace,
Had filled with wyn his grete botels thre,
To his felawes agayn repaireth he. (550)

What nedeth it to sermone of it more?
For right as they had cast his deeth bifore,
Right so they han him slayn, and that
anon. 881

And whan that this was doon, thus spak
that con,

'Now lat us sitte and drinke, and make
us marie,

And afterward we wol his body berie.'
And with that word it happed him, par
cas, 885

To take the botel ther the poyson was,
And drank, and yaf his felawe drinke also,
For which anon they storven bothe two.

But, certes, I suppose that Avicen (561)
Wroot never in no canon, ne in no fen,
Mo wonder signes of empoisoning 891
Than hadde thise wrecches two, er hir
ending.

Thus ended been thise homicydes two,
And eek the false empoysoner also.

O cursed sinne, ful of cursednesse! 895
O traytours homicyde, o wikkednesse!

O glotonye, luxurie, and haardrye! (569)
Thou blasphemour of Crist with vileinye
And othes grete, of usage and of pryde!

Allas! mankinde, how may it bityde, 901
That to thy creatour which that thee
wroghte,

And with his precious herte-blood thee
boghte,

Thou art so fals and so unkinde, alas!

Now, goode men, god forgeve yow your
trespas, 904

And ware yow fro the sinne of avaryce.
Myn holy pardoun may yow alle waryce,

So that ye offre nobles or sterlinges,
Or elles silver broches, spones, ringes. (580)

Boweth your heed under this holy bulle!
Cometh up, ye wyves, offreth of your
wolle! 910

Your name I entre heer in my rolle anon;
In-to the blisse of hevene shal ye gon;

I yow assoile, by myn heigh power,
Yow that wol offre, as cleue and eek as
cleer

As ye were born; and, lo, sirs, thus I
preche. 915

And Jesu Crist, that is our soules leche,
So graunte yow his pardon to receyve,
For that is best, I wol yow nat deceyve.

But sirs, o word forgat I in my tale, (591)
I have relikes and pardon in my male, 920
As faire as any man in Engelond,
Whiche were me yeven by the popes hond.
If any of yow wol, of devocioun,
Offren, and han myn absolacioun,
Cometh forth anon, and knioeth heer
adoun, 925

And mekely receyveth my parloun -
Or elles, taketh pardon as ye wende, (599)
Al newe and fresh, at every tounes ende,
So that ye offren alwey newe and newe
Nobles and pens, which that be gode and
trewe. 930

It is an honour to everich that is heer,
That ye mowe have a suffisant pardoner
Tasmulle yow, in contree as ye ryde,
For adventures which that may bityde,
Peraventure ther may falle oon or two 935
Doun of his hors, and breke his nekke
atwo.

Look which a seuretee is it to yow alle
That I am in your felaweship y-falle, (610)
That may assoille yow, bothe more and
lasse,

Whan that the soule shal fro the body
passe. 940

I rede that our hoste heer shal biginne,
For he is most enveloped in sinne.
Com forth, sir hoste, and offre first anon,
And thou shalt kisse the reliks everichon,

Ye, for a grote 'unboked anon thy purg'
'Nay, nay,' quod he, 'than have I
Cristes cura! 946

Lat be,' quod he, 'it shal nat be, so
thee'ch!

Thou woldest make me kisse thyn old
breech, (620)

And swere it were a relik of a seint,
Thogh it were with thy fundament Je-
peint! 950

But by the croys which that seint Eleyne
fond,

I wolde I hadde thy coillions in myn hond
In stede of relikas or of seintuarie,

Lat cutte hem of, I wol thee helpe hem
carie,

'They shul be shryned in an hogges toyl.'

This pardoner answerde nat a word, 960
So wrooth he was, no word ne wolde he
seye.

'Now,' quod our host, 'I wol no lenger
pleye (630)

With thee, ne with noon other angry man.'
But right anon the worthy Knight began,
Whan that he saugh that al the peple
lough, 961

'Na-more of this, for it is right y-nough
Sir Pardoner, be glad and mery of chere.
And ye, sir host, that been to me so dere,
I pray yow that ye kisse the Pardoner 965
And Pardoner, I prey thee, drawe thee
neer,

And, as we diden, lat us laughe and
pleye.' (634)

Anon they kiste, and riden forth hir
weye. [T. 12902]

Here is ended the Pardoner's Tale.

(For T. 12903, see p. 492).

GROUP D.

THE WIFE OF BATH'S PROLOGUE.

The Prologue of the Wyves Tale of Bath.

'EXPERIENCE, though noon auctoritee
Were in this world, were right y-nough
to me

To speke of wo that is in mariage;
For, lordinges, sith I twelf yeer was of age,
Thonked be god that is eterne on lyve, 5
Housbondes at chirche-dore I have had
fyve;

For I so ofte have y-wedded he;
And alle were worthy men in hir degree.
But me was told certeyn, nat longe agoon is,
That sith that Crist ne wente never but
onis 10

To wedding in the Cane of Galilee,
That by the same ensample taughte he me
That I ne sholde wedded be but ones.
Herke eek, lo! which a sharp word for
the nones

Baynde a welle Jesus, god and man, 15
Spak in repreve of the Samaritan:
"Thou hast y-had fyve housbondes," quod
he,

"And thilke man, the which that hath
now thes,
Is noght thyn housbond;" thus seyde he
certeyn;

What that he mente ther-by, I can nat
seyn; 20

But that I axe, why that the fifthe man
Was noon housbond to the Samaritan?
How manye mighte she have in mariage?
Yet herde I never tellen in myn age

Upon this nombre diffinicioun; 25

Men may devyne and glosen up and down.
But wel I woot expres, with-oute lye,
God bad us for to wexe and multiplie;
That gentil text can I wel understonde.
Eek wel I woot he seyde, myn housbonde

Sholde lete fader and moder, and take
me; 30

But of no nombre mencionn made he,
Of bigamye or of octogamye;

Why sholde men speke of it vileinye?

Lo, here the wyse king, dan Salomon; 35
I trowe he hadde wyves mo than oon;

As, wolde god, it lefeul were to me

To be refreshed half so ofte as he!

Which yifte of god hadde he for alle his
wyvis!

No man hath swich, that in this world
alyve is. 40

God woot, this noble king, as to my wit,
The firste night had many a mery fit

With ech of hem, so wel was him on lyve!

Blessed be god that I have wedded fyve!*
Welcome the sixte, whan that ever he

shal. 45

For sothe, I wol nat kepe me chast in al,
Whan myn housbond is fro the world
y-gon,

Som Cristen man shal wedde me anon;

For thanne th'apostle seith, that I am
free

To wedde, a godd's half, wher it lyketh
me. 50

He seith that to be wedded is no synne;

But is to be wedded than to brinne.

What rekketh me, thogh folk seye vileinye

Of shrewed Lameth and his bigamye?

* Here some MSS. insert the following genuine
(but rejected) lines:—

Of which I have y-piked out the beste
Bothe of hir nether pure and of hir cheste.
Diverse scoles maken parfit clerkes,
Divers praktik, in many sondry werkes,
Maketh the workman parfit sekirly.
Of fyve husbondes scolaring am I.

I woot wel Abraham was an holy man, 55
And Jacob ook, as ferforth as I can;
And ech of hem hadde wyves mo than
two;

And many another holy man also.
Whan saugh ye ever, in any maner age,
That hye god de'ended mariage 60
By expres word? I pray you, telleth me;
Or wher comanded he virginitee?
I woot as wel as ye, it is no drede,
Th'apostel, whan he speket of mayden-
hede;

He seyde, that precept ther-of hadde he
noon. 65

Men may conseil a woman to been oon,
But conseil is no comandement;
He putte it in our owene jugement
For hadde god comanded maydenhede,
Thanne hadde he dampned wedding with
the dede, 70

And certes, if ther were no seed y-sowe,
Virginitee, wher-of than sholde it growe?
Poul dorste nat comanden atte leste
A thing of which his maister yaf noon
beste,

The dart is set up for virginitee; 75
Caeche who so may, who renneth best lat
see,

But this word is nat take of every wight,
But ther as god list give it of his might,
I woot wel, that th'apostel was a mayde,
But natheless, thogh that he wroot and
sayde, 80

He wolde that every wight were swich as
he,

Al nis but conseil to virginitee;
And for to been a wyf, he yaf ma leve
Of indulgence, so it is no reprove
To walde me, if that my make dye, 85
With-out exception of bigamye.

Al were it good no woman for to tonche,
He mente as in his bed or in his couche;
For peril is bothe fyr and tow t'assemble,
Ye knowe what this ensample may
resemble. 90

This is al and som, he heeld virginitee
More parfit than wedding in freletee.
Freletes clepe I, but-if that he and she
Wolde leden al hir lyf in chastitee,

I graunte it wel, I have noon envye, 95
Thogh maydenhede preferre bigamye;

Hem lyketh to be clene, body and goost,
Of myn estat I nil nat make no boost.
For wel ye knowe, a lord in his household,
He hath nat every vessel al of gold: 100
Somme been of tree, and doon hir lord
servyse

God clepeth folk to him in sondry wyse,
And overich hath of god a propre yifte,
Som this, som that, -as him lyketh shifte.

Virginitee is greet perfeccioun, 105
And continence eek with devocioun.

But Crist, that of perfeccioun is welle,
Bad nat every wight he sholde go selle
All that he hadde and give it to the poor,
And in swich wyse fulwe him and his
fore. 110

He spak to hem that wolde live parfitly,
And lordinges, by your leve, that am nat I.
I wol lustowe the flour of al myn age
In th' actes and in fruit of mariage.

Telle me also, to what conclusioun 115
Were membres maad of generacioun,
And for what profit was a wight
y-wrought?

Trusteth right wel, they wer nat maad
for noght.

Glose who-so wole, and seye bothe up and
doun,

That they were maad for purgacioun 120
Of urine, and our bothe thinges smale
Were eek to knowe a femelle from a
male,

And for noon other cause - sey ye no?
The experience woot wel it is noght so;
So that the clerkes be nat with me
wrothe, 125

I sey this, that they maked been for bothe,
This is to seye, for office, and for ase
Of engendrure, ther we nat god displese.
Why sholde men elles in hir bokes sette,
That man shal yelde to his wyf hir
dette? 130

Now wher-with sholde he make his
payment,

If he ne used his sely instrument?
Than were they maad up-on a creature,
To purge uryne, and eek for engendrure.

But I seye noght that every wight is
holde, 135

That hath swich harneys as I to yow
tolde,

To goon and useen hem in engendrure;
Than sholde men take of chastitee no
curs.

Crist was a mayde, and shapen as a man,
And many a saint, sith that the world
bigan, 140

Yet lived they ever in parfit chastitee.

I nil envye no virginitee;

Lat hem be breed of pured whete-seed,

And lat us wyves hoten barly-breed;

And yet with barly-breed, Mark telle can,

Our lord Jesu refremshed many a man. 146

In swich estaat as god hath cleped us

I wol persevere, I nam nat precious.

In wyfhode I wol use myn instrument

As frely as my maker hath it sent. 150

If I be daungerous, god yeve me sorwe!

Myn housbond shal it have bothe eve and

morwe,

Whan that him list com forth and paye

his dette.

An housbonde I wol have, I nil nat lette,

Which shal be bothe my dettour and my

thral, 155

And have his tribulacioun with-al

Up-on his flesh, whyl that I am his wyf.

I have the power duringe al my lyf

Up-on his propre body, and noght he.

Right thus th'apostel tolde it un to me;

And bad our housbondes for to love us

weel. 161

Al this sentence me lyketh every-deel'—

Uf sterte the Pardoner, and that anon,

'Now dame,' quod he, 'by god and by

saint John.

Ye been a noble prechour in this cas! 165

I was aboute to wedde a wyf; alas!

What sholde I bye it on my flesh so dere?

Yet hadde I lever wedde no wyf to-yere!

'Abyde!' quod she, 'my tale is nat

bigonne; 169

Nay, thou shalt drinken of another tonne

Er that I go, shal savoure wors than ale.

And whan that I have told thee forth

my tale

Of tribulacioun in mariage,

Of which I am expert in al myn age,

This to seyn, my-self have been the

whippe;— 173

Than mayestow chese whether thou wolt

sippe

Of thilke tonne that I shal abroche.

Be war of it, er thou to ny approche;

For I shal telle ensamples mo than ten.

Who-so that nil be war by othere men, 180

By him shul othere men corrected be.

The same wordes wryteth Ptholomee;

Rede in his *Almageste*, and take it there.'

'Dame, I wolde praye yow, if your wil

it were,'

Seyde this Pardoner, 'as ye bigan, 185

Telle forth your tale, spareth for no man.

And teche us yonge men of your praktike.'

'Gladly,' quod she, 'uth it may yow

lyke.

But yet I praye to al this companye,

If that I spoke after my fantasye, 190

As taketh not a-grief of that I seye:

For myn entente nis but for to playe.

Now sires, now wol I telle forth my

tale,—

As ever mote I drinken wyn or ale,

I shal seye sooth, the housbondes that

I hadde, 195

As three of hem were gode and two were

hauke.

The three men were gode, and riche, and

olde;

Unnethe mighte they the statut holde

In which that they were bounden un-to

me. 200

Ye woot wel what I mene of this, parler!

As help me god, I laughe whan I thinke—

How pitously a-night I made hem swinke,

And by my fey, I tolde of it no stoor.

They had me yeven hir gold and hir

tresoor;

Me neded nat do lenger diligence 205

To winne hir love, or doon hem reverence.

They loved me so wel, by god above,

That I ne tolde no deyntee of hir love!

A wys womman wol sette hir ever in oon

To gete hir love, ther as she hath noon. 210

But sith I hadde hem hoolly in myn heop,

And sith they hadde me yeven all hir

lond,

What sholde I taken hede hem for to

plose,

But it were for my profit and myn ese?

I sette hem so a-werke, by my fey, 215

That many a night they songen "wei-

lawey!"

The baconn was nat fet for hem, I trowe,
That som men han in Essex at Dunmowe.
I governed hem so wel, after my laws,
That ech of hem ful blisful was and fawe
To bringe me gaye thinges fro the fayre. 221
They were ful glad whan I spak to hem
fayre;

For god it woot, I chidde hem spitously.

Now herkneth, how I bar me properly,
Ye wyse wyves, that can understonde. 223

Thus shul ye speke and here hem wrong
on honds;

For half so boldely can ther no man
Swere and lye as a woman can.

I sey nat this by wyves that ben wyse,
But-if it be whan they hem misavyse. 230

A wys wyf, if that she can hir good,
Shal beren him on hond the oow is wood,
And take witness of hir owene mayde
Of hir assent; but herkneth how I sayde.

"Sir olde kaynard, is this thyn array?
Why is my neighebores wyf so gay? 236

She is honoured over-al ther she goth;
I sitte at boom, I have no thrifty cloth.

What dostow at my neighebores hous?
Is she so fair? artow so amorous? 240

What rowne ye with our mayde? ben'-
cite!

Sir olde lechour, lat thy japes be!

And if I have a gossib or a freend,
With-uten gilt, thou chydest as a feend,

If that I walke or pleye un-to his hous! 245
Thou comest boom as drunken as a mous,

And prechest on thy bench, with yvel
preef!

Thou seist to me, it is a greet meschief
To wedde a povre woman, for costage;

And if that she be riche, of heigh parage,
Than seistow that it is a tormentrye 251

To suffre hir pryde and hir malencolye.
And if that she be fair, thou verray knave.

Thou seyst that every holour wol hir have;
She may no whyle in chastitee abyde, 255

That is assailed up-on ech a syde.
Thou seyst, som folk desyre us for

richesse,
Som for our shap, and som for our fair-

nesse;
And som, for she can outhor singe or

daunce, 259
And som, for gentillesse and daliaunce;

Som, for hir handes and hir armes make;
Thus goth al to the devel by thy tale.

Thou seyst, men may nat kepe a castel
wel;

It may so longe assailed been over-al.

And if that she be foul, thou seist that
she 265

Coveiteth every man that she may see;

For as a spaynel she wol on him lepe,

Til that she finde som man hir to chepe;

Ne noon so grey gooþ goth ther in the
lake, 270

As, seistow, that wol been with-oute neke.

And seyst, it is an hard thing for to welde
A thing that no man wol, his thanks,

lode. 275

Thus seistow, lorel, whan thou goost to
bedde;

And that no wys man nedeth for to
wedde, 280

Ne no man that entendeth un-to hevene
With wilde thonder-dint and fry levee

Mote thy welked nekke be to-broke!
Thow seyst that dropping houses, and

eeke smoke,
And chydying wyves, maken men to fle

Out of hir owene hous; a! ben'cite! 285
What eyleth swich an old man for to

chyde?
Thow seyst, we wyves wol our vyces

hyde
Til we be fast, and than we wol hem

shewe;
Wel may that be a proverbe of a shrew!

Thou seist, that oxen, asses, hors, and
houndes, 295

They been assayed at diverse stoundes;
Bacins, lavours, er that men hem bye,

Spones and stoles, and al swich how-
bondrye,

And so been pottes, clothes, and array;
But folk of wyves maken noon assay 300

Til they be wedded; olde dotard shrews!
And than, seistow, we wol oure vices

shewe.

Thou seist also, that it displeaseth me
But-if that thou wolt preyse my beautee,

And but thou poure alwey up-on my
face, 305

And clepe me 'faire dame' in every
place;

And but thou make a feste on thilke
day

That I was born, and make me fresh and
gay,

And but thou do to my norice honour,
And to my chamberere with-inne my
bour,

And to my fadres folk and his allyes;—
Thus seistow, olde barel ful of lyes!

And yet of our apprentice Janekyn,
For his crisp heer, shyninge as gold so fyn,
And for he squiereth me bothe up and
down,

Yet hastow caught a fals suspicioun;
I wol hym noght, thogh thou were deed
to-morwe.

But tel me this, why hydestow, with
sorwe,

The keyes of thy cheste away fro me?
It is my good as wel as thyn, pardes. 310
What wenestow make an idiot of our
dame?

Now by that lord, that called is seint
Jame,

Thou shalt nat bothe, thogh that thou
were wood,

Be maister of my body and of my good;
That oon thou shalt forgo, maugree thyne
yē;

What nedeth thee of me to enquire or
spyē?

I trowe, thou woldest lōke me in thy
cheste!

Thou sholdest seye, 'wyf, go wher thee
leste,

Tak your disport, I wol nat leve no talis;
I knowe yow for a trewe wyf, dame Alis.'

We love no man that taketh kepe or
charge

Wher that we goon, we wol han at our
large.

Of alle men y-blessed moot he be,
The wyse astrologien Dan Ptholome, 324
That seith this proverbe in his Almageste,
'Of alle men his wisdom is the hyeste,
That rekkeþ never who hath the world
in honde.'

By this proverbe thou shalt understonde,
Have thou y-nogh, what thar thee recche
or care

How merily that others folkes fare? 330

For certeyn, olde dotard, by your leve.
Ye shul have queynte right y-nough at eve.
He is to greet a nigard that wol werne
A man to lighte his candle at his lanterne;
He shal have never the lasse light,
pardes;

Have thou y-nough, thee thar nat pleyne
thee

Thou seyst also, that if we make us gay
With clothing and with precious array.

That it is peril of our chastitee;

And yet, with sorwe, thou most enforce
thee,

And seye this wordes in the apostles
name,

'In habit, maad with chastitee and
shame,

Ye wommen shul apparaille yow,' quod
he,

'And noght in tressed heer and gay
perree,

As perles, ne with gold, ne clothes riche;'
After thy text, ne after thy rubriche

I wol nat wirche as muchel as a gnat.

Thou seydest this, that I was lyk a cat,
For who-so wolde senge a cattles skin,

Thanne wolde the cat wel dwellen in
his in;

And if the cattles skin be slyk and gay,
She wol nat dwelle in house half a day.

But forth she wole, er any day be dawed,
To shewe hir skin, and goon a-cater-
wawed;

This is to seye, if I be gay, sir shrewe. 335
I wol renne out, my borsel for to shewe

Sire olde fool, what eyleth thee to
spyē?

Thogh thou preye Argus, with his
hundred yē,

To be my warde-cors, as he can best,
In feith, he shal nat kepe me but me

lost;

Yet coude I make his berd, so moot
I thee.

Thou seydest eek, that ther ben thinges
three,

The whiche thinges troublen al this erthe,
And that no wight ne may endure the
ferthe;

O leve sir shrewe, Jasn shorte thy lyf! 365
Yet prechestow, and seyst, an hateful wyf

Y-rekened is for oon of thise meschances,
Been ther none othere maner resemblances

That ye may lykne your parables to,
But-if a sely wyf be oon of tho? 370

Thou lykenest wommanes love to helle,
To bareyne lond, ther water may not dwelle.

Thou lyknest it also to wilde fyr;
The more it brenneth, the more it hath desyr

To consume every thing that brent
wol be. 375

Thou seyst, that right as wormes shende
a tree,

Right so a wyf destroyeth hir housbonde;
This knowe they that been to wyves bonde."

Lordinges, right thus, as ye have
understonde,

Bar I styff myne olde housbondes on
honde, 380

That thus they seyden in hir dronkenesse;
And al was fals, but that I took witnesso
On Janekin and on my nece also.

O lord, the peyne I dide hem and the wo,
Ful giltelees, by goddes swete pyne! 385

For as an hors I coude byte and whyne.
I coude playne, thogh I were in the gilt,

Or elles often tyme hadde I ben spilt.
Who-so that first to mille comth, first

grint;

I pleyned first, so was our werre y-stint.
They were ful glad t'excusen hem ful

blyve 391

Of thing of which they never agilte hir
lyve.

Of wenches wolde I beren him on
honde,

Whan that for syk unnethes mighte he
stonde.

Yet tikled it his herte, for that he 395

Wende that I hadde of him so greet
chiertee.

I swoor that al my walkinge out by nighte
Was for t'espye wenches that he dighte;

Under that colour hadde I many a mirthe.
For al swich wit is yeven us in our birthe;

Deceite, weping, spinning god hath yive
To wommen kindly, whyl they may live.

And thus of o thing I swaunte me, 403
Atte ende I hadde the better in ech
degree,

By sleighte, or force, or by som maner
thing, 405

As by continual murmur or grucching;
Namely a-bedde hadden they meschance,

Ther wolde I chyde and do hem so
plemance;

I wolde no lenger in the bed abyde,
If that I false his arm over my ryde, 410

Till he had maad his ransoun un-to me;
Than wolde I suffre him do his nyestes.

And therfore every man this tale I telle,
Winne who-so may, for al is for to selle.

With empty hand men may none heale
lure; 415

For winning wolde I al his lust endure,
And make me a feyned appetyt;

And yet in bacon hadde I never delyt;
That made me that ever I wolde hem

chyde. 419

For thogh the pope had seten hem byde,
I wolde nat spare hem at hir owne bord.

For by my trouthe, I quitte hem word
for word.

As help me verray god omnipotent,
Thogh I right now sholde make my

testament,

I ne owe hem nat a word that it nisquit.
I broghte it so aboute by my wit, 426

That they moste yeve it up, as for the
beste;

Or elles hadde we never been in reste.
For thogh he loked as a wood leoun,

Yet sholde he faille of his conclusoun. 430

Thanne wolde I seye, "gode lief, tak
keep

How mekely loketh Wilkinoure sheep:
Com neer, my spouse, lat me be thy

cheke!

Ye sholde been al pacient and make,
And han a swete spyced conscience, 435

Sith ye so preche of Jobes pacience.
Suffreth alwey, sin ye so wel can preche:

And but ye do, certain we shal yow
teche

That it is fair to have a wyf in pees.
Oon of us two moste bowen, douteles, 440

And sith a man is more reasonable
Than womman is, ye moste been sufferable.

What sylteth yow to grucche thus and
grone?

Is it for ye wolde have my queynte allone?

Why takk it al, lo, have it every-deel; 445

Peter! I shrowe yow hut ye love it weel!

For if I wolde selle my *bele chose*,

I coude walke as fresh as is a rose;

But I wol kepe it for your owene tooth.

Ye be to blame, by god, I sey yow sooth."

Swiche maner wordes hadde we on
honde. 451

Now wol I spoken of my fourthe hous-
bonde.

My fourthe housbonde was a revelour,
This is to seyn, he hadde a paramour;

And I was yong and ful of ragerye, 455

Stiborn and strong, and joly as a pye.

Wel coude I daunce to an harpe smale,

And singe, y-wis, as any nightingale,

Whan I had dronke a draughte of swete
wyn.

Metellus, the foule cherl, the swyn, 460

That with a staf biraste his wyf hir lyf,

For she drank wyn, thogh I hadde been
his wyf,

He sholde nat han daunted me fro drinke;

And, after wyn, on Venus moste I thinke:

For al so siker as cold engendreth hayl,

A likerous mouth moste han a likerous
tayl. 466

In womman vinolent is no defence,

This knowen lechours by experience.

But, lord Crist! whan that it remem-
breth me

Up-on my yowthe, and on my jolitee, 470

It tikleth me aboute myn herte rote.

Unto this day it dooth myn herte bote

That I have had my world as in my tyme.

But age, alas! that al wol envenyme, 474

Hath me biraft my beautee and my pith;

Let go, fare-wel, the deval go therwith!

The flour is goon, ther is na-more to telle,

The bren, as I best can, now moste I selle;

But yet to be right mery wol I fonde.

Now wol I tellen of my fourthe hous-
bonde. 480

I seye, I hadde in herte greet despyt

That he of any other had delyt.

But he was quit, by god and by seint
Jocce!

I made him of the same wode a croce;

Nat of my body in no foul manere, 485

But certainly, I made folk swich chere,

That in his owene grece I made him frye

For angre, and for verray jalounye.

By god, in erthe I was his purgatorie, 489

For which I hope his soule be in gloria.

For god it woot, he sat ful ofte and song

Whan that his shoo ful bitterly him
wrong.

Ther was no wight, save god and he, that
wiste,

In many wyse, how sore I him twiste.

He deyde whan I cam fro Jerusalem, 495

And lyth y-grave under the rode-beam,

Al is his tombe nocht so curious

As was the sepulchre of him, Darins,

Which that Appelles wroghte subtilly;

It nis but wast to burie him preciously 500

Lat him fare-wel, god yeve his soule reste,

He is now in the grave and in his chesta.

Now of my fifthe housbond wol I telle.

God lete his soule never come in helle!

And yet was he to me the moste shrewe;

That fele I on my ribbes al by rewe, 506

And ever shal, un-to myn ending-day.

But in our bed he was so fresh and gay,

And ther-with-al so wel coude he me glose,

Whan that he wolde han my *bele chose*, 510

That thogh he hadde me bet on every
boon,

He coude winne agayn my love anon.

I trowe I loved him beste, for that he

Was of his love daungerous to me.

We women han, if that I shal nat lye,

In this matere a queynte fantasye; 516

Wayte what thing we may nat lightly
have,

Ther-after wol we crye al-day and crave.

Forbede us thing, and that desyren we;

Prees on us faste, and thanne wol we flee.

With daunger oute we al our chaffare; 521

Greet prees at market maketh dere ware,

And to greet cheep is holde at litel prys;

This knoweth every womman that is wys.

My fifthe housbonde, god his soule
blesse! 525

Which that I took for love and no
richesse,

He som-tyme was a clerk of Oxenford,

And had left scole, and wente at hoorn to
bord

With my gossib, dwellinge in oure town,
 God have hir soules! hir name was
 Ahasoun. 530

She knew myn herte and eek my privetee
 Bet than our parisshe-preest, so moote
 I thee!

To hir biwreyed I my conseil al.
 For had myn housbonde pissed on a wal,
 Or doon a thing that sholde han cost his
 lyf, 535

To hir, and to another worthy wyf,
 And to my nece, which that I loved
 weel,

I wolde han told his conseil every-deel.
 And so I dide ful often, god it woot,
 That made his face ful often reed and
 hoot 540

For verray shame, and blamed him-self
 for he

Had told to me so greet a privetee.

And so bifel that ones, in a Lente,
 So often tymes I to my gossib wente,
 For ever yet I lovede to be gay, 545
 And for to walke, in March, Aventure, and
 May,

Pro hous to hous, to here sondry talis,
 That Jankin clerk, and my gossib dame
 Aha,

And I my-self, in-to the felde wente.
 Myn housbond was at London al that
 Lente, 550

I hadde the bettre leyser for to playe,
 And for to see, and eek for to be seye
 Of lusty folk, what wiste I wher my grace
 Was shapen for to be, or in what place?

Therefore I made my visitaciouns, 555
 To vigilies and to processiouns,
 To preching eek and to thise pilgrimages,
 To pleyes of miracles and mariages,
 And wered upon my gaye scarlet gytes.

Thise wormes, ne thise motthes, ne thise
 mytes, 560

Upon my peril, frete hem never a deel;
 And wostow why? for they were used
 weel.

Now wol I tellen forth what happed me.
 I seye, that in the felde walked we,
 Til trowely we hadde swich daliance, 565
 This clerk and I, that of my purveyance
 I spak to him, and seyde him, how that he,
 If I were widwe, sholde wedde me.

For certainly, I sey for no bobance,
 Yet was I never with-outen purveyance
 Of mariage, n'of othere thinges eek. 570

I holde a mouses herte nat worth a leek.
 That hath but oon hole for to sterte to,
 And if that faille, thanne is al y-do.

I bar him on honde, he hadde co-
 chanted me; 575

My dame taughte me that soutiltee,
 And eek I seyde, I mette of him al night
 He wolde han slayn me as I lay up-right,
 And al my bed was ful of verray blood,
 But yet I hope that he shal do me
 good; 580

For blood bitokeneth gold, as me was
 taught.

And al was fals, I dreamed of it right
 naught,

But as I folwed ay my dames lore,
 As wel of this as of other thinges more.

But now sir, lat me see, what I shal
 seyn? 585

A! ha! by god, I have my tale agryn.
 Whan that my fourthe housbond was
 on here,

I weep algate, and made sory chere,
 As wyves moten, for it is usage,
 And with my coverchiaf covered my
 visage; 590

But for that I was purveyed of a make,
 I weep but smal, and that I undertake.

To chirche was myn housbond born
 a-morwe

With neighebores, that for him maken
 sorwe,

And Jankin oure clerk was oon of tho, 595
 As help me god, whan that I saugh
 him go

After the bere, me thoughte he hadde a
 paire

Of legges and of feet so clepe and faire,
 That al myn herte I yaf un-to his hold.

He was, I trowe, a twenty winter old, 600
 And I was fourty, if I shal seye sooth,

But yet I hadde alwey a coltes tooth.
 Gat-tothed I was, and that bicam me
 weel;

I hadde the prante of stynt Venus seel.
 As help me god, I was a lusty oon, 605

And faire and riche, and yong, and wel
 bigoon;

And trewely, as myne housbondes tolde
me,

I had the beste *quoniam* mighte be,
For certes, I am al Venerien 609
In felinge, and myn herte is Marcien.
Venus me yaf my lust, my likerousnesse,
And Mars yaf me my sturdy hardinesse.
Myn ascendant was Taur, and Mars ther-
inne.

Allas! alas! that ever love was sinne!
I folwed ay myn inclinacioun 615
By vertu of my constellacioun;
That made me I coude noght withdrawe
My chambre of Venus from a good felawe.
Yet have I Martes mark up-on my face,
And also in another privee place. 620
For, god so wis be my savacioun,
I ne loved never by no discrecioun,
But ever folwede myn appetyt,
Al were he short or long, or blak or
why;

I took no kepe, so that he lyked me, 625
How pore he was, ne eek of what degree.

What sholde I seye, but, at the monthes
ende,

This joly clerk Jankin, that was so hende,
Hath wedded me with greet solempnitee,
And to him yaf I al the lond and fee 630
That ever was me yeven ther-bifore;
But afterward repented me ful sore.
He nolde suffre nothing of my list.
By god, he smoot me ones on the list,
For that I rente out of his book a leef, 635
That of the strook myn ere wex al deaf.
Stiborn I was as is a leonesse,
And of my tonge a verray jangleresse,
And walke I wolde, as I had doon biforn,
From hous to hous, al-though he had it
sworn. 640

For which he often tymes wolde preche,
And me of olde Romayn gestes teche,
How he, Simplicius Gallus, lefte his wyf,
And hir forsook for terme of al his lyf,
Noght but for open-headed he hir say 645
Lokinge out at his dore upon a day.

Another Romayn tolde he me by name,
That, for his wyf was at a someres game
With-oute his witing, he forsook hir eke.
And than wolde he up-on his Bible seke
That ilke proverbe of Ecclesiaste, 651
Wher he comandeth and forbedeth faste,

Man shal nat suffre his wyf go roue
abouts;

Than wolde he seye right thus, with-
outen doute,

"Who-so that buildeth his hous al of
salwes, 655

And priketh his blinde hors over the
falwes,

And suffreth his wyf to go seken halwes,
Is worthy to been hangod on the gal-
wes!"

But al for noght, I sette noght an hawe
Of his proverbes n'of his olde sawe, 660
Ne I wolde nat of him corrected be.

I hate him that my vices telleth me,
And so do mo, god woot! of us than I.

This made him with me wood al outrelly;
I nolde noght forbere him in no cas. 665

Now wol I seye yow sooth, by saint
Thomas,

Why that I rente out of his book a leef,
For which he smoot me so that I was
deaf.

He hadde a book that gladly, night and
day,

For his desport he wolde rede alway. 670
He cleped it Valerie and Theofraste,

At whiche book he lough alway ful faste.
And eek ther was som-tyme a clerk at

Rome,

A cardinal, that highte Seint Jerome,
That made a book agayn Jovinian; 675

In whiche book eek ther was Tertulan,
Crisippus, Trotula, and Helowys,

That was abbess nat fer fro Parys;
And eek the Parables of Salomon,

Ovydes Art, and bokes many on, 680
And alle thise wer bounden in o volume.

And every night and day was his custume,
Whan he had leyser and vacacioun

From other worldly occupacioun, 685
To reden on this book of wikked wyves.

He knew of hem mo legendes and lyves
Than been of gode wyves in the Bible.

For trusteth wel, it is an impossible
That any clerk wol speke good of wyves,

But-if it be of holy seintes lyves, 690
Ne of noon other womman never the mo.

Who payntede the leoun, tel me who?
By god, if women hadde writen stories,

As clerkes han with-inne hir oratories,

They wolde han writen of men more
wikkednesse 695

Than all the mark of Adam may redressen.
The children of Mercurie and of Venus
Been in hir wirking ful contrarious;
Mercurie loveth wisdom and science,
And Venus loveth ryot and dispance. 700
And, for hir diverse disposicioun,
Ech falleth in othere exaltacioun;
And thus, god woot! Mercurie is desolat
In Pisces, wher Venus is exaltat;
And Venus falleth ther Mercurie is
reysed; 705

Therefore no womman of no clerk is prayed.
The clerk, whan he is old, and may noight
do

Of Venus werkis worth his olde sho,
Than sit he down, and writ in his dotage
That womman can nat kepe hir mariage!

But now to purpos, why I tolde thee
That I was beten for a book, pardee. 712
Up-on a night Jankin, that was our
syre,

Redde on his book, as he sat by the fyre,
Of Eva first, that, for hir wikkednesse,
Was al mankinde brought to wretched-
nesse, 716

For which that Jesu Crist him-self was
slayn,

That boghte us with his herte-blood agayn.
Lo, here expres of womman may ye finde,
That womman was the los of al mankinde.

The redde he me how Sampson loste
his hores, 721

Slepinge, his lemman kitte hem with hir
sheres;

Thurgh whiche tresoun loste he bothe
his yen.

The redde he me, if that I shal nat lyen,
Of Hercules and of his Dianyre, 725

That caused him to sette himself a-fyre.

No-thing forgat he the penance and
wo

That Socrates had with his wyves two;
How Xantippe caste pissen up-on his heed;
This sely man sat stille, as he were deed;
He wyped his heed, namore dorste he seyn
But "er that thonder stunte, comth a
reyn." 732

Of Phasipha, that was the queene of
Crete,

For shrewednesse, him thoughte the tale
swete;

Fy! spek na-more—it is a grisly thing—
Of hir horrible lust and hir lyking. 736

Of Clitemistra, for hir lecherye,
That falsly made hir housbond for to dye,
He redde it with ful good devocioun.

He tolde me eek for what occasioun 740

Amphiorax at Thebes loste his lyf;

Myn housbond hadde a legende of his wyf,

Eriphilem, that for an onche of gold

Hath prively un-to the Grekes told

Wher that hir housbond hidde him is a
place, 745

For which he hadde at Thebes sory grace

Of Lyma tolde he me, and of Lucy,

They bothe made hir housbondes for to
dye;

That oon for love, that other was for
hate;

Lyma hir housbond, on an even late, 750

Empoysoned hath, for that she was his fa-

Lucy, likerous, loved hir housbond so.

That, for he sholde alwey up-on hir think,

She yaf him swich a maner love-drinke,

That he was deed, er it were by the
morwe; 755

And thus algates housbondes han sorwe.

Than tolde he me, how oon Latumus

Compleyned to his folawe Arrius,

That in his gardin growed swich a tree.

On which, he seyde, how that his wyve
three 760

Hanged hem-self for herte despitous.

"O leve brother," quod this Arrius,

"Yif me a plante of thilke blissed tree,

And in my gardin planted shal it be!"

Of latter date, of wyves hath he red.

That somme han alayn hir housbondes in
hir bed, 765

And lete hir lechour dighte hir al the

night

Why! that the corps lay in the floor up-
right.

And somme han drive nayles in hir brayn

Why! that they slopte, and thus they han
hem slayn. 770

Somme han hem yeve poysoun in hir

drinke.

He spak more harm than herte may

bithinke.

And ther-with-al, he knew of mo pro-
verbes

Than in this world ther growen gras or
herbes.

"Bet is," quod he, "thyn habitacioun 775
Be with a leoun or a foul dragoun,

Than with a womman usinge for to chyde.
Bet is," quod he, "hye in the roof abyde

Than with an angry wyf down in the
hous;

They been so wikked and contrarious; 780
They haten that hir housbondes loveth

ay."
He seyde, "a womman cast hir shame

away,
Whan she cast of hir smok;" and forther-

mo,
"A fair womman, but she be chaast also,

Is lyk a gold ring in a sowes nose." 785
Who wolde wenen, or who wolde suppose

The wo that in myn herte was, and pyne?
And whan I saugh he wolde never fyne

To reden on this cursed book al night,
Al sodeynly three leves have I plight 790

Out of his book, right as he radde, and
eke,

I with my fist so took him on the cheke,
That in our fyr he fil bakward adoun.

And he up-stirte as dooth a wood leoun,
And with his fist he smoot me on the

heed, 795
That in the floor I lay as I were deed.

And when he saugh how stille that I lay,
He was agast, and wolde han fled his

way,
Til atte laste out of my swogh I breyde:

"O! hastow slayn me, false thief?" I
seyde, 800

"And for my land thus hastow mordred
me?

Er I be deed, yet wol I kisse thee."
And neer he cam, and kneled faire

adoun, 804

And seyde, "dere suster Alisonn,
As help me god, I shal thee never smyte;

That I have doon, it is thy-self to wyte.
Forgyve it me, and that I thee bisake"

And yet eft-sones I hitte him on the cheke,
And seyde, "theef, thus muchel am I

wreke; 809
Now wol I dye, I may no longer speke."

But atte laste, with muchel care and wo,
We fille acorded, by us salven two.

He yaf me al the brydel in myn hond
To han the governance of hous and lond,

And of his tonge and of his hond also, 815
And made him brenne his book anon

right tho.
And whan that I hadde gotten un-to me,

By maistrle, al the soveraynetee,
And that he seyde, "myn owene trewe

wyf,
Do as thee lust the terme of al thy lyf,

Keep thyn honour, and keep eek myn
estaat"— 821

After that day we hadden never debat.
God help me so, I was to him as kinde

As any wyf from Denmark un-to Inde,
And also trewe, and so was he to me. 825

I pray to god that sit in magastee,
So blesse his soule, for his mercy dere!

Now wol I seye my tale, if ye wol here.'

Biholde the wordes between the Somnour and the Frere.

THE Frere lough, whan he hadde herd
al this,

'Now, dame,' quod he, 'so have I joye or
blis, 830

This is a long preamble of a tale!
And whan the Somnour herde the Frere

gale,
'Lo!' quod the Somnour, 'goddes armes

two!
A frere wol ontremette him ever-mo.

Lo, gode men, a flye and eek a frere 835
Wol falle in every dish and eek matere.

What spekestow of preambulacioun?
What! amble, or trotte, or peas, or go

sit down;
Thou lettest our disport in this manere.'

'Ye, woltow so, sir Somnour?' quod
the Frere, 840

'Now, by my feith, I shal, er that I go,
Telle of a Somnour swich a tale or two,

That alle the folk shal laughen in this
place.'

'Now elles, Frere, I bishrewe thy
face,'

Quod this Somnour, 'and I bishrewe me,
But-if I telle tales two or three 846

Of freres er I come to Sidingborne,
That I shal make thyn herte for to morne;
For wel I woot thy pacience is goon.'

Our hoste cryde 'pees! and that anon!'
And seyde, 'lat the woman telle hir
tale, 851
Ye fare as folk that drunken been of ale.

Do, dama, tel forth your tale, and that
is best.'

'Al redy, sir,' quod she, 'right as yow
lest,
If I have homce of this worthy Frere.'
'Yis, dama,' quod he, 'tel forth, and
I wol herea.' 856

Here endeth the Wyf of Bathe hir Prologe.

THE TALE OF THE WYF OF BATHE.

Here biginneth the Tale of the Wyf of Bathe.

In th'olde dayes of the king Arthour,
Of which that Britons spoken greet
honour,

Al was this land fulfild of fayerye. 859
The elf-queen, with hir joly companyo,
Dannocd ful ofte in many a grene mede;
This was the olde opinion, as I rede.

I speke of manye hundred yeres ago,
But now can no man see none elves mo.
For now the grete charitee and prayeres
Of limitours and othere holy freres, (10)
That serchen every lond and every streem,
As thikke as motes in the sonne-beem,
Blessinge halles, chambres, kichenes,
boures,

Citees, burghes, castels, hye toures, 870
Thropes, berues, shipnes, dayeryes,
This maketh that ther been no fayeryes.
For ther as wout to walken was an elf,
Ther walketh now the limitour him-
self

In undermeles and in morweninges, 875
And seyth his matins and his holy thinges
As he goth in his limitacioun. (21)

Women may go saufly up and down,
In every bush, or under every tree;
Ther is noon other incubus but he, 880
And he ne wol doon hem but dishonour.

And so bifel it, that this king Arthour
Hadde in his hous a lusty bachelor,

That on a day cam rydinge fro river;
And happed that, allone as she was
born, (29) 885

He saugh a mayde walkinge him bifore,
Of whiche mayde anon, mangree hir heed,
By verray force he rafto hir maydenheed,
For which oppressioun was swich clamour
And swich pursute un-to the king Ar-
thour, 890

That dampned was this knight for to be
deed
By cours of lawe, and sholde han lost his
heed

Paraventure, swich was the statut tho;
But that the quene and othere ladies mo
So longe preyeden the king of grace, 895
Til he his lyf him graunted in the place.
And yaf him to the quene al at hir
wille, (41)

To chese, whether she wolde him save or
spille.

The quene thanketh the king with al
hir might, 899

And after this thus spak she to the knight,
Whan that she saugh hir tyme, up-on a
day:

'Thou standest yet,' quod she, 'in swich
array,

That of thy lyf yet hastow no suretee.
I grante thee lyf, if thou canst telleu me

What thing is it that women most
desyren? 905

Be war, and keep thy nakke-boon from
yren. (90)

And if thou canst nat tellen it anon,
Yet wol I yeve thee leve for to gon
A twelf-month and a day, to seehe and
lere

An answer suffisant in this matere. 910
And suretee wol I han, ar that thou pace,
Thy body for to yelden in this place.

Wo was this knight and sorwefully he
lyketh;

But what! he may nat do al as him lyketh.
And at the laste, he chees him for to
wende, 915

And come agayn, right at the yeres ende,
With swich answer as god wolde him
purveye; (61)

And taketh his leve, and wendeth forth
his weye.

He seketh every hous and every place,
Wher-as he hopeth for to finde grace, 920
To lerne, what thing women leven
most;

But he ne coude arryven in no cost,
Wher-as he mighte finde in this matere
Two creatures accordinge in-fere.

Somme seyde, women leven best
richesse, 925

Somme seyde, honour, somme seyde, joly-
nesse; (70)

Somme, riche array, somme seyden, lust
abedde,

And ofte tyme to be widwe and wedde.

Somme seyde, that our hertes been
most esed,

Whan that we been y-flattered and y-
plesed. 930

He gooth ful ny the sothe, I wol nat lye;
A man shal winne us best with flaterye;
And with attendance, and with bisnesse,
Been we y-lymed, bothe more and lesse.

And somme seyn, how that we leven
best 935

For to be free, and do right as us lest, (80)
And that no man repreve us of our vyce,
But seye that we be wyse, and no-thing
nyce,

For trewely, ther is noon of us alle, 939
If any wight wol clawe us on the galle,

That we nil kike, for he saith us sooth;
Assay, and he shal finde it that so dooth.
For be we never so vicious with-inne,
We wol been holden wyse, and clene of
sinne.

And somme seyn, that greet delyt han
we (89) 945

For to ben holden stable and eek secree,
And in o purpos stedefastly to dwelle,
And nat hiwreys thing that men us telle.
But that tale is nat worth a rake-stele;
Pardee, we women conne no-thing hele;
Witnesse on Myda; wol ye here the tale?

Ovyde, amonges othere thinges smale,
Seyle, Myda hadde, under his longe heres,
Growinge up-on his heed two asses eres,
The whiche vyce he hidde, as he best
michte, 955

Ful subtilly from every mannes sighte,
That, save his wyf, ther wiste of it na-
me. (101)

He loved hir most, and trusted hir also;
He preyede hir, that to no creature
She sholde tellen of his disfigure. 960

She swoor him 'nay, for al this world
to winne,

She nolde do that vileinye or sinne,
To make hir housbond han so foul a name,
She nolde nat telle it for hir owene shame.
But natheles, hir thoughte that she dyde,
That she so longe sholde a conseil hyde;
Hir thoughte it swal so sore aboute hir
herte, (111)

That nedely som word hir moste asterte,
And sith she dorste telle it to no man,
Down to a mareys faste by she ran; 970
Til she came there, hir herte was a-fyre,
And, as a bitore bombleth in the myre,
She leyde hir mouth un-to the water down:
'Hiwreys me nat, thou water, with thy
soun,' (118) 974

Quod she, 'to thee I telle it, and name.
Myn housbond hath longe asses eres two!
Now is myn herte all hool, now is it oute,
I mighte no longer kepe it, out of doute.'
Heer may ye se, though we a tyme abyde,
Yet out it moot, we can no conseil hyde;
The remenant of the tale if ye wol here,
Redeth Ovyde, and ther ye may it lere.

This knight, of which my tale is spe-
cially, 983

When that he saugh he mighte nat come
 therby,
 This is to seye, what women loven moost,
 With-inne his brest ful sorweful was the
 goost; (130) 986
 But heom he gooth, he mighte nat
 sojourne.
 The day was come, that heomward mooste
 he tourne,
 And in his way it happed him to ryde,
 In al this care, under a forest-ayde, 990
 Wher-as he saugh up-on a daunce go
 Of ladies foure and twenty, and yet mo;
 Toward the whiche daunce he drow ful
 yerne,
 In hope that som wisdom sholde he lerne.
 But certainly, er he came fully there, 995
 Vanished was this daunce, he nistewhere.
 No creature saugh he that bar lyf, (141)
 Save on the grene he saugh sittinge a wyf;
 A fouler wight ther may no man devyse.
 Agayn the knight this olde wyf gan ryse,
 And seyde, 'sir knight, heer-forth ne lyth
 no wey. 1001
 Tel me, what that ye seken, by your fey?
 Paraventure it may the bettre be,
 These olde folk can muchel thing,' quod
 she.
 'My leve mooder,' quod this knight
 certeyn, 1005
 'I nam but deed, but-if that I can seyn
 What thing it is that women most
 desyre; (151)
 Conde ye me wisse, I wolde wel quyte
 your hyr.
 'Plight me thy trouthe, heer in myn
 hand,' quod she,
 'The nexte thing that I requere thee, 1010
 Thou shalt it do, if it lye in thy might;
 And I wol telle it yow er it be night.'
 'Have heer my trouthe,' quod the knight,
 'I granto.'
 'Thanne,' quod she, 'I dar me wel
 avante, 1014
 Thy lyf is sauf, for I wol stonde therby,
 Up-on my lyf, the queen wol seye as I.
 Lat see which is the proudeste of hem
 alle, (161)
 That wereth on a covarchief or a calle,
 That dar seye nay, of that I shal thee
 teche;

Lat us go forth with-outen lenger speke.'
 The rounded she a pistol in his ere, 1011
 And bad him to be glad, and have as
 fere.
 When they be comen to the court, this
 knight
 Seyde, 'he had holde his day, as he
 hadde hight,
 And redy was his answer,' as he seyde.
 Ful many a noble wyf, and many a
 mayde, (170) 1016
 And many a widwe, for that they ben
 wyse,
 The quene hir-self sittinge as a justye,
 Assembled been, his answers for to here;
 And afterward this knight was bede
 appere. 1020
 To every wight comanded was silence,
 And that the knight sholde telle in
 audience,
 What thing that worldly women loven
 best.
 This knight ne stood nat stille as doth
 a best,
 But to his question anon answerde 1025
 With manly voys, that al the court it
 herde: (180)
 'My lige lady, generally,' quod he,
 'Women desyren to have sovereyntee
 As wel over hir housbond as hir love,
 And for to been in maistrie him above;
 This is your moste desyr, thogh ye me
 kille, 1041
 Doth as yow list, I am heer at your wille.'
 In al the court ne was ther wyf as
 mayde,
 Ne widwe, that contraried that he seyde,
 But seyden, 'he was worthy han his
 lyf.' 1045
 And with that word up stirte the olde
 wyf, (190)
 Which that the knight saugh sittinge in
 the grene:
 'Mercy,' quod she, 'my sovereyn lady
 quene!
 Er that your court departe, do me right.
 I taughte this answer un-to the knight;
 For which he plighte me his trouthe
 there, 1051
 The firste thing I wolde of him requere,
 He wolde it do, if it lay in his might.

Bifore the court than preys I thee, sir knight,

Quod she, 'that thou me take un-to thy wyf;

For wel thou wost that I have kept thy lyf.

If I sey fals, sey nay, up-on thy fay!

This knight answerde, 'allas! and weylaway!

I woot right wel that swich was my biheste.

For goddes love, as chees a newe requeste;

Tak al my good, and lat my body go.'

'Nay than,' quod she, 'I shrewe us bothe two!

For though that I be foul, and old, and pore,

I nolde for al the metal, ne for ore,
That under erthe is grave, or lyth above,

But-if thy wyf I were, and eek thy love.'

'My love?' quod he; 'nay, my damp-nacioun!

Allas! that any of my nacioun
Sholde ever so foule disparaged be!'

But al for noght, the ende is this, that he
Constreyned was, he nedes moste hir wedde;

And taketh his olde wyf, and gooth to bedde.

Now wolden som men seye, paraventure,
That, for my negligence, I do no cure

To tellen yow the joye and al th'array
That at the feste was that ilke day.

To whiche thing shortly answer I shal;
I seye, ther nas no joye ne feste at al,

Ther nas but hevynesse and muche sorwe;
For prively he wedded hir on a morwe,

And al day after hidde him as an oule;
So wo was him, his wyf looked so foule.

Greet was the wo the knight hadde in
his thought,

Whan he was with his wyf a-bedde y-brought;

He walweth, and he turneth to and fro.
His olde wyf lay smylinge evermo,

And seyde, 'o dere housbond, bew'cde/
Fareth every knight thus with his wyf

as ye?
Is this the lawe of king Arthures hous?
Is every knight of his so dangerous?

I am your owene love and eek your wyf;
I am she, which that saved hath your lyf;

And certes, yet dide I yow never unright;
Why fare yethus with me this firste night?

Ye faren lyk a man had lost his wit; 1095
What is my gilt? for godd's love, tel me it,

And it shal been amended, if I may.'

'Amended?' quod this knight, 'allas! nay, nay!

It wol nat been amended never mo!
Thou art so loothly, and so old also,

And ther-to comen of so lowe a kinde,
That litel wonder is, though I walwe and winde.

So wolde god myn herte wolde braste!'

'Is this,' quod she, 'the cause of your unreste?'

'Ye, certainly,' quod he, 'no wonder is.'

'Now, sire,' quod she, 'I coude amende al this,

If that me liste, er it were dayes thre,
So wel ye mighte bere yow un-to me.

But for ye spoken of swich gentillese
As is descended out of old richesse,

That therfore sholden ye be gentil men,
Swich arrogance is nat worth an hen.

Loke who that is most vertuous alway,
Prives and apert, and most entendeth ay

To do the gentil dedes that he can,

And tak him for the grettest gentil man.

Crist wol, we clayme of him our gentillese,

Nat of our oldres for hir old richesse.
For though they yewe us al hir heritage,

For which we clayme to been of heigh parage,

Yet may they nat biquethe, for no-thing,
To noon of us hir vertuous living,

That made hem gentil men y-called be;
And bad us folwen hem in swich degree.

Wel can the wyse poete of Florence,
That highte Dant, spoken in this sentence;

Lo in swich maner rym is Dantes tale:
'Ful selde up ryseth by his branches

smale
Prowesse of man; for god, of his good-nesse,

Wol that of him we clayme our gentillese;"

For of our eldres may we no-thing
clayme 1131
But temporel thing, that man may hurte
and mayme.

Eek every wight wot this as wel as I,
If gentillesse were planted naturally
Un-to a certeyn linage, doun the lyne,
Privee ne apert, than wolde they never
fyne (280) 1136
To doon of gentillesse the faire offyce;
They mighte do no vileinye or vyce.

Tak fyr, and ber it in the derkeste hous
Bitwix this and the mount of Caucasus,
And lat men shette the dores and go
thenne; 1141

Yet wol the fyr as faire lye and brenne,
Astwentythousand men mighte it biholde;
His office naturel ay wol it holde,
Up peril of my lyf, til that it dye. 1145

Heer may ye see wel, how that gentyr
Is nat annexed to possessioun, (291)
Sith folk ne doon hir operacioun
Alwey, as dooth the fyr, lo! in his kinde.
For, god it woot, men may wel often finde
A lordes sone do shame and vileinye; 1151
And he that wol han prys of his gentrye
For he was boren of a gentil hous,
And hadde hise eldres noble and vertuous,
And nil him-selven do no gentil dedis, 1155
Ne folwe his gentil auncestre that deed is,
He nis nat gentil, be he duk or erl; (301)
For vileyns sinful dedes make a cherl.

For gentillesse nis but renomee 1159
Of thyne auncestres, for hir heigh bountee,
Which is a strange thing to thy persone.
Thy gentillesse cometh fro god allone;
Than comth our verray gentillesse of grace,
It was no-thing biquethe us with our place.

Thenketh how noble, as seith Valerius,
Was thilke Tullius Hostilius, (310) 1166
That out of povert roos to heigh noblesse.
Redeth Senek, and redeth eek Boece,
Ther shul ye seen expres that it no drede is,
That he is gentil that doth gentil dedis;
And therefore, leve housbond, I thus con-
clude, 1171

Al were it that myne auncestres were rude,
Yet may the hye god, and so hope I,
Grante me grace to liven vertuously. 1174
Thanne am I gentil, whan that I biginne
To liven vertuously and weyve sinne. (320)

And ther-as ye of povert me repreve,
The hye god, on whom that we bileve,
In wilful povert chees to live his lyf. 1179
And certes every man, mayden, or wyf,
May understonde that Jesus, hevene king,
Ne wolde nat cheese a vicious living.
Glad povert is an honest thing, certeyn;
This wol Senek and othere clerkes seyn.
Who-so that halt him payd of his povert,
I holde him riche, al hadde he nat a
sherte. (330) 1186

He that coveyteth is a povre wight,
For he wolde han that is nat in his might.
But he that noght hath, ne coveyteth have,
Is riche, al-though ye holde him but a
knave. 1190

Verray povert, it singeth proprely;
Juvenal seith of povert merily:

"The povre man, whan he goth by the
weye,

Bifore the theves he may singe and playe."
Povert is hateful good, and, as I gesse, 1195
A ful greet bringer out of bisinesse; (340)
A greet amender eek of sapience
To him that taketh it in pacience.
Povert is this, al-though it seme elenge:
Possessioun, that no wight wol chalenge.
Povert ful ofte, whan a man is lowe, 1201
Maketh his god and eek him-self to knowe.
Povert a spectacle is, as thinketh me,
Thurgh which he may his verray frendes
see.

And therefore, sire, sin that I noght yow
greve, 1205

Of my povert na-more ye me repreve. (350)

Now, sire, of elde ye me repreve me;
And certes, sire, thogh noon auctoritee
Were in no book, ye gentils of honour
Seyn that men sholde an old wight doon
favour, 1210

And clepe him fader, for your gentillesse:
And auctours shal I finden, as I gesse.

Now ther ye seye, that I am foul and old,
Than drede you noght to been a cokewold;
For filthe and elde, al-so mote I thee, 1215
Been grete wardeyns up-on chastitee. (360)
But nathelees, sin I knowe your delyt,
I shal fulfille your worldly appetyt.

Chees now,' quod she, 'oon of thise
thinges tweye, 1219

To han me foul and old til that I deye,

And be to yow a trewe humble wyf,
 And never yow displese in al my lyf,
 Or elles ye wol han me yong and fair,
 And take your aventure of the repair 1224
 That shal be to your hous, by-cause of me,
 Or in som other place, may wel be. (370)
 Now chees your-selven, whether that yow
 lyketh.'

This knight avyseeth him and sore
 syketh,
 But atte laste he seyde in this manere,
 'My lady and my love, and wyf so dere,
 I put me in your wyse governance; 1231
 Cheseth your-self, which may be most
 plesance,

And most honour to yow and me also.
 I do no fors the whether of the two;
 For as yow lyketh, it suffiseth me.' 1235

'Thanne have I gete of yow maistrye,'
 quod she, (380)

'Sin I may chese, and governe as me list?'

'Ye, certes, wyf,' quod he, 'I holde it
 best.'

'Kis me,' quod she, 'we be no longer
 wrothe; 1239

For, by my trouthe, I wol be to yow bothe,
 This is to seyn, ye, bothe fair and good,
 I prey to god that I mot sterven wood,

But I to yow be al-so good and trewe
 As ever was wyf, ain that the world was
 newe.

And, but I be to-morn as fair to sene 1245
 As any lady, emperye, or quene, (390)
 That is hitwixe the est and eke the west,
 Doth with my lyf and deeth right as yow
 lest.

Cast up the curtin, loke how that it is.
 And whan the knight saugh verrailly al
 this, 1250

That she so fair was, and so yong ther-to,
 For joye he hente hir in his armes two,
 His herte bathed in a bath of blisse;
 A thousand tyme a-rewe he gan hir
 kisse.

And she obeyed him in every thing 1255
 That mighte doon him plesance or lyking.

And thus they live, un-to hir lyves
 ende, (401)

In parfit joye; and Jesu Crist us sende
 Housbondes make, yonge, and fresshe a-
 bedde, 1259

And grace t'overhyde hem that we wedde.
 And eek I preys Jesu shorte hir lyves
 That wol nat be governed by hir wyves;
 And olde and angry nigardes of dispence,
 God sende hem sone verray pestilence.

Here endeth the Wyves Tale of Bathe.

THE FRIAR'S PROLOGUE.

The Prologe of the Freres tale.

Ther worthy limitour, this noble Frere, 1265
 He made alwey a maner louring chere
 Upon the Somnour, but for honestee
 No vileyns word as yet to him spak he.
 But atte laste he seyde un-to the Wyf,
 'Dame,' quod he, 'god yove yow right
 good lyf! 1270
 Ye han heer touched, al-so mote I thes,
 In scole-maters greet difficultee;

Ye han seyde muchel thing right wel, I
 seye; (9)
 But dame, here as we ryden by the woye,
 Us nedeth nat to speken but of game, 1275
 And late auctoritees, on goddes name,
 To preching and to scole eek of clergie.
 But if it lyke to this companye,
 I wol yow of a somnour telle a game. 1279
 Pardee, ye may wel knowe by the name,

That of a somnour may no good be
sayd ;
I praye that noon of you be yvel apayd.
A somnour is a renner up and doun
With mandements for fornicacioun, (20)
And is y-bet at every tonnes ende.' 1285
Our host tho spak, 'a! sire, ye sholde
be hende
And curteys, as a man of your estaat ;
In companye we wol have no debaat.
Telleth your tale, and lat the Somnour
be.'

'Nay,' quod the Somnour, 'lat him
seye to me 1290
What so him list; whan it comth to my lot,
By god, I shal him quyten every grot.
I shal him tellen which a greet honour (29)
It is to be a flateringe limitour; [T. 6876
And his offyce I shal him telle, y-wis.'
[T. 6879
Our host answerde, 'pees, na-more of
this.' 1296
And after this he seyde un-to the Frere,
'Tel forth your tale, leve maister deere.'

Here endeth the Prologe of the Frere.

THE FRERES TALE.

Here biginneth the Freres tale.

WHILOM ther was dwellinge in my contree
An erchedeken, a man of heigh degree,
That boldely dide execucioun 1301
In punisshinge of fornicacioun,
Of wicchecraft, and eek of bauderye,
Of diffamacioun, and avoutrye,
Of chirche-reves, and of testaments, 1305
Of contractes, and of lakke of sacraments,
And eek of many another maner cryme
[T. om.
Which nedeth nat rehercen at this tyme;
[T. om.
Of usure, and of symonye also. (11)
But cortes, lechours dide he grettest wo;
They sholde singen, if that they were
hent; 1311
And smale tytheres weren foule y-shent.
If any persone wolde up-on hem pleyne,
Ther mighte asterte him no pecunial
peyne.
For smale tythes and for smal offringe 1315
He made the peple pitously to singe.
For er the bisshop caughte hem with his
hook,

They weren in the erchedeknes book. (20)
Thanne hadde he, thurgh his jurisdic-
cioun,
Power to doon on hem correccioun. 1320
He hadde a Somnour redy to his hond,
A slyer boy was noon in Engelond;
For subtilly he hadde his espiaille,
That taughte him, wher that him mighte
availle. 1324
He coude spare of lechours oon or two,
To techen him to foure and twenty mo.
For thogh this Somnour wood were as an
hare,
To telle his harlotrye I wol nat spare; (30)
For we been out of his correccioun;
They han of us no jurisdiccoun, 1330
Ne never shullen, terme of alle hir lyves.
'Peter! so been the wommen of the
styves,'
Quod the Somnour, 'y-put out of my cure!'
'Pees, with mischance and with mis-
aventure,'
Thus seyde our host, 'and lat him telle
his tale. 1335

Now telleth forth, thogh that the Som-
 nour gale,
 Ne spareth nat, myn owene maister dere.
 This false theef, this Somnour, quod
 the Frere, (40)
 Hadde alwey bandes redy to his hond,
 As any hank to lure in Engelond, 1340
 That tolde him al the secree that they
 knewe;
 For hir acquyntance was nat come of
 newe.
 They weren hise approwours prively;
 He took him-self a greet profit therby;
 His maister knew nat alwey what he wan.
 With-uten mandement, a lewed man 1346
 He coude somne, on payne of Cristes curs,
 And they were gladde for to fille his
 purs, (50)
 And make him grete festes atte nale.
 And right as Judas hadde purses smale,
 And was a theef, right swich a theef was
 he; 1351
 His maister hadde but half his duſtee.
 He was, if I shal yeven him his laude,
 A theef, and eek a Somnour, and a bande.
 He hadde eek wenches at his retenue, 1355
 That, whether that sir Robert or sir Huwe,
 Or Jakke, or Ranf, or who-so that it were,
 That lay by hem, they tolde it in his ere;
 Thus was the wenche and he of oon as-
 sent. (61)
 And he wolde fecche a feyned mande-
 ment, 1360
 And somne hem to the chapitre bothe two,
 And pile the man, and lete the wenche go.
 Thanne wolde he seye, 'frend, I shal for
 thy sake 1363
 Do stryken hir out of our lettres blake;
 Thee thar na-more as in this cas travaille;
 I am thy freend, ther I thee may availle.'
 Certeyn he knew of bryberyes mo
 Than possible is to telle in yeres two. (70)
 For in this world nis dogge for the bowe,
 That can an hurt deer from an hool
 y-knowe, 1370
 Bet than this Somnour knew a sly lechour,
 Or an avouter, or a paramour.
 And, for that was the fruit of al his rente,
 Therefore on it he sette al his entente.
 And so bifel, that ones on a day 1375
 This Somnour, ever waiting on his pray,

Rood for to somne a widwe, an old ribybe,
 Feyninge a cause, for he wolde brybe. (80)
 And happed that he saugh bifore him ryde
 A gay yeman, under a forest-ryde. 1380
 A bowe he bar, and arwes brighte and
 kene;
 He hadde up-on a courtepy of grene;
 An hat up-on his heed with frenches blake.
 'Sir,' quod this Somnour, 'hay! and
 wel a-take!'
 'Wel-come,' quod he, 'and every good
 felawe! 1385
 Wher rydestow under this grene shawe?'
 Seyde this yeman, 'wiltow fer to day?'
 This Somnour him answerde, and seyde,
 'nay; (90)
 Heer faste by,' quod he, 'is myn entente
 To ryden, for to reysen up a rente 1390
 That longeth to my lordes duſtee.'
 'Artow thanne a bailly?' 'Ye!' quod
 he.
 He dorste nat, for verray filthe and shame,
 Saye that he was a somnour, for the
 name.
 'Depardieuz,' quod this yeman, 'dere
 brother, 1395
 Thou art a bailly, and I am another.
 I am unknowen as in this contree; (90)
 Of thyn aqweyntance I wolde praye thee,
 And eek of brotherhede, if that yow loste.
 I have gold and silver in my cheste; 1400
 If that thee happe to comen in our shyre,
 Al shal be thyn, right as thou wolt deysre.'
 'Grantmercy,' quod this Somnour, 'by
 my feith!'
 Everich in otheres hand his trouthe leith,
 For to be sworne bretheren til they deye.
 In daliance they ryden forth hir weye. 1406
 This Somnour, which that was as ful
 of jangles,
 As ful of venim been thise wariangles, (110)
 And ever enquering up-on every thing,
 'Brother,' quod he, 'where is now your
 dwelling, 1410
 Another day if that I sholde yow seehe?'
 This yeman him answerde in softe
 speche,
 'Brother,' quod he, 'fer in the north
 contree,
 Wher, as I hope, som-tyme I shal thee see.
 Er we departe, I shal thee so wel wisse,

That of myn hous ne shaltow never
missa.' 1416

'Now, brother,' quod this Somnour, 'I
yow preye,
Teche me, whyl that we ryden by the
weye, (1420)

Sin that ye been a baillif as am I,
Som subtiltee, and tel me feithfully 1420
In myn offyce how I may most winne;
And spareth nat for a

But as my brother te

'Now, by my treu
seyde he,

'As I shal telle

My wages been

My lord is hard to

And myn offyce is ful laboure

And therfore by extorcions]

For sothe, I take al that
yive;

Algate, by sleyghte or by force,
Pro year to year I winne as my dispenca.
I can no better telle feithfully.'

'Now, certes,' quod this Somnour, 'so
fare I;

I spare nat to taken, god it woot, 1435
But-if it be to hevy or to boot.

What I may gete in conseil prively,
No maner conscience of that have I; (1440)
Nere myn extorcoun, I mighte nat liven,
Ne of swiche japes wol I nat be shriven.
Stomak ne conscience ne knowe I noon;
I shrewe thise shrifte-fadres everichoon.
Wel be we met, by god and by saint
Jame!

But, leve brother, tel me than thy name,
Quod this Somnour; and in this mene
whyle, 1445

This yeman gan a litel for to smyle.

'Brother,' quod he, 'wiltow that I thee
telle?

I am a feend, my dwelling is in helle. (1450)
And here I ryde about my purchasing,
To wite wher men wolde yeve me any
thing. 1450

My purchas is th'effect of al my rente.
Loke how thou rydest for the same en-
tente,

To winne good, thou rekkest never how;
Right so fare I, for ryde wolde I now
Un-to the worldes ende for a preye.' 1455

'A,' quod this Somnour, 'ben'cite, what
sey ye?

I wende ye were a yeman trewely
Ye han a mannes shap as wel as I; (1460)
Han ye figure than determinat
In helle, ther ye been in your estat?' 1460

'Nay, certainly,' quod he, 'ther have
we noon;

But whan us lyketh, we can take us oon.
O'les make yow some we ben shap

-tyme lyk a man, or lyk an ape;
Lyk an angel can I ryde or go. 1465

is no wonder thing thogh it be so,
lousy jogelour can deceyve thee,
id pardee, yet can I more craft than
he.' (1470)

'Why,' quod the Somnour, 'ryde ye
thane or goon 1469

indry shap, and nat alway in oon?'
'or we,' quod he, 'wol us swich formes
make

As most able is our preyes for to take.'

'What maketh yow to han al this
labour?'

'Ful many a cause, leve sir Somnour,'
Seyde this feend, 'but alle thing hath
tyme. 1475

The day is short, and it is passed pryme,
And yet ne wan I no-thing in this day.

I wol entende to winnen, if I may, (1480)
And nat entende our wittes to declare.

For, brother myn, thy wit is al to bare 1480
To understonde, al-though I tolde hem thee.

But, for thou axest why labouren we;
For, som-tyme, we ben goddes instra-

ments,
And menes to don his comandements,

Whan that him list, up-on his creatures,
In divers art and in divers figures. 1486

With-outen him we have no might, cer-
tayn, (1489)

If that him list to stonden ther-agayn.

And som-tyme, at our prayere, han we leve
Only the body and nat the soule greve;

Witnesse on Job, whom that we diden
wo. 1491

And som-tyme han we might of bothe two,
This is to seyn, of soule and body ake.

And somtyme be we suffred for to seke
Up-on a man, and doon his soule unreste,

And nat his body, and al is for the beste.

When he withstandeth our temptacioun,
 It is a cause of his savacioun; (200)
 Al-be-it that it was nat our entente
 He sholde be sauf, but that we wolde
 him hente. 1500
 And som-tyme be we servant un-to man,
 As to the archebishop Seint Dunstan
 And to the apostles servant eek was I.
 'Yet tel me,' quod the Somnour, 'faith-
 fully,
 Make ye yow newe bodies thus alway 1505
 Of elements?' the feend answerde, 'nay;
 Som-tyme we feyne, and som-tyme we
 aryse
 With dede bodies in ful sondry wyse, (210)
 And speke as renably and faire and wel
 As to the Phitonisse dide Samuel. 1510
 And yet wol som men seye it was nat he;
 I do no fore of your divinitee.
 But o thing warne I thee, I wol nat jape,
 Thou wolt algates wite how we ben shape;
 Thou shalt her-afterward, my brother
 dere, 1515
 Com ther thee nedeth nat of me to lere.
 For thou shalt by thyn owene experience
 Conne in a chayer rede of this sentence
 Bet than Virgyle, whyl he was on lyve,
 Or Dant also; now lat us ryde blyve. 1520
 For I wol holde companye with thee (225)
 Til it be so, that thou forsake me.'
 'Nay,' quod this Somnour, 'that shal
 nat bityde;
 I am a yeman, known is ful wyde;
 My trouthe wol I holde as in this cas. 1525
 For though thou were the devel Sathanas,
 My trouthe wol I holde to my brother,
 As I am sworn, and ech of us til other (230)
 For to be trewe brother in this cas;
 And bothe we goon abouten our purchas.
 Tak thou thy part, what that men wol
 thee give, 1531
 And I shal myn; thus may we bothe live.
 And if that any of us have more than
 other,
 Let him be trewe, and parte it with his
 brother.'
 'I graunte,' quod the devel, 'by my fey.'
 And with that word they ryden forth hir
 way. 1536
 And right at the entring of the tounes
 ende,

To which this Somnour shoop him for to
 wende, (240)
 They saugh a cart, that charged was with
 hay,
 Which that a carter droof forth in his wey.
 Deep was the wey, for which the carte
 stood. 1541
 The carter smoot, and cryde, as he were
 wood,
 'Hayt, Brok! hayt, Boot! what spare ye
 for the stones?
 The feend,' quod he, 'yow fecche body
 and bones,
 As ferforthly as ever were ye foled! 1545
 So muche we as I have with yow tholed!
 The devel have al, bothe hors and cart
 and hey!'
 This Somnour seyde, 'heer shal we
 have a play;' (250)
 And neer the feend he drough, as nought
 ne were,
 Ful prively, and rouned in his ere: 1550
 'Herkne, my brother, herkne, by thy
 feith;
 Herestow nat how that the carter seith?
 Hent it anon, for he hath yeve it thee,
 Bothe hey and cart, and eek hise caples
 three.'
 'Nay,' quod the devel, 'god wot, never
 a deel; 1555
 It is nat his entente, trust me weel.
 Axe him thy-self, if thou nat trowest me,
 Or elles stint a while, and thou shalt
 see.' (260)
 This carter thakketh his hors upon the
 croupe,
 And they bigonne drawen and to-stoupe;
 'Heyt, now!' quod he, 'ther Jesu Crist
 yow blesse, 1561
 And al his handwerk, bothe more and
 lesse!
 That was wel twight, myn owene lyard
 boy!
 I pray god save thee and seynt Loy!
 Now is my cart out of the slow, pardes!'
 'Lo! brother,' quod the feend, 'what
 tolde I thee? 1566
 Heer may ye see, myn owene dere brother,
 The carl spak oo thing, but he thoughte
 another. (270)
 Let us go forth abouten our viage;

Heer winne I no-thing up-on cariage.'

Whan that they comen som-what out
of touns, 1571

This Somnour to his brother gan to rounne,
'Brother,' quod he, 'heer woneth an old
rebeke,

That hadde almoȝ as lief to lese hir nekke
As for to yeve a peny of hir good. 1575

I wol han twelf pens, though that she be
wood,

Or I wol sompne hir

And yet, god woot,
vyce.

But for thou canst nat, as

Winne thy cost, tak her
me.'

This Somnour clappeth at
gate.

'Com out,' quod he, 'th

I trowe thou hast som
with thee'

'Who clappeth?' seyde this widwe,
'ben'cite!

God save you, sire, what is your swete
wille?' 1585

'I have,' quod he, 'of somonce here
a bille;

Up payne of cursing, loke that thou be
To-morn bfore the erchedeknes knee (290)

Tarswere to the court of carteyn thinges.'

'Now, lord,' quod she, 'Crist Jesu, king
of kinges, 1590

So wisly helpe me, as I ne may.

I have been syk, and that ful many a day.

I may nat go so fer,' quod she, 'ne ryde,

But I be deed, so priketh it in my syde.

May I nat axe a libel, sir Somnour, 1595

And answere there, by my procoutour,

To swich thing as men wol opposen me?'

'Yis,' quod this Somnour, 'pay anon,

lat se, (300)

Twelf pens to me, and I wol thee acquyte.

I shall no profit han ther-by but lyte; 1600

My maister hath the profit, and nat I.

Com of, and lat me ryden hastily;

Yif me twelf pens, I may no longer tarie.'

'Twelf pens,' quod she, 'now lady

Seinte Marie

So wisly help me out of care and sinne,

This wyde world thogh that I sholde

winne, 1606

Ne have I nat twelf pens with-inne myn
hold. (309)

Ye knowen wel that I am povre and old;
Kythe your almesse on me povre wrecche'

'Nay than,' quod he, 'the foule feend
me fecche 1610

If I th'excuse, though thou shul be spilt!'

'Alas,' quod she, 'god woot, I have no
gilt.'

'ay me,' quod he, 'or by the swete
sainte Anne,

wol bere away thy newe panne
dette, which that thou owest me of

old, 1615

an that thou madest thyn houshold
cockewold,

gyde at hoom for thy correccioun.'

'Thou list,' quod she, 'by my sar-
cioun! (320)

was I never er now, widwe ne wyf,

loned un-to your court in al my lyf;

Ne never I nas but of my body trewe! 1620

Un-to the devel blak and rough of hewe

Yeve I thy body and my panne also!'

And whan the devel herde hir curteisie

Up-on hir knees, he seyde in this manere,

'Now Mabely, myn owene moder dere, 1625

Is this your wil in earnest, that ye seye?'

'The devel,' quod she, 'so fecche him
er he deye, (330)

And panne and al, but he wol him re-
pente! 1630

'Nay, olde stot, that is nat myn entente,'

Quod this Somnour, 'for to repente me,

For any thing that I have had of thee;

I wolde I hadde thy smok and every
clooth!'

'Now, brother,' quod the devel, 'be nat
wrooth;

Thy body and this panne ben myne by
right. 1635

Thou shalt with me to helle yet to-night,

Where thou shalt knowen of our privitee

More than a maister of divinitee: 1640

And with that word this foule feend him

hente; 1645

Body and soule, he with the devel wente

Wher-as that somnours han hir heritage

And god, that maketh after his image

Mankinde, save and gyde us alle and

some;

And leve this Somnour good man to
bicoome!

Lordinges, I coude han told yow, quod
this Frere, 1645

Hadde I had leyser for this Somnour here,
After the text of Crist [and] Pouland John,
And of our othere doctours many con,
Swiche paynes, that your hertes mighte
agryse, (351)

Al-be-it so, no tonge may devyse, 1650
Thogh that I mighte a thousand winter
telle,

The payne of thilke cursed hous of helle.
But, for to kepe us fro that cursed place,
Waketh, and prayeth Jesu for his grace

So kepe us fro the temptour Sathanas. 1655
Herketh this word, beth war as in this
cas;

The leoun sit in his await alway
To slay the innocent, if that he may. (360)
Disposeth ay your hertes to withstonde
The feend, that yow wolde make thral
and bonde. 1660

He may nat tempten yow over your might;
For Crist wol be your champion and
knight.

And prayeth that thise Somnours hem
repente
Of hir misdedes, er that the feend hem
hente.

Here endeth the Freres tale.

THE SOMNOUR'S PROLOGUE.

The prologe of the Somnours Tale.

This Somnour in his stiropes hye stood;
Up-on this Frere his herte was so wood,
That lyk an aspen leef he quook for yre.
'Lordinges,' quod he, 'but o thing I
desyre;

I yow bisake that, of your curteisye,
Sin ye han herd this false Frere lye, 1670
As suffereth me I may my tale telle!

This Frere bosteth that he knoweth helle,
And god it woot, that it is lital wonder;
Freres and feendes been but lyte a-sonder.

For pardee, ye han ofte tyme herd telle,
How that a frere ravished was to helle
In spirit ones by a visoun; (13) 1677

And as an angel ladde him up and down,
To shewen him the paynes that ther were,
In al the place saugh he nat a frere; 1680
Of other folk he saugh y-nowe in wo.
Un-to this angel spak the frere the:

"Now, sir," quod he, "han freres swich
a grace (19)

That noon of hem shal come to this place?"

"Yis," quod this angel, "many a mil-
lioun!" 1685

And un-to Sathanas he ladde him down.

"And now hath Sathanas," seith he,
"a tayl

Brodder than of a carriak is the sayl.
Hold up thy tayl, thou Sathanas!" quod
he, 1689

"Shewe forth thyn ers, and lat the freres see
Wher is the nest of freres in this place!"
And, er that half a furlong-way of space,
Right so as bees out swarman from an
hyve,

Out of the develes ers ther gonne dryve (30)
Twenty thousand freres in a route, 1695
And thurgh-out helle swarmeden aboute

And comen agayn, as faste as they may
 gon,
 And in his ere they crepten everichon.
 He clapte his tayl agayn, and lay ful stille.
 This frere, whan he loked hadde his fill
 Upon the torments of this sory place, 1701
 His spirit god restored of his grace

Un-to his body agayn, and he swook;
 But natheles, for fere yet he quook, (40)
 So was the devaler em ay in his munde,
 That is his heritage of varrey kinde. 1706
 God save yow alle, save this cursed
 Frere;
 My prologe wol I ende in this manere.

Here endeth the Prologe of the Somnoure Tale.

THE SOMNOURS TALE.

Here bigineth the Somnour his Tale.

Londoners, ther is in Yorkshire, as I
 gosse,
 A mereshy contree called Holdernesse,
 In which ther wente a limitour aboute, 1711
 To preche, and seek to begge, it is no doute.
 And so bifel, that on a day this frere
 Had preched at a chirche in his manere,
 And specially, aboven every thing. 1715
 Excited he the peple in his preaching
 To trentals, and to yeve, for goddes sake,
 Wher-with men mighten holy houses
 make, (10)
 Ther as divyne service is honoured,
 Nat ther as it is wasted and devoured, 1720
 Ne ther it nedeth nat for to be yive,
 As to possessioners, that mowen live,
 Thanked be god, in wele and habundaunce.
 'Trentals,' seyde he, 'deliveren fro pen-
 aunce 1724
 Hir freendes soules, as wel olde as yonge,
 Ye, whan that they been hastily y-songe;
 Nat for to holde a preest joly and gay,
 He singeth nat but o masse in a day; (20)
 Delivereth out,' quod he, 'anon the soules;
 Ful hard it is with fleshhook or with oules
 To been y-clawed, or to brenne or bake;
 Now spede yow hastily, for Cristes sake.'
 And whan this frere had seyde al his
 entente,
 With qui cum patre forth his way he wente.

Whan folk in chirche had yove him
 what hem leste, 1735
 He wente his way, no longer wolde he
 reste,
 With scrippe and tipped staf, y-tukked
 hye; (30)
 In every hous he gan to poure and pry,
 And beggeth mele, and cheese, or elles corn.
 His felawe hadde a staf tipped with horn.
 A peyre of tables al of yvory, 1741
 And a poyntel polished fetisly,
 And wroot the names alway, as he stood,
 Of alle folk that yaf him any good, 1744
 Ascauntes that he wolde for hem preye.
 'Yeve us a bushel whete, malt, or reys,
 A goddes kechil, or a trip of cheese,
 Or elles what yow list, we may nat chese;
 A goddes halfpeny or a masse-peny, (41)
 Or yeve us of your brawn, if ye have any;
 A dagon of your blanket, leve dame, 1751
 Our suster dere, lo! here I write your name;
 Bacon or beef, or swich thing as ye finde.'
 A sturdy harlot wente ay hem bihinde.
 That was hir hostes man, and bar a skel,
 And what men yaf hem, leyde it on his
 bak. 1756
 And whan that he was out at dore anon,
 He planed away the names everichon (50)
 That he bifore had writen in his tables:
 He served hem with nyfles and with fables.

'Nay, ther thou lixt, thou Somnour,'
 quod the Frere. 1761
 'Pees,' quod our Host, 'for Cristes
 moder dere;
 Tel forth thy tale and spare it nat at al.'
 Sothryve I, quod this Somnour, so I shal.—
 So longe he wente hous by hous, til he
 Cam til an hous ther he was wont to be
 Refreshed more than in an hundred
 placis. 1767
 Sik lay the gode man, whos that the place
 is; (60)
 Bedrede up-on a couche lowe he lay.
 'Deus hic,' quod he, 'O Thomas, freend,
 good day,' 1770
 Seyde this frere curteisly and softe.
 'Thomas,' quod he, 'god yelde yow! ful
 ofte
 Have I up-on this bench faren ful weel.
 Here have I eten many a mery meel;
 And fro the bench he droof away the cat,
 And leyde adoun his potente and his hat,
 And eek his scrippe, and sette him softe
 adoun. 1777
 His felawe was go walked in-to toun, (70)
 Forth with his knave, in-to that hostelrye
 Wher-as he shoop him thilke night to lye.
 'O dere maister,' quod this syke man,
 'How han ye fare sith that March bigan?
 I saugh yow noght this fourtenight or
 more.'
 'God woot,' quod he, 'laboured have I ful
 sore;
 And specially, for thy savacioun 1785
 Have I seyde many a precious orisoun,
 And for our othere frendes, god hem
 blesse!
 I have to-day been at your chirche at
 messe, (80)
 And seyde a sermon after my simple wit,
 Nat al after the text of holy writ; 1790
 For it is hard to yow, as I suppose,
 And therefore wol I teche yow al the glose.
 Glosinge is a glorious thing, certeyn,
 For lettre sleeth, so as we clerkes seyn.
 Ther have I taught hem to be charitable,
 And spende hir good ther it is resonable,
 And ther I saugh our dame; a! wher
 is she?' (89) 1797
 'Yond in the yerd I trowe that she be,'
 Seyde this man, 'and she wol come anon.'

'Ey, maister! wel-come be ye, by seint
 John!' 1800
 Seyde this wyf, 'how fare ye hertely?'
 The frere aryseth up ful curteisly,
 And hir embraceth in his armes narwe,
 And kiste hir swete, and chirketh as
 a sparwe
 With his lippes: 'dame,' quod he, 'right
 weel, 1805
 As he that is your servant every deel.
 Thanked be god, that yow yaf soule and lyf,
 Yet saugh I nat this day so fair a wyf (100)
 In al the chirche, god so save me!'
 'Ye, god amende defautes, sir,' quod she,
 'Algates wel-come be ye, by my fey!' 1811
 'Graunt mercy, dame, this have I founde
 alwey.
 But of your grete goodnesse, by your
 leve,
 I wolde prey yow that ye nat yow greve,
 I wol with Thomas speke a litel throwe.
 Thise curats been ful necligent and slowe
 To grope tendrely a conscience. (109) 1817
 In shrift, in preching is my diligence,
 And studie in Petres wordes, and in Poules.
 I walke, and fiashe Cristen mennes soules,
 To yelden Jesu Crist his propre rent; 1821
 To sprede his word is set al myn en-
 tente.'
 'Now, by your leve, o dere sir,' quod she,
 'Chydeth him weel, for seinte Trinitee.
 He is as angry as a pissemeye, 1825
 Though that he have al that he can
 desyre.
 Though I him wrye a-night and make
 him warm, (119)
 And on hym leye my leg outhir myn arm,
 He groneth lyk our boor, lyth in our sty.
 Other desport right noon of him have I;
 I may nat plesse him in no maner cas.'
 'O Thomas! *Je vous dy*, Thomas!
 Thomas!
 This maketh the feend, this moste ben
 amended.
 Ire is a thing that hye god defended, 1834
 And ther-of wol I speke a word or two.'
 'Now maister,' quod the wyf, 'er that
 I go,
 What wol ye dyne? I wol go ther-about.'
 'Now dame,' quod he, '*Je vous dy sanz*
 doute, (130)

Have I nat of a capon but the livere,
And of your softe breed nat but a shivere,
And after that a rosted pigges heed, 1841
(But that I nolde no beest for me were
deed),

Thanne hadde I with yow hoonly suffi-
saunce.

I am a man of litel sustenaunce.

My spirit hath his fostring in the Bible.
The body is ay so redy and penyble 1846
To wake, that my stomak is destroyed.

I prey yow, dame, ye be nat anoyed, (140)
Though I so freendly yow my conseil
shewe; 1849

By god, I wolde nat telle it but a fewe.'

'Now, sir,' quod she, 'but o word er I go;
My child is deed with-inne thise wykes
two,

Sone after that ye wente out of this toun.'

'His deeth saugh I by revelacioun,' 1854
Seith this frere, 'at hoom in our dortour.
I dar wel seyn that, er that half an hour
After his deeth, I saugh him born to blisse
In myn avisioun, so god me wisse! (150)

So dide our sexteyn and our fermerer,
That han been trewe freres fifty yeer;
They may now, god be thanked of his
lone, 1861

Maken hir jubilee and walke allone.
And up I roos, and al our covent eke,
With many a tere triking on my cheke,
Withouten noyse or clateringe of belles;
Te deum was our song and no-thing elles,
Save that to Crist I seyde an orisoun,
Thankinge him of his revelacioun. (160)
For sir and dame, trusteth me right weel,
Our orisons been more effectueel, 1870
And more we seen of Cristes secree thinges
Than burel folk, al-though they weren
kinges.

We live in povert and in abstinence,
And burel folk in richesse and despence
Of mete and drinke, and in hir foul delyt.
We han this worldes lust al in despyt.
Lazar and Dives liveden diversly, 1877
And diverse guerdon hadden they ther-by.
Who-so wol preye, he moot faste and be
clene, (171) 1879

And fatte his soule and make his body lene.
We fare as seith th'apostle; cloth and fode
Suffysen us, though they be nat ful gode.

The clennessse and the fastinge of us freres
Maketh that Crist accepteth our preyes.

Lo, Moyses fourty dayes and fourty
night 1885

Fasted, er that the heighe god of might
Spak with him in the mountain of Sinaï.
With empty wombe, fastinge many a day,
Receyved he the lawe that was writen (181)
With goddes finger; and Elie, wel ye
witen, 1890

In mount Oreb, er he hadde any speche
With hye god, that is our lyves leche,
He fasted longe and was in contemplaunce.

Aaron, that hadde the temple in govern-
aunce, 1894

And eek the othere preestes everichon,
In-to the temple whan they sholde gon
To preye for the peple, and do servyse,
They nolden drinken, in no maner wyse,
No drinke, which that mighte hem dronke
make, (191) 1899

But there in abstinence preye and wake,
Lest that they deyden; tak heed what
I seye.

But they be sobre that for the peple preye,
War that I seye; namore! for it suffyseth.
Our lord Jesu, as holy writ devyseth, 1904
Yaf us ensample of fastinge and preyes.
Therfor we mendinants, we sely freres,
Been wedded to poverte and continence,
To charitee, humblesse, and abstinence,
To persecucion for rightwisnesse, (201) 1909
To wepinge, misericorde, and clennessse.

And therfor may ye see that our preyes—
I speke of us, we mendinants, we freres—
Ben to the hye god more acceptable
Than youres, with your festes at the table.
Fro Paradys first, if I shal nat lye, 1915
Was man out chaced for his glotonye;
And chaast was man in Paradys, certeyn.

But herkne now, Thomas, what I shal
seyn. (210)

I ne have no text of it, as I suppose,
But I shall finde it in a maner glose, 1920
That specially our swete lord Jesus
Spak this by freres, whan he seyde thus:
"Blessed be they that povre in spirit
been."

And so forth al the gospel may ye seen,
Wher it be lyker our professioun, 1925
Or hirs that swimmen in possessioun.

pompe and on hir glotonye !
 r lewednesse I hem diffye. (120)
 keth they ben lyk Jovinian,
 hale, and walkinge as a swan ;
 t as hotel in the spence. 1931
 is of ful gret reverence ;
 y for soules seye the psalm of

" they seye, "cor meum cruc-

th Cristes gospel and his fore,
 at humble been and chast and 1936

of goddes word, not auditours ?
 right as an hawk up, at a 1936

th in-to their, right so prayeras
 ble and chaste biay freres 1940

-sours to goddes eres two.
 Thomas ! so mote I ryde or go,
 at lord that clepid is seint Yve,
 our brother, sholdestou nat 1944

upre praye we day and night
 that he thee sende hele and

for to welden hastily '
 oot,' quod he, 'no-thing ther-of 1940

e Crist, as I, in fewe yeres, 1949
 led, up-on dyvers maner freres,
 a pound, yet fare I never the

ny good have I almost biset.
 y gold ! for it is al ago !'
 ce answerde, 'O Thomas, dostow 1954

eth yow diverse freres seche ?
 eth him that hath a parfit leche
 othere leches in the toun ?

stance as your confusioun. (250)
 than me, or elles our covent,
 for yow ben insufficient ? 1960

hat jape nis nat worth a myte,
 adye is for we han to lyte.
 hat covent half a quarter otes "

that covent four and twenty
 ! "

hat frere a peny, and lat him 1965

Thomas ! it may no-thing be so.

What is a farthing worth parted in twelve ?
 Lo, ech thing that is oned in him-selve
 Is more strong than whan it is to-
 scatered. (261)

Thomas, of me thou shalt nat been y
 flatered ; 1970

Thou woldest han our labour al for nocht.
 The hye god, that al this world hath
 wrought,

Seith that the werkman worthy is his
 hyre.

Thomas ! nocht of your tresor I desyre
 As for my-self, but that al our covent 1975

To preye for yow is ay so diligent,
 And for to builden Cristes owene chirohe.

Thomas ! if ye wol larnen for to wirche,
 Of buildinge up of chiroches may ye
 finde (271)

If it be good, in Thomas lyf of Inda. 1980

Ye lye heer, ful of anger and of yre,
 With which the devel set your herte
 a-fyre,

And chyden heer this sely innocent,
 Your wyf, that is so meke and pacient.

And therfor, Thomas, trowe me if thee
 leste, 1985

Ne stryve nat with thy wyf, as for thy
 beste ;

And ber this word away now, by thy feith,
 Touchinge this thing, lo, what the wyse
 seith : (280)

" With-in thyn hous ne be thou no leoun ;
 To thy subgits do noon oppressioun ; 1990

Ne make thyne aqueyntances nat to flee."
 And Thomas, yet eft-sones I charge thee,

Bewar from hir that in thy bosom alepeth,
 War fro the serpent that so slyly crespeth

Under the gras, and stingeth subtilly 1995

Be war, my sone, and herkne paciently,
 That twenty thousand men han lost hir

lyves,

For stryving with hir lemmans and hir
 wyves. (290)

Now sith ye han so holy and meke a wyf,
 What nedeth yow, Thomas, to maken
 stryf ? 2000

Ther nis, y-wis, no serpent so cruel,
 Whan man tret on his tayl, ne half so fel,

As womman is, whan she hath caught
 an ire ;

Vengeance is thanne al that they desyre.

Ire is a sinne, oon of the grete of sevene,
Abhominable un-to the god of hevene ;
And to him-self it is destruccion.

This every lewed viker or person (300)
Can seye, how Ire engendreth homicyde.
Ire is, in sooth, executour of pryde. 2010
I coude of Ire seye so muche sorwe,
My tale sholde laste til-to-morwe.

And therfor preye I god bothe day and
night, 2013

An irous man, god sende him litel might !
It is greet harm and, certes, gret pitee,
To sette an irous man in heigh degree.

Whilom ther was an irous potestat,
As seith Senek, that, duringe his estaat,
Up-on a day out riden knightes two, (311)
And as fortune wolde that it were so, 2020
That oon of hem cam hoom. that other
noght.

Anon the knight bifore the juge is broght,
That seyde thus, "thou hast thy felawe
slayn,

For which I deme thee to the deeth, cer-
tayne."

And to another knight comanded he, 2025
"Go lede him to the deeth, I charge thee."
And happed, as they wente by the weye
Toward the place ther he sholde deye,
The knight cam, which men wenden had
be deed. (321)

Thanne thoughte they, it was the beste
reed, 2030

To lede hem bothe to the juge agayn.
They seiden, "lord, the knight ne hath
nat slayn

His felawe ; here he standeth hool alyve."
"Ye shul be deed," quod he, "so moot I
thryve !

That is to seyn, bothe oon, and two, and
threo !" 2035

And to the firste knight right thus spak he,
"I dampned thee, thou most algate be
deed.

And thou also most nedes lese thyn heed,
For thou art cause why thy felawe deyth."
And to the thridde knight right thus he
seyth, (332) 2040

"Thou hast nat doon that I comanded
thee."

And thus he dide don sleen hem alle three.
Irous Cambyzes was eek dronkelewe,

And ay delyted him to been a shrewe.

And so bifel, a lord of his meynee, 2045
That lovede vertuous moralitee,

Seyde on a day bitwix hem two right thus:
"A lord is lost, if he be vicious ; (340)

And dronkenesse is eek a foul record
Of any man, and namely in a lord. 2050

Ther is ful many an eye and many an ere
Awaiting on a lord, and he noot where.

For goddes love, drink more attemprely ;
Wyn maketh man to lessen wrecchedly
His minde, and eek his limes everichon."

"The revers shaltouse," quod he, "anon ;
And preve it, by thyn owene experience,
That wyn ne dooth to folk no swich
offence. (350) 2058

Ther is no wyn bireveth me my might
Of hand ne foot, ne of myn eyen sight"—

And, for despyt, he drank ful muchel more
An hondred part than he had doon bifore ;

And right anon, this irous cursed wrecche
Leet this knightes sone bifore him fecche,

Comandinge him he sholde bifore him
stonde. 2065

And sodeynly he took his bowe in honde.
And up the streng he pulled to his ere,

And with an arwe he slow the child right
there : (360)

"Now whether have I a siker hand or
noon ?"

Quod he, "is al my might and minde
agoon ? 2070

Hath wyn bireved me myn eyen sight ?"

What sholde I telle th'answere of the
knight ?

Hissone was slayn, ther is na-more to seye.
Beth war therfor with lordes how ye pleye.

Singeth *Placebo*, and I shal, if I can, 2075
But-if it be un-to a povre man.

To a povre man men sholde hise vyces telle,
But nat to a lord, thogh he sholde go to
helle. (370)

Lo irous Cirus, thilke Percien,
How he destroyed the river of Gysen, 2080

For that an hors of his was dreynt ther-
inne,

Whan that he wente Babiloigne to winne.
He made that the river was so smal,

That wommen mighte wade it over-al.
Lo, what seyde he, that so wel teche can ?

"Ne be no felawe to an irous man, 2086

Ne with no wood man walke by the weye,
Lest thee repente;" ther is na-more to
saye. (380)

Now Thomas, leve brother, lef thyn ire;
Thou shalt me finde as just as is a squire.
Hold nat the devaler knyfe at thyn herte;
Thyn angre dooth thee al to sore smerte;
But shewe to me al thy confessioun.'

'Nay,' quod the syke man, 'by Seint
Simoun! 2094

I have be shriven this day at my curat;
I have him told al hoolly myn estat;
Nedeth na-more to speke of it,' seith he,
'But if me list of myn humilitee.' (390)

'Yif me thanne of thy gold, to make
our cloistre,'

Quod he, 'for many a muscle and many
an oistre, 2100

Whan other men han ben ful wel at eyas,
Hath been our fode, our cloistre for to reysa.
And yet, god woot, unneth the fundement
Parfourned is, ne of our pavement 2104
Nis nat a tyle yet with-inne our wones;
By god, we owen forty pound for stones!
Now help, Thomas, for him that harwed
halle!

For elles moete we our bokes sella. (400)
And if ye lakke our predicacioun, 2109
Than gooth the world al to destruccioun.
For who-so wolde us fro this world bireve,
So god me save, Thomas, by your leve,
He wolde bireve out of this world the sonne.
For who can teche and werchen as we
coune? 2114

And that is nat of litel tyme,' quod he;
'But sith that Elia was, or Elisee,
Han freres been, that finde I of record,
In charitee, y-thanked be our lord. (410)
Now Thomas, help, for seinte Charitee!'

And down anon he sette him on his knee.
This syke man wex wel ny wood for ire;
He wolde that the frere had been on-fire
With his false dissimulacioun.

'Swich thing as is in my possessioun,'
Quod he, 'that may I yeven, and non
other. 2123

Ye sey me thus, how that I am your
brother?'

'Ye, certes,' quod the frere, 'trusteth
weel;

I took our dame our lettre with our seel'

'Now wel,' quod he, 'and som-what
shal I yive (421)

Un-to your holy covent why! I live, 2130
And in thyn hand thou shalt it have
anon;

On this condicioun, and other noon,
That thou departe it so, my dere brother,
That every frere have also muche as other.
This shalton swere on thy professioun,
With-outen fraude or cavillacioun.' 2136

'I swere it,' quod this frere, 'upon my
feith!'

And ther-with-al his hand in his he leith:
'Lo, heer my feith! in me shal be no lak.'

'Now thanne, put thyn hand down by
my bak,' (432) 2140

Seyde this man, 'and grope wel bihinde;
Byneth my buttoke ther shaltow finde
A thing that I have hid in privetee.'

'A!' thoughte this frere, 'this shal go
with me!'

And down his hand he launcheth to the
cliffe, 2145

In hope for to finde ther a yifte. (438)

And whan this syke man felte this frere
Aboute his tuwel grope there and here,
Amidde his hand he lest the frere a fart.
Ther nis no capul, drawinge in a cart, 2150
That mighte have lete a fart of swich
a soun.

The frere up stirte as doth a wood
leoun;

'A! false charl,' quod he, 'for guldies
bones,

This hastow for despyt doon, for the
nones!

Thou shalt abyse this fart, if that I may!'

His meynee, whiche that herden this
affray, 2156

Cam lepinge in, and chased out the frere;
And forth he gooth, with a ful angry
chere, (450)

And fette his felawe, ther-as lay his stoor.
He looked as it were a wilde boor; 2160

He grinte with his teeth, so was he wrooth.
A sturdy pas down to the court he gooth,
Wher-as ther woned a man of greet
honour,

To whom that he was alway confessour;
This worthy man was lord of that village.

This frere cam, as he were in a rage, 2166

Wher-as this lord sat eting at his bord,
Unnethe mighte the frere speke a word,
Til atte laste he seyde: 'god yow see' (461)

This lord gan loken, and seide, 'ben-
cite! (470)

What, frere John, what maner world is
this?

I see wel that som thing ther is amia.
Ye loken as the wode were ful of thevis,
Sit down anon, and tel me what your
grief is,

And it shal been amended, if I may.' (475)

'I have,' quod he, 'had a despyt this day,
God yelde yow! adoun in your village,
That in this world is noon so povre a page,
That he nolde have abhominacioun (478)
Of that I have receyved in your town. (480)
And yet ne greveth me no-thing so sore,
As that this olde cherl, with lokkes hore,
Blasphemed hath our holy covent eke.'

'Now, maister,' quod this lord, 'I yow
biseke.'

'No maister, sire,' quod he, 'but servi-
tour, (485)

Thogh I have had in scole swich honour.
God lyketh nat that "Raby" men us calle,
Neither in market ne in your large halle.'

'No fors,' quod he, 'but tel me al your
grief.' (491)

'Sire,' quod this frere, 'an odious mes-
chief (490)

This day bitid is to myn ordre and me,
And so *per consequens* to ech degree
Of holy chirche, god amende it sone!'

'Sir,' quod the lord, 'ye woot what is
to done.

Distempere yow neight, ye be my con-
fessour; (495)

Ye been the salt of the erthe and the
savour.

For goddes love your patience ye holde,
Tel me your grief' and he anon him
tolde, (499)

As ye han herd biforn, ye woot wel what.

The lady of the hous ay stille sat, (500)
Til she had herd al what the frere seyde:
'Ey, goddes moder,' quod she, 'blisful
mayde!

Is ther ought elles? telle me feithfully.'

'Madame,' quod he, 'how thinketh yow
her-by?'

'How that me thinketh?' quod she,
'so god me speede, (505)

I saye, a cherl hath doon a cherles dede.
What shold I saye? god lat him never
thee!

His syke head is ful of vanitee, (508)
I hold him in a maner frenesye.'

'Madame,' quod he, 'by god I shal nat
lya; (510)

But I on other weyes may be wreke,
I shal diffame him over-al ther I speke,
This false blasphemour, that charged me
To parte that wol nat departed be,
To every man y-liche, with meschaunce!'

The lord sat stille as he were in a
traunce, (516)

And in his herte he rolled up and down,
'How hadde this cherl imaginacioun (520)
To shewe swich a probleme to the frere?
Never erst er now herde I of swich matere;
I trowe the devel putte it in his minde.

In ars-metryke shal ther no man finde,
Biforn this day, of swich a questionn.

Who sholde make a demonstracioun,
That every man sholde have y-liche his
part (525)

As of the soun or savour of a fart? (528)
O nyce proude cherl, I shrewe his face'

Lo, sires,' quod the lord, with harde grace,
'Who ever herde of swich a thing er now?

To every man y-lyke? tel me how. (530)
It is an impossible, it may nat be!

Ey, nyce cherl, god lete him never thee!
The rumblinge of a fart, and every soun,

Nis but of air reverberacioun, (534)
And ever it wasteth lyte and lyte away

Ther is no man can demen, by my fey,
If that it were departed equally. (539)

What, lo, my cherl, lo, yet how shrewedly
Un-to my confessour to-day he spak!

I holde him certeyn a demoniak! (540)
Now ete your mete, and lat the cherl ge-
pleye,

Lat him go honge himself, a devel weye!'

Now stood the lordes squyer at the bord,
That carf his mete, and herde, word by

word, (544)
Of alle thinges of which I have yow sayd

'My lord,' quod he, 'be ye nat yvel apayd.
I coude telle, for a goune-clooth,

To yow, sir frere, so ye be nat wrooth, (549)

How that this fart sholde even deled be
Among your covent, if it lyked ma.' 2250

'Tel,' quod the lord, 'and thou shalt
have anon

A gounne-cloth, by god and by Seint John!'

'My lord,' quod he, 'whan that the
weder is fair,

With-uten wind or perturbinge of air,

Lat bringe a cartwheel here in-to this
halle, 2255

But loke that it have his spokes alle.

Twelf spokes hath a cartwheel comunly.

And bring me than twelf freres, woot ye
why? (350)

For thrittene is a covent, as I gesse.

The confessour heer, for his worthynesse,
Shal parfourne up the nombre of his
covent. 2261

Than shal they knele down, by oon assent,
And to every spokes ende, in this manere,
Ful sadly leye his nose shal a frere.

Your noble confessour, ther god him save,
Shal holde his nose upright, under the
nave. 2266

Than shal this cherl, with bely stif and
tought

As any tabour, hider been y-brought; (360)

And sette him on the wheel right of this
cart, 2269

Upon the nave, and make him lete a fart.

And ye shul seen, up peril of my lyf,
By preve which that is demonstratif,
That equally the soun of it wol wende,
And seek the stink, un-to the spokes
ende;

Save that this worthy man, your con-
fessour, 2273

By-cause he is a man of greet honour,

Shal have the firste fruit, as reson is;

The noble usage of freres yet is this, (370)

The worthy men of ham shul first be
served; 2279

And certainly, he hath it weel deserved.

He hath to-day taught us so muchel good

With preching in the pulpit ther he stood,

That I may vouche-sauf, I sey for me,

He hadde the firste smel of fartes three,

And so wolde al his covent hardily; 2285

He bereth him so faire and holily.'

The lord, the lady, and ech man, save
the frere, (379)

Seyde that Jankin spak, in this matere,

As wel as Euclide or [as] Ptholomee.

Touchinge this cherl, they seyde, subtiltes

And heigh wit made him spoken as he
spak; 2291

He nis no fool, ne no demoniak.

And Jankin hathy-wonne a newegounne.—

My tale is doon we been almost at
gounne. 2294

Here endeth the Somnours Tale.

GROUP E.

THE CLERK'S PROLOGUE.

Here foloweth the Prologe of the Clerkes Tale of Oxenford.

'SIR clerk of Oxenford,' our hoste sayde,
'Ye ryde as ooy and stille as dooth a
mayde,
Were news sponsed, sitting at the bord;
This day ne herde I of your tonge a word.
I trowe ye studie aboute som sophyme, 5
But Salomon seith, "every thing hath
tyme."

For goddes sake, as both of bettre chere,
It is no tyme for to studien here.
Telle us som mery tale, by your fey;
For what man that is entred in a pley, 10
He nedes moot unto the pley assente.
But precheth nat, as freres doon in Lente,
To make us for our olde synnes wepe,
Ne that thy tale make us nat to slepe.

Telle us som mery thing of aventures;—
Your termes, your colours, and your
figures, 16
Kepe hem in stoor til so be ye endyte
Heigh style, as whan that men to kinges
wryte,

Speketh so playn at this tyme, I yow preye,
That we may understonde what ye seye.'

This worthy clerk bonignely answerde,
'Hoste,' quod he, 'I am under your yerde;
Ye han of us as now the governaunce,
And therfor wol I do yow obeisaunce,
As fer as reson axeth, hardily. 25
I wol yow telle a tale which that I
lerned at Padowe of a worthy clerk,
As preved by his wordes and his werk.

He is now deed and nayled in his chest,
I prey to god so yave his soule reste! 30

Fraunceys Petrark, the laurest poete,
Highte this clerk, whos rethoryke swete
Enlumined al Itaille of poetrye,
As Linian dide of philosophye
Or lawe, or other art particuler; 35
But deeth, that wol nat suffre us dwellen
hear

But as it were a twinkling of an yē,
Hem bothe hath slayn, and alle shal we
dye.

But forth to tellen of this worthy man,
That taughte me this tale, as I bigan, 40
I seye that first with heigh style he
endyteth,

Er he the body of his tale wryteth,
A proheme, in the which discryveth he
Pemond, and of Saluces the contree, 44
And speketh of Apennyn, the hilles hye.
That been the boundes of West Lam-
bardye,

And of Mount Vesulus in special,
Where as the Po, out of a welle smal,
Taketh his firste springing and his cours,
That estward ay encroaseth in his cours 48
To Emelward, to Ferrare, and Venysse.
The which a long thing were to devyse.
And trowely, as to my jugement,
Me thinketh it a thing impertinent,
Save that he wol conveyen his matere. 52
But this his tale, which that ye may here.'

THE CLERKES TALE.

Here biginneth the Tale of the Clerk of Oxenford.

There is, at the west syde of Itaille,
 Down at the rote of Vesulus the colde,
 A lusty playne, habundant of vitaille,
 Wher many a tour and toun thou mayest
 biholde, 60

That founded were in tyme of fadres olde,
 And many another delitable sighte,
 And Saluces this noble contree highte.

A markis whylom lord was of that londe,
 As were his worthy eldres him bifore; 65
 And obeisant and redy to his honde (10)
 Were alle his liges, bothe laase and more.
 Thus in delyt he liveth, and hath donyore,
 Biloved and drad, thurgh favour of for-
 tune, 69
 Bothe of his lordes and of his commune.

Therwith he was, to speke as of linage,
 The gentilleste y-born of Lombardiye,
 A fair persone, and strong, and yong of
 age,
 And ful of honour and of curteisye;
 Discreet y-nogh his contree for to gye, 75
 Save in somme thinges that he was to
 blame, (20)
 And Walter was this yonge lordes name.

I blame him thus, that he considereth
 noght 78
 In tyme cominge what mighte him bityde,
 But on his lust present was al his thought,
 As for to haue and hunte on every syde;
 Wel ny alle othere cures leet he alyde,
 And eek he nolde, and that was worst of
 alle, (27)
 Wedde no wyf, for noght that may bifalle.

Only that point his peple bar so sore, 85
 That flokmele on a day they to him wente,
 And oon of hem, that wysest was of lore,
 Or elles that the lord best wolde assente

That he sholde telle him what his peple
 mente, 89
 Or elles coude he shewe wel swich matere,
 He to the markis seyde as ye shul here.

'O noble markis, your humanitee
 Assureth us and yeveth us hardinesse,
 As ofte as tyme is of necessitee 94
 That we to yow mowe telle our hevynesse;
 Accepteth, lord, now for your gentillesse,
 That we with pitous herte un-to yow
 playne, (41)
 And lete your eres nat my voys disdayne.

Al have I noght to done in this matere
 More than another man hath in this place,
 Yet for as muche as ye, my lord so
 dere, 101
 Han alwey shewed me favour and grace,
 I dar the better aske of yow a space
 Of audience, to shewen our requests,
 And ye, my lord, to doon right as yow
 leste. 105

For certes, lord, so wel us lyketh yow (50)
 And al your werk and ever han doon,
 that we
 Ne coude nat us self devyzen how
 We mighte liven in more felicitie,
 Save o thing, lord, if it your wille be, 110
 That for to been a wedded man yow leste,
 Than were your peple in sovereyn hertes
 reste.

Boweth your nekke under that blisful yok
 Of soveraynetee, noght of servyse,
 Which that men clepeth sponsaille or
 wedlok; 115
 And thenketh, lord, among your thoughtes
 wyse, (60)
 How that our dayes passe in sondry wyse;

For though we aspe or wake, or seme, or
ryde,
Ay fleeth the tyme, it nil no man abyde.

And though your grene youthe floure as
yit, 120
In crepeth age alwey, as stille as stoon,
And deeth manaceth every age, and smit
In ech estat, for ther escapeth noon:
And al so certein as we kn
That we shul deya, as ur
Been of that day whan
falle.

Accepteth than of us the t
That never yet refuseden
And we wol, lord, if that ye
Chese yow a wyf in short tyme
Born of the gentilleste ar
Of al this lond, so that it
Honour to god and yow,

Deliver us out of al this bise drede,
And tak a wyf, for hye goddes sake; 135
For if it so bifelle, as god forbede, (80)
That thurgh your deeth your linage
sholde slake,
And that a straunge successour sholde
take
Your heritage, o! wo were us alyve!
Wherfor we pray you hastily to wyve.' 140

Hir meke prayere and hir pitous chere
Made the markis herte han pitee.
'Ye wol,' quod he, 'myn owene peple
dere,
To that I never erst thoughte streyne me.
I me rejoyced of my libertee, 145
That seide tyme is founde in mariage; (90)
Ther I was free, I moot been in servage.

But natheles I see your trewe entente,
And truste upon your wit, and have don ay;
Wherfor of my free wil I wol assente 150
To wedde me, as sone as ever I may.
But ther-as ye han profred me to-day
To chese me a wyf, I yow relasse
That choys, and pray yow of that profre
cease. 154

For god it woot, that children ofte been
Unlyk her worthy eldres hem bifore, (100)

Bountee comth al of god, nat of the stream
Of which they been engen lred and y-bore,
I truste in goddes bountee, and therfore
My mariage and myn estat and reste 160
I him bitake; he may don as him leste

Lat me alone in chesinge of my wyf,
That charge up-on my bak I wol endure.
But I yow preye, and charge up-on your lyf,
what wyf that I take, ye me assure
worshipe hir, whyl that hir lyf may
dure, 110 166
ord and werk, bothe here and every-
where,
so an emperoures doghter were.

forthermore, this shal ye swere, that
ye
in my choys shul neither gruoche ne
stryve; 170
ith I shal forgoon my libertee

our requeste, as ever moot I thryve.
Ther as myn herte is set, ther wol I wyve;
And but ye wole assente in swich manere,
I prey yow, speketh na-more of this
matere.' (119) 175

With hertly wil they sworn, and assenten
To al this thing, ther seyde no wight nay;
Bisekinge him of grace, er that they
wenten,
That he wolde graunten hem a certein day
Of his sponsaille, as sone as ever he may;
For yet alwey the peple som-what dredde
Lest that this markis no wyf wolde wedde.

He graunted hem a day, swich as him
leste,
On which he wolde be wedded sikerly, 184
And seyde, he dide al this at hir requeste;
And they, with humble entente, buxomly,
Knelinge up-on her knees ful reverently
Him thanken alle, and thus they han an
ende (132)
Of hir entente, and hoom agayn they
wende.

And heer-up-on he to his officeres 190
Comaundeth for the feste to purveye,
And to his privee knightes and squyeres
Swich charge yaf, as him liste on hem leye;

And they to his comandement obeys,
And ech of hem doth al his diligence 195
To doon un-to the feste reverence. (140)

Explicit prima pars.

Incipit secunda pars.

Noght far fro thilke palays honourable
Ther-as this markis shoop his mariage,
Ther stood a throp, of site delitable,
In which that povre folk of that village 200
Hadden hir bestes and hir herbergage,
And of hir labour took hir sustenance
After that th'erthe yaf hem habundance.

Amonges thise povre folk ther dwelte
a man

Which that was holden povrest of hem
alle; 205

But hye god som tyme senden can (150)

His grace in-to a litel oxes stalle :

Janicula men of that throp him calle.

A doghter hadde he, fair y-nogh to sighte,
And Grisildis this yonge mayden highte.

But for to speke of vertuous beautee, 211
Than was she oon the faireste under
sonne;

For povrelliche y-fostred up was she,

No likerous lust was thurgh hir herte

y-ronne; (158) 214

Wel ofter of the welle than of the tonne

She drank, and for she wolde vertu please,

She knew wel labour, but non ydel ooe.

But though this mayde tendre were of age,

Yet in the brest of hir virginitee

Ther was enclosed rype and sad corage;

And in greet reverence and charitee 221

Hir olde povre fader fostred she;

A fewe sheep spinning on feeld she kepte,

She wolde noght been ydel til she alepte.

And whan she boonward cam, she wolde
bringe 225

Wortes or othere herbes tymes ofte, (170)

The whiche she shredde and seeth for hir

livinge,

And made hir bed ful harde and no-thing

softe;

And ay she kepte hir fadres lyf on-lofte

With everich obeissaunce and diligence 230

That child may doon to fadres reverence.

Up-on Grisilde, this povre creature,
Ful ofte sythe this markis sette his yð
As he on hunting rood paraventure; 234
And whan it fil that he mighte hirespye,
He noght with wantoun loking of folye
His yð caste on hir, but in sad wyse (181)
Up-on hir chere he wolde him ofte avyse,

Commending in his herte hir womman-
bede,

And eek hir vertu, passing any wight 240

Of so yong age, as wel in chere as dede.

For though the peple have no greet insight

In vertu, he considered ful right

Hir bountee, and disposed that he wolde

Wedde hir only, if ever he wedde sholde.

The day of wedding cam, but no wight
can (190) 246

Telle what womman that it sholde be;

For which mervelle wondred many a man,

And seyden, whan they were in privetee,

'Wol nat our lord yet leve hys vanitee? 250

Wol he nat wedde? alas, alas the whyle!

Why wol he thus him-self and us bigyle?'

But natheles this markis hath don make

Of gemmes, set in gold and in asure,

Broches and ringes, for Grisildis sake, 255

And of hir cloþing took he the mesure

By a mayde, lyk to hir stature, (201)

And eek of othere ornamentes alle

That un-to swich a wedding sholde falle.

The tyme of undern of the same day 260

Approcheth, that this wedding sholde be,

And al the paleys put was in array,

Bothe halle and chambres, ech in his

degree;

Houses of office stuffed with plenteo 264

Ther maystow seen of dayntevous vitaille,

That may be founde, as fer as last Itaille.

This royal markis, richely arrayed, (211)

Lordes and ladyes in his companye,

The whiche unto the feste were y-prayed,

And of his retenue the bachelrye, 270

With many a soun of sondry melodye,

Un-to the village, of the which I tolde,

In this array the righte wey han holde.

Grisilde of this, god woot, ful innocent,

That for hir shapen was al this array, 275

To fecchen water at a welle is went, (280)
 And cometh hoom as sone as ever she may.
 For wel she hadde herd seyde, that thilke
 day
 The markis sholde wedde, and, if she
 mighte,
 She wolde sayn han seyn soun of that
 sighte. 280

She thoughte, 'I wol with othere maydens
 stonde,
 That been my felawes, in our dore, and see
 The markiesse, and therfor wol I fonde
 To doon at hoom, as sone as it may be,
 The labour which that longeth un-to me;
 And than I may at layser hir biholde, 285
 If she this way un-to the castel holde.' (281)

And as she wolde over hir threshfold goon,
 The markis cam and gan hir for to calle;
 And she set down hir water-pot anon 290
 Biyde the threshfold, in an oxes stalle,
 And down up-on hir knees she gan to falle,
 And with sad contenance kneleth stille
 Til she had herd what was the lordes wille.

This thoughtful markis spak un-to this
 mayde (289) 295
 Ful sobroly, and seyde in this manere,
 'Wher is your fader, Grisildis?' he seyde,
 And she with reverence, in humble chere,
 Answerde, 'lord, he is al redy here.'
 And in she gooth with-oute lenger lette,
 And to the markis she hir fader fette. 301

He by the hond than took this olde man,
 And seyde thus, when he him hadde
 asyde,
 'Janicula, I neither may ne can 304
 Lenger the plesance of myn herte hyde.
 If that thou vouche-sauf, what-so bityde,
 Thy doghter wol I take, er that I wende,
 As for my wyf, un-to hir lyves ende. (302)

Thou lovest me, I woot it wel, certeyn,
 And art my feithful lige man y-bore; 310
 And al that lyketh me, I dar wol seyn
 It lyketh thee, and specially therfore
 Tel me that poynt that I have seyde bifore,
 If that thou wolt un-to that purpos drawe,
 To take me as for thy sone-in-lawe?' 315

This sodeyn cas this man astoned so, (286)
 That reed he wax, abayst, and al quaking
 He stood; unnethe seyde he wordes me,
 But only thus: 'lord,' quod he, 'my wil-
 ling

Is as ye wole, ne ayeines your lyking 320
 I wol no-thing; ye be my lord so dere;
 Right as yow lust governeth this matere.'

'Yet wol I,' quod this markis softly,
 'That in thy chambre I and thou and she
 Have a collacion, and wostow why? 325
 For I wol axe if it hir wille be (290)
 To be my wyf, and reule hir after me;
 And al this shal be doon in thy presence,
 I wol nocht speke out of thyn audience.'

And in the chambre whyl they were
 aboute 330

Hir tretis, which as ye shal after here,
 The peple cam un-to the hous with-oute,
 And wondred hem in how honest manere
 And tentifly she kepte hir fader dere. (296)
 But outerly Grisildis wondre mighte, 335
 For never erst ne saugh she swich a sighte.

No wonder is thogh that she were astoned
 To seen so greet a gess come in that place.
 She never was to swiche gesses woned,
 For which she loket with ful pale face.
 But shortly forth this tale for to chace,
 Thise arn the wordes that the markis
 sayde 342

To this benigne verray feithful mayde.

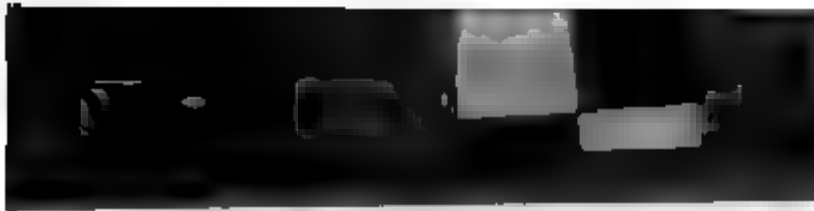
'Grisilde,' he seyde, 'ye shul wel under-
 stonde

It lyketh to your fader and to me 345
 That I yow wedde, and oek it may so
 stonde, (300)

As I suppose, ye wol that it so be.
 But thise demandes axe I first,' quod he,
 'That, sith it shal be doon in hastif wyse,
 Wol ye assente, or elles yow avyse? 350

I seye this, be ye redy with good herte
 To al my lust, and that I frely may,
 As me best thinketh, do yow laughe or
 smerte,

And never ye to grucche it, night ne day?
 And oek whan I sey "ye," ne sey nei
 "nay," 355



rd no frowning contenance ;
I here I swore our alliance.'

on this word, quaking for
(302)
rd, undigne and unworthy
honour that yeme bede ; 360
your-self, right so wol I
ere that never willingly
oght I nil yow disobeye,
I, though me were looth to
(308) 364

gh, Grisilde myn !' quod he.
gooth with a ful sobre chere
re, and after that cam she,
ple he seyde in this manere,
yf,' quod he, ' that standeth
369
r, and loveth hir, I preye,
oveth ; ther is na-more to

no-thing of hir olde gere
inge in-to his hous, he had
n sholde dispoilen hir right
(318) 374
e ladyes were nat right glad
clothes wher-in she was clad.
this mayde bright of hewe
ed they clothed han al newe.

n they kembd, that lay un-
nd with hir fingres smale 380
hir heed they han y-dressed,
r ful of nowches grote and

what sholde I make a tale ?
peple hir knew for hir fair-

translated was in swich rich-
385

hath hir sponsed with a ring
he same cause, and than hir
(331)

ers, snow-whyt and wel am-

aleys, er he lenger lette,
peple that hir ladde and
390

Conveyed hir, and thus the day they
spende
In revel, til the sonne gan descende.

And shortly forth this tale for to chace,
I seye that to this newe markisese
God hath swich favour sent hir of his
grace, 395
That it ne seemed nat by lyklinesse (340)
That she was born and fed in rudenesse,
As in a cote or in an oxe-stalle,
But norished in an emperoures halle.

To every wight she woxen is so dere 400
And worshipful, that folk ther she was
bore
And from hir birthe knewe hir yeer by
yere,
Unnethe trowed they, but dorste han
swore
That to Janicle, of which I spak bifore,
She doghter nas, for, as by conjecture, 405
Hem thoughte she was another creature.

Forthogh that ever vertuous was she, (351)
She was encreased in swich excellence
Of thewes gode, y-set in heigh bountee,
And so discreet and fair of eloquence, 410
So benigne and so digne of reverence,
And coude so the peples herte embrace,
That ech hir lovede that loked on hir face.

Noght only of Saluces in the toun
Publiced was the bountee of hir name, 415
But eek bisyde in many a regionn, (360)
If oon seyde wel, another seyde the same ;
So spradde of hir heigh bountee the fame,
That men and wommen, as wel yonge as
olde,
Gon to Saluce, upon hir to biholde. 420

Thus Walter lowly, nay but royally,
Wedded with fortunat honestete,
In goides pees liveth ful eaily
At hoom, and outward grace y-nogh had
he ; (368) 424
And for he'ough that under low degree
Was ofte vertu hid, the peple him helde
A prudent man, and that is seyn ful welde.

Nat only this Grisildis thurgh hir wit
Coude at the feet of wyfly boornlinesse,

But eek, whan that the cas requyred it,
The commune profit coude she redresse.
Ther nas discord, rancour, ne hevynesse
In al that lond, that she ne conde apese,
And wysly bringe hem alle in reste and
ese.

Though that hir housbonde absent were
anon, 435
If gentil men, or othere of hir contree
Were wrothe, she wolde bringen hem
atoun, (381)
So wyse and rype wordes hadde she,
And jugements of so greet equitee,
That she from heven sent was, as men
wende, 440
Peple to save and every wrong t'amende.

Nat longe tyme after that this Grisild
Was wedded, she a doughter hath y-bore,
Al had hir lever have born a knave child.
Glad was this markis and the folk ther-
fore, 445
For though a mayde child come al bifore,
She may unto a knave child atteyne (391)
By lyklihed, sin she nis nat bareyne.

Explicit secunda pars.

Incipit tertia pars.

Ther fil, as it bifalleth tymes mo,
Whan that this child had souked out
a throwe, 450
This markis in his herte longeth so
To tempte his wyf, hir sadnesse for to
knowe,
That he ne mighte out of his herte throwe
This merveillous desyr, his wyf t'assaye,
Needless, god woot, he thoughte hir for
t'affraye. 455

He hadde assayed hir y-nogh bifore, (400)
And fond hir ever good; what neded it
Hir for to tempte and alwey more and
more?

Though som men preise it for a subtil wit,
But as for me, I seye that yvel it sit 460
T'assaye a wyf whan that it is no nede,
And putten her in anguish and in drede.

For which this markis wroghte in this
manere;
He cam alone a-night, ther as she lay,

With sterne face and with ful trouble
chere, 465
And seyde thus, 'Grisild,' quod he, 'that
day (410)
That I yow took out of your povre array
And putte yow in estat of heigh noblesse,
Ye have nat that forgeten, as I gesse.

I seye, Grisild, this present dignitee, 470
In which that I have put yow, as I trawe,
Maketh yow nat forgetful for to be
That I yow took in povre estat ful lowe
For any wele ye moot your-selven knowe.
Tak hede of every word that I yow seye,
Ther is no wight that hereth it but we
tweye. (420) 475

Ye woot your-self wel, how that ye cam
here
In-to this hous, it is nat longe ago,
And though to me that ye be lief and
dere,
Un-to my gentils ye be no-thing so; 480
They seyn, to hem it is greet shame and
wo

For to be subgete and ben in servage
To thee, that born art of a smal village.

And namely, with thy doghter was y-bore,
Thise wordes han they spoken douteless
But I desyre, as I have doon bifore, 490
To live my lyf with hem in reste and
pees;

I may nat in this cas be reccheless.
I moot don with thy doghter for the
beste,
Nat as I wolde, but as my peple leste. 495

And yet, god wot, this is ful looth to me
But natheless with-oute your witing
I wol nat doon, but this wol I,' quod he,
'That ye to me assente as in this thing.
Shewe now your pacience in your working
That ye me highte and swore in your
village (440) 496
That day that maked was our mariage.'

Whan she had herd al this, she night
ameved
Neither in word, or chere, or counter-
saunce;
For, as it samed, she was nat agreed: 500



'lord, al lyth in your ples-
nd I with hertly obeisaunce
al, and ye mowe save or spille
e thing; werketh after your
504

no-thing, god so my soule save,
ow that may displesse me; (450)
e no-thing for to have,
or to lese, save only ye;
in myn herte and ay shal be.
e of tyme or deeth may this
510
e my corage to another place.'

his markis of hir answering,
feyned as he were nat so;
as his chere and his loking
t he sholde out of the chambre
515

this, a furlong wey or two, (460)
hath told al his entente
an, and to his wyf him sente.

ergeant was this privee man,
that feithful ofte he founden
520
grete, and eek swich folk wel

cioun on thinges badde.
new wel that he him loved and
e;
this sergeant wiste his lordes

chambre he stalked him ful
525

'he seyde, 'ye mote foryeve it
(470)

do thing to which I am con-
ed;

wys that ful wel knowe ye
es hestes mowe nat been y-
1,
re wel been biwailed or com-
ed, 530

not nede un-to her lust obeye,
al I; ther is na-more to seye.

I am comanded for to take'—
na-more, but out the child he

Despitously, and gan a chere make 535
As though he wolde han slayn it er he
wente, (480)

Grisildis mot al suffren and consente;
And as a lamb she sitteth meke and stille,
And lest this cruel sergeant doon his wille.

Suspicious was the diffame of this man,
Suspect his face, suspect his word also; 541
Suspect the tyme in which he this bigan.
Allas! hir doghter that she lovede so
She wende he wolde han slawen it right
tho. 544

But natheles she neither weep ne syked,
Consenting hir to that the markis lyked.

But atte laste spoken she bigan, (491)
And mekely she to the sergeant preyde,
So as he was a worthy gentil man,
That she mote kisse hir child er that it
deyde; 550

And in her barn this litel child she leyde
Withful sad face, and gan the child to kisse
And lulled it, and after gan it blisse.

And thus she seyde in hir benigne voys,
'Far weel, my child, I shal thee never
see; 555

But, with I thee have marked with the
croys, (500)

Of thilke fader blessed mote thou be,
That for us deyde up-on a croys of tree.
Thy soule, litel child, I him bitake,
For this night shaltow dyen for my sake.'

I trowe that to a norice in this cas 561
It had ben hard this rewthe for to se;
Wel mighte a mooder than han cryed
'allas!'

But natheles so sad stedfast was she,
That she endured all adversitee, 565
And to the sergeant mekely she sayde, (510)
'Have heer agayn your litel yonge mayde.

Goth now,' quod she, 'and dooth my
lordes heste,

But o thing wol I preye yow of your grace,
That, but my lord forbad yow, atte leste
Burieth this litel body in som place 571
That bestes ne no briddes it to-race.'

But he no word wol to that purpos seyn,
But took the child and wente upon his
weye.

wille;

581

And bad his sergeant that he prively
Sholde this child ful softe winde and
wrappe

With alle circumstances tendrely,
And carie it in a cofre or in a lappe; 585
But, up-on payne his heed of for to
swappe, (530)

That no man sholde knowe of his entente,
Ne whanne he cam, ne whider that he
wente;

But at Boloigne to his suster dero,
That thilke tyme of Panik was countesse,
He sholde it take, and shewe hir this
matere, 591

Bisekinge hir to don hir bisinesse
This child to fostre in alle gentilese:
And whos child that it was he bad hir
hyde

From every wight, for oght that may
bityde. 595

The sergeant gooth, and hath fulfild this
thing; (540)

But to this markis now retourns we;
For now goth he ful faste imagining
If by his wyves chere he mighte see,
Or by hir word sparcelyve that she 600
Were chaunged; but he never hir coude
finde

But ever in oon y-lyke sad and kinde.

I have,' quod she, 'seyd thus, and ever
shal, (589) 645

wol no thing, ne nil no thing, certayn,
but as yow list, noght greveth me at al,
hogh that my doghter and my sone be
slayn,

t your comandement, this is to sayn.
have noght had no part of children
tweyne 650

but first siknesse, and after wo and payne.
'e been our lord, doth with your owene
thing

ight as yow list; axeth no reed at me.
or, as I lefte at hoom al my clothing,
Vhan I first cam to yow, right so,' quod
she, 655

Lefte I my wil and al my libertee, (600)
and took your clothing; wherfor I yow
preye,

both your plesauce, I wol your lust
obeye.

and certes, if I hadde prescience
'our wil to knowe er ye your lust me
tolde, 660

wolde it doon with-outen negligence;
but now I woot your lust and what ye
wolde,

al your plesauce ferme and stable
I holde,

'or wiste I that my deeth wolde do yow
ese, 664

light gladly wolde I dyen, yow to ples.

both may noght make no comparisoun
'n-to your love:' and, when this markis
sey 611

he constance of his wyf, he caste adoun
his yēn two, and wondreth that she may
n pacience suffre al this array. 670

and forth he gooth with dreery conten-
aunce,

but to his herte it was ful greet plesauce.

This ugly sergeant, in the same wyse
that he hir doghter caughte, right so he,
or worse, if men worse can devyse, 675

lath hent hir sone, that ful was of
beautee. 680

and ever in oon so pacient was she,
that she no chere made of hevynesse,
but kiste hir sone, and after gan it blesse;

Save this; she preyed him that, if he
mighte, 680

Hir litel sone he wolde in erthe grave,
His tendre limes, delicat to sighte,
Fro foules and fro bestes for to save.

But she non answer of him mighte have.
He wente his way, as him no-thing ne
roghte; 685

But to Boloigne he tendrely it broghte.

This markis wondreth ever lenger the
more 631

Up-on hir pacience, and if that he
Ne hadde soothly knowen ther-bifore,
That partly hir children lovede she, 690
He wolde have wend that of som subtiltee,
And of malice or for cruel corage,
That she had suffred this with sad visage.

But wel he knew that next him-self,
certayn, 694

She loved hir children best in every wyse.
But now of wommen wolde I axen fayn,
If this assayes mighte nat suffyse? (641)

What coude a sturdy housbond more
devyse

To preve hir wyfhood and hir stedfast-
nesse, 699

And he continuing ever in sturdynesse?

But ther ben folk of swich condicioun,
That, when they have a certain purpos
take,

They can nat stinte of hir entencioun,
But, right as they were bounden to
a stake,

They wol nat of that firste purpos slake.
Right so this markis fulliche hath pur-
posed 690 706

To tempte his wyf, as he was first disposed.

He waiteth, if by word or contenance
That she to him was changed of corage;
But never coude he finde variance; 710

She was ay oon in herte and in visage;
And ay the forther that she was in age,
The more trewe, if that it were possible,
She was to him in love, and more penible.

For which it semed thus, that of hem two
Ther nas but o wil; for, as Walter leste,
The same lust was hir plesauce also, 661

And, god be thanked, al fil for the beste.
She shewed wel, for no worldly unreste
A wyf, as of hir-self, no-thing ne sholde
Wille in effect, but as hir housbond wolde.

The schlaundre of Walter ofte and wyde
spraddo, 722

That of a cruel herte he wikkedly,
For he a povre woman wedded hadde,
Hath mordred bothe his children prively.
Swich murmur was among hem comunly.
No wonder is, for to the peples ere (671)
Ther cam no word but that they mordred
were.

For which, wher-as his peple ther-bifore
Had loved him wel, the schlaundre of his
diffame 730

Made hem that they him hatode therfore;
To been a mordrer is an hateful name.
But natheles, for earnest ne for game
He of his cruel purpos nolde stente; 734
To tempte his wyf was set al his entente.

Whan that his doghter twelf yeer was of
age, (680)

He to the court of Rome, in subtil wyse
Enformed of his wil, sente his message,
Comaunding hem swiche bulles to devyse
As to his cruel purpos may suffyse, 740
How that the pope, as for his peples reste,
Bad him to wedde another, if him leste.

I seye, he bad they sholde countrefete
The popes bulles, making mencion
That he hath love his firste wyf to lete, 745
As by the popes dispensacioun, (690)
To stinte rancour and dissencioun
Bitwixe his peple and him; thus seyde
the bulle,

The which they han publiced atte falla.

The rude peple, as it no wonder is, 750
Wenden ful wel that it had been right so,
But whan this tydinges cam to Grisildis,
I deme that hir herte was ful wo.
But she, y-lyke sad for evermo,
Disposed was, this humble creature, 755
Th'adversitee of fortune al t'endure, (700)

Abyding ever his lust and his plessaunce,
To whom that she was yeven, herte and al,
As to hir verray worldly suffisaunce;

But shortly if this storie I tellen shal, 760
This markis writen hath in special
A lettre in which he sheweth his entente,
And secretly he to Boloigne it sente.

To th'eri of Panik, which that hadde the
Wedded his suster, preyde he specially 765
To bringen hoom agayn his children two
In honourable estate al openly. (711)

But o thing he him preyede outerly,
That he to no wight, though men wolde
enquere,

Sholde nat telle, whos children that they
were, 770

But seye, the mayden sholde y-wedded be
Un-to the markis of Saluce anon.

And as this erl was preyed, so dude he;
For at day set he on his way is good
Toward Saluce, and lordas many con, 775
In riche array, this mayden for to gyde,
Hir yonge brother ryding hir bisyde, (721)

Arrayed was toward hir mariage
This freshe mayde, ful of gemmes clere;
Hir brother, which that seven yeer was of
age, 780

Arrayed eek ful fresh in his manere
And thus in greet noblesse and with glad
chere,

Toward Saluces shaping hir journey,
Fro day to day they ryden in hir wey.

Explicit quarta para.

Sequitur quinta para.

Among al this, after his wikke usage, 785
This markis, yet his wyf to tempte more
To the uttereste prove of hir corage, (731)
Fully to han experience and lore
If that she were as stedfast as bifore,
He on a day in open audience 790
Ful boistounly hath seyde hir this sentence:

'Certes, Grisilde, I hadde y-nough ples-
saunce

To han yow to my wyf for your goodnesse,
As for your trouthe and for your obeis-
saunce,

Nought for your linage ne for your
richesse, 795

But now knowe I in verray soothfast-
nesse (740)

lordshipe, if I wel avyse,
servitute in sondry wyse.

As every plowman may;
e constreyneth for to take 800
f, and cryen day by day;
e pope, rancour for to slake,
it, that dar I undertake;
iche thus muche I wol yow

yf is coming by the weye. 805

of herte, and voyde anon hir

(790)

dower that ye broghten me
n, I graunte it of my grace;
to your fadres hous,' quod he;
ay alwey han prosperitee; 810
herte I rede yow t'endure
of fortune or of aventure.'

swerde agayn in patience,
quod she, 'I woot, and wiste

itwixen your magnificence 815
erte no wight can ne may (760)
parison, it is no nay.
ne never digne in no manere
wyf, no, no your chamberere.

hous, ther ye me lady made—
god take I for my witnesse, 821
isly he my soule glade—
ld me lady ne maistresse,
e servant to your worthinesse,
shal, whyl that my lyf may
825
ery worldly creature. (770)

longe of your benignitee
me in honour and nobleys,
was noght worthy for to be,
ke I god and yow, to whom
830
yow; there is na-more to seye.
ader gladly wol I wende,
im dwelle un-to my lyves ende.

foetred of a child ful smal,
d, my lyf ther wol I lede 835
ane, in body, herte, and al. (780)
raf to yow my maydenhede,
ur trewe wyf, it is no drede,

God shilde swich a lordes wyf to take
Another man to housbonde or to make. 840

And of your newe wyf, god of his grace
So graunte yow wele and prosperitee:
For I wol gladly yelden hir my place,
In which that I was blisful went to be,
For sith it lyketh yow, my lord,' quod

she, 845

'That whylom weren al myn hertes reste,
That I shal goon, I wol gon whan yow
laste. (791)

But ther-as ye me profre swich dowaire
As I first broghte, it is wel in my minde
It were my wrecched clothes, no-thing
faire, 850

The which to me were hard now for to
finde.

O gode god! how gentil and how kinde
Ye semed by your speche and your visage
The day that maked was our mariage!

But sooth is seyde, algate I finde it trewe—
For in effect it proved is on me— (800) 856
Love is noght old as whan that it is newe.
But certes, lord, for noon adversitee,
To dyen in the cas, it shal nat be 860
That ever in word or werk I shal repente
That I yow yaf myn herte in hool entente.

My lord, ye woot that, in my fadres place,
Ye dede me strepe out of my povre wede,
And richely me cladden, of your grace.
To yow broghte I noght elles, out of drede,
But feyth and nakednesse and mayden-
hede. (810) 866

And here agayn my clothing I restore,
And eek my wedding-ring, for evermore.

The remenant of your jewels redy be 869
In-with your chambre, dar I saufly sayn;
Naked out of my fadres hous,' quod she,
'I cam, and naked moot I turne agayn.
Al your plesaunce wol I folwen fayn;
But yet I hope it be nat your entente 874
That I smoklesse out of your palays wente.

Ye coude nat doon so dishoneste a thing,
That thilke wombe in which your children
laye (821)

Sholde, biforn the peple, in my walking,

Be seyn al bare; wherfor I yow preye,
Lat me nat lyk a worm go by the weye. 880
Remembre yow, myn owene lord so dera,
I was your wyf, though I unworthy were.

Wherfor, in guerdon of my maydenhede,
Which that I broghte, and noght agayn
I bere, 884

As voucheth sauf to yeve me, to my mede,
But swich a smok as I was
That I therwith may wrye

here
That was your wyf, and hear
leve
Of yow, myn owene lord, lest I

'The smok,' quod he, 'that
thy bak,

Lat it be stille, and ber it forth;
But wel unnethes thilke wor
But wente his way for rev
patee.

Biforn the folk hir-selven strepeth she,
And in hir smok, with heed and foot al
bare, (839) 895
Toward hir fader hous forth is she fare.

The folk hir folwe wepinge in hir weye,
And fortune ay they cursen as they goon;
But she fro weping kepte hir yën dreye,
Ne in this tyme word ne spak she noon. 900
Hir fader, that this tyding herde anon,
Curseth the day and tyme that nature
Shoop him to been a lyves creature.

For out of doute this olde povre man
Was ever in suspect of hir mariage; 905
For ever he demed, sith that it bigan, (850)
That whan the lord fulfild had his corage,
Him wolde thinke it were a disparage
To his estat so lowe for t'alighte,
And voyden hir as sone as ever he mighte.

Agayns his doghter hastilich goth he, 911
For he by noyse of folk knew hir cominge,
And with hir olde cote, as it mighte be,
He covered hir, ful sorwefully wepinge;
But on hir body mighte he it nat bringe.
For rude was the cloth, and more of age
By dayes fele than at hir mariage. (861)

Thus with hir fader, for a certeyn space,
Dwelleth this flour of wyfly pacience,

That neither by hir wordes ne hir face 920
Biforn the folk, ne eek in hir absence,
Ne shewed she that hir was doon offence;
Ne of hir heigh estat no remembrance
Ne hadde she, as by hir countenance.

No wonder is, for in hir grete estat 925
Hir goost was ever in pleyne humylitee
Notendre mouth, non herte delicat, (877)
pompe, no semblant of royaltie,
at ful of pacient benignitee,
crist and prydeles, ay honourable, 930
d to hir housbonde ever make and
stable.

Man speke of Job and most for his hum-
blesse,

clerkes, whan hem list, can wel endyte,
mely of men, but as in smothfastnesse,
gh clerkes preysen wommen but a
lyte, 935

Ther can no man in humblesse him ac-
quyte 940

As womman can, ne can ben half so trewe
As wommen been, but it be falle of-newe

[Pars Sexta.]

Pro Boloigne is this erl of Panik come,
Of which the fame up-sprang to more and
lese, 945

And in the peples eres alle and some
Was conth eek, that a newe markiseme
He with him broghte, in swich pompe and
richesse, 950

That never was ther seyn with mannes yë
So noble array in al West Lombardy. 955

The markis, which that shoop and knew
al this, (890)

Erthat this erl was come, sente his manne
For thilke sely povre Grisildis;

And she with humble herte and glad
visage, 960

Nat with no swollen thought in hir corage,
Cam at his heste, and on hir knees hir
sette,

And reverently and wyaly she him grette

'Grisild,' quod he, 'my wille is onterly,
This mayden, that shal wedded been to me,
Receyved be to-morwe as royally 965



as it possible is in myn hous to be. (900)
and eek that every wight in his degree
have his estat in sitting and servyse
and heigh plesaunce, as I can best devyse.

have no women sufficient certayn 960
the chambres for t'arraye in ordinaunce
after my lust, and therfor wolde I fayn
that thyn were al swich maner govern-
aunce;

thou knowest eek of old al my plesaunce;
though thyn array be badde and yvel
biseye, 965
so thou thy devoir at the leeste waye.' (910)

Nat only, lord, that I am glad, 'quod she,
To doon your lust, but I desyre also
'ow for to serve and plesse in my degree
With-outen feynting, and shal evermo. 970
Ie never, for no wele ne no wo,
Ie shal the gost with-in myn herte stente
'o love yow best with al my trewe entente.'

and with that word she gan the hous to
dighte,
and tables for to sette and beddes make;
and peyned hir to doon al that she
myghte, (920) 976
weying the chambereres, for goddes sake,
to hasten hem, and faste swope and shake;
and she, the moste servisable of alle,
lath every chambre arrayed and his hall.

bouten undern gan this orl alighte, 981
that with him broghte thise noble child-
ren tweye,
or which the peple ran to seen the sighte
of hir array, so richely biseye;
and than at erst amonges hem they soye,
that Walter was no foul, though that him
leste (930) 986
to chaunge his wyf, for it was for the beste.

or she is fairer, as they demen alle,
than is Grisild, and more tendre of age,
and fairer fruit bitwene hem sholde
falle, 990
and more pleasant, for hir heigh linage;
hir brother eek so fair was of visage,
that hem to seen the peple hath caught
plesaunce,
commending now the markis govern-
aunce.—

Auctor. 'O stormy peple! unseed and ever
untrewe! (939) 995

Ay undiscreef and chaunging as a vane,
Delyting ever in rumbel that is newe,
For lyk the mone ay were ye and wane;
Ay ful of clapping, dere y-nogh a jane;
Your doom is fals, your constance yvel
preveth, 1000
A ful greet fool is he that on yow leveth!'

Thus seyden sadde folk in that citee,
Whan that the peple gased up and down,
For they were glad, right for the noveltee,
To han a newe lady of hir toun. 1005
Na-more of this make I now mencoun;
But to Grisilde agayn wol I me dresse, (951)
And telle hir constance and hir business.—

Ful bisy was Grisilde in every thing
That to the feste was apertinent; 1010
Right noght was she abayst of hir clothing,
Though it were rude and somdel ask to-
rent.

But with glad chere to the yate is went,
With other folk, to grete the markisene,
And after that doth forth hir business. 1015

With so glad chere his gastes she receyveth,
And conningly, overich in his degree, (961)
That no defaute no man aperceyveth,
But ay they wondren what she myghte be
That in so povre array was for to see, 1020
And coude swich honour and reverence;
And worthily they preisen hir prudence.

In al this mene whyle she ne stente
This mayde and eek hir brother to com-
mende

With al hir herte, in ful benigne entente,
So wel, that no man coude hir prys
amende. (970) 1026

But atte laste, whan that thise lordes
wende

To sitten down to mete, he gan to calle
Grisilde, as she was bisy in his hall.

'Grisilde,' quod he, as it were in his
pley, 1030

'How lyketh thee my wyf and hir beautee?'

'Right wel,' quod she, 'my lord; for, in
good fey,

A fairer say I never noon than she.

I prey to god yeve hir prosperitee; 1034

And so hope I that he wol to yow sende
Plesance y-nogh un-to your lyves ende.

O thing biseke I yow and warne also, (981)
That ye ne prikke with no tormentunge
This tendre mayden, as ye han don mo;
For she is fostred in hir nourishinge 1040
More tendrely, and, to my supposinge,
She coude nat adversitee endure
As coude a povre fostred creat

And when this Walter say hir pacience
Hir glade chere and no malice at al
And he so ofte had doon to hir offense
And she ay sad and constant as a
Continuing ever hir innocence
Thus sturdy markis gan his hert
Torewen up-on hir wyflystedf

'This is y-nogh, Grisilde m
'Be now na-more agast ne
I have thy feith and thy benyg 1050
As wel as ever womman was, assayed,
In greet estat, and povreliche arrayed. 1055
Now knowe I, dere wyf, thy stedfast-
nesse,'— (1060)
And hir in armes took and gan hir kesse.

And she for wonder took of it no keep;
She herde nat what thing he to hir seyde;
She ferde as she had stert out of a sleep,
Til she out of hir masednesse abreyde. 1061
'Grisilde,' quod he, 'by god that for us
deyde,
Thou art my wyf, ne noon other I have,
Ne never hadde, as god my soule save!

This is thy doghter which thou hast sup-
posed 1065
To be my wyf; that other feithfully (1070)
Shal be myn heir, as I have ay purposed;
Thou bare him in thy body trewely.
At Boloigne have I kept hem prively; 1069
Tak hem agayn, for now maystow nat
saye
That thou hast lorn non of thy children
tweye.

And folk that otherweyes han seyde of me,
I warne hem wel that I have doon this
dede
For no malice ne for no crueltee, 1074

But for t'assaye in thee thy wommanhede,
And nat to sleen my childran, god for-
bede! (1070)

But for to kepe hem prively and stilla,
Til I thy purpos knewe and al thy wille.'

When she this herde, awowne down she
falleth 1079

For pitous joye, and after hir swowninge
— a bothe hir yonge children un-to hir
calleth,

I in hir armes, pitously wepinge,
braceth hem, and tendrely kissinge
— lyk a mooder, with hir salte teres 1084
She batheth bothe hir visage and hir hems

— which a pitous thing it was to see (1080)
swowning, and hir humble voys to
here!

auntmery, lord, that thanke I yow,
quod she,

'That ye han saved me my children dere'
Now rekke I never to ben dead right
here; 1090

Sith I stand in your love and in your grace,
No fore of deeth, ne when my spirit pec'

O tendre, o dere, o yonge children myn,
Your woful mooder wende stedfastly 1094
That cruel houndes or som foul vermyne
Hadde eten yow; but god, of his mercy,
And your benigne fader tendrely (1091)
Hath doon yow kept; and in that same
stounde
Al sodeynly she swappte adoun to grounde.

And in her swough so sadly holdeth she
Hir children two, when she gan hem
t'embrace, 1101

That with greet sleighte and greet diffi-
culty

The children from hir arm they goone
arace. (1097)

O many a teer on many a pitous face 1104
Doun ran of hem that stoden hir bisyde,
Unnethe abouten hir mighte they abyde

Walter hir gladeth, and hir sorwe slaketh;
She ryseth up, abaysed, from hir traunce,
And every wight hir joye and feste maketh,
Til she hath caught agayn hir conten-
aunce. 1110

for his dooth so foithfully plesauce,
it was dayntee for to seen the chere
of hem two, now they ben met y-fere.

And yes, whan that they hir tyme say,
taken hir, and in-to chambre goon,
repen hir out of hir rude array, (1060)
a cloth of gold that brighte shoon,
a coroune of many a riche stoon
hir heed, they in-to halle hir
righte, 1119
her she was honoured as hir oghte.

With this pitous day a blisful ende,
every man and womman dooth his
right
ay in murthe and revel to dispende
the welkne shoon the sterres light.
More solempne in every mannes sight
este was, and gretter of oostage, 1126
was the revel of hir mariage. (1071)

any a yeer in heigh prosperitee
thise two in concord and in reste,
richely his doghter married he 1130
a lord, oon of the worthieste
Itaille; and than in pees and reste
yves fader in his court he kepeth,
at the soule out of his body crepeth.

he succeedeth in his heritage 1135
te and pees, after his fader day; (1080)
fortunat was eek in mariage,
ste he nat his wyf in greet assay.
world is nat so strong, it is no nay,
hath been in olde tymes yore, 1140
herkneeth what this auctour seith
therfore.

storie is seyde, nat for that wyves
solde
in Grisilde as in humilitee,
were importable, though they wolde;
or that every wight, in his degree, 1145
e be constant in adversitee (1090)
a Grisilde; therfor Petrark wryteth
storie, which with heigh style he
ndyteth.

ith a womman was so pacient 1149
a mortal man, wel more us oghte
ven al in gree that god us sent;

For greet skile is, he preve that he wroghte.
But he ne tempteth no man that he boghte,
As seith seint Jame, if ye his pistal rede;
He preveeth folk al day, it is no drede, 1155

And suffreth us, as for our exorcysse, (1100)
With sharpe scourges of adversitee
Ful ofte to be bete in sondry wyse;
Nat for to knowe our wil, for certes he,
Er we were born, knew al our freletee; 1160
And for our beste is al his governaunce;
Lat us than live in vertuous suffraunce.*

But o word, lordinges, herkneeth er I go:—
It were ful hard to finde now a dayes (1108)
In al a toon Grisildes three or two; 1165
For, if that they were put to swiche assayes,
The gold of hem hath now so badde alayes
With bras, that thogh the coynes be fair
at y8,
It wolde rather breeste a-two than plyo.

For which heer, for the wyves love of
Bathe, 1170
Whos lyf and al hir secte god mayntene
In heigh maistrye, and elles were it sothe,
I wol with lusty herte fresshe and grene
Seyn yow a song to glade yow, I wene,
And lat us stinte of earnestful matere:—
Herkneeth my song, that seith in this
manere. (1120) 1176

Lenvoy de Chaucer.

Grisilde is deed, and eek hir pacience,
And bothe stones buried in Itaille;
For which I crye in open audiance,
No wedded man so hardy be t'assaille 1180
His wyves pacience, in hope to finde
Grisildes, for in certain he shall faille!

* It seems to have been Chaucer's intention,
in the first instance, to end this Tale here. Hence,
we find, in MSS. E. Hn. Cm. Dd., the following
genuine, but rejected stanza, suitable for insertion
at this point.—

Behold the merye wordes of the Hoste.
This worthy Clerk, whan ended was his tale,
Our hoste seyde, and swoor by goddes bones,
'Mo were lever than a barel ale
My wyf at hoom had herd this legende once;
This is a gentil tale for the nones,
As to my purpos, wiste ye my wille;
But thing that wol nat be, lat it be stille.'

Here endeth the Tale of the Clerk
of Oxenford.

O noble wyves, ful of heigh prudance,
 Lat noon humilitee your tonge naille, 1184
 Ne lat no clerk have cause or diligence
 To wryte of yow a storie of swich mervaille
 As of Grisildis pacient and kinde; (1131)
 Lest Chichevache yow swelwe in hir en-
 traillle!

Folweth Ekko, that holdeth no silence,
 But evere answereth at the countretaille;
 Beth nat bidafted for your innocence, 1191
 But sharply tak on yow the governaillle.
 Emprinteth wel this lesson in your minds
 For commune profit, sith it may availle.

Ye archewyves, stondeth at defence, 1195
 Sin ye be stronge as is a greet carnaille; (1140)
 Ne suffreth nat that men yow doon offence.
 And splendre wyves, fable as in bataille,

Beth agre as is a tygre yond in Inde;
 Ayclappeth as a mille, I yow consaille, 1200

Ne dreed hem nat, do hem no reverence.
 For though thyn housbonde armed be in
 maille,

The arwes of thy crabbed eloquence
 Shal perce his brest, and eek his aventaille,
 In jalousye I rede eek thou him binde, 1205
 And thou shalt make him couche as dooth
 a quaille. (1190)

If thou be fair, ther folk ben in presence
 Shew thou thy visage and thyn apparaille.
 If thou be foul, be free of thy dispence, 1209
 To gete thee freendes ay do thy travaille
 Be ay of ohere as light as leef on londe,
 And lat him care, and wepe, and wringe
 and waille! (1190)

Here endeth the Clerk of Oxenford his Tale.

THE MERCHANT'S PROLOGUE.

The Prologe of the Marchantes Tale.

'Weeping and wayling, care, and other
 sorwe

I know y-nogh, on even and a-morwe,
 Quod the Marchaunt, 'and so don othere
 mo 1215

That wedded been, I trowe that it be so.
 For, wel I woot, it fareth so with me.
 I have a wyf, the worste that may be,
 Forthogh the feend to hir y-coupled were,
 She wolde him overmaache, I dar wel
 swere. 1220

What sholde I yow reherce in special
 Hir hye malice? she is a shrewe at al. (10)
 Ther is a long and large difference
 Bitwix Grisildis grete pacience
 And of my wyf the passing crueltee. 1225
 Were I unbounden, al-so moot I thee!
 I wolde never eft comen in the snare.
 We wedded men live in sorwe and care;

Assaye who-so wol, and he shal finde
 I seye sooth, by seint Thomas of Inde, 1230
 As for the more part, I sey nat alla
 God shilde that it sholde so bifalle! (20)

A! good sir hoost! I have y-wedded be
 Thise monthes two, and more nat, perdee,
 And yet, I trowe, he that all his lyve 1235
 Wyfles hath been, though that men wolde
 him ryve

Un-to the herte, ne coude in no manere
 Tellen so muchel sorwe, as I now here
 Coude tellen of my wyves cursednesse!

'Now,' quod our hoost, 'Marchaunt, so
 god yow blesse, 1240

Sin ye so muchel knowen of that art,
 Ful hertely I pray yow telle us part.' (30)

'Gladly,' quod he, 'but of myn owene
 sore,

For sory herte, I telle may na-more.' 1244

THE MARCHANTES TALE.

Here biginneth the Marchantes Tale.

Wherlontherwasdwelling in Lombardy
 A worthy knight, that born was of Pavye,
 In which he lived in greet prosperitee;
 And sixty yeer a wyfless man was he,
 And folwed ay his bodily delyt
 On women, ther-as was his appetyt, 1230
 As doon thise foles that ben secneleer.
 And whan that he was passed sixty yeer,
 Were it for holynesse or for dotage,
 I can nat seye, but swich a greet corage, (10)
 Hadde this knight to been a wedded man,
 That day and night he dooth al that he can
 Tespyen where he mighte wedded be;
 Preyinge our lord to granten him, that he
 Mighte ones knowe of thilke blisful lyf
 That is bitwixe an housbond and his wyf;
 And for to live under that holy bond 1261
 With which that first god man and
 womman bond.
 'Non other lyf,' seyde he, 'is worth a bene;
 For wedlok is so esy and so clene, (20)
 That in this world it is a paradye.' 1265
 Thus seyde this olde knight, that was so
 wys.

And certainly, as sooth as god is king,
 To take a wyf, it is a glorious thing,
 And namely whan a man is old and hoor;
 Thanne is a wyf the fruit of his tresor. 1270
 Than sholde he take a yong wyf and a fair,
 On which he mighte engendren him an
 heir,
 And lede his lyf in joye and in solas,
 Wher-as thise bacheleres singe 'allas,' (30)
 Whan that they finden any adversites 1275
 In love, which nis but childish vanitee.
 And trewely it sit wel to be so,
 That bacheleres have often payne and wo;
 On brotel ground they builde, and brotel-
 nesse 1279
 They finde, whan they wene sikernesse.

They live but as a brid or as a beste,
 In libertee, and under non areste,
 Ther-as a wedded man in his estate
 Liveth a lyf blisful and ordinaat, (40)
 Under the yok of mariage y-bounde; 1285
 Wel may his herte in joye and blisse
 habounde.

For who can be so buzom as a wyf?
 Who is so trewe, and eek so ententyf
 To kepe him, syk and hool, as is his make?
 For wale or wo, she wol him nat forsake.
 She nis nat wery him to love and serve,
 Thogh that he lye bedrede til he starve.
 And yet somme clerkes seyn, it nis nat so,
 Of whiche he, Theofraste, is oon of tho. (50)
 What force though Theofraste liste lye? 1295
 'Ne take no wyf,' quod he, 'for hous-
 bondrye,

As for to spare in household thy dispence;
 A trewe servant dooth more diligence,
 Thy good to kepe, than thyn owene wyf.
 For she wol clayme halfpartel hirlyf; 1300
 And if that thou be syk, so god me save,
 Thy verray frendes or a trewe knave
 Wol kepe thee bet than she that waiteth ay
 After thy good, and hath don many a day'
 And if thou take a wyf un-to thyn
 hold, (61) [T. om.]

Ful lightly maystow been a coke-
 wold. 1306 [T. om.]
 This sentence, and an hundred thinges
 worse,
 Wryteth this man, ther god his bones
 corse!

But take no kepe of al swich vanitee;
 Deffye Theofraste and herke me. 1310

A wyf is goddes yifte verrailly;
 Alle other maner yiftes hardily,
 As londes, rentes, pasture, or commune,
 Or moebles, alle ben yiftes of fortune, (70)

That passen as a shadwe upon a wal. 1315
But dredclees, if pleynty speke I shal,
A wyf wol laste, and in thyn hous endure,
Wel lenger than thee list, paraventure.

Mariage is a ful gret sacrament;
He which that hath no wyf, I holde him
shent; 1320

He liveth helples and al desolat,
I speke of folk in secular estaat.
And herke why, I sey nat this fornoght, (79)
That womman is for mannes help y-wrought.
The hye god, whan he hadde Adam made,
And saugh him al allone, bely-naked, 1326
God of his grete goodnesse seyde than,
'Lat us now make an help un-to this man
Lyk to him-self;' and thanne he made
him Eve. 1329

Heer may ye se, and heer-by may ye prove,
That wyf is mannes help and his confort,
His paradys terrestre and his disport
So buxom and so vertuous is she,
They moste nedes live in unitee. (90) 1334
O flesh they been, and o flesh, as I gesse,
Hath but on herte, in wele and in distresse.

A wyf! a! Seinte Marie, *ben'cite!*
How mighte a man han any adversitee
That hath a wyf? certes, I can nat seye. 1339
The blisse which that is bitwixe hem tweye
Ther may no tonge telle, or herte thinke.
If he be povre, she helpeth him to swinke;
She kepeth his good, and wasteth never
a deel;

Al that hir housbonde lust, hir lyketh
weel; (100)
She seith not ones 'nay,' when he soith
'ye.' 1345

'Do this,' seith he; 'al redy, sir,' seith she.
(1) blisful ordre of wedlok precious,
Thou art so mery, and eek so vertuous,
And so commended and apprevd eek,
That every man that halt him worth a
leek, 1350

Up-on his bare knees oghte al his lyf
Thanken his god that him hath sent a
wyf;

Or elles preye to god him for to sende
A wyf, to laste un-to his lyves ende. (110)
For thanno his lyf is set in sikernes; 1355
He may nat be deceyved, as I gesse,
So that he werke after his wyves reed;
Than may he boldly beren up his heed,

They been so trewe and ther-with-al so
wyse;

For which, if thou wolt werken as the
wyse, 1360

Do alwey so as wommen wol thee rede.

Lo, how that Jacob, as this clerkes
rede,

By good conseil of his moder Rebekke,
Bond the kides skin aboute his nakke; (120)
Thurgh which his fadres benisoun he wan.

Lo, Judith, as the storie eek telle can,
By wys conseil she goddes peple kepte,
And slow him, Oloferus, whyl he slepte.

Lo Abigayl, by good conseil how she 1369
Saved hir housbond Nabal, whan that he
Sholde han be slayn; and loke, Ester also
By good conseil delivered out of wo
The peple of god, and made him, Mar-
dochee,

Of Assuere enhaunced for to be. (130)

Ther nis no-thing in gree superlatyf, 1375
As seith Senek, above an humble wyf.

Suffre thy wyves tonge, as Caton bit;
She shal comande, and thou shalt suffren
it;

And yet she wol obeye of curteisye.

A wyf is keper of thyn housbondrye; 1380
Wel may the syke man biwaillo and wepe,
Ther-as ther nis no wyf the hous to kepe.
I warne thee, if wysly thou wolt wirche,
Love wel thy wyf, as Crist loveth his
chirche. (140) 1384

If thou lovest thy-self, thou lovest thy wyf;
No man hateth his flesh, but in his lyf
He fostreth it, and therefore bidde I thee,
Cherisse thy wyf, or thou shalt never thee
Housbond and wyf, what so men jape or
pleye,

Of worldly folk holden the siker weye; 1390
They been so knit, ther may noon harm
bityde:

And namely, up-on the wyves syde.

For which this Januarie, of whom I tolde,
Considered hath, inwith his dayes olde, (150)
The lusty lyf, the vertuous quite, 1395
That is in mariage hony-swete;

And for his freendes on a day he sento,
To tellen hem th'effect of his entente.

With face sad, his tale he hath hem
told; 1399

He seyde, 'freendes, I am hoor and old,

And almost, god wot, on my pities brinke;
 Up-on my soule somewhat moete I thinke.
 I have my body folily despended; (139)
 Blessed be god, that it shal been amended!
 For I wol be, certeyn, a wedded man, 1405
 And that anon in al the haste I can,
 Un-to som mayde fair and tendre of age.
 I prey yow, shapeth for my mariage
 Al sodeynly, for I wol nat abyde;
 And I wol fende t'espyen, on my syde, 1410
 To whom I may be wedded hastily.
 But for-as-muche as ye ben mo than I,
 Ye shullen rather swich a thing espyen
 Than I, and wher me best were to allyen.

But o thing warne I yow, my freendes
 dere, (171) 1415

I wol non old wyf han in no manere.
 She shal nat passe twenty year, certayn;
 Old fish and yong flesh wolde I have ful
 fayn.

Bet is, quod he, 'a pyk than a pikerel;
 And bet than old beef is the tendre veel.
 I wol no womman thritty year of age, 1421
 It is but bene-straw and greet forage.

And eek thise olde widwes, god it woot,
 They conne so muchel craft on Wades
 boot, (180)

So muchel broken harm, whan that hem
 leste, 1425

That with hem sholde I never live in reste.
 For sondry scoles maken sotil clerkis;
 Womman of manye scoles half a clerk is.
 But certeynly, a yong thing may men gye,
 Right as men may warm wax with handes
 plye. 1430

Wherfore I sey yow pleynly, in a clause,
 I wol non old wyf han right for this
 cause. (188)

For if so were, I hadde swich mischaunce,
 That I in hir ne coude han no plesaunce,
 Thanne sholde I lede my lyf in avoutrye,
 And go straight to the devel, whan I dye.
 Ne children sholde I none up-on hir geten;
 Yet were me lever houndes had me eten,
 Than that myn heritage sholde falle 1439
 In straunge hand, and thus I tell yow alle.

I dote nat, I woot the cause why
 Men sholde wedde, and forthermore wot I,
 Ther speketh many a man of mariage,
 That woot na-more of it than woot my
 page, (200) 1444

For whiche causes man sholde take a wyf.
 If he ne may nat liven chast his lyf,
 Take him a wyf with greet devocioun,
 By-cause of lefelful procreacioun
 Of children, to th'onour of god above,
 And nat only for paramour or love; 1450
 And for they sholde lecherye eschue,
 And yelde hir dettes whan that they ben
 due;

Or for that ech of hem sholde helpen
 other (209)

In meschief, as a suster shal the brother,
 And live in chastitee ful holly. 1455

But sires, by your love, that am nat I.
 For god be thanked, I dar make avaunt,
 I fele my limes stark and suffiaunt

To do al that a man bilongeth to;
 I woot my-selven best what I may do. 1460

Though I be hoor, I fare as dooth a tree
 That blometh er that fruyt y-woxen be;
 A blommy tree nis neither drye ne deed.
 I fele me nowher hoor but on myn heed;
 Myn herte and alle my limes been as
 grene (221) 1465

As laurer thurgh the year is for to sene.
 And gin-that ye han herd al myn entente,
 I prey yow to my wil ye wole assente.'

Diverse men diversely him tolde
 Of mariage manye ensamples olde. 1470
 Somme blamed it, somme preysed it,
 certeyn;

But atte laste, shortly for to seyn,
 As al day falleth altercacioun 1473

Bitwixen freendes in disputacioun, (230)

Ther fil a stryf bitwixe his bretheren two,
 Of whiche that oon was cleped Placebo,

Justinus soothly called was that other.
 Placebo seyde, 'o Januarie, brother,

Ful litel nede had ye, my lord so dere,
 Conseil to axe of any that is here; 1480

But that ye been so ful of sapience,
 That yow ne lyketh, for your heighe
 prudence,

To weyven fro the word of Salomon.
 This word seyde he un-to us everichon

"Wirk alle thing by conseil," thus seyde
 he, (241) 1485

"And thanne shaltow nat repente thee."
 But though that Salomon spak swich
 a word,

Myn owene dere brother and my lord,

So wisly god my soules bringe at reste,
 I hold your owene conseil is the beste. 1490
 For brother myn, of me tak this motyf,
 I have now been a court-man al my lyf
 And god it woot, though I unworthy be,
 I have stonden in ful greet degree (150)
 Abouten lordes of ful heigh estaat; 1495
 Yet hadde I never with noon of hem
 debaat.

I never hem contraried, trewely;
 I woot wel that my lord can more than I.
 What that he seith, I holde it ferme and
 stable;

I seye the same, or elles thing semblaible.
 A ful gret fool is any conseilour, 1501
 That serveth any lord of heigh honour,
 That dar presume, or elles thenken it,
 That his conseil sholde passe his lordes
 wit, (150)

Nay, lordes been no folas, by my fay; 1505
 Ye han your-selven shewed heer to-day
 So heigh sentence, so bolliy and weel,
 That I consente and conferme every-deel
 Your wordes alle, and your opinioun. 1509
 By god, ther nis no man in al this toun
 N'in al itaille, that coude bet han sayd;
 Crist halt him of this conseil wel apayd.
 And trewely, it is an heigh corage
 Of any man, that stapen is in age, (1510)
 To take a yong wyf; by my fader kin,
 Your herte hangeth on a joly pin. 1516
 Doth now in this matere right as yow
 leste,

For finally I holde it for the beste.'

Justinus, that ay stille sat and herde,
 Right in this wyse to Placebo answerde:
 'Now brother myn, be pacient, I preye,
 Sin ye han seyde, and harkneth what I
 seye. 1522

Senek among his othere wordes wyse
 Seith, that a man oghte him right wel
 avyse, (1523)

To whom he yeveth his lond or his
 catel. 1525

And sin I oghte avyse me right wel
 To whom I yeve my good away fro me,
 Wel muchel more I oghte avysed be
 To whom I yeve my body, for alwey
 I warne yow wel, it is no childes pley 1530
 To take a wyf with-oute avysement.
 Men moste onquere, this is myn assent,

Wher she be wys, or sobre, or dronke-
 lewe, (1531)

Or proud, or elles other-ways a shrewe;
 A chydester, or wastour of thy good, 1535
 Or riche, or poore, or elles mannish wood.
 Al-be-it so that no man finden shal
 Noon in this world that trottoth hool
 in al,

No man ne beest, swich as man coude
 devyse;

But nathelees, it oghte y-nough suffise 1540
 With any wyf, if so were that she hadde
 Mo gode thewes than hir vyces hadde,
 And al this axeth leyser for t'enquere.
 For god it woot, I have wept many a tere
 Ful prively, sin I have had a wyf. (1541) 1545
 Preyse who-so wole a wedded mannes lyf,
 Certain, I finde in it but cost and care,
 And observances, of alle blases bare, 1548
 And yet, god woot, my neighbors aboute,
 And namely of women many a route,
 Seyn that I have the moste stedefast wyf,
 And eek the mekeste oon that bereth lyf.
 But I wot best wher wringeth me my
 sho. 1550

Ye mowe, for me, right as yow lyketh do
 Avyseth yow, ye been a man of age, 1555
 How that ye entren in-to mariage,
 And namely with a yong wyf and a fair
 By him that made water, erthe, and air,
 The yongest man that is in al this route
 Is hisy y-nogh to bringen it aboute 1560
 To han his wyf allone, trusteth me.
 Ye shul nat plesse hir fully yeres thres,
 This is to seyn, to doon hir ful plessaunce.
 A wyf axeth ful manyan observaunce. 1565
 I prey yow that ye be nat yvel apayd.'

'Wel,' quod this Januarie, 'and hastow
 sayd? 1566

Straw for thy Senek, and for thy pro-
 verbes,

I counte nat a panier ful of herbes
 Of scole-termes; wyser men than thou.
 As thou hast herd, assenteden right now
 To my purpos; Placebo, what sey ye?

'I seye, it is a cursed man,' quod he,
 'That letteth matrimoine, sikerly' (1570)
 And with that word they ryzen sodeynly,
 And been assented fully, that he sholde
 Be wedded whanne him list and wher he
 wolde. 1576

Heigh fantasye and curious bisinesse
 To day to day gan in the soule impresso
 Of Januarie aboute his mariage.
 Many fair shap, and many a fair visage
 Ther passeth thurgh his herte, night by
 night. (337) 1581
 As who-so toke a mirour polished bright,
 And sette it in a commune market-place,
 Than sholde he see many a figure pace
 By his mirour, and, in the same wyse,
 Jan Januarie inwith his thought devyse
 Of maydens, whiche that dwelten him
 busyde. 1587
 He wiste nat wher that he mighte abyde.
 For if that oon have beautee in hir face,
 Another stant so in the peples grace 1590
 For hir sadnesse, and hir benignitee,
 That of the peple grettast voys hath she.
 And somme were riche, and hadden hadde
 name. (349)
 But natheles, hitwixe earnest and game,
 He sette laste apoynted him on oon, 1595
 And leet alle othere from his herte
 goon,
 And chees hir of his owene auctoritee;
 For love is blind al day, and may nat see.
 And whan that he was in his bed y-
 broght,
 He purtreied, in his herte and in his
 thought, 1600
 Hir fresche beautee and hir age tendre,
 Hir myddel smal, hir armes longe and
 sclendre,
 Hir wyse governaunce, hir gentillesse,
 Hir wommanly heringe and hir sadnesse.
 And whan that he on hir was con-
 descended, (361) 1605
 Him thoughte his chois mighte nat ben
 amended.
 For whan that he him-self concluded
 hadde,
 Him thoughte ech other mannes wit so
 hadde,
 That impossible it were to replie
 Agayn his chois, this was his fantasye. 1610
 His freendes sente he to at his instance,
 And preyed hem to doon him that ples-
 sance,
 That hastily they wolden to him come;
 He wolde shregge hir labour, alle and
 some. (370) 1614

Nedeth na-more for him to go ne ryde,
 He was apoynted ther he wolde abyde.
 Placebo cam, and eek his freendes sone,
 And alderfirst he bad hem alle a bone,
 That noon of hem none argumentes make
 Agayn the purpos which that he hath
 take; 1620
 'Which purpos was pleasant to god,' seyde
 he,
 'And verray ground of his prosperitee.'
 He seyde, ther was a mayden in the
 toun,
 Which that of beautee hadde greet re-
 noun, (380)
 Al were it so she were of smal degree; 1625
 Suffyseth him hir youthe and hir beautee.
 Which mayde, he seyde, he wolde han to
 his wyf,
 To lede in ese and holinesse his lyf.
 And thanked god, that he mighte han
 hire al, 1629
 That no wight of his blisse parten shal.
 And preyde hem to labouren in this
 nede,
 And shapen that he faille nat to spede;
 For thanne, he seyde, his spirit was at ese.
 'Thanne is,' quod he, 'no-thing may me
 displese, (390) 1634
 Save o thing priketh in my conscience,
 The which I wol reherce in your presence.
 I have,' quod he, 'herd seyde, ful yore
 ago,
 Ther may no man han parfite blisses two,
 This is to seye, in erthe and eek in
 hevене.
 For though he kepe him fro the sinnes
 seven, 1640
 And eek from every branche of thilke
 tree,
 Yet is ther so parfite felicitie,
 And so greet ese and lust in mariage, (390)
 That ever I am agast, now in myn age,
 That I shal lede now so mery a lyf, 1645
 So delicat, with-uten wo and stryf,
 That I shal have myn hevене in erthe
 here.
 For sith that verray hevене is boght so
 dere,
 With tribulacioun and greet penaunce,
 How sholde I thanne, that live in swich
 plesaunce 1650

As alle wedde
Come to the
lyve is
This is my
tweye,
Assoilleth me
Justinus, wh
Answers anon.
And for he wol
He wolde noon
But seyde, 'air
Other than thi
And of his meyn, may so ax yow w
That, er ye have your right of
chirche,
Ye may repente of wedded ma
In which ye seyn ther is no w
And elles, god forbode but he
A wedded man him grace to re
Wel ofte rather than a sengl
And therfore, sire, the beste re
Dispeire yow noght, but have in your
memorie, 1669
Paraunter she may be your purgatorie!
She may be goddes mene, and goddes
whippe;
Than shal your soule up to hevne skippe
Swifter than dooth an arwe out of the
bowe! (429)
I hope to god, her-after shul ye knowe,
That their nis no so greet felicitee 1675
In mariage, ne never-mo shal be,
That yow shal lette of your savacioun,
So that ye use, as skile is and resoun,
The lustes of your wyf attemprely, 1679
And that ye plesse hir nat to amorously,
And that ye kepe yow eek from other
sinne.
My tale is doon:—for my wit is thinne.
Bath nat agast her-of, my brother dere.'—
(But lat us waden out of this matere. (440)
The Wyf of Bath, if ye han understonde,
Of mariage, which we have on honde, 1686
Declared bath ful wel in litel space).—
'Fareth now wel, god have yow in his
grace.'
And with this word this Justin and his
brother
Han take hir leve, and ech of hem of
other. 1690
For whan they sawe it moste nedes be,

me don with hir wyvis,
e ther Crist eterne on
and ye, my bretheren
(409)
questionn, I praye.
that hated his folye, 1655
ight in his japerye;
his longe tale abragge,

They wroghten so, by sly and wys trotee,
That she, this mayden, which that Malm
highte,
As hastily as ever that she mighte, (450)
Shal wedded be un-to this Januarie. 1695
I trowe it were to longe yow to tario,
If I yow tolde of every writ and bond,
By which that she was feffed in his lond;
Or for to herknen of hir riche array
— a finally y-comen is the day 1700
at to the chirche bothe be they went
to receyve the holy sacrament.
th comth the preest, with stole aboute
his nekke, (470)
I bad hir be lyk Sarra and Rebekka,
wisdom and in trouthe of mariage.
seyde his orisons, as is usage, 1706
I crouched hem, and bad god sholde
hem blesse,
id made al siker y-nogh with holiness.
Thus been they wedded with solemp-
nites,
And at the feste sitteth he and she 1710
With other worthy folk up-on the daye.
Al ful of joye and blisse is the paleys,
And ful of instruments and of vitaille,
The moste deyntevous of al Itaille. (475)
Biforn hem stode swiche instruments of
soun, 1715
That Orpheus, ne of Thebes Amphion,
No maden never swich a melodye.
At every cours than cam loud minstrel-
cys,
That never tromped Joab, for to here,
Nor he, Theodomas, yet half so clere, 1720
At Thebes, whan the citee was in doute.
Bacus the wyn hem skinketh al aboute,
And Venus laugheth up-on every wight.
For Januarie was bcome hir knight, (480)
And wolde bothe assayen his corage 1725
In libertee, and eek in mariage;
And with hir fyrbrond in hir hand aboute
Daunceth biforn the bryde and al the
route.
And certainly, I dar right wel seyn this,
Ymensus, that god of wedding is, 1730
Saugh never his lyf so mery a wedded
man,
Hold thou thy pees, thou poete Marcian,
That wrytest us that ilke wedding murie
Of hir, Philologys, and him, Mercurie,

And of the songes that the Muses songe.
To smal is bothe thy penne, and eek thy
tonge, (492) 1736

For to descryven of this mariage.

Whan tendre youthe hath wedded stoup-
ing age,

Ther is swich mirthe that it may nat be
writen;

Amayeth it your-self, than may ye witen
If that I lye or noon in this matere. 1741

Mains, that sit with so benigne a chere,
Hir to biholde it somed fayerys; (499)

Quene Ester loked never with swich an ys
On Assuer, so meke a look hath she. 1745

I may yow nat devyse al hir beautee;
But thus muche of hir beautee telle I

may,
That she was lyk the brighte morwe of
May,

Fulfil of alle beautee and plesaunce.

This Januarie is ravished in a trauunce
At every time he loked on hir face; 1751
But in his herte he gan hir to manace,
That he that night in armes wolde hir
streyns

Harder than ever Paris dide Eleyne. (510)

But natheles, yet hadde he greet pitee,
That thulke night offenden hir moste he;

And thoughte, 'allas! o tendre creature!
Now wolde god ye mighte wel endure

Al my corage, it is so sharp and kene;
I am agast ye shul it nat sustene. 1760

But god forbede that I dide al my might!
Now wolde god that it were woxen night,

And that the night wolde lasten evermo.
I wolde that al this peple were ago.' (520)

And finally, he doth al his labour, 1765
As he best mighte, savinge his honour,

To haste hem fro the mete in subtil
wyse.

The tyme cam that reson was to ryse;
And after that, men daunce and drunken

faste, 1769
And spyces al aboute the hous they caste;
And ful of joye and blisse is every man;

All but a squyer, highte Damian,
Which carf biforn the knight ful many

a day.
He was so ravished on his lady May, (530)

That for the varray payne he was ny
wood; 1775

Almost he swelte and swowned ther he
stood.

So sore hath Venus hurt him with hir
brond,

As that she bar it daunsinge in hir
hond.

And to his bed he wente him hastily;
Na-more of him as at this tyme speke I.

But ther I lete him wepe y-nough and
playne, (537) 1781

Til freshe May wol rewen on his payne.
O perilous fyr, that in the bedstraw

bredeth! Auctor.
O famulier foo, that his servyce bedeth!

O servant traitour, false hoomly hewe, 1785
Lyk to the naddre in bosom sly untrew,

God shilde us alle from your aqueynt-
saunce!

O Januarie, drunken in plesaunce
Of mariage, see how thy Damian,

Thyn owene squyer and thy borne man,
Entendeth for to do thee vileinye. 1791

God graunte thee thyn hoomly fo t'espye.
For in this world nis worse pestilence (549)

Than hoomly foo al day in thy presence.
Parfourned hath the sonne his ark

diarne, 1795
No lenger may the body of him sojurne
On th'orizonte, as in that latitude.

Night with his mantel, that is dork and
rude,

Can oversprede the hemisperie aboute;
For which departed is this lusty ronte

Fro Januarie, with thank on every syde.
Hom to hir houses lustily they ryde, 1802

Wher-as they doon hir thinges as hem
leste,

And whan they sye hir tyme, goon to
reste. (560)

Sone after that, this hastif Januarie 1805
Wolde go to bedde, he wolde no lenger

taria.
He drinketh ipocras, claree, and vernage

Of spyces hote, t'encrosen his corage;
And many a letuarie hadde he ful fyn,

Swiche as the cursed monk dan Con-
stantyn 1810

Hath writen in his book *de Coctis*; (567)
To eten hem alle, he nas no-thing eschyn.

And to his prives freendes thus seyde he:
'For goddes love, as sone as it may be,

Lat voyden al thons in curtays wyse.
 And they ha don right as he wol
 devyse. 1816
 Men drinken, and the travers drawe anon;
 The bryde was brought a-bedde as stille as
 stoon;
 And whan the bed was with the preest
 y-blessed,
 Out of the chambre hath every wight
 him dressed.
 And Januarie hath faste in a
 His freshe May, his paradys
 He lulleth hir, he kisseth hir
 With thikke bristles of his be
 lyk to the skin of boundis
 brere, 1817
 For he was shave al newe in 1
 He rubbeth hir aboute his tal.
 And seyde thus, '
 To yow, my spouse
 Er tyme come this, a willow 1818
 But nathelless, considereth this, quod he,
 'Ther nis no werkman, what-so-ever he be,
 That may bothe werke wel and hastily;
 This wol be doon at leyser parfity. (590)
 It is no for how longe that we pleye; 1835
 In trewe wedlok wedded be we tweye;
 And blessed be the yok that we been
 inne,
 For in our actes we mowe do no sinne.
 A man may do no sinne with his wyf,
 Ne hurte him-selven with his owene knyf;
 For we han leve to pleye us by the
 lawe.' 1841
 Thus laboureth he til that the day gan
 dawne;
 And than he taketh a sop in fyn clarre,
 And upright in his bed than sitteth he,
 And after that he sang ful londe and
 clere, (601) 1845
 And kiste his wyf, and made wantoun
 chere.
 He was al coltish, ful of ragerye,
 And ful of jargon as a flekked pye.
 The slakke skin aboute his nekke shaketh,
 Why! that he sang; so chaunteth he and
 craketh. 1850
 But god wot what that May thoughte in
 hir herte,
 Whan she him saugh up sittinge in his
 shorte,

In his night-cappe, and with his nekke
 lene;
 She preyseth nat his pleying worth a
 bene. (610) 1854
 Than seide he thus, 'my reste wol I take;
 Now day is come, I may no lenger wake.'
 And down he leyde his heed, and sleep
 til pryme.
 And afterward, whan that he saugh his
 tyme,
 ryseth Januarie; but freshe May
 leth hir chambre un-to the fourthe
 day, 1859
 As usage is of wyves for the beste.
 For every labour som-tyme moot has
 reste,
 Or elles longe may he nat endure,
 This is to seyn, no lyves creature. (620)
 Be it of fish, or brid, or beest, or man. 1865
 Anctor
 Now wol I speke of woful Damian,
 That languisheth for love, as ye shal
 here,
 Therefore I speke to him in this manere:
 I seye, 'O sely Damian, alas!
 Answers to my demaunde, as in this cas,
 How shaltow to thy lady freshe May 1871
 Telle thy wo? She wole alwey seye "nay";
 Eek if thou speke, she wol thy wo bi-
 wreye; (629)
 God be thyn help, I can no better seye.
 This syke Damian in Venus fyr 1875
 So brenneth, that he dyeth for desyr;
 For which he putte his lyf in aventure,
 No lenger mighte he in this wyse endure.
 But prively a penner gan he borwe,
 And in a lettre wroot he al his sorwe, 1880
 In manere of a compleynt or a lay,
 Un-to his faire freshe lady May.
 And in a purs of silk, heng on his sherte,
 He hath it put, and leyde it at his
 herte. (640) 1884
 The mone that, at noon, was, thilke day
 That Januarie hath wedded freshe May,
 In two of Taur, was in-to Cancre gliden.
 So longe hath Maius in hir chambre
 biden,
 As custume is un-to thise nobles alle.
 A bryde shal nat stene in the halle, 1890
 Til dayes foure or three dayes atte leste
 Y-passed been; than lat hir go to feste.

a day compleet fro noon to
(649)
the beighe masse was y-doon,
this Januarie, and May 1895
is the brighte someres day.
, how that this gode man
him upon this Damian,
Sainte Marie! how may this be,
in entendeth nat to me? 1900
, or how may this bityde?
as, whiche that stoden ther
(658)
n by-cause of his siknesse,
ed him to doon his bisinesse;
cause mighte make him tarie.
, forthinketh,' quod this Jan-
1906
til squyer, by my trouthe!
yde, it were harm and routha;
s, discreet, and as secree
I woot of his degree; 1910
, manly and eek servisable,
een a thrifty man right able
ete, as sone as ever I may,
lf visyte him and eek May,
n al the confort that I can.'
t word him blessed every man,
bountee and his gentillese,
, confortan in siknesse (674)
for it was a gentil dede,
od this Januarie, 'tak good
1920
te ye, with your wommen alle,
an been in chambre out of
lle,
, go see this Damian;
isport, he is a gentil man; (680)
him that I wol him visyte,
hing but rested me a lyte;
yow faste, for I wole abyde
slepe faste by my syde.'
nat word he gan to him to calle
hat was marchal of his halle,
him corteyn thinges, what he
1931
the May hath streight hir way
,
hir wommen, un-to Damian,
, beddes syde sit she than, (690)
, him as goxilly as she may,
in, whan that his tyme he say,

In secree wise his purs, and eek his bille,
In which that he y-written hadde his
willa, 1938
Hath put in-to hir hand, with-outen more,
Save that he syketh wonder depe and sore,
And softly to hir right thus seyde he:
'Mercy! and that ye nat discovere me;
For I am deed, if that this thing be kid.'
This purs hath she inwith hir bosom hid,
And wente hir wey; ye gete namore of me.
But un-to Januarie y-comen is she, 1946
That on his beddes syde sit ful softa. (703)
He taketh hir, and kisseth hir ful ofte,
And leyde him down to slepe, and that
anon.
She feyned hir as that she moste gon 1950
Ther-as ye woot that every wight mot
nede.
And whan she of this bille hath taken
hede,
She rente it al to clontes atte laste,
And in the privies softly it caste. (710)
Who studieth now but faire fresshe
May? 1955
Adoun by olde Januarie she lay,
That sleep, til that the conge hath him
awaked;
Anon he prayde hir strepen hir al naked;
He wolde of hir, he seyde, han som ple-
saunce,
And seyde, hir clothes dide him encom-
braunce, 1960
And she obeyeth, be hir lief or looth.
But lest that precious folk be with me
wrooth,
How that he wroghte, I dar nat to yow
telle;
Or whether hir thoughte it paradys or
helle; (720)
But here I lete hem werken in hir wyse
Til evensong rong, and that they moste
aryse. 1966
Were it by destinee or aventure,
Were it by influence or by nature,
Or constellacion, that in swich estat
The hevene stood, that tyme fortunat 1970
Was for to putte a bille of Venus werkes
(For alle thing hath tyme, as seyn thise
clerkes)
To any womman, for to gete hir love,
I can nat seye; but grete god above, (730)

That knoweth that non act is causeles,
 He deme of al, for I wol holde my pees.
 But sooth is thus, how that this fresche
 May 1977

Hath take swich impression that day,
 For pitee of this syke Damian,
 That from hir herte she ne dryve can 1980
 The remembraunce for to doon him ese.
 'Certeyn,' thoughte she, 'whom that this
 thing displease,

I rekke noght, for here I him assure,
 To love him best of any creature, (740)
 Though he na-more hadde than his sherte.'
 Lo, pitee renneth sone in gentil herte.

Heer may ye se how excellent franchise
 In women is, whan they hem narwe
 avyse. 1988

Som tyrant is, as ther be many oon,
 That bath an herte as hard as any stoon,
 Which wolde han lete him starven in
 the place 1991

Wel rather than han graunted him hir
 grace;

And hem rejoyssen in hir cruel pryde,
 And rekke nat to been an homicyde. (750)

This gentil May, fulfilled of pitee, 1995
 Right of hir hande a lettre made she,
 In which she graunteth him hir verray
 grace;

Ther lakketh noght but only day and
 place,

Wher that she mighte un-to his lust
 suffyse:

For it shal be right as he wol devyse. 2000
 And whan she saugh hir time, up-on a day,
 To visite this Damian goth May,
 And sotilly this lettre down she threste
 Under his pilwe, rede it if him leste. (760)
 She taketh him by the hand, and harde
 him twist 2005

So secretly, that no wight of it wiste,
 And bad him been al hool, and forth she
 wente

To Januarie, whan that he for hir sente.

Up ryseth Damian the nexte morwe,
 Al passed was his siknesse and his sorwe.
 He kembeth him, he proyneth him and
 pyketh, 2011

He dooth al that his lady lust and lyketh;
 And eek to Januarie he gooth as lowe
 As ever dide a dogge for the bowe. (770)

He is so pleasant un-to every man, 2015
 (For craft is al, who-so that do it can)
 That every wight is fayne to speke him
 good;

And fully in his lady grace he stood.
 Thus lete I Damian aboute his nede,
 And in my tale forth I wol procede. 2020

Somme clerkes holden that felicitie
 Stant in delyt, and therefor certeyn he,
 This noble Jannarie, with al his might,
 In honest wyse, as longeth to a knight,
 Shoop him to live ful deliciously. (781) 2025
 His housinge, his array, as honestly
 To his degree was makid as a kinges.
 Amonges othere of his honest thinges,
 He made a gardin, walled al with stoon.
 So fair a gardin woot I nowher noon. 2030
 For out of doute, I verrailly suppose,
 That he that wroot the Romance of the
 Rose

Ne coude of it the beautee wel deryse;
 Ne Priapus ne mighte nat suffyse, (790)
 Though he be god of gardins, for to
 telle 2035

The beautee of the gardin and the welle,
 That stood under a laurer alwey grene.
 Ful ofte tyme he, Pluto, and his quene,
 Proserpina, and al hir fayerye
 Disporten hem and maken melodye 2040
 Aboute that welle, and daunced, as men
 tolde.

This noble knight, this Jannarie the olde,
 Swich deintee hath in it to walke and
 playe, (790)

That he wol no wight suffren bere the keye
 Save he him-self; for of the smale wicket
 He bar alwey of silver a smal cliket, 2046
 With which, whan that him leste, he it
 unshette.

And whan he wolde paye his wyf hir dette
 In somer sason, thider wolde he go,
 And May his wyf, and no wight but they
 two, 2050

And thinges whiche that were nat doon
 a-bedde,

He in the gardin parfourned hem and
 spedde.

And in this wyse, many a mery day,
 Lived this Januarie and fresche May 2051
 But worldly joye may nat alwey dure 2055
 To Januarie, ne to no creature.

Auctor.

O sodeyn hap, o thou fortune instable,
Lyk to the scorioun so deceivable,
That flaterest with thyn heed when thou
wolt stinge;

Thy tayl is deeth, thurgh thyn enveni-
minge. 2066

O brotil joye! o swete venim queynte!
O monstre, that so subtilly canst peynte
Thy yiftes, under hewe of stedfastnesse,
That thou deceyvest bothe more and lesse!
Why hastow Januarie thus deceyved, (821)
That haddest him for thy ful frend re-
ceyved? 2066

And now thou hast biraft him bothe hise
yēn,

For sorwe of which desyreth he to dyen.

Allas! this noble Januarie free,
Amidde his lust and his prosperitee, 2070
Is woxen blind, and that al sodeynly.

He wepeth and he wayleth pitously;
And ther-with-al the fyr of jalousye, (829)
Lest that his wyf sholde falle in som folye,
So brente his herte, that he woldefayn 2075
That som man bothe him and hir had
slayn.

For neither after his deeth, nor in his lyf,
Ne wolde he that she were love ne wyf,
But ever live as widwe in clothes blake,
Soul as the turtle that lost hath hir make.

But atte laste, after a monthe or tweye,
His sorwe gan aswage, sooth to seye; 2082
For whan he wiste it may noon other be,
He paciently took his adversitee; (840)

Save, out of doute, he may nat forgoon
That he nas jalous evermore in oon;
Which jalousye it was so outrageous,

That neither in halle, n'in noon other hous,
Ne in noon other place, never-the-mo,
He nolde suffre hir for to ryde or go, 2090
But-if that he had hand on hir alway;

For which ful ofte wepeth fresshe May,
That loveth Damian so benignely,
That she mot outhur dyen sodeynly, (850)
Or elles she mot han him as hir leste; 2095

She wayteth whan hir herte wolde breste.

Up-on that other syde Damian
Bicomen is the sorwefulleste man
That ever was; for neither night ne day
Ne mighte he speke a word to fresshe
May, 2100

As to his purpos, of no swich matere,
But-if that Januarie moste it here,
That hadde an hand up-on hir evermo.
But nathelees, by wryting to and fro (860)
And privee signes, wiste he what she
mente; 2105

And she knew eek the fyn of his entente.

Auctor.

O Januarie, what mighte it thee availle,
Thou mightest see as fer as shippes saille?
For also good is blind deceyved be,
As be deceyved whan a man may see. 2110
Lo, Argus, which that hadde an hondred
yēn,

For al that ever he coude poure or pryen,
Yet was he blent; and, god wot, so ben
mo,

That wenen wisly that it be nat so. (870)
Passe over is an ese, I sey na-more. 2115

This fresshe May, that I spak of so
yore,

In warme wex hath emprented the cliket,
That Januarie bar of the smale wicket,
By which in-to his gardin ofte he wente.
And Damian, that knew al hir entente,
The cliket countrefeted prively; 2121

Ther nis na-more to seye, but hastily
Som wonder by this cliket shal bityde,
Which ye shul heren, if ye wole abyde.

O noble Ovyde, ful sooth seystou, god
woot!

Auctor.

What sleighte is it, thogh it be long and
hoot, (882) 2126

That he nil finde it out in som manere?
By Piramus and Tesbee may men lere;
Thogh they were kept ful longe streite
overal,

They been accorded, rouninge thurgh a
wal, 2130

Ther no wight coude han founde out
swich a sleighte. (887)

But now to purpos; er that dayes eighte
Were passed, er the monthe of Juil, bifil
That Januarie hath caught so greet a wil,
Thurgh egging of his wyf, him for to pleye
In his gardin, and no wight but they tweye,
That in a morwe un-to this May seith he:

'Rys up, my wyf, my love, my lady free;
The turtles vois is herd, my douve swete:
The winter is goon, with alle his reynes
wete; 2140

Com forth now, with thyn eyen columbyn !
 How fairer been thy brestes than is wyn !
 The gardin is enclosed al aboute,
 Com forth, my whyte spouse, out of
 doute, (900)
 Thou hast me wounded in myn herte,
 o wyf ! 2145
 No spot of thee no knew I al my lyf. -
 Com forth, and lat us taken our disport ;
 I chees thee for my wyf and my confort.'

Swiche olde lewed wordes used he ;
 On Damian a signe made she, 2150
 That he sholde go biforen with his cliket :
 This Damian thanne hath opened the
 wicket,
 And in he stirte, and that in swich manere,
 That no wight mighte it see neither
 y-here ; (910)
 And stille he sit under a bush anon. 2155
 This Jannarie, as blind as is a stoon,
 With Maun in his hand, and no wight mo,
 In-to his freshe gardin is ago,
 And clapte to the wicket sodeynly.

'Now, wyf,' quod he, 'heer nis but thou
 and I, 2160
 That art the creature that I best love.
 For, by that lord that sit in haven above,
 Lever ich hadde dyen on a knyf,
 Than thee offende, trewe dere wyf ! (920)
 For goddes sake, think how I thee chees,
 Noght for no coveityse, doutelees, 2165
 But only for the love I had to thee.
 And though that I be old, and may nat see,
 Both to me trewe, and I shal telle yow why.
 Three thinges, certes, shal ye winne ther-
 by, 2170

First, love of Crist, and to your-self honour,
 And al myn heritage, toun and tour ;
 I yeve it yow, maketh chartres as yow
 leste, (929)

This shal be doon to-morwe er sonne roste.
 So wisly god my soule bringe in blisse, 2175
 I prey yow first, in covenant ye me kisse.
 And thogh that I be jalous, wyte me noght.
 Ye been so depe enprented in my thought,
 That, whan that I considere your beantes,
 And ther-with-al the unlykly elde of me
 I may nat, certes, thogh I sholde dye,
 Forbere to been out of your companye
 For verray love ; this is with-uten doute.
 Now kis me, wyf, and lat us come aboute.'

This freshe May, whan she thise wordes
 herde, (941) 2185

Benignely to Jannarie answerde,
 But first and forward she bigan to wepe,
 'I have,' quod she, 'a soule for to kepe
 As wel as ye, and also myn honour,
 And of my wyfhod thilke tendre flour, 2190
 Which that I have assured in your hond,
 Whan that the preest to yow my body
 bond ;

Wherfore I wole answer in this manere
 By the leve of yow, my lord so dere : (950)
 I prey to god, that never dawe the day 2195
 That I ne starve, as foule as woman may,
 If ever I do un-to my kin that shame,
 Or elles I empayre so my name,
 That I be fals ; and if I do that lakke,
 Do strepe me and put me in a sakke, 2200
 And in the nexte river do me drenche.
 I am a gentil woman and no wenche.
 Why speke ye thus ? but men ben ever
 untrewe, (959)

And woman have repreve of yoway newe.
 Ye han non other contenance, I leve, 2205
 But speke to us of untrust and repreve.'

And with that word she saugh wher
 Damian

Sat in the bush, and coughten she bigan
 And with hir finger signes made she,
 That Damian sholde climbe up-on a tree,
 That charged was with fruit, and up he
 wente, 2211

For verrailly he knew al hir entente,
 And every signe that she coude make
 Wel bet than Jannarie, hir owene make.
 For in a lettre she had told him al 2215
 Of this matere, how he werchen shal. (973)
 And thus I lete him sitte up-on the pyrie,
 And Jannarie and May rominge myrie.

Bright was the day, and blew the firma-
 ment,

Phabus of gold his stremes down hath
 sent. 2220

To gladen every flour with his warmnesse.
 He was that tyme in *Geminis*, as I game,
 But litel fro his declinacioun

Of Cancer, Jovis exaltacioun. (980)

And so bifel, that brighte morwe-tyde, 2225
 That in that gardin, in the ferther ayde,
 Pluto, that is the king of fayerye,
 And many a lady in his companye,

Age his wyf, the quene Proserpyne,
 After other, right as any lyne— 2230
 That she gadered floures in the mede,
 Andian ye may the story rede,
 In his grisly carte he hir fette.

King of fairye thanne adoun him
 sette 2234

In a bench of turves, fresh and grene,
 Right anon thus seyde he to his quene.
 My wyf quod he, 'ther may no wight
 My nay,

Experience so proveth every day
 Reson whiche that wommen doon to
 man. 2239

Hundred thousand [stories] telle I can
 Ale of your untrowth and brot inesse.
 Salomon, wys, richest of riches, 2242
 Full of sapience and of worldly glorie,
 Worthy been thy wordes to memorie
 Every wight that wit and reson can.

He proueth he yet the bountee of man
 Linges a thousand men yet fond Ioon,
 Of wommen alle fond I noon— (1004)
 As soth the king that knoweth your
 Likkednesse,

'Jesus filius Syrak, as I gesse, 2250
 Maketh of yow but seide reverence
 His fyr and corrupt pestilence

Alle up-on your bodies yet to-night!
 He ye nat this honorable knight, (1010)
 Hee, alas! that he is blind and old,

None man shal make him cokewold,
 For he sit, the lechour, in the tree— 2257

'Wol I graunten, of my mageste,
 In this elde blinde worthy knight
 He shal have ayeyn his even sight, 2260

That his wyf wold down him vileinye
 He shal be knowen al hir harlotrye
 In reprove of hir and othere mo.'

'He shal,' quod Proserpyne, 'wol yeso;
 By my modres aires soule I swere,
 I shal yeven hir suffisant answers,

Alle wommen after, for hir sake,
 Though they be in any gilt y-take,
 A face bold they shulle hem-self
 excuse,

Here hem down that wolden hem
 excuse. 2270

'Like of answer, noon of hem shal dyen.
 Hee man seyn a thing with bothe his
 eye,

(1028)

Yit shul we wommen visage it hardily,
 And wepe, and swere and chydsubtily,
 So that ye men shul been as lewed as gees.
 What rekketh us of your auctoritees?

I woot wel that this Jew this Salomon
 Fond of us wommen feles many een
 But though that he ne fond no good
 woman, 2270

Yet hath ther founde many another man
 Wommen ful trewe, ful gode and ver-
 tueus,

Witnesso on hem that dwelle in Cristes
 hous,

With martirdom they proved hir con-
 stance. 2279

The Romayn gestes maken remembrance
 Of many a verray trewe wyf also, 2285

But sire, ne be nat wrooth, al be it so
 Though that he seyde he fond no good
 woman,

I pray yow take the sentence of the man,
 He mente thus, that in sovereyn bonte
 Nis noon but god, that sit in Trinite— 2290

Ey! for verray god, that nis but noon,
 What make ye so muche of Salomon?
 What though he made a temple golde
 hous? 2299

What though he were riche and glorieus?
 So made he eek a temple of false golde,
 How mighte he do a thing that more for-
 bode is? 2309

Pardee, as faire as ye his name emplastre,
 He was a lechour and an ydolastre,
 And in his elde he verray god forsook

And if that god ne hadde, as seith the book,
 Y spared him for his fadres sake, he sholde
 Have lost his regne rather than he wolde

I sette noight of al the vileinye, (1059)
 That ye of wommen wryte, a boterflye.
 I am a woman, nedes moot I speke, 2315

Or elles swelle til myn herte breke.
 For sithen he seyde that we ben jan-
 gleresses.

As ever heel I mote bronke my tresses
 I shal nat spare, for no curtesye, 2320

To speke him harm that wolde us vileinye
 'Dame,' quod this Pluto, 'be no longer
 wrooth,

I yeve it up, but sith I swore myn ooth
 That I wolde graunten him his sighte
 ageyn,

(1071)

My wordshal stonde, I warneyow, certeyn.
I am a king, it sit me noght to lye.' 2315

'And I,' quod she, 'a queene of fayerye.
Hir answeres shal she have, I undertake;
Lat us na-more wordes heer-of make.
For sothe, I wol no longer yow contrarie.'

Now lat us turne agayn to Jannarie, 2320
That in the gardin with his faire May
Singeth, ful merier than the papejay,
'Yow love I best, and shal, and other
noon.'

So longe aboute the aleyes is he goon, (1080)
Til he was come agaynes thilke pyrie, 2325
Wher-as this Damian sitteth ful myne
An heigh, among the freshe leves grene.

This freshe May, that is so bright and
shene,
Gan for to syke, and seyde, 'allas, my
gyde!

Now sir,' quod she, 'for aught that may
bityde, 2330

I moete han of the peres that I see,
Or I mot dye, so sore longeth me
To eten of the smale peres grene. (1089)
Help, for hir love that is of hevens queene!
I telle yow wel, a woman in my
plyt 2335

May han to fruit so greet an appetyt,
That she may dyen, but she of it have.'

'Allas!' quod he, 'that I ne had heer
a knave

That coude climbe; alas! alas!' quod he,
'That I am blind.' 'Ye, sir, no fore,'
quod she 2340

'But wolde ye vouche-sauf, for goddes
sake,

The pyrie inwith your armes for to take,
(For wel I woot that ye mistruste me)

Thanne sholde I climbe wel y-nogh,' quod
she, (1100)

'So I my foot mighte sette upon your bak.'

'Certes,' quod he, 'ther-on shal be no
lak, 2346

Mighte I yow helpen with myn herte
blood.'

Hestounpeth doun, and on his bak she stood,
And caughte hir by a twist, and up she
gooth.

Ladies, I prey yow that ye be nat wrooth,
I can nat glose, I am a rude man. 2351
And sodeynly anon this Damian

Gan pullen up the smok, and in he throng.
And whan that Pluto saugh this grete
wrong, (1170)

To Jannarie he gaf agayn his sighte, 2355
And made him see, as wel as ever he
mighte.

And whan that he hadde caught his
sighte agayn,

Ne was ther never man of thing so fayn.
But on his wyf his thought was evermo,
Up to the tree he caste his eyen two, 2360
And saugh that Damian his wyf had
dressed

In swich manere, it may nat ben ex-
pressed

But if I wolde speke uncourteisly:
And up he gaf a roring and a cry (1120)

As doth the moder whan the child shal
dye: 2364

'Out! help! alas! harrow!' he gan to cry,
'O stronge lady store, what dostow?'

And she answerde, 'sir, what eyloth
yow?

Have pacience, and reson in your minde,
I have yow holpe on bothe your eyen
blinde. 2370

Up peril of my soule, I shal nat lyen,
As me was taught, to hele with your yen.

Was no-thing bet to make yow to see
Than struggle with a man up-on a tree. (1130)

God woot, I dide it in ful good entente.'

'Strugle!' quod he, 'ye, algate in it
wente! 2376

God yeve yow bothe on shames deeth to
dyen!

He swyved thee, I saugh it with myne yen,
And elles be I hanged by the hals!'

'Thanne is,' quod she, 'my medicyne
al fals, 2380

For certainly, if that ye mighte see,
Ye wolde nat seyn thise wordes un-to me;

Ye han som glimsing and no parfit sighte.'

'I see,' quod he, 'as wel as ever I
mighte, (1140)

Thonked be god! with bothe myne eyen
two, 2385

And by my trouthe, me thoughte he dide
thee so.'

'Ye mase, mase, gode sire,' quod she,
'This thank have I for I have maad yow
see;

Allas!' quod she, 'that ever I was so kinde!'

'Now, dame,' quod he, 'lat al passe out of minde. 2390

Com doun, my lief, and if I have missayd, God help me so, as I am yvel apayd.

But, by my fader soule, I wende han seyn, How that this Damian had by thee leyn, And that thy smok had leyn up-on his brest.' (1151) 2395

'Ye, sire,' quod she, 'ye may wene as yow lest;

But, sire, a man that waketh out of his sleep,

He may nat sodeynly wel taken keep

Up-on a thing, ne seen it parfitly,

Til that he be adawed verrailly; 2400

Right so a man, that long hath blind y-be,

Ne may nat sodeynly so wel y-see,

First whan his sighte is newe come ageyn, As he that hath a day or two y-seyn. (1160)

Til that your sighte y-satled be a whyle,

Ther may ful many a sighte yow bigyle.

Beth war, I prey yow; for, by hevene king, 2407

Ful many a man weneth to seen a thing,

And it is al another than it semeth.

He that misconceyvet, he misdremeth.'

And with that word she leep doun fro the tree. 2411

This Januarie, who is glad but he?

He kisseth hir, and clippeth hir ful ofte,

And on hir wombe he strokefh hir ful softe, (1170)

And to his palays hoom he hath hir lad.

Now, gode men, I pray yow to be glad. 2416

Thus endeth heer my tale of Januarie;

God blesse us and his moder Seinte Marie!

Here is ended the Marchantes Tale of Januarie.

EPILOGUE TO THE MARCHANTES TALE.

'Er! goddes mercy!' seyde our Hoste tho,

'Now swich a wyf I pray god kepe me fro!

Lo, whiche sleightes and subtilitees 2421

In wommen been! for ay as bisy as bees

Ben they, us sely men for to deceyve,

And from a sothe ever wol they weyve;

By this Marchauntes Tale it preveth weel.

But doutelees, as trewe as any steel 2426

I have a wyf, though that she povre be;

But of hir tonge a labbing shrewe is she,

And yet she hath an heep of vyces mo; (11)

Ther-of no fors, lat alle swiche thinges go.

But, wite ye what? in conseil be it seyde,

Me reweth sore I am un-to hir teyd. 2432

For, and I sholde rekenen every vyce

Which that she hath, y-wis, I were to nyce,

And cause why; it sholde reported be 2435

And told to hir of somme of this meynee;

Of whom, it nedeth nat for to declare,

Sin wommen connen outen swich chaf-fare; (20)

And eek my wit suffyseth nat ther-to

To tellen al; wherfor my tale is do.' 2440

GROUP F.

THE SQUIERES TALE.

The Squire's Prologue.

'SQUIRE, com neer, if it your wille be,
 And sey somewhat of love; for, certes, ye
 Connen ther-on as muche as any man.'
 'Nay, sir,' quod he, 'but I wol seye as I can
 With hertly wille; for I wol nat rebelle
 Agayn your lust; a tale wol I telle.
 Have me excused if I speke amis,
 My wil is good; and lo, my tale is this.'

Here biginneth the Squieres Tale.

At Sarray, in the land of Tartarye, (1)
 Ther dwelte a king, that werreyed Russye,
 Thurgh which ther deyde many a doughty
 man. 11
 This noble king was cleped Cambinskan,
 Which in his tyme was of so greet renoun
 That ther nas no-wher in no region
 So excellent a lord in alle thing; 15
 Him lakked noght that longeth to a king.
 As of the secte of which that he was born
 He kepte his lay, to which that he was
 sworn; (10)
 And ther-to he was hardy, wys, and riche,
 And þriëtous and just, alwey y-liche; 20
 Sooth of his word, benigne and honorable,
 Of his corage as any centre stable;
 Yong, fresh, and strong, in armes desirous
 As any bachelor of al his hous.
 A fair persone he was and fortunat, 25
 And kepte alwey so wel royal estat,
 That ther was nowher swich another man.
 This noble king, this Tartre Cambinskan
 Hadde two sones on Elpheta his wyf, (21)
 Of whiche th'eldeste highte Algarsyf, 30
 That other sone was cleped Cambalo.
 A doghter hadde this worthy king also,
 That yongest was, and highte Canacee.
 But for to telle yow al hir beautee,

It lyth nat in my tonge, n'in my conning;
 I dar nat undertake so heigh a thing. 36
 Myn English eek is insufficient;
 It moste been a rethor excellent, (30)
 That coude his colours longing for that art,
 If he sholde hir discryven every part. 40
 I am non swich, I moot speke as I can.

And so bifel that, whan this Cambinskan
 Hath twenty winter born his diademe,
 As he was wont fro year to year, I deme,
 He leet the feste of his nativitee 45
 Don cryen thurghout Sarray his citee,
 The last Idus of March, after the year.
 Phebus the sonne ful joly was and cleer:
 For he was neigh his exaltacioun (41)
 In Martes face, and in his mansioun 50
 In Aries, the colerik hote signe.
 Ful lusty was the weder and benigne,
 For which the foules, agayn the sonne
 shene,

What for the seson and the yonge grene.
 Ful loude songen hir affeccions; 55
 Hem semed han geten hem protecciouns
 Agayn the swerd of winter kene and cold.

This Cambinskan, of which I have yow
 told, (50)
 In royal vestiment sit on his deys,
 With diademe, ful heighe in his paleys,
 And halt his feste, so solempne and 60
 riche 61
 That in this world ne was ther noon it
 liche.

Of which if I shal tellen al th'array.
 Than wolde it occupye a someres day;
 And eek it nedeth nat for to devyse 65
 At every cours the ordre of hir servyse.
 I wol nat tellen of hir strange sewes, (59)
 No of hir swannes, ne of hir heronsewes.
 Eek in that lond, as tellen knightes olde,
 Ther is som mete that is ful deyntee holde,

That in this lond men recche of it but
smal ; 71

Ther nis no man that may reporten al.
I wol nat tarien yow, for it is pryme,
And for it is no fruit but los of tyme ;

Un-to my frste I wol have my recours, 73

And so bifel that, after the thridde cours,
Whyl that this king sitthus in his nobleye,
Her kninge his minstralles hir thinges
pleye 70

Biforn him at the bord deliciously,
In at the halle-dore al sodaynly 80

Ther cam a knight up-on a stede of bras,
And in his hand a brood mirour of glas.
Upon his thombe he hadde of gold a
ring,

And by his syde a naked sword hanging ;
And up he rydeth to the heighe bord. 83
In al the halle ne was ther spoke a word
For merveille of this knight, him to bi-
holde

Ful bisily ther wayten yonge and olde.

This strange knight, that cam thus
sodaynly, 81

Al armed save his heed ful richely, 90
Salueth king and queen, and lordes alle,
By ordre, as they seten in the halle,
With so heigh reverence and obeisaunce
As wel in speche as in contenaunce,

That Gawain, with his olde curteisye, 95
Though he were come ageyn out of Fairye,
Ne coude him nat amende with a word.

And after this, biforn the heighe bord, 90
He with a manly voys seith his message,
After the forme used in his langage, 100
With-outen vyce of sillable or of lettre ;
And, for his tale sholde seme the bettre,
Accordant to his wordes was his chere,
As techeth art of speche hem that it
lere ;

Al-be-it that I can nat sounne his style, 103
Ne can nat climben over so heigh a style,
Yet seye I this, as to commune entente,
Thus muche amounnteth al that ever he
mente, 100

If it so be that I have it in minde.

He seyde, ' the king of Arabie and of
Inde, 110

My lige lord, on this solempne day
Salueth yow as he best can and may,
And sendeth yow, in honour of your feste,

By me, that am al redy at your heste,
This stede of bras, that esily and wel 115

Can, in the space of o day natural,
This is to seyn, in foure and twenty houres,
Wher-so yow list, in droghte or elles
shoures, 110

Beran your body in-to every place
To which your herte wilneth for to pace
With-outen wem of yow, thurgh foul or
fair ; 121

Or, if yow list to fleen as hys in the air
As doth an egle, whan him list to sore,
This same stede shal bere yow ever-more
With-outen harm, til ye be ther yow
leste, 125

Though that ye slepen on his bak or reste,
And turne ayeyn, with wrything of a pin.
He that it wroghte coude ful many a gin ;
He wayted many a constellacioun 121

Er he had doon this operacioun ; 130
And knew ful many a seal and many
a bond.

This mirour eek, that I have in myn
hond,

Hath swich a might, that men may in it
see

Whan ther shal fallen any adversitee
Un-to your regne or to your-self also ; 135
And openly who is your freend or foe.

And over al this, if any lady bright
Hath set hir herte on any maner wight,
If he be fals, she shal his treson see, 131
His newe love and al his subtiltee 130

So openly, that ther shal no-thing hyde.
Wherfor, ageyn this lusty someres tyde,
This mirour and this ring, that ye may see,
He hath sent to my lady Canacee,
Your excellente doghter that is here. 145

The vertu of the ring, if ye wol here,
Is this ; that, if hir lust it for to were 139
Up-on hir thombe, or in hir purs it bere,
Ther is no foul that fleeth under the
hevene

That she ne shal wel understonde his
stevene, 150

And knowe his mening openly and pleyn,
And answer him in his langage ageyn.
And every gras that groweth up-on rote
She shal eek knowe, and whom it wol do
bote,

Al be his woundes never so depe and wyde.

This naked sword, that hangeth by my
 syde, 156
 Swich vertu hath, that what man so ye
 smyte,
 Thugh-out his armure it wol kerve and
 lyte, 159
 Were it as thikke as is a branched ook,
 And what man that is wounded with the
 strook 160
 Shal never be hool til that yow list of
 grace,
 To stroke him with the platte in thilke
 place
 Ther he is hurt: this is as muche to seyn
 Ye mote with the platte sword ageyn
 Stroke him in the wounde, and it wol
 close, 165
 This is a verray sooth, with-outen glose,
 It failleth nat whyl it is in your hold.
 And whan this knight hath thus his
 tale told, 166
 He rydeleth out of halle, and down he lighte,
 His stele, which that sheen as sonne
 brighte, 170
 Stant in the court, as stille as any stoon,
 This knight is to his chambro lwi anon,
 And is unarmed and to mete y-set.
 The presents been ful royally y-fet,
 This is to seyn, the sword and the mirour,
 And born anon in-to the heighe tour 176
 With certeine officers ordeyned therfore,
 And in-to Canacee this ring was bore 179
 Solempnely, ther she sit at the table,
 But slykerly, with-outen any fable, 180
 The hors of bras, that may nat be remewed,
 It stant as it were to the ground y-glewed
 Ther may no man out of the place it drve
 For noon engyn of windes or polyve, 184
 And cause why, for they can nat the craft,
 And therefore in the place they han it
 laft
 Til that the knight hath taught hem the
 manere
 To voyden him, as ye shal after here. 189
 Greet was the press, that swarmeth to
 and fro, 190
 To gauren on this hors that stondeth so,
 For it so hegh was, and so brood and long,
 So wel proportioned for to ben strong,
 Right as it were a stede of Lombardye,
 Ther-with so horsly, and so quik of yf

As it a gentil Poulys courser were
 For certes, fro his tayl un to his ere
 Nature ne nat ne coude him nat amende
 In no degree, as al the peple wende
 But evermore his mooste wonder was
 How that it coude goon, and was
 bras
 It was of Fartye, as the peple seide
 Diverse folk diversely they leide
 As many hedes, as many wittes ther be
 They murmureden as dooth a swain
 been,
 And maden skiles after hir fantasie
 Rehersinge of thise olde poetrye
 And seyden, it was lyk the Pegasus
 The hors that hadde winges for to fleen
 Or elles it was the Grekes hors of war
 That bryghte Troye to destruction
 As men may in thise olde gestes rede
 'Myn herte,' quod oon 'is evere drede;
 I trowe som men of armes been ther
 That shapen hem this citee for to rede
 It were right good that al such thinge
 were knowe'
 Another rowned to his felawe lwi
 And seyde, 'he lyeth, it is rather lwi
 An apparence y-maad by som magi
 As jogelours pleyen at thise festes
 Of senlry doutes thus they jangle
 trete,
 As lewed peple demeth comynly
 Of thinges that ben maad more subtilly
 Than they can in hir lewednes
 hende,
 They demen gladly to the badder
 And some of hem wol rede
 mirour,
 That born was up in-to the mastere
 How men mighte in it swiche thinge
 Another answerde, and seyde it mighte
 wel be
 Naturally, by composicionis
 Of angles and of alye reflexionis
 And seylen, that in Rome was writen
 They speken of Alocen and Vtub
 And Aristotile, that writen in his
 Of queynte mirours and of perspective
 As known they that han hir book
 And othere folk han wonnen
 sword

That wolde perceren thurgh-out every-thing;
And fille in speche of Thelophus the king,
And of Achilles with his queynte spere,
For he coude with it bothe hele and dere,
Right in swich wyse as men may with the
sword (233) 241

Of which right now ye han your-selven
herd.

They speken of sondry harding of metal,
And speke of medicynes ther-with-al,
And how, and whanne, it sholde y-harded
be; 245

Which is unknowe algates unto me.

The speke they of Canacee's ring,
And seyden alle, that swich a wonder
thing (240)

Of craft of ringes herde they never non,
Save that he, Moyses, and king Salomon
Hadde a name of konning in swich art. 251
Thus seyn the peple, and drawn hem
apart.

But nathelees, somme seyden that it was
Wonder to maken of fern-asshen glas,
And yet nis glas nat lyk asshen of fern;
But for they han y-knownen it so fern, 256
Therefore cesseth her jangling and her
wonder.

As sore wondren somme on cause of
thonder, (250)

On ebbe, on flood, on gossomer, and on
mist, 259

And alle thing, til that the cause is wist.
Thus jangle they and demen and devyse,
Til that the king gan fro the bord aryse.

Phebus hath laft the angle meridional,
And yet ascending was the beest royal,
The gentil Leon, with his Aldiran, 265
Whan that this Tartre king, this Cam-
binskan, (258)

Roos fro his bord, ther that he sat ful hye.
To forñ him gooth the loude minstralcy, e,
Til he cam to his chambre of parements,
Ther as they sownen diverse instruments,
That it is lyk an heven for to here. 271
Now dauncen lusty Venus children dere,
For in the Fish hir lady sat ful hye,
And loketh on hem with a freendly yẽ.

This noble king is set up in his trone. 275
This strange knight is fet to him ful sone,
And on the daunce he gooth with Canacee.
Heer is the revel and the jolitee (270)

That is nat able a dul man to devyse. 279
He moste han knowen love and his servyse,
And been a festlich man as fresh as
May,

That sholde yow devysen swich array.

Who coude telle yow the forme of
daunces,

So uncouth and so fresshe contenaunces,
Swich subtil loking and dissimulinges 285
For drede of jaleuse mennes aperceyvinges?
No man but Launcelot, and he is deed.

Therefor I passe of al this lustiheed; (280)

I seye na-more, but in this jolynesse

I lete hem, til men to the soper dresse. 290

The styward bit the spyces for to hye,
And eek the wyn, in al this melodye.

The usshers and the squyers ben y-goön;
The spyces and the wyn is come anon.

They ete and drinke; and whan this hadde
an ende, 295

Un-to the temple, as reson was, they
wende.

The service doon, they soupen al by day.

What nedeth yow rehercen hir array? (290)

Ech man wot wel, that at a kinges feeste
Hath plentee, to the moste and to the
leeste, 300

And deyntees mo than been in my
knowing.

At-after soper gooth this noble king

To seen this hors of bras, with al the route
Of lordes and of ladyes him aboute.

Swich wondring was ther on this hors
of bras 305

That, sin the grete sege of Troye was,

Ther-as men wondreden on an hors also,

Ne was ther swich a wondring as was tho.

But fynally the king axeth this knight (301)

The vertu of this courser and the might,

And preyede him to telle his governaunce.

This hors anon bigan to trippe and
daunce, 312

Whan that this knight leyde hand up-on
his reyne,

And seyde, 'sir, ther is na-more to seyne,

But, whan yow list to ryden any-where, 315

Ye moten trille a pin, stant in his ere,

Which I shall telle yow bitwix vs two. (309)

Ye mote nempne him to what place also

Or to what contree that yow list to ryde. 319

And whan ye come ther as yow list abyde,

Bidde him descende, and trille another pin,
For ther-in lyth the effect of al the gin,
And he wol donn descende and doon your
wille;

And in that place he wol abyde stille,
Though al the world the contrarie hadde
y-swore;

He shal nat thannes ben y-drawe n'y-
bora.

Or, if yow liste bidde him thennes goon,
Trille this pin, and he wol vanishe anon
Out of the sighte of every maner wight, (321)
And come agayn, be it by day or night, 330
When that yow list to clepen him agayn
In swich a gyse as I shal to yow seyn
Bitwixe yow and me, and that ful sone.
Ryde whan yow list, ther is na-more to
done.'

Enformed whan the king was of that
knight,

And hath conceyved in his wit aright
The maner and the forme of al this thing,
Thus glad and blythe, this noble doughty
king

Repireth to his revel as biforn,
The brydel is un to the tour y-born, 340
And kept among his jewels leve and
dere.

The hors vanished, I moot in what manere,
Out of hir sighte, ye gete na-more of me.
But thus I lete in lust and lohtes
This Cambynskan his lordes festeyngs, 345
Til wel ny the day bigan to springe.

Explicit prima pars.

Sequitur pars secunda.

The norice of digestioun, the slepe,
Gan on hem winke, and bad hem taken
kepe,

That muchel drink and labour wolde han
reste;

And with a galping mouth hem alle he
keste,

And seyde, 'it was tyme to lye adoun,
For blood was in his dominacioun;
Cherisheth blood, nature's freend,' quod
he.

They thanken him gupinge, by two, by
three,

And every wight gan drawe him to his
reste,

As slepe hem bad; they toke it for the
beste.

Hir dremes shal nat been y-told for me;
Ful were hir hedes of fumositee, (350)
That causeth drem, of which ther nis no
charge.

They slepen til that it was prynte large,
The mooste part, but it were Canacee;
She was ful mesurable, as women be.
For of hir fader hadde she take leve

To gon to reste, sone after it was eve;
Hir liste nat appalled for to be,

Nor on the morwe unfastlich for to see;
And slepte hir firste sleep, and thanne
awook.

For swich a joye she in hir herte took
Both of hir queynte ring and hir mirour,
That twenty tyme she changed hir colour,
And in hir slepe, right for impressioun 371
Of hir mirour, she hadde a visioun.

Wherfore, er that the sonne gan up glyde,
She cleped on hir maistresse hir buyde.
And seyde, that hir liste for to ryse.

These olde women that been gladly
wyse,

As is hir maistresse, answerde hir anon,
And seyde, 'madame, whider wil ye
goon

Thus erly? for the folk ben alle on reste.'
'I wol,' quod she, 'aryse, for me leste 380
No lenger for to slepe, and waite aboute.'

Hir maistresse clepeth wommen a gret
route,

And up they rysen, wel a ten or twelve.
Up ryseth fresshe Canacee hir-selfe,
As rody and bright as dooth the yonge
sonne,

That in the Ram is four degrees up-ronne,
Noon hyer was he, whan she rody was,
And forth she walketh early a pas,

Arrayed after the lusty soun sote 389
Lightly, for to pleye and walke on fote,

Nat but with fyve or six of hir meynes;
And in a trench, forth in the park, goth
she.

The vapour, which that fro the erthe glosed,
Made the sonne to seme rody and brood:
But natheles, it was so fair a sighte 395
That it made alle hir hertes for to lighte.
What for the soun and the morweninge,
And for the foules that she herde singe.

For right anon she wiste what they mente
Right by hir song, and knewal hir entente.

The knotte, why that every tale is told,
If it be taried til that lust be cold
Of hem that han it after herkned yore,
The savour passeth ever lenger the more,
For fulsomnesse of his prolixitee. 405
And by the same reson thinketh me,
I sholde to the knotte condescende,
And maken of hir walking sone an
ende. (400)

Amidde a tree fordrye, as whyt as chalk,
As Canacee was playing in hir walk, 410
Ther sat a faucon over hir heed ful hye,
That with a pitous voys so gan to crye
That all the wode resounded of hir cry.
Y-beten hath she hir-self so pitously 414
With bothe hir winges, til the rede blood
Ran endelong the tree ther-as she stood.
And ever in oon she cryde alwey and
shrighte,
And with hir beek hir-selven so she
prighte, (410)
That ther nis tygre, ne noon so cruel
beste,
That dwelleth either in wode or in foreste
That nolde han wept, if that he wepe
coude, 421
For sorwe of hir, she shrighte alwey so
loude.

For ther nas never yet no man on lyve—
If that I coude a faucon wel discryve—
That herde of swich another of fairnesse,
As wel of plumage as of gentillesse 426
Of shap, and al that mighte y-rekened be.
A faucon peregryn than semed she (420)
Of fremde land; and evermore, as she
stood,
She swowneth now and now for lakke of
blood, 430
Til wel neigh is she fallen fro the tree.

This faire kinges doghter, Canacee,
That on hir finger bar the queynte ring,
Thurgh which she understood wel every
thing
That any foul may in his ledene seyn, 435
And coude answer him in his ledene
ageyn,
Hath understonde what this faucon seyde,
And wel neigh for the rewthe almost she
deyde. (430)

And to the tree she gooth ful hastily,
And on this faucon loketh pitously, 440
And heeld hir lappe abroad, for wel she
wiste

The faucon moste fallen fro the twiste,
When that it swowned next, for lakke of
blood.

A longe while to wayten hir she stood
Till atte laste she spak in this manere 445
Un-to the hawk, as ye shul after here.

'What is the cause, if it be for to telle,
That ye be in this furial pyne of helle?'
Quod Canacee un-to this hawk above. (441)
'Is this for sorwe of deeth or los of love?'
For, as I trowe, thise ben causes two 451
That causen moost a gentil herte wo;
Of other harm it nedeth nat to speke.
For ye your-self upon your-self yow wreke,
Which proveth wel, that either love or
drede 455

Mot been encheson of your cruel dede,
Sin that I see non other wight yow chace.
For love of god, as dooth your-selven grace
Or what may ben your help; for west nor
eest (451)

Ne sey I never er now no brid ne beest
That ferde with him-self so pitously. 461
Ye slee me with your sorwe, verrailly;
I have of yow so gret compassioun.
For goddes love, com fro the tree adoun;
And, as I am a kinges doghter trewe, 465
If that I verrailly the cause knewe
Of your disese, if it lay in my might,
I wolde amende it, er that it were night,
As wisly helpe me gret god of kinde! (461)
And herbes shal I right y-nowe y-finde
To hele with your hurtes hastily.' 471

The shrighte this faucon more pitously
Than ever she dide, and fil to grounde
anoon,

And lyth aswowne, deed, and lyk a stoon,
Til Canacee hath in hir lappe hir take 475
Un-to the tyme she gan of swough awake.
And, after that she of hir swough gan
breyde,

Right in hir haukes ledene thus she
seyde:— (470)

'That pitee renneth sone in gentil herte,
Feling his similitude in peynessmerte, 480
Is preved al-day, as men may it see,
As wel by werk as by auctoritee;

For gentil herte kytheth gentillesse.
 I see wel, that ye han of my distresse
 Compassioun, my faire Canacee, 485
 Of verray wommanly benygntee
 That nature in your principles hath set.
 But for non hope for to fare the bet, (480
 But for to obeye un-to your herte free,
 And for to maken othe be war by me,
 As by the whelp chasted is the leoun, 491
 Right for that cause and that conclusioun,
 Whyl that I have a leysur and a space,
 Myn harm I wol confessen, er I pace.
 And ever, whyl that oon hir sorwe tolde,
 That othe weep, as she to water wolde,
 Til that the faucon had hir to be stille;
 And, with a syk, right thus she seyde hir
 willa, (490) 498
 'Ther I was bred (allas! that harde
 day')

And fostred in a roche of marbul gray
 So tendrely, that nothing cyled me, 501
 I niste nat what was adversitee,
 Til I coude flee ful hye under the sky.
 Tho dwelte a terelet me faste by,
 That semed wel of alle gentillesse; 505
 Al were he ful of treson and falsnesse,
 It was so wrapped under humble chere,
 And under hewe of trouthe in swich
 manere, (500)
 Under plasaunce, and under bisy peyne,
 That no wight coude han wend he coude
 feyne, 510
 So depe in greyn he dyed his coloures.
 Right as a serpent hit him under floures
 Til he may seen his tyme for to byte,
 Right so this god of love, this ypocryte,
 Doth so his ceremonies and obeisaunces,
 And kepeth in semblant alle his obser-
 vances 515
 That sewneth in-to gentillesse of love,
 As in a tounbe is al the faire above, (510)
 And under is the corps, swich as ye woot,
 Swich was this ypocryte, bothe cold and
 hoot, 520
 And in this wyse he served his entente,
 That save the feend, non wiste what he
 mente.
 Til he so longe had wopen and com-
 playned,
 And many a yeer his service to me feyned,
 Til that myn herte, to pitous and to nyce,

Al innocent of his crowned malice, 525
 For-fere of his deeth, as thoughte me,
 Upon his othes and his seuretee, 530
 Graunted him love, on this condicioun,
 That evermore myn honour and renoun
 Were saved, bothe prives and apert 535
 This is to seyn, that, after his desert,
 I gaf him al myn herte and al my
 thought—

God woot and he, that otherwyse noht—
 And took his herte in chaunge for myn
 for ay, 545
 But sooth is seyde, gon sithen many a day,
 "A trew wight and a theef thenken nat
 oon."

And, whan he saugh the thing so fer
 y-gooun, (540)

That I had graunted him fully my love,
 In swich a gyse as I have seyde above, 545
 And yeven him my trewe herte, as free
 As he swoor he his herte gaf to me:
 Anon this tygre, ful of doublenesse,
 Fil on his knees with so devout hum-
 blesse,

With so heigh reverence, and, as by his
 chere, 555

So lyk a gentil love of manere,
 So ravished, as it semed, for the joye,
 That never Jason, ne Parys of Troye, (560)
 Jason? certes, ne non other man,
 Sin Lameth was, that alderfirst began 565
 To loven two, as writen folk bifore,
 Ne never, sin the firste man was born
 Ne coude man, by twenty thousand part,
 Countrefete the sophimes of his art,
 Ne were worthy unbokele his galoche, 575
 Ther doublenesse or feynung shoulde ap-
 proche,

Ne so coude thanke a wight as he did me!
 His maner was an heven for to see 580
 Til any womman, were she never so
 wys;

So paynted he and kembde at point-devys
 As wel his wordes as his contenaunce, 585
 And I so lovede him for his obeisaunce,
 And for the trouthe I demed in his herte.
 That, if so were that any thing him
 smerte,

Al were it never so lyte, and I it wiste, 595
 Me thoughte, I felte deeth myn herte
 twiste.

And shortly, so ferforth this thing is
went, (559)

That my wil was his willes instrument;
This is to seyn, my wil obeyed his wil
In alle thing, as fer as reson fil, 570
Keping the boundes of my worship ever.
Ne never hadde I thing so leef, ne lever,
As him, god woot! ne never shal na-mo.

This lasteth lenger than a year or two,
That I supposed of him noght but good.
But fynally, thus atte laste it stood, 576
That fortune wolde that he moste twinne
Out of that place which that I was inne.
Wher me was wo, that is no questioun;
I can nat make of it discripcioun; 580
For o thing dar I tellen boldely, (573)
I knowe what is the peyne of deth ther-by;
Swich harm I felte for he ne mighte
bileve.

So on a day of me he took his leve,
So sorwefully eek, that I wende verrailly
That he had felt as muche harm as I, 586
Whan that I herde him speke, and saugh
his hewe. (579)

But natheles, I thoughte he was so trewe,
And eek that he repaire sholde ageyn
With-inne a litel whyle, sooth to seyn; 590
And reson wolde eek that he moste go
For his honour, as ofte it happeth so,
That I made vertu of necessitee,
And took it wel, sin that it moste be.
As I best mighte, I hidde fro him my
sorwe, 595

And took him by the hond, seint John to
borwe,
And seyde him thus: "lo, I am youres al;
Beth swich as I to yow have been, and
shal." (590)

What he answerde, it nedeth noght re-
herce,

Who can sey bet than he, who can do
werse? 600

Whan he hath al wel seyde, thanne hath
he doon.

"Therfor bihoveth him a ful long spoon
That shal ete with a feend," thus herde
I seye.

So atte laste he moste forth his weye,
And forth he fleeth, til he cam ther him
leste. 605

Whan it cam him to purpos for to resto,

I trowe he hadde thilke text in minde,
That "alle thing, repeiring to his kinde,
Gladeth him-self"; thus seyn men, as I
gesse; (601)

Men loven of propre kinde newfangel-
nesse, 610

As briddes doon that men in cages fede.
For though thou night and day take of
hem hede,

And strawe hir cage faire and softe as
silk,

And yeve hem sugre, hony, breed and
milk,

Yet right anon, as that his dore is uppe,
He with his feet wol spurne adoun his
cuppe, 616

And to the wode he wol and wormes ete;
So newfangel been they of hir mete, (610)

And loven novelryes of propre kinde;
No gentillesse of blood [ne] may hem
binde. 620

So ferde this tercelet, allas the day!
Though he were gentil born, and fresh
and gay,

And goodly for to seen, and humble and
free,

He saugh up-on a tyme a kyte flee,
And sodeynly he loved this kyte so, 625

That al his love is clene fro me ago,
And hath his trouthe falsed in this wyse;
Thus hath the kyte my love in hir ser-
vyse, (620)

And I am lorn with-uten remedye!"

And with that word this faucon gan to
crye, 630

And swowned eft in Canacees barme.
Greet was the sorwe, for the haukes
harme,

That Canacee and alle hir wommen made;
They niste how they mighte the faucon
glade. 634

But Canacee hom bereth hir in hir lappe,
And softely in plastres gan hir wrappe,
Ther as she with hir beek had hurt hir-
selve. (629)

Now can nat Canacee but herbes delve
Out of the grounde, and make salves
newe

Of herbes precious, and fyne of hewe, 640
To helen with this hawk; fro day to night
She dooth hir businessse and al hir might.

And pyes, on hem for to crye and chye
Thus lete I Canaceo hir hank keping
I wol na-more as now speke of hir ring
Til it come eft to purpos for to seyn
How that this faucon gat hir love ageyn
Repentant, as the storie telleth us,
By mediacioun of Cambalus,
The kinges sone, of whiche I yow tolde
But hennes-forth I wol my proces hold
To speke of adventures and of batayles,
That never yet was herd so grette me-
vailles. (652) 6.

First wol I telle yow of Cambuskan,
That in his tyme many a citee wan;
And after wol I speke of Algarsyf,
How that he wan Theodora to his wyf,
For whom ful ofte in greet peril he was,
Ne hadde he ben holpen by the stede-
bras; 66

And after wol I speke of Cambalo,
That faught in listes with the bretheren
two (666)
For Canacee, or that he mighte hir winne
And ther I lefte I wol ageyn biginne. 67

Explicit secunda pars.

Incipit pars tercia.

Appollo whirleth up his char so hye,
[T. om
Til that the god Mercurius houns th-
sye— [T. om
(Unfinished.)

THE FRANKLIN'S PROLOGUE.

The Prologe of the Frankeleyns Tale.

These olde gentil Britons in hir dayes
 Of diverse aventures maden layes, 710
 Rymeyed in hir firste Briton tonge;
 Which layes with hir instruments they
 songe, (40)
 Or elles redde hem for hir plesaunce;
 And oon of hem have I in remembraunce,
 Which I shal seyn with good wil as I
 can. 715

But, sires, by-cause I am a burel man,
 At my biginning first I yow biscehe
 Have me excused of my rude speche;

I larned never rethoryk certeyn;
 Thing that I speke, it moot be bare and
 playn. 720
 I sleep never on the mount of Pernaso,
 Ne larned Marcus Tullius Cithero. (50)
 Colours ne knowe I none, with-onten
 drede,
 But swiche colours as growen in the mede,
 Or elles swiche as men dye or peynta. 725
 Colours of rethoryk ben me to queynte;
 My spirit feleth noght of swich matere.
 But if yow list, my tale shul ye here.

THE FRANKELEYNS TALE.

Here biginneth the Frankeleyns Tale.

In Armorik, that called is Britayne,
 Ther was a knight that loved and dide
 his payne 730
 To serve a lady in his beste wyse;
 And many a labour, many a greet emprise
 He for his lady wroughte, er she were
 wonne.
 For she was oon, the faireste under sonne,
 And eek therto come of so heigh kinrede,
 That wel unnethes dorste this knight, for
 drede, 736
 Telle hir his wo, his peyne, and his
 distresse.
 But atte laste, she, for his worthinesse, (10)
 And namely for his meke obaysaunce,
 Hath swich a pitee caught of his pen-
 unce, 740

That prively she fil of his accord
 To take him for hir housbonde and hir
 lord,
 Of swich lordshipe as men han over hir
 wyves;
 And for to lede the more in blisse hir
 lyves, 744
 Of his free wil he swoor hir as a knight,
 That never in al his lyf he, day no
 night,
 Ne sholde up-on him take no maistrye
 Agayn hir wil, ne kythe hir jalousye, (20)
 But hir obeye, and folwe hir wil in al
 As any lover to his lady shal; 750
 Save that the name of soveraynetee,
 That wolde he have for shame of his
 degree.

She thanked him, and with ful greet
 humblesse
 She seyde, 'sire, sith of your gentillesse
 Ye profre me to have so large a reyne, 755
 No wolde never god bitwixe us twayne,
 As in my gilt, were outhur werre or stryf,
 Sir, I wol be your humble trewe wyf, (30)
 Have heer my trouthe, til that myn harte
 breste.'
 Thus been they bothe in quiete and in
 reate, 760
 For o thing, sires, sauflly dar I seye,
 That frendes everich other moot obeye,
 If they wol longe holden companye.
 Love wol nat ben constreyned by maist-
 trye,
 Whan maistrie comth, the god of love
 anon 765
 Beteth hisse winges, and farewel! he is
 gon!
 Love is a thing as any spirit free;
 Wommen of kinde desiren libertee, (40)
 And nat to ben constreyned as a thral;
 And so don men, if I soth seyen shal, 770
 Like who that is most pacient in love,
 He is at his advantage al above.
 Pacience is an heigh vertu certeyn;
 For it venquisseth, as thise clerkes seyn,
 Thinges that rigour sholde never atteyne.
 For every word men may nat chyde or
 pleyne, 776
 Lerneth to suffre, or elles, so moot I goon,
 Yeshul it lerne, wher-so ye wole or noon.
 For in this world, certain, ther no wight
 is, (31)
 That he ne dooth or seith som-tyne amis.
 Ire, siknesse, or constellacion, 781
 Wyn, wo, or chaunginge of complexion
 Canseth ful ofte to doon amis or spoken.
 On every wrong a man may nat be wroken;
 After the tyme, mooste he temperaunce 785
 To every wight that can on governaunce.
 And therefore hath this wyse worthy
 knight,
 To live in ese, suffraunce hir bihight, (60)
 And she to him ful wisly gan to swere
 That never sholde ther be defaute in here.
 Heer may men seen an humble wys
 accord, 791
 Thus hath she take hir servant and hir
 lord,

Servant in love, and lord in mariage;
 Than was he bothe in lordship and
 servage;
 Servage? nay, but in lordshipe above, 795
 Sith he hath bothe his lady and his love.
 His lady, certes, and his wyf also,
 The which that lawe of love acordeth to
 And whan he was in this prosperitee, (71)
 Hoom with his wyf he gooth to his
 contree, 800
 Nat fer fro Penmark, ther his dwelling
 was,
 Wher-as he liveth in blisse and in solas.
 Who coude telle, but he had wedded be,
 The joye, the ese, and the prosperitee
 That is bitwixe an housbonde and his wyf?
 A yeer and more lasted this blisful lyf, 805
 Til that the knight of which I speke of
 thus,
 That of Kayrrud was cleped Arveragus, (80)
 Shoop him to goon, and dwelle a yeer of
 tweyne
 In Engelond, that cleped was seek Briteyn,
 To seke in armes worship and honour, 811
 For al his lust he sette in swich labour,
 And dwelled ther two yeer, the book seith
 thus,
 Now wol I stante of this Arveragus,
 And speken I wole of Dorigene his wyf 815
 That loveth hir housbonde as hir hertes
 lyf.
 For his absence wepoth she and syketh,
 As doon thise noble wyves whan hem
 lyketh, 820
 She moorneth, waketh, wayleth, fasteth,
 pleyne, 819
 Desyr of his presence hir so distreyneth,
 That al this wyde world she sette at night.
 Hir frondes, whiche that knewe hir hevyn
 thought,
 Conforten hir in al that ever they may,
 They prechen hir, they telle hir night
 and day,
 That causeles she sleeth hir-self, alas! 825
 And every confort possible in this cas
 They doon to hir with al hir businessse,
 Al for to make hir love hir hevynesse, (100)
 By proces, as ye knowen everichoon,
 Men may so longe graven in a stoon, 830
 Til som figure ther-inne emprented be.
 So longe han they confortid hir, til she

Receyved hath, by hope and by rescoun,
Th'emprenting of hir consolacioun, 834
Thurgh which hir grete sorwe gan aswage;
She may nat alwey duren in swich rage.

And eek Arveragus, in al this care,
Hath sent hir lettres boorn of his welfare,
And that he wol come hastily agayn; (111)
Or elles hadde this sorwe hir herte alayn.

Hir freendes sawe hir sorwe gan to
slake, 841

And prayede hir on knees, for goddes
sake,

To come and romen hir in companye,
Away to dryve hir derke fantasye.

And finally, she graunted that requeste;
For wel she saugh that it was for the
beste. (118) 846

Now stood hir castel faste by the see,
And often with hir freendes walketh she
Hir to disporte up-on the bank an heigh,
Wher-as she many a ship and barge seigh
Seilinge hir cours, wher-as hem liste go;
But than was that a parcel of hir wo.

For to hir-self ful ofte 'allas!' seith she,
'Is ther no ship, of so manye as I see,
Wol bringen hom my lord? than were
myn herte 855

Al warished of his bittre peynes smerte.'

Another tyme ther wolde she sitte and
thinks,

And caste hir eyen downward fro the
brinke. (130)

But whan she saugh the grisly rokkes
blake,

For verray fere so wolde hir herte quake,
That on hir feet she mighte hir noght
sustene. 861

Than wolde she sitte adoun upon the
grene,

And pitously in-to the see biholde,

And seyn right thus, with sorweful sykkes
colde:

'Eterne god, that thurgh thy purvey-
aunce 865

Ledest the world by certein governaunce,
In ydal, as men seyn, ye no-thing make;

But, lord, thise grisly feendly rokkes
blake, (140)

That semen rather a foul confusioun

Of werk than any fair creacioun 870

Of swich a perfit wys god and a stable,

Why han ye wrought this werk unreson-
able?

For by this werk, south, north, ne west,
ne east,

Ther nis y-foetred man, ne brid, ne beest;
It dooth no good, to my wit, but anoyeth.
See ye nat, lord, how mankinde it
destroyeth? 876

An hundred thousand bodies of mankinde
Han rokkes alayn, al be they nat in minde,
Whiche mankinde is so fair part of thy
werk (151)

That thou it madest lyk to thyn owene
mark. 881

Than semed it ye hadde a greet chiertee
Toward mankinde; but how than may
it be

That ye swiche menes make it to de-
stroyen,

Whiche menes do no good, but ever
anoyen?

I woot wel clerkes wol seyn, as hem
leste, 885

By arguments, that al is for the beste,
Though I ne can the causes nat y-knowe.

But thilke god, that made wind to blowe,
As kepe my lord! this my conclusioun;

To clerkes lete I al disputioun. (162) 890

But wolde god that alle thise rokkes blake
Were sonken in-to helle for his sake!

These rokkes sleen myn herte for the fore.
Thus wolde she seyn, with many a pitous
tere.

Hir freendes sawe that it was no disport

To romen by the see, but discomfort; 896

And shopen for to pleyen somwher elles.

They leden hir by riveres and by welles,

And eek in othere places delitable; (171)

They dauncen, and they pleyen at ches
and tables. 900

So on a day, right in the morwe-tyde,

Un-to a gardin that was ther bisyde,

In which that they had maad hir ordin-
aunce

Of vitaille and of other purveyaunce,

They goon and pleye hem al the longe
day. 905

And this was on the sixte morwe of May,

Which May had peynted with his softe
shoures

This gardin ful of leves and of floures; (180)

And craft of mannes hand so curiously
 Arrayed hadde this gardin, trewely, 910
 That never was ther gardin of swich prys,
 But-if it were the verray paradys.
 Th' odour of floures and the fresshe sighte
 Wolde han maad any herte for to lighte
 That ever was born, but-if to gret sik-
 nesse, 915

Or to gret sorwe helde it in distresse;
 So ful it was of beautee with plesaunce.
 At-after diner gonne they to daunce, (190)
 And singe also, save Dorigen allone,
 Which made alwey hir compleint and hir
 mone; 920

For she ne saugh him on the daunce go,
 That was hir housbonde and hir love also.
 But natheles she moste a tyme abyde,
 And with good hope lete hir sorwe slyde.

Up-on this daunce, amonges othere men,
 Daunced a squyer biforen Dorigen, 926
 That fressher was and jolyer of array,
 As to my doom, than is the monthe of
 May. (200)

He singeth, daunceth, passinge any man
 That is, or was, sith that the world bigan.
 Ther-with he was, if men sholde him
 discryve, 931

Oon of the beste faringe man on-lyve;
 Yong, strong, right vertuous, and riche
 and wys,

And wel biloved, and holden in gret prys.
 And shortly, if the sothe I tellen shal, 935
 Unwiting of this Dorigen at al,

This lusty squyer, servant to Venus,
 Which that y-cleped was Aurelius, (210)

Had loved hir best of any creature
 Two yeer and more, as was his aventure.
 But never dorste he telle hir his gre-
 vaunce; 941

With-uten coppe he drank al his pen-
 aunce.

He was despayred, no-thing dorste he seye,
 Save in hissonges somewhat wolde he wreye
 His wo, as in a general compleyning; 945
 He seyde he lovede, and was biloved no-
 thing. (218)

Of swich matere made he manye layes,
 Songes, compleintes, roundels, virelayes,
 How that he dorste nat his sorwe telle,
 But languissbeth, as a furie dooth in helle;
 And dye he moste, he seyde, as dide Ekko

For Narcissus, that dorste nat telle hir wo.
 In other manere than ye here me seye,
 Ne dorste he nat to hir his wo biwreye;
 Save that, paraventure, som-tyme at
 daunces, 955

Ther yonge folk kepen hir observaunce,
 It may wel be he loked on hir face
 In swich a wyse, as man that asketh grace;
 But no-thing wiste she of his entente. (231)
 Natheles, it happed, er they thennes
 wente, 960

By-cause that he was hir neighebour,
 And was a man of worship and honour,
 And hadde y-knownen him of tyme yore,
 They fille in speche; and forth more and
 more

Un-to his purpos drough Aurelius, 965
 And whan he saugh his tyme, he seyde
 thus:

'Madame,' quod he, 'by god that this
 world made,

So that I wiste it mighte your herte
 glade, (240)

I wolde, that day that your Arveragus
 Went over the see, that I, Aurelius, 970
 Had went ther never I sholde have come
 agayn;

For wel I woot my service is in vayn.
 My guerdon is but bresting of myn herte;
 Madame, reweth upon my peynes smerte;
 For with a word ye may me sleen or save.
 Heer at your feet god wolde that I were
 grave! 976

I ne have as now no leyser more to
 seye;

Have mercy, swete, or ye wol do me deye!'

She gan to loke up-on Aurelius: (251)
 'Is this your wil,' quod she, 'and seye ye
 thus? 980

Never erst,' quod she, 'no wiste I what
 ye mente.

But now, Aurelie, I knowe your entente,
 By thilke god that yaf me soule and lyf.
 Ne shal I never been untrewed wyf 984
 In word ne werk, as fer as I have wit:
 I wol ben his to whom that I am knit;
 Tak this for fynal answer as of me.'

But after that in pley thus seyde she: (260)

'Aurelie,' quod she, 'by heighe god
 above, 986

Yet wolde I graunte yow to been your love,

Sin I yow see so pitously complayne;
 Loke what day that, endelong Britayne,
 Yeremove alle the rokkes, stoon by stoon,
 That they ne lette ship ne boot to goon—
 I seye, when ye han maad the coost so
 clene 995

Of rokkes, that ther nis no stoon y-sene,
 Than wol I love yow best of any man;
 Have hear my trouthe in al that ever I
 can. (370)

'Is ther non other grace in yow?' quod he.
 'No, by that lord,' quod she, 'that maketh
 me! 1000

For wel I woot that it shal never bityde,
 Lat swiche folies out of your herte slyde.
 What deyntee sholde a man han in his lyf
 For to go love another mannes wyf,
 That hath hir body whan so that him
 lyketh?' 1005

Aurelius ful ofte sore syketh;
 Wo was Aurelie, whan that he this herde,
 And with a sorweful herte he thus an-
 swerde: (1010)

'Madame,' quod he, 'this were an im-
 possible! 1009

Than moot I dye of sodein deth horrible,
 And with that word he turned him anon.
 Tho come hir othere freendes many oon,
 And in the aleyes romeden up and down,
 And no-thing wiste of this conclusioun,
 But sodeinly bigonne revel newe 1015
 Til that the brighte sonne loste his hewe;
 For th'orizonte hath reft the sonne his
 light; (1019)

This is as muche to seye as it was night,
 And hoom they goon in joye and in solas,
 Save only wrecche Aurelius, alas! 1020
 He to his hous is goon with sorweful herte;
 He seeth he may nat fro his deeth asterte.
 Him semed that he felte his herte colde;
 Up to the hevne his handes he gan holde,
 And on his knowes bare he sette him down,
 And in his raving seyde his orisoun. 1026
 For verray wo out of his wit he breyde.
 He niste what he spak, but thus he seyde;
 With pitous herte his pleynt hath he
 bigonne (301) 1030

Un-to the goddes, and first un-to the
 sonne: 1030

He seyde, 'Appollo, god and governour
 Of every plaunte, herbe, tree and flour,

That yevest, after thy declinacioun,
 To ech of hem his tyme and his seoun,
 As thyn herberwe chaungeth lowe or hye,
 Lord Phebus, cast thy merciable y8 1036
 On wrecche Aurelie, which that am but
 lorn. (309)

Lo, lord! my lady hath my deeth y-sworn
 With-oute gilt, but thy benignitee 1039
 Upon my dedly herte have som pitee!
 For wel I woot, lord Phebus, if yow leste,
 Ye may me helpen, save my lady, best.
 Now voucheth sauf that I may yow devyse
 How that I may been holpe and in what
 wyse. 1044

Your blisful suster, Lucina the shene,
 That of the see is chief goddesse and quene,
 Though Neptunus have deitee in the see,
 Yet emperesse aboven him is she: (310)
 Ye knowen wel, lord, that right as hir
 deayr 1049

Is to be quiked and lightned of your syr,
 For which she folweth yow ful bisily,
 Right so the see deayreth naturally
 To folwen hir, as she that is goddesse
 Bothe in the see and riveres more and
 lesse.

Wherfore, lord Phebus, this is my re-
 queste— 1055

Do this miracle, or do myn herte braste—
 That now, next at this opposicioun, (319)
 Which in the signe shal be of the Leoun,
 As preyeth hir so greet a flood to bringe,
 That fyve sadme at the leeste it overspringe
 The hyeste rokke in Armoryk Briteyne;
 And lat this flood endure yeres tweyne.
 That certes to my lady may I seye:

"Holdeth your heste, the rokkes been
 aways." 1064

Lord Phebus, dooth this miracle for me;
 Preys hir she go no faster cours than ye;
 I seye, preyeth your suster that she go
 No faster cours than ye thise yeres two.
 Than shal she been evene atte fulle alway,
 And spring-flood laste bothe night and
 day. (342) 1070

And, but she vouches sauf in swiche manere,
 To graunte me my sovereyn lady dera,
 Prey hir to sinken every rok adoun
 In-to hir owene derke regioun

Under the ground, ther Pluto dwalleth
 inne, 1075

Or never-mo shal I my lady winne.
 Thy temple in Delphos wol I barefoot sake;
 Lord Phobus, see the teres on my cheke,
 And of my peyne have som compassion.
 And with that word in swowne he fil
 adoun, (352) 1080

And longe tyme he lay forth in a traunce.

His brother, which that knew of his
 penaunce,

Up caughte him and to bedde he hath
 him broght.

Dispeyred in this torment and this thoght
 Lete I this woful creature lye; 1085

Chese he, for me, whether he wol live or
 dye.

Arveragus, with hele and greet honour,
 As he that was of chivalrye the flour, (360)
 Is comen hoom, and othere worthy men.

O blisful artow now, thou Dorigen, 1090
 That hast thy lusty housbonde in thyne
 armes,

The fresshe knight, the worthy man of
 armes,

That loveth thee, as his owene hertes lyf.
 No-thing list him to been imaginatyf

If any wight had spoke, whyl he was
 oute, 1095

To hire of love; he hadde of it no doute.

He noght entendeth to no swich matere,
 But daunceth, justeth, maketh hir good
 chere; (370)

And thus in joye and blisse I lete hem
 dwelle,

And of the syke Aurelius wol I telle. 1100

In langour and in torment furious
 Two yeer and more lay wrecche Aurelius,

Er any foot he mighte on erthe goon;
 No confort in this tyme hadde he noon,

Save of his brother, which that was a clerk;
 He knew of al this wo and al this werk.

For to non other creature certeyn 1107
 Of this matere he dorste no word seyn.

Under his brest he bar it more secree (381)
 Than ever dide Pamphilus for Galathée.

His brest was hool, with-oute for to sene,
 But in his herte ay was the arwe kene.

And wel ye knowe that of a sursanuro
 In surgerye is perilous the cure,

But men mighte touche the arwe, or come
 therby. 1115

His brother weep and wayled prively,

Til atte laste him fil in remembraunce,
 That whyl he was at Orlens in Franunce.
 As yonge clerkes, that been likerous (391)
 To reden artes that been curious, 1120
 Seken in every halke and every herne
 Particuler sciences for to lerne,

He him remembred that, upon a day,
 At Orlens in studie a book he saw

Of magik naturel, which his felawe, 1125
 That was that tyme a bachelor of lawe,

Al were he ther to lerne another craft,
 Had prively upon his desk y-laft; (400)

Which book spak muchel of the opera-
 clouns,

Touchinge the eighte and twenty man-
 sions 1130

That longen to the mone, and swich folwe,
 As in our dayes is nat worth a flye;

For holy chirches feith in our bileve
 Ne suffreth noon illusion us to greve.

And whan this book was in his remem-
 braunce, 1135

Anon for joye his herte gan to daunce,
 And to him-self he seyde prively:

'My brother shal be warissshed hastily:
 For I am siker that ther be sciences, (411)

By whiche men make diverse apparences
 Swiche as thise subtilite tregetoures pleye

For ofte at festes have I wel herd seye.
 That tregetours, with-inne an halle large,

Have maad come in a water and a barge,
 And in the halle rowen up and down. 1145

Somtyme hath semed come a grim leoun;
 And somtyme flouresspringe as in a mede;

Somtyme a vyne, and grapes whyte and
 rede; (420)

Somtyme a castel, al of lym and stoon;
 And whan hem lyked, voyded it anon.

Thus semed it to every mannes sighte.

Now than conclude I thus, that if I
 mighte 1152

At Orlens som old felawe y-finde,
 That hadde this mones mansions in minde,

Or other magik naturel above, 1155
 He sholde wel make my brother han his

love.
 For with an apparence a clerk may
 make

To mannes sighte, that alle the rokkes
 blake (430)

Of Britaigne weren y-voyded everichon,

and shippes by the brinke comen and
 gon, 1160
 and in swich forme endure a day or two ;
 han were my brother warissched of his
 wo.
 han moste she nedes holden hir bibeste,
 r elles he shal shame hir atte leste.
 What sholde I make a lenger tale of
 this? 1165
 n-to his brotheres bed he comen is,
 nd swich confort he yaf him for to gon
 O Orleans, that he up stirte anon, (440)
 nd on his way forthward thanne is he
 fare,
 hope for to ben lissed of his care. 1170
 Whan they were come almost to that
 citee,
 ut-if it were a two furlong or three,
 yong clerk rominge by him-self they
 mette,
 Wich that in Latin thriftily hem grette,
 nd after that he seyde a wonder thing :
 'I knowe,' quod he, 'the cause of your
 coming'; 1176
 nd er they farther any fote wente, (449)
 e tolde hem al that was in hir entente.
 This Briton clerk him asked of felawes
 he whiche that he had knowe in olde
 dawes; 1180
 nd he answerde him that they dede were,
 or which he weep ful ofte many a tere.
 Down of his hors Aurelius lighte anon,
 nd forth with this magicien is he gon
 oom to his hous, and made hem wel at
 ese. 1185
 em lakked no vitaille that mighte hem
 please;
 wel arrayed hous as ther was con
 nrelius in his lyf saugh never noon. (460)
 He shewed him, er he wente to sopeer,
 orestes, parkes ful of wilde deer; 1190
 her saugh he hartes with hir hornes
 hye,
 he gretteste that ever were seyn with yf.
 e saugh of hem an hondred slayn with
 houndes,
 nd somme with arwes blede of bitter
 woundes.
 e saugh, whan voided were thise wilde
 deer, 1195
 hise fauconers upon a fair river,

That with hir haukes han the heron
 slayn.
 Tho saugh he knightes justing in a playn;
 And after this, he dide him swich ple-
 saunce, (471)
 That he him shewed his lady on a daunce
 On which him-self he daunced, as him
 thoughte. 1201
 And whan this maister, that this magik
 wroughte,
 Saugh it was tyme, he clapte his handes
 two,
 And farewell! al our revel was ago.
 And yet remoerved they never out of the
 hous, 1205
 Why! they saugh al this sighte merveillous,
 But in his studie, ther-as his bookes be,
 They seten stilla, and no wight but they
 three. (480)
 To him this maister called his squyer,
 And seyde him thus: 'Is redy our soper?
 Almost an houre it is, I undertake, 1211
 Sith I yow had our soper for to make,
 Whan that thise worthy men wenten
 with me
 In-to my studie, ther-as my bookes be.'
 'Sire,' quod this squyer, 'whan it lyketh
 yow, 1215
 It is al redy, though ye wol right now.'
 'Go we than soupe,' quod he, 'as for the
 beste;
 This amorous folk som-tyme mote han
 reste.' (490)
 At-after soper fille they in tretes,
 What somme sholde this maistres guer-
 don be, 1220
 To ranoeven alle the rokkes of Britayne,
 And eek from Gerounde to the mouth of
 Bayne.
 He made it strange, and swoor, so god
 him save,
 Lasse than a thousand pound he wolde
 nat have,
 Ne gladly for that somme he wolde nat
 goon. 1225
 Aurelius, with blisful herte anon,
 Answerde thus, 'fy on a thousand pound!
 This wyde world, which that men seye is
 round, (500)
 I wolde it yave, if I were lord of it, 1229
 This bargayn is ful drive, for we ben knit.

Ye shal be payed trowely, by my trouthe!
But loketh now, for no negligence or
slouthes,

Ye tarie us heer no langer than to-morwe.
'Nay,' quod this clark, 'have heer my
feith to borwe.'

To bedde is goon Aurelius whan him
lestes, 1135
And wel ny al that night he hadde his
reste; (1138)

What for his labour and his hope of blisse,
His woful herte of penaunce hadde a lisse.

Upon the morwe, whan that it was day,
To Britaigne toke they the righte way, 1140
Aurelius, and this magicien biayde,
And been descended ther they wolde
abyde;

And this was, as the bokes me remembre,
The colde frosty season of Decembre.

Phebus wax old, and hewed lyk latoun,
That in his hote declinacioun 1146
Shoon as the burned gold with streames
brighte; (1149)

But now in Capricorn adoun he lighte,
Wher-as he shoon ful pale, I dar wel soyn.
The bittre frostes, with the sleet and reyn,
Destroyed hath the grene in every yerd.
Janus sat by the fyr, with double berd,
And drinketh of his bugle-horn the wyn.
Biforn him stant braun of the tusked
swyn, 1154

And 'Nowel' cryeth every lusty man.

Aurelius, in al that ever he can,
Doth to his maister chere and reverence,
And preyeth him to doon his diligence
To bringen him out of his peynes amerte,
Or with a sword that he wolde slitte his
herte. (1152) 1160

This subtil clerk swich routhe had of
this man,

That night and day he spode him that
he can,

To wayte a tyme of his conclusioun;
Thus is to seye, to make illusioun,
By swich an apparence or jogelrye, 1165
I ne can no termes of astrologye,
That she and every wight sholde wene
and seye, (1169)

That of Britaigne the rokkes were aweye,
Or elles they were sonken under grounde.
So atte laste he hath his tyme y-founde

To maken his japes and his wretched-
nesses 1171

Of swich a superstitious cursedness.
His tables Tolotanes forth he brought,
Ful wel corrected, ne ther lakked noght,
Neither his collect ne his expans yeres,
Ne his rotes ne his othere geres, 1176
As been his centres and his arguments,
And his proporcionals convenientes (1179)
For his equacions in every thing.

And, by his eighte spere in his wiking,
He knew ful wel how far Almath was
shove 1181

Fro the heed of thilke fixe Aries above
That in the ninthe speere considered is;
Ful subtilly he calculated al this.

Whan he had founde his firste mes-
sioun, 1185

He knew the remenant by proporcioun;
And knew the arying of his mes-
weel,

And in whos face, and terme, and every-
deel; (1189)

And knew ful weel the mones mansioun
Acordaunt to his operacioun, 1190
And knew also his othere observances
For swiche illusiouns and swiche mes-
chaunces

As bethen folk used in thilke dayes;
For which no longer maketh he delays,
But thurgh his magik, for a wyke or
tweye, 1195

It semed that alle the rokkes were aweye.

Aurelius, which that yet despeired is
Wher he shal han his love or fare amis,
Awaiteth night and day on this miracle;
And whan he knew that ther was noon
obstacle, (1193) 1199

That voided were thise rokkes everichon,
Down to his maistres feet he flil anon,
And seyde, 'I woful wrecche, Aurelius,
Thanke yow, lord, and lady myn Venus.
That me han holpen fro my cares colde.'
And to the temple his wey forth hath he
holde, 1206

Wher-as he knew he sholde his lady see.
And whan he saugh his tyme, anon-right
he, (1209)

With dredful herte and with ful humble
chere,

Salwed hath his sovereyn lady dore: 1210

'My righte lady,' quod this woful man,
'Whom I most drede and love as I best
can,

And lothest were of al this world displese,
Nere it that I for yow have swich disece,
That I moste dyen heer at your foot
anon, 1315

Noght wolde I telle how me is wo bigon;
But certes outhere moste I dye or pleyne;
Ye slee me giltelees for verray peyne. (590)
But of my deeth, thogh that ye have no
routhe,

Avyseth yow, er that ye breke your
trouthe. 1320

Repenteth yow, for thilke god above,
Er ye me sleen by-cause that I yow love.
For, madame, wel ye woot what ye han
hight;

Nat that I chalange any thing of right
Of yow my sovereyn lady, but your grace;
But in a gardin yond, at swich a place,
Ye woot right wel what ye bihighten me;
And in myn hand your trouthe plighen
ye (600)

To love me best, god woot, ye seyde so,
Al be that I unworthy be therto. 1330
Madame, I speke it for the honour of yow,
More than to save myn hertes lyf right
now;

I have do so as ye comanded me;
And if ye vouche-sauf, ye may go see.
Doth as yow list, have your biheste in
minde, 1335

For quik or deed, right ther ye shul me
finde;

In yow lyth al, to do me live or deye;—
But wel I woot the rokkes been awaye!

He taketh his leve, and she astonied
stood, (611)

In al hir face nas a drope of blood; 1340
She wende never han come in swich a
trappe:

'Allas!' quod she, 'that ever this sholde
happe!

For wende I never, by possibilitee,
That swich a monstre or merveille mighte
be!

It is agayns the proces of nature:' 1345

And hoom she gooth a sorweful creature.

For verray fere unnethe may she go,

She wepeth, wailleth, al a day or two, (620)

And swowneth, that it routhe was to see;
But why it was, to no wight tolde she; 1350
For out of tounce was goon Arveragus.

But to hir-self she spak, and seyde thus,
With face pale and with ful sorweful
chere,

In hir compleynt, as ye shul after here:

'Allas,' quod she, 'on thee, Fortune,
I pleyne, 1355

That unwar wrapped hast me in thy
cheyne;

For which, t'escape, woot I no socour
Save only deeth or elles dishonour; (630)
Oon of thise two bihoveth me to chese.

But natheless, yet have I lever lese 1360
My lyf than of my body have a shame,

Or knowe my-selven fals, or lese my name,
And with my deth I may be quit, y-wis.

Hath ther nat many a noble wyf, er
this, 1364

And many a mayde y-slayn hir-self, alas!
Rather than with hir body doon trespas?

Yis, certes, lo, thise stories beren wit-
nesse;

Whan thretty tyraunts, ful of cursed-
nesse, (640)

Had slayn Phidoun in Athenes, atte feste,
They comanded his doghtres for t'areste,

And bringen hem biforn hem in despyt
Al naked, to fulfille hir foul delyt, 1372

And in hir fadres blood they made hem
daunce

Upon the pavement, god yeve hem mis-
chaunce!

For which thise woful maydens, ful of
drede, 1375

Rather than they wolde lese hir mayden-
hede,

They prively ben stirt in-to a welle,
And dreynte hem-selven, as the bokes
telle. (650)

They of Messene lete enquere and seke
Of Lacedomie fifty maydens eke, 1380

On whiche they wolden doon hir lecherye;
But was ther noon of al that companye

That she nas slayn, and with a good
entente

Chees rather for to dye than assente
To been oppressed of hir maydenhede. 1385

Why sholde I thanne to dye been in
drede?

Lo, eek, the tiraunt Aristoclidēs (659)
That loved a mayden, heet Stimphalides,
Whan that hir fader slayn was on a night,
Un-to Dianes temple goth she right, 1390
And hente the image in hir handes two,
Fro which image wolde she never go.

No wight ne mighte hir handes of it arace,
Til she was slayn right in the selve place.
Now sith that maydens hadden swich
despyt 1395

To been defouled with mannes foul delyt,
Wel oghte a wyf rather hir-selven slee
Than be defouled, as it thinketh me. (670)

What shal I seyn of Hasdrubales wyf,
That at Cartage birafte hir-self hir lyf?
For whan she saugh that Romyngs wan
the toun, 1401

She took hir children alle, and skipte
adoun

In-to the fyr, and chees rather to dye
Than any Romyng dide hir vileinye.

Hath nat Lucrese y-slayn hir-self,
allas! 1405

At Rome, whanne she oppressed was
Of Tarquin, for hir thoughte it was
a shame

To liven whan she hadde lost hir name?

The sevene maydens of Milesie also (681)
Han slayn hem-self, for verray drede and
wo, 1410

Rather than folk of Gaule hem sholde
opprese.

Mo than a thousand stories, as I gesse,
Coude I now telle as touchinge this
matere.

Whan Habradate was slayn, his wyf so
dere

Hirselven slow, and leet hir blood to
glyde 1415

In Habradates woundes depe and wyde,
And seyde, "my body, at the leeste way,
Ther shal no wight defoulen, if I may."

What sholde I mo ensamples heer-of
sayn, (691) 1419

Sith that so manye han hem-selven slayn
Wel rather than they wolde defouled be?
I wol conclude, that it is bet for me
To sleen my-self, than been defouled thus.
I wol be trewe un-to Arveragus,
Or rather sleen my-self in som manere,

As dide Demociones doghter dere, 1426

By-cause that she wolde nat defouled be.

O Cedarus! it is ful greet pitee, (700)
To reden how thy doghtren deyde, alas!
That slowe hem-selven for swich maner
cas. 1430

As greet a pitee was it, or wel more,
The Theban mayden, that for Nicanore
Hir-selven slow, right for swich maner
wo.

Another Theban mayden dide right so;
For oon of Macedoine hadde hir oppressed,
She with hir deeth hir maydenhede re-
dressed. 1436

What shal I seye of Nicerates wyf,
That for swich cas birafte hir-self hir lyf?

How trewe eek was to Alcebiades (711)
His love, that rather for to dyen chees 1440
Than for to suffre his body unburied be!
Lo which a wyf was Alceste, quod she.

'What seith Omer of gode Penelope?
Al Grece knoweth of hir chastitee.

Pardee, of Laodomya is writen thus, 1445
That whan at Troye was slayn Prothe-
selaus,

No lenger wolde she live after his day.

The same of noble Porcia telle I may;
With-oute Brutus coude she nat live, (721)
To whom she hadde al hool hir herte
yive. 1450

The parfit wyfhod of Arthemeseye
Honoured is thurgh al the Barbarye.

O Teuta, queen! thy wyfly chastitee
To alle wyves may a mirour be. 1454

The same thing I seye of Bilia, [T. om.
Of Rodogone, and eek Valeria.] [T. om.

Thus pleyned Dorigene a day or tweye,
Purposinge ever that she wolde deyde. (730)

But nathelees, upon the thridde night,
Hom cam Arveragus, this worthy knight,
And asked hir, why that she weep so
sore? 1461

And she gan wepen ever lenger the more.
'Allas!' quod she, 'that ever was
I born!

Thus have I seyde,' quod she, 'thus have
I sworn'—

And told him al as ye han herd bifore; 1465
It nedeth nat reherce it yow na-more.

This housbond with glad chere, in
freendly wyse,

Answerde and seyde as I shal yow devyse:

'Is ther oght elles, Dorigen, but this?' (741)

'Nay, nay,' quod she, 'god help me so,
as wis; 1470

This is to mucche, and it were goddes wille.'

'Ye, wyf,' quod he, 'lat slepen that is
stille;

It may be wel, paraventure, yet to-day.

Ye shul your trouthe holden, by my fay!

For god so wisly have mercy on me, 1475

I hadde wel lever y-stiked for to be,

For verray love which that I to yow have,

But-if ye sholde your trouthe kepe and
save. (750)

Trouthe is the hyeste thing that man
may kepe:—

But with that word he brast anon to
wepe, 1480

And seyde, 'I yow forbede, up peyne of
deeth,

That never, whyl thee lasteth lyf ne
breeth,

To no wight tel thou of this aventure.

As I may best, I wol my wo endure,

Ne make no contenance of hevynesse, 1485

That folk of yow may demen harm or
gesse.'

And forth he cleped a squyer and
a mayde:

'Goth forth anon with Dorigen,' he
sayde, (760)

'And bringeth hir to swich a place
anon.'

They take hir leve, and on hir way they
gon; 1490

But they ne wiste why she thider wente.

He nolde no wight tellen his entente. (764)

Paraventure an heep of yow, y-wis,
[T. om.

Wol holden him a lewed man in this,
[T. om.

That he wol putte his wyf in jupartye;
[T. om.

Herkneth the tale, er ye up-on hir crye.
[T. om.

She may have bettre fortune than yow
semeth; [T. om.

And whan that ye han herd the tale,
demeth. [T. om.

This squyer, which that highte Aurelius,

On Dorigen that was so amorous, (772) 1500

Of aventure happed hir to mete

Amidde the toun, right in the quikkest
strete,

As she was boun to goon the wey forth-
right

Toward the gardin ther-as she had hight.

And he was to the gardinward also; 1505

For wel he spyed, whan she wolde go

Out of hir hous to any maner place.

But thus they mette, of aventure or
grace; (780)

And he saleweth hir with glad entente,

And asked of hir whiderward she wente?

And she answerde, half as she were mad,

'Un-to the gardin, as myn housbond bad,
My trouthe for to holde, allas! allas!'

Aurelius gan wondren on this cas,

And in his herte had greet compassioun

Of hir and of hir lamentacioun, 1516

And of Arveragus, the worthy knight,

That bad hir holden al that she had
hight, (790)

So looth him was his wyf sholde breke
hir trouthe;

And in his herte he caughte of this greet
routhe, 1520

Consideringe the beste on every syde,

That fro his lust yet were him lever abyde

Than doon so heigh a cherlish wrecched-
nesse

Agayns franchyse and alle gentillesse;

For which in fewe wordes seyde he thus:

'Madame, seyth to your lord Arveragus,

That sith I see his grete gentillesse (800)

To yow, and eek I see wel your distresse,

That him were lever han shame (and that
were routhe)

Than ye to me sholde breke thus your
trouthe, 1530

I have wel lever ever to suffre wo

Than I departe the love bitwix yow two.

I yow relese, madame, in-to your hond

Quit every surement and every bond, 1534

That ye han maad to me as heer-biforn,

Sith thilke tyme which that ye were born.

My trouthe I plighte, I shal yow never
repreve

Of no biheste, and here I take my leve,

As of the treweste and the beste wyf (811)

That ever yet I knew in al my lyf. 1540

But every wyf be-war of hir biheste,

On Dorigene remembreth atte leste.

Thus can a squyer doom a gentil dede,
As well as can a knight, with-outen drede.*

She thonketh him up-on hir knees al
bare, 1545

And hoom un-to hir housbond is she fare,
And tolde him al as ye han herd me sayd;
And he ye siker, he was so weel apayd, (820)
That it were impossible me to wryte;
What sholde I lenger of this cas endyte?

Arveragus and Dorigene his wyf 1551
In sovereyn blisse leden forth hir lyf.

Never eft ne was ther angre hem bitwene;
He cheriseth hir as though she were
a quene; 1554

And she was to him trewe for evermore,
Of thise two folk ye gete of me na-more.

Aurellus, that his cost hath al forloren,
Curseth the tyme that ever he was born;
'Allas,' quod he, 'allas! that I bihighte
Of pure gold a thousand pound of
wighte (832) 1560

Un-to this philosophre! how shal I do?
I see na-more but that I am fordo.
Myn heritage moot I nedes selle,
And been a begger; heer may I nat
dwelle,

And shamen al my kinrede in this place,
But I of him may gete bettre grace. 1566
But natheles, I wol of him assaye, (839)
At certeyn dayes, yeer by yeer, to paye,
And thanke him of his grete courtesye;
My trouthe wol I kepe, I wol nat lye.' 1570

With herte soor he gooth un-to his cofre,
And broghte gold un-to this philosophre,
The value of fyve hundred pound, I gesse,
And him bisecheth, of his gentillesse,
To graunte him dayes of the remenaunt,
And seyde, 'maister, I dar wel make
avaunt, 1576

I failed never of my trouthe as yit;
For sikerly my dette shal be quit (850)
Towardes yow, how-ever that I fare
To goon a-begged in my kirtle bare. 1580
But wolde ye vouche-sauf, up-on seurtee,
Two yeer or three for to respyten me,
Than were I wel; for oiles moot I selle
Myn heritage; thier is na-more to telle.'

This philosophre sobrely answerde, 1585

And seyde thus, when he thise wordes
herde: (858)

'Have I nat holden covenant un-to thee?'

'Yes, certes, wel and trewely,' quod he.

'Hastow nat had thy lady as thee lyketh?'

'No, no,' quod he, and sorwefully he
syketh. 1590

'What was the cause? tel me if thou can.'

Aurellus his tale anon bigan,

And tolde him al, as ye han herd bifore;
It nedeth nat to yow reherce it more.

He seide, 'Arveragus, of gentillesse, 1595
Had lever dye in sorwe and in distresse
Than that his wyf were of hir trouthe
fals.' (869)

The sorwe of Dorigen he tolde him al,
How looth hir was to been a wikked wyf,
And that she lever had lost that day hir
lyf, 1600

And that hir trouthe she swoor, thurgh
innocence:

'She never erst herde speke of apparence;
That made me han of hir so greet pitee.
And right as frely as he sente hir me,
As frely sente I hir to him ageyn. 1605
This al and som, ther is na-more to seyn.'

This philosophre answerde, 'leve
brother,

Everich of yow dide gentilly til other, (880)
Thou art a squyer, and he is a knight.
But god forbede, for his blisful might, 1610
But-if a clerk coude doon a gentil dede
As wel as any of yow, it is no drede'

Sire, I release thee thy thousand pound.
As thou right now were copen out of the
ground, 1614

No never er now ne haddest knowen me.
For sire, I wol nat take a peny of thee
For al my craft, ne noght for my travaill.
Thou hast y-payd wel for my vitaille; (890)
It is y-nogh, and farewell, have good day.'
And took his hors, and forth he gooth
his way. 1620

Lordinges, this question wolde I aske
now,

Which was the moste free, as thynketh yow?
Now telleth me, er that ye farther wende.
I can na-more, my tale is at an ende. (895)

Here is ended the Frankeloyne Tale.

* * The six lines, numbered 11929-34 in Tyrwhitt's text, are spurious; for his ll. 11935-11902, see pp. 551-564; for ll. 11903-119468, see pp. 492-551.

GROUP G.

THE SECONDE NONNES TALE.

The Prologe of the Seconde Nonnes Tale.

THE minstre and the norice un-to vyces,
Which that men clepe in English ydel-
nesse,
That porter of the gate is of delyses,
Teechus, and by hir contrarie hir op-
presse,
That is to seyn, by lewful bisnesse, 5
Wel oghten we to doon al our entente,
Lest that the feend thurgh ydelnesse us
hente.

For he, that with his thousand cordes eyle
Continuallie us waiteth to biclappe,
Whan he may man in ydelnesse espye, so
He can so lightly cacche him in his trappe,
Til that a man be hent right by the lappe,
He nis nat war the feend hath him in
honde;
Wel oughte us werche, and ydelnes with-
stonde.

And though men dradden never for to dye,
Yet seen men wel by reson douteles, 16
That ydelnesse is roten alogardye,
Of which ther never comth no good
encrees;
And seen, that slouth the hir holdeth in
a lees
Only to slepe, and for to ete and drinke,
And to deuouren al that othere swinke. 21

And for to putte us fro swich ydelnesse,
That cause is of so great confusioun,
I have heer doon my faithful bisnesse,
After the legende, in translacioun 25
Right of thy glorious lyf and passioun,
Thou with thy garland wrought of rose
and lillie;
Thee mene I, mayde and martir, seint
Cecillie!

Inuocacio ad Mariam.

And thou that flour of virgines art alle,
Of whom that Bernard list so wel to
wryte, 30
To thee at my biginning first I calle;
Thou comfort of us wrecches, do me
endyte
Thy maydens deeth, than wan thurgh hir
meryte
The eternal lyf, and of the feend victorie,
As man may after reden in hir storie. 35
Thou mayde and mooder, doghter of thy
sone,
Thou welles of mercy, sinful soules cure,
In whom that god, for bountee, chees to
wone,
Thou humble, and heigh over every
creature,
Thou nobledest so ferforth our nature, 40
That no desceyn the maker hadde of
kinde,
His sone in blode and flesh to clothe and
winde.

Withinne the cloistre blisful of thy sydes
Took mannes shap the eternal love and
pees,
That of the tryne compas lord and gyde
is, 45
Whom erthe and see and heven, out of
reles,
Ay herien; and thou, virgin wemmoles,
Bar of thy body, and dweltest mayden
pure,
The creatour of every creature.

Assembled is in thee magnificence 50
With mercy, goodness, and with swich
pitee

That thou, that art the sonne of excel-
lance,
Nat only helpest hem that prayen thee,
But ofte tyme, of thy benignitee, 54
Ful frely, er that men thyn help bisceche,
Thou goost biforn, and art hir lyves leche.

Now help, thou make and blisful fayre
mayde,
Me, flamed wreoche, in this desert of galle;
Think on the woman Cananee, that
sayde

That whelpes eten somme of the crummes
alle 60
That from hir lordes table been y-falle;
And though that I, unworthy sone of Eve,
Be sinful, yet accepte my bilave.

And, for that feith is deed with-outen
werkes,
So for to werken yif me wit and space, 65
That I be quit fro thennas that most dark
is!

O thou, that art so fayr and ful of grace,
Be myn advocat in that heighe place
Ther-as withouten ende is songe 'Osanne,'
Thou Cristes mooder, doghter dere of
Anne! 70

And of thy light my soule in prison lighte,
That troubled is by the contagioun
Of my body, and also by the wights
Of erthly luste and fals affeccioun;
O haven of refut, o salvacioun 75
Of hem that been in sorwe and in dis-
tresse,

Now help, for to my werk I wol me dresse.

Yet preys I yow that reden that I wryte,
Foryeve me, that I do no diligence
This ilke storie subtilly to endyte; 80
For both have I the wordes and sentence
Of him that at the seintes reverence
The storie wroot, and folwe hir legenda,
And prey yow, that ye wol my werk
amende.

*Interpretacio nominis Cecilie, quam ponit
frater Iacobus Ianuensis in Legenda
Aurea.*

First wolde I yow the name of seint
Cecilie 85
Expounne, as men may in hir storie see,

It is to seye in English 'hevenes illie,'
For pure chastnesse of virginitee;
Or, for the whytnesse hadde of honestee,
And grene of consciensce, and of good
fame 90
The sote savour, 'illie' was hir name.

Or Cecile is to seye 'the way to blinde,'
For she ensample was by good techinge;
Or elles Cecile, as I writen finde,
Is joyned, by a maner conjoininge 95
Of 'hevene' and 'Lia'; and heer, in
figuringe,
The 'heven' is set for thought of holinesse,
And 'Lia' for hir lasting businessse.

Cecile may eek be seyde in this manere,
'Wanting of blindnesse,' for hir grete
light 100
Of sapience, and for hir thewes clere;
Or elles, lo! this maydens name bright
Of 'hevene' and 'lees' comth, for which
by right
Men mighte hir wel 'the heven of peple'
calle, 105
Ensample of gode and wyse werkes alle.

For 'lees' 'peple' in English is to seye.
And right as men may in the hevene see
The sonne and mone and sterres every
weye,
Right so men gostly, in this mayden free,
Seyen of feith the magnanimittee, 110
And eek the cleernesce hool of sapience,
And sondry werkes, brighte of excellence.

And right so as these philosophres wryte
That heven is swift and round and eek
brenninge,

Right so was fayre Cecilie the whyte 115
Ful swift and bisy ever in good werkinge,
And round and hool in good perseveringe,
And brenning ever in charitee ful brighte,
Now have I yow declared what she highte.

Explicit.

Here biginneth the Seconde Nonnes
Tale, of the lyf of Seinte Cecile.

This mayden bright Cecilie, as hir lyf
seith, 120
Was comen of Romayns, and of noble
kinde,

hir cradel up fostred in the
d bar his gospel in hir minde;
essed, as I writen finde,
are, and god to love and drede,
m to kepe hir maydenhede. 126

his mayden sholda unto a man
e, that was ful yong of age,
y-cleped was Valerian,
is comen of hir mariage, 130
out and humble in hir corage,
obe of gold, that sat ful fayre,
ir flesh y-clad hir in an hayre.

he organs maden melodye,
e in herte thus sang she; 135
'soule and eek my body gye
l, lest that I confounded be.'
s love that deyde upon a tree,
ide or thridde day she faste,
s in hir orisons ful faste. 140

cam, and to bedde moste she
mebonde, as ofte is the manere,
' to him she seyde anon,
id wel beloved spouse dere,
mseil, and ye wolde it here,
, right fain I wolde unto yow
146

were ye shul me nat biwreye.'
n faste unto hir swere,
cas, ne thing that mighte be,
ever-mo biwreyn here; 150
at erst to him thus seyde she,
angel which that loveth me,
greet love, wher-so I wake or

ny body for to kepe. 154

he may felen, out of drede,
tonche or love in vileinye,
on wol slee yow with the dede,
r yowthe thus ye shulden dye;
ye in clene love me gye,
v loven as me, for your clene-
160

1 yow his joye and his bright-

Valerian, corrected as god wolde,
Answerde agayn, 'if I shal trusten thee,
Let me that angel see, and him biholde;
And if that it a verray angel be, 165
Than wol I doon as thou hast preyed me;
And if thou love another man, for sothe
Right with this sword than wol I slee yow
bothe.'

Cecile answerde anon right in this wyse,
'If that yow list, the angel shul ye see, 170
So that ye trowe on Crist and yow bap-
tysse.
Goth forth to Via Apia,' quod she,
'That fro this toun ne stant but myles
thre,
And, to the povre folkes that ther dwelle,
Sey hem right thus, as that I shal yow
telle. 175

Telle hem that I, Cecile, yow to ham sente,
To shewen yow the gode Urban the olde,
For secree nedes and for good entente,
And whan that ye seint Urban han bi-
holde,
Telle him the wordes whiche I to yow
tolde; 180
And whan that he hath purged yow fro
sinne,
Thanne shul ye see that angel, er ye
twinne.'

Valerian is to the place y-gon,
And right as him was taught by his
lerninge,
He fond this holy olde Urban anon 185
Among the seintes buriels lotinge.
And he anon, with-uten taryinge,
Dide his message; and whan that he it
tolde,
Urban for joye his hondes gan up holde.

The teres from his yēn lest he falle— 190
'Almighty lord, O Jesu Crist,' quod he,
'Sower of chast conseil, herde of us alle,
The fruit of thilke seed of chastitee
That thou hast sowe in Cecile, tak to thee!
Lo, lyk a bisy bee, with-uten gyle, 195
Thee serveth ay thyn owene thral Cecile!

For thilke spouse, that she took but now
Ful lyk a fiere leoun, she sendeth here,

As meke as ever was any lamb, to yow !'
 And with that worde, anon ther gan
 appere 200
 An old man, clad in whyte clothes clere,
 That hadde a book with lettre of golde in
 honde,
 And gan biforn Valerian to stonde.

Valerian as deed fl down for drede
 Whan he him saugh, and he up hente
 him tho, 205
 And on his book right thus he gan to
 rede—
 'Oo Lord, oo feith, oo god with-uten mo,
 Oo Cristendom, and fader of alle also,
 Aboven alle and over al everywhere'—
 Thise wordes al with gold y-writen were.

Whan this was rad, than seyde this olde
 man, 211
 'Levestow this thing or no? sey ye or
 nay.'
 'I leve al this thing,' quod Valerian,
 'For sother thing than this, I dar wel say,
 Under the hevene no wight thinko may.'
 Tho vanissed th'olde man, he nisto
 where, 216
 And pope Urban him cristened right
 there.

Valerian goth hoom, and fnt Cecilie
 With-inne his chambre with an angel
 stonde ;
 This angel hadde of roses and of lilie 220
 Coronas two, the which he bar in honde ;
 And first to Cecile, as I understonde,
 He yaf that oon, and after gan he take
 That other to Valerian, hir make.

'With body clene and with unwemmed
 thoght 225
 Kepeth ay wel thise coronas,' quod he ;
 'Fro Paradys to yow have I hem broght,
 Ne never-mo ne shal they roten be,
 Ne lese her sote savour, trusteth me ;
 Ne never wight shal seen hem with his yē,
 But he be chaast and hate vileinyē. 231

And thou, Valerian, for thou so sone
 Assentedest to good conseil also,
 Sey what thee list, and thou shalt han
 thy bone.'

'I have a brother,' quod Valerian tho, 235
 'That in this world I love no man so.
 I pray yow that my brother may han
 grace
 To knowe the trouthe, as I do in this
 place.'

The angel seyde, 'god lyketh thy requests,
 And bothe, with the palm of martirdom,
 Ye shullen come unto his blisful festa.'
 And with that word Tiburce his brother
 com.

And whan that he the savour undernom
 Which that the roses and the lilies caste,
 With-inne his herte he gan to wondre
 faste, 245

And seyde, 'I wondre, this tyme of the
 yeer,

Whennes that sote savour cometh so
 Of rose and lilies that I smelle heer.
 For though I hadde hem in myn hondes
 two, 249

The savour mighte in me no depper go.
 The sote smel that in myn herte I finde
 Hath chaunged me al in another kinde.'

Valerian seyde, 'two coronas han we,
 Snow-whyte and rose-reed, that shynen
 clere,
 Whiche that thyn yēn han no might to
 see ; 255

And as thou smellest hem thurgh my
 preyere,
 So shaltow seen hem, leve brother dere,
 If it so be thou wolt, withouten slouthe,
 Bileve aright and knownen verray trouthe.'

Tiburce answerde, 'soistow this to me 260
 In soothnesse, or in dreem I herkne this?'
 'In dremes,' quod Valerian, 'han we be
 Unto this tyme, brother myn, y-wis.
 But now at erst in trouthe our dwellingis.'
 'How woostow this,' quod Tiburce, 'in
 what wyse?' 265
 Quod Valerian, 'that shal I thee devyse.

The angel of god hath me the trouthe
 y-taught
 Which thou shalt seen, if that thou wolt
 reneye

The ydoles and be clene, and elles
naught.— 269

And of the miracle of thise coronestweye
Saint Ambrose in his preface list to seye;
Solempnely this noble doctour dere
Commendeth it, and seith in this manere:

The palm of martirdom for to receyve,
Seinte Cecile, fulfild of goddes yifte, 275
The world and eek hir chambre gan she
weyve;

Witnes Tyburces and +Valerians shrifte,
To whiche god of his bountee wolde
shifte

Corones twe of floures wel smellinge,
And made his angel hem the corones
bringe: 280

The mayde hath broght thise men to
blisse above;

The world hath wist what it is worth,
certeyn,

Devocioun of chastitee to love.—

The shewede him Cecile al open and playn
That alle ydoles nis but a thing in veyn;
For they been dombe, and therto they
been deve, 286

And charged him his ydoles for to leve.

'Who so that troweth nat this, a beste
he is,'

Quod the Tiburce, 'if that I shal nat lye.'
And she gan kisse his brest, that herde
this, 290

And was ful glad he coude trouthe espye.

'This day I take thee for myn allye,'

Seyde this blisful fayre mayde dere;

And after that she seyde as ye may here:

'Lo, right so as the love of Crist,' quod
she, 295

'Made me thy brotheres wyf, right in
that wyse

Anon for myn allye heer take I thee,

Sin that thou wolt thyn ydoles despyse.

Go with thy brother now, and thee bap-
tyse,

And make thee clene; so that thou mowe
biholde 300

The angels face of which thy brother
tolde.'

Tiburce answerde and seyde, 'brother
dere,

First tel me whider I shal, and to what
man?'

'To whom?' quod he, 'com forth with
right good chere,

I wol thee lede unto the pope Urban.' 305

'Til Urban? brother myn Valerian,'

Quod the Tiburce, 'woltowmethider lede?
Me thinketh that it were a wonder dede.

Ne menestow nat Urban,' quod he tho,

'That is so ofte dampned to be deed, 310

And woneth in halkes alway to and fro,

And dar nat ones putte forth his heed?

Men sholde him brennen in a fyr so reed

If he were founde, or that men mighte him
spye;

And we also, to bere him companye— 315

And whyl we seken thilke divinitee

That is y-hid in heveme prively,

Algate y-brend in this world shul we be?'

To whom Cecile answerde boldely, 319

'Men mighten dreden wel and skilfully

This lyf to lese, myn owene dere brother,

If this were livinge only and non other.

But ther is better lyf in other place,

That never shal be lost, ne drede thee
nought,

Which goddes sone us tolde thurgh his
grace; 325

That fadres sone hath alle thinges wrought;

And al that wrought is with a skilful thought,

The goost, that fro the fader gan procede,

Hath sowled hem, withouten any drede.

By word and by miracle goddes sone, 330

Whan he was in this world, declared here

That ther was other lyf ther men may
wone.'

To whom answerde Tiburce, 'O suster dere,

Ne seydestow right now in this manere,

Ther nis but o god, lord in soothfastnesse;

And now of thre how maystow bere
witnesse?' 336

'That shal I telle,' quod she, 'er I go.

Right as a man hath sapiences thre,

Memoria, engyn, and intellect also,

So, in o being of divinitee, 340

Three persones may ther right wel be.
 Tho gan she him ful biuly to preche
 Of Cristes come and of his paynes teche,

And many pointes of his passioun;
 How goddes sone in this world was with-
 holde, 343
 To doon mankinde playn remissionn,
 That was y-bounde in sinne and cares
 colde:

Al this thing she unto Tiburce a.
 And after this Tiburce, in good entente,
 With Valerian to pope Urban he wente,

That thanked god, and with glad herte
 and light 351
 He cristned him, and made him in that
 place

Parfit in his lerninge, goddes knight.
 And after this Tiburce gat swich grace,
 That every day he saugh, in tyme and
 space, 355
 The angel of god; and every maner bone
 That he god axed, it was sped ful sone.

It were ful hard by ordre for to seyn
 How many wondres Jesus for hem
 wrought;

But atte laste, to tellen short and pleyn,
 The sergeants of the town of Rome hem
 soghte, 361

And hem biforn Almachie the prefect
 broghte,

Which hem apposed, and knew al hir
 entente,

And to the image of Jupiter hem sente,

And seyde, 'who so wol nat sacrificye, 365
 Swap of his heed, this is my sentence
 here.'

Anon thise martirs that I yow devyse,
 Oon Maximus, that was an officers
 Of the prefectes and his corniculere,
 Hem hente; and whan he forth the
 seintes ladde, 370
 Him-self he weep, for pitee that he hadde.

Whan Maximus had herd theseintes lore,
 He gat him of the tormentoures leve,
 And ladde hem to his hous withoute
 more; 374
 And with hir preching, or that it were eve,

They gonnen fro the tormentours to reve,
 And fro Maxima, and fro his folk echone
 The false feith, to trowe in god allone.

Cecile cam, whan it was waxen night,
 With preestes that hem cristned alle
 y-fere; 380

And afterward, whan day was woxen
 light,

Cecile hem seyde with a ful sobre chere,
 'Now, Cristes owene knightes leve and
 dere,

Caste alle away the werkis of derknesse,
 And armeth yow in armure of bright-
 nesse. 385

Ye han for sothe y-doon a greet bataille,
 Your cours is doon, your feith han ye
 conserved,

Goth to the corone of lyf that may nat
 faille,

The rightful juge, which that ye han
 served, 390

Shall yeve it yow, as ye han it deserved'
 And whan this thing was seyde as I devyse,
 Men ladde hem forth to doon the sacrificye.

But whan they weren to the place broght,
 To tellen shortly the conclusioun,
 They nolde encense ne sacrifice right
 noght, 395

But on hir knees they setten hem adoun
 With humble herte and sad devocioun,
 And losten bothe hir hedes in the place.
 Hir soules wenten to the king of grace.

This Maximus, that saugh this thung
 bityde, 400

With pitous teres tolde it anon-right,
 That he hir soules saugh to heven glyde
 With angels ful of cleernesse and of light,
 And with his word converted many a
 wight;

For which Almachius dide him so to-bete
 With whippe of leed, til he his lyf gan
 leta, 405

Cecile him took and buried him anon
 By Tiburce and Valerian softly,
 Withinne hir buryng-place, under the
 stoon,

And after this Almachius hastily 410

Bad his ministres fecchen openly
Cecile, so that she mighte in his presence
Doon sacrifyce, and Jupiter encense.

But they, converted at hir wyse lore,
Wepten ful sore, and yaven ful credence
Unto hir word, and cryden more and
more, 416

'Crist, goddes sone withouten difference,
Is verray god, this is al our sentence,
That hath so good a servant him to serve;
This with o voys we trowen, thogh we
sterve!' 420

Almachius, that herde of this doinge,
Bad fecchen Cecile, that he might hir see,
And alderfirst, lo! this was his axinge,
'What maner womman artow?' tho quod
he. 424

'I am a gentil womman born,' quod she.
'I axe thee,' quod he, 'thogh it thee greve,
Of thy religioun and of thy bileve.'

'Ye han bigonne your question folily,'
Quod she, 'that wolden two answeres
conclude

In oo demande; ye axed lewedly.' 430
Almache answerde unto that similitude,
'Of whennes comth thyn answering so
rude?'

'Of whennes?' quod she, whan that she
was freyned,

'Of conscience and of good feith un-
feyned.' 434

Almachius seyde, 'ne takestow non hede
Of my power?' and she answerde him
this—

'Your might,' quod she, 'ful litel is to
drede;

For every mortal mannes power nis
But lyk a bladdre, ful of wind, y-wis. 439
For with a nedles poynt, whan it is blowe,
May al the boost of it be leyd ful lowe.'

'Ful wrongfully bigonne thou,' quod he,
'And yet in wrong is thy perseveraunce;
Wostow nat how our mighty princes free
Han thus comanded and maad ordin-
aunce, 445

That every Cristen wight shal han pen-
aunce

But-if that he his Cristendom withseye,
And goon al quit, if he wol it reneye?'

'Your princes erren, as your nobley dooth,'
Quod tho Cecile, 'and with a wood
sentence 450

Ye make us gilty, and it is nat sooth;
For ye, that knowen wel our innocence,
For as muche as we doon a reverence
To Crist, and for we bere a Cristen name,
Ye putte on us a cryme, and eek a blame.

But we that knowen thilke name so 456
For vertuous, we may it nat withseye.'
Almache answerde, 'chees oon of thise
two,

Do sacrifyce, or Cristendom reneye,
That thou mowe now escapen by that
weye.' 460

At which the holy blisful fayre mayde
Gan for to laughe, and to the juge seyde,

'O juge, confus in thy nycetee,
Woltow that I reneye innocence, 464
To make me a wikked wight?' quod she;
'Lo! he dissimuleth here in audience,
Hestareth and woodeth in his advertence!
To whom Almachius, 'unsely wrecche,
Ne woostow nat how far my might may
strecche?

Han noght our mighty princes to me
yeven, 470

Ye, bothe power and auctoritee
To maken folk to dyen or to liven?

Why spekestow so proudly than to me?

'I speke noght but stedfastly,' quod she,
'Nat proudly, for I seye, as for my syde,
We haten deedly thilke vyce of pryde.

And if thou drede nat a sooth to here,
Than wol I shewe al openly, by right,
That thou hast maad a ful gret lesing here.
Thou seyst, thy princes han thee yeven
might 480

Bothe for to sleen and for to quiken a
wight;

Thou, that ne mayst but only lyf bireve,
Thou hast non other power ne no leve!

But thou mayst seyn, thy princes han
thee maked 484

Ministre of deeth; for if thou speke of mo,

Thou lvest, for thy power is ful naked.'
 'Do wey thy boldnes,' seyde Almachius
 tho,
 'And sacrifyce to our goddes, er thou go;
 I recche nat what wrong that thou me
 profre,
 For I can suffre it as a philosophre; 490

But thilke wronges may I nat endure
 That thou spekest of our goddes here,'
 quod he.

Cecile answerede, 'O nyce creature,
 Thou seydest no word sin thou spak to me
 That I ne knew therwith thy nycetee; 495
 And that thou were, in every maner
 wyse,
 A lewed officer and a veyn justyssa.

Ther lakketh no-thing to thyn utter yën
 That thou nart blind, for thing that we
 seen alle 499

That it is stoon, that men may wel espyen,
 That ilke stoon a god thou wolt it calle.
 I rede thee, lat thyn hand upon it falle,
 And taste it wel, and stoon thou shalt it
 finde,
 Sin that thou seest nat with thyn yën
 blinde.

It is a shame that the peple shal 505
 So scorne thee, and langhe at thy folye;
 For comunly men woot it wel overal,
 That mighty god is in his hevenes hye,
 And thise images, wel thou mayst espye,
 To thee ne to hem-self mowe nought
 profyte, 510
 For in effect they been nat worth a myte.'

Thise wordes and swiche othere seyde she,
 And he weex wroth, and bad men sholde
 hir lede

Hom til hir hous, 'and in hir hous,' quod
 he,

'Brenne hir right in a bath of flambes
 rede.' 515

And as he bad, right so was doon in dede;
 For in a bath they gonne hir faste shetten,
 And night and day greet fyr they under
 betten.

The longe night and eek a day also,
 For al the fyr and eek the bathes hete,
 She sat al cold, and felede no wo, 521
 It made hir nat a drope for to swete.
 But in that bath hir lyf she moste lete;
 For he, Almachius, with ful wikke entente
 To sleen hir in the bath his sonde sente.

Three strokes in the nekke he smoot hir
 tho, 526

The tormentour, but for no maner chaunce
 He mighte noght smyte al hir nekke
 a-two;

And for ther was that tyme an ordin-
 aunce,

That no man sholde doon man swich
 penaunce 530

The ferthe strook to smyten, softe or sore,
 This tormentour ne dorste do na-more.

But half-deed, with hir nekke y-corven
 there,

He lefte hir lye, and on his wey is went.
 The Cristen folk, which that aboute hir
 were, 535

With shetes han the blood ful faire y-hent.
 Three dayes lived she in this torment,
 And never cessed hem the feith to teche;
 That she hadde fostred, hem she gan to
 preche;

And hem she yaf hir moebles and hir
 thing, 540

And to the pope Urban bitook hem tho,
 And seyde, 'I axed this at hevene king,
 To han respyt three dayes and na-mo,
 To recomende to yow, er that I go,

Thise soules, lo! and that I mighte do
 werche 545

Here of myn hous perpetuelly a cherche.'

Seint Urban, with his deknes, prively
 The body fette, and buried it by nighte
 Among his othere seintes honestly.

Hir hous the chirche of seint Cecilie
 highte; 550

Seint Urban halwed it, as he wel mighte:
 In which, into this day, in noble wyse,
 Men doon to Crist and to his seint servyse.

Here is ended the Seconde Nonnes Tale.

THE CANON'S YEOMAN'S PROLOGUE.

The prologe of the Chansons Yemannes Tale.

Whan ended was the lyf of saint Cecyle,
 Er we had riden fully fyve myle, 535
 At Boghton under Blee us gan stake
 A man, that clothed was in clothes blake,
 And underneth he hadde a whyt surplys.
 His hakeney, that was al pomely grys,
 So swatte, that it wonder was to see; 560
 It semed he had priked myles thre.
 The hors eek that his yeman rood upon
 So swatte, that unneth mighte it gon. (10)
 Aboute the peytrel stood the foom ful hye,
 He was of fome al flekked as a pye. 565
 A male tweyfold on his croper lay,
 It semed that he caried lyte array.
 Al light for somer rood this worthy man,
 And in myn herte wondren I bigan
 What that he was, til that I understood
 How that his cloke was sowed to his
 hood; 571
 For which, when I had longe avysed me,
 I demed him som chanon for to be. (20)
 His hat heng at his bak down by a lass,
 For he had riden more than trot or pass;
 He had ay priked lyk as he were wood.
 A clote-leef he hadde under his hood 577
 For swoot, and for to kepe his heed from
 hete.
 But it was joye for to seen him swete!
 His forheed dropped as a stillatorie, 580
 Were ful of plantain and of paritorie.
 And whan that he was come, he gan to
 crye,
 'God save,' quod he, 'this joly companye!
 Faste have I priked,' quod he, 'for your
 sake, (31)
 By-cause that I wolde yow stake, 585
 To ryden in this mery companye.'
 His yeman eek was ful of curteisye,
 And seyde, 'sires, now in the morwe-tyde
 Out of your hostelrye I saugh you ryde,

And warned heer my lord and my
 soverayn, 590
 Which that to ryden with yow is ful fayn,
 For his desport; he loveth daliaunce.'
 'Freend, for thy warning god yeve thee
 good chaunce,' (40)
 Than seyde our host, 'for certes, it wolde
 seme
 Thy lord were wys, and so I may wel
 dame; 595
 He is ful joound also, dar I leye.
 Can he oght telle a mery tale or tweye,
 With which he glade may this companye?'
 'Who, sire? my lord? ye, ye, withouten
 lye,
 He can of murthe, and eek of jolitee 600
 Nat but ynough; also sir, trusteth me,
 And ye him knewe as wel as do I,
 Ye wolde wondre how wel and craftily (50)
 He coude werke, and that in sondry wyse.
 He hath take on him many a greet
 empyre, 605
 Which were ful hard for any that is
 here
 To bringe aboute, but they of him it lere.
 As homely as he rit amonges yow,
 If ye him knewe, it wolde be for your
 prow; 609
 Ye wolde nat forgoon his aqueyntaunce
 For mochel good, I dar leye in balaunce
 Al that I have in my possessionn.
 He is a man of heigh discrecioun, (60)
 I warne you wel, he is a passing man.'
 'Wel,' quod our host, 'I pray thee, tel
 me than, 615
 Is he a clerk, or noon? tel what he is.'
 'Nay, he is gretter than a clerk, y-wis,'
 Seyle this yeman, 'and in wordes fewe,
 Host, of his craft som-what I wol yow
 shewe. 619

I soye, my lord can swich subtiltee—
(But al his craft ye may nat wite at me;
And som-what helpe I yet to his werking)—
That al this ground on which we been
ryding, (70)

Til that we come to Caunterbury toun,
He coude al clene turne it up-so-down, 625
And pave it al of silver and of gold.'

And whan this yeman hadde thus y-told
Unto our host, he seyde, '*ben'cite*!
This thing is wonder merveillous to me,
Sin that thy lord is of so heigh prudence,
By-cause of which men sholde him rever-
ence, 631

That of his worship rekketh he so lyte;
His oversloppe nis nat worth a myte, (80)
As in effect, to him, so mote I go!
It is al baudy and to-tore also. 635

Why is thy lord so sluttish, I thee preye,
And is of power better cloth to beye,
If that his dede accorde with thy speche?
Telle me that, and that I thee biseche.'

'Why?' quod this yeman, 'wherto axe
ye me? 640

God help me so, for he shal never thee!
(But I wol nat avowe that I seye,
And therfor kepe it secree, I yow preye).
He is to wys, in feith, as I bileve; (91)
That that is overdoon, it wol nat preve 645
Aright, as clerkes seyn, it is a vyce.
Wherfor in that I holde him lewed and
nyce.

For whan a man hath over-greet a wit,
Ful oft him happeth to misusen it;
So dooth my lord, and that me greveth
sore. 650

God it amende, I can sey yow na-more.'

'Ther-of no fors, good yeman,' quod our
host;

'Sin of the conning of thy lord thou
wost, (100)

Tel how he dooth, I pray thee hertely,
Sin that he is so crafty and so sly. 655
Wher dwellen ye, if it to telle be?'

'In the suburbes of a toun,' quod he,
'Lurkinge in hernes and in lanes blinde,
Wher-as thise robbours and thise theves
by kinde

Holden hir privee fereful residence, 660
As they that dar nat shewen hir presence;
So faren we, if I shal seye the sothe.'

'Now,' quod our host, 'yt lat me talke
to the; (110)

Why artow so discoloured of thy face?'
'Peter!' quod he, 'god yeve it harde
grace, 665

I am so used in the fyr to blowe,
That it hath chaunged my colour, I trowe.
I am nat wont in no mirour to pryde,
But swinke sore and lerne multiplie.
We blondren ever and pouren in the fyr,
And for al that we fayle of our desyr, 671
For ever we lakken our conclusoun.

To mochel folk we doon illusioun, (120)
And borwe gold, be it a pound or two,
Or ten, or twelve, or many sommes mo, 675
And make hem wenen, at the leeste weye,
That of a pound we coude make tweye!
Yet is it fals, but ay we han good hope
It for to doon, and after it we grope.
But that science is so fer us biforn, 680
We mowen nat, al-though we hadde it
sworn,

It overtake, it slit away so faste;
It wol us maken beggers atte laste.' (130)

Why! this yeman was thus in his
talking,

This chanoun drough him neer, and herde
al thing 685

Which this yeman spak, for suspicioun
Of mennes speche ever hadde this cha-
noun.

For Catoun seith, that he that gilty is
Demeth al thing be spoke of him, y-wis.
That was the cause he gan so ny him drawe
To his yeman, to herkennen al his sawe. 691
And thus he seyde un-to his yeman tho.

'Hold thou thy pees, and spek no wordes
mo, (140)

For if thou do, thou shalt it dere abyde;
Thou sclaudrest me heer in this com-
panye, 695

And eek discoverest that thou sholdest
hyde.'

'Ye,' quod our host, 'telle on, what so
bityde;

Of al his threting rekke nat a myte!'

'In feith,' quod he, 'namore I do but lyte.'
And whan this chanon saugh it wolde
nat be, 700

But his yeman wolde telle his privetee.
He fledde away for verray sorwe and shame.

quod the yeman, 'heer shal aryse
ne, (150)
I can anon now wol I tella. 704
us goon, the foule feend him quelle!
er her-after wol I with him mete
y ne for pound, I yow bihete!
t me broghte first unto that gama,
he dye, sorwe have he and shame!
s earnest to me, by my feith; 710
le I wel, what so any man seith.

And yet, for al my smarte and al my
grief,
For al my sorwe, labour, and meschief,
I coude never leve it in no wyse. (161)
Now wolde god my wit mighte suffyse 715
To tellen al that longeth to that art!
But natheles yow wol I tellen part;
Sin that my lord is gon, I wol nat spare;
Swich thing as that I knowe, I wol de-
clare.'— 719

Here endeth the Prologe of the Chanouns Yemannes Tale.

E CHANOONS YEMANNES TALE.

Here biginneth the Chanouns Yeman his Tale.

[*Prims Para.*]

his chanoun I dwelt have seven
r, 720
his sciences am I never the neer.
I hadde, I have y-lost ther-by;
I wot, so hath many mo than I. (170)
was wont to be right fresh and gay
ing and of other good array, 725
ay I were an hose upon myn heed;
er my colour was bothe fresh and
d,
it wan and of a leden hewe;
it useth, sore shal he rew.
my swink yet blered is myn yē, 730
ich advantage is to multiplie!
ding sciences hath me mead so bare,
have no good, wher that ever I fare;
I am endetted so ther-by (181)
that I have borwed, trewely, 735
yl I live, I shal it quyte never.
ry man be war by me for ever!
anner man that casteth him ther-to,
ntinne, I holde his thrift y-do.
megod, ther-by shal he nat winne,
pte his purs, and make his wittes
me. (188) 741
an he, thurgh his madnes and folye,

Hath lost his owene good thurgh jupartye,
Thanne he excyteth other folk ther-to,
To lese hir good as he him-self hath do. 745
For unto shrewes joye it is and ese
To have hir felawes in peyne and disese;
Thus was I ones lerned of a clerk.
Of that no charge, I wol speke of our werk.
Whan we been ther as we shul exercyse
Our elvish craft, we somen wonder wyse,
Our termes been so clerghial and so
queynta. (199) 751
I blowe the fyr til that myn herte feynta.

What sholde I tellen ech proporcoun
Of thinges whiche that we warche upon,
As on fyve or sixe ounces, may wel be, 756
Of silver or som other quantitee,
And bisie me to telle yow the names
Of orpiment, brent bones, yren squames,
That into poudre grounden been ful smal?
And in an erthen pottle how put is al, 761
And salt y-put in, and also papear, (209)
Biforn thise poudres that I speke of heer,
And wel y-covered with a lampe of glas,
And mochel other thing which that ther
was? 765
And of the pot and glasses enluting,
That of the cyre mighte passe out no-thing?

And of the esy fyr and smart also,
Which that was maad, and of the care
and wo 769
That we hadde in our matires sublyming,
And in amalgaming and calcening
Of quik-silver, y-clept Mercurie crude?
For alle our sleightes we can nat con-
clude. (220)

Our orpiment and sublymed Mercurie,
Our grounden litarge eek on the porphurie,
Of ech of thise of ounces a certeyn 776
Nought helpeth us, our labour is in veyn.
Ne eek our spirites ascencioun,
Ne our materes that lyen al fixe adoun,
Mowe in our working no-thing us avayle.
For lost is al our labour and travayle, 781
And al the cost, a twenty devel weye,
Is lost also, which we upon it leye. (230)

Ther is also ful many another thing
That is unto our craft apertening; 785
Though I by ordre hem nat reherce can,
By-cause that I am a lewed man,
Yet wol I telle hem as they come to minde,
Though I ne can nat sette hem in hir
kinde;

As bole armoniak, verdegrees, boras, 790
And sondry vessels maad of erthe and glas,
Our urinales and our descensories,
Violes, croslets, and sublymatories, (240)
Cucurbites, and alembykes eek,
And othere swiche, dere y-nough a leek.
Nat nedeth it for to reherce hem alle, 796
Watres rubifying and boles galle,
Arsenik, sal armoniak, and brimstoon;
And herbes coude I telle eek many oon,
As egremoine, valerian, and lunarie, 800
And othere swiche, if that me liste tarie.
Our lampes brenning bothe night and day,
To bringe aboute our craft, if that we
may. (250)

Our fourneys eek of calcinacioun,
And of watres albificacioun, 805
Unslekked lym, chalk, and gleyre of an ey,
Poudres diverse, assches, dong, pisse, and
cley,
Cered pokets, sal peter, vitriole;
And divers fyres maad of wode and cole;
Sal tartre, alkaly, and sal preparat, 810
And combust materes and coagulat,
Cley maad with hors or mannes heer, and
oile

Of tartre, alum, glas, berm, wort, and
argouille, (260)

Resalgar, and our materes enbibing;
And eek of our materes encorporing, 815
And of our silver citrinacioun,
Our cementing and fermentacioun,
Our ingottes, testes, and many mo.

I wol yow telle, as was me taught also,
The foure spirites and the bodies sevene,
By ordre, as ofte I herde my lord hem
nevene. 821

The firste spirit quik-silver called is, (269)
The second orpiment, the thridde, y-wis,
Sal armoniak, and the ferthe brimstoon.
The bodies sevene eek, lo! hem heer anon:
Sol gold is, and Luna silver we threpe, 826
Mars yren, Mercurie quik-silver we clepe.
Saturnus leed, and Jupiter is tin,
And Venus coper, by my fader kin! 830

This cursed craft who-so wol exercyse,
He shal no good han that him may suffyse;
For al the good he spendeth ther-about, e
He lese shal, ther-of have I no doute. (280)
Who-so that listeth outen his folye, 834
Lat him come forth, and lerne multiplie;
And every man that oght hath in his cofre.
Lat him appere, and wexe a filosofre.
Ascaunce that craft is so light to lere?
Nay, nay, god woot, al be he monk or
frere,

Preest or chanoun, or any other wight, 840
Though he sitte at his book bothe day and
night,

In lernyng of this elvish nyce lore,
Al is in veyn, and parde, mochel more!
To lerne a lewed man this subtiltee, (291)
Fy! spek nat ther-of, for it wol nat be; 845
Al conne he letterure, or conne he noon.
As in effect, he shal finde it al oon.

For bothe two, by my savacioun,
Concluden, in multiplicacioun,
Y-lyke wel, whan they han al y-do; 850
This is to seyn, they faylen bothe two.

Yet forgot I to maken rehersaille
Of watres corosif and of limaille, (300)
And of bodyes mollificacioun,
And also of hir induracioun, 855
Oiles, ablucions, and metal fusible,
To tellen al wolde passen any bible
That o-wher is; wherfor, as for the beste,
Of alle thise names now wol I me reste.

For, as I trowe, I have yow told y-nowe 860
To reyse a feend, al loke he never so rowe.

A! nay! lat be; the philosophres stoon,
Elixir clept, we sechen faste echoon; (310)
For hadde we him, than were we siker
y-now.

But, unto god of heven I make avow, 865
For al our craft, whan we han al y-do,
And al our sleighte, he wol nat come us to,
Is hath y-maad us spenden moche good,
For sorwe of which almost we wexen wood,
But that good hope crepeth in our herte,
Imposinge ever, though we sore smerte,
To be releved by him afterward; 872
Swich supposing and hope is sharp and
hard; (320)

warne yow wel, it is to seken ever;
That futur tamps hath maad men to dis-
sever, 875
A trust ther-of, from al that ever they
hadde.

Yet of that art they can nat wexen sadde,
For unto hem it is a bitter swete;
To semeth it; for nadde they but a shete
Which that they mighte wrappe hem inne
a-night, 880

And a bak to walken inne by day-light,
They wolde hem selle and spenden on this
craft; (329)

They can nat stinte til no-thing be left,
And evermore, wher that ever they goon,
Men may hem knowe by smel of brim-
ston; 885

For al the world, they stinken as a goot;
Her savour is so rammish and so hoot,
That, though a man from hem a myle be,
The savour wol infecte him, trusteth me;
Lo, thus by smelling and threedbare array,
If that men liste, thisfolk they knowe may.
And if a man wol aske hem prively, 892
Why they been clothed so unthriftyly, (340)

They right anon wol rownen in his ere,
And seyn, that if that they espyed were,
Men wolde hem alee, by-cause of hir
science; 896

Lo, thus this folk bitrayen innocence!

Pass over this; I go my tale un-to.
Er than the pot be on the fyr y-do,
Of metals with a certein quantitee, 900
My lord hem tempred, and no man but
he—

Now he is goon, I dar seyn boldely—

For, as men seyn, he can don craftily; (350)
Algate I woot wel he hath swich a name,
And yet ful ofte he renneth in a blame; 905
And wite ye how? ful ofte it happeth so,
The pot to-braketh, and farewell! al is go!
Thise metals been of so greet violence,
Our walles mowe nat make hem resistance,
But if they weren wrought of lym and stoon;
They percen so, and thurgh the wal they
goon, 911

And somme of hem sinken in-to the
ground— (359)

Thus han we lost by tymes many a pound—
And somme are scattered al the floor aboute,
Somme lepe in-to the roof; with-outen
doute, 915

Though that the feend noght in our sighte
him shewe,

I trowe he with us be, that ilke shewe!
In halle wher that he is lord and sire,
Nis ther more wo, ne more rancour ne ire.
Whan that our pot is broke, as I have
sayd, 920

Every man chit, and halt him yvel apayd.
Som seyde, it was long on the fyr-
making, (369)

Som seyde, nay! it was on the blowing;
(Than was I fered, for that was myn office);
'Straw!' quod the thridde, 'ye been lewed
and nyce, 925

It was nat tempred as it oghte be.'
'Nay!' quod the ferthe, 'stint, and herkne
me,

By-cause our fyr ne was nat maad of beech,
That is the cause, and other noon, so
theech!'

I can nat telle wher-on it was long, 930
But wel I wot greet stryf is us among.

'What!' quod my lord, 'ther is na-more
to done,

Of thise perils I wol be war eft-sone; (380)
I am right siker that the pot was crased.
Be as be may, be ye no-thing amased; 935
As usage is, lat swepe the floor as swythe,
Plukke up your hertes, and beth gladde
and blythe.'

The mullok on an hepe y-sweped was,
And on the floor y-cast a canvas,
And al this mullok in a sive y-throwe, 940
And sifted, and y-piked many a throwe.

'Pardee,' quod oon, 'somwhat of our
metal
Yet is ther heer, though that we han nat al.
Al-though this thing mishapped have as
now, (391)

Another tyme it may be wel y-now, 945
U's moste putte our good in aventure ;
A marchant, parde ! may nat ay endure
Trusteth me wel, in his prosperitee ;
Somtyme his good is drenched in the see,
And somtym comth it sauf un-to the
londe.' 950

'Pees!' quod my lord, 'the next tyme
I wol fonde (398)
To bringe our craft al in another plyte ;
And but I do, sirs, lat me han the wyte ;
Ther was defaute in som-what, wel I woot.'

Another seyde, the fyr was over hoot :—
But, be it hoot or cold, I dar seye this, 956
That we concluden evermore amia.
We fayle of that which that we wolden
have,

And in our madnesse evermore we rave.
And whan we been togidres everichoon,
Every man semeth a Salomon. 961
But al thing which that shyneth as the
gold (400)

Nis nat gold, as that I have herd it told ;
Ne every appel that is fair at yð
Ne is nat good, what-so men clappe or
crye. 965

Right so, lo ! fareth it amonges us ;
He that semeth the wysest, by Jesus !
Is most fool, whan it cometh to the preef ;
And he that semeth trewest is a theef ;
That shul ye knowe, er that I fro yow
wende, 970

By that I of my tale have maad an ende.

Explicit prima pars.

Et sequitur pars secunda.

Ther is a chanoun of religioun
Amonges us, wolde infecte al a toun, (420)
Though it as greet were as was Ninivee,
Rome, Alisaundre, Troye, and otherethree.
His sleighes and his infinit falsnesse 976
Ther coude no man wryten, as I gesse,
Thogh that he mighte liven a thousand
yeer.

In al this world of falshedo nis his peer ;
For in his termes so he wolde him winde,

And speke his wordes in so sly a kinde, 981
Whan he commune shal with any wight,
That he wol make him doten anon right,
But it a feend be, as him-selven is. (431)
Ful many a man hath he bigyled er this,
And wol, if that he live may a whyle ; 986
And yet men ryde and goon ful many a
myle

Him for to seke and have his aqueynt-
aunce,

Noght knowinge of his false governaunce.
And if yow list to yeve me audience, 990
I wol it tellen heer in your presence.

But worshipful chanouns religious,
Nedemeth nat that I sclauandre your hous,
Al-though my tale of a chanoun be. (441)
Of every ordre som shrewe is, parde, 995
And god forbede that al a companye
Sholde rewe a singuler mannes folye.
To sclauandre yow is no-thing myn entente,
But to correcten that is mis I mente.

This tale was nat only told for yow, 1000
But oek for othere mo ; ye woot wel how
That, among Cristes apostelles twelve,
Ther nas no traytour but Judas him-selve.
Than why sholde al the remenant have
blame 1005

That giltles were ? by yow I seye the same.
Save only this, if ye wol herkne me. 1007
If any Judas in your covent be,
Remeveth him bitymes, I yow rede.
If shame or los may causen any drede, 1010
And beth no-thing displeased, I yow preye.
But in this cas herkneth what I shal seye.

In London was a preest, an annueleer,
That therin dwelled hadde many a yeer,
Which was so plesaunt and so servisable
Unto the wyf, wher-as he was at table, (462)
That she wolde suffre him no-thing for to
paye 1015

For bord ne clothing, wente he never s
gaye ;

And spending-silver hadde he right y-now.
Therof no fors ; I wol procede as now, 1019
And telle forth my tale of the chanoun,
That broghte this preest to confusioun.

This false chanoun cam up-on a day
Unto this preestes chambre, wher he lay,
Biseching him to lene him a certeyn (471)
Of gold, and he wolde quyte it him ageyn.

'Lene me a mark,' quod he, 'but dayes
three, 1026

And at my day I wol it quyten thee.
And if so be that thou me finde fals,
Another day do hange me by the hals!'

This preest him took a mark, and that
as swythe, 1030

And this chanoun him thanked ofte sythe,
And took his leve, and wente forth his
weye, (479)

And at the thridde day broghte his moneye,
And to the preest he took his gold agayn,
Wherof this preest was wonder glad and
fayn. 1035

'Certes,' quod he, 'no-thing anoyeth me
To lene a man a noble, or two or three,
Or what thing were in my possessioun,
Whan he so trewe is of condicioun,
That in no wyse he breke wol his day; 1040
To swich a man I can never seye nay.'

'What!' quod this chanoun, 'sholde I
be untrewe? (489)

Nay, that were thing y-fallen al of-newe.
Trouthe is a thing that I wol ever kepe
Un-to that day in which that I shal crepe
In-to my grave, and elles god forbede; 1046
Bileveth this as siker as is your crede.

God thanke I, and in good tyme be it sayd,
That ther was never man yet yvel apayd
For gold ne silver that he to me lente, 1050
Ne never falshede in myn herte I mente.

And sir,' quod he, 'now of my privetee,
Sin ye so goodlich han been un-to me, (500)

And kythed to me so greet gentillesse, 1054
Somwhat to quyte with your kindenesse,
I wol yow shewe, and, if yow list to lere,
I wol yow teche pleyntly the manere,
How I can werken in philosophye.

Taketh good heed, ye shul wel seen at y8,
That I wol doon a maistrie er I go.' 1060

'Ye,' quod the preest, 'ye, sir, and wol
ye so?

Marie! ther-of I pray yow hertely!' (509)

'At your comandement, sir, trewely,'
Quod the chanoun, 'and elles god forbede!'

Lo, how this thief coude his servyse
bede! 1065

Ful sooth it is, that swich profred servyse
Stinketh, as witnessen thise olde wyse;

And that ful sone I wol it verifye
In this chanoun, rote of al trecherye, 1069

That ever-more delyt hath and gladnesse—
Swich feendly thoughtes in his herte im-
presse—

How Cristes peple he may to meschief
bringe; (519)

God kepe us from his fals dissimulinge!
Noght wiste this preest with whom that
he delte,

Ne of his harm cominge he no-thing felte.
O sely preest! O sely innocent! 1076

With coveityse anon thou shalt be blent!
O gracelees, ful blind is thy conceit,

No-thing ne artow war of the deceit
Which that this fox y-shapen hath to thee!

His wyly wrenches thou ne mayst nat flee.
Wherfor, to go to the conclusioun 1082

That refereth to thy confusioun, (530)

Unhappy man! anon I wol me hye
To tellen thyn unwit and thy folye, 1085

And eek the falsnesse of that other
wrecche,

As ferforth as that my conning may
strecche.

This chanoun was my lord, ye wolden
wene?

Sir host, in feith, and by the hevenes
quene,

It was another chanoun, and nat he, 1090
That can an hundred fold more subtiltee!

He hath bitrayed folkes many tyme;
Of his falshede it dulleth me to ryme. (540)

Ever whan that I speke of his falshede,
For shame of him my chekes wexen rede;

Algates, they biginnen for to glowe, 1096
For reednesse have I noon, right wel I

knowe,
In my visage; for fumes dyverse

Of metals, which ye han herd me reherce,
Consumed and wasted han my reednesse.

Now tak heed of this chanouns cursed-
nesse! 1101

'Sir,' quod he to the preest, 'lat your
man gon (549)

For quik-silver, that we it hadde anon;
And lat him bringen ounces two or three;

And whan he comth, as faste shul ye see
A wonder thing, which ye saugh never er

this.' 1106

'Sir,' quod the preest, 'it shal be doon,
y-wis.'

He bad his servant fecchen him this thing,

And he al redy was at his bidding,
 And wente him forth, and cam anon
 agayn 1110
 With this quik-silver, soothly for to sayn,
 And took thise ounces three to the cha-
 noun, (559)
 And he hem leyde fayre and wel adoun,
 And bad the servant coles for to bringe,
 That he anon mighte go to his werkunge.
 The coles right anon weren y fet, 1116
 And this chanoun took out a crosselet
 Of his bosom, and shewed it the preest.
 'This instrument,' quod he, 'which that
 thou seest,
 Tak in thyn hand, and put thy-self ther-
 inne 1120
 Of this quik-silver an ounce, and heer bi-
 ginne,
 In the name of Crist, to weke a philosofre.
 Ther been ful fewe, whiche that I wolde
 profre (570)
 To shewen hem thus muche of my science.
 For ye shul seen heer, by experience, 1125
 That this quik-silver wol I mortifye
 Right in your sighte anon, withouten lye,
 And make it as good silver and as fyn
 As ther is any in your purs or myn,
 Or elleswher, and make it malliable; 1130
 And elles, holdeth me fals and unable
 Amonges folk for ever to appere! (579)
 I have a poude heer, that coste me dere,
 Shal make al good, for it is cause of al
 My conning, which that I yow shewen
 shal. 1135
 Voydeth your man, and lat him be ther-
 onte,
 And siet the dore, whyls we been aboute
 Our privetee, that no man us espye
 Whyls that we werke in this philosophye.
 Al as he bad, fulfilled was in dede, 1140
 This lke servant anon-right out yede,
 And his mauster shette the dore anon,
 And to his labour speedily they gon. (591)
 This preest, at this cursed chanouns
 bidding,
 Up-on the fyr anon sette this thing, 1145
 And blew the fyr, and bised him ful faste,
 And this chanoun in-to the croslet caste
 A poude, noot I wher-of that it was
 Y-maad, other of chalk, other of glas,
 Or som-what elles, was nat worth a flye

To blynde with the preest; and bad him
 hye 1151
 The coles for to couchen al above (599)
 The croslet; 'for, in tokening I thes
 love,'
 Quod this chanoun, 'thyn owene bondes
 two
 Shul werche al thing which that shal heer
 be do.' 1155
 'Graunt mercy,' quod the preest, and
 was ful glad,
 And couched coles as the chanoun bad
 And whyle he bley was, this feendly
 wrecche,
 This fals chanoun, the foule feend him
 fecche!
 Out of his bosom took a bechen cole, 1160
 In which ful subtilly was maad an hole,
 And ther-in put was of silver lymaille
 An ounce, and stopped was, with-outen
 fayle, (610)
 The hole with wax, to kepe the lymail in,
 And understondeth, that this false gin
 Was nat maad ther, but it was maad
 bifore; 1166
 And othere thinges I shal telle more
 Herafterward, which that he with him
 broghte;
 Er he cam ther, him to bigyle he thoughte,
 And so he dide, er that they wente
 a-twinne; 1170
 Til he had terved him, coude he not blinne
 It dulleth me whan that I of him speke,
 On his falschede fayn wolde I me wreke,
 If I wiste how, but he is heer and ther.
 He is so varmant, he abit no-wher. 1175
 But taketh heed now, sirs, for goddes
 love! (621)
 He took his cole of which I spak above,
 And in his hond he bear it prively
 And whyls the preest couchede basily
 The coles, as I tolde yow er this, 1181
 This chanounseyde, 'freend, ye doon amis,
 This is nat couched as it oghte be;
 But sone I shal amenden it,' quod he. (630)
 'Now lat me medie therwith but a whyle,
 For of yow have I pitee, by saint Gyle! 1185
 Ye been right hoot, I see wel how ye swete,
 Have heer a cloth, and wype away the
 wete.'
 And whyles that the preest wyped his face,

This chanoun took his cole with harde
grace, 1189

And leyde it above, up-on the middeward
Of the croset, and blew wel afterward,
Til that the coles gonne faste brenne.

'Now yeve us drinke,' quod the chanoun
thenne, (640)

'As swythe al shal be wel, I undertake;
Sitte we down, and lat us mary make.' 1195
And whan that this chanounes bechen
cole

Was brent, al the lymaille, out of the hole,
Into the croset fil anon adoun;

And so it mooste nedes, by resoun,
Sin it so even aboven couched was; 1200

But ther-of wiste the preest no-thing, alas!
He demed alle the coles y-liche good,
For of the sleighte he no-thing under-
stood, (650)

And whan this alkamistresagh his tyme,
'Rys up,' quod he, 'sir preest, and stondeth
by me; 1205

And for I woot wel ingot have ye noon,
Goth, walketh forth, and bring us a chalk-
stoon;

For I wol make oon of the same shap
That is an ingot, if I may han hap.

And bringeth eek with yow a bolle or
a panne, 1210

Ful of water, and ye shul see wel thanne
How that our bisinesse shal thryve and
preve.

And yet, for ye shul han no misbileve (660)
Ne wrong conceit of me in your absence,

I ne wol nat been out of your presence, 1215
But go with yow, and come with yow
ageyn.'

The chambre-dore, shortly for to seyn,
They opened and abette, and wente hir
weye.

And forth with hem they carieden the
keys, 1219

And come agayn with-uten any delay.
What sholde I tarien al the longe day?

He took the chalk, and shoop it in the
wyse

Of an ingot, as I shal yow devyse. (670)

I seye, he took out of his owene sleve
A teyne of silver (yvale mote he cheve?)

Which that ne was nat but an ounce of
weighte; 1226

And taketh heed now of his cursed
slaughte!

He shoop his ingot, in lengthe and eek
in brede,

Of this teyne, with-uten any drede,
So slyly, that the preest it nat espyde; 1230

And in his sleve agayn he gan it hyde;
And fro the fyr he took up his matere,

And in th'ingot putte it with mery chere,
And in the water-vessel he it caste (680)

Whan that him luste, and had the preest
as faste, 1235

'Look what ther is, put in thyn hand and
gripe,

Thow finde shalt ther silver, as I hope;
What, devel of helle! sholde it elles be?

Shaving of silver silver is, pardee!'
He putte his hond in, and took up a teyne

Of silver fyn, and glad in every veyne 1240
Was this preest, whan he saugh that it
was so.

'Goddas blessing, and his modres also, (690)
And alle halwes have ye, sir chanoun,'

Seyde this preest, 'and I hir malisoun, 1245
But, and ye vouche-sauf to techen me

This noble craft and this subtilitee,
I wol be youre, in al that ever I may!'

Quod the chanoun, 'yet wol I make assay
The second tyme, that ye may taken hede

And been expert of this, and in your nedu
Another day assaye in myn absence 1250

This disciplyne and this crafty science.

Lat take another ounce,' quod he tho, (700)

'Of quik-silver, with-uten wordes mo, 1255
And do ther-with as ye han doon er this

With that other, which that now silver is.'

This preest him bisleth in al that he can
To doon as this chanoun, this cursed man,

Comanded him, and faste he blew the fyr,
For to come to th'effect of his desyr. 1260

And this chanoun, right in the mene
whyte,

Al redy was, the preest eft to bigyle, (710)
And, for a countenance, in his hande he bar

An holwe stikke (tak keep and be war!)
In the ende of which an ounce, and

na-more, 1266

Of silver lymail put was, as bifore
Was in his cole, and stopped with wax

weel

For to kepe in his lymail every deel.

And whyl this preest was in his bisnesse,
This chanoun with his stikke gan him
dresse 1271

To him anon, and his poudre caste in (719)
As he did er; (the devel out of his skin
Him terve, I pray to god, for his falshede;
For he was ever fals in thoght and dede);
And with this stikke, above the croslet,
That was ordeyned with that false get,
He stired the coles, til relente gan

The wex agayn the fyr, as every man,
But it a fool be, woot wel it mot nede, 1280
And al that in the stikke was out yede,
And in the croslet hastily it fel. (729)

Now gode sirs, what wol ye bet than wel?
Whan that this preest thus was bigyled
ageyn, 1284

Supposing noght but trouthe, soth to seyn,
He was so glad, that I can nat expresse
In no manere his mirthe and his glad-
nesse;

And to the chanoun he profred eftsone
Body and good; 'ye,' quod the chanoun
sone,

'Though povre I be, crafty thou shalt me
finde; 1290

I warne thee, yet is ther more bihinde.
Is ther any copper her-inne?' seyde he.

'Ye,' quod the preest, 'sir, I trowe wel
ther be.' (740)

'Elles go bye us som, and that as swythe,
Now, gode sir, go forth thy wey and
hy the.'

He wente his wey, and with the copper
cam, 1296

And this chanoun it in his handes nam,
And of that copper weyed out but an ounce.
Al to simple is my tonge to pronounce,
As ministre of my wit, the doublenesse
Of this chanoun, rote of al cursednesse. 1301
He semed frendly to hem that knewe
him noght,

But he was feendly bothe in herte and
thoght. (750)

It werieth me to telle of his falsnesse,
And nathelees yet wol I it expresse, 1305
To th'entente that men may be war therby,
And for noon other cause, trewely.

He putte his ounce of copper in the
croslet,
And on the fyr as swythe he hath it set,

And caste in poudre, and made the preest
to blowe, 1310

And in his werking for to stoupe lowe,
As he dide er, and al nas but a jape;
Right as him liste, the preest he made
his ape; (760)

And afterward in th'ingot he it caste,
And in the panne putte it at the laste 1315
Of water, and in he putte his owene hond.
And in his sleve (as ye biforn-hond
Herde me telle) he hadde a silver teyne.

He slyly took it out, this cursed heyne—
Unwiting this preest of his false craft—

And in the pannes botme he hath it left;
And in the water rombled to and fro,
And wonder prively took up also (770)

The copper teyne, noght knowing this
preest,

And hidde it, and him hente by the breest,
And to him spak, and thus seyde in his
game, 1320

'Stoupeth adoun, by god, ye be to blame,
Helpeth me now, as I dide yow whyler,
Putte in your hand, and loketh what is
ther.' 1325

This preest took up this silver teyne anon,
And thanne seyde the chanoun, 'lat us
gon

With thise three teynes, which that we
han wrought,

To som goldsmith, and wite if they been
oght. (780)

For, by my feith, I nolde, for myn hood,
But-if that they were silver, fyn and
good, 1335

And that as swythe preved shal it be.'

Un-to the goldsmith with thise teynes
three

They wente, and putte thise teynes in assay
To fyr and hamer; mighte no man seyn nay,
But that they weren as hem oghte be.

This sotted preest, who was gladder
than he? 1341

Was never brid gladder agayn the day,
Ne nightingale, in the sesoun of May. (790)

Nas never noon that luste bet to singe;
Ne lady lustier in carolinge 1345

Or for to speke of love and wommanhede,
Ne knight in armes to doon an hardy dede
To stonde in grace of his lady dere,
Than had this preest this sory craft to lere;

And to the chanoun thus he spak and
seyde, 1350

'For love of god, that for us alle deyde,
And as I may deserve it un-to yow,
What shal this receit coste? telleth now!'

'By our lady,' quod this chanoun, 'it is
dere, (801)

I warne yow wel; for, save I and a frere,
In Engelond ther can no man it make.'

'No fors,' quod he, 'now, sir, for goddes
sake, 1357

What shal I paye? telleth me, I preye.'

'Y-wis,' quod he, 'it is ful dere, I seye;
Sir, at o word, if that thee list it have,
Ye shal paye fourty pound, so god me
save! 1361

And, nere the freendship that ye dide er
this

To me, ye sholde paye more, y-wis.' (810)
This preest the somme of fourty pound
anon

Of nobles fette, and took hem everichon
To this chanoun, for this ilke receit; 1366
Al his working nas but fraude and deceit.

'Sir preest,' he seyde, 'I kepe han no loos
Of my craft, for I wolde it kept were cloos;
And as ye love me, kepeth it secree; 1370
For, and men knewe al my subtilitee,

By god, they wolden han so greet envye
To me, by-cause of my philosophye, (820)

I sholde be deed, ther were non other
weye.'

'God it forbede!' quod the preest,
'what sey ye?' 1375

Yet hadde I lever spenden al the good
Which that I have (and elles were I wood!)
Than that ye sholden falle in swich mes-
cheef.'

'For your good wil, sir, have ye right
good preef,'

Quod the chanoun, 'and far-wel, grant
mercy!' 1380

He wente his way and never the preest
him sy

After that day; and whan that this preest
sholde (839)

Maken amay, at swich tyme as he wolde,
Of this receit, far-wel! it wolde nat be!

Lo, thus byjaped and bigyled was he! 1385
Thus maketh he his introduccioun

To bringe folk to hir destruccioun.—

Considereth, sirs, how that, in ech
estant,

Bitwixe men and gold ther is debat
So ferforth, that unnethes is ther noon.

This multiplying blent so many oon, 1391
That in good feith I trowe that it be

The cause grettest of swich scarcete. (840)
Philosophres spoken so mistily

In this craft, that men can nat come
therby, 1395

For any wit that men han now a-dayes.
They mowe wel chiteren, as doon thise

jayes,
And in her termes sette hir lust and payne,

But to hir purpos shul they never atteyne.
A man may lightly lerne, if he have aught,

To multiplie, and bringe his good to
naught! (848) 1401

Lo! swich a lucre is in this lusty game,
A mannes mirthe it wol torne un-to game,

And empten also grete and hevy purses,
And maken folk for to purchasen curses

Of hem, that han hir good therto y-lent.
O! fy! for shame! they that han been

brent, 1407
Alas! can they nat flee the fyres hete?

Ye that it use, I rede ye it lote,
Lest ye lese al; for bet than never is

late. 1410
Never to thryve were to long a date.

Though ye prolle ay, ye shul it never
finde; (859)

Ye been as bolde as is Bayard the blinde,
That blundreth forth, and peril casteth

noon;
He is as bold to renne agayn a stoon 1415

As for to goon besydes in the weye.
So faren ye that multiplie, I seye.

If that your yen can nat seen a right,
Loke that your minde lakke nought his

sight. (866)
For, though ye loke never so brode, and

stare, 1420
Ye shul nat winne a myte on that chaffare,

But wasten al that ye may rape and renne.
Withdraws the fyr, lest it to faste brenne;

Medleth na-more with that art, I mene,
For, if ye doon, your thrift is goon ful

clane. 1425
And right as swythe I wol yow tellen here,

What philosophres seyn in this matere.

Lo, thus seith Arnold of the Newe Toun,
As his Rosarie maketh mencoun;
He seith right thus, with-outen any lye,
'Ther may no man Mercurie mortifye, 1431
But it be with his brother knowleching.
How that he, which that first seyde this
thing, (880)

Of philosophres fader was, Hermes;
He seith, how that the dragoun, douteles,
Ne deyeth nat, but-if that he be slayn 1436
With his brother; and that is for to sayn,
By the dragoun, Mercurie and noon other
He understood; and brimston by his
brother,

That out of *sol* and *luna* were y-drawe.
And therfor, seyde he, 'tak heed to my
sawe, 1441

Let no man busy him this art for to seche,
But-if that he th'entencioun and speche
Of philosophres understonde can; (891)
And if he do, he is a lewed man. 1445
Forthis science and this conning, quod he,
'Is of the secree of secrees, parde.'

Also ther was a disciple of Plato,
That on a tyme seyde his maister to,
As his book *Senior* wol bere witnesse, 1450
And this was his demande in soothfast-
nesse:

'Tel me the name of the privy stoon?'

And Plato answerde unto him anon,

'Tak the stoon that *Titanos* men name.'

'Which is that?' quod he. 'Magnesia
is the same,' (902) 1455

Seyde Plato. 'Ye, sir, and is it thus?

This is *ignotum per ignotius*.

What is *Magnesia*, good sir, I yow prey?'

'It is a water that is maad, I seye,

Of elementes foure,' quod Plato. 1460

'Tel me the rote, good sir,' quod he tho,

'Of that water, if that it be your wille?'

'Nay, nay,' quod Plato, 'certein, that

I nulle. (911)

The philosophres sworn were everichoon,

That they sholden discovere it an-to

noon, 1465

Ne in no book it wryte in no manere;

For un-to Crist it is so leef and dere

That he wol nat that it discovered be,

But wher it lyketh to his deitee

Man for t'enspyre, and eek for to defende

Whom that him lyketh, lo, this is the

ende.' 1471

Thanne conclude I thus; with god of

hevene

Ne wol nat that the philosophres nevere

How that a man shal come un-to the

ston, 1475

I rede, as for the beste, lete it goon. 1477

For who-so maketh god his adversarie,

As for to werken any thing in contrarie

Of his wil, certes, never shal he thryve.

Thogh that he multiplie terme of his

lyve.

And ther a poynt; for ended is my tale

God sende every trewe man bote of his

bale! Amen. (928) 1481

Here is ended the Chanounes Yemannes Tale.

GROUP H.

THE MANCIPLE'S PROLOGUE.

Here folweth the Prologe of the Maunciples Tale.

Wrrre ye nat wher ther stant a litel toun
Which that y-cleped is Bob-up-and-doun,
Under the Blee, in Caunterbury weye?
Ther gan our hoste for to jape and pleye,
And seyde, 'sirs, what! Dun is in the
myre! 5

Is ther no man, for preyere ne for hyre,
That wol awake our felawe heer bihinde?
A theef mighte him ful lightly robbe and
binde.

See how he nappeth! see, for cokkes bones,
As he wol falle from his hors at ones. 10
Is that a cook of Londoun, with mes-
chaunce?

Do him come forth, he knoweth his pen-
aunce,

For he shal telle a tale, by my fey!
Al-though it be nat worth a botel hey.
Awake, thou cook,' quod he, 'god yeve
thee sorwe, 15

What eyleth thee to slepe by the morwe?
Hastow had fleen al night, or artow
dronke,

Or hastow with som quene al night y-
swonke,

So that thou mayst nat holden up thyn
heed?'

This cook, that was ful pale and no-
thing reed, 20

Seyde to our host, 'so god my soule blesse,
As ther is falle on me swich hevinesse,
Noot I nat why, that me were lever slepe
Than the beste galoun wyn in Chepe.'

'Wel,' quod the maunciple, 'if it may
doon ese 25

To thee, sir cook, and to no wight displese
Which that heer rydeth in this companye,
And that our host wol, of his curteisye,
I wol as now excuse thee of thy tale;
For, in good feith, thy visage is ful pale,

Thyn yēn daswen eek, as that me
thinketh, 31

And wel I woot, thy breeth ful soure
stinketh,

That sheweth wel thou art not wel dis-
posed;

Of me, certein, thou shalt nat been
y-glosed.

Se how he ganeth, lo, this dronken wight,
As though he wolde us swolve anon-right.
Hold cloos thy mouth, man, by thy fader
kin! 37

The devel of helle sette his foot ther-in!
Thy cursed breeth infecte wol us alle;
Fy, stinking swyn, fy! foule moot thee
falle! 40

A! taketh heed, sirs, of this lusty man.
Now, swete sir, wol ye justen atte fan?
Ther-to me thinketh ye been wely-shape!
I trowe that ye dronken han wyn ape,
And that is whan men pleyen with a
straw.' 45

And with this speche the cook wex wrooth
and wraw,

And on the maunciple he gan nodde faste
For lakke of speche, and down the hors
him caste,

Wher as he lay, til that men up him took;
This was a fayr chivachee of a cook! 50
Allas! he nadde holde him by his ladel!
And, er that he agayn were in his sadel,
Ther was greet showving bothe to and fro,
To lifte him up, and muchel care and wo,
So unwelody was this sory palled gost. 55
And to the maunciple thanne spak our
host,

'By-cause drink hath dominacioun
Upon this man, by my savacioun
I trowe he lewedly wolde telle his tale.
For, were it wyn, or old or moysty ale, 60

That he hath dronke, he spaketh in his
nose,
And smeloth faste, and eek he hath the
pose.

He hath also to do more than y-nough
To kepe him and his capel out of slough;
And, if he falle from his capel eft-sone, 65
Than shul we alle have y-nough to done,
In lifting up his hevy drunken cora.

Telle on thy tale, of him make I no fori.
But yet, maunciple, in feith thou art to
nyce,

Thus openly repreve him of his vyce. 70
Another day he wol, peraventure,
Reclayme thes, and bringe thes to lure;
I mene, he speke wol of smale thinges,
As for to pinchen at thy rekeninges,
That wer not honeste, if it cam to preef.

'No,' quod the maunciple, 'that were
a greet mescheef! 76
So mighte he lightly bringe me in the
snare

Yet hadde I lever payen for the mare
Which he rit on, than he sholde with me
stryve; 79

I wol nat wratthe him, al-so mote I thryve'
That that I spak, I seyde it in my bourde;
And wite ye what? I have heer, in
a gourde,

A draught of wyn, ye, of a rype grape,
And right anon ye shal seen a good jape.
This cook shal drinke ther-of, if I may. 83
I'p payne of deeth, he wol nat seye me nay."

And certainly, to tellen as it was,
Of this vessel the cook drank faste, alas!
What neded him? he drank y-nough
biforn.

And whan he hadde pouped in this born,
To the maunciple he took the gourde
agayn; 86

And of that drinke the cook was wonder
fayn,

And thanked him in swich wyse as he
coude.

Than gan our host to laughen wonder
loude,

And seyde, 'I see wel, it is necessary, 89
Wher that we goon, good drink we with
us carie.

For that wol turne ranconr and disce
Tacord and love, and many a wrong aces.

O thou Bacchus, y-blessed be thy name,
That so canst turnen ernest in-to game!
Worship and thank be to thy deitee! 92
Of that matere ye gete na-more of me.

Tel on thy tale, maunciple, I thes prey.
'Wel, sir,' quod he, 'now herkne
what I seye.'

Thus endeth the Prologe of the Manciple.

THE MAUNCIPLES TALE.

Here biginneth the Maunciples Tale of the Crowe.

Whan Phebus dwelled here in this erthe
adoun, 103

As olde bokes maken mencoun,
He was the moste lusty bachiler
In al this world, and eek the beste archer;
He slow Phitoun, the serpent, as he lay
Slepinge agayn the sonne upon a day; 110

And many another noble worthy dede
He with his bows wroghte, as men may
rede.

Playen he coude on every minstralcye,
And singen, that it was a melodye, 113
To heren of his clere vois the soun. 115
Certes the king of Thebes, Amphion,

his singing walled that citee,
 er singen half so wel as he.
 was the somelieste man 119
 was, sith that the world bigan.
 with it his fetures to discryve?
 world was noon so fair on lyve.
 or-with fulfild of gentillesse,
 and of parfit worthinesse. (20)
 bus, that was flour of bachelrye,
 freedom as in chivalrye, 126
 sport, in signe eek of victorie
 , so as telleth us the storie,
 to beren in his hand a bowe.
 this Phebus in his hous a crowe,
 a cage he fostred many a day,
 te it spoken, as men teche a jay.
 this crowe, as is a snow-whyte
 (29)

refete the speche of every man
 whan he sholde telle a tale. 135
 in al this world no nightingale
 by an hondred thousand deel,
 wonder merily and weel
 this Phebus in his hous a wyf,
 t he lovede more than his lyf,
 and day dide ever his diligence
 plesse, and doon hir reverence,
 if the sothe that I shal sayn,
 was, and wolde have kept hir
 (40)

are looth by-japed for to be. 145
 very wight in swich degree;
 del, for it availleth noght.
 rf, that is clene of work and
 ,
 t been kept in noon await,
 n;
 ly, the labour is in vayn 150
 shrewe, for it wol nat be.
 I for a verray nycetee,
 labour, for to kepe wyves;
 n olde clerkes in hir lyves. (50)
 to purpos, as I first bigan : 155
 y Phebus dooth all that he can
 ir, weninge by swich plessaunce,
 manhede and his governaunce,
 an sholde han put him from
 ice.
 woot, ther may no man embrace
 eyne a thing, which that nature
 relly set in a creature. 162

Tak any brid, and put it in a cage,
 And do al thyn entente and thy corage (60)
 To fostre it tendrely with mete and
 drinke, 165
 Of alle deyntees that thou canst bithinke,
 And keep it al-so clenly as thou may;
 Al-though his cage of gold be never so gay,
 Yet hath this brid. by twenty thousand
 fold,
 Lever in a forest, that is rude and cold, 170
 Gon ete wormes and swich wrecchednesse.
 For ever this brid wol doon his bisnesse
 To escape out of his cage, if he may;
 His libertee this brid desireth ay. (70)
 Lat take a cat, and fostre him wel with
 milk, 175
 And tendre flesh, and make his couche
 of silk,
 And lat him seen a mous go by the wal;
 Anon he weyveth milk, and flesh, and al,
 And every deyntee that is in that hous,
 Swich appetyt hath he to ete a mous. 180
 Lo, here hath lust his dominacioun,
 And appetyt flemeth discrecioun.
 A she-wolf hath also a vileins kinde;
 The lewedeste wolf that she may finde, (80)
 Or leest of reputacion wol she take, 185
 In tyme whan hir lust to han a make.

Alle thise ensamples speke I by thise
 men
 That been untrewe, and no-thing by wom-
 men.

For men han ever a likerous appetyt
 On lower thing to parfourne hir delyt 190
 Than on hir wyves, be they never so faire,
 Ne never so trewe, ne so debonaire.
 Flesh is so newefangel, with meschaunce,
 That we ne conne in no-thing han ple-
 saunce (90)

That souneth in-to vertu any whyle. 195
 This Phebus, which that thoghte upon
 no gyle,
 Deceyved was, for al his jolitee;
 For under him another hadde she,
 A man of litel reputacioun, 199
 Noght worth to Phebus in comparisoun.
 The more harm is; it happeth ofte so,
 Of which ther cometh muchel harm and
 wo.

And so bifel, whan Phebus was absent,
 His wyf anon hath for hir lemman sent;

..... a wyf that is of heigh degree,
If of hir body dishonest she be, (11)
And a povre wenche, other than this—
If it so be, they werke bothe amis— 12
But that the gentle, in estat above,
She shal be cleped his lady, as in love,
And for that other is a povre woman,
She shal be cleped his wenche, or his
 lemman. 22

And, god it woot, myn owene dere brother
Men leyn that oon as lowe as lyth the
 other.

Right so, bitwixe a titleles tiraunt
And an outlawe, or a theef erraunt, (120)
The same I seye, ther is no difference. 225
To Alsauudre told was this sentence;
That, for the tyrant is of gretter might,
By force of meynce for to sleen doun-right.
And brennen hous and boom, and make
 al plain,

Lo! therfor is he cleped a capitain; 230
And, for the outlawe hath but smal meyn-
 ce,

And may nat doon so greet an harm as he,
Ne bringe a contree to so greet mescheef,
Men clepen him an outlawe or a theef.
But, for I am a man noght textuel, 235
I wol noght telle of textes never a del;
I wol go to my tale, as I bigan. (133)

Whan Phebus wyf had sent for hir lem-
 man,
Anon they wroghten al hir lust volage
The whyte crowe that

myt nat to sone, er that ye witen why,
 And beeth avysed wel and sobrelly 286
 Er ye doon any execucioun,
 Up-on your ire, for suspicioun.
 Illas! a thousand folk hath rakel ire 289
 Fully fordoon, and broght hem in the mire.
 Illas! for sorwe I wol my-selven slee!

And to the crowe, 'O false theef!' 330
 seyde he, (158)

I wol thee quyte anon thy false tale!
 Thou songe whylom lyk a nightingale;
 Now shaltow, false theef, thy song forgon,
 And eek thy whyte fetheres everichon,
 We never in al thy lyf ne shaltou speke.
 Thus shal men on a traitour been awroke;
 Thou and thyn of-spring ever shul be blake,
 We never swete noise shul ye make, 300
 But ever crye agayn tempest and rayn,
 A tokeninge that thurgh thee my wyf is
 slayn.'

And to the crowe he stirte, and that anon,
 And pulled his whyte fetheres everichon,
 And made him blak, and refte him al his
 song, (201) 303
 And eek his speche, and out at dore him
 along

In-to the devel, which I him bitake;
 And for this cas ben alle crows blake.—

Lordinge, by this ensample I yow preye,
 Leth war, and taketh kepe what I seye:
 He telleth never no man in your lyf 311
 Low that another man hath dight his wyf;
 He wol yow haten mortally, certeyn.
 Heun Salomon, as wyse clerkes seyn, (210)
 'Seeth a man to kepe his tonge wel; 315
 But as I seyde, I am nocht textuel.
 But natheless, thus taughte me my dame:
 My sone, thank on the crowe, a goddes
 name;

If sone, keep wel thy tonge and keep
 thy frend.

A wikked tonge is worse than a feend. 320
 If sone, from a feend men may hem
 blesse;

If sone, god of his endelees goodnesse
 Vallied a tonge with teeth and lippes eke,
 For man sholde him avyse what he speke.
 If sone, ful ofte, for to muche speche,

Hath many a man ben spilt, as clerkes
 teche; (222) 326

But for a litel speche avysely
 Is no men shent, to speke generally.
 My sone, thy tonge sholdestow restreyne
 At alle tyme, but whan thou doost thy
 peyne 330

To speke of god, in honour and preyere.
 The firste vertu, sone, if thou wilt lere,
 Is to restreyne and kepe wel thy tonge.—
 Thus lerne children whan that they ben
 yonge.— (230) 334

My sone, of muchel speking yvel-avysed,
 Ther lassespeking haddey-nough suffysed,
 Comth muchel harm, thus was me told
 and taught.

In muchel speche sinne wanteth naught.
 Wostow wher-of a rakel tonge serveth?
 Right as a sword forcutteth and forkerveth
 An arm a-two, my dere sone, right so 341
 A tonge cutteth frendship al a-two.

A jangler is to god abhominable; (239)
 Reed Salomon, so wys and honourable;
 Reed David in his psalmes, reed Senekke.
 My sone, spek nat, but with thyn heed
 thou bakke. 346

Dissemble as thou were deaf, if that thou
 here

A jangler speke of perilous matere.
 The Fleming seith, and lerne it, if thee
 leste, 349

That litel jangling causeth muchel reste.
 My sone, if thou no wikked word hast seyde,
 Thee thar nat drede for to be biwreyd;
 But he that hath misseyde, I dar wel sayn,
 He may by no way clepe his word agayn.
 Thing that is seyde, is seyde; and forth it
 gooth, (251) 355

Though him repente, or be him leef or
 looth.

He is his thral to whom that he hath sayd
 A tale, of which he is now yvel apayd.

My sone, be war, and be non auctour newe
 Of tydinges, whether they ben false or
 trewe. 360

Wher-so thou come, amonges hye or lowe,
 Kepe wel thy tonge, and thenk up-on the
 crowe.'

Here is ended the Maunciples Tale of the Crowe.

GROUP I.

THE PARSON'S PROLOGUE.

Here folweth the Prologe of the Persones Tale.

By that the maunciple hadde his tale al ended,
 The sonne fro the south lyne was descended
 So lowe, that he nas nat, to my sighte,
 Degrees nyne and twenty as in highte. 4
 Foure of the clokke it was tho, as I gesse.
 For eleven foot, or litel more or lesse,
 My shadwe was at thilke tyme, as there,
 Of swich feet as my lengthe parted were
 In six feet equal of proporcoun.
 Ther-with the mones exaltacioun, 10
 I mene Libra, alwey gan ascende,
 As we were antringe at a thropes ende;
 For which our host, as he was went to gye,
 As in this caas, our joly compaigne,
 Seyde in this wyse, 'lordings everichoon,
 Now lakkeþ us no tales mo than oon. 16
 Fulfild is my sentence and my decree,
 I trowe that we han herd of ech degree.
 Almost fulfild is al myn ordinaunce,
 I prey to god, so yeve him right good
 chaunce, 20
 That telleth this tale to us lustily.
 Sir preest,' quod he, 'artow a vicary?
 Or art a person? say sooth, by thy fey!
 Be what thou be, ne breke thou nat our
 pley;
 For every man, save thou, hath told his
 tale, 25
 Unboked, and shewe us what is in thy male,
 For trewely, me thinketh, by thy chere,
 Thou sholdest knitte up wel a greet matere.
 Tel us a tale anon, for cokkes bones!'
 This Person he answerde, al at ones,
 'Thou getest fable noon y-told for me; 31
 For Paul, that wryteth unto Timothee,
 Repreveth hem that weyven soothfast-
 nesse,
 And tellen fables and swich wrecched-
 nesse. 34
 Why sholde I sowen draf out of my fest,
 Whan I may sowen whete, if that me last?

For which I seye, if that yow list to here
 Moralites and vertuous matere,
 And thanne that ye wol yeve me audiance,
 I wol ful sayn, at Cristes reverence, 40
 Do yow plasaunce leefful, as I can.
 But trusteth wel, I am a Southren man,
 I can nat geste—rum, rum, ruf—by letre,
 Ne, god wot, rym holde I but litel bettre;
 And therfor, if yow list, I wol nat glose.
 I wol yow telle a mery tale in prose 46
 To knitte up al this feeste, and make an
 ende.
 And Jesu, for his grace, wit me sende
 To shewe yow the wey, in this viage,
 Of thilke parfit glorious pilgrimage 50
 That highte Jerusalem celestual.
 And, if ye vouche-sauf, anon I shal
 Biginne upon my tale, for whiche I preye
 Telle your avys, I can no bettre seye.
 But natheles, this meditacioun 55
 I putte it ay under correccioun
 Of clerkos, for I am nat textuel;
 I take but the sentens, trusteth wel.
 Therfor I make protestacioun
 That I wol stonde to correccioun. 60
 Up-on this word we han assented sone,
 For, as us semed, it was for to done,
 To enden in som vertuous sentence,
 And for to yeve him space and audiance;
 And bede our host he sholde to his
 seye, 65
 That alle we to telle his tale him preye.
 Our host hadde the wordes for us alle:—
 'Sir preest,' quod he, 'now fayre yow
 bifalle!
 Sey what yow list, and we wol gladly
 here'—
 And with that word he seyde in this
 manere— 70
 'Telleth,' quod he, 'your meditacioun.
 But hasteth yow, the sonne wol adoun;
 Beth fructuous, and that in litel space,
 And to do wel god sende yow his grace!'

Explicit prohemium.

THE PERSONES TALE.

Here biginneth the Persones Tale.

*o. State super vias et videte et inter-
le viis antiquis, que sit via bona;
late in ea, et inuenietis refrigerium
us vestris, &c.*

Our swete lord god of hevene, that
a wol perisse, but wole that we
alle to the knoweleche of him,
the blisful lyf that is perdurable, /
teth us by the prophete Jeremie,
th in this wyse: / 'stondeth upon
yes, and seeth and axeth of olde
(that is to seyn, of olde sentences)
is the goode wey; / and walketh
wey, and ye shul finde refresh-
your soules,' &c. / Manye been
yes esprituels that leden folk to
ord Jesu Crist, and to the regne of
/ Of whiche weyes, ther is a ful
wey and a ful covenantable, which
at faile to man ne to womman,
urgh sinne hath misgoon fro the
wey of Jerusalem celestial; / and
ey is cleped Penitence, of which
olde gladly herknen and enquere
l his herte; / to witen what is
ice, and whennes it is cleped Peni-
and in how manye maneres been
ions or werkinges of Penitence, /
w manye spyces ther been of Peni-
and whiche thinges apertenen and
n to Penitence, and whiche thinges
ben Penitence. /

Seint Ambrose seith, that 'Peni-
is the pleyninge of man for the
at he hath doon, and na-more to
r thing for which him oghte to
' / And som doctour seith: 'Peni-
is the waymentinge of man, that
h for his sinne and pyneth him-
he hath misdoon.' / Penitence,
certeyne circumstances, is verray
ance of a man that halt him-self

in sorwe and other peyne for hise giltes. /
And for he shal be verray penitent, he
shal first biwailen the sinnes that he
hath doon, and stidefastly purposen in
his herte to have shrift of mouthe, and
to doon satisfaccioun, / and never to doon
thing for which him oghte more to biwayle
or to compleyne, and to continue in goode
werkes: or elles his repentance may nat
availle. / For as seith seint Isidre: 'he is
a japer and a gabber, and no verray repen-
tant, that eftsoone dooth thing, for which
him oghte repenta.' / Wepinge, and nat for
to stinte to doon sinne, may nat avaylle. / 90
But nathelees, men shal hope that every
tyme that man falleth, be it never so
ofte, that he may arise thurgh Penitence,
if he have grace: but certainly it is greet
doute. / For as seith Seint Gregorie: 'un-
nethe aryseth he out of sinne, that is
charged with the charge of yvel usage.' /
And therfore repentant folk, that stint
for to sinne, and forlete sinne er that
sinne forlete hem, holy chirche holdeth
hem siker of hir savacioun. / And he
that sinneth, and verrailly repenteth him
in his laste ende, holy chirche yet hopeth
his savacioun, by the grete mercy of oure
lord Jesu Crist, for his repentaunce; but
tak the siker wey. / (20)

§ 3. And now, sith I have declared
yow what thing is Penitence, now shul
ye understonde that ther been three
accions of Penitence. / The firste accion 95
of Penitence is, that a man be baptized
after that he hath sinned. / Seint Au-
gustin seith: 'but he be penitent for his
olde sinful lyf, he may nat biginne the
newe clene lif.' / For certes, if he be
baptized withouten penitence of his olde
gilt, he receiveth the mark of baptisme,
but nat the grace ne the remission of his
sinnes, til he have repentance verray. /

Another defaute is this, that men doon deedly sinne after that they han received baptisme. / The thridde defaute is, that men fallen in venial sinnes after hir
100 baptisme, fro day to day. / Ther-of seith Seint Augustin, that 'penitence of goode and humble folk is the penitence of every day.' /

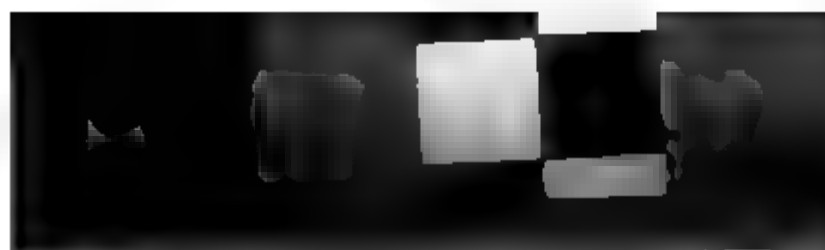
§ 4. The spyces of Penitence been three. That oon of hem is solempne, another is commune, and the thridde is privee. / Thilke penance that is solempne, is in two maneres; as to be put out of holy chirche in lente, for slaughtre of children, and swich maner thing. / Another is, whan a man hath sinned openly, of which sinne the fame is openly spoken in the contree; and thanne holy chirche by jugement destreineth him for to do open
(30) penance. / Commune penance is that preestes enjoynen men comunly in certeyn cas; as for to goon, paraventure, naked
105 in pilgrimages, or bare-foot. / Privee penance is thilke that men doon alday for privee sinnes, of which we shryve us prively and receyve prives penance. /

§ 5. Now shaltow understande what is bilowely and necessarie to verray parfit Penitence. And this stant on three thinges; / Contricioun of herte, Confessioun of Mouth, and Satisfaccioun. / For which seith Seint John Crisostom: 'Penitence destreyneth a man to accepte benignely every payne that him is enjoyned, with contricion of herte, and shrift of mouth, with satisfaccion; and in werkings of alle maner humiltee.' / And this is fruitful Penitence agayn
110 lord Jesu Crist: / this is to seyn, by delyt in thinkings, by recchelesnesse in spekinge, and by wikked sinful werkings. / And agayns these wikkede gyltes is Penitence, that may be lykned un-to a tree. /

§ 6. The rote of this tree is Contricion, that hydeth him in the herte of him that is verray repentant, right as the rote of a tree hydeth him in the erthe. / Of the rote of Contricion springeth a stalke, that bereth branches and leves of Con-
(40) fession, and fruit of Satisfaccion. / For

which Crist seith in his gospel: 'dooth digne fruit of Penitence'; for by this fruit may men knowe this tree, and nat by the rote that is hid in the herte of man, ne by the branches ne by the leves of Confession. / And therefore oure Lord Jesu Crist seith thus: 'by the fruit of hem ye shul knowen hem.' / Of this rote eek springeth a seed of grace, the which seed is moder of sikernes, and this seed is egre and hoot. / The grace of this seed springeth of god, thurgh remembrance of the day of dome and on the peynes of helle. / Of this matere seith Salomon, that 'in the drede of god man forleteth his sinne.' / The herte of this seed is the love of god, and the desiring of the joye perdurable. / This herte draweth the herte of a man to god, and dooth him haten his sinne. / For soothly, ther is no-thing that savoureth so wel to a child as the milk of his norice, ne no-thing is to him more abhominable than thilke milk whan it is medled with other mete. / Right so the sinful man that loveth his sinne, him semeth that it is to him most swete of any-thing; / but fro that tyme that he loveth sadly our lord Jesu Crist, and desireth the lif perdurable, ther nis to him no-thing more abhominable. / For
(50) soothly, the lawe of god is the love of god; for which David the prophete seith: 'I have loved thy lawe and hated wikkednesse and hate'; he that loveth god kepeth his lawe and his word. / This tree saugh the prophete Daniel in spirit, up-on the avision of the king Nabodonosor, whan he counsailed him to do penitence. / Penance is the tree of lyf to hem that it receiven, and he that holdeth him in verray penitence is blessed; after the sentence of Salomon. /

§ 7. In this Penitence or Contricion man shal understonde foure thinges, that is to seyn, what is Contricion: and which been the causes that moeven a man to Contricion: and how he sholde be contrit: and what Contricion availleth to the soule. / Thanne is it thus: that Contricion is the verray sorwe that a



in his herte for his sinnes,
as to shryve him, and to
and nevermore to do sinne./
e shal been in this manere,
t Bernard: 'it shal been
vous, and ful sharpe and
cte.'/ First, for man hath
and his creatour; and more
inant, for he hath agilt his
;/ and yet more sharpe
for he hath wrathed and
t boghte him; which with
lood hath delivered us fro
' sinne, and fro the cruel-
vol and fro the paynes of

uses that oghte moove a
ricken been six. First, a
ombre him of his sinnes; /
at thilke remembrance ne
delyt by no way, but greet
rwe for his gilt. For Job
men down werkes worthy
'/ And therefore seith
vol remembre me alle the
lyf, in bitternesse of myn
god seith in the Apocalips:
yow fro whennes that ye
r biforn that tyme that ye
re the children of god, and
igne of god; / but for your
woxen thral and foul, and
be fsend, hate of angels,
holy churche, and fode of
went; perpetual matere of
lle. / And yet more foul
alde, for ye trespassen so
doth the hound that re-
sten his spewing. / And
aler for your longe con-
ine and your sinful usago,
be roten in your sinne,
is dong. / Swiche manere
aken a man to have shame
and no delyt, as god seith
ete Ezechiel: / 'ye shal
w of youre weyes, and they
'yow.' Sothly, sinnes been
t leden folk to helle. /
onde cause that oghte make
o dedeysn of sinne is this:

that, as seith saint Peter, 'who-so that
doth sinne is thral of sinne'; and sinne
put a man in greet thraldom. / And
therefore seith the prophete Ezechiel:
'I wante sorweful in deedayn of my-self.'
And certes, wel oghte a man have de-
dayn of sinne, and withdrawe him from
that thraldom and vileinye. / And lo, what
seith Seneca in this matere. He seith
thus: 'though I wiste that neither god
ne man ne sholde nevere knowe it, yet
wolde I have deedayn for to do sinne.' / (70)
And the same Seneca also seith: 'I am
born to gretter thinges than to be thral
to my body, or than for to maken of my
body a thral' / Ne a fouler thral may
145
no man ne woman maken of his body,
than for to yeven his body to sinne. /
Al were it the fouleste cherl, or the foul-
este woman that liveth, and leest of
value, yet is he thanne more foule and
more in servitude. / Evere fro the hyer
degree that man falleth, the more is he
thral, and more to god and to the world
vile and abhominable. / O gode god,
wel oghte man have deedayn of sinne; sith
that, thurgh sinne, ther he was free, now
is he makid bonds. / And therefore seyth
Saint Augustin: 'if thou hast deedayn
of thy servant, if he agilte or sinne,
have thou thanne deedayn that thou
thy-self sholdest do sinne.' / Take reward
150
of thy value, that thou ne be to foul to
thy-self. / Allas! wel oghten they thanne
have deedayn to been servauntz and
thralls to sinne, and sore been ashamed
of hem-self, / that god of his endelees
goodnesse hath set hem in heigh estat,
or yeven hem wit, strengthe of body, hele,
beautee, prosperitee, / and boghte hem
fro the deeth with his herte blood, that
they so unkindely, agayns his gentilese,
quyten him so vileinsly, to slaughtre of
hir owene soules. / O gode god, ye
(80)
women that been of so greet beautee,
remembreth yow of the proverbe of
Salomon, that seith: / 'he lyketh a
155
fair woman, that is a fool of hir body,
lyk to a ring of gold that were in the
groyn of a sowe.' / For right as a sowe
wroteth in everich ordure, so wroteth

she hir beautes in the stinkinge ordure
of sinne. /

§ 10. The thridda cause that oghte
moeve a man to Contricion, is drede of
the day of dome, and of the horrible
peynes of helle. / For as seint Jerome
seith: 'at every tyme that me remem-
breth of the day of dome, I quake; / for
whan I ate or drinke, or what-so that
I do, evere sameth me that the trompe
160 sowneth in myn ere. / riseth up, ye that
been dede, and cometh to the jugement.' /
O gode god, muchel oghte a man to drede
swich a jugement, 'ther as we shullen
been alle,' as seint Poul seith, 'biforn the
sete of oure lord Jesu Crist'; / wher-as
he shal make a general congregacion,
wher-as no man may been absent. / For
certes, there availleth noon escoupe ne
(90) excusacion. / And nat only that oure
defautes shullen be juged, but eek that
165 alle oure werkes shullen openly be knowe. /
And as seith Seint Bernard: 'ther ne
shal no pleding availle, ne no sleighte;
we shullen yeven rekeninge of everich
ydel word.' / Ther shul we han a juge
that may nat been deceived ne corrupt.
And why? For, certes, alle our thoghtes
been discovered as to him; ne for preyere
ne for mede he shal nat been corrupt. /
And therefore seith Salomon: 'the wratthe
of god ne wol nat spare no wight, for
preyere ne for yifte'; and therefore, at
the day of doom, ther nis noon hope to
escape. / Wherefore, as seith Seint
Anselm: 'ful greet angwisch shul the
sinful folk have at that tyme; / ther
shal the sterne and wrothe juge sitte
above, and under him the horrible put
of helle open to destroyen him that moot
biknowen hise sinnes, whiche sinnes
openly been shewed biforn god and bi-
170 forn every creature. / And on the left
gyde, no devides than herte may bithinke,
for to harie and draws the sinful soules
to the pyne of helle. / And with-inne
the hertes of folk shal be the bytinge
conscience, and with-oute-forth shal be
the world al brenninge. / Whider shal
thanne the wrecched sinful man flee to
hyden him? Certes, he may nat hyden

him; he mooste come forth and shewen
him. / For certes, as seith seint Jerome:
'the erthe shal casten him out of him,
and the see also; and the eyr also, that
shal be ful of thunder-clappes and light-
ninges.' / Now soothly, who-so wel re-
membreth him of thise thinges, I gesse
that his sinne shal nat turne him in-to
delyt, but to greet sorwe, for drede of the
payne of helle. / And therefore seith Job 17
to god - 'suffre, lord, that I may a whyle
biwaille and wepe, er I go with-oute
returning to the derke lond, covered with
the derknesse of deeth; / to the lond of
misere and of darknesse, where-as is the
shadwe of deeth, where-as ther is noon
ordre or ordinance, but grisly drede that
evere shal laste.' / Lo, here may ye see
that Job preyde respyt a whyle, to biwepe
and waille his trespas, for soothly our
day of respyt is better than al the tressor
of the world. / And for-as-muche as
a man may acquiten him-self biforn god
by penitence in this world, and nat by
tressor, therefore sholde he preye to god
to yeve him respyt a whyle, to biwepe
and biwailen his trespas. / For certes,
al the sorwe that a man mighte make
fro the beginning of the world, nis but
a litel thing at regard of the sorwe of
helle. / The cause why that Job clepeth
helle 'the lond of derknesse'; / under-
stondeth that he clepeth it 'londe' or
erthe, for it is stable, and nevere shal
faile; 'derk,' for he that is in helle hath
defaute of light material. / For certes,
the derke light, that shal come out of the
fyr that evere shal brenne, shal turne
him al to payne that is in helle, for it
sheweth him to the horrible devides that
him tormenten. / 'Covered with the
derknesse of deeth': that is to seyn, that
he that is in helle shal have defaute of
the sighte of god; for certes, the sighte
of god is the lyf perdurable. / 'The
derknesse of deeth' been the sinnes that
the wrecched man hath don, whiche
that destourben him to see the face of
god; right as doth a derk cloude bitwixe
us and the sonne. / 'Lond of misere': /
by-cause that ther been three maneres

sayn thre thinges that folk
 han in this present lyf,
 agayn, honoure, delyces, and
 agayn honoure, have they
 and confusion. / For wel
 men clepen 'honour' the
 man doth to man, but in
 honour is reverence. For
 reverence shal be doon
 thing than to a knave. / For
 by the prophete Jeremye
 that me despysen shul been
 'Honour' is eek cleped
 ; ther shal no man serve
 harm and torment. 'Honour'
 is greet dignitee and heigh-
 in helle shul they been al
 devyles. And god seith
 devyles shulle goon and
 the hevendes of the dampned
 this is for-as-muche as, the
 way were in this present lyf,
 helle they been abated and
 helle. Agayn the riches-
 shul they han mase of
 this povertie shal been in
 : / in defaute of tresor, of
 David seith, 'the rich folk,
 den and onen al hir herte
 this world, shul slepe in the
 death' and no-thing he shal
 in hir handes of al hir
 and more-over, the misse of
 den in defaute of mete and
 for god seith thus by Moyses,
 den wasted with hunger, and
 of helle shul devouren hem
 death, and the galle of the
 been hir drinke, and the
 dragon hir morrells. / And
 hir misse shal been in
 clothing for they shulle be
 as of clothing, save the fyr
 by brende and othere filthes
 shul they been of soules of alle
 face, which that is the cloth-
 soule. Where been thanne the
 and the softe shotes and the
 ? / Lo, what seith god of
 prophete Isaye that under
 strawed motthes, and hir

covertures shulle been of wormes of
 helle. / And fether-over hir misse
 shal been in defaute of freendes, for he
 his nat poure that hath gode freendes,
 but there is no freend. / for neither god
 ne no creature shal been frend to hem,
 and everich of hem shal haten other
 with deedly hate. / 'The sones and the
 doughtren shullen rebelen agayn fader
 and mooder, and kinrede agayn kinrede
 and chyden and despyser everich of hem
 other,' bothe day and night as god seith
 by the prophete Michas. / And the
 lovinge children, that whysom loveden
 so fleshly everich other, welden everich
 of hem eten other if they mighte. / For
 how sholden they love hem togidre in the
 peyne of helle, whan they hated ech of
 hem other in the prosperitee of this lyf ?
 For truste wel, hir fleshly love was deedly
 hate, as seith the prophete David, 'who-
 so that loveth wikkednesse he hateth his
 soule.' / And who-so hateth his owne
 soule, certes, he may love noon other
 wight in no manere. And therefore, so
 in helle is no solas ne no frendshipe, but
 evere the more fleshly kinredes that been
 in helle, the more cursinges, the more
 chylinges, and the more deedly hate ther
 is among hem. / And fether-over they
 shul have defaute of alle manere delyces,
 for certes, delyces been after the appe-
 tytes of the fyve wittes, as sighte, heringe,
 smellinge, savoringe and touchinge.
 But in helle hir sighte shal be ful of
 darkness and of smoke, and therefore ful
 of tere, and hir heringe, ful of way-
 mentinge and of gruntinge of teeth, as
 seith Iohn Crist / hir nosethirles shullen
 be ful of stunkinge stink. And as seith
 Isaye the prophete, 'hir savoring shal
 be ful of bitter galle.' / And touchinge
 of al hir body, ycovered with fyr that
 nevere shal quenche, and with wormes
 that nevere shul dyen,' as god seith by
 the mouth of Isaye. And for-as-muche
 as they shul nat wene that they may
 dyen for peyne, and by hir death flee
 fro peyne, that may they understonden
 by the word of Job, that seith, 'ther-as
 is the shadowe of death.' Certes, a

shadwe hath the lyknesse of the thing of which it is shadwe, but shadwe is nat the same thing of which it is shadwe. / Right so fareth the peyne of helle; it is lyk deeth for the horrible anguish, and why? For it peyneth hem evere, as though they sholde dye anon; but certes they shal nat dye. / For as seith Saint Gregorie: 'to wrecche caytives shal be deeth with-oute deeth, and ende with-
 (140) outhen ende, and defaute with-oute fail-
 inge. / For hir deeth shal alwey liven, and hir ende shal everemo biginne, and
 215 hir defaute shal nat faille.' / And therfore seith Saint John the Evangelist: 'they shullen folwe deeth, and they shul nat finde him; and they shul desyren to dye, and deeth shal flee fro hem.' / And eek Job seith: that 'in helle is noon ordre of rule.' / And al-be-it so that god hath creat alle thinges in right ordre, and no-thing with-outhen ordre, but alle thinges been ordeyned and nombred; yet nathelless they that been dampned been no-thing in ordre, ne holden noon ordre. / For the erthe ne shal bere hem no fruit. / For, as the prophete David seith: 'god shal destroye the fruit of the erthe as fro hem'; ne water ne shal yeve hem no moisture, ne
 270 the eyr no refresching, ne fyr no light. / For as seith saint Basile: 'the brenninge of the fyr of this world shal god yeven in helle to hem that been dampned; / but the light and the cleernesse shal be yeven in hevenc to hisse children'; right as the gode man yeveth flesh to hisse children, and bones to hisse bounden. / And for they shullen have noon hope to escape, seith saint Job atte laste: that 'ther shal horroure and grisly drede dwellen with-outhen ende.' / Horroure is alwey drede of harm that is to come, and this drede shal evere dwelle in the hertes of hem that been dampned. And therefore han they lorn al hir hope, for seven
 (150) causes. / First, for god that is hir juge shal be with-outhen mercy to hem; ne they may nat plesse him, ne noon of hisse halwes; ne they ne may yeve no-thing
 225 for hir raunson; / ne they have no vois

to speke to him; ne they may nat flee fro peyne, ne they have no goodnesse in hem, that they mowe shewe to delivere hem fro peyne. / And therfore seith Salomon: 'the wikked man dyeth; and whan he is deed, he shal have noon hope to escape fro peyne.' / Who-so thanne wolde wel understande these peynes, and bithinke him weel that he hath deserved thilke peynes for his sinnes, certes, he sholde have more talent to syken and to wepe than for to singen and to pleye. / For as that seith Salomon: 'who-so that hadde the science to knowe the peynes that been establissed and ordeyned for sinne, he wolde make sorwe.' / 'Thilke science,' as seith saint Augustin, 'maketh a man to waymenten in his herte.' / 190

§ 11. The fourthe point, that oghte maken a man to have contricion, is the sorweful remembrance of the good that he hath left to doon here in erthe, and eek the good that he hath lorn. / Soothly, the gode werkes that he hath left, outhen they been the gode werkes that he wroghte er he fel in-to deedly sinne, or elles the gode werkes that he wroghte while he lay in sinne. / Soothly, the gode werkes, that he dide bifore that he fil in sinne, been al mortified and astoned and dilled by the ofte sinning. / The othere gode werkes, that he wroghte whyl he lay in deedly sinne, they been outrelly dede as to the lyf perdurable in hevenc. / Thanne thilke gode werkes
 200 that been mortified by ofte sinning, whiche gode werkes he dide whyl he was in charitee, ne mowe nevere quiken agayn with-outhen verray penitence. / And ther-
 215 of seith god, by the mouth of Ezechiel. that, 'if the rightful man returne agayn from his rightwisnesse and werke wikkednesse, shal he live?' / Nay; for alle the gode werkes that he hath wroght ne shal nevere been in remembrance, for he shal dyen in his sinne. / And up-on thilke chapitre seith saint Gregorie thus: 'that we shulle understonde this principally; / that whan we doon deedly sinne, it is for noght thanne to rehersen or drawn in-to memorie the gode werkes that we

han wrought biforn.' / For certes, in the
 werkings of the deedly sinne, ther is no
 trust to no good werk that we han doon
 biforn; that is to seyn, as for to have
 240 therby the lyf perdurable in hevenc. /
 But natheles, the gode werkes quiken
 agayn, and comen agayn, and helpen,
 and availen to have the lyf perdurable
 in hevenc, whan we han contricion. /
 But soothly, the gode werkes that men
 doon whyl they been in deedly sinne,
 for-as-muche as they were doon in deedly
 sinne, they may nevere quiken agayn. /
 For certes, thing that nevere hadde lyf
 may nevere quikene; and natheles, al-
 be-it that they no availle noght to han
 the lyf perdurable, yet availen they to
 abregge of the peyne of helle, or elles to
 gotten temporal richesse, / or elles that
 god wole the rather enlumine and lightne
 the herte of the sinful man to have
 270 repentance; / and eek they availen for
 to useen a man to doon gode werkes, that
 the feend have the lasse power of his
 245 soule. / And thus the curteis lord Jesu
 Crist wole that no good werk be lost;
 for in somewhat it shal availle. / But
 for-as-muche as the gode werkes that
 men doon whyl they been in good lyf,
 been al mortified by sinne folwinge; and
 eek, sith that alle the gode werkes that
 men doon whyl they been in deedly
 synne, been outrely dede as for to have
 the lyf perdurable; / wel may that man,
 that no good werke no dooth, singe thilke
 newe Frenshe song: '*Jay tout perdu mon
 temps et mon labour.*' / For certes, sinne
 bireveth a man bothe goodnesse of nature
 and eek the goodnesse of grace. / For
 soothly, the grace of the holy goost
 fareth lyk fyr, that may nat been ydel;
 for fyr faileth anon as it forleteth his
 wirkinge, and right so grace fayleth
 290 anon as it forleteth his werkinge. /
 Than leseth the sinful man the goodnesse
 of glorie, that only is blyght to gode
 men that labouren and werken. / Wel
 may he be sory thanne, that oweth al
 his lif to god as long as he hath lived,
 and eek as long as he shal live, that no
 goodnesse he hath to paye with his dette

to god, to whom he oweth al his lyf. /
 For trust wel, 'he shal yeven accountes,'
 as seith seint Bernard, 'of alle the godes
 that han be yeven him in this present
 lyf, and how he hath hem despended; /
 in so muche that ther shal nat perisse an
 heer of his heed, ne a moment of an
 houre ne shal nat perisse of his tyme,
 that he ne shal yove of it a rekening.' / (120)

§ 12. The fiftething that oghte moeve
 a man to contricion, is remembrance of
 the passion that oure lord Jesu Crist
 suffred for oure sinnes. / For, as seith 255
 seint Bernard: 'whyl that I live, I shal
 have remembrance of the travaillies that
 oure lord Crist suffred in preching; / his
 woriness in travailling, his temptacions
 whan he fasted, his longe wakinges
 whan he prayde, his tores whan that
 he weep for pitee of good peple, / the
 wo and the shame and the filthe that
 men seyden to him; of the foule spitting
 that men spitte in his face, of the
 buffettes that men yaven him, of the
 foule mowes, and of the repreves that
 men to him seyden; / of the nayles with
 which he was nailed to the croys, and
 of al the remenant of his passion that he
 suffred for my sinnes, and no-thing for
 his gilt.' / And ye shul understonde,
 that in mannes sinne is every manere of
 ordre or ordinance turned up-so-down. / 260
 For it is sooth, that god, and reson, and
 sensualitee, and the body of man been so
 ordeyned, that everich of thisse foure
 thinges shold have lordshipe over that
 other; / as thus: god shold have lord-
 shipe over reson, and reson over sensu-
 alitee, and sensualitee over the body of
 man. / But soothly, whan man sinneth,
 al this ordre or ordinance is turned
 up-so-down. / And therefore thanne, for-
 as-muche as the reson of man ne wol nat
 be subget ne obeisant to god, that is his
 lord by right, therefore leseth it the lord-
 shipe that it shold have over sensualitee,
 and eek over the body of man. / And (190)
 why? For sensualitee rebelleth thanne
 agayns reson; and by that wey leseth
 reson the lordshipe over sensualitee and
 over the body. / For right as reson is 265

rebel to god, right so is bothe sensualitee
 rebel to reson and the body also. / And
 certes, this disordinance and this re-
 bellion oure lord Jesu Crist aboghte
 up-on his precious body ful dere, and
 harkneth in which wyse. / For-as-muche
 thanne as reson is rebel to god, therefore
 is man worthy to have sorwe and to be
 deed. / This suffred oure lord Jesu Crist
 for man, after that he hadde be bitrayssed
 of his disciple, and distrayned and
 bounde, 'so that his blood brast out at
 every nail of hisse handes,' as seith seint
 Augustin. / And forther-over, for-as-
 muchel as reson of man ne wol nat
 daunte sensualitee whan it may, therefore
 is man worthy to have shame, and this
 suffred oure lord Jesu Crist for man,
 270 whan they spetten in his visage. / And
 forther-over, for-as-muchel thanne as the
 caritif body of man is rebel bothe to reson
 and to sensualitee, therefore is it worthy
 the deeth. / And this suffred oure lord
 Jesu Crist for man up-on the croys,
 where-as ther was no part of his body
 free, with-uten greet payne and bitter
 passion. / And al this suffred Jesu
 Crist, that nevere forfeled. And therefore
 reasonably may be seyde of Jesu in this
 manere: 'to muchel am I payned for
 the thynges that I nevere deserved, and
 to muche defouled for shendshipe that
 man is worthy to have.' / And therefore
 may the sinful man wel seye, as seith
 seint Bernard: 'acursed be the bitter-
 nesse of my sinne, for which ther moste
 (200) be suffred so muchel bitterness.' / For
 certes, after the diverse discordances of
 oure wikkednesses, was the passion of
 275 Jesu Crist ordeyned in diverse thynges, /
 as thus. Certes, sinful mannes soule is
 bitrayssed of the deval by coveitise of
 temporal prosperitee, and scorned by
 deceite whan he cheseth fleshly delices;
 and yet is it tormented by impacience of
 adversitee, and bispet by servage and
 subjeccion of sinne, and atte laste it is
 slayn fynally / For this disordinance
 of sinful man was Jesu Crist first bi-
 trayssed, and after that was he bounde,
 that cam for to unbynden us of sinne

and peyna. / Thanne was he biscorned,
 that only sholde han been honoured in
 alle thynges and of alle thynges. / Thanne
 was his visage, that oghte be deured
 to be seyn of al man-kinde, in which
 visage aungels desyren to looke, vileynaly
 bispet. / Thanne was he scourged that
 no-thing hadde agilt; and fynally, thanne
 was he crucified and slayn. / Thanne 25
 was acomplished the word of Isaye: 'he
 was wounded for oure misededes, and
 defouled for oure felonies.' / Now seith
 that Jesu Crist took up-on him-self the
 peyne of alle oure wikkednesses, muchel
 oghte sinful man wepen and biwria,
 that for hisse sinnes goddes sone of
 hevne sholde al this peyne endura. /

§ 18. The sixte thing that oghte move
 a man to contricion, is the hope of three
 thynges; that is to seyn, foryifnesse of
 sinne, and the yifte of grace wel for to
 do, and the glorie of hevne, with which
 god shal guerdone a man for hisse gode
 dedes. / And for-as-muche as Jesu Crist
 yeveth us thise yiftes of his largesse and
 of his sovereyn bountee, therefore is he
 cleped *Jesu Nazarenus rex Judorum*. / 280
 Jesus is to seyn 'saveour' or 'salvacion,'
 on whom men shul hope to have foryif-
 nesse of sinnes, which that is proprely
 salvacion of sinnes. / And therefore seide
 the aungel to Joseph: 'thou shalt clepen
 his name Jesus, that shal saven his peple
 of hir sinnes.' / And heer-of seith seint
 Peter: 'ther is noon other name under
 hevne that is yeve to any man, by which
 a man may be saved, but only Jesus.' /
Nazarenus is as muche for to seye as
 'flourishing,' in which a man shal hope,
 that he that yeveth him remission of
 sinnes shal yeve him eek grace wel for to
 do. For in the flour is hope of fruit in
 tyme cominge; and in foryifnesse of
 sinnes hope of grace wel for to do. /
 'I was atte dore of thyn herte,' seith
 Jesus, 'and cleped for to entre, he that
 openeth to me shal have foryifnesse of
 sinne. / I wol entre in-to him by my
 grace, and soupe with him,' by the goode
 werkes that he shal doon; whiche werkes
 been the foods of god; 'and he shal

is grete joye that
huschal man hope,
announce, that god
gave; as he bihoteth

man understonde, in
been his contricion.
al been universal and
seyn, a man shal be
for alle his sinnes that
delyt of his thought; for
rulous. / For ther been
consentinges; that con of
consentinges of affection,
s mooved to do sinne, and
longe for to thinke on that
i his reson aperceyvethe it
is sinne agayns the lawe of
his reson refreyneth nat his
or talent, though he see wel
at it is agayns the reverence of
though his reson ne consente
deon that sinne in dede, / yet
mme doctours that swich delyt
welleth longe, it is ful perilous,
s nevere so lite. / And also a man
s sorwe, namely, for al that evere
ath desired agayn the lawe of god
s perfit consentinges of his reson; for
of is no doute, that it is deedly sinne
consentinges. / For certes, ther is no
deedly sinne, that it nas first in mannes
thought, and after that in his delyt; and
so forth in-to consentinges and in-to dede. /
Wherfore I seye, that many men ne re-
penten hem nevere of swiche thoughtes
and delytes, ne nevere shryven hem of it,
but only of the dede of grete sinnes
outward. / Wherfore I seye, that swiche
wikked delytes and wikked thoughtes been
subtile bigylares of hem that shullen be
dampned. / More-over, man oghte to
sorwe for his wikkede wordes as wel as
for his wikkede dedes; for certes, the
repentance of a singular sinne, and nat
repente of alle his othere sinnes, or elles
repenten him of alle his othere sinnes,
and nat of a singular sinne, may nat
300 availle. / For certes, god almighty is al
good; and therfore he foryevech al, or
alles right noght. / And hear-of seith

seint Augustin: 'I woot certainly / that
god is enemy to everich sinner'; and
how thanne? He that observeth o sinne,
shal he have foryifnesse of the reme-
nant of his othere sinnes? Nay. /
And forther-over, contricion shokle be
wonder sorweful and anguiseous, and
therfore yeveth him god pleynty his
mercy; and therfore, when my soule
was anguiseous with-inne me, I hadde
remembrance of god that my preyere
might come to him. / Forther-over, (230)
contricion mooste be continual, and that
man have stedfast purpos to shryven
him, and for to amenden him of his lyf. / 305
For soothly, whyl contricion lasteth, man
may evere have hope of foryifnesse; and
of this comth hate of sinne, that destroy-
eth sinne bothe in himself, and eek in
other folk, at his power. / For which
seith David: 'ye that loven god hateth
wikkednesse.' For trusteth wel, to love
god is for to love that he loveth, and
hate that he hateth. /

§ 15. The laste thing that man shal
understonde in contricion is this; wher-
of awayleth contricion. I seye, that som
tyme contricion delivereth a man fro
sinne; / of which that David seith:
'I seye,' quod David, that is to seyn,
'I purposed fermely to shryve me, and
thow, Lord, reledest my sinne.' / And
right so as contricion availleth noght,
with-outen sad purpos of shrifte, if man
have oportunitie, right so litel worth is
shrifte or satisfaccion with-outen con-
tricion. / And more-over, contricion 310
destroyeth the prison of helle, and maketh
wayk and feble alle the strengthes of the
develes, and restoreth the yiftes of the
holy goost and of alle gode vertues. / and
it clenseth the soule of sinne, and
delivereth the soule fro the payne of
helle, and fro the companye of the devel,
and fro the servage of sinne, and restoreth
it to alle godes aspirituels, and to the
companye and communion of holy
chirche. / And forther-over, it maketh
him that whylom was sone of ire to be
sone of grace, and alle thise thinges been
proved by holy writ. / And tharfore, he

that wolde sette his entente to thise
 thinges, he were ful wys, for soothly, he
 ne sholde nat thanne in al his lyf have
 corage to sinne, but yeven his body and
 al his herte to the service of Jesu Crist,
 (240) and ther-of doon him hommage. / For
 soothly, oure swete lord Jesu Crist hath
 spared us so debonairly in our folies, that
 if he ne hadde pitee of mannes soule,
 115 a sory song we mighten alle singe. /

**Explicit prima pars Penitentie; et
 sequitur secunda pars eiusdem.**

§ 16. The seconde partie of Penitence is
 Confession, that is signe of contricion. /
 Now shul ye understonde what is Con-
 fession, and whether it oghte nedes be
 doon or noon and which thinges been
 sovenable to verray Confession. /

§ 17. First shaltow understonde that
 Confession is verray shewing of sinnes
 to the preest; / this is to seyn 'verray,'
 for he moste confessen him of alle the
 condicions that bilongen to his sinne, as
 forforth as he can. / Al moot be seyde,
 and no thing excused ne hid ne for-
 wrapped, and noght avaunte him of his
 320 gode werkes. / And forther over, it is
 necessarie to understonde whennes that
 sinnes springen, and how they encreasen,
 and whiche they been. /

§ 18. Of the springinge of sinnes seith
 seint Paul in this wise: that 'right as by
 a man sinne entred first in-to this world,
 and thurgh that sinne deeth, right so
 thilke deeth entred in-to alle men that
 sinneden.' / And this man was Adam,
 by whom sinne entred in-to this world
 whan he brak the comaundement of
 god. / And therfore, he that first was so
 mighty that he sholde not have dyed,
 bicom swich oon that he moste nedes dye,
 whether he wolde or noon, and all his
 progenie in this world that in thilke man
 450 sinneden. / Loke that in th'estant of
 innocence, when Adam and Eve naked
 weren in paradys, and no-thing ne hadden
 125 shame of hir nakednesse, / how that the
 serpent, that was most wyly of alle othere
 bestes that god hadde makid, seyde to

the womman. 'why comaunded god to
 yow, ye sholde nat eten of every tree in
 paradys?' / The womman answered
 'of the fruit,' quod she, 'of the tree in
 paradys we feden us, but soothly of the
 fruit of the tree that is in the middel of
 paradys, god forbad us for to ete, and
 toouchen it, lest per-aventure we shuld
 dyen.' / The serpent seyde to the wom-
 man: 'nay, nay, ye shul nat die of
 death, for sothe, god woot, that whan
 that ye eten ther-of, youre eyen shal
 opene, and ye shal been as god, know-
 inge good and harm.' / The man
 thanne saugh that the tree was
 to feding, and fair to the eyen, and
 delitable to the sighte, she tok of the
 fruit of the tree, and eet it, and gaf it to
 120 her housbonde, and he eet, and anon the
 eyen of hem bothe opened. And
 whan that they knewe that they were
 naked, they sowed of fige-leves a rowe
 of breches to hiden hir members. And
 may ye seen that deedly synne hath the
 suggestion of the fowel, as sheweth here
 by the nadire, and afterward the
 of the flesh, as sheweth here by Adam
 after that the consentinge of synne
 sheweth here by Adam. / For though
 though so were that the fowel tempted
 that is to seyn the flesh, and the flesh
 delyt in the beautee of the fruit, yet
 yet certes, til that resoun, that is in
 Adam, consented to the eatinge of
 fruit, yet stood he in th'estant of in-
 cence. / Of thilke Adam toke we
 sinne original, for of him descen-
 scended be we alle, and aigred and
 and corrupt manere. And whan
 soule is put in our body right
 contract original sinne, and that
 was erst but only payne of conscience
 is afterward bothe payne and
 And therfore be we alle born with
 wratthe and of dampnation, and
 it nere baptesme that we receyve, it
 binimeth us the culpe, but forsynne
 payne dwelleth with us, as to
 cion, which payne highte conscience.
 Whan it is wrongfully disposed
 deyed in man, it maketh him

by covetise of flesh, fleshy sinne, by sighte of hise eyen as to erthely thinges, and covetise of hynesse by pryde of herte. /

§ 19. Now as for to spoken of the firste covetise, that is, concupiscence after the lawe of oure membres, that weren lawefullche y-maked and by rightful judgement of god; / I seye, for-as-muche as man is nat obeisant to god, that is his lord, therefore is the flesh to him disobediant thurgh concupiscence, which yet is cleped norissinge of sinne and occasion of sinne. / Therefore, al the whyle that a man hath in him the peyne of concupiscence, it is impossible but he be tempted somtyme, and moeved in his flesh to sinne. / And this thing may nat faille as longe as he liveth; it may wel waxe feble and faille, by vertu of baptesme and by the grace of god thurgh penitence; / but fully ne shal it nevere quenche, that he ne shal som tyme be moeved in him-self, but-if he were al refreyded by siknesse, or by malefice of sorcerie or colde drinks. / For lo, what seith saint Paul: 'the flesh coveteth agayn the spirit, and the spirit agayn the flesh; they been so contrarie and so stryven, that a man may nat alwey doon as he wolda.' / The same saint Paul, after his grete penaunce in water and in lond (in water by night and by day, in greet peril and in greet peyne, in lond, in famine, in thurst, in cold and clothless, and ones stoned almost to the deeth) / yet seyde he: 'allas! I, caytif man, who shal delivers me fro the
140 prison of my caytif body?' / And saint Jerome, whan he longe tyme hadde woned in desert, where-as he hadde no company but of wilde bestes, where-as he ne hadde no mete but herbes and water to his drinke, ne no bed but the naked erthe, for which his flesh was blak as an Ethiopen for hete and ny destroyed for
170 cold, / yet seyde he: that 'the brenninge of lecherie boiled in al his body.' / Wherefore I woot wel sikerly, that they been deceyved that seyn, that they ne be nat tempted in hir body. / Witnesse on

Saint Jame the Apostel, that seith: that 'every wight is tempted in his owen concupiscence,' that is to seyn, that everich of us hath matere and occasion to be tempted of the norissinge of sinne that is in his body. / And therefore seith Saint John the Evangelist: 'if that we seyn that we beth with-oute sinne, we deceyve us-selve, and trouthe is nat in us.' /

§ 20. Now shal ye understonde in what manere that sinne waxeth or encreseth in man. The firste thing is thilke norissinge of sinne, of which I spak biforn, thilke fleshy concupiscence. / And after
190 that comth the subjeccion of the devel, this is to seyn, the devenes bely, with which he bloweth in man the fyr of fleshy concupiscence. / And after that, a man bithinketh him whether he wol doon, or no, thilke thing to which he is tempted. / And thanne, if that a man withstonde and weyve the firste entysinge of his flesh and of the feend, thanne is it no sinne; and if it so be that he do nat so, thanne feleth he anon a flambe of delyt. / And thanne is it good to be war, and kepen him wel, or elles he wol falle anon in-to consentinge of sinne; and thanne wol he do it, if he may have tyme and place. / And of this matere (220) seith Moyses by the devel in this manere: 'the feend seith, I wole chace and pursue the man by wikked suggestion, and I wole hente him by moevynge or stirringe of sinne. I wol departe my pryse or my praye by deliberacion, and my lust shal been accompliced in delyt; I wol drawe my sword in consentinge:' / for certes, 255 right as a sword departeth a thing in two peeces, right so consentinge departeth god fro man: 'and thanne wol I sleen him with myn hand in dede of sinne'; thus seith the frend. / For certes, thanne is a man al deed in soule. And thus is sinne accompliced by temptacion, by delyt, and by consentinge; and thanne is the sin cleped actual. /

§ 21. For sothe, sinne is in two maneres; outhur it is venial, or deedly sinne. Soothly, whan man loveth any

creature more than Jesu Crist oure
 creatour thanne is it deedly sinne. And
 venial synne is it, if man love Jesu Crist
 lesse than him oghte. / For sothe, the
 dede of this venial sinne is ful perilous,
 for it amenuseth the love that men
 sholde han to god more and more. / And
 therefore, if a man charge him-self with
 manye swiche venial synnes, certes, but-if
 so be that he som tyme discharge him of
 hem by shrifte, they move ful lightly
 360 to Jesu Crist; / and in this wise skippeth
 venial in-to deedly sinne. For certes, the
 more that a man chargeth his soule with
 venial synnes, the more is he enclined to
 fallen in-to deedly sinne. / And therefore,
 lat us nat be negligent to discharge us
 of venial synnes. For the proverbe seith
 that manye smale maken a greet. / And
 herkne this ensample. A greet wawe of
 the see comth som-tyme with so greet
 a violence that it drencheth the ship.
 And the same harm doth som-tyme
 the smale dropes of water, that entren
 thurgh a litel crevice in-to the thurrok,
 and in-to the botme of the ship, it men
 be so negligent that they ne discharge
 hem nat by tyme. / And therefore, al-
 though ther be a difference bitwixe these
 two causes of drenchinge, algates the
 390 ship is dreynt. / Right so fareth it som-
 tyme of deedly sinne, and of anyouse
 venial synnes, whan they multiplie in
 a man so greetly, that thilke worldly
 thinges that he loveth, thurgh whiche he
 sinneth venially, is as greet in his herte
 395 as the love of god, or more. / And ther-
 fore, the love of every thing, that is nat
 bi-set in god no doon principally for
 goddes sake, al-though that a man love it
 lesse than god, yet is it venial sinne. /
 and deedly sinne, whan the love of any
 thing weyeth in the herte of man as
 muchel as the love of god, or more. /
 'Deedly sinne,' as seith seint Augustin,
 'is, whan a man turneth his herte fro
 god, which that is verray sovereyn
 ountee, that may nat chaunge, and
 yoveth his herte to thing that may
 chaunge and flitte'; / and certes, that is

every thing, save god of hevene. For
 sooth is, that if a man yove his love, the
 which that he oweth al to god with al his
 herte un-to a creature, certes, as muche
 of his love as he yeveth to thilke creature,
 so muche he bireveth fro god. And
 therefore doth he sinne. For he, that
 dettour to god, ne yelleft nat to god al
 his dette, that is to seyn, al the love of
 his herte. /

§ 22. Now sith man understandeth
 generally, which is venial sinne thanne
 is it covenable to tellen specially of synnes
 which that many a man per-aventure do
 demeth hem nat synnes, and he sayeth
 him nat of the same thinges. And natheles
 they been synnes. Soothly,
 as these clerkes wryten, this is to seyn,
 that at every tyme that a man eateth or
 drinketh more than sufficeth to the
 sustenance of his body, in certis it
 dooth sinne. / And oek whan he speke
 more than nedeth, it is sinne. Eke whan
 he herkneth nat benignely the conseil
 of the povre. / Eke whan he is idle
 of body and wol nat faste, whan he
 folk faste, with-oute cause. Eke whan
 he slepeth more than he nedeth
 or whan he comth by thilke cause
 to late to chirche, or to othere worschips
 charite. / Eke whan he useth his
 with-oute sovereyn desyr of engourment
 to the honour of god, or for the sake
 to yelde to his wyf the dette of his body.
 Eke whan he wol nat visite the sick and
 the prisoner, if he may. Eke whan he
 wyf or child, or other worldly thing
 more than reson requyret. Eke whan
 flaters or blasphe more than he nedeth
 for any necessitee. / Eke if he receiveth
 or withdrawe the almesse of the povre.
 Eke if he apparailleth his soule more
 deliciously than need is. or if he
 hastily by likerousnesse. Eke if he
 vanitees at chirche or at goddes hous
 or that he be a talker of vile, ungodly
 folye or of vileinye, for he shal be
 accountes of it at the day of doom. And
 whan he biheteth or assurith to do
 that he may nat perfourme. Eke whan
 that he, by lightnesse or fulis moun-

with his neyghbore. / Eke when
any wikked suspicion of thing,
ne woot of it no southfastnesse. /
things and mo with-oute nombre
sinnes, as seith seint Augustin. /
shal men understonde, that al-be-
that noon erthely man may eschue
venial sinnes, yet may he refreynes
the brenninge love that he hath
to lord Jesu Crist, and by prayeres
confession and othere gode werkes,
it shal but litel greve. / For, as
seint Augustin. 'if a man love god
in the manere, that al that evere he
in the love of god, and for the love
verraily, for he brenneth in the
of god like, how muche that
of water that falleth in a fourneys
for anyeth or greveth, so muche
a venial sinne un-to a man that
in the love of Jesu Crist.' / Men
also refreynes venial sinne by re-
worthy of the precious body
of Crist, / by receyving eke of holy
by almesdeeds by general con-
of Confiteur at masse and at
; and by blessinge of bisschopes
preestes, and by othere gode
/

Incipit secunda pars Penitentie.

*De Septem Peccatis Mortalibus
eorum dependenciis circumstantiis
occuribus.*

Now is it behoveyly thing to telle
been the deadly sinnes, this is to
chiffaines of sinnes, alle they
in oones, but in diverse maneres,
can they cleped chieftaines for-
as they been chief, and springers
othere sinnes. / Of the roote of
venial sinnes thanne is Pryde, the
roote of alle harmes. for of this
springen certain branches, as Ire,
Acidie or Slewthe, Avarice or
to covynse understondinge
gre, and lacherye. / And everich
chief sinne hath hys branches
twigges, as shal be declared in
folows folwinge. /

De Superbia.

§ 24. And thogh so be that no man
can outely telle the nombre of the
twigges and of the harmes that cometh
of Pryde, yet wol I shewe a partie of
hem, as ye shul understonde. / Ther 390
is Inobediencce, Avauntinge, Ipocritie,
Despyt, Arrogance, Impudence, Swellinge
of herte, Insolence, Elacion, Impaciencce,
Strif, Contumacie, Presumpcion, Irrev-
erence, Pertinacie, Veyne Glorie, and
many another twig that I can nat
declare. / Inobedient, is he that dis-
obeyeth for despyt to the comandements
of god and to hys sovereyns, and to his
ghostly fader. / Avauntour, is he that
besteth of the harm or of the bountee
that he hath don. / Ipocrite, is he that
hydeh to shewe him swiche as he is, and
showeth him swiche as he nought is. / (390)
Despitous, is he that hath desdysn of his
neyghbore, that is to seyn, of his evene-
crystens, or hath despyt to doon that him
ughte to do. / Arrogant, is he that 395
thinketh that he hath thulke bountees in
him that he hath nought, or weneh that
he shoulde have hem by hys desertes or
elles he lemeth that he be that he is
nat. / Impudent, is he that for his pride
hath no shame of hys sinnes. / Swellinge
of herte, is when a man rejoyseth him of
harm that he hath don. / Insolent, is
he that despyseth in his jugement alle
othere folk as to regard of his valure, and
of his conyng, and of his speaking, and of
his beryng. / Elacion, is when he ne may
neither suffre to have maister ne fellowe. / (400)
Impacient, is he that wol nat been y-
taught ne underuome of his vice, and by
stryf werreth treithe wittingly and
doffeneth his folwe. / Contumax is he
that thurgh his indignacion is agayns
everych auctoritee or power of hem that
been hys sovereyns. / Presumpcion, is
when a man undertaketh an emprise
that him ughte nat do, or esch that he
may nat do, and that is called Sump-
tuous. / Irreverence, is when men do nat
honour thereas him ughte to doon, and
witen to be reverence. / Pertinacie,

is whan man deffendeth his folys, and
 (330) trusteth to muchel in his owene wit. /
 Veyne gloria, is for to have pompe and
 delyt in his temporel hynesse, and
 405 glorifis him in this worldly estat. /
 Janglinge, is whan men speken to muche
 biforn folk, and clappen as a mille, and
 taken no kepe what they seye. /

§ 25. And yet is ther a privee spece of
 Pryde, that waiteth first to be sawed er
 he wole sawe, al be he lasse worth than
 that other is, per-aventure, and eek he
 waiteth or desyeth to sitte, or elles to
 goon above him in the way, or kisse par,
 or been encensed, or goon to offring biforn
 his neighebores, / and swiche semblable
 thinges; agayns his duete, per-aventure,
 but that he hath his herte and his
 entente in swich a proud desyr to be
 magnified and honoured biforn the
 peple. /

§ 26. Now been ther two maneres of
 Pryde, that oon of hem is with-inne the
 herte of man, and that other is with-
 oute. / Of whiche soothly thise forseide
 thinges, and mo than I have seyd, aper-
 tenen to pryde that is in the herte of
 man, and that othere spece of pryde
 410 been with-oute. / But natheles that oon
 of thise spece of pryde is signe of that
 other, right as the gaye leefsel atte taverne
 is signe of the wyn that is in the celer. /
 And this is in manye thinges: as in speche
 and contenaunce, and in outrageous array
 of clothing; / for certes, if ther ne hadde
 be no sinne in clothing, Crist wold nat
 have noted and spoken of the clothing of
 thilke riche man in the gospel. / And, as
 seith Seint Gregorie, that precious clothing
 is culpable for the derthe of it, and for
 his softenesse, and for his strangenesse
 and degysinesse, and for the superfluitee,
 (440) or for the inordinat scantnesse of it. /
 Allas! may men nat seen, as in oure
 dayes, the sinful costlewe array of cloth-
 ings, and namely in to muche superfluitee,
 415 or elles in to desordinat scantnesse? /

§ 27. As to the firste sinne, that is in
 superfluitee of clothinge, which that
 maketh it so dere, to harm of the peple, /
 nat only the cost of embroudinge, the

degys endentinge or bairringe, oundinge,
 palinge, windinge, or bendinge, and
 semblable wast of clooth in vanitee; /
 but ther is also costlewe furringe in hir
 gounes, so muche pounsoninge of chiese
 to maken holes, so muche dagginge of
 sheres; / forth-with the superfluitee in
 lengthe of the forseide gounes, trailinge
 in the dong and in the myre, on horse
 and eek on fote, as wel of man as of
 womman, that al thilke trailing is verraily
 as in effect wasted, consumed, thredbare,
 and roten with donge, rather than it is
 yeven to the povre; to greet damage of
 the forseide povre folk. / And that in
 sondry wyse: this is to seyn, that the
 more that clooth is wasted, the more it
 costeth to the peple for the scantnesse /
 and forther-over, if so be that they wold
 yeven swich pounsoned and dagged cloth-
 ing to the povre folk, it is nat convenient
 to were for hir estat, ne sufficient to bete
 hir necessitee, to kepe hem fro the dis-
 temperance of the firmament. / Upon
 that other syde, to spoken of the horrible
 disordinat scantnesse of clothing, as been
 thise cutted sloppes or hainselins, that
 thurgh hir shortnesse ne covere nat the
 shameful membres of man, to wikked
 entente. / Allas! somme of hem shewen
 the hore of hir shap, and the horrible
 swollen membres, that semeth lyk the
 maladie of hirma, in the wrappinge of hir
 hoses; / and eek the buttokes of hem
 faren as it were the hindre part of a she-
 ape in the fulle of the mona. / And (374)
 more-over, the wretched swollen mem-
 bres that they shewe thurgh the degy-
 singe, in departinge of hir hoses in whyt
 and reed, semeth that half hir shameful
 privee membres weren flayn. / And if (45)
 so be that they departen hire hoses in
 othere colours, as is whyt and blak, or
 whyt and blew, or blak and reed, and so
 forth; / thanne semeth it, as by variance
 of colour, that half the partie of hir
 privee membres were corrupt by the fyr
 of saint Antony, or by cancre, or by other
 swich meschaunce. / Of the hindre part
 of hir buttokes, it is ful horrible for to
 see. For certes, in that partie of hir

body ther-as they purgen hir stinkinge ordure, that foule partie shewe they to the peple proudly in despyt of honestete, the which honestete that Iesu Crist and hys freendes observede to shewen in hir lyve / Now as of the outrageous array of women, god wost, that though the visages of somme of hem seme ful chaunt and debonaire yet notifie they in hir array of styll likerousnesse and pryde / I sey nat that honestete in clothinge of man or woman is uncovenable, but certes the superfluitee or disorderly scantitee of clothinge is reprov-able / Also the amys of aornement or of apparaylle is in thinges that apertenen to rydunge, as in to manye debent horses that been holden for delyt, that been so faire, fatte, and costlewe, / and also to many a vicious knave that is sustened by cause of hem, in to curious harneys, as in sautes, in crampores, paytrels, and breeches covered with precious clothing and riche, barres and plates of gold and of silver / For which god seith by Zakarie the prophete, 'I wol confounde the ryders of swiche horses' / This folk taken litel reward of the rydinge of golde sone of hevne, and of his harneys whan he rood upon the asse, and he hadde noon other harneys but the poore clothes of hys disciples, ne we ne rede nat that evere he rood on other best / I speke this for the synne of superfluitee, and nat for reasonable honestete, whan reason it requyret. / And forther, certes pryde is greetly notified in holdinge of greet meyne, whan they be of litel profit or of right no profit / And namely, whan that meyne is felonous and damageous to the peple, by hardnesse of heigh lordshipe or by way of offices. / For certes, swiche lordes sellen thanne hir lordshipe to the devel of helle, whanne they sustenen the wikkednesse of hir meyne / Or elles whan this folk of lowe degree as thilke that holden hostelryes, sustenen the thefte of hir hostylers, and that is in many manere of decyete. Thilke manere of folk been the flyrs that solwan the hony, or elles the boundes

that solwen the careyne. Swiche for- as yde folk stranglen spiritually hir lordshipes for which thus seith Davyd the prophete, 'wikked deeth n ote come upon thilke lordshipes, and god yave that they mote descenden in to helle al down for in hir houses been iniquitees and shrewed- nesses,' and nat god of hevne / And certes, but-if they doon amendement, right as god yaf his benison to Laban by the service of Jacob, and to Pharo by the service of Joseph, right so god wol yave his malison to swiche lordshipes as sustenen the wikkednesse of hir sur- vants, but-if they come to amendement / Pryde of the table appereth eek ful ofte, for certes, riche men been clyped to feastes and poore folk been put away and rebuked / Also in excess of diverse metes and drinkes and namely, swiche manere bake metes and dish-metes, brey- nings of wilde fyr, and peynted and castelled with papir, and semblable wast so that it is abusion for to thyrke. / And eek in to greet price to meyne of vessel and curiositee of ministracion, by which a man is stirred the more to delyces of luxurie, / if so be that he sette his herte the lasse up-on our lord Iesu Crist, certein it is a synne, and certeinly the delyces mighte been so grete in this case, that man mighte lightly tarye by hem in to deadly synne. / The especes that sourden of Pryde, soothly whan they sourden of malice ymagined, avysed and formant, or elles of usage, been deadly synnes, it is no doute. And whan they sourden by frekton unavysed solely, and solely withdrawn ayen, al been they grevous synnes I gosse that they no been nat deadly / Now mighte men axe wherof that Pryde sourleth and springeth, and I seve somtyme it springeth of the goodes of nature, and somtyme of the goodes of fortune, and somtyme of the goodes of grace / Certes, the goodes of nature atonden outen in goodes of body or in goodes of soule, / Certes, goodes of body been heile of body, as strengthe, deliverance, beautee, gen- trye, franchise / Goodes of nature of the soule been good wit, sharp under-

standynge, subtil engin, vertu naturel,
 good memorie. / Goodes of fortune been
 riches, highe degrees of lordshipes,
 380 preisinges of the peple. / Goodes of grace
 been science, power to suffre spirituel
 travaille, benygntee, vertuous contem-
 placion, withstandinge of temptation,
 455 and semblable thinges. / Of whiche for-
 seyde goodes, certes it is a ful greet folye
 a man to pryden him in any of hem
 alle. / Now as for to speken of goodes of
 nature, god woot that som-tyme we han
 hem in nature as muche to oure damage
 as to oure profit. / As, for to speken
 of hele of body, certes it passeth ful
 lightly, and eek it is ful ofte encheson of
 the siknesse of oure soule, for god woot,
 the flesh is a ful greet enemy to the
 soule: and therfore, the more that the
 body is hool, the more he is in peril to
 falle. / Eke for to pryde him in his
 strengthe of body, it is an heigh folye;
 for certes, the flesh coveteth agayn the
 spirit, and ay the more strong that the
 flesh is, the sorier may the soule be /
 and, over al this, strengthe of body and
 worldly hardinesse causeth ful ofte many
 460 a man to peril and meschaunce. / Eek
 for to pryde him of his gentrye is ful
 greet folye; for ofte tyme the gentrye of
 the body binmeth the gentrye of the
 soule; and eek we ben alle of o fader and
 of o moder; and alle we been of o nature
 roten and corrupt, both riche and povre. /
 For sothe, oo manere gentrye is for to
 preise, that appaereth mannes courage
 with vertues and moralitees, and maketh
 him Cristes child. / For truste wel, that
 ever what man sinne hath maustrie, he is
 a verray cherl to sinne. /

§ 28. Now been ther generale signes of
 gentillesse, as eschewing of vyes and
 ribaudye and servage of sinne, in word,
 400 in werk, and contenance, / and usinge
 vertu, curtesye, and clennesse, and to be
 liberal, that is to seyn, large by mesure;
 for thilke that passeth mesure is folye
 465 and sinne. / Another is, to remembre
 him of bountee that he of other folk hath
 receyved. / Another is, to be benygne to
 hisse goode subgetis; wherfore, as seith

Senek, 'ther is no-thing more covenaunt
 to a man of heigh estat than debonaire
 and pitee. / And therfore this dressteth
 men clepeth bees, when they maken be-
 king, they chesen oon that hath no prik
 wherwith he may stinge. / Another
 a man to have a noble herte and a dis-
 gent, to attayne to heighe vertuous
 thinges. / Now certes, a man to pryde
 him in the goodes of grace is eek an of-
 rageous folye, for thilke yfies of grace
 that sholde have turned him to goodnes
 and to medicine, turneth him to wech
 and to confusion, as seith seint Gregory.
 Certes also, who-so prydeth him in the
 goodes of fortune, he is a ful greet fool;
 for som-tyme is a man a greet lord to-
 morwe, that is a caitif and a wreche
 it be night. / and somtyme the riches
 of a man is cause of his deeth, as
 the delices of a man is cause of the
 grevous maladye thurgh which he dyeth.
 Certes, the commendacion of the peple
 somtyme ful fals and ful trouble-
 triste, this day they praysen, and
 they blame. / God woot, desyt to the
 commendacion of the peple hath causid
 deeth to many a busy man.

Remedium contra peccatum Superbie

§ 29. Now sith that so is, that we
 understonde what is pryde, and what
 been the speses of it, and wher it
 sourdeth and springeth. / Now sith
 understonde which is the remedie
 the sinne of pryde, and that is hum-
 or mekenesse. / That is a vertu
 which a man hath verray knowe of
 him-self and helieth of him-self
 no devtee as in regard of hisse
 consideringe evere his freetes. /
 been ther three maneres of humiltee
 humiltee in herte, and another
 in his mouth. the thridde in his
 The humiltee in herte is in three maneres
 that oon is, when a man helieth
 as noght worth before god of
 Another is, when he no despytheth
 other man. / The thridde is, when
 rekketh nat thogh men helieth
 worth. The ferthe is, when he no

y of his humiliacion. / Also, the humilitee of mouth is in foure thinges: in empree speche, and in humblesse of che, and whan he biknoweth with his ene mouth that he is swich as him nketh that he is in his herte. Another whan he preiseth the bountee of other man, and nothing ther-of ameneth. / Humilitee eek in werkes is in ure maneres: the firste is, whan he tteth othere men biforn him. The sonde is, to chese the loweste place ar-al. The thridde is, gladly to assente good conseil. / The ferthe is, to stonde idly to the award of hise sovereyns, or him that is in hyer degree; certain, is is a greet werk of humilitee. /

Sequitur de Invidia.

§ 80. After Pryde wol I speken of the yle sinne of Envye, which is, as by the ord of the philosophre, sorwe of other mannes prosperitee; and after the word seint Augustin, it is sorwe of other mannes wele, and joye of othere mennes m. / This foule sinne is platly agayns holy goost. Al-be-it so that every e is agayns the holy goost, yet nathefor as muche as bountee aperteneth rely to the holy goost, and Envye h proprely of malice, therefore it is ely agayn the bountee of the holy

/ Now hath malice two speses, s to seyn, hardnesse of herte in nesse, or elles the flesh of man is d, that he considereth nat that he nne, or rekketh nat that he is in which is the hardnesse of the

That other spece of malice is, man werreyeth trouthe, whan he it it is trouthe. And eek, whan eyeth the grace that god hath is neighebre; and al this is by

Certes, thanne is Envye the one that is. For soothly, alle nes been som-tyme only agayns vertu; / but certes, Envye is overtes and agayns alle good-it is sory of alle the bountees nebre; and in this manere it om alle othere sinnes. / For

wel unnethe is ther any sinne that it ne hath som delyt in itself, save only Envye, that evere hath in itself anguish and sorwe. / The speses of Envye been thise: 45 ther is first, sorwe of other mannes goodnesse and of his prosperitee; and prosperitee is kindly matere of joye; thanne is Envye a sinne agayns kinde. / The seconde spece of Envye is joye of other mannes harm; and that is proprely lyk to the devel, that evere rejoyseth him of mannes harm. / Of thise two speses comth bakbyting; and this sinne of bakbyting or detracciion hath certeine speses, as thus. Som man preiseth his neighebre by a wikke entente; / for he maketh alwey a wikked knotte atte laste ende. Alwey he maketh a 'but' atte laste ende, that is digne of more blame, than worth is al the preisinge. / The seconde spece (420) is, that if a man be good and dooth or seith a thing to good entente, the bakbyter wol turne all thilke goodnesse up-so-down to his shrewed entente. / The thridde 495 is, to amenuse the bountee of his neighebre. / The fourthe spece of bakbyting is this; that if men speke goodnesse of a man, thanne wol the bakbyter seyn, 'parfey, swich a man is yet bet than he'; in dispreisinge of him that men preise. / The fifte spece is this; for to consente gladly and herkne gladly to the harm that men speke of other folk. This sinne is ful greet, and ay encreseth after the wikked entente of the bakbyter. / After bakbyting cometh grucching or murmuracion; and somtyme it springeth of inpacience agayns god, and somtyme agayns man. / Agayns god it is, whan a man gruccheth agayn the peynes of helle, or agayns poverté, or los of catel, or agayn reyn or tempest; or elles gruccheth that shrewes han prosperitee, or elles for that goode men han adversitee. / 520 And alle thise thinges sholde men suffre patiently, for they comen by the rightful jugement and ordinance of god. / Somtyme comth grucching of avarice; as Judas grucched agayns the Magdalayne, whan she enoynte the heved of oure lord Jesu Crist with hir precious

harm that was prived, or bereth him or
505 hend thing that is fals. / Murmure eek
is ofte amonges servaunts, that grucchen
whan hir sovereyns bidden hem doon
leveful thinges. / and, for-as-muche as
they dar nat openly withseye the co-
maundements of hir sovereyns, yet wol
they seyn harm, and grucche, and mur-
mure prively for verray despyt, / whiche
wordes men clepen the devels *Pater-
noster*, though so be that the devel ne
hadde nevere *Pater-noster*, but that lewed
folk yeven it swich a name. / Som tyme
grucching comth of ire or prive hate,
that norisseth rancour in herte, as after-
ward I shal declare. / Thanne cometh
eek bitterness of herte; thurgh which
bitternesse every good dede of his neighe-
510 bor semeth to him bitter and unsavory. /
Thanne cometh discord, that unbandeth
alle manere of frendshipe. Thanne comth
scorninge, as whan a man seketh occa-
sion to anoyen his neighebor, al do he
never so weel. / Thanne comth accu-
singe, as whan man seketh occasion to
anoyen his neighebor, which that is lyk
to the craft of the devel, that waiteth
bothe night and day to accusen us alle. /
Thanne comth malignitee, thurgh which
a man anoyeth his neighebor prively if
he may; / and if he noght may, algate
his wikked wil ne shal nat wante, as for
to breken his

than our freendes and they that
 we have, certes, to hem shal man
 shewnesse, and certes, in thilke
 we we remembrance of the love
 that, that deyde for huse enemya. /
 as-muche as thilke love is the
 hevons to perourne, in so-muche
 are greater the merite, and ther-
 foringe of our enemy hath com-
 the venom of the devel / For
 the devel is discomfited by humi-
 that so is he wounded to the deeth
 of our enemy. Certes, thanne
 the medicine that casteth out the
 Envy fro mannes herte / Ther-
 of this pas shullen be more largely
 capitres folwinge declared /

Sequitur de Ira.

After Envy wel I discryven the
 Ire. For soothly, who-so hath
 upon his neighbor, anon he wole
 proude him a matere of wuntle,
 for in dede, agayns him to whom
 Envy / And as wel cometh Ire
 as of Envy, for soothly, he
 proude or envious is lightly

This sinne of Ire, after the dis-
 of saint Augustin, is wikked wil
 avenged by word or by dede /
 the philosophre, is the fervent
 than yquiked in his herte, thurgh
 wole harm to him that he hateth /
 hath herte of man by eschaunge
 ving of his blood, wetteth so
 that he is out of alle jagement of

But ye shal understonde that
 a two maneres, that oon of hem
 and that other is wikked / The
 by jalouseye of goodnesse thurgh
 man is wrooth with wikkednesse
 agayns wikkednesse, and therefore
 says man, that 'Ire is bet than

This Ire is with debonairetee,
 is wrooth withouten bitterness,
 agayns the man, but wrooth
 minded of the man, as seith the
 David, *Iracundum et nolite pe-*
 How understandeth that wikked
 a two maneres, that is to seyn,

sodeyn Ire or hastif Ire, withouten avas-
 ment and conschinge of reason / The
 meaning and the sens of this is that the
 reason of man ne consente nat to thilke
 sodeyn Ire and thurgh it is venial /
 Another Ire is ful wikked, that cometh of
 felouseye of herte avenged and cast bifore,
 with wikked wil, to do vengeance, and
 thereto lustes uncorrected, and soothly
 this is deadly synne / This Ire is so dis-
 pleasant to god, that it troubleth his hon-
 and chaceh the holy goost out of mannes
 soule and wasteth and destroyeth the
 lyknesse of god, that is to seyn, the vertu
 that is in mannes soule / And put in, 470
 him the lyknesse of the devel and
 banneth the man fro god that is his
 rightful lord / This Ire is a ful greet 545
 plesance to the devel, for it is the
 leveles fourneys, that is eschaufed with
 the fyr of helle / For certes, right so
 fyr is more mighty to destroyen ethyde
 thinges than any other element, right so
 Ire is mighty to destroyen all spiritual
 thinges. / Like how that fyr of smale
 gledes, that been almost dede under
 ashen, wollen quake agayn when they
 been touched with brimston, right so
 Ire wole evermore quake agayn, when it
 is touched by the pryde that is covered in
 mannes herte / For certes fyr ne may
 nat comen out of no-thing, but it is
 first in the same thing naturally, as fyr
 is drawn out of flintes with steel / And
 right so as pryde is of the matere of
 Ire, right so is rancoure, rancoure and keper
 of Ire / Ther is a natour tree, as seith 550
 saint Iude, that when man maketh fyr
 of thilke tree, and covere the cules of it
 with ashe, soothly the fyr of it wole
 lasten al a yeer or more / And right so
 lasteth it of rancoure when it is cov-
 covered in the hertes of man men, certen,
 it wole lasten peraventure for mon hatre-
 day unto another hatre-day, and more /
 But certes thilke man is ful for Ire the
 matere of god al thilke while /

§ 34 In the foreward giveth fourneys
 that forgyn three synnes. Pryde, that
 syloweth and encreaseth the fyr by chyl-
 dinge and wikked wordes / Thanne stant 560

that evere the devel him comaundeth
for he ne spareth neither Crist, ne his
swete mooder. / And in his outrageous
anger and Ire, allas ! allas ! ful many com
at that tyme feleth in his herte ful wik
kedly, bothe of Crist and of alle hise
halwes. / Is nat this a cursed vice ? Yis,
certes. Allas ! it binimeth from man his
wit and his resoun, and al his debonaire
560 lyfspirituel that sholde kepen his soule. /
Certes, it binimeth eek guiden due lord
shipe, and that is mannes soule, and the
love of hise neighebores. It stryveth eek
alday agayn trouthe. It reveth him the
quiete of his herte, and subverteth his
soule. /

§ 85. Of Ire comen thise stinkinge
engendrures : first hate, that is old
wratthe ; discord, thurgh which a man
forsaketh his olde freend that he hath
loved ful longe. / And thanne cometh
werre, and every manere of wrong that
man dooth to his neighebores, in body or
in catel. / Of this cursed sinne of Ire
cometh eek manslaughter. And under
stonde wel, that homicyde, that is man
slaughtre, is in dyverse wyse. Sum manere
(490) of homicyde is spirituel, and som is bodily. /
Spirituel manslaughter is in six thinges.
First, by hate ; as seint John seith, ' he
565 that hateth his brother is homicyde ' /
Homicyde is eek by bakbytinge, of whiche

which the child is perished, or elles anyteth a woman witingly, thurgh which she loseth hir child. Alle thise been homicides and horrible deadly sinnes. / Yet comen ther of lre manye mo sinnes, as wel in word as in thought and in dede, as he that arretteth upon god, or blameth god, of thing of which he is him-self guilty; or despyseth god and alle hys halwes, as doon thise cursede hazardours in diverse contrees. / This cursed sinne doon they, whan they felen in hir hertes ful wikkedly of god and of hys halwes. / Also, whan they treten unroverently the sacrament of the auter, thilke sinne is so greet, that unnetho may it been releesed, but that the mercy of god passeth alle hys werkes, it is so greet and he so benigne. / Thanne cometh of lechtry angre, whan a man is sharply admonsted in his shrifte to forlitten his sinne, / than wole he be angry and answeren bokerly and angrily, and deffendan or excusen his sinne by unstedfastnesse of his flesh, or elles he hide it for to holde companye with hys felawes, or elles, he seith, the fend entyceed him / or elles he hide it for his youthe, or elles his complexioun is so corageous, that he may nat forbere, or elles it is his destinee, as he seith, unto a certein age / or elles, he seith, it cometh him of gentillesse of hys auncestres, and semblable thinges. / Alle this manere of folk so wrappen hem in hir sinnes, that they ne wel nat deliveren hem-self. For soothly, no wight that excuseth him wilfully of his sinne may nat been delivered of his sinne, til that he makely knoweth his sinne. / After this, thanne cometh swering, that is expres agayn the comandement of god, and this bitalleth ofte of anger and of lre. / God seith 'thou shalt nat take the name of thy lord god in voyn or in ydel.' Also oure lord Jesu Crist seith by the word of saint Mathew '*Nolite jurare omnino* : / ne wol ye nat swere in alle manere, nather by hevne, for it is goddes trone, no by erthe, for it is the bench of his feet, no by Jerusalem, for it is the citee of a greet king; no by thyn

heed, for thou mayst nat make an heer whyt no blak. / But seyth by yonre word, 'ye, ye' and 'nay, nay' and what that is more, it is of yvel,' saith Crist. / For Cristes sake, ne swereth nat 590 so sintally, in dismembunge of Crist by soule, herte bones, and body. For certes, it semeth that ye thinke that the cursede Jewes ne dismembred nat y-nough the precious persons of Crist, but ye disembre him more. / And if so be that the lawe compelle yow to swere, thanne rule yow after the lawe of god in yowre swering, as saith Jeremye *quarto capitulo*, '*Jurabis in veritate, in iudicio et in iusticia* thou shalt kepe three condicions thou shalt swere in trouthe, in doom, and in rightwisesse.' / This is to seyn, thou shalt swere sooth, for every lesinge is agayn Crist. For Crist is verray trouthe. And think wel this, that every greet swerere, nat compelled lawefully to swere, the wounde shal nat departe from his hous whyl he useth swich unlovesful swering. / Thou shalt sweren eek in doom, whan thou art constreynd by thy domesman to witnessen the trouthe / (595) Eek thou shalt nat swere for envye ne for favour, ne for mede, but for rightwisesse for declaracioun of it to the worship of god and helping of thyne ovenecristene. / And therfore every man that 595 taketh goddes name in ydel, or falsly swereth with his mouth, or elles taketh on him the name of Crist, to be called a Cristene man, and liveth agayn Cristes livinge and his teching, ade they taken goddes name in ydel. / Like eek what saint Peter seith, *Actuum quarto capitulo*, '*Non est aliud nomen sub celo*.' &c. Ther nis noon other name, seith saint Peter, under hevne, yeven to men, in which they mowe be saved. that is to seyn but the name of Jesu Crist. Take kepe eek how that the precious name of Crist as saith saint Paul *ad Philipenses secundo*, '*In nomine Jesu*,' &c. : that in the name of Jesu every knee of hevencly creatures, or erthely, or of helle sholden towne, for it is so heigh and so worshipful that the cursede feend in helle sholde tremble to

¶ 87. What seye we oek of hem that
dekyten hem in swering, and holden it a
gentrie or a manly dede to swere grete
othes? And what of hem that, of verray
usage, ne cesse nat to swere grete othes,
al be the cause nat worth a straw?
Certes, this is horrible sinne. / Sweringe
sodeynly with-oute aysement is oek a
sinne. / But let us go now to thilke
horrible swering of adjuracioun and con-
juracioun, as doon thise false enchaun-
tours or nigromanciens in basins ful of
water, or in a bright sword, in a cercle,
or in a fyr, or in a shulder-bone of a
sheep. / I can nat seye but that they
doon cursedly and damnably, agayns
(530) Crist and al the feith of holy chirche. /

¶ 88. What seye we of hem that bileven
in divynailes, as by flight or by noyse of
briddes, or of bestes, or by sort, by geo-
mancia, by dromes, by chirkinge of dores,
or crakkinge of houses, by gnawynge of
605 rattes, and swich manere wrecchednesse?
Certes, al this thing is deffended by god
and by al holy chirche. For which they
been acursed, til they come to amende-
ment, that on swich filtho sitten hir
bileve. / Charmes for woundes or maladye
of men, or of bestes, if they taken any
effect, it may be peraventure that god
suffreth it, for folk sholden yeve the more
feith and reverence to his name. /

¶ 89. Now wol I -

been accorded with him that
 openly revyled and reprieved in
 Andre. This is a ful grisly sinne,
 seith in the gospel. / And tak
 now, that he that repreveþ his
 þor, onther he repreveþ him by
 harm of peyne that he hath on his
 as 'mesel,' 'croked harlot,' or by
 name that he dooth / Now if he
 him by harm of peyne, thanne
 the reprove to Jesu Crist, for
 he sent by the rightwys sando of
 by his suffrance, be it meselrie,
 þeyn, or maladye. / And if he
 him uncharitably of sinne, as,
 'holour,' 'thou dronkelewe harlot,'
 forth, thanne aperteneth that to
 joyninge of the devel, that evere
 says that men doon sinne / And
 chydunge may nat come but out of
 herte. For after the habun-
 of the herte speketh the mouth ful
 And ye shul understonde that
 by any way when any man shal
 another, that he be war from
 or reprevinge. For trowely, but
 war he may ful lightly quiken the
 angre and of wratthe, which that
 holde quenche, and per-aventure
 him which that he mighte chastyse
 malignitee. / For as seith Salomon,
 'unstable tonge is the tree of lyf,' that
 payn, of lyf espirituell and sothly, a
 tongue sleeth the spirites of him
 repreveþ, and eek of him that is
 red. / Io, what seith seint Augu-
 ther is nothing so lyk the devel
 as he that ofte chydeth. Seint Paul
 seith: 'I servant of god, I have nat
 god.' / And how that chydunge be
 thing betwixe alle maneri folk,
 is certes most uncovenable betwixe
 and his wif for there is nevere
 And therefore seith Salomon, 'an
 that is uncovered and droppinge,
 chydunge wif been lyke.' / A man
 in a droppinge hous in many
 though he eschewe the droppinge
 place, it droppeth on him in another
 so fareth it by a chydunge wif.
 she chyde him in o place, she wol

chyde him in another / And therefore,
 'bette is a morsel of breed with joye than
 an hous ful of deluges, with chydunge,'
 seith Salomon. / Seint Paul seith: 'O
 ye waimmen, be ye subgetes to youre
 housbondes as bihoveth in god, and ye
 men, loveth youre wyves,' *Ad Colossenses,*
tercio /

§ 43 Afterward speke we of scornunge,
 which is a wikked sinne, and namely,
 when he scorneth a man for his gode
 werkis. / For certes, swiche scorneres
 faren lyk the foule tode, that may nat
 endure to smelle the sote savour of the
 vyne whanne it florisseth. / These
 scorneres been parting felawes with the
 devel for they han joye when the devel
 winneth, and sorwe when he leseth. /
 They been adversaries of Jesu Crist, for
 they haten that he loveth, that is to seyn,
 salvacion of soules. /

§ 44 Speke we now of wikked conseil
 for he that wikked conseil yeveth is a
 traytour. For he deceyveth him that
 trusteth in him, as *Achit felaw Absolonem*.
 But natheless, yet is his wikked conseil
 first agayn him-self. For, as seith the
 wyse man, every fals livinge hath this
 propertee in him-self that he that wole
 anoye another man he anoyeth first
 him-self. / And men shul understonde,
 that man shal nat taken his conseil of
 fals folk, ne of angry folk, or grevous
 folk, ne of folk that loven specially to
 muchel his owene profit, ne to muche
 worldly folk, natheles, in counselinge of
 soules. /

§ 45 Now comth the sinne of bren that
 sowen and maken discord amonget folk,
 which is a sinne that Crist hateth outroly,
 and no wonder is. For he deyde for to
 make concord. / And more shame do
 they to Crist than dre they that him
 envye. For god loveth bettre, that
 frendshipe be amonget folk, than he dre
 his owene body, the which that he yat
 for unte. Therefore been they lykned
 to the devel, that evere been aboute to
 maken discord. /

§ 46 Now comth the sinne of double
 tonge swiche as spoken faire bifore folk,

threteth more than he may perfourn
ful ofte tyme. /

Now cometh ydel wordes, that is with
outen profit of him that spoketh th
wordes, and eek of him that herkneth
tho wordes. Or elles ydel wordes been
tho that been nedelees, or with-outen
entente of naturel profit. / And al-be-
that ydel wordes been som tyme venia
sinne, yet sholde men clouten hem; for
we shul yeve rekeninge of hem bifore
god. /

Now comth janglinges, that may nat
been withoute sinne. And, as seith
Salomon, 'it is a sinne of apert folye.' /
And therfore a philosophre seyde, whan
men axed him how that men sholde please
the peple; and he answerde, 'do many
gode werkes, and spek fewe jangles.' /

After this comth the sinne of japeres,
that been the develes apes; for they
maken folk to laughe at hir japerie, as
folk doon at the gaudes of an ape. Swiche
japeres deffendeth seint Paul. / Loke
how that vertuouse wordes and holy
conforten hem that travaillen in the
service of Crist, right so conforten the
vileyns wordes and knakkes of japeris
hem that travaillen in the service of the
devel. / Thise been the sinnes that comen
of the tonge, that comen of Ire and of
othere sinnes mo. /

that maken hir servants to travaillen to grevously, or out of tyme, as on halydayes, soothly they do greet sinne. / Here agayns suffred Crist ful paciently, and taughte us pacience, whan he bar up-on his blessed shulder the croys, up-on which he sholde suffren despitous deeth. / Hear may men lerne to be pacient; for certes, might only Cristen men been pacient for love of Jesu Crist, and for guardoun of the blisful lyf that is perdurable; but certes, the olde payens, that nevere were Cristene, commendeden and useden the vertu of pacience. /

§ 52. A philosophre up-on a tyme, that wolde have beten his disciple for his grete trespass, for which he was greatly amoved, and broghte a yerde to scourge the child; / and whan this child saugh the yerde, he seyde to his maister, 'what thanke ye to do?' 'I wol bete thee,' quod the maister, 'for thy correccion.' / 'For sothe,' quod the child, 'ye oughten first correcte youre-self, that han lost al youre pacience for the gilt of a child.' / 'For sothe,' quod the maister al wepinge, 'thou sayst sooth; have thou the yerde, my dere sone, and correcte me for myn impacience.' / Of Pacience comth Obedience, thurgh which a man is obedient to Crist and to alle hem to whiche he oughte to been obedient in Crist. / And understond wel that obedience is perfyt, whan that a man doth gladly and hastily, with good herte entierly, al that he sholde do. / Obedience generally, is to perfourne the doctrine of god and of his sovereyns, to whiche him oughte to ben obeisant in alle rightwysnesse. /

Sequitur de Accidia.

§ 53. After the sinnes of Envie and of Ire, now wol I speken of the sinne of Accidia. For Envy blindeth the herte of a man, and Ire troubleth a man; and Accidia maketh him hevy, thoughtful, and drawe. / Envy and Ire maken bitterness in herte; which bitterness is moder of Accidia, and binimeth him the love of alle goodnesse. Thanne is Accidia the anguish of a trouble herte; and seint

Augustin seith: 'it is anoy of goodnesse and joye of harm.' / Certes, this is a dampnable sinne; for it doth wrong to Jesu Crist, in-as-muche as it binimeth the service that men oughte doon to Crist with alle diligence, as seith Salomon. / But Accidia dooth no swich diligence; he dooth alle thing with anoy, and with wrawnesse, slaknesse, and excusacioun, and with ydelnesse and unlust; for which the book seith: 'scourged be he that doth the service of god negligently.' / Thanne 680 is Accidia enemy to everich estaat of man; for certes, the estaat of man is in three maneres. / Outher it is th'estaat of innocence, as was th'estaat of Adam bifore that he fl into sinne; in which estaat he was holden to wirche, as in heryinge and adouringe of god. / Another estaat is the estaat of glouful men, in which estaat men been holden to laboure in prayinge to god for amendement of hir sinnes, and that he wole graunte hem to arysen out of hir slouthe. / Another estaat is th'estaat of grace, in which estaat he is holden to werkes of penitence; and certes, to alle thise thinges is Accidia enemy and contrarie. For he loveth no bisinesse at al. / Now certes, this foule 690 sinne Accidia is cek a ful greet enemy to the lyf of the body; for it ne hath no purveaunce agayn temporal necessitee; for it forleweth and forsluggeth, and destroyeth alle goodes temporales by rethymynesse. /

§ 54. The fourth thing is, that Accidia is lyk to hem that been in the payne of helle, by-cause of hir slouthe and of hir hevynesse; for they that been dampned been so bounde, that they ne may neither wel do ne wel thinke. / Of Accidia comth first, that a man is anoyed and encombred for to doon any goodnesse, and maketh that god hath abhominacion of swich Accidia, as seith seint Johan. /

§ 55. Now comth Slouthe, that wol nat suffre noon hardnesse ne no penaunce. For soothly, Slouthe is so tendre, and so delicat, as seith Salomon, that he wol nat suffre noon hardnesse ne penaunce, and therfore he shendeth al that he

640 nem reiole and tandra. / Thanne comth
dreda to biginne to werke any godd
werkes; for certes, he that is enclyned
to sinne, him thinketh it is so greet an
empryse for to undertake to doon werkes
of goodnesse, / and casteth in his herte
that the circumstaunces of goodnesse
been so grevous and so chargeant for
to suffre, that he dar nat undertake to
do werkes of goodnesse, as seith seint
Gregorie. /

§ 58. Now comth wanhope, that is de-
speir of the mercy of god, that comth
somytyme of to muche outrageous sorwe,
and somtyme of to muche drede imagin-
inge that he hath doon so muche sinne,
that it wol nat availen him, though he
wolde repenten him and forsake sinne. /
thurgh which despeir or drede he aloun-
doneth al his herte to every maner sinne,
(660) as seith seint Augustin. / Which damp-
nable sinne, if that it continue un-to his
695 ende, it is cleped sinning in the holy gost. /
This horrible sinne is so perilous, that he
that is despeired, ther nis no felonye no
no sinne that he douteth for to do; as
shewed wel by Judas. / Certes, aboven
alle sinnes thanne is this sinne most
displeasent to Crist, and most adversarie. /
Soothly, he that despeireth him is lyk the
coward championn recreant, that seith
creant withoute nede. Allas! allas!
wasteth in the

o) syde. / This ydelnesse is the thurrok of
 alle wikked and vileyns thoghtes, and of
 15 alle jangles, trufles, and of alle ordure. /
 Certes, the hevene is yeven to hem that
 wol labouren, and nat to ydel folk. Eek
 David seith: that 'they ne been nat in
 the labour of men, ne they shul nat been
 whipped with men,' that is to seyn, in
 purgatorie. / Certes, thanne semeth it,
 they shal be tormented with the devel
 in helle, but-if they doon penitence. /

§ 58. Thanne comth the sinne that
 men clepen *Turditas*, as whan a man is
 to latrede or taryinge, or he wole turne
 to god; and certes, that is a greet folye.
 He is lyk to him that falleth in the dich,
 and wol nat aryse. / And this vyce
 comth of a fals hope, that he thinketh
 that he shal live longe; but that hope
 failleth ful ofte. /

§ 59. Thanne comth *Lachesse*; that is
 he, that whan he biginnoth any good
 werk, anon he shal forleten it and stinten;
 as doon they that han any wight to
 governe, and ne taken of him na-more
 kepe, anon as they finden any contrarie
 20 or any anoy. / Thise been the newe
 shepherdes, that leten hir sheep witingly
 go renne to the wolf that is in the breres,
 or do no fors of hir owene governaunce. /
 Of this comth poverte and destruccioun,
 bothe of spiritual and temporel thinges.
 Thanne comth a manere coldnesse, that
 freeth al the herte of man. / Thanne
 comth undevoicioun, thurgh which a man
 is so blent, as seith seint Bernard, and
 hath swiche langour in soule, that he
 may neither rede ne singe in holy chirche,
 ne here ne thinke of no devocioun, ne
 travaille with hisse handes in no good
 werk, that it nis him unsavory and al
 apailed. / Thanne wexeth he slow and
 slombry, and sone wol he wrooth, and

30) sone is enclyned to hate and to envye. /
 Thanne comth the sinne of worldly sorwe,
 swich as is cleped *tristitia*, that sleeth
 35 man, as seint Paul seith. / For certes,
 swich sorwe werketh to the deeth of
 the soule and of the body also; for ther-
 of comth, that a man is anoyed of his
 owene lyf. / Wherefore swich sorwe short-

eth ful ofte the lyf of a man, or that his
 tyme be come by wey of kinde. /

Remedium contra peccatum Accidie.

§ 60. Agayns this horrible sinne of
Accidie, and the branches of the same,
 ther is a vertu that is called *Fortitudo*
 or *Strengthe*; that is, an affeccioun
 thurgh which a man despyseth anoyous
 thinges. / This vertu is so mighty and
 so vigorous, that it dar withstonde
 mightily and wysely kepen him-self fro
 perils that been wikked, and wrastle
 agayn the assautes of the devel. / For it
 enhaunceth and enforeth the soule, right
 as *Accidie* abateth it and maketh it
 feble. For this *Fortitudo* may endure by
 long suffraunce the travailles that been
 covenable. /

730

§ 61. This vertu hath manye species;
 and the firste is cleped *Magnanimitie*,
 that is to seyn, greet courage. For certes,
 ther bihoveth greet courage agayns *Accidie*,
 lest that it ne swolve the soule by the
 sinne of sorwe, or destroye it by wan-
 hope. / This vertu maketh folk to under-
 take harde thinges and grevous thinges,
 by hir owene wil, wysely and reasonably. /
 And for as muchel as the devel fighteth
 agayns a man more by queyntise and by
 sleightes than by strengthe, therefore men
 shal withstonden him by wit and by
 reson and by discrecioun. / Thanne arn
 ther the vertues of feith, and hope in god
 and in hisse seintes, to acheve and
 accomplice the gode werkes in the whiche
 he purposeth fermely to continua. / (660)
 Thanne comth *seuretee* or *sikernes*; and
 that is, whan a man ne douteth no
 travaille in tyme cominge of the gode
 werkes that a man hath bigonne. / 735
 Thanne comth *Magnificence*, that is to
 seyn, whan a man dooth and perfourneth
 grete werkes of goodnesse that he hath
 bigonne; and that is the ende why that
 men sholde do gode werkes; for in the
 accomplisinge of grete goode werkes lyth
 the grete guerdoun. / Thanne is ther
Constaunce, that is, stableness of courage;
 and this sholde been in herte by stedefast
 feith, and in mouth, and in beringe, and

... of covetise, of which synne
saith saint Paul, that 'the rote of all
harmes is Coveitise': *Ad Timotheum, secunda
capitula.* / For soothly, when the herte
of a man is confounded in it-self and
troubled, and that the soule hath lost the
comfort of god, thanne seketh he an ydel
730 solas of worldly thinges. /

§ 68. Avarice, after the description of
saint Augustin, is likerousnesse in herte
to have earthely thinges. / Som other
folk seyn, that Avarice is, for to pur-
chacen manye earthely thinges, and no-
thing yeve to hem that han nede. / And
understond, that Avarice ne stant nat
only in lond ne catel, but somtyme in
science and in glorie, and in every manere
of outrageous thing is Avarice and
Coveitise. / And the difference bitwixe
Avarice and Coveitise is this. Coveitise
is for to coveite swiche thinges as thou
hast nat; and Avarice is for to withholde
and kepe swiche thinges as thou hast,
(670) with-oute rightful nede. / Soothly, this
Avarice is a sinne that is ful dampnable;
for al holy writ curseth it, and speketh
agayns that vyce; for it dooth wrong to
745 Jesu Crist. / For it bireveth him the
love that men to him owen, and turneth
it bakward agayns alle resoun; / and
maketh that the avaricious man hath
more hope in his catel than in Jesu Crist,
and dooth more observance in herte

may the cherl be saved as
The same deeth that taketh
which deeth taketh the lord.
rede, do right so with thy
woldest that thy lord dide
thou were in his plet. Every
is a cherl to sume. I rede
that thou, lord, werke in
with thy cherles, that they
lesse than drede. I woot wel
above degree, as reson is,
is, that men do hir devoir
due, but certes, extorcious
your underlinges is damp-

forther-over understand wel,
haquerours or tiraunts maken
of hem that been born of
good as been they that hem

This name of thraldom
first comth, til that Noe seyde,
in Canaan sholde be thrid to
beon for his synne. What
name of hem that piden and
sons to holy church? Certes,
that men yeven first to
han he is newe dubbed, signi-
he sholde defenden holy
it nat roben it ne piden it
deeth, is tra-tour to Crist. /
As saint Augustin, 'they been
as wolves, that stranglen the
Jesu Crist, and doon worse
us. / For soothly when the
ful his wombe, he stinteth to
leep. But soothly, the ydours
ours of guides holy church
for they ne stinte nevere to
be, as I have seyde, sith so is
was first cause of thraldom,
thus, that thulke tyme that
it was in synne, thence was al
to thraldom and subjection /
with the tyme of grace com,
and that som folk sholde be
in estate and in degree and
more lowe, and that everich
served in his estate and in his
And therefore in somme con-
they byen thralles, when they
hem to the feith, they maken

hir thralles free out of thraldom. And
therefore, certes, the lord oweth to his
man that the man oweth to his lord. /
The Pope call th him-self servant of the
servants of god but for-as-muche as
the estate of holy church ne mighte nat
han be, ne the comune profit mighte
nat han be kept, ne pees and reste in
erthe, but-if god hadde ordeyned that
som men hadde hyer degree and som
men lower. therefore was sovereyntee
ordeyned to kepe and mayntene and
defenden hir underlinges or hir sub-
jects in reson, as ferforth as it lyth in hir
power, and nat to destroyen hem ne
confounde. Wherfore I seye, that thulke
lordes that been lyk wolves, that devouren
the possessions or the catel of payre folk
wrongfully with outen mercy or mesure, 775
they shal receyven by the same mesure
that they han mesured to payre folk the
mercy of Jesu Crist, but-if it be amended. /
Now comth deceite bitwixe marchant and
marchant. And thou shalt understonde,
that marchandise is in two maneres,
that oon is bodyly, and that other is
ghostly. That oon is honeste and laweful,
and that other is dishoneste and unlaw-
ful. / Of thulke bodyly marchandise, that
is laweful and honeste, is this, that, there-
as god hath ordeyned that a regne or
a contree is sufficient to hir-self thanne
is it honeste and laweful, that of abund-
dunce of this contree that men helpe
another contree that is more needy. And
therefore, ther mote been marchants to
bringen fro that contree to that other
lure marchandise. That other mar-
chandise, that men haunter with fraude
and tresorie and deceite, with lechery
and falsedome, is cursed and damnable. 780
Espirituel marchandise is properly sym-
mony, that is, contentid desyr to lyve
thing espirituel, that is thing that
aporteneth to the servaunt of god and to
cure of the soule. This desyr, if so be
that a man do his diligence to parfurnen
it, albeit that his leyre ne take noon
effect yet is it to him a lordly tyme,
and if he be ordred he is irregular. /
Certes, Symonye is cloped of Symon

-----, as by mannes or othere freende
Soothly, if they praye for him that is n
worthy and able, it is Symonye if he tak
the benefice; and if he be worthy an
785 able, ther nis noon. / That other maner
is, when a man or woman preyen fo
folk to avauncen hem, only for wikke
fleshly affeccoun that they have un-
the persone, and that is foul Symonye.
But certes, in service, for which mei
yeven thinges espirituels un-to his
servants, it moot been understonde that
the service moot been honeste, and elles
nat; and eek that it be with-outon bar-
gayninge, and that the persone be able. /
For, as seith seint Damasio, 'alle the
sinnes of the world, at regard of this
sinne, arn as thing of noght'; for it is
the gretteste sinne that may be, after the
sinne of Lucifer and Antecrist. / For,
by this sinne, god forloseth the chirche,
and the soule that he boghte with his
precious blood, by hem that yeven
chirches to hem that been nat digno. /
For they putten in theves, that stelen the
soules of Jesu Christ and destroyen his
790 patrimoine. / By swiche undigne preestes
and curates han lewed men the lasse
reverence of the sacraments of holy
chirche; and swiche yeveres of chirches
putten out the children of Crist, and
putten in-to the chirche the develes owene
sons. / They sellen the -

varicious man sheweth no pitee ne icorde to the nedeful man; for he sth him in the keepinge of his tresor, at in the rescowinge ne relevinge of vane-cristana. And therfore speke of misericorde. / Thanne is misericorde, as seith the philosophre, a vertue, which the corage of man is stirred e misce of him that is misced. / which misericorde folweth pitee, rfourninge of charitable werkes of icorde. / And certes, these thinges en a man to misericorde of Jesu that he yaf him-self for oure gilt, suffred deeth for misericorde, and f us oure originale sinnes; / and y released us fro the peynes of helle, unennued the peynes of purgatorie nitence, and yeveth grace wel to do, the laste the blisse of hevene. / The e of misericorde been, as for to lene for to yewe and to foryeven and e, and for to han pitee in herte, and assoun of the mechie of his evene-ne, and eek to chastye there as is. / Another manere of remedie is Avarice is resonable largesse; but ly, here bihoveth the consideracioun e grace of Jesu Crist, and of his urel goodes, and eek of the goddes urables that Crist yaf to us; / and a remembrance of the deeth that he receyve, he noot whanne, where, ne and eek that he shal forgoon al that th, save only that he hath despended is werkes. /

B. But for-as-muche as som folk been surable, men oghten eschue fool-nes, that men clepen wast. / Certes, at is fool-largo ne yeveth nat his but he leseth his catel. Soothly, thing that he yeveth for veyne, as to minstrals and to folk, for to his renoun in the world, he hath ther-of and noon almesse. / Certes, with foule his goodel, that he seketh the yifte of his goodel no-thing but. / He is lyk to an hors that seketh r to drinken drovy or trouble water for to drinken water of the clere / And for-as-muchel as they yeven

ther as they sholde nat yeven, to hem aperteneth thilke malisoun that Crist shal yeven at the day of dome to hem that shullen been dampned. /

Sequiter de Gula.

§ 70. After Avarice cometh Glotony, which is expres eek agayn the comendement of god. Glotony is unmesurable appetyt to ete or to drinke, or elles to doon y-nogh to the unmesurable appetyt and desordeyned covetyse to eten or to drinke. / This sinne corrupped al this world, as is wel shewed in the sinne of Adam and of Eve. Loke eek, what seith saint Paul of Glotony. / 'Manye,' seith saint Paul, 'goon, of whiche I have ofte seyd to yow, and now I seye it wepinge, that they been the enemyes of the croys of Crist; of whiche the ende is deeth, and of whiche hir wombe is hir god, and hir glorie in confusioun of hem that so severen erthely thinges.' / He that is unmannit to this sinne of Glotony, he ne may no sinne withstonde. He moot been in servage of alle vyces, for it is the deviles hord ther he hydeth him and resteth. / This sinne hath manye spes. The firste is dronkenesse, that is the horrible sepulture of mannes reson; and therfore, whan a man is drunken, he hath lost his reson; and this is deadly sinne. / But soothly, whan that a man is nat went to strong drinke, and peraventure ne knoweth nat the strengthe of the drinke, or hath feblese in his heed, or hath travailed, thurgh which he drinketh the more, al be he sodeynly caught with drinke, it is no deadly sinne, but venial. / The seconde spece of Glotony is, that the spirit of a man wexeth al trouble, for dronkenesse bireveth him the discrecioun of his wit. / The thridde spece of Glotony is, whan a man devourereth his mete, and hath no rightful manere of etinge. / The fourthe is whan, thurgh the grete habundance of his mete, the humours in his body been destempred. / The fifthe is, forgettynesse by to muchel drinkinge; for which somtyme a man

...his mete. The fifthe is, for to e
to greedily. / Thise been the fyve fing
of the deuelles hand, by whiche he draw
830 folk to sinne. /

Remedium contra peccatum Gule.

§ 72. Agayns Glotonye is the reme
Abstinence, as seith Galien; but th
holde I nat meritorie, if he do it only
the hele of his body. Seint August
wote, that Abstinence be doon for ver
and with pacience. / Abstinence,
seith, is litel worth, but-if a man ha
good wil ther-to, and but it be enforc
by pacience and by charitee, and th
men doon it for godes sake, and in ho
to have the blisse of hevene. /

§ 73. The felawes of Abstinence be
Attemperance, that holdeth the mene
alle thinges: eek Shame, that eschuet
alle deshonestee: Suffisance, that seket
no riche metes ne drinkes, ne dooth n
fors of to outrageous apparailinge o
mete. / Measure also, that restreyneth
resoun the deaulves appetyt of etunge
Sobrietas also, that restreyneth th
(760) outrage of drinke: / Sparinge also, tha
restreyneth the delycat ese to sitte long
at his mete and softly; wherfore som
folk stonden of hir owene wil, to eten a
835 the lasse leyser. /

Seculitur de Invidia

as dispenden up-on men hir catel
betrounce. / This sinne, as saith
phote, bireveth man and womman
e fame, and al hir honour; and it
lessaunt to the devel; for ther-by
h he the mooste partie of this
/ And right as a marchant de-
vise most in chaffare that he hath
rantage of, right so delyteth the
a this ordure. /

This is that other hand of the
with fyve fyngras, to cacche the
his vileinye. / The firste finger
fool lookinge of the fool womman
the fool man, that sleeth, right as
ilicok sleeth folk by the venom of
its; for the covetise of eyen fol-
he covetise of the herte. / The
finger is the vileyns touchinge in
e manere; and ther-fore seith
n, that who-so toucheth and hand-
womman, he fareth lyk him that
h the scorpoun that stingeth and
y sleeth thurgh his envenyminge;
so toucheth warm pich, it shent
res. / The thridde, is foule wordes,
reth lyk fyr, that right anon bren-
e herte. / The fourthe finger is
finge, and trewely he were a greet
it wolde kisse the mouth of a bren-
ovene or of a fourneys. / And
boles been they that kissen in
s; for that mouth is the mouth of
and namely, thise olde dotardes
; yet wol they kisse, though they
it do, and amatre hem. / Certes,
en lyk to houndes; for an hound,
is comth by the roser or by othere
es, though he may nat pisse, yet
heve up his leg and make a con-
ce to pisse. / And for that many
eneth that he may nat sinne, for
rounnesse that he doth with his wyf;
that opinion is fals. God woot,
may sloen him-self with his owene
and make him-selven drunken of
me toun. / Certes, be it wyf, be
d, or any worldly thing that he
biforn god, it is his mannet, and
an ydolastre. / Man sholde loven
f by discrecioun, paciently and

atemprelly; and thanne is she as though
it were his suster. / The fiftthe finger of
the develes hand is the stynkinge dede of
Lecherie. / Certes, the fyve fyngras of
Glotonie the feend put in the wombe
of a man, and with hise fyve fyngras
of Lecherie he gripeth him by the reynes,
for to throwen him in-to the fourneys of
helle; / ther-as they shul han the fyr
and the wormes that evere shul lasten
and wepinge and wailinge, sharp hunger
and thirst, and grimmesse of develes that
shullen al to-trade hem, with-uten respit
and with-uten ende. / Of Lecherie, as (790)
I seyde, sourden diverse species; as forni-
cacioun, that is bitwixe man and womman
that been nat married; and this is deadly
sinne and agayns nature. / Al that is 805
enemy and destrucioun to nature is
agayns nature. / Parfay, the rescoun of
a man telleth oek him wel that it is
deadly sinne, for-as-muche as god forbed
Lecherie. And seint Paul yeveth hem
the regne, that nis dewe to no wight but
to hem that doon deadly sinne. / Another
sinne of Lecherie is to bireve a mayden of
hir maydenhede; for he that so dooth,
certes, he casteth a mayden out of the
hyeste degree that is in this present lyf, /
and bireveth hir thilke precious fruit
that the book clepeth 'the hundred fruit.'
I ne can seye it noon other weyes in Eng-
lish, but in Latin it highte *Centismus*
fructus. Certes, he that so dooth is cause
of manye damages and vileinyes, mo than
any man can rekene; right as he som-
tyme is cause of alle damages that bestes
don in the feeld, that breketh the hegge
or the closure; thurgh which he de-
stroyeth that may nat been restored. / 820
For certes, na-more may maydenhede be
restored than an arm that is smiten fro
the body may retourne agayn to wexe. /
She may have morey, this woot I wel, if
she do penitence; but nevere shal it be
that she nas corrupt. / And al-be-it so
that I have spoken somewhat of Avoutrie,
it is good to shewen mo perils that longen
to Avoutrie, for to eschue that foule
sinne. / Avoutrie in Latin is for to seyn,
approchinge of other mannes bed, thurgh

wine. / Certes, this is the fouleste
that may be, whan a woman stelet
body from hir housbonde and yeveth
to hire holour to defoulen hir and st
hir soule fro Crist, and yeveth it t
devel. / This is a fouler thette, tha
to breke a chirche and stele the cha
for these avoutiers breken the temp
god spiritually, and stolen the vess
grace, that is, the body and the soule
which Crist shal destroyen hem, as
seint Paul. / Soothly of this t
douted gretly Joseph, whan that
lordes wyf preyed him of vileinye, w
he seyde, 'lo, my lady, how my lord l
take to me under my warde al that
hath in this world; ne no-thing of
things is out of my power, but only
that been his wyf. / And how sh
I thanne do this wikkednesse, and so
so horribly agayns god, and agayns
lord? God it forbode.' Allas! al to l
is swich trouthe now y-founde' / 3
thridde harm is the filthe thurgh wh
they breken the comandement of god, r
defoulen the unctour of matrimone, t
is Crist. / For certes, in-so-muche as
sacrement of mariage is so noble and
digno, so muche is it gretter sinne for
breken it; for god made mariage
paradyse, in the estat of innocen
multiplie man-kinde to the service
and / . . .

aungelen, as by the dignitee of hir
 rye; but for sothe, saint Paul seith,
 Bathanas transformeth him in an
 al of light.' / Soothly, the preest
 haunteth deedly sinne, he may be
 d to the aungel of derknesse trans-
 d in the aungel of light; he semeth
 d of light, but for sothe he is aungel
 'knesse. / Swiche preestes been the
 of Helle, as sheweth in the book of
 re, that they weren the sones of
 l, that is, the devel. / Belial is to
 'with-uten juge'; and so faren
 , hem thinketh they been free, and
 no juge, na-more than hath a free
 that taketh which cow that him
 h in the toun. / So faren they by
 men. For right as a free boie is
 gh for al a toun, right so is a wikked
 t corrupcioun y-nough for al a par-
 or for al a contree. / This preestes,
 th the book, no conne nat the mis-
 of preesthode to the peple, ne god
 nows they nat; they ne helde hem
 payd, as seith the book, of soden
 that was to hem offred, but they
 by force the flesh that is rawe. /
 s, so thise shrewes ne holden hem
 payed of rosted flesh and sode flesh,
 which the peple fedden hem in greet
 unce, but they wole have raw flesh
 kes wyves and hir doghtres. / And
 s, thise women that consenten to
 marlotrie down greet wrong to Crist
 o holy chirche and alle halwes, and
 e soules; for they bireven alle thise
 that shoulde worships Crist and holy
 he, and preye for Cristene soules. /
 therefore han swiche preestes, and
 mmanes seek that consenten to hir
 rie, the makoun of al the court
 en, til they come to amendement. /
 'hridde spece of avoutrie is som-tyme
 e a man and his wyf; and that is
 e they take no reward in hir assem-
 e, but only to hire fleshly delyt, as
 saint Jerome: / and ne rekken of
 ing but that they been assembled;
 use that they been married, al is
 y-nough, as thinketh to hem. /
 a swich folk hath the devel power,

as seyde the aungel Raphael to Thobie;
 for in hir assemblinge they putten Jesu
 Crist out of hir herte, and yeven hem-self
 to alle ordure. / The fourthe spece is,
 the assemblee of hem that been of hire
 kinrede, or of hem that been of oon
 affinitee, or elles with hem with whiche
 hir fedres or hir kinrede han deled in the
 sinne of lecherie; this sinne maketh hem
 lyk to bounden, that taken no kepe to
 kinrede. / And certes, parentele is in
 two maneres, outhar goostly or fleshly;
 goostly, as for to delen with hise god-
 sibben. / For right so as he that engen-
 dreth a child is his fleshly fader, right so
 is his godfader his fader spiritual. For
 which a woman may in no lasse sinne
 assemblen with hir godsib than with hir
 owene fleshly brother. / The fiftespece
 is thilke abhominable sinne, of which
 that no man unnethe oghte speke ne
 wryte, natheles it is openly reherced in
 holy writ. / This cursednesse doon men ⁹¹⁰
 and women in diverse entente and in
 diverse manere; but though that holy
 writ speke of horrible sinne, certes, holy
 writ may nat been defouled, na-more
 than the sonne that shyneth on themixen. /
 Another sinne aperteneth to lecherie,
 that comth in slepinge; and this sinne
 cometh ofte to hem that been maydenes,
 and eek to hem that been corrupt; and
 this sinne men clepen pollucioun, that
 comth in foure maneres. / Somtyme, of
 languisinge of body; for the humours
 been to ranke and halundaunt in the
 body of man. Somtyme of infermetee;
 for the feblenes of the vertu retentif, as
 phisik maketh mencionn. Somtyme, for
 surfeit of mete and drinke. / And som-
 tyme of vileyns thoughtes, that been en-
 closed in mannes minde whan he goth to
 slepe; which may nat been with-oute
 sinne. For which men moete kepen hem
 wysely, or elles may men sinnen ful gre-
 vously. /

1840

Remedium contra peccatum Luxurie.

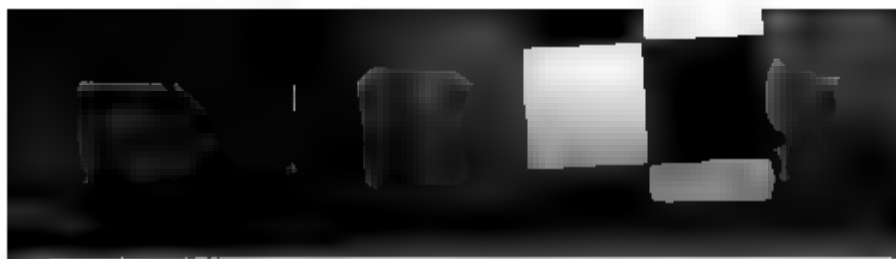
§ 77. Now comth the remedie agayns
 Lecherie, and that is, generally, Chastitee
 and Continence, that restreyneth alle the

desordaynes moevinges that comen of
 915 fleghly talentes. / And evere the gretter
 merite shal he han, that most restreyneth
 the wikkede eschawnges of the ordure
 of this sinne. And this is in two maneres,
 that is to seyn, chastitee in mariage, and
 chastitee in widwehede. / Now shalwe
 understonde, that matrimoine is lawfull
 assemblinge of man and of womman, that
 receyven by vertu of the sacrament the
 bond, thurgh which they may nat be
 departed in al hir lyf, that is to seyn,
 whyl that they liven bothe. / This, as
 seith the booke, is a ful greet sacrament.
 God maketh it, as I have seyd, in paradye,
 and wolde him-self be born in mariage. /
 And for to halven mariage, he was at
 a weddinge, where-as he turned water
 in-to wyn; which was the firste miracle
 that he wroughte in erthe bifore his dis-
 ciples. / Trewe effect of mariage clenseth
 fornicacioun and replenisseth holy chirche
 of good linage; for that is the ende of
 mariage; and it chaungeth deedly sinne
 in-to venial sinne bitwixe hem that been
 y-wedded, and maketh the hertes al oon
 of hem that been y-wedded, as wel as the
 920 bodies. / This is verray mariage, that
 was establisshid by god or that sinne bigan,
 whan naturel lawe was in his right point
 in paradye; and it was ordeyned that o
 man sholde have but o womman, and
 o womman but o man, as seith saint
 Augustin, by manye resonns. /

§ 78. First, for mariage is figured bi-
 twixe Crist and holy chirche. And that
 other is, for a man is heved of a womman;
 algate, by ordinaunce it sholde be so. /
 For if a womman had mo men than oon,
 thanne sholde she have mo hertes than
 oon, and that were an horrible thing
 bifore god; and eek a womman ne mighte
 nat plesse to many folk at ones. And also
 ther ne sholde nevere be pees ne reste
 amonges hem; for everich wolde axen
 his owene thing. / And forther-over, no
 man ne sholde knowe his owene engen-
 drure, ne who sholde have his heritage,
 and the womman sholde been the lasse
 beloved, fro the time that she were con-
 930 joynt to many men. /

§ 79. Now cometh, how that a man
 sholde bere him with his wyf; and
 namely, in two thinges, that is to seyn in
 suffraunce and reverence, as shewed Crist
 whan he made first womman. / For he
 ne made hir nat of the laved of Adam,
 for she sholde nat chynge to greet disho-
 nours. / For ther-as the womman hath
 the maistrie, she maketh to make
 decay; ther nedes none enamples of
 this. The experience of day by daye
 suffys. / Also certes, god ne made nat
 womman of the foot of Adam, for she ne
 sholde nat been holden to lowe; for she
 can nat paciently suffre; but god made
 womman of the rib of Adam, for womman
 sholde be falsew un-to man. / Man sholde
 bere him to his wyf in feith, in trouthe,
 and in love, as seith saint Paul: that
 'a man sholde love his wyf as Crist
 loved holy chirche, that loved it as wel
 that he deyde for it.' So sholde a man
 for his wyf, if it were nede. /

§ 80. Now how that a womman sholde
 be subget to hir housbonde, that telleth
 saint Peter. First, in obediencia. / And
 940 eek, as seith the decree, a womman that
 is a wyf, as long as she is a wyf, she hath
 noon auctoritee to swere ne bere witness
 with-oute leve of hir housbonde, that is
 hir lord; algate, he sholde be so by
 reson. / She sholde eek serve him in
 alle honestee, and been attemptree of hir
 array. I wot wel that they sholde sette
 hir entente to plesen hir housbonde, but
 nat by hir queyntise of array. / Saint
 Jerome seith, that wyves that been ap-
 parailled in silk and in precious purp
 ne mowe nat clothen hem in Jesu Crist.
 What seith saint John eek in this matere? /
 Saint Gregorie eek seith, that no wight
 seketh precious array but only for veyne
 glorie, to been honoured the more bifore
 the peple. / It is a greet folye, a womman
 950 to have a fair array outward and in hir-
 self be foul inward. / A wyf sholde eek
 be mesurable in lokinge and in beringe
 and in laughinge, and discreet in alle hir
 wordes and hir dedes. / And aboven alle
 worldly thing she sholde love hir hous-
 bonde with al hir herte, and to him be



of hir body; / so sholde an hous-
e eek be to his wyf. For sith that al
ody is the housbondes, so sholde hir
been, or elles ther is bitwixe hem
as in that, no parfit mariage. /
ne shal men understonde that for
thinges a man and his wyf fleschly
in assemble. The firste is in entente
gendrure of children to the service
d, for certes that is the cause fynal
atrimoine. / Another cause is, to
n everich of hem to other the dette
r bodies, for neither of hem hath
r over his owene body. The thridde
r to eschewe lecherie and vileinye.
ferthe is for sothe deedly sinne. /
o the firste, it is meritorie; the
de also; for, as seith the decree, that
ath merite of chastitee that yeldeth
r housbondes the dette of hir body,
hough it be agayn hir lykinge and
lust of hir herte. / The thridde
re is venial sinne, and trowely scarily
ther any of thise be with-oute venial
e, for the corrupcion and for the
e. / The fourthe manere is for to
retonde, if they assemble only for
was love and for noon of the for-
e causes, but for to accomplice thilke
ninge delyt, they rekke nevere how
sothly it is deedly sinne; and yet,
sorwe, somme folk wol paynen hem
e doon than to hir appetyt suf-
h. /

1. The seconde manere of chastitee
e been a clene widowe, and eschue
embracings of man, and desyren the
moinge of Jesu Crist. / Thise been
hat han been wyves and han forgoon
ousbondes, and eek women that
doon lecherie and been releved by
tence. / And certes, if that a wyf
e kepen hir al chaast by licence of
housbondes, so that she yave nevere
occasion that he agilte, it were to
a greet merite. / Thise manere
men that observen chastitee mooste
ene in herte as well as in body and
sight, and mesurable in clothinge
in contenance; and been abstinent
inge and drinkinge, in spekinge, and

in dede. They been the vessel or the
boyete of the blessed Magdalene, that
fulfilleth holy chiroche of good odour. /
The thridde manere of chastitee is vir-
ginitee, and it bihoveth that she be holy
in herte and clene of body; thanne is
she sponse to Jesu Crist, and she is the
lyf of angesles. / She is the preisinge of
this world, and she is as thise martire in
egalitee; she hath in hir that tonge may
nat telle ne herte thinke. Virginitee bear
oure lord Jesu Crist, and virgine was
him-selfe. /

957

§ 82. Another remedie agayns Lecherie
is, specially to withdrawen swiche thinges
as yave occasion to thilke vileinye; as
ese, etinge and drinkinge; for certes,
whan the pot boyleth strongly, the beste
remedie is to withdrawe the fyr. / Slep-
inge longe in greet quite is eek a greet
nорice to Lecherie. /

§ 83. Another remedie agayns Lecherie
is, that a man or a womman eschue the
companye of hem by whiche he douteth
to be tempted; for al-be-it so that the
dede is withstonden, yet is ther greet
temptacioun. / Soothly a whyt wal, al-
though it ne brenne nocht fully by
stikinge of a candele, yet is the wal blek
of the leyt. / Ful ofte tyme I rede, that (880)
no man truste in his owene perfeccioun,
but he be stronger than Sampson, and
holier than † David, and wyser than
Salomon. /

958

§ 84. Now after that I have declared
yow, as I can, the sevene deedly sinnes,
and somme of hir branches and hir reme-
dies, soothly, if I coude, I woldo telle
yow the ten comandements. / But so
heigh a doctrine I lete to divines. Nathe-
less, I hope to god they been touched in
this tretise, everich of hem alle. /

De Confessions.

§ 85. Now for-as-muche as the second
partie of Penitence stant in Confessioun
of mouth, as I bigan in the firste chapitre,
I seye, seint Augustin seith: / sinne is
every word and every dede, and al that
men coveiten agayn the lawe of Jesu

secular; / if she be of thy kinrede, bodily
or ghostly, or noon; if any of thy kinred
have sinned with hir or noon, and many
mo thinges. /

§ 86. Another circumstance is this
whether it be doon in fornicacioun, or i
avoutrie, or noon; inrest, or noon; may
den, or noon; in manere of homicide, o
noon, horrible grete synnes, or synne
and how longe thou hast continued in
sinne. / The thridde circumstance is
the place ther thou hast do synne, whethe
in other mennes hous or in thyn owne
in feild or in chirche, or in chirche-hawe
§ 87) in chirche dedicat, or noon. / For if the
chirche be halwed, and man or womman
spille his kinde in-with that place by wey
of synne, or by wikked temptacion, the
chirche is entredited til it be reconciled
§ 88) by the bishop; / and the preest that dide
swich a vileinye, to terme of al his lyf he
sholde na-more synge masse; and if he
dide, he sholde doon dedly synne at
every tyme that he so synge masse. / The
fourthe circumstance is, by whiche
mediatours or by whiche messagers, as
for entycement, or for consentement to
bere companye with felaweshipe, for
many a wrecche, for to bere companye,
wil go to the devel of helle. / Wherfore
they that eggen or consenten to the synne
been parteners of the synne and of helle.



condicionn. / First, it moot been
eful bitterness of herte, as sayde
g Esaias to god: 'I wol remem-
alle the yeres of my lyf in bitter-
f myn herte.' / This condicioun
nesse hath fyve signes. The firste
confessioun mooste be shamefast,
to coveyren hyden his sinne, for
to agilt his god and defouled his

And her-of seith saint Augustin:
erte travailleth for shame of his
and for he hath greet shamefast-
is digne to have greet mercy of
Swich was the confession of the
n, that wolde nat haven up hise
have, for he hadde offended god
me; for which shamefastnesse he
anon the mercy of god. / And
seith saint Augustin, that swich
ast folk been next foryevnesse and
oun. / Another signe is humilitee
moun; of which seith saint Peter,
deth yow under the might of god.
nd of god is mighty in confession,
r-by god foryeveth thee thy sinnes;
allone hath the power. / And this
tee shal been in herte, and in signe
d; for right as he hath humilitee
in his herte, right so sholde he
his body outward to the preest
in goddes place. / For which in
nere, with that Crist is sovereyn
he preest mene and mediatour
: Crist and the sinner, and the
is the laste by way of reason, /
sholde nat the sinner sitte as
as his confessor, but knele bifore
at his feet, but-if maladie destourbe
r he shal nat taken kepe who sit
but in whos place that he sitteth. /
that hath trespassed to a lord, and
for to axe mercy and maken his
, and set him down anon by the
ten wolde holden him outrageous,
it worthy so soon for to have remis-
re mercy. / The thurde signe is,
nat thy shrift sholde be ful of tere,
may; and if man may nat wepe
ise bodily eyen, let him wepe in
/ Swich was the confession of
Peter; for after that he hadde

forake Jesu Crist, he wente out and
weep ful bitterly. / The fourthe signe is, (930)
that he ne lette nat for shame to shewen
his confessioun. / Swich was the con- 995
fessioun of the Magdalene, that ne spared,
for no shame of hem that weren atte
feste, for to go to oure lord Jesu Crist and
biknowe to him hir sinnes. / The fift
signe is, that a man or a woman be
obeynt to receyven the penance that
him is enjoyned for hise sinnes; for certes
Jesu Crist, for the giltyng of a man, was
obedient to the deeth. /

§ 98. The seconde condicion of verray
confession is, that it be hastily doon; for
certes, if a man hadde a deadly wounde,
evere the langer that he taried to warishe
him-self, the more wolde it corrupte and
haste him to his deeth; and eek the
wounde wolde be the wors for to hele. /
And right so fareth sinne, that longe
tyme is in a man unshewed. / Certes, a
man oghte hastily shewen hise sinnes for
manye causes; as for drede of deeth, that
cometh ofte sodenly, and is in no certeyn
what tyme it shal be, ne in what place,
and eek the drechinge of oaynes draweth
in another; / and eek the langer that he 1000
tarieth, the farther he is fro Crist. And
if he abyde to his laste day, scarcely may
he shryven him or remembre him of hise
sinnes, or repenten him, for the grevous
maladie of his deeth. / And for-as-muche
as he ne hath nat in his lyf herked Jesu
Crist, whanne he hath spoken, he shal
crye to Jesu Crist at his laste day, and
scarcely wol he herkne him. / And under-
stand that this condicioun mooste han
fourte thinges. Thy shrift mooste be pur-
veyed bifore and avysed; for wikked
haste doth no profit, and that a man
conne shryve him of hise sinnes, be it of
pryle, or of envye, and so furth of the
spes and circumstances, / and that he
have comprehended in his minde the
nombre and the greetnesse of hise sinnes,
and how longe that he hath leyn in
sinne; / and eek that he be contrit of (99.)
hise sinnes, and in stedefast purpos, by
the grace of god, nevere eft to falle in
sinne; and eek that he drede and countre-

write him-self, that he flee the occasionns
 1145 of sinne to whiche he is enclyned. / Also
 thou shalt shryve thee of alle thy synnes
 to o man, and nat a parcel to o man and
 a parcel to another, that is to under-
 stande in entente to departe thy confes-
 soun as for shame or drede, for it is but
 a stranglinge of thy soule. / For certes,
 Jesu Crist is entierly al good, in him is
 noon imperfeccioun, and thertore outhir
 he foryeveth al partlyly or never a leel /
 I seye nat that if thou be assigned to the
 penitauncer for certein sinne, that thou
 art bounde to shewen him al the reme-
 nant of thy synnes, of whiche thou hast
 be shriven to thy curat, but-if it lyke to
 thee of thyn humiltee, this is no de-
 partinge of shrifte. / Ne I seye nat,
 ther-as I speke of divisoun of confessioun,
 that if thou have lycence for to shryve
 thee to a discreet and an honeste preest,
 where thee lyketh, and by lycence of thy
 curat, that thou be mayst wel shryve
 thee to him of alle thy synnes. / But lat
 no blotte be hidde, but no sinne been
 untold, as fer as thou hast remem-
 1010 brance. / And whan thou shalt be
 shriven to thy curat, telle him eek alle
 the synnes that thou hast don sin thou
 were last y-shriven, this is no wikked
 entente of divisoun of shrifte. /

§ 89 Also the verray shrifte axeth
 certeine condiciouns. First, that thou
 shryve thee by thy free wil, nought con-
 streyned, ne for shame of folk, ne for
 malicie, ne swiche thinges, for it is
 reson that he that trespasseth by his
 free wil, that by his free wil he confesse
 his trespas, / and that noon other man
 telle his sinne but he him-self, ne he shal
 nat nayte ne denye his sinne, ne wratthe
 him agayn the preest for his anonestinge
 1020 of leve sinne. / The seconde condicioun
 is, that thy shrift be laweful, that is to
 seyn that thou that shryvest thee, and
 eek the preest that hereth thy confessioun,
 1030 been verrailly in the feith of holy church, /
 and that a man ne be nat despaired of the
 1045 mercy of Jesu Crist as Caym or Judas. /
 And eek a man moost accusen him-self of
 his owene trespas, and nat another; but

he shal blame and wryten him-self of
 his owene malice of his sinne and of
 other. / But natheless, if that another
 man be occasion or entyter of his sinne
 or the estat of a persone be swich synne
 which his sinne is aggregated, or if that
 he may nat pleyntly shryven his sinne
 telle the persone with which he hath
 sinned, thanne may he telle. / And
 his entente ne be nat to lakke to
 persone, but only to declaren his con-
 fessioun. /

§ 90. Then ne shalt nat seek make to
 lesinges in thy confessioun. / For humiltee,
 per-aventure, to seyn that thou hast
 synnes of whiche that thou were
 guilty. / For seint Augustin seith, if
 thou, by cause of thyn humiltee make
 lesinges on thy self, though thou were
 nat in sinne bifore, yet artow that
 sinne thurgh thy lesinges. / Therfor
 eek shewe thy sinne by thyn owene
 mouth, but thou be wele doubtless
 by no lettre; for thou that hast don
 sinne, thou shalt have the shame of it.
 Thou shalt nat eek paynte thy confes-
 soun by faire subtil wordes to covere
 thy sinne, for thanne biggestow thy
 and nat the preest, thou must tel
 pleyntly, be it nevere so fowle ne so
 ble. / Thou shalt eek shryve to
 preest that is discreet to counsel thee
 and eek thou shalt nat shryve to
 veyne glorie, ne for ypocryte ne
 canse, but only for the doute of last
 and the hele of thy soule. / Thou
 nat eek runne to the preest to
 tellen him lightly thy sinne as thou
 telleth a jape or a tale, but avoweth
 with gret devocioun. / And gretly
 shryve thee ofte. / If thou ofte
 thou aryse by confessioun. / And
 thou shryve thee oft than thou
 of which thou hast be shriven, /
 more merite. / And, as seint Augu-
 tan, thou shalt have the more
 releasing and grace of god, bathe
 and of payne. / And certes
 atte leeste way it is laweful ne
 honaled; for certes ones a yere alle
 renovellen. /

Explicit secunda pars Penitencie; et sequitur tertia pars eiusdem, de Satisfactione.

§ 91. Now have I told you of verray Confessioun, that is the seconde partie of Penitence. /

The thridde partie of Penitence is Satisfaction; and that stant most generally in almesse and in bodily peyne. / Now been ther three manere of almesses; contricion of herte, where a man offreth himself to god; another is, to han pitee of defaute of his neighebores; and the thridde is, in yovinge of good conseil goostly and bodily, where men han nede, and namely in sustenance of mannes
30 fode. / And tak keep, that a man hath need of thise thinges generally; he hath need of fode, he hath nede of clothing, and herberwe, he hath nede of charitable conseil, and visitinge in prisone and in maladie, and sepulture of his dede body. / And if thou mayst nat visite the nedeful with thy persone, visite him by thy message and by thy yiftes. / Thise been generally almesses or werkes of charitee of hem that han temporal riches or discrecioun in conseilinge. Of thise werkes shaltow haren at the day of dome. /

§ 92. Thise almesses shaltow doon of thyne owene propre thinges, and hastily,
40 and prively if thou mayst; / but natheless, if thou mayst nat doon it prively, thou shalt nat forbere to doon almesse though men seen it; so that it be nat doon for thank of the world, but only for
50 thank of Jesu Crist. / For as witnesseth seint Mathew, capitule quinto, 'A citee may nat been hid that is set on a mountayne; ne men lighte nat a lanterne and put it under a busshel; but men sette it on a candle-stikke, to yeve light to the men in the hous. / Right so shal youre light lighten before men, that they may seen youre gode werkes, and glorifie youre fader that is in hevene.' /

§ 93. Now as to speken of bodily peyne, it stant in preyer, in wakinge, in fastinge, in vertuous techinges of orisoun. / And ye shul understonde, that orisoun or

preyer is for to seyn a pitous wil of herte, that redresseth it in god and expremeth it by word outward, to remoeven harmes and to han thinges espiri-
tuel and durable, and somtyme temporel thinges; of whiche orisoun, certes, in the orisoun of the Fater-oster, hath Jesu Crist enclosed most thinges. / Certes, it is privileged of three thinges in his dignitee, for which it is more digne than any other preyer; for that Jesu Crist him-self maketh it; / and it is short, for it
1040 shold be coude the more lightly, and for to withholden it the more easily in herte, and helpen him-self the ofter with the orisoun; / and for a man shold be the lesse wery to seyn it, and for a man may nat excusen him to lerne it, it is so short and so easy; and for it comprehendeth in it-self alle gode preyer. / The exposicioun of this holy preyer, that is so excellent and digne, I bitake to thise maistres of theologie; save thus muchel wol I seyn: that, when thou prayest that god shold foryeve thee thy giltynges as thou foryevest hem that agiltynges to thee, be ful wol war that thou be nat out of charitee. / This holy orisoun ameneth eek venial synne; and therefore it aperteneth specially to penitence. /

(970)

§ 94. This preyer mooste be trewely seyde and in verray feith, and that men praye to god ordinatly and discreetly and devoutly; and alwey a man shal putten his wil to be subget to the wille of god. /
1045 This orisoun mooste eek been seyde with greet humblesse and ful pure; honestly, and nat to the annoyauce of any man or woman. It mooste eek been continued with the werkes of charitee. / It avayleth eek agayn the vyces of the soule; for, as seith seint Jerome, 'By fastinge been saved the vyces of the flesh, and by preyer the vyces of the soule.' /

§ 95. After this, thou shalt understonde, that bodily peyne stant in wakinge; for Jesu Crist seith, 'waketh, and preyeth that ye ne entre in wikked temptacioun.' / Ye shul understanden also, that fastinge stant in three thinges; in forbaringe of bodily mete and drinke, and in forbaringe

of worldly jolitee, and in forberinge of deed y sinne, this is to seyn, that a man shal kepen him fro deedly sinne with al his might. /

§ 96 And thou shalt understanden eek, that god ordeyned fastinge, and to fastinge appertenen foure thinges / Largenesse to poure folk, gladnesse of herte espirituel, nat to been angry ne anoyed, ne grucche for he fasteth, and also resonable houre for to ete by mesure, that is for to seyn, a man shal nat ete in untyme, ne sitte the longer at his table to ete for he fasteth. /

§ 97 Thanne shaltow understonde, that bodily peyne stant in disciplyne or techinge, by word or by wrytinge, or in ensample. Also in weringe of heyres or of stamin, or of haubergeons on hir naked flesh, for Cristes sake, and swiche manere penances. / But war thee wel that swiche manere penances on thy flesh ne make nat thyn herte bitter or angry or anoyed of thy-self; for bettere is to caste away thyn heyre, than for to caste away the sikernes of Jesu Crist. / And therfore seith saint Paul 'Clothe yow, as they that been chosen of god, in herte of misericorde, debonairetee, suffraunce, and swich manere of clothinge', of whiche Jesu Crist is more apayed than of heyres, or haubergeons, or hauberkes. /

§ 98. Thanne is disciplyne eek in knockinge of thy brest, in scourginge with yerdes, in kneelinges, in tribulacions; / in suffringe paciently wronges that been doon to thee, and eek in pacient suffraunce of maladies, or lesinge of worldly catel, or of wyf, or of child, or others freendes. /

§ 99. Thanne shaltow understonde, whiche thinges destourben penaunce, and this is in four maneres, that is, drede, shame, hope, and wanhope, that is, desperation. / And for to speke first of drede, for which he weneth that he may suffre no penaunce, / ther-agayns is remedie for to thinke, that bodily penaunce is but short and litel at regard of the peyne of helle, that is so cruel and so long, that it lasteth with-oute ende. /

§ 100. Now again the shame that a man hath to shryven him, and namely, thise

ypocrites that wolden been holden a parfitte that they han no neede to shryven hem / agayns that shame, shoulde a man thinke that, by wey of reason, that he that hath nat been ashamed to do foule thinges, certes him oughte nat to be ashamed to do faire thinges, and thus confessours. / A man shoulde eek thinke, that god seeth and woot alle his seknes and alle huse werkes, to him maner thing been hid ne covered. Men shoulde eek remembre hem of the shame that is to come at the day of dome, to hem that been nat penitent and shryven in this present lyf / For alle the creatures ortho and in helle shullen seen a part that they hyden in this world.

§ 101 Now for to speken of the shryven of hem that been negligent and slothful shryven hem, that stant in two maneres / That oon is, that he hopeth for to live longe and for to purchacen may he neede for his delyt, and thanne he wold shryve him, and as he seeth him senethen tymely y-nough to come to shryve / Another is, surquidrie that he hath a Cristes merv. / Agayns the firste he shal thinke, thatoure lyf is so sikernes and eek that alle the men in this world ben in aventure and as a shadwe on the wal. / And as seith saint Gregorie, that it aperteneith to grete rightwisnesse of god, that man shal the peyne stinte of hem that wold withdrawn hem fro god for thankes, but ay continue in synne for thilke perpetual wil to do synne that han perpetual peyne.

§ 102 Wanhope is in two maneres the firste wanhope is in the mercy of Crist that other is that they thinke that they ne mighte nat longe persevere in goodnesse. / The firste wanhope is of that he demeth that he hath synned greetly and so ofte, and so longe in synne, that he shal nat be saved / Agayns that cursed wanhope shoulde a man thinke, that the passion of Jesu Crist is more strong for to unbinde than is synne strong for to binde. / Agayns the second wanhope, he shal thinke, that at the day

he falleth he may aryse agayn by penitence. And thogh he never so longe have leyn in sinne, the mercy of Crist is alwey redy to receiven him to mercy. / Agayns the wanhope, that he demeth that he sholde nat longe persevere in goodnesse, he shal thinke, that the feblenes of the deval may no-thing doon
 200) but-if men wol suffren him; / and eek he shal han strengthe of the help of god, and of al holy chirche, and of the pro-
 275 teccioun of aungels, if him list. /

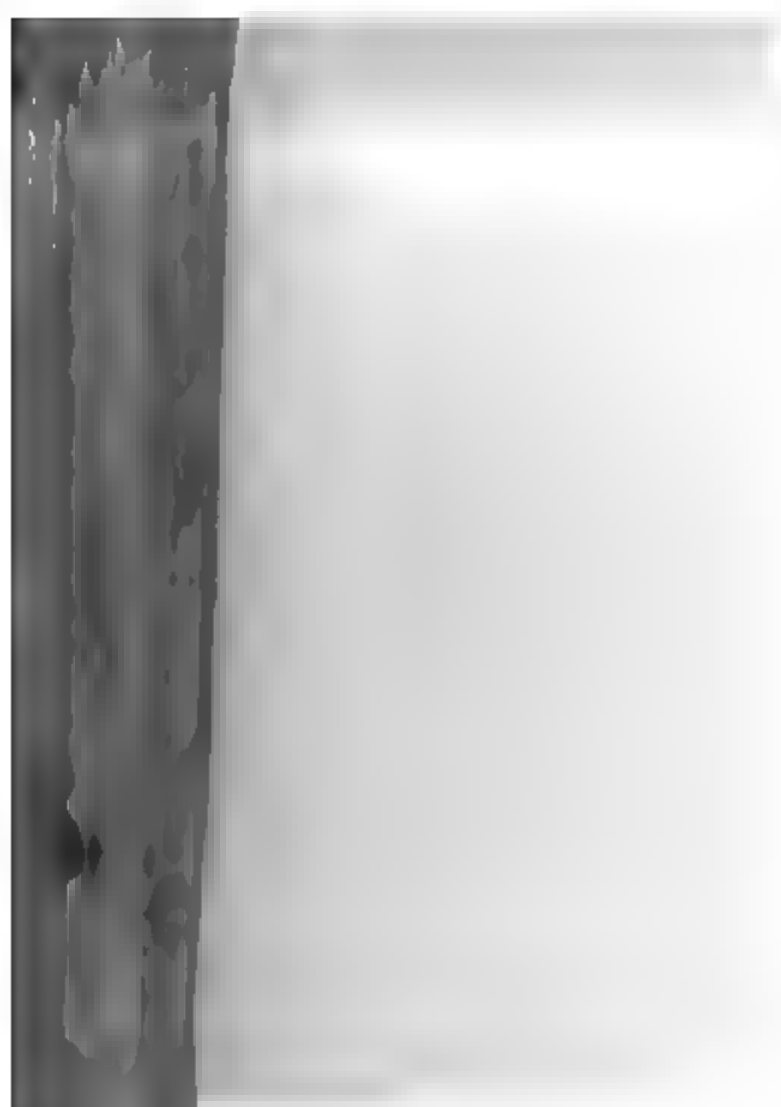
§ 103. Thanne shal men understonde what is the fruit of penaunce; and, after the word of Jesu Crist, it is the endelees blisse of hevne, / ther joye hath no contrariounes of wo ne grevaunce, ther alle harmes been passed of this present lyf; ther-as is the sikernesse fro the payne of helle; ther-as is the blisful companye that rejoysen hem everemo, everich of others joye; / ther-as the body of man, that whylom was foul and dark, is more clear than the sonne; ther-as the body, that whylom was syk, frele, and feble, and mortal, is immortal, and so strong and so hool that ther may no-thing aseyren it; / ther-as he is neither hunger, thirst, ne cold, but every soule replenished with the sighte of the parfit knowinge of god. / This blisful regne may men purchase by poverté espirituel, and the glorie by lowenesse; the plantee of joye by hunger and thirst, and the reste by travaille; and the lyf by deeth and
 280 mortificacioun of sinne. /

Here taketh the makere of this book
 his leve.

§ 104. Now preye I to hem alle that herkne this litel tretis or rede, that if ther be any thing in it that lyketh hem, that ther-of they thanken our lord Jesu

Crist, of whom procedeth al wit and al goodnesse. / And if ther be any thing that displese hem, I preye hem also that they arrette it to the defaute of myn unconninge, and nat to my wil, that wolde ful fayn have seyde better if I hadde had conninge. / For our bokes seith, 'al that is writen is writen for our doctrine'; and that is myn entente. / Wherefore I biseke yow mekely for the mercy of god, that ye preye for me, that Crist have mercy on me and foryeve me my giltes: / (1010)
 —and namely, of my translacions and endytynges of worldly vanitees, the whiche I revoke in my retracciouns: / as is the 1085
 book of Troilus; The book also of Fame; The book of the nyntene Ladies; The book of the Duchesse; The book of saint Valentynes day of the Parlement of Briddes; The tales of Caunterbury, thilke that sounen in-to sinne; / The book of the Leoun; and many another book, if they were in my remembrance; and many a song and many a lecherous lay; that Crist for his grete mercy foryeve me the sinne. / But of the translacion of Boece de Consolacione, and others bokes of Legendes of seintes, and omelies, and moralitee, and devocioun, / that thanke I our lord Jesu Crist and his blisful moder, and alle the seintes of hevne, / bisekinge hem that they from henneforth, un-to my lyves ende, sende me grace to biwayle my giltes, and to studie to the salvacioun of my soule:—and graunte me grace of verray penitence, confessioun and satisfaccioun to doon in this present lyf; / thurgh the benigne 1090
 grace of him that is king of kinges and preest over alle preestes, that boghte us with the precious blood of his herte; / so that I may been oon of hem at the day of dome that shulle be saved: *Qui cum patre, &c.* 1092

Here is ended the book of the Tales of Caunterbury, compiled by Geoffrey Chaucer, of whos soule Jesu Crist have mercy. Amen.



APPENDIX.

VARIATIONS AND EMENDATIONS.

THE text of Chaucer is, in some places, corrupt, and in others can be much improved by some emendation, usually of a slight character.

The text of the best authorities, as improved by collation with other good authorities, is here given. Variations from these are denoted by an obelus (†) in the text, which may be considered as marking a reading as to which there is some doubt. These are most numerous in the *Romaunt of the Rose*, the *Book of the Duchesse*, and the *House of Fame*. There are very few doubtful readings in the *Canterbury Tales*, for which there are better authorities than in other cases. In the following Appendix all the doubtful readings and editorial emendations are accounted for. I do not, however, notice words which are placed between square brackets, such as the word 'a' on p. 1, l. 12. It will be understood, once for all, that all such words are *supplied*, and are *missing* in the originals, though often necessary for the sense or the metre, or for both.

ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

The authorities are G. (the Glasgow MS.); and Th. (Thynne's edition of 1532). Also, from the nature of the case, F. (the original French text, here quoted from the edition by Méon, Paris, 1813). No other authorities exist. Many lines are wholly missing in G.; and when it is not cited, this must be understood. Thus, it has lost lines 1-44.

Page 1. 3. Th. swenen; *but the plural is required*. 4. Th. that false ne bene. 25. Th. slepte; (*sleep is more usual*). 38. Th. hatte; *read hote* (be called).

Page 2. 66. G. Th. had; *read hath*. 102. G. Th. buskes (*not Chaucer's form*). 110. G. Th. gan I. 138. G. Th. Enclosed was; *see l. 1632*; F. *Tant clos*. 149. G. Th. mynoresse (!); F. *moverresse*.

Page 3. 196. G. Th. myscoueiting (!); F. *mesconter*. 220. G. Th. courtpy (*see Cant. Tales, A 290*). 248. *Both* peynted.

Page 4. 255. *Both* Upon any worthy man falle. 277. *Both* and so breketh. 324. *Both* rent.

Page 5. 382. *Both* may neuer. 442. *Both* ay (*giving no sense*); *read* shal. 444. *Both* grace (!), *for* face; F. *lor vis*.

Page 6. 485. G. laddris; Th. ladders; *see l. 523*. 492. G. yeer; Th. yere; *read*

yard, see l. 656. 501 Both wolde, for holde, by confusion. 505 Both god kepe it fro care, a false rime, clearly substituted for god it kepe and were. Were is the E. spelling of the verb in the French text, which has *que Dier garisse*. 522 Both For, read Ful; (wo is here an adjective - sad.). 536 G. ony; Th. any, read a.

Page 7. 564. Some lines lost here, 3 lines of F. left untranslated. 586. Both may, read mayden. 602 Both lande of Alexandryne, but Alexandryn is an adjective. 603. G. hidre be, Th. hyther be.

Page 8. 660. Both places. 668. Both That; read These. 720. Th. reurine, G. reuerye, F. reverdie.

Page 9. 761 Both made; read make. 791. Both bode (no sense); read Bear be bede I I would not offer.

Page 10. 850. G. seye, Th. sey. 860. G. pleye l.; Th. pley l. 865 Both I red not what of hir nose I shal desoryve (eleven syllables). 866. Two lines lost here. 870. Both Love and as hym liketh it be. 923. Both Turke bowes two ful wel leayed had he too long.

Page 11. 959. Both shoten; see l. 989. 984. Both on, read of. 1007 Both And an, read As was an, F. *Ainsinc cum*. 1017 Both wyntred, but see l. 1030. 1022 Both thought, read thinketh. 1031 Both Sore l., F. Sade. 1034. Both And hight

Page 12. 1037 Both in werk (?). 1058. Th. prill, G. prile; error for prille, written so as to look like prille. 1080. Th. amyled G. enameled 1081 Both durst, error for thurste, more commonly thurte. 1117. Both ragounes, F. *jugonnes*.

Page 13. 1188. G. sarlynyshe; Th. Sarlynyshe, F. *Sarruzinache*. 1201 Both gousauncoun (?); F. *gonfanon*. 1210. Both He caste. 1233. Th. hempe, G. henpe (hempe). 1246. Both a, read oo (one).

Page 14. 1244. Both Bitokeneth. 1282. Both And she (?), read Yonthe, F. *Jomet*; see l. 1302. 1304. Both that, read thus; see l. 1310. 1313 G. loreyes error for laurelles. Th. Laurelles. 1315. Th. ended; G. eended (-y-ended). 1314. Both durst a l. 1089. 1332 Both she (for second he). 1334. Both hadde (for had), and had to bende, both omit it. 1335. Both an (for on).

Page 15. 1341. G. hadde me shette, Th. had me shete (but shete is not a p.p.). 1343. Both had me greued. 1348. Both hadde in all the gardyn be 1356 Both gardin (for yerd). 1369. Both Parys l., for paradye. 1377 & Th. knytte with

Page 16. 1440. Th. dilectable. 1447. Th. garden, read yerde in cf. 1448. Th. esters (?); F. *tout l'estre*. 1453. Th. shoten, read shete. Th. goodness & good mes cf. 3462. 1498. G. velaynesly, Th. vilaynously. 1527. Both mimes

Page 17. 1591. Both entrees, F. *Tout l'estre*. 1592. Both ye (for he). 1594 Both Ye (for He). 1608. Both laughyng l., read loving

Page 18. 1641. Both sighed. 1644 Both strengthes. 1648. G. intrinsel Th. bytresshed. 1663. Both me, read be, F. *fusse*. 1666. G. wole; Th. wol. Th. ware; G. waxe, both have Rone. 1698. Both hath, omit wel? 1700. Both For; read Ful.

Page 19. 1711. G. botheum, Th. bothum. 1732. Both Sithen. 1758. Both 1760. Both certis euanly; read certainly. 1771 Both his, read a. 1814. Both bote read felte.

Page 20. 1848. Both mighte it. 1851. Both sene I hadde. 1853 & Both 1857 more; see l. 1857. 1860. G. Castith; Th. Casteth. 1913, 1914. Transposed as 1913

Page 21. 1924. Both softlyng; see 1925. 1925 Both prikkith. 1945. Both 1946 read louers. 2002. Both of; read to.

Page 22. 2038. Both queynt. 2044. Both taken; read tan; cf. 2068. 2046. Both disteyned; F. *Decous*. 2067. Both surprised. 2068. Both taken; read tan; cf. 2044. 2076. G. disease; Th. *desase*; F. *deseaisir*. 2116. Both degree.

Page 23. 2154. Both bigynneth to amende. 2176. G. say; Th. says. 2185. Both vnto; for to. 2195. Both in; read a.

Page 24. 2264. Both on; read upon. 2271. Th. aumere; G. awmere; see 2087. 2279. Both oostneth; F. *couste*. 2285. Both Faroe. 2294. G. Th. knowith (!); F. *rit*. 2302. Both pleyneeth; read pleyeth. 2327. Both menen.

Page 25. 2336. Both londe; read lone. 2341. Both this swift; read swich yift; F. *si riche don*. 2365. Both and; read in. 2427. Th. sene; read sende; F. *envoier*. 2432. Th. gone and visyten.

Page 26. 2466. Better omit of. 2473. Both Thought; read That swete? 2499. G. yitt; Th. yet; read yil.

Page 27. 2564. Th. forwerede; G. *forweriede*; see 3251. 2569. Both so; read seme. 2617. Both I wote not; read I noot. 2619. Both better. 2621. Both on hir I caste. 2622. Both That. 2628. Both ligen; read ly.

Page 28. 2650. Both whider (!). 2675. Th. whan; G. whanne; read wham or whom; F. *De qui tu ne puez avoir aies*. 2676. Corrupt. F. *Au departir la porte baies* (i.e. the lover is to kiss the door). 2709, 2710. Both more, fore. 2712. Both to gon; omit to.

Page 29. 2774. Both afterward. 2796. G. Thankyng; Th. Thynkyng; cf. 2804. 2824. Both not ben; F. *tu serois*. 2833. Both me; read hem; cf. 2845.

Page 30. 2917. Both thou (for they). 2935. Both declared thee.

Page 31. 2992. Both warrans; F. *Ge vous i puis bien garantir*.

Page 32. 3032. Both Venns hath flemed. 3115. Both arise. 3125. Both And late (or lette) it growe (too long). 3136. Th. His eyes reed sparolyng as the fyre-glowe (too long); sparolyng is a gloss on read.

Page 33. 3190. G. it; Th. he; read I; F. *pe*. 3207. Both For Nature; I omit For. 3209. Both but if the.

Page 34. 3264. Both sayne; feyne seems better. 3274. Both he be a; I omit a. 3301. After gete, Th. inserts the, and G. thee. 3319. Both thought; read taughte. 3331. Both Who that; I omit that. 3337. Both charisaunce; F. *chevaunce*.

Page 35. 3399. Th. forbode; G. forbode; read forbad. 3433. Th. suche; G. *sichen*; F. *puis qu'il me aiet*.

Page 36. 3447. Both where that the; I omit that. 3490. Both That he had. 3491. G. Thanne; Th. Than; read That; F. *Qu'Amora*. 3522. Both ye (for he); F. *Que il*. 3525. Both it is.

Page 37. 3548. This (-This is); F. *C'est*. 3554. Both Vpon (for On). 3604. Read thar; Th. dare. 3626. Th. ofres. 3643. Th. the god of blesse; F. *Diez la benie*.

Page 38. 3660. Th. That so; omit so. 3690. Th. grapes be ripe. 3694. Both Though. 3697. Both rannyng (!). 3698. Both come (absurdly); see l. 2700; read to me. 3710. G. herte is; Th. hart is; read hertis (= hartes). 3718. Both naithir (for nor). 3745. Both pleyne or playne. 3751. Both ye; read to.

Page 39. 3755. Th. with his heta. 3756. Both insert me after had. 3774. G. it wille; Th. at wyl. 3851. Both verge; see 3234.

Page 40. 3880. Both lye. 3895. Both trechours. 3902. Both herte I crye. 3907. Both lowe; read loude. 3928. Both must; read mot; supply take. 3942. Both Do; read To. 3943. Both Thanne (or Than) close; F. *Qui les roses clorra endor*.

Page 41. 3994. Th. vilanously, G vilaynealy. 4021. G. an high, Th. an h
4026. Both To make.

Page 42. 4089. Both place it after I.

Page 43. 4181. Both of, read as. 4188. Both Roses; F. roses. 4194. Both
for whiche.

Page 44. 4272. Both walketh ('). 4285. Both Which (for Ther); going w
4291. Both except. 4322. Both wente aboute ' , read wende a bought a
F Ges cuidoie anoir achetes, I weened to have bought them). 4349. G tylers,
tyllers. 4352. Both wente best abouen to haue.

Page 45. 4364. Both lut, read al. Both lust. 4365. Both is, read am. 4366. B
charge. 4372. G wole, Th. wol; read wal. 4425. Both good.

Page 46. 4467. Both her (for his. 4476. Both preise. 4559. Both Low
lorde. 4556. Th. moche that it, G mych that.

Page 47. 4561. Both your good wille, F. se Dier plait. 4587. Both ne tal
I omit ne. 4617. Both not, read nist; cf. 4626. 4657. Both I; read han.

Page 48. 4715. Both And through the read A trouthe. 4721. Th. lyke
read aike. 4722. G trust, Th. truste, (thrust thrust. Both and
4724. Both And. 4725. Both And. 4741. Both Sen.

Page 49. 4755. Both by for be. 4764. Both That read But. 4793. Both
read er i e. before. 4796. Both al by partnere. 4799. Both greven
disfyned here. 4811. G kned, Th. knedde. 4812. Both With. 4822. Both engre
see 5114. 4847. Both han her lust. 4846. Both what, for who.

Page 50. 4858. Both their. 4892. G. perell, Th. parel, but read tyme
4921. Both But that if. 4933. Both this. 4935. Both yonthes chambré or charbr
F. Jmesce sa chamberiere. 4943. Both And mo of ('). 4945. Both remu
4948. Both him.

Page 51. 4955. Both gan. 4960. Both neither preise. 5004. Th. st
G stondith. 5010. Both weped. 5021. Both he (for hir). 5028. Both list to lea

Page 52. 5050. Both gounen. 5051. Both so; read she or she. 5052. Both
5058. Both That read But cf. 4764. 5085. Both to, read they. 5107. G her
hem, Th. herboreast. 5110. Both this; read thy, F. tom. 5117. Both by the
F. to jomence. 5144. G ny, Th. nye; read alway.

Page 53. 5155. Both That, F. Lors. 5162. Perhaps say - nssay. 5201. read
Aunsete; error for Amistie. 5229. Both oo state, read con estate, see 5405.

Page 54. 5278. Both bothe the. 5283. Both this. 5285. Both vnyte ' 528
And, read A man. 5292. Th. causes; G. cause, see 5301, 5323. 5325. Both ha
5337, 5341. 5341. Both hir, read the. 5345. Both Thurgh the, I omit the

Page 55. 5360. Both greueth so groueth. 5370. Both him sult or
5389. Both kepen ny his; see 5367. 5391. I omit alle before his. 5401. Both ou
be. 5404. Both hath. 5408. G. it; read in, Th. omitta. 5412, 5420, 5422, 5427,
Both hym ('), F. les. 5433. Both to (for so).

Page 56. 5452. Th. chere (for there), G cheer '). 5463. Both thus. 5478
For to shewe read She sheweth. 5486. Both affect. 5491. Both For al that
here out of drode. 5493. G. late; Th. lette. 5544. Both falsyng, F. chere
falling. 5546. Both caste.

Page 57. 5555. Both in (for is). 5556. Both depe error for dope dothe. 5559
hane you to hane, G. ha yow to ha. 5577. Both perconueth. 5590. G. mavis;
manys, F. muís bushels. 5598. Both that (for it). 5617. Both berne. 5618. Both

Page 58. 5699. *Both* where; *F. guerra*. 5701. *Both* shal though he hath gotten (!). 5713. *Both* Thus is thurst. 5741. *G. fy*; *Th. fye*; read *sy*. (From *fy* to *sy* means from the first syllable of *fy-sy-cien* (physician) to the second.)

Page 59. 5755. *Both* shewing. 5761-2. Supply it in 5761; it occurs after Himself in 5762. 5781. *Both* The; *F. Trois*. 5788. *Both* vnto. 5821. *Both* nyl not.

Page 60. 5855. *Both* kepte; *F. qui mestrie*. 5860. *Both* that ilke. 5883. *Both* As my nede is. 5900. *Both* That such toures ben; I omit That and ben.

Page 61. 5942. *Both* folylly. 5959. *Both* beaute (!). 5960. *Both* That I; I omit That. 5976. *Both* ful dera. 6002. *Both* grede; error for gnede. 6006. *Both* beaute (as in 5959). 6009. *Th. wol*; *G. wole*.

Page 62. 6064. *Both* hindreth.

Page 63. 6165. *Both* which; *F. tes* (such). 6169. *Both* lette. 6174. *Both* nede; *F. besoignes*. 6205. I supply this line; went his wyle = turns aside his craft. 6206. *Th. begylen*; *G. byggylyng*. 6237. *Th. commen*; *G. comyn*.

Page 64. 6243. *Both* ful many; omit ful. 6256. *Both* maketh the; omit the. 6302. *Both* planten most. 6306. *Both* fayne; *F. dire*. 6314. *Both* insert shal before never. 6317, 6318. Two half-lines lost; words supplied by Kalusa.

Page 65. 6341. *Both* and reyned (!); for streyned; see 7366. 6355. *Both* Ioly (!); read blynde. I supply ther. 6372. A line lost; supplied as in Morris's edition; *F. Si n'en sei mes si recueu*. 6378. *Both* I (for me). 6407. *Both* not; read yit.

Page 66. 6460. *Both* it is; *F. Pourquoi*. 6466. *Both* woth (!). 6481. *Both* seruest; *F. sembles*. 6491. *Both* bettir. 6493. *Both* of a pore. 6500. *Both* me a dyne. 6515. *Both* not. 6522. *Both* Hath a soule. 6532. *G. thrittene*; *Th. thirtene* (wrongly).

Page 67. 6539. *G. beggith*; *Th. beggeth*. 6542. *G. goddis*; *Th. goddess*. 6565. *G. ther*, *Th. their*. 6569. *Both* yaf. 6570. *G. folkis*; *Th. folkes*. 6572. *Both* they; read leye; *F. gisoient*. 6606. *Both* Ben somtyme in; see 6610.

Page 68. 6667. *Both* haue hidde; I omit haue. 6688. *Th. hondis*; *G. omitts*. 6700. *Both* Yit. 6707. *Both* mendiciens (-eues).

Page 69. 6819. *Both* wrine; *both* ham; *both* at. 6823, 6824. *Both* robbyng, gilyng.

Page 70. 6880. *Th. Ne wol*; *G. Wol*; read Nil. 6902, 6907. *Both* burdons. 6911. *Both* burdons; but borders are meant. 6925, 6926. *Both* him.

Page 71. 6974. I omit a after tymes. 7018. *G. werrien*, *Th. werryen*. 7029. *Both* these (for thes), and that (for or); *F. leres ou*. 7032. *Both* them.

Page 72. 7041. *G. cheffis*; *Th. cheffes*; *F. fromages*. 7092. *Th. We* had ben turmented al and some; (*G. different line, in late hand*); *F. Tout eust este tormenté*. 7109. *G. has here* l. 7110, followed by a blank line; *Th. has* That they [read he] ne might the booke by, followed by a spurious line. 7110. *Th. To* the cople, if hem.

Page 73. 7145. *Both* no. 7159. *Both* vpon. 7173, 7174. I supply these lines by conjecture; *F. Par Pierre voit le Pape entendre*. 7180. *Both* That (read And); to (read that). 7221. *Both* worthy; see 7104. *Both* mynystres; read maistres.

Page 74. 7316. *Both* slayn; *F. escorchés*.

Page 75. 7368. *G. gracche*; *Th. gratcha*. 7389. *Th. denyed*. 7392. *Th. salowe*; read falowe. 7394. *Th. to*; read tho. 7409. *Th. And*. 7429. *Th. humbly*. 7432. *Th. remued*.

Page 76. 7473. *Th. hath* hadde the. 7482. *Th. doughty* (!); *F. poudres*. 7533. *Th. she* nat herselfe (wrongly).

Page 78. 7653. *G. wole*; *Th. wol*. 7662. *Both* wot; *F. fait*. 7663. *Th. we* (for ye); *G. omitts*.

Page 81. 163. *All the MSS. insert suff*
above. Or perhaps his herte was caught,
suffred eek, that Longius him pighte. A
l. a. pricked, as in Cant. Tales, F 418. P
And suffred eek, that Longius him prigh

II. THE COMPLI

The MSS. are: Tn. (Tanner 346); F. (
MS., Harl. 78); Ff. (Ff. 1. 6, in the Cam
(Trin. Coll. Camb. B. 2. 19); also Ha. (Har
Page 82. 21. MSS. was (for nas), twice

III. THE BOOK C

The authorities are only Th. (Thynne's ec
16); Tn. (Tanner 346); B. (Bodley 638).
also.

Page 88. 6. *All take no kepe. 14. All*
Page 84. 76. *Not in Tn. B.; Th. F. of A*
began to yerne; read gan to erine. 82. A
from 81); read he dwelte so. 86. Not in Th
and supply alas from 87, where it occurs
101. All this lady; for she. 107. All wept
belongs to l. 132).

Page 85. 149. *All speke right so (but ri*
(for nothing). 175. Tn. alepte; F. alept; a
206. I supply look. 207. All for suche; re

Page 88. 264. *All insert quene after goe*
insert my before slepe. 300. All oner al; I
repeat of king before Lamedon. 330. All
and of (for and). 332. (Marked by miste
...

omit ful. 584. *All That; read Thogh.* 586. *For the former hit, all have him; see*
585. 589. F. B. Thesiphus; Tn. Tesiphus; Th. Tesyphus (*miswritten for Cesiphus =*
Sesiphus). 599. F. Th. sorowe (!); Tn. sorov (!); *read song.* 630. Th. Tn. flouris;
F. B. flourys; *read flour is.*

Page 90. 660. *All in the; omit the.* 681. *All she my fers; read my fers she*
(Koch). 693. *All For ther; omit For.* 721. *All yis parde; omit yis.* 728. *All also;*
read als. 732. *All the quene; omit the.* 740. *All no man; read noon.* 745. F. Tn.
Ioo she that may be; Th. Howe that may be; *here she is an error for sir; and how*
that may be for how may that be; the edition of 1550 has Howe may that be.

Page 91. 751. *All insert shalt after thou; omit it* (Koch). 771. *All I prayde; omit*
I. 779. *All moste able; omit moste.* 785. *All ryght so; omit ryght.* 802. *All That*
tyme and; omit That tyme. 805. *All on a day.* 806. *All ther that I; omit that.*
823. *All Than any other planete in heaven.* 828. *All and of; omit of.* 829. *All and*
so; omit and. 840. *All counseyl (a gloss upon reed, the original word).* 844. *All*
better.

Page 92. 895. *All But which; omit But.* 905. *Was white; omit white (reserved*
for l. 948). 924. *All swere wel; omit wel.* 930. *All never yet; omit yet.* 942. *All*
and pure flat; omit pure. 943. *All or; read and.*

Page 93. 959. *All nere pure; omit pure.* 971. *All swere wel; read sweren.*
994. *All And therto; omit And.* 997. *All What harme was; but harm is mono-*
syllabic. 1020. *wolde not; read nolde.* 1028. *All into; read to.* 1040. *All and my*
goddesse (!); read and my lisse (i.e. consolation). 1051. *All loked her; omit her.*

Page 94. 1075. *All nay trewly I; omit trewly.* 1099. *All coude tho; read tho*
couda. 1147. *All hit not never; omit not.*

Page 95. 1188. *All am; read nam.* 1189. *All sey right; omit right.* 1234. *All to*
false; omit to. 1239. *All ryght as; omit ryght.*

Page 96. 1264. *All thynges; read thing.* 1322. *All ther was; omit ther.*

IV. THE COMPLEYNT OF MARS.

The authorities are: F. (Fairfax 16); Tn. (Tanner 346); Ju. (Julian Notary's
edition); Harl. (Harl. 7333); T. (Trin. Coll. Camb., R. 3. 20); Ar. (Arch. Selden B. 24,
in the Bodleian Library); Th. (Thynne's edition, 1532). *I follow F. mainly.*

Page 98. 89. *All nygh dreynt; omit nygh.* 125. *All transpose hir and don.*

Page 99. 141. *All god helpe; read helpe god; and accent sely and Venus on the*
latter syllable.

Page 100. 274. *Most MSS. have to so; T. omits to.*

V. THE PARLEMENT OF FOULES.

The authorities are: F. (Fairfax 16); Gg. (Gg. 4. 27, Camb. Univ. Library); Trin.
(Trin. Coll. Camb. R. 3. 19); Cx. (Caxton's edition); Harl. (Harleian 7333); O. (St.
John's Coll., Oxford); Ff. (Ff. 1. 6, Camb. Univ. Library). *I have also consulted Tn.*
(Tanner 346); D. (Digby 181); *and others. I follow F. mainly; chiefly corrected*
by Gg.

Page 101. 39. *All he; read hit; see 36, 43.*

Page 106. 396. *All have formed.*

Page 109. 613. Gg. *reufulles (!); Pepys, rowthfull; read reuful (!).*

VI. A COMPLEINT TO HIS LADY.

Only two MS. copies: Sh. (Shirley's MS., Harl. 78), Ph. (Phillips 2054, now A. 112. 24. 62). Also Ed. (edition of 1561). I follow Sh. mainly, but correct many bad spellings; and supply many words and even lines. Lines 124-133 are in Ph. only.

Page 111. 14. All now doth, I omit now. 15. This line is supplied to 112. 17. 19. Sh. and y. t. may, I put fro for yit. 24. This line supplied to 112. 112. cf. Compl. of Mars, 183. 25, 26. Supplied of Compl. to Ph. 22. 27. Anelida, 307. 33. I omit she before sleeth. 36. A line lost supplied from Anelida 181.

Page 112. 59. Supplied from Anelida, 182. 68. Sh. euer do. 78. Sh. ~~verre~~ ~~read~~ ~~v.~~ Sh. wist that were, I omit that. Sh. your hyemasse repeated from 7. ~~read~~ ~~v.~~ distresse. 81. The dagger should precede 18. Sh. thane 11, omit thane. 112. Sh. ~~do~~ ~~ever~~ ~~read~~ ~~over~~ ~~been~~. 113. Imperfect, I supply here. 114. Sh. But the, omit but. 114. Sh. nought, read nothing. 120. Sh. no trewer so verrayly, Ed. ~~no~~ ~~traw~~ ~~verely~~ ~~false~~ ~~rime~~. 127. Ph. For wile, om. For. 129. Not in Sh. Ph. Thaw ~~no~~ myght offenden. 132. Not in Sh., Ph. ~~no~~ Hisse, omit no. 133. Ph. dwelle ~~v.~~ ~~133~~.

VII. ANELIDA AND ARCITE.

Authorities: Harl. (Harl. 7333), F. (Fairfax 16), Tn. (Tanner 346), D. (Dugby 84), Cx. (Caxton's edition), B. (Bodley 638), Lt. (Longleat MS.), Th. (Thynne's edition, 1532). I follow F. mainly.

Page 114. 91. Th. Tn. Harl. trusteth, read trusted; read trust. 129. All longer she, omit she.

Page 115. 174. All speketh she. 191. All un-to, read to.

Page 116. 241. All be founde, but be was copied in from l. 240.

VIII. CHAUCERS WORDES UNTO ADAM.

From T. (Trin. Coll. Camb. R. 3. 20). Also in Ed. (edition of 1561).

Page 118. 3. T. thy long lokkes, omit long. 4. T. wryte more trawe ~~omit~~ ~~from~~.

IX. THE FORMER AGE.

Two copies: L. (li. 3. 21, Camb. Univ. Library), Hh. (Hh. 4. 12, in the same). Chiefly from L.

Page 118. 3. I. paied of the; omit the. 11. I. goodded, Hh. knowyd ~~omit~~ ~~to~~ ~~11~~ ~~golden~~, pl. pl. of golden.

Page 119. 23. Both No bataills trompes, omit bataills. 34. L. No places ~~will~~ ~~from~~ Hh. No place of wildnesse; omit places, place of. 56. A line lost. I supply it.

X. FORTUNE.

Authorities: L. (li. 3. 21, Camb. Univ. Library), A. (Ashmole 59), T. (Trin. Coll. Camb.), F. (Fairfax 16); B. (Bodley 638), H. (Harl. 2251).

XI. MERCILES BEAUTE.

One copy: P. (Pepys 2006). 36. P. this, read ther.

XII. TO ROSEOUNDE.

One copy: MS. Bawl. Poet. 163, leaf 114.

Page 121. 11. semy (sic); read seemly. fynall (for final, a misreading of final).

XIII. TRUTH.

Authorities: At. (Addit. 10340); Gg. (Gg. 4. 27, Camb. Univ. Library); E. (Ellesmere MS.); Ct. (Cotton, Cleop. D. 7); T. (Trin. Coll. R. 3. 20); F. (Fairfax 16); and others. *Chiefly from E. The Envoy is in At. only.*

Page 122. 19. Know thy contree; Harl. F. T. Loke vp on hie. 20. Hold the hye wey; Harl. F. Weyve thy lust.

XIV. GENTILESSE.

Authorities: A. (Ashmole 59); T. (Trin. Coll. R. 3. 20); Harl. (Harl. 7333); Ct. (Cotton, Cleop. D. 7); Ha. (Harl. 7578); Add. (Addit. 22139); Cx. (Caxton's edition). *I follow Cx. mainly.*

Page 123. 20. Cx. makes hem eyres, that can hem queme; A. mathe his heyre him that wol him qweme; Ct. That maketh his heires hem, &c.

XV. LAK OF STEDFASTNESSE.

Authorities: Harl. (Harl. 7333); T. (Trin. Coll. R. 3. 20); Ct. (Cotton, Cleop. D. 7); F. (Fairfax 16); Add. (Addit. 22139); Bann. (Bannatyne); Th. (Thynne's edition, 1532); and others. *I follow Ct. mainly.*

XVI. LENVOY A SCOGAN.

Authorities: Gg. (Gg. 4. 27, Camb. Univ. Library); F. (Fairfax 16); P. (Pepys 2006); Th. (Thynne's edition, 1532). *I follow F. mainly.*

XVII. LENVOY A BUKTON.

Authorities: F. (Fairfax 16); Th. (Thynne's edition); Ju. (Julian Notary's edition). *I follow F. mainly.*

XVIII. THE COMPLEYNT OF VENUS.

Authorities: T. (Trin. Coll. R. 3. 20); A. (Ashmole 59); Tn. (Tanner 346); F. (Fairfax 16); Ff. (Ff. 1. 6, Camb. Univ. Library); Ar. (Arch. Selden, P. 24); P. (Pepys 2006); Th. (Thynne's edition, 1532). *I follow F. mainly.*

N.B. Another authority is the set of three original French Ballades by Otes de Graunson, which Chaucer here imitates.

Page 125. 31. All Pley or Pleye; read Pleyne, translation of original French *Plaindre*.

XIX. THE COMPLEINT TO HIS PURSE.

Authorities: F. (Fairfax 16); Harl. (Harl. 7333); Ff. (Ff. 1. 6, Camb. Univ. Library); P. (Pepys 2006); Add. (Addit. 22139); Cx. (Caxton's edition); Th. (Thynne's ed. 1532). *I follow F. mainly.*

XX. PROVERBS.

Authorities: F. (Fairfax 16); Ha. (Harl. 7578); Ad. (Addit. 16165). *I follow F. mainly.*

Page 126. 1. All *inært* thus after these; *I omit* thus.

XXI. AGAINST WOMEN UNCONSTANT.

Authorities: Ct. (Cotton, Cleop. D. 7); F. (Fairfax 16); Ha. (Harl. 3758); Ed. (Stowe's edition, 1561).

Page 127. 17. All stondeth; read stant.

XXII. COMPLAINT DAMOURS.

Authorities: Harl. (Harl. 7331); F. Fairfax 16; H. Bodley 618.
 Page 127. 4. *All right thus, omit right.* 9. *All No, read For.*
 Page 128. 86. *I supply ther from Parl. Foules, 310.*

XXIII. A BALADE OF COMPLEYNT.

Sole copy: MS. Addit. 16165, fol. 256, back.

XXIV. WOMANLY NOBLESSE.

Sole copy: MS. Addit. 14160, fol. 21, back.

Page 129. 13. *This line is supplied by conjecture.* 18. MS. for to, *I omit to*
 25. And thynkith be raison *(too long)*. 26. for til do the; *I omit the, and substitute*
for til.

TRANSLATION OF BOETHIUS.

Authorities: C. (Camb. Univ. Library, II. 3. 21), A. (Addit. 10140); Ed. Thynne
 edition, 1542; Cx. Caxton's edition; II. II. 1. 28; &c. *I follow C. mainly.*

Page 131. Prose L. 74. Cx. Th. from, MSS. omit from.

Page 133. Pr. III. 63. Cx. Th. Soranos *(as in Latin text; C. A. Sorana. Met. II.*
 12. Cx. Th. leyte 11. leit, C. A. hight.

Page 134. Pr. IV. 97. *This Gloss is misplaced in the MSS.; it comes in before Latin*
in l. 87.

Page 144. Pr. III. 66. *I omit and before fulfuldest; it is worse than needful.*

Page 153. Pr. VIII. 28. C. A. winunge; Cx. wyndy; Lat. *uentosum.*

Page 156. Pr. II. 125. *I supply nat. for cleanness, it is implied in the following.*

Page 188. Pr. VI. 100. *All the; read that.*

Page 190. MET VI. 38. *Read bretheth, IL brethith, A. bredith, C. Ed. breith,*
Lat. spirat.

Page 196. Pr. III. 192. *All of the whiche (no sense); read than whiche.*

TROILUS AND CRISEYDE.

Authorities: Cl. (Campsall MS) Cp. (Corp. Chr. Coll. Cam. 61) H. Harl. 154
 H2. Harl. 1943, Cm. (Gg. 4. 27. in Camb. Univ. Library, Ed. edition by Thynne
 1532). *I follow Cl. and Cp. mainly, which are much alike.*

Page 247. 17. *All hem; read him: see l. 19.*

Page 249. 144. Cl. Cp. H. ben ay I-lyke; Ed. to ben aye ylike, H2. bene ylike
 Cm. ay ben I-lyk; *read been y-like ay.*

Page 255. 572. Cm. thouurste; Cp. H. thruste; Cl. dorste; H2. Ed. dura
 thurste

Page 279. 391. H. truste *(rightly); rest trust. All to finden (or finde), omit to.*

Page 314. 1109. *All the est; read th'est.*

Page 321. 1586. *All That she; omit That.* 1618. *All Come or Com.*

THE HOUSE OF FAME.

Authorities: F. (Fairfax 16); B. (Bodley 638); P. (Pepys 2006); Cx. (Carton's edition); Th. (Thynne's edition, 1532). *I follow F. mainly.*

Page 886. 8. *All* why this; omit why. 11. why these; omit why. 20. *All* is more; omit is. 24. *All* needlessly insert the (or her) before brayn.

Page 827. 88. *All* pouerte; read povert; or slide the final e. 119. *All* slept, slepte; read sleep; see 432.

Page 829. 362. *All* But al; omit But.

Page 880. 366. *All* in-to; read in. 370. MSS. *Allas* (or alas?); read *Ennas*. (However Th. has him, alas.) 399. Cx. Th. *Oenone* (which read as four syllables, O-e-no-ne, as in Troil. i. 654).

Page 891. 513. *All* sely; read sally (i. e. strange).

Page 882. 557. Cx. Th. P. agast so; read so agast. 603. *All* do; read done (gerund). 613. *All* herke; read herkne; see 725. 618. *Deficient*; I supply goddease. 621. *All* lytel (litell); read lyte.

Page 888. 727. Cx. Th. P. a worthy; F. B. worthe a; omit a.

Page 834. 764. *All* herke; see 725. 827. F. And that sum place stide; B. Th. And that som styde; (not in Cx. P.); read And that the mansioun; see 754, 831. 830. *All* That; read Than.

Page 835. 896. Cx. Th. gan to; rest to; read gan. 911. *All* token (?); read toun; see 890.

Page 836. 1007. F. Cx. Th. B. *Athalantes*; P. *athlauntres* (cf. *Atlante*, Ovid, *Fasti*, v. 83).

Page 887. 1114. F. citee; P. cite (-site); rest cyte.

Page 884. 1177. Supply craft from l. 1178, where it occurs, after cast, in Cx. Th. P. 1189. B. *Babowynnes*; P. *Babewouries*; (all corrupt). 1210. F. *Saten*; B. *Sate*; Cx. Th. *Sat*; P. *Sett*; read *Seten*.

Page 838. 1259. Th. *playeng*; rest *play*. 1271. *All* the (put for thee). 1303. F. *hat*; B. *hate*; Cx. Th. *hackyng*; read *hatte*.

Page 840. 1361. F. B. *Sit*, Cx. P. *Sat*; read *Sitte*. 1373. *All* wonderly; see 1327. 1415. *All* And thus; omit And.

Page 841. 1404. F. *high* the (for *highthe*); Cx. Th. *heyght*; read *highte*; see 744. 1527. *All* into, read in.

Page 842. 1570. *All* Upon; read Up.

Page 843. 1666. *All* werkes; read *werk* (and so in 1701, 1720). 1686. *All* of *bawme*; omit of. 1725. F. B. Th. *Al* so; rest And so; read *So*.

Page 844. 1765. F. B. *now* let se; omit *now*. 1813. *All* grete, gret; read *grettest*.

Page 845. 1853. F. Th. *be* noight for; Cx. B. *be* for; read *be* but for. 1887. *All* thinge, thing; read *thinges*. 1897. *All* wote; read *wiste*; see 1901. 1912. *All* dwelled or dwellyth. 1907. B. *Whithen*; rest *Why* than; read *Whiche*. 1940. F. Cx. B. *hattes* (?); Th. *hutches*; read *hottes*.

Page 846. 1961, 1962. *All* werres, restes; read *werre*, *roste*. 1967. *All* and eek of; omit and eek (cf. 1968). 1975. *All* wrongly write *mingovernement* as one word. 2009. *All* these; read *swiche*. 2017. F. *frot* (for *froit* = fruit); B. *foot*; Cx. Th. *swote*. 2021. *All* yaf in; omit in. 2026. F. B. *here* anon (anon); Cx. Th. *here*; read *anon* hear.

Page 847. 2049. *All* he (!); *read* the other. 2053. *All* And thus (*twice*); *omit* And (*twice*). 2061. F. B. forth ryght to; Cx. forth unto; Th. streyght to; *read* forth to. 2076. F. B. Went every mouthe (!); Th. Cx. Wente enery tydyng; *read* Wente every word. 2083. *All* and wente; *read* hit wente. 2104. B. haue that oon; F. han on; Th. have one. *All omit* of.

Page 848. 2152. B. nose; F. Th. noyse (!). F. an highen (!); Th. on hyghen (!); B. and yen; *read* on hyghe (*or* on hye).

THE LEGEND OF GOOD WOMEN.

Authorities: for Text A (*earlier version*) of the Prologue: *sole copy* C. (Gg. 4. 27, in Camb. Univ. Library). For Text B (*later version*) of the same, and all the rest: F. (Fairfax 16); Tn. (Tanner 346); T. (Trin. Coll. Cam. R. 3. 19); A. (Arch. Selden B. 24); B. (Bodley 638); P. (Pepys 2006); Th. (Thynne's edition, 1532); also C. (*as above*); Add. (Addit. 9832).

Page 858, col. 1. 135. C. *is here corrupt*; it has—The honour and the humble obeysaunce. *I suggest* They dide honour and humble obeysaunces; *or read* Yelding honour, &c. (*as in* col. 2). Col. 1; 137, 138; *imperfect*; *I fill up the gaps*.

Page 870. 842. *All* renten (rente), *wrongly*; *read* renden.

Page 874. 1126. *All* honourable; *read* noble; *see* 1143, 1210, 1222.

Page 875. 1217. C. bestys wilde; T. A. P. wild bestys; *rest* wilde hertes; *read* hertes wilde. 1238. *All* and becom (*against metre*); *read* to been.

Page 878. 1463. *All* yle of; *omit* of.

Page 883. 1879. *All* himself or himselfe; *read* himselve.

Page 887. 2138. *All* was performed; *read* performed was.

Page 888. 2227. *All* quyte him; *read* him quyte.

Page 893. 2592. Th. And what; C. T. That what; *read* What.

TREATISE ON THE ASTROLABE.

Authorities: A. (Camb. Univ. Library, Dd. 3. 53); B. (Bodley, E. Museo 54); C. (Rawlinson 1370); D. (Ashmole 391); E. (Bodley 619); F. (Corpus 424); G. (Trin. Coll. Cam. R. 15. 18); H. (Sloane 314); I. (Sloane 291); K. (Rawlinson, Misc. 3); L. (Addit. 23002); M. (St. John's Coll. Cam.); N. (Digby 72); O. (Ashmole 360); P. (Camb. Univ. Library, Dd. 12. 51); Q. (Ashmole 393); R. (Egerton 2622); S. (Addit. 29250). *I follow* A. *mainly*; *collated with* B. C. I. M. P. *The latter part (after Part II. § 40) from* L. M. N. O. P. R. S.

Part 399. § 12. 8, 9. MSS. wrongly transpose *umbra versa*, and *umbra recta* (= *umbra extensa*).

Page 402. § 3. 51, 53. *For* 18, *some* MSS. have 12.

Page 403. § 3. 62, 63. *Some* MSS. 8 and 2; *others*, 9 and 10. 64. *Some* 23; *others* 24. § 4. 12. C. P. for-seide same degree; *omit* same. 25. *All* 15; *read* 25; *Lat. xxx. viginti quinque*.

Page 409. § 25. 45. Two sets of readings here; the second set puts the Sun in 10 degrees of Leo, with an altitude of 56, and declination, 18; difference, 38.

Page 410. § 28. 37. *All* heed (houed) *for* ende, *absurdly*; cf. 27, 31.

- Page 414. § 40. 8. *Read* for sothe; *miscription* for sonne in A. B.; others vary.
 Page 415. § 40. 75. A. omits of and degrees; but retains 3. 93. P. supplies the last few words, which A. B. C. E. omit. § 42. 24, 25. For 2, M. has 6; for 3, M. has 4.
 Page 416. § 44. 20. N. wroten; read wryte. 36. L. N. O. passid; M. omits; read lasse.
 Page 417. § 45. 10. L. I wold wyttyn; N. Iwyton; O. wrytoun.

THE CANTERBURY TALES.

Authorities: E. (Ellismere MS.); Hn. (Hengwrt MS.); Cm. (Og. 4. 27, Camb. Univ. Library); Cp. (Corpus Chr. Coll. Oxford); Pt. (Petworth MS.); Ln. (Lansdowne 851), Hl. (Harl. 7334). Also, occasionally, Dd. (Dd. 4. 24, Camb. Univ. Library); Reg. (Reg. 17 D. XV.); Add. (Addit. 5140); Li. (Lichfield MS.); Sl. (Sloane, 1685).

- Page 421. 179. Hl. cloysterless (see 180); Cm. rekales; rest reccheless, rocheles.
 Page 422. 251 b, 252 c; from Hn.; rest omit.
 Page 425. 1290. All moste, muste, most; read mot.
 Page 443. 1979. Hl. swymbul; rest rumbel.
 Page 449. 2420. All insert the (or thy) before victorie; it clogs the line.
 Page 453. 3155, 3156. From E. Cm. Hl.; rest omit.
 Page 462. 3451, 3457; *astromye is intentional*.
 Page 465. 3721, 3722. From E. (also in old editions); rest omit.
 Page 466. 3818. Nowélin is an intentional error; see 3834.
 Page 476. 47. Dd. But; rest That (wrongly).
 Page 484. 621. A short line; I insert ful.
 Page 496. 791. Hl. vn-to; Pt. to; rest til; read un-til.
 Page 492. 1163-1190. E. Hn. Cm. omit; mainly from Cp. 1189. Most MSS. phialyas; Sloane, phillyas; Ln. fialeas; read physioes, i.e. physioes liber.
 Page 508. 1995. Supplied from MS. Reg. 17 D. xv; most MSS. omit this line.
 Page 509. 2252, 2253. Not in the MSS., but necessary; supplied from 2274 and 2280, which see.
 Page 518. 2623, 2624. Not in the MSS.; supplied by translating the French text.
 Page 525. 2814. From namore to god is not in the MSS.; but is necessary.
 Page 533. 3564. After this line most MSS. insert the stories from Naxos to Caxus (ll. 3653-3956); incorrectly.
 Page 538. 3657. MSS. North; read South.
 Page 541. 3910. Hl. Valirien; rest Valerius; ed. 1561, Valerie (rightly).
 Page 546. 4266. All MSS. insert herkneth or herken after But.
 Page 562. 1294. After this line most MSS. insert ll. 1307, 1308; which are out of place here. MS. Hl. is right. 1307, 1308. Nearly all MSS. omit these lines, having inserted them after l. 1294 above. MS. Hl. is right.
 Page 626. 2240. The MSS. omit the word *stories*, leaving sense and metre incomplete.
 Page 628. 22. Most MSS. have *pifous*, which will not scan; but Hn. has *pitous*, which also occurs in Troilus.
 Page 635. 620. I supply no.
 Page 663. 277. For 'Valerians,' the MSS. absurdly have 'Cocilies'; but the Latin original has 'Valeriani.'

beatus (1); Pt. bowton (1).
Page 711. 933. H. Cm. Danyel; res

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.



The references in this Index are given according to the following scheme.

Poems denoted by Arabic numerals are Minor Poems. Thus, under 'Abaved,' the reference '3. 614' means Minor Poem no. 3, line 614, or l. 614 of the Book of the Duchesse. The letter 'R.' refers to the Romaunt of the Rose, Fragment A, in pp. 1-18; the rest of the Poem, not being Chaucer's, is indexed separately. Thus 'R. 163' means l. 163 of the Romaunt.

The five books of Boethius are denoted by B 1, B 2, B 3, B 4, B 5, respectively; and the 'prose' and 'metrical' sections are denoted by 'p' and 'm.' Thus, under 'Abaisien,' the reference 'B 4. p 7. 81' means 'Boethius, bk. iv. prose 7, line 81.' The five books of Troilus are denoted by T. i., T. ii., T. iii., T. iv., and T. v. Thus 'T. iii. 1233' means 'Troilus, bk. iii., line 1233.'

The House of Fame and the Legend of Good Women are denoted by 'HF.' and 'L.' respectively. If, in the latter case, the italic letter 'a' follows the number of the line, the reference is to the earlier (or A-text) of the Prologue to the Legend. Thus 'HF. 865' means 'House of Fame, line 865.' Again, 'L. 2075' means 'Legend of Good Women, line 2075;' and 'L. 200a' means 'Legend, &c., line 200 of the text in the left-hand column.'

The Prologue and the two books of the Treatise on the Astrolabe are denoted, respectively, by 'A. pr.', 'A. i.', and 'A. ii.' Thus the reference 'A. ii. 10. 8' means 'Astrolabe, bk. ii. § 10, line 8;' and 'A. pr. 10' means 'Astrolabe, prologue, line 10.'

References to the Canterbury Tales are known by the use of the letters A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, and I, which are used to denote the various Groups into which the Tales are divided. In this case, 'A' is never followed by a full stop or by Roman numerals, as when the 'Astrolabe' is referred to; and such a reference as 'B 5,' meaning line 5 of Group B, is quite distinct from 'B 5. p 1. 1,' where 'B 5' means bk. v. of Boethius, and is invariably accompanied by the 'p' or 'm' denoting the 'prose' or 'metre.'

Summary of the Minor Poems. The Minor Poems are all numbered, viz. 1 (ABC.); 2 (Complaynte unto Pite); 3 (Book of the Duchesse); 4 (Mars); 5 (Parlement of Foules); 6 (Compleint to his Lady); 7 (Anelida); 8 (Wordes to Adam); 9 (Former Age); 10 (Fortune); 11 (Mercilesse Beauty); 12 (To Rosemounde); 13 (Truth); 14 (Gentillesse); 15 (Lak of Stedfastnesse); 16 (Envoy to Scogan); 17 (Envoy to Bukton); 18 (Venus); 19 (To his Purse); 20 (Proverbs); 21 (Against Women Unconstant); 22 (Amorous Complaint); 23 (Balade of Complaynt); 24 (Womanly Noblesse).

Alphabetically, the references are to A (Group A of Cant. Tales); A. (Astrolabe); B (Group B of C. T.); B 1 . . . B 5 (Boethius, books 1 to 5); C, D, E, F, G, H, I (Groups C to I of C. T.); HF. (House of Fame); L. (Legend of Good Women); R. (Romaunt of the Rose); T. i. . . T. v (Troilus, books 1 to 5). The Minor Poems, numbered 1 to 24, are given above.

N.B. Words containing *ay, ey, oy, aw, ew, ow*, are sometimes entered as if spelt with *ai, ei, oi, au, eu, ou*, respectively.

same, si. 5; about, some, L. 2075.
A, prep. on, on (the), in, for; A-nights,
 night, B 3738; A-dayes, a-days, E 11
 A-morwe, on the morrow, A 822; A th
 in three, A 2934; A goddes half, '
 God's side,' in God's name, D 50;
 goddes name, in God's name, A 854.
A! *int.* ah! 3. 213.
A! ha! *interj.* aha! T. i. 868.
Abaiszen, *ger.* to be dismayed, B 4. 1
 81; *pp.* amazed, spell-bound, abash-
 cast down, disconcerted, E 317, 1108.
Abak, *adv.* backwards, A 3736; abak
 back, L. 864.
Abakward, *adv.* backward, B 3. m 12. 1
Abandounne, *v.* devote, I 713; *pr. a.* abu-
 dons, B 2767.
Abaschen, *v.* fear, be abashed, R. 155
pp. abashed, confused, confounded, d.
 concerted, 5. 447; R. 805, &c.
Abate, *v.* lower, put down, B 3780; d
 predate, R. 286; 2 *pr. a.* subj. subtrac
 A. ii. 10. 8; *pp.* enschiefed, B 3. p 5. 5.
 put down, I 191.
Abaved, *pp.* confounded, disconcerted,
 614.
Abayst; see Abaiszen.
Abc, alphabet, A. i. 11. 3.
A-bedde, in bed, T. i. 915.
Abegge, *v.* pay for it, A 3938. A Kentia
 form. See Abeye, Abye.
A-begged, n-begging, F 1580.
Abet, 2 abetting, aid, T. ii. 157.
Abeye, *v.* pay for, C 100. See Abye.
Abiden, Abit; see Abyde.
Abite, 2 habit, dress, L. 146 a.
A-blaksteried; see Blaksteried

- Accomplice**, *v.* accomplish, A 2864.
Accord, *a.* agreement, B 2988; harmony, B 4069; peace, I 992. See **Acord**.
Accordance, *a.* concord, harmony, R 496.
Accordant, *adj.* suitable, B 4096.
Accorde, *v.* agree; *pr.* *a.* becomes, L 2583. See **Acorda**.
Accuseth, *pr.* *a.* reveals, R 1591.
Accusment, *a.* accusation (of her), T. iv. 256.
Accusour, *a.* revealer, T. iii. 1490.
Achāt, *a.* buying, purchase, A 571.
Achātoura, *pl.* buyers, caterers, A 568.
Ache, *a.* ache, T. iv. 728.
A-checked, *pp.* checked, hindered, HF. 2093.
Acheve, *v.* achieve, L 1614.
Achoken, *v.* choke, stifle; *pp.* L 2008.
Acloyeth, *pr.* *a.* overburdens, 5. 517.
A-compas, *adv.* in a circle, L 301.
Accomplishe, *pr.* *a.* subj. fulfil, comprehend, B 3. p. 10. 170.
Acord, *a.* agreement, 5. 371; concord, 5. 381, 608; accord, 3. 316, in a., in tune, 5. 197; *at of oon a.*, in tune, 3. 305. See **Acord**.
Acordable, *adj.* harmonious, B 2. m. 8. 23.
Acordance, *a.* concord, B 2. m. 8. 14.
Acordant, *adj.* suitable, A 37, 3363; A. to, in harmony with, 5. 203.
Acorde, *v.* accord, grant, allow, agree, concern; *pt.* *a.* suited, A 244; *pt.* *pl.* agreed, L 168; *pres. part.* agreeing, B 1737; *pp.* agreed, A 818.
Acorse, *i.* *pr.* *a.* curse, T. iv. 819.
Accounte, *v.* consider, B 3591; *pt.* *a.* valued, cared, 3. 1237; *a.* *pt.* *a.* didst reckon, B 2. p. 5. 113.
Accountinge, *a.* reckoning, calculation.
Acoyede, *pt.* *a.* caressed, B 2. p. 3. 73.
Acquitanos, *a.* release, A 4411; deed of release, A 3327.
Acquyte, *v.* acquit, D 1509.
Acuree, *v.* curse, T. iii. 1072.
Acused, *pt.* *a.* blamed, T. ii. 1081.
Acustomance, *a.* system of habits, habitual method of life, HF. 28; *had of a.*, was accustomed, B 3701.
Adamant, *a.* adamant, A 1990; loadstone, magnet, R 1182.
Adawe, *v.* awake, recover, T. iii. 1120.
A-day, in the day, T. ii. 60.
Adding, *a.* (the) addition, A. ii. 41. 16.
Adjeccioun, *a.* addition, B 5. p. 6. 212.
A-down, *adv.* downwards, down, L 178; down below, HF. 889; below, H 105; at the bottom, G 779.
Adrad, *pp.* afraid, A 605; Adred, 3. 1190.
Adressinge, *a.* directing, B 4. p. 5. 101.
Adversarie, *adj.* hostile, I 697.
Advertence, *a.* attention, heed, T. iv. 698.
Advocacyes, *pl.* pleas, T. ii. 1469.
Advocate, *pl.* advocates (in which the *tis* mute), C 391.
Afer, *adv.* afar, HF. 1215.
A-fere, on fire, T. i. 229.
A-fered, *pp.* afraid, affrighted, T. i. 974; Aford, A 628.
Affectis, *pl.* desires, T. iii. 1391.
Affermed, *pp.* agreed upon, L 790; established, A 2349.
Affiance, *a.* trust, B 1330.
Afforced, *pp.* forced, I 974.
Affray, *a.* fray, quarrel, D 2156; terror, B 1137; fright, 4. 214; dread, 7. 334.
Affrayeth, *pr.* *a.* arouses, excites, R. 91; *pp.* frightened, afraid, B 563; scared, B 4468; roused, 3. 296.
Affyle, *v.* file, i. e. render smooth, A 712.
Afor-yeyn, *prep.* over against, T. ii. 1188.
Afounde, *v.* founder, perish, 12. 21.
Afrayed, *adj.* scared, distracted, R 154.
Afright, *pp.* affrighted, B 4085.
After, *prep.* according to; in expectation of, for, B 467; to get, A 525; according as, L 575; after, i. e. to fetch, L 1130; towards, A 146; in accordance with, 2. 4; by inheritance from, L 1072; A. as, according as, 5. 216; A. oon, alike, A. 1781; A. me, according to my command, E 327; A. the ycer, according to the season of the year, F 47; A. that, according as, T. ii. 1347.
A-fyre, on fire, D 726; 1. 94; A-fere, T. i. 229.
Again, *prep.* when exposed to, L 2426; Agayn, against, B 580; towards, A 2080; (so as) to meet, R. 785; opposite to, R. 1577; exposed to, H 110; contrary to, F 748; just before, B 4268; near, G 1270; to meet, B 301; in comparison with, L 180; Ageyn, against, A 66; compared with, R 1011; turned towards, L 48.
Against, *prep.* against, contrary to, in answer to, instead of, before, in presence of, to meet, near to; against, near; against, B 1754.
A-game, *adv.* in play, in jest, in mockery, in sport, 4. 277.
Agaste, *pr.* to terrify, T. ii. 901; *pr.* *a.* deters, frightens, B 4. p. 6. 323; *pt.* *a.* frightened, L 1221; *pt.* *a.* *ref.* was affrighted, A 2424; *pp.* scared, frightened, terrified, A 2931; aghast, B 4079; afraid, A 4267.

of a, E 1165; one, D 1306; *one*
same, 21. 5; about, some, L. 30.
A, *prep* on, on (the), in, for; A-n.
 night, B 1758; A-uayes, a-days
 A-morwe on the morrow A 822,
 in three, A 3914. A goddes
 God's aide, in God's name,
 golde's name, in God's name,
 A! int' ah! 3. 213.
A! ha! int'ery uha! T 1. 868.
Abaissen, *per.* to be dismayed,
 81, *pp.* amazed, spell-bound,
 cast down, disconcerted, E 317.
Abak, *adv* backwards, A 3736
 back, L. 804.
Abakward, *adv* backward, B 3.
Abandoun, *v.* devote, I 713; *pr*
 dons, B 2767.
Abasshen, *v.* fear, be abashed,
pp. abashed, confused, confoun-
 derted, 5. 447. R. 805, &c.
Abate, *v.* lower, put down, B
 prelate, R. 280; 2 *pr s. subj.*
 A il. 10. 8 *pp.* enfeebled, B 3.
 put down, I 191.
Abaved, *pp.* confounded, discom-
 614.
Abayst; see **Abaissen**.
Abc, alphabet, A. 1. 11. 2.
A bedde in bed, T i. 915.
Abegge, *v.* pay for it, A 3038. A
 form. See **Abeye**, **Abye**.
A-begged, *n-begging*, F 1580.
Abet *s.* abetting, and, T. ii. 257.
Abeye, *v.* pay for, C 100. See **A**.
Abiden, **Abit**, see **Abyde**.
Abite, *s.* habit, dress, L. 146 a.
A-blakeberied; see **Blakeberi**.



Glossarial Index.

A 361.	Adrad, pp. afraid. A 608. Adress, s. s.
M: harmony.	Adressinge, s. directing. B 4. p 5. 11.
Acord.	Adversarie, adj. hostile. I 107.
harmony, R.	Advertence, s. attention, heed. T. ii. 105.
B 4006.	Advocacyes, pl. pleas. T. ii. 115.
seems, L. 2583.	Advocate, pl. advocates in which the 115
1591.	mate. C 20.
(or her), T. iv.	Afer, adr. war. HF. 115.
1491.	A-fere, on fire. T. i. 22.
A 571.	A-fere, pp. afraid, affrighted. T. i. 74.
was, A 568.	Aferd, A 608.
indured, HF.	Affectis, pl. desires. T. iii. 117.
pp. L. 2008.	Affermed, pp. agreed upon. L. 115.
s. s. 517.	established. A 215.
L. 200.	Affiance s. trust. B 115.
altil, compre-	Afforced, pp. forced. I 104.
; concord, s.	Affray, s. fray, quarrel. B 115. terror, B
n., in tune, s.	117. fright, 4. 214; dread, 7. 114.
3 395. See	Affrayeth, pr. s. arouses, excites, R. 11
B 2. in 3. 23.	pp. frightened, afraid. B 301. scared, B
in 8. 14.	448. counsel, 1. 200.
37. 303; A.	Afyle, s. file, i. e. render smooth. A 712.
low, agree,	Afor-yeyn, prep. over against. T. ii. 118.
14; pl. pl.	Afounde, s. founder, perish. 12. 21.
grooming. B	Afrayed, adj. scared, distracted. R. 114.
a. valued.	Afright, pp. affrighted. B 408.
kon, B 2.	After, prep. according to; in expectation
ation.	of, 107. B 407. to 257. A 325. according
72.	as, L. 574. after, i. e. to fetch, L. 110;
lead of	towards, A 110. in accordance with, s.
chits.	4. by inheritance from, L. 102. A. 108
had	according as, s. 210. A. 100. alike, A.
we.	1781. A. me, according to my command
	E 127. A. the year, according to the
	season of the year, F 47. A. that, accord-
	ing as, T. ii. 1147.
	A-fyre on fire. B 720; 1. 04. A-stere, T. 1.
	220.
	Again, prep. when exposed to, L. 142.
	Agayn, against, B 381. towards, A 220.
	as to meet, R. 784. opposite to, R.
	157. exposed to, H 110; contrary to, F
	748. just before, B 428; near to, 125.
	to meet, B 101. in comparison with, L.
	181. Agayn, against, A 100. compared
	with, B 100. turned towards, L. 48.
	Against, prep. against, contrary to, in
	answer to, instead of, before, in presence
	of, to meet, near to; against, near
	against, B 1754.
	A-game, adr. in play, in jest, in mockery.
	in sport, 4. 277.
	Agastle, pr. s. to terrify. T. ii. 100. pr. s.
	letera, frightens, B 4. p 10. 113; pl. s.
	frightened, L. 122. pl. s. s. d. was
	affrighted, A 424. pp. s. and I, frightened.
	terrified, A 210. against, B 470; afraid,
	A 4207.

Amorwe, A-morwe, on the mor
 A 822, 1631; in the morning, 3. 1205.
Amounteth, *pr.* *s.* means, A :
 amounts to, F 108.
Amphibologyes, *pl.* ambiguities, T
 1406.
Amy, *s.* friend, C 318.
An, *s.* A 575; An eighte busshels, a qt
 tity equal to eight bushels, C 771.
An, *prep.* on; An heigh, on high, E 2
Ancille, *s.* handmaiden, 1 109.
Ancre, *s.* anchor, 10. 38; Anker, L 2.
And, *conj.* if, 6. 112; L 217.
Anes, *adv.* once (Northern), A 4074.
Angle, *s.* angle (a technical term
 astrology), B 304; angular dista
 from the meridian, A. ii. 4. 48.
Angle-hook, *s.* fish-hook, 4. 238.
Ange, *s.* anguish, R. 320.
Anguish, *s.* anxiety, B 3. p 3. 55.
Anguisheth, *pr.* *s.* wounds, pains, I
 m 7. 1.
Anguissous, *adj.* distressed, R. 520; sor
 I 304; distressful, T. iii. 816.
Anhang, *ger.* to hang, C 219; *pp.* B 39.
Anientised, *pp.* brought to naught,
 2438.
A-night, in the night, A 1042; at nigh
 D 1837.
A-nightes, *adv.* by night, R. 18.
Anlas, *s.* a short, two-edged knife
 dagger, broad at the hilt and taperi
 to the point, formerly worn at t
 girdle, A 357.
Annexed, *pp.* tied, *s.* 72; attached,
 482.
Ansi collecti, collected *verbs* A 22

Apayre; see **Apeiren**.

Apayse; see **Apose**.

Ape, *s. ape*, HF. 1212; *dupa*, A 3389; *pl. dupes*, T i. 913.

Apeiren, *ger. to injure, impair*, A 3147; *v. I* 1079; *grow worse*, HF. 756; *1 pr. pl. perish*, T. ii. 329; *pp. impaired*, B 12 p 5. 67; *injured*, T. i. 38.

Aperceive, *v. perceive*, E600; **Apároeyve**, T. iv. 656; *pr. & discerns*, I 294.

Aperceyvinges, *pl. perceptions, observations*, F 286.

Apert, *adj. manifest*, I 649.

Apert, *adv. openly*, F 531.

Apertenant, *adj. belonging to, such as belongs to*, *s. 70*; *suitable*, E 1010.

Aperteneth, *pr. & impers. appertains*, B 2171; *pr. pl. I* 83; *pres. pl. belonging*, G 785.

Apertly, *adv. openly; clearly*, I 294.

Apose, **Apeise**, *v. appease, pacify*; E 433; *imp. pl. mitigate*, *4. 10*; *pr. & reqd. is pacified*, B 3051; *2 pr. pl. T. iii. 22*; *pl. & B* 2290; *pp. appeased*, T. i. 292.

Apeyre; see **Apeire**.

Apeyse; see **Apose**.

Apose; see **Appose**.

Apotecarie, *s. apothecary*, B 4138; *pl. preparers of medicines*, A 425.

Appalled; see **Apalla**.

Apparaunte, *adj. pl. apparent, manifest*, R 5.

Apparence, *s. appearance*, F 218; *seeming*, HF. 265; *apparition*, F 1602; *false show*, F 1157; *pl. apparitions*, F 1140.

Appese; see **Apose**.

Appetyt, *s. desire*, A 1680.

Appetyteth, *pr. & seeks to have, desires*, L 1582.

Applyen, *v. be attached to*, B 5. p 4. 14.

Apposed, *pl. & questioned*, G 363, *pp. opposed, alleged*, B 1. p 5. 54.

Apprentya, *adj. unskilled, as novices*, R 687.

Approved, *pp. approved*, E 1149.

Appropred, *pp. appropriated, made the property of*, 14. 18.

Approwours, *pl. approvers, informers*, D 1343.

Approchen, *v. approach*, T. v. 1.

Apurtenance, *s. appurtenance*; *pl. I* 793.

Apyked, *pp. trimmed, adorned*, A 365.

Aqueynte me, *make myself acquainted*, 3. 532; *pl. pl. became acquainted*, HF. 290; *pp. acquainted*, B 1219.

Aquyte, *imp. & requite*, T. ii. 1200.

Arace, *v. eradicate, uproot*, T. v. 954; *tear away*, 6. 20; *pr. & subj. root out, eradicate*, T. iii. 1015; *pp. torn, borne along; torn away*, B 3. p 11. 165.

Araise; see **Areise**.

Aray, *s. array, dress*, L 1505; *arrangement*, T. iii. 536; *state, dress*, A 41, 73; *attire*, I 932; *array of garments*, L 2607; *order*, E 262; *ordinance*, E 670; *position*, D 902; *condition*, A 934.

Arayed, *pp. dressed, ready*, T. iii. 423, *clad*, R. 472; *adorned*, T. ii. 1187; *well a., well situated*, T. ii. 680; *equipped*, A 2046; *dressed*, F 389; *ordered*, B 251; *appointed*, F 1187.

Arbitre, *s. will, choice*, B 5. p 3. 18.

Arches; see **Ark**.

Archangel, *s. titmouse*, R. 915.

Archewyves, *s. pl. archwives, ruling wives*, E 1195.

Ardaunt, *adj. ardent*, B 3. m 12. 15, ~~map~~ B 4. p 3. 116.

Arde, *v. explain, disclose*, T. ii. 1505; *counsel*, T. iv. 1112; *interpret*, 3. 289; *ger. to divine*, T. ii. 132.

Areise, *v. raise*; **Areysen**, *ger. to levy*, I 567; *pp. praised*, L 1525; *raised*, A. ii. 2. 7.

Arest, *s. rest (for a spear)*, A 2622.

Areste, *s. arrest*, B 4090; *detention*, A 1310; *responsibility*, E 1283; *delay*, L 806; *hesitation*, L 1929; *deliberation*, L 397.

Areste, *v. stop (a horse)*, A 827; *Do a., cause to be stopped*, B 4210.

Aretien, *v. impute*, B 2. p 4. 14; *A. upon, pr. & accuses*, I 580, *pr. pl. subj. ascribe*, I 1022; *ye s'aretle it nat, ye impute it not, consider it not*, A 726, *pp. imputed*, A 2729.

A-rewe, *adv. successively, lit. in a row*, D 1254.

Areyse; see **Areise**.

Argoile, *s. crude tartar*, G 813.

Arguinge, *s. argument*, L 475.

Argumented, *pl. & argued*, T i. 377.

Aright, *adv. rightly, well*, A 267; *aright*, G 1418; *properly*, F 694; *wholly*, A 189; *exactly*, T. v. 364; *certainly*, B 3135.

Arisen, **Arist**; see **Aryse**.

Ariste, *s. arising, rising*, A. ii. 12. 16.

Ark, *s. arc, referring to the arc of the horizon extending from sunrise to sunset*, B 2; *daily course of the sun*, E 1795; *arc, the apparent angular distance passed over by the sun in a day and a night*, A. ii. 7. 12, **Arches**, *pl. arcs*, A. ii. 7. 15.

Armes, *pl.* arms, weapons, 7. 1; coat-of-arms, A 1012.
Arm-greet, *adj.* thick as one's arm, A 2145.
Arminge, *s.* putting on of armour, B 2037.
Armipotente, *adj.* powerful in arms, A 1982.
Armoniak, *adj.* ammoniac, applied to bole, G 790, and *sal.* G 798. It is a corruption of Lat. *armeniacum*, i.e. Armenian.
Armony, *s.* harmony, 1. 313.
Armure, *s.* defensive armour, 4. 130, B 2009.
Armurers, *pl.* armourers, A 2507.
Arn, *pr. pl.* are, HF. 1008.
Aroos see **Aryse**.
A-roume, *adv.* at large, in an open space, HF. 540.
A-rowe, *adv.* in a row, HF. 1835.
Arowe, *s.*, see **Arwe**.
Arrace, see **Arace**.
Array, **Arraye**, see **Aray**, **Arayed**.
Arterage, *s.* arrears, A 602.
Arrette, see **Aretten**.
Arrivage, *s.* coming to shore, HF. 223.
Arryve, *v.* arrive, come to land, 10. 48; *pr. s.* (it) arrives, L. 2309, *pt. s.* drove ashore, B 4. m. 3. 1; *past-c.*, ill-fated, B. 1008.
Ars-metryke, *s.* arithmetic, D 2222.
Artelleries, *s. pl.* engines for shooting, B 2522.
Arten, *ger* to constrain, urge, T 1. 188.
Artificial, *adj.* A. ii. 7 *rub.* The *day artificial* is the length of the day, from the moment of sunrise to that of sunset.
Artik, northern, A. i. 14. 10.
Artow, art thou, A 1141, thou art, L. 986.
Arwe, *s.* arrow, T. ii. 641, **Arowe**, 7. 183, *pl.* arrows, A 107.
Aryse, *v.* arise, be raised, T. iv. 1480, *pr. s.* rises, I 971; **Arist**, *pr. s.* (contr. from *arise*), arises, B 265, **Aroos**, *pl. s.* arose, 5. 575, stood up, L. 831, **Arisen**, *pl. pl.* arose, T. ii. 1598, **Aryse**, *pr. s.* *subj.* may arise, Fro the sonne aryse, from the point where the sun rises.
Arysing, *s.* rising, rise, A. ii. 12. 1.
Aryve, *s.* lit. arrival, landing, disembarkation of troops, A 60.
Aryve, see **Arryve**.
As, so (in asseverations), 3. 838, 1235; an expletive, expressing a wish, commonly used with an imperative, e. g. *as lat*,

pray let, B 859; *as lone*, *pray lone*, 1. 3777, &c., *As*, like, B 1894, *as tady*, F 1018, *As after*, according to, B 1051, *As ferforth as*, as far as, B 10, *As m.*, i.e. for B 3688, *As now*, at present, at this time, A 2264; on the present occasion, G 044; for the present, G 1019, *As nowthe*, as at this time, at present, A 462; *As of* with respect to, 5. 20, *As swythe*, as soon as possible, at once, 7. 226, *As that*, as soon as, F 615, *as though*, 3. 1000, *As ther that*, 4. 117, *As to*, with reference to, F 107, *As to my wit*, as it seems to me, 8. 547.
As, *s.* an ace, B 1851; **Ambe** *as*, *pl.* deek-aces, B 124.
Assay, see **Assay**.
Assaunce, as if perhaps, G 838, in what, L. 2204; **Assaunces**, as if I say, as if to say, T. 1. 205, 212, *Comp.* of E *as*, and O F. *quod*, *as if*.
Ascencioun, *s.* ascension, *ascension*, degree, B 4045, rising up, G 100.
Ascende, *v.* ascend, rise, *s.* (in astrology), I. 11 *pres. part. m.* in the ascendant, *s.* near the horizon, F 264.
Ascendent, *s.* ascendant, A. 1. p. 11. 1268. The 'ascendant' is that part of the ecliptic which is rising above the horizon at a given moment.
Asemble, see **Assemble**.
Assuraunce, *s.* assurance, T. v. 102.
Ash, see **Asahe**.
Ashamed, *pp.* put to shame, A. 1. p. 100, *pp. a.*, for very shame, T. ii. 102.
Asketh, *pr. s.* requires, T. 1. 112.
Asking, *s.* question, L. 111.
Aslake, *v.* diminish, A 3553, *pp. aslake*, A 1700.
Asonder, *adv.* asunder, apart, 1. 100.
Asp, *s.* aspen tree, A 2921, *adverb.* R 1384, A S *aspe*.
Aspect, *s.* an (astrological) aspect, 1. 1. An 'aspect' is the angular distance between two planets. The principal aspects are *new*, viz. conjunct, 0°; *quartile*, trine, and opposite, corresponding to the angular distances of 90°, 60°, 120°, and 180° respectively.
Aspen-leef, *s.* leaf of an aspen tree, 1667.
Aspre, *adj.* sharp, bitter, T. 1. p. 10, vexatious, B. 1. p. 8. 19, cruel, 8. 12. 8. 30, fierce har-liv, 7. 21.
Aspreness, *s.* asperity, B. 1. p. 10.
Aspye, *s.* spy, C 755.

Aspye, *v.* spy, see, A 1420; **Aspyen**, *v.* behold, T. ii. 649.

Assaut, *s.* assault, A 989.

Assay, *s.* trial, D 290; *doon his a.*, make his attempt, L 1594; **A-say**, test, L 28 a.

Assaye, *v.* try, make trial of, B 3149; try, 3. 574; endeavour, F 1567; *ger.* to assail, T. i. 928; *pr.* *s.* experiences, B 3. m 2. 13; *pr. pl.* try, L 487; *imp. pl.* try, E 1740; *pp.* proved, tested, tried, experienced, T. iii. 1220, 1447; A 1811.

Assayle; see **Assaile**.

Assege, *s.* siege, T. i. 464, ii. 107.

Assege, *v.* besiege; *pt. pl.* T. i. 60; *pp.* A 881.

Assemble, *v.*; come together, I 909; *ger.* to amass, B 3. p 8. 8; *pp.* A 717; united, G 50.

Assemblinge, *s.* union, I 904, 917.

Assandent; see **Ascendent**.

Assente, *v.* agree to, A 374; assent, A 3092; consent, B 3469; agree, E 11, 88, 129.

Asshe (1), *s.* ash-tree, 5. 176; *collectively*, ash-trees, R. 1384.

Asshe (2), *s.* ash (of something burnt); **Asshen**, *pl.* ashes, 7. 173; A 1302.

Assoilen, *ger.* to discharge, pay, B 5. p. 1. 15; *v.* loosen; *pr.* *s.* absolve, pardon, C 913; *pp.* explained, B 5. p 6. 311.

Assoiling, *s.* absolution, A 661.

Assure, *s.* assurance, protestation, 7. 331.

Assure, *v.* feel secure, trust, T. v. 870; rely, T. v. 1624; declare (to be) sure, 7. 90.

Assyse, *s.* assize, session, A 314; judgment, L 36; position, R. 900.

Asterte, *v.* escape, L 1802; A 1595; escape from, L 2338; D 968; get away, withdraw, 3. 1154; release, D 1314; *pt.* *s.* escaped, T. iii. 97; *pp.* escaped, B 437.

Astonie, *v.* astonish; *pr.* *s.* astonishes, HF. 1174; *pp.* astonished, T. i. 274, iii. 1089.

Astonyinge, *s.* astonishment, B 4. p 5. 33.

Astore, *v.* to store; *pp.* A 609.

Astrolabie, *s.* astrolabe, A. pr. 4.

Astrologien, *s.* astrologer, astronomer, D 324.

Astrologye, *s.* astrology, A 3192, 3514.

Astromye (for **Astronomye**), *an ignorant form*, A 3451, 3457.

Asure, *s.* azure, R. 477.

Asweve, *v.*; *pp.* dazed, put to sleep, HF. 549.

A-swown, *adv.* (from *pp.*) in a swoon,

L 2207; **Aswowe**, 7. 354; hence **Aswowne**, in a swoon, T. iii. 1092; A 3823.

At, *prep.* at, A 20, &c.; of, R. 378; as to, 6. 114; by, D 2095; in the presence of, T. ii. 984; with, beside, HF. 1593; to, HF. 1603; **At me**, with respect to me, B 1975; **At erste**, firste of all, HF. 512; **At his large**, free, free to speak or be silent, A 2288; **At on**, at one, agreed, A 4197; **At shorte wordes**, briefly, 5. 481; **At regard**, with regard, I 180; **At y8**, at (your) eye, with your own eyes, visibly, A 3016; *have at thee*, I attack thee, L 1383.

At-after, *prep.* after, B 1445.

Atake, *v.* overtake, G 556, 585.

Ataste, 2 *pr.* *s.* subj. taste, B 2. p 1. 41.

Ataynt; see **Atteine**.

Atasir, *s.* evil influence, B 305.

Atempraunce, *s.* temperament, B 4. p 6. 214; adjustment, moderation, temperance, C 46.

Atempre, *adj.* temperate, mild, L 128, 1483; moderate, T. i. 953; mild, 5. 204; R. 131; modest, I 932.

Atempre, *v.*; *pr.* *s.* attempers, B 1. m 2. 23; *refl.* controls himself, B 2704.

Atemprely, *adv.* temperately, I 861; moderately, B 2728.

Atempringe, *s.* controlling, B 5. p 4. 101.

Ateyne; see **Atteine**.

Athamaunt, *s.* adamant, A 1305.

Athinken, *v.* displease, T. v. 878; **Athinketh**, *pr.* *s.* *impers.* (it) repents, T. i. 1050.

At-ones, *adv.* at once, at one and the same time, B 670.

Atoon, *adv.* at one, E 437.

At-rede, *v.* surpass in counsel, T. iv. 1456; A 2449.

At-renne, *v.* surpass in running, T. iv. 1456; A 2449.

Attamed, *pp.* broached, B 4008.

Attayne; see **Atteine**.

Atte, *for* at the, D 404; **Atte beste**, in the best way, A 29, 749; **Atte fan**, at the fan, H 42; **Atte fulle**, at the full, completely, A 651; **Atte gate**, at the gate, B 1563; **Atte hazard**, at dice, C 608; **Atte laste**, at the last, B 506; **Atte leste**, at the least, at least, B 38; **Atte Bowe**, at Bow, A 125.

Atteine, *v.* attain, R. 1495; succeed in, 4. 161; *pp.* apprehended, B 3. p 3. 25.

Attempre; see **Atempre**.

Attry, *adj.* venomous, I 583.

A-tweyn, *adv.* in two, 3. 1193.

A-twinne, *adv.* apart, T. iii. 1666.

Atwixe, *prep.* betwixt, R. 854.

i. 7. 6; Arabic numerals, A. i. 8. 6.
Aungrim-stones, *pl.* counters for calculating, A. 3110.
Auncoessour, *s.* ancestor; *pl.* R. 391.
Auncoestre, *s.* ancestor, S. 41.
Auncetrye, *s.* ancestry, A. 3982.
Aungel, *s.* angel, R. 916.
Aungellyk, *adj.* angelical, T. i. 102.
Aungellyke, *adv.* like an angel, L. .
Auntre it, *v.* risk it, A. 1209; **Aun**
him, *pl.* *s.* adventured himself, A. 3.
Auntrous, *adj.* adventurous, B. 2093.
Autentyke, *adj.* authentic, S. 1086.
Auter, *s.* altar, S. 249.
Avale, *v.* fall down, T. iii. 616; *do*ff, *t*
off, A. 3122; **Avalen**, *pr.* *pl.* sink down.
Avantage, *s.* advantage, F. 772; *to*
his a., to suit his own interests, B. 7
as *adj.* advantageous, B. 146.
Avante; see **Avante**.
Avauces, *v.* promote, L. 2022; *ger.* T.
518; be profitable, A. 246; cause
prosper, HF. 640, help, 10. 31.
Avauut, *s.* vaunt, boast, A. 227, E. 1457.
Avauute (*her*), *v.* *refl.* boast (*herself*),
296; *ger.* to extol, HF. 1788; *v.* *tr.*
boast, vaunt himself, D. 1014.
Avauuting, *s.* boasting, A. 3884.
Avauutour, *s.* boaster, S. 430.
Avenaunt, *adj.* graceful, comely, R. 12.
Avantayle, *s.* ventail, E. 1204.
Aventure, *s.* chance, 4. 21; peril, B. 11;
misfortune, L. 657; fortune, 18. .
luck, T. ii. 288, 291; circumstance,
1907; *of a.*, by chance, HF. 2090; *on*
in case of mishap, T. v. 298; *in a.*
the hands of .

Ayein-ledinge, *adj.* returning, reconducting, B 3. m 9. 42.

Ayeins, *prep.* against, A 1787; towards, at the approach of, 5. 342.

Ayeins, *adv.* against, to, A 3155.

Ayeinward, *adv.* again, on the other hand, B 2. p 4. 126; back again, T. iii. 750, iv. 1581.

Ayel, *s.* grandfather, A 2477.

Asimut, *s.* azimuth, A. ii. 31. 22.

B.

Ba, *v.* kiss, D 433; *imp. s.* A 3709.

Babewinnes, *pl.* (lit. baboons), grotesque figures in architecture, HF. 1189.

Bachelere, *s.* young knight, R. 918, 1469; an aspirant to knighthood, A 80.

Bachelrye, *s.* bachelor-hood, H 125; company of young men, E 270.

Bad; see **Bidde**.

Badder, *adj. comp.* worse, F 224.

Bagge, *v.*; *pr. s.* looks askant, 3. 623.

Baggepype, *s.* bagpipe, A 565.

Baggingly, *adv.* squintingly, R. 202.

Baite, *v.* bait; feed, B 466; *pp.* baited, tormented, R. 1612.

Bak, *s.* back, 3. 957; cloth for the back, coarse mantle, rough cloak, G 881.

Bakbyter, *s.* backbiter, I 495.

Bake metes, baked meats, meat pies, I 445.

Bakhalf, the back or flat side of the astrolabe, A. i. 4. 1.

Bak-side, *s.* the back of the astrolabe, A. i. 15. 3.

Balaunce, *s.* a balance, G 611; *in balaunce*, in jeopardy, G 611; in suspense, 3. 1021.

Bale, *s.* sorrow, 3. 535; *for bote ne bale*, for good nor for ill, 3. 227.

Balke, *s.* balk, beam, A 3920; *pl.* transverse beams beneath a roof, A 3626.

Balled, *adj.* bald, A 198, 2518.

Bane, *s.* death, L. 2159; destruction, HF. 408; cause of death, A 1097; slayer, T. iv. 333.

Banes, *pl.* bones (Northern), A 4073.

Bar, **Bare**; see **Bere**, *v.*

Barbe, *s.* barb (part of a woman's head-dress, still sometimes used by nuns, consisting of a piece of white plaited linen, passed over or under the chin, and reaching midway to the waist), T. ii. 110.

Barbre, *adj.* barbarian, B 281.

Bareine, *adj.* barren, B 68, D 372.

Barel ale, barrel of ale, B 3083.

Bark, *s.* (of a tree), T. iii. 727.

Barm-clooth, *s.* apron, A 3236.

Barme, *s.* (*dat.*) bosom, lap, B 3256, 3630.

Baronage, *s.* assembly of barons, A 3096.

Barre, *s.* bar, A 1075; **Barres**, *pl.* stripes across a girdle, A 329.

Barred, *pp.* furnished with 'bars,' A 3225.

Barringe, *s.* adorning with (heraldic) bars, I 417.

Basilook, *s.* basilisk, I 853.

Baste, *v.* baste; *pres. part.* basting, tacking on, R. 104.

Bataille, *s.* battle, fight, L. 1647; troop, B 5. m 1. 4.

Bataillen, *v.* fight, B 1. p 4. 251.

Batailled, *adj.* embattled, i. e. notched with indentations, B 4050.

Batere, *v.* batter; *pr. s.* strikes, I 556.

Bathe, both (Northern), A 4087.

Bathe, *ger.* to bathe, to bask, T. ii. 849; *refl.* to bask, B 4457.

Bauderye, *s.* bawdry, act of a pandar, T. iii. 397; mirth, A 1926.

Baudrik, *s.* baldric, belt worn transversely over one shoulder, A 116.

Baudy, *adj.* dirty, G 635.

Baume, *s.* balm, HF. 1686.

Baundon, *s.* power, disposal, R. 1163.

Bay, *adj.* bay-coloured, A 2157.

Bayard, a horse's name; a horse, A 4115.

Be-, *prefix*; see also **Bi-**.

Beau, *adj.* fair; *beau sir*, fair sir, HF. 643.

Be-bled, *pp.* bloodied, covered with blood, B 3. m 2. 14.

Beblotte, *imp. s.* blot, T. ii. 1027.

Bechen, *adj.* made of beech, G 1160.

Become, *v.* go to, L. 2214; *pp.* gone to, 7. 247.

Bed, *s.* L. 2211; station, B 3862; bed (of herbs), B 4411.

Beddinge, *s.* couch, A 1616.

Bede, *v.* offer, proffer, HF. 32; G 1065; 1 *pr. s.* proffer, 7. 304; **Bedeth**, *pr. s.* proffers, E 1784; **Bede**, 1 *pt. pl.* directed, told, I 65; **Boden**, *pp.* commanded, T. iii. 691; ordered, L. 266.

Bede, *pt. pl. and pp. of* Bidde.

Beden, *pt. pl. of* Bidde.

Bedes, *pl.* beads, A 159.

Bedote, *v.* befeol, L. 1547.

Bedrede, *adj.* bedridden, D 1762.

Beek, *s.* beak, F 418.

Beem, *s.* balk, B 4362; **Bemes**, *pl.* beams, R. 1574.

Been, *pl.* bees, F 204.

Beer, bare; *pt. s. of* Bere.

Beest, *s.* beast, F 460; **Beest roial** . royal beast, i. e. Leo, F 264; brute, G 288;

beast, quarry, R. 1452.

1322; (sign of an inn), A 719;
 the b., be the first, T. iii. 198.
Belweth, *pr. s.* roars, HF. 1803.
Bely, *s.* belly, B 2167.
Bely, *s.* a pair of bellows, I 351.
Bely-naked, *adj.* entirely naked, E 1.
Beme, *s.* trumpet, HF. 1240; *pl.* B 45.
Bēn, **Been**, *v.* be, 1. 182; 1 *pr. pl.* are, 3.
Ben, 2 *pr. pl.* B 122; consist, I 82; B
pr. pl. are, F 648; **Be**, *pr. s. subj.* exist
 should be, 4. 49; **Be**, 1 *pr. s. subj.* be,
 D 1245; **Beth**, *imp. pl.* be, C 683; **Be**
pp. 3. 530; A 199; **Be**, *pp.* been, R.
I had be, I should have been, 3. 222,
 as be may, be it as it may, howeve
 be, L. 1852; **Be** what she be, be she v
 she may, T. i. 679; **Let be**, let alone
 1389.
Bench, *s.* bench, T. ii. 91; table, B 15.
 bench (law court), 1. 159.
Bend, *s.* band, R. 1079.
Bende, *v.* bend, R. 1334; turn, T. ii. 12.
Bente, *pl. s.* bent, H 264; **Bent**, *pp.*
 29; arched, A 3246.
Bendings, *s.* adorning with (herald
 benda, I 417. A *bend*, in heraldry,
 a broad diagonal band upon a shield.
Bēne, *s.* bean, 11. 29.
Benedicite, bless ye (the Lord), A 178
 (pronounced ben'cite), T. i. 781, &c.
Beniscoun, *s.* benison, blessing, B 2288.
Bent, *s.* grassy slope; **Bente**, *dat.* A 115.
Berafte; see **Bireve**.
Berd, *s.* beard, A 270, 2173; *in the ber*
 face to face, T. iv. 41, *make a berd*, i
 ceive, A 4096; *makes his berd*, delu
 him. D 267.

- Bleched bones**, *a. pl.* dice, C 636.
Bi-clappe, *ger.* to catch (as in a trap), G 9.
Bicome, *ger.* to become, D 1644; **Bicomth**, *pr. a. goes*, T. ii. 795.
Bidaffed, *pp.* befooled, E 1191.
Bidde, *v.* ask (*confused with* Bēde, *v.* command, bid); *ger.* to request, L. 838; *1 pr. a. pray*, T. i. 1027; **Bit**, *pr. a. bids*, A 187; **Bad**, *pt. a. prayed, begged*, T. iii. 1249; **besought**, T. i. 112; **requested**, E 373; *1 pt. a. bade*, F 1212; *pt. a. bade*, commanded, D 108; **Beden**, *pt. pl. bade*, B 2233; **Bidde**, *pp.* commanded, B 440 (where *has bidde* = have bidden); **Bede**, *pp.* bidden (as if from Bēde), 3. 104; *1 pt. a. subj. would seek*, R. 791; **Bid**, *imp. a. pray*, T. iii. 342; **bid**, 3. 144; **Bid-deth**, *imp. pl. pray*, T. i. 36.
Bidding, *a. request*, L. 837.
Bidelve, *v.*; **Bidolven**, *pp.* buried, B 5. p. 1. 51.
Biden, *pp.* of Byde.
Bifallinge, *a. coming to pass*, T. iv. 1018.
Biforen, *prep.* before, B 3553; *in front of*, G 680.
Biforen, *adv.* in the front part (of his head), A 1376; *beforehand*, A 1148; *in front*, A 590; *in a good position*, A 572; *of old time*, F 551; *first*, E 446.
Biforn, *prep.* before.
Bigete, *v.* beget; **Begat**, *pt. a.* L. 1562; **Bigeten**, *pp.* B 3138.
Biginne, *v.* begin, A 42; **Bigonne**, *2 pt. a.* G 442; **Began**, *2 pt. a.* (*false form for* Bigonne), L. 2230; **Bigan**, *pt. a.* A 44; **Bigonne**, *pt. pl.* F 1015; **Bigonne**, *pp.* T. ii. 779.
Bigoon, *pp.* ornamented, R. 943; *well b.*, well contented, joyous, merry, 5. 171; *fortunate*, T. ii. 294; *well bigo*, well content, R. 693; *too b.*, distressed, L. 1487, 2497; *sorrowfully b.*, distressed, T. i. 114; *were b.*, more wretched, T. v. 1328.
Bigyleres, *pl.* beguilers, I 299.
Bihalve, *a. dat.* behalf, T. ii. 1458.
Bihate, *v.* hate; *pp.* B 3. m. 4. 6.
Bihete, *a. promise*, B 37; *command*, T. ii. 359; *pt. promises*, i. e. all that they profess to prove, A. pr. 26.
Bihote, *1 pr. a. promise*, G 707; *2 pr. a. dost promise*, B 4. p. 2. 1, *pr. a. promises*, I 379. See **Bihote**.
Bihetinge, *a. promising*, B 2. p. 8. 16.
Bihewe, *v.*; **Behewe**, *pp.* carved, HF. 1206.
Bihighte, *pt. a. promised*, T. v. 1204;
Bihighte, *pt. pl.* T. iii. 319; **Bibight**, *pp.* T. v. 354. See **Bihote**.
Biholde, *v.* behold, A 2293; **Behelde**, *v.* behold, 7. 80; **Behelde**, *pt. a. subj. should see*, T. ii. 378; **Biholde**, *pp.* beheld, G 179.
Bihote, *1 pr. a. promise*, A 1854; **Behette**, *pt. a.* 5. 436.
Bihove, *a. dat.* profit (lit. behoof), R. 1092.
Bihove, *v. suit*, 13. 5; *pr. a. (it) behoves*, T. iv. 1004; *pr. pl. are necessary*, I 83.
Bihovely, *adj.* helpful, T. ii. 261; *needful*, I 107.
Bi-jape, *v.*; *pp.* jested at, tricked, T. i. 531.
Biker, *a. quarrel*, L. 2661.
Biknowe, *v.* acknowledge, B 886; **Biknowe**, *pr. a.* I 481; **Beknew**, *pt. a. confessed*, L. 1058; *I am bi-knownen* = I acknowledge, B 3. p. 10. 88.
Bilde, *ger.* to build, HF. 1133; **Bilt**, *pr. a.* HF. 1135; **Bilt**, *pp.* 1. 183. See **Bulde**.
Bilder, *a. asadj.* builder, used for building, 5. 176.
Bileve, *a. faith*, L. 2109; *creed*, A 3456.
Bileve (1), *v.* believe; *imp. pl.* G 1047.
Bileve (2), *v.* to remain, stay behind, F 583.
Bilinne, *v.* cease, T. iii. 1363.
Bille, *a. bill*, petition, 1. 59, 110; *letter*, E 1937; *writ*, D 1586.
Binde, *v.* bind, enthrall, 4. 249; **Bynt** (*for* Bint), *pr. a. binda*, 4. 47, 48; **Bond**, *pt. a. bound, fastened*, R. 241; **Bounden**, *pp.* bound, B 270; *bound up*, D 681.
Binding, *a. constraint*, A 1304.
Binime, *v.* take away, B 4. p. 3. 36;
Binomen, *pr. pl.* B 3. p. 3. 65; **Bi-nomen**, *pp.* taken away, B 3. p. 3. 69.
Binne, *a. bin*, chest, A 594.
Biquethe, *v.* bequeath, D 1121.
Birast, *-e*; see **Bireve**.
Bireine, *v.*; **Bireyned**, *pp.* rained upon, T. iv. 1172.
Bireve, *v.* bereave, B 3359; *restrain*, T. i. 685; *take away*, G 482; *me too bereve*, rob me of woe, 6. 12; **Bireved**, *pt. a. bereft*, D 2071; **Biraste**, *pt. a.* B 83; **Birast**, *pp.* bereft, T. iv. 225; A 1561.
Birthe, *a. birth*, B 192.
Biscorned, *pp.* scorned, I 278.
Bisage, *v.* besiege, *pr. a.* L. 1902; **Bisagede**, *pt. pl.* T. i. 149.
Biseken, *v.* beseech, pray, B 2906, 2910; **By-seke**, *v.* beseech, T. iv. 131; **Biseken**, *1 pr. pl. implore*, A 918; **Bisoughtest**, *2 pt. a. didst beseech*, T. v. 1734; **Bisoghte**, *pt. a.* B 2164.

Blahende, v.; Beshende, v. bring to ruin,
L. 2696.
Blahitte, v.; Blahet, pp. shut up, T. iii.
602.
Blahrewe; pr. a beshrew, D 844.
Blaie, v. ref. take pains, B 3034; Blaie me,
employ myself, G 758; pt. pl. occupied
themselves, S. 192.
Blaily, adv. diligently, A. ii. 38. 8, com-
pletely, T. iii. 1153; eagerly, F 1051;
well, 2. 33.
Blainesse, s. business, B 1415; busy en-
deavour, A 1007, G 24, diligence, 3. 1156,
O 56; industry, G 5; labour, 5. 86; work,
activity, T. i. 795; trouble, ado. 7. 99;
careful attention, B 2979; attentiveness,
7. 290; care, A 520.
Bl-smoked, adj. pl. dirtied with smoke,
B 1. p 1. 31.
Blamotered, pp. besmattered, marked with
spots of rust, &c., A 76.
Blaspet, pp. spit upon, I 276.
Bisprenge, v.; Bespreynt, pp. sprinkled,
bedewed, 2. 10.
Bistad, pp. bestead, in trouble, R. 1227;
Aord d., greatly imperilled, B 649.
Bistryden, v.; Bistrood, pt. a bestrode,
B 2093.
Blay, Beay, adj. busy, industrious, R.
105; active, L. 103; useful, I 474;
attentive, F 509; anxious, 2. 2.
Blayds, prep. beside; /ker d., beside that
place, 3. 1316; q/d., from the neighbour-
hood of, A 445; d. his leve, without his
leave, HF. 2105.

- witching, B 3. m 12. 23; *Blauddiainge*,
 flattering, B 2. p 1. 31.
Bleche, v., pp. bleached, 9. 45.
Blade, v. bleed, L. 2696; *Blædde*, pt. a.
 bled, T. ii. 990.
Blemished, pp. injured, B 1. p 4. 312.
Blende, v. blind, T. iv. 648; *ger.* to de-
 ceive, T. iii. 207; to blind (or read to-
 blende, v. blind utterly), T. ii. 1496;
Blent, pr. a. blinds, 5. 600; *Blente*, pt. a.
 blinded, T. v. 1194; *Blent*, pp. 15. 18;
 deceived, E 2113.
Blere, v. blear, bedim; *Blere hir yð*, dim
 their eye, cajole them, A 4049; pp. de-
 ceived, G 730.
Blering, a. dimming; *bl. of an yð*, cajoling,
 A 3865.
Blesse, v. bless; *Blæsteth hir*, pr. a. crosses
 herself, B 449.
Blève, v. remain, T. iv. 1484; remain (at
 home), T. iii. 623; *ger.* to dwell, T. iv. 1357.
Blew, pt. a. of *Blowe*.
Blow, adj. blue, A 564; 3. 340; as a blue
 clothing, 21. 7.
Blayne, a. blain, blemish, R. 533.
Bløynte, pt. a. blanched, started back, A
 1078; turned aside, T. iii. 1346. Pt. a. of
Blenche, v.
Blinde, v.; *Blynde with*, *ger.* to blind
 (the priest) with, G 1151.
Blinne, v. leave off, cease, G 1171.
Blisful, adj. happy, 9. 1; conferring bliss,
 1. 24; blessed, 3. 854; merry, R. 80;
 sainted, A 17.
Blisful, adv. joyously, 5. 689.
Blisfully, adv. happily, A 1236.
Blisfulness, a. happiness, B 2. p 4. 75.
Blisse, v. bless, E 553. Perhaps read
blæss, *keess*. See *Blæsse*.
Blissed, pp. happy, 9. 43.
Blø, adj. blue, smoke-coloured, HF. 1647.
Blody, adj. causing bloodshed, A 2512.
Blondren; see *Blundre*.
Blood, a. lineage, 7. 65; offspring, E 632;
 kinswoman, T. ii. 594.
Bloome, a. blossom, A 3324.
Bloome, v. blossom; pr. a. E 1460; pp.
 covered with blossoms, R. 108.
Bloomy, adj. blossoming, T. ii. 821; full
 of buds, 5. 183.
Blowe, v. blow, A 565; *Blew*, pt. a. 3. 182;
 (it) blew, T. iii. 678; *Blowen*, pp. pro-
 claimed by trumpets, A 1241.
Blundre, v.; pr. a. runs heedlessly, G
 1414; 1 p. pt. pr. *Blondren*, we become
 mased, G 670.
Blythly, adv. gladly, 3. 749, 755.
Blyve, adv. quickly, soon, L. 60; as *bl.*,
 very soon, as soon as possible, T. i. 965;
 forthwith, R. 706, 992; also *bl.*, as soon
 as possible, T. iv. 174.
Bobance, a. presumption, boast, D 569.
Boce, a. protuberance (boon), I 423.
Boch, a. botch, pustule, B 3. p 4. 14.
Bocher, a. butcher, A 2025.
Boeler, a. buckler, A 3266.
Bode(1), a. foreboding, omen, 5. 343.
Bode(2), a. abiding, delay, 7. 119.
Bode, v. proclaim; pr. a. heralds, B 4.
 m 6. 17.
Boden, pp. of *Bede*.
Body, a. person, F 1005; principal sub-
 ject, E 42; corpse, 3. 142; B 1872; *my*
b., myself, B 1185; pl. metallic bodies
 (metals), answering to celestial bodies
 (planets), G 820, 835.
Boef, a. beef, E 1430.
Boës, pr. a. (it) behoves, A 4026. (Northern.)
Boght, *Boghte*; see *Bye*.
Boist, a. box, C 307; pl. HF. 2129.
Boistous, adj. rude, plain, H 211.
Boistously, adv. loudly, E 791.
Bokel, a. buckle, R. 1086.
Bokeler, a. buckler, A 112. A small round
 shield usually carried by a handle
 at the back. See *Boeler*.
Bokelinge, pres. pt. buckling, A 2503.
Bokes, pl. books, A 294.
Boket, a. bucket, A 1533.
Bolaa, pl. bullace-plums, bullaces, R. 1377.
Bolds, v. grow bold, 5. 144.
Bôle, a. bull, T. iii. 723, iv. 239.
Bôle armoniak, Armenian clay, G 790.
Bolle, a. a bowl, G 1210.
Bolt, a. crossbow-bolt, A 3264.
Bolt-upright, on (har) back, A 4266, B
 1506.
Bomble, v.; pr. a. booms (as a bittern),
 D 972.
Bon, adj. good, HF. 1022.
Bond, a. bond, obligation, A 1604; band,
 fetter, T. iii. 1766, obligation (compelling
 the service of spirits), F 131.
Bonde, a. bondman, D 1660, I 149.
Bonde-folk, a. pl. bondmen, I 754.
Bonde-men, a. pl. bondmen, I 752.
Bône, a. petition, boon, prayer, request,
 3. 129, 835.
Bood, pt. a. of *Byde*.
Bōon, a. bone, R. 1099; ivory, T. ii. 926;
Bōnes, pl. bones, A 546.
Bōor, a. boar, A 2070; *Bores*, gen. sing.
 boar's, B 2060; *Bores*, pl. A 1628.
Bōōst, a. loud talk, A 4001; boast, L.
 267; pride, B 3289; boasting, C 764;
 swelling, G 441.

- Bóot**, *s.* boat, T i 416, ii 1.
Bóot, *s.* help, remedy, T iii. 1208.
Boot, *pl.* *s.* of Byte.
Boraa, *s.* borax, A 610, G 700.
Bord, *s.* table, A 52, B 410; plank, v. 74;
 board, *i. e.* men's, G 1017; *to b.*, to
 board, A 3188, D 328, *into shipper bord*,
 on board the ship, A 3585, *over-bord*,
 overboard, B 922.
Bordels *s. pl.* brothels, I 885.
Bordel-women, *pl.* women of the brothel,
 I 976.
Bordure *s.* border raised rim on the
 front of an astrolabe, A. i. 4 4.
Bore, *s.* bore, hole, T iii. 1455.
Bore, **Boren** *pp.* of *Bern*.
Borel, *s.* coarse woollen clothes, D 356.
 Borel men, laymen, B 3145. See **Burel**.
Borss : see **Boot**.
Borken, *pp.* of *Berke*.
Borne, *v.* *Borneth*, *pp.* *s.* burnishes,
 smoothes, T i 127.
Borwe, *s.* pledge, A 1622; *to b.*, in pledge,
 as a pledge, T v 1664, *leyd to b.*, laid
 in pledge, pawned, T ii. 961, *to b.*, for
 surety, 4 205, *Venus here to b.*, Venus
 being your pledge, T ii. 1524.
Borwe, *v.* borrow, B 105.
Bos, *s.* boss, A 1260. See **Boos**.
Bost, *s.* : see **Boost**.
Boste, *v.* boast : *pp.* *s.* D 1672.
Bote, *s.* good, benefit, D 472; remedy,
 profit, 3 18, advantage, T i 352, heal-
 ing, T i 763, help, T ii 345, healer,
 12 43; relief, G 1481; salvation, B 1056;
doth b., gives the remedy for, 5 276,
for b. ne hale, for good nor for ill, 3
 227.
Botel, *s.* bottle of hay, H 14.
Boteless, *adj.* without remedy, T i 782.
Boteler, *s.* butler, HF 502.
Boterflye *s.* butterfly, B 3080.
Botes, *pl.* boots, A 203 273.
Bothe, *both*, A 440, *your bothes*, of both
 of you, i 81, *your bother*, of you both,
 T iv 168.
Botmeless, *adj.* bottomless, unreal, T v.
 1431.
Bough, *s.* bough, R. 1403, **Bowes**, *pl.* R.
 108.
Bought, **Boughte** : see **Bye**.
Bouk, *s.* trunk of the body, A 2746.
Boun, *adj.* prepared, F 1503.
Bounde, *s.* bound, *pl.* bounds, limits,
 L 546, 1673.
Bountee, *s.* goodness, kindness, *i. e.*,
 good deed, I 393; delightfulness, R.
 1444.

- Bountevous**, *adj.* bountiful, bounteous,
 T i 881, C 110.
Bour, *s.* bed-chamber, HF 1128. **Bourde**,
 lady's chamber, R. 1012, under name
 B 3022.
Bourde, *s.* jest, H 81; *pl.* D 683.
Bourde, *i. pr.* *s.* jest, C 778 *pp.* *s.* &
Box 1, *s.* box-tree, A 2022; *boxwood*, L
 806, money-box, A 4390; box tree,
Box 2, *s.* blow, L 1388.
Boydekin, *s.* dagger, A 1070.
Bracer, *s.* bracer, a guard for the arm
 in archery, A 111.
Bragot, *s.* a beverage made of honey and
 ale, A 1201.
Braid, *s.* quick movement of a horse
 moment, R. 1336, **Brayd**, *s.* start, L
 1166.
Brak, *pl.* *s.* of *Breke*.
Brasil, *s.* dye made from a certain
 wood, B 3840.
Brast, **Braste** : see **Breste**.
Braun, *s.* muscle, A 446; *braun*, a horse,
 F 1254.
Braunche, *s.* branch, T v. 841.
Brayd, **Brayde** : see **Breyde**.
Brede 1, *s.* breadth, R. 802, 1122; *breadth*,
 T i. 179, *on brede*, *abroad*, T i
 530.
Brede 2, *s.* roast meat, HF 1122.
Brede ger. to breed, T iii. 107 *pp.*
 T v 1027, **Breden**, *ger.* to breed, *see*
 L 1156 of *Vergil*, *En. iv. 2* *Bred*, *is*
 bred up, F 402.
Breech, *s.* breeches, B 2032, C 203.
Breem, *s.* bream a fish, A 151.
Breke, *v.* break, A 551; *to breke*, to
 day, fail to pay on the day, *to breke*
 ger to interrupt, B 2215; **Brak** 1
 3 71, **Breke**, *pp.* *s.* *subj.* 4 241 *pp.*
2 pr pl subj break off, T v 1027 *pp.*
pl. s. subj. would break, B 4574; *pp.*
pp. broken, A 3571, **Broken** *pp.* *pp.*
 wrecked, L 1487.
Brekke, *s.* break, flaw defect, *see* *see*
Bremble-flour, *s.* flower of the bran,
 B 1036.
Breme, *adj.* furious, T iv 184.
Breme, *adv.* furiously, A 1692.
Bren, *s.* bran, A 4051.
Brenne, *v.* burn, 17 18, *to be burnt*,
 T i 91; **Brenno**, *ger.* to burn, T i
Brendest, *2 pr s.* didst burn, A 1
Brende, *pl. s.* 1 90, was burnt, F
 103, was set on fire, HF 51; **Bren**
pl. s. was inflamed with anger, 5 2
Brende, *pl. pl.* caught fire, 11 1
Brente, *pl. pl.* L 731; **Brent** *pp.*

Brend, *pp.* B 4555; *as adj.* bright, R. 1109.
 Brenning, *a* burning, 4. 133; greed of gold, R. 188.
 Brenningly, *adv.* ardently, T. i. 607; fervently, A 1564.
 Brere, *a* briar, R. 858; Breres, *pl.* under-wood, A 1532.
 Brest, *a* breast, A 115, 131.
 Brest-boon, *a* breast-bone, A 2710.
 Breste, *v.* burst, T. v. 1008; afflict, T. iii. 1434; break, D 1103; Brest, *pr.* *a* bursts, A 2610; breaks, T. i. 258; Brast, *pt.* *a* burst out, T. v. 1078; burst, L. 1033; broke, 3. 1193; Brast, *pt.* *a* burst (*or read* braste = would burst), T. v. 180; Braste, *pt.* *pl.* burst, T. ii. 326; Broste, *pt.* *pl.* B 671, C 234; Brosten, *pt.* *pl.* 4. 96; Braste, *pt.* *a* subj. would burst, T. ii. 1108; Brosten, *pp.* burst, T. ii. 976; broken, L. 1300.
 Bresting, *a* bursting, F 973.
 Bretful, *adj.* brimful, A 687, 2164.
 Bretherhed, *a* brotherhood, religious order, A 511.
 Brew, *pt.* *a* contrived, B 3575.
 Breyde, *ger.* to start, T. iv. 230, 348; *v.* awake, F 477; Breyde, *i* *pr.* *a* start, T. v. 1262; Breyde, *i* *pt.* *a* awoke, D 799; Breyde, *pt.* *a* started, T. v. 1243; went (out of his wits), B 3728; drew, B 837; Brayde, *pt.* *a* took hastily, HF. 1678; Brayd, *pp.* started, gone suddenly, 7. 124.
 Brid, *a* bird, HF. 1003; young of birds, 5. 192.
 Brige, *a* contention, B 2873. F. *brigue*.
 Brigge, *a* bridge, A 3922.
 Bright, *adj.* fair, R. 1009.
 Brighte, *adj.* *as* *a* brightness (after *for*), T. ii. 864.
 Brike, *a* a trap, snare, 'fix,' dilemma, B 3580.
 Bringe, *v.* bring; Bringes, *2 pr.* *a* bringest, HF. 1908 (a Northern form); Broghten, *pt.* *pl.* B 2590; *made broght*, caused to be brought, HF. 155.
 Brinne, *ger.* to burn, D 52. See Brenne.
 Brocage, *a* mediation, A 3375.
 Broche, *a* brooch, R. 1193; small ornament, bracelet, 4. 245.
 Brode, *adv.* broadly, plainly, A 739; far and wide, HF. 1083; wide awake, G 1420.
 Brodere, *adj.* larger, A. ii. 38. 1.
 Brok, *i.e.* Badger, a horse's name, D 1543.
 Broken; see Harm. And see Breke.

Brokkinge, *pres. pt.* using a quavering voice, A 3377.
 Bromes, *pl.* broom (bushes so called), HF. 1226.
 Brond, *a* torch, L. 2252; firebrand, B 3224; Bronde, *dat.* piece of burning wood, B 2095.
 Brood, *adj.* broad, A 155, 471; thick, large, F 82; Brode, *pl.* R. 939; expanded, R. 1681.
 Broste, -en; see Breste.
 Brotel, *adj.* brittle, frail, T. iii. 820; fickle, L. 1885; unsafe, insecure, E 1279; transitory, E 2061; Brutel, B 2. p 5. 6.
 Brotelnesse, *a* frailty, T. v. 1832; insecurity, E 1279; fickleness, 10. 63.
 Brotherhede, *a* brotherhood, D 1399.
 Brouded, *pp.* embroidered, A 3238, B 3659.
 Brouke, *v.* enjoy, use, B 4490; keep, E 2308; *i* *pr.* *a* subj. (*optative*), may have the use of, HF. 273; Brouken, *pr.* *pl.* subj. (*opt.*), may (they) profit by, L. 194.
 Browding, *a* embroidery, A 2498.
 Broyded, *pp.* braided, A 1049.
 Brutel; see Brotel.
 Brybe, *v.* steal, filch, A 4417; rob, D 1378.
 Bryberyes, *pl.* ways of robbing, D 1367.
 Brydale, *a* wedding, A 4375.
 Brydel, *a* bridle, 7. 184.
 Brydeleth, *pr.* *a* controls, 4. 41.
 Buffet, *a* blow; Buffettes, *pl.* I 258.
 Bugle-horn, *a* drinking-horn made from the 'bugle' or ox, F 1253.
 Buk, *a* buck, 5. 195; Bukke, B 1940; Bukkes, *gen.* buck's, A 3387.
 Bulde, *v.* build; Bulte, *pt.* *a* built, A 1548.
 Bulle, *a* papal bull, C 909.
 Bulte, *pt.* *a* of Bulde.
 Bulte, *v.* boult, sift, B 4430.
 Burdoun, *a* burden of a song, bass-accompaniment, A 673.
 Burel, *adj.* rough, unlettered, F 716; lay (people), D 1872, 1874. The idea is that of a man dressed in *burel*, or coarse woollen cloth. See Borel.
 Buriels, *a* *pl.* burial-places, *i.e.* the catacombs, G 186.
 Burne, *v.* burnish; *pp.* A 1983; polished, HF. 1387; lustrous, C 38. See Borne.
 Burnet, *adj.* made of coarse brown cloth, R. 226.
 Busk, *a* bush, R. 54; *pl.* A 1579.
 But, *conj.* except, unless, 2. 82; 3. 117.
 But, *as* *a* an exception, a 'but,' I 494.
 But and, but if, L. 1790.

But-if, *conj.* unless, R. 283.
Buxom, *adj.* yielding, G. 125; obedient, B. 1287.
Buxomly, *adv.* obediently, E. 186.
Buxumnesse, *s.* submission, 12. 15.
By, *prep.* by, A. 25, &c.; as regards, with respect to, concerning, G. 126, with reference to, G. 4, for, on account of, R. 844; *by process*, in process, B. 2605; *by me*, beside me (with accent on *by*), T. ii. 901; *by the morwe*, in the morning, L. 41.
By, *adv.* beside, *fasts by*, close at hand, R. 1274.
By and by, *adv.* one after another, in due order, in due place, L. 304, A. 1011.
Byde, *v.* wait, T. i. 1067, A. 1576, Bood, *pl.* s. waited, T. v. 29; Blden, *pp.* stayed, E. 1888.
Bye, *v.* buy, pay for it), D. 167, *go by*, let us go to buy, G. 1204; *Bye*, *pr.* *pl.* *subj.* 18. 26. Boughte, *pl.* s. bought, A. 2028, redeemed, E. 1151, *b. agayn*, redeemed, C. 776.
Byhight, *pp.* promised, T. v. 1104.
Bying, *s.* buying, A. 509.
By-japed, *pp.* tricked, made a jest of, T. v. 1110.
Bynt him, binds himself, 4. 47; *Bynt her*, 4. 38.
By-path, *s.* by-way, T. iii. 1705.
Byrde, *s.* maiden, lady, R. 1014.
By-seke, *v.* beseech, T. iv. 131.
Byte, *v.* bite, T. iii. 747; cut deeply, F. 158, burn, A. 611, Bböt, *pl.* s. bit, B. 3701; Biten, *pp.* bitten, L. 2218.
Bytinge, *s.* wound, B. 1 in 7 7.
By-word, *s.* proverb, T. iv. 769.
By-wreye, *v.* reveal, T. iii. 307.

C

Caas, *s.* circumstance, I. 105; *sette caas* = suppose, A. ii. 41. 24; *Caas*, *pl.* cases of law, A. 321.
Cacche, *v.* catch, G. 11; lay hold of, 3. 969; come by, HF. 404; Caughte, *pl.* s. took, conceived, E. 619; took, A. 408 pulled, L. 1854; Caught, *pp.* obtained, E. 1110, taken, F. 740.
Caitif, *adj.* captive, miserable, wretched, A. 1552.
Caitif, *s.* wretch, R. 340; *pl.* captives, A. 914.
Cake, *s.* a round and rather flat loaf of bread in the shape of a large bun, A. 608, 4024, C. 122.
Calcening, *s.* calcination, G. 771.

Calcinacloun, *s.* calcination, G. 624.
Calcula, *v.* calculate, Calculat, *pr.* s. R. 1284.
Calouler, *s.* the calculator or pointer 1. 23. 2. See *Almury*.
Calculinge, *s.* calculation, T. i. 7.
Calendes, *pl.* kalends, introduction of a new time, T. ii. 7.
Calle, *s.* caul, a net used to confine women's hair, A. 1. 19. 4, *henned*, D. 1018 to 'make a hood above a caul' = to befool, T. iii. 773.
Camaille, *s.* a camel, E. 1196.
Camuse, *adj.* low and concave, A. 1022, 3074.
Can, *1 pr.* s. know, L. 1987 know *am* able, E. 403, F. 4, can, B. 42 *understand* F. 1266, *am* able to say: 12, *pr.* s. knows, 1. 671 has, E. 224: *12* of, A. 1780, has skill, T. ii. 1. 1. *on* has knowledge of, F. 740 *to be good*, knows her own advantage: *can thank*, owes them thanks, A. 1087, *2 pr.* *pl.* know, B. 1169.
Canal-boon, *s.* collar-bone at the shoulder, with reference to the top of the neck behind the collar-bone, 3. 921.
Canelle, *s.* cinnamon, R. 1270.
Cankedort, *s.* state of suspense, *total position*, T. ii. 1757.
Canon, *s.* the 'Canon' the title of a book by Avicenna, C. 801, *rule*, *expanded*, A. pr. 105.
Canstow, *2 p.* s. *pr.* knowest thou 1. 20; canst thou, T. iv. 400.
Canter, *s.* portion, A. 3006.
Cape, *ger.* gape after, T. v. 1151 *to Gape*.
Capel, *s.* horse, nag, H. 64, cart-horse, D. 2150.
Cappe, *s.* cap, A. 586 *set the cappe*, *1 e.* made a fool of him, A. 1. 1.
Carboucle, *s.* carbuncle-stone, R. 1. 2.
Cardiacle, *s.* pain about the heart, 1. 1.
Care, *s.* anxiety, sorrow grief, *trouble*, 1. 61, T. 1. 505, 587, ill-luck, 2. 2. 2. *miseries*, T. 1. 264.
Care, *v.* feel anxiety, E. 1212 *Careless*, *imp.* s. be anxious, A. 2208.
Careful, *adj.* full of trouble, G. 44 *to sorrowful*, A. 1266.
Careyne, *s.* corpse, carcass 1. 1. 1.
Carf, *cut*, see *Kerve*.
Cariage, *s.* a carrying away *up to* the way of carrying anything 1. 1. *i. e.* that I can carry away 1. 1.
Cariages, *s.* *pl.* tolls due from the dead.

- to his feudal lord imposed *l'g* authority, I 752.
- Carl, a man, A 3469; rustic, countryman, A 545.
- Carole, a dance accompanied with singing, R 744, 781, 793.
- Carole, v. dance round singing, 3. 849; pp. danced, R 810.
- Carpe, v. talk, discourse, A 474.
- Carrik, a barge, D 1688.
- Cart, a chariot, HF. 943.
- Cartere, a charioteer, B 5. p 4. 100.
- Cart-hors, pl. chariot-horses, HF. 944.
- Cas, a accident, chance, HF. 254, 1032; affair, L 409; occasion, B 36; adventure, L 1630; mischance, L 1056; *in cas* that, in case, A. ii. 3. 2; upon cas, by chance, A 3661, *in cas* if that, in case that, T. ii. 758, *in no manner cas*, in no way, D 1831; *set a cas*, suppose that, T. ii. 729; *to deyen in the cas*, though death were the result, E 859.
- Cast, a occasion, turn, B 3477; contrivance, plan, HF. 1178.
- Casto, v. cast (accounts), B 1406; Casten, v. throw, T. ii. 513; c. with a speere, throw with a spear, HF. 1048; fling, A 3330; contrive, HF. 1170; Casto, 1 pr. a conjecture, A 2172; Casteth, pr. a casts about, I 692; considers, G 1414; applies, B 2781; *reft*. devotes himself, G 738; Cast, pr. a casts, R 1574; Casto, 1 pt. a throw, 5. 172, Casten, pp. thrown, B 1796; Cast, pp. overthrown, T. ii. 1389; contrived, B 3891; c. *before*, premeditated, I 543.
- Castelled, adj. castellated, I 445.
- Castel-yate, castle-gate, HF. 1294.
- Catapuce, a caper-apurge (*Euphorbia Lathyris*), B 4155.
- Catel, a property, wealth, possessions, goods, A 373, 540.
- Cause, a cause, 1. 26; A 419; reason, T. v. 527; plea, a. 46; Cause causinge, first cause, T. iv. 829; *by the c. that*, because, A 2488, *by that c.*, because, T. iv. 99; Cause why, the reason why, T. iii. 795; the reason for it (was), A 4144.
- Causeles, adv. without cause, F 825.
- Cave, a cave, HF. 70; used to translate the astrological term 'puteus,' 4. 119.
- Cavillacioun, a cavilling, D 2136.
- Celebrable, adj. celebrated, B 4. m 7. 30.
- Celerer, a keeper of a cellar, B 3126.
- Celle, a cell, A 172, 1376.
- Centaure, a centaury, *Centaurea nigra*, B 4153.
- Centre, a a point on a rote representing a star, A 1. 21. 12.
- Ceptre, a sceptre, B 3334, 3363.
- Cercle, a HF. 791; sphere, 16. 9.
- Cerclen, ger. to encircle, T. iii. 1767; pr. a. R. 1619.
- Cered, pp. as adj. waxed, G 808.
- Cerial, adj. belonging to a species of oak, the *Quercus cerris*, A 2290.
- Ceriously, adv. minutely, with full details, B 185. Ducange has '*Seriosae*, *fuse*, *minutatum*, *articulatum*.' From *Lat. series*, order.
- Certein, adj. sure; Certeins, pl. certain, B 5. p 5. 115; c. gold, a stated sum of money, B 242; c. tresor, a quantity of treasure, B 442; c. yeres, a certain number of years, B 3367, Certeyn, a certain sum, a fixed quantity, G. 776.
- Certain, adv. certainly, indeed, assuredly, A 375.
- Certes, adv. certainly, R. 374, 439.
- Ceruce, a white lead, A 630.
- Cese, v. cause to cease, T. i. 445; put an end to, 4. 11. See Oesse.
- Cesse, v. cease, B 1066; c. cause, when the cause ceases, T. ii. 483; c. wind, when the wind ceases, T. ii. 1388.
- Cetewale, a setwall, i.e. sedoary, A 3207, B 1951. O. F. *ctocet*. A medicinal substance obtained in the East Indies, having a fragrant smell, and a warm, bitter, aromatic taste, used in medicine as a stimulant. (The name *setwall* was also given to valerian.)
- Ceynt, a cincture, girdle, A 1235.
- Chaffare, a bargaining, I 851; traffie, G 1421; trade, A 4389; merchandise, ware, B 1475, D 521; matter, subject, E 2438.
- Chaffare, ger. to trade, barter, deal, traffie, B 139.
- Chaires, a pl. thrones, B 4. m 2. 6.
- Chalange, v.; pr. a. 1 p. claim, F 1324; Chalaunged, pt. a arrogated, B 2. p 6. 36.
- Chalanging, a false claim, accusation, C 264.
- Chalaundra, a a species of lark (*Alauda calandra*), R. 914; pl. R. 603.
- Chalice, a cup, I 879.
- Chalk-stoon, a a piece of chalk, G 1207.
- Chalons, pl. blankets or coverlets for a bed, A 4140. Cf E. *shalkon*.
- Chamberere, a maidservant, lady's maid, D 300.
- Chambre-roof, roof of my room, 3. 299.
- Champartye, a equality, participation in power, A 1949. F. *champ parti*.

Charge, *a load, burden*, R. 1352; *responsibility*, S. 307; *consideration*, A. 126.
Importance, J. 894; *care*, A. 733; *particular note*, D. 421; *a heavy thin*, HF. 746, *weight*, L. 620, *consequence*, L. 2383; *of that no ch.*, for that matter, it is of no importance, G. 749.
Charge, *v. load*, L. 2131; *command*, I. 493; *pp. burdened*, I. 92; *bidden*, J. 940.
Chargeant, *adj. burdensome*, B. 2413.
Char-hors, *pl. chariot-horses*, T. v. 1018.
Charitable, *adj. loving*, L. 444, *kind*, A. 143.
Charitas, *a charity, love*, T. i. 40; for *sainte ch.*, i.e. *either* (1) for holy charity; or (2) for the sake of St. Charity, A. 1721, B. 4510, D. 2119.
Charmersesses, *few. pl. workers with charms*, HF. 1261.
Chaste, *v. to chasten*; *pp. taught*, F. 491. O. F. *chastier*. See **Chastyse**.
Chasteyn, *a chestnut*, A. 2932. See **Chasteynes**.
Chastisinge, *a chastening*, i. 129.
Chastyse, *v. to rebuke, restrain*, B. 3605, *chasten*, i. 39. See **Chaste**.
Chance, *a chance*, A. 1752; *incident*, J. 1185; *destiny*, J. 1113; *luck*, G. 503; 'chance,' a technical term in the game of hazard, C. 653.
Chaunging, *a change*, xi. 17.
Chaunteth, *pr. a sings*, A. 3307, E. 1850.
Chaunte-pleure, *title of a song upon grief following joy*, 7. 320.
Chaunterie, *a. an endowment for the payment of a priest to sing mass, agreeably to the appointment of the founder*, A. 510.
Chayer, *a chair*, B. 3803; *throne*, R. 1.

- play, child's play, E 1530; Childe, with, with child, L. 1373.
- Childhood**, *s.* childhood, R. 399.
- Childly**, *adj.* childlike, 3. 1095.
- Chilindro**, *s.* cylinder, portable sun-dial, B 1396.
- Chimbe**, *s.* rim of the barrel, A 3895.
- Chimbe**, *v.* chime (as a bell), A 3896.
- Chimenee**, *s.* fireplace, A 3776.
- Chinche**, *s.* niggard, miser, B 1793, 2809.
- Chincherye**, *s.* niggardliness, miserliness, B 2790.
- Chiroche**, *s.* church, A 708, 2760.
- Chiroche-hawe**, *s.* churchyard, I 964; *pl.* I 801.
- Chiroche-reves**, *pl.* church-officers, churchwardens, D 1306.
- Chirketh**, *pr.* *s.* chirps, D 1804; *pres. pl.* rustling, B 1. m 6. 10.
- Chirking**, *s.* creaking, grating noises, A 3004, I 605; Chirkinges, *pl.* shriekings, cries, HF. 1943.
- Chisels**, *s.* scissors, I 418.
- Chit**, chides; *pr.* *s.* of Chyle.
- Chiteren**, *v.* chatter, prattle, G 1397.
- Chiteringe**, *s.* chattering, chirping, T. ii. 68.
- Chivachoe**, *s.* feat of horsemanship, H 50; Chevauchoe, swift course (lit. ride), 4. 144. O.F. *cherauchee*, an expedition on horseback.
- Chivachye**, *s.* a military expedition, A 85.
- Chivalrye**, *s.* knighthood, the accomplishments of a knight, A 45; knightly conduct, valour, R. 1207; L. 608; troops of horse, cavalry, company of knights, A 878.
- Chogh**, *s.* chough, 5. 345.
- Choppen**, *v.* strike downwards, knock, HF. 1824.
- Chose**, *pp.* of Chese.
- Chuk**, *s.* cluck, 'chucking' noise, B 4364.
- Chukketh**, *pr.* *s.* clucks, B 4372.
- Chyde**, *v.* chide, T. iii. 1433; complain, F 650; reproach, T. v. 1003; Chit, *pr.* *s.* chides, scolds, G 921; Chidde, *1 pl.* *s.* chid, D 223.
- Chydeste**, *s.* (female) scold, E 1535.
- Chydinges**, *pl.* scoldings, HF. 1008.
- Chyning**, *adj.* gaping, yawning, B 1. p 6. 41. A.S. *clean*, to gape open.
- Ciclatoun**, *s.* a costly kind of thin cloth, B 1924.
- Cinamome**, *s.* cinnamon, as a term of endearment, sweet one, A 3699.
- Cink**, *sum.* cinque, five, C 653.
- Cipres**, *s.* cypress, 5. 179; (*collectively*), cypresses, R. 1381.
- Circumsoryve**, *v.* enclose, comprehend, T. v. 1865.
- Citole**, *s.* kind of harp, a stringed instrument, A 1959.
- Citrinacoun**, *s.* citronising, the turning to the colour of citron, a process in alchemy, G 816.
- Citryn**, *adj.* citron-coloured, A 2167.
- Clamb**, *pl.* *s.* of Climben.
- Clamour**, *s.* A 995; ontory, D 889.
- Claperes**, *pl.* burrows (for rabbits), R. 1405.
- Clappe**, *s.* thunderclap, HF. 1040.
- Clappe**, *s.* prating, foolish talk, A 3144.
- Clappe**, *v.* clap; hence, chatter, prattle, G 965; *pr.* *s.* knocks, D 1581, 1584, *pr.* *pl.* talk unceasingly, I 406, Clappeth, *imp. pl.* E 1200; Clapte, *pl.* *s.* shut quickly, A 3740.
- Clapping**, *s.* chatter, idle talk, E 999.
- Clarioning**, *s.* the music of the clarion, HF. 1242.
- Claroun**, *s.* clarion, trumpet, HF. 1240, 1574, 1579.
- Clarree**, *s.* clarified wine, wine mixed with honey and spices, and afterwards strained till clear, A 1471, E 1807.
- Clasped**, *pp.* fastened, A 273.
- Clatereth**, *pr.* *s.* says noisily, B 2259; *pl.* *pl.* rattled, A 2423.
- Clateringe**, *s.* clanking, A 2492; clashing, D 1865.
- Clause**, *s.* sentence; also, agreement, stipulation, T. ii. 728; in a clause, in a short sentence, briefly, 22. 38.
- Clawe**, *v.* rub, D 940; *ger.* to scratch, T. iv. 728, *pl.* *s.* stroked, A 4326; Clew, *1 pl.* *s.* rubbed, HF. 1702.
- Cleerly**, *adv.* entirely, B 1566.
- Cleer nesse**, *s.* glory, G 403.
- Cleste**, *pl.* *s.* of Cleve (1).
- Olène**, *adj.* clean, A 504; unmixed, B 1183.
- Olène**, *adv.* clean, entirely, wholly, R. 1380.
- Olennesse**, *s.* purity, A 506.
- Olense**, *v.* cleanse, A 631.
- Clepen**, *v.* call, name, A 643, 2730; call out, A 3577; *pr.* *s.* D 102; F 382; men cl., people call, E 115; Clepe . . . ayen (or again), *v.* recall, T. ii. 521; *pl.* *s.* called, F 374; Clepte, *pl.* *s.* called, R. 1331; summoned, B 2432; Clept, *pp.* named, G 863.
- Clere**, *adj.* clear, R. 681; bright, 3. 340; well-sounding, 3. 347; noble, pure, HF. 1575.

755; *Claw*, *pt.* a split, *z.* 72; *Cleaved*,
pp. A 2934; *Clove*, *pp.* cleft, dimpled
 R. 550.
Clove (2), *v.* adhere; *pr.* *pt.* B 3. p 11. 112.
Clew, a clew, L 2140.
Clew, *pt.* a of *Claws*.
Cley, a clay, G 807.
Clifte, a cleft, L 740; *chink*, B 4. p 4
 296.
Clicket, a latch-key, E 2046, 2117, 2121
 2123.
Climben, *v.* climb, F 106; *Clamb*, *pt.* a
 B 1987; *Clomb*, 1 *pt.* a climbed, HF
 1118; *Clomben*, *pt.* *pt.* climbed, A 3636
Clamben, *pt.* *pt.* climbed, HF. 2151
Cloumben, B 2590; *Clomben*, *pp.* T 1.
 215, ascended, B 4388; *Clombe*, *pp.*
 risen, B 12; *were clombe*, hadst climbed,
 B 3592.
Clinking, a tinkling, B 3984.
Clippe (1), 1 *pr.* a embrace, T. iii. 1344.
Clippe (2), *v.* cut hair, A 3326.
Clipping, a, embracing, R. 342.
Globbered, *adj.* clubbed, B 3088.
Cloisterer, a resident in a cloister, A
 259, 3661.
Cloisterless, *adj.* outside of a cloister, A
 179.
Cloke, a cloak, T. iii. 738.
Clokke, a clock, B 4044; *of the cl.*, by
 the clock, B 14.
Clom, *interj.* be silent, mum! A 3638.
Clombe, -n; see *Climben*.
Clōds, *adj.* close, secret, T. ii. 1534; closed,
 B 4522; *Clos*, closed, R. 1675.
Clōðth, a piece of clothing, D 1633;
 infants' clothing, T. iii. 733.
Clos, a enclosure, B 4550.
Closet, a small room, T. ii. 599, 1215.
Closing, a enclosure, boundary, R. 527.
Clo-

collars, A 2152 (or read *colerd*, provided with collars).
Colera (Lat.), choler, B 4118.
Colere, a. choler, B 4136.
Colerik, *adj.* choleric, A 587, B 4145.
Col-fox, a. coal-fox, fox with black marks, B 4405.
Collacioun, a. conference, E 325.
Collateral, *adj.* adventitious, subordinate, T. i. 262.
Collect, *pp.* collected in groups, F 1275.
Colour, a. colour, 7. 173; complexion, hue, R. 213; outward appearance, 2. 66; pretence, 10. 21; excuse, D 399; *pl.* fine phrases, HF. 859; hues, pretences (a pun), F 511.
Colpons, *pl.* shreds, bundles, A 679; billets, A 2867.
Coltish, *adj.* like a colt, E 1847.
Columbyn, *adj.* dove-like, E 2141.
Colver, a. dove, L. 2319. A. S. *culfre*.
Combred, *pp.* encumbered, B 3. m. 10. 9.
Combre-world, a. one who encumbers the world, who lives too long, T. iv. 279.
Combust, *pp.* burnt, G 811; quenched (as being too near the sun), T. iii. 717.
Come, *v.* come; *come thereby*, come by it, acquire it, G 1395; *Come*, *ger.* to come, future, 3. 708; *Comestow*, comest thou, L. 1887; *Cometh*, *pr.* a. as *fst.* shall come, 4. 11; *Comth*, *pr.* a. comes, B 407; *Cam*, *pt.* a. came, F 81; *Cöm*, *pt.* a. 3. 134; *Cömen*, *pt.* *pl.* L. 1241; *Cöman*, *pp.* come, 4. 81; *ben comen*, are come, B 1130; *Com of*, i. e. seize the opportunity, be quick, T. ii. 1738, D 1602; *Cometh*, *imp.* *pl.* A 839.
Cöme, a. coming, G 343. A. S. *cyme*.
Comédie, a. comedy, pleasant tale, one that ends happily, T. v. 1788.
Comeveden, 2 *pr.* *pl.* as 2 *pr.* a., didst instigate, T. iii. 17. See *Commeveth*.
Comlily, *adv.* in a comely way, 3. 848.
Commeveth, *pr.* a. moves, induces, T. v. 1781; *Commeve*, *pr.* a. *whj.* move, T. v. 1786. See *Commoeve*, *Comeveden*.
Commoeve, *ger.* to move, influence, B 4. p. 4. 275.
Commoevinge, a. moving, disturbing, B 1. m. 4. 6.
Commune, *adj.* general, common, B 135; *in c.*, commonly, A 1261.
Commune, a. the commons, E 70; *pl.* commoners, A 2522.
Compaighable, *adj.* companionable, B 1194.
Companye, a. company, A 24; companionship, 4. 219.

Comparisoned, *pp.* compared, B 2. p. 7. 118.
Compass, a. circuit, 4. 137; circlet, wreath, R. 900; circle, A 1889; a very large circle, HF. 798; circumference, 20. 5; enclosure, orb, world, as in *tryne compass*, the threefold world (earth, sea, and heaven), G 45; pair of compasses, A. ii. 40. 13; craft, contriving, HF. 462; *pl.* circles (*or, perhaps*, pairs of compasses), HF. 1302.
Compassment, a. plotting, contrivance, L. 1416.
Compassse, *v.* contrive, R. 194; planned, L. 1414; *Compasssed*, *pp.* drawn with compasses, fashioned circularly, A. i. 18. 1; planned, L. 1543.
Compassing, a. dimension, R. 1350; contrivance, A 1996.
Compeer, a. gossip, close friend, A 670; comrade, A 4419.
Compilatour, a. compiler, A. *pr.* 70.
Compleynt, a. a 'complaint' or ballad, 2. 43; 3. 464.
Complexioun, a. complexion, A 333; temperament, I 585; the (four) temperaments, HF. 21.
Compline, a. evening service, A 4171.
Complisshen, *v.* accomplish, B 4. p. 4. 24.
Comporte, *v.* bear, endure, T. v. 1397.
Composicioun, a. agreement, A 848, 2651.
Compotent, *adj.* all-powerful, B 5. p. 6. 53.
Compouned, *pp.* composed, HF. 1029; tempered, L. 2585; mingled, HF. 2108; constructed, drawn, A. *pr.* 11.
Comprehende, *v.* take (it) in, T. iv. 891; take in (in the mind), F 223; *pr.* a. comprises, I 1043.
Comprende, *v.* comprehend, contain, T. iii. 1687.
Communaltee, a. empire, B 4. p. 6. 402.
Comune, *adj.* general, common to all, T. iii. 1415; accustomed to, 3. 812; *Commun*, profit, the good of the country, 5. 47, 75.
Comune, a. a common share in a thing, E 1113.
Comyn, a. cummin, B 2045. 'A dwarf umbelliferous plant, somewhat resembling fennel, cultivated for its seeds.'—Webster.
Con, *imp.* a. grant; *Con* me thank, grant me thanks, thank me, A. *pr.* 62.
Conceits, a. conception, thought, L. 1764; idea, G 1214; notion, T. i. 996.
Conclude, *v.* draw a conclusion, B 14; include, put together, G 429; attain to

- success, G 773; *ger.* to summarize, A 1358; Concluded, *pp.* come to a conclusion, E 1607.
- Conclusioun**, *s.* decision, judgement, A 1845; result, successful end of an experiment, G 672; purpose, D 115; moral, L 2723; reason, F 492; performance, F 1263; result, summary, A 1743; end (of life), HF. 103; fate, 22. 23; *as in c.*, after all, 4. 257; 15. 4; Conclusiouns, *pl.* mathematical propositions, theorems, A 3193.
- Condys**, *pl.* conduits, R. 1414.
- Confedred**, *pp.* rendered confederates, conjoined, 2. 42, 52.
- Conferme**, *v.* confirm, T. ii. 1526.
- Confirme**, *ger.* B 4. p 7. 90 (but an error for *conforme*; Lat. 'conformandae').
- Confiteor**, 'I confess,' I 386.
- Confiture**, *s.* composition, C 862. Fr. *confiture*, a mixture, preserve.
- Conforten**, *v.* comfort, E 1918; *pr. s.* encourages, A 2716; *pr. pl.* strengthen, I 652.
- Confounde**, *v.* destroy, 1. 40; 12. 10; *pp.* put to confusion, 1. 5; overwhelmed, B 100; destroyed in soul, G 137.
- Cónfus**, *pp. as adj.* confused, T. iv. 356; convicted of folly, G 403; confounded, A 2230.
- Congeyen**, *v.* give us our congée, tell us to depart, T. v. 470.
- Conjectest**, 2 *pr. s.* supposest, T. iv. 1026.
- Conjectinges**, *pl.* conjectures, B 2508.
- Conjoininge**, *s.* conjunction, G 95.
- Conjuracioun**, *s.* conjuring, I 601.
- Conne**, *v.* be able, L. 2044; know, T. iii. 83; have experience, T. i. 647; know how, T. iii. 377; con. learn, B 1730; Conne, 1 *pr. s.* can, T. ii. 49; 2 *pr. s. subj.* canst, knowest how, T. ii. 1497; *pr. & subj.* may, A 4396; 1 *pr. pl.* can, are able, B 484; know, HF. 335; Conne, 2 *pr. pl.* can, A 4123; can (do), T. i. 776; owe (me thanks), T. ii. 1466; Connen, *pr. pl.* know how to, E 2438; *al conne* he, whether he may know, G 846.
- Conning**, *s.* skill, knowledge, L. 68, 412; T. i. 83; experience, B 1671; learning, B 2920.
- Conning**, *adj.* skilful, B 3690.
- Conningest**, most skilful, T. i. 331.
- Conningly**, *adv.* skilfully, E 1017.
- Consecrat**, consecrated, B 3207.
- Conseil**, *s.* council, B 204; counsel, B 425; secret counsel, A 1141; secret, A 3504; advice, B 2211; counsellor, A 1147.
- Conseile**, *v.* counsel; *pt. pl.* B 2554.
- Consentant**, *adj.* consentient, consenting (to), C 276.
- Consentrik**, *adj.* having the same centre. A. i. 17. 5; tending to the same centre. A. i. 16. 9; at the same altitude, A. ii. 156.
- Consequent**, *s.* sequel, result, B 2577.
- Conservatif**, *adj.* preserving; *c. the sona*, preserving the sound, HF. 847.
- Conserve**, *v.* keep, preserve, T. iv. 1664.
- Consistórie**, *s.* council, T. iv. 65; court of justice, C 162.
- Conspiracye**, *s.* plot, B 3880. C 149.
- Constable**, *s.* governor, B 512.
- Constablesse**, *s.* constable's wife, B 530.
- Constaunce**, *s.* constancy, I 737.
- Constellacioun**, *s.* influence of the stars. F 781.
- Constreyneth**, *pr. s.* constrains, E 800; *pt. s. L.* 105; *pt. s. refl.* contracted herself, B 1. p 1. 15; *pp.* constrained, compelled, E 527, F 764, 769.
- Constreynte**, *s.* distress, T. iv. 741.
- Constrúe**, *v.* divine, make out, T. iii. 111; *ger.* to translate, B 1718; *imp. pl.* interpret, L. 152.
- Consulers**, *s. pl.* consuls, B 2. p 6. 12.
- Consumpte**, *pp. pl.* consumed, B 2. p 7. 27.
- Contagious**, *adj.* contiguous, B 2. p 12. 5.
- Contek**, *s.* strife, contest, T. v. 1470; A 2003.
- Contemplaunce**, *s.* contemplation, I 1803.
- Contenance**, *s.* appearance, F 1485; show, B 2378; gesture, B 2227; demeanour, E 924; self-possession, E 1110; pretence, I 858; *fond his c.*, i. e. disposed himself, T. iii. 979; *pl.* modes of behaviour, E 1001.
- Contene**, *v.* contain, T. iii. 502; *pt. s.* hold together, B 3. p 12. 40.
- Continued**, *pp.* accompanied, eked out, I 1046.
- Contract**, *pp.* contracted, incurred, I 123.
- Contraire**, *adj.* contrary, R. 348; T. i. 212.
- Contraire**, *s.* the contrary, HF. 1540; adversary, 2. 64.
- Contrárie**, *adj.* contrary, B 3964; *in c.* in contradiction, G 1477.
- Cóntrarie**, *s.* contrary, A 3057; contrary thing, HF. 808; opponent, A 1850; opposition, T. i. 418.
- Contrárien**, *v.* oppose, F 705; *pt. s.* gainsaid, D 1044.
- Contrarious**, *adj.* contrary, adverse, B 2249; *pl.* B 2311.

Contrariouste, *s.* contrary state, I 1077.
 Contree, country, R. 768; fatherland, home, B 2. p 4. 120.
 Contree-folk, people of his country, L. 2161.
 Contree-houses, *pl.* houses of his country, homes, 7. 25. Lat. *domos patrias*.
 Contree-ward, to his, towards his country, L. 2176.
 Contubernial, *adj.* familiar, at home with (lit. sharing the same tent with), I 760.
 ('ontumar, *adj.* contumacious, I 402.
 Convenient, *adj.* fitting, suitable, I 421; *pl.* suitable, F 1278.
 Convers; in convers, on the reverse side, T. v. 1810.
 Conversacioun, *s.* conversation, i. e. manner of life, B 2501.
 Converte, *v.* change, T. i. 308; swerve, C 212; *ger.* to change his ways, T. iv. 1412; to change her mind, T. ii. 903.
 Convertible, *adj.* equivalent, A 4395.
 Conveyen, *v.* introduce, E 55; *pr. s.* accompany, L. 2305; *pl. pl.* conducted on their way, A 2737.
 Convict, *pp.* overcome, 1. 86.
 Cony, *s.* rabbit; Conies, *pl.* R. 1404; Conyes, *pl.* 5. 193.
 Cook, *s.* cook, A 351; Cokes, *pl.* C 538.
 Coomen, *pt. pl.* came, B 1805.
 Cop, *s.* top, A 554; summit, B 2. m 4. 6; hill-top, HF. 1166.
 Cope, *s.* cope, A 260; cape, R. 408; cloak, T. iii. 724; vault, L. 1527.
 Coper, *s.* copper, HF. 1487.
 Copie, *s.* copy, T. ii. 1697.
 Coppe, *s.* cup, A 134, F 942.
 Corage, Corage, *s.* heart, spirit, mind, disposition, mood, inclination, R. 257, 423, 849, 1302, 1614; A 22; courage, B 1970; will, desire, B 2713; impetuosity, I 655; attention, H 164; spite, R. 151; encouragement, R. 22; *of his c.* in his disposition, F 22; Corages, *pl.* dispositions, natures, A 11.
 Corbets, *pl.* corbels, HF. 1304.
 Cordeth, *pr. s.* agrees, T. ii. 1043.
 Cordewane, *s.* Cordovan leather, B 1922.
 Corfew-tyme, *s.* curfew-time, about 8 p.m., A 3645.
 Corige, *v.* correct; *pr. s.* B 4. p 7. 39.
 Cormeraunt, *s.* cormorant, 5. 362.
 Cor meum eructarit, D 1934. See Pa. xlv. 1.
 Corn, *s.* grain, A 562; chief portion, B 3144; Cornes, *pl.* crops of corn, B 3225; grains of corn, HF. 698.

Cornemuse, *s.* bagpipe, HF. 1218. Fr. *cornemuse*.
 Corniculere, *s.* registrar, secretary, G 369. Lat. *cornicularius*, a registrar, clerk to a magistrate.
 Corny, *adj.* applied to ale, strong of the corn or malt, C 315, 456.
 Corone, *s.* crown, garland, E 381; Coroune, crown, garland, 2. 58; Córoun, crown, L. 216; the constellation called 'the Northern Crown,' L. 2224.
 Corosif, *adj.* corrosive, G 853.
 Coroumpinge, *s.* corruption, B 3. p 12. 82.
 Coróuned, *pp.* crowned, B 3555.
 Corpus, *s.* body, A 3743; Corpus, the body (e. g. of Christ), B 3096; Corpus Domini, false Latin for *corpus Domini*, the body of the Lord, B 1625; Corpus Madrian, the body of St. Mathurin, B 3082; Corpus bones, an intentionally nonsensical oath, composed of 'corpus domini,' the Lord's body, and 'bones,' C 314.
 Correccioun, *s.* fine, D 1617.
 Corruppable, *adj.* corruptible, A 3010.
 Corruppeth, *pr. s.* becomes corrupt, L. 2237; *pl. s.* corrupted, I 819.
 Corrupcioun, *s.* destroyer, 5. 614.
 Cors, *s.* body, L. 676, 876; corpse, T. v. 742.
 Corse, *pr. s.* subj. curse, E 1308.
 Corshednesse, *s.* abomination, T. iv. 994.
 Corseynt, *s.* a saint (lit. holy body); esp. a shrine, HF. 117. O.F. *corseint*.
 Corumpe, *v.* become corrupt, B 3. p 11. 58. See Corrumpe.
 Corve, -n; see Kerve.
 Cosin, *s.* cousin, A 1131; *as adj.* akin, suitable to, A 742, H 210; Cosins *germayns*, cousins-german, first cousins, B 2558.
 Cosinage, *s.* kinship, B 1226, 1329.
 Cost (1), *s.* expense, A 192, 213.
 Cost (2), *s.* choice, condition; Nedes cost, of necessity (lit. by condition of necessity), L. 2697. Icel. *kost*, choice, condition, state.
 Costage, *s.* cost, expense, B 1235, 1562.
 Coste, *s.* coast, B 1626; region, D 922; Costes, *pl.* parts of the sky, A. i. 19. 11.
 Costeyng, *pres. part.* coasting, R. 134.
 Costlewe, *adj.* costly, I 415. Cf. Icel. *kostligr*.
 Costrel, *s.* flask, kind of bottle, L. 2666.
 Cote, *s.* cot, E 398; dungeon, A 2457.
 Cote, *s.* coat, jacket (for a man), A 103, 328; skirt, petticoat, or gown (for

- a woman), R. 116; *pl.* coats, surcoats, or coats-of-arms see below, HF 1112.
- Cote-armure**, coat-armour, coat showing the arms, coat-of-arms, T v 1651.
- Couche**, *v.* lay down, place; cower, E 1206; *pl.* s. laid in order, placed, s. 210, G 1157; *pp.* set, placed, laid, A 1933, 3211 beset, begimmed, A 2161.
- Couching**, *s.* laying down, letting the astrolabe lie flat on the ground, A. ii. 29, 30.
- Coude**, 1 *pt.* s. could, was able, L. 116, knew how, 3. 417, *pl.* s. knew, 3. 667, 1012 understood, R. 179 *as aux* could, R. 175, Coude her good, knew what was for Iude's advantage, L. 1182 Coude no good, know no good, was untrained, 3. 190, Coude *pp.* known, 3. 787, learnt, I 1041. See Can, Conne.
- Counsel**, *s.* advice, A 784; secrets, A 605 Counseyl, secret, s. 118.
- Counte**, 1 *pr.* s. account, 11. 29, *pl.* s. 3. 718.
- Countenance**, *s.* appearance, show, A 1020, looks, appearance, G 1264, shewing favour, 3. 1022 demeanour, R 814, pretext, A 4421, *pl.* looks, R. 1100.
- Counting-bord**, *s.* counting-house table, B 1274.
- Countour** (1), *s.* arithmetician, 3. 415 auditor, A 359.
- Countour** 2, *s.* abacus, counting-board, 1. 410, counting-house, B 1401.
- Countour-hous**, *s.* counting-house, B 1267.
- Countrepeise**, *v.* render equivalent, HF. 1750 countervail, T iii. 1407.
- Countrepleted**, *pp.* made the subject of pleadings and counter-pleadings, argued against, L. 476.
- Countretaille**, *s.* lit. countertally, 1 *e.* correspondence (of sound); at the c. in reply, E 1190.
- Countrewaite**, *pr.* s. *suby.* keep watch over, I 1005, watch against, B 2500.
- Coupable**, *adj.* culpable, blameworthy, B 2711, I 414.
- Coupe**, *s.* cup, L. 1122.
- Coured**, *pl.* s. cowered, R. 465.
- Cours**, *s.* course, T ii. 970, life on earth, G 187, orbit, A 2454.
- Courser**, *s.* horse, T ii. 1011; *pl.* steeds, A 2501.
- Court**, *s.* court, A 140; manor-house, D 2162.
- Courtpey**, an upper short coat of a coarse material, R. 210 A 290, D 1382.
- Court-man**, *s.* courtier, E 1491.
- Couth**, 1 *pt.* s. could, R. 111 knew, 3. 810, knew how, A 190, Couth *pp.* known, T iv 61; Couth, *pp.* *pl.* well-known, A 13.
- Couth**, *adv.* in a known way manifestly, HF 757.
- Coveitysse**, *s.* covetousness, A 1884, C 411 bodily craving, I 810, lust, I 120.
- Covenable**, *adj.* fit, proper, fitting, suitable, 18. 25, agreeable, B 1 p 4 *adj.* congruous, B 3 p 12 17.
- Covenably**, *adv.* suitably, fitly, B 101.
- Covent**, *s.* convent, conventual toy 1827, D 1863.
- Coverchief**, *s.* kerchief worn on the head, D 590 *pl.* A 453.
- Covercle**, *s.* pot-lid, HF 742.
- Covered**, *pp.* covered, A 354 removed from, healed of, L. 76.
- Covertly**, *adv.* secretly, R 10.
- Coverture**, *s.* disguise, R. 1088 (with thres, *pl.* coverings, I 108).
- Covetour**, *s.* one who covets, 3. 10.
- Covyns**, *s.* deceitfulness, A 604. *See* a deceitful agreement between two more to the prejudice of another. *See* Law Dictionary.
- Cow**, *s.* enough, D 211. *See* Chogh.
- Coward**, *adj.* cowardly, s. 402.
- Cowardye**, *s.* cowardice, A 271.
- Cowardyse**, *s.* cowardice, T iv 601, 602.
- Coy**, *adj.* quiet, A 119 shy, L. 101.
- Coye**, *v.* quiet, calm, capole, T ii 81.
- Coynes**, *pl.* quinces, R. 1174 O F 10 quince.
- Crabbed**, *adj.* shrewish, cross, bitter, I 1201.
- Cracching**, *s.* scratching, A 1814.
- Craft**, *s.* cunning, C 84 skil, T 10 art, R. 687 *triple*, occupation, 3. 1092, secret, mystery, R. 1014 *triple*, 3258, contrivance, B 249.
- Craftily**, *adv.* artfully, in a crafty manner, T ii 1026, skilfully, B 10.
- Crafty**, *adj.* skilful, clever, 3. 419 sensible, 3. 419.
- Craketh**, *pr.* s. utters hoarse A 101 sings in a grating tone like a crane, E 1850.
- Crampisheth**, *pr.* s. draws together, contracts, 7. 171. *See* *crampish* into their hert gace, Lydgate, Falls of Princes, l. 101. Cf O F *crampir* *étratoris* *trache*.
- Crased**, *pp.* cracked, G 914.
- Creant**, *adj.* with creant, acknowledged himself beaten, I 698. Probably *see* for recreant.

- Creast**, *pp.* created, 16. 2; B 2293.
Creauunce, *a.* credence, belief, creed, B 915; object of faith, B 340.
Creauunce, *v.* borrow on credit, B 1479; *pr.* *a.* borrows, B 1493; *pp.* B 1556.
Creep, *pt.* *a.* of Crepe.
Creeks, *pl.* crooked devices, wiles, A 4051. See *Creek*, *a.* (1), § 7, in the New E. Dict.
Crepe, *v.* creep, 3. 144; *Creep*, *pt.* *a.* crept, A 4226; *Crepten*, *pt.* *pl.* D 1698; *Cropeu*, *pp.* crept, T. iii. 1011.
Crepul, *a.* cripple, T. iv. 1439.
Crepusculia, *a.* *pl.* twilights, durations of twilight, A. ii. 6. rubric.
Crevasse, *a.* crevice, crack, HF. 2086.
Crinkled, *pp.* full of turns or cranks, L. 2012.
Crisp, *adj.* crisp, curly, HF. 1386; *Crisp*, B. 824.
Cristen, *adj.* Christian, B 222, 1679.
Cristendom, *a.* the Christian religion, B 351; Christianity, G 447.
Cristenly, *adv.* in a Christian manner, B 1122.
Cristianitee, *a.* company of Christians, B 544.
Croce, *a.* staff, stick, D 484. See *Cross*, § 2, in the New E. Dict.
Crois, *a.* cross, 1. 60.
Croked, *adj.* crooked, R. 926; crooked (things), 13. 8; 'tortuous,' A. ii. 28. 32.
Crooks, *pl.* crooks, hooks, L. 640.
Crokke, *a.* earthenware pot, 13. 12.
Crommes, *a.* *pl.* crumbs, G 60.
Crone, *a.* crone, hag, B 432.
Cronique, *a.* chronicle, B 4398.
Croce-lyne, *a.* cross-line, the line from right to left through the centre, A. i. 12. 7.
Crop, *a.* top, sprout, new twig, T. ii. 348; *crop and rote*, top and root, everything, T. v. 1245; *Croppes*, *pl.* tree-tops, ends of branches, R. 1396; new shoots, A 7.
Cropeu, *pp.* of Crepe.
Cruper, *a.* crupper, G 566.
Croce, *a.* cross, 1. 82; *Crois*, 1. 60.
Croslat, *a.* crucible, G 1147.
Crouche, *1 pr.* *a.* mark with the cross (to defend from elves), A 3479; E 1707.
Croude, *v.* push, HF. 2095, *pr.* *a.* *2 p.* dost press, dost push, B 296.
Crouke, *a.* pitcher, jug, A 4158.
Croun, *a.* crown (of the head), A 4041; (referring to the tonsure), B 1499.
Crowned, *pp.* crowned, R. 1266; supreme, F 526.
Croupe, *a.* crupper, D 1559.
Crouperes, *pl.* cruppers, I 433.
Crowding, *a.* pressure, motive power, B 299.
Croya, *a.* cross, A 699, 4286.
Crul, *adj.* curly, A 3314; *pl.* A 81. *Frisio kral*, curly.
Crydestow, *didst thou cry out*, A 1083; *pp.* proclaimed, HF. 2107.
Crynges, *a.* outcry, A 906.
Cryke, *a.* creek, A 409.
Cucurbitæ, *a.* *pl.* cucurbites, G 794. 'Cucurbitæ, a chemical vessel, originally made in the shape of a gourd, but sometimes shallow, with a wide mouth, and used in distillation;' Webster.
Culpa, *mea*, *i. e.* I acknowledge my fault, T. ii. 525.
Culpe, *a.* guilt, blame, I 335.
Culter, *a.* coulter (of a plough), A 3763.
Cunning, *adj.* skilful, *a.* 97.
Cunning, *a.* skill, 5. 167, 487.
Cuppe, *a.* a cup, F 616.
Curacioun, *a.* cure, healing, B 2463; mode of cure, T. i. 791.
Curat, *a.* parish-priest, vicar, A 219 (the words vicar and curate have now, practically, changed places).
Cure, *a.* cure, remedy, T. i. 469; charge, B 2. p. 3. 32; diligence, A 1007; attention, A 303; heed, care, 2. 82; endeavour, B 188; careful purpose, HF. 1298; supervision, D 1333; *I do no cure*, I care not, L. 152; *lyth in his cure*, depends on his care for me, L. 1176; *did his besy cure*, was busily employed, 5. 369; *his lytes cure*, the object of his thoughts always, 4. 131, *honest cure*, care for honourable things, C 557; *in cure*, in her power, B 230.
Curiositee, *a.* curious workmanship, HF. 1178; intricacy, 18. 81.
Curious, *adj.* careful, attentive, B 1433; eager, R. 1052; skilful, A 577, delicately made, A 196; magical, F 1120.
Curours, *a.* *pl.* runners, couriers, HF. 2128.
Curvednesse, *a.* abominable sin, wickedness, C 276, 400; shrewishness, E 1239; malice, B 1821.
Curteis, *adj.* courteous, hence, compassionate, I 246; courteous, R. 538.
Curteysse, *a.* courtesy, A 46, 131.
Custom, *a.* custom, D 682; *pl.* payments, I 752; imports, I 567.
Cut, *a.* lot, A 815, 845, 854.
Cutte, *v.* cut, C 954; *Cutted*, *pp.* cut short, L. 973.

D.

Daf, *s.* foolish person, A 4208
Dagged, *adj.* tagged, cut into hanging peaks at the lower edge, I 421.
Dagginge, *s.* a cutting into tags, I 418.
Dagon, *s.* small piece, D 1751.
Dalf, *pl s.* of Delve.
Daliaunce, *s.* gossip, A 211, playful demeanour, favour, 12 8, *pl.* daliaunce, toying 4 66.
Damageous, *adj.* injurious I 438.
Dame, *s.* mother, C 684, dam, A 3260, madam, A 3056, goodwife, D 1707.
Damiselle, *s.* damsel, R 1240, *pl.* R 1622.
Dampnacioun, *s.* condemnation, C 500; curse, D 1007.
Dampne, *ger.* to condemn, L 401, *pp.* A 1175, 1342, damned, I 191.
Dan, *s.* for Denmus, lord, sir, a title of respect, HF. 161 B 3982, Daun, HF 137.
Dappel-gray, *adj.* dapple-gray, B 3074
Dar, 1 *pr.* *s.* dare, A 1151, Darst, 2 *pr.* *s.* darest, T. 1 708 B 800, Darstow, darest thou, L 1450, Dorste, 1 *pl.* *s.* darst might venture to L 2054, *pl.* *s.* A 217, Dorstestow, wouldst thou dare, T 1 707, 1 *pl.* *s.* *subj.* might dare, s. 60, See Durre
Dare, *pr.* *pl.* dare, B 1293.
Darketh, *pr.* *s.* lies hid, L 816.
Darreyne, *ger.* to decide one's right to, A 1833, to decide, A 1631 to decide your claims to, A 1600. O.F. *deraisnier*
Dart, *s.* dart, 6. 40; given as a prize in an athletic contest, D 75
Darwen, *pl.* *pl.* darw, are dazzled, H 31, *pp.* confused, HF 658. O.F. *daser* Godefroy.
Date-tree, *s.* date-tree, R 1364.
Daun, see Dan
Dauce, *s.* dance, R 808, play, T 14 141, set, company, HF. 619, the new d, the new dance, T. 11 551, the old d, the old game, the old way of love, A 476, C 79.
Dauncen, *v.* dance, A 1202.
Daunger, *s.* disdain, R 1524, imperiousness, 7 180, liability, A 1840, sparing, stint, R 1147 power, control, R 1470, Power to harm (personified), L 100, in d, within his jurisdiction, under his control, A 603, in his d, at her disposal R 1049, with d, sparingly, charily, D 521
Daungerous, *adj.* forbidding, sparing, A 517, niggardly, D 1427; grudging, hard

to please, R 1482, 1492 reluctant 1034 inhospitable, R. 490
Daunten, 1 *name*, *subline* R 48 1034 T 11 300, 14. 1280, *pp.* frightened, 403.
Dawe, *r.* dawn B 3872, E 1842
Daweninge, *s.* dawn, A 1214 B 407.
Dawes, *s.* *pl.* days, F 1182.
Dawing, *s.* the Dawn Aurora, I 1400.
Dawning, *s.* dawn, s. 202.
Day, *s.* lay A 10, time B 1074 appointed time for repaying money to 604 a day, one day, some day 1 141
Dayes, *pl.* appointed days for 1034 F 1508, 1575; Lifetime, B 118 1034 at this time, E 104
Dayerye, *s.* dairy A 507 *pl.* 1034
Dayesye, *s.* daisy, L 104 1034 1034
Debaat, *s.* strife, A 120 B 1034 1034 mental conflict 1 1034 1034 T 11 751
Debate, *v.* fight, war, B 2034 1034 1034
Debonair, *adj.* calm tongue, 1034 I 658 Debonaire *few* well-mannered B 4001, gracious, courteous 1034 a kind person 1 604
Debonairely, *adv.* graciously, 1 851, 1034, 1034 grace, HF. 2013, courteous T 11 1250
Debonairetee, *s.* gentleness 1034 graciousness, 6 1034
Deceivable, *adj.* deceived 1034
Declamed, *pl.* *pl.* discussed I 1034
Declinacioun, *s.* declination 1034 distance N. or S. of the equator 1034 F 1034
Declyneth, *pr.* *s.* turns 1034 1034 1034 *pr.* *s.* possesses declination 1034 1034
Declyninge, *adv.* sloping B 1034
Decoped, *pp.* hit, cut down 1034 pierced cut in openwork pattern 1034
Dede, dead, see Dèd
Dede, *ger.* to grow dead, become 1034 HF 551
Deden, *pl.* *pl.* did, T 1 81 1034
Dedicat, *pp.* dedicated 1034
Deduyt, *s.* pleasure, A 217
Deed, *s.* deed, act, 1034 1034 in dede, indeed A 604 1034 with the dede, with the act 1034 70, Dede, *pl.* A 8 dèda 1034
Dèd, *adv.* dead, R 215 dead hae, R 441, for d as dead T 1034

- Dede**, *def.* L. 876; *d. sleep*, heavy sleep, 3. 127; **Dede**, *pl.* sluggish, 5. 187; **woundes dede**, deadly wounds, 3. 1211.
- Dēdly**, *adj.* mortal, I 99; dying, L. 885; deathlike, 3. 162.
- Dēdly**, *adv.* mortally, G 476.
- Dēef**, *adj.* deaf, T. i. 753; **Deve**, *pl.* G 286.
- Deel**, *a. part.* R. 1074; **never a deel**, not at all, I 1007; not a bit, HF. 331; **every deel**, every whit, wholly, T. ii. 590; **Deel**, *pl.* times, 6. 35; **Del**, *part.* R. 28; share, 3. 1001; **every d.**, every whit, A 1835; **eches a d.**, every whit, T. iii. 694; **a greet del**, to a large extent, A 415; very often, 3. 1159; **no del**, no whit, T. i. 1089, **never a d.**, not a whit, 3. 543.
- Deer**, *a. pl.* animals, B 1926.
- Dees**, *pl.* dice, T. ii. 1347, iv. 1098.
- Dees**, *a. date*, HF. 1360, 1658.
- Death**, *a. death*, B 3567; pestilence, plague, T. i. 483; **the death**, the pestilence (with special references to the pestilences of 1349, 1361, and 1369), A 605.
- Defame**, *a. dishonour*, B 3788, C 612.
- Defaute**, *a. fault*, 22. 56; fault (as a hunting term), 3. 384 (**were on a defeaute y-falle**, had a check); lack, defect, want, 3. 5, 25, 223; sin, B 3718, C 372.
- Defence**, *a. resistance*, L. 1931; hindrance, R. 1142; covering, 5. 273; prohibition, T. iii. 138; denial, D 467.
- Defendaunt**, *a.*; **in his d.**, in defending himself, in self-defence, I 572.
- Defende**, *ger.* to defend, R. 2631; to forbid, G 1470.
- Defet**, *pp.* exhausted, (lit. defeated), T. v. 618; cast down, T. v. 1219.
- Defendeth**, *pr.* *a.* forbids, I 651; *pp.* I 600.
- Defoulen**, *v.* trample down, **hence**, defile, F 1418; *pp.* trampled down, I 191; defiled, T. v. 1339; disgraced, B 4. m 7. 47 (*Lat. turpatus*).
- Defyne**, *i. pr.* *a.* pronounce, declare, T. iv. 321.
- Degree**, *a. rank*, 5. 453; condition, position, A 1841; step, R. 485; footstep, B 4. m 1. 42; horizontal stripes, B 1. p 1. 38; of the zodiac, F 386; **at lowe degree**, R. 883; **at alle degrees**, in every way, A 3724.
- Degysē**, *adj.* elaborate, I 417.
- Degysinease**, *a.* elaborate style, I 414.
- Degysinge**, *a.* elaborate ornamentation, I 425.
- Dekne**, *a. deacon*, I 891.
- Del**, *see Deel*.
- Delen**, *ger.* to have dealing with, A 247;
- Dele**, *ger.* to have dealings, T. iii. 322; to deal, L. 1158; *v.* argue, T. ii. 1749;
- Deled**, *pt. pl.* had intercourse, L. 1517;
- Deled**, *pp.* apportioned, D 2249.
- Deliberen**, *v.* deliberate, consider, T. iv. 169; *pt. a.* deliberated, B 2916.
- Delicacye**, *a.* amusement, B 3669; wantonness, 9. 58.
- Delicat**, *adj.* delicious, E 1646; delicate, E 682; dainty, I 432.
- Delices**, *a. pl.* delights, B 2602; tender feelings, B 2. p 4. 78; sinful pleasures, B 3. p 7. 1.
- Delicious**, *adj.* giving delight, T. v. 443.
- Deliciously**, *adv.* luxuriously, E 2025.
- Delitable**, *adj.* delightful, R. 1440; **delicions**, R. 1371; *pt.* delightful, F 899.
- Delitably**, *adv.* pleasingly, B 4. p 1. 2.
- Delitons**, *adj.* delicious, R. 489.
- Deliver**, *adj.* quick, active, A 84.
- Delivare**, *v.* set free, 13. 7; do away with, T. iii. 1012; *ger.* to set free (after a legal decision), 5. 508.
- Deliverly**, *adv.* nimbly, B 4606; quickly, T. ii. 1088.
- Delivernesse**, *a.* activity, B 2355.
- Delphyn**, *a.* the constellation Dolphin, HF. 1006.
- Delte**, *pt. a.* of Delen.
- Delve**, *v.* dig, A 536; **Dalf**, *i. pt. a.* dug, B 5. p 1. 99; **Dolve**, *pt. a.* **subj.** had digged, B 5. p 1. 87; **Dolven**, *pp.* buried, 3. 122. A. S. *delfen*.
- Delyce**, *a. pl.* delights, pleasures, C 547, G 3; favourites (*Lat. delicias*), B 2. p 3. 74.
- Delyt**, *adj.* delicate, fine, B 1. p 1. 23. O. F. *delid*.
- Delyt**, *a.* delight, joy, 3. 606; pleasing ornamentation, L. 1199.
- Delytable**, *adj.* delightful, L. 321.
- Delyte**, *v.* delight, please, 5. 27; **refl.** take pleasure, 5. 66; **Delyte me**, *i. pr.* *a.* delight, L. 30.
- Delytous**, *adj.* delicious, R. 90.
- Demaunde**, *a.* question, T. iv. 1694, v. 839.
- Deme**, *v.* judge, 14. 6; decide, conclude, T. ii. 371; suppose, 4. 158; give a verdict, G 505; **Demen**, *v.* deem, judge, A 3161; decide, B 3045; *i. pr.* *a.* condemn, D 2024; decree, C 199; suppose, E 753; **Demeth**, *imp. pl.* judge, decide, L. 453; suppose, A 3172.
- Demeine**, *v.* manage, HF. 939.
- Demeyne**, *a.* dominion, B 3855.
- Demoniak**, *a.* madman, D 2240.
- Demonstracioun**, *a.* proof, HF. 797.

- Demonstratif**, *adj.* demonstrable, D 2272.
- Denticle**, *s.* pointer, A 1 23; See **Almury**.
- Denye**, *v.* refuse, T ii 1480, **Denoyed**, *pp.* denied, B 1 p 20, 16.
- Depardieux**, *intery* on the part of God, by God's help, T ii 1758, 1212.
- Departie**, *v.* separate, past. 7 285, **sever**, T ii 531 divide, I 1006, *imp.* *s.* distinguish, T iii 404.
- Departinge**, *s.* dividing, I 425, 1008, departure, *s.* 675 separation, 4 25.
- Depe**, *adv.* deeply, 4 165 7 8.
- Depeynted**, *pp.* depicted, L 1025, painted, R 478, stained, T v 1099.
- Depper**, *adv. comp.* deeper, T ii 485; B 620.
- Depraven**, *pr. pl.* calumniate, 4 207.
- Depressioun**, *s.* the angular distance of the southern pole from the horizon, A ii 25 10.
- Dere** *adj.* dear, 1 09, 4 147.
- Dere**, *adv.* dearly, 1 80, 18 26.
- Dere** *s. dat.* deer, R 1421.
- Dere** *v.* injure, harm, T i 651, A. S. *derian*.
- Dereling**, *s.* darling, A 1703.
- Derk**, *adj.* dark, R 1000, inauspicious, 4 120, *as s.* inauspicious position, 4 122.
- Derke**, *s.* darkness, gloom, 1 600.
- Derkest**, *adj. superl.* darkest, B 304.
- Derkly**, *adv.* darkly, HF 51.
- Derknesse** *s.* darkness, B 1451.
- Derne**, *adj.* secret, A 1203, 3278.
- Derre**, *adv. comp.* more dearly, T i 170, 171, A 1448.
- Derth**, *s.* dearth, HF 1074.
- Deryveth**, *pr. s.* is derived, A 1006.
- Desceivaunce**, *s.* deception, B 1 p 8, 51.
- Descencioun**, *s.* descension, A ii 4 55. The technical signification seems to be—the 'house' or portion of the sky just above the western horizon, so that a planet in his descension is about to set.
- Descensories**, *s. pl.* G 702. 'Descensories, vessels used in chemistry for extracting oils *per descensum*,' Tyrwhitt.
- Descerne**, *v.* discern, T iv 301.
- Descharge**, *pr. s. subj.* discharge, I 360.
- Desclaundred**, *pp.* slandered, B 671.
- Descryve**, *v.* describe, R 705, HF 1105.
- Desdeyn**, *s.* disdain, contempt, A 780.
- Desert**, *s.* merit, 4 11; *pl.* merits, T iii 1207.
- Deserte**, *adj.* lonely, HF 417.
- Deservedest**, *s. pl. s.* didst deserve, C 216.
- Desespaired**, *pp.* in despair, 0 7.
- Desespeir**, *s.* despair, T 1 005, 6 0.
- Desesperaunce**, *s.* hopelessness, I 5 54 1307.
- Desherite**, *ger.* to disinherit, B 205.
- Deshonestee**, *s.* unseemliness, I 81.
- Desirous**, *adj.* ambitious, 4 09, 273, F 21.
- Deslavee**, *adj.* foul, I 630, unrestrained, I 834. 'Deslavee' *pp.* *lavé*, crasseux, sale, 'Godetrov.
- Desordeynne**, *adj.* unregulated, *disrupte*, I 808, 912.
- Desordinat**, *adj.* inordinate, I 4 1.
- Despeired**, *pp.* sunk in despair, 1 1 v 711.
- Despence**, *s.* expense, I 152, *dispenditure*, money for expenses B 12.
- Despende**, *v.* spend, T 17 2 171, wastest, B 212, *pp.* spent, A 284.
- Despendours**, *pl.* spenders, B 241.
- Despenses**, *pl.* expenditure, B 241.
- Desperacioun**, *s.* despair, 1 21.
- Despitous**, *adj.* spiteful, R 1 123, jealous, I 701, merciless, A 27 273, ful, A 1777, I 305.
- Despitously**, *adv.* scornfully, B 1, angrily, A 4271, maliciously, B 1, cruelly, E 515.
- Desplayeth**, *pr. s.* spreads open, A 1.
- Desponeth**, *pr. s.* disposes, I 10 14.
- Desport**, *s.* diversion, merriment, *disportment*, T 1 502, B 2158.
- Desporte**, *v.* rejoice, T 1 1104.
- Despoyled**, *pp.* robbed, I 604.
- Despyt**, *s.* malice, spite, T 1 502, tempt. disdain, I 1870, scorn, I 1 171, dishonour, 1 1 deed expressing contempt, B 606 d. of, in contempt of, 5 28, *dispyt* in contempt of you, B 1751, *dispyt* scorn of him, L 114.
- Dearay**, *s.* contusion, I 927.
- Desseveraunce**, *s.* separation, T 1 10.
- Destemperaunce**, *s.* inclemency, I 1 p 11, 102.
- Destempred**, *pp.* distempered, I 10.
- Destinal**, *adj.* fatal, B 1 1 1, *destine*, B 4 p 6, 101.
- Destourbe**, *ger.* to disturb, *disturb*, C 410, *pp.* *s.* hinder, interrupts, B 2107.
- Destourbing**, *s.* trouble, 18 24.
- Destrat**, *pp.* distracted, B 1 p 10.
- Destreyne**, *v.* distress, T 1 10, constrain, force, H 101.
- Destroubled**, *pp.* disturbed, 1 1.
- Desyringe**, *adj.* desirous, B 27.

- Determinat**, *adj.* determinate, exact, fixed, D 1459; properly placed (on the astrolabe), A. li. 18 (rubric).
- Détermýne**, *v.* come to an end, T. iii. 379; Determined, *pp.* settled, B 3. p. 4. 9.
- Dette**, *s.* debt, L. 541; A 280.
- Detteless**, *adj.* free from debt, A 382.
- Dettour**, *s.* debtor, B 1587, D 155.
- Deus hic**, God (he) here, D 1770.
- Deve**, *pl.* of Deaf, deaf.
- Devil**, *s.* L. 1493; what d., what the devil, L. 2694; how d., how the devil, T. i. 623; a d. meyn, in the way to the devil, in the devil's name, A 3134; a twenty devil way, in the way of twenty devils, i. e. to utter destruction, L. 2177; an exclamation of petulance, A 3711, 4257.
- Devoir**, *a.* duty, T. iii. 1043; A 3598.
- Devyn**, *s.* astrologer, T. i. 66.
- Devyno**, *v.* guess, T. v. 288; *ger.* T. iii. 765; to prophesy (by), 5. 182; Devyno, *pr.* *pl.* suspect, T. ii. 1745; Devyno, *pr.* *s.* *subj.* let (him) guess, HF. 14.
- Devynerece**, *s.* female diviner, T. v. 1522.
- Devys**, *s.* contrivance, R. 1413; supposition, R. 651; direction, A 816; at his d., according to his own wish, R. 1326; at point d., with great exactness or exactitude, R. 840; Devyses, *pl.* heraldic devices, badges, L. 1272.
- Devysse**, *v.* to relate, tell, describe, T. iii. 41; A 34; recommend, T. li. 388; devise, suggest, ordain, L. 437, plan, L. 1453; *ger.* to tell, describe, 5. 398; to relate, A 994; to frame, E 749; to tell of, T. i. 277; *pr.* *s.* narrates, describes, 5. 317; *pr.* *pl.* imagine, discourse, F 261; *pp.* described to, told, R. 476.
- Devysing**, *s.* arrangement, A 2496.
- Dewe**, *adj.* due, 1 867.
- Dextre**, *s.* a courser, war-horse, B 2103. *Fr.* *destrier*, a war-horse, *Low Lat.* *dextrarius*. The squire rode his own horse, and led his master's horse beside him, on his right hand.
- Deye**, *s.* dairywoman, B 4036. *Icel.* *drigga*.
- Deye**, *v.* die, 5. 463, 651; Deyde, *pl.* *s.* A 2840; Deyel, *pp.* R. 456; Deyde, *pl.* *s.* *subj.* should die, A 3427.
- Deyen**, *ger.* to dye, to dip, B 4. m. 6. 14.
- Deyinge**, *s.* death, B 1830; lay on deyng, lay a-dying, B 2221.
- Deyne**, *v.* deign, 7. 231; Dayneth him, *pr.* *s.* he doigns, 7. 181; L. 395; him deynd, he deigned, B 3324, 4371; her deynd, she deigned, 4. 39.
- Deynons**, *adj.* scornful, A 3941.
- Deyntee**, *s.* worth, value, D 208; took less d. for, set less value on, 7. 141; a peculiar pleasure, B 130; pleasure, F 681, 1003; Deyntees, *pl.* dainties, A 346.
- Deyntee**, *s.* as *adj.* dainty, pleasant, rare, T. v. 438; good, A 168.
- Deyntevous**, *adj.* dainty, E 262.
- Deys**, *s.* dais, platform, the high table in a dining-hall, A 370, 2200.
- Diademe**, *s.* diadem, crown of an emperor, 14. 7.
- Diapred**, *pp.* as *adj.* variegated, diversified with figures, A 2158.
- Dich**, *s.* ditch, A 3964.
- Diohen**, *v.* make a dyke round, L. 708; *pp.* provided with a moat, A 1883.
- Dide**, *Didest*; see Doon.
- Diete**, *s.* diet, daily food, A 435.
- Diffamacioun**, *s.* defamation, D 1324.
- Diffame**, *s.* ill report, E 540, 791.
- Diffame**, *ger.* to dishonour, HF. 1581; *v.* cry down, D 2212.
- Diffiniçioun**, *s.* clear exposition, D 25.
- Diffiniache**, *pr.* *s.* *subj.* define, B 3. p. 1. 36.
- Diffinitif**, *adj.* definite, final, C 172.
- Diffusioun**, *s.* prolixity, T. iii. 290.
- Diffye**, *1 pr.* *s.* defy, spurn, D 1928.
- Diffyne**, *ger.* define, state clearly, 5. 529; *2 pr.* *pl.* conclude, HF. 344.
- Digestible**, *adj.* easy to be digested, A 417.
- Dighte**, *v.* prepare, L. 1288; prepare (himself), L. 1000; Dighte me, prepare myself to go, B 3103; ordain, place, T. iv. 1183; lie with, D 767; *pl.* *s.* 758. hastened, betook himself, T. ii. 948; lay with, D 308; Dight, *pp.* arrayed, equipped, T. iii. 1773; served, H 312; prepared, R. 941; prepared him to go, B 3719; Dighte, *pp.* *pl.* prepared, L. 2611. A. S. *dīhtan*, from Lat. *dictare*.
- Digne**, *adj.* worthy, T. i. 429; honourable, noble, B 1175, C 695; suitable, B 778, proud, disdainful, A 517; scornful, repellent, A 3964.
- Dignely**, *adv.* scornfully, T. ii. 1024.
- Dignitee**, *s.* worth, dignity, C 701, 782; rank, E 470. Dignity, in astrology, signifies the advantages which a planet has when in a particular position in the zodiac, or in a particular position with regard to other planets (Bailey).
- Dilatacioun**, *s.* diffuseness, B 232.
- Diluge**, *s.* deluge, 1 830.
- Dint**, *s.* stroke, HF. 534.
- Direct**, *adj.* directed, addressed, 18. 75;

order, L. 1315.
Disciplyne, a bodily mortification
 1052.
Disclaundre, a reproach, T. iv. .
 slander, I 623.
Disconfiture, a defeat, A 1008; g
 7. 326.
Disconfort, a discouragement, disc
 fort, A 2010; grief, woe, T. iv. 311.
Disconforten, v. discourage, A 2704.
Discordable, discordant, T. iii. 1753.
Discordances, s. pl. discords, I 275.
Discorden, pr. pl. disagree, B 4. I
 208.
Discordinge, adj. different, B 3. p 2. 1
 (Lat. *disidentes*.)
Discovered, pp. revealed, G 1468.
Discover, pp. uncovered; *as d.*, w
 unprotected, I 714.
Discryve, v. describe, T. v. 267; Discr
 v. T. iv. 802.
Discure, v. reveal, discover, 3. 549.
Discussed, pp. discussed, 5. 624; driv
 away, B 1. m 3. 1.
Disdeyn, a disdain, R. 296.
Disencreaseth, pr. a. decreases, B 5.
 6. 85.
Disee, a discomfort, grief, misery,
 216, 277; T. ii. 987; sorrow, 7. 226; d
 pleasure, T. ii. 147; disease, ill, HF. 8
 inconvenience, I 609; distress, B 61
 unrest, F 1314.
Disceen, ger. to trouble, T. iii. 1468;
 vex, T. iv. 1304; distress, T. i. 573.
Disceperat, adj. without hope, HF. 20
Disfigurat, adj. disguised, 5. 222.
Disfigure - 2120

- part, G 875; *pp.* separated, B 4. p 3. 19.
- Disseveraunce**, *a.* severing, B 3. p 11. 64.
- Dischevele**, *adj.* with hair flowing down, c. 235. See **Dischevele**.
- Dissimulen**, *v.* dissimulate, T. i. 322, iii. 434.
- Dissimulunge**, *a.* dissimulation, dissembling, T. v. 1613, G 1073.
- Dissimulour**, *a.* disssembler, B 4418.
- Disslaundred**, *pp.* defamed, L. 1031.
- Dissolveth**, *pr.* *a.* puts an end to, B 2. p 3. 92.
- Distanta**, *adj.* *pl.* distant; *evens distant*, equidistant, A. i. 17. 52.
- Distempereunce**, *a.* inclemency, I 421.
- Distempre**, *adj.* distempered, furious, B 4. p 3. 125.
- Distempre**, *v.* vex, B 2436; *imp.* *a.* be out of temper, D 2195.
- Disteyne**, *v.* stain, bedim, dull, L. 255.
- Distingwed**, *pp.* distinguished, B 2. p 5. 75.
- Distourbe**, *v.* disturb, T. iv. 563; (*to*) interfere with, T. iv. 934; prevent, T. iv. 1103. See **Destourbe**.
- Distreyne**, *v.* constrain, A 1816; get into his grasp, clutch, *to.* 8; *imp.* *a.* constrain, T. v. 596; **Distreyneth**, *pr.* *a.* secures, clutches, grasps, s. 337; afflicts, F 820; *pp.* misled, T. ii. 840; assessed, taxed, I 752.
- Disturbed**, *pp.* altered, T. ii. 622.
- Disturne**, *v.* turn aside, T. iii. 718.
- Dites**, *a.* ditty, song, B 3. p 1. 2; *pl.* HF. 622. See **Dyte**.
- Diurne**, *adj.* diurnal, E 1795.
- Diverse**, *adj.* diverse, various, s. 653; *dat.* different, 2. 17.
- Diversely**, *adv.* in different ways, R. 1639.
- Diversitee**, *a.* variety, T. v. 1793.
- Divinistre**, *a.* theologian, A 2811.
- Divisioun**, *a.* distinction, A 1781; difference, *to.* 33; *of my d.*, under my influence, 4. 273.
- Divynalles**, *pl.* divinations, I 605.
- Divynen**, *v.* guess, T. iii. 458; *pr.* *a.* declare, *to.* 19; *pres.* *pl.* guessing, A 2515.
- Divyninge**, *a.* opinion, A 2521.
- Divynis**, *pl.* theologians, A 1322.
- Divynour**, *a.* seer, soothsayer, B 5. p 3. 149.
- Do**; see **Doon**.
- Doctour**, *a.* doctor, A 411; (*i.e.* St. Augustine), C 117; theologian, I 85; *pl.* teachers, D 1648.
- Dogerele**, *adj.* doggerel, B 2115.
- Dogge**, *a.* dog, D 1569, E 2014.
- Doghter**, *a.* daughter, L. 114; B 151; **Doghtren**, *pl.* L. 1963; **Doughtren**, *pl.* T. iv. 22.
- Doinges**, *pl.* deeds, L. 1681.
- Doke**, *a.* duck, s. 498, 589, A 3576.
- Dokke**, *a.* dock (plant), T. iv. 461.
- Dokked**, *pp.* cut short, A 590.
- Dolve**, **DoIVEN**; see **Dolve**.
- Domb**, *adj.* dumb, HF. 656.
- Domeeday**, *a.* doom's day, HF. 1284.
- Domestman**, *a.* judge, B 3680, I 594.
- Dominioun**, *a.* power, A 2758; dominion, C 560; chief influence, F 352; supremacy, H 181.
- Dominus**; see **Corpus**.
- Domus Dedall**, the labyrinth of Daedalus, HF. 1920.
- Don**, *imp.* *a.* don, put on, T. ii. 954.
- Don**, **DONE**; see **Doon**.
- Dong-carte**, *a.* dung-cart, B 4226.
- Dongecoun**, *a.* keep-tower, A 1117.
- Donne**, *adj.* *pl.* dun, dusky, T. ii. 908; dun-coloured, s. 334.
- Doom**, *a.* judgement, F 928; opinion, B 3127; sentence, decision: *hir d.*, the decision passed on them, s. 308; **Dome**, *dat.* opinion, T. i. 100; judgement, HF. 1905; C 637; *to my d.*, in my opinion, R. 901; *stonde to the d.*, abide by the decision, s. 546; **Domes**, *pl.* judgements, A 323.
- Doon**, *v.* do, execute, A 960; do, s. 194; act, B 90; cause, B 3618; *doon us hange*, cause us to be hung, C 790; *don her companye*, accompany her, 4. 125; *lest don cryen*, caused to be cried, F 46; *do*, *v.* cause, T. iv. 1683; use, B 2224; fulfil, B 1653; make, s. 145; *do werche*, cause to be built, G 545; **Dons**, *ger.* to do, T. i. 1026; *what to done*, what is to be done, s. 689; *for to done*, a fit thing to do, 163; to be done, L. 1597; **Doon**, *ger.* to do, A 78, 768; to commit, I 90; to cause, R. 1178; to force, s. 221; *to don*, from doing, B 4. p 6. 323; **Do**, *ger.* to make, s. 1260; to cause, T. ii. 1022; to commit, I 129; **Doust**, *a.* *pr.* *a.* makest, C 312; **Dostow**, doest thou, L. 315; **Dooth**, *pr.* *a.* causes, A 2206; **Doth**, *pr.* *a.* makes, 2. 7; causes, 6. 21; **Doth forth**, continues, E 1015; **Doon**, *pr.* *pl.* do, A 268; **Do**, *imp.* *a.* make, H 13; bring (it) about, A 2405; cause, G 32; *do hange*, cause me to be hung, G 1029; *do fecche*, cause to be fetched, B 662; *do weg*, put away, lay aside, G 487; take away, A 3287; *do stryken hir out*, cause her to be struck out, D 1564; *do comē*, cause to come, B 2035; **Dooth**, *imp.* *pl.* do

- ye, C 746, I 105; *and dooth*, pray do, F 458.
 Didest, 2 pt. a. didat, T. iii 301, Dide,
 pt. a. didi, 3 373, caused R 607, put on,
 B 2047 *dide hem drive*, caused to be
 drawn, B 1812 *dide d in steen*, caused to
 be slain, caused men to have them
 slain *steen*, like *don*, is in the intim-
 mood, D 2042 *dide of took off*, 2 516,
 Dide, pt. a. subj. should do, F 1404,
 Dider, pt. pl. made, 22 28 pt. pl. subj.
 should do, L 723; Doon, pp. done,
 1 54 past, ended, 3 40, *doon to de the*,
 done to death, L 889; *doon make*,
 caused to be made, E 253, *hath doon*
you kept has caused you to be pre-
 served, E 1008, *doon ther write*, caused
 to be written or described there, R
 413, *don to dye* done to death, murdered,
 R 1004; Do, pp. done, L 927 ended, E
 2440.
 Dore, s. door, R 517 A 550, *out at d.*, out
 of doors, D 1757, H 306.
 Dormant *table dormant*, a permanent
 side-table, A 351.
 Dorre Dorring, see Durre, Durring.
 Dorste, see Dar.
 Dortour, s. dormitory, D 1835.
 Doseyn s. a dozen, A 578.
 Dossers, pl. baskets to carry on the back,
 HF 1040.
 Dostow, doest thou, D 210.
 Dotard, adj. foolish, D 201.
 Dotz, i. dote, grow foolish, L 261 a.
 Doten act foolishly, G 981.
 Doth, pr. a. causes, R 389; Doth... *caris*,
 causes to be carried, A 1411, makes, F
 1257, imp. pl. do ye, B 2782. See Doon.
 Double, adj. twofold, 4. 109, decentful,
 HF 286.
 Doubleness, s. duplicity, 7. 159, q. 64.
 Doucet, adj. dulcet, i. e. dulcet (pipe),
 sweet-sounding pipe, HF 1221.
 Doughter, s. daughter, T. m. 3, Dought-
 tren, pl. T. iv 22.
 Doumb, adj. dumb, A 774.
 Doun s. down, soft feathers, q. 45.
 Doun, adv. down, F 411 *up and doun*, in
 all directions in all ways, B 51.
 Doune, dat. down, lull, B 1086.
 Dounere, adv. more downward, A. ii. 12.
 22.
 Doun-right, adv. at once, H 228.
 Dounward, adv. outward, southward, A
 ii. 4 61.
 Doutance, s. doubt, T. iv. 963; pl. per-
 plexities, T. i. 302.
 Doute, s. doubt, 1 25; fear, F 1006, I 91,
 peril, L 1613; suspense, E 1721; lack,
 T. ii. 366, *out of doute*, doubtless, 1 171
sure d., without doubt, D 188 *with*
outen d., certainly, L 81.
 Doutsless, adv. without doubt *veraus*,
 T. ii. 493 A 1831.
 Douten, v. fear, I 648, pr. s. fear, I 431.
 Douth, imp. pl. fear, T. i. 181.
 Doutous, adj. doubtful, T. iv 92.
 D'outremere, adv. from beyond the sea,
 foreign, imported, 2 251.
 Douve, s. dove, 2 141, pages 2 C 17.
 Dowaire, s. dower, E 841.
 Dowe 1 pr. s. grant give, T. i. 18.
 Dowve see Douve.
 Dradde, see Drede.
 Draf, s. draft, refuse of corn, chaff, 1 97,
 L 112 a.
 Draf-sek s. sack full of draft, 1 41.
 Draggas, pl. digestive sweetmeats, A
 426 in Ms. Harl. only, rather *drag* and
dragges.
 Dragoun, s. dragon, L 140, 151, 152 of
 the *dr.*, the Dragon's tail, A. ii. 1 21,
 the point where a planet *asc.* the *dr.*
 passed from the northern to the southern
 side of the ecliptic. The opposite side
 was called the Dragon's Head.
 Drasty, adj. filthy worthless, B. i. 10.
 Cf. A. S. *dræsten*, *destruction* *dræst*.
 Drat, pr. a. of Drede.
 Draught of drink, L 267, 268, 269
 chess, 2 682.
 Drawe, v. draw, incline, F 114, 115, 116,
 withdraw himself, F 455, bring forward,
 R. 6, v. attract, R 1181, recall, 1 171;
 per to draw, to carry, A 141, to carry
 back, I 239, Draweth along pr. s. 1 171
 longs, B. i. m. 1 32, Lat. *proferre* pr.
 pl. *refl.* withdraw themselves, I 91.
 Drough, pt. a. drew, A 474, 1 171,
 T. v. 1558 *refl.* drew himself, 1 171,
 B 1711, Draw, pt. a. draw, B. i. 1 171,
 near, D 903, moved as the sun, 1 171,
 hoisted, L 1563, Draw, pt. a. draw,
 3. 804 *drawe to record*, 1 171, 1 171,
 witness, 10 22, Drawe, pt. pl. drew,
 1078 Drawe, pp. drawn, T. ii. 171,
 pres. part. resorting, R 111.
 Drecche, v. be tedious, T. ii. 1174, pr. s.
 vex, T. ii. 1471, 2 pr. pl. tarr, T. ii.
 1446, pp. vexed, troubled, B 171.
 Drecching, s. prolonging, I 171,
 Drecching, delay, T. ii. 843.
 Drede s. dread, fear, A 1908, uncertain,
 17 28, doubt, 5. 52, *at an drec* with-
 out doubt, B 862, E 1175, *at an*
 without doubt, E 634, pl. fears, E
 463.

- Drede**, *v.* dread, fear, *i.* 76; *refl.* dread, A 660; *ger.* to be dreaded, to be feared, B 4253; **Drat**, *pr. s.* dreadeth, dreads, T. iii. 328; **Dredde**, *i.* *pt. s.* was afraid, T. ii. 422; **Dradda**, *pt. s.* feared, B 3402; **Dradde** him, was afraid, B 3918; **Dradden**, *pt. pl.* G 15; **Drad**, *pp.* E 69.
- Dredeles**, *adj.* fearless, B 3, m 12. 11.
- Dredeles**, *adv.* without doubt, certainly, 3. 764.
- Dredful**, *adj.* terrible, B 3558; *fearful*, timid, L 109; *cautious*, A 1479.
- Dredfully**, *adv.* timidly, T. ii. 1128.
- Dreint**, -e; see **Drenchen**.
- Dremed** me, *pt. s.* I dreamt, R. 51.
- Dreminges**, *pl.* dreams, B 4280.
- Drenchen**, (*v.*) *ger.* to drown, A 3617; **Drenche**, *v.* drown, HF. 205; *do me drenche*, make (men) drown me, cause me to be drowned, E 2201; **Drenchen** (*v.*) *c.* be drowned, A 3521; be overwhelmed, L 2919; *pr. s.* swamps, I 363; **Dreinta**, *pt. s.* (1) drowned, 3. 72; **Dreynte**, *pt. s.* drowned, I 839; **Dreynte**, *pt. s.* (2) was drowned, B 923; **Dreynte**, *3 pt. pl.* were drowned, T. iv. 930; *pt. pl.* drowned, F 1378; **Drenched**, *pp.* drowned, L 2178; **Dreynt**, *pp.* 3. 148; **Dreynte**, *pp.* as *def. adj.* drowned, B 69; *pp. pl.* HF. 233.
- Drenching**, *a.* drowning, A 2456, B 485.
- Dreerinease**, *a.* sadness, T. i. 701.
- Drery**, *adj.* sad, E 514; terrified, L 810.
- Dresse**, *v.* direct, 14. 3; dispose, get ready, T. ii. 71; prepare, E 1049; set in order, A 106; *v. refl.* address oneself, E 1027; direct himself, go, A 3468, direct myself, R. 110; address himself, direct himself (*or perhaps*, mount), T. v. 37; **Dresse** her, settle herself, L 804; **Dresse**, *ger.* to direct, B 2308; *ger. refl.* prepare himself, T. v. 279; prepare, 5. 88; *pt. s.* *refl.* raised himself, T. iii. 71; took up his station, A 3358; *pp.* arrayed, E 2361; prepared, 5. 665.
- Dreys**, *adj.* dry, A 3024; as *a.*, 3. 380.
- Dreyeth**, *pr. s.* dries up, drains, I 248.
- Dreynt**, -e; see **Drenche**.
- Drogges**, *pl.* drugs, A 426.
- Drogh**; see **Draws**.
- Droghte**, *a.* drought, A 2, 505.
- Dronkelewe**, *adj.* addicted to drink, B 2383, C 405, D 2042.
- Drough**, *pt. s.* of **Draws**.
- Droughte**, *a.* thirst (*stis*), B 2. p 7. 44.
- Drouped**, *pt. s.* were draggled, A 107.
- Drovy**, *adj.* dirty, muddy, I 816.
- Drow**, -e; see **Draws**.
- Druerye**, *a.* affection, R. 844.
- Drugge**, *ger.* to drudge, A 1416.
- Drunken**, *adj.* causing drunkenness, 5. 181.
- Drye**, *ger.* to endure, T. v. 42; *c.* suffer, endure, 4. 251.
- Dryve**, *v.* drive, F 183; hasten, D 1694; whirl round, 10. 46; pass away, T. v. 394; **dryes** away, pass away, C 628; **Dryveth** forth, *pr. s.* continues, goes on with, T. i. 1092; **Dryfth**, *pr. s.* impels, T. v. 1332; **Dryven** (the day), *pr. pl.* pass (the day), L 2620, **Dröof**, *pt. s.* drove, brought, T. v. 475; incited, T. iii. 994; **Drive**, *pp.* driven, passed away, T. v. 389; completed, F 1230.
- Duttee**, *a.* duty, A 3060; debt, D 1391; sum due, D 1352.
- Dulcarnon**, *a.* an inexplicable dilemma, one's wit's end, T. iii. 931.
- Dulle**, *ger.* to feel dull, T. ii. 1035; makes dull, stupefies, G 1073, 1172; **Dulled**, *pp.* made of none effect, I 233.
- Dun**, *adj.* swarthy, R. 1213, **Donne**, *pt.* dusky, T. ii. 908; dun-coloured, 5. 334.
- Dun**, *a.* the dun horse, H 5. 'Dun is in the mire' is the name of an old rustic game.
- Dungeoun**, *a.* keep-tower, chief castle, L 937.
- Dure**, *v.* last, endure, A 2770; remain, A 1236; live, T. iv. 705; continue, F 826.
- Duresse**, *a.* hardship, T. v. 299.
- Durre**, *ger.* to dare (to do), T. v. 840. See **Durren** in **Stratmann**; and see **Dar**.
- Durring**, *a.* daring, bravery; *d.* **don**, daring to do, courage to execute, T. v. 837.
- Durste**; see **Dar**.
- Dusked**, *pt. pl.* grow dim, A 2806.
- Dwale**, *a.* soporific drink, A 4161.
- Dwelle**, *v.* remain, A 1661; tarry, stay, 3. 712; *ger.* to delay, HF. 252; **Dwelled**, *pp.* dwelt, A 1228; *imp. s.* remain, T. iv. 1440.
- Dwellinges**, *a.* *pl.* delays, B 1. m 1. 33 (*Lat. moras*).
- Dwyned**, *pp.* as *adj.* dwindled, R. 362.
- Dy**, *say*; *Je vous dy*, I tell you, D 1832, 1838.
- Dye**, *v.* die, 2. 7; *ger.* to die, B 114; **Dyde**, *pt. s.* died, HF. 106, 380; *pt. s.* *subj.* would die, D 965. See **Days**.
- Dyen**, *ger.* to dye, B 4648.
- Dyers**, *a.* dyer, A 362.
- Dynges**, *a.* death, B 3073.
- Dyke**, *v.* to make dikes or ditches, A 336.
- Dys**, *pl.* dico, A 1248. See **Dees**.
- Dyts**, *a.* ditty, 23. 16. See **Dites**.
- Dyverseth**, *pr. s.* varies, T. iii. 175.

E.

- Ebbe**, *s.* low water, F 249.
Ebben, *r.* ebb, T. iv. 1145.
Ecclesiaste, *s.* minister, A 728.
Ech, *adj.* each, A 39, 169.
Eche, *v.* increase, augment, T. i. 887, 111.
 (500), *ger.* enlarge, add to, HF. 2065.
Echines, *s. pl.* sea-urchins, B 3. m. 8. 30
 (Lat. *echina*).
Echoon, each one, L. 290, A 2655;
 Echone, *pl.* 7), all, every one, C 114.
Edified, *pp.* built up, B 4. p. 6. 284.
Eek, *adv.* also, eke, moreover, A 5. 41.
Eem, *s.* uncle, T. i. 1022. A. B. & m.
Eest, *adv.* eastward, 3. 88.
Eet, -e, see Ete.
Effect, *s.* deed, reality, T. i. 748, result,
 HF. 5, The effect, for the effect, the
 sequel, L. 621, in effect, in fact, in
 reality, in practice, A 319.
Eft, *adv.* again, A 1669, another time, 3.
 41.
Eft-sone, *adv.* soon after, G 1288, im-
 mediately afterwards, I 89, soon after
 this, H 65, hereafter, G 943, again, B
 900; Eft-sones, *adv.* very soon, L. 2 31.
Egal, *adj.* equal, T. iii. 117.
Egal, *adv.* equally, T. iv. 660.
Egaltee, *s.* equality, I 949.
Egaly, *adv.* equably, B 2. p. 4. 141 im-
 partially, B 6. p. 3. 142.
Egge, *s.* edge, sharp side, T. iv. 937; sword,
 9. 14.
Eggeth, *pr.* s. incites, R. 183.
Egement, *s.* instigation, incitement, B
 842.
Egging, *s.* instigation, E 2135.
Egle, *s.* eagle, HF. 400.
Egre, *adj.* sharp, sour, R. 217; bitter, B
 2407, keen, I 117.
Egreinoine, *s.* agrimony, G 800.
Egren, *v.* incite (lit. make eager), B 4
 p. 6. 335.
Eighte, eighth, F 1280.
Eightetene, eighteen, A 322.
Eightetethe, *ord. adj.* eighteenth, B 5.
Eir, *s.* air, A 1246, 1473.
Eisel, *s.* vinegar, R. 217.
Ekko, *s.* echo, E 1189.
Elde, *s.* old age, age, T. ii. 393, 399; long
 lapse of time, 7. 12.
Elde, *v.* grow old, R. 396, *pr.* s. ages,
 makes old, R. 391.
Elder *adj.* older, B 1720, 2450.
Elder-fader, *s.* grandfather, B 2. p. 4.
 50.
Eldres, *pl.* ancestors, B 3388.
Eleccioun, *s.* choice, 2. 409, 631. *aspiciat*
 in astrology, B 412.
Elenge, *adj.* miserable, B 1412. T. i. m.
Elevat, *pp.* elevated, A. ii. 21. 23.
Elf-queen, *s.* fairy-queen, B 1974. D. m.
Ellebor, *s.* hellebore, *Helleborus* m. 8
 4:54.
Elles, *adv.* else, otherwise, 2. 407. *Elle*
god forbode, God forbid it should be
 otherwise, G 1046.
Elongacioun, *s.* angular distance, A. 4
 25. 60.
Elviah, *adj.* elvish, 2. c. absent in disre-
 nour, B 1891, foolish, G 711. 241.
Embassadrye, *s.* embassy, negotiation,
 B 211.
Embaume, *v.* embalm, L. 100. *pp.*
 covered with balm, R. 660.
Embelif, *adj.* oblique, A. i. 21. 1. 2.
 applied to angles acute, A. ii. 2. 5.
 See the New E. Dict.
Embelised, *pp.* beautified, B. i. p. 7.
Emboied, *pp.* plunged deeply into the
 thicket, quite hidden, 1. 133.
Embracinge, *s.* embrace, I 941.
Embrouded, *pp.* embroidered, adorned,
 A 82.
Embroudinge, *s.* embroidery, I 11.
Embushementa, *pl.* ambuscades, B. m.
Emeraude, *s.* emerald, B. 792.
Emes *gen.* uncle's, T. ii. 460. See *Eem*.
Emforth, *prep.* as far as extends to the
 extent of, A 2210. *Em-* is from *even*
emn, for *even*, even.
Emispheres, *s. pl.* hemispheres, A. 1182.
Empeireden, *pt. pl.* made worse, B. 120.
Emplastre, *s. pr. pl.* plaster over ointment,
 E 2207.
Empoisoned, *pp.* poisoned, B. 100. 200.
Empoisoning, *s.* poisoning, C 80.
Empoysoner, *s.* poisoner, C 804.
Emprenting, *s.* impression, F 84.
Emprinteth, *imp. pl.* impress, E 101.
 Emprinted, *pp.* imprinted, F 84. *that*
 an impression of, E 2117.
Empryse, *s.* enterprise, undertaking, L.
 617, 1452.
Empte, *v.* empty, make empty, G 101.
pp. as *adj.* exhausted, B. i. 1. 10. 20.
 out, shrunken, (Lat. *effectus*), B. i. 2. 1. 20.
Enbasahinge, *s.* bewilderment, amaze-
 ment, B. 4. p. 1. 43.
Enbatailled, *adj.* embattled, R. 10.
Enbibing, *s.* absorption, G 814.
Enbrace, *v.* embrace, hold firmly, 2. 101.
 Enbraced, *pp.* surrounded, T. v. 150.
Enbrouden, *v.* embroider, L. 100. *pp.*
 L. 119, 227.

- Encense**, *a.* incense, A 2429.
Encense, *v.* to offer incense, G 395, 413.
Enchantours, *pl.* wizards, I 603.
Enchaufeth, *pr.* *a.* burns, B 5. m 3. 19.
Enchaunten, *v.* enchant, T. iv. 1395.
Enchesoun, *a.* occasion, reason, B 2783; cause, T. i. 681.
Enclos, *pp.* enclosed, R. 138, 1632.
Enclyning, *a.* inclination, HF. 734.
Encomberous, *adj.* cumbersome, oppressive, burdensome, 18. 42; HF. 862.
Encombraunce, *a.* encumbrance, E 1960.
Encombre, *v.* encumber, L. 2006; *pp.* endangered, stuck fast, A 508; hampered, R. 889; hindered, I 687; embarrassed, weary, A 718.
Encoorporing, *a.* incorporation, G 815.
Encress, *a.* increase, A 2184.
Encress, *v.* increase, *a.* 103; **Encressed**, *pp.* E 408; enriched, B 1271.
Endamagen, *v.* harm, B 1. p 4. 91; *pp.* compromised, B 1. p 1. 73.
Ende, *a.* end, A 15; purpose, B 481; point, R. 973.
Ended, *pp.* finite, B 2. p 7. 113.
Endeless, *adj.* infinite, H 322.
Endelong, *adv.* all along, A 2678; lengthways, A 1991.
Endelong, *prep.* all along, F 993; along, L. 1498; down along, F 416.
Endenting, *a.* indentation, I 417. *Endented* or *Indented* is an heraldic term, signifying notched with regular and equal indentations.
Endere, *a.* cause of the end, A 2776; *i. e.* who doest end, C 218.
Endetted, *pp.* indebted, G 734.
Ending-day, *a.* death-day, 18. 55.
Enditements, *a. pl.* indictments, I 800.
Endlang, *adv.* along, lengthways. See **Endelong**.
Endouted, *pp.* feared (with me), R. 1664.
Endyte, *v.* write, dictate, A 95, 325; *en-* dite, compose, write, L. 414, 2356; relate, G 80; tell, L. 1678; indict, B 2838; *pp.* related, B 3170.
Endyting, *a.* composing, 18. 77; *pl.* compositions, I 1085.
Enfamyned, *pp.* starved, L. 2429.
Enfecteth, *pr.* *a.* infects, L. 2242.
Enforcen, *ger.* to enforce, B 2233; strengthen (your position), D 340; *i. pr.* *a.* *refl.* insist, T. iv. 1016; **Enforcen**, *pr.* *pl.* gain strength, B 2355; *imp.* *a.* endeavour, B 2237.
Enformed, *pp.* informed, E 738, F 335; instructed, I 658.
Enfortunéd, *pt.* *a.* endowed with powers, 4. 259.
Engendre, *v.* procreate, B 3148; produce, B 2582; *v.* beget, E 1272; *pr.* *pl.* are produced, B 4113.
Engendringe, *a.* product, B 2580.
Engendrure, *a.* procreation, B 3137; begetting, 5. 306; generation, D 128, 134; progeny, offspring, I 621; fraternity, I 375.
English, *a.* power of expression in English, L. 66.
Engreggen, *pr.* *pl.* burden, I 979.
Engyn, *a.* contrivance, T. iii. 274; device, R. 511; machine, F 184; skill, HF. 528.
Engyned, *pp.* tortured, racked, B 4290.
Enhabit, *pp.* devoted, T. iv. 443.
Enhauncen, *v.* raise, A 1434; *ger.* to exalt, I 614; **Enhaunceth**, *pr.* *a.* elevates, I 730; *pt.* *a.* raised, B 2291; *pp.* promoted, L. 2411.
Enhaused, *pp.* elevated, lifted above (the horizon), A. ii. 26. 37.
Enhansing, *a.* elevation, A. ii. 39. 26.
Enhort, *ger.* to exhort, A 2851.
Enlaoeth, *pr.* *a.* entangles, B 1. m 4. 23; *pp.* involved, made intricate, B 3. p 8. 6.
Enlumine, *v.* illumine, I 244; *pt.* *a.* E 33.
Enluting, *a.* securing with 'lute,' daubing; with clay, &c., to exclude air, G 766.
Enoynt, *pp.* anointed, A 2961.
Enpeiren, *v.* injure, B 4. p 3. 26.
Enpoysoning, *a.* poisoning, B 1. p 3. 59.
Enprented, *pp.* imprinted, E 2178.
Enpresse, *v.* make an impression on, 21. 8.
Enquere, *v.* enquire, A 3166; search into, B 629.
Enquerings, *a.* inquiry, B 888.
Ensample, *a.* example, A 496, 505; pattern, 3. 911; warning, R. 1539; instance, R. 1584; *in a.* to signify, A. I. 21. 41; *pl.* examples, F 1419; cases, A 2842.
Ensaumpler, *a.* prototype, B 3. m 9. 17.
Enseigne, *a.* ensign, standard, R. 1200.
Enseled, *pp.* sealed up, T. v. 151; fully granted, T. iv. 559.
Entaile, *a.* cutting, intaglio-work, R. 1081; **Entayle**, shape, description, R. 162.
Entaile, *v.* carve, R. 609; *pp.* R. 140.
Entalenton, *pr.* *pl.* stimulate, B 5. p 5. 6.
Entame, *v.* re-open (lit. cut into), 1. 79. O. F. *entamer*.
Enteocheth, *pr.* *a.* infects, B 4. p 3. 83; *pp.* endued with (good) qualities, T. v. 832. O. F. *enteochier*, *entachier*.

F 400, 639; attention, D 1374; endeavour, G 6; feeling, S 532, 580; mind, B 1740; plan, B 147, 206; do thyns a , give heed, S 752; as to comun a , in plain language, F 107.	E
Ententeden , <i>pl. pt.</i> gave their attention, L 1155.	E
Ententif , Ententyf , <i>adj.</i> attentive, HF 1120; B 2205; eager, R 685, diligent, R 436; devoted, R 339; careful, E 1282.	E
Ententify , <i>adv.</i> attentively, HF 616.	E
Entremedled , <i>pp.</i> intermixed, R 906.	
Entraille , <i>a.</i> entrails, B 1763, inside, E 1182.	
Entre , <i>ger.</i> to enter, S 147, 152. In A ii. 44. 4, <i>enters hit</i> :- set down in writing.	
Entrechaungeden , <i>pt. pl.</i> interchanged, exchanged, T iii. 1369; <i>pp.</i> interchanged, T iv. 1043.	E
Entrechaungingen , <i>a.</i> <i>pl.</i> mutations, B 1. m 5. 38; vicissitudes (<i>Lat. uices</i>), B 2. m 3. 20.	E
Entrecomunen , <i>v.</i> intercommunicate, T iv. 1354.	E
Entrecomuninge , <i>a.</i> interchange, B 2. p 7. 63.	E
Entredited , <i>pp.</i> interdicted, I 965.	E
Entree , entry, entrance, R 517, 530, 538; <i>pl.</i> entrances, HF 1945.	E
Entrelaced , <i>pp.</i> intricate, B 3. p 12. 166.	E
Entremedled , <i>pp.</i> intermingled, HF 2124.	E
Entremee , <i>a.</i> intervening course, S 665.	E
' Entremets , certain choice dishes served in between the courses of a feast;' Cotgrave.	E
Entremette , <i>v. refl.</i> interfere, D 834.	E
Entremeten (him), meddle with. S 515. <i>imn a take part (in) meddle with.</i>	E

- Errest**, *s. pr. s. wanderest*, T. iv. 302.
Ers, *s. buttocks*, A 3734. A. S. *ears*.
Erst, *adv. first, at first*, HF. 2075; A 776; before, 16. 21; aforetime, R. 692; at *e.*, first, for the first time, B 1884, G 151; at last, T. i. 842; *e. than*, before, A 1566; *long e. er*, long first before, C 662.
Erthes, *s. pl. lands, countries*, B 1. m 5. 61.
Eschaufen, *ger. to burn; pr. s. chafes*, I 657; *pp. heated*, I 546.
Eschaufinge, *s. heating*, I 537; *pl. enkindlings*, I 916.
Eschaunge, *s. exchange*, A 278; *pl. interchangings*, HF. 697.
Eschew, *adj. averse*, I 971; *Eschu*, E 1812.
Eschewe, *v. escape; Eschu*, *v. avoid*, T. ii. 696, A 3043; *shun*, G 4; *s. pr. pl. eschew, avoid*, T. i. 344; *Eschewed*, *pp.* B 4528; *imp. s. T. ii. 1018*.
Ese, *s. ease*, E 217, 434; *amusement, delight*, A 768, G 746; *do you e.*, give you pleasure, 6. 78; *wel at e.*, fully at ease, T. ii. 750.
Ese, *v. ease*, 3. 556; *relieve*, L. 1704; *give ease (to)*, R. 316; *Esen*, *ger. to entertain*, A 2194; *pp. entertained*, A 29.
Esement, *s. benefit*, A 4179, 4186.
Espace, *s. space of time*, B 2219.
Especies, *s. pl. kinds, varieties (of sin)*, I 448.
Espialle, *s. sets of spies*, B 2509, D 1323.
Espy, *s. spy*, T. ii. 1112.
Espy, *ger. to observe*, R. 795; *v. perceive*, HF. 706; *enquire about*, B 180; *look about*, L. 858.
Essoyne, *s. excuse*, I 164. Mod. E. *excuse*.
Est, *s. east*, B 297, 491, 3657.
Etableth, *pr. s. settles, causes*, B 4. p 4. 51.
Estat, *s. state, condition*, L. 125; *rank*, T. v. 1025; *position*, E 1909; *Estat*, *state, condition, rank*, B 973, 3992, 3647; *way*, E 610; *term of office*, D 2018.
Estatlich, *adj. stately, dignified*, A 140; *suitable to one's estate*, B 3902.
Estatute, *s. ordinances*, B 2. p 1. 48.
Estraunge, *adj. strange*, T. i. 1084.
Estrea, *pl. inward parts, recesses (of a building)*, L. 1715; A 1971; *recesses*, R. 1448; *interior*, A 4205.
Esy, *adj. easy*, A 223; *moderate*, A 441; *gentle*, 5. 382.
Ete, *v. eat*, A 947; *Et*, *pr. s. eats*, L. 1389; *Fet*, *pl. s. ate*, T. v. 1419; A 2048, 3421; *Fete*, *pl. pl. ate*, 9. 11; *Ete*, *pl. pl. 3. 432*; *Eten*, *pp. eaten*, A 4351.
Eterne, *adj. eternal*, A 1109, 1990; *s. eternity*, T. iv. 978.
Ethe, *adj. easy*, T. v. 850.
Etik, *the Ethics of Aristotle*, L. 166.
Evangyle, *s. gospel*, R. 445; *pl. B 666*.
Even, *adj. even, equal, same*, HF. 10; *exact*, R. 1350.
Even, *adv. exactly*, 3. 441; *evenly*, D 2249; *regularly*, R. 526; *Evenesjoynant*, *closely adjoining*, A 1060; *ful even*, *actually*, 3. 1329.
Evene-cristene, *s. fellow-Christian*, I 395, 805.
Even-lyk, *adj. similar*, B 5. p 2. 25.
Ever, *adv. ever, always*, A 50, &c.; *Ever in oon*, *always alike, continually*, T. v. 451; *incessantly*, A 1771.
Everich, *each*, A 1186; *every*, A 241; *each one*, A 371; *every one*, E 1017; *e. of hem*, *either of the two*, B 1004; *Everich other*, *each other*, 7. 53.
Everichoon, *every one*, A 31, 747; *each one*, L. 2567; *Everichone*, *pl. each one (of us)*, HF. 337; *each of them all*, *all of them*, T. iii. 412.
Ever-mo, *adv. for ever, always, continually*, L. 1239, 2035, 2634.
Everydeel, *adv. every whit*, A 368, D 162; *altogether*, A 3302.
Evidently, *adv. by observation*, A. ii. 23. *rubric*.
Ew, *s. yew-tree*, A 2923; *(collectively) yew-trees*, R. 1385.
Exaltacioun, *s. (astrological) exaltation*, D 702, E 2224.
Exaltat, *as pp. exalted*, D 704.
Exametron, *s. a hexameter*, B 3169.
Exousacioun, *s. false excuse*, I 680, *plea*, I 164.
Excuse, *s.; for mys e.*, *in my excuse*, 7. 305.
Executeth, *pr. s. performs*, A 1664; *Execut*, *pp. executed*, T. iii. 622.
Executour, *s. executant*, D 2010.
Executrice, *s. causer*, T. iii. 617.
Exercitacioun, *s. exercise*, B 4. p 6. 298.
Existence, *s. reality*, HF. 266.
Exorsaciouns, *pl. exorcisms, spells to raise spirits*, HF. 1263.
Expans, *adj. (calculated) separately*, F 1275. See *Awnt expansi*.
Expouns, *v. explain*, B 3398, G 86; *Expounded*, *pt. s. B 3446, 3399*.
Expres, *adj. expressed, made clear*, D 1169.
Expres, *adv. expressly*, C 182, D 719.
Expresse, *ger. to declare*, 17. 5; *s. relate*, C 105.

3473; *Kyre*, *dat. air*, *gae*, G 767.
Kyr, *a. heir*, L. 1598, 1819.
Kyrish, *adj. of the air*, *aërial*, HF. 932, 9.
Kyse, *a. case*, D 2101. See *Ese*.

F.

Face, *a. face*, A 199, 458; *a. technical ter*
in astrology, signifying the third pr
of a sign (of the zodiac), ten degrees
extent, F 50, 1288.
Facound, *adj. eloquent*, 5. 521.
Facounds, *a. eloquence*, *fluency*, 3. 92
 O 50.
Facultee, *a. capacity*, *authority*, *or d*
position, A 244, *branch of study*. H
 248.
Fade, *adj. faded*, R. 311.
Fader, *a. father*, A 100; *Fader*, *gen.*
 781; *fader day*, *father's time*, B 35.
Fader kin, *father's race*, *ancestry*, G 8.
pl. ancestors, E 61; *originators*, B 12.
Fadme, *pl. fathoms*, A 2916.
Fadres-in-lawe, *pl. parents-in-law*. I
 P 3. 42.
Faille, *a. failure*; *withouten f.*, *with*
fail, 2. 48; *sons faille*, B 501.
Fallen, *v. fail*, *grow dim*, 5. 85; *pres. p.*
falling, *remote*, A. ii. 4. 30.
Fair, *adj. fine*, D 2253; *good*, *excellent*
 154; *a fair*, *a good one*, A 165; *as a*
fair thing, *excellent thing (sarcas*
cally), T. iii. 850; *voc. O fair one!* I
 518; *pl. A 234*; *clean*, R. 571; *specio*
 R. 437.
Faire, *adv. fairly*, R. 774, 798; *honest*
 A 220; *comptenance* R 502; *clearly*

- ger. to go, travel, T. v. 21, 279; to proceed, A 2435; Fare, 1 pr. a go, G 731; it is with me (thus), 7. 320; am, B 1676; Farost, 2 pr. a actest, 5. 399; art, HF. 887; Fareth, pr. a acts, D 1088; is, 3. 113; happens, HF. 271; 1 pr. pl. live, G 662; 2 pr. pl. behave, D 852; pr. pl. seem, I 414; Fare, pr. a subj. may fare, F 1579, Ferde, 1 pt. a fared, T. ii. 1006; felt, 3. 99, 785; was placed, 5. 152; pt. a behaved, A 1372; happened, T. i. 225; was, R. 876; seemed, R. 249; went on, HF. 1522; Ferden, pt. pl. behaved, A 1647; Ferde, pt. a subj. should fare, R. 271; Faren, pp. fared, T. v. 466; D 1773; gone, B 4069; Fare, pp. fared, D 1782, gone, A 2436; walked, L. 2209; Ferd, pp. fared, T. iv. 1094; Faringe, pres. pt. as adj.; best f., best looking, fairest of behaviour, F 932; f. aright, prosper, T. i. 878; far wel, farewell, B 116; Fareth, imp. pl. fare, E 1088; f. wel, farewell, T. v. 1412.
- Fare-cart**, a travelling cart, T. v. 1162.
- Fare-wel**, *interj.* it is all over! F 1204, G 907; go farewell, be lost sight of, A. ii. 25, 12.
- Farsed**, pp. stuffed, A 233.
- Fasoun**, a fashion, appearance, R. 708; shape, R. 551.
- Fast**, a fasting, T. v. 370.
- Fast**, adj. firm, 7. 313.
- Faste**, adv. closely, R. 1346; close, near, A 1478; tight, R. 431; fast, quickly, T. i. 748; as f., very quickly, G 1235; hard, soundly, 5. 94; intently, eagerly, R. 793; *faste by*, near to, A 1476; *faste by*, close at hand, 3. 369.
- Faster**, adv. closer, B 3722.
- Fatte**, v. fatten, D 188a.
- Faucon**, a falcon, F 411, 424.
- Fauconers**, a pl. falconers, F 1196.
- Fauned**, pt. a fawned on, 3. 389.
- Faunes**, pl. Fauna, A 2028.
- Fawe**, adj. fain, glad, D 220.
- Fawe**, adv. fain, anxiously, T. iv. 887.
- Fay**, a; see **Fey**.
- Fayerye**, a troop of fairies, E 2039; troops of fairies, D 859; enchantment, E 1743; Fairye, fairy-land, F 96; enchantment, F 201, pl. fairies, D 872.
- Fayn**, adj. glad, L. 130, 1137; fond, R. 1376.
- Fayn**, adv. gladly, A 766; *wolde f.*, would be glad to, E 696.
- Feblesse**, a weakness, T. ii. 863; I 1074.
- Fecches**, pl. vetches, T. iii. 936.
- Fecchen**, ger. to fetch, T. v. 485; ger. to fetch, to be brought (i.e. absent), T. iii. 603; Fette, 2 pt. a didst fetch, T. iii. 723; pt. a fetched, L. 670; brought, T. v. 852; pt. pl. B 2041; Fet, pp. fetched, A 2527; brought, A 819, brought home, D 217.
- Fecching**, a fetching, rape, T. v. 890.
- Fedde**, pt. a fed, A 146.
- Fee**, a reward, pay, 7. 193; Fee simple, an absolute fee or fief, not clogged with conditions, A 319.
- Feeld**, a field, A 886, 3032; (in an heraldic sense), B 3573.
- Feendly**, adj. fiendlike, devilish, B 751, 783.
- Feet**, a performance, E 420. E. *feat*.
- Feffe**, v. enfeoff, endow, present, T. iii. 901; ger. to present, T. v. 1689; pp. enfeoffed, put in possession, endowed, E 1698.
- Fel**, a skin, T. i. 91.
- Fel**, adj. dreadful, T. v. 30; cruel, A 2630; deadly, D 2002; terrible, B 2019; Felle, voc. cruel, A 1559; destructive, T. iv. 44.
- Felawe**, a companion, comrade, A 395, 648.
- Felaweshipe**, a partnership, A 1626; companionship, B 2749; company, A 26.
- Felawshipeth**, pr. a accompanies, B 4. m 1. 12.
- Feld**, pp. of Felle.
- Feldefare**, a field-fare, 5. 364; T. iii. 861; *farewel f.*, i.e. farewell, and a good riddance; because fieldfares depart when the warm weather comes.
- Felden**, pt. pl. of Felle.
- Fels**, adj. many, R. 180; E 917.
- Felse-folde**, adj. manifold, B 2. p 1. 16.
- Felen**, v. feel, experience, L. 692; Felo, understand by experiment, HF. 826; try to find out, T. ii. 387; Felle, 1 pt. a. 4. 217; Felede, pt. a G 521; Feled, pp. perceived, T. iv. 984.
- Feling**, a affection, 2. 1172.
- Felle**, pt. and voc. a of Fel, adj.
- Felle**, v. fell, A 1702; Felden, pt. pl. caused to fall, R. 911; Feld, pp. cut down, A 2024.
- Fellen**, pt. pl. happened, T. i. 134. See **Fallen**.
- Felliche**, adj. biting, severely, B 2. m 1. 13.
- Felnesse**, a fierceness, B 1. m 6. 11.
- Felon**, adj. angry, T. v. 100.
- Felonous**, adj. fierce, wicked, B 1. m 4. 15, mischievous, I 438.
- Felonye**, a injustice, B 4. p 6. 278; crime, A 1096; treachery, R. 165, 978; pl. iniquities, I 281.

Feru, *s. acc.* fear, *i.* iv. 107. (Always .
phr. for ferd, or for ferde.)
Ferd, *pp. of Fere*, *v.*
Ferd, *-e*; see **Faren**, *v.*
Fere, *s. dat* fear, *B* 1369; panic, *HF* 17
Fere, *s.* companion, *L* 969, mate, *z* 41
416; wife, *T* iv. 791, *pl.* companions,
i 224.
Fere, *s. dat.* fire, *T* iii. 978.
Fere, *v.* frighten, *T* iv. 1481; **Fered**, *p*
afraid, *G* 924; **Ferd**, *pp.* afraid, *T* ii. 1.
Ferforth, *adv.* far, *as f. as*, as far as,
iv. 891; as long as, *T* i. 121 *so f.*, to such
a degree, *i.* 170; *thus f.*, thus far, *T*
971.
Ferforthly, *adv.* thoroughly; *so f.*,
such an extent, *A* 961; so far, *L* 68
as f., as completely, *D* 1545.
Ferfulleste, most timid, *T* ii. 451.
Ferly, *adj.* strange, *A* 4173.
Fermacles, *pl.* remedies, *A* 2713.
Ferne, *adj.* firm, *E* 663.
Ferne, *imp. s.* make firm, *B* i. 105.
(Lat. firma).
Ferne, *s.* rent, *A* 252 *b.*
Fermely, *adv.* firmly, *T* iii. 1488.
Fermerere, *s.* friar in charge of an infirmary,
D 1859.
Fermour, *s.* farmer of taxes, *L* 278.
Fern, *adv.* long ago, *so fern* = so long
ago, *F* 256.
Fern-assen, *s. pl.* ashes produced by
burning ferns, *F* 254.
Ferne, *pl. of Ferren*, distant, remote
A 14.
Ferne; *f. yere*, last year, *T* v. 1176.
Ferre, *adj. def.* distant, *A* 1302.
Ferre, *comp. adv.* farther, *HF* 60
Ferrer, *A* 815.
Ferreste, *superl. pl.* farthest, *A* 404.

- Finde**, *v.* find, 1. 72; A 648; invent, A 736; *ger.* to provide for, C 537; **Fint**, *pr. s.* finds, G 218; **Fynt**, *pr. s.* L. 1499; **Fond**, *pt. s.* discovered, A 2445; found out, T. i. 639; provided for, B 4019; **Fonde**, *pt. s. subj.* could find, 5. 374; *pp.* found, E 146; **Founden**, *pp.* found, B 612; provided, B 243.
- Finding**, *s.* provision, A 3220.
- Fint**, *pr. s.* finds, G 218.
- Firre**, *s.* fir-tree, A 2921.
- Firste**, *adj. def.* first, 3. 1166; *my firste*, my first narration, F 75; *with the firste*, very soon, T. iv. 63.
- Fish**, *s.* the sign Pisces, F 273.
- Fit**, *s.* a 'fyt' or 'passus,' a portion of a song, B 2078, bout, turn, A 4184.
- Fithels**, *s.* fiddle, A 296.
- Fixe**, *pp. as adj.* fixed, T. i. 298; solidified, G 779.
- Flambe**, *s.* flame, I 352.
- Flatour**, *s.* flatterer, B 4515.
- Flaumbe**, *s.* flame, HF. 769.
- Flayn**, *pp.* flamed, I 425.
- Fledde**, *pt. s.* fled, avoided, B 3445, 3874; *Fledde herself*, took refuge, L. 1225.
- Flee** (1), *v.* fly, F 503; *lect flee*, let fly, A 3806; **Fleigh**, *pt. s.* flew, HF. 921, 2087; **Fley**, *pt. s.* B 4362; **Flouen**, *pt. pl.* flew, B 4581; *pp.* flown, HF. 905.
- Fleen** (2), *v.* escape, A 1170; *flee*, L. 1307, 2020; **Fleeth**, *imp. pt.* 4. 6; **Fleigh**, *pt. s.* fled, B 3879.
- Fleen**, *s. pl.* flocks, H 17.
- Flees**, *s.* fleece, L. 1428, 1647.
- Fleet**, *pr. s.* flouts, B 461.
- Flekked**, *pp.* spotted, E 1848, G 565.
- Flemen**, *ger.* to banish, T. ii. 852; *pr. s.* H 182; *pp.* banished, G 58.
- Flemer**, *s.* banisher, driver away, B 460.
- Fleminge**, *s.* banishment, flight, T. iii. 933.
- Flen**, *pr. pl.* fly, T. iv. 1356.
- Fleshly**, *adv.* carnally, B 1775.
- Flete**, *v.* float, bathe, T. iii. 1071; 1 *pr. s. subj.* may float, A 2397; **Fletoth**, *pr. s.* floats, B 901; flows, abounds (Lat. *fluat*), B 1. m. 2. 28; **Fleet**, *pr. s.* floats, B 461; *pres. pt.* floating, A 1956; **Flet-inge**, *pres. pt.* flowing, B 1. p. 3. 78 (Lat. *limphante*).
- Flex**, *s.* flax, A 676.
- Fley**, *pt. s.* flew, B 4362.
- Flikered**, *pt. s.* fluttered, T. iv. 1221; *pres. pt. pl.* fluttering, A 1962.
- Flitte**, *v.* pass away, I 368; *pp.* removed, T. v. 1544; *pres. pt.* unimportant, 3. 801.
- Flo**, *s.* arrow, H 264.
- Flokmels**, *adv.* in a flock, in a great number, E 86.
- Flood**, *s.* flood-tide, F 259; *on a fl.*, in a state of flood, T. iii. 640.
- Florishinges**, *pl.* florid ornaments, HF. 1301.
- Florouns**, *s. pl.* florets, L. 217, 220.
- Floteren**, *pr. pl.* fluctuate, waver, B 3. p. 11. 227.
- Flotery**, *adj.* fluttering, wavy, A 2883.
- Flough**, *s. pt. s.* didst fly, B 4421.
- Flour**, *s.* (1) flower, L. 48; *of alle floures flour*, flower of all flowers, 1. 4; flower, i. e. choice, A 4174; choice part, A 982; time of flourishing, A 3048; (2) flour, R. 356.
- Flour-de-lys**, *s.* fleur-de-lis, lily, A 238.
- Floureth**, *pr. s.* flourishes, T. iv. 1577; blooms, 7. 306.
- Flourettes**, *s. pl.* flowerets, buds, R. 891.
- Floury**, *adj.* flowery, 3. 398.
- Floute**, *s.* flute, HF. 1223.
- Floutours**, *pl.* flute-players, R. 763.
- Flouen**, *pt. pl. and pp.* of *Flee* (1).
- Floytinge**, *pres. pt.* playing on the flute, A 91.
- Fneseth**, *pr. s.* breathes heavily, puffs, snorts, H 62.
- Fo**, *s.* foe, enemy, B 1748; **Foo**, A 63; **Foon**, *pl.* B 3896; **Foos**, *pl.* B 2160.
- Fode**, *s.* food, D 1881, I 137.
- Foisoun**, *s.* plenty, abundance, R. 1359.
- Folde**, *s.* fold, sheepfold, A 512.
- Folden**, *pp.* folded, T. iv. 359, 1247.
- Foled**, *pp.* foaled, born, D 1545.
- Folily**, *adv.* foolishly, B 2639.
- Folk**, *s.* folk, people, A 12, 25; sort, company, 5. 524; *pl.* companies, 5. 278.
- Folowed wel**, followed as a matter of course, 3. 1012; **Folweth**, *imp. pt.* imitate, E 1189.
- Foly**, *adv.* foolishly, 3. 874.
- Folye**, *s.* folly, foolishness, A 2045.
- Folyen**, *pr. pl.* act foolishly, B 3. p. 2. 100.
- Fomen**, *pl.* foe-men, T. iv. 42.
- Fomy**, *adj.* foaming, covered with foam, A 2306.
- Fond**; *pt. s.* of *Finde*.
- Fonde**, *v.* endeavour, R. 1583; *v.* attempt, try, E 283; try to persuade, B 147.
- Fonde**, *pt. s. subj.* could find, 5. 374.
- Fonge**, *v.* receive, B 177.
- Fonne**, *s.* fool (Northern), A 4089.
- Font-ful water**, fontful of water, B 357.
- Fontstoon**, *s.* font, B 723.
- Foo**; see **Fo**.
- Foo**, *s.* foo', for foot, A 3781.

- Fool**, *adj.* foolish, silly, *R* 1254.
Fool, *s.* fool, *A* 3004, jester, *B* 3271, *pl.* wicked persons, *E* 2278.
Fool large, *adj.* foolishly liberal, *B* 2789, 2810.
Fool largesse, *s.* foolish liberality, *I* 813.
Foom, *s.* foam, *A* 1659, *G* 504.
Foo-men, *s.* *pl.* foes, *B* 3255, 3507.
Foon, **Foos**, see **Fo**.
Foot, *as* *pl.* feet, *A* 4124.
Foot-brede, *s.* foot breadth, *HF* 2042.
Foot-hot, *adv.* instantly, on the spot, *B* 448.
Foot-mantel, *s.* foot-cloth, 'safeguard' to cover the skirt, *A* 472.
For, *prep.* for, *A* 480, &c.; in respect of, *s.* 416, by reason of, *R* 1564, for the sake of, *B* 4, p. 6, 190, for me, by my means, *T* u 144, for which, wherefore, *F* 1525, against, to prevent, in order to avert, *L* 231; for saying, to prevent failure, *T* 1 928, in spite of, *C* 129, for *L*, notwithstanding, *A* 2020, for my sake, were I to die for it, *4* 186; to have for excuse, to excuse, *A* pr 31.
For *conj.* for, *A* 126, &c.; because, *3* 735, 789, in order that, *B* 478, *F* 102.
For to, with *infin.* in order to, to, *A* 13, 78, &c.
Forage, *s.* provision of fodder, *E* 1422, food, *B* 1973, winter-food, as hay, &c., *A* 4808.
For-bede, *v.* forbid, *T* iii 467, For-bideth *pr.* *s.* *B* 2774; Forbat, *for* For-bedeth, *pr.* *s.* forbids, *T* u 717, in *phr.* god f. or Crist f. = God forbid, Christ forbid, *T* u 113, 716, Forbal *pl.* *s.* *E* 570, Forbode, *pp.* forbidden, *E* 2200.
Forbere, *v.* forbear to mention, *A* 885; leave him alone, Doce spare, *A* 1168, little consider, *T* u 1660, Forbar, *pl.* *s.* forbare, *T* 2, 437, *imp. pl.* forgive, *L* 82.
For-blak, *adj.* extremely black, *A* 2144.
Forbode, *s.* prohibition, *goddess* forbode, it is God's prohibition (i.e. God forbid), *L* 100.
Forbrak, *1 pl.* *s.* broke off, interrupted, *B* 4, p. 1, 7.
For-brused, *pp.* badly bruised, *B* 1804.
Forby, *adv.* by, past, *L* 2510.
Forbyse, *ger.* to instruct by examples, *T* u 1490. (A false form; for *forburean*), the former *n* being dropped by confusion with that in the suffix.
Force, see **Fors**.
Foreracchen, *ger.* to scratch excessively, *R* 323.
Forcutteth, *pr.* *s.* cuts to pieces, *H* 420.
For-do, *v.* destroy, do for, *T* 1 247, 1681, For-dide, *pl.* *s.* slew, *L* 2557, For-down, *pp.* overcome, vanquished, *T* 1 525, ruined, *T* v 1687, destroyed *B* 200, slain, *L* 923.
Fordriven, *pp.* driven about, *B* 1 p 2.
For-dronken, *pp.* extremely drunk, *A* 1120, 4192.
Fordrye, *adj.* very dry, withered up, *F* 409.
Fordwyned, *adj.* shrunken, *R* 76.
Pore, *s.* path, trace of steps, *D* 105; course, track, *D* 125, *A. S.* for.
Foreyne, *adj.* extraneous, *B* 2 1 2.
Foreyne, *s.* outer chamber, *1* 1 2, yard, *L* 1462.
Forfered, *pp.* exceedingly afraid, *1* 1 2, *fered* *adj.* very afraid for, *F* 27.
Forfeted, *pl.* *s.* d. l. wrong, *I* 273.
Forgaf, *1* *s.* of Forgyete.
Forgat, *pl.* *s.* of Forgyete.
Forgift, *s.* forgiveness, *L* 1851.
For-go, *pp.* overwalked, exhausted, *1* 1 2, walking *HF* 112.
Forgon, *ger.* to give up, forego, *1* 1 2, *1* 1 2, *T* u 105, lose, *R* 1471, *For-ga*, *pp.* lost, *B* 2182.
Forheed *s.* forehead, *R* 800, *Forheed*, *B* 1 p 4 120.
For hoor, *adj.* very hoary, *R* 36.
Forkerveth, *pr.* *s.* hews in pieces, *B* 42.
Forlast, *pp.* abandoned, *C* 83.
Forleaseth, *pr.* *s.* loses, *I* 784, see **For-lorn**.
For-leten, *v.* abandon, give up, *C* 247, yield up, *B* 1848, *Forlete*, *1* *pl.* *s.* sake, *I* 91, *Forleten*, *pp.* abandoned, given up, *HF* 244.
Forliven, *v.* degenerate, *B* 2 1 2, *Forlived*, *pp.* *as* *adj.* degenerate, *2* 1 2, *B* 2 in 6, 11.
Forlorn, *pp.* utterly lost, *L* 203, *Forlese*.
Forlost, *pp.* utterly lost, *T* iii 26.
Forloyn, *s.* note on a horn for rent, *1* 1 2, 180.
Forme, *s.* form, *A* 305; form, last of a hare, *B* 1204.
Forme-fader, *s.* fore-father, first ancestor, *B* 22, 3.
Formel, *s.* companion, said of lord, *1* 1 2, 171, 172.
Formely, *adv.* formally, *T* iv 497.
Former, *s.* Creator, *C* 10.
Former age, the Golden Age of old, = *Formest*, *adj.* *sup.* foremost, *1* 1 2.
Forn-cast, *pp.* premeditated, *B* 44.

- Forneys**, *s.* furnace, A 202, 359.
For-old, *adj.* extremely old, A 2124.
Forpampred, *pp.* exceedingly pampered, spoilt by pampering, 9. 5.
For-pyned, *pp.* wasted away (by torment or pain), A 205.
Fors, *s.* force, A 2723; *no fors*, no matter, no consequence, A 2723, B 285; *no force*, no matter, 18. 53; *no fors is*, it is no matter, T. iv. 322; *no force of*, no matter for, 10. 13; *no fors of me*, no matter about me, 4. 197; *thereof no fors*, never mind that, 3. 1170; *make no fors*, pay no heed, H 68; *I do no fors*, I care not, D 1254; *I do no fors thereof*, it is nothing to me, 3. 542; *dolt no fors*, takes no account, I 711; *what fors*, what matter, T. ii. 378.
Forsake, *v.* deny, B 1 p 4. 164; leave, B 3431; **Forsook**, *pt. s.* forsook, B. 1538; **Forsaken**, *pp.* R. 1498; *imp. pt.* give up, C 286.
Forseid, *pp. as adj.* aforesaid, 5. 120.
Forseinge, *s.* prevision, T. iv. 989.
Forshapen, *pp.* metamorphosed, T. ii. 66.
For-shright, *pp.* exhausted with shrieking, T. iv. 1147.
For-sight, *s.* foresight, T. iv. 961.
For-sleuthen, *v.* waste in sloth, B 4286.
Forsleweth, *pr. s.* wastes idly, I 685.
Forsluggeth, *pr. s.* spoils, allows (goods) to spoil, I 685.
Forsongen, *pp.* tired out with singing, B. 604.
Forster, *s.* forester, A 117.
Forstraught, *pp.* distracted, B 1295.
Forswor him, *pt. s.* was forsworn, HF. 389; **Forswore**, *pp.* falsely sworn by, L. 2522; **Forsworn**, forsworn, L. 927.
Forth, *adv.* forth, on, further, onward, 5. 27; D 1509, F 604, 605, 904; forward, HF. 2061; out, 5. 352; continually, F 1081, away, T. i. 118; still, 4. 148; *tho f.* thenceforth, T. i. 1076; *forth to love*, i. e. they proceed to love, T. ii. 788.
Forther, *adv.* more forward, A 4222; **Further**, go further, A 4117.
Fortheren, *ger.* to further, T. v. 1707.
Forthering, *s.* furtherance, aid, L. 692.
Forther-moor, *adv.* further on, A 2009; **Forthermore**, moreover, C 357.
Forther-over, *adv.* moreover, C 648.
Fortheast, *adj. and adv.* furthest, B 4. p 6. 116.
For-thinke, *v.* seem amiss, (or here) seem serious, T. ii. 1414; *pr. s. impers.* seems a pity (to me), E 1900; **Forthoughte**, *pt. s. subj.* should displease, B. 1671.
Forthren, *ger.* to further, help, assist, L. 71, 472, 1618; *ger.* to further, T. v. 1707.
Forth-right, *adv.* straightforwardly, straightforward, B. 295; F 1501.
Forthward, *adv.* forwards, B 263, F 1169.
For-thy, *adv.* therefore, on that account, A 1841, 4031.
Fortroden, *pp.* trodden under foot, I 190.
Fortuit, *adj.* fortuitous, B 5. p 1. 91.
Fortuna maior, a name for the auspicious planet Jupiter, T. iii. 1420. (Or else, a cluster of stars near the beginning of Pisces; cf. Dante, *Purg.* xix. 4).
Fortunel, *adj.* accidental, B 5. m 1. 16.
Fortunen, *v.* to give (good or bad) fortune to, A 417; **Fortunest**, *1 pr. s.* renderest lucky or unlucky, A 2377; *pt. pl.* happened, chanced, 3. 288; *pp.* endowed by fortune, 4. 180.
Fortunous, *adj.* fortuitous, accidental, B 1. p 6. 9.
For-waked, *pp.* tired out with watching, 3. 126; B 596.
Forward, *adv.* foremost; *first and f.* first of all, B 2431.
Forward, *s.* agreement, covenant, A 33. 829.
Forwelked, *adj.* withered, wrinkled, deeply lined, B. 361.
Forweped, *pp.* weary, exhausted through weeping, 3. 126.
Forwored, *pp.* worn out, R. 235.
For-wery, *adj.* very tired, 5. 93.
Forwes, *pt.* furrows, 9. 12.
For-why, *conj.* for what reason, T. iii. 1009; wherefore, why, HF. 20; because, 3. 461, 793.
For-witer, *s.* foreknower, B 5. p 6. 129.
Forwiting, *s.* foreknowledge, B 4431.
For-wot, *pr. s.* foreknows, foresees, HF 45.
Forwrapped, *pp.* wrapped up, C 718; concealed, I 320.
For-yede, *pt. s.* gave up, T. ii. 1190.
Foryelde, *v.* yield in return, requite, E 831.
Foryetelnesse, *s.* forgetfulness, I 827.
Foryeten, *v.* forget, T. iii. 55; *pr. s.* forgets, T. ii. 375; **Forget**, *for* Forgeteth, *pr. s.* forgets, B. 61; **Forgat**, *1 pt. s.* forgot, C 919; **For-yat**, *pt. s.* T. v. 1535; **Foryeten**, *pp.* forgotten, A 2021; **Forgoten**, *pp.* B 2002.
Foryetful, *adj.* forgetful, E 472.
Foryetinge, *s.* forgetfulness, B 2. p 7. 98.
Foryeve, *v.* forgive, B 994; **Foryaf**, *pt. s.*

Fother, *s.* load, properly a cart-load, A 530; great quantity, A 1908.
Fot-hoot, *adv.* hastily, immediately, 3. 375.
Foudre, *s.* thunderbolt, HF. 535.
Foughten, *pp.* fought, A 62.
Foul, *s.* bird, F 149; *pl.* birds, L. 37, 130.
Foule, *adv.* vilely, D 1069; foully, 3. 623; 5. 517; evilly, A 4220; shamefully, L. 1307, hideously, D 1083; meanly, B. 1061.
Fouler, *adj. comp.* uglier, D 999.
Fowler, *s.* fowler, L. 131.
Founde (1), *ger.* to found, T. i. 1065.
Founde (2), *v.* seek after, 7. 241; 1 *pr. s.* try, endeavour, 7. 47.
Foundement, *s.* foundation, HF. 112.
Foundred, *pl. s.* foundered, stumbled, A 1687.
Founes, *s. pl.* fawns, 3. 429; Fownes (*metaphorically*), young desires, T. i. 465.
Fourneys, *s.* furnace, B 3353.
Fourtenight, fourteen nights, a fortnight, T. iv. 1127.
Fowel, *s.* bird, A 190, 2437.
Foyne, *pr. s. imp.* let him thrust, A 2550; *pr. s.* A 2615; *pr. pl.* A 1654.
Foyson, *s.* abundance, plenty, A 3165.
Fraknes, *pl.* freckles, A 2169.
Frame, *ger.* to put together, build, T. iii. 530.
Franchyse, *s.* liberality, E 1987, nobleness, F 1524; privilege, I 452.
Frankelcyn, *s.* franklin, freeholder, A 334.
Frankes, *pl.* franks, B 1371, 1377.
Frape, *s.* company, pack, T. iii. 410. O F *fraps*, troop.
Fraught, *pp.* freighted, B 171; *han down* &c. have caused to be freighted

Fumositæ, *s.* fumes arising from drunkenness, C 567, F 358.
Fundement (1), *s.* foundation, D 2103; (2) fundament, C 950.
Funeral, *adj.* T. v. 307, funereal, A 2864, 2912.
Furial, *adj.* tormenting, furious, F 448.
Furie, *s.* monster, A 2684; rage, T. v. 213.
Furlongs, *pl.* furlongs, A 4166; Furlong-way, *s.* short distance, B 557; Forlong-way, *s.* brief time (lit. time of walking a furlong, 2¼ minutes), T. iv. 1237.
Furre, *s.* fur, R. 228.
Furred, *pp.* furred, trimmed with fur, R. 227, 408.
Furring, *s.* fur-trimming, I 418.
Further-over, moreover, *s.* 85.
Furthre, *ger.* to help, HF. 2023; *pp.* advanced, 7. 273.
Fusible, *adj.* capable of being fused, G 856.
Fustian, *s.* fustian, A 75.
Futur, *adj.* future, T. v. 748.
Fyle, *v.* file, smoothe by filing, 5. 212; *fyled*, *pp.* A 2152.
Fyn, *s.* end, R. 1558; death, T. ii. 527; result, B 3448, 3884; aim, E 2106; object, T. ii. 425, iii. 553, *for fyn*, finally, T. iv. 477.
Fyn, *adj.* fine, strong, A 1472; *of fyn* force, of very need, T. v. 421.
Fyne, *v.* finish, T. iv. 26; cease, end, T. iv. 1463.
Fynt, *pr.* *s.* finds, A 4071; Fint, G 218.
Fyr, *s.* fire, B 3714; Fyr of Seint Antony, erysipelas, I 427.
Fyr-makinge, *s.* making of the fire, A 2914.
Fysicien, *s.* physician, B 1. p 3. 4.

G.

Gabbe, *ger.* to boast, prate, A 3510; *pr.* *s.* lie, speak idly, 3. 1075; Gabbestow, liest thou, T. iv. 481.
Gabbor, *s.* liar, idle talker, I 89.
Gable, *s.* gable-end, A 3571.
Gadeling, *s.* idle vagabond, gad-about, R. 938.
Gadereth, *pr.* *s.* gathers, A 1053.
Gaderinge, *s.* gathering, B 2765.
Gaillard, *adj.* joyous, merry, lively, A 4107.
Galantyne, *s.* a kind of sauce, galantine, 9. 16; 12. 17.
Galaxy, *s.* the Galaxy, Milky Way, 5. 56, HF. 936.
Gale, *v.* sing, cry out, D 852; *pr.* *s.* *subj.* exclaim, D 1336.
Gallanes, *s.* *pl.* medicines, C 306. So named after Galen.
Galingale, *s.* sweet cyperus, A 381. (A spice was prepared from the root of the plant.)
Galle, *s.* sore place, D 940.
Gallea, *pl.* feelings of envy, 9. 47.
Galoche, *s.* a shoe, F 555.
Galoun, *s.* gallon, H 24.
Galping, *pres.* *pl.* gaping, F 350.
Galwes, *s.* *pl.* gallows, B 3924.
Gamed, *pt.* *s.* *impera.* it pleased, A 534.
Gamen, *s.* game, sport, T. ii. 38, iii. 250; joke, jest, E 733; amusement, fun, merriment, A 2286, 4354.
Gan, *pt.* *s.* of Ginna.
Ganeth, *pr.* *s.* yawneth, H 35.
Gape, *v.* gape, gasp, B 3924; *Gapeth*, *pr.* *s.* opens his mouth, L. 2004; *Gape* (*also* *Cape*), *pr.* *pl.* gape, stare, A 3841.
Gapinges, *s.* *pl.* greedy wishes, B 2. m 2. 17 (Lat. *Matus*).
Gappe, *s.* gap, A 1639, 1645.
Gardin-wal, *s.* garden-wall, A 1060.
Gardinward, *adv.* gardenward; *to the g.*, towards the garden, F 1505.
Gargat, *s.* throat, B 4524.
Garlock, *s.* garlick, A 634.
Garnement, *s.* garment, R. 806.
Garnere, *s.* garner, granary, R. 1148.
Garnicoun, *s.* garrison, B 2217.
Gaa, *pr.* *s.* goes (Northern), A 4057.
Gastly, *adv.* terrible, A 1984.
Gastnesse, *s.* terror, B 3. p 5. 29.
Gat, *pt.* *s.* of Geten.
Gat-tothed, *adj.* having the teeth far apart, A 468, D 603.
Gaude, *s.* gaud, toy, pretence, T. ii. 351; trick, C 389; *pl.* pranks, I 651.
Gaudē, *adj.* dyed with weld, A 2079. *Fr.* *gauder*, to dye with weld.
Gauded, *pp.* furnished with beads called *gauds*, A 159. (The bead or *gaud* was formerly called *gaudee*, from Lat. *imp.* *pl.* *gaudete*.)
Gaure, *v.* stare, T. ii. 1157; *ger.* to stare, gaze, A 3817.
Gay, *adj.* finely dressed, A 74, 111; joyous, B. 435; wanton, A 3769.
Gaylard, *adj.* lively, A 3336.
Geyler, *s.* gaoler, A 1064.
Gaynoth, *pr.* *s.* avails, A 1176; *pt.* *s.* profited, T. i. 352.
Gaytres berryen, berries of the gay-tree or gait-tree (goat-tree), berries of the *Rhamnus catharticus*, or buckthorn, B

4155. Called *getbäre-trä*, goat-berry-tree, in Swedish dialects. Rietz.
- Geaunt**, *s.* giant. B 1997, 1998.
- Gebet**, *s.* gibbet, gallows. HF. 106.
- Geen**, *pp.* gone. Northern. A 4078.
- Geeth**, *pr s.* goes. L. 1145.
- Generally**, *adv.* everywhere. T i. 80.
- Gent**, *adj.* refined, exquisite, noble. B 1905; slim. A 1254, *fem.* graceful. R. 1042.
- Genterye**, *s.* nobility, magnanimity. L. 104, gentility. D 1146 gentle birth. I 452, rank. I 461; sign of good birth. I 601.
- Gentil**, *adj.* gentle, refined. A 71 gentle, worthy. B 1627, excellent. A 718 mild in manner, compassionate. A 642; well-bred. D 111, beautiful. R. 1081; charming. R. 1016.
- Gentillesse**, *s.* gentleness, noble kindness, courtesy, good breeding. L. 610, 1010, 1080, A 920, nobility. B 1854, gentility. D 1109 worth. E 96 kindness. G 1054 condescension. B 851, high birth. I 585, slenderness, symmetry. F 426, delicate nurture. E 591.
- Gentilleste**, *adj. sup.* noblest. E 72, 131.
- Gently**, *adv.* gently, honourably. A 1104, courteously. B 1093, frankly. F 674.
- Gentils**, *s. pl.* gentlefolk. A 3111.
- Geomancie**, *s.* divination by figures made on the earth. I 605.
- Geometriens**, *s. pl.* geometricians. B 1 p 10. 141.
- Gere**, *s.* gear, armour. A 1180; equipment. A 4016; property. B 800, utensils. A 152, apparel. A 105, *pl.* contrivances. F 1176.
- Gere**, *s.* changeful manner. A 1372; *pl.* changeful ways. A 1531.
- Gerful**, *adj.* changeable. T iv. 186, A 1518. Cf. Gery.
- Gerland**, *s.* garland. R. 566.
- Gerner**, *s.* garner. A 591.
- Gery**, *adj.* changeable. A 1516.
- Gesse**, *s.* suppose, imagine. R. 1115; *1 pr s.* suppose. A 82, 117, B 1435, 1960.
- Gessinge**, *s.* opinion. B i. p 4. 315.
- Gest**, *s.* guest. HF. 288.
- Geste**, *s.* romance, tale, story. T ii. 83, iii. 490, in *geste*, *n.* romance-form, like the common stock-stories. B 3121, *pl.* stories. D 642, occurrences. T i. 145, exploits, affairs. T ii. 140, histories, history. B 1126 deeds. HF. 1434.
- Gestours**, *s. pl.* story-tellers. B 2036; Gestours. HF. 1198.
- Get**, *jet*, *s.* contrivance. G 117.
- Geten**, *v.* obtain. *get*, L. 1110, 1447. *Get*, *pr s.* procures. L 815, 1000, 2 *pr pl.* *axfut* so will get. *axfut* *pl s.* begat. B 715, got 7 *ax* *pr* *ax* for. A 701 *geten*, *pp.* gotten. *blasted*. A 191, won. L. 1753, begotten. L. 1007 *han geten hem*, to have acquired to themselves. F 67.
- Gif**, *v.* *if* Northern. A 1131, 1132.
- Gigges**, *pl.* rapid movements. Ht 104.
- Gigginge**, *pres. pt.* *pl.* sitting with *ax*. A 1504 From O. F. *gigue* a handle, a shield.
- Gilden**, *adj.* golden. 1. 118.
- Gilt**, *s.* guilt, offence. F 757, 1020, *pl.* *ax*. B 1015.
- Giltless**, *adj.* guiltless, innocent. A 100.
- Giltif**, *adj.* guilty. T iii. 1019.
- Gin**, *s.* contrivance, snare. G 100, traps, snares. R. 1100.
- Gingebreed**, *s.* gingerbread. B 1044.
- Gingers**, *s.* ginger. R. 1469.
- Ginglen**, *v.* jangle. A 170.
- Ginne**, *v.* begin, attempt. HF. 284, 1000, 1 *pl s.* began. T. i. 100, *ax* *mar* *verb.* did. R. 734, 1120. *Gonne* *pr.* *ax*. E 1101 HF. 944, 1000, began. 970.
- Gonnen*, *pl.* *pl.* began. *s.* *ax* *Gonne* *pl.* *pl.* began. HF. 1008, 1111, HF. 1000.
- Gonnen*, *pl.* *pl.* did. T. ii. 120.
- Ginninge**, *s.* beginning. T i. 107.
- Gipoun**, *s.* a short cassock or doublet. A 75, 1130.
- Gipser**, *s.* pouch, purse. A 157.
- Girdel**, *s.* girdle. A 158, 1130, *centra* *ax* or great circle. A. i. 17, 40.
- Girden**, *ger.* to strike. B 1716. *Pre* *ax* to switch.
- Girdilstede**, *s.* waist. R. 820.
- Girles**, *pl.* young people, whether *ax* or female. A 964.
- Girt**, *pr s.* girls. L. 1775, *pp.* ground. 100.
- Giser**, *s.* gizzard, liver. B. i. 11, 117.
- Giterne**, *s.* kind of guitar cittern. A 100.
- Giterninge**, *s.* playing on the guitar or cittern. A 3361.
- Glade**, *ger.* to gladden, cheer. E 100, *ger.* to console. A 1817, to rejoice. 100.
- Gladed**, *pl s.* cheered. T i. 117, 1000, 1 *p.* may be comfort. E 811. *Glade* *imp. pl.* rejoice. 4, 1.
- Glader**, *s.* one that cheers. A 1111.
- Gladly**, *adv.* fitly. 887, willingly. F 100, by preference. L. 770, *that* *ax* *ax* that would be thought wise. F.
- Gladson**, *adj.* pleasant. B 1008.
- Glareth**, *pr s.* ghastens, shines. HF. 100.

- Glass**, *ger.* to glaze, furnish with glass, T. v. 469. To glaze one's hood = to provide with a useless defence.
- Glasing**, *s.* glass-work, 3. 327.
- Glede**, *s.* burning coal, glowing coal or ashes, B 111; coloured as the glede, of a bright red, gules, B 3574; *pl.* glowing coals, L. 235. See **Gleed**.
- Gledy**, *adj.* glowing (as a coal), burning, L. 105.
- Glee**, *s.* music, T. ii. 1036; entertainment, B 2030; *pl.* musical instruments, HF. 1209.
- Gleed**, *s.* glowing coal, L. 735.
- Glente**, *pl. pl.* glanced, T. iv. 1223.
- Glewe**, *v.* fasten, gline, HF. 1761.
- Gleyre**, *s.* white (of an egg), G 806.
- Gliden**, *pp.* of Glyde.
- Glimsing**, *s.* imperfect sight, E 2383.
- Gliteren**, *pr. pl.* glitter, A 977.
- Glood**, *pl. s.* of Glyde.
- Glose**, *s.* glossing, comment, L. 328; F 166; explanation, D 1792; commentary, hence margin, 3. 333.
- Glose**, *ger.* to interpret, explain, T. iv. 1210; to flatter, B 3330; speak with circumlocution, E 2351; persuade cunningly, T. iv. 1471; cajole, D 909; comment on, B 1180.
- Glosinge**, *s.* explaining, D 1793.
- Glyde**, *v.* glide, A 1575; ascend, G 402; slip, T. iv. 1215; *up gl.*, rise up gradually, F 373; **Glood**, *pl. s.* went quickly, B 2094; **Gliden**, *pp.* glided, passed, E 1887.
- Gniden**, *pl. pl.* rubbed, 9. 11. From A.S. *gnidan*.
- Gnof**, *s.* churl (lit. thief), A 3188. Mod.E. *gnoph*.
- Gnow**, *pl. s.* gnawed, B 3638.
- Gobet**, *s.* piece, morsel, fragment, A 696.
- God**, *s.* A 769; God be with you, farewell, C 748, Goddess, God's, Christ's, B 1166; (pronounced god's), D 1096; Goddess, *pl.* gods, false gods, 3. 1328.
- Godhede**, *s.* divinity, A 2381.
- Godlihede**, *s.* beauty, T. iii. 1730.
- Godsib**, *s.* sponsor, I 909.
- Gold**, *s.* made of gold, R. 1193.
- Gold-bete**, adorned with beaten gold, gilt, 7. 24. Cf. **Y-bete**.
- Goldes**, *pl.* marigolds, A 1929.
- Gold-hewen**, *pp.* hewn of gold, cut out of or made of gold, A 2500.
- Goldlees**, *adj.* moneyless, B 1480.
- Goldsmithrie**, *s.* goldsmiths' work, A 2498.
- Goles**, *s.* gabble (lit. mouthful), 5. 566. O.F. *golee*.
- Golet**, *s.* throat, gullet, C 543.
- Goliardeya**, *s.* buffoon, scurrilous talker, A 560.
- Gomme**, *s.* gum, L. 121.
- Gon**, *v.* go, proceed, F 200; walk, L. 1399; move, A 2510, let it goon, let it go, G 1475; to walk, I 105; move, F 921; roam, L. 2066; **Goost**, *s.* *pr. s.* goest, G 56; **Goth**, *pr. s.* goes, 1. 68; **Gooth** about, seeks for, T. i. 1091; **Gooth**, goes, B 385; **Geeth**, L. 2145; **Gas** (Northern), A 4037; **Goon**, *pr. pl.* proceed, go along, E 898, **Goon**, *pp.* gone, L. 792; B 17; **Go**, *pp.* gone, G 907; **Geen** (Northern), A 4078; **Go**, *pr. s.* *subj.* may walk, L. 2069; **Go we**, let us go, T. ii. 615; **Goth**, *imp. pl.* go, B 3384.
- Gonfanoun**, *s.* gonfanon, gonfalon, a sacred banner, E. 1201.
- Gonge**, *s.* privy, I 885.
- Gonne**, *s.* missile, L. 637; gun, cannon, HF. 1643.
- Gonne**, -n; see **Ginne**, *v.*
- Good**, *s.* property, goods, 5. 462; **Gode**, *dat.* benefit, HF. 1, 58; property, wealth, L. 2638; **Godes**, *pl.* goods, B 2605.
- Goodlich**, *adj.* kind, bountiful, G 1053.
- Goodliheed**, *s.* seemliness, T. ii. 842; goodly seeming, HF. 330; a goodly outside, HF. 274.
- Goodly**, *adj.* kindly, B 1921; excellent, L. 77; pleasing, right, B 3969, portly, B 4010.
- Goodly**, *adv.* patiently, T. iii. 1035; well, B 2420, kindly, HF. 505, reasonably, T. iii. 990; favourably, T. iii. 654; rightly, B 2860.
- Good-man**, *s.* master of the house, C 361; householder, L. 1391.
- Goos**, *s.* goose, 5. 358; **Gees**, *pl.* E 2275.
- Goosish**, *adj.* goose-like, foolish, T. iii. 584.
- Goost**, *s.* *pr. s.* goest, B 2501.
- Goot**, *s.* goat, A 688, G 886.
- Gore**, *s.* 'gore' or gusset of a garment, B 1979; a triangular piece cut out, A 3237.
- Goshawk**, *s.* goshawk, B 1928.
- Gossib**, *s.* female companion, D 529; male (spiritual) relation, D 243; **Godsib**, sponsor, I 909.
- Gossomer**, *s.* gossamer, F 259.
- Gōst**, *s.* spirit, ghost, HF. 185; soul, 1. 56, mind, L. 103; ghost (ironically), H 55; the Holy Spirit, 1. 93; G 328; **geideth up the gost**, gives up the ghost, L. 886.
- Gostly**, **Goostly**, *adj.* spiritual, I 392.
- Gostly**, *adv.* spiritually, mystically, G 109; devoutly, truly, T. v. 1030.

- Goter**, *s.* gutter, channel for water, L. 2705.
Goune-clooth, *s.* cloth to make a gown, D 2247, 2252.
Governaille, *s.* mastery, E 1192; *pl.* rules, B 1 p 6, 32.
Governaunce, *s.* management, control, rule, HF. 945, 958, providence, T 11. 467, dominion, B 3541, manner of action, F 311, self-control, T 11. 1020, charge, care, C 73; demeanour, T. 11. 219.
Governe, *v.* control, T in 4th imp. *pl.* arrange, regulate, B 3451, E 322.
Governeresse, *s.* *fem.* governor, ruler, mistress, 1. 141; 2. 80.
Governour, *s.* ruler, umpire, A 813, leader, L. 1000.
Grace, *s.* favour, 1. 46, mercy, F 900; pardon, B 147, good opinion, R 116, virtue, R. 1000, *his grace*, *her favour* (i. e. that of the Virgin), B 980, *of grace*, out of favour, in kindness, F 161, *sorry grace*, an ill favour, HF 1700, *disfavour* D 740, *hilde grace*, displeasure, 5. 64, displeasure, disgust, D 2228, severity, HF 1586, *disfavour*, *misfortune* T 1. 713, ill luck i. e. a curse upon him G 665, *Graces*, *pl.* thanks, B 904.
Graceless, *adj.* unfavoured by God, G 1078, out of favour T 1. 781.
Grame, *s.* anger, grief, harm, 7. 276.
Grange *s.* barn, granary, A 3608.
Grant mercy best thanks, G 1380.
Grapnel, *s.* grapnel, L. 640.
Gras 1. *s.* grass, R. 1319.
Gras 2. *s.* grace, B 2021.
Graspe, *v.* grope, T 1. 221.
Gras tyme *s.* time of eating grass, time of youth, A 1868.
Granges, *pl.* granges, barns, granaries, HF 698.
Graunt, *s.* grant, R 851.
Graunt mercy, best thanks, G 1156.
Graunten, *v.* grant, R. 1483, fix, name, E 170, *pl.* *s.* assented to, L. 2663, *pl.* *pl.* consented to, A 786.
Grave, *s.* A 2778, *pit*, L. 680.
Graven, *v.* engrave, F 840, **Grave**, *v.* dig; *if the she gr.* she causes to be dug, L. 675, bury, E 681, to engrave, C 17, **Graven**, *pp.* engraved, graven, HF 101, buried, L. 785, **Grave**, *pp.* graven, HF 127.
Grayn, *s.* dye, in *grayn* in dye, i. e. dyed of a fast colour, B 1017.
Graythe, *ger.* to clothe, dress, R. 584.
Grece, *s.* grease, A 135.
Gredy, *adj.* greedy, ready, T 11. 1758.
Gree 1. *s.* favour good part, B 21. 604, will 18. 71, *in grece*, favourably T 11. 12.
Gree 2. *s.* degree, rank, L. 13.3, superiority, A 2723.
Greef *s.* grievance, D 2174.
Greet, *adj.* great, 2. 954, principal B 967; *loc.* B 1707, *pl.* L. 929, luxuriant, C 5; *a greet*, a great one, A 311, **Gret**, *adj.* *adj.* *as s.*, the chief part L. 574.
Grehoundes, *s.* *pl.* greyhounds, A 17.
Greithe, *v.* prepare, B 3784.
Grene, *adj.* *as s.* green colour R. 101, 103, green clothing (the colour of a constable), 21. 7, green place green space, F 862.
Grenehede, *v.* greenness, wantonness B 103.
Grenning, *pres. part* grinning, R. 107.
Gres, *s.* grass, T 11. 515, *pl.* grasses, HF 1053.
Grete *v.* greet, *imp.* *s.* L. 1209, **Gret**, *1 pt* *s.* L. 116.
Gretter, *adj.* *comp.* greater, A 107.
Grevance, *s.* grievance, trouble, hardship, B 2076, complaint against one, 1. 63, discomfort, 5. 205, affliction, 20. 47, *pl.* distresses, T. 1. 247.
Grove, *s.* grove, T 1. 1144, *pl.* *s.* 102, boughs, sprays, L. 227.
Grove, *ger.* to harm, R. 1032, feel with, grumble, T. 1. 241, *ger.* *s.* grudge, harms, A 917, *imp.* *v.* vexes, E 62.
Grevous, *adj.* grievous, painful, T 2. 1604.
Greyn, *s.* grain corn, A 506, grain, *loc.* B 4649, *in greyn*, of a fast colour F 1; **Greyn de Paradyz**, grains of paradise, R. 1360, **Greyn**, grain of paradise, cardanum, A 3690.
Greythen, *pr.* *pl.* prepare themselves, get ready, A 4002, *ger.* to adorn, clothe, dress, R. 584, feel *gracia*.
Griffon, *s.* griffin, A 2131.
Grille, *adj.* *pl.* horrible, R. 71.
Grim, *adj.* angry, A 2042, fierce, A 100.
Grimnesse, *s.* horror, 1. 804.
Grinte, *pt.* *s.* grined, D 2161.
Grintunge, *s.* gnashing of teeth, 1. 54.
Grisel, *s.* name given to an old man whose hair is gray, lit. of 1 horse, C 10.
Grisly, *adj.* horrible, terrible, 20. 24, A 1363, 1071, very serious, T 11. 111.
Grobbe, *v.* dig, grub up, 2. 22.
Grome, *s.* man, *ger.* and woman, HF 200, *pl.* men, R. 20.
Gronte, *pl.* *s.* grievance, B 1003.
Grope, *v.* try, test, examine, A 641, to search out, D 1817.

Gröt, *s.* particle, atom, D 1292.
 Grôte, *s.* groat, (Dutch) coin, C 945.
 Grounded, *pp.* well instructed, A 414; founded, T. iv. 1672.
 Groyn (1), *s.* (a swine's) snout, I 156.
 Groyn (2), *s.* murmur, T. i. 349.
 Groyning, *s.* murmuring, A 2460.
 Grucche, *v.* murmur, T. iii. 643; *ger.* to grumble, D 443.
 Grucching, *s.* grumbling, complaining, murmuring, D 406, I 499.
 Gruf, *adv.* on their faces, grovellingly, in a grovelling posture, A 949, B 1865. Cf. Icel. *á grūfu*, face downwards.
 Grypen, *ger.* to grasp, R. 204.
 Grys, *adj.* gray, G 559; *poemly grys*, i.e. dapple-gray.
 Grys, *s.* a gray fur, A 194. The fur of the gray squirrel.
 Guerdon, *s.* recompense, meed, reward, R. 1526; *him to g.*, as a reward for him, L. 2052.
 Guerdone, *v.* reward, I 283; *pp.* B 2462.
 Guerdoning, *s.* reward, 5. 455.
 Gyde, *s.* guide, A 804; ruler, G 45; guide, wielder, 5. 136.
 Gyde, *ger.* to direct, lead, T. i. 183; to guide, T. iii. 1811; *pr. pl.* conduct, T. ii. 1104.
 Gyderesse, *s.* conductress, B 4. p 1. 9.
 Gyding, *s.* guidance, T. v. 643.
 Gye, *v.* guide, A 1950, E 1429; conduct (myself), L. 2045; govern, A 3046; rule, B 3587; instruct, control, B 1286; *ger.* to guide, T. v. 546; to regulate, I 13; *as icisly he gye*, so verily may he guide, 25. 8.
 Gyle, *s.* deceit, A 2596; trick, T. iii. 777.
 Gylour, *s.* beguiler, trickster, A 4321.
 Gyse, *s.* guise, way, A 663; manner, R. 789, A 1208, 1789; custom, A 993; way, plan, T. iv. 1370.
 Gyte, *s.* dress, *perhaps* skirt or mantle, A 3954; *pl.* D 559. Cf. *gyle* in Jamieson's Dict., where the sense is dress, skirt, or mantle. Gascoigne uses *gite* in the sense of dress in his *Philomena*, l. 117: 'A stately Nymph, a dame of heavenly kinde, Whose glittering *gite* so glimmed in mine eyes.'

H.

Ha! ha! *interj.* B 4571.
 Haberdassher, *s.* seller of hats, A 361.
 Habergeoun, *s.* a hauberk or coat of mail, A 76, 2119.
 Habitable, *s.* habitable space, B 2. p 7. 50; Habitacles, *pl.* niches, HF. 1194.

Haboundaunt, *pres. pl.* abounding, B 3. p 2. 32.
 Habounde, *v.* abound, B 3938, E 1286.
 Habundant, *adj.* abundant, E 59.
 Habundaunce, *s.* plenty, B 2322.
 Habyten, *pr. pl.* inhabit, R. 660.
 Hacches, *pl.* hatches, L. 648.
 Hailes, *pl.* hail-storms, HF. 967.
 Hainselins, *s. pl.* short jackets, I 422. O.F. *haincelin*, *hamcellin*, a sort of robe; cf. G. *Hemd*, shirt.
 Haire, *s.* hair-shirt, R. 438.
 Hakeney, *s.* old horse, R. 1137; G 559.
 Halde, *pp.* held, esteemed (Northern), A 4208.
 Hale, *v.* draw, attract, 5. 151; *pr. s.* draws back, 1. 68.
 Half, *s.* side, HF. 1136; behalf, T. ii. 1734; Halfe, *dat.* 5. 125; *on my halfe*, from me, 3. 139; *a goddes halfe*, on God's side, in God's name, D 50; Halve, *dat.* side, part, T. iv. 945; *pl.* sides, A 3481.
 Half-goddes, *pl.* demi-gods, L. 387.
 Half-year age, of the age of half a year, A 3971.
 Haliday, *s.* holiday, A 3309, 3340.
 Halke, *s.* corner, R. 464; hiding-place, L. 1780; nook, F 1121; *pl.* G 311.
 Halle, *s.* hall, A 353; dining-room, T. ii. 1170; parlour, B 4022.
 Halp, *pt. s.* of Helpe.
 Hals, *s.* neck, HF. 394; B 73; *cut the hals*, cut in the throat, L. 292 a.
 Halse, 1 *pr. s.* I conjure, B 1835. The proper meaning of A.S. *healsian* is to clasp round the neck (A.S. *heals*), and thence to beseech, supplicate.
 Halt, *pr. s.* of Holde and Halten.
 Halten, *ger.* to limp, T. iv. 1457; Halt, *pr. s.* goes lame, 3. 622.
 Halve goddes, *pl.* demigods, T. iv. 1545.
 Halvendel, *s.* the half part (of), T. v. 335.
 Halwen, *ger.* to hallow, I 919.
 Halwes, *pl.* saints, B 1060; apostles, 3. 831; shrines of saints, A 14.
 Haly-dayes, *pl.* holy-days, festivals, A 3952, I 667.
 Ham, *s.* home (Northern), A 4032.
 Hameled, *pp.* cut off, T. ii. 964. (It refers to the mutilation of dogs that were found to be pursuing game secretly. They were mutilated by cutting off a foot.) A.S. *hamelian*, to mutilate.
 Hamer, *s.* hammer, A 25 8.

Hampred, *pp* hampered, burdened, R. 1491.
Hand, *s* hand A 108 *in his hand*, leading by his hand, L. 213.
Handebrede, *s* hand's breadth, A 3811.
Handwerk, *s* creatures, things created, D 1562.
Hangeth, *pr* *s* as fut. will hang, R. 191.
Heeng, *pt* *s* hung, A 1250. **Heng**, *pt* *s* hung, R. 224, 240 which hung, E 1881. **hang down**, T. ii. 680. **Ha geu**, *pp* hung round, A 2508. **hung**, T. ii. 351.
Hap, *s* chance, E 2057, luck, success, B 3228, 4. 1200, good fortune, 3. 1030, *h*, other grace, *s* mere chance or a special favour, 3. 810 *pl* occurrences, 1. 270.
Happe, *v* happen, befall, A 585 *h* *hote* *h* may, happen what may, T. v. 796.
Happen, *pr* *s* only it, may happen, L. 78.
Happy, *adj* lucky, T. ii. 621.
Hard, *adj* hard, A 259; *of hard*, with difficulty, T. ii. 1236, *def* cruel, 6. 100, E 400, *with h. grace*, with displeasure, severity see **Grace**.
Harde, *adv* tightly, A 1279.
Hardely, *adv* boldly, R. 270; *unhesitatingly* 6. 118, scarcely, R. 4, certainly, HF 351.
Hardiment, *s* boldness, T. iv. 533.
Hardinesse, *s* boldness, A 1948, B 1210; fool-hardiness, B 2508, insolence, I 418.
Harding, *s* hardening, tempering, F 243.
Hardnesse, *s* cruelty, 4. 232. **hardship**, I 188.
Hardy, *adj* bold, A 405, sturdy, F 19, rash, R. 1048.
Harie *ger* to drag, I 171, **Haried**, *pp* pulled forcibly, A 2726.
Harlot, *s* a person of low birth, serving-tale, D 1754. **ribald**, A 647; rogue, rascal, A 1268. **Harlotcs**, *pl* thieves, pick-pockets, R. 191. Used of both sexes.
Harlotrye, *s* ribaldry, A 1145, wickedness, D 1328, evil conduct, E 2262, *pl* riball jests A 561.
Harm, *s* harm, 1. 492. A 385, *broken harm*, occasional injury, petty annoyance, E 1425.
Harneised, *pp* equipped (lit. harnessed), A 114.
Harneys, *s* armour, A 1000. *gear*, arrangement, I 574, fittings, A 2896; harness, I 433, provision, D 136.
Harpe-strings, *pl* harp-strings, HF. 777.

Harping, *s* playing on the harp A 20.
Harpour, *s* harper, T. ii. 1030.
Harre, *s* hinge, A 550. A 8400.
Harrow, *s* harrow, A 1387. **HF** 122.
Harwed, *pt* *s* harried, d. spoiled, A 113. D 2107. Alluding to the harrying & harrowing of hell by Christ. A 8. *heryon*.
Hasard, *s* dice play, C 404, 591.
Hasardour, *s* gamester, C 596.
Hasardrye, *s* gaming, playing at hazard, C 591.
Hasel-wode, *s* hazel-wood, 10. 2000. see below, T. v. 505, 1174. *pl* hazel-bushes, T. iii. 892. **Hazel-woods** *abste* i.e. that is no news, it is of no use to tell me that.
Haspe, *s* hasp, A 1471.
Hast, *hast thou so?* A 4268.
Hast, *s* haste, T. iii. 1438.
Hasteth, *imp. pl* make haste, I 1.
Hastif, *adj* hasty, A 1545.
Hastifnesse, *s* hastiness, B 1112.
Hastow, *2 pr* *s* hast thou A 1510.
Hateful, *adj* hateful, D 22. *Lat. odibile*, D 1105.
Hateredes, *s* *pl* hatreds B 4. m. 4.
Haubergeons, *s*. *pl* hauberks, I 102. 1054.
Hauberk, *s* coat of mail, A 2410 B 244.
Haunche-bon, *s* thigh-bone A 241. *pl* haunch-bones, A 1. 70.
Haunt, *s* abode, B 2201, *hpr* *resort*, A 1520. *use* practice *the* *of*.
Haunteth, *pr* *s* habitually uses I 1. 1536, is used to, A 1092. *pr* *resort to*, I 782, 847.
Hauteyn, *adj* proud, stately. *loud*, C 130. **Hautein**, *haughty* I 1.
Haven, *s* have, T. ii. 1461, **Have** *s* *keep*, retain, C 725. *take away* *of* *obtain*, G 112. *possess* *of* *to have* *to hold*, B 208, **Have**, *2 pr* *s* *hast thou so?* A 4268. **Hath**, *pr* *s* *has* L. 2700. **Has**, *1 pr* *pl* have L. 8. *2 pr* *pl* A 849. **Has**, *pr* *pl* *possess*, A. *pr* *24*. **Hadie**, *1 pr* *pl* *possessed*, 2. 34. **Hadie**, *1 pr* *pl* *had* *possessed* E 408. *took* *Had* used for the *vinn*, *pl* *s* *617*. **Hadden**, *1 pr* *pl* *had*, *key* *Hadde*, *1 pr* *pl* L. 1841, *I hadde* *would rather*, B 2081, **Have** *take*, F 780, **Have** *loose*, *make* *4. 42*.
Havinge, *s* possession *habendi* *in* 5. 33.

- Hawe**, (1), *s.* haw, yard, enclosure, C 855.
Hawe, (2), *s.* haw (fruit of dog-rose), D 059; *with hawe bake*, with baked haws, i.e. with coarse fare, B 95.
Hay, *s.* hedge, R. 54.
Hayl, *interj.* hail! A 3579.
Hayt, *interj.* come up! D 1543.
He, *pron.* he, A 44, &c.; *used for it*, G 867, 868, *that he*, that man, HF. 2069; *He*... he, this one... that one, s. 166; *He* and *he*, one man and another, T. ii. 1748; *Him*, *dat.* and *acc.* himself, A 87; *Him* or *here*, *him* or *her*, HF. 1003, *him seemed*, it seemed to him, he appeared, B 3361; *Hem*, *pl. dat.* and *acc.* them, A 11; *hem seemed*, it seemed to them, they supposed, F 56.
Hed, *pp.* hidden, L. 208.
Hede, *s.* heed, A 303; *tuk h.*, take care, 1. 47.
Hede, *v.* provide with a head, T. ii. 1042.
Hëed, *s.* head, A 198, 293, 455; *source*, 16. 43; *beginning*, F 1282; *on hie h.*, at the risk of his head, A 1725, *maigre hir hede*, in spite of all they can do, 4. 120; *maigre hir heed*, in spite of all she could do, D 887; *maigre thyn heed*, in spite of all thou canst do, B 102; *Hedes*, *pl.* heads, or first points of signs, A. i. 17. 20, *Hevedes*, heads, B 2032.
Heef, *pl. s.* of Heve.
Heeld, *pl. s.* of Holde.
Heelp, *pl. s.* of Helpe.
Heeng, *pl. s.* of Hange.
Heep, *s.* heap, i.e. crowd, host, A 575; *great number*, crowd, T. iv. 1281.
Hëer, *s.* hair, R. 549; *Hëres*, *pl.* HF. 1402.
Hëer, *adv.* here, B 1177; *Heer* and *ther*, never long in one place, G 1174; *her* and *ther*, hither and thither, B 5. p. 5. 33.
Heer-agayns, *prep.* against this, I 668.
Heer-biforn, *adv.* here-before, before this, F 1535.
Heer-forth, *adv.* in this direction, D 1008.
Heer-mole, *s.* the thickness of a hair, a hair's breadth, A. ii. 28. 17.
Heeste, *s.* commandment, I 845.
Heet, *pl. s.* of Hote.
Hegge, *s.* hedge, T. v. 1144; *pl.* B 4408.
Helgh, *adj.* high, A 316, 522; *great*, A 1798; *lofty*, B 3102, *learned*, E 18; *severe*, B 795; *Heighe*, *def.* C 633; *in A. and lowe*, in both high and low things, i.e. wholly, A 817, B 993.
Heighe, *adv.* high up, T. iv. 996; *high*, B 4607; *on helgh*, on high, F 849.
Heighly, *adv.* strongly, T. ii. 1733.
Helde, *v.* hold, retain, D 272. *See Holde* (the usual form).
Helde, *pl. pl.* poured out, HF. 1086 (Better than 'held.') *See Hields*.
Hele, *s.* health, L. 1139; *recovery*, well-being, 1. 80, *prosperity*, L. 296. A. N. *hëlu*.
Hële, *dat.* heal, T. iv. 728.
Helen, *v.* conceal, B 2279; *pp.* hidden, B 4245. A. S. *hëlan*.
Heleless, *adj.* out of health, T. v. 1592.
Helen, *v.* heal, 11. 4; *pp.* A 2706.
Helle, *s.* hell, 4. 120; L. 2. 6.
Helpe, *s.* helper, assistant, L. 1616.
Helpe, *v.* help, A 258; *H. of*, cure of, A 632; *Heelp*, 1 *pl. s.* helped, A 4246, *Heelp*, *pl. s.* B 920; *Halp*, *pl. s.* A 1651; *Helpoth*, *imp. pl.* L. 68; *Holpe*, *pl. s.* *subj.* helped, R. 1230; *Holpen*, *pp.* helped, aided, F 666; *healed*, A 18.
Helply, *adj.* helpful, T. v. 128.
Hem, *them*, *see He*.
Hemi-sphere, hemisphere, T. iii. 1439.
Hem-self, *pron. pl.* themselves, B 145; *Hem-selven*, F 1420.
Hen, *s.* hen, A 177; (*as a thing of small value*), D 1112.
Hende, *adj.* courteous, polite, gentle. A 3199, 3272, 3462.
Henne, *adv.* hence, T. i. 572.
Hennes, *adv.* hence, T. v. 402; *now*, HF. 1284.
Hennes-forth, *adv.* henceforth, R. 701.
Hente, *v.* catch, I 355; *seize*, A 1147; *acquire*, *get*, A 299; *circumvent*, T. iv. 1371; *dide her for to hente*, caused her to be seized, L. 2715; *Hont*, *pr. s.* *seizes*, catches, T. iv. 5; *Henta*, *pr. s.* *subj.* may seize, G 7; *Hento*, *pl. s.* caught, took, A 957; *caught away*, B 1144; *seized*, caught hold of, T. ii. 924; *grasped*, C 255; *took forcibly*, E 534, *took in hunting*, B 3449; *lifted*, G 205; *pl. pl.* seized, A 904; *caught*, R. 773; *pp.* caught, A 1581.
Henteres, *s. pl.* flichers, B 1. p. 3. 80.
Hëpe, *s.* hip, the fruit of the dog-rose. B 1937.
Hepen, *pr. pl.* augment, B 5. p. 2. 46; *pp.* accumulated, T. iv. 236.
Her, *Hir*, *pron. poss.* their, B 136. A. N. *heors*, *heora*, of them; *gen. pl.* of *hē*.
Heraud, *s.* herald, A 2533.
Heraude, *ger.* to proclaim as a herald does, HF. 1576.
Herber, *s.* garden, T. ii. 1705; *arbour*, L. 203.

- Herbergage**, *s.* a lodging, abode, A 429, B 479.
- Herbergeours**, *s.* pl harbingers, providers of lodgings, B 907.
- Herberwe**, or **Herberw**, *s.* harbours, A 404, inn, A 765, lodging, shelter, A 419, dwelling, position, F 1015.
- Herberwe**, *ger.* to shelter, R 401. **Herberweden**, *pl.* pl. lodged, B 2 p 6, 75.
- Herberwing**, *s.* lodging, sheltering, A 412.
- Her-biforn**, *adj.* before this time, L 73 a while ago, 1. 1176.
- Her-by**, *adv.* with respect to this matter, D 2204, hence HF 204.
- Herde**, *s.* shepherd, G 197, keeper of cattle, A 603.
- Herde-gromes**, *pl.* herdsmen, HF 1225.
- Herdes**, *pl.* coarse flax, 'burds,' B 1243.
- Herdessse**, *s.* shepherdess, T 1 632.
- Here**, *pron.* her, R 1260 &c.
- Here**, *poss. pron.* her, T 1 285 &c.
- Here**, *adv.* here, in this place, on this spot, T v 478. Dissyllabic. See **Heer**.
- Here**, *v.* hear, A 169. **Hereu**, *v.* HF 879.
- Herestow**, *2 pr.* s. hearest thou, A 260.
- Herth**, *pr.* s. hears, L 327 a. **Herde**, *pl.* s. heard, A 221. **Herdestow** heardest thou, A 470. **Herd** *pp.* heard, 1. 120.
- Here-agayna**, against this, A 100.
- Here-ayens**, in reply to that, T. ii. 1480.
- Here and howne**, T. iv. 210, perhaps gentle and savage, i.e. one and all (doubtful). Cf *here*, gentle, in *Stratmann*, and A. S. *Hlāna*, a Hun.
- Herie**, *1 pr.* s. praise, T. ii. 1072. **Heriest** *2 pr.* s. worshippeth, B 349, *pr.* s. B 1155, *pl.* pl. worshipped, L 786, *pp.* B 872. A. S. *herian*.
- Herke**, *imp.* s. hearken, E 1323. **Herketh**, *imp.* pl. D 1656.
- Herknen**, *v.* Learken, listen, I 81, *ger.* to listen to, 1. 752; **Herkne**, *v.* G 1006, *ger.* B 3159, *pl.* s. listened to, A 4171.
- Herkned**, *pp.* listened, B. 930, *h.* after, expected, F 401.
- Herne**, *s.* corner F 1121; *pl.* G 658.
- Herneys**, *s.* armour, A 2496, *pl.* sets of armour, A 1600.
- Heroner**, *s.* falcon for herons, T. iv. 411.
- Heronere**, *adv.* used for flying at herons, L 1120. Said of a falcon.
- Heronsewes**, *s.* pl. heronshaws, young herons, F 68. *Heronsewe* is derived, regularly, from A. F. *herounet*, later *herouneau*, a diminutive from *heroun*, like *lioncel* from *lion*.
- Herse**, *s.* hearse, 1. 15, 36.
- Hert**, *s.* hart, 1. 151; 1. 125.
- Herte**, *s.* heart, A 150, 229, dear one T. ii. 1076, courage, 1. 1222. **Hertes** *pr.* heart's, 1. 104. **Herte**, *pr.* T. 1. 445.
- Herte rote**, root (bottom) of the heart, R. 1026, *myu hertes*, of my heart, 1. 9.
- Herte** *pl.* s. hurt, 1. 881.
- Herte-blood**, heart's blood, A 2000.
- Herteless**, *adj.* heartless, without heart, T. v. 1504, deficient in courage, B 102.
- Hertely**, *adv.* heartily, A 712, thoroughly, L 31 earnestly, 1. 1226, truly, 1. 1.
- Herte-rote**, *s.* root of the heart, 1076 of the heart, L 1091.
- Herte-spoon**, *s.* 'the concave part of the breast, where the ribs unite to form the cartilago ensiformis' *Ternant* A 2600.
- Hert-hunting**, *s.* hunting of the hart, 1. 1313.
- Herth** *pr.* s. hearth, L 327 a.
- Hertly**, *adj.* heartfelt, honest, L 1241 heartily, E 176, 502, F 1.
- Heryinge**, *s.* praising, I 622 praise, I 141, glory, T. ii. 48.
- Heste**, *s.* command, commandment, lest, B 382, promise, F 1044. **Heste**, commandment, I 845.
- Hete**, *s.* heat, R. 1258 passion, 1. 47 heat, but put for surge, B 1, 91, 1.
- Hete**, *v.* promise, vow, G 77 *pr.* s. promise, A 2105, 1 *pr.* s. B 454. **Hete**, *pl.* s. 1. 185. See **Hote**.
- Hoterly**, *adv.* fiercely, L 638.
- Höthen**, *adv.* hence (Northern), A 405.
- Hethenesse**, *s.* heathen lands, A 1112.
- Hething**, *s.* contempt, A 4110. *huding*.
- Hette**, *pl.* s. heated, inflamed, 1. 12.
- Hette**, *pl.* s. promised, 1. 185. See **Hete**.
- Heve**, *v.* heave, lift, A 500 *pr.* s. exertion, labour, T. ii. 128, *pr.* s. up, B 5 m 5 18; **Hut**, *pl.* s. heat, 1. 3470, **Heef**, *pl.* s. lifted, B 1711.
- Hoved**, *s.* head, HF 520, beginning, 1. 16, 3, **Haved**, *s.* pl. B 2032.
- Heven**, *s.* heaven, A 519, the sphere, B 1200; supreme delight, beautiful sight, T. ii. 617, **Heve**, heaven's, D 1181, G 542.
- Hevenish**, *adj.* heavenly, HF 107, the spheres, 1. 10.
- Hevieth**, *pr.* pl. weigh down, B 1000.
- Hevy**, *adj.* heavy, R. 229, sad, 410.
- Hewe**, (1) *s.* hue, colour, complexion, A 404, 1104, outward appearance, D 1022; pretence, C 421.

- Hewe**, (2), *s.* (household)-servant, domestic, E 1785. A. S. *hæcu*.
Hewed, *adj.* coloured, R. 213.
Hey, *s.* hay, A 3262; grass, B 3407.
Hey! *interj.* hey! L. 1213.
Heye, *adj. def.* high, A. i. 16, 11.
Heyghte, *s.* height, A. ii. 22, 8.
Heyne, *s.* wretch, G 1319.
Heynous, *adj.* heinous, odious, T. ii. 1617.
Heyre, *adj.* hair, made of hair, C 736.
Heyre, *s.* hair-shirt, G 133.
Heysugge, *s.* hedge-sparrow, 5. 612.
Hoyt, *interj.* come up, D 1561.
Hider, *adv.* hither, 4. 165.
Hidous, *adj.* hideous, A 3520; terrible, horrible, dreadful, A 1978, B 4583; ugly, R. 158.
Hidously, *adv.* terribly, A 1701.
Hiede, *pr. s. subj.* pour out, shed, B 2. m 2. 2 (*Lat. fundat*).
Hierdes, female guardian, protectress, T. iii. 619. See *Herdesse*.
Hight, *Highte*; see *Hote*.
Highteth, *pr. s.* adorns, gladdens, B 1. m 2. 25.
Hild, *pt. s.* bent, inclined, 3. 393.
Hinde, *s.* hind, 3. 427.
Hindre, *v.* hinder, R. 1039.
Hindreste, *superl.* hindmost, A 622.
Hipes, *pl.* hips, A 472.
Hir, (1), *pers. pron. dat. and acc.*, to her, her, A 126, B 162, &c.
Hir, (2), *poss. pron.* her, A 120, B 164, &c.
Hir (3), *grn. pl.* of them; *Hir aller*, of them all, A 586; *Hir botha*, of both of them, B 221.
Hir, (4), *poss. pron.* their, A 11, B 140, &c.; *Her*, B 1536, &c.
Hir thankes, with their good will, willingly, A 2114.
Hires, *hers*, 5. 482, 588.
Hirnia, *s.* hernia, I 423.
His, *gen. masc.* his, A 47, 50, &c.; *neut.* its, 1. 178; T. iii. 1088, v. 1379; *in par.* Mars his — of Mars, L. 2491.
His thankes, with his good will, willingly, A 2107.
Historial, *adj.* historical, C 156.
Hit, *pres. it.* 2. 117. *Hit am I*, it is I, 3. 186, L. 314; *Hit weren*, they were, HF. 1323.
Hit, *pr. s.* hides, F 512. *Hit* is a contracted form, equivalent to *hideth*.
Ho, *interj.* hold! stop! B 3057.
Ho, *s.* exclamation commanding silence, A 2533; stop, cessation, T. ii. 1083.
Hocheipot, *s.* hotch-potch, mixture, B 2447.
Hoke, *dat. of Hook*.
Hoker, *s.* scorn, frowardness, A 3965. A. S. *hōcor*.
Hokerly, *adv.* scornfully, I 584.
Hold, *s.* possession, B 4064; grasp, F 167; keeping, D 599; fort, castle, B 307.
Hold, *v.* keep, preserve, D 1144; hold, keep, B 41; continue, go on with, T. ii. 965; restrain, 7. 309, 310; keep to (see *Proces*), F 658; *Holden*, *v.* hold, keep, F 763; keep, F 1163; think, consider, L. 857; *do than holde herte*, keep to it then, 3. 754; *Hold* up, hold up, 2. 24; *Hold* his pece, hold his peace, B 4625; *Hold*, 1 *pr. s.* consider, deem, G 730; *Holdest*, 2 *pr. s.* accountant, L. 326; *Halt*, *pr. s.* holds, 11. 16; T. v. 348; *keepe*, T. ii. 37; *holds fast*, T. iii. 1636; *consider*, G 921; *esteem*, D 1185; *performs*, 3. 621; *remains firm*, 10. 38; *Holt*, *pr. s.* holds, T. iii. 1374; *Holden*, 2 *pr. pl.* keep, L. 2920; *Hold*, 2 *pr. pl.* esteem, deem, T. v. 1339; *Heold*, 1 *pt. s.* considered, E 818; *Heold*, *pt. s.* held, A 173; *took part*, A 3847; *esteemed*, C 625; *ruled*, B 3518; *Holden*, *pp.* esteemed, held, A 141; *considered*, E 205; *observed*, F 1587; *esteemed*, L. 1709; *bound*, T. ii. 241; *made to be*, C 958; *Hold*, *pp.* esteemed, A 1307; *bet for thee have holde*, better for thee to have held, 5. 572; *Hold up*, *imp. pl.* hold up, A 783; *Holdeth*, *imp. pl.* keep, B 37; *consider*, A 1868.
Holdings in hondes, cajolery, HF. 692.
Holly, *adv.* wholly, T. iii. 145.
Holm, *s.* evergreen oak, A 2021.
Holour, *s.* lecher, adulterer, D 254.
Holpe, -n; see *Helpe*.
Holsom, *adj.* wholesome, T. i. 947; *healing*, 5. 206.
Holt, *s.* plantation, A 6.
Holt, *pr. s.* holds, T. iii. 1374.
Holwe, *adj.* hollow, G 1265.
Holwe, *adv.* hollow, A 289.
Hom, *adv.* homewards, F 615.
Homicyde (1), *s.* man-slayer, E 1994.
Homicyde (2), manslaughter, murder, C 644.
Hond, *s.* hand, A 193, 399; *Bere* him on h., make him believe, T. iv. 1404; *Bere* on h., accuse (of), D 226; *Bar* on h., made (them) believe, D 380; *Bar* him on h., assured him, T. iii. 1154; *Holden* in h., retain, cajole, T. ii. 477; *Hold* in h., T. iii. 773; *delude with false hopes*, 3. 1019.
Honest, *adj.* creditable, A 246; honour-

- able worthy, B 1751, seemly decent, C 428, inauspicious E 2028.
- Honestee**, *s* Honour, L 1673, goodness, B 1157, honourableness, 2 40, womanly virtue, C 77.
- Honestetee**, *s* honour, E 421, modesty, 1 129, neatness, 1 411.
- Honestly**, *adv* honourably, B 1414, richly, E 226.
- Honge**, *v* hang, A 4410, be hung, C 700, *to me h*, cause me to be hanged, T 1, 811, 2 *pr* *pl* subj hesitate, T II 1242.
- Hony**, *s* honey, A 2968, beloved one, A 4017.
- Hony-comb**, *a* term of endearment, sweet one, A 1098.
- Hony-swete**, sweet as honey, E 1496.
- Hoodless**, *adj* without a hood, 3 1028.
- Hook** *s* hook, T v 777, sickle, B 3 111, 3 crozier, D 1217.
- Hoöl**, *adj* whole, T 1, 961, sound, D 1270, unwounded, F 1111, perfect, G 111, 127; restored to health, L 2468, entire, 1 554.
- Hoöl**, *adj* *as* *adv* wholly, T 1, 1053, *at* *hoöl*, entirely, T III 1014.
- Hoölly**, *adv* wholly R 1162.
- Hoolnesse** *s* integrity, B 4 p 6, 202.
- Hoolsome**, *adj* wholesome, B 1185.
- Hoolsomnesse** *s* health, B 2344.
- Hoom**, *s* *as* *adv* home, homewards, L 1610.
- Hoomlinessse**, *s* domesticity, E 429, familiarity, B 2870.
- Hoomly**, *adj* belonging to one's household E 1785.
- Hoomward**, *adv* homeward, T III 621, Homward, A 2956.
- Hoör** *adj* hoary, white-haired, grey-headed A 3878.
- Hoors** *adv*, see **Hors**.
- Hoost**, *s* army, A 874.
- Hoöt**, *adj* hot, L 914; fervent, I 117, *as* *s* 380, Hote, *def* hot, 5 266, voracious 5 302, *as* epithet of Aries, which induced heat of blood, F 51.
- Hope**, *s* expectation, G 870.
- Hope**, 1 *pr* *s* tear, A 4020.
- Hoper**, *s* hopper, A 4036, 4039.
- Hoppe** *v* dance, A 4375.
- Hoppesteres**, *pl* dancers, *used as* *adj*, dancing, A 2017.
- Hord**, *s* hoard, treasure, C 775, store of apples, A 3262, treasure-house, I 821, avarice 13 2.
- Hore**, *pl* *of* floor, *adj*.
- Horn**, *s* horn, T II 642, (musical instrument, used metaphorically), H 90, *pl* drinking-horns, A 2270, horns of the room, T v 652.
- Horse**, *pl*, in *horoscopo*, within that part of the sky considered as the ascendant, A II 4 14.
- Horowe**, *adj* *pl* foul, scandalous, *as* *adv*, Cf A S. *horid* filthy.
- Hora**, *s* hors, A 128, the 'horse' *as* *adv* for the little wedge that passes through a hole in the end of the 'pen' A 1, 7, Arabic *alpherez* the horse, *Hor* *pl* A 74, 508.
- Hora**, *adj* hoarse, 4 147, Hours T v 1147, A S. *has*.
- Horsly**, *adj*, like all that a horse would be, F 194.
- Hose** *s* hose, covering for the feet and legs, A 3033, G 720, Hosen *pl* A 1, 7, Hoses, *pl* A 3102.
- Hospitaliera**, *s*, *pl* knights hospitaliers, I 804.
- Hoste** *s* host of an inn keeper of a lodging, A 747. Often split into
- Hostel**, *s* hostelry, HF 1072.
- Hostelrye**, *s* hostel inn A 21.
- Hostiler**, *s* innkeeper, A 241, *pl* innkeepers at an inn 1 402.
- Hote**, *adv*, see **Hoöt**.
- Hote**, *adv*, hotly, A 27, 1767.
- Hote**, *v* command, promise *as* *be* called, R 38; *Hoten*, *v* be called I 145.
- Hote**, 1 *pr* *s* command, HF 1072.
- Hight**, *pl* *s* *as* *pr* *s*, is called, L 1, 17.
- Highten** *pl* *pl* *as* *pr*, *pl* are called, L 421, Hight, *pl* *s* was named, L 1, 17.
- Highte**, *pl* *s* was called was called, R 588, 745, 1 *pl* *s* was called, 1, 17, 2 *pl* *s* promised, 17 5, Hight *pl* *s* promised, T v 1636, 2 *pl* *pl* promised, E 496, Hatt *pl* *s* *as* *pr*, 1 is called, named, T III 707; Hatt, *pl* *pl* called, were named, HF 1072, B 1, 1 *pl* *s* promised, 4 185, Hott *pl* *s* named, HF 1072, who was called, F 1388, Hott for Hott, 3 200, Hott *pp* called, A 1041, Hight, *pp* promised, T II 492, named, HF 1072, A 5 220.
- The parts of the verb show great confusion.
- Hottes**, *pl* baskets carried on the back, HF 1040, OF *hotte*.
- Hound**, *s* dog, T III 774.
- Houndfish**, *s* logfish, E 1625.
- Houped**, *pl* *pl* whistled, B 4071.
- Hous**, *s* house, A 152, 143, 2 122, *as* a reception by, L 1536, Housa, D 1, house and home, H 120, Housa, 1, 2 to each house in order, D 1705, absc-

- hold, F 24; a 'mansion' of a planet (in astrology), F 672; a 'house' or portion of the sky (in astrology), B 314. The whole celestial sphere was divided into twelve equal portions, called *houses*, by six great circles passing through the north and south points of the horizon; two of these circles being the meridian and the horizon. A *house*, when used for a 'mansion,' is a sign of the zodiac; thus Aries was the mansion of Mars.
- Housbonde**, *s.* husband, B 1241.
- Housbondrye**, *s.* economy, A 4077; household goods, D 288.
- Housled**, *pp.* made a recipient of holy communion, I 1017.
- Hove**, *v.* hover, dwell, T. iii. 1427; *pr. pl.* wait in readiness, hover, L. 1196; *pt. s.* waited about, T. v. 33.
- How**, *interj.* ho! A 3437, 3577.
- Howne**, savage (?), T. iv. 210. See **Here**.
- Howve**, *s.* hood, T. iii. 775; Sette his howve, set (awry) his hood, make game of him, A 3911.
- Humanitee**, *s.* kindness, E 92.
- Humbely**, *adv.* humbly, T. v. 1354.
- Humblely**, *adv.* humbly, T. ii. 1719; L. 156.
- Humblese**, *s.* meekness, A 1781, B 165.
- Humbling**, *s.* low growl (lit. humming), HF. 1039.
- Hunne**, *ger.* to hum, T. ii. 1199.
- Hunte**, *s.* huntsman, A 2018, 2628.
- Hunter**, *s.* huntsman, A 1618.
- Hunteresse**, *s. fem.* female hunter, A 2147.
- Hurlest**, *2 pr. s.* dost hurl, dost whirl round, B 297.
- Hurt**, *pr. s.* hurteth, hurts, T. v. 350.
- Hurtleth**, *pr. s.* pushes, A 2616; *pr. pl.* dash together, L. 638.
- Husht**, *pp.* hushed, silent, L. 2682; **Hust**, *as imp. s.* be silent, A 3722.
- Hy**, *adj.* high, A 306, **Hye**, *dat.* HF. 1113; great, E 125; **Hye weye**, *dat.* (the) high way, main road, A 807.
- Hyde**, *v.* hide, A 1477, 1481; lie concealed, F 141; Hydestow, hidest thou, D 308; **Hit**, *pr. s.* hides, F 512; **Hilde**, *1 pt. s.* hid, F 595; **Hed**, *pp.* hidden, L. 208; **Hid**, *pp.* hidden, R. 1598.
- Hye**, *adv.* high, aloft, HF. 905; L. 1220; loudly, 3. 305; proudly, T. ii. 401.
- Hye**, *v.* hasten, hie, A 2274, G 1151; **A. we**, make haste, G 1084; *ger.* to bring hastily, F 291; to hasten, HF. 1658; **Hy thee**, *imp. s. 7c.* G 1295.
- Hye**, *s.* haste; only in phr. *in Aye*, in haste, T. ii. 88, 1712.
- Hyene**, *s.* hyena, 10. 35.
- Hyër**, *adj.* higher, upper, HF. 1117.
- Hyne**, *s.* hind, servant, peasant, A 603, C 688. A. S. *hina*.
- Hyre**, *s.* hire, A 507; reward, 1. 103; payment, D 1008; ransom, T. iv. 506.

I.

I-, common prefix of past participles, see **Y-**.

Itched, *pp.* itched, A 3683.

Ich, *pron.* I, T. i. 678, iii. 1818.

I-comen, *pp.* come, T. iii. 1668.

Idus, *s. pl.* idea, F 47.

Ignotum, *s.* an unknown thing, G 1457.

Lat. ignotum, an unknown thing; comp.

ignotus, a less known thing.

I-graunted, *pp.* granted, T. iv. 665.

I-halowed, *pp.* view-halloed (of the

hart), 3. 379.

Ik, I, A 3867, 3888.

Il, *adj.* evil, A 4174. (A Northern word.)

Il-hayl, bad luck (to you), A 4089. (A

Northern form.)

Ilke, *adj.* same, very, A 64, 175; *that*

ilke, that same, B 3663; *ilke same*, very

same, L. 779.

Imaginatyf, *adj.*; No-thing list him to

been imaginatyf - it did not at all

please him to imagine, he did not care

to think, F 1094.

Imagining, *s.* plotting, A 1995; fancy,

18. 36.

Imperie, *s.* government, rank, B 2 p. 6. 11.

Impertinent, *adj.* irrelevant, E 54.

Impe, *pl.* grafts, actions, B 3146. A. S.

imp.

Impetren, *pr. pl.* impetrate, ask for, B 5.

p. 3. 225.

Importable, *adj.* insufferable, B 3792, E

1144.

Impossible, *adj.* impossible, T. i. 783;

as s. thing impossible, D 688.

Impressen, *v.* imprint, T. iii. 1543; im-

print (themselves), find an impression,

E 1578; *pr. pl.* make an impression

(upon), G 1071.

Impressioun, *s.* remembrance, F 371; *pl.*

notions, HF. 39.

In, *s.* dwelling, house, A 1547, 3612; inn,

B 4216; lodging, B 1097.

In, *prep.* in, A 3, &c.; into, B 119; = come

within, 20. 6; on, I 105; against, I 695.

In manus tuas, into Thy hands (I commend

my spirit), A 4187.

In principio, in the beginning, A 154, B

4353. Part of St. John, i. 1.

Inde, *adj.* indigo, dark blue, R. 67.
Indeterminat, *adj.* not marked upon the Astrolabe, A ii. 17 rubric.
Indifferently, *adv.* impartially, B 5. p 3. 142.
Induracioun, *s.* hardening, G 855.
Inequal, *adj.* unequal, A 2271; *Inequales*, *pl.* of varying length; *hours inuales*, hours formed by dividing the duration of daylight by twelve, A ii. 8. 1.
Infect, *adj.* of no effect, A 320, dimmed, B 4. m 5. 12.
In-fere, *adv.* together, B 328, D 924. Orig. *in fere*, in company.
Infortunat, *adj.* unfortunate, unlucky, inauspicious, B 302.
Infortune, *s.* misfortune, ill fortune, T. iii. 1626, iv. 183.
Infortuné, *pp.* ill-starred, T. iv. 744.
Infortuning, *s.* unlucky condition, A. ii. 4. 43.
Ingot, *s.* a mould for pouring metal into, G 1206, 1209.
Inhelde, *imp. s.* pour in, infuse, T. iii. 44.
Injure, *s.* injury, T. iii. 1018.
In-knette, *pt s.* knit up, drew in, T. iii. 1088.
Inly, *adv.* inwardly, intimately, extremely, greatly, T. i. 140, exquisitely, 3. 276.
In-mid, *prep.* amid, HF 923.
Immortal, *adj.* immortal, T. i. 103.
Inne, *dat. of in*, *s.*
Inne, *adv.* in, within, T. i. 387, 821.
Inned, *pp.* housed, lodged, A 2192.
Inobedience, *s.* disobedience, I 301.
Inobedient, *adj.* disobedient, I 192.
Inordinate, *adj.* unusual, I 414.
Inpacience, *s.* impatience, B 2734.
Inpatient, *adj.* impatient, B 2740.
Inparfit, *adj.* imperfect, B 3. p. 10. 18.
Inplitable, *adj.* intricate, impracticable, B i. p 4. 90.
Impossible, *s.* impossible thing, F 1009.
Inset, *pp.* implanted, B 2. p 3. 19.
Inspired, *pp.* quickened, A 6.
Instable, *adj.* unstable, E 2057.
Instance, *s.* suggestion, T. ii. 1441, urgent request, E 1611.
Intendestow, *doest thou intend*, T. v. 478.
Intervalle, *s.* interval, B 2724.
In-til, *prep.* unto, as far as, R. 624.
Into, *prep.* unto, B 2423.
Intresse, *s.* interest, 10. 71.
In-with, *prep.* within, in, B 1794, 2159, E 870, 1304, 1586, 1944.
Ipoocras, *s.* a kind of cordial drink, E 1807. Named after Hippocrates.

Ipoocrite, *s.* hypocrite, R. 414.
Ire, *s.* irritability, R. 314; quickness of temper, I 665; anger, A 1937.
Irous, *adj.* angry, B 2315, D 2014.
Irregular, *adj.* a sinner against his orders, I 781.
Is, 1 *pr. s.* am (Northern), A 4031, 4045, 4202; 2 *pr s.* art (Northern), A 4069.
Issest, 2 *pr. s.* issued, B 3. p 12. 168.
Issue, *s.* outlet, vent, T. v. 205.
It am I, it is I, A 1736.
I-wis, *adv.* certainly, truly, verily, 6. 48.

J.

Jade, *s.* a jade, i. e. miserable hack, B 4002.
Jagounce, *pl.* garnets (or rubies), R. 1117.
Jalous, *adj.* jealous, A 1329.
Jalousye, *s.* jealousy, A 3394.
Jambeux, *s. pl.* leggings, leg-armour, B 2065. From *F. jambe*, the leg.
Jane, *s.* a small coin of Genoa, B 1915, E 999.
Jangle, *v.* chatter, prate, T. ii. 666.
Jangler, *s.* story-teller, jester, babbler, A 560, talkative person, H 343.
Jangleresse, *s.* (female) chatterbox, prattler, D 638.
Janglerye, *s.* gossip, T. v. 755; talkativeness, B 2252.
Jangles, *s. pl.* idle pratings, HF. 1900, disputes, arguments, D 1407.
Jangling, *s.* chattering, idle talking, I 640.
Jape, *s.* jest, trick, A 3390, 3799, 4201, jest, foolish conduct, D 1901, laughing-stock, HF. 414.
Jape, *v.* jest, T. i. 929; *per.* to jest, L. 1699; H 4; *Japedest*, 2 *pl. s.* didst jest, T. i. 308, 934; *pp.* tricked, A 1729.
Japere, *s.* jester, T. ii. 340; mocker, I 8.
Japerie, *s.* buffoonery, I 651; jesting mood, E 1656.
Jape-worthy, *adj.* ridiculous, B 5. p 1. 148.
Jargon, *s.* talk, E 1848.
Jargonig, *s.* jargonig, chattering, R. 716.
Jaunyce, *s.* jaundice, R. 305.
Jeet, *s.* jet, B 4051.
Jelous, *adj.* jealous, suspicious, 4. 140.
Jet, *s.* fashion, mode, A 682.
Jeopardyes, *s. pl.* problems (at chess), 3. 666.
Jewerye, *s.* Jewry, Jews' quarter, B 1070.
Jo, *v.* take effect, come about, T. iii. 33 O.F. *joer* (F. *jouer*).

Jogelour, *s.* juggler, D 1467; *pl.* R. 764.
 Jogelrye, *s.* jugglery, F 1265.
 Jolif, *adj.* joyful, merry, R. 109, A 3355;
 in good spirits, B 4264; jovial, R. 435;
 frisky, A 4154, pretty, R. 610.
 Jolily, *adv.* merrily, A 4370.
 Jolitee, *s.* sport, amusement, merriment,
 A 1807; joviality, jollity, mirth, R. 616;
 enjoyment, F 344; comfort, A 680;
 excellence, H 197, happiness, HF. 682.
 Joly, *adj.* full of merriment, D 456;
 jolly, joyous, R. 620; delightful, L 176;
 festive, B 1185. See Jolif.
 Jolyer, *adj. comp.* handsomer, F 927.
 Jolyf; see Jolif.
 Jolynesse, *s.* festivity, F 289; amusement,
 D 926.
 Jolytee; see Jolitee.
 Jompre, *imp. s.* jumble, T. ii. 1037.
 Jordane, *pl.* chamberpots, C 305.
 Joma, down here, A 4101. O.F. *jos*,
 down; *ca*, here.
 Jouken, *v.* slumber, T. v. 409. O.F.
juquier, jouquer, être en repos, jucher.
 Journee, *s.* day's work, R. 579; day's
 march, A 2738, journey, E 783.
 Jowes, *s. pl.* jaws, B i. p. 4. 107 (where
 the Latin text has *faucibus*); jaws,
 jowls, HF. 1786 (riming with *clowes*,
 claws).
 Joynture, *s.* union, B 2. p. 5. 51.
 Jubbe, *s.* vessel for holding ale or wine,
 A 4628, B 1260. (It held 4 gallons.)
 Judicial, *adj.* judicial, A. ii. 4. 59.
 Judicial astrology pretended to forecast
 the destinies of men and nations;
natural astrology foretold natural events,
 such as the weather and seasons.
 Juge, *s.* judge, A 814; umpire, A 1712,
 1804.
 Juge, *s.* judge; but an error for *jug*,
 a yoke, I 898. *Helial* is explained to
 mean 'absque iugo,' in the Vulgate.
 Juge, *i. pr. s.* judge, decide, 5. 629; *pp.*
 HF. 227.
 Jugement, *s.* judgement, decision, A 778;
 opinion, B 1038; sentence, 5. 431.
 Juggen, *v.* judge, T. ii. 21; deem, T.
 v. 1203; *imp. pl.* judge ye, T. iii. 1312.
 Juparte, *s. pr. pl.* jeopardy, imperil, en-
 danger, T. iv. 1566.
 Jupartye, *s.* jeopardy, peril, hazard, T. ii.
 415, 772. O.F. *jeu parti* (Lat. *locus*
partitus), a divided game.
 Just, *adj.* just, exact, correct, D 2090.
 Juste, *v.* joust, tourney, tilt, A 96, 2604.
 Justes, *s. pl.* as *sing.* a jousting-match,
 A 2720.

Justing, *s.* jousting, L. 1115.
 Justyse, *s.* judge, B 663, C 289.
 Justyse, *s.* judgement, condemnation, 1.
 142; administration of justice, C 587.
 Juyse, *s.* justice, judgement, B 795; sen-
 tence, A 1739. O.F. *juice*.

K

Kalender, *s.* calendar, almanack, A. i.
 11. 1; *hence*, a complete record of
 examples, L. 542; *pl.* 1. 73.
 Kalendes, *i.e.* beginning, introduction,
 T. v. 1634. (Because the Kalends fall
 on the first of the month.)
 Karf, *pt. s.* of Kerve.
 Kaynard, *s.* dotard, D 235. O.F. *caignard*,
cagnard, sluggard.
 Kecoche, *v.* catch, clutch, T. iii. 1375.
 Kēchil, *s.* small cake, D 1747. O.E. *coecil*,
 small cake.
 Keep, *s.* care, heed, notice (only in the
 phrase *take keep*); *take keep*, take notice,
 D 431.
 Keep, *imp. s.* take care! mind! A 4101.
 Kek! *interj.* (represents the cackle of
 a goose), 5. 499.
 Kembe, *ger. to* comb, R. 599; *pr. s.* E
 2011; *Kembde*, *pt. s.* F 560; *Kempte*,
pt. s. A 3374; *Kembd*, *pp.* combed,
 trimmed, A 2143.
 Kempe, *adj. pl.* shaggy, rough, A 2134.
 Cf. *Icel.* *kampr*, beard, moustaches,
 whiskers of a cat; and see *Camp*, *s.* (4)
 in the New E. Dict.
 Ken, *s.* kin, kindred, men, 3. 438. (A
 Kentish form.)
 Kene, *adj.* keen, eager, 21. 6; cruel, 10.
 27; bold, B 3439; sharp, A 2876.
 Kene, *adv.* keenly, 6. 63; 11. 3.
 Kenne, *v.* discern, HF. 498.
 Keps, *v.* take care (of), A 130; keep,
 preserve, L. 384; *i. pr. s.* care, L. 1032;
 intend, T. i. 676; regard, reck, A 2238;
I keps has, I care to have, G 1368; *pr.*
s. subj. may (He) keep, F 889; *pt. s.*
 E 223; retained, A 442; took care of,
 A 415, 512, B 269; *imp. s.* take care!
 A 4101; *imp. pl.* keep ye, B 764.
 Keps, *s.* heed (only in the phrase *take*
keps or *take keep*); *I take keps*, 3. 6.
 Keper, *s.* keeper, *i.e.* prior, A 172.
 Kerchief, finely woven loose covering, 5.
 272; kerchief, B 837.
 Kers, *s.* cross; thing of small value,
 A 3756.
 Kerve, *v.* carve, cut, T. ii. 325, F 158,
 Karf, *pt. s.* carved, A 100; cut, B 3047.

B 9, p 12. 80. Chaucer has translated *clawo* (rudder), as if it were *claw* (key).
Kitchens, pl. kitchens, D 869.
Kid, Kidde; see *Kythen*.
Kike, v. kick, D 411.
Kimelin, s. a large shallow tub, A 3548 3621.
Kin, s. kindred, R. 268; *som kin*, of some kind, B 1137, *alles kinnes*, of every kind, HF. 1530.
Kind, s. nature, R. 412, 1699; race, lineage, stock, D 1101; seed, I 965; the natural world, HF. 584; natural bent, F 608, 619; natural disposition, HF. 41; natural ordinance, s. 494; kind, species, s. 174; *of k.*, by nature, naturally, k 768; pl. sorts, HF. 204.
Kind, adj. kind, A 647; natural, HF. 834, 836.
Kind, adv. kindly, 7. 267.
Kindely, adj. natural, HF. 842.
Kindely, adv. by nature, D 403; naturally, HF. 832.
Kindenesse, s. kindness, 4. 298; love, devotion, L. 665.
Kinges note, the name of a tune, A 1217.
Kinrede, s. kindred, B 2358; relations, A 1286; birth, A 2790; family, L. 2004.
Kirtel, s. kirtle, A 3321. A *kirtle* usually means a short skirt with a body.
Kissen, v. kiss, L. 761; *Kiste*, 1st. pl. R. 788; *kist they been*, they have kissed each other, B 1074. See *Kesse*.
Kitte, pl. s. cat, B 600, 1761.
Knakke, s. pl. tricks, I 652, contemptible ways, 3. 1033.
Knarre, s. a thickset fellow, sturdy churl, A 549.
Knarry, adj. gnarled, A 1077.
Knave, s. boy, servant-lad, page, R. 886.

- rule on the front of the astricabe, A. i. 32. 1.
- Laborous**, *adj.* laborious, D 1428.
- Lacche**, *s.* snare, springe, R. 1624.
- Lace**; see **Laa**.
- Laced**, *pp.* laced up, A 3267.
- Lacerte**, *s.* a fleshy muscle, A 2753.
- Lache**, *adj.* lazy, dull, B 4. p 3. 132.
- Lachesse**, *s.* laziness, I 720.
- Lacinge**, *s.* lacing; with *laymeres* l., with the fastening up of straps, A 2504.
- Lad**, **Ladde**; see **Lede**.
- Lade**, *ger.* to load, cover, T. ii. 1544.
- Lady**, *gen.* lady's, A 88, 695.
- Left**, **Lafte**; see **Love**.
- Lak**, *s.* want, defect, lack, 3. 958; blame, dispraise, L. 298 a; **Lakke**, *dat.* lack, want, 5. 87, 615; loss, F 430; acc. fault, E 2199.
- Lake**, *s.* a kind of fine white linen cloth, B 2048. The word probably was imported from the Low Countries, as *luken* is a common Dutch word for cloth or a sheet.
- Lakken**, *v.* find fault with, disparage, blame, R. 284; *pr.* *s.* lacks, B 1437; *pr.* *s.* *impers.* lacks; *me* *lakket*, I lack, 2. 105.
- Lakking**, *s.* lack, stint, R. 2147.
- Lambish**, *adj.* gentle as lambs, 9. 50.
- Lampe**, *s.* lamina, thin plate, G 764. *F.* *lame*, a thin plate, *Lat.* *lamina*.
- Lange**, *adj.* long (Northern), A 4175.
- Langour**, *s.* weakness, 1. 7; slow starvation, R. 214; B 3507; languishing, R. 304; sickness, F 1101.
- Languashe**, *v.* fail, HF. 2018.
- Lapidaire**, a treatise on precious stones, HF. 1352.
- Lapps**, *s.* fold, lappet, or edge of a garment, F 441, G 12; lap, A 686; a wrapper, E 585.
- Lappeth**, *pr.* *s.* enfolds, embraces, 4. 76.
- Large**, *adj.* large, A 472, 753; great, I 705; wide, broad, R. 1351; liberal, bounteous, R. 1168; *at his l.*, free (to speak or to be silent), A 2288; free to move, HF. 745; *at our l.*, free (to go anywhere), D 322.
- Large**, *adv.* liberally, 1. 174.
- Largely**, *adv.* fully, A 1908; in a wide sense, I 804.
- Largenesse**, *s.* liberality, I 1051.
- Largesse**, a liberality, R. 1150; bounty, B 2465; liberal bestower, 1. 13.
- Las**, *s.* lace, snare, entanglement, L. 600; net, A 2289; *Laaa*, lace, i. e. thick string, A 392; band, G 574, lace (i. e. laces), R. 843; *Lace*, snare, entanglement, 18. 30.
- Lasse**, *adj.* *comp.* less, R. 118; lesser, A 1756; smaller, B 2262; less (time), A 3519; *lasse and more*, smaller and greater, i. e. all, E 67; *the lasse*, the lesser, R. 187.
- Lasse**, *adv.* less, 3. 927; *the las*, the less, 3. 675.
- Last**, *s.* *pl.* lasts, i. e. burdens, loads, B 1628. A. S. *last*, a burden, load, a ship's freight.
- Laste**, *adj.* last, 10. 71; *atle l.*, at last, 3. 364; lastly, A 707.
- Laste**, *v.* endure, 4. 226; *Last*, *pr.* *s.* lasts, E 266; *Laste*, *pt.* *s.* lasted, B 1826; delayed, L. 791.
- Late**, *adj.* late; *bet than never is late*, G 1410; *till now late*, till it was already late, 3. 45.
- Late**, -n, let; see **Lete**.
- Lathe**, *s.* barn (Northern), HF. 2140; A 4088. Icel. *laða*.
- Latia**, *s.* lattice, T. ii. 615.
- Latitude**, *s.* (1) breadth, A. i. 21. 43; (2) the breadth of a climate, or a line along which such breadth is measured, A. ii. 39. 41; (3) astronomical, the angular distance of any body from the ecliptic, measured along a great circle at right angles to the ecliptic, A. *pr.* 110; (4) terrestrial, the distance of a place N. or S. of the equator, E 1797.
- Latoun**, a latten, a compound metal, like pinchbeck, containing chiefly copper and zinc, A 699.
- Latrede**, *adj.* tardy, dawdling, I 718. A. S. *latræda*.
- Latter**, *adv.* more slowly, I 971.
- Laude**, *s.* praise, honour, HF. 1575; *pl.* lauds, a service held at 2 or 3 a. m., A 3653.
- Laughe**, *v.* laugh, A 474; *Laugheth* of, smiles on account of, A 1494; *Lough*, *strong* *pt.* *s.* laughed, R. 248; *Laughede*, weak *pt.* *pl.* R. 863.
- Launce**, *v.* rear, HF. 946.
- Launcegay**, *s.* a kind of lance, B 1942, 2011. Originally of Moorish origin.
- Launcheth**, *pr.* *s.* pushes, lets slide, D 2145.
- Launde**, *s.* a grassy clearing (called *dale* in 5. 327), 5. 302; glade, plain surrounded by trees, A 1691.
- Laure**, *s.* laurel-tree, HF. 1107.
- Laureat**, *adj.* crowned with laurel, B 3886, E 31.
- Laurer**, *s.* laurel-tree, 5. 182.
- Laurer-crowned**, laurel-crowned, 7. 43.
- Lauriol**, *s.* spurge-laurel, *Daphne Laureola*, B 4153.

lay (2), *s.* law; *sence* *venet*, *lata*, L. L. 340; *creed*, L. 336.
Laynere, *pl.* straps, thongs, A 2504. O.F. *lantere*; mod. E. *lanyard*.
Layser, *s.* leisure, T. ii. 127.
Lazar, *s.* leper, A 242.
Leche, *s.* physician, A 3004, C 016.
Lechecraft, *s.* art of medicine, T. iv. 436, skill of a physician, A 2745.
Lecher, *s.* healer, B 4. p 6. 248.
Lechour, *s.* lecher, B 1035.
Lede, *r.* lead, T. i. 259, carry, T. iv. 1514; lead, take, L. 2021; draw, R. 1048. govern, B 434; lead (his life), R. 1121. lead, R. 1129; *Lede*, *ger.* to lead, spend, F 744, to guide, R. 400; *Let*, *pr.* *s.* leads, T. ii. 882; *Ladde*, *pl.* *s.* led, R. 581. brought, 7. 30; carried, L. 114; conducted, B 3747; continued, R. 210. *Ladden*, *pl.* *pl.* led, R. 1310, *Ledden*, *pl.* *pl.* 9. 2; *Ladde*, *pl.* *pl.* B 3020. *Lad*, *pp.* led, L. 1108, 1048; brought, A 2620. conducted, A 4402; carried, L. 74.
Leden, *adj.* laden, G 728.
Ledene, *s.* (*dat.*) language. talk, F 475. 478.
Leed, *s.* lead (metal), HF. 730, 1448, 1048. a copper, or caldron, A 202.
Leef, *adj.* lief, A 1817; dear, R. 101; precious, G 1467, lief, pleasing, T. v. 1738, pleasant, R. 1088; *þu* *so* *leef*, so desired by you, C 760; *that* *leef* *me* *were*, which I should like, HF. 1020; *Love*, *def.* dear (one), A 3301; *reafice*, HF. 810; *lefe*, *adj.* *fem.* *cor.* HF. 1827; *Love*, *pl.* dear, T. iv. 82, v. 502.
Leef, *adj.* *as s.* what is pleasant, *for* *l.* *ne* *loofh*, for weal nor for woe, L. 1020. what is dear (to him), T. iv. 1583, beloved one, lover, lady-love, T. iii. 2.

- 441; (2) to learn, T. v. 161; *Lere*, *ger.* to learn, find out, D 909; *Lere*, *pr.* pl. (1) teach, s. 25; (2) learn, F 104; *Lered*, *pp.* (2) learnt, T. iii. 406.
- Lered*, *adj.* instructed, learned, C 283; A.S. *lærd*.
- Lerne*, *v.* learn, A 308, D 994; *Lerned* of, taught by, G 748. (Chaucer here uses the word wrongly, as in mod. provincial English.)
- Leese*, *s. dat.* pasture, T. ii. 732; HF. 1768. A.S. *līsa*.
- Leese*, *v.* lose, A 1215, 1290; *Leese* me, *v.* lose myself, be lost, s. 117; *Lees*, *pt. a.* lost, L. 945; *Leoth*, *imp. pl.* B 19; *Loren*, *pp.* lost, L. 1048; *Lorn*, *pp.* lost, T. i. 373, iii. 1076, iv. 1613; *fortorn*, wasted, R. 366.
- Lesing*, *s.* falsehood, lie, HF. 2089; G 479; *Lesinges*, *pl.* lies, deceits, R. 2; lying reports, HF. 2123.
- Lesinge*, *s.* loss, I 1036; *Lesing*, A 1707; *for lesinge*, for fear of losing, B 3730.
- Lessoun*, *s.* lesson, lection, A 709.
- Lest*, *s.* pleasure, s. 908; delight, A 132; desire, E 619; inclination, HF. 287; *Lestes*, *pl.* desires, HF. 1738. A Kentish form; for *lust*.
- Lest*, *pr. a. impers.* (it) pleases, L. 1703; (it) pleases (me), D 960; *Thes lest*, it pleases thee, s. 114; *Lesteth*, (it) pleases, L. 480 a; *Leste*, *pt. a. impers.* (it) pleased, T. v. 517; *perz* was pleased, T. iii. 452; *Leste*, *pr. a. subj.* (it) may please, L. 1338; *As yow leste*, as it may please you, L. 449; (it) would please, F 380; *Her leste*, it should please her, s. 351. Kentish formz.
- Leste*, *adj. superl.* least, T. i. 281; *at the l.*, at least, s. 973; *atte l.*, at least, B 38; *Leste*, *as a.*, the least one, s. 283; *at the leste weye*, at any rate, E 966.
- Let*, *pr. s. of* Lede.
- Lete*, *v.* let, B 3524; *let*, leave, A 1335; give up, let go, T. v. 1688; *forake*, T. iv. 1109; *let alone*, leave, D 1276; quit, 1. 72; give up, lose, G 406; omit, depart from, s. 391; *Lete of*, *ger.* to leave off, 18. 52; *Leten*, *v.* let, L. 2107; give up, R. 1690; *forake*, T. iv. 1556; *Leten*, *ger.* to let go, T. i. 262; *Lete*, *v.* let, T. iii. 693; *Leten*, *v.* let, A 3326; *Lete*, *1 pr. a.* leave, 7. 45; *Let*, *pr. a.* lets go, repels, s. 151; *Lat*, *pr. a.* lets, permits, T. iv. 200; *Lete*, *2 pr. pl.* abandon, B 2205; *Lēt*, *pt. a.* let, A 128; *let go*, A 1206; allowed, HF. 241; *left off*, A 3311; *left*, A 308; caused, permitted, B 373; caused, B 2194; caused (to be), D 959; *lest . . . forche*, commanded (men) to fetch, D 2064; *lest don cryen*, caused to be proclaimed, F 45; *lest make*, caused to be made, B 3149; *lest binde*, caused to be bound, B 1810; *Let*, *pt. a.* caused, L. 2624; *let calle*, caused to be called, L. 1684; *let*, s. 270; *Lete*, *pt. pl.* let, B 1898; *Lete*, *pt. a. subj.* were to let, T. iii. 1762; *Leet*, *imp. a.* let, C 731; *Lat*, *imp. a.* let, 1. 79, 84; *let alone*, give up, T. ii. 1500; *Lat be*, let be, do away with, A 840; *let me alone*, A 3285; give up, HF. 992; *Lat do*, cause, C 173; *Lat take*, take, G 1254, H 175; *Lat see*, let us see, A 831; *Lat goon*, let slip (the dogs), L. 1213; *Laten blood*, *pp.* let blood, A 4346. A.S. *lætan*.
- Lette*, *s.* hindrance, T. i. 361; delay, T. iii. 235.
- Lette*, *v.* hinder, T. ii. 732; prevent, L. 732; oppose, stay, B 3306; cause delay, B 1117; wait, B 1440; tarry, B 4224; stop, desist, B 4279; cease, R. 270; *Letten*, *ger.* to put obstacles in the way (of), to decline (from), A 1317; *Let*, *pr. a.* prevents, B 3. p. 10. 162; *Lette*, *pr. a. subj.*; *lette him no mon, god forbode*, God forbid that any should hinder him, T. iii. 545; *Letted*, *pt. a.* hindered, A 1891; was hindered, B 2591; *Lette*, *imp. pl.* hesitate, T. ii. 1126.
- Lette-game*, *s.* 'let-game,' one who hinders sport, T. iii. 527.
- Lettres*, *pl.* letters, (also as sing. a letter), B 736, s. 19.
- Letture*, *s.* learning, B 3486; book-lore, B 3686.
- Letuarie*, *s.* electuary, remedy, C 207; *pl.* electuaries, A 426. Lat. *electuarium*.
- Love*, *dear*; see *Leaf*.
- Love*, *s.* leave, B 1617, D 908; permission, L. 2281; *blayde hir love*, without her leave, T. iii. 622.
- Love* (1), *v.* leave, E 250; *lot alone*, G 714; *let go*, s. 1111; *go away*, s. 153; *leave alone*, T. i. 688; *ger.* to leave off, T. i. 686; to forsake, G 287; *Love*, *1 pr. a.* leave, 2. 50; *Leveth*, *pr. a.* remains, 2. 701; *Laste*, *1 pt. a.* left, C 762; *Leste*, left off, F 670; *Laften*, *pt. pl.* L. 168; *Left*, *pp.* omitted, I 231; *Last*, *pp.* left, L. 1260; *Leaf*, *imp. a.* leave, T. iv. 822; *leave* (it) alone, T. v. 1518; *Lef*, *imp. a.* forego, D 2089; *Love*, *imp. a.* leave, A 1614; *Leveth*, *imp. pl.* leave, C 659. A.S. *lāfan*.
- Love* (2), *v.* believe, s. 496; L. 10; *ger.* to be believed, HF. 708; *Lovestow*, be-

rather, B 2339; *him was I*, A 293; *him were I*, L 2413; *have I I*, I would rather, T. II. 471; F 1360; *hadde I I*, D 168; *hath I*, F 692; *hadde I*, L 1516; *had hir I*, she would rather, E 444; *him had be I*, he would rather, A 3541.

Levesel; see **Leesfel**.

Levest, *sup.* dearest, most desirable, HF. 87.

Lewed, *adj.* ignorant, A 502, 574; unlearned, G 283; unskilled, rude, HF. 1096; wicked, foolish, F 1494; wanton, E 2129. A.S. *læwed*.

Lewedly, *adv.* simply, HF. 866; ignorantly, B 47; ill, G 430.

Lewednesse, *s.* ignorance, ignorant behaviour, D 1928.

Ley, *lied*; *pt. s. of Lye*.

Leye, *v.* lay, 4. 205; lay, cause to lie, T. III. 659; lay a wager, HF. 674; pledge, T. III. 1605; *Leyn*, *ger.* to lay up, to hoard, R. 184; *Leggen*, *ger.* to lay, A 3269; *Legge*, *v.* A 3937; *Leyth*, *pr. s.* A 4229; *Leith*, *pr. s.* D 2138; *Leye*, *1 pr. pl.* lay out, expend, G 783; *Leyn*, *pr. pl.* lay, H 222; *Leyde*, *pt. s.* 3. 394; *Leyde*, *2 pt. pl.* L 2501; *Leyden* forth, *pt. pl.* brought forward, B 213; *Leyd*, *pp. laid*, A 3262; placed, R. 1184; overlaid, R. 1076; *I was leyd*, I had laid myself down, L 208; *Leyd*, *pp. laid*, A 81; fixed, 3. 1146; set, 3. 1036; *Ley on*, lay on, A 2558.

Leyser, *s.* leisure, R. 462; A 1188; deliberation, B 2766; opportunity, A 3293.

Leyt, *s.* flame (of a candle), I 954. A.S. *lēȝet*, *lȝȝet*, M.E. *leit*, lightning.

Libardes, *pl.* leopards, R. 844.

Libel, *s.* written declaration, D 1505.

Licentiat *adj.* one licensed for the ...

- Lilting-horne**, a horn to be played for a lilt, HF. 1272.
Limaille; see *Lyma'lle*.
Lime, a limb, 3. 499; *Limes*, pl. R. 830.
Limitacioun, a limit, D 877.
Limitour, a limiter, a friar licensed to beg for alms within a certain limit, A 209, D 874.
Linage, a lineage, race, A 1110; family, D 1135; noble family, R. 258; high birth, B 3441; kinsfolk, B 2192; kindred, B 999; consanguinity, L. 2602.
Lind, a lime-tree, A 2022.
Lipsed, pt. a lisped, A 264.
Lisse, a comfort, T. v. 550; joy, T. iii. 343; assuaging, HF. 220; solace, 3. 1040; alleviation, F 1238. A.S. *liss*.
Lissen, v. *alleviata*, T. i. 702; soothe, 6. 6; *Lissed*, pp. relieved, F 1170. A.S. *lissan*.
List (1), a pleasure, T. iii. 1303; will, D 633.
List (2), a ear, D 634. A.S. *lisset*.
List, pr. a. *impera* it pleases (usually with dat.), A 1021, B 521; *me list right evil*, I was in no mind to, 3. 229; *you list*, it pleases you, 11. 77; *List*, pr. a. *pera* is pleased, pleases, T. i. 518, 797; wishes, A 3176; *Listeth*, pr. a. *impera* (it) pleases, T. ii. 700; *pera* pleases, is pleased, HF. 511; likes, F 689; *Listen*, 2 pr. pl. are pleased, T. iii. 1810; *Listen*, pr. pl. list, choose, B 2234; *Listen trete*, choose to write, L. 575; *Liste*, pt. a. *impera* (it) pleased, L. 332; *her liste*, it pleased her, she cared, 7. 190; *him liste*, he wanted, 4. 92; *Acem liste*, (it) pleased them, F 851. A.S. *listan*.
Listes, pl. *in sing. sense*, lists, a place enclosed for tournaments, A 63.
Listes, a pl. wiles; *in his l*, by means of his wiles, 1. 85.
Listeth, imp. pl. listen ye, B 1902.
Litarge, a litharge, ointment prepared from protoxide of lead, A 629; protoxide of lead, G 775.
Litargie, a lethargy, B 1. p. 2. 22.
Lite, adj. little, I 205; as s., a little, T. i. 291; adv. little, T. iv. 1310.
Litastere, a dyer, 9. 17. Icel. *lita*, to dye.
Lith, a limb (viz. of herself), B 4005. A.S. *lith*.
Litherly, adv. ill, A 1209. A.S. *lithor*, evil.
Livere (1), s. liver, D 1839.
Livere (2), s. liver (one who lives), B 1004.
Liveres, a livery, A 563.
Livings, s. life-time, 7. 188; manner of life, C 107; state of life, G 322.
Lixt, liest; see *Lye* (2).
Lode, s. load, A 2918.
Lodemenage, a pilotage, A 403. *Lode-manage* is the hire of a pilot, for conducting a ship from one place to another.
Lodesmen, a pl. pilots, L. 1488.
Lode-sterre, a polar star, lodestar, A 2059.
Lofte, dat. upper room, L. 2709; *on lofte*, in the air, HF. 1727; aloft, B 277.
Logge, s. resting-place, B 4043.
Logging, a lodging, B 4185.
Loke, v. (went) lock up, D 317.
Loken, ger. to look, A 1783; v. behold, R. 812; *Loked*, pt. a. looked, A 289; *Lokeden*, pt. pl. L. 1972; imp. a. see, HF. 893; take heed, D 1587; *Loke he*, let him take heed, I 134; *Loketh*, imp. pl. behold, G 1329; search ye, C 578.
Loken, pp. of strong verb (*Lonken*), locked up, B 4065.
Loking, a look, gaze, 3. 870; countenance, B 2332; glance, L. 240; glance (of the eye), A 2171; aspect, 4. 51; examining, 5. 110; appearance, R. 290; looks, F 285.
Lokkes, pl. looks of hair, A 81, 677.
Loller, a. a loller, a lollard, B 1173. *Loller* (one who is sluggish) was confused with the name *Lollard*.
Lomb, a lamb, L. 1798.
Lond, a land, A 194, 400, 579; country, B 3548; upon *lond*, in the country, A 702.
Lone, a. dat. loan, B 1485; gift, grace, D 1861.
Long, prep.; the phrase *sker-on . . . long* = *long on sker*, along of what, G 920; *Long on*, along of, because of, G 922.
Long, adj. (before a vowel), tall, R. 817; pl. tall, high, R. 1384; long, A 93.
Longe, adv. long, A 286; for a long time, L. 2261.
Longe (1), v. desire, long for, L. 2260; yearn, T. ii. 546; *Longen* (2), v. belong, A 2278; pr. a. belongs, R. 754; (it) concerns, T. ii. 312; pr. pl. belong, F 1132; pt. a. befitted, R. 1222; *Longing for*, suitable for, F 39.
Longes, pl. lungs, A 2752.
Longitude, a. the distance between two given meridians, A. ii. 39. 19; the length or extent of a 'climate,' in a direction parallel to the equator, or rather a line along which to measure this length; A. ii. 39. 28. The longitude of a star is measured along the zodiac; that of a town, from a fixed meridian.

- Loos**, *s.* praise, renown, B 2834, 3030. O.F. *los*.
Loos, *adj.* loose, A 4054, 4148, *Lous*, free, HF 1280.
Looth *looth*, *adj.* loath, odious, A 480, hateful, A 403, *me were I*, it would displease me, B 91, *as s.*, what is hateful, misery, L 1509.
Loothly, *adj.* hideous, D 1521.
Loppe, *s.* a spider, A 1 3 6.
Loppewebbe, *s.* cobweb, A 1 31 3.
Lordeth, *pr. s.*, rules over, 4 166.
Lordings, *s. pl.* sirs, C 420, 573.
Lore, *s.* teaching, L 1450 advice, T 1 1000, lesson, T 1 645, 754, instruction, B 442 learning, B 701 study, G 842, profit, 5 15; doctrine, A 527. A.S. *lār*.
Lore, *pp. of* *Less*.
Lorel, *s.* worthless man, abandoned wretch, D 273.
Loren, *pp. of* *Less*.
Lorer, *s.* laurel, R 1179.
Lorn, *pp. of* *Less*.
Loss, *s.* loss, A 2543, occasion of perdition, D 720.
Los, *s.* praise, renown, fame, L 1514, report, L 1424; *til her losses*, in praise of them, HF 1088. O.F. *los*.
Losengere, *s.* flatterer, R 1050, *pl.* R 1050. O.F. *losengeur*.
Losengerie, *s.* flattery, I 614.
Losenges, *pl.* lozenges, HF 1307, small diamond-shaped shields, R 893.
Lost, *s.* loss, B 2 p 4 185.
Loth, *adj.* loath, 4 8, displeasing, R 233.
Lothar, *adj. comp.* more hateful, L 101.
Lothest, *adj. superl.* most loath, F 1313.
Lotinge, *pres. part.* lurking, G 180. A.S. *lutan*, to lurk.
Loude, *adv.* loudly, A 171.
Lough, *pt. s. of* *Laughe*.
Louke, *s.* accomplice, A 4415.
Loured, *pp. of* *lrownel*, HF 409.
Lous, *adj.* loose, free, HF 1280.
Lousy, *adj.* full of lice, miserable, D 1467.
Loute, *v.* bow, do obeisance, T 11 1581, *ger to bow down*, B 332, *1 pt. s.* stooped, bent, R 1554.
Love, *s.* love, A 475; *fem.* lady-love, 4 41, *we O my love*, A 672 *masc.* lover, L 802.
Lovedayes, *pl.* days for settling disputes by arbitration, A 258. HF 605.
Love-drury, *s.* affection, B 2085. The latter part of the word is O.F. *drurie*, *drurie*, love, passion.
Loveknotte, *s.* looped ornament, A 107.
Loves, *s. pl.* loves, B 303.
Lovyere, *v.* love, A 82.
Lowenesse, *s.* a chess piece, I 1064.
Lowly, *adj.* humble, A 90.
Luce, *s.* luce, fish, A 391.
Lucre, *s.* lucre, gain, G 1408 *lucre of* *vilanye* vile gain B 1081.
Lufsom, *adj.* lovely, T 1 911 *lovely* I. v 465.
Lulleth, *pr. s.* lullz, soothes, B 81.
Luna, *s.* the moon, G 826 *s.* name of silver, G 1440.
Lunarie, *s.* lunar, moon-wort, 1550.
Lure, *s.* a hawk's lure, D 1340 *pl.* enticements, L 1171.
Lusaheburghes, *pl.* spurious coins \$ 1152. Named from the town of Lescowbury.
Lust, *s.* desire, R 1053 amusement R 1287, pleasure, R 610 delight, *we*, will, desire, wish, B 188 *interest* in a story, F 402, *pl.* delights, 3 60 *cf.* *lust*.
Lusteth, *pr. s.* *impers.* it pleases I. 157.
Lust, *pr. s.* *pers.* pleases, E 1144 *pers.* (st) pleases, E 121 *Luste*, *pt. s.* *pers.* desired, G 1444, *Luste*, *pt. s.* *impers.* pleased, G 1135.
Lustier more joyous, G 1145.
Lustihede, *s.* cheerfulness, 3 57 *cf.* *lust* H 274; enjoyment, F 288 *vigour* L 1500.
Lustily, *adv.* gaily, merrily, R 10.
Lustiness, *s.* pleasure, *pl.* L1. 1 1 10 *vigour*, R 1282.
Lusty, *adj.* pleasant, gay, A 80 *pers.* F 272, *lusty*, H 41, *joyous*, R 107 *happy*, R 1303; joyful, A 117 *vigour* L 1038.
Luxures, *s. pl.* lusts, B 1 p 1.
Luxurie, *s.* lechery, B 925, C 484.
Lyard, *adj.* grey, D 1561.
Lycorys, *s.* liquorice, A 520.
Lye, *v.* lie, remain, 10 42 *Lye* *pr. s.* lodge, D 1780, *Lye* *by* *s.* *to lodge*, B 470, *lye upright*, lie on one's back lie dead, R 1604, *Lystow* *s.* a lost I 276, *lyth* *pr. s.* lies, 15, *remains* I 782 *lies*, 3 146, 181, *he lies*, B 1 (that lies, D 1829 *remains* *remains* I 3054, *lies dead*, 3 141 *lyth* *pr. s.* belongs here, *is needed* *cf.* *lye* 1 *pt. s.* lodged, A 201, *was*, A 515 *lye* *pt. s.* *subj.* would lie, T 1 v 105 *lye* *imp. s.* T, II 953.
Lye, *v.* tell lies, lie, A 701 *lye* *pr. s.* *hest*, D 1618, 1761, *lye*, *pr. s.* *hed*, T II 1077, *lyed*, *unl.* *s.* *hed*, A 659. A.S. *logan*.

Lye (3), c. blaze, D 1142. A.S. *lyge*, a flame.
Lyer, a liar, B 2256.
Lyes, s. pl. lees, dregs, HF. 2130.
Lyes, pl. (1) lees; or (2) lies, D 302. Perhaps a double meaning is intended.
Lyf, a life, A 71, 2776; **Lyves**, gen. life's, 6. 60; of my life, 3. 920; Our present worldes lyves space, the space of our present life in the world, 5. 53; **Lyves** day, lifetime, L. 1624; **Lyve**, dat. L. 39; On lyve, alive, L. 1792; in his time, D 43; Upon lyve, alive, T. ii. 1030; Of lyve, out of life, T. v. 1561; Bringe of lyve, cause to die, T. ii. 1608; My lyve, in my life, T. ii. 205; By thy lyf, during thy life, B 1621; Thy lyf, during thy lifetime, 17. 19; His lyve, in his life, L. 1090; Hir lyve, in their life, D 392; **Lyves**, pl. B 3284.
Lyfode, a means of living, I 685. Mod. E. *livelihood*.
Lyfity, adv. in a lifelike way, A 2087.
Lyke, v. please, T. i. 431; ger. HF. 860; to be liked, R. 1357; **Lyketh**, pr. s. pleases, E 1031; *impera* (it) pleases, E 311, 845; *us* I. *you*, it pleases us with respect to you, E 106; **Lyke**, pr. s. subj. may please, D 1278; *thes* I. *not*, it may not please you, L. 490; **Lyked**, pl. s. *impera* pleased, R. 1312.
Lyking, a pleasure, C 455; delight, B 499.
Lyking, adj. pleasing, R. 868; pleasant, R. 1416; thriving, R. 1564.
Lyklyhed, s. dat. likelihood, E 448.
Lyklynesse, a probability, 22. 15.
Lykly, adj. likely, like, 16. 32.
Lykne, 1 pr. s. compare, 3. 636.
Lyknesse, a parable, A 2842.
Lym, a lime, F 1149; quicklime, L. 649.
Lymaille, s. flings of any metal, G 1162; **Lymail**, G 1164; **Limaille**, G 853.
Lyme, ger. to cover with birdlime, T. i. 353.
Lymere, a hound held in leash, 3. 305.
Lymrod, s. lime-twigg, B 3574.
Lyne, a line, T. i. 1068; fishing-line, 4. 242; line of descent, D 1135; *as* lyne right, straight as a line, T. iii. 228.
Lyned, pp. lined, A 440.
Lyne-right, adj. in an exact line, exactly in a line with, A. i. 21. 31.
Lyoun, s. lion, T. iii. 1780; v. 830; **Lyouns**, pl. R. 804. See **Leoun**.
Lyst, 1 pr. s. liest, reclined, T. ii. 991; **Lystow**, liest thou, H 276.
Lytargye, s. lethargy, T. i. 730.
Lyte, adj. small, little, R. 532; slight,

I 689; **Lyte**, s. a little, L. 29, 535; **Lyte**, pl. little, A 404.
Lyte, adv. little, 3. 884; a little, E 935; in a small degree, G 632, 699; *L* and *C*, by little and little, D 2235.
Lythe, adj. easy, soft, HF. 118.
Lythe, ger. to alleviate, cheer, T. iv. 754.
Lyve; see **Lyf**.
Lyvely, adv. in a lively way, 3. 903.
Lyves; see **Lyf**.
Lyves, adv. in life; hence, *as* adj. living, alive, T. iv. 252; *no* lyves creature, *no* living creature, T. iii. 13.

M

Me, sometimes put for **Me** (before a vowel); *as* in *masterie* for *me asterie*.
Me fey, my faith! T. iii. 52.
Maad; pp. of **Make**.
Maat, adj. dejected, B 2. p. 4. 42.
Mad, pp. made, L. 286. See **Make**.
Madde, v. go mad, 4. 253; ger. to be furious, T. i. 479.
Mader, a madder, 9. 17.
Magik, a magic, A 416.
Magistrat, s. magistracy, B 3. p. 4. 26.
Maheym, s. maiming, I 685. Mod. E. *maim*.
Maille, s. mail, ringed armour, E 1202.
Maister, s. master, B 1037; doctor, D 2184; doctor (of divinity), D 1618; (*as* a term of address), 17. 1; one in authority, A 261.
Maisterful, adj. masterful, T. ii. 746.
Maister-strete, s. main street, L. 1908.
Maister-temple, s. chief temple, L. 1010.
Maister-toun, s. chief town, L. 1501.
Maister-tour, s. chief tower, F 220.
Maistow, mayest thou, HF. 699.
Maistresse, s. mistress, L. 88; governess, C 106.
Maistrye, s. mastery, great skill, A 3383; mastery, F 747, 764; control, B 3680, C 58; superiority; *for the maistrye*, *as* regards authority, A 165; victory, B 3582; specimen of skill, HF. 1074; art, elegance, R. 842; a masterly operation (*cf.* F. *coup de maître*), G 1020.
Majestee, s.; *his real majestee* his royal majesty, i. e. high treason, B 1. p. 4. 102.
Make, s. mate, D 270, H 186; equal, match, A 2556; wedded companion, wife, B 700; bride, E 1882; husband, D 86.
Make, v. make, A 184; compose, write, L. 69; ger. to compose, to write (about), R. 41; pretend to, counterfeit, T. ii. 1522; cause (it), T. ii. 959; **Makestow**,

- 2 *pr.* s. B 371. *Makoth.* *pr.* a causes, A 305. *Maken.* *pr.* *pl.* make, utter, A 9. *Maked.* *pt.* s. made, A 526. *Makedon.* *pt.* *pl.* T iv 121. *Made.* *pt.* s. *adv.* may have made, 4. 227; *Made.* . . brought, caused to be brought, HF 155. *Maked.* *pp.* made, A 1247, composed, s. 677. *Maad.* *pp.* made, A 104. *Mad.* *pp.* 3. 415. *Makeless.* *adj.* peerless, T i 172. *Making.* s. poetry, composition, L. 74, 413, 481. *Malapert.* *adj.* forward, T iii. 87. *Male* (1.), s. bag, wallet, A 603, 315. *Male* 2., s. male, D 122. *Malefice.* s. evil contrivance, I 341. *Malencolyk.* *adj.* melancholy, A 1375. *Malgre.* *prep.* in spite of, 4. 223. *Malison.* s. curse, I 441. cursing, I 410. *Malliable.* *adj.* malleable, such as can be worked by the hammer, G 1130. *Malt.* *pt.* s. melted, HF 132. *Maltaient.* s. ill-will, ill-humour, resentment, R. 273, 300. *Man.* s. A 107, 200, 224; used indefinitely one, B 43, D 202, hero, B 331, servant I 772. *Manris.* *gen.* of mankind, T. ii 417. *Men.* *pl.* men, people 18, 26. A 178. *sing.* unemphatic form of man, used with *sing. verb.* A 14, 22 C 675, G 302. *Manace.* *ger.* to threaten, E 1752. *Manasinge.* s. threatening, A 2015. *Mandement.* s. summons, D 1346. *Maner.* s. manner, place to dwell in, s. 1004. *Manere.* s. manner A 858, D 1329, deportment, A 140, disposition, L. 251, manner, way s. 1130, ease of behaviour, s. 1218; goodly courtesy of manner, 4. 244; of manere, in his behaviour, F 436; *Maner.* way, s. 431, manner kind, sort (used without *of following*), as in manner doctrine, B 1080. *pl.* kinds, R. 1406. *Manhede.* s. manliness, A 1285. *Mannish.* *adj.* manlike, T i 284, human, B 2454, unwomanly, B 782. *Mannish.* *adv.* like a man, boisterously, E 1326. *Mansioun.* s. dwelling, A 1074, a term in astrology, F 50, mansion of the moon, F 1285. *pl.* daily positions or 'stations' of the moon F 110. A mansion of a planet is the sign or signs of the zodiac in which the planet was thought to be peculiarly at home. A mansion of the moon refers to its position day by day in the sky. *Mansuete.* *adj.* courteous, T v 104. *Mansuetude.* s. meekness, I 654. *Mantelet.* s. short mantle, A 2101. *Manye.* s. mania, A 1374. *Mappemounde.* map of the world, A 2. *Mapul.* s. maple-tree, A 293. *Marble-stoon.* s. piece of marble, B 1462. *Marchal.* s. marshal, E 1340. *Marchandysse.* s. hawker, I 777. *Marchant.* s. merchant, A 273. *Marcial.* *adj.* warlike, T. ii 1002. *Marcien.* *adv.* devoted to Mars, B 10. *Mareys.* s. marsh, D 1070. *Marshe.* *pl.* marshes, B 2 p 7. 42. *Marie.* *interj.* marry, i. e. by St. Mar. 1003. *Mark* (1.), s. mark, fixed spot, L. 74, 413, 481, D 606, sign, I 98. *Mark* 2., s. a piece of money, of the value of 13d. 4d. in England, G 1020. *pl.* Mark C 100. *Market-beter.* s. swaggerer in a market, A 3036. *Markis.* s. a marquis, E 64. *pl.* marquises, E 604. *Markisesse.* s. a marchioness, E 41. *Martyre.* s. martyrdom, T ii 51. *Martyreth.* *pr.* a torment, A 152. *Mary.* s. marrow path, s. 41. *Mary-bones.* s. *pl.* marrow-bones, A 10. *Mase.* s. maze, labyrinth, L. 251, wilderness, T v 408, bewilderment, B 4283. *Mased.* *adj.* bewildered, B 420, 222 with grief, 7. 122. *Masednesse.* s. minaze, E 1001. *Maselyn.* s. a bowl made of maple-wood, B 2042. *Massedayes.* *pl.* masadays, B 104. *Masso-penny.* s. penny for a mass, I 10. *Mast.* s. mast, i. e. the fruit of some trees acorns and beech-nuts, s. 10. *Masty.* *adj.* fattened, sluggish, HF 10. *Lit.* 'fattened on mast'. *Mat.* *adj.* dejected, A 955; exhausted, I iv 442, dead, L. 126, dejected, HF B 915. *Mate.* *interj.* checkmate! s. exhausted, 7. 176. *Materes.* *pl.* materials of a solid matter, G 779. *Matrimoine.* s. matrimony, A 1001, 1571. *Maugre Maugree.* ii. spite of, s. *maugre* of thy might, A 1001, s. *maugre* her eyes two, A 1701. *maugre* 1272, D 315, in her L. 1772. *pl.* *maugres* 3218, in my head, iii. spite of, s. *maugre* do, s. 1201, in thy head, B 104, s. *maugre* head, A 1100, in her (his) head, L. 100.

- D 387; *m.* your head, in spite of all you can do, B 4602.
- Maumet**, *s.* idol, I 860.
- Maumetrye**, *s.* Mahometanism, idolatry, B 236. *Maumet* is a corruption of Mahomet or Muhammed; our ancestors wrongly held the Mahometans to be idolaters.
- Maunciple**, *s.* manciple, A 544. An officer who purchases victuals for an inn or college.
- Mavia**, *s.* song-thrush, R 619.
- Mawe**, *s.* maw, stomach, B 486.
- May**, *s.* maiden, B 851.
- Mayde child**, girl, B 1285.
- Maydenheed**, *s.* maidenhood, virginity, D 888.
- Mayle**, *s.* mail-armor, T. v. 1539.
- Mayntene**, *v.* maintain, R 1144; uphold, A 1778.
- Mayster-hunte**, *s.* chief huntsman, 3. 375.
- Maystres**, *s.* pl. masters, B 3. m 2. 12.
- Maystrie**, *s.* masterly act; No maystrie. An easy matter, L 400.
- Maze**, *s.* *pr.* pl. are in a state of bewilderment, E 2187.
- Mechel**, *adj.* much; *for as mechel*, for as much, A. *pr.* 6.
- Mede (1)**, *s.* mead (drink), B 3042. See **Meeth**.
- Mede, s. (2)**, mead, meadow, A 89.
- Medeoth**, *pr.* *s.* mingles, L 874.
- Medoling**, *s.* admixture, B 1. p 4. 279.
- Medewe**, *s.* meadow, R 128.
- Mediatours**, *s.* pl. go-betweens, I 967.
- Medle**, *v.* mingle, HF. 2102; meddle, take part in, G 1184; dye (*miscere*), B 2. m 5. 10. Medly, *v.* mingle, mix, B 2. m 5. 7; *imp.* pl. meddle, G 1424.
- Medlee**, *adj.* of a mixed colour, A 328.
- Meed**, *s.* reward, L 1662; Méde, meed, reward, A 770; *to medes*, for my meed, for my reward, T. ii. 1301.
- Meel-tyd**, *s.* meal-time, T. ii. 1556.
- Meeth**, *s.* mead, A 3261, 3378; Moth, A 2279.
- Magre**, *adj.* thin, R. 218, 311.
- Meinee**; see **Meynoe**.
- Meke**, *1 pr.* *s.* humble, B 2874.
- Meke**, *adv.* meekly, 7. 267.
- Melancolious** (*accented mélancolious*), *adj.* melancholy, HF. 30.
- Melancolye**, *s.* melancholy, 3. 23.
- Mele**, *s.* meal (of flour), A 3995.
- Melle**, *s.* mill, A 3923, 4242.
- Melte**, *v.* melt, T. iv. 367; Malt, *pl.* *s.* HF. 922; Molte, *pp.* HF. 1145, 1149.
- Memorial**, *adj.* which serves to record events, 7. 18.
- Memorie**, *s.* memory, G 339; remembrance, A 3112, B 3164.
- Men**, *pl.* of Man; also a weakened form of Man, in the sense of 'one,' or 'some one'; used with a singular verb. See **Man**.
- Mendinants**, *pl.* mendicant friars, D 1907, 1912.
- Mene**, *adj.* middle, B 3. m 9. 28; *menne* *whyle*, mean while, G 1262; of middle size, T. v. 806; **Mene**, *adj.* *pl.* intermediate, 7. 286.
- Mene**, *s.* means, way, 11. 36; middle course, T. i. 689; instrument, E 1671; mediator, 1. 125; go-between, T. iii. 254; intermediary, I 990; the mean, L 105; *pl.* means, instruments, D 1484.
- Meneliche**, *adj.* moderate, B 1. p 6. 111.
- Menen**, *per.* to say, HF. 1104; to signify, B 3941; *1 pr.* *s.* intend, A 793; Menestow, meanest thou, G 309; **Mente**, *1 pr.* *s.* meant, intended, B 4614; purposed, 18. 50; declared, 7. 160; **Ment**, *pp.* intended, 5. 158.
- Mene-whyle**, mean time, D 1445.
- Mening**, *s.* intent, F 151.
- Menivere**, *s.* miniver, a fine fur, R. 227.
- Menstralcies**, *pl.* minstrelcies, HF. 1217.
- Mente**, *pl.* *t.* of Menen.
- Mentes**, *pl.* plants of mint, R. 731.
- Mercenarie**, *s.* hireling, A 514.
- Merciabile**, *adj.* merciful, B 1878, 3012.
- Mercy**, *s.* 1. 7; (have) mercy, 1. 36, *grunt* *mercy*, much thanks, 10. 29.
- Mere**, *s.* mare, A 541; **Mare**, A 4055.
- Meridian**, *adj.* at the moment of southing, southern, A. *pr.* 93.
- Meridie**, *s.* midday, A. ii. 44. 48.
- Meridional**, *adj.* southern, F 263.
- Merier**, *adj.* pleasanter, sweeter, B 2024. 4041.
- Meritorie**, *adj.* meritorious, I 831.
- Mark**, *s.* image, F 880.
- Merken**, *v.* brand, B 1. p 4. 139.
- Merlion**, *s.* merlin, small hawk, 5. 339.
- Mermaydens**, sirens, R. 680. 682.
- Merashy**, *adj.* marshy, D 1710.
- Merveille**, *s.* marvel, B 2736.
- Merveillous**, *adj.* marvellous, B 1642.
- Mery**, *adj.* merry, gay, R. 580; pleasant, A 235, 757; pleasant to hear, B 1180.
- Merimen**, followers, B 2023.
- Mes**; *at good mes*, at a favourable distance, so as to have a fair shot, R. 1453. O.F. *mes*.
- Meschaunce**, *s.* misfortune, A 2009; evil

- occurrence, T 1 92, a miserable condition, B 304, unfortunate condition, C 80, ill luck, B 453, ill luck to him, B 800, *with m.*, with a mischievous H 103.
- Meschief**, *s.* misfortune, A 494, B 354, trouble, mishap, A 251, tribulation, H 70.
- Messel**, *s.* leper I 614. O F *mesel*.
- Meselrie**, *s.* leprosy I 625.
- Message**, *s.* 1, message, T. III. 401, errand, B 108, 2, messenger, B 144, 114.
- Messenger**, *s.* messenger, A 1491.
- Messagerye**, *s.* a sending of messages personified, 5, 228.
- Messenger**, *s.* messenger HF. 1568.
- Messe**, *s.* mass, B 1412.
- Messunge**, *s.* dwelling-house A 379.
- Meste**, *pl.* most, i.e. highest in rank, greatest E 121, at the m., at most, T v 147.
- Mester**, *s.* service, office, occupation, A 1340, O F *meter*, Lat. *ministerium*.
- Mesurable**, *adj.* moderate, A 445, modest, I 136.
- Mesurably**, *adv.* moderately, B 2745.
- Measure**, *s.* moderation, 3, 281, measure, E 256, p.m., 5, 305, *by m.*, not too much, 4, 872, moderately, R 541, over m., immeasurably, 3, 300, out of m., immoderately B 607, without m., beyond measure, 3, 612.
- Mesuring**, *s.* measure, H 147.
- Met**, *s.* measure of capacity, I 799.
- Metamorphoseos**, *pp.* *s.* the book of Metamorphosis, it should be *pl.* *Metamorphoseon*, B 61.
- Mete**, *adj.* most befitting, 3, 110, St. L. 104, *pl.* meet, A 291.
- Mete**, *s.* 1, 1, 480.
- Mete**, *s.* meat, food, A 126, 1900, meat, L 1108, repast, T. II. 1462, eating A 127.
- Mete**, *v.* meet L 148, find, 5, 608, to meet together, B 1874, *Meteth* *pr.* *s.* meets *men* being singular *one*, A 1514, *Mette*, *pl.* *pl.* met, E 390, *Metten*, *pl.* *pl.* HF. 217, *ver. met*, D 1443.
- Mete**, *i.* dream, T. III. 1550, IV. 1106, v 242, *Met*, *pr.* *s.* 5, 104, 105, *Mette*, *i.* *pl.* *s.* 95, *Me mette*, *i.* *pr.* *s.* *ver.* I dreamt, R 10, *pl.* *s.* *imper.* 2, 276, *Met*, *pp.* B 1445.
- Mete**, *i.* *pr.* *s.* I measure A II 418.
- Metely**, *adj.* well proportioned, R 822.
- Meth**, *s.* meal drink, A 2179.
- Meting**, *s.* a meeting L 784.
- Meting**, *s.* *s.* dream, 3, 282.
- Mewe**, *v.* move, *st.* T 1 472, to be moved urged against him, L 104.
- Mewe**, *s.* mew, *s.* *scop* where the were fattened, A 249, properly *s.* for hawks when moulting, *s.* *scop* hating place, T. III. 602.
- Mewet**, *adj.* mute, T v 104.
- Mexcuse**, *for* Me excuse, excuse 2, 70, 10, 36.
- Meynee**, *s.* household B 128, *scop* R. 1405, followers, state retainers, household servants, R 100, household, menials A 125, arm. *scop* B 152, assembly, HF 100, *scop* return, I 437, troop, A 431, *scop* crew, L 2201, O F *metno* household.
- Meyntenaunce**, *s.* maintenance 2, 24.
- Michel**, *adj.* much A 12, 34, 81.
- Mid**, *adj.* middle, 4, 601.
- Middel**, *s.* waist, R 1012.
- Midel**, *adj.* rather tall *scop* at 1, 2.
- Mikel**, *adj.* great, 7, 90, much, L 103.
- Mile-vey**, *s.* a space of 5, which is to twenty minutes of time, *scop* time for walking a mile *scop* term, 4, 17, 11.
- Milksop**, *s.* a piece of bread steeped in milk hence, a weak, effeminate *scop* B 1103.
- Milne-stones**, *pl.* mill-stones, T. 1, 40.
- Minde**, *s.* remembrance, T. 1, 10, memory, B 527, in m. in remembrance F 100, 607.
- Ministres**, *pl.* officers, B 431.
- Ministreth**, *pr.* *s.* administers, governs B 1 m 6, 3.
- Minne**, *imp.* *s.* remember mention *scop*.
- Minstralcye**, *s.* minstrelsy E 10, musical instrument, H 111, *scop* music F 108.
- Mintinge**, *pr.* *pl.* intending B 1, 10.
- Miracle**, *s.* wonder A 275, *scop* 1, 1881, *pl.* *pl.* of m., miracle-plays, I 10.
- Mirour**, *s.* mirror R. 27, 1085.
- Mirre**, *s.* myrrh, A 214.
- Mirthe**, *s.* pleasure, amusement, E 10.
- Mirthe**, *pr.* *scop* Mirthe personified R 1.
- Mirtheles**, *adj.* sad, 5, 302.
- Mis**, *adj.* wrong, amiss, T. IV. 1348, HF 175, blame worthy, G 209.
- Mis**, *s.* wrong, evil, L 2004.
- Mis**, *adv.* amiss, wrongly, T 1 94.
- Mis**, *i.* *pr.* *s.* lack, have lost, 6, 4.
- Misaccounted**, *pp.* miscounted, 1, 185.
- Misaunter**, *s.* misadventure, misadventure T. 760.

- Misadventure**, *s.* misadventure, mishap, B 616; mischief, R. 422.
Misavvyse, *pr. pl. refl. act* unadvisedly, D 230.
Misbilleve, *s.* suspicion, G 1213.
Misbileved, infidels, I. 146.
Misboden, *pp.* offered (to do you) evil, insulted, A 909.
Misborn, *pp.* misbehaved, B 3067 (*lit.* 'borne amiss').
Miscario, *v.* go amiss, A 513.
Mischance, *s.* ill luck, R. 1548; mischance, R. 251; misfortune, L. 1826; *to mischaunce*, i.e. to the devil, T. ii. 222, v. 359; *how m.*, how the mischief, T. iv. 1362.
Mischeef, *s.* misfortune, L. 1278; danger, 4. 58; harm, R. 253.
Misconcoeyveth, *pr. s.* misunderstands, E 2410.
Miscounting, *s.* fraudulent reckoning, R. 106.
Misdermeth, *pr. s.* misjudges, E 2410.
Misdeparteth, *pr. s.* parts or divides amiss, B 107.
Misdooth, *pr. s.* ill-treats, B 3112.
Misdrawinges, *s. pl.* way of drawing aside, B 3. p 12. 107.
Misericorde, *s.* (there is) mercy, pity, T. iii. 1177; pity, B 2608.
Miserie, *s.* misery, B 3167.
Misere, *s.* trouble, I. 806; discomfort, I. 177; *pl.* injuries, B 1. p 4. 73.
Misosed, *pp.* vexed, I. 806.
Misfille, *pl. s. subj.* it went amiss (with), A 2388.
Misforyaf, *pl. s.* misgave, T. iv. 1426.
Misgoon, *pp.* gone astray, I. 81.
Misgovernance, *s.* misconduct, B 3202.
Misgyed, *pp.* misconducted, B 3723.
Mishap, *s.* ill luck, B 3433.
Mishappe, *v.* meet with misfortune, B 2886; *pr. s. subj.* (it) may happen ill for, A 1646.
Mishappy, *adj.* unhappy, B 2758.
Misknowinge, *s.* ignorance, B 3. m 11. 27.
Mislay, *pl. s.* lay in an uncomfortable position, A 3647.
Misledde, *pl. pl.* misconducted, T. iv. 48.
Misledinges, *pl.* misguiding ways, B 3. p 8. 2.
Mislyketh, *pr. s.* displeases, L. 1291.
Mislyved, *pp.* of ill life, treacherous, T. iv. 110.
Mismetre, *pr. s. subj.* scan amiss, T. v. 1796.
Mis-set, *pl. s.* was not where it should be, 3. 941; misbecame, R. 1194.
Misse, *v.* fail, D 1416; draw to an end, 5. 40; *pl. s.* was wanting (to), T. iii. 445; *pp.* missing, T. iii. 5:7.
Mis-set, *pp.* misplaced, 3. 1210.
Misseye, *1 pr. s.* speak amiss, 7. 317; *pr. s.* slanders, I. 379; *misseyd or do, said or done wrong*, 3. 528.
Mispeake, *1 pr. s. subj.* speak wrongly, A 3139.
Mistaketh, *s. pr. pl.* transgress, trespass, R. 1540.
Mister, *s.* trade, handicraft, occupation. A 613; need, R. 1426; **Mester**, occupation, A 1340; *what m. men*, men of what occupation, what sort of men, A 1710. See **Mester**.
Misterye, *s.* ministry, profession, I. 895. From Lat. *ministerium*.
Mistihede, *s.* mystery, 4. 224.
Mis-torneth, *pr. pl.* turn aside, B 3. p 3. 9.
Mistyde, *v.* be unlucky, B 2886.
Miswanderinge, *adj.* straying (*Lat. devius*), B 3. p 2. 27.
Miswent, *pp.* gone amiss, T. i. 633.
Mis-weye, *s. pl.* by-paths, B 3. m 11. 3.
Mitoyne, *s.* mitten, glove, C 372.
Mixen, *s.* dunghill, I. 911.
Mo (*moo*), *adj.* more, A. *pr.* 27; more (in number), A. 576, 849; besides, L. 917; others, E 2113; another, E 1039; (others) besides, E 2263; many others besides, D 661; *tymes mo*, at other times, E 440; *othere mo*, others besides, G 1001; *no mo*, no more, none else, B 605.
Mo, *adv.* more, any longer, D 864; *never the mo*, never mo, never, D 601, 1099.
Moche, *adj.* great, L. 1966; much, G 6:1.
Moche, *adv.* much, B 3929.
Moche, *s.* size, 3. 454, 861.
Moder, *s.* mother, B 276; the thickest plate forming the principal part of the astrolabe (*Lat. mater or rotula*), A. i. 3. 1; **Modres**, *gen.* B 1783; **Modres**, *pl.* C 93.
Mooble, *adj.* moveable, A. i. 21. 80.
Mooble, *s.* moveable goods, personal property, T. iv. 1480, 1460, *pl.* G 540.
Moode, *s. pl.* moods, strains (of music), B 2. p 1. 31.
Moovable, *adj.* fickle, B 4. m 5. 12; *as s.* The firste m., the 'primum mobile,' A. i. 17. 31.
Moovablete, *s.* mobility, B 4. p 6. 126.
Moove, *ger.* to stir up, B 2218; *v.* move, I. 133.
Moovere, *s.* mover, A 2987.
Moovinge, *s.* moving, motion, A. *pr.* 99.

- Firste mooving, the 'primum mobile,' A 1. 7. 45.
Moiste *adj.* supple, A 457.
Moiste *adj.* of a moisture, R 1564.
Mokereres, *a. pl.* misers B 2 p 5. 18.
Mokre, *v.* heard u., T 11. 1175.
Molestie *a.* trouble, B 3. 1. 9. 105.
Mollificacioun, *a.* softening, G 854.
Molte *pp.*, see **Melte**.
Monche, *v.* munch, T. 1. 914.
Mone, *a.* moon, A 2077, i.e. position or 'quarter' of the moon, A 404. **Mone**, *gen* B 2070. **Mones**, *gen* F 1154.
Mone *a.* moon, complaint A 1100, F 920.
Mone, *v.* *refl.* to lament, T 1. 58.
Monstre *a.* prodigy, F 1344. *pl.* B 3302.
Montaigne, *a.* mountain, B 14.
Mood, *a.* anger A 1700; thought, C 126.
Moon *a.* moon lamentation, complaint, L. 1169, 1729.
Moorne, *v.* *pr.* *a.* mourn, A 3704.
Moorninge, *a.* mourning, plaint, A 3706.
Moot, *a. pl.* notes on a horn, 1. 376.
Moot *v.* *pr.* *a.* must, shall, B 1841. *pr.* *a.* must, ought to, A 212; is to go, B 204.
Mot, *v.* *pr.* *a.* may 4. 207. must, have to, B 217. **Most**, *a. pr.* *a.* B 114. **Mot**, *pr.* *a.* must, has to, L. 388, 1243. **Mote**, *a. pr.* *pl.* may, T 11. 409. **Moten**, must, L. 44. **Mote** or **Motte**, *v.* *a.* subj. may, HF 103. L. 841, is sure to, L. 1032. **Mote** or **Mote** I guon, may I still go, may I still retain the power to walk, F 777. So must or mote I thee, as I may thrive as I hope to thrive, C 100. As ever mote I, A 833. **Foule** must thee falle, ill may it befall thee, H 47. **Moot** or **Mote** thou, mayst thou, B 1126. **Moste** *a. pl.* *a.* must go, B 282. **Mote** *pl.* *a.* must 4. 250, had to, B 880, ought to be, F 48. was naue to, B 1702. **Moston**, *pl.* *pl.* should, L. 99. **Mote**, *pl.* *a.* subj. might, L. 1571, as mote, we must resolve to, G 946.
Moral, *adj.* excellent in character, T. iv. 1072.
Moraltee, *a.* moral tale, l. 38; moral writing, I 1066.
Mordre, *a.* murder, R 1136, in wol out, B 2142.
Mordre *ger.* to murder kill L. 1536.
Mordrer *a.* murderer, 9. 153, 012.
Mordring *a.* murdering A 2001.
More, *adj.* greater, B 2300, E 1241, larger, HF 500. More and lesse all alike, every one, B 950. More and more HF 21, with-outen more without farther trouble, T. iv. 133.
More, *adv.* more A 219. in a great degree, B 3715.
More *a.* root, T v. 35. A.S. more.
Mormal, *a.* sore, gangrene A 386.
Morne, *a.* morning, *morne* still morning-milk, A 158, 1210.
Morsel, *a.* morsel, bit, A 128. *a.* food, morsel of bread, B 1024.
Morter, *a.* mortar 2. 15. a metal bowl or holding wax, with a wick for burning, T iv. 1245.
Mortifye, *v.* kill: used of producing change by chemical action, G 1. 1. pp. dealened, l. 213.
Mortreux, *pl.* thickened soups or ptages, A 384. (Also spelt *mort* vs. thus *x* is for *a*.)
Morwen, *a.* morning, marrow T 1. 107.
Morwe, L. 49, 104, hure part of a day, T iv. 1308, by the murre, early in the morning, A 134.
Morweninge, *a.* morning, A 1077. *dawn* ing. 4. 26.
Morwe-song, *a.* morning-song A 30.
Morwe-tyde, *a.* morning-hour E. 55. in the m., in the morning B 427.
Mosel, *a.* muzzle A 2151.
Most, *a. pl.* *a.* oughtest to, 8. 1. 152. *pl.* *a.* must, ought to, A 1031. 2. 10. go, HF 187, had to go, T. 1. 1. 10. obliged to, T. 11. 240, must might B 2102, *pl.* *a.* subj. might, L. 54, 1244. *pl.* *a.* must, might, T 11. 107. HF 2094.
Moiste, *adj.* sup. greatest, F 10, 1. 1. D 1041, cholest, F 361.
Mote *a.* atom, T 11. 1002. *Mote* *a.* specks of mist, D 808.
Mote *a.* motion. Lat. *motus* A 1. 1. 22. The mene mote or more *etc.* is the average motion of a planet during a given period.
Motre *ger.* to mutter, F 11. 34.
Motteles, *a.* motley array A 47.
Motthes, *a. pl.* moths B 218.
Motyl *a.* motive, hence idea, *etc.* F 618, E 1491.
Moulon, *v.* grow mouldy B 11. 1. 4. 3870.
Mountance, *a.* amount, value, quarter, A 1570. amount of time, L. 10. 1. 224. T. 1. 1707, value, H 255.
Mourdaunt, *a.* chape, or metal to the end of a gun the R 1024. No 20. tongue of a buckle.
Moustre, *a.* pattern 2. 912.
Moveresse, *a.* a lamentress of James B 149.

- Mowe**, *s.* grimace, T. iv. 7; pl. HF. 1806.
Mowen, *v.* be able; *mowen shewen*, become evident, B 5, p 4. 163; *Mowen*, *ger.* to have power, T. ii. 1594; *May*, 1 pr. *a.* may, B 89; can, B 231; *Maystow*, mayest thou, A 1918; *Mowe*, 1 pr. pl. can, B 2939; may, HF. 1735; *Mowen*, 2 pr. pl. can, 19. 25; *Mowe*, 2 pr. pl. may, L. 93, can, 3. 552; *Mowen*, pr. pl. are able to, D 1722; *Mowe*, pr. pl. may, can, A 2909; *Mowe*, 2 pr. *a.* subj. mayest, G 460; *Mights*, pl. *a.* might, A 169, &c.; 1 pr. *a.* subj. could, E 638.
Mowinge, *s.* ability, B 4, p 4. 32.
Mowled, pp. decayed, A 3870.
Moysoun, *s.* crop, growth, R. 1677. O.F. *moisson*, Lat. acc. *messonem*.
Moyste, adj. fresh, new, B 1954, G 215.
Moysty, adj. new (applied to ale), H 60.
Muable, adj. changeable, T. iii. 822.
Muchel, adj. much, great, A 2352; a great deal of, F 349; in so m., in so much, B 2644, many, G 672.
Muchel, adv. greatly, A 258; much, F 1129.
Mulier est hominis confusio, woman is man's confusion, B 4154.
Mullok, *s.* a heap of refuse, A 3873; confused heap of materials, G 938, 941.
Multiplicacioun, *s.* multiplying, i. e. the art of alchemy, G 849.
Multiplye, *v.* to make gold and silver by the arts of alchemy, G 669.
Murmuration, *s.* murmuring, I 499.
Murmuringe, *s.* murmur, A 2432.
Murthe, *s.* mirth, joy, E 1123.
Murye, adj. merry, A 1386.
Muscle, *s.* mussel, D 2100.
Muse, *s.* muse, poetic faculty, 16. 38.
Muse, *ger.* to consider, T. iii. 503; pr. *a.* gazes into, R. 1592; pp. gazed, R. 1645.
Musice, Music, B 2, p 1. 49.
Musyke, music, 5. 62; Musik, B 4483.
Muwe, *s.* mew, pen (for hawks), cage, T. i. 381; in muwe, cooped up, T. iv. 496.
Muwe, *v.* change, T. ii. 1258.
Myle, *s.* mile, HF. 1038; fyve m., five miles, G 555.
Mynde, *s.* dat. mind, recollection, 3. 15; acc. reason, 2. 34; 3. 511; have mynde upon, remember, 19. 26.
Myns, *v.* undermine, T. iii. 767.
Mynour, *s.* one who mines, A 2465.
Myrie, adj. merry, A 1402.
Myrie, adv. merrily, A 1575.
Myrier, adv. comp. merrier, R. 876.
Mys, pl. mice, B 2, p 6. 37.
Myte (1), *s.* mite, thing of no value, A 1558.
Myte (2), mite, insect; pl. D 560.

N.

N', for ne, not; as in *nackereth* for *ne ackereth*, and the like.
Na, no (Northern), A 4175.
Na mo, i. e. no more, none else, B 695.
Nacheveth, for *ne achoveth*, achieves not, T. v. 784.
Nadde, pl. *a.* (for *ne hadde*), had not, R. 457.
Naddre, *s.* adder, E 1786.
Nadir, *s.* the point of the ecliptic exactly opposite to that in which the sun is situate, A. ii. 6. 1; see L 12.
Nadstow, 2 pr. *a.* haddest thou not, didst thou not, A 4088.
Naille, imp. *s.* 3 p. let it nail, let it fasten. E 1184.
Naiteth, pr. *a.* refuses, B 1, m 1. 25.
Nake, 2 pr. pl. make naked, B 4, m 7. 701.
Naked, pp. as adj. naked, A 1956, I 105 bare, HF. 133; destitute, void, weak, G 486; simple, plain, A. pr. 30.
Nakers, pl. kettle-drums, A 2511. From the Arabic.
Nale; *alle nale*, at the ale, at the ale-house, D 1349.
Nam, (for *ne am*), 1 pr. *a.* am not, A 1122, B 2710; *nam but deed*, am only a dead man, 2. 204.
Nam, pl. *a.* took, G 1297.
Name, *s.* good name, reputation, L 1812, title, B 2, p 6. 36.
Namely, adv. especially, A 1268, 2700.
Namo (for *na mo*), no more in number, A 101, 544; none other, no one else, D 957.
Namore, adv. no more, A 98.
Napoplexye, for *Ne apoplexye*, nor apoplexy, B 4031.
Nappeth, pr. *a.* naps, slumbers, nods, H 9.
Narette; see *Arette*.
Nart, (for *ne art*), art not, G 490.
Narwe, adj. small, B 4012; pl. A 625, close, closely drawn, D 1802.
Narwe, adv. narrowly, closely, A 3224 tightly, L 620; carefully, E 1988.
Nas, (for *ne was*), was not, A 251, 288 *I was but*, I was simply, 2. 21.
Nassayeth, for *ne assayeth*, attempts not, T. v. 784.
Nat, adv. not, A 74; *Nat but*, only, merrily, L 1849; quite, L 2091.
Nat, (for *ne at*), nor at, B 292.

- Neste**, *adj. sup.* nearest, A 1413; easiest, T. i. 697.
- Ney**, *adj.* nigh, A. ii. 3. 78.
- Nigard**, *adj.* niggardly, B. 1172.
- Nigard**, *s.* miser, niggard, B. 4108.
- Nigardye**, *s.* miserliness, B. 1362.
- Nighte**, *ger.* to grow dark, become night, T. v. 515.
- Nighter-tale**, *s.*; *by s.* in the night-time, A. 97. This expression seems to have resulted from a confusion of *loel* & *aditar-fell*, in the dead of night, with *loel*. *aditar-tal*, *s.* tale or number of nights.
- Night-spel**, *s.* night-spell, night-incantation, A. 3480.
- Nigromanciers**, *s. pl.* necromancers, I. 603.
- Nil**, *i pr. s.* will not, 3. 92, 1125; will (I) not, shall (I) not, T. v. 30, 43, 44; desire not, dislike, E. 640; *Nillo*, *i pr. s.* will not, G. 1463; *Nil*, *pr. s.* will not, B. 972; will not (have), 3. 586; will (she) not, 3. 1140; *Nilt*, *2 pr. s.* wilt not, T. ii. 1024; *Niltow*, thou wilt not, T. i. 792.
- Nillinge**, *s.* refusing, B. 5. p. 2. 21.
- Nin**, *for* Ne in, nor in, E. 1511, F. 35.
- Nis**, *for* as is, is not, 2. 77; Ther nis no more but, all that remains is that, L. 847.
- Niste**, *i pr. s.* know not, F. 322; *pt. s.* knew not, A. 3414, 4225.
- Noble**, *s.* a gold coin, A. 3256, *pl.* HF. 1315. (Worth 6s. 8d.)
- Nobledest**, *pt. s.* & *p.* ennobledest, didst ennoble, G. 40. A translation of Dante's *nobilissimi*.
- Noblesse**, *s.* nobleness, B. 780; noble choir, T. v. 439; nobility, D. 1167; (title of respect), B. 2956; magnificence, B. 3438; high honour, B. 3208; nobility, rank, B. 1034; worthy behaviour, B. 185, 248.
- Nobley**, *s.* nobility, dignity, splendour, HF. 1410; noble rank, T. iv. 1070; assembly of nobles, G. 449; state, F. 77.
- Nof** (*for* Ne of), nor of, D. 571, 602.
- Noght**, *adv.* not, A. 107; by no means, in no respect, A. 1220; Noght but for, only because, D. 645.
- Noght**, *s.* nothing, C. 542, N. worth, worth nothing, H. 202.
- Noisen**, *2 pr. pl.* cry aloud, B. 3. m. 6. 10.
- Nokked**, *pp.* notched, R. 942.
- Nolde**, *i pr. s.* would not, did not want, 5. 00; (I) should not desire, G. 1314; *Noldest*, *2 pr. s.* wouldst not, 3. 482; *Noldestow*, if thou wouldst not, T. iii. 1264; *Nolde*, *pt. s.* would not, 1. 31; would not (have), A. 1024.
- Nombre**, *s.* number, A. 716; amount, sum, A. ii. 24. 5.
- Nombred**, *pp.* counted in, T. iii. 1269.
- Nomen**, *pp.* taken, T. v. 514; put, B. 408; *Nome*, *pp.* L. 822, 1018, 1777. *Pp.* of *nimen*.
- Nones**, *for* the, for the nonce, for the occasion, for this occasion, A. 379, 523, 545, 879; on the spur of the moment, T. i. 501; for the time, T. ii. 1381; With the nones, on the condition, HF. 2099, L. 1540. Originally *for then ones*, for the once; where *then* is the dat. of the def. article (A. 8. 0dm).
- Nonne**, *s.* nun, A. 118; Nonnes Preest, Nun's Priest, B. 4637.
- Nonnerye**, *s.* nunnery, A. 3046.
- Noon**, none, no, A. 318, 449; *or noon*, or not, or no, D. 2060.
- Noot**, *i pr. s.* know not, L. 2660, Not, L. 193; *Nost*, knowest not, 3. 1137; *Nostow*, thou knowest not, HF. 1010; *Noot*, *pr. s.* knows not, C. 284; Not, 4. 214. A. S. *not*.
- Norice**, *s.* nurse, B. 4395.
- Norice**, *v.* nourish, foment, B. 2204; *pp.* brought up, E. 309.
- Norissing**, *s.* nutriment, A. 437; growth, A. 3017; *Norishinge*, bringing up, E. 1040; *pl.* refectiōns, B. 4. p. 6. 38; sustenance, B. 1. p. 6. 93 (Lat. *fomitum*).
- Noriture**, *s.* nourishment, T. iv. 768.
- Nortelrys**, *s.* education, A. 3967.
- Northren**, northern, A. 1087.
- Norture**, *s.* instruction, good manners, R. 179.
- Nory**, *s.* pupil (lit. foster-child), D. 3. p. 11. 233; *Norry*, B. 1. p. 3. 14.
- Nose-thirles**, *pl.* nostrils, A. 557. I. 2021.
- Noakines**, *for* Noncskinnes, of no kind, HF. 1794. From *noncs*, gen. of *noon*, none; and *kiness*, gen. of *kīn*.
- Nost**, *Nostow*, Not; see *Noot*.
- Not but**, only, 4. 121; T. iii. 1636.
- Nota**, *i. e.* observe, A. ii. 20. 32.
- Notabilitee**, *s.* notable fact, B. 4390.
- Notable**, *adj.* notorious, remarkable, B. 1875.
- Notaries**, *s. pl.* scribes, I. 797.
- Note**, *s.* (1) note (in music), A. 235, B. 1737; musical note, penl, HF. 1720; tune, 5. 677, *by s.*, according to musical notes, by note, B. 669; in concord, all at once, T. iv. 585.
- Note**, *s.* (2), employment, business, task, job, A. 4068. A. S. *notu*.

Noteful, *adj.* useful, A. pr. 130.
Notemage, *s.* nutmeg, B 1053.
Notes *s. pl.* nuts, B 1360.
Not heed, *s.* crop-lead, a head with hair cropped short, A 109.
Not her, neither, 7 253; neither of them, L. 112.
Nothing, *adv.* in no respect, in no degree, not at all, A 1505, *for n.*, by no means, D 1121.
Notificacions, *pl.* hints, B 5. m. 3. 23.
Notifie, *pr. pl.* indicate, I 430, *pp.* proclaimed, B 150.
Nouchis, *s. pl.* jewelled ornaments, jewels (properly, setting for jewels), clasps, HF. 1150. **Nowches**, E 382. *E. onch.*
Nought, *adv.* not, T. d. 575, 673, not at all, 3. 1. D 2262.
Noumbre, *s.* number, 3. 440.
Noumbre, *v.* number, 3 439, *pp.* counted 11. T. 11 1269.
Noun-certeyn, *s.* uncertainty, 18 46, T. 1. 317.
Noun-power, *s.* impotence, B 1. p. 2. 22.
Nouth, now, T. 1. 985, *as nouth*, at present, A 462.
Novelrye, *s.* novelty, T. 11 756.
Now, *adv.* now, A 715, *for now*, for the present, 7 441, *now and now*, from time to time, occasionally, F 430.
Nowches see **Nouchis**.
Noyous, *adj.* troublesome, HF 574. Short for *anoyous*.
Ny, *adj.* near, B 1562. **Nye**, *def.* the one who is near, A 1192.
Ny, *adv.* nigh, nearly, B 2715 *as ny as*, as close to, A 588, *weel ny*, almost, A 1240.
Ny, *prep.* nigh, B 581.
Nyoe, *adj.* foolish, B 1712, 1505; ignorant, R. 1. 17, foolish, weak, B 1083, G 401, ludicrous, A 3835, scrupulous, A 398.
Nycely, *adv.* foolishly T. 1. 1152.
Nycetee, *s.* folly, G 401, simplicity, A 4030 foolish behaviour, pleasure, D 412 scrupulousness, T. 11. 1288.
Nye see **Ny**.
Nyiles, *pl.* mockeries, pretences, D 1760.
Lit. 'snifflings'; O.F. *nyiler*, to sniff.

O

O 100, one, A 404, 461, a single, B 5. p. 6. 158, one and the same, T. 11. 47, one continuous and uniform, HF. 1100. See **Oon**.
Obeisant, *adj.* obedient, E 60. I 203.
Obeisaunce, *s.* obedience, E 24, 502, obedient act, E 230; obedient farewell, L. 247, in your o. in obedience to me, 2. 84, unto her o., in obedience to me, L. 587, **Obeisaunces**, 34 acts of dutiful attention, L. 143, **obeisaunce**, L. 100.
Obeising, *adj.* yielding, L. 1260.
Objecte, *adv.* presented B 1. p. 2. 6.
Obligacioun *s.* bond, 15 1, **Obligacioun**, *pl.* surties, B 4018.
Oblige, *v.* o. to you, lay an obligation on you, to make me, T. 11. 1414.
Obsequies, *pl.* funeral rites, A 611.
Obsevaunce, *s.* respect, A 1045, homage, 7 218, observance, L. 1608, 1000 17, T. 11. 112; heed, I 747 *pl.* esteem of attentions, F 610, duties, L. 100.
Observe, *v.* favour, B 1821 *pr. s.* heed, I 103.
Occasioun, *s.* cause, L. 994.
Occident, *s.* west, B 207.
Occidentale, *adj.* western, A. 1.
Occupy, *v.* take up, F 64 *pr.* a horse close upon T. 11. 830, *iwels in* 5. 11, *imp.* s. hold to, B 1. p. 7 103.
Octogamy, *s.* marrying eight times B 3.
Of, *prep.* of, A 2, &c. by, B 100 concerning, about, F 1170 during 300 for, 13 10, off, from, 4 304 on, on top of, B 208, as to, as regards, in regard of, F 425; as to, 1 906, upon 1 117 over, B 217, with, A 205 *see* A 146, of a purpose on purpose, 1 100, *of* of my life, in all, 1 117, 5. 484, of price, in his favour, in his favour, E 178, *fulfilld of*, 11. 117 42.
Of, *adv.* off, away, 1. 494, come off, I. 11. 1106, off, A 2070, come off, be gone have done, A 2728.
Offensacioun, *s.* damage, A 2116.
Offertorie, *s.* offertory, A 710.
Office *s.* office, employment of a special character, A 202 employment, B 1111 *s.* duty 1 146 property, D 1111 *s.* office, D 1577, with o., by the use of (Lat. *officio* B 1. p. 1 1 house of servants offices, E 204.
Of-newe, *adv.* newly, again, R. 100 lately, E 938.
Of-showve, *v.* repel lit. shove off, 10. 2.
Of-taken, *pp.* taken away, B 1875.
Ofte, *adj.* *pl.* many Ofte synthes, 11. 1115, A 485; Ofte tyme, often 1 111 Tymes ofte E 211.
Ofte, *adv.* comp. oftener, E 215.
Of that, *conj.* because, L. 515.

- Of-thowed, *pp.* thawed away, HF. 1143.
 Oght, *s.* aught, anything, F 1469; any-
 thing of value, G 1333; *as adv.* ought,
 at all, B 1792.
 Oghte; see Owen.
 Oke, Okes; see Ook.
 Olifaunts, *s. pl.* elephants, B 3. p 8. 29.
 Oliveres, *s. pl.* olive-trees, R. 1314; olive-
 yards, B 3226.
 Olyve, *s.* olive-tree, 5. 181.
 Omelies, *s. pl.* homilies, I 1088.
 On, *prep.* on, A 12; in, F 921; at, T. iii.
 32; of, T. iii. 18; *as regards*, E 1424;
 against, T. ii. 865; towards, 4. 298;
 binding on, 10. 43, *air on*, upon her, 3.
 1217; *on ere*, in the evening, E 1214; *on*
reste, at rest, F 379.
 On, one; see Oon.
 Onde, *s.* envy, R. 148. A.S. *onda*.
 Oneden, *pt. pl.* united, I 193; *pp.* united,
 complete, D 1968.
 Ones, *adv.* once, B 588; united in design,
 C 696; *at once*, at once, A 765.
 On-lofte, *adv.* aloft, up in the air, in the
 sky, 5. 203, 683; above ground, E 229.
 On-lyve, *adv.* alive, F 932. Lit. 'in life.'
 Oo, one; see Oon.
 Ook, *s.* oak, A 1702; Oke, *dat. s.* 447;
 (*collectively*, oaks, R. 1384).
 Oon, one, R. 624; always the same, the
 same, one and the same, B 2142; united,
 agreed, T. ii. 1740; alone, unwedded, D
 10; the same, i.e. of small consequence,
 3. 1295; the same thing, alike, F 537;
oon the faireste, one of the fairest, E
 212; *in oon*, in the same state, un-
 changeably; *ever in oon*, ever alike,
 always in the same manner, E 602;
 continually, D 209; *oon and oon*, one by
 one, A 679, *after oon*, equally good, A
 341; *that oon*, one thing, T. iv. 1453;
 the one, C 666; *many oon*, many a one,
 A 217, E 775; *felle at oon*, came to one
 agreement, T. iii. 565, *many on*, many
 a one, D 680; *ecerich on*, every one, B
 1164; Oo, one, G 207; a single, R. 1236,
 one and the same, 3. 1293.
 Ooned, *pp.* united, B 4. p 6. 81.
 Open-ers, *s.* fruit of the medlar, A 3871.
 Open-headed, with head uncovered, D
 645.
 Opie, *s.* opium, A 1472; Opies, *pl.* opiates,
 L. 2670.
 Opned, *pp.* opened, T. iii. 469.
 Opposen, *v.* oppose; *o. me*, lay to my
 charge, D 1597.
 Oppresse, *v.* suppress, 10. 60; violate, F
 1411; *per.* to put down, G 4.
 Oppressoun, *s.* oppression, wrong, L.
 2592, tyranny, 10. 19; violation, L.
 1868.
 Or, *conj.* ere, G 314.
 Or, *prep.* before, R. 864.
 Or, *conj.* or, A 91, &c.; Or . . . or, either
 . . . or, R. 261.
 Oratorie, *s.* closet for prayers, A 1905.
 Ordal, *s.* ordeal, T. iii. 1046.
 Orde, *dat. point*, L. 645. A.S. *ord*. And
 see Word.
 Ordenee, *adj.* well-ordered, B 4. p 1. 46.
 Ordenely, *adv.* conformably, in order,
 B 4. p 6. 313.
 Ordenour, *s.* ruler, B 3. p 12. 102.
 Ordeyned, *pp.* provided, A 2553; ap-
 pointed, F 177; prepared, G 1277.
 ordered, I 336; (=ordeyned), *pp.* regu-
 lated, T. i. 892.
 Ordinaat, *adj.* orderly, E 1284.
 Ordinaty, *adv.* methodically, I 1045.
 Ordinaunce, *s.* arrangement, A 3012;
 provision, B 250; orderly arrangement,
 A 2567; consideration, 18. 38; order, B
 2303; resolve, B 2258; command, 10.
 44.
 Ordred, *pp. as adj.* ordained, I 782.
 Ordure, *s.* filthiness, I 841, rubbish, T.
 v. 385.
 Ore, *s.* grace; *thyn o.*, (I pray for) thy
 grace, A 3726. A.S. *or*.
 Ore, *s.* ore (of metal), D 1064. A.S. *or*.
 Ores, *s. pl.* oars, L. 2308.
 Orfrays, *s.* gold embroidery, gold braid,
 fringe with golden threads, R. 462, 809.
 1076. A.F. *orfrais*, O.F. *orfrois*.
 Organa, *s. pl.* 'organs,' the old equivalent
 of organ, G 114.
 Orgon, *pl. as sing.* organ (Lat. *organum*), B
 4041.
 Orient, *s.* east, A 1494.
 Oriental, *adj.* eastern; (hence) of superior
 quality, L. 221.
 Orisonte, *s.* horizon, T. v. 276.
 Orisoun, *s.* prayer, A 2372.
 Orizon rectum, or right horizon, A. ii. 20.
 35. This means the horizon of any
 place situate on the equator, which
 could be represented by a straight line
 upon a disc of the astrolabe.
 Orloge, *s.* clock, 5. 250; B 4044.
 Orphelin, *adj.* orphaned, B 2. p 1. 33.
 Orpiment, *s.* orpiment, G 759, 774, 823.
 'Orpiment, trisulphide of arsenic',
 Webster.
 Oruscypum, i.e. horoscope, A. ii. 3. rubric.
 Osanne, i.e. Hosannah, B 642.
 Ost, *s.* host, army, L. 1906.

Other, conj. or, 3. 810; **Other** . . or, either . . or, G 1149.

Other-whyle, *adv.* sometimes, B 2. p 1. 120.

Ouche, *s.* nouch clasp, D 743. See **Nouchia**.

Ought, *s.* anything 3. 45; *as adv.* at all T ii. 268, *in ought that*, in as far as, T iii. 1241.

Oughtestow, oughtest thou, L 1957.

Oule, *s.* owl, D 1081.

Oules, *pl.* awls, spiked irons for tormenting men, D 1702. A.S. *awil*.

Ounces, *pl.* small portions, A 677; ounces G 756.

Ounded, *pp.* wavy, T. iv 730.

Oundinge, *s.* adornment with wavy lines, I 417.

Oundy, *adj.* wavy, HF. 1386. F. *ondé*.

Out, *adv.* out, A 45, &c; *used for con-* out, HF. 2139; *go out*, T iv 210, tally. T. iii. 417, *murdre wil out*, murder will out, B 1766; *Out and out*, entirely T. ii. 739.

Out, *interj.* alas! A 3825; *Out!* hurrow! B 4571.

Out of, *prep.* without, C 157; *out of* A 452.

Out-broke, *v.* break out, break silence. 2. 12.

Out-breaste, *v.* burst out, T iv. 237.

Out-bringe, *v.* utter, L 1835.

Outcast, *pp.* cast out, T. v. 615.

Out-caughte, *pl. s.* drew out, B 1861.

Out-drawe, *pp.* drawn out, T. iv. 1226.

Oute, *adv.* away, T. v. 553; *out*, *i. e.* uttered D 622.

Over-raughte, *pt. a. reached over, hence, urged on*, T. v. 1018.
Over-shake, *pp. shaken off*, 5. 681.
Overshote, *pp.*; *had overshot him*, had over-run the scent, 3. 383.
Over-skippe, 1 *pt. a. skipped over*, omitted, 3. 1308.
Overloppe, *a. upper-garment*, G 633. Cf. *Icel. yfrelloppr*, an upper garment. See *Sloppes*.
Oversprede, *v. spread over, cover*, E 1799; *Over-sprat*, *pr. a. over-spreadeth*, T. ii. 767; *Overspradde*, *pt. a. covered*, A 2871.
Overspringe, *pr. a. subj. overpass*, F 1060.
Overtake, *v. overtakes, attain to*, G 682; *Overtook*, 1 *pt. a. caught up*, 3. 360.
Overte, *adj. open*, HF. 718.
Overthrowe, *v. be overturned, be ruined*, HF. 1640.
Overthrowinge, *adj. overwhelming*, B 1. m 2. 2; *headlong* (Lat. *præcipiti*), B 2. m 7. 1; *headstrong* (Lat. *præcipiti*), B 1. m 6. 25; *revolving*, B 3. m 12. 43.
Overthrowinge, *a. falling down*, B 2735; *pl. destruction* (Lat. *ruine*), B 2. m 4. 17.
Overthwart, *adv. across*, A 1991; *opposite*, T. iii. 685; *askance*, R. 292.
Overtymelicke, *adv. untimely*, B 1. m 1. 18.
Over-whelveth, *pr. a. overturns, turns over, agitates*, B 2. m 3. 17.
Owen, *v. owe, own, possess*; *Oweh*, *pr. a. owns, possesses*, C 361; *Oweh*, *pr. a. ref. it is incumbent (on him)*, L. 360 a; *Oghte*, 1 *pt. a. ought*, 4. 216; *Oughtestow*, 2 *pt. a. oughtest thou*, T. v. 545; L. 1957; *Oghte*, *pt. a. impera. it were necessary*, B 2188; *him oghte*, he ought, L. 377; *it became him*, B 1097; *hir oghte*, became her, E 1120; *us oghte*, it behoved us, we ought, 1. 119; *hem oghte*, they ought, G 1340; *us oghte* (*subj.*), it should behove us, we ought, E 1130; *Oghte*, *pt. a. owed*, L. 589; *ought*, A 305; *Owed*, *pp. due*, B 4. p 5. 18.
Owene, *adj. def. own*, C 834: *wyn owene woman*, independent, T. ii. 750; *his owne hand*, with his own hand, A 3624.
Owh, *interj. alas*, B 1. p 6. 25.
Owher, *adv. anywhere*, A 651.
Oxe, *a. ox*, C 354; *Oxes*, *gen.* E 207; *Oxen*, *pl.* A 887.
Oxe-stalle, *a. ox-stall*, E 398.
Oynement, *a. ointment, unguent*, A 631.
Oynons, *pl. onions*, A 634.

P.

Pass, *a. pace, step*, L. 284; *goon a pass*, go at a footpace, G 866.
Pass, *v. pass, go*, A 1602; *pass*, T. i. 371; *go away*, 15. 9; *pass away*, A 175; *surpass*, go beyond, T. iii. 1272; *walk*, T. v. 1791; *overstep*, HF. 392; *come*, III. 720; *p. of*, pass over, T. ii. 1568; *of this thing to p.*, to pass this over in review, HF. 239; *to pace of*, to pass from, B 205; 1 *pr. a. pass over (it)*, go on, HF. 1355; *proceed, go on*, A 36; 1 *pr. a. subj. depart*, F 494; 2 *pr. a. subj. go*, D 911.
Paillet, *a. pallet*, T. iii. 229.
Paire, *a. pair*, A 473; *set*, A 159; *as pl. pairs*, 5. 238. (*Pair*, in the sense of 'set,' is applied to many things of the same kind and size.)
Paisible, *adj. peaceable*, 9. 1.
Palasye, *a. palsy*, R. 1098.
Pale, *a. perpendicular stripe*, HF. 1840.
Palestral, *adj. athletic, pertaining to wrestling*, T. v. 304.
Paleth, *pr. a. renders pale*, B 2. m 3. 3.
Paleys, or **Paleis** - *chaumbres*, *pl. palace-chambers*, 9. 41.
Paleys-gardyn, *palace-garden*, T. ii. 308.
Paleys-ward, *to, toward the palace*, T. ii. 1257.
Paleys-yates, *pl. gates of the palace*, 4. 82.
Palinge, *a. adorning with (heraldic) pales, or upright stripes*, I 417.
Palla, *a. palisade, stockade*, B 1. p 6. 41; *paling*, *rampart*, B 1. p 3. 86. O. F. *palla*, *paleis*.
Palled, *pp. pale, languid*, H 55.
Pan, *a. brain-pan, skull*, A 1165.
Panade, *a. kind of knife*, A 3939, 3960.
Panier, *a. pannier*, E 1568; *pl. baskets for bread*, HF. 1939.
Panne, *a. pan*, A 3944.
Panter, *a. bag-net for birds*, L. 131; *pl. nets*, R. 1631. O. F. *pantere*.
Papejay, *a. popinjay*, B 1564, 1957, E 2312. applied in England to the green woodpecker (*Greenus viridis*).
Paper, *a. account-book*, A 4404.
Paper-whyte, *adj. white as paper*, L. 1108.
Papingay, *a. popinjay*, R. 81. See *Papejay*.
Par amour; see *Paramour*.
Par cas, by chance, C 885.
Par compaigns, for company, A 3839, 4167.
Paradye, *a. paradise*, R. 443.

same, A 3304.

Paramour, *s.* (1) concubine, wench, D 454; *pl.* A 3756; lovers, paramours, T. ii. 236; *Paramour* (2), love-making, A 4372

Paraunter, perhaps, L. 362.

Paraventure, peradventure, perhaps, F 955.

Parcel, *s.* part, F 852; small part, 2. 107.

Parchemin, *s.* parchment, B 5. m. 4. 14.

Pardee, (F. *par Dieu*), a common oath, A 563, 3084; *Pardieux*, T. i. 107.

Pardoner, *s.* seller of indulgences, A 543, C 318.

Paragal, *adj.* fully equal, T. v. 840.

Paraments, *s.* *pl.* rich hangings or ornaments, (applied to a chamber), L. 1106, F 269. See **Paraments**.

Parentele, *s.* kinship, I 908.

Parfey, by my faith, in faith, HF. 938.

Parfit, *adj.* perfect, A 72, 422.

Parfitly, *adv.* perfectly, R. 771; wholly, B 2381.

Parfourne, *v.* perform, B 2402; *Parfourne*, *ger.* to fulfil, B 3137; *p.* *up.* complete, D 2261.

Parfourninge, *s.* performance, I 807.

Parishens, *pl.* parishioners, A 482.

Paritorie, *s.* pollitory, *Parietaria officinalis*, G 581.

Parlement, *s.* (1) deliberation, decision due to consultation, A 1320, (2) parliament, T. iv. 141; *p.* *of Brulles*, Parliament of Birds, I 1086.

Parodie, *s.* period, duration, T. v. 1548. (A curious confusion of *parodie* (so pronounced) with *period*.)

Pecok-arwes, *pl.* arrows with peacocks' feathers, A 104.

Pecunial, *adj.* pecuniary, D 1314.

Pees, *s.* peace, A 532, 1447; *in p.*, in silence, B 228.

Pees, peace! hush! be still! B 836.

Pekke, *s.* peck (quarter of a bushel), A 4010.

Pekke, *imp. s.* peck, pick, B 4157.

Pel, *s.* peel, small castle, HF. 1310. O.F. *pel*; from Lat. acc. *palum*.

Pelet, *s.* pellet, stone cannon-ball, HF. 1643.

Penaunt, *s.* a penitent, one who does penance, B 3154.

Pencel (1), *s.* pencil, brush, A 2049.

Pencel (2), *s.* small banner, sleeve worn as a token, T. v. 1043. Short for *penoncel*.

Pénible, *adj.* painstaking, B 3490; *Penible*, careful to please, E 714; *Penýble*, inured, D 1846.

Penitauncer, *s.* confessor who assigns a penance, I 1008.

Penitence, *s.* penance, I 101, 126.

Penne, *s.* pen, quill, L. 2357.

Penner, *s.* pen-case, E 1879.

Penoun, *s.* pennon, ensign or small flag borne at the end of a lance, A 978.

Pens; see **Peny**.

Peny, *s.* penny, R. 451; money, A 4119; *Penyes*, *pl.* pence, R. 189; *Pens*, *pl.* pence, C 376.

Per cas, by chance, L. 1967.

Per consequens, consequently, D 2192.

Peraventure, *adv.* perhaps, HF. 304; C 935.

Percen, *v.* pierce, B 2014; *pr. s.* pierces with his gaze, 5. 331.

Perche, *s.* perch (for birds to rest on), A 2204; wooden bar, R. 225; a horizontal rod, A. ii. 23. 44. Lat. *pertica*.

Percinge, *s.*; for *percinge* = to prevent any piercing, B 2052.

Perdurable, *adj.* everlasting, eternal, B 2609; *Perdurables*, *adj. pl.* everlasting, I 811.

Perdurabletee, *s.* immortality, B 2. p 7. 63, 103.

Pere, *s.* peer, equal, B 3244, F 678.

Peregryn, *adj.* peregrine, i.e. foreign, F 428.

Pere-jonette, *s.* a kind of early-ripe pear, A 3248.

Peres, *pl.* pears, R. 1375, E 2331.

Perfit, *adj.* complete, A. i. 18. 4.

Perfitly, *adv.* perfectly, A. pr. 21.

Perfourne, *ger.* to perform, B 2256; be equivalent to, A. ii. 10. 16.

Peril, *s.* B 2672; *in p.*, in danger, 4. 108; *upon my p.*, (I say it) at my peril, D 561.

Perisse, *v.* perish, I 254.

Perle, *s.* pearl, L. 221.

Perled, *pp.* fitted with pearl-like drops, A 3251.

Perrée, *s.* jewellery, precious stones, gems, B 3495, 3550.

Perryé, *s.* jewellery, A 2936; *Perrie*, HF. 1393.

Pers, *adj.* of Persian dye, light-blue, R. 67.

Pers, *s.* stuff of a sky-blue colour, A 439, 617.

Perséveraunce, *s.* endurance, T. i. 44; constancy, 3. 1007.

Persévere, *v.* continue, D 148; *pr. s.* lasts, C 497.

Perséveringe, *s.* perseverance, G 117.

Persly, *s.* parsley, A 4350.

Persône, *s.* person, figure, T. ii. 701; *Péroun*, parson, A 478.

Pert, *adj.* forward, frisky, A 3950. Short for *apert*.

Pertinacie, *s.* pertinaciousness, I 391.

Pertinent, *adj.* fitting, B 2204.

Pertourbe, *ger.* to perturb, T. iv. 561.

Perturbacioun, *s.* trouble, B 1. p 1. 98.

Perturbinge, *s.* perturbation, D 2254.

Pervenke, *s.* periwinkle, R. 903; *Pervinke*, R. 1432.

Pesen, *pl.* peas, L. 648.

Pesible, *adj.* calm, B 1. p 5. 3.

Pestilence, *s.* the (great) pestilence, A 442, C 679; curse, B 4600, D 1264.

Peter, *interj.* by St. Peter, B 1404, G 665.

Peyne, *s.* pain of torture. A 1133; T. i. 674; *in the p.*, under torture, T. iii. 1502; care, F 509; toil, G 1398; penalty, B 3041; endeavour, R. 765; penance, B 2939; *upon p.*, under a penalty, E 586.

Peyne, *v. refl.* take pains, endeavour, B 4495; put (myself) to trouble, HF. 246; *Peyne*, 1 *pr. s. refl.* take pains, C 330, 395; *Peyned hir*, *pt. s. refl.* took pains, A 139, E 976; *Peyned hem*, *pt. pl. refl.* R. 107.

Peynte, *v.* paint, C 12; colour highly, HF. 246; smear, L. 875; *do p.*, cause to be painted, 3. 259; *pt. s.* F 560; *Peynted*, *pp.* painted, L. 1029; *Peynt*, *pp.* R. 248.

Peyntour, *s.* painter, T. ii. 1041.

Peynture, *s.* painting, C 31.

Peyre, *s.* pair, A 2121; a set (of similar things), D 1741.

Peysible, *adj.* tranquil, B 3. m 9. 51. (L. *tranquilla*.)

- Peytrell**, *s.* poitrel, breast-piece of a horse's harness, properly, the breast-plate of a horse in armour D 504 *pl.* 1433. A F *peitrel*, Lat *pectoralis*.
- Phitonesses**, *pl.* pythonesses, witches, HF 1261.
- Physices**, *gen.* of physiks or natural philosophy, B 1189. Lat *physices* *gen.* of *physice*, natural philosophy (I propose this reading.)
- Pich**, *s.* pitch, A 373, 1854.
- Pietee**, *s.* pity, T iii. 1033. v. 1508.
- Pietous**, *adj.* piteous, sad, T iii. 1444, sorrowful, T v. 451; merciful, F 20.
- Pigges-nye** lit. pig's eye, a dear little thing, A 468.
- Pighte** *pl. s. refl.* pitched, fell, A 2689, *pt. s. suby.* should pierce, should stab, 1163 (but this is almost certainly an error for *prighte*, *pt. s. suby.* of *pricken*).
- Piked**, *pt. s.* stole, L. 2407.
- Pikerel**, *s.* a young pike fish, E 1410.
- Pilche**, *s.* a warm furred outer garment, 20. 4.
- Pile**, *ger.* to pilage, plunder, I 760, v. 106, despoil, D 106.
- Piled**, *pp.* deprived of hair very thin, A 627 bare, bald lit. peeled, A 4035.
- Pileer** *s.* pillar, HF 1431.
- Pilled**, *pp.* robbed, L. 1262.
- Pilours**, *pl.* robbers, pillagers, A 1007, 1020.
- Pilwe**, *s.* pillow, E 1004.
- Pilwe-beer**, *s.* pillow-case, A 604.
- Piment**, *s.* sweetened wine A 478.
- Pin**, *s.* pin, small peg, F 127, 316, fastening brooch, A 106, thin wire, A ii. 18. 8, Hangeth on a joly pin, is merry, E 1516.
- Pinche**, *v.* find fault (with), pick a hole in, A 406, Pinchest at *2 pr.* a blamest, 10. 57, *pp.* closely plate 1, A 151.
- Piper**, *s.* *as adj.* suitable for pipes or horns, s. 178.
- Pisemyre** *s.* pismire, ant, D 1825.
- Pistel**, *s.* epistle, E 1154, message, sentence, D 1021.
- Pit**, *pp.* put Northern, A 4088.
- Pitauce**, *s.* pittance, A 224.
- Pitee**, *s.* pity, 1. 68, Pite were, it would be a pity if, 3. 1266.
- Pith**, *s.* strength, R. 401, D 475.
- Pitous**, **Pitous**, *adj.* compassionate, A 41; merciful, C 220. pitiful, A 953, plaintive, R. 89, 40. mournful, R. 420. piteous, sad sorrowful, A 955, pitiable, B 3674, Pitousse, *fem.* full of compassion, L. 2582.
- Pitously**, *adv.* piteously B 102, pitably, B 472, sadly, A 1117.
- Place** *s.* place, A 624 man's residence (residence of a chief person in a small town or village, B 1910, D 174).
- Placebo**, vespers of the dead so called from the initial word of the antiphon to the first psalm of the office of the cxiv. 9 in the Vulgate version 117, a song of flattery, D 2075.
- Plages** *s.* *pl.* regions, B 543, quarters of the compass, A 1512.
- Plain** *adj.*, see **Playn**.
- Plane** *s.* plane-tree, A 2323.
- Planed**, *pt. s.* planed, made smooth D 1758.
- Plante** *s.* ship, cutting, D 701 piece of cut wood, R. 929.
- Plastres**, *s.* *pl.* plasters, F 636.
- Plat**, *adj.* flat, certain, A 1845. **Plara**, *dat.* flat (side of a sword), F 100.
- Plat**, *adv.* flat, B 1805. plainly B 100, fully, T ii. 570.
- Plate**, *s.* plate-armour 9. 49. staff and defence for a handker, B 205. the 'sight' on the 'rowle' A. 1. 112.
- Plated**, *pp.* covered with metal in plates, HF 1445.
- Platly**, *adv.* flatly plainly, T iii. 12, 22.
- Plaunte**, *s.* plant, F 1002.
- Plaunte**, *imp. s.* plant, T i. 904.
- Playen me**, *v.* *refl.* to amuse myself, R. 113.
- Playing**, *s.* sport, R. 112.
- Playn**, *adj.* smooth, even, R. 87, *s.* short and *pl.* in brief, plain terms, E 577. Plain, flat, B 222.
- Playn**, *s.* plain, B 24.
- Plade**, *ger.* to dispute, B 1561.
- Pleding** *s.* pleading, s. 115.
- Pledoures**, *pl.* pleadors, lawyers R. A.
- Plee** *s.* plea, s. 485. *pl.* spots s. 1.
- Plegges**, *s.* *pl.* pledges, B 2008.
- Pleinedest**, *s.* *pl. s.* didst complain, L. 1. p. 4. 108.
- Pleinte**, *s.* complaint lament R. 6.
- Pienere**, *adj.* plenure, full, L. 100.
- Plentes** *s.* plenure fullness, I 100, abundance R. 144.
- Plentevous**, *adj.* plentiful, A 144.
- Plenteuously**, *adv.* plentifully B. 72, 86.
- Plesaunce**, *s.* pleasure, C 11, D. A. delight, A 2400. pleasant thing, 71. pleasure, will, A 1571, kindness, 11. pleasing behaviour, F 22, pleasant, L. 1374, happiness, L. 1140, amuse, F 71, will, delight, B 419.

- Pleasant**, *adj.* pleasant, satisfactory, pleasing, A 138, 222.
Pleasen, *v.* please, A 610, F 707.
Plesinges, *adj. pl.* pleasing, B 711.
Pleasure, *s.* pleasure, G 126.
Plêto, *ger.* to plead, bring a law-suit, T. ii. 1468.
Plētinges, *pl.* law-suits, B 3. p 3. 67.
Play, *s.* play, sport, A 1125; dalliance, 4. 178; jesting, I 539; delusion, 3. 648; *pl.* games, T. v. 304; plays, D 358, funeral games, T. v. 1499.
Playe, *v.* amuse oneself, B 3524, 3666; *ger.* to play, be playful, be amused, A 772; to amuse (myself), B 3996; to amuse (ourselves), L. 1495; play (on an instrument), A 236; 1 *pr.* a jest, B 3153; 1 *pr. pl.* play, B 1423; *pr. pl.* F 920; *pl.* a played, rejoiced, T. i. 1013; was in play, 3. 875; Playd, *pp.* 3. 618.
Playinge, *s.* amusement, sport, A 1061.
Playinge, *adj.* playful, B 3. m 2. 27.
Pleyn (1), *adj.* full, A 2461; complete, A 315, 337.
Pleyn (2), *adj.* plain, clear, L. 328; honest, 5. 328; plain, i. e. open, A 987; as a plain (fact), A 1091; *pl.* smooth, 5. 180.
Pleyn (3), *adv.* full, T. v. 1818; entirely, A 327.
Pleyn (2), *adv.* plainly, A 790; openly, E 637.
Pleyno, *v.* complain, lament, B 1067; *refl.* 6. 30; *v.* to whinny (as a horse), 7. 157; *pl.* upon, cry out against, L. 2525; 1 *pr.* a make complaint, L. 2512; *pp.* said by way of complaint, L. 326 a.
Pleynning, *s.* complaining, lamenting, 3. 500.
Pleynly, *adv.* plainly, openly, (*or*, fully), A 1733.
Pleynte, *s.* plaint, complaint, 2. 47; Pl of Kynde, Complaint of Nature, 5. 316.
Plighte (1), *pl.* a plucked, drew, T. ii. 1120; pulled, B 15; *pp.* plucked, torn, D 700. The *infin.* would be *plückten*, variant of *plückten* or *plücken*.
Plighte (2), 1 *pr.* a plight, pledge, F 1537; *pl.* a L. 2460, *pp.* pledged, C 702.
Plomet, *s.* plummet, heavy weight, A. ii. 23. 42.
Plom-rewle, *s.* plummet-rule, A. ii. 38. 10.
Plough-harneya, *s.* harness for a plough, i. e. parts of a plough, as the share and coulter, A 3762.
Ploumes, *s. pl.* plums, R. 1373.
Ploungen, *ger.* to plunge, bathe, B 3. p 2. 48.
Floungy, *adj.* stormy, rainy, B 1. m 3. 9.
Flowman, *s.* ploughman, E 799.
Plukke, *v.* pluck, pull, T. iv. 1403.
Plye, *v.* ply, mould, E 1430; bend, E 1160.
Plyght, *pp.* plighted, T. iii. 782.
Plyt, *s.* plight, T. ii. 712, 1731; condition, B 2338; position, T. ii. 74; *Plyte*, *dat.* mishap, wretched condition, 5. 294. *plight*, 23. 19; state, G 952.
Plyte, *ger.* to fold, T. ii. 1204; *pl.* a turned backwards and forwards, T. ii. 697.
Poeplish, popular, T. iv. 1677.
Poesye, *s.* poetry, T. v. 1790.
Poinant, *adj.* poignant, I 130, 131.
Point, **Poynt**, *s.* point, A 114; position, I 921; *in point*, on the point of, about to, B 331, 910; *at point*, ready, T. iv. 1638; *in good p.*, in good case, A 200; *fro p. to p.*, from beginning to end, B 365; *p. for p.*, in every detail, E 577.
Point-davys; *at p.*, with great neatness, exactly, carefully, HF. 917; A 3689, F 560.
Pointel, *s.* style, i. e. stylus, writing implement, B 1. p 1. 3.
Poke, *s.* bag, A 3780, 4278.
Poked, *pl.* a incited, T. iii. 116; nudged, A 4169.
Pokets, *s. pl.* little bags, G 808.
Pokkes, *s. pl.* pocks, pustules, C 358.
Pol (1), *s.* pole, long stick; *Pole*, *dat.* L. 220.
Pol (2), *s.* pole (of the heavens), A. i. 14. 12.
Polax, *s.* pole-axe, L. 642.
Polcat, *s.* polecat, C 855.
Policye, *s.* public business, C 600.
Pollax, *s.* pole-axe, A 2544.
Polut, *pp.* polluted, B 1. p 4. 281.
Polyve, *s.* pulley, F 184.
Pomel, *s.* round part, top, A 2689.
Pomely, *adj.* marked with round spots like an apple, dappled, A 616; *Pomely-gris*, dapple-gray, G 539.
Pongarnettes, *s. pl.* pomegranates, R. 1356.
Pompe, *s.* pomp, A 515.
Pool, *s.* pole (of the heavens), A. i. 18. 21.
Pope-Holy, i. e. Hypocrisy, R. 415.
Popelote, *s.* poppet, darling, A 3254.
Popet, *s.* puppet, doll; spoken ironically, and really applied to a corpulent person, B 1891.
Popinjay, *s.* popinjay, R. 913.
Poplar, *s.* poplar-tree, A 2921; (collectively) poplar-trees, R. 1345.
Popped, *pl.* a *refl.* tricked herself out, R. 1019.
Popper, *s.* small dagger, A 3991.

- Poraille**, *s.* poor people, A 247.
Porche, *s.* porch, B 5, m 4 1.
Pore, *adj.* poor, L 488.
Porisme, *s.* corollary, B 3 p 10. 166.
Porphurie, *s.* a slab of porphyry used as a mortar, G 775.
Port, *s.* port, carriage, behaviour A 97, bearing, mien, L 2453.
Port, *s.* haven, T 1 526, 660.
Portatif, *adj.* portable, 353.
Porthors, *s.* portesse breviary B 1321.
 From *porter* to carry, *hors*, abroad.
Portours, *pl.* porters, T v 1130.
Portreiture, *s.* drawing, picture, R 827.
 set of drawings A 1178, picturing, HF 13.
Portreys, *v.* portreys, depict 1 81.
 Portrayed, *pp.* painted in fresco, R 130, full of pictures, R 1077.
Portreying, *s.* a picture, A 1038.
Pose, *s.* a cold in the head, A 4152, H 62.
 A 8 *go-pose*.
Pose *1 pr.* *s.* put the case, will suppose, A 1173.
Positif, *adj.* positive, fixed, A 1107.
Positionn, *s.* supposition, hypothesis, B 5 p 4 48.
Possessioners, *s.* *pl.* men who are endowed D 1722.
Possessioun, *s.* great possessions, wealth F 88 endowments, D 1620.
Posseth *pr.* *s.* posseth toseth, I 2420.
Post, *s.* support, A 214, pillar, A 400.
Postum, *s.* imposthume, abscess B 3 p 4 14.
Potage, *s.* broth, B 3623 C 108.
Poterte, *s.* crutch, R 308, staff, D 1770.
Potestat, *s.* potestate, D 2017.
Pothecarie, *s.* apothecary C 832.
Pouche, *s.* pocket, A 1031 *pl.* money-bags, A 308.
Poudre, *s.* dust, HF 536, powder, G 700, gunpowder, HF 1044.
Poudred, *pp.* besprinkled, R 1430.
Poudre marchaunt, *s.* the name of a kind of spice, A 381.
Pounage, *s.* pannage, swine's food, 9 7.
Pourd, *pl.* pounds A 454.
Poune, *s.* pawn at chess, 1 661.
Pounsoned *pp.* *as.* *adj.* stamped pierced, 1 421.
Pounsoninge, *s.* punching of holes in garments, I 418.
Pouped, *pt.* *pl.* blew hard puffed, B 1580, *pp.* blown H 90.
Poure, *ger.* to pore, look closely, A 185, to pore over it, R 164, *1 pr.* *pl.* we pore, gaze steadily, G 670.
Poured, *pp.* poured, R 1148.
Pouring, *s.* pouring in T 111 1290.
Pous, *s.* pulse, T 111 1114.
Pouster, *s.* power, B 4 p 5 11.
Povertee, *s.* poverty, 1 410, Poverty *s.* poverty T 11 152, Poverty *poverty*, R 450 Poverty, C 43.
Povre, *adj.* poor R 416, A 225.
Povre, *adj.* *as.* *s.* poor, hence poverty.
Povre, *adv.* poorly, E 1042.
Povreliche, *adj.* poorly in poverty E 1055.
Povrely, *adv.* in poor array A 141.
Povrest, *adj.* superl. poorest, C 44 E 1.
Poynaunt, *adj.* pungent A 10, B 400.
Poynt, *s.* sharp point, 7 201, 1 17, 2 201, 1 101 point, list of it part 8, 1136, a stop, G 1480, *up.* *p.* *in* the point, T 11 1153, *in* *p.* *in* *the* point, is ready 1 48, *from* *p.* *up* *to* every point 8 401, *to* *the* *p.* *to* *the* point, 5 372, *at* *p.* *deep* *exact* *at* *all* points, R 830, *to* *perfection* *exact* *at* *all* points, R 1315 *pl.* tags, A 3322.
Poynte, *ger.* to describe, T 11 197, *pl.* stab, R 1058, *pp.* pointed, R 111.
Poyntel, *s.* style for writing D 174.
Practisour, *s.* practitioner, A 211.
Praktike, *s.* practice, D 18.
Praye, *s.* prey, 1 64.
Praye *pr.* *pl.* petition, make sin, 1 10.
Praying, *s.* request, prayer, R 1481.
Preamble, *s.* D 831.
Preambulacioun, *s.* preambuling D 10.
Precedent, *adj.* preceding, A 11 111.
Preche, *v.* preach, A 451, 722 Preche, thou prechest D 306.
Prechour, *s.* preacher D 102.
Preciousnesse, *s.* costliness, I 440.
Predestinee, *s.* predestination T 11 106.
Predicacioun, *s.* preaching sermon B 1179.
Preef, *s.* proof, assertion, D 14, 100, porience, L 528 a test, proof G 100, the test, H 75.
Press, *s.* press, crowd, B 305, 240 the throng of courtiers, 11 4, press of battle 1 33, *in* *p.* *in* the crowd 1 10.
Preesseth, *pr.* *s.* throngs, A 1081.
Prefectes, *gen.* prefects G 400, *let.* *an* officer of the prefect's officers.
Preferre *pr.* *s.* subj. proceed, take precedence of, D 60.
Preignant, *pres.* *pt.* plain, common T 11 1170.
Preisen, *ger.* to praise, worthy of being praised R 70, *v.* appraise, estimate R 1115 prize, esteem, R 1091.

- Preiseres**, *s. pl.* praisers, B 2367.
Preisinge, *s.* honour, glory, I 949.
Prelât, *s.* prelate, A 204.
Premissas, *pl.* statements laid down, B 3. p 10. 121.
Prenostik, *s.* prognostic, prognostication, 10. 54.
Preute, *s.* print, D 604.
Preuten, *ger.* to imprint, T. ii. 900.
Préntis, *s.* apprentice, A 4365.
Prentishood, *s.* apprenticeship, A 4400.
Prescience, *s.* foreknowledge, A 1313.
Press, *ger.* to press forward, T. I. 446; *v.* hasten, 2. 19.
Presénee, *s.* 1. 19; *in pr.*, in a large assembly, E 1207.
Present, *adv.* immediately, 5. 424.
Presentario, *adj.* over-present, B 5. p 6. 78.
Presented, *pp.* brought, L. 1297.
Presenting, *s.* offering, L. 1135.
Presently, *adv.* at the present moment, B 5. p 6. 123.
President, *s.* the one who presided in parliament, T. iv. 214.
Presoun, *s.* prison, T. iii. 381.
Press, *s.* throng, T. i. 173; **Presse**, *dat.* instrument exercising pressure, A 81; mould, A 263; *on presse*, under a press, in a suppressed state, down, T. i. 559; press, a cupboard with shelves (for linen, &c.), A 3212.
Prest, *s.* priest, B 1166.
Prest, *adj.* ready, prepared, prompt, 5. 207, *pl.* prompt, T. iv. 601.
Pretende, *v.* attempt to reach, seek after, T. iv. 922.
Preterit, *s.* past time, B 5. p 6. 48.
Pretorie, *s.* the Roman imperial body-guard, the Pretorian cohort, B 1. p 4. 94.
Prove, *s.* proof, B 4173; experimental proof, A. ii. 23 *rubric*; *at p.*, (when it comes to the proof, T. iii. 1002; *at p.*, in the proof, T. iv. 1639; *armes prove*, proof of fighting power, T. i. 470.
Prove, *v.* prove, C 169; hide the test, G 645; succeed when tested, G 1212; **Proved**, *pp.* proved to be so, T. i. 239; tested, G 1336; approved, E 28; exemplified, E 826; shewn, F 481.
Prevete, *s.* secret place, recess, T. iv. 1111.
Prevey, *adj.* secret, B 4. p 3. 122.
Providence, *s.* seeing beforehand, B 5. p 6. 131.
Prevy, *adj.* privy, unobserved, 3. 382; not confidential, HF. 285.
Preye, *ger.* to beseech, T. ii. 1369; to pray, 2. 20; **Preyde**, *pt.* *s.* B 391; **Preyeden**, *pt.* *pl.* D 895; **Preyed**, *pp.* E 773.
Preys, *s.* praise, B 3837.
Pricasour, *s.* a hard rider, A 189.
Prighte, *pt.* *s.* pricked, F 418 (*inferior* MSS. have *pighte*). No doubt, the reading *pighte* in 1. 163 should also be *prighte*. See **Priken**.
Priken, *v.* incite, urge, T. iv. 633; **Prik**, *1 pr.* *s.* spur, rouse, 5. 389; **Priketh**, *pr.* *s.* excites, A 11, 1043; spurs, D 656; pricks, aches, D 1594; **Prighte**, *pt.* *s.* F 418, see above; **Priked**, *pt.* *s.* spurred, B 1964.
Priking, *s.* hard riding, A 191, A 2599.
Prikke, *s.* point, HF. 907; sting, I 468; a small mark, a peg, A. ii. 42. 4; a dot, A. ii. 5. 20; piercing stroke, A 2006, point, critical condition, B 119.
Principala, *adj.* *pl.* cardinal, A. ii. 31. 17.
Principio, *in*, in the beginning (St. John, i. 1), A 254.
Pris, *s.* prize, A 2241.
Privee, *adj.* secret, A 3295; private, I 102; intimate, E. 600, closely attendant, E 192; *privee man*, private individual, B 2. p 3. 77.
Privee, *adv.* secretly, F 531; **Privee** and **apert**, secretly and openly, D 1114; *pr. seap.*, neither secretly nor openly, D 1136.
Privee, *s.* privy, C 527, E 1954.
Prively, *adv.* secretly, A 652; unperceived, R. 784.
Privete, *s.* privacy, R. 1294; secrecy, B 548; secrets, secret, D 531, 542. 1037; private affairs, A 1411; private apartment, A 4334; *privy parts*, B 3905.
Privy, *adj.* secret, L. 1267, 1780.
Proces, *s.* process, B 2065; proceeding, F 1345; process of time, F 829; argument, B 3. p 10. 62; matter, T. ii. 485; L. 1914; story, HF. 251; occurrence of events, B 3511; *dal.* course (of time, 3. 1331.
Procoutour, *used for* Procurator, proctor, D 1596.
Proeve, *s.* proof, B 5. p 4. 83.
Proeve, *1 pr.* *s.* approve, B 5. p 3. 28, *pr.* *s.* shews, B 2. m 1. 17.
Professionn, *s.* profession of religion, D 1925; oath of profession (as a monk), B 1345.
Proferastow, *doest thou offer*, T. iii. 1461.
Profre, *s.* offer, L. 2079.
Proheme, *s.* proem, prologue, E 43.
Prolaciouna, *s.* *pl.* utterances, B 2. p 1. 92.
Prolle, *s.* *pr.* *pl.* prowl about, search widely, G 1412.

- Pronounced**, *pp.* announced, T. iv. 213.
Proporcionables, *adj. pl.* proportional, B 3. m. 9. 20.
Proporcioned, *pp.* made in proportion, F 192.
Proporcionels, *s. pl.* proportional parts, F 1278.
Propre, *adj.* own, T. iv. 83; especial, B 2175; peculiar, D 103; well-grown, A 3972; well-made, A 3345, comely, A 4368; handsome, C 309. **Propres**, *pl.* own, B 1. m. 6. 20; *of propre kinde*, by their own natural bent, F 610.
Proprely, *adv.* fitly, A 1549; literally, I 285, naturally, D 1191; appropriately, A 729.
Propretez, *s.* peculiarity, 10. 69; characteristic, B 2364; peculiar possession, T. iv. 392.
Prose, *v.* write in prose, 16. 41.
Prospectyves, *s. pl.* perspective-glasses, lenses, F 234. Chancer here makes the usual distinction between reflecting mirrors and refracting lenses.
Prospre, *adj.* prosperous; *prospre fortunes*, well-being, B 1. p. 4. 62.
Protestacioun, *s.* protest, A 3137.
Prove, *v.* test, A. ii. 23, *rubric*; **Provethe**, *pr. s.* proves, F 455.
Proverbed, *pp.* said in proverbs, T. iii. 293.
Provost, *s.* prefect, B 1. p. 4. 64; chief magistrate, B 1806.
Provostrie, *s.* praetorship, B 3. p. 4. 90.
Prow, *s.* profit, advantage, B 1598, 4140, C 300, G 609.
Prowesse, *s.* prowess, T. i. 438; excellence, D 1129; profit, B 4. p. 3. 71.
Proyneth, *pr. s.* prunes, i.e. trims, makes himself neat, E 2011. O.F. *proigner*.
Prydeless, *adj.* without pride, 6. 29.
Prye, *ger.* to pry, peer, T. ii. 404, to gaze, A 4458, *v.* spy, T. ii. 1710.
Pryme, *s.* prime (of day), usually 9 A.M., A 2189, 2576, 3554; *fully pr.*, the end of the first period of the day (from 6 A.M. to 9 A.M.), B 2015; *pr. large*, past 9 o'clock, F 260; *passed pr.*, past 9 o'clock, D 1476, *half way pryme*, half way between 6 and 9 A.M., half-past seven, A 3006.
Pryme face, *s.* the first glance, T. iii. 919.
Prymerole, *s.* primrose, A 3208.
Prys, *s.* price, value, R. 1134; worth, excellence, F 911; praise, E 1036; esteem, F 934, glory, L. 2534; reputation, D 1152, renown, A 67, 237; prize, I 255.
Fryse, *ger.* to esteem, to be esteemed, R. 687.
Pryved, *pp.* deprived, exiled, 1. 146.
Pryvee, *adj.* secret, A 1400.
Puffen, *ger.* to blow hard, HF. 1866.
Pulle, *s.* a bout at wrestling, a throw, 5. 164.
Pulle, *v.* pluck, T. i. 210; to draw, T. ii. 657, *pulle a finche*, pluck a finch, cheat a novice, A 652, *a pulled hen*, a plucked hen, A 177.
Pultrye, *s.* poultry, A 598.
Pupliashen, *pr. pl.* *repl.* are propagated, B 3. p. 11. 135.
Purchacen, *ger.* to procure, acquire, I 742, 1066; gain, I 1080; win, 21. 19; buy, A 608; *pr. pl.* promote, B 2870; *imp. s. 3 p.* may (He) provide, B 873; **Purchace**, *imp. pl.* provide (for yourself), T. ii. 1125.
Purchas, *s.* proceeds, gifts acquired, A 256, gain, D 1451, 1530.
Purchasing, *s.* conveyancing, A 320; acquisition of property, D 1449.
Purchasour, *s.* conveyancer, A 318.
Pure, *adj.* very (lit. pure), A 1279; utter, 3. 1209; *the p. deith*, death itself, 3. 583.
Pure, *adv.* purely, 3. 1210.
Pured, *pp. as adj.* pure, F 1560; very fine, D 143.
Purfiled, *pp.* ornamented at the edge, trimmed, A 193.
Purgacioun, *s.* discharge, D 120.
Purgen, *ger.* to purge, B 4143; *pl. s.* expiated, B 4. m. 7. 4 (Lat. *placuit*); *pp.* cleansed (by baptism), G 181.
Purpos, *s.* purpose, R. 1140; design, A 1684, *to purpos*, to the subject, 5. 26: *it cam him to p.*, he purposed, F 606.
Purposen, *v.* purpose, I 87; *pr. pl.* propose, T. iv. 1350.
Purple, *adj.* purple, T. iv. 869.
Purple, *s.* purple, R. 1071; purple raiment, I 933.
Pura, *s.* purse, A 656.
Pursevauntes, *s. pl.* pursuivants, HF. 1321.
Pursuit, *s.* continuance, perseverance, T. ii. 959; continuance in pursuit, T. ii. 1744; appeal to prosecute, D 890.
Purtreye, *v.* draw, A 96; *pl. s.* E 1600.
Purtreyour, *s.* draughtsman, A 1899.
Purveyable, *adj.* with provident care, B 3. m. 2. 5.
Purveyaunce, *s.* providence, A 1252, 1665; foresight, D 566, 570; equipment, B 247, provision, A 3566, F 914; pre-arrangement, T. iii. 511, *unto his p.*, to provide himself with necessaries, L. 1561.
Parveyen, *v.* provide, B 2532; *pr. s.* fore-

sees, T. iv. 1066; *p. of*, provided with, D 591.

Purveyinge, *s.* providence, T. iv. 986.

Put, *s.* pit, T. iv. 1540.

Puterie, *s.* prostitution, I 886.

Putours, *s.* pl. pimps, procurers, I 886.

Putten, *v.* put, lay, 7. 344; *v.* suppose, B 2667; Put, *pr.* *s.* puts, I 142; Put him, puts himself, L 652; Putte, *pt.* *s.* B 1630; set, L 675; *p.* up, put away, *s.* 54.

Pye, *s.* magpie, A 3950, B 1399.

Pye, *s.* pie, pasty, A 384.

Pyk, *s.* pike (fish), 12. 17.

Pyke, *v.* (1) peep, T. iii. 60; *ger.* (2) to pick at, T. ii. 1274; *pr.* *s.* (3) makes (himself) tidy or smooth, R 2011.

Pykepura, *s.* pick-purse, A 1998.

Pyled, *pp.* peeled, bare, bald, A 4306.

Pyn, the pin which passes through the central hole in the Astrolabe and its plates, A. i. 14. t.

Pyn, *s.* pine-tree, R 1379.

Pyne, *s.* pain, torment, T. v. 6; hurt, 5. 335; toil, HF. 147; place of torment, HF. 1512; suffering, A 1324, 2382; woe, torment, B 3420; the passion, B 2126. A.S. *pin*.

Pyne, *ger.* to torture, A 1746; *pr.* *s.* pines away, 7. 205; grieves, bemoans, I 85; *pp.* examined by torture, B 4249.

Pype, *s.* pipe, musical instrument, B 2005; *pl.* pipes, tubes, A 2752.

Pypen, *v.* pipe, whistle, A 1838; play on the bag-pipe, A 3927; Pype, make a piping noise, T. v. 1433; play upon a pipe, A 3876; *pp.* faintly uttered, HF. 785; *pres pt* piping (hot), hissing, A 3379.

Pyrie, *s.* pear-tree, E 2217, 2325. A.S. *pyrige*.

Q

Quaad, *adj.* evil (Flemish), A 4357; Quad, *bad*, B 1628. Du. *kwad*.

Quaille, *s.* quail, E 1206.

Quake, *v.* tremble, shiver, R 462; quake, A 2614; shake, T. iii. 542; Quook, *pt.* *s.* quaked, A 1576, 1762; Quaked, *pp.* B 2841; Quaketh, *imp.* *pl.* quake, fear, T. ii. 202.

Quaking, *s.* fear, 7. 214.

Quakke, *s.* a state of hoarseness, A 4152.

Qualm, *s.* pestilence, A 2014; evil, plague, R 157; foreboding of death, T. v. 382.

Quappe, *v.* heave, toss (lit. shake, palpitate), L 1767; beat repeatedly, L 865; palpitate, T. iii. 57.

Quarter-night, the time when a fourth part of the night is gone, 9 P. M., A 3516.

Quayles, *gen. pl.* quails, 5. 339.

Queinte, *adj.* curious, B 1426.

Quak! *dat.* quack! 5. 499, 594.

Qualle, *v.* kill, C 854; *pr.* *pl.* strike, T. iv. 46.

Queme, *v.* please, T. 695; *pr.* *pl.* subserve, T. ii. 803.

Quencho, *v.* put a stop to, T. iii. 846; be quenched, I 341; Queynste, *pt.* *s.* was quenched, A 2334, 2337; Queynt, *pp.* extinguished, A 2321, 2326.

Quene, *s.* queen, R 1266.

Querele, *s.* quarrel, I 618; *pl.* complaints, B 3. p 3. 67.

Quern, *s.* hand-mill, 9. 6; *dat.* B 3264.

Questmongeres, *s.* *pl.* questmen, jury-men, I 797.

Questio, *quid furis*, the question is, how stands the law, A 647.

Questioun, *s.* dispute, A 2514; problem, D 2223.

Queynt, *adj.* strange, 3. 1330; curious, dainty, R 65; adorned, R 1435; well-devised, HF. 228; neat, R 98; sly, A 3275; curiously contrived, HF. 126; F 234; hard to understand, 3. 531; graceful, R 610.

Queynt, *adv.* artfully, HF. 245.

Queynt, *s.* pendulum, A 3276, D 332, 444.

Queynteliche, *adv.* curiously, cunningly, HF. 1923; daintily, R 569; strangely, R 783.

Queyntise, *s.* finery, I 932; art, I 733; ornament, R 840.

Qui cum patre, D 1734, I 1092. The formula used at the end of a sermon.

Qui la, who's there? B 1404.

Quik, *adj.* alive, F 1336; lively, A 306; ready, I 658.

Quiken, *v.* quicken, revive, T. i. 443; *ger.* to grow, T. i. 295; to make alive, quicken, G 481; *ger.* to take life, burst forth, HF. 2078; *pt.* *s.* burst into flame, A 2335; *pp.* endowed with life, F 1090.

Quikkest, *adj.* *superl.* liveliest, busiest, F 1522.

Quiknesse, *s.* life, 2. 26.

Quinible, *s.* shrill treble, A 3222.

Quirbolly, *s.* boiled leather, B 2065.

Quishin, *s.* cushion, T. ii. 1229.

Quistroun, *s.* scullion, kitchen-drudge, R 886. O.F. *coctron*.

Quit, -to; see Quyte.

Quitly, *adv.* freely, wholly, A 1792.

Quod, *pt.* *s.* said, A 1224.

Quoniam, *pendulum*, D 608.

Quook, *pt.* *s.* of Quake.

Quyte, *v.* requite, reward, repay, recompense, give in return, R. 1542; S. 112; 10. 75, HF 670; free, ransom, A 1032; *ger.* to remove, free, 7 263; *quyte with*, to requyte with, A 3119; *hir cost for to quyte*, to pay for her expenses, B 3504, *quyte hir whyle*, repay her tune, i. e. her trouble, B 584, *pt. s.* repaid, R. 1520; *pt. pl.* released, T. iv. 205, Quit, *pp.* rewarded, requited, HF. 1614, set free, G 66; discharged, quit, F 1758; *as adj.* free, F 1534.

R.

Raa, *s.* roe (Northern), A 4086.
Raby, Rabbi, D 2187.
Rad, -de, see **Reda**.
Radevore, *s.* piece of tapestry, L. 2352.
 From F. *ras de Vore*, serge from La Vaur.
Raffles, *s. pl.* raffles, I 793.
Raft, -e; see **Beve**.
Rage, *s.* passion, R. 1613; craving, R. 1657; madness, 4. 751; L. 509, violent grief, F 836; violent rush, fierce blast, A 1985.
Rage, *v.* romp, toy wantonly, A 257, 3273, 3958.
Ragerye, *s.* wantonness, E 1847; passion, D 455.
Raked, *pp.* raked, B 3323. Literally, the sentence is 'Amongst hot coals he hath raked himself'; the sense is, of course, 'he hath raked hot coals around himself.'
Rakel, *adj.* rash, T. i. 1067; hasty, T. iii. 1337.
Rakelnesse, *s.* rashness, H 283.
Rake-stele, *s.* handle of a rake, D 949.
 See **Stele**.
Raket, *s.* the game of rackets, T. iv. 460.
Rakle, *v.* behave rashly, T. iii. 1642.
Ram, *s.* ram, L. 1427; (as prize at a wrestling-match), A 548; Aries, the first sign in the zodiac, A 8.
Rammish, *adj.* ramlike, strong-scented, G 887.
Rampeth, *pr. s.* (lit. ramps, romps, rears, but here rages, acts with violence, B 3094. We should now say—'She flies in my face.'
Rancour, *s.* ill-feeling, ill-will, malice, R. 1261.
Ransaked, *pt. s.* ransacked, came searching out, 4. 28.
Rape, *s.* haste, 8. 7. Icol *hrop*.
Rape, *v.*, in phrase *rape and renne*, corrupted from an older phrase *repen and rinen* (A. S. *hrepian and hrinan*), i. e.

handle and touch, clutch and seize, G 1422.
Rascaille, *s.* mob, T. v. 1853.
Rated, *pp.* reproved, scolded, A 3461.
 Short for *arated*, variant of *aretied*; see **Arette**.
Ratha, *adv.* soon, HF. 2139, early, A 1768.
Rather, *adj. comp.* former, T. iii. 1337.
Rather, *adv.* sooner, 3. 562; more willingly, A 487; *the r.*, the sooner, 2. 82.
Raughte; see **Reche**.
Raunson, *s.* ransom, A 1004.
Have, 2 *pr. pl.* are mad, T. ii. 116.
Raven, *s.* the constellation Corvus, HF. 1004.
Ravines, *s. pl.* rapines, thefts, I 791.
Ravinour, *s.* plunderer, B 4. p. 2. 117.
Raviashe, *v.* snatch away, B 2. m. 7. 32.
 go *r.*, go and ravish, T. iv. 530, *pp.* rapt, E 1790, overjoyed, F 547, *part. pres.* snatching away, B 4. m. 6. 19.
Ravishing, *adj.* swift, violent, B 1. m. 4; enchanting, 5. 198, destroying, B 1. m. 5. 60 (Lat. *rapidos*).
Ravyne, *s.* ravening, greediness, 5. 350.
 ravin, prey, 5. 321; Ravines, thefts, I 793. O.F. *ravine*, L. *rapina*.
Ravysedest, 2 *p. s. pt.* didst draw (down), B 1659.
Rayed, *pp.* striped, 3. 252.
Réal, *adj.* royal, regal, T. iii. 1534; L. 212, 284, 1605.
Réaltee, *s.* royalty, sovereign power, 10. 60.
Réaume, *s.* realm, kingdom, L. 2091.
Rebekke, *s.* old woman, dame, D 1573.
Rebel, *adj.* rebellious, A 833, 3046.
Rebelling, *s.* rebellion, A 2450.
Rebounde, *v.* return, T. iv. 1606.
Rebuked, *pp.* snubbed, I 444.
Recche, 1. *v.* reck, care, heed, 5. 593; *as sought to r.*, no matter for, T. ii. 434; *pr. s.* rocks, cares, A 2397; *Recche* of it, care for it, *pr. pl.* F 71, *it recche*, *pr. s.* *subj.* may care for it, T. iv. 640, *Roghte*, *pt. s.* recked, cared, regarded, 2. 887. *impers.* he cared, L. 605; *Roughste*, *pt. s.* recked, cared, T. i. 496.
Recche (2), *pr. s. subj.* interpret, expound, B 4086.
Reccheless, *adj.* careless, reckless, R. 340, regardless, HF. 668.
Recchelesnesse, *s.* recklessness, I 111, 611.
Receit, *s.* receipt, i. e. recipe for making a mixture, G 1153.
Rechased, *pp.* headed back, 3. 379.
Reche, *v.* reach, give, hand over, 3. 74;

- Naughte, *pt. a.* reached, A 3696; reached up to, A 2915; reached (out, or forward), A 136; proceeded, T. ii. 446; Reights, *pt. a.* reached, touched, HF. 1374.
 Reclaiming, *a.* enticement, L. 1371.
 Reclayme, *v.* reclaim (as a hawk by a lure), i. e. check, H 73.
 Recomaunde, *v.* recommend, T. ii. 1070.
 Recomende, *ger.* to commit, G 544.
 Recomforte, *ger.* to comfort again, T. ii. 1672.
 Recompensacioun, *a.* recompense, HF. 665.
 Reconciled, *pp.* re-consecrated, I 963.
 Reconforte, *v.* comfort again, A 2852, B 2168.
 Record, *a.* report, D 2049; testimony, 3. 934.
 Recorde, *v.* witness, bear in mind, A 1745; remember, T. v. 445; (to) record, recording, 5. 609; Records, *1 pr. a.* bring (it) to your remembrance, A 829.
 Recours, *a.* recourse, B 2632; resort, T. ii. 1252; *not have my r.*, will return, F 75, *pl.* orbits, B 1. m. 2. 14.
 Recovere, *v.* regain, T. iv. 406.
 Recoverer, *a.* recovery, 22. 3. O. F. *recouier, recouier.*
 Reddour, *a.* violence, vehemence, m. 13.
 Rede, *v.* read, A 709; advise, counsel, L. 2217; interpret, 3. 279; *Red,* *pr. a.* advises, T. ii. 413; Redoth, *pr. a.* advises, T. iv. 573; Redde, *pt. a.* read, D 714, 721; interpreted, 3. 281; Redde, *pt. a.* read, T. ii. 1085; D 791, advised, 5. 579; Red, *pp.* read, 3. 224; Rad, *pp.* read, B 4311.
 Rede, *dat.* counsel, T. iv. 679; *see* Reed.
 Rede, *adj.* red; *see* Reed.
 Rede, *adj.* made of reed; referring to a musical instrument in which the sound was produced by the vibration of a reed, HF. 1221.
 Rede, *a.* red (i. e. gold), T. iii. 1384; the blood, B 356; red wine, C 526, 562.
 Redeless, *adj.* without counsel; not knowing which way to turn, 2. 27.
 Redely, *adv.* soon, HF. 1392; readily, truly, HF. 1127.
 Redoute, *v.* fear, B 1. p. 3. 21.
 Redoutinge, *a.* reverence, A 2050.
 Redresseth, *pr. a.* amends, I 1039; *pr. pl.* *refl.* erect (themselves) again, rise again, T. ii. 969; Redressed, *pt. a.* reasserted, vindicated, F. 1436; Redresse, *imp. a.* reform, 1. 129, Redressed, *pp.* roused, B 4. p. 2. 139.
 Reducen, *v.* sum up, B 3. p. 8. 61.
 Redy, *adj.* ready, A 21, 352; dressed, F 387; at hand, 2. 104.
 Reed, *a.* counsel, advice, plan, A 1216, 3527; profit, help, remedy, 3. 203, counsel, adviser, A 665; *I can no r.*, I know not what to do, 3. 1187; *without reed*, helpless, 3. 587; *to rede*, for a counsel; *best to rede*, best for a counsel, best to do, T. iv. 679 (*not a verb*).
 Reed, *adj.* red, A 153; (of the complexion), 3. 470; Rede, *adj. def.* red, A 957; *indef. (rare)*, L. 2589; Rede, *pl.* 1. 89.
 Reed, *a.* redness, L. 533.
 Reed, *imp. a.* read, H 344.
 Rednesse, *a.* redness, G 1097.
 Rees, *a.* great haste, T. iv. 350.
 Refect, *pp.* restored, B 4. p. 6. 414.
 Refere, *v.* return, T. i. 266; Referred, *pp.* brought back, B 3. p. 10. 180.
 Refiguringe, *pres. pl.* reproducing, T. v. 473.
 Refreynge, *a.* refrain, burden, R. 740.
 Refreyden, *v.* grow cold, T. v. 507, Refreyd, cooled down, 12. 21.
 Refreyn, *a.* refrain, T. ii. 1571.
 Refreyne, *v.* bridle, curb, I 385.
 Refreshinge, *a.* renewing, I 78.
 Rest, *-e*; *see* Rave.
 Refus, *pp. as adj.* refused, rejected, T. i. 570.
 Refut, *a.* place of refuge, refuge, 1. 14; safety, 1. 33.
 Regale, *pl.* royal attributes, L. 2128.
 Regalye, *a.* rule, authority, 2. 65.
 Regard; *to the r. of*, in comparison with, B 2. p. 7. 126; *at r. of*, 5. 58.
 Registre, *a.* narrative, A 2812.
 Regne, *a.* kingdom, dominion, realm, A 866; dominion, rule, A 1624.
 Regnen, *pr. pl.* reign, 4. 50.
 Reherce, *v.* rehearse, repeat with exactitude, A 712; *ger.* to enumerate, I 230, recount, B 89.
 Rehersaile, *a.* enumeration, G 832.
 Rehersing, *a.* rehearsal, A 1650, recital, L. 1185.
 Reights, *pt. a.* reached, touched, HF. 1174. *Pl. t. of recte.*
 Reines, *a. pl.* rain-storms, HF. 967.
 Rejoye, *v.* rejoice, T. v. 305.
 Rejoyse, *ger.* to make rejoice, 1. 101; feel glad, T. v. 1165.
 Reke, *ger.* to reckon, A 401.
 Rekening, *a.* reckoning, account, 3. 699, A 601.
 Rekeoth, *pr. a.* reeks, smokes, L. 2612.
 Rekever, *1 pr. a.* (for future), (I) shall retrieve, do away, HF. 354.

- Bekke**, *i pr. a. care*, C 403, E 1090; *pr. a. impera. (it) rocks (him), he cares*, L. 365; *you r., you rock*, 7. 303; *what r. me, what do I care*, D 53.
- Bekne**, *v. reckon (also i pr. a.)*, A 1933.
- Relayee**, *a. pl. fresh sets of hounds, reserve packs*, 3. 362.
- Reless**, *a. release*, 1. 3; *ceasing; out of relees, without ceasing*, G 46.
- Relente**, *v. melt*, G 1278.
- Relesedest**, *a. pt. a. forgavest*, I 309; *Relesed, pt. a. forgave*, B 3467.
- Relesing**, *a. remission*, I 1036.
- Relève**, *ger. to raise up, relieve*, T v 1043; *pp. restored*, I 945; *Reloved, pp. revived*, L. 128; *recompensed*, A 418a; *made rich again*, G 872.
- Relevinge**, *a. remedy*, I 804.
- Religioun**, *a. religion*, A 477; *state of religion, life of a nun*, R. 429; *a religious order*, B 3134; *the religious orders*, B 3144.
- Religious**, *adj. belonging to a religious order*, B 3150; *devoted to a religious order*, T. ii. 759; *as v., a monk or nun*, I 891.
- Relik**, *a. relic*, L. 321.
- Reme**, *a. realm*, B 1306.
- Remede**, *a. remedy*, T. i. 661.
- Remedies**, *pl. (Oval's) Remedia Amoris*, 3. 568.
- Remembre**, *v. remember*, I 135; *pr. pl. remind*, F 1243; *pr. a. recurs to the mind*, 4. 150; *Remembringe him, calling to remembrance*, T. ii. 72.
- Remenant**, *a. remainder, rest*, A 888.
- Remove**, *v. remove*, T. i. 691.
- Remorde**, *pr. a. subj. cause (you) remorse*, T. iv. 1491; *pr. a. vexes, plagues, troubles*, B 4. p 6. 304.
- Remors**, *a. remorse*, T. i. 354.
- Remounted**, *pp. comforted*, B 3. p 1. 9.
- Remuable** (1), *adj. changeable, variable*, T. iv. 1682.
- Remuable** (2), *adj. capable of motion (Lat. mobilibus)*, B 5. p 5. 37.
- Remuen**, *v. remove*, B 2. p 6. 55. (Lat. amovebis.)
- Ren**, *a. run*, A 4070.
- Renably**, *adv. reasonably*, D 1409.
- Rende**, *v. rend*, T. iv. 1493; *Rent, pr. a. rends, tears*, L. 646 a; *Rente, pt. a. tore*, A 990.
- Rending**, *a. tearing*, A 284.
- Renegat**, *a. renegade, apostate*, B 932.
- Reneye**, *v. deny, renounce, abjure*, B 376, 3751.
- Reneyinge**, *a. denying*, I 793.
- Renged**, *pp. ranged, placed in rows*, R. 1382.
- Renges**, *pl. ranks*, A 2094.
- Renne** (1), *v. run*, I 721; *ger. A 3801, pr. a. runs*, D 70; *is current*, E 1080; *approaches quickly*, T. ii. 1754; *goes easily*, A. i. 3. 1; *arises*, L. 501; *spreeds*, L. 1423; *renneth for, runs in favour of*, B 125; *Ronnen, pt. pl. ran*, A 2223, 3827; *Ronnen, pp. advanced, lit. run*, R. 320; *is r., has run, has found its way (into)*, HF. 1644.
- Renne** (2), *v.; only in the phrase, rape and renne*, G 1422. See **Rape**.
- Renomed**, *pp. renowned*, B 2. p 2. 124.
- Renomee**, *a. renown*, L. 1513.
- Renoun**, *a. renown, fame*, 2. 88.
- Renovelances**, *a. pl. renewals*, HF. 694.
- Renouvelle**, *v. renew*, B 3035; *are renewed*, I 1027.
- Rente**, *a. revenue, income*, A 226; *payment, tribute*, 3. 765; *to r., as a tribute*, T. ii. 820.
- Repair**, *a. resort, repairing*, B 1211, D 1214.
- Repaire**, *ger. to go home*, B 1516; *to repair, find a home*, T. iii. 5; *to go back (to)*, HF. 735; *v. return*, F 489.
- Reparaciouns**, *pl. reparations, making up*, HF. 688.
- Repentaunce**, *a. penitence*, A 1776.
- Repentaunt**, *adj. penitent*, A 228.
- Répeating**, *a. repentance*, L. 147.
- Repeyre**, *v. repair, return*, T v 1571.
- Replecioun**, *a. repletion*, B 4027.
- Repleet**, *adj. replete, full*, B 4147.
- Replenissed**, *pp. filled*, I 1079.
- Replacioun**, *a. reply*, A 1846; *involution*, B 2. p 12. 170.
- Replye**, *v. object*, E 1609.
- Reporte**, *v. relate, tell*, C 438.
- Reportour**, *a. reporter*, A 814. (The host is so called because he receives and remembers the tales, they were all addressed to him in particular. Thus 'reporter' has here almost the sense of 'umpire'.)
- Reprehencioun**, *a. reproof*, T. i. 684.
- Reprehende**, *v. reproach*, T. i. 510; *pr. pl. blame, criticize*, B 2. p 12. 134.
- Repressed**, *pp. kept under*, L. 2501.
- Reprevable**, *adj. reprehensible*, C 621; *to, likely to cast a slur on*, 15. 24.
- Repreve**, *a. reproof*, B 2413; *shame*, C 595; *reproach*, E 2206.
- Repreve**, *v. reproach*, F 1517; *reprove*, H 70.
- Reproved**, *pp. as adj. blamed, accused*,

- R. 1135; Reproved, *pp.* stultified, B 2. p 6. 127.
- Repugnien, *ger.* to be repugnant (to), B 5. p 3. 6.
- Requerable, *adj.* desirable, B 2. p 6. 32.
- Requeren, *v.* entreat, seek, B 2927; ask, D 1052; *pp.* necessitated, T. iii. 405.
- Rosalgar, *a.* realgar, G 814. 'Realgar, a combination of sulphur and arsenic, of a brilliant red colour as existing in nature; red orpiment'; Webster.
- Resceived, *pp.* received; wel resceived, favourably situated with respect to other planets, &c.; A. ii. 4. 51.
- Rescous, *a.* a rescue, help, T. iii. 1242; A 1043.
- Rescowe, *v.* (to) rescue, save, T. iii. 857; rescue, T. v. 231.
- Rescowings, *a.* rescuing, I 805.
- Ress, *ger.* to shake, A 1086.
- Résemblable, *adj.* alike, R. 985.
- Resolven, *pr. pl.* flow out, B 5. m 1. 1; Resolved, *pp.* dissolved, melted, B 2. p 7. 164.
- Reasonable, *adj.* talkative, 3. 534.
- Resort, *a.* resource, T. iii. 134.
- Resoun, *a.* reason, right, A 37. 847; argument, speech, sentence, T. i. 796.
- Resouneth, *pr. a.* resounds, A 1278.
- Resport, *a.* regard, T. iv. 86, 850.
- Respyt, *a.* delay, B 948; respita, delay, reprieve, G 543; *without more respyt*, without delay, forthwith, R. 1488; *out of more respyt*, without any delay, without any hesitation, T. v. 137.
- Respyte, *ger.* to hesitate, 7. 259.
- Reste, *a.* rest, repose, F 355; *at reste*, at rest, fixed, T. ii. 760; *at his reste*, as in its home, 5. 376; *to reste*, (gone) to rest, A 30; *Restes*, *pl.* times of repose, T. ii. 1722.
- Reste, *v.* remain (with), T. iii. 1435; rest, repose, T. ii. 1326.
- Restelees, *adv.* restlessly, R. 370.
- Resurreccioun, *a.* resurrection, i.e. re-opening (of the daisy), L. 110.
- Ret, *for* Redeth, *pr. a.* advises, T. ii. 413.
- Retenne, *a.* retinue, troop of retainers, suite, A 2502; E 270; *at his r.*, among those retained by him, D 1355.
- Rethor, *a.* orator, B 4397, F 48.
- Rethorien, *adj.* rhetorical, B 2. p 1. 46.
- Rethorien (*written* Retorien), *a.* orator, B 2. p 3. 61.
- Retorneth, *pr. a.* brings back, B 5. p 6. 301; *pres. pt.* revolving, T. v. 1023.
- Retourninge, *a.* return, A 2095.
- Retracciouns, *a.* *pl.* retractions, things which I withdraw, I 1085.
- Retreteth, *pr. a.* reconsiders, B 5. m 3. 57.
- Retrograd, *adj.* moving in a direction contrary to that of the sun's motion in the ecliptic, A. ii. 4. 53.
- Reule, *a.* rule, A 173.
- Reulen, *v.* rule, B 4234; Reule hir, guide her conduct, E 327.
- Reuthe, *a.* ruth, *a.* 127.
- Reve, *a.* reeve, steward, bailiff, A 542. 3860.
- Reve, *ger.* to rob (from), T. iv. 285; *to take away*, G 376; *to r. no man fro his liff*, to take away no man's life, L. 2693; Reven, *ger.* to reave, plunder, I 758; *to bereave*, T. i. 188; Raveth, *pr. a.* forces away, 5. 86; Ruffe, *pl. a.* bereft, D 828; rest, B 3288; Reffe, *pl. a.* bereft, HF 457; Raft, *pp.* torn, rest, T. v. 1258; taken from, L. 2590; bereaved, F 1017.
- Revel, *a.* revelry, sport, A 2717; minstrelsy, A 4402.
- Revelour, *a.* (the) Reveller, A 4371; a reveller, A 4391.
- Revelous, *adj.* fond of revelry, B 1194.
- Reverberacioun, *a.* vibration, D 2234.
- Beverdye, *a.* rejoicing, R. 721. O.F. *reverdée*, 'feuillée, verdure; joie, allégresse'; Godefroy.
- Reverence, *a.* respect, A 141; respectful manner, A 305, fear, I 204; *thy r.*, the respect shewn to thee, B 116.
- Revera, *a.* reverse, contrary, 18. 32.
- Revesten, *pr. pl.* clothe again, T. iii. 353.
- Revoken, *ger.* to recall, T. iii. 1118.
- Revolucioun, *a.* revolving course (orbit), 4. 30.
- Reward, *a.* regard, attention, T. ii. 1133, v. 1736; *having r. to*, considering, 5. 420; *take r. of*, have regard, I 151.
- Rowde, *adj.* plain, unadorned, A. *pr.* 40.
- Rawe, *a.* row, line, A 2866; *by rawe*, in order, D 506.
- Rewe, *ger.* to have pity, A 2382; *be sorry*, T. ii. 455; *do penance for*, G 447; *pr. a.* *impers.* makes (me) sorry, I am sorry, A 3462, B 4287.
- Rewel-boon, *a.* (probably) ivory made from the teeth of whales, B 2028.
- Rewful, *adj.* lamentable, sad, L. 1838, sad (one), B 854.
- Rewfulleste, *adj. sup.* most sorrowful, A 2886.
- Rewfully, *adv.* sadly, T. iii. 65.
- Rewle, *a.* the revolving long and narrow

- plate or rod used for measuring and taking altitudes, A. i. 1. 6; it revolves at the back of the Astrolabe, *pl. rules*, A. *pr.* 44.
- Rewledest**, *s. pr.* a. *didst* control, B. i. *p.* 4. 2, 8.
- Rewliche**, *adj.* pitiable, B. i. *p.* 2. 67.
- Rewme**, *s.* realm, R. 495.
- Rewthe**, *s.* ruth, pity, E. 579; a pitiful sight, E. 562.
- Rewtheless**, *adj.* ruthless, unpitying, 5. 613, 6. 31.
- Reye**, *s.* rye, D. 1746.
- Reyes**, *pl.* round dances, HF. 1236. Mid. Du. *reze*, 'a round dances'; Hexham.
- Reyn**, *s.* rain, A. 492, storm of rain, A. 3517.
- Rayne**, *s.* rain, A. 4083.
- Reyne**, *v.* rain down, T. v. 1336; rain, 4. 287. See **Ron**.
- Reynes**, *s.* *pl.* loins, I. 863.
- Reyse**, *ger.* to build up, D. 2102, *r.* up, to exact, 'realise,' D. 1490.
- Reysed**, *pp.* gone on a military expedition, A. 54. O.F. *reise*, 'expédition militaire, incursion sur une terre ennemie'; Godefroy.
- Rhetorice**, Rhetoric, B. i. *p.* 1. 48.
- Riban**, *s.* *as pl.* ribbons, HF. 1318.
- Ribaninges**, *pl.* silk trimmings, borders, R. 1077.
- Ribaudye**, *s.* ribaldry, ribald jesting, A. 3866, C. 324.
- Ribible**, *s.* rebeck, lute with two strings, A. 4396.
- Ribybe**, *s.* term of reproach for an old woman, D. 1377.
- Riche**, *adj.* *pl.* rich people, A. 248.
- Richely**, *adv.* richly, F. 60.
- Richesse**, *s.* riches, wealth, D. 1110, 1138. Richesses, *pl.* wealth, riches, B. 2560.
- Rideled**, *pp.* planted, gathered in (at the neck, or waist), R. 1235, 1243. 'Ridele, plisse'; Godefroy.
- Riden**, *pl. pl. and pp.* rode, ridden.
- Riet**, 'rete,' A. i. 3. 5. The 'rete' or 'net' is the circular plate with many openings which revolves within the 'mother'.
- Right**, *adj.* straight, upright, R. 1701; right, i. 75; *roc.* own, F. 1311.
- Right**, *adv.* just, exactly, A. 257, 535, wholly, C. 58; even, B. 2173; Right that, that very thing, 3. 1407.
- Right**, *s.* i. 21; *by right*, justly, B. 44; *by alle r*, in all justice, T. ii. 763; *at alle rightes*, in all respects, fully, A. 1100.
- Rightful**, *adj.* perfect, *rightful age*, (in) her prime, R. 405; just, i. 31; righteous, 5. 57, lawful, I. 744.
- Rightwis**, *adj.* righteous, just, L. 905.
- Rightwisenease**, *s.* righteousness, C. 617. D. 1979, justice, 14. 8.
- Rikne**, *imp.* a. reckon, compute, A. ii. 27 10. See **Rekene**.
- Rinde**, *s.* rind, bark, T. iv. 1139; hard skin, T. ii. 642.
- Ring**, *s.* ring, F. 81; concourse, L. 1387 *lyk r.*, i.e. in ringlets, A. 2165.
- Ringe**, *v.* make to resound, A. 2431; ring, resound, T. ii. 231; Rong, *pl.* a. rang, 4. 492; Ronge, *pp.* T. ii. 805.
- Riot**, *s.* riotous conduct, gaming, A. 4395, 4392.
- Riote**, *v.* riot, gamble, A. 4414.
- Risen**, *pp.* of **Ryso**.
- Rishe**, *s.* rush, T. iii. 1161.
- Rist**, *pr.* a. of **Ryse**.
- Rit**, *pr.* a. of **Ryde**.
- Riveer**, *s.* river, B. 1027.
- Robbour**, *s.* robber, B. 3818.
- Roche**, *s.* rock, F. 300; *pl.* HF. 105.
- Rode**, *s.* complexion, A. 1117, B. 1917.
- Rode**, *s.* *nom.* rood, cross, HF. 57.
- Rode-beem**, *s.* rood-beam, D. 490. (A beam across the entrance to the choir of a church, supporting a rood or cross.)
- Rody**, *adj.* ruddy, F. 385, 394.
- Roes**, *pl.* of **Roo**.
- Roggeth** (ruggeth), *pr.* a. shakes, L. 2708. *locl. rugga*.
- Roket**, *s.* rochet, tunic, R. 1240, 1242, 1243. An outer garment, usually of fine white linen.
- Rokke**, *s.* rock, L. 2195.
- Rokken**, *ger.* to rock, A. 4157.
- Rolle**, *s.* roll, C. 911.
- Rollen**, *ger.* to roll, revolve, T. ii. 609; *pl.* a. revolved, D. 2217, *pp.* much talked of, T. v. 1061.
- Romaunce**, *s.* romance, T. iii. 980.
- Rombled**, *pl.* a. fumbled, moved about with his hands, groped about, G. 1327.
- Rombled**, *pl.* a. buzzed, muttered, B. 3725.
- Romen**, *v.* roam, wander, A. 1099; **Romed**, *pl.* a. A. 1065, 1069, *pp.* gone, L. 1589.
- Rōn**, *pl.* a. rained, T. iii. 640, 677. A.S. *ræn*, *pl.* a. rained.
- Rond**, *adj.* round, circular, A. ii. 31. 1.
- Rong**, -e; see **Ringe**.
- Ronges**, *pl.* rungs, rounds of a ladder, A. 3625. A.S. *hrung*.
- Ronne**, -n, see **Renne**.
- Roo**, *s.* roo, 5. 195, **Roes**, *pl.* roes, R. 1401.
- Rood**, *pl.* a. of **Ryde**.

Roof, *pt. s. of* Ryve.

Roon, *s.* rose-bush, R. 1674. Halliwell gives *roan*, a clump of whins, as a Northumberland word; and we find the spelling *ranes* in the allit. *Morte Arthure*, 923.

Roos, *pt. s. of* Ryse.

Roost, *s.* roast meat, A 206.

Ropen, *pp.* reaped, L. 74.

Rore, *s.* uproar, T. v. 45.

Rore, *ger.* to roar, T. iv. 373; *pr. s.* re-sounds, A 2881.

Roring, *s.* loud lament, E 2364.

Rose, *s.* rose, R. 1700; *ger.* of the rose, A 1038.

Rose-leef, *s.* rose-leaf, R. 905.

Rose-garland, *s.* garland of roses, HF. 135.

Rosen, *adj.* made of roses, R. 845; *Rosene*, *adj. def.* rosy, B 2. m 8. 6.

Roser, *s.* rose-bush, R. 1651, 1659; I 858.

Rosé-reed, *adj.* red as a rose, G 254.

Roste, *v.* roast, A 383; *pp.* A 147.

Rosy hewed, of rosy hue, T. ii. 1198.

Rote, *s.* (1) root, A 2, 423; the radix, fundamental principle, G 1461; source, B 358; i.e. foot, E 58; *on rote*, firmly rooted, T. ii. 1378; *herte rote*, bottom of the heart, D 471; (2) root, the tabulated number written opposite a given fixed date, A. ii. 44. 2; the 'epoch' of a nativity, B 314.

Rote, *s.* rote; *by rote*, by rote, by heart, A 327, B 1712.

Rote, *s.* a musical stringed instrument, a kind of fiddle, of Celtic origin; said to be a fiddle with three strings, A 236. O. F. *rote*, from O. H. G. *hrotta*, *rotta*, Low Lat. *chrotta*; of Celtic origin, from O. Irish *crot* (Gael. *cruít*, W. *cruith*); whence also E. *crowd*.

Rotelees, *adj.* rootless, T. iv. 770.

Roten, *adj.* rotten, A 3873; corrupt, filthy, I 139.

Roten-herted, *adj.* rotten-hearted, I 689.

Rotie, *pr. s. subj.* render rotten, A 4407.

Roughte; see *Reoche*.

Rouketh, *pr. s.* cowers, crouches, is huddled up, A 1308.

Roule, *v.* gad (lit. roll), D 653.

Roum, *adj.* roomy, spacious, A 4126.

Roum, *s.* room, spare, L. 1999.

Roumer, *adj.* larger, A 4145.

Rouncy, *s.* a hackney, nag, A 390.

Rounde, *adv.* roundly, i.e. easily, with an easy (not jerky) motion, B 2076; melodiously, C 331.

Rounded, *pt. s.* stood out in a rounded form, A 263.

Roundel, *s.* roundel, roundelay, a kind of poem, A 1529; a small circle, HF. 791, 798.

Roundnesses, *pl.* orbs, orbits, B 4. m 6. 52.

Roune, *v.* whisper, B 2025; *ger.* D 1572; *pt. s.* HF. 2044. A. S. *rūnian*.

Route, *s.* company, rout, troop, band, train, A 622, 889, 2153; number, R. 1667; flock, R. 909; *pl.* T. ii. 620.

Route (1), *v.* roar, T. iii. 743; murmur, HF. 1038; *ger.* to snore, 3. 172; *pr. s.* snores, A 3647. A. S. *hrūtan*.

Route (2), *v.* assemble in a company, B 540.

Routhe, *s.* pity, ruth, compassion, mercy, F 1261, 1349; lamentation, L. 669; a pity, a sad thing, A 914.

Routhlees, *adj.* ruthless, pitiless, B 863.

Routing, *s.* snoring, A 4166, 4214; whizzing noise, HF. 1933.

Rowe, *s.* row, 3. 975; line, HF. 448; *by r.*, in a row, T. ii. 970; *Rowes*, *pl.* rays, beams (of light), 4. 2.

Rowe, *adv.* roughly, angrily, G 861.

Rowed, *pp.* rowed, T. i. 969.

Rowm, *adj.* roomy, large, wide, A. i. 2. 3.

Rowne, *ger.* to whisper, T. iii. 568.

Rowthe, *s.* ruth, pity, 3. 465; sorrow, 3. 97.

Royaltee, *s.* royalty, E 928.

Royleth, *pr. s.* meanders, wanders, B 1 m 7. 10.

Royne, *s.* roughness, R. 553.

Roynous, *adj.* rough, R. 988.

Rubbe, *v.* rub out, 8. 6.

Rubee, *s.* ruby, HF. 1362.

Rubible, *s.* ribibe, rebeck, A 3331.

Rubifying, *s.* rubefaction, reddening, G 797.

Rubriche, *s.* rubric, D 346.

Ruby, *s.* ruby, 12. 4. Rubies, *pl.* 4. 246.

Ruddok, *s.* redbreast, robin, 5. 349.

Rude, *adj.* harsh, R. 752; poor, E 910; inhospitable, H 170; of humble birth, D 1172.

Rudeliche, *adv.* rudely, A 734.

Rudenesse, *s.* boorishness, T. iv. 1677; rusticity, E 397.

Ruggy, *adj.* rough, A 2883.

Rule, *imp. pl.* regulate, order, I 592; *pp.* as *adj.* well-mannered, L. 103.

Rum, ram, ruf; nonsense words, to imitate alliteration, I 43.

Rumbel, *s.* rumbling noise, A 1070; rumour, E 997.

Rumbleth, *pr. s.* moves to and fro with an indistinct murmuring noise, HF. 1026.

Rumblinge, *s.* noise, D 313.

Rused, *pt. s.* roused herself, rushed away, 3. 381.

Rushing, *pres. pt.* rushing, A 1641.

Rusto, *ger. to rust*, A 502, *pr. s. subj.* rust, A 502.

Rusty, *adj.* rusty, A 618; besmirched as with rust, R. 159.

Ryal, *adj.* royal, 1. 144; Rial, 2. 50.

Ryde, *v.* ride, A 27, 94, 102; ride at anchor, L. 968; Ryden, *ger. (with out)*, to go on expeditions, A 45. Ryde, *ger. (with out)*, to ride abroad to inspect, B 1255; (see *Outrydere*, Rydestow, ridest thou, D 1386, Rit, *pr. s.* rides, A 974; Rôdd, *pt. s.* rode, A 169; Riden, 1 *pt. pl.* (we, rode, A 825, *pt. pl.* C 968; Riden, *pp.* ridden, B 1990.

Ryding, *s.* jousting, or riding in procession, A 4177.

Rym, *s.* rime (usually misspelt rhyme), B 2115, 2118; Ryme, *dat.* HF. 623; a tale in verse, B 1899; verse, D 1127; *pt.* B 96. A.S. rim.

Ryme, *v.* describe in verse, put into rime (or rhyme), A 1459, B 2122.

Rymeyed, *pp.* rimed, or rhymed, F 711; see above.

Ryming, *s.* riming, or rhyming, verse-making, B 2120; the art of riming, B 48.

Ryot, *s.* riotous living, C 465.

Ryotour, *s.* roysterer, C 692.

Rys, *s.* spray, branch, twig, R. 1015; A 3324. A.S. *hria*.

Ryse, *ger. to rise*, A 11; to get up, F 475; Rist, *pr. s.* rises, A 3688, 4193, arises, T i. 944; Rôse, 1 *pt. s.* rose, 2. 17; *pt. s.* A 825, Risen, *pp.* A 1065; Riseth, *imp. pt.* I 161.

Ryve, *ger. to pierce*, T v 1560; *v.* thrust, L. 1793; pierce, C 828; tear, E 1246; Rôðf, *pt. s.* rove, rived, pierced, L. 661, 1351. Icel. *riða*.

S.

Sable, *s.* sable, black, 4. 284.

Sachels, *s. pl.* bags, B 1. p. 1. 81.

Sacrement, *s.* the eucharist, I 582.

Sacrifye, *v.* do sacrifice, L. 1148.

Sacrifyse, *s.* sacrifice, L. 1310.

Sacrilege, *s.* I 801, sorcery, B 1. p. 4. 282.

Sad, *adj.* stable, firm, I 129, 110; staid, A 2085, sober, E 220, 217, fixed, constant, unmoved, settled, E 691, 754, sad, R. 211, devoted, 22. 9; trusty, H 275, serious, grave, 2. 918, calm, settled, G 397, staid, L. 1581, 1876; earnest, HF. 2089; Sadde, *pt.* grave, E 1001; steady, 3. 860; discreet, B 135; sure, H 258.

Sadel, *s.* saddle, L. 1169.

Sadel-bowe, *s.* saddle-bow, A 1691.

Sadly, *adv.* firmly, A 1602, discreetly, B 1266, steadfastly, I 124; carefully, D 2164, firmly, tightly, E 1100; unstintingly, B 741.

Sadnesse, *s.* soberness, staidness, E 159; patience, E 452.

Saffron with, *ger. to tinge with saffron*, to colour, O 345.

Saffroun, *s.*, like saffron — of a bright yellowish colour, B 1920.

Sak, *s.* sack, R. 457; Sakkes, *pl.* bags, L. 1118.

Sakked, *pp.* put in a sack, A 4070.

Sal, *pr. s.* shall (Northern), A 4043.

Sal armoniak, *s.* sal ammoniac, G 708, 824. Lat. *sal ammoniacum*, Armenian salt. *Sal ammoniac*, chloride of ammonium. The word *armoniac* certainly answers to the Lat. *Armeniacum* in the old treatises. Yet the right spelling is *ammoniac*.

Sal peter, *s.* saltpetre, G 808. Lat. *sal petre*, rock-salt, nitrate of potassa, — called also nitre.

Sal preparat, *s.* prepared salt, G 810.

Sal tartre, *s.* a salt of tartar, G 810. 'Salt of tartar, carbonate of potash; first prepared from cream of tartar' Webster.

Salwe, *v.* salute, I 407; *pr. s.* B 1284. Salwed, *pp.* F 1310.

Salowe, *adj.* sallow, R. 355. (But read *salowe*.)

Salte, *adj.* def salt, L. 1462.

Saluing, *s.* salutation, A 1649.

Saluwe, *ger. to salute*, T. iii. 1785; Salued, 1 *pt. s.* L. 315.

Salvacioun, *s.* salvation, 4. 213; security, B 2361.

Salve, *s.* salve, cure, T iv. 944; *pl.* healing remedies, A 2712.

Salwes, *pl.* willow-twigs, osiers, D 655.

Samit, *s.* samite, a rich and glossy silk material, T i. 109; robe made of samite, R. 836, 873.

Sang, *s.* song (Northern), A 4170.

Sangwin, *s.* stuff of a blood-red colour, A 449.

Sangwyn, *adj.* very ruddy, A 2168; blood-red, A 333.
Sans, *prep.* without, B 501.
Sapphires, *s. pl.* sapphires, B 3658.
Sapience, wisdom, B 2184; *pl.* kinds of intelligence, G 338.
Sarge, *s.* serge, A 2568.
Sarpulers, *s. pl.* sacks made of coarse canvas, B 1. p 3. 82. Cf. F. *serpillière*.
Sarsinesshe, *adj.* Saracenic, R. 1188.
 If *sarsinesshe* can be taken as a sb., it may refer to *sarnet*.
Sat; *pt. s.* of Sitte.
Satin, *s.* satin, 3. 253.
Satisfaccioun, *s.* penance, I 87; restitution, I 108.
Sauf, *adj.* safe, safely kept, G 950; in safety, 4. 197.
Sauf, *prep.* save, except, A 2180.
Sauffy, *adv.* safely, with safety, B 2373, 4398.
Saugh, *pt. s.* of See.
Saule, *s.* soul (Northern), A 4187.
Sauns, *prep.* without; *sauns faille*, without fail, certainly, HF. 188, 429. See **Sans**.
Sauter, *s.* psalter, R. 431.
Sautrye, *s.* psaltery, a kind of harp, A 296, 3213, 3305, H 268.
Savacioun, *s.* salvation, T. ii. 381, 563; *withoute any savacioun*, without saving any, HF. 208.
Save, *s.* sage (the plant), A 2713.
Save, *prep. and conj.* save, except, A 683; Save your grace, by your leave, B 2260.
Saven, *ger.* to save, keep, 1. 117; *pr. s.* *subj.* may (He) save, A 3108; *pp.* kept inviolate, F 531.
Save-garde, *s.* safe-conduct, T. iv. 139.
Saveour, *s.* saviour, 19. 16.
Saveren, *pr. pl.* mind, care for, I 820.
Savinge, *prep.* except, A 2838.
Savoringe, *s.* taste, I 207.
Savorous, *adj.* pleasant, R. 84.
Savory, *adj.* pleasant, T. i. 405.
Savour, *s.* savour, D 2196; pleasantness, F 204; pleasure, 10. 20; smell, G 887; scent, R. 925; interest, T. ii. 269; *pl.* odours, 5. 274.
Savoure, *v.* taste, D 171; *pr. pl.* mind, care for, I 820; *imp. s.* have relish for, 13. 5.
Savoured, *adj.* perfumed, R. 547.
Savouringe, *s.* tasting, I 959.
Savourly, *adj.* enjoyably, A 3735.
Sawcefleem, *adj.* covered with pimples (due to an excess of humour called *salsu phlegma*), A 625.

Sawe, *s.* saying, speech, A 1163; word, B 2925; discourse, G 691.
Sawe, **Say**; see **See**.
Sayde, said; see **Seye**.
Saylours, *pl.* dancers (who leap in dancing), R. 770. 'Sailleor, Sailleor, sauteur, danseur'; Godefroy.
Scabbe, *s.* scab, R. 553; a disease of sheep, C 358.
Scalded, *pp.* burnt, A 3853.
Scale, *s.* scale, or rather, double scale, for measuring both by *umbra recta* and *umbra versa*, A. i. 12. 3.
Scalle, *s.* scab, 8. 3.
Scalled, *pp.* having the scall, scabby, scurfy, A 627.
Scantitee, *s.* scantiness, I 431.
Scantnesse, *s.* scarcity, I 420.
Scapen, *v.* escape, T. v. 908.
Scarlet-reed, *adj.* scarlet-red, B 4351.
Scarmishing, *s.* skirmish, L. 1910.
Scarmyche, *s.* skirmish, T. v. 1508.
Scars, *adj.* parsimonious, B 2789.
Scarsetee, *s.* scarcity, B 2790.
Scarsly, *adv.* parsimoniously, A 583.
Scatered, *pp.* scattered, G 914.
Scathe, *s.* scathe, harm, misfortune, 'a pity,' A 446; *Polymites to sc.*, to the harm of P., T. v. 938.
Scatheles, *adv.* harmlessly, R. 1550.
Science, *s.* science, knowledge, 5. 25; learned writing, B 1666; wisdom, I 222.
Sclat, *s.* slate, 11. 34.
Solaundre, *s.* slander, HF. 1580; ill-fame, disgrace, E 722; scandal, I 137.
Solave, *s.* slave, T. iii. 391.
Slendre, *adj.* slender, alight in make, A 587; thin, B 3147; poor, B 4023.
Scochouns, *pl.* escutcheons, painted shields, R. 893.
Scole, *s.* school, B 1685, 1694; manner, fashion, A 125, 3329; discipline, T. i. 634; 'the schools,' D 2186.
Scole-matere, *s.* subject for disputation in the schools, D 1272.
Scoler, *s.* scholar, A 260.
Scolering, *s.* young scholar, note to D 44; line 6.
Scole-termes, *pl.* school-terms, E 1569.
Scoleward; to scoleward = toward school, B 1739.
Scoleye, *ger.* to study, A 302.
Soomes, *s. pl.* foam, lather, B 4. m 7. 61. Lit. 'scums.'
Score, *imp. s.* notch, cut, mark, B 1606.
Scorkleth, *pr. s.* scorches, shrivels, B 2. m 6. 28.
Scorned, *pt. s.* 3. 927; jested at, B 4277.

- Scorning**, *s.* scorn, T i. 105.
Scorpion, *s.* E 2058; sign of Scorpio, HF. 948.
Scot, a horse's name, A 616, D 1543.
Scourges, *s.* pl. whips, plagues, E 1157.
Scourging, *s.* correction, 4. 42.
Scrippe, *s.* scrip, bag, D 1737.
Scripture, *s.* writing, inscription, (on a ring), T. iii. 1369; passage of writing, L. 1144, pl. manuscripts, A 2034.
Scrit, *s.* writing, deed, E 1697; T. ii. 1130.
Scrivenish, *adv.* like a scrivener, T. ii. 1036.
Scriveyn, *s.* scribe, 8. 1.
Seche, *ger.* to seek, i.e. to be sought for (it was easily had), A 784; to seek out, D 909.
Secree, *adj.* secret, trusty, 5. 395; secret, B 2251, able to keep secrets, D 946.
Secree, *adv.* secretly, F 1109.
Secree, *a.* a secret, B 3211; Secrees of secrees, secret of secrets, Lat. Secreta Secretorum (the name of a book), G 1447.
Secreeness, *s.* secrecy, B 773.
Secrely, *adv.* secretly, E 763.
Secte, *s.* sect, company, E 1171; religion, faith (lit. 'following'), F 17.
Seculer, *a.* a layman, B 4643.
Sede, *v.* bear seed, 7. 406.
See, *s.* sea, A 59; *fulle see*, high tide, A. ii. 46. 4.
See, *s.* seat, HF 1361; seat of empire, B 3339; pl. seats HF. 1210.
See, *v.* see, L. 2560; *ger.* to see, look, F 466. to look upon), 3. 1177; *as ful.* shall see, 4. 190, Seestow, seest thou, HF. 911; Say, 1 pt. *a.* saw, T v. 992; Say, pt. *a.* saw, B 4304; Sey, pt. *a.* B 1, 7; Seigh, 1 pt. *a.* saw, A 193; Seigh, pt. *a.* A 1066, F 850, Saugh, 1 pt. *a.* saw, A 764; pt. *a.* A 850, 1400; Sy, pt. *a.* G 1381, Sawe, 2 pt. *a.* sawest, B 848; Saugh, 2 pt. pl. G 1106 (with *ye*), Sawe, pt. pl. B 218, Seyn, pt. pl. saw, T. iv. 710, Seyen, pt. pl. G 110; Syen, pt. pl. B 1870, 4506, Syc, pt. pl. E 1804, *pr.* *a.* subj. may be behold or protect, B 156, Sawe, pt. *a.* subj. were to see, A 144, Seyn, pp. seen, B 1863; Seye, pp. D 552.
Seed-foul, *s.* birds living on seeds, 5. 512.
Seek, *adj.* sick, ill, L. 2409, 2436; *def.* A 424, Seke, *def.* as *a.* man in a fever, 5. 104 Seke, pl. A 18, 245.
Seel (1), *s.* bliss, A 4319. A.S. *seol*.
Seel (2), *s.* seal, B 882.
Seemliness, *s.* dignity of bearing, L. 1041.
Seemly, *adj.* delicate, pleasing, 12. 11; seemly, L. 2074.
Seestow, seest thou, HF. 911.
Seet, pt. *s.* sat (false form, due to pl. *seet*), A 2075.
Seetes, pl. seats, A 2580.
Seeth, pt. *a.* seethed, boiled, E 227.
Sege, *s.* throne, B i. p. 4. 285, siege, L. 1696.
Seggen, 1 pr. pl. say, T iv. 194.
Seigh, pt. *a.* of See.
Sein, *ger.*; That is to sein, that is to say, A. pr. 26.
Seinte, *adj.* fem. holy, D 1824.
Seintuarie, *s.* sanctuary, I 781; a consecrated object, C 453.
Seistow, sayest thou, A 1125.
Seith, pr. *a.* says, A 178.
Seke - see Seek, *adj.*
Seke, *v.* search through, B 60, seek B 1634; *ger.* A 13, 510; to seek, i.e. a matter for search, G 874; Sekestow, seekest thou, T iii. 1435; Sekon to, 1 pr. pl. press towards, 2. 91; 2 pr. pl. search through, B 127; Soghte, 1 pt. *a.* sought, A. ii. 45. 11; pt. *a.* subj. were to examine, C 488.
Sekerne, *s.* security, 7. 345.
Sekirly, *adv.* certainly, L. 163 *a.*
Selde, *adj.* pl. few, E 136.
Selde, *adv.* seldom, A 1539, B 2343. Selden, B 2594; Seld, B 2443.
Seled, pp. sealed, B 736.
Seles, pl. seals, T. iii. 1462.
Selily, *adv.* happily, B 2 p. 4. 96.
Selinesse, *s.* happiness, T. iii. 812.
Selle, *s.* dat. boarding, A 3822. A Kentish form; M.E. *sulle*, *sille*; A.S. *syll*. (*Flors* - ground beneath the boards.)
Selle, *v.* sell, F 1563; barter, A 278; *for* to selle, for sale, D 414; to selle, for sale, A 3821; Solde, pt. *a.* subj. were to sell, R. 452.
Selly, *adj.* wonderful (MSS. sely), HF. 513. A.S. *sellic*, *seldlic*, strange.
Sely, *adj.* happy, T. iv. 503; kind, 4. 80, good, B 1702, holy, B 682; innocent, simple, A 3404; poor, pitiable, T i. 871, wretched, A 3896, hapless, L. 1254, 1336. A.S. *selig*.
Semblable, *adj.* like, B 2294.
Semblaunce, *s.* likeness, R. 425; appearance, R. 135.
Semblaunt, *s.* appearance, semblance look, E 928, F 516, *in a* *s.*, apparently, R. 163.

- Seem**, *v.* appear, seem, F 102; *ger.* to seem (to), T. i. 747; *pr. pl.* F 869; *pl. s.* (there) seemed, A 2970; *imper.* (it) seemed, A 39, E 206; *him seemed*, it seemed to them, they supposed, F 56; *the people seemed*, it seemed to the people, the people supposed, F 201.
- Semelihead**, *s.* seemliness, comeliness, R. 1130; gracefulness, R. 777.
- Semely**, *adj.* seemly, comely, A 751.
- Semely**, *adv.* becomingly, A 123.
- Semes**, *s. pl.* seams, I 622.
- Semicope**, *s.* half-cope, short cope, A 262.
- Seming**, *s.* appearance, 3. 944; *to my s.*, as it appears to me, B 1838.
- Semisoun**, *s.* half-sound, i.e. suppressed sound, A 3697.
- Senatorie**, *s.* senatorial rank, B 3. p 4. 93.
- Senatour**, *s.* senator, L. 584.
- Sencer**, *s.* censor, A 3340.
- Sencinge**, *pres. pt.* censuring, perfuming with incense, A 3341.
- Sendal**, *s.* a thin silk, A 440.
- Sende**, *v.* send, B 144; *Sent*, *pr. s.* E 1151; *Sende*, *pt. s.* sent, A 4136; *Sente*, *pt. s.* B 3027; *Sendeth*, *imp. pl.* send ye, C 614; *Sente*, *pt. s. subj.* would send, B 1091.
- Sene**, *adj.* visible, manifest, apparent, A 114, 924, F 645. A.S. *gesea*, *gese*, *adj.* evident, visible.
- Sene**, *ger.* to behold, to see, L. 1034; to look at, L. 2649; to look on, D 1245; to seem, L. 224; *on to sene*, to look on, L. 2425.
- Senge**, *v.* singe, D 349, Seynd, *pp.* broiled, B 4035.
- Sengle**, *adj.* single, unmarried, E 1667.
- Senith**, *s.* (1) the zenith, A. i. 18. 4, 22. 6; (2) the point where a given azimuth-circle meets the horizon, A. i. 19. 12; the point of sunrise, A. ii. 31. 13.
- Sensibilitous**, *s. pl.* perceptions, B 5. m 4. 8.
- Sensible**, *adj.* perceptible by the senses, B 5. p 4. 212.
- Sent**, *-e*, see *Sende*.
- Sentement**, *s.* feeling, fancy, T. ii. 13; susceptibility, T. iii. 43; passion, L. 69.
- Sentence**, *s.* meaning, drift, E 2188; contents, C 190; subject, B 1753; opinion, B 113, 3992; decision, 5. 530; meaning, sentiment, instruction, A 326, 798; tenor, theme, HP. 1100; decision, speech, 5. 383; judgement, order, I 17; verdict, G 366; general meaning, I 58.
- Septentrion**, *s.* north, B 3657.
- Septentrional**, *adj.* northern, A. ii. 40. 30; *Septentrionalis*, *pl.* A. ii. 40. 36.
- Sepulchre**, *s.* tomb, D 498.
- Sepulture**, *s.* mode of burial, T. v. 290, burial, L. 2553; tomb, A 2854.
- Serchen**, *v.* search, B 2597; *pr. pl.* 50 about, haunt, D 867.
- Sereyna**, *s. pl.* sirens, R. 694.
- Sergeant of the Lawe**, sergeant-at-law, A 309.
- Serie**, *s.* process, argument, A 3067.
- Sermone**, *ger.* to preach, speak, C 879.
- Sermoning**, *s.* argument, A 3091, talk, A 3597.
- Sermoun**, *s.* discourse, L. 2025; T. ii. 965; tale, T. ii. 1115; *pl.* writings, B 87.
- Servage**, *s.* servitude, thraldom, A 1946, B 368.
- Servant**, *s.* lover, A 1814; servant, D 1501.
- Servisable**, *adj.* willing to serve, A 99. serviceable, E 1911; useful, E 779.
- Servitour**, *s.* servant, D 2185.
- Servitude**, *s.* servitude, E 798.
- Servyse**, *s.* service, serving, A 250; religious service, T. i. 315; musical performance, 3. 302.
- Seise**, *pr. s. subj.* seize, 5. 481; *pp.* caught, 4. 240; seized, possessed, T. iii. 415.
- Seison**, *s.* season, F 1034; prime, R. 1678.
- Setow**, *seest thou*, T. iii. 46.
- Sete**, *s.* seat, throne, B 3715, I 162.
- Sete**, *-n*; see *Sitta*.
- Setewale**, *s.* redcoaty, setwall, R. 1570. See *Octawale*.
- Sethe**, *v.* seethe, boil, A 380.
- Sette**, *ger.* to set, place, L. 540; *setten a myte*, care a mite, T. iii. 903; *Sette*, *pr. s.* suppose, T. ii. 167; B 2681; *Sette*, *cas.* imagine the case, B 3041; *pr. pl.* esteem, T. ii. 432; *Sette*, *pr. s. subj.* set, A 3911; *Set*, *pr. s.* settoth, sets, 2. 101; D 1982; *care*, T. iii. 842, puts, 3. 635; *Sette*, *pr. s.* counted, regarded, D 650; *Sette me*, placed myself, L. 115; *sette nat a kers*, accounted not worth a cress, A 3756; *Sette at nought*, counted as nothing, F 821; *Sette him*, sat down, C 207; *Sette hir*, sat, B 329; *Sette her on knees*, knelt down, B 648; *Sette hem*, seated themselves, L. 311; C 775; *Sotten hem adoun*, set themselves, G 396; *Set*, *pp.* placed, A 112, 2528; put, B 440; *set*, R. 846; appointed, 4. 52. E 774; wholly devoted, 6. 100; *set set*, seemly, 3. 828. *set the wrightes cappe* — made a fool of him, A 3141; *Set*, *imp. s.* stake (as at dice), T. iv. 622.
- Seur**, *adj.* sure, B 2642, 2953.
- Seur**, *adv.* surely, T. iii. 1032.
- Seurly**, *adv.* surely, B 2913.

- Sourtee**, *s.* surety, A 1604, B 243.
Sewe, *v.* follow, 23. 12; *ensue*, B 2619, 2692; *pt. s.* pursued, B 4527.
Sewes, *s.* *pl.* lit. juices, gravies; used here for seasoned dishes, delicacies, F 67.
Sewing, *adj.* conformable, in proportion, similar, 1. 950. Lit. 'following.'
Sexte, sixth, HF. 1727.
Sexteyn, *a.* sacristan, B 3216.
Sey, 1 *pt. s.* saw, 3. 1089; *Seyn*, *pp.* seen, B 172, 624. See **Bee**.
Seye, *v.* say, A 718, to be told, B 706; to *seyn*, A 284, for to *seye*, to say, A 468, *this is to seyn*, A 181, *that is to seyn*, A 797; *Seistow*, sayest thou, B 110; *as who myth*, like one who says, i. e. so to speak, T. v. 881, *Seggen*, 1 *pr. pl.* say, T. iv. 194, *Seydestow*, saidest thou, G 124, *Seyd*, *pp.* B 49; *Seyeth*, *imp. pl.* say ye, A 1868.
Soyl, *a.* sail, A 606, 3532.
Seyn, *pp.* seen, B 1861, 4471.
Seynd, *pp.* singed, 1. a. broiled, B 4035.
Seynt, *a.* saint, 1. 1319; *Seynt* (*disyllabic*), A 120, 509, 687, D 1564; *Seynte*, saint (or holy), A 1721.
Seyst, 1 *pr. s.* sayest, B 109; *Seystow*, 2 *pr. s.* sayest thou, A 2400.
Shaar, *s.* a plough-share, A 1763.
Shad, -de see **Shede**.
Shadwe, *a.* shadow, B 7, 10; shade, 1. 426, scene, B 2. p. 3. 89; *Shadowe*, reflection, R. 1519.
Shadwed, *pp.* shadowed, shaded, A 607.
Shaft, *a.* wooden part of an arrow, A 1362, *pl.* shafts of spears, A 2605.
Shal, 1 *pr. s.* owe, T. ii. 1649; owe (to), T. iii. 791; shall do so, F 688, must, A 841, am to be, 2. 53; am to (go), G 103; *Shalt*, 2 *pr. s.* must go, D 1616, *Shaltow*, 2 *pr. s.* shalt thou, A 1575, *Shal*, *pr. s.* shall be, T. v. 83, is to be, HF. 82, must, is to, A 187; must (come), T. iv. 1106, will, L. 1276; must (do so), R. 187, owes, F 750; *Sholde*, 1 *pt. s.* should, B 56, ought to have done so, 3. 1200, *Sholdestow*, shouldst thou, 10. 60, wouldst thou, D 1944, *Sholde*, *pt. s.* should, A 184; ought to, B 44; had to, E 519; was to, B 1891, would, B 3627, *Shul*, 1 *pr. pl.* must, have to, B 151, must, B 1900; *Shullen*, 2 *pr. pl.* shall, B 4052, *Shullen*, *pr. pl.* must, A 3014.
Shale, *s.* shell, HF. 1281.
Shalmyes, *pl.* shawms, HF. 1218.
Shame, *s.* A 501; Shame of his degree, 1. e. lest it should shame his condition (as husband), F 752, *Shames* death, shameful death, B 819, E 2377.
Shamen, *v.* put to shame, F 1565; *thou shameth*, it shames thee, thou art ashamed, B 101.
Shamfast, *adj.* modest, shy, A 2055, C 13, shame-faced, ashamed, R. 467.
Shamfastnesse, *s.* modesty, A 840; sense of shame, I 985.
Shap, *s.* A 1889; privy member, I 421.
Shapen, *v.* plan, devise, A 3403, find means (to do), A 809; *pr. s.* intend, L. 1289, *Shape*, *pr. pl.* dispose, B 261, *Shapen* hem, intend, F 214, *Shap*, *pt. s.* befit, T. ii. 61; devised, planned, T. i. 207, made, gave, L. 2569; prepared for, K 198, plotted, B 2343, created, E 601, contrived, E 946; *Shoop* me, 1 *pt. s.* addressed myself, 2. 20; prepared myself, L. 180, *Shoop* him, *pt. s.* addressed, L. 624; determined, F 809, *Shopen*, *pt. pl.* made ready, B 2025, *Shapen*, *pp.* determined, A 1108, destined, A 1392, shaped, L. 2014; planned, B 951, prepared, B 240; appointed, B 253; disposed (themselves), B 142; built, 7. 357; cut out, T. iii. 734; *Shape*, *pp.* destined, ordained, A 1225, allotted, T. ii. 282, created, B 3000; *imp. pl.* address yourself, B 2107.
Shaply, *adj.* fit, A 372; likely, T. iv. 1452.
Sharpe, *adv.* sharply, B 2073.
Shave, *v.* shave, A 1426, *Shaven*, *pp.* cut smooth, R. 141; *Shave*, *pp.* shaven, A 588.
Shaving, *s.* a thin slice, G 1219.
Shawe, *a.* wood, A 4367, D 1386.
She, *she*, A 446. *She . . . she*, one woman and another, T. ii. 1747.
She-ape, *s.* female ape, I 424.
Shedeth, *pr. s.* sheds, I 577; *Shedda*, *pt. s.* shed, B 2447; *Shadde*, *pt. s.* poured, B 1921, *Shad*, *pp.* distributed, B 1. m. 18.
Sheef, *s.* sheaf, A 104; *Sheves*, *pl.* HF. 2140.
Sheep, *s.* a sheep, A 506; a meek person, D 432.
Sheld, *s.* shield, A 2122; *pl.* French crowns (coins worth 3s. 4d.), A 278; *Sheild*, *pl.* B 1521.
Shelde, *pr. s.* *subj.* may be shield, HF. 88.
Shende, *v.* disgrace, T. iv. 1577, ruin, B 927, render contemptible, T. v. 803, reproach, T. v. 1060, destroy, HF. 1010; *Shent*, *pr. s.* ruins, I 848; defiles, I 854, *Shente*, *pt. s.* harmed, injured, B 4041, *Shente*, *pt. s.* *subj.* should destroy, T. ii. 157, *Shent*, *pp.* spoilt, T. ii. 37; defeated, L. 652, scolded, B 1731.

- Shendahipe, *s.* shame, I 273.
 Shene, *adj.* bright, A 115; glistening, R 127; fair, E 2528; beautiful, B 692, F 1045. A.S. *scēne, scýne*.
 Shene, *adv.* brightly, 4. 87.
 Shepe, *s.* hire, I 568. See Shippe.
 Shepne, *s.* stable, shed, A 2000. A.S. *scypen*. See Shipnes.
 Shere, *s.* pair of shears, A 2417.
 Shere, *ger.* to shear, out, B 3257.
 Shering-hokes, *pl.* shearing-hooks, contrivances for severing ropes in a sea-fight, L 641.
 Sherte, *s.* shirt, A 1566; chemise, T. iv. 96.
 Shet, *pp.* of Shette.
 Shete, *s.* sheet, G 879; *pl.* A 4140.
 Sheten, *v.* shoot, I 714; Sheteth, *pr.* *s.* shoots, R 960.
 Sheter, *s.* *as* *adj.* fit for shooting, (*lit.* shooter), 5. 180.
 Sheth, *s.* sheath, R 2066.
 Shette, *v.* shut, enclose, T. iii. 1549; shut, close, D 1141; Shette, *pt.* *s.* shut, A 3499; closed, fastened up, T. ii. 1090; Shetten, *pl.* *pl.* shut up, enclosed, T. i. 148; Shet, *pp.* shut, R 529.
 Sheves, *pl.* sheaves, HF. 2140.
 Sheweth, *pr.* *s.* pretends, appears, B 2386; appears as, is shewn, A. i. 7. 9.
 Shifte, *v.* provide, distribute, ordain, D 104; assign, G 278.
 Shilde, *pr.* *s.* *subj.* shield, T. ii. 1019; defend, B 2098; forbid, A 3427.
 Shimering, *s.* glimmer, A 4297.
 Shine, *s.* shin, A 386.
 Shined, *pt.* *s.* shone, L 2194.
 Ship, *s.* 1. 16; Shippe, *dat.* (into the) ship, into the) ark, A 3540.
 Shippe, *s.* hire, pay, reward, 7. 191; Shepe, hire, I 568. A.S. *scýpe*, stipendium.
 Shipman, *s.* sailor, skipper, A 388.
 Shipnes, *pl.* stables, sheds, D 871. See Shepne.
 Shirreve, *s.* sheriff, A 359. *Lit.* 'shire-reeve.'
 Shiten, *pp.* defiled, dirty, A 924.
 Shitting, *s.* shutting, R 1598.
 Shivers, *s.* thin slice, D 1840.
 Shiveren, *pr.* *pl.* break, A 2005.
 Sho, shoe, A 251.
 Shod, *pp.* provided with shoes, HF. 98.
 Shode, *s.* parting of the hair, A 3316; the temple of the head, A 2007.
 Shof, *pt.* *s.* pushed, T. iii. 487.
 Shoken, *pt.* *pl.* shook, R 305.
 Sholder-bone, *s.* shoulder-blade-bone, C 350.
 Shonde, *s.* disgrace, HF. 88; B 2098.
 Shoo, *s.* shoe, D 492; Shooe, *pl.* A 457; Shoon, *pl.* B 1922.
 Shoof, *pt.* *s.* 1. *p.* shoved, pushed, R 524; *pt.* *s.* drove, L 2412.
 Shoon (shóon), *pl.* of Shoo.
 Shoon (shóon), *pt.* *s.* of Shyne.
 Shorn, *pp.* shaven, B 3142.
 Shorte, *v.* shorten, D 1261; *to* shorte with your weye, to shorten your way with, A 791.
 Shortly, *adv.* briefly, A 30.
 Short-sholdred, *adj.* short in the upper arm, A 549.
 Shot, *s.* a missile, B 4539; arrow, A 2544.
 Shot-windowe, *s.* a window containing a square division which opens on a hinge, A 3358, 3695.
 Shour, *s.* shower, T. iv. 751; onset, conflict, T. iv. 47; *pl.* assaults, T. i. 470. Cf. E. 'a shower of darts.'
 Showving, *s.* shoving, pushing, H 53.
 Shredde, *pt.* *s.* shred, out, E 227.
 Shrewe, *s.* scoundrel, accursed wretch, D 284; shrew, peevish woman, E 1222, 2428, planet having an evil influence, A. ii. 4. 54; evil one, G 917.
 Shrewe, *adj.* evil, wicked, G 995.
 Shrewe, *1 pr.* *s.* beshrew, curse, B 4616.
 Shrewed, *adj.* evil, wicked, bad, L 1545; accursed, D 54.
 Shrewedly, *adv.* cursedly, D 2238.
 Shrewednesse, *s.* wickedness, evil, B 2721; cursedness, D 734, *pl.* evil deeds, I 442.
 Shrifte-fadres, *pl.* father-confessors, D 1442.
 Shrighte, *pt.* *s.* shrieked, A 2527; *pp.* T. v. 322.
 Shrimpees, *pl.* small creatures, dwarfs, B 3145.
 Shroud, *s.* robe, R 64.
 Shrouded, *pp.* clad, R 55.
 Shryked, *pt.* *pl.* shrieked, B 4591.
 Shryking, *s.* shrieking, T. v. 381.
 Shryned, *pp.* enshrined, C 955; canonised (*ironically*), 21. 15.
 Shryve, *ger.* to confess, I 129.
 Shulder-boon, *s.* blade-bone, I 603.
 Shuldres, *pl.* shoulders, R 328.
 Shull, Shullen, Shulde; see Shal.
 Shyne, *ger.* to shine, 10. 62; Shóon, *strong* *pt.* *s.* shone, A 198; Shynede, *weak* *pt.* *s.* shone, L 1119; Shined, L 2194.
 Sib, *adj.* related, akin, B 2565.
 Sicomour, *s.* sycamore, HF. 1278.
 Sicer, *s.* strong drink, B 3245.
 Sigh, *1 pt.* *s.* saw, R 818.

- Sights**, *pl. s. of Syke*.
- Signet**, *a. signet-ring*, T. ii. 1087.
- Signifiaunce**, *s. signification*, R. 925; *significance*, HF. 17; *prediction*, R. 16.
- Significavit**, *a writ of excommunication*, A. 662.
- Sik**, *adj. sick, ill*, A. 1600.
- Siker**, *adj. sure*, A. 3040, B. 4353; *safe*, G. 864; *certain*, G. 1047; *sure, steady*, D. 2009; *in security*, 17. 28.
- Siker**, *adv. uninterruptedly*, T. iii. 1237; *surely*, T. ii. 991.
- Sikerer**, *pp. assured*, L. 2128.
- Sikerer**, *adj. surer, more to be trusted*, B. 4043.
- Sikerly**, *adv. certainly, surely, truly*, A. 117.
- Sikernesce**, *s. security, safety, confidence*, B. 425; *state of security*, T. ii. 773.
- Sikly**, *adv. ill, with ill will*, E. 625.
- Silver**, *s. money*, A. 232, 713.
- Silver**, *adj. silvery*, A. 1296.
- Similitude**, *s. comparison, hence, proposition, statement*, G. 431; *sympathy, likeness*, F. 480; *one like himself*, A. 3228.
- Simphonye**, *s. a kind of labor*, B. 2005.
- Simple**, *adj. modest*, R. 1014; *innocent*, 3. 801.
- Simplesse**, *s. Simplicity (personified)*, R. 954.
- Sin**, *conj. and adv. since*, 4. 373.
- Singe**, *v. sing*, A. 136; *Singestow*, *singest thou*, H. 244; *Song*, 1 *pt. s. sang*, 3. 1158; *Songe*, 2 *pt. s. didst sing*, H. 294; *Song*, *pt. s. A. 1055*; *Songen*, *pt. pl. sang*, F. 55; *Songe*, *pt. s. subj. were to sing*, 3. 929; *Songen*, *pp. sung*, T. v. 645, *Songe*, *pp. A. 266*; *recited*, T. v. 1797.
- Singularitees**, *s. pl. separate parts, particulars*, B. 5. m. 2. 45.
- Singular**, *adj. particular*, B. 2. p. 7. 64; *single*, I. 400, *a single*, G. 997, *private*, B. 2025; *singular profyte*, *special advantage*, HF. 310.
- Singularly**, *adv. singly*, B. 4. p. 6. 77.
- Sinne**, *s. sin*, A. 501.
- Sinwes**, *s. pl. sinews*, I. 690.
- Sippe**, *v. sip, taste*, D. 176.
- Sire**, *sr, my master*, A. 355; *Sires*, *gen. sire's, father's, i. e. Saturn's*, E. 2265.
- Sis cink**, *i. e. six-five, a throw with two dice*, B. 125.
- Sisoures**, *pl. scissors*, HF. 690.
- Sit**, *pr. s. sits* - see *Sitte*.
- Site**, *s. situation*, HF. 1114; E. 199.
- Sith**, *conj. since*, A. 930; *Sith that, since*, F. 930, H. 120.
- Sith**, *adv. afterwards*, C. 869; *then*, L. 302.
- Sithen**, *conj. since*, B. 2047; *Sithen that, since*, A. 2102.
- Sithen**, *adv. since, ago*, A. 1221; *since then*, R. 1641; *since*, T. iii. 244, *afterwards*, A. 2617; *then, next*, L. 114; *900 a. a greet whyt, a greet while ago*, L. 437, *900 a. longe whyt, long ago*, T. i. 718.
- Sithes**, *pl. times*, A. ii. 48. 9.
- Sitte**, *v. sit*, A. 94; *Sit. pr. s. sits, dwells*, A. 1500, 2641; *befits, suits*, B. 1253; *is fitting*, T. i. 246; *yet it sit, it is unbecoming*, E. 460; *Sat, pt. s. sat*, A. 469; *affected*, T. iv. 231, *sited*, L. 1745; *became*, R. 701; *sot on knees, knelt*, 1. 106, *hit out me sore, it was very painful for me*, 3. 1220; T. iii. 240, *Seet, pt. s. sat (false form, due to pl. seten)*, A. 2072; *Seten, pt. pl. sat*, A. 2803; *Sete, pt. s. subj. would befit*, T. i. 985, ii. 117; *were to sit*, 3. 436, *was sitting*, 3. 501; *Seten, pp. sat*, D. 420; *dwelt*, A. 1452; *soel sittinge, well suited*, R. 986.
- Sittingest**, *sup. adj. most fitting*, 5. 531.
- Sive**, *s. sieve*, G. 910.
- Sixte**, *sixth*, D. 45, F. 906.
- Skant**, *adj. scanty, sparing, niggardly*, 1. 175.
- Skarmish**, *s. skirmish*, T. ii. 611.
- Skars**, *adj. scarce*, 9. 36.
- Skathe**, *s. harm*, T. iv. 207.
- Skile**, *s. reason, cause*, HF. 726; *gret at good reason*, E. 1152; *reasonable claim*, L. 1392; *pl. reasons, arguments*, HF. 867.
- Skilful**, *adj. reasonable*, L. 385; *discerning*, B. 1038.
- Skilfully**, *adv. reasonably, with reason*, G. 420; *particularly*, 4. 155.
- Skilinge**, *s. reason*, B. 4. p. 6. 155.
- Skinketh**, *pt. s. pours out*, E. 1732.
- Skippe**, *ger. to skip, jump*, T. i. 218; *v. dance*, A. 3259; *leap*, E. 1672, *pass over*, L. 622; *Skipte, pt. s. leapt*, F. 1402.
- Skulle**, *s. skull*, A. 4935, 4906.
- Skye**, *s. cloud*, HF. 1600.
- Slake**, *v. assuage*, R. 317; *slacken, abate*, F. 841; *desist (from)*, E. 705; *cease*, E. 137; *end*, E. 802; *Slake of, omit*, L. 619, *Slake, pr. s. subj. grow slack, wane*, T. ii. 291; *Slakede, pt. s. subj. should relax*, B. 2. m. 8. 18.
- Slakke**, *adj. slow*, A. 2901, *def. slack*, E. 1849.
- Slakker**, *adj. pl. slacker, more tardy*, B. 1603.

- Sledges**, *s.* pl. sledges, vehicles, B 4. p 1. 78. Pl. of *sled*.
Slee, *v.* A 661; **Sleen**, *ger.* to slay, A 1222;
Slee, *i.* pr. *s.* as fut. shall slay, B 2002;
Sleeth, *pr.* *s.* slays, A 1118; **Slowe**, *2* pt.
s. didst slay, T. iv. 306; **Slow**, *pt.* *s.*
slaw, B 637; extinguished, B 3932;
Slough, *pt.* *s.* 7. 56; **Slawe**, *pp.* slain,
A 943; **Slawen**, *pp.* E 344; **Slayn**, *pp.*
slain, A 63.
Sleep, *pt.* *s.* of **Slepe**.
Sleere, *s.* slayer, A 2005.
Sleet, *s.* sleet, L 1220; F 1230.
Sleigh, *adj.* sly, artful, A 3201.
Sleightly, *adv.* cunningly, T. v. 83.
Sleighte, *s.* trickery, T. iv. 1459; trick,
B 2386; **slight**, T. ii. 1512; contrivance,
E 1102; plan, E 2131; dexterity, A 1948;
cunning, L 1382; skill, G 867; *pl.* plans,
T. iv. 1451; devices, tricks, E 2421.
Slely, *adv.* sily, i. *e.* skilfully, A. ii. 29. 20.
Slepe, *s.* sleep, F 347; *on slepe*, asleep, L
209.
Slepe, *v.* sleep, 3. 3; **Slepestow**, *sleepest*
thou, A 4169; **Sleep**, *i.* pt. *s.* slept, HF.
119; **Sleep**, *pt.* *s.* A 98; **Slepte**, *weak* pt.
s. E 224; **Slepe**, *pt.* *pl.* 3. 166, 177.
Sleping, *s.* sleep, B 4202.
Sleping-tyne, *s.* time to sleep, G. 54.
Slepy, *adj.* sleep-bestowing, A 1387.
Slewthe, *s.* sloth, I 388.
Sloye, *pt.* sly, subtle, T. iv. 972.
Sleyly, *adv.* sily, T. ii. 1185; subtly, T.
ii. 462.
Slider, *adj.* slippery, A 1264.
Slighte, *s.* sleight, cunning, C 131.
Slike, *adj.* sleek, R. 542.
Slinge-stones, *pl.* stones from a sling,
T. ii. 941.
Slinke, *ger.* to slink, T. iii. 1535.
Slippe, *v.* slip, L. 623.
Slit, *pr.* *s.* of **Slyde**.
Slitten, *v.* pierce, F 1260.
Slivers, *s.* a slice, portion, T. iii. 1013.
Slo, *s.* sloe, R. 928; **Sloo**, A 3246.
Slogardy, *s.* sluggishness, sloth, laziness,
A 1042.
Slombrestow, *slumberest* thou, T. i. 730.
Slombry, *adj.* sleepy, I 724.
Slomerings, *s.* slumber, T. ii. 67.
Slong, *pt.* *s.* threw, flung, H 306. *Pt.* *s.*
of *slingen*.
Sloo, *s.* sloe, A 3246; **Slo**, R. 928.
Sloppes, *s.* pl. loose garments, I 432.
Slough, *s.* slough, mire, H 64.
Slough, *pt.* *s.* slew, A 980; *see* **Slee**.
Slouths, *s.* sloth, T. ii. 939.
Slow, *s.* slough, D 1565; **Slough**, H 64.
- Slow**, *pt.* *s.* of **Slee**.
Slowh, *pt.* *s.* slow, B 4. m 7. 43.
Sluggy, *adj.* sluggish, I 706.
Sluttish, *adj.* slovenly, G 636.
Sly, *adj.* L. 1369; sly (one), A 3940; **Slye**,
def. cunning, crafty, 7. 48; skilful,
F 672; *pl.* artfully contrived, F 230.
Slyde, *v.* slide, T. v. 351; pass, go away,
E 82, F 924; **Slit**, *pr.* *s.* passes away, 5.
3; G 682; **Slydings**, *pres.* *pt.* *as* *adj.*
moving, i. *e.* unstable, T. v. 825.
Slyk (for **Slyke**?), *adj.* sleek, D 351.
Slyk, *adj.* such (Northern), A 4130, 4170.
Slyly, *adv.* sagaciously, A 1444.
Smal, *adj.* small, A 153; *a* *smal*, a little,
G. 113.
Smal, *adv.* little, D 592; *but smal*, but
little, F 71; high (of musical notes), 12.
11.
Smallish, *adj.* smallish, R. 826.
Smart, *adj.* brisk (said of a fire), G 708.
Smatre, *pr.* *pl.* *vs.* taste slightly, I 857.
Smert, *adj.* smart, quick, R. 831; brisk,
G 768; *pl.* painful, 3. 507.
Smerte, *s.* pain, smart, F 480, 826, 974;
anguish, A 3813.
Smerte, *adv.* smartly, sharply, A 149;
sorely, E 629.
Smerte, *ger.* to smart, L. 302; **Smert**, *pr.*
s. pains (me), i. 152; **Smerte**, *pr.* *s.* *subj.*
(it) may pain, A 1394; **Smerte**, *pt.* *s.*
felt pain, T. ii. 930; **Smerte**, *pt.* *s.* *subj.*
impers. (it) might give pain to, A 230.
Smit, *-en*; *see* **Smyte**.
Smithed, *pt.* *s.* forged, A 3762.
Smitted, *pp.* smatted, i. *e.* beamirched,
sullied with dishonour, T. v. 1545.
Smoking, *pres.* *pt.* reeking with incense
or perfume, A 2281.
Smokless, *adj.* without a smock, E 875.
Smoky, *adj.* smoke-like, T. iii. 628.
Smoot, *pt.* *s.* of **Smyte**.
Smoterliche, *adj.* smirched in reputa-
tion, A 3961.
Smothe, *adj.* smooth, A 690.
Smothe, *adv.* smoothly, A 676.
Smyler, *s.* smiler, flatterer, A 1999.
Smyte, *v.* strike, A 1220; **Smyten** *of*,
smite off, L. 1817; **Smyteth**, *pr.* *s.*
knocks, L. 393; **Smit**, *pr.* *s.* smiten,
E 125; **Smoot**, *pt.* *s.* smote, struck, A
149; **Smiten**, *pp.* struck, T. ii. 1145.
Snewed, *pt.* *s.* abounded, A 345.
Snibben, *v.* reprove, chide, lit. 'snub,'
A 523; *pp.* reprimanded, A 4401.
Snorteth, *pr.* *s.* snorts, A 4163; *pt.* *s.* was
drawn together (as in sniffing), R. 157.
Snow, *s.* R. 558; argent (in heraldry)

- white, B 3573; *pl.* snow-storms, HF 967.
- Snowish**, *adj.* snowy, white, T. iii. 1259.
- So**, *adv.* so, A 103; such, B 2205; in such a way, such, T. iii. 1579; so, i.e. pray (with verb in subj. mood), T. iii. 1470; So as, as well as, as far as, 4. 161, so have I joye, as I hope to have bliss, 3. 1065.
- So**, *conj.* provided that, L. 1319; So as, whereas, B 4. p. 3. 40; So that, provided that, C 186.
- Sobrelly**, *adv.* gravely, F 1585; Soberly, sadly, with a melancholy look, A 289.
- Sobrenesse**, *s.* sobriety, I 834.
- Socour**, *succour*, help, A 918, F 1357, do you a., help you, 4. 292.
- Socouren**, *v.* aid, T. iii. 1264.
- Socours**, *s.* help, L. 1341.
- Soden**, *pp.* sodden, boiled, I 901.
- Sodein**, *adj.* prompt, forward, T. v. 1024.
- Sodeinly**, *adv.* suddenly, F 1015.
- Softe**, *adj.* soft, A 153; gentle, slow, B 399; mild, D 1412.
- Softe**, *adv.* softly, A 2781; gently, C 252; tenderly, B 275; timidly, 3. 1212.
- Softely**, *adv.* softly, F 636; quietly, G 408; in a low tone, L. 2126.
- Softneth**, *pr.* *s.* assuages, L. 50.
- Sojourne**, *v.* dwell, T. v. 1350; tarry, R. 181; remain, D 987.
- Soken**, *s.* toll, A 3987. A. S. *sōcn*.
- Sokingly**, *adv.* gradually, B 2760. 'Sokyngly, *idem quod* esyly', Prompt. Parv.
- Sol**, *Sol* (the sun), G 826.
- Solas**, *s.* amusement, A 798; solace, I 206; comfort, F 803; consolation, T. ii. 460; relief, B 1972; diversion, B 1904; pleasure, B 3964; playfulness, R. 844; joy, T. i. 31; ease, L. 1906.
- Solde**, *pt.* *s.* of *Selle*.
- Solempne**, *adj.* festive, grand, E 1125; cheerful, A 200; important, A 364; illustrious, B 387; superb, F 61; public, I 102.
- Solempnely**, *adv.* pompously, with pomp, A 274.
- Solempnitee**, *s.* pomp, A 870; outward show, C 144; due ceremony, E 1709.
- Soleyn**, *adj.* sole, solitary, 3. 982; unmated, 5. 607, 614.
- Solsticioun**, *s.* the solstice, or point of the ecliptic most remote from the equator, A 1. 17. 9.
- Som** (*sum*), *indef. pron.* some, A 640, B 1182; one, a certain man, G 912; one, 3. 305; another, 5. 476; *som shrewd is*, some one (at least) is wicked, G 995; Som . . . som, one . . . another, A 3031.
- Somme**, *pl.* some, B 2139; some (of them), L. 1050.
- Somdel**, *adv.* somewhat, B 4011; a little, L. 1183; in some measure, A 3911.
- Somer**, *s.* summer, A 304; Someres game, summer-game, athletic exhibition, D 648.
- Somer-essoun**, *s.* spring, early summer, B 3. p. 8. 43.
- Somme**, *pl.* some, T. iv. 995; see *Som*.
- Somme**, *s.* sum, F 1220; chief point, upshot, L. 1559; *pl.* sums of money, B 1407, G 675.
- Somme**, *v.*; see *Sompne*.
- Sompour**, *s.* summoner, apparitor, an officer who summoned delinquents before the ecclesiastical courts, A 343.
- Somonce**, *s.* summons, D 1586.
- Sompne**, *v.* summon, D 1577; *Somme*, *s.* D 1347.
- Sompnolence**, *s.* somnolence, I 706.
- Somtyms**, *adv.* once, A 65, 85; sometimes, B 1667; some day, B 110.
- Sond**, *s.* sand, B 509, 4457.
- Sonde**, *s.* message, B 382, 1049; sending, I 625; gifts, B 1049; visitation, B 704, 826; trial, B 902; message (or messenger), G 525.
- Sonded**, *pp.* sanded, T. ii. 822.
- Sondry**, *adj.* various, A 14, 25.
- Sone** (*sune*), *s.* son, A 79, 336.
- Sone**, *adv.* soon, A 1022; speedily, D 1204.
- Sone-in-lawe**, *s.* son-in-law, E 315.
- Sonest**, *adv.* *superl.* soonest, B 3716.
- Song**, -e, -en, see *Singe*.
- Sonne**, *s.* sun, A 7, 32.
- Sonne-beem**, *s.* sunbeam, D 862.
- Sonnish**, *adj.* sun-like, golden, T. iv. 73, 816.
- Soor**, *s.* sore, wound, A 1454.
- Soor**, *adj.* wounded, grieved, A 2005; sore, F 1571; sad, T. v. 639.
- Soot**, *s.* soot, an emblem of bitterness, T. iii. 1194.
- Sooth**, *adj.* true, L. 14, as *adv.* truly, C 636.
- Sooth**, *s.* truth, A 284; Sothe, G 661, Sothe, *dat.* B 1939.
- Soothfastnesse**, *s.* truth, B 4518.
- Soothly**, *adv.* truly, A 117.
- Sooty**, *adj.* begrimed with soot, B 4021.
- Sop**, *s.* sop (of toasted bread), E 1843; Sop in wyn, wine with bread soaked in it, A 334.
- Soper**, *s.* supper, A 348; Soper, F 1189.
- Sophistrye**, *s.* evil cunning, L. 137.

- Sophyme**, *s.* a sophism, trick of logic, E 5; *pl.* deceits, F 554.
- Sore**, *adv.* sorely, A 148; *bar so sore*, bore so ill, E 85.
- Sore**, *ger.* to soar, HF. 531; to mount aloft, F 153.
- Sorer**, *adv.* more sorely, L 302.
- Sorest**, *adv.* most sorely, S. 404.
- Sormounte**, *ger.* to surpass, R. 667; *pr.* *s.* rises above, T. iii. 1038.
- Sort**, *s.* lot, T. ii. 1754; destiny, chance, A 844; kind, A 4381; divination, T. i. 76.
- Sorted**, *pt.* *s.* allotted, T. v. 1827.
- Sorwe**, *s.* sorrow, grief, A 951; mourning, B 2171; sympathy, compassion, F 422; *with sorwe*, with ill luck to you, D 708.
- Sorwestow**, thou sorrowest, B 1. p 6. 80; *pr.* *s.* I 85; *pr.* *pl.* A 2824.
- Sorweful**, *adj.* sorrowful, L. 1832.
- Sorwefulleste**, *adj.* most sorrowful, E 2098.
- Sorwefully**, *adv.* sadly, A 2978.
- Sorwing**, *s.* sorrow, S. 606.
- Sory**, *adj.* sorrowful, mournful, A 2024, 2020; sad, B 2899; unlucky, B 1949; ill, C 876; miserable, H 55.
- Sory**, *adv.* sorely, B 2. p 4. 102.
- Soster**, *s.* sister, A 3486.
- Sote**, *adj.* sweet, A 1, B 2348.
- Sote**, *adv.* sweetly, L. 2612.
- Sotel**, *adj.* subtle, cunning, L. 43.
- Soteltee**, subtlety, skill, L. 77.
- Soth**, *adj.* true, B 169; Sooth, L. 14.
- Sothe**, *s.* truth, A 845. See Sooth.
- Sother**, *adj.* comp. truer, G 214.
- Sothfastnesse**, *s.* truth, B 2365; certainty, I 382.
- Sothly**, *adv.* verily, soothly, A. *pr.* 23.
- Soth-sawe**, *s.* true saying, truth, HF. 2089; *pl.* HF. 676.
- Sotil**, *adj.* subtle, cunning, L. 1536, 2599; subtly woven, A 1054; thin, A 2032.
- Sotilly**, *adv.* skilfully, R. 1119, cleverly, R. 772.
- Sotted**, *adj.* besotted, defooled, G 1341.
- Souded**, *pp.* confirmed, B 1769.
- Sought**, *-s*; see Seke.
- Souke**, *ger.* to suck, A 4157; to embattle, A 4416; *pp.* been at the breast, E 430.
- Soul**, *adj.* sole, single, E 2082.
- Soule**, *s.* soul, A 656, 781.
- Soulfre**, *s.* sulphur, HF. 1508.
- Soun**, *s.* sound, musical sound, A 674, E 271; vaunt, L. 267; *pl.* sounds, A 2512.
- Sound**, *adj.* unhurt, L. 1619; *pl.* in strong health, T. iii. 1526.
- Sounde**, *ger.* to heal, make sound, 7. 242; *v.* heal, R. 962.
- Soune**, *ger.* to sound, to utter, T. ii. 573; imitate in sound, speak alike, F 105; Sonnen, *v.* sound, hence, tend, redound, T. i. 1036; Sonneth, *pr.* *s.* tends (towards), relates, (to), T. iii. 1414; *is* consonant (with), B 3157; makes (for), H 195; Sonnen, *pr.* *pl.* tend, I 1068; *pl.* *s.* inclined, T. iv. 1676; *pr.* *pl.* accordant with, in agreement with, A 275; Soundinge in, tending to, A 307.
- Sounded**; *best* *s.*, best-sounding, T. ii. 1031.
- Soupe**, *v.* sup, T. ii. 944.
- Souper**, *s.* supper, T. ii. 947.
- Souple**, *adj.* pliant, A 203.
- Sourdeth**, *pr.* *s.* arises, I 475.
- Soure**, *adj.* bitter, cruel, B 1. p 4. 88.
- Soure**, *adv.* sourly, bitterly, B 2022.
- Sources**, *s.* *pl.* sorrels, backs of the third year, S. 429.
- Sourmounteth**, *pr.* *s.* surmounts, rises above, T. iii. 1038.
- Sours**, *s.* source, origin, T. v. 1591; B 49; *s.* springing aloft, HF. 544; swift upward flight, D 1938, 1941.
- Souter**, *s.* cobbler, A 3004.
- Soutiltee**, *s.* device, D 576.
- Bouvenance**, *s.* remembrance, 24. 14.
- Soveraynetee**, *s.* sovereignty, E 114, F 751; supremacy, D 818.
- Sovereyn**, *adj.* supreme, very high, A 67; chief, B 1339; sovereign, D 1048, superior, A ii. 28. 39 (a technical term, applied to the western signs of the zodiac); *as* *a* lord, 1. 69; master, G 590; Sovereyne, *fem.* 5. 422; Sovereyns, *pl.* superiors, I 392, 402.
- Sovereynly**, *adv.* royally, B 2462; chiefly, B 4552.
- Sovereyntee**, *s.* supremacy, D 1038.
- Sowdan**, *s.* sultan, B 177.
- Sowdanee**, *s.* sultaneess, B 158.
- Sowe**, *v.* sew up, T. ii. 1201, 1204; *pp.* sewn, A 685.
- Sowen**, *v.* sow, B 1182; Sowen, *pp.* R. 1617; Sowe, *pp.* T. i. 185.
- Sowle**, *s.* soul, life, T. ii. 1734.
- Sowled**, *pp.* endued with a soul, G 329.
- Sowne**, *v.* sound, play upon, A 565; sound, T. iii. 189; Sowneth, *pr.* *s.* sounds, I 160; signifies, A. i. 21. 62; *pr.* *pl.* play, F 270; Sowneth, *pr.* *pl.* tend (to), *are* consonant (with), F 517, Sounded, *pl.* *pl.* tended, B 3348. See Soune.
- Space**, *s.* room, T. i. 714; space of time, A 87; while, G 239; opportunity, spare time, A 35; course, A 176.

Sparrow, *s.* sparrow, A 636.
Spaynel, *s.* spaniel, D 267.
Specie, *s.* species, sort, I 407; *pl.* kinds, / 3013, I 865.
Speche, *s.* speech, L. 1084, discourse, A 707, talk, A 781, D 1020 address, 1131; oratory, F 104.
Special, *adj.* special; *in special*, especially, in particular, A 444, 1017.
Spéctacle, *s.* eye-glass, D 1201.
Spede, *ger.* to succeed, C 114, Spede me, *v.* be quick, S. 385; Spede, *pp.* *s.* subj. speed, prosper, A 760, Spelde *pl.* *s.* hastened, moved quickly, A 3640, made to prosper, B 3876; *pl.* *s.* refl. hasten, 4 1117; *1 pl.* *s.* refl. L. 200; *pp.* terminated, determined, S. 101, accomplished, 4 357.
Speed, *s.* help, T. ii. 9; success, T. i. 17 for *comune spede*, for the good of all, 5 507.
Speedful, *adj.* advantageous, B 727.
Speere, *s.* sphere, F 1283.
Speke, *v.* speak, 2. 852; Spokestow, speakest thou, G 473; Spak, *1 pl.* *s.* spake, L. 97, *pl.* *s.* 3. 503; Spoken, *pl.* *pl.* 3. 350; Spuken (*better* Spoken), *pl.* *pl.* spake, T. i. 508; Speke, *pl.* *s.* subj. might speak, T. ii. 1119; Spoken, *pp.* A 31.
Speking, *s.* speech-making, oratory, S. 488; speaking, H 335.
Spelle, *s.* *dat.* a story, B 2083.
Spence, *s.* buttery, D 1031.
Spending-silver, *s.* silver to spend, money in hand, G 1018.
Spero, *s.* spear, A 114; *as nigh as men wth casten with a mere* . . .

Spyced, *pp.* spiced, A 3378; scrupulous, A 526, D 435.

Spycerye, *s.* collection of spices, mixture of spices, A 2935, B 136.

Spyr, *s.* spire, shoot, T. ii. 1335.

Squames, *s. pl.* scales, G 759.

Squaymous, *adj.* squeamish, sparing (except rarely), A 3337.

Squiereth, *pr. s.* attends, accompanies, D 305.

Squire, *s.* a 'square,' a carpenter's instrument for measuring right angles, D 2000; *pl.* measuring-rules, A. i. 12. 3.

Squyer, *s.* squire, A 79.

Stable, *adj.* abiding, A 3004, 3009; firm, 3. 645; sure, E 1499; constant, 4. 281; steadfast, F 871.

Stablissed, *pp.* established, A 2995.

Stadie, *s.* race-course, B 4. p 3. 11.

Staf, *s.* staff, stick, L. 2000; (perhaps a bed-staff), A 4294, 4296; *Staves*, *gen.* of the shaft of a car, 7. 184.

Staf-slinge, *s.* a staff-sling, sling with a handle, B 2019.

Stages, *pl.* positions, HF. 122.

Stak, *pt. s.* stuck, T. iii. 1372; was fastened on, R. 458.

Stakereth, *pr. s.* staggers, L. 2687.

Stal, *pt. s.* of *Stelen*.

Stalke, *s.* stalk, A 1036; piece of straw, A 3919; *Stalkes*, *pl.* (Lat. *palmites*), B 1. m 6. 15; stems, T. ii. 968; uprights of a ladder, A 3625.

Stalke, *v.* creep up (to), T. ii. 519; move stealthily, L. 1781; *pr. s.* walks stealthily, A 1479; moves slowly, A 3648.

Stalle, *s. dat.* ox-stall, T. v. 1469.

Stamin, *s.* a coarse harsh cloth, tamine, tammy, L. 2360; I 1052. O.F. *estamine*.

Stampe, *pr. pl.* bray in a mortar, C 538.

Stanchd, *pp.* staunchd, B 2. p 2. 53.

Stank, *s.* lake, tank, pool, I 841. E. *tank*.

Stant, stands; see *Stonde*.

Stapen, *pp.* advanced, B 4011, E 1514 (in MS. E.).

Stare, *s.* starling, 5. 348.

Starf, *pt. s.* of *Sterve*.

Stark, *adj.* strong, E 1458; severe, B 3560.

Startling, moving suddenly, L. 1204.

Staunchen, *v.* satisfy, B 3. m 2. 3.

Stede, *s.* place, HF. 731; in *stede of*, instead of, B 3208.

Stede, *s.* steed, A 2157.

Stedfastnesse, *s.* constancy, firmness, E 699; stability, 15. 7.

Steer, *s.* bullock, A 2149.

Steked, *pp.* stuck, L. 161 a.

Stole, *s.* lit. handle; i. e. the (cool) end, A 3785.

Stelen, *v.* steal, A 562; *Steleth*, *pr. s.* steals away, B 21; *Stal*, *pt. s.* stole, L. 796; came (or went) cunningly, HF. 418; went stealthily, B 3763; *stal away*, stole away, 3. 381; *Stole*, *pp.* stolen, A 2627.

Stellifye, *v.* make into a constellation, HF. 586, 1002.

Stemed, *pt. s.* shone, glowed, A 202. A.S. *stēman*.

Stenten, *v.* leave off, A 903; *ger.* to stay, A 2442; *v.* cease, leave off, B 3925; *Stente*, 2 *pr. s.* subj. cease, 18. 61; *Stente*, *pt. s.* ceased, stopped, 3. 154; L. 1240; remained, L. 821; stayed, T. i. 273; *Stente*, *pt. pl.* ceased, T. i. 60; delayed, L. 633; *pp.* stopped, A 1368.

Stepe, *adj. pl.* glittering, bright, A 201, 753. A.S. *stēap*.

Steppes, *pl.* foot-tracks, L. 829, 2209.

Stere, *s.* helm, rudder, B 833; pilot, helmsman, guide, B 448; in *stere*, upon my rudder, T. v. 641.

Stere, *v.* steer, rule, T. iii. 910; 1 *pr. s.* steer, T. ii. 4; *pp.* controlled, L. 935.

Stere, *v.* stir, move, excite, T. i. 228; propose, T. iv. 1451; *pr. s.* stirs, HF. 817.

Stereless, *adj.* rudderless, B 439.

Steresman, *s.* steersman, HF. 436.

Steringe, *s.* stirring, motion, HF. 800.

Sterlinges, *pl.* sterling coins, C 907.

Sterne, *adj.* stern, E 465; violent, T. iii. 743.

Sterre, *s.* star, 5. 68, 300; constellation, HF. 599.

Stert, *s.* start. T. v. 254; at a *stert*, in a moment, A 1705.

Sterte, *v.* start, go quickly, T. ii. 1634; move away, T. iii. 949; pass away, B 335; leap, skip, R. 344; *Stert*, *pr. s.* rouses, HF. 681; *Sterte*, 1 *pt. s.* departed, T. iv. 93; rushed, L. 811; leapt, A 952; went, T. ii. 1004; went at once, L. 660; *Sterting*, *pres. pt.* bursting suddenly, L. 1741.

Sterve, *v.* die. A 1249; die of famine, C 451; *Starf*, *pt. s.* L. 1691; A 933, B 283; *Storven*, *pt. pl.* C 888.

Stevne, *s.* voice, sound, language, A 2562; rumour, talk, T. iii. 1723; time, moment, esp. of an appointment, A 1524; sound, L. 1219; meeting by appointment, 4. 52; *sette st.*, made appointment, A 4383.

Stewe, *s.* a fish-pond, A 350; a small room, closet, T. iii. 601; brothel, HF. 26.

- Stowe-dore**, *s.* closet-door, T. iii. 698.
Stayre, *s.* degree (Lat *gradus*), 4. 129;
Steyres, *gen.* stairs, T. iii. 205.
Stiborn, *adj.* stubborn, D 486, 637.
Stidefast, *adj.* steadfast, B 2641.
Stif, *adj.* strong, A 673; bold, R. 1270,
 hard, D 2267.
Stiken, *ger.* to stick, T. i. 297; *Stiked*,
pt. *s.* stuck, B 809; fixed, B 2097, *Stikede*,
pt. *s.* pierced, B 2897; *Stikked*, fixed.
 L. 2202; *pp.* stabbed, B 430; *a stiked*
swyn, a stuck pig, C 556.
Stikinge, *s.* sticking, setting, I 954.
Stikke, *pl.* palings, B 4038.
Stillatorie, *s.* still, vessel used in distil-
 lation, G 580.
Stille, *adv.* quietly, L. 826; still, D 2220.
Stille, *ger.* to silence, T. ii. 230.
Stingeth, *pr.* *s.* pierces, L. 643.
Stinte, *v.* leave off, A 1334; cease, G 883;
 cease to cease, 1. 61; end, E 747; *ger.* to
 cease, B 2164; to stop, T. ii. 283; cease,
 I 720; restrain, R. 1441; stop, avert,
 L. 1647; *Stinte*, *1 pr.* *s.* leave off telling,
 HF. 1417, *pr.* *pl.* cease, I 93; *pt.* *s.* subj.
 may cease, B 412, *Stinte*, *pt.* *s.* ceased,
 A 2421, was silent, 3. 1299; *pt.* *pl.*
 stopped (*or pr.* *pl.* stop), L. 294; *Stinte*,
pt. *s.* subj. should cease, T. i. 848; *pp.*
 stopped, T. iii. 1016, *stint thy clappe*,
 hold your tongue, A 3144, *Stinteth*,
imp. *pl.* stay, T. ii. 1729.
Stintinge, *s.* ceasing, end, B 2. in 7. 37.
Stiren, *v.* stir, excite, B 2696.
Stiropea, *s.* *pl.* stirrups, B 1163.
Stirte, *pt.* *s.* started, D 1046; rushed, H
 303; went quickly, E 2153.
Stith, *s.* anvil, A 2006. *Icel.* *stith*.
Stod, -e; see **Stonde**.
Stok, *s.* a block of wood, A. ii. 18. 6,
 source, 14. 1, race, A 1551; *pl.* stumps,
 A 2934, posts, T. iii. 589.
Stoke, *ger.* to stab, thrust, A 2546.
Stokked, *pp.* fastened in the stocks, T.
 iii. 380.
Stole, *s.* stool, frame for tapestry-work,
 L. 2352; *pl.* chairs, D 288.
Stole, *pp.* of **Stelen**.
Stomak, *s.* stomach, T. i. 787; appetite,
 D 1847; compassion, D 1441.
Stomblen, *pr.* *pl.* stumble, A 2613.
Stonde, *v.* stand, B 1050, be placed, A
 745; be understood, be fixed, E 346; be
 set in view (as a prize at a game), B
 1931; *synt.* *stonde*, finds standing, L.
 1499, *Stont*, *pr.* *s.* stands, is, T. iii. 1563;
Stant, *pr.* *s.* stands, B 618, consists, I
 107, 1029; is, B 1304; *Stood*, *pt.* *s.* A 354;
 stuck fast, D 1541; *Stonden*, *pp.* HF.
 1928.
Stongen, *pp.* stung, A 1079.
Stoon, *s.* stone, A 774; precious stone,
 gem, R. 1086.
Stoon-wal, stone-wall, L. 712.
Stoor, *s.* store, stock (of a farm), A 498,
 store, D 2159; value, D 203.
Stopen, *pp.* advanced, E 1514 (MS. E. has
stapen).
Stoppen, *v.* stop, T. ii. 804.
Store, *s.* store, value, B 4344; possession,
 L. 2337.
Store, *ger.* to store, B 1463.
Store, *adj.* *roc.* audacious, bold, E 2467.
Icel. *storr*.
Storial, *adj.* historical, A 3179; *Storial*
 sooth, historical truth, L. 702.
Storie, *s.* history, legend of a saint (or
 the like), A 709; history, E 1466, tale,
 story, 7. 10; *pl.* books of history, T. v.
 1044.
Storven, *pt.* *pl.* of **Sterve**, died, C 883.
Stot, *s.* a stallion, horse, cob, A 605,
 heifer (a term of abuse), D 1630.
Stoude, *s.* hour, time, while, A 2112,
 4007; short time, B 1041; moment, L.
 949; in a stoude, at a time, once, A
 3092; upon a stoude, in one hour, T. iv.
 625, *pl.* hours, seasons, T. iii. 1752.
Stoundemele, at various times, from
 time to time, T. v. 674.
Stoupe, *ger.* to stoop, G 1311.
Stour, *s.* battle, contest, R. 1270.
Stout, *adj.* strong, A 545.
Straighter, *adj.* more stretched out, more
 expanded, R. 119.
Strake, *v.* move, proceed, 3. 1312.
Strange, *adj.* strange, F 89, external, D
 1161, not its own, A. ii. 19. 7. Every
 star has its own degrees (of longitude,
 in the equator and ecliptic).
Strangenease, *s.* estrangement, B 1576.
Stranglen, *pr.* *pl.* strangle, worry, I 702.
Strangling, *s.* A 2458; of str., caused by
 strangling, L. 807.
Straight, -e, see **Strocche**.
Strange, *adj.* strange, foreign, A. ii.
 unwonted, 7. 202; difficult, hard to
 agree upon, F 1223; like a stranger, T.
 ii. 1660 unfriendly, estranged, R. 1005,
 distant, unbending, 5. 584; not well
 known, A. ii. 17. *rub.*, [a strange star is
 one that is not represented upon the
 Rate of the Astrolabe]; *pl.* strangers, T.
 ii. 411.
Straungely, *adv.* distantly, T. v. 935.
Straw, *s.* T. iii. 859; as *interj.* a straw! F 695.

Strawen, *v.* strow, L. 207; 2 *pr. s. subj.* F 613; *pp.* strewn, I 918.
Strayte, *s.* strait, B 464.
Strecche, *v.* stretch, B 4498; extend, T. ii. 341; reach, 7. 341; *Streighte*, *pt. s.* stretched, HF. 1373; *Straughte*, *pt. pl.* extended, A 2916; *Straughten*, *pt. pl.* stretched out, R. 1021; *Streight*, stretched out; *long str.*, stretched at full length, T. iv. 1163; *pp. as adv.* straight, T. ii. 599.
Stree, *s.* straw, A 2918; *pl.* 3. 718.
Streem, *s.* river, current, L. 2508; stream, A 464; ray (of light), 2. 94.
Streen, *s.* strain, i. e. stock, progeny, race, E 157.
Streight, *adj.* straight, 3. 937.
Streight, *adv.* straight, straightway, A 671.
Streight, -e; see **Strecche**.
Streit, *adj.* narrow, A 1984; scanty, R. 457; B 4179; strict, A 174; *pl.* scanty, small, D 1420. A.F. *estreit*.
Streite, *pp. as adj. def.* drawn, B 4547. (It here represents Lat. *strictus*.)
Streite, *adv.* closely, T. iv. 1689; strictly, L. 723; tightly, A 457.
Streitnes, *s.* smallness, A. i. 21. 55.
Stremeden, *pt. pl.* streamed, T. iv. 247.
Streng, *s.* string, D 2067; *pl.* 5. 197.
Stronger, *adj. comp.* stronger, B 2410.
Strongest, strongest, T. i. 243.
Strongest-feythed, strongest in faith, T. i. 1007.
Strengthe, *s.* strength, A 84; force, 3. 351; *pl.* sources of strength, B 3248.
Strepen, *v.* strip, E 1958; *do str. me*, cause me to be stripped, E 2200.
Strete, *s.* street, T. ii. 612; *dat.* HF. 1049; street, road, way, 1. 70; B 1683.
Streyne, *v.* compress, T. iii. 1205; strain, press, E 1753; constrain, E 144; hold, confine, R. 1471; *ger.* to compress, T. iii. 1071; *Streyne*, *pr. pl.* strain (as through a sieve), C 538.
Streyt, *adj.* small, B 3. m 2. 26.
Strike, *s.* hank (of flax), A 676.
Strogelest; see **Struggle**.
Stroke, *ger.* to stroke, T. iii. 1240.
Strokes, *pl.* of **Strook**.
Strompetes, *s. pl.* strumpets, B 1. p 1. 54.
Stronde, *dat.* shore, L. 2189; *Strondes*, *pl.* shores, A 13.
Strong, *adj.* difficult, B 2635; *pl.* severe, A 1338, 2771.
Stronge, *adv.* securely, R. 241.
Stroof, *pt. s.* of **Stryve**.

Strook, *s.* stroke, A 1701; *Strokes*, *pl.* T. iii. 1067.
Strouted, *pt. s.* stuck out, A 3315.
Strowe, *v.* strew, L. 101 a.
Stroyer, destroyer, 5. 360.
Strugle, *v.* struggle, E 2374; *Strogelest*, 2 *pr. s.* C 829.
Stryf, *s.* quarrel, strife, A 1187, 2784; took *stryf* = 'took up the cudgels,' B 1. p 4. 93.
Stryk, *s.* stroke, mark, A. ii. 12. 19.
Stryke, *v.* strike; *Stryken* out, strike out, D 1364; *Strike*, *pp.* struck, 11. 35.
Stryve, *v.* strive, struggle, 10. 30; oppose, E 170; *Stroof*, *pt. s.* strove, vied, A 1038.
Stryvinge, *s.* striving, strife, B 2674.
Stubbel-goos, *s.* fatted goose, A 4331.
Stubbes, *pl.* stumps, A 1978.
Studie, *s.* study, A 303; state of meditation, A 1530; *Study*, library, F 1207. 1214; *Studies*, *pl.* endeavours, B 3. p 2. 93; desires, B 4. p 2. 56.
Studie, *v.* study, A 184; *ger.* give heed, I 1090; *Studieth*, *pr. s.* deliberates, E 1955.
Stuffed, *pp.* filled, E 264.
Sturdely, *adv.* boldly, 4. 82.
Sturdinesse, *s.* sternness, E 700.
Sturdy, *adj.* cruel, hard, harsh, stern, E 698, 1049; firm, T. ii. 1380; D 2162.
Sty, *s.* pig-sty, D 1829.
Stye, *ger.* to mount up, B 4. p 6. 414.
Style (1), *s.* a stile, a means to get over a barrier by climbing, C 712, F 106.
Style (2), *s.* style, mode of writing, F 105.
Styves, *pl.* stews, D 1332.
Styward, *s.* steward, B 914.
Suasioun, *s.* persuasiveness, B 2. p 1. 45.
Subdekne, *s.* subdeacon, I 891.
Subgit, *adj.* subject, T. v. 1790; *Subget*, T. i. 231.
Subgit, *s.* subject, T. ii. 828; *pl.* servants, D 1990.
Subjeccion, *s.* (1), suggestion, (a thing subjected to the mind, I 351; (2), subjection, obedience, B 270; submission, 4. 32; subjection, governance, B 3656, 3742.
Sublymatories, *s. pl.* vessels for sublimation, G 793.
Sublymed, *pp.* sublimed, sublimated, G 774. 'Sublimate, to bring by heat into the state of vapour'; Webster.
Sublyming, *s.* sublimation, G 772.
Submitted, *pp.* subjected, B 5. p 1. 44; *ye ben s.*, ye have submitted, B 35.
Subtil, *adj.* subtle, C 141; ingenious, A. pr. 60; skilful, L. 672; finely woven, 5. 272.

Subtiltee, *s.* subtlety, craft, secret knowledge, G 630, skill, craft, G 844, *pl* tricks, E 2421.

Subtilly, *adv.* craftily, A 610, subtly F 122.

Subtiltee, *s.* subtlety, F 140 specious reasoning, HF 855, skill, B 430, trick, D 1420.

Succedent, *sb* a 'succedent' house, A. ii 4 48. The *succedent* houses are the second, fifth, eighth, and eleventh, as these are about to follow the most important houses, which are the first, fourth, seventh, and tenth.

Sucre *s.* sugar, T iii 1194.

Sucrod, *pp.* sugred, T ii 184.

Suffisaunce, *s.* sufficiency, A 490, sufficient food, D 1843, enough, a competence, ix 15, contentment, B 4009, L 703.

Suffisaunt, *adj.* sufficient, good enough, A 1011. A. pr. 7, capable, L 2524, well endowed, L 1067.

Suffisauntly, *adv.* sufficiently, A. pr. 43, availably, B 1402.

Suffrable, *adj.* patient, D 442.

Suffraunce, *s.* longsuffering, B 1479, patience, E 1162, Suffraunce, longsuffering, B 2654, permission, F 788.

Suffraunt, *pres. pt.* as *s.* patient man, T iv 1584, as *adj.* patient, tolerant, L 1040.

Suffer, *v.* suffer, permit, A 649, endure, L 412.

Suffyse, *v.* suffice, B 3648, Suffyseth, it suffices, ii 15, Suffyce, *imp.* *s.* be content spend frugally, ii 2.

Suggestioun, *s.* a criminal charge, B 3607 hint, I 331.

Sugre, *s.* sugar, B 2046.

Sukkenye *s.* short frock, tunic, R. 1232. O F *souquanie*, F *souquenie*, Cotgrave.

Summitted, *pp.* submitted, B 3 p 10, 15, subjected, B 4 p 6, 145.

Superfice, *s.* surface, A i 21 42, in the *s.* of, in the immediate neighbourhood of, A i 21 32.

Superfluitee, *s.* superfluity, excess A 436, over abundance, A pr. 50.

Supplien, *v.* supplicate, entreat, D 1 p 8, 11.

Supportacioun, *s.* support, B 2142.

Supprysed, *pp.* surprised, T iii 1184.

Surcote, *s.* upper coat, A 617.

Suremerit, *s.* pledge, F 1534.

Suretee, *s.* security, D 903, careless confidence, 7 215.

Surfeit, *s.* surfeit, I 913.

Surmounteth, *pr.* *s.* surpasses, L 123.

Surplys *s.* surplice, A 112, G 558.

Surquidrie, *s.* over-confidence, presumption, I 401, arrogance, T i 112. O F *surquiderie*.

Sursanure, *s.* a wound healed outwardly, but not inwardly, F 1113.

Surveyaunce, *s.* surveillance, C 95.

Suspecious *s.* suspicion, T ii 561.

Suspecious, *adj.* ominous of evil, L 1408.

Suspect, *adj.* suspicious, ominous of evil, E 341.

Suspect, *s.* suspicion, B 2455.

Sustenance, *s.* support, living, E 22.

Sustene, *v.* sustain, support, F 801 maintain i 22, endure, B 2164, uphold, preserve, B 160, hold up herself, 7 177.

Suster *s.* sister, L 502, 980. Her *suster* Iwe, love for her sister, I 17. Susteren, *pl* T iii 713. Susters, *pl* B 1.

Suwe, *ger.* to follow, T i 170.

Suyte, *s.* suit, array of like kind, A 2011. Sute uniform pattern, C 301.

Swa, *so.* Northern, A 4040.

Swal, *pt.* *s.* of Swelle.

Swalowe, *s.* swallow, HF 1006.

Swalwe *s.* swallow, A 252A.

Swappe *s.* a swoop, the striking of a bird of prey, HF 543.

Swappe, *pr.* to swap, strike, F 10.

Swapte, *pt.* *s.* dashed, T iv 100, all suddenly, E 1000. Swap *imp.* *s.* strike off, G 100.

Swartish, *adj.* *adv.* dark, HF 100.

Swatte, *pt.* *s.* of Swete.

Swayn, *s.* servant-lad, young man, A 4127.

Sweigh, *s.* motion, sways, B 241.

Swelleth, *pr.* *s.* swells, A 2712. Swale, *pt.* *s.* B 907, up *swell*, was puffed up with anger, B 1700; Swollen, *pp.* puffed, E 90.

Swelte, *s.* lie, T iii 147, Swelt *pr.* *s.* dies, 4 128, *pt.* *s.* died, E 177, ligh- guished, fainted, A 1350.

Swelwe *v.* swallow, B 2806.

Swerd, *s.* sword, A 112.

Swere, *v.* swear, A 454. Swoor, *1st.* *s.* E 2312, Swore, *2nd.* *s.* L. 1178, Swelt, *pt.* *s.* swore, 7 101. Sworen, *pt.* *pl.* sworn, B 144. Sworn *pp.* sworn to the contrary, T iv 970. A 1080, sworn to it, G 681, bound by oath, F 18, sworn it should not be so, D 640.

Swering, *s.* swearing, C 631.

Swete, *adj.* sweet, A 5 2127, as *s.* sweet one, for 3, 832.

Swete, *s.* sweetness, *s.* 161.
 Swete, *v.* sweat, *G* 579; Swatte, *pl.* *s.* sweated, *B* 1966.
 Swete herte, sweetheart, *T.* iii. 69.
 Swete-Loking, Sweet-Looking, *R.* 920.
 Swetness, *s.* sweetness, *i.* 51; nourishment, *s.* 415.
 Swetter, *adj.* comp. sweeter, *R.* 622, 768.
 Swety, *adj.* sweaty, *g.* 28.
 Swoven, *s.* dream, *R.* 28; *pl.* dreams, *R.* 3.
 Swevening, *s.* dream, *R.* 26; Swoveninges (*pron.* swev'ninges), *R.* 1.
 Swaynte, *pp.* *as def.* *adj.* tired out, slothful, *HF.* 1783. *Ip.* of *swachen*.
 Swich, *adj.* such, *A* 3, 243, 313; such a thing, *B* 4626; Swich a, such a, *B* 1921; Swich oon, such a one, *F* 231.
 Swimme, *r.* swim, *A* 3593, *L.* 2491; Swommen, *pl.* *pl.* were filled with swimming things, *s.* 188.
 Swink, *s.* labour, toil, *A* 188, 540.
 Swinke, *r.* toil, labour, *T.* v. 272; to cause to labour, *HF.* 16; *pr.* *pl.* work for, *G* 21, Swonkon, *pp.* toiled, *A* 4235.
 Swinker, *s.* labourer, toiler, *A* 531.
 Swire, *s.* neck, throat, *R.* 325.
 Swogh, *s.* (1) sigh, low noise, *s.* 247; murmur, *HF.* 1031; sigh, groan, *A* 3619, rustling noise, blast, *A* 1979, whizzing noise, *HF.* 1041; Swogh, (2), swoon, *D* 700, Swow, grief, *s.* 215.
 Swollen, *pp.* *pr.* *pr.*, *E* 950.
 Swolow, *s.* gulf, *L.* 1104.
 Swolwe, *r.* swallow, *H* 36.
 Swommen, *pr.* *pl.* were filled with swimming things, *s.* 188.
 Swonken, *pp.* toiled, *A* 4235.
 Sweet, *s.* sweat, *G* 578.
 Swote, *adj.* sweet, *A* 2860, 3205, *pl.* *R.* (2). See Sote, Swete.
 Swote, *adv.* sweetly, *T.* i. 158.
 Swough, Swow; see Swogh.
 Swoun, Swowne, *r.* swoon, faint, *T.* ii. 574; Swowned, *pl.* *s.* swooned, *A* 2041; *pp.* *A* 913.
 Swow, *s.* swoon; hence, anguish, *s.* 215.
 Swowne, *s.* swoon, *F* 1080; Aswowne, in a swoon, *C* 245.
 Swowning, *s.* swooning, *C* 246.
 Swyn, *s.* swine, boar, *F* 1254; hog, *D* 460.
 Swynce-head, *s.* pig's head (a term of abuse), *A* 4262.
 Swythe, *adv.* quickly, *C* 796; *as ac.*, as soon, *T.* v. 1384; *as quickly as possible*, immediately, *B* 617, *G* 936.
 Swyve, *r.* lie with, *A* 4178; *pp.* dishonoured, *A* 3891.

Sy, saw; *pl.* *L.* of See.
 Sye, *ger.* to sink down, *T.* v. 182.
 Sye, Syen, saw; see See.
 Syk, *adj.* sick, ill; *for syk*, on account of being sick, *D* 304; Syke, *def.* *F* 1100; *pl.* sick persons, *T.* iii. 61.
 Syk, *s.* sigh, *F* 498.
 Syke, *r.* sigh, *T.* iii. 1360; Syke, *ger.* to sigh (but perhaps read syte, i.e. to grieve, for the rhyme), *T.* ii. 884; Syketh, *pr.* *s.* sighs, *s.* 404; *22.* 62 (men sigh); Syked, *pl.* *s.* sighed, *A* 2985; Sichte, *pl.* *s.* sighed, *B* 1025.
 Sykliche, *adj.* sickly, *T.* ii. 1528.
 Symonials, *s.* *pl.* simoniacs, *I* 784.
 Symonye, *s.* simony, *D* 1300.
 Syre, *s.* master of the house, *D* 713; master, *s.* 12.
 Sys, *num.* six (at dice), *B* 3851.
 Syte, *v.* to grieve; perhaps the right reading in *T.* ii. 884.
 Sythe, *s.* time, *R.* 80; Sythe, *pl.* (orig. a gen. *pl.*), *A* 1878; *afte sythe*, oftentimes, *E* 235, *G* 1031; Sythes, *pl.* times, *A* 485.
 Sythe, *s.* scythe, *L.* 640.

T.

T, for To, frequently prefixed to verbs; *as* tabyde, tamende, &c.
 Taa, *v.* take (Northern), *A* 4129.
 Tabard, *s.* a herald's coat-of-arms, hence, (1) the same, as an inn-sign, *A* 20; (2) a ploughman's loose frock, *A* 541.
 Tabernaacles, *pl.* shrines, *HF.* 123, 1190.
 Table, *s.* table, *A* 100; table dormant, permanent side-table, *A* 353; tablet, writing-tablet, *s.* 780, tablet, plate, *HF.* 142; table (of the law), *C* 639; one of the thin plates on which almanac-teras are engraved, *A.* ii. 21. 6; at table, at board, i.e. entertained as a lodger, *G* 1015; Tables, *pl.* tables (for calculation), *F* 1273; dining-tables, *B* 1442, writing-tablets, *D* 1741; plates, *A.* i. 14. 3; the game of 'tables' or backgammon, *F* 001.
 Tabour, *s.* small drum, *D* 2268.
 Tabouren, *pr.* *pl.* drum, *lin.* *L.* 324.
 Tabregge, *for* To abregge, to abridge, shorten, *T.* iii. 295.
 Tabreyde, *for* To abreyde, to awake, *T.* v. 520.
 Tabyde, *for* To abyde, to abide, *T.* v. 31.
 Tache, *s.* defect, *21.* 18. See Tecches.
 Tacheve, *for* To acheve, to achieve *L.* 2111.

- Tacompte**, *for* To *acompte*, to reckon up, 22, 17.
Tacord, *for* To *acord*, i. e. to agreement, H 98.
Tacorde, *for* To *acorde*, to agree, 1, 27.
Tacoye, *for* To *acoye*, to decoy, T v. 782.
Taffata, *s.* taffeta, A 440.
Taffraye, *for* To *affraye*, to frighten, E 455.
Taillages, *s.* pl. taxes, I 567.
Taille, *s.* tally, an account scored upon two similarly notched sticks, A 570, B 1606.
Take, *v.* seize, T. ii. 289, present, offer, G 223; *ger.* to take, A 34; Takestow, takest thou, G 435; Take me, 1 *pr.* *s.* betake myself, B 1985; Took, 1 *pt.* *s.* drew in, breathed in, B 1, p. 3, 3 (Lat. *hausi*; hit, D 792, *pt.* *s.* handed over, gave, B 1484; had, B 192; Toke, 2 *pt.* *s.* tookest, 3, 483; Toke, *pt.* *pl.* took, F 1240, received, F 356; Take, *pp.* taken, A 3007, entrusted, I 880; brought, 1, 20; Tak, *imp.* *s.* receive, B 117; accept as a result, A. ii. 25, 57, *tak kype*, take heed, observe, B 1757; *tak she*, let her take, 5, 462; Taketh, *imp.* *pl.* take, 4, 9.
Takel, *s.* tackle, archery-gear, arrows, A 106.
Tald, *pp.* told (Northern), A 4207.
Tale, *s.* tale, A 3126, story, A 36, 831; account, B 4308; enumeration, E 383, *I gan finde a tale to him*, I thought of something to say to him, 3, 536, *telle tale*, give an account of, A 120.
Tale, *v.* tell a tale, talk, speak, T. iii. 1235, *Talen*, *ger.* to tell tales, A 772; *pr.* *s.* subj. talk about, I 378.
Talent, *s.* inclination, wish, desire, B 2430, desire, appetite, C 540; longing, B 2, p. 12.
Taling, *s.* tale-telling, B 1674.
Talights, *for* To alights, i. e. to alight, E 909.
Talle, *adj.* docile, obsequious, 4, 38. A rare sense.)
Tamende, *for* To *amende*, to redress, E 441.
Tanoyen, *for* To *anoyen*, to injure, B 492.
Tanswere, i. e. to answer, D 1589.
Tapes, *pl.* tapes, A 3241.
Tapicer, *s.* upholsterer, maker of carpets, A 362.
Tapite, *v.* cover with tapestry, 3, 260.
Tappe, *s.* tap, A 3890, 3892.
Tappestere, *s.* female tapster, barman, A 241, 3336.
Tarditas, *s.* slowness, I 718.
Tare, *s.* tare, kind of weed, A 1570.
Tareste, *for* To *arreste*, to arrest, F 1372.
Targe, *s.* target, shield, A 471, defence, 1, 176.
Tarien, *v.* tarry, B 983, delay (used actively), F 73; 1 *pr.* *s.* tarry, T. iii. 1195; *pp.* delayed, T. ii. 179.
Tarraye, *for* To *arraye*, to array, arrange, E 901.
Tart, *adj.* of sharp flavour, pungent, A 61.
Tartre, *s.* tartar, G 813; *oille of Tartre*, (probably) cream of tartar, or bitartrate of potassium, A 610.
Taryinge, *s.* tarrying, delay, A 821.
Tas, *s.* heap, A 1005, 1009, 1030. O.F. *tas*.
Tassaille, *for* To *assaille*, i. e. to assault, E 1180.
Tassaye, *for* To *assaye*, to test, prove, try, E 454, 1075.
Tasseled, *pp.* fringed, provided with tassels, B. 1070, A 3251.
Tassemble, *for* To *assemble*, to bring together, D 89.
Tassoille, *for* To *assoille*, i. e. to absolve, C 933.
Tassure, *for* To *assure*, B 1241.
Tast, *s.* taste, relish (*for*), 5, 162.
Taste, *v.* try, test, L. 1993; *pt.* *s.* experienced, T. i. 639, *imp.* *s.* feel, G 502.
Taughte, *pt.* *s.* of *Teche*.
Taverner, *s.* innkeeper, C 685.
Tavyse, *for* To *avyse* (me), to deliberate, B 1426.
Tawayte, *for* to *awayte*, to dwell, remain, 25, 7.
Taylage, *s.* taxation, 9, 54.
Techees, *pl.* evil qualities, defects, T. iii. 915 characteristics, HF 1778.
Teche, *v.* teach, instruct, A 308, *ger.* to show, B. 518, *Techen*, *v.* direct, B 4139, *ger.* to inform (him of), D 1326; *Taughte*, 1 *pt.* *s.* taught, told, D 1050.
Te deum, the anthem so called, D 1866.
Teer, *s.* tear, E 1124.
Tehee, *interj.* (denoting) laughter, hee-hee! A 3740.
Telle, *v.* tell, recount, relate, A 38, compute, 3, 440; *ger.* to tell, to be told, F 447; 1 *pr.* *s.* account, B 4344; *Telle no tale*, set no store, 5, 326; *Telles*, *pr.* *s.* (Northern form), *tella*, 3, 73; HF. 426.
Tolde, 1 *pt.* *s.* counted, HF. 1380; accounted, D 203, 208, *pt.* *pl.* esteemed, T. i. 131; *herd told*, heard (it) told, T. i. 197; *Tolde*, *pp.* *pl.* told, B 56.

Tembrace, *for* To embrace, T. v. 224; E 1101.
Temen, v. bring; *temen us on bere*, bring us on our bier, let us die, HF. 1744.
Temper, s. mood, R. 346.
Temperaunce, s. temperance, moderation, F 785.
Tempest, s. storm, A 406; tempest (alluding to a passage in Statius), A 884.
Tempest thee, *imp.* s. violently distress thyself, 13. 8; 2 *pr.* s. subj. vex, perturb, B 2. p 4. 75.
Tempestuous, *adj.* tempestuous, T. ii. 5.
Temple, s. inn of court, A 567.
Temprede, *pt.* s. modulated, B 3. m 12. 22; *pp.* tempered, G 926. (In alchemy, to *temper* is to adjust or moderate heat.)
Tempa, s. tense; *futur tempa*, future tense, time to come, G 875.
Temptour, s. tempter, D 1655.
Ten, ten, A 454; *ten so wood*, ten times as mad, L. 735.
Tenbrace, to embrace, B 1891.
Tencresen, to increase, E 1808.
Tendure, to endure, E 756, 811.
Tendyte, *for* To endyte, to compose, write, T. i. 6; to relate, A 1209.
Tene, s. vexation, A 3106; sorrow, grief, T. v. 240; cross, trouble, T. ii. 61. A.S. *tēna*.
Tenour, s. outline of the story, L. 929.
Tenquere, *for* To enquere, to ask, E 1543.
Tenspyre, *for* To enspyre, i. e. to inspire, G 1470.
Tenthe, tenth, HF. 63, 111; Tenthe some, company of ten, T. ii. 1249. (Sometimes *tenthe some* means 'ten in all'.)
Tentify, *adv.* attentively, carefully, E 334.
Tercel, *adj.* male (of an eagle), 5. 393, 449; *pl.* 5. 540; *as* s. male eagle, 5. 405.
Tercelet, s. male falcon, 5. 529, 533; F 504, 621; Tercelets, *pl.* male birds of prey, 5. 659; male hawks, F 648. 'Tiercelet, m. the tassell, or male of any kind of hawke, so tearmed, because he is, commonly, a third part lesse then the female'; Cotgrave.
Tere, s. tear, B 3251.
Tere, v. tear, B 1326; scratch, R. 325; Torn, *pp.* L. 2103.
Terins, s. *pl.* tarins, siskins, R. 665. F. *tarin*.
Termes, s. set time, appointed time, T. v. 696; period, space of time, 'term,' a portion of the zodiac, being one-third of a 'sign,' or 10°, F 1288; (during the)

term, A 1029; *terme of his lyve*, while he lives, G 1479; *in terme*, in set phrases, C 311; *pl.* pedantic phrases, A 323; legal jargon, R. 199; periods, A 3028; terms, C 51, F 1266.
Terme-day, s. appointed day, 3. 730.
Termyne, v. determine, express in 'good set terms,' 5. 530.
Terrestre, *adj.* earthly, E 1332.
Terve, *pr.* s. subj. flay, G 1274 (*so in MS. E.*); Terved (*not* Terved), *pp.* skinned, G 1171 (*so in MS. E.*). This is certainly the right word; in G 1171, read *terved* [*not torned*], and in G 1274, read *terve* [*not torne*]. See my letter in the Atholnaeum, Mar. 24, 1894. So in Havelok, 603, for *tirnoden* read *tirueden* = *tirveden*, i. e. rolled back.
Tery, *adj.* tearful, T. iv. 821.
Tescape, to escape, F 1357.
Tespye, *for* To espye, to spy out, espy, B 1989, 4478.
Testers, *pl.* head-pieces, A 2499.
Testes, s. *pl.* vessels for assaying metals (Tyrwhitt), G 818.
Testif, *adj.* heady, headstrong, T. v. 802; A 4004.
Tete, s. teat, A 3704.
Texpounden, to expound, B 1716.
Text, s. text, quotation from an author, B 45; saying, A 177, 182; text (as opposed to a gloss), 3. 333.
Textuel, *adj.* well versed in texts, learned, H 235; I 57.
Teyd, *pp.* tied, bound, E 2432.
Teyne, s. a thin plate of metal, G 1225, 1229. Lat. *tēnia*.
Th', *for* The; common, as in thabsence, *for* the absence.
Thabsence, the absence, A 1239.
Thadversitee, the adversity, E 756.
Thakketh, *pr.* s. strokes, pats, D 1559. A.S. *þaccian*.
Thalighte, *for* Thee alighte; in *thee alighte*, alighted in thee, B 1660.
Thank, s. expression of thanks, A 612; thanks, E 2388; *can th.*, owes thanks, A 1808; *his th.*, the thanks to him, L. 452; *my thankes*, by my goodwill, willingly, R. 1666; *his thankes*, of his free will, willingly, A 1626; *hir thankes*, of their own will, A 2114.
Thanke, 1 *pr.* s. thank, E 1088; Th. hit thee, thank thee for it, 10. 51.
Thanne, *adv.* then, D 2004, I 104; Than, then, A 12; next, 5. 324; *er than*, sooner than, before, G 899.
Thar, *pr.* s. *impers.* (it) is necessary, is

- needful; *thar ye*, it is needful that ye, B 2258; *thar thee*, it is needful for thee, you need, or thou needst, D 329, 136, 1065, H 351; *him thar*, it is needful for him, he needs, T. ii. 1661; he must, A 4320, Thurte, pt. 2.; *th. him*, he needed, R. 1089, 1324; *how tharfie*, you would need, you need, T. iii. 571.
- Tharivaile**, the arrival, the landing, HF. 451.
- Tharnea**, the arms, armorial bearings, HF. 1411.
- Tharray**, the array, A 716.
- Thascry**, for *The ascry*, the alarm, T. ii. 611.
- Thassay**, the assay, the endeavour, 5. 2.
- Thassege**, the siege, T. iv. 1480; the besieging force, T. iv. 62.
- Thassemblies**, the assembly, B 403.
- Thassemblinge**, the assembling, B 2431.
- That**, rel. pron. that which, whom, 3. 979; *that of*, from whom, 3. 964; *That oon*, the one, A 4013; *That other*, the other, A 4013; *That*, with reference to whom, G 236; *if that*, if, 3. 969, 971.
- Thaventayle**, for *The aventayle*, the mouthpiece of a helmet, T. v. 1558.
- Thavision**, for *The avision*, the vision, 3. 285.
- Thavys**, the advice, A 2076.
- The**, def. art. A 2, &c.
- The**, as is *The bet*, by so much the better, 3. 668; *The las*, by so much the less, 3. 675.
- The**, for *Thee*, pers. pron. F 676, &c.
- Théatre**, s. theatre, area for a tournament, A 1885.
- Thedom**, s. success, B 1595.
- Thee**, v. thrive, prosper, R. 1067; *never mot she thee*, may she never prosper, 5. 569; *mot he never thee*, may he never prosper, T. ii. 670, *lat him never thee*, let him never prosper, B 4622; *thou shalt never thee*, E 1488; *he shal never thee*, G 641; also *moot I thee*, as I may thrive, as I hope to prosper, D 1215, E 1226, *so moot I thee*, D 361; *as mote I thee*, T. i. 341, *so theeck*, for *so thee ich*, as I may thrive, as I hope to prosper, C 947, G 929; *so theeck*, for *so thee ik*, as I hope to prosper, A 3864.
- Theef**, s. thief, robber, D 1438.
- Theefly**, adv. like a thief, L. 1781.
- Theeffect**, for *The effect*, the result, A 1189, the substance, pith, L. 1180, 2403; the matter, contents, 2. 56; the source, D 1451, the moral, B 2148; the sum (of the matter), A 2366.
- Thegle**, the eagle, B 875.
- Their**, the air, D 1529.
- Thembassadours**, the ambassadors, T. iv. 140, 145.
- Theme**, s. text, thesis, C 313, 425.
- Themperour**, the emperor, 3. 368.
- Then**, conj. than, L. 1693, 2032.
- Thencena**, the incense, A 2277, 2938.
- Thenchauntements**, pl. the enchantments, A 1944.
- Thenche**, v. imagine, A 3253.
- Thencheson**, for *The encheson*, the reason, cause, T. v. 621.
- Thencrees**, the increase, A 275.
- Thende**, the end, B 423, 965, 1269.
- Thengendring**, the engendring, the process of production, HF. 968.
- Thengyn**, the (warlike) engine, HF. 1934.
- Thenke**, v. think of, 3. 311; 1 pr. 2. think intend, E 641; *Thenkestow*, *thinkst thou*, T. iv. 849, 1088, *Thoghte* 1 pr. 2. thought, 3. 428, *Thenke on*, think of, 16. 47.
- Thenne**, adj. this, A 4066.
- Thenne**, adv. then, T. ii. 210.
- Thenne**, adv. thence, D 1141.
- Thennes**, adv. thence, i.e. away from that place, T. iv. 695; *thence*, R. 791 as 2., the place that, G 66.
- Thennes-forth**, adv. thenceforth, B 1755.
- Thentencioun**, the intention, G 1441.
- Thentente**, for *The entente*, the design. B 930; the purpose, end, G 1306, the meaning, T. v. 1630.
- Thentree**, the entrance, A 1983.
- Thenvyous**, for *The envyous*, the spiteful, malicious, 3. 642.
- Theologie**, s. theology, I 1043.
- Theorik**, s. theory, theoretical explanation, A. pr. 98.
- Ther** adv. there, B 62, 1190, &c. where, T. ii. 618, when, B 474; whither, at which, B 469; whereas, D 1212, G 724; wherefore, T. iii. 1437, wherever, D 128, as to which, T. ii. 588; *wherefore I pray that*, D 1561.
- Ther-about**, adv. about it, D 1837; therein, G 832; round it, A 937.
- Therafter**, adv. afterwards, 3. 66.
- Ther-agayns**, prep. against that, I 665; in reply, T. ii. 369.
- Ther-as**, **Ther as**, there where, where, B 2484; there, I 162, whereas, D 1177, where that, A 34, 172; when that, L. 1277, *Ther-as that*, where, 1. 160; *Ther that*, where, F 267.
- Therbe**, the herb, HF. 290.

- Ther-bifore**, *adv.* before that time, D 631; beforehand, E 689, 729.
- Ther-biforn**, *adv.* beforehand, A 2034; previously, A 3997.
- Therby**, *by it, to it*, D 984; into possession of it, F 1115; beside it, R. 1184.
- Ther-fore**, *adv.* therefore, A 189; for that purpose, A 809; on that account, L. 1863; on that point, E 1141; for it, L. 1391.
- Therfro**, *therefrom*, from it, HF. 895.
- Ther-inne**, *therein*, in it, B 1945, 3573.
- Ther-of**, *adv.* with respect to that, E 644; concerning that, 3. 1132; A 462; from that, 3. 1166; thereby, I 314; of it, 20. 8.
- Ther-on**, *adv.* thereupon, A 160; thereof, F 1.
- Ther-oute**, *adv.* out there, out in the open air, B 1361; outside there, G 1130.
- Therthe**, *the earth*, R. 1423.
- Therto**, *adv.* besides, moreover, D 1251; to it, 2. 100; likewise, R. 1262.
- Ther-upon**, *adv.* immediately, A 819.
- Ther-whyles**, *whilst*, B 5. p 6. 290.
- Therwith**, *adv.* withal, for all that, 3. 954; moreover, F 931; thereupon, 3. 275; at the same time, B 3210.
- Ther-with-al**, *thereupon*, A 1078; there-with, with it, by means of it, A 566; beside it, besides, R. 226; at once, L. 148; thereat, L. 864.
- Theschaunge**, *the exchange*, T. iv. 146.
- Theschewing**, *the avoiding* (of anything), 5. 140.
- Thestat**, *the estate, the rank, condition*, A 716.
- Thewed**, *pp.*; *vel thewed*, of good disposition, 4. 180.
- Thewes**, *a. pl.* habits, natural qualities, E 400, 1542; good qualities, virtues, G 101; customs, habits, manners, T. ii. 723; morals, HF. 1834.
- Thexcellent**, *the excellent*, B 150.
- Thexcuse**, *thee excuse*, D 1611.
- Thexecucion**, *the execution*, 10. 65.
- Thexperiénee**, *the experience*, E 2238.
- Thider**, *adv.* thither, A 1263.
- Thider-ward**, *adv.* thither, A 2530.
- Thikke**, *adj.* thick, A 549; stout, plump, A 1073.
- Thikke**, *adv.* thickly, R. 1396.
- Thikke-herd**, *adj.* thick-haired, A 2518.
- Thikke-sterred**, *adj.* thickly covered with stars, A. ii. 23. 2.
- Thilke**, *that*, R. 660, &c.; such a, A 182; that same, A 1193; that sort of, I 50; *pl.* those, HF. 173.
- Thimage**, *the image*, L. 1760.
- Thing**, *a. fact*, C 156; property, wealth, R. 206; deed, legal document, A 325; *for anything*, at any cost, A 276; *Thing*, *pl.* things, L. 11, 2140; *Things*, *pl.* things, A 175; matters of business, B 1407; poems, L. 364; pieces of music, F 78; services, prayers, B 1281.
- Thingot**, *the ingot*, G 1233.
- Thinke**, *v.* seem, T. i. 405; *Thinketh*, *pr. a. impera. (it) seems*, B 1901; *we th.*, it seems to me, A 37, 1207; *how th. you.*, how does it seem to you, D 2204; *Thoughts*, *pl. a. impera. (it) seemed*, L. 1697; *we thought*, it seemed to me, A 385; *him th.*, it seemed to him, A 681; *us th.*, it seemed to us, A 785; *her th.*, it seemed to her, D 965, 967.
- Thinne**, *adj.* thin, A 679; poor, feeble, 9. 36; E 1682; scanty, limited, G 741.
- Thirleth**, *pr. a. pierces*, 7. 211; *pp.* A 3710.
- This**, A 175, &c.; *contracted form of this* is, T. ii. 363, iii. 936, v. 151; *This* is, pronounced *this*, 5. 411, 620; A 1091, D 91; *Thise* (*dhiss*), *pl.* (monosyllabic), A 701, B 59, &c.
- Tho**, *pl.* those, A 498, 1123, 2351, 3246.
- Tho**, *adv.* then, at that time, A 993, 3329, &c.; still, 3. 1054.
- Thoccident**, *the occident, the west*, B 3864.
- Thoffice**, *the office, the duty*, B 2863.
- Thoght**, *a. anxiety*, B 1770, E 80.
- Thoughtful**, *adj.* moody, I 677.
- Tholde**, *pl.* the old, D 857.
- Tholed**, *pp.* suffered, D 1546. A.S. *þolian*.
- Thombe**, *a. thumb*, A 563.
- Thonder**, *a. thunder*, A 492.
- Thonder-dint**, *a. stroke of lightning*, D 276; *-dent*, thunder-clap, A 3807.
- Thonder-leyt**, *a. thunder-bolt*, B 1. m 4. 12; lightning, I 839.
- Thonke**, *1 pr. a. thank*, E 380.
- Thonour**, *the honour*, B 1767, E 1449.
- Thorgh**, *prep.* through, 5. 127, 129.
- Thorient**, *the orient, the east*, B 3871, 3883.
- Thoriginal**, *the original*, L. 1558.
- Thorisonte**, *the horizon*, E 1707, F 1017.
- Thorisoun**, *the orison, the prayer*, A 2261.
- Thorpes**, *pl.* villages, 5. 350.
- Thorough-passen**, *pr. pl.* penetrate, B 4. m 5. 49.
- Thought**, *a. anxiety*, T. i. 579.
- Thoumbe**, *a. thumb*, A. i. 1. 2.
- Thourgh-girt**, *pp.* struck through, T. iv. 687. From M. E. *garden*, to strike.

- Thral**, *s.* thrall, slave, subject, servant, B 3343, C 183, D 155.
Thral, *adj.* enthralled, A 1552, I 137;
Thralle, *pl.* enthralled, B 2751; **Thral**,
as pl., L 1940.
Thraldom, *s.* slavery, B 386, 338.
Thralle, *v.* subject, T. i. 235; subjugate,
 B. 882.
Thraſte, *pl. s.* thrust, T. ii. 1155.
Threde, *v.* thread, R. 99.
Threed, *s.* thread, A 2030: thread (of
 destiny, T. v. 7.
Threpe, *i pr. pl.* (we) call, assert to be,
 G 816. A. S. *þreapian*.
Threſhold, *s.* threshold, A 3482.
Threſte, *v.* thrust, push, A 2612; *pl. pl.*
 vexed, T. iv. 234.
Threte, *v.* threaten, L. 754.
Threting, *s.* menace, G 698.
Thretty, *adj.* thirty, F 1368.
Thridde, *thrid*, A 1463, 2271.
Thrift, *s.* success, welfare, T. ii. 847;
 profit, success, G 739, 1425; *good thrift*
 bad, prayed for the welfare (of), blessed,
 T. iii. 1249; *by my thrift*, if I succeed,
 T. ii. 1481.
Thriftieſte, *most successful*, T. i. 1081;
most thriving, T. ii. 737.
Thriftily, *adv.* carefully, A 105; profit-
 ably, A 111; encouragingly, F 1174.
Thrifty, *adj.* profitable (to the buyer),
 B 138, serviceable, D 238; provident,
 7. 107.
Thringe, *v.* press, T. iv. 66, **Throng**, *pl. s.*
 forced his way, 7. 55; thrust, E 2353.
Thriste, *pl. s.* thrust, T. iii. 1574.
Thritene, *thirteen*, D 2259.
Thritty, *thirty*, E 1421.
Throf, *pl. s.* of **Thryve**.
Throng, *pl. s.* of **Thringe**.
Throp, *s.* thorp, small village, E 199, 208.
Throſtel, *s.* throſtle, song-thrush, 5. 364.
Throte, *s.* throat, 1. 945.
Throte-bolle, *s.* ball of the throat, 'the
 protuberance in the throat called
 Adam's apple,' A 4271.
Through-out, *quite through*, 11. 3.
Throwe, *s.* short space of time, while,
 period, B 951, 1326.
Throwe, *ger* to throw, T. ii. 971, **Threw**,
pl. s. T. iii. 184; **Throwe**, *pl. pl.* R. 786,
Throwe, *pp.* thrown, L. 1960; **Throwen**,
pp. cast, HF 1325, twisted, turned,
 T. iv. 1159.
Throwes, *pl.* torments, T. v. 306; throes,
 T. v. 1201.
Thrustel, *s.* thrush, B 1961.
Thrusteth, *pr. s.* thirsts, yearns, L. 1021.
Thrustle-cook, *s.* male thrush, B 1969.
Thrye, *adv.* thrice, T. ii. 89, 463.
Thryes, *adv.* thrice, A 61, 463.
Thryve, *v.* thrive, prosper, R 177; *ger*
 G 1411; *so thr. I*, as I hope to thrive,
 D 1764; **Throf**, *pl. s.* flourished, B 1,
 m 4. 5.
Thryvinge, *adj.* vigorous, B 5. m 4. 24
 (Lat. *vigens*).
Thunworſtiest, *the unworthiest*, 21. 19.
Thurſte, *pl. s.* *imperz* (with *youe*, *you*
 would need, you need, T. iii. 572. See
Thar.
Thurgh, *prep.* through, 1. 17; by means
 of, A 920.
Thurgh-darted, *pp.* transfixed with a
 dart, T. i. 325.
Thurghfare, *s.* thoroughfare, A 2847.
Thurgh-girt, *pp.* pierced through, A
 1010.
Thurghout, *prep.* throughout, F 46, all
 through, B 156, 464; quite through, C
 655.
Thurgh-shoten, *pp.* shot through, T. i.
 325.
Thurrok, *s.* sink, the lowest internal
 part of a ship's hull, I 363, 715. A. S.
þerruc.
Thurst, *s.* thirst, B 100.
Thursteth, *pr. s.* thirsts, T. v. 1406, *pl. s.*
imperz he was thirsty, R 1220.
Thurte; see **Thar**.
Thwitel, *s.* large knife, whittle, A 1011.
Thwyte, *pr. pl.* whittle, cut up for, HF
 1938, **Thwiten**, *pp.* carved, whittled R
 913.
Tid, *pp.* of **Tyde**.
Tidifa, *s. pl.* small birds, F 648. Cf Eng
titmouse, *tittlark*. See **Tydif**.
Tikel, *adj.* unstable, A 1428.
Tikelneſſe, *s.* instability, 13. 1.
Tikled, *pl. s.* tickled, D 395.
Til (*before a vowel*), *prep.* to, A 180; *as a*
Northern word (before a consonant), A
 4110, **Til** and **fra**, to and fro (Northern),
 A 4030. Icel. *tíl*.
Til, *conj.* until, A 1760; *tíl that*, A 1403, F
 300.
Tilyere, *s.* tiller, B 5. p 1. 86.
Timber, *s.* material, T. iii. 530.
Timbestere, *s.* female timbrel-player,
 tambourine-player, B. 760.
Timbros, *s. pl.* timbrels, tambourines. R
 772.
Tipet, *s.* tippet, cape, A 533.
Tiptoon, *pl.* tiptoes, B 4497.
Tissew, *s.* a band, T. ii. 619.
Tit, *pr. s.* betides, T. i. 133. See **Tyda**.

Titering, *s.* hesitation, vacillation, T. ii. 1744.
Titlelees, *adj.* without a title, usurping, H 223.
To (tòð), *s.* toe, A 2726; **Toon**, *pl.* B 4052; **Toos**, *pl.* B 4370.
To (tòð), *prep.* to, A 2; gone to, A 30; (used after its case), G 1449: for, i. 184; us to, as for, L 2096; him to, for him, 3. 771; to that, until, 4. 239.
To, *adv.* too, B 2129; moreover, beside, T. i. 540; overmuch, G 1423; to badde, too evil, very evil, L 2597.
To- (1), *intensive prefix*, lit. in twain, asunder. A.S. *tō-*, G. *zer-*.
To- (2), *prepositional prefix*, as in **To-forn**. A.S. *tō-*, G. *zu-*.
To-bete, *v.* beat amain, T. v. 1762; beat severely, G 405.
To-broke, *v.* break in pieces; *pr. s.* (it) breaks in pieces, R. 277; breaks asunder, G 907; is violently broken, HF. 779; **To-broken**, *pp.* broken in pieces, destroyed, 16. 1; **To-broke**, *pp.* broken in half, D 277; severely bruised, A 4277.
To-breste, *v.* burst in twain, T. ii. 608; *pr. s. subj.* may (she) break in twain, T. iv. 1546; may be broken in twain, i. 10; *pr. pl.* break in pieces, A 2611; **To-brosten**, *pp.* broken in twain, A 2691.
To-cleve, *v.* cleave in twain, T. v. 613.
To-dasshte, *pt. s.* dashed violently about, R. 337; *pp.* much bruised, T. ii. 640.
Tode, *s.* toad, I 636.
To-drawen, *pr. pl.* allure, B 4. m 3. 46; **To-drowen**, *pt. pl.* tore in pieces, B 1. p 3. 42; **To-drawen**, *pp.* distracted, B 1. p 5. 76.
To-driven, *pp.* scattered, L 1280.
To-forn, *prep.* before, F 268; god to-forn, in God's sight, T. i. 1040.
To-forn, *adv.* in front, beforehand, B 5. p 6. 300.
To-geder, *adv.* together, 5. 555; **To-gider**, B 3222; **To-gidre**, A 824.
Toght, *adj.* taut, D 2267.
To-go, *pp.* dispersed, L 653.
To-greve, *v.* grieve excessively, T. i. 1001.
To-hangen, *v.* put to death by hanging, HF. 1782.
To-hepe, *adv.* (lit. into a heap), together, T. iii. 1764; L 2009.
To-hewen, *pr. pl.* hew in twain, A 2609; *pp.* cut through, T. ii. 638; **To-hewe**, *pp.* hewn in pieces, B 430.
Toke, 2 *pt. s.* tookest, 3. 483; *pt. pl.* took, F 1240; received, F 350.

To-laugh, *pr. s.* laughs out, laughs excessively, T. ii. 1108. (Short for *to-laugheth*.)
Told, -e; see **Telle**.
Tollen (1), *v.* take toll, A 562.
Tollen (2), *v.* attract, entice, B 2. p 7. 18.
Tombesteres, *s. pl. fem.* dancing girls, lit. female tumblers, C 477. A.S. *tumbian*, to tumble, dance.
Tomblinge, *pres. pt. as adj.* fleeting, transitory, B 2. m 3. 21 (Lat. *caducis*).
To-melte, *v.* melt utterly, T. iii. 348.
Tonge, *s.* tongue, 3. 930; A 265; *dat.* speech, language, 16. 21.
Tonged, *pp.* tongued, 3. 927.
Tonges, *s. pl.* tonga, I 555.
Tonne, *s.* tun, barrel, cask, A 3894.
Tonne-greet, *adj.* great as a tun, A 1994.
Toon, **Toos**, *pl. of To*, *s.*
Tooth-ake, *s.* toothache, R. 1098.
Top, *s.* top, A 2915; top (of the mast), main-top, L 639; tuft of hair, C 255; top (of the head), A 590; crown (of the head), T. iv. 996; Top and tail, beginning and end, HF. 880.
To-race, *pr. pl. subj.* tear in pieces, E 572. Here *race* is probably short for *arace*, to tear up.
Tord, *s.* piece of dung, B 2120, C 955.
To-rende, *pr. pl. subj.* tear in pieces, T. ii. 790; **To-rente**, *pt. s.* distracted, T. iv. 341; rent asunder, B 3215; tore in pieces, L 820; **To-rent**, *pp.* rent in pieces, C 102, E 1012.
Torets, *pl.* small rings on the collar of a dog, A 2152. See **Turet**.
Tormentinge, *s.* torture, E 1038.
Tórméntóur, *s.* tormentor, 102. 18; executioner, B 818.
Tormentrye, *s.* torture, D 251.
Tormentyse, *s.* torment, B 3707.
Torn, *s.* turn, C 815.
Tornen, *v.* turn, G 1403; return, A 1488.
Torney, *s.* tourney, T. iv. 1669.
To-romblen, *v.* rumble, crash, L 1218.
Tortuos, *adj.* lit. tortuous, i. e. oblique, applied to the six signs of the zodiac (Capricorn to Gemini), which ascend most rapidly and obliquely; Tortuous, B 302.
To-scatered, *pp.* dispersed, D 1969.
To-shake, *pp.* shaken to pieces, L 962; tossed about, L 1765.
To-shivered, *pp.* been destroyed, 5. 493.
To-shrede, *pr. pl.* cut into shreds, A 2609.
To-slitered, *pp.* slashed with numerous cuts, R. 840.

- To-sterre**, *v.* start asunder, burst, T. ii. 980.
- To-stoupe**, *v.* stoop forwards, D 1560.
- To-swinke**, *pr. pl.* labour greatly, C 310.
- To-tar**, *pt. s.* tore in pieces, rent, B 1801.
- Totelere**, *subst. as adj.* tattling, tale-bearing, L 353.
- To-tere**, *pr. pl.* rend, tear in pieces, C 474; **To-tar**, *pt. s.* rent, B 1801; **To-tore**, *pp.* G 635; **To-torn**, *pp.* much torn, C 110; defaced, T. iv. 358, dishevelled, R. 327.
- Tother**; *the tother* (for that other), the other, L 323 a.
- To-trede**, *v.*, *al to-trede*, trample under foot, I 864.
- Toty**, *adj.* dizzy, A 4153. Spenser has *totty*; F. Q. vii. 7. 30.
- Touchinge**, *s.* touch, I 307.
- Tough**, *adj.* troublesome, pertinacious, in *phr.* *make it tough*, to behave in a troublesome, pertinacious, and forward manner, T. v. 101, *made it tough*, was capious, 3. 531, behaved pertinaciously, T. iii. 87.
- Toumbling**, *adj.* perishing, B 3. p. 9. 168. See **Tomblinge**.
- Toun**, *s.* town, A 217; farm, B 4138; neighbourhood, R. 440.
- Tour**, *s.* tower, F 176, tower of London, A 3256, mansion (in astrology), 4. 111. (In B 2006, the sense is that his crest was a miniature tower, with a lily above it.)
- Touret**, *s.* turret, A 1009.
- Tourne**, *v.* turn, T. ii. 688, return, D 988.
- Tourneyinge**, *s.* tournament, R. 1206.
- Tourneyment**, *s.* tournament, B 1903.
- Tourning**, *s.* turning round, R. 761.
- Toute**, *s.* buttocks, backside, A 3812, 3853.
- Toverbyde**, *ger.* to survive, D 1260.
- Towayle**, *s.* towel, cloth, R. 161, Towaille, B 3935, 3943.
- Towne**; *out of t.* away, T. iii. 570, 577, 1091.
- To-wonde**, *pt. s.* with substitution of the weak for the strong form, as in *abreyde*, flew in pieces, became broken, 4. 102. The form *torond*, flew in pieces, occurs in Sir Ferumbras, 2568.
- To-yere**, *adv.* this year, HF. 84. D 108.
- Trace**, *s.* trace, steps, 14. 5; *Truus*, procession, L 285.
- Trace**, *i. pr. pl.* go, 5. 54.
- Trad**, *pt. s.* of **Trede**.
- Tragedien**, *s.* writer of tragedy, B 3. p. 6. 3.
- Traisoun**, *s.* treason, B 4307.
- Traitorye**, treachery, B 781.
- Traitour**, *s.* traitor, HF. 267.
- Translaten**, *ger.* to translate, L 370. *pp.* changed, dressed afresh, E 385.
- Transmuwe**, *v.* transform, T. iv. 407. *pp.* T. iv. 830.
- Transporten**, *v.* extend, B 1. p. 4. 241.
- Trappe**, *s.* trap, snare, A 145; trap-door, entrance, T. iii. 741.
- Trapped**, *pp.* furnished with trappings, A 2890.
- Trappe-dore**, *s.* trap-door, T. iii. 739.
- Trappures**, *pl.* trappings for horse, 2400.
- Traunce**, *s.* trance, A 1572, half-conscious state, B 3900, brown study, D 2110.
- Traunce**, *ger.* to tramp about, T. iii. 621.
- Trave**, *s.* wooden frame for holding unruly horses, A 3182. O. F. *tray*, from Lat. *acc.* *trabem*, beam.
- Travers**, *s.* 'traverse,' a curtain, screen, T. iii. 674; E 1817.
- Trayed**, *pt. s.* betrayed, HF. 390, L 1481.
- Trays**, *s.* traces, T. i. 312; A 2139. O. F. *trais*, *pl.* of *trait*, a trace. The E. *traces* is a double plural.
- Trayzen**, *ger.* to betray, T. iv. 418.
- Trayteresse**, *s.* *fem.* traitress, 1. 602, 814.
- Traytour**, *s.* traitor, A 1130; *gen. pl.* of traitors, hence *traitorous*, C 806.
- Trecherye**, *s.* treachery, trickery, B 4520.
- Trechoures**, *pl.* traitors, R. 197.
- Trede**, *i. pr. pl.* tread, A 3022; **Tret**, *pr. s.* treads, D 2002, **Trad**, *pt. s.* tread, R. 4168, **Treden**, *pt. pl.* HF. 2153, **Treden**, *pp.* stepped, C 712.
- Trede-foul**, *s.* treader of fowls, B 1115, 4041.
- Tragedie**, *s.* tragedy, sad story, T. v. 1780.
- Tregetour**, *s.* a juggler who used mechanical contrivances, HF. 1277; *pl.* F 1141.
- Trench**, *s.* a hollow walk, alley, F 102. F. *trancher*, to cut.
- Trenchant**, *adj.* cutting, sharp, A 1920.
- Trenden**, *v.* revolve, B 3. m. 11. 4.
- Trentals**, *pl.* (sets of) thirty masses for the dead, D 1717, 1724.
- Tresor**, *s.* treasure, wealth, B 442, C 721.
- Tresorere**, *s.* treasurer, 1. 107; 19. 18.
- Tresorie**, *s.* treasury, HF. 524.
- Trespas**, *s.* wrong, B 2547; transgression, L. 408, 463.
- Trespascours**, *s. pl.* offenders, B 3546.

- Tresse**, *s.* a (three-fold) plait (of hair), R. 770; HF. 230; A 1040.
Tresse, *ger.* to dress (my) hair, to plait, R. 509; *pp.* plaited, D 144.
Tressour, *s.* head-dress, R. 908. Probably a 'caul,' or net of gold thread.
Tret, *pr.* *s.* of Trede.
Tretable, *adj.* tractable, docile, I 658; yielding, L. 411; inclinable, 3. 923; inclined to talk, 3. 534.
Treto, *v.* treat, T. iv. 58; treat of, toll, 5. 4; *ger.* to speak, converse, C 64; *pp.* explained, B 5. p. 1. 3.
Treue, *s.* treaty, A 1288; discussion, F 129; agreement, E 1802.
Tretis, *s.* treaty, B 211; account, T. ii. 1007; treatise, A. *pr.* 5; story, B 2147.
Tretys, *adj.* well-proportioned, long, A 152; well-fashioned, R. 1016; graceful, R. 932. O. F. *tretis*.
Trewe, *adj.* true, A 531; honest, L. 464; pl. the faithful, B 450.
Trewe, *adv.* correctly, 8. 4.
Trewe, *s.* truce, T. iii. 1770, iv. 58; Trewea, *pl.* the days of truce, T. v. 401.
Trewe love, *s.* true-love (probably a leaf of herb paris or some aromatic confection). A 3002.
Trewely, *adv.* truly, certainly, A 481.
Trewer, *adj.* truer, 6. 117.
Trewer, *adv.* more truly, 3. 927.
Treweate, *adj.* superlative, F 1530.
Treyo, *num.* 'tray,' three, C 653.
Triacle, *s.* a sovereign remedy, B 479, C 114. O. F. *triacle*.
Trickled, *pl.* pl. trickled, B 1804.
Trille, *v.* turn, swirl, F 316. Cf. Swed. *trilla*, to turn round.
Trip, *s.* small piece, D 1747.
Trippe, *v.* dance, A 3328; *ger.* to trip, to move briskly with the feet, F 112.
Trist, *s.* trust, T. i. 154, iii. 401.
Tristo, *s.* trust, station, T. ii. 1534.
Tristo, *v.* trust, L. 333; *ger.* to trust (to), L. 1885.
Tristicia, *s.* sadness, I 725.
Troden; see Trede.
Trough, *s.* trough, A 3627.
Trompe, *s.* trumpet, L. 635.
Tromped, *pl.* *s.* sounded the trumpet, E 1719.
Trompes, *pl.* trumpeters, 7. 30; A 2671.
Tronchoun, *s.* broken shaft of a spear, A 2615. O. F. *tronchon*.
Trone, *s.* throne, A 2529; throne (of God), heaven, C 841.
Tropik, *s.* the turning-point, a name for the solstitial points, A. i. 17. 13.
Tropos, *s.* a turning; but interpreted by Chaucer to mean 'agaynward,' i. e. backward, A. i. 17. 11.
Trotteoth, *pr.* *s.* trots, i. e. goes, in, E 1538.
Troublable, *adj.* disturbing, B 4. m. 2. 12.
Trouble, *adj.* tempestuous, turbid, B 1. m. 7. 3; dull, H 179; disturbed, I 537; anxious, E 465; vexed, 6. 131.
Troubly, *adj.* cloudy, obscure, B 4. m. c. 35.
Trouthe, *s.* truth, A 46; fidelity, L. 267; troth, promise, A 1610.
Trown, *v.* believe, HF. 699, 1 *pr.* *s.* throw, believe, imagine, A 155, Trowestow, dost thou think, B 1. p. 3. 24.
Troyewardea, *to*, towards Troy, T. i. 50.
Trufles, *s.* pl. truffles, I 715.
Trumpeu, *v.* blow the trumpet, HF. 1242.
Trussed, *pp.* packed, A 681.
Truwe, *s.* truce, T. iv. 1312, 1314.
Tryce, *v.* pull, drag away, B 3715. Cf. R. *trice up* (nautical term).
Trye, *adj.* choice, excellent, B 2046.
Tryne compass, the threefold world, containing earth, sea, and heaven, G 45.
Tubbe, *s.* tub, A 3621.
Tuel, *s.* pipe, slender chimney, HF. 1640. O. F. *tuel*, F. *tupen*.
Tukked, *pp.* tucked, A 621.
Tulle, *v.* entice, allure, A 4134.
Tunge, *s.* tongue, 1. 128.
Turet, *s.* the eye in which the ring of the astrolabe turned, A. i. 2. 1. Cotgrave has 'Tourer,' the little ring by which a Hawkes luns or lens is fastened unto the James.' Neo Torota.
Turment, *s.* torment, R. 274.
Turmente, *ger.* to vex, L. 871.
Turne, *ger.* to turn, A 2454, *v.* turn (in a lathe), A 3928; Turnen, *v.* return, L. 2619; *pp.* at an end, 3. 689.
Turneyings, *s.* tournament, A 2557; mock tournament, R. 1407.
Turtel, *s.* turtle-dove, A 1728, E 2081.
Turves, *s.* pl. turf-plots, patches of turf, L. 204; E 2235.
Tusked, provided with tusks, F 1254.
Tuskes, *pl.* tusks, T. v. 1228.
Tuwel, *s.* hole, D 2148. See Tuel.
Twelf, twelve, C 21.
Twelfmonth, *s.* twelvemonth, year, A 651, D 920.
Twelfte, *adj.* twelfth, 4. 130.
Tweye, two, A 704, 792; Twey, B 2201; *twic and twic*, in pairs, A 898.
Tweyfold, *adj.* double, G 566.
Tweyne, twain, 2. 76; 4. 95.

Twigges, *s. pl.* twigs, HF 1936.
Twights, *pt. s.* twitched, drew quickly, T. iv. 1185; **Twight**, *pp.* distraught, (lit. twitched), T. iv. 573; pulled, D 1563. The infin. is *twiechen*.
Twinkeling, *s.* twinkling, 4. 222, momentary blinking, E 37.
Twinkled, *pt. pl.* twinkled, A 267; *pp.* winked, B 2. p 3. 79.
Twinne, *v.* sever, part, T. iv. 1197; *lit.* from *his wit*, lose his mind, 7. 102, depart, B 3195, F 577; *ger.* to separate, B 517; to depart (from), C 430.
Twinnings, *s.* separation, T. iv. 1301.
Twiste, *s.* (1) twist, tendril, T. iii. 1230, 2) twig, spray, E. 2349.
Twiste, *v.* wring, torment, F 566; 1 *pt. s.* tortured, D 494; *pt. s.* wring, E 2215.
Twiste, *pt. s. subj.* would compel, constrain, T. iii. 1769; **Twist**, *pp.* twisted, HF. 775.
Two so riche, twice as rich, L. 3391. 4th Ten.
Twyes, *adv.* twice, A 4348; **Twye**, A. i. 16. 13.
Tyd, *sb.* time, hour, T. ii. 1710; (*usually*) **Tyde**, R. 1452; season, F 142; **Tydes**, *pl.* tides, A 401.
Tyden, *v.* befall, happen, B 337; *pr. s.* comes to, a Northern form, A 4175.
Tit, *pr. s.* betides, T. i. 333; **Tid**, *pp.* happened, T. i. 907.
Tydif, *s.* small bird, perhaps the titmouse, L. 154. See **Tidifs**.
Tyme, *s.* time, A 15. 44; *by tyme*, early betimes, L. 452, in good tyme, 3. 170.
Tymes, *pl.* hours, 5. 283, moments, R 280, preceded by a number, **Tyme**, *gen. pl.* times, T. i. 441.
Tyne, *s.* barrel, 12. 9. O. F. *tine*.
Tyren, *v.* tear, rend, B 3. m. 12. 49; *pr. pl.* pull to pieces, T. i. 787.
Tytled, *pp.* dedicated, I 894.

U

Umbra extensa, or *recta*, the lower part of the 'skale'; *Umbra versa*, the upper part of the same, A. 1. 12. B.
Umbreyde, *pt. s.* upbraided, reproached, L. 1671.
Unagreable, *adj.* miserable, B 1. m. 1. 12; Lat. *ingratus*.
Unbityde, *v.* fail to happen, B 2. p 4. 20.
Unbodye, *v.* leave the body, T. v. 1520.
Unbokele, *v.* unbuckle, F 555.
Unbrent, *pp.* unburnt, B 1058.
Unbroyden, *pp.* unbraided, T. iv. 817.

Unbuxumnesse, *s.* unsubmitiveness, 24. 27.
Uncircumscrip, *pp.* boundless, T. v. 1865.
Unconning, *adj.* unskilful, 6. 75.
Unconninge, *s.* ignorance, B 7966.
Unconvenable, *adj.* unsuitable, I 431.
Uncouple, *v.* to let loose, B 3092.
Uncouth, *adj.* curious, A 2407; strange, HF. 1279, where the text has *uncouth*, but read *uncouth*.
Uncouthly, *adv.* uncommonly, strikingly, R. 584.
Uncovenable, *adj.* unseemly, I 631; unfit (for good), B 4. p 6. 333.
Uncunninge, *adj.* ignorant, B 1. p 1. 68.
Uncourteisly, *adv.* rudely, E 2361.
Unde fouled, undefiled, B 2. p 4. 24.
Undepartable, *adj.* inseparable, B 4. p 3. 62.
Undergrowe, *pp.* of short stature, A 151.
Undermeles, *pl.* undern-times, perhaps afternoons, D 875. See below.
Undern, *s.* B 4412, E 260, 981. A particular time in the morning is here implied, either about 9 a.m., or somewhat later (Also applied to signify mid-afternoon).
Undernom, *pt. s.* perceived, G 211; **Undernome**, *pp.* reproved, I 401.
Underput, *pp.* subjected, B 1. p 6. 07.
Underpyghte, *pt. s.* stuffed, filled underneath, B 780.
Underspore, *v.* thrust (the staff) under, push beneath, A 3465.
Understonde, *v.* understand, A 746, *pr. pl.* C 646; **Understode**, *pt. s. subj.* should understand, T. i. 1035; **Understonde**, *pp.* understood, T. v. 1186.
Undertake, *v.* affirm, E 803; *ger.* to conduct an enterprise, A 405, warrant, R. 461; dare say, B 3516.
Undevocioun, *s.* lack of devotion, I 721.
Undigne, *adj.* unworthy, E 359.
Undo, *ger.* to unfold, reveal, 3. 809; *v.* unfasten, T. iii. 741, *pr. s.* opens, A 3727.
Undoutous, *adj.* undoubting, B 5. p 1. 32.
Uneschewably, *adv.* inevitably, B 5. p 1. 135.
Uneschuable, *adj.* inevitable, B 5. p 1. 105.
Unethe, *adv.* scarcely, *icef. unethe*, scarcely at all, HF. 2041.
Unethe, *adv.* with difficulty, T. ii. 566.
Unfamous, *adj.* lost to fame, HF. 1146.
Unfestlich, *adj.* unfestive, jaded, F 366.
Ungiltif, *adj.* guiltless, T. iii. 1018.

Un-grobbed, *adj.* not digged round, 9. 14.
 Unhap, *s.* ill luck, T. i. 552.
 Unhappily, *adv.* unluckily, T. v. 937.
 Unhardy, *adj.* cowardly, A 4210.
 Unhele, *s.* misfortune, sickness, C 116.
 Unholom, *adj.* ailing, weak, T. iv. 330.
 Universe; *in univcrse*, universally, T. iii. 36.
 Universitee, *s.* the universal, B 5. p 4. 187.
 Unkinde, *adj.* unnatural, B 88; cruel, 5. 434.
 Unkindely, *adv.* unnaturally, C 485.
 Unkindenesse, *s.* unkindness, B 1057.
 Unkonning, *adj.* unskilful, A 2303.
 Unkorven, *adj.* uncut, unpruned, 9. 14.
 Unkouth, *adj.* strange, T. ii. 151.
 Unkunninge, *adj.* ignorant, R. 686.
 Unlaced, *pp.* disentangled, B 3. p 12. 166.
 Unleueful, *adj.* not permissible, I 503, 777.
 Unloven, *ger.* to cease to love, T. v. 1698.
 Unlust, *s.* disinclination, I 680.
 Unlyklinesse, *s.* difficulty in pleasing, T. i. 16.
 Unlykly, *adj.* unpleasing, E 2180.
 Unmanhod, *s.* an unmanly act, T. i. 824.
 Unmerie, *adj.* sad, HF. 74.
 Unmighty, *adj.* unable, T. ii. 858.
 Unneste, *imp.* *s.* leave thy nest, T. iv. 305.
 Unnethe, *adv.* scarcely, hardly, with difficulty, A 3121, B 1050, 1816, 3611.
 Unnethes, *adv.* scarcely, B 1675, D 2168.
 Unordred, *adj.* not belonging to a religious order, I 961.
 Unparigal, *adj.* unequal (Lat. *inparem*), B 3. p 1. 13.
 Unpleyten, *v.* unplait, explain, unfold, B 2. p 8. 11.
 Unpurveyed, *adj.* unprovided, uncared for, B 2. p 1. 22.
 Unraced, *adj.* unbroken, untorn, B 4. p 1. 53.
 Unremeved, *pp.* unremoved, without (its) being moved, A. ii. 46. 37.
 Unreste, *s.* restlessness, D 1104.
 Unright, *s.* wrong, T. iv. 550; injury, T. ii. 453.
 Unrightful, *adj.* wicked, L. 1771.
 Unsad, *adj.* unsettled, E 995.
 Unsavory, *adj.* displeasing, I 510.
 Unscience, *s.* unreal knowledge, no knowledge, B 5. p 3. 113.
 Unselinesse, *s.* unhappiness, B 4. p 4. 38.
 Unsely, *adj.* unhappy, B 2. p 4. 8.
 Unset, *adj.* unappointed, A 1524.
 Unshethe, *1 pr. s.* unsheathe, remove, T. iv. 776.

Unshette, *pt. s.* unlocked, E 2047.
 Unshette, *adj. pl.* not shut, HF. 1953.
 Unshewed, *pp.* unconfessed, I 999.
 Unsittinge, *adj.* unfit, T. ii. 307.
 Unskilful, *adj.* foolish, T. i. 790.
 Unskilfully, *adv.* unreasonably, B 1. p 4. 223.
 Unslekked, *adj.* unslacked, G 806.
 Unsofte, *adj.* harsh, E 1824.
 Unsolempne, *adj.* uncelebrated, B 1. p 3. 64.
 Unspeedful, *adj.* unprofitable, B 5. p 6. 337.
 Unstaunchable, *adj.* inexhaustible, B 2. p 7. 126 (Lat. *inexhausta*).
 Unstaunched, *adj.* insatiate, B 2. p 6. 115 (Lat. *inexpletam*).
 Unstraunge, *adj.* well-known, A. ii. 17. rubric.
 Unswelle, *v.* become less full, T. iv. 1146.
 Unswete, *adj.* bitter, HF. 72.
 Unthank, *s.* no thanks, want of thanks, T. v. 699; a curse, A 4081.
 Unthrift, *s.* nonsense, T. iv. 431.
 Unthriftily, *adv.* poorly, G 803.
 Unthrifty, *adj.* profitless, T. iv. 1530.
 Untold, *adj.* uncounted, A 3780.
 Untressed, *adj.* with hair loose, *s.* 268; unarranged, E 379; unplaited, A 1280.
 Untretable, *adj.* inexorable, B 2. p 8. 2.
 Untrewe, *adv.* untruly, A 735.
 Untriste, *v.* distrust, T. iii. 830.
 Untyme; *in untyme*, out of season, I 1051.
 Unwar, *adj.* unaware, T. i. 304; unexpected, B 427.
 Unwar, *adv.* unexpectedly, unawares, T. i. 549.
 Unwelde, *adj.* (unwieldy), too weak to support herself, R. 359; difficult to move, H 55; difficult to control, A 3886.
 Unwemmed, *adj.* unspotted, spotless, B 924, G 137, 225.
 Unwened, *adj.* unexpected, B 4. p 6. 260.
 Unwist, *adj.* unknown, T. ii. 1294; *unwist of*, uninformed of, T. i. 93; unknown by, L. 1653.
 Unwit, *s.* folly, 4. 271.
 Unwot, *pr. s.* fails to know, B 5. p 6. 177.
 Unwrye, *v.* reveal, T. i. 858.
 Unyolden, *pp.* without having yielded, A 2642.
 Up, *adv.* up; open (outwards, not upwards), A 3801; *as v.* up with, HF. 1021; *up and down*, T. ii. 659; in all directions, A 977; backwards and forwards, A 1052.
 Up, *prep.* on, upon, A 2543; *up peril*, on peril, D 2271; *up payne*, under the

penalty, D 1587, *up point*, on the point, ready, T. iv. 1153.
Up-bounds, *pp.* bound up, T. iii. 517.
Up-caste, *pt.* a. cast up, B 406.
Up-drow, *pt.* a. drew up, L. 1450.
Up-enbossed, *pp.* raised, L. 1500.
Up-haf, *pt.* a. nplifted, A 2428.
Upon, *prep.* upon, A 131; *in*, F 925; *against*, D 1313.
Upon, *used adverbially*, upon (him or her), on, D 550, 1382.
Uppe, *adv.* up, i. e. left open, F 615.
Up-plight, *pp.* plucked up, pulled up, B 3230.
Upright, *adv.* i. e. reversed, D 2266; *also*, lying on one's back (mostly of people asleep or dead); A 4194; B 1801.
Up-rist, *pr.* a. rises up, L. 1188; A 4240.
Up-riste, *s.* *dat.* up-rising, A 1051.
Upronne, *pp.* ascended, F 486.
Up-so-down, *adv.* upside down, A 1277, G 625.
Upspringe, *v.* rise (as the sun), 4. 14.
Upsterte, *pt.* a. upstarted, arose, A 1080, 1200.
Up-yaf, *pt.* a. yielded up, gave, A 2427.
Up-yolden, *pp.* yielded up, A 3022.
Usage, *s.* usage, habit, A 110; *haddē in usige*, was accustomed, B 1696; *was in usige*, B 1717.
Usaunce, *s.* custom, B. 683.
Usaunt, *pres. pt.* as *adj.* addicted, I 821; *accustomed*, A 3940.
Usen, *ger.* to accustom, I 245; *v.* use, B 44, Cæth, *pr.* a. is accustomed, L. 364.
Us-elve, *pron.* ourselves, I 149.
Uschers, *s.* pl. ushers, F 293.
Usure, *s.* usury, B 1681.
Us-ward, *to*, towards us, B 2938.
Utter, *adj.* outward, G 498.
Uttereste, *adj.* *superl.* supreme, E 787.

V.

Vache, *s.* cow, beast, 13. 22. The reference is to a quadruped that looks down to the earth.
Valance, *s.* (possibly) sign of zodiac opposite the mansion of a planet, 4. 145. if so, the reference here is to the sign of Aries.
Valour, *s.* worth, R. 957.
Vane, *s.* a weather-cock, E 996.
Vanish, *i.* *pr.* a. shrink up, waste away, C 732.
Variance, *s.* variation, T. iv. 985, *Variance*, difference, I 427.
Variant, *adj.* varying, G 1175.

Vassalage, *s.* prowess, L. 1667.
Vavassour, *s.* a sub-vassal, next in dignity to a baron, A 360.
Veine, *adj.* *fem.* vain, R. 447.
Veluet, *s.* velvet, R. 1420; *Veluëttes*, *pl.* F 644.
Venerian, *adj.* devoted to Venus, D 1012.
Venerye, *s.* hunting, A 166, 2308.
Venge, *v.* revenge, B 2471.
Vengeresses, *s.* *pl.* avengeresses, avenging deities, B 3. m. 12. 38.
Venim, *s.* venom, poison, R. 1089; *malice*, B 891, C 421, corruption, A 2751, *dyu* (Lat. *veneno*), B 3. m. 5. 12.
Ventusinge, *s.* cupping (a surgical operation), A 2747.
Venus, venereal pleasure, D 464.
Ver, the spring, T. i. 157.
Veray, *adj.* very, true, real, L. 1068.
Verdegross, *s.* verdigrise, G 791.
Verdit, *s.* verdict, A 787.
Vernage, *s.* a wine of Italy, B 1200.
Vernicle, *s.* vernicle, A 685. A copy of the sacred handkerchief on which the impression of the Saviour's face was distinguishable.
Vernished, *pt.* a. varnished; *heave* (jocularly), lined in a lavish way, A 4140.
Verre, *s.* glass, T. ii. 867.
Verray, *adj.* very, true, A 72, 422, *v.* *force* main force, B 3237.
Verrayly, *adv.* verily, truly, 2. 73.
Verrayment, *adv.* verily, B 1903.
Versiflour, *s.* poet, B 2783.
Vertu, *s.* virtue, A 307; quickening power A 4, power, A 2249; valour, R. 1208, mental faculty, HF. 550; magic influence, F 146, 157; *v.* *place*, satisfy virtue, be virtuous, E 216.
Vertuous, *adj.* virtuous, A 251; full of virtue, D 1113; full of healing power, R. 1097; holy, I 415.
Verve a word used in a charm, A 1485. Perhaps for *verri*, an accursed creature. A. S. *weary*.
Veso, *s.* rush (Lat. *impetus*), A 1985.
Vessel, *s.* (collectively), vessels, plate, B 3338.
Vestiment, *s.* clothing, F 59.
Veyne, *s.* vein, A 3.
Veyne-blood, *s.* bleeding at a vein, A 2747.
Viage, *s.* voyage, travel, journey, T. ii. 75. expedition, attempt, T. iii. 712.
Vicaire, *s.* deputy, deputed ruler, 5. 179; Vicary, a vicar, I 22.
Victor, *s.* as *adj.* of victory, 5. 182.

Vigile, *s.* wake, T. v. 305.
Vigilyes, *pl.* vigils, A 377.
Viker, *s.* vicar, D 2008.
Vileinous, *adj.* evil, B 2693.
Vileins, **Vileyns**, *adj.* villainous, L. 1824; rude, D 1268; sinful, I 854, 914; evil, wicked, I 556.
Vileinsly, *adv.* evilly, I 154; **Vilaynsly**, shamefully, R. 1498.
Vileinye, *s.* vile conduct, B 2547; great harm, A 4191; spiteful language, reproach, D 34, 53; disgrace, A 942; unfit speech, A 70; servitude, I 143; discourtesy, rudeness, C 740; vileness, HF. 96; reproach, T. iv. 21; evil-doing, B 1681.
Vinolent, *adj.* full of wine, D 467, 1931.
Violes, *s. pl.* vials, phials, G 793.
Virelayes, *s. pl.* ballads with a particular return of rime, F 948; L. 423.
Viritoot, *s.* brisk movement, A 3772.
Viritrate, *s.* hag, D 1582.
Visage, *v.* put a face (on it), disguise, E 2273.
Visitaciouns, *s. pl.* visits, D 555.
Visyte, *ger.* to visit, A 493, 1194.
Vitaille, *s.* victuals, provisions, A 248, 569.
Vitaille, *v.* provide with victuals, L. 1093.
Vitailleurs, *pl.* victuallers, A 4366.
Vitremyte, *s.* (probably) a woman's cap, an effeminate head-dress, B 3562.
Voided, *pp.* removed, F 1195; cleared, emptied, L. 2625.
Vois, *s.* voice, R. 751. See **Voys**.
Volage, *adj.* giddy, volatile, R. 1284; wanton, H 239.
Volatyl, *s. as pl.* fowls, B 1262.
Voltor, *s.* vulture, B 3. m 12. 46; *pl.* T. i. 788.
Volupeer, *s.* night-cap, A 4303; **Voluper**, woman's cap, A 3241.
Vouche, *v.*; *only used with sauf, safe*; **Vouche sauf**, *v.* to avouch as safe, call safe, vouchsafe, grant, deign, permit, A 812, B 1641, E 2341; 1 *pr. s.* am content, T. iv. 90; 2 *pr. pl.* vouchsafe, grant, deign, L. 2038; **Voucheth sauf**, *imp. pl.* vouchsafe, E 885, F 1043.
Voyde (voidée), *s.* 'voidee,' a light dessert, with wine and spices, T. iii. 674.
Voyden, *v.* get rid of, expel, A 2751, E 910, F 188; *imp. s.* depart from, E 806; **Voydeth**, *imp. pl.* send away, G 1136.
Voys, *s.* voice, A 688, C 531; rumour, E 629; commendation, E 1592; report, T. iii. 1723.
Vulgar, *adj.* A. ii. 9. 5. The *dry vulgar* is the length of the 'artificial' day,

with the durations of morning and evening twilight added to it.
Vyoe, *s.* fault, error, T. i. 689; F 101; defect, D 955.

W.

Waast, *s.* waist, B 1890.
Waat, *pr. s.* knows (Northern), A 4086.
Waoche, *s.* sentinel, B 2216.
Wachet, *s.* light blue colour, A 3321. Later *E. watchet*.
Waden, *v. pass*, E 1684; **wade** (through), D 2084; enter (into), T. ii. 150; go, descend, B 3684.
Waf, *pt. s.* wove, L. 2364.
Wafereres, *s. pl.* makers of *gaufres* or wafer-cakes, confectioners, C 479.
Wages, *pl.* A 1803; pay, recompense, 4. 244.
Wagging, *s.* shaking, T. ii. 1745.
Waiten, *v.* attend on, L. 1269; *pr. s.* watches, E 708; *imp. s.* observe, A. ii. 5. 18.
Wake, *v.* be awake, lie awake, 18. 27; **Waken**, *v. act.* awake, B 1187; *pr. s.* watches, F 819; **Wook**, 1 *pt. s.* awoke, 5. 695; remained awake, B 3819; **Waked**, *pp.* awaked, 3. 294; kept wake, caroused, 3. 977.
Wake-pleyes, *pl.* funeral games, A 2960.
Waker, *adj.* vigilant, 5. 358.
Waking, *s.* watching, being awake, 3. 611; period of wakefulness, B 22; *pl.* vigils, I 257.
Wālet, a wallet, A 686; **Walēt**, A 681.
Walked, (*for* Walketh), *s.* walking; *in phr.* go walked, *for* go a-walketh, gone a-walking, 3. 387; D 1778.
Walken, *ger.* to walk, roam, A 2320; **Welk**, 1 *pt. s.* walked, T. ii. 517; *is walked*, is gone, went, A 2368.
Walsh-note, *gen. sing.* walnut's, HF. 1281.
Walwe, *ger.* to wallow, roll about, T. i. 609; *pr. pl.* wallow, tumble, A 4278; *pr. s. tosses*, L. 1166; rolls about, D 1085; *pp.* involved, immersed, 12. 17; **Walwinge**, *pres. part.* causing to roll, B 1. m 7. 4 (*Lat. voluens*).
Wanges, *s. pl.* molar teeth, A 4031.
Wang-tooth, *s.* molar tooth, B 3234.
Wanhope, *s.* despair, A 1249.
Wanie, *v.* wane, A 2078.
Wante, *v.* be wanting, be absent, L. 361; fail, be lacking, I 514; *pr. s.* is lacking, H 338.
Wantownesse, *s.* wantonness, B 31; mannerism (of speech), A 264.

- Wantrust**, *s.* distrust, T. i. 794, H 280.
War, *adj.* prudent, discreet, cautious, T. i. 203, aware, A 157, 896, 3604; *1000 I w.*, I observed, s. 218, 298; *I was w.*, 3 445. *ben w.*, beware, T. i. 615, *be w.*, beware, 13. 11; take warning, G 737, *be w. fro.*, beware of, L 474, *both w.*, beware, T. iii. 1180; B 1639, 3281.
War him, let him beware, A 662; *war you*, make way, B 1889.
Wardo, *s.* *dat.* (?) keeping; *on w.*, into his keeping, 3. 248; *in our w.*, C 201; *under my w.*, I 880.
Wardecore, *s.* body-guard, D 359.
Warderere, *for wardo rere*, look out behind, A 4101.
Wardrobe, *s.* privy, B 1762.
Ware, *adj.* aware, 3. 1030.
Ware, *s.* wares (for sale), merchandise, B 140, 1246.
Ware, *imp. pl.* beware, B 4416.
Warente, *ger.* to warrant, protect, C 338.
Wariangles, *pl.* shrieks, butcher-birds, D 1408.
Warien, *ger.* to curse, T. ii. 1619; *1 pr s.* B 372.
Warisoun, *s.* requital, R. 1537.
Warishe, *v.* cure, I 908; recover, be cured, B 2172 *pp.* cured, B 2467.
Warisshinge, *s.* cure, B 2205.
Warly, *adv.* warily, carefully, T. iii. 454.
Warne, *v.* reject, refuse, 1. 11; *1 pr s.* warn, bid you take heed, B 16, 1184, invite, B 2652, *2 pr s. subj.* inform, HF 893; *pp.* forewarned, L 2658; given notice, B 1578.
Warnestore, *ger.* to fortify, defend, B 2487; to garrison, B 2521, *pp.* provisioned, B 1. p 3. 85.
Warnestoring, *s.* fortifying, B 2525.
Waryce, *v.* heal, cure, C 906.
Waste, *adj. pl.* wasted, partially destroyed, A 1331.
Wastel-breed, *s.* cake-bread, bread of the very best quality, A 147.
Wastour, *s.* waster E 1545.
Watering, *s.* watering-place (for horses), A 816.
Wawe, *s.* wave, B 508, I 363.
Waxen, *pp.* become, T. v. 1014, 1374, 1376.
Wayk, *adj.* weak, L 2428, 2713.
Wayken, *ger.* to grow weak, lessen, T. iv. 1144.
Waymenten, *ger.* to lament, I 240.
Waymentinge, *s.* lamenting, lamentation, A 905, 1921.
Wayn, *s.* car, B 4. m 1 34.
Wayten, *ger.* to observe, T. i. 190, to watch for, F 1263; to watch, F 444, *v.* to expect, B 467; *pr s.* seeks occasion, A 1222.
Webbe, *s.* a weaver, A 362.
Wedde, *s.* *dat.*; to w., as a pledge, in pledge, A 1218, B 1612.
Wedde, *ger.* to wed, T. v. 863.
Wedding, *s.* wedlock, 17. 24.
Wede, *s.* weed, robe, garment, A 1100, B 2107, E 863.
Weder, *s.* weather, D 2253, F 52; storm, T. ii. 2, iii. 657.
Wedes, *pl.* weeds, T. i. 946.
Weel, *adv.* well, A 926; well placed, luckily situated, B 208.
Weeldinge, *s.* power, control, B 2800.
Weep, *pt. s.* of Wepe.
Weeply, *adj.* tearful, sorrowful, B 1. p 1 1.
Weet, *s.* wet, A 4107.
Weex, *pt. s.* waxed, grew, G 513.
Wegge, *s.* a wedge, A. i. 14. 6.
Wehee, *s.* a whinnying noise, A 4066.
Weilawey, *alas!* D 216.
Wel, *adv.* well, A 384, B 25; much, L 1386, many, L 11; certainly, L 452; fully, A 29, 49; about (*used with numbers*), A 24; *wel royal*, very royal, F 26; *wel ny*, very nearly, B 3230; *wel the bet*, much better, T. ii. 92; *wel wæthe*, scarcely at all, L 33 a; *to be wel*, to be in favour, 1. 845; *wel is him*, it is well for him, T. i. 350; *wel was him*, it was well for him, B 4066, *ful wel*, very well, A 122.
Weilawey, *int.* *alas!* T. iii. 1695.
Welde, *s.* weld, *Reedu Lutcola*, 9. 17.
Welde, *s.* power, control, R. 295.
Welden, *ger.* to have control over, to move with ease, D 1947; to control, D 271; to wield, L 2000, *Welte*, *pt. s.* B 3200.
Weldy, *adj.* wieldy, active, T. ii. 636.
Wels, *s.* happiness, success, prosperity, well-being, good fortune, A 895, 3101, B 122.
Welsful, *adj.* prosperous, happy, B 2507, blessed, B 451.
Welsfulnesse, *s.* happiness, B 1. p 3. 35.
Welk, *pt. s.* of Walken.
Welked, *pp.* *as adj.* withered, C 738, D 277.
Welken, *s.* heaven, sky, HF. 1601. *Welkne*, 10. 62.
Welmeth, *pr s.* wells, gushes, R. 1561.
Welte, *pt. s.* wielded, i.e. lorded it over possessed for use, B 3200.
Wel-willy, *adj.* benevolent, benign, beneficent, T. iii. 1257.

- Wem, *s.* blemish, R. 930; hurt, F 121.
Wemmelees, *adj.* stainless, G 47.
Wenden, *ger.* to go, A 21, 2214; pass away, A 3025; go, pass, B 1683; Went, *pr. s.* goes, T. ii. 36, 812; Wente, *pt. s.* went, A 78, B 1739; Wente him, *pt. s.* went, G 110; Wentestow, 2 *pr. s.* hast thou gone, A 3486; Went, *pp.* gone, L. 1651; *ben went*, are gone, B 173; *is went*, is gone, G 534.
Wending, *s.* departure, T. iv. 1344, 1436.
Wene, *s.* supposition, doubt, T. iv. 1593; *withouten wene*, without doubt, R. 574, 732.
Wenen, *v.* ween, suppose, imagine, consider, L. 12; G 676; expect, A 4320; Wenestow, weenest thou, thinkest thou, D 311; Weneth, *pr. s.* imagines (with *men* = one), A 2195; Wende, 1 *pt. s.* imagined, T. v. 693; supposed, F 585; fancied, A 1269; Wendest, 2 *pr. s. subj.* shouldst ween, T. i. 1031; Wende, *pt. s. subj.* would have thought, C 782; Wend, *pp.* supposed, T. iv. 384; imagined, T. v. 1682.
Wenged, *adj.* winged, HF. 2118.
Wenges, *pl.* wings, L. 168 a.
Weninge, *s.* imagination, supposition, T. iv. 992.
Went, *pr. s. and pp. of* Wenden.
Wente, *pt. s. of* Wenden.
Wente, *s.* turn, T. ii. 63; path, passage, T. iii. 787; footpath, 18. 69.
Wepe, *v.* weep, A 144, 230; Weep, *pt. s.* wept, A 148, B 606, 1052; Wepte, *pt. s.* (*weak form*), B 267; Wepen, *pp.* T. i. 941; Wopen, *pp.* F 523.
Wepen, *s.* weapon, L. 1994.
Werbul, *s.* tune (warble), T. ii. 1033.
Werche, *v.* work, perform, B 566; Wroghtestow (*for* Wroghtest thou), thou didst cause, B 3583; Wroghte, *pt. s.* worked, A 497; contrived, B 1788; made, E 1152; Wroughte, 1 *pt. s.* acted, A. ii. 3. 46; did, R. 701; Wrought, *pp.* made, formed, R. 559; born, B 3619; created, G 326; composed, L. 372.
Werde, *pt. s. of* Were (wear).
Werdes, *s. pl.* fates, destinies, B 1. m 1. 14.
Were, *s.* weir, 5. 138; T. iii. 35.
Were, *s.* doubt, 3. 1295; HF. 979; mental struggle, L. 2686. Lowl. Sc. *weir*.
Were, 2 *pt. s.* wast, T. iv. 762; *it were*, they were, E 850; *al were it*, though it were, D 1172.
Were (wero), *v.* wear, 21. 7; Werede, *pt. s.* wore, A 1388, 3235; Werde, R. 875; Wered, A 75; Wered upon, 1 *pt. s.* wore upon (me), D 559.
Were, *ger.* to defend, A 2550.
Weringe, *s.* wearing, I 1052.
Werk, *s.* work, A 479; act, L. 891.
Werken, *v.* act, A 3527; *pr. s.* acts, L. 1385.
Workers, *pl.* doers, D 1937.
Werkes, *pr. pl.* ache, A 4030.
Werking, *s.* deed, H 210; mode of operation, G 1367.
Werne, *ger.* to refuse, T. iii. 149, iv. 111; *v.* refuse, R. 1485; warn off, R. 636; Werned, *pp.* forbidden, R. 442.
Werning, *s.* let, forbidding, R. 1142.
Werre, *s.* war, T. ii. 868; trouble, T. v. 1393; *of werre*, in war, T. i. 134; *to w.*, in enmity, 1. 116.
Werre, *adv.* worse, 3. 616.
Werreye, *ger.* to make war, A 1484; *v.* war against, A 1544; *pr. s.* opposes, I 487.
Werreyour, *s.* warrior, L. 597.
Wers, *adj.* worse, A 3872.
Werste, *adj. superl.* worst, T. ii. 304.
Werte, *s.* wart, A 555.
Wery, *adj.* (being) weary, T. iv. 707; worn, R. 440, 664; beaten repeatedly, lit. weary, B 4. m 5. 17.
Wesels, *s.* weasel, A 3234.
Wesh, *pt. s. of* Wasshe.
Weste, *v.* turn to the west, L. 61, 197.
Westren, *v.* to go to the west, T. ii. 900.
Wete, *s.* perspiration, G 1187.
Wete, *v.* wet, HF. 1785.
Wether, *s.* sheep, T. iv. 1374.
Weven, *v.* weave, L. 2352; Waf, *pt. s.* wove, L. 2364.
Wex, *s.* wax, A 675, E 1430.
Wexen, *v.* wax, grow, become, B 2265, († 877; 1 *pr. s. subj.* may I become, G 1377; Wexe, 2 *pr. pl.* increase, grow (in applauding), E 998; Wex, *pt. s.* grew, became, A 1362; increased, L. 727; Woxe, *pp.* grown, R. 1460; become, HF. 1494.
Wexede, *pt. s.* coated with wax, A. ii. 40. 28.
Wey, *s.* way, A 34; path, R. 1345; the sun's apparent daily path, A. ii. 30. 5; the sun's apparent annual orbit, A. i. 21. 49; *a furlong wey*, a short time (lit. short distance), E 516; *go wey*, go thy way, T. i. 574; *do wey*, take away, A 3287.
Weyen, *v.* weigh, B 3776; *oghte weyen*, ought to weigh, L. 398.
Weyere, *s.* the 'weigher,' a translation

- of the Lat. *equator*; because the days and nights, at the equinoxes, are equal, A. i. 17. 25.
- Weyk**, *adj.* weak, 7. 341.
- Weylaway**, *interj.* *alas!* A. 938.
- Weymentinge**, *s.* lamenting, A. 932. lament, T. ii. 65.
- Weynes**, *s.* pl. chariots, B. 4. m. 5. 6.
- Weyven**, *ger.* to turn aside, E. 1483, v. waive, neglect, T. ii. 284; put aside, D. 1176, forsake, G. 276; abandon, B. 2406.
- Whan**, *when*, A. 5. 18. 179.
- What**, *whatever*, 4. 170, what sort of a, L. 1305, what with, B. 21. 22; why, T. ii. 262, 292; what! how! L. 1800; What that, whatever, E. 104, What man that, whoever, B. 2645; What . . . what, partly, . . . partly, HF. 2058.
- Wheelen**, *ger.* to cause to revolve, T. i. 139.
- Whelkes**, *pl.* pimples, blotches, A. 632.
- Whelp**, *s.* cub, A. 2627.
- Wheune**, *adv.* whence, E. 488.
- Whennes**, *adv.* whence, B. 2400.
- Wher**, *adv.* where, B. 1785, &c.; wherever, E. 1669; Wher as (or Wher-as), where that, where, B. 647, 1411.
- Wher**, *whether*, (*a common contracted form of whether*), 3. 91.
- Wher-as**, *adv.* where that, where, T. iii. 516.
- Whereof**, *prep.* in what respect, R. 703, for what, R. 1552.
- Wherfora**, *for any cause*, C. 216.
- Wher-on**; *long ither-on*, because of what, D. 930.
- Wher-so**, *whether*, B. 204, wherever, L. 439.
- Wher-through**, *adv.* by means of which, 2. 120.
- Wherto**, *adv.* for wherefore, T. i. 409.
- Whete**, *s.* wheat, C. 175.
- Whether**, *adj.* which (of two), A. 1850.
- Whette**, *pp.* *pl.* sharpened, T. v. 1760.
- Which**, *pron.* which, A. 161, whom, A. 568, what kind of, L. 1883, Which a, what kind of a, what a, L. 668, 809, &c.
- Whider**, *whither*, T. v. 428, 486.
- Whilk**, *which* Northern, A. 4078.
- Whilom**, *adv.* once, D. 2017.
- Whippeltree** (*better Wippeltree*), *cornel-tree*, A. 2021.
- Whirle**, *ger.* to rush, go swiftly, T. v. 1019; v. be whirled round, 5. 80.
- Who**, *interrog.* who, T. v. 371; D. 692; *indef.* who (it might be), 2. 244, one who, 2. 559, whoever, who, T. v. 1415, Who was who, which was which, A. 4300.
- Whylo**, *s.* time, A. 2209; *worth the ask*, worth while, T. v. 882.
- Whyl-er**, *adv.* formerly, G. 1438.
- Whyles**, *gen.* *s.* *as adv.*; *the whyles*, whilst, 3. 151.
- Whylom**, *adv.* once, formerly, once at a time, R. 10. 362.
- Whyne**, *v.* whine, whinny, D. 386.
- Whyt**, *adj.* white, A. 238; *as sb.*, white wine, C. 326, 362, *pl.* innocent, guileless, T. iii. 1567; specious, flattering, T. iii. 901.
- Whyte**, *a.* white (i. e. silver), T. iii. 1384.
- Widwe**, *s.* widow, A. 251.
- Widwehode**, *s.* widowhood, I. 916.
- Widwehed**, L. 205 a.
- Wierdes**, *pl.* fates, T. iii. 617; *Wirdes*, L. 1580. A. S. *wyrd*.
- Wight**, *s.* a person, creature, man, living being, A. 71, 280, whit, short while, A. 4283, *Wightes*, *pl.* creatures, men, beings, A. 3479.
- Wight**, *adj.* active, B. 3457; fleet, A. 4086.
- Wighte**, *s.* weight, HF. 739; A. 2145, 2382.
- Wike**, *s.* week, C. 362. See **Wyke**.
- Wiket**, *s.* wicket-gate, small gate, E. 2045, 2118.
- Wikke**, *adj.* evil, wicked, bad, A. 1087, 1580, false, B. 2247, depraved, 10. 55, much alloyed, HF. 1446.
- Wikked**, *adj.* bad, wicked, L. 2105. *pl.* wicked, I. 112. In B. 1576, *wikked ned* is put for *F mau st*, i. e. Sir Oliver Mauny, see the note in the larger edition.
- Wikkednesse**, *s.* evil, 17. 7.
- Wil**, *a.* will, 6. 81. See **Wille**.
- Wil**, *i.* *pr.* *s.* desire, wish, 7. 244; *pr.* *s.* desires, B. 1841.
- Wilde**, *adj.* wild; *Wilde fyr*, wild fire, fire not easily put out, Greek fire, D. 371; flaming spirits, I. 445, *a.* disease, erysipelas, A. 4172, E. 2252; *Wilde*, *pl.* A. 2018.
- Wildnesse**, *s.* wilderness, 9. 34.
- Wilen**, *pr.* *pl.* will, R. 1683.
- Wilful**, *adj.* voluntary, B. 3. p. 11. 167.
- Wilful**, *as adv.* wilfully, willingly, 5. 429.
- Wilfulhed**, *s.* wilfulness, L. 355 a.
- Wilfully**, *adv.* willingly, voluntarily, of free will, by choice, B. 4486, C. 441.
- Wilfulness**, *s.* wish, B. 2572.
- Wille**, *s.* own accord, will, 1. 45, 57; pleasure, desire, E. 126, F. 1, 8; *Willes*, *gen.* F. 408; *as by his w*, willingly, 17. 12.
- Wille**, *v.* will, desire, E. 721.
- Willing**, *s.* desire, E. 319.
- Willingly**, *adv.* of free will, E. 462.
- Wilnon**, *v.* desire, A. 2114, *Wilnest*, *i.* *pr.*

- s.* desirest, A 1600; Wilned, 1 *pt.* *s.* 3. 1262, 1267. A.S. *wilnian*.
- Wilninge, *s.* willing, wishing, B 3. p 11. 88; *pl.* desires, B. 3. p 11. 175.
- Wilow, *s.* willow-tree, A 2922.
- Wiltow, 2 *pr.* *s.* wilt thou, A 1156; wishest thou, B 2116; wilt thou (go), D 1387.
- Wimpel, *s.* wimple, a covering for the head, gathered round it, and pleated under the chin, A 151.
- Wimpleth, *pr.* *s.* conceals (as with a wimple), B 2. p 1. 66.
- Windas, *s.* windlass, F 184.
- Winde, *ger.* to turn, T. iii. 1541; to revolve, T. ii. 601; to roam about, L. 818; Winde, *v.* wind, entwine, T. iii. 1232; intertwine, 5. 671; ply, bend, T. i. 257; bind with cloths, E 583; twist and turn, G 980; Winde, 2 *pr.* *s.* *subj.* mayst go, T. iii. 1440; Wond, *pt.* *s.* wound, went about, L. 2253.
- Windinge, *s.* twisting, I 417.
- Wind-melle, *s.* wind-mill, HF. 1281.
- Windre, *ger.* to trim, R. 1020; *pp.* trimmed, R. 1018. Cf. O. F. *guignier*.
- Windy, *adj.* unstable as wind, B 2. p 8. 28.
- Winged, provided with wings, A 1385.
- Winke, *v.* wink, B 4496; nod, F 348; remain awake, T. iii. 1537; Winke, 1 *pr.* *s.* am asleep, 5. 7.
- Winne, *ger.* to win, gain, A 427; to conquer, F 214; to get gain, C 461; *w. fro*, to get away from, T. v. 1125; Wan, 1 *pt.* *s.* got, D 1477; won, gained, A 442, 989; *pt.* *s.* used as *pt. pl.* F 1401; Wonen, *pp.* won, A 877, 3381.
- Winning, *s.* gain, profit, A 275, D 416.
- Winsinge, *pres. pt.* wincing, starting aside, i.e. skittish, A 3203.
- Winter, *pl.* years, T. i. 811.
- Wirche, *v.* work, A 3430; provide, E 1661; give relief, A 2759; *in passive sense*, to be made, HF. 474; *ger.* to perform, A 3308; Wirk, *imp.* *s.* do, E 1485.
- Wirde, *pl.* Fates, L. 2580; Wierdes, T. iii. 617.
- Wirk, *imp.* *s.* work, do, E 1485.
- Wirkinge, *s.* efficiency, B 3. p 11. 26; actions, D 698; calculation, F 1280.
- Wis, *adv.* certainly, verily, surely, T. ii. 381, 474, 563; A 2786, D 621; as wise, as sure (as), T. iv. 1655; assuredly, F 1470. See Ywis.
- Wisly, *adv.* certainly, truly, verily, A 1863, 3994, 4162.
- Wisse, *v.* instruct, T. i. 622; inform, D 1415; show, tell, D 1008; 2 *pr.* *s.* *subj.* teach, 5. 74; *imp.* *s.* direct, guide, 1. 155. A.S. *wissian*.
- Wish, 1 *pt.* *s.* washed, R. 96, 125.
- Wisshe, *v.* wish, T. ii. 406.
- Wist, -e; see Witen.
- Wit, *s.* reason, R. 1535; understanding, B 2702; judgement, A 279; mind, R. 1694; knowledge, mental power, R. 401; wisdom, T. iv. 1508; proof of intelligence, E 459; Wittes, *pl.* senses, B 202; wits, F 706; opinions, F 203.
- Witen, *ger.* to know, to wit, T. v. 1324; Wite, *ger.* to know, 3. 493; to discover, D 1450; do you wite, make you know, inform you, T. ii. 1635; Woot, 1 *pr.* *s.* wot, know, A 389; *pr.* *s.* knows, 2. 30; Wot, 1 *pr.* *s.* L. 4; *pr.* *s.* knows, B 195; Woost, 2 *pr.* *s.* knowest, T. i. 633; Wost, 2 *pr.* *s.* L. 542; Wostow, thou knowest, A 2304; Witen, 1 *pr. pl.* wit, know, A 1260; Witen, 2 *pr. pl.* D 1890; know ye, H 1, 82; Woot (*wrongly used for Wite*), 2 *pr. pl.* know, A 740; Wiste, 1 *pt.* *s.* wist, knew, E 814; Wistest, 2 *pt.* *s.* knewest, A 1156; Wistestow, knewest thou, T. iii. 1644; Wiste, *pt.* *s.* knew, R. 1344; Wist, *pp.* known, B 1072; Witeth, *imp. pl.* know, T. i. 687. A.S. *witan*; *pr. t.* wolt, wolt, wolt, *pl.* witon; *pt. t.* wiste.
- With, with, A 5, 10, &c.; to hele with your hurtles, to heal your wounds with, F 471.
- With-drow, 1 *pt.* *s.* subtracted, A. ii. 45. 12.
- Withholden, *ger.* to retain, I 1041; Withholde, *pp.* retained, B 2202; detained, G 345; shut up, kept in confinement, A 511.
- Withinne-forth, *adv.* within, B 5. p 5. 14.
- With-oute-forth, *adv.* outwardly, I 172.
- Withouten, *prep.* besides, as well as, A 461; excepting, T. ii. 236.
- Withseye, *v.* contradict, gainsay, A 805; refuse, L. 367; renounce, G 457.
- Withstonde, *v.* withstand, oppose, B 3110; Withstonde, *pp.* withstood, T. i. 253.
- Witing, *s.* knowledge, cognizance, A 1611.
- Witingly, *adv.* knowingly, I 401.
- Witnessfully, *adv.* publicly, B 4. p 5. 11.
- Witterly, *adv.* plainly, truly, L. 2006.
- Wivere, *s.* wyvern, snake, T. iii. 1010. O.F. *wivre*, lit. viper.
- Wlatsom, *adj.* disgusting, B 3814; heinous, B 4243.
- Wo, a woe, R. 319; me is wo, I am sorry,

- L. 1985; *we were us*, *wee* would be to us, E 139.
- Wo**, *adj.* unhappy, R. 312; sad, grieved, A 151.
- Wode**, *adj.*; see **Wood**.
- Wode-binde**, *s.* woodbine, honeysuckle, A 1508.
- Wodedowve**, *s.* wood-pigeon, B 1961.
- Wodewale**, *s.* the green woodpecker, *Geizus viridis*, R. 914.
- Wodnesse**, *s.* madness, T. iii. 704.
- Wol**, *1 pr. s.* I will, A 42; desire, R 646.
- Wola**, *1 pr. s.* am ready to, T i. 589.
- Wolt**, *2 pr. s.* wilt, E 314, **Woltow**, wilt thou, A 1544; dost thou wish, D 840.
- Wol**, *pr. s.* will, B 60; wills, desires, HF. 662; wishes for, T ii. 150, wishes (to go), will go, L. 1191, permits, H 38.
- Wole**, will go, D 133, *wol adoun*, is about to set, I 72; *Wol ye so*, if you so wish it, E 2264; *Wil ye, wish ye*, F 378, **Woln**, *pr. pl.* will, wish (to have), A 2121.
- Wolen**, *pr. pl.* will, B 2501; **Wolde**, *1 pt. s.* desired, 6. 48; should like, B 1617.
- Woldestow**, if thou wouldst, L. 760, *wouldst thou*, B 4536, **Wolde**, *pt. s.* would, A 144, would like to, B 1582, wished, L. 952; required, F 577; would go, would turn, F 406, wished to, 4. 124, T. ii. 514, **Wolde**, . . . unto, would go to, B 3786, *god wolde*, oh! that God would grant, 1. 665, *wolde god*, oh! that God would be pleased, D 1101; **Wolde** whose nolde, i.e. whoever would or would not, T. i. 77; **Wold**, *pp.* desired, 18. 11; willed, B 2190, 2615.
- Wolde**, *s.* dat. possession, R. 451.
- Wolle**, *s.* wool, L. 1701.
- Woln**, **Woltow**, see **Wol**.
- Wombe**, *s.* belly, A 4290, womb, E 2414, the depression in the front of an astro-labe, A. i. 2. 3.
- Wombe-side**, the front of the astro-labe, A. i. 6. 10.
- Wommanhede**, *s.* womanhood, B 851.
- Wond**; *pt. s.* of **Winle**.
- Wonde**, *v.* desire, L. 1187.
- Wonder**, *adj.* wonderful, wondrous, strange, T i. 419.
- Wonder** *adv.* wondrously, R. 242.
- Wonderly**, *adv.* wondrously, A 84.
- Wonder-most**, *adj. sup.* most wonderful, HF. 2039.
- Wonders**, *adv.* wondrously, R. 27.
- Wone** (*wuno*), *s.* custom usage, wont, T ii. 318, HF 76.
- Wone**, *v.* dwell, inhabit, G 332; **Woneth**, *pr. s.* dwells, lives, D 1573, **Woneden**, *pt. pl.* dwalt, A 2927; **Woned**, *pp.* dwalt, T. i. 276; wont, accustomed, T. ii. 402, v. 277.
- Wones** (*wónes*), *pl.* places of retreat, hence, range of buildings, D 2105. See **Woon**.
- Wonger**, *s.* pillow, B 2102.
- Woning**, *s.* habitation, house, A 620.
- Wonne**, *-n*; see **Winne**.
- Wood**, (*wood*), *s.* wood, 9. 17.
- Wood**, (*wóod*), *adj.* mad, A 184, 582, 651, mad with anger, D 313, *for wood*, as being mad, madly, furiously, L. 2420, *for pure wood*, for very rage, R. 576, *ten so wood*, ten times as fierce, L. 776.
- Wode**, *def. adj.* mad, T ii. 1355.
- Woodeth**, *pr. s.* rages, G 467.
- Woodly**, *adv.* madly, A 1301.
- Woodnesse**, *s.* madness, rage, A 321, 452.
- Woon** (*wóon*), *s.* resource, T. iv. 1181, plenty, abundance, L. 1652; number, L. 2161; retreat, secure place, HF 1100, *-of sorow woon*, abundance of sorrow, 1. 475; **Wones**, *pl.* places of retreat, range of buildings, D 2105.
- Woost**, **Woot**; see **Wite**.
- Wopen**, *pp.* of **Wepe**.
- Worcher**, *s.* worker, maker, 4. 261.
- Worcheth**, *pr. s.* works, 3. 815.
- Word**, *s.* word, A 304, *good word*, approval, T v. 1081; *se by ic*, word by word, D 2244, *at shorte wordes*, briefly in a word, L. 2462, *haddeth the wordes* was spokesman, I 67.
- Word and ende** (*for* **Ord** and **ende**), beginning and end, T. ii. 1495, iii. 702, v. 1669; B 3911.
- Worm-foul**, *s.* birds which eat worms, 5. 505.
- Wort**, *s.* unfermented beer, wort, G 814.
- Wortes**, *pl.* herbs, B 4411, E 226.
- Worthen**, *v.* be, dwell, T v. 120, to become, 4. 248; **Worth**, *pr. s.* is, *or, as fut.*, shall be, (*hence*) *Wo worth*, it is woe to, it shall be woe to, it is all for, it shall be ill for, T. ii. 344, *Wel worth of dremes ay these olde wyves*, it is well for these old wives as regards dreams, i.e. dreams are all very well for old women, T v. 379; *Wel worth [not worthe] of this thing grete clerkes*, it is well for great writers as regards this thing, i.e. this thing is all very well for great writers, HF. 51, *Wort*, upon, gets upon, B 1941; *Worth up*, get up on, mount, T. ii. 1011.
- Woost**, **Wostow**, **Wot**, see **Wite**.

Wouke, *s.* week, T. iv. 1278, v. 492.
Wounde, *s.* wound, i. 79; plague (Lat. *plaga*), I 593; Woundes of Egipte, *pl.* plagues of Egypt (unlucky days so called), 3. 1207.
Wowe, *ger.* to woo, T. v. 1091.
Wowing, *s.* wooing, L. 1553.
Woxen, *pp.* of Wexe.
Wrak, *s.* wreck, B 513.
Wrak, *pt. s.* avenged, T. v. 1468.
Wrang, *adv.* wrongly, amiss (Northern), A 4252.
Wrastlen, *v.* wrestle, B 3456.
Wrathen, *ger.* to render angry, T. iii. 174.
Wraw, *adj.* angry, H 46; Wrawe, peevish, fretful, I 677.
Wrawnesse, *s.* peevishness, fretfulness, I 680.
Wrecche, *s.* sorrowful creature, A 931; wretched man, T. i. 708.
Wrecche, *adj.* wretched, F 1020.
Wrecchednesse, *s.* misery, B 3540; mean act, F 1523; folly, I 34; miserable performance, F 1271; miserable fare, H 171.
Wreche, *s.* vengeance, T. v. 890, 896.
Wreek, *imper. s.* of Wreke.
Wreen, *v.* cover, clothe, R. 56; Wreigh, *pl. s.* covered, hid, T. iii. 1056.
Wreke, (*wrēke*), *v.* wreak, avenge, C 857; *pr. s. subj.* avenge, L. 2340; 2 *pr. pl.* F 454; **Wrak**, *pt. s.* T. v. 1468; **Wreken**, *pp.* revenged, F 784; **Wroken**, *pp.* T. i. 88.
Wreker, *s.* avenger, 5. 361.
Wrenches, *s. pl.* frauds, stratagems, tricks, G 1081.
Wreste, *v.* constrain, force, T. iv. 1427.
Wreye, *v.* bewray, reveal, A 3503.
Wrighte, *s.* workman, A 614.
Wringe, *v.* squeeze, force a way, HF. 2110; wring, HF. 299; **Wrong**, *pt. s.* wrung, pinched, D 492.
Writ, *s.* scripture, A 739.
Writ, -e, -en; see **Wryte**.
Wroght, -e; see **Wreche**.
Wroken, *pp.* of Wreke.
Wrong, *s.*; *had wrong*, was wrong, 3. 1282.
Wrong, *adv.* astray, A 1267.
Wrooth (*wrōoth*), *adj.* wroth, angry, 3. 513, 519.
Wrot, *pt. s.* wrote, T. i. 655.
Wroteth, *pr. s.* tears with the snout, buries the snout, pokes about, I 157.
Wrye, *ger.* to hide, T. iii. 1569; to disguise, T. i. 329; *v.* cover, E 887.

Wrye, *v.* reveal, discover, flood with light, 4. 91. Variant of **Wreye**, q. v. [It might be better to read *wreye*, and *deye* in l. 90.]
Wryen, *v.* turn aside, 3. 627; *ger.* to turn, go, T. ii. 906; *pt. s.* bent, A 3283.
Wryte, *v.* write, A 96; **Writ**, *pr. s.* writeth, writes, T. i. 394; **Wroot**, *pt. s.* B 725; **Wrōt**, T. i. 655; **Writen**, *pt. pl.* wrote, HF. 1504; **Write**, 1 *pt. s. subj.* were to write, B 3843; **Writen**, *pp.* written, 2. 43.
Wrythe, *ger.* to turn aside, T. iv. 9; to wriggle out, T. iv. 986; **Wrytheth**, *pr. s.* writhes out, throws forth wreaths of smoke (Lat. *torquet*), B 1. m. 4. 10; **Wryth**, *pr. s.* writhes, wreathes, T. iii. 1231.
Wyd, *adj.* wide, A 491.
Wyde, *adv.* widely, far, T. i. 629.
Wyde-where, far and wide, everywhere, B 136.
Wyf, *s.* woman, C 71; wife, 3. 1082; mistress of a household, G 1015; *to w.*, for wife, A 1860; **Wyves**, *pl.* women, wives, L. 484.
Wyfhood, *s.* womanhood, B 76.
Wyfless, *adj.* wifeless, E 1230.
Wyfly, *adv.* womanly, wife-like, L. 1737.
Wyke, *s.* week, T. ii. 430, 1273.
Wyle, *s.* wile, plot, T. iii. 1077; subtlety, 5. 215.
Wyn, *s.* wine, A 334; *wyn ape*, H 44, wine which made a man behave like an ape (so also *lion-wine*, *pig-wine*, *sheep-wine*).
Wynt, *pr. s.* turns, directs, L. 85; **Wond**, *pt. s.* wound, L. 2253.
Wyr, *s.* bit, L. 1205.
Wys, *adj.* wise, prudent, A 68; *to make it wys*, to make it a subject for deliberation, to hesitate, A 785.
Wyse, *s.* way, manner, L. 20.
Wyser, *adj.* wiser, one wiser than you, L. 2634.
Wyte, *s.* blame, reproach, G 953; *you to wyte*, for a blame to you, i. e. laid to your charge, R. 1541.
Wyte, *ger.* to blame, T. i. 825 (understand is before *nought*); **Wyten**, *v.* accuse, I 1016.

Y.

Y-, a prefix used especially with the *pp.*, like the A. S. *ge-* and G. *ge-*. See below. It also occurs in the infinitive, as in *y-finde*, *y-here*, *y-knowe*, *y-see*, *y-thee*.

- It also occurs in the adjective *y-awne*.
For further information, see under the forms of the infinitive mood, e.g. for the infin. of *y-bake*, see *Bake*.
- Yaf*; *pt. s. of Yave*, to give.
- Yald*, *pt. s. of Yelden*, to yield.
- Yare*, *adj.* ready, L. 2270.
- Yate*, *a. gate*, T. ii. 617.
- Yave*, see *Yeve*.
- Y-bake*, *pp.* baked, L. 703.
- Y-baniasht*, *pp.* banished, L. 1803.
- Y-barred*, *pp.* barred, R. 480.
- Y-bathed*, *pp.* bathed, T. iv. 815.
- Y-bedded*, *pp.* put to bed, T. v. 346.
- Y-been*, *pp.* been, B 4487.
- Y-benched*, *pp.* furnished with benches, L. 98 a.
- Y-beten*, *pp.* beaten, T. i. 741; beaten, forged, A 2162; formed in beaten gold, A 979; struck, coined, L. 1122.
- Y-blent*, *pp.* blinded, R. 1610; A 3808; deceived, 3 647.
- Y-blessed*, *pp.* blessed, B 4638.
- Y-bleynt*, *pp.* blenched, turned aside, A 3753.
- Y-blowe*, *pp.* blown, T. i. 384.
- Y-boren*, *pp.* born, C 704, E 606; *Y-bore*, born, E 158; borne, carried, T. v. 1630; moved, F 326.
- Y-bought*, *pp.* bought, T. i. 810.
- Y-bounden*, *pp.* bound, 3 268.
- Y-bowed*, *pp.* diverted, B 4 p 6. 179.
- Y-brend*, *pp.* burnt, G 318, *Y-bront*, HF. 940.
- Y-brought*, *pp.* brought, L. 938.
- Y-brouded*, *pp.* embroidered, L. 159 a. Cf. A. S. *brogden*, *pp.* of *bregdan*.
- Y-caught*, *pp.* fixed, 3 818.
- Y-chaped*, *pp.* furnished with chapen or metal caps (which were placed at the end of the sheath), A 366.
- Y-cheyned*, *pp.* chained, 17. 14.
- Y-clad*, *pp.* clad, clothed, R. 890.
- Y-clawed*, *pp.* clawed, torn, D 1731.
- Y-clenched*, *pp.* clinched, riveted, A 1991.
- Y-claped*, *pp.* called, A 410, 867, G 129, H 2; invoked, T. iv. 904; summoned, B 2435, named, A 3313; *Y-clept*, called, A 370.
- Y-comen*, *pp.* come, HF. 1074; *ycome* about, come about, passed, B 3364.
- Y-corouned*, *pp.* crowned, L. 219.
- Y-corumped*, *pp.* corrupted, B 5 p 2. 28.
- Y-corven*, *pp.* cut, G 533; *Y-corve*, A 2013. See *Kerve*.
- Y-coupled*, *pp.* coupled, wedded, E 1219.
- Y-coyned*, *pp.* coined, C 770.
- Y-crased*, *pp.* cracked, broken, 3 324.
- Y-cristned*, *pp.* baptized, B 240.
- Y-crowe*, *pp.* crowed, A 3357.
- Y-dampned*, *pp.* condemned, L. 2092.
- Y-darted*, *pp.* pierced with a dart, T. is. 240.
- Ydel*, *adj.* idle, empty, vain, B 2778, 2800; *ptcl.* in vain, B 2494, F 867.
- Y-dight*, *pp.* decked, A 1205.
- Ydolastro*, *a. idolater*, B 3577.
- Ydole*, *a. idol*, 3 836.
- Y-doon*, *pp.* done, B 4610; over, E 1894.
- Y-drad*, *pp.* dreaded, T. iii. 1775.
- Y-drawe*, *pp.* drawn, A 306, 944.
- Y-dressed*, *pp.* dressed, arranged, etc. E 381.
- Y-dronke*, *pp.* drunk, B 2601.
- Y-dropped*, *pp.* bedropped, covered with drops, A 2884.
- Yē*, *a. eye*, R. 296; *at yē*, at eye, to sight, evidently, G 964, 1059; *Saugh* with *yē*, perceived, A 3415; *Yēn*, *pl.* eyne, eyes, B 3260, 3392.
- Ye*, *adv.* yea, verily, T. i. 534.
- Yeddinges*, *pl.* songs, A 217.
- Yede*, *pl. s. walked*, went, G 1141, 1281. A. S. *ēode*.
- Yeer*, *a. year*, A 347; *Yere* (*in phr.* many a yere), B 132; *Yeres ende*, year's end, D 916; *Yeer by yere*, year after year, B 1688; *Fro yeer to yere*, 5 321; *Yeer*, (*archaic*) *pl.* A 82; *Yeres*, (*new*) *pl.* B 463.
- Yef*, *imp. s. give*, T. v. 308.
- Yoftea*, *pl. gitta*, T. iv. 392.
- Yelden*, *ger.* to yield up, D 912; to yield to, pay, D 1811; *Yelt*, *pr. s. yields*, T. i. 385; *Yelde*, *pr. s. subj. requite*, D 1772, 2177; *Yald*, *pt. s. afforded*, B 4. m 7. 25; *Yeld*, *imp. s. restore*, C 189; *Yolden*, *pp.* yielded, T. i. 801; submissive, T. iii. 96; *Yeldinge*, *pres. pt. giving*, B 2094.
- Yeldhalle*, *a. guild-hall*, A 170.
- Yelding*, *a. produce*, lit. 'yielding,' A 596.
- Yelleden*, *pt. pl. yelled*, B 4579.
- Yelpe*, *ger.* to boast, A 2238; *pr. pl. prate*, T. iii. 307.
- Yelwe*, *adj.* yellow, R. 310.
- Yeman*, *a. yeoman*, A 101.
- Yemanly*, *adv.* in a yeomanlike manner, A 106.
- Yen* = *Yēn*, *pl. eyes*; see *Yē*.
- Y-ended*, *pp.* ended, R. 1315.
- Yerd*, *a. yard*, garden, R. 492.
- Yerde*, *a. rod*, stick, T. i. 357, 740; switch,

A 149; rod, 'caduceus,' A 1387; yard (in length), A 1050; correction, E 22.
Yerne, *adj.* eager, brisk, lively, A 3257.
Yerne, *adv.* eagerly, soon, D 993; briskly, quickly, glibly, 5. 3; C 398; *as y.*, very soon, HF. 910.
Yerne, *ger.* to yearn for, to be longed for, T. iv. 198; *v.* desire, T. iii. 152.
Yeten (yéeten), *v.* pour, shed, B 1. m 7. 1. A.S. *gēotan*.
Yeve, *v.* give, A 232; **Yevest**, *a pr. s.* givest, F 1033; **Yeveth**, *pr. s.* E 93; **Yeve**, *pr. s. subj.* may (he) give, E 30; **Yaf**, *1 pt. s.* gave, E 861; **Yaven**, *pt. pl.* G 415; **Yeven**, *pt. pl. subj.* would give, HF. 1708; **Yeven**, *pp.* given, A 1086; devoted, 7. 111.
Yeveres, *pl.* givers, I 791.
Yeving, *a.* giving, 18. 37; what one gives, 4. 230.
Yexeth, *pr. s.* hiccoughs, A 4151.
Y-fallen, *pp.* fallen, B 3166; happened, G 1043; having befallen, C 496.
Y-fare, *pp.* gone, T. iii. 577.
Y-felawshipped, *pp.* made companions, B 2. p 6. 91.
Y-fere, together, B 394, E 1113, G 380. Cf. *Infero*.
Y-fet, *pp.* fetched, F 174, G 1116.
Y-fetered, *pp.* fettered, A 1229.
Y-fethered, *pp.* feathered, R. 951.
Y-feyned, *pp.* feigned, invented, L. 327 a; evaded, E 529.
Y-ficched, *pp.* fixed, B 4. p 6. 125.
Y-finde, *v.* find, F 470; **Y-founde**, *pp.* L. 1608.
Y-flit, *pp.* moved, whirled along, B 1. m 2. 14.
Y-folowed, *pp.* followed, 3. 390.
Y-forged, *pp.* made, A 3256.
Y-formed, *pp.* created, HF. 490.
Y-fostred, *pp.* fostered, sustained, E 213; brought up, A 3946.
Y-founde, *pp.* found, A 1211, 3514.
Y-founded, *pp.* set on a foundation, 5. 231; based, 3. 922.
Y-freten, *pp.* eaten, devoured, L. 1951.
Y-frounced, *adj.* wrinkled, R. 155.
Y-fyned, *adj.* refined, delicately formed, R. 1696.
Y-fyred, *pp.* fired, L. 1013.
Y-gerdoned, *pp.* rewarded, B 5. p 3. 182.
Y-geten, *pp.* gotten, procured, A 3564.
Y-glased, *pp.* glazed, 3. 323.
Y-glewed, *pp.* fixed tight, F 182.
Y-glosed, *pp.* flattered, H 34.
Y-goon, *pp.* gone, L. 2206, 2213.

Y-graunted, *pp.* granted, C 388.
Y-grave, *pp.* dug up, cut, L. 204; dug out, 3. 164; engraved, graven, A 3796; buried, D 496.
Y-greved, *pp.* harmed, A 4181.
Y-grounde, *pp.* ground, A 3991; sharpened, pointed, A 2549.
Y-grounded, *pp.* grounded, 3. 921.
Y-growen, *pp.* grown, A 3973.
Y-halwed, *pp.* consecrated, L. 1871.
Y-harded, *pp.* hardened, F 245.
Y-hated, *pp.* hated, HF. 200.
Y-hent, *pp.* seized, caught, C 868.
Y-herd, *pp. as adj.* covered with hair, A 3738.
Y-here, *v.* hear, T. iv. 1313.
Y-heried, *pp.* praised, T. ii. 973.
Y-hevied, *pp.* weighed down, B 5. m 5. 26.
Y-hid, *pp.* hid, G 317.
Y-hight, *pp.* called, T. v. 541.
Y-holde, *pp.* esteemed to be, A 2374; celebrated, A 2958; considered, C 602; indebted, L. 1954; continued, E 1932; restrained, HF. 1286.
Y-hurt, *pp.* hurt, A 2709.
Y-japed, *pp.* jested, T. i. 318.
Yif, *conj.* if, L. 2059, 2312.
Yif, *imp. s.* give; see *Yive*.
Yift, *a.* gift, 3. 247, 695, 1270.
Yilden, *ger.* to repay, B 5. p 1. 14; **Yildeth**, *pr. s.* yields, produces, B 4. m 6. 31. See *Yelden*.
Y-joigned, *pp.* joined, B 2. p 6. 93.
Yis, yes, L. 517.
Yisterday, yesterday, R. 1040.
Yit, yet, L. 4, 106.
Yive, *ger.* to give, A 225; **Yiveth**, *pr. s.* gives, 18. 38; *pr. s. subj.* may (he) give, 3. 683; **Yiven**, *pp.* given, granted, 3. 765.
Yiver, *a.* giver, L. 2228.
Y-kempt, *pp.* combed, A 4369.
Y-kist, *pp.* kissed, T. iv. 1689.
Y-kneled, *pp.* kneeled, L. 1232.
Y-knet, *pp.* knotted, tightly bound, T. iii. 1734; **Y-knit**, joined, 6. 32.
Y-knowe, *v.* know, F 887; recognize, HF. 1336; discern, D 1370; *pp.* known, 3. 392.
Y-korven, *pp.* cut, B 1801.
Y-koud, *pp.* known well, 3. 666.
Y-lad, *pp.* carried (in a cart), A 530.
Y-left, *pp.* left, A 2746; left behind, F 1128.
Y-laid, *pp.* laid, L. 2141.
Y-lain, *pp.* lain, remained, L. 2410.
Yle, *a.* isle, island, HF. 416, 440; region, province, L. 1425.

- Y-lent**, *pp.* lent, G 1406.
Y-lered, *pp.* educated, T. i. 976.
Y-let, *pp.* hindered, obstructed, B 3. p 4 34.
Y-leten, *pp.* left, allowed, B 4. p 4. 308.
Y-leyd, *pp.* laid A 2568.
Y-liche, *adj.* alike, similar, L 389.
Y-liche, *adv.* alike, equally, A 2526.
Y-lissed, *pp.* eased, T. i. 1089.
Y-lived, *pp.* lived, T. v. 913.
Y-logged, *pp.* lodged, B 4181.
Y-loren, *pp.* lost, L 26; **Y-lorn**, *pp.* lost, T. iv. 1252.
Y-lost, *pp.* lost, HF. 181.
Y-loved, *pp.* loved, T. i. 594.
Y-lyk, *adj.* like, A 592; alike, A 2734; **Y-lyke**, like, A 1530.
Y-lyke, *adv.* alike, equally, L 55, 731.
Y-lymed, *pp.* caught (as birds with birdlime), D 934.
Y-maad, *pp.* made, caused, HF. 691.
Ymageries, *pl.* carved work, HF. 1190, 1304.
Ymagined, *pp.* considered, intentional, I 448.
Y-maked, *pp.* made, L 122, 322.
Y-marked, *pp.* set down, marked out, planned, HF. 1101.
Y-masked, *pp.* enmeshed, T. iii. 1714.
Y-medled, *pp.* mingled, T. iii. 815.
Y-mel, *pp.* among (Northern), A 4171.
Y-ment, *pp.* intended, HF. 1742.
Y-met, *pp.* met, A 2624; **Y-mette**, *as pl.* *adj.* met, B 1115.
Y-meynd, *pp.* mixed, mingled, A 2170.
Y-mooved, *pp.* moved, B 4. m 6. 7.
Ympne, *s.* lyric poem (lit. hymn), L 422.
Y-mused, *pp.* mused, reflected, HF 1287.
Y-nempued, *pp.* named, I 598.
Y-nogh, *adj.* enough, sufficient, A 373, 3149; **Y-now**, G 1018; **Y-nowe**, *pl.* 5. 213.
Y-nogh, *adv.* enough, sufficiently, 6. 13; **Y-nough**, R. 247.
Y-nome, *pp.* caught, overcome, T. i. 242, taken, L 2443.
Y-norished, *pp.* educated, T. v. 821.
Y-offred, *pp.* offered, dedicated, L 932.
Yok, *s.* yoke, E 111, 1285.
Yolde, *-n*; see **Yelden**.
Yolle, *pr. pl.* cry aloud, A 2672.
Yomanrye, *s.* yeomanry, A 3949.
Yon, *adj.* yon, A 4178.
Yond, *adv.* yonder, A 1099.
Yong, *adj.* young, A 79.
Yonghede, *s.* dot, youth, R. 351.
Yore, *adv.* formerly, of old, B 174, 272; for a long time, a long while, A 2811; long ago, long, v. 191; **yore ago**, long ago, 5. 17; **yore ago**, A 3417; **ful y.**, very long ago, 7. 243, 340; **of tyms y.**, of old time, F 963.
Youling, *s.* loud lamentation, A 1378.
Y-painted, *pp.* painted, R. 892.
Y-passed, *pp.* passed, R. 380; **past**, E 1802.
Y-payed, *pp.* paid, A 1802.
Y-piked, *pp.* picked over, G 941.
Y-pleased, *pp.* pleased, D 930.
Y-pleyned, *pp.* complained, T. iv. 1698.
Y-pleynted, *pp.* full of complaint, T. v. 1597.
Y-plounged, *pp.* plunged, sunk, B 6. p 11. 122.
Y-plyted, *pp.* pleated, gathered, B 1. p 2. 31.
Ypoeras, Hippocrates; *Acnes* a kind of cordial, C 206.
Ypocryte, *s.* hypocrite, F 414.
Y-portreyd, *pp.* covered with pictures, R. 897.
Y-porveyed, *pp.* foreseen, B 5. p 3. 45.
Y-prayed, *pp.* invited, E 269.
Y-praised, *pp.* praised, HF. 1577.
Y-proved, *pp.* proved (to be), A 485.
Y-pulled, *pp.* plucked, i. e. with superfluous hairs plucked out, A 3245.
Y-purveyed, *pp.* foreseen, B 5. p 3. 88.
Y-queynt, *pp.* quenched, A 1754.
Y-quiked, *pp.* kindled, I 536.
Y-quit, *pp.* quit, acquitted, F 674.
Y-raft, *pp.* bereft, snatched away, A 2015, reft, robbed, L 1571.
Yre, *s.* ire, anger, vexation, v. 30.
Y-red, *pp.* read, T. iv. 799.
Y-roke, *pp.* raked together, A 1882.
Y-rekened, *pp.* accounted, D 367; taken into account, F 427.
Yren, *s.* iron, R. 1184.
Yren, *adj.* iron, G 759.
Y-rent, *pp.* taken, T. v. 1654; torn, B 844.
Y-ronge, *pp.* rang, told loudly, HF 1655.
Y-ronne, *pp.* run, A 8, 3893, continued, L 1943, run together, A 2693; interlaced, R. 1206, clustered, A 2165.
Y-rouned, *pp.* whispered, HF. 2107.
Y-satled, *pp.* settled, E 2405.
Y-sayd, *pp.* said, 3. 270.
Y-scalded, *pp.* scalded, A 2022.
Y-schette, *pp.* *pl.* shut, B 560.
Yse, *s.* ice, HF. 1130.

Y-see, *v.* behold, T. ii. 354; *imp. s.* see, look, T. ii. 1253; **Y-seyn**, *pp.* seen, L. 2076.
Y-sene, *adj.* visible, A 592, F 996; manifest, T. iv. 1607; L. 1394. A.S. *geaene*, *geýne*.
Y-set, *pp.* set, A 4337; placed, 5. 140; set down, F 173; seated, C 392; appointed, A 1635; planted, R. 604.
Y-seye, *pp.* seen, HF. 1367; **Y-seyn**, T. v. 448.
Y-seyled, *pp.* sailed, B 4289.
Y-shad, *pp.* scattered (Lat. *sparsas*), B 3. m 2. 33.
Y-shaken, *pp.* quivering, sparkling, B 1. m 3. 17.
Y-shamed, *pp.* put to shame, HF. 356.
Y-shapen, (*strong*) *pp.* shaped, prepared, B 3420; provided, A 4179; contrived, G 1080; **Y-shaped**, (*weak*) *pp.* prepared, T. iii. 1240.
Y-shave, *pp.* shaven, A 690.
Y-shent, *pp.* put to shame, severely blamed, D 1312.
Y-shette, *pp. pl.* shut, B 2159.
Y-shewed, *pp.* shown, T. v. 1251; made manifest, 4. 181.
Y-shore, *pp.* shorn, T. iv. 996.
Y-shove, *pp.* borne about, L. 726.
Y-slayn, *pp.* slain, HF. 159; **Y-slawa**, B 484.
Y-smite, *pp.* smitten, wounded, B 3. m 7. 7.
Y-songe, *pp.* sung, D 1726; **Y-songen**, L. 270.
Y-sought, *pp.* sought, T. iii. 1317.
Y-sounded, *pp.* sunk, T. ii. 535.
Y-sowen, *pp.* sown, HF. 1488.
Y-spel, *pp.* sped, A 4220.
Y-spended, *pp.* spent, B 5. p 4. 15.
Y-sprad, *pp.* spread, B 1644; **Y-spred**, A 4140.
Y-spreynd, *pp.* sprinkled, A 2169.
Y-spronge, *pp.* sprung, shot out, R. 718; divulged, HF. 2081.
Y-stalled, *pp.* installed, HF. 1364.
Y-stiked, *pp.* stuck, A 1565; stabbed, F 1476.
Y-stint, *pp.* stopped, D 300.
Y-stonde, *pp.* stood, been, T. v. 1612.
Y-stonge, *pp.* stung, C 355.
Y-storve, *pp.* dead, A 2014.
Y-strawed, *pp.* bestrewn, 3. 629.
Y-strike, *pp.* struck, 11. 34.
Y-suffred, *pp.* suffered, T. v. 415.
Y-sweped, *pp.* swept, G 938.
Y-sworn, *pp.* sworn, A 1132; sworn (to do it), T. v. 283.

Y-swowned, *pp.* swowned, L. 1342.
Y-take, *pp.* caught, B 3514; taken, L. 617.
Y-thanked, *pp.* thanked, D 2118.
Y-thee, *v.* thrive, T. iv. 439.
Y-thewed, *pp.* disposed; *vel y-theired*, well-conducted, 5. 47; R. 1008.
Y-thonked, *pp.* thanked, T. iv. 2.
Y-throngen, *pp.* confined, B 2. p 7. 53.
Y-throwe, *pp.* thrown, T. iv. 6; cast out, 2. 89.
Y-told, *pp.* told, A 3109.
Y-torned, *pp.* turned, B 4. m 5. 1.
Y-travailed, *pp.* laboured, with difficulty, B 5. p 3. 45.
Y-trespased, *pp.* sinned, B 2609.
Y-tressed, *pp.* plaited in tresses, T. v. 810.
Y-treted, *pp.* discussed, B 4. p 1. 70.
Y-tukked, *pp.* tucked up, L. 982.
Y-turned, *pp.* turned, A 1238, 2062.
Y-twinne, *pp.* parted, T. iv. 788.
Yve, B 4156; *see* Erbe.
Yvel, *adj.* ill, evil, T. ii. 1001.
Yvel, *adv.* ill, R. 213, 1067.
Yveles, *s. pl.* evils, B 2618.
Yvory, *s.* ivory, B 2066; **Yvoire**, 3. 946.
Y-voyded, *pp.* removed, F 1159.
Y-war, *adj.* aware, T. ii. 398.
Y-warned, *pp.* warned, B 4422.
Y-waxen, *pp.* grown, become, T. v. 275; **Y-waxe**, 3. 1275.
Y-wedded, *pp.* wedded, L. 1179.
Y-went, *pp.* gone, HF. 976.
Y-went, *pp.* weened, imagined, T. v. 444.
Y-wet, *pp.* wetted, A 4155.
Y-whet, *pp.* whetted, 7. 212.
Y-wimpled, *pp.* provided with a wimple, A 470; covered with a wimple, L. 797.
Y-wis, *adv.* certainly, truly, verily, R. 279, 350, 357.
Y-wist, *pp.* known, B 5. p 3. 36.
Y-wonne, *pp.* gained, T. iv. 1315; won, D 2293; arrived, L. 2427.
Y-worthe, *pp.* become, 3. 579.
Y-wounde, *pp.* wound, covered up, 12. 18.
Y-woven, *pp.* woven, completed, L. 2360.
Y-woxen, *pp.* grown, E 1462.
Y-writen, *pp.* written, 5. 124, 141.
Y-writhen, *pp.* wreathed, wrapped round, R. 160.
Y-wrought, *pp.* made, A 196, B 2054; shaped, L. 1173; depicted, 3. 327; orna-

mented, R. 897; Y-wroghte, pp. pl.
fashioned, s. 113.
Y-wroken, pp. avenged, 16. 26, Y-wroke,
wreaked, T. v. 589.
Y-wronge, pp. forced, L. 1517.
Y-wryen, pp. hidden, T. iii. 1451, covered,
A. 1914.
Y-yeve, pp. given, T. iii. 1376; Y-yive,
T. iii. 1611.

Z.

Zoles, pl. zeal, T. v. 1859.
Zodia, s. pl. beasts, A. i. 21. 61.
Zodiac, s. sodiac, A. pr. 109. An ima-
belt in the heavens, of the broad-
ness, along the middle of which
the ecliptic. The Astrolabe only
the northern half of this belt.

GLOSSARY TO FRAGMENTS B AND C OF THE ROMAUNT OF THE ROSE.

FRAGMENT B = ll. 1706-5810.

FRAGMENT C = ll. 5811-7698.

THE following Glossary (which includes proper names) is separated from the preceding because Fragments B and C of the Romaunt are not by Chaucer.

Fragment B abounds in Northern words and forms. Words in Fragment C have 'C' prefixed to the number of the line.

A, v. (to) have, 4322.

Abandoun : *in* abandoun, fully, without stint, 2342.

Abawed, *pp.* amazed, 3646; Abawid, 4041.

Abaysshed, *pp.* cast down, 3370.

Abey, v. (*for* Abeye), suffer (*for* it), pay (*for* it), C 6713. See **Abye**.

Abiding, s. delay, 2222.

Abit, s. habit, dress, religious dress, 4914.

Abit, Abood; see **Abyde**.

Abood, s. delay, C 7697.

Aboven, *adv.* in luck, 4352.

Abraide, v. start up, break forth, 5156;

Abraid, 1 *pt.* s. awoke, 1806; Abreyde, *pt.* s. broke out, 3967.

Abrede, *adv.* abroad, 2563.

Absente, *pr.* s. *subj.* abstain, refrain, 4911.

Abstinence-Streyned, i.e. Constrained Abstinence (personified), C 6341, 7366.

Abyde, *ger.* to await, 4910; v. expect, 5329; watch for, 4913; Abit, *pr.* s. dwells, 4977, 4989; stays, 5012; Abood, 1 *pt.* s. endured, waited, 3694.

Abye, v. pay for, C 5888, 5976; Abyeth, *pr.* s. C 7642.

Accord, 1 *pr.* s. agree to, 2083; Accorded, *pt. pl.* agreed, C 5815; *pp.* reconciled, C 5846.

A-cold, *adj.* cold, chilly, 2658.

Acoye, v. quiet, allay, 3564.

Acquyte, v. defray the expense, pay for, C 6742.

Ado (*for* at do), to do, 5080.

A-fere, *adv.* on fire, 4073.

Afered, *pp.* afraid, 3604.

Affray, s. terror, 3866; fear, 2034.

Affrayed, *pp.* frightened, 3113.

Affye, v. trust, 3155.

Aforn, *adv.* formerly, 3952.

Aftir, *prep.* according to, 2255.

Afyne, *adv.* completely, 3690.

Agast, *adj.* afraid, C 6106.

Ageyn-coming, s. returning, 2518.

Ageyns, *prep.* in comparison with, 5536.

Agilte, *pr.* s. sinned against, offended, C 5833, 6784; Agiltest, 2 *pt.* s. C 7572.

Ago, *pp.* gone, 2932.

A-gree, *adv.* in good part, 4349.

A-greef, *adv.* in bad part; *take not agreef*, *take it not amiss*, C 7573.

Aken, v. ache, C 6908.

Al, *conj.* although, 1754.

Al-day, *adv.* continually, 2484.

Alder, *adj. gen. pl.* of (us) all, C 6948.

Alderfirst, *adv.* first of all, C 7505.

Alegged, *pt. pl.* alleviated, 1768. See **Allege**.

Aleggement, s. alleviation, 1890, 1923.

- Algal**
 at a
Allege
 Alleg
Allege
Allowe, v.
Almease, s.
Al-only, adv.
Alosed, pp. nol
Al-out, adv. alt
Al-outerly, adv
Alowe, v. accep
Also, conj. as, C
Amenda, v. ad
Among, adv. s
Amourettes, s.
Amyas, a curious ex.
 i. e. at Meaux, 3826. F.
And, conj. if, 1051, 4441
Anger, a pain, anguish, 1877; A.
 pl. torments, 2554, 3789.
Angerly, adv. cruelly, 3511.
Angre, ger. to vex, 3526.
Angry, adj. cruel, 2628, 3265.
Anguissous, adj. anxious, 1755.
Anker, s. an anchoress, a female recluse.
 shut up either in a cell attached to
 a church, or living under a religious
 rule in her own house, C 6348.
Anon-right, adv. straightway, 1778.
Anoy, s. discomfort, pain, vexation, 1919,
 2009, 4404.
Anoynt, pp. anointed, 1888.
Apai red, pl. s. injured, C 7522.
Apayed, pp. satisfied, 2854, 5631.
Aperceyved, pl. s. perceived, C 6312.
Aperceyving, s. perception, C 6318.
Apert, adj. open, obvious, C 6621.
Apostlis newe, i. e. the preaching friars,
 C 6270.
Apparence, s. mere outward appearance,
 5550, evidence, C 7660.
Apparent, adj. distinct, 2583.
Appert, adj. open, C 6150. See **Apert**.
Appose, v. oppose, C 6555, 7146. F. text,
oposer.
A-queynt, pp. acquainted, 3080.
Aqueyntable, adj. affable, 2213.
Arace, v. pull out, 1752.
Arblasters, s. pl. men with crossbows, 4196.
Aresóneth, pr. s. reasons with, argues,
 C 6220.
Arest, s. rest (for a spear), C 7561.
Arette, v. impute, 3327.
Areyae, v. raise up, 4361; rouse, C 7159.
A-rowe, adv. in a row, C 7606.
Escape, v. escape, get out of the difficulty,
 C 6515.
- Ask**, s. one who begs, C 6674.
A-slope, adv. aside, awry, 4464.
Assay, s. attempt, 3449; quality, temper,
 4332.
Assayed, pp. tried, proved, 2682.
Asseth, s. sufficiency, 5000.
Assaile, v. absolve, C 6364; pp. explained,
 C 6557.
Assailing, s. absolving, C 6412.
Assured, pp. secured, 4309.
Astat, s. state, plight, 2416; **Astate**, con-
 dition, 4672, C 6856.
Astoned, pp. astonished, 3850.
undir, adv. diversely, 4477.
wone, in a swoon, 1736.
 prep. at the hands of, from, C 6670;
 tal, at all points, 5249; at *locute* way,
 least, C 5827; at *wordis face*, in a few
 words, briefly, 2129.
endith, pr. s. attaches itself, apper-
 ins, 5309.
our, s. array, 3718.
justina, s. pl. Austin Friars, C 7461.
nonero, s. purse for alms, 2271.
stre, v. refl. venture, 2495.
de, v. descend, 1803.
un-anoed, pp. promoted, C 6951; helped,
 3468.
Avaunt, adv. in advance, forward, 3992,
 4790.
Avaunt, v. refl. boast, 4788.
Avauntage, s. profit, 5808.
Avenaunt, adj. becoming, seemly, 2058,
 pleasant, 3679; condescending, 4622.
Aventure, s. chance, fortune, fate, 2118,
 4376, case, C 7308.
Avonterye, s. adultery, 4954.
Avysed, 1 pl. s. refl., **Avysed** me, applied
 myself, 1807.
Awayte, s. ambush, 4497.
Awayted, pp. watched; *occupied with*,
 watched by, 3066.
Axe, v. ask, C 6559.
Ayeines, prep. against, C 7178.
- B.
- Bachilere**, s. young knight, 2628.
Bage, s. purse, C 6834.
Baillye, s. custody, jurisdiction, 4217;
 enclosure, C 7474.
Balaunce, s. suspense, 4667.
Balia, s. pl. troubles, sorrows, 4441.
Bane, s. death, 4491.
Baren, pt. pl. bare, C 6243.
Baronage, s. the assembly of barons,
 C 5812.
Bataille, s. host, C 5849; pl. battalions,
 C 7348.

Batayled, *pp.* battlemented, 4200.
 Bate, *s.* strife, 4235.
 Baud, *adj.* jolly (lit. bold), 5674.
 Bayly, *s.* bailiff, C 6218.
 Beau-sire, *s.* fair sir, C 6053.
 Bede, *v.* stretch out (lit. proffer), 1710.
 Bede, *pt. s. subj.* might pray, C 7374.
 Bedels, *s. pl.* officers, C 6812.
 Begger, *s.* Beguin, hence, mendicant, C 7282; *Beggars, Beguins*, C 7256.
 Begyne, *s.* Beguine, C 7368.
 Bemes, *s. pl.* trumpets, C 7605.
 Berafte, *pt. pl. subj.* should deprive, C 6669.
 Bern, *s.* barn, 5589.
 Besaunt, *s.* bezant, 5592.
 Besinesse, *s.* diligence, 3624.
 Bestial, *adj.* stupid, C 6716.
 Bete, *pr. s. subj.* cure, 4441.
 Bialacoil, i. e. Bial Acoil, Fair Reception, 2984, 2999, 3011.
 Bigoon, *adj.*; *wel bigoon*, well off, 5533.
 Bigyna, *s. pl.* Béguines, C 6861.
 Biheest, *s.* promise, 4446, 4474.
 Bihote, *v.* promise, 4446.
 Bihove, *s. dat.* behoof, 2964.
 Bilefte, *1 pt. s.* remained, 3360.
 Bimene, *imp. s. refl.* bemoan thyself, 2667.
 Biset, *pt. s.* employs, 5262.
 Bishet, *pp.* shut up (in prison), 4488.
 Bit, *pr. s.* abides, 5330.
 Bitought, *pt. s.* commended, 4438.
 Bitrashed, *pp.* betrayed, 3910.
 Blake, *adj. pl.* black (monks), *Benedictines*, C 6695.
 Blende, *ger. to* blind, to deceive, 3954; *Blent*, *pp.* deceived, C 6652.
 Blered, *pp.* bleared, dimmed, deceived, 3912.
 Blinne, *v.* desist from, C 6611.
 Blyve, *adv.* quickly; *as bl.*, very quickly, 2799.
 Boden, *pp.* commanded, 2721.
 Boece, Boethius, 5661.
 Book, *the book*, i. e. the Canon Law, C 6385; the Bible, C 6636.
 [Borders, *s. pl.* C 6911. *Better reading; for burdens.*]
 Bordillers, *s. pl.* brothel-keepers, C 7034.
 Borowe, *s.* pledge, C 7331.
 Bosarde, *s.* buzzard, 4033.
 Bote, *s.* remedy, 1760.
 Botes, *s. pl.* boots, 2265, C 7262.
 Botoun, *s.* bud, 1721, 1761, 2960.
 Bougerons, *s. pl.* sodomites, C 7022.
 Bought, *pp.*; *a bought*, to have bought, 4322.

Bountee, *s.* kindness, 3147; goodness, C 6597.
 Braide, *ger. to* bestir itself, wake up, C 7128.
 Braste, *ger. to* burst, 3186.
 Brede, *s.* breadth; *on br.*, abroad, 3635.
 Breken, *v.* disobey, 3478.
 Brenne, *v.* burn, 2475.
 Brenning, *s.* burning, 2727.
 Brere, *s.* briar, C 6191.
 Brest, *v.* burst, 4107.
 Breve, *adj.* short, 2350.
 Brimme, *adj.* cruel, 1836.
 Brocages, *s. pl.* contracts, C 6971.
 Brond, *s.* fire-brand, 3706.
 Burdens, *error for* Borders, C 6911.
 Burdoun, *s.* staff, cudgel, 3401.
 Burnettes, *s. pl.* dresses made of fine woollen cloth dyed brown, 4756.
 But-if, *conj.* unless, 1962.
 Buxom, *adj.* obedient, pliant, 4419.
 By, *prep.* in, C 6616; beside, C 7032.
 By and by, in order, 2345; precisely, 4581.
 Bye, *v.* buy, pay for, 2052.
 Bytinge, *pres. part.* cutting, C 7420.

C.

Caas, *s.* case, plight, 3374; *pl.* cases, C 6759.
 Caleweys, *s. pl.* soft, sweet pears (which came from Cailloux in Burgundy), C 7143.
 Calle, *v.* recall, 3974.
 Camelyne, *s.* camel's-hair stuff, C 7367.
 Can, *1 pr. s.* (I) know, 4796; *pr. s.* understands, C 5872; Can him no thank, offers him no thanks, 2112: Canst, *2 pr. s.* feelest, 4399.
 Caribdis, Charybdis, 4713.
 Carmes, *s. pl.* Carmelites, White Friars, C 7462.
 Cas, *s.* occasion, C 7481.
 Caste, *v. refl.* apply himself, 2031; Cast, *pr. s.* casts, 4330; considers, 5620; Caste, *pt. s. refl.* set himself, 1860.
 Castels in Spayne, castles in the air, 2573.
 Casting, *s.* vomit, C 7288.
 Catel, *s.* property, 5376.
 Cause; *in cause*, to blame, 4525.
 Caytif, *s.* poor wretch, 3554.
 Chace, *v.* chase away; *do ch.*, caused to be chased away, C 7534.
 Chafe, *v.* irritate, 3685.
 Chamberere, *s.* chamber-maid, 4935.
 Chanoun, *s.* canon, 3278.

- Chapitre**, *s.* chapter, C 6532.
Chapman, *s.* trader, 5591.
Chargid, *pl.* *s.* instructed, 2145.
Chasteleyn, *s.* castellan, governor of a castle, C 6277.
Chasteleyne, *s.* the wife of a chastelain or governor of a castle, 3740.
Chastyne, *1 pr. s.* reprove, C 6993.
Chere, *s.* countenance, favour, 3952, appearance, 5186, C 6474; delight, 3803.
Cherets, *s.* fondness, 3516.
Chese, *v.* choose, 4426, *Chese . . . hem to*, *pr. pl.* choose for themselves, C 6220.
Chevered, *pp.* shivered, 1732.
Chevisaunce, *s.* resource, remedy, 3337.
Chevise, *v.* occupy himself (for me), manage (for me, settle my cause, C 6425.
Chiche, *adj.* parsimonious, 5588.
Chideresse, *s.* scold, virago, 4266.
Chinche, *adj.* mean, avaricious, C 5998. Nasalised form of *Chiche*.
Chinchy, *adj.* mean, grudging, niggardly, C 6002.
Clergis, *pl.* wax tapers, C 6248.
Clarree, *s.* a sweet liquor consisting of a mixture of wine, clarified honey and various spices, as pepper and ginger, &c. C 5907, 5971.
Clepe, *v.* call, C 5907.
Clipay, *adj.* eclipsed, dim, 5340.
Clomben, *pp.* climbed up, C 6933.
Cloos, *adj.* close, discreet, C 6104.
Close, *v.* enclose, 4372.
Closer, *s.* enclosure, 4069.
Cloth, *s.* dress, C 6345.
Colour, *s.* way, manner, C 6282.
Come, *s.* coming, C 7628.
Compas, *s.* circuit, 1842 circumference, 4181; *Compasse*, perfection, 3208.
Compassen, *1 pr. pl.* study, observe closely, C 6932.
Complisshen, *v.* accomplish, 2132.
Comprende, *v.* consider, include (in my explanation, C 6613.
Compte, *s.* counting, account, 5026.
Comunably, *adv.* commonly, usually, C 7217.
Comunely, *adv.* publicly, 4801.
Comuntee, *s.* community, common possession, 5209.
Concours, *s.* course, result, 4360.
Conestablerye, *s.* a ward of a castle under the command of a constable, 4218.
Coninges, *s. pl.* conies, rabbits, C 7044.
Conisaunce, *s.* understanding, knowledge, 5465, 5559, acquaintance, 4668.
Conjecte, *1 pr. pl.* conspire, C 6928.
Conne, *2 pr. s. subj.* mayst be well instructed, 2113.
Consequence, *s.* result, C 6448.
Consolacioun, the 'Consolation of Philosophy,' 2601.
Constreynaunce, *s.* constraint, C 7212.
Contene, *v.* remain, 2641; *refl.* bear himself, 2248, *Conteyne*, *v.* contain (himself, 4923, *Contene*, *pr. pl. refl.* maintain themselves, C 6805.
Contrarie, *s.* perplexity, 4478.
Contrarious, *adj.* hostile, 3354.
Controve, *v.* compose songs, 4249, *ger.* to invent, C 7547.
Contune, *v.* continue, 4354, 5332.
Convay, *ger.* to accompany, 2428.
Corage, *s.* mood, temper, 4928.
Cordileres, *s. pl.* Franciscans, so called from wearing a girdle of rope, C 7461.
Cornewayle, Cornouaille in Brittany, 4250.
Corumpable, *adj.* corruptible, 4856.
Cos, *s.* kiss, 3663.
Cost, *s.* coast, place, 3931; quarter, 2177.
Cotidien, *adj.* quotidian, daily, as a quotidian ague, 2401.
Couchen, *pr. pl.* impose, C 6903.
Countesses, *s. pl.* C 6860.
Countours, *s. pl.* accountants, C 6812.
Coupe-gorge, *s.* Cut-throat, C 7422.
Couth, *pp.* known, 2000, evident, 4213.
Coveityse, *s.* coveting, desire, 4129; covetousness, 5972.
Covenable, *adj.* seemly, fitting, suitable, C 6020, 6752, excellent, C 7181.
Covent, *s.* convent, 4004, C 7380.
Coverchief, *s.* kerchief, head-covering, C 7369.
Covert, *adj.* secret, hidden up, C 6149.
Coverture, *s.* concealment, 2172.
Covyne, *s.* intrigue, secret plan, 1799.
Coy, *adj.* quiet, hidden, 4297.
Crece, *s.* increase, progeny, 4875. (*Fortuned crece* seems to mean destroyed progeny, i.e. abortion.) See *crease* (— *increas*) in the New E. Dict.
Croce, *s.* crozier, C 6470.
Crownet, *s.* coronet, 3203.
Cunne, *v.* shew; *cunne him mangres*, shew him ill-will, 4559; *1 pr. pl. can.* C 5879, *pr. pl. know (how)*, C 6174, *pr. s. subj.* be able, C 5092.
Cure, *s.* charge, 1962, C 6562; care, 4222; cause of care, 2456, heed, C 7557; aid, C 6752; jurisdiction, 3340.
Curious, *adj.* diligent, zealous, C 6572, 6390.

Customere, *adj.* accustomed, 4936. F. text, *coutumiere*.
Out, *pr. s. cuts*, C 6198.

D.

Dagges, *s. pl.* loose tags or shreds of cloth, C 7260. (I can find no exact account of the fastening here referred to; I suppose that the *dagges*, or tape-like strips, had button-holes, through which the *knappes* or buttons passed.)
Daliaunce, *s. talk*, 2850.
Dampning, *s. damnation*, C 6643.
Dar, *pr. s. dare*, 6049.
Daunce, *the olde d.*, the old game, 4300.
Daungere, *s. resistance*, 1932; reluctance, 2318; power, control, 2051.
Daungerous, *adj.* shy, reluctant, backward, 2312; hard to please, 2824; cruel, 3504, 3727.
Daunte, *v.* conquer, subdue, 3300.
Daunting, *s. taming*, 4032.
Dawed, *pt. s. subj.* would down, 2633.
Dawes, *s. pl. days*, 2838, C 6616.
Debonairly, *adv.* graciously, pleasantly, 2382.
Defaute, *s. lack*, 5789.
Defenced, *pp.* defended, 4310.
Defensable, *adj.* helping to defend, 4168.
Defoule, *v.* trample down, C 6000.
Defyle, *v.* bruise, C 7317.
Degree, *s. rank*, C 7214; manner, C 7442.
Deignous, *adj.* disdainful, 3101.
Del, *s. deal*; *Dele*, bit, least thing, 5130; *not*. . . *a del*, not a whit, C 6847, 7413; *never a del*, not at all, C 6036; *every del*, every whit, C 6017.
Delectacioun, *s. delight*, 4821.
Deles (Northern form), *pr. s. distributes*, 5419.
Deliciously, *adv.* daintily, C 6720.
Deliverly, *adv.* quickly, 1927, 2283, 3003.
Delyces, *s. pl. pleasures*, C 7281.
Demeigne, *s. possession, ownership*, 5586; *Demeyne*, dominion, rule, 3310.
Demene, *v.* put up with, 5238.
Depart, *v.* divide, 2267, 5270.
Departing, *s. division*, 4611.
Dere, *v.* injure, destroy, 4236, *pp.* 2100.
Desert, *s. deserving*, 4269.
Desperaunce, *s. desperation*, 1872.
Desporte, *ger.* to cheer, to divert, 2014.
Despyt, *s. aversion*, C 5996.
Dever, *s. endeavour*, 5299.
Deviaunt, *adj.* divergent, turned away, 4780.
Devoid, *adj.* free, 4312.
Devoided, *pp.* removed 2900.

Devyns, *v.* interpret, 2800.
Devys, *s. disposal*, 1974; will, 4621; *by devys*, to judge from her appearance (?), 3205 (F. text, *et a son vis*.)
Deyned, *pt. s. subj.*, *him deyned*, it appeared good to him, C 6990.
Deynous, *adj.* disdainful, 3728.
Deyntee, *s. value*, 2677.
Diffyne, *v.* define, 4807.
Dight, *v.* prepare, 4240.
Discomfit, *pp.* disconcerted, 4067.
Disordaunce, *s. disagreement*, 4715, 5208, discordant melody, 4251.
Disorde, *ger.* to disagree, 4716.
Discreven, *2 pr. pl. describe*, 4802.
Disdeinous, *adj.* disdainful, C 7412.
Disee, *s. uneasiness*, 5244.
Disee, *ger.* to trouble, 3526.
Disgyse, *v.* apparel, 2250; *Disgyse*, *1 pr. s. disguise*, C 6198.
Dishonest, *adj.* unfair, unreasonable, 3442; immodest, 4262.
Disordinat, *adj.* inordinate, 4816.
Dispendith, *pr. pl. spend*, 5081.
Dispitous, *adj.* unmerciful, spiteful, C 6162; malicious, froward, 2212, 3457.
Displeasaunce, *s. displeasure*, 4436.
Disport, *s. delight*, 3468; happiness, 2894.
Disrewilly, *adv.* irregularly, 4900.
Disseise, *v.* dispossess, deprive, (F. *desaisir*), 2076.
Disserve, *v.* deserve, 3003.
Disseyved, *pp.* deceived, C 6628.
Dissolucioun, *s. dissoluteness*, 2848.
Distincte, *v.* distinguish, C 6002.
Distoned, *adj.* out of tune, 4248.
Ditee, *s. discourse*, 5286, 5052.
Divyne, *s. divinity*, C 6388.
Do, *v.* cause; *do make*, cause to be made, 2080; *pr. s. subj.* accomplish, C 5860; *Doand* (Northern), *pres. part. doing*, 2708; *Don*, *pp. pnt.* placed, C 6904.
Dole, *s. lamentation, mourning*, 2956, 4117. O.F. *duel*.
Dolven, *pp.* buried, 4070.
Dom, *s. dumb*, 2220, 2409, 2492.
Dool, *s. grief*, 4481.
Dool, *s. portion*, *halfe dool*, half portion, halving (it), 2804.
Doth, *pr. s. causes*, 2772, 2786, 2790; brings, 5558; gives, 1984.
Double, *adj.* twofold, 1756.
Doubleness, *s. double-dealing, duplicity*, 2166.
Down, come down, C 5868.
Dout, *s. fear*, 2102.
Doutable, *adj.* doubtful, 5413; imperilled, unstable, C 6274.

Doute, *v.* fear, 2021; *1 pr. s.* 2108; *2 pr. pl.* 2079.
Douting, *s.* doubt, C 6074.
Draught, *s.* draught, bout, act, 4869. *F. text, Car maint n'i traistroient ja trait.*
Drede, *s.* doubt, *withouten dr.*, without doubt, 2199, 2251, C 6214; **Dread** (*personified*), 3958, 5861.
Drethed, *s.* sorrow, 4778.
Dresse, *v.* prepare, 1773; *pr. s. subj. refl.* set himself, C 6535.
Dreys, *adj.* dry, 1743.
Drough, *pt. s.* draw, 1725.
Droune, *ger.* to be drowned, 4710, 3022.
Drury, *s.* loyal affection, 5064.
Drye, *v.* suffer, undergo, 4390; *endure*, 3105; *ger.* to fulfil, C 7484.
Dulle, *1 pr. s.* become stupefied, 4792.
Dure, *v.* last, endure, C 6841.
Duresse, *s.* severity, 3547, 3570.
Dwelling, *s.* delay, 2440.
Dyamaunt, *s.* adamant, 4385.
Dyden, *pt. pl.* died, C 6245.
Dyne, *v.* as *s.* dinner, C 6500.

E.

Eche, *v.* add, 1994; *help, aid*, 4618.
Effect, *s.* reality, 5486.
Eft, *adv.* again, 1783.
Eftsoone, *adv.* soon afterwards, C 6094; *Eftsoones*, C 6049.
Egre, *adj.* acid, 4179.
Eigre, *adv.* sharply, 5474.
Elde, *s.* old age, 4885.
Elengenesse, *s.* solitariness; hence, sadness, disquietude, C 7406. *F. text, soussi.*
Elis, *s. pl.* eels, C 7039.
Elles, *adv.* otherwise, in all other respects, 3429.
Empressid, *pp.* pressed, 3691.
Empryse, *s.* undertaking, care, 2147; *doings*, 3508; *enterprise*, C 5825; *design*, 1972; *conduct, action*, 2186; *privilege*, 2008; *rule*, 4905.
Enchesoun, *s.* occasion, 2904, 3982, 4242.
Enclyne, *v.* be subject (to), respect, bow down (to), C 6814.
Encombe, *v.* disturb, 5434; *pr. s.* importunes, teases, C 6675; *pr. pl.* perplex, 4482; *pp.* annoyed, C 7628.
Enfaunce, *s.* infancy, youth, 4288.
Enforce, *v.* compel, C 6407; *pr. pl. refl.* endeavour, C 6275; *pp.* augmented, 4499.
Engendrure, *s.* procreation, 4849.
Engreveth, *pr. s.* displeases, 3441.

Enhaunce, *ger.* to exalt, advance, C 7146.
Enlangoured, *adj.* faded with languor, pale, C 7399.
Enlumined, *pp.* illumined, 5344.
Enpryse, *s.* quickness of movement, 2636. *See Empryse.*
Enquestes, *s. pl.* legal inquisitions, C 6077.
Ensue, *1 pr. s.* assure, 4850; *pp.* C 7121.
Entayle, *s.* figure, shape, 3711.
Entencioun, *s.* attention, 4701; *intent*, C 6228; *diligence*, 2027; *of c.*, intentionally, 1976; *pl.* meaning, drift, C 7170.
Entende, *v.* pay attention, 2152.
Entendement, *s.* intention, 2188.
Entent, *s.* mind, 2187; *purpose*, 2488; *disposition*, 5696; *endeavour*, 3906; *intention, design*, C 5811, 5869.
Ententif, *adj.* diligent, careful, 3022; *ade.* 1720.
Entermete, *v. refl.* intermeddle, interfere, 2066; *1 pr. s. refl.* busy (myself with), C 6971.
Entremees, *s. pl.* entremets, dainty meats, C 6841.
Entremete, *v.* interfere, C 6635, 7233; *ger.* C 6503; *ger. refl.* C 5946; *1 pr. s.* intermeddle, interfere, C 6498, 6840; *pr. s.* C 5921.
Enviroun, *adv.* about, 3203, 4163; *round about*, 4202.
Enviroune, *1 pr. pl.* go about, C 7017.
Equipolences, *s. pl.* equivocations, equivocal expressions, C 7076.
Erke, *adj.* weary, wearied, 4867.
Ernes, *s.* ardour, of love, 4838.
Ernest, *s.* earnest, pledge, 3680.
Ers, *s.* posteriora (*F. cul.*), C 7578.
Espleyten, *v.* perform, execute, C 6174.
Espye, *s.* spy, 3871.
Etablisshing, *s.* decree, C 6369.
Estate, *s.* state of life, position, 4901.
Estres, *s. pl.* recesses, inner parts, 3636.
Existence, *s.* reality, 5549, C 7470.
Expowne, *ger.* to expound, C 7171.
Eyth, *adj.* easy, 3955. *A.B. 808.*

F.

Fable, *s.* deceitfulness, C 6602.
Fade, *adj.* pallid, faded, 2399.
Fadome, *s. pl.* fathoms, 4159.
Failed, *pp. as adj.* wanting, defective, C 7470.
Fainte, *adj.* feigned, C 7405.
Fairhede, *s.* fairness, beauty, 2484.
Fallacons, *s. pl.* deceits, C 7077.

Fallith, *pr. s. impers.* befits, 4025; belongs, C 6976.
Falsen, *pr. pl.* deceive, 4833.
Fand, *pt. pl.* found, 2707.
Fard, *imp. s.* paint, 2285.
Fardels, *s. pl.* loads, bundles, 5683.
Fare, *s.* welfare, condition, C 6498.
Fare, *v.* depart, vanish away, C 6045; *pr. pl.* go, 5564; journey, 5509; *pp.* gone, 2710.
Faute, *s.* fault, defect, 3837.
Fawe, *adj.* fain, blithe, C 6476.
Fay, *s.* faith, 2155, 5106.
Fee, *s.* property, fief, C 6044.
Feers, *adj.* fierce, 3372.
Feeste, *s.* encouragement, 5061.
Fel, *adj.* cruel, savage, 2211; harsh, 4028; stern, C 7342; **Felle**, *pl.* painful, 3789.
Felde-fare, *s.* field-fare, 5510.
Fele, *adj.* many, 4446, C 6038.
Fele, *v.* perceive (smell), 1844.
Feller, *adj. comp.* crueller, 4103.
Felonea, *adj. pl.* evil, wicked, C 6711.
His f. iangelinges, his evil pratings, his injurious talk. Suggested by F. *Maugre les felonesses jangles*; where *felonesses* is a plural adjective; see Godefroy.
Feloun, *adj.* cruel, C 5998.
Fere, *s.* fire, 2471, 5086.
Fered, *pp.* fired, inflamed, 5278.
Fetisly, *adv.* neatly, perfectly, 2267.
Fetys, *adj.* well-made, 2088.
Feynte, *adj.* feigned, 5563.
Feyntyse, *s.* deceit, guile, 2947, 2998, 3492; evasion, 1971.
Fiaunce, *s.* confidence, trust, 5481.
Fil, *pt. s.* fell, condescended, 3437; **Fille**, *pt. pl.* found themselves, C 5813.
Fit, *s.* mood, 5197.
Flawme, *s.* flame, 3707.
Flawnes, *s. pl.* flaws; a dish composed of new cheese, eggs, powdered sugar, coloured with saffron and baked in small tins called 'coffins'; C 4042.
Flayn, *pp.* flayed, C 7316. *Miswritten alayn.*
Flemed, *pt. s.* exiled, drove into exile, 3052, C 6781. A. S. *flyman*.
Floytes, *s. pl.* flutes, 4251.
Foles, *gen.* fool's, 5266.
Foly, *adj.* foolish, 4299, 5085.
Fond, *adj.* foolish, 5367.
Fonde, *v.* attempt, 5858.
Foole, *adj.* foolish, C 7539.
Foon, *pl.* foes, 5552, C 6940.
Footte, *v.* dance formally, 2323.
Foot-hoot, *adv.* instantly, 3827.
For, *prep.* to prevent, 4229; for fear of, 2365; on account of, 2190.

Forboden, *pp.* forbidden, C 6616.
Force, *s.*; *I yeve no force*, I care not, 4602; *of f.*, necessarily, 1796.
Fordone, *pp.* undone, 4339.
Fordrive, *pp.* scattered, 3782.
Forewardis, forwards; *hennes f.*, henceforward, C 7304.
Forfare, *v.* perish, 5388, 5778.
For-ofte, *adv.* very often, 4876.
For-peyned, *pp.* distressed, 3693.
Forsake, *v.* refuse, 2822; withstand, 1876.
Forstere, *s.* forester, C 6329.
Fortened, *pp.* destroyed, 4875. (Or perhaps 'obstructed'; cf. A. S. *fortynan*, to shut up.) See *Orece*.
Forthenke, *v.* rue, repent, 3957, 4060.
Forthy, *conj.* because; *not f.*, not on that account, (*perhaps*) nevertheless, 4500.
Forwardred, *pp.* spent with wandering, 3336.
Forwardis, *s. pl.* agreements, C 7303.
Forwerreyd, *pp.* utterly defeated, 2564.
Forwery, *adj.* tired out, 3336.
For-why, wherefore, 1743.
Forwoundid, *pp.* sorely wounded, 1830.
Foryet, *v.* forget, 3243; *pr. s.* C 6538.
Foryeve, *ger.* to abandon, give up, 3438.
Fraunchyse, *s.* liberty, 4906; nobility, 2007; generosity, 3003; Bounty, 3501; Freedom, C 5865.
Frere, *s.* friar, C 7377; Friar Wolf, C 6424.
Freres Prechours, *s. pl.* preaching friars, i. e. the Prechours, or Dominican friars, C 7458.
Fret, *pp.* fretted, adorned, 3204; set, 4705.
Fretted, *pp.* furnished, lit. ornamented, C 7259.
Frouncen, *pr. pl.* shew wrinkles, C 7261; **Frounced**, *pp.* wrinkled, 3137.
Fyne, *v.* cease, 1797; *pr. pl. subj.* end, depart, 5356.

G.

Gabbeth, *pr. s.* speaks falsely, lies, C 6700.
Gabbing, *s.* lying, C 7602, 7612.
Gadring, *s.* accumulation, 5782.
Garisoun, *s.* healing, 3248; garrison, 4279.
Garnement, *s.* dress, 2256.
Garnisoun, *s.* fortress, 4204.
Gate, *s.* way, wise, 3332, 5167, 5230 (Northern).
Gentilnesse, *s.* kindness, 4605; good breeding, 2005; nobility, 5237.
Gerner, *s.* garner, C 5988.
Gesse; *without gesse*, doubtless, 2817.
Geten, *pp.* gotten, 5701.

Geting, *s.* obtaining, attainment, 3284.
 Gibbe, Gib (Gilbert), *s.* cat, C 6304.
 Ginne, *s.* warlike engine, 4176.
 Ginneth, *pr. s.* begins, 2154.
 Gisarme, *s.* a weapon bearing a scythe-like blade fixed on a shaft and provided also with a spear-point like a bayonet, C 5978.
 Giterne, *ger.* to play on the guitar, 2121.
 Glose, *v.* flatter, 5097; *pp.* explained, C 6890.
 Gloumbe, *v.* frown, look glum, 4356.
 Gnede, *s.* stungy person, C 6002. (*Miswritten grade.*)
 Go, *pp.* gone, 2423; empty, C 6834.
 Gonfalon, *s.* gonfalon, banner, 2018.
 Gospel Perdurable, The Everlasting Gospel, C 7102.
 Graithe, *v.* dress, array, C 7368.
 Graunt mercy, best thanks, C 7904.
 Gree, (1) *s.* way, lit. grade, in no manner gree, in no kind of way, 5743.
 Gree, (2) *s.* favour; *atte gree*, with favour, 4574; *take at gree*, accept with a good will, 1969; *in gree*, in good part, 2306.
 Grete, *pr. s.* weep, lament, 4116 (*North-ern*).
 Groves, *s. pl.* thickets, 3019.
 Groffe, *adv.* face downward, 2561.
 Groine, *pr. s. subj.* grumble, murmur, C 7049.
 Grucchen, *pr. pl. subj.* grumble at, be-grudge, C 6465.
 Grucching, *s.* refusal, C 6439.
 Grype, *v.* seize, C 5983.
 Guerdoning, *s.* reward, 2380, C 5908.
 Gyler, *s.* beguiler, 5759.
 Gype, *s.* frock, perhaps a smock-frock (alluding to the numerous gathers in the front of it), C 7262.

H.

Ha, *v.* have, 5569.
 Hade, *2 pt. s.* huddest, 2400.
 Halp, *pl. s.* helped, 1911.
 Halt, *pr. s. refl.* considers himself, 4901; keeps, C 7012.
 Hardement, *s.* courage, 1827, 2487, 3392.
 Harlotas, *s. pl.* rascals, rihulds, C 6068.
 Harneis, *s.* armour, gear, C 7477.
 Harneys, *v. refl.* dress, equip thyself, 2647.
 Hat, *adj.* hot, 1398.
 Hatter, *adj. comp.* hotter, more hotly, 2475.
 Haunt, *v.* practise, 4868; *ger.* to haunt, frequent, C 6601; *pr. s. subj.* practise, C 7029.

Haunting, *s.* haunt, abode, C 6081.
 Hauteyn, *adj.* haughty, C 6101; *4m.* 3719.
 Havoir, *s.* having, 4720.
 Hays, *s.* hedge, 2971, 2987.
 Hele, *v.* conceal, 2858; *ger.* 2522; *pr. pl.* C 6882.
 Hele, *s.* health, 4721.
 Hem, *pron.* them, 2218.
 Hemmes, *s. pl.* phylacterias, C 6912.
 Hend, *adj.* ready, useful, 3345.
 Hente, *ger.* to seize, 3364; *pl. s.* 1730, 4002; *pl. pl.* snatched, C 7136; *pp.* plucked, C 7644.
 Herber, *imp. pl.* take up your abode, C 7586; *2 pt. s.* didst harbour, 5107.
 Herbergere, *s.* host, entertainer, C 7585; *pl.* 5000.
 Herberwe, *s.* shelter, lodging, C 6001; 7495.
 Herberwe, *v.* shelter, lodge, C 6145.
 Herde, *s.* shepherd, C 6453; *pl.* C 6561.
 Herie, *pr. pl.* honour, praise, C 6342; A.S. *herian*.
 Hertly, *adj.* true-hearted, 5433.
 Het, *pp.* heated, 3709.
 Heten, *v.* promise, C 6899.
 Hight, *pr. s.* is named, C 6341; *pp.* promised, 2803.
 Hoked, *adj.* hooked, furnished with hooks, 1712; barbed, 1749.
 Hole, *adj.* whole, complete, 5441.
 Holtes, *s. pl.* plantations, C 6996.
 Homager, *s.* vassal, 3288.
 Hoolly, *adv.* wholly, 1970.
 Hoomly, *adj.* homely, familiar, C 6320.
 Hoor, *adj.* gray-haired, C 6335; Hore, *adj.* hoary, gray, 3196; *pl.* hoary (a frequent epithet of trees, perhaps with reference to trees of great age, C 6996).
 Hornpypes, *s. pl.* musical instruments formed of pipes made of horn, 4250.
 Hostilers, *s. as adj. pl.* keeping an inn, C 7013.
 Hoteth, *pr. s.* promises, 5432; *pr. pl.* 5444.
 Housel, *v.* give the Host (to), C 6438.
 Hulstred, *pp.* concealed, hidden, C 6146.
 Humanites, *s.* human nature, 5655.
 Hy, *s.* haste, in hy, in haste, 2393, 3591.

I.

Ioh, *pron.* I, C 6787.
 If, *conj.* if (i.e. if the matter be wisely inquired into), 4454.
 Imped, *pp.* engrafted, 5137.
 Impes, *s. pl.* grafts, C 6393.
 Importable, *adj.* insufferable, C 6902.

In-fere, *adv.* together, 4827.

Isse, *v.* issue, 1992.

J.

Jangleth, *pr. s.* prattles, C 7540.

Jangling, *s.* prating, chattering, C 5852;
pl. idle words, C 6711.

Jape, *s.* jest, C 7519; *pl.* tricks, C 6835.

Jape, 1 *pr. s.* mock, scoff at, C 6471.

Jolily, *adv.* after a jolly sort, C 7031;
pleasantly, 2248; nicely, neatly, 2284;
deservedly, C 7664.

Joly, *adj.* fine, gay, C 7248.

Jolynesse, *s.* jolliness, joy, 2302.

Joweles, *s. pl.* jewels, 2092, 5420.

Joyne, 1 *pr. s.* enjoin, 2355.

Jupartye, *s.* jeopardy, 2666.

K.

Kembe, *imp. s.* comb, 2284.

Kenne, *v.* show, teach, 2476.

Kepe, *s.* heed, 3475.

Kepe, *v.* keep; *kepe forth*, perpetuate,
4854; 1 *pr. s.* care, C 6440; keep, 3476;
care, wish, C 6083; *pr. pl.* care, C 6093.

Kernels, *s. pl.* battlements, 4195. F. text,
les creniaus.

Kerving, *pres. pt. as adj.* cutting, 3813.

Kesse, *v.* kiss, 2006.

Kid, *pp.* made known, 2172; evident, 3132.

Kirked, *adj.* crooked (?), 3137.

Knet, *pp.* knit, fastened, 4700, 4811; *pp.*
pl. fast bound, 2092.

Knewe, 1 *pt. s. subj.* disclosed, C 6090.

Knopped, *pp.* fastened, C 7260. A *knoppe*
is properly a button; hence *knoppen*, to
fasten with a button.

L.

Laas, *s.* toils, snare, C 6029, 6648; Lace,
cord, string, C 7373; net, 2792; snare,
5093.

Laced, *pp.* entangled, caught, 3178.

Lakke, 2 *pr. pl.* blame, 4804.

Lambren, *s. pl.* lambs, C 7013.

Largease, *s.* liberality, 2354; C 5853.

Las, *s.* net, 2790. See *Laas*, *Lace*.

Late, *ger.* to let, permit, allow, 3145, C
6676; *v.* let, 5574; *Lat. pr. s.* lets remain,
5403.

Lauhwith, *pr. s.* laughs, 2204.

Lay, *s.* law, religious belief, C 6749.

Leef, *adj.* willing, 2335.

Lees, *s. pl.* lies; *withouten lees*, truly,
3904, 5728.

Leful, *adj.* allowable, permissible, 5195.
Lit. 'leave-ful.'

Leggen, *ger.* case, relieve, 5016. (Short
for *alleggen*.)

Lemes, *s. pl.* rays, 5346.

Lemman, *s.* sweetheart, C 6056, 6305.

Lene, *v.* lend, 3053, C 7026.

Lening; *in lening*, as a loan, 2373.

Lepand, *pres. part.* running (with short
jumps), 1928.

Lere, *ger.* to teach, 2143, 2149; *v.* teach,
5152; learn, 2451, 4808.

Lered, *adj.* learned, C 6217.

Lese, *v.* lose, C 5915, 5924; *pr. s.* 2149.

Lesing, *s.* lie, falsehood, 2174, 4835.

Let, *pr. s.* leads (his life), C 6111.

Lete, *v.* cease, 2463; leave, C 6457; let
alone, C 6556; abandon, C 6169; allow,
permit, 6458; 1 *pr. s.* leave, C 6354;
abandon, C 6997; *pp.* let, 1791.

Lette, *s.* let, hindrance, 3756.

Letten, *v.* hinder, 3590; delay, 3940;
stop, 1832; cease, 2807; desist, 1832.

Letting, *s.* hindrance, C 5931.

Lettrure, *s.* literature, writing, C 6751.

Leve, *v.* believe, 3303.

Leve, *v.* live, 2336.

Lever, *adv.* rather, C 6793; *me were lever*,
I had rather, C 6168.

Lewd, *adj.* lay (folk), the ignorant, C
6217.

Lewedist, *adj. superl.* most ignorant,
4802.

Leye, *pt. pl.* lay, lived, C 6572.

Liche, *adv.* alike, equally, 4160.

Ligging, *pr. pt.* lying down, 4002.

Likerous, *adj.* licentious, 4264.

Likly, *adj.* similar, 4852.

Lisse, *v.* abate, 4128; *ger.* to be eased, to
feel relief, 3758.

List, *s.* pleasure, will, 1957.

List, *pr. s.* wishes, C 6130.

Loigne, *s.* tether, 3382, C 7050.

Loke, *pp.* locked up, 2092.

Long; *of long passed*, of old, 3377.

Longith, *pr. s.* befits, 2321.

Loos, *s.* renown, reputation, 2310, C 6103;
ill fame, C 7081.

Lorn, *pp.* lost, 4327, 4502, 4508, C 5973.

Losengeours, *s. pl.* deceivers, 2693.

Loteby, *s.* paramour, C 6339.

Lough, *pt. s.* laughed, C 7295.

Loure, *pr. s. subj.* scowl, C 7049.

Loute, *v.* bow, 4384; bow down, C 7336;
pr. pl. subj. bow down, C 6917.

Lowe, *ger.* to appraise, i.e. to be valued
at, 4532.

Luce, *s.* pike (fish), C 7029.

Lyflode, *s.* livelihoood, 5602, C 6663.
Lyken, *v.* please, 1854, C 6131.
Lyte, *adj.* little, small, 2272, 3557; *adv.* C 7551.
Lythe, *adj.* delicate, 3761.

M

Maat, *adj.* bewildered, overcome, 1739.
 See **Mate**.
Maistrye, *s.* strength, dominion, 4171.
Make, *ger.* to cause, C 5931; *pr.* *pl.* pro-
 pound, C 6186.
Male, *s.* bag, wallet, 3263; money-bag, C
 6170.
Maltalent, *s.* ill humour, 4438.
Mangonel, *s.* a military engine on the
 principle of the sling-staff for casting
 stones, a catapult, C 6272.
Mar, *adj.* greater, 2215; *adv.* more, 1854.
Marchandise, *s.* barter, C 5902.
Mare, *adv.* more, 2702.
Markes, *pl.* marks (coins), C 5986.
Marreth, *pr.* *s.* d. signs, 4079.
Mate, *adj.* distracted, 5099; downcast,
 4671; dispirited, 3167, 3190. See **Maat**.
Maugree, *s.* ill-will, 4399; reproach, 4144;
prep. in spite of, C 6711; *maugre youres*,
 in spite of you, C 7635.
Mayme, *r.* main, C 6030; *pr.* *s.* wounds,
 4317. See **Meygned**.
Maysondewe, *s.* hospital, 4019.
Medle, *v.* intertere, 3788; *Medle*, *v.* *refl.*
 meddle, *m.* him of, deal with, C 6030;
to medle, for meddling, 4545.
Meke, *v.* mollify, 3404; have mercy, 3541;
Moked, *pl.* *s.* *refl.* humbled himself, 3584.
Mendience, *s.* beggary, mendicancy, C
 6657, 6707.
Mene, *s.* mean, middle state, C 6527.
Mene, *adj.* inside, mean, 4844.
Mene, *i.* *pr.* *s.* between, 2506.
Menour, *Minorite*, Franciscan friar, C
 6138.
Mes, *s.* at good *mes*, at a favourable op-
 portunity, 1402. O F *mes*.
Mele, *adj.* meet, fittill, 1702.
Mele, *v.* meet, succeed, 4571.
Mevable, *adj.* moveable, 4736.
Meve, *v.* move, incite, 2327.
Mewe, *s.* coop, cage (a falconry term),
 4778.
Meygned, *pp.* hurt, maimed, 3350. See
Mayme.
Meynee, *s.* household, C 6870, 7156.
Meynt, *pp.* mingled, 1920; *Meynd*, 2296.
Mich, *adj.* many, 2258, 5555.
Micher, *s.* thief, C 6541.

Miches, *s.* *pl.* small leaves of
 wheaten flour, 5585.
Mis, *adj.* amiss, wrong, 3241.
Mischeef, *s.* misfortune, C 6731.
Misericorde & mercy, 3577.
Misceying, *s.* evil speaking, 2207.
Mister, *s.* occupation, trade, C
 whatever master, of every kind of
 pation, C 6132.
Mistere, *s.* need, C 7469.
Miswey, *adv.* astray, 4764.
Mixens, *s.* *pl.* dunglills, C 6496.
Mo, *adj.* *pl.* others besides, 221.
 (in number, C 5902).
Mochel, *adj.* great, 3117; *to m.*, to
 442.
Mooble, *s.* moveable property C 604.
Moeve *v.* move, *i.* *e.* prefer, make C
Moneste, *i.* *pr.* *s.* admonish (charge).
Monyours, *s.* *pl.* corners, C 6011.
Mot, *pr.* *s.* must, 2784; *s.* *mote* *i.* *pr.*
 hope to walk about, C 6921.
Mowe, *v.* be able 2044.
Musard, *s.* muser, dreamer, C 7512;
 gard, 3256, 4024; dolt, C 7462.
Muwis, *s.* *pl.* bushels, 5920.

N

Nathelesse, nevertheless, C 6095.
Ne, *conj.* unless, 4858.
Nede, *adv.* necessarily, C 783.
Nedely, *adv.* needs must, C 6117.
Neden, *v.* be necessary, C 5922.
Nedes, *s.* *pl.* necessities, C 6174.
Nedes, *adv.* of necessity, 1722.
Neer, *adv.* nearer, 1708. See **Nerre**.
Neigh it nere, *v.* approach, *i.* *v.*
 nearly, 2001.
Nempned, *pp.* named, mentioned C
Nere, were not, were it not for,
 were there not, 2778; had it not
 for, C 7328.
Nerre, *adv.* *comp.* nearer, 5101.
Neven, *v.* name, C 5902; recount, C
Nil, *pr.* *s.* will not, C 5821, 6245.
Nomen, *pl.* *pl.* took, C 7423; *pp.* *to*
 5104.
Noncerteyne, *adj.* uncertain, 5126.
Nones, for the, for the nonce, *occ.*
 ally, C 7387.
Nonne, *s.* nun, C 6130.
Noot, *i.* *pr.* *s.* know not, C 6167.
Noriture, *s.* bugging up, C 6728.
Norys, *s.* nurse 5418.
Not, *i.* *pr.* *s.* know not, 5191.
Note-kernel, *s.* nut-kernel, C 7125.
Noye, *s.* hurt, 1772.

Noyen, *ger.* to vex, 4416.
 Noyous, *adj.* harmful, 3230, 4449.
 Noyse, *s.* evil report, 3971.
 Nyce, *adj.* foolish, silly, 4262, 4877, C 6944.
 Nycotee, *s.* foolishness, 5525.
 Nyghe, *v.* approach, 1775.

O.

Obeysching, *s.* submission, 3380.
 Of, *prep.* out of, owing to, 3981; concerning (*Lat. de*), 4884; off, 5470; (some) of, (part) of, 1993. Or it may mean 'by,' 'on account of.'
 Offense, *s.* discomfort, 5677.
 Of-newe, *adv.* newly, afresh, 5169.
 Onlofte, *prep.* aloft, on high, 5503.
 Oon, *adj.* one, 4812; *in oon*, without change, 3779.
 Ostages, *s. pl.* hostages, 2064, C 7311.
 Other-gate, *adv.* otherwise, 2158.
 Ought, *adv.* in any way, C 6096.
 Outake, *prep.* except, 4474.
 Outerly, *adv.* wholly, utterly, 3489, 3742.
 Outrage, *s.* wrong, 2082, 2086; scandalous life, 4927; outrageous deeds, C 6024 (mistranslated).
 Outrageous, *adj.* exceeding great, 2602; ill-behaved, 2102.
 Outslinge, *v.* fling out, C 5987.
 Out-take, *prep.* except, C 5819.
 Over-al, *adv.* everywhere, 3050, 3914.
 Overgo, *v.* pass away, 3784; *pr. pl.* trample on, C 6821.
 Overwhelme, *v.* roll over, 3775.
 Ow, 1 *pr. s.* ought, 4413.

P.

Palasyna, *adj. pl.* belonging to the palace; *ladyes palasyna*, court ladies, C 6862.
 Papelard, *s.* hypocrite, deceiver, C 7283.
 Papelardye, *s.* hypocrisy, C 6796.
 Parage, *s.* parentage, descent, 4759.
 Par-amour, with devotion, 2830.
 Paramour, *s.* paramour, lover, 5060.
 Paramours, *adv.* with a lover's affection, 4657.
 Parceners, *s. pl.* partners, C 6952.
 Parcuere, *adv.* by heart, 4796.
 Pardee, *F. pardieu*, 4433, C 5913.
 Parfay, by my faith, C 6058.
 Part, *s.* duty, 5032.
 Parte, *v.* divide, 5283.
 Party, *s.* part; *in party*, partially, 5338.
 Parvys, *s.* room over a church-porch, C 7108.

Pas; a pas, apace, quickly, 3724.
 Passaunt, *adj.* surpassing, 3110.
 Passe, *v.* penetrate, 1751.
 Patre, *v.* recite the paternoster, C 6794.
 Pay, *s.* satisfaction, C 5938; liking, taste, 1721; *me to pay*, to my satisfaction, C 6985.
 Paye, *ger.* to appease, 3599.
 Peire, *v.* damage, C 6103.
 Peire of bedis, *s.* rosary, C 7372.
 Pens, *s. pl.* pence, C 5987.
 Pensel, *s.* a standard, ensign, or banner, (particularly of bachelors-in-arms), a pennoncel, C 6280.
 Pepir, *s.* pepper, (metaphorically) mischief, C 6028.
 Perauntre, *adv.* peradventure, 5192.
 Percas, *adv.* perchance, C 6647.
 Persaunt, *adj.* piercing, 2809; sharp, 4179.
 Pese, *ger.* to appease, 3397.
 Pesible, *adj.* peaceable, gentle, C 7413.
 Peyne, *s.* penalty, C 6626; pain, hardness, 2120; *up peyne*, on pain (of death), C 6617.
 Peyne, *v. refl.* endeavour, C 7512; *pr. s. refl.* takes pains, C 6014.
 Piment, *s.* spiced wine or ale, C 6027.
 Pitous, *adj.* excusable, deserving pity, 4734; merciful, C 6161.
 Plat, *adv.* flat, flatly, 1734, C 7526.
 Pleyne, *v.* lament, complain, 2299, C 6405.
 Pleynt, *s.* complaint, C 6012.
 Plight, *pt. s.* plucked, 1745.
 Plongeth, *pr. s.* plunges, 5472.
 Plyt3, *s.* affair, C 5827.
 Poeste, *s.* power, virtue, 2005.
 Pole, *s.* pool, C 5966.
 Port, *s.* demeanour, manner, 2038, 2102; Porte, 4622.
 Porte-colys, *s.* portcullis, 4168.
 Possed, *pp.* pushed, tossed, 4479; *pp.* driven, 4625.
 Potente, *s.* crutch, C 7417.
 Poustee, *s.* power, influence, C 6533, 6957, 7679; dominion, C 6484.
 Povert, *s.* poverty, C 6181.
 Prece, *ger.* to press, 4198.
 Predicacioun, *s.* preaching, 5703.
 Preise, 1 *pr. s.* value, appraise, 4830.
 Presse, *v.* press; *pr. s.* intrudes, C 7627; *pr. pl.* intrude, C 7629; *imp. s.* endeavour, 2899.
 Pressure, *s.* wine-press, 3692.
 Preve, *v.* prove, 4170.
 Preving, *s.* proof, C 7543.
 Preyse, 1 *pr. s.* value, esteem, 1983. F. *pris.*

Prike, *imp.* a gallop, 2314.
Pris, *s.* esteem, 2310.
Privetee, *s.* secret, 526, C 6878, 6882.
Procuratour, *s.* a collector of alms for hospitals or sick persons, C 6974.
Propre, *adj.* own, C 6563, 6592.
Provable, *adj.* capable of proof, 5414.
Provende, *s.* allowance, stipend, C 6931.
Frow, *s.* profit, gain, 5806, 1040.
Fryme temps, first beginning, 4334; the spring, 4747.
Frys, *s.* praise, 1072; price, C 5927.
Pugnaunt, *adj.* poignant, keen, 1879.
Pullaille, *s.* poultry, C 7043.
Pulle, *v.* pluck, strip, C 5984, *pr. pl.* flay, strip, C 6820.
Puple, *s.* people, rabblement, C 7159.
Purchas, *s.* acquisition, C 6848.
Purchasen, *ger.* to procure, C 6607.
Purpryse, *s.* park, enclosure, 3987, 4171.
Purveaunce, *s.* provision, C 7326.
Purveye, *ger.* to procure, 3339.
Put, *pr. s.* puts, 4556, 4444, C 5049.
Pyne, *s.* endeavour, 1795, misery, C 6409.
Pynen, *v.* torment, punish, 3511.

Q.

Quarels, *s. pl.* square-headed crossbow-bolts, 1823.
Quarteyne, *adj.* as *s.* quartan fever or ague, 1401.
Queme, *ger.* to please, C 7270.
Quenche, *v.* be quenched, 5324.
Quene, *s.* queen, concubine, C 7033.
Querrou, *s.* quarry-man, hewer of stone, 4140.
Quethe; *I quethe him quyte*, I cry him quit, C 6000.
Queynt, *adj.* elegant, 2251; curious, fanciful, C 6442; strange, 5190; pleased, 3070; shewing satisfaction, 2038.
Queyntly, *adv.* neatly, easily, 4322.
Queyntysse, *s.* elegance, 2251.
Quik, *adj.* alive, 3523, 4070, 5056.
Quitly, *adv.* quite, entirely, C 5843.
Quitte, *pt. s. reflex*; *quitte him*, acquitted himself 3060, *pp.* requited, 3146, 6088, made amends for, 2590, *rid*, 1852.
Quook, *i. pt. s.* quaked, 3163; *pt. pl.* 3966.
Quyte, *pp. as adj.* quit, C 5004, free, C 5910; entire, 2175.
Quyte, *v.* acquit, release, C 6042; fulfil, 5032; *i. pr. s.* C 6412, *imp. s.* 2222, 4392.

R.

Racyne, *s.* root, 4881.
Rage, *s.* rage, spite, 3809; malignity, venom, 1016; madness, 3292. *in s.* mad, 4523.
Ramage, *adj.* wild, 5324. *O. F. ramage*.
Rape, *s.* haste, 1029.
Rape, *adv.* quickly, C 6516.
Rathe, *adj.* early, C 6691.
Ravisable, *adj.* greedy for prey, C 7016.
Ravyne, *s.* plunder, C 6812.
Rebel, *adj.* rebellious, C 6400.
Recoche; *what recchith me*, what care I, 3447.
Recreaundyse, *s.* cowardice, 2107, 4058.
Recreaunte, *s.* coward, 4090.
Recured, *pp.* recovered, 4020, 5124.
Rede, *s.* good advice, 3859; *Reed*, C 7428.
Rede, *i. pr. s.* advise, 1932, *read*, 1819.
Reed, *s.* advice, C 7428; *Rede*, 3859.
Refreyne, *ger.* to bridle, C 7511.
Reft, *s.* rift, 2661.
Refte, *i. pt. pl.* deprived, 3562.
Refuyt, *s.* refuge, escape, 3840.
Rehete, *v.* cheer, console, C 6500.
Reisins, *s. pl.* fresh grapes, 3659.
Relesse, *s.* relief, 2612; release, 4440.
Relesse, *i. pr. s.* give up, C 6000.
Religioun, *s.* religious order, 3712, monastic life, C 6135.
Religious, *adj.* pious, C 6236; *as s. a nun*, C 6447, *R. folk*, monastica, C 6140.
Remued, *pt. s.* moved, C 7432.
Rendre, *v.* recite, 4820.
Reneyed, *i. pt. s. subj.* should renounce, C 6787.
Repeire, *v.* return, 3571, 4111.
Repreef, *s.* reproach, 4074, C 7240.
Repreve, *s.* reproach, 5261; *Reprove*, upbraiding, 5525.
Requere, *pr s. subj.* request, ask, 5233; *pp.* asked, 5277.
Rescous, *s.* service, endeavour to support, C 6740.
Reasonles, *adj. pl.* reasonable, C 6760.
Resoun, *s.* correct manner, 2151.
Reveth, *pr s.* takes away, C 6254, *pt. s.* bereaved, 4351.
Reverte, *v.* bring back, C 7188.
Revolucioun, *s.* revolution, turn (of fortune's wheel), 4266.
Reward, *s.* regard, consideration, 2812.
Rewe, *v.* rue, be sorry, 4060; *it wol me rewe*, I shall be sorry, 5170.
Reyne, *v.* rain down, fall as rain, 1822.
Reynes, *Rennes* (in Brittany), 3826.

Ribaned, *pp.* adorned with lace (of gold), 4752.
 Ribaud, *s.* labourer, 5673; *pl.* ribalds, C 7302.
 Ribaudye, *s.* ribaldry, 2224; riotous living, 4926.
 Right, *adv.* just, exactly, 5147; quite, C 6398, 6411; *right* thought, not at all, 2071.
 Rimpled, *adj.* wrinkled, 4495.
 Riveling, *pres. part.* puckering, C 7262.
 Rochet, *s.* linen garment, 4754.
 Rode, *s. dat.* road, cross, C 6564.
 Rody, *adj.* ruddy, 3629.
 Roignous, *adj.* scurvy, rotten, C 6190.
 Roking, *pres. part.* rocking, quivering, trembling, 1906. Cf. *Shak. Lucr.* 262.
 Bonne, *pp.* advanced, 4495.
 Roser, *s.* rose-bush, 1789, 1826, 1833, 2967.
 Bought, 1 *pt.* *s.* recked, heeded, 1873; 1 *pt.* *s.* subj. should not care, C 7061.
 Rowe, *adj. pl.* rough, 1838.
 Rude, *adj.* as *pl.* *s.* common people, 2268.
 Ryve, *v.* pierce, C 7161; be torn, 5393; Ryveth, *pr. s.* is torn, 5718.

S.

Sad, *adj.* serious, staid, composed, 4627; *pl.* grievous, C 6907.
 Sadnesse, *s.* sobriety, discretion, 4940.
 Sallen, *v.* assail, C 7338.
 Sakked Preres, *Freres de Sacco*, Friars of the Sack, C 7462.
 Salowe, *adj.* fallow; but read falowe, i. e. fallow, C 7397.
 Salute, *ger.* to salute, 2218; *pr. s.* subj. 2222.
 Samons, *s. pl.* salmon, C 7039.
 Sat, *pt.* *s.* impera. suited, 3810.
 Sautere, *s.* psalter, C 7371.
 Say, 1 *pt.* *s.* saw, 1722; Sawe, *pt.* *s.* subj. saw, 1719.
 Say, (*for* Assay), *v.* essay, attempt, endeavour, 5162.
 Saynt, *adj.* girded, girdled (?), C 7408.
 Seantilone, *s.* pattern, C 7064.
 Soole, *s.* scholarship, learning, 3274.
 Score, *s.* crack (or hole) in a wall, 2660.
 Scrippe, *s.* scrip, wallet, C 7403.
 Secree, *adj.* secret, 5257.
 Secree, *s.* secret, 5260.
 Secte, *s.* class, category, 5745; *gen.* of (our) race, 4859.
 Seden, *v.* bear seed, fructify, 4344.
 See, *pr. s.* subj. see; so god me see, as (I hope) God may protect me, 5693.
 Seer, *adj.* sere, dry, 4749.
 Seignorye, *s.* dominion, 3213.
 Seke, *adj.* sick, 5729, 5733; *pl.* 4829.

Seemable, *adj.* similar, C 5911.
 Semblable, *adj.* as *s.* resemblance, one like himself, 4835; *pl.* like (cases), C 6759.
 Semblant, *s.* appearance, disguise, C 6202; (his) hypocrisy, C 7449; seeming, 3205, 3957.
 Sen, *conj.* since, 1984.
 Sentence, *s.* meaning, C 7474; *pl.* opinions, C 5813.
 Sermoneth, *pr. s.* sermonises, preaches, C 6219.
 Servage, *s.* servitude, 4382, 5807.
 Serviable, *adj.* serviceable, C 6004.
 Sette, *v.* fasten (an accusation), 3328; *Set*, *pr. s.* places, 4925, 4957; *pt. pl.* besieged, C 7344; *pp.* established, 2077.
 Seure, *adj.* sure, 4304.
 Seürere, *adj. comp.* surer, more secure, C 5958.
 Seynt Amour, William St. Amour, C 6781. (He wrote against the friars who advocated the Eternal Gospel.)
 Shende, *v.* shame, put to shame, 3116; *ger.* to injure, 2933; *pr. s.* ruins, 4770, 5310; *pp.* disgraced, ruined, 3479, 3933.
 Shene, *adj.* fair, 3713.
 Shere, *pr. s.* subj. can cut, shear, 4335, may shave, C 6196.
 Shete, *ger.* to shoot, 1798; Shot, *pt. s.* shot, 1727, 1777.
 Shette, *ger.* to shut, 4224; *v.* shut up, 2091; *pr. pl.* shut up, 5771; Shet, *pp.* shut, 4368.
 Shewing, *s.* demeanour, 4041.
 Shitteth, *pr. s.* shuts, 4100; Shit, *pp.* shut up, 2767.
 Shoon, *s. pl.* shoes, 2265.
 Shrewis, *s. pl.* knaves, C 6876.
 Shrift-fader, *s.* confessor, C 6423.
 Shryve, *v.* hear confessions, C 6364.
 Sigh, 1 *pt.* *s.* saw, 1822.
 Slight, 1 *pt.* *s.* sighed, 1746.
 Sikerer, *adj. comp.* safer, C 7310.
 Sikerest, *adj. superl.* securerest, C 6147.
 Sikernease, *s.* certainty, 1935, 2365.
 Sikirly, *adv.* certainly, C 6020.
 Similacioun, *s.* dissimulation, C 7220.
 Simplese, *s.* Simplicity (the name of an arrow), 1774; simplicity, C 6381.
 Sire, *s.* father; *sire* ne dame, neither father nor mother, C 4887.
 Sith, *conj.* since, 1964, 4367, C 6266.
 Sithen, *adv.* afterwards, 1999, C 7130.
 Bitte, *pr. pl. subj.* sit, sit, 2267; Sittand, *pres. pt.* (Northern) sitting, 2263; Sitting, *pres. pt.* sitting, suitable, 3654; besitting, 2309, 4675.

- Skaffaut**, *s.* scaffold, a shed on wheels with a ridged roof, under cover of which the battering ram was used, 4176.
Skile, *s.* reason, 3120, 4543; avail, 1951.
Slake, *v.* abate, 3108.
Sleen, *ger.* to alay, C 7195; *pr.* *s.* 2592.
Sleight, *adj.* sly, cunning, C 7257.
Sleightes, *s. pl.* missiles, C 7071; tricks, C 6371.
Slo, *v.* slay, 4150, 4592; *ger.* 5521; *Sloo*, *v.* 1953, 3523; *Slo*, *pr.* *s. subj.* 4192, 5642.
Slomrest, *s. pr.* *s.* slumberest, 2567.
Slowe, *s.* moth, 4751. *F. taigne*.
Smote, *pp.* smitten, 3755.
Snibbe, *v.* snub, reproach, 4533.
Sojour, *s.* sojourn, 4282; dwelling, 5150.
Solempnely, *adv.* publicly, with due publicity, C 6706.
Soleyn, *adj.* sullen, 3896.
Sophyme, *s.* sophism, C 7471.
Sore, *adv.* closely, strictly, 2055; ardently, 2075.
Sote, *adj.* sweet, 4880.
Soth-sawe, *s.* truth-telling, C 6125, 6130, 7590.
Sotilly, *adv.* subtly, 4395.
Soudiours, *s. pl.* soldiers, 4234.
Spanishing, *s.* expanding, expansion, 3633. *O. F. espanir*, to expand.
Sparred, *pt.* *s.* locked, fastened, 3320.
Sparth, *s.* a battle-ax, C 5978.
Spered, *pp.* (*for* sperred), fastened, locked (*F. senti la clef*, 3099).
Sperhauke, *s.* sparrowhawk, 4033.
Spille, *v.* kill, 1941, destroy, 2162; *ger.* to surrender to destruction, 5441; *pl.* *s.* spoiled, 5136; *pp.* exhausted, 4786.
Spital, *s.* hospital, C 6505.
Springe *pr.* *pl.* grow, increase, C 5988; *pp.* advances, C 6954.
Springolde, *s. pl.* catapults, 4191.
Squared, *pp.* cut square, 4155.
Squierly, *adj.* like a squire, C 7415.
Squyre, *s.* square (carpenter's square), C 7064.
Stant, *pr.* *s.* stands, waits, 5004.
Stark, *adj.* downright, C 7292.
Stede, *s.* place, C 5808.
Stille or **loude**, silently or aloud, under all circumstances, C 7532.
Stinten, *v.* cease, C 6849; *pp.* stopped, C 6473.
Stonde forth, *ger.* to stand out, persist, 3547; *Stont*, *pr.* *s.* stands, consists, 5581; *Stant*, *pr.* *s.* waits, 5004.
Stounde, *s.* hour, time, 1733; *pl.* hours, 2639.
Stounde, *s.*; (probably an error for *wounde*, wound), 4472.
Stoundemele, *adj.* momentary, 3784.
Stoundemele, *adv.* hourly, from one hour to another, 2304.
Stoutnesse, *s.* pride, obstinacy, 1936.
Streite, *adj.* close-fitting, 2271.
Strene, *s.* strain, breed, 4859. *A. S. strona*.
Strepe, *v.* strip, fleece, C 6818.
Strayne, *v.* constrain, compel, C 6406. *pt.* *s.* urged, C 7631.
Streyned-Abstinence, *Constrained Abstinence*, C 7325.
Stuffen, *pr.* *pl.* provide with defenders, C 6290. *F. text, corrent les murs garnir*.
Suen, *v.* pursue, seek, 4953.
Suffraunce, *s.* patience, submission, 3462.
Suspicious, *adj.* suspect, open to suspicion, C 6110.
Sustening, *s.* sustenance, C 6697.
Swelte, *s. pr.* *s. subj.* die, 2480.
Swete, *s. pr.* *s. subj.* sweat, feel heat, 2480.
Swink, *s.* toil, labour, C 6996.
Swinke, *v.* labour, C 6619; *ger.* to toil, 2151, 5685; *pr.* *s.* toils, 5675.
Swinker, *s.* toiler, C 6857.
Swinking, *s.* toiling, C 6703.
Swoning, *s.* swooning, swoon, 1737.
Sy, *i. e.* if (*F. si*), *i. e.* haphazard, 5741.
Sythe, *pl.* times, 2048, 4868; *Many sythe*, often, 2257.

T.

- Take**, *v.* lay hold, 5351; take arms, 3529; hand over, C 7265; *v. refl.* surrender, 1947; *t. on hem*, apply to themselves, C 6107 (*F. text, sur eux riens n'en prendront*); *pr.* *s.* betakes, commits himself, C 6442; *pp.* taken; *him take*, betaken himself, C 7280; *Tan*, *pp.* C 5894.
Takel, *s.* weapon, arrow, 1729, 1863.
Tale, *s.* reckoning. *yeve I litel tale*, I pay little heed, C 6375.
Talent, *s.* good will, inclination, C 6134; fancy, C 7110; longing, 3472; desire, intent, 1716; spirit, disposition, C 7674.
Tan, *pp.* taken, C 5894. See **Take**.
Tapinage, *s.* hiding; *in tapinage*, sneakingly, C 7363.
Tatarwagges, *s. pl.* fluttering tatters, C 7259.
Taylagiers, *s. pl.* tax-gatherers, C 6811.
Tecche, *s.* fault, bad habit, 5166; *pl.* C 6517.
Teched, *pt.* *s.* taught, C 6680.
Telle, *v.* account, 5053.

Templers, *s. pl.* Knights-Templars, C 6693.
 Temprure, *s.* tempering, mixing, 4177.
 Temps, *s.* time; *at prime temps*, at the first time, at first, 3373.
 Tene, *s.* ruin, blight, 4750.
 Tespye, *v.* to espy, 3156.
 Than, *conj.* than if, 4328.
 Thank, *s.* thanks, 4584; (F. text, *son gré deservir*); good will, 2698, 2700; *in thank*, with thanks, with good will, 2115, 4577; *Thankes*, *pl.* thanks, 2036; *thy thankis*, with thy good will, 2463.
 Thar, *adv.* there, 1853, 1857.
 Thar, *pr. s. impera.* needs; *you thar*, you need, 3604.
 Thee, *v.* thrive; *so mote I thee*, as I hope to thrive, 3086, 4841, C 5899.
 Thempryse (*for* The empryse), the custom, 2286.
 Ther-geyn, *prep.* against this, C 6555.
 Thilke, *pron.* that, 2106, C 5980.
 Thing, *s. pl.* things, property, C 6670.
 Thinges, *s. pl.* business, doings, C 6037.
 This, *for* this is, C 6057, 6452.
 Thought, *s.* the object of thought personified (?), 2473. (But a corrupt reading; read *That soote*, answering to *S'amie* in the F. text.)
 Threste, *1 pr. s.* thrust, C 6825.
 Thringe, *ger.* to thrust, C 7419.
 Thritty, *adj.* thirty, 4211.
 Throwe, *s.* moment, 1771, 3867.
 Thrust, *s.* thirst, 4722.
 Thurgh-sought, *pp.* examined thoroughly, 4948.
 Til, *prep.* to; *him til*, to him, 4594.
 Tilier, *s.* tiller, husbandman, 4339.
 To-beten, *pp.* belaboured, C 6126.
 Tobeye, to obey, 3534.
 To-drawe, *pp.* torn in pieces, C 6126.
 Tofoyn, *prep.* before, 2969; God tofoyn, in the sight of God, C 7198.
 Token, *pl. pl.* took (i. e. took Christ to witness, appealed to Christ), C 7122. (The translation is entirely wrong; hence the lack of sense.)
 Tolde, *pp.* (*error for* Told), told, C 6598.
 To-me-ward, towards me, 3354, 3803.
 To-moche-Yeving, Giving too much, C 5837.
 Ton, the, the one, 5217; *the toon*, 5559.
 To-quake, *v.* quake greatly; *al to-quake*, tremble very much, 2527.
 To-shake, *v.* shake to the foundations, ruin, C 5981.
 To-shar, *pl. s.* lacerated, cut in twain, 1858.

To-shent, *pp.* undone; *al to-shent*, utterly undone, 1903.
 Touret, *s.* turret, 4164.
 Tourn, *s.* turn, 5470.
 Trace, *v.* walk, go about, C 6745; *pr. pl.* walk, live, 5753.
 Transmewe, *v.* transmute, be changed, 2526.
 Trashed, *pp.* betrayed, 3231.
 Trechour, *s.* traitour, C 7216; cheat, C 6602.
 Tree, *s.* wood, 1747, 1808, 2408, C 7061.
 Treget, *s.* trap, snare, C 6312; trickery, guile, C 6267, 6825.
 Tregetours, *s. pl.* tricksters, C 7587.
 Tregetrye, *s.* trickery, C 6382; trick, C 6374.
 Trepeget, *s.* a military engine made of wood, used for hurling large stones and other missiles, a trebuchet, C 6279.
 Trichour, *adj.* treacherous, 6308.
 Trist, *v.* trust, 4364; *pp.* 3929.
 Trouble, *adj.* troubled, 1755.
 Troubler, *adj. comp.* dimmer, less bright, C 7116.
 Trowandyse, *s.* knavery, villany, 3954.
 Trowe, *v.* believe, C 6873.
 Truaundering, *s.* idling, shirking, C 6721.
 Truaunderyse, *s.* idleness, shirking, C 6664.
 Truaunder, *s.* idler, loafer, C 6645.
 Tumble, *v.* cause to tumble, cause to perform athletic feats, C 6836; *ger.* to tumble, 5469.
 Turves, *s. pl.* sods of turf, C 7062.
 Twinne, *v.* separate, go apart, 4813; part, 5077; depart, 4367.

U.

Unavysed, *adj.* heedless, indiscreet, foolish, 4739.
 Unbond, *pl. s.* released, C 6416; *pp.* unfastened, 4700; opened, 2226.
 Unclosed, *pp.* untied, unfastened, 4698.
 Unclosid, *pp.* unenclosed, 3921, 3925.
 Undirfongith, *pr. s.* undertakes, 5709.
 Unese, *s.* uneasiness, trouble, 3102; discomfort, 2596.
 Unhappe, *s.* mishap, ill fortune, 5492.
 Unhyde, *v.* unfold, reveal, 2168.
 Unlefalle, *adj.* illicit, 4880.
 Unnethe, *adv.* scarcely, i. e. it will scarcely be, C 6541; Unnethis, hardly, 5461.
 Unrelesed, *adj.* unrelieved, 2729.
 Unsperd, *pp.* unbolted, unbarred, 2656.
 Unthrif, *s.* wastefulness, 4026.
 Unwelde, *adj.* impotent, feeble, 4886.

Up-caste, *pt. s.* lifted up, C 7129.
Updresse, *v.* set up, prepare, C 7067.
Up-right, *adv.* on thy back, 2561.
Urchouns, *s. pl.* hedgehogs, 3135.
Uttar, *adj.* outer, 4208.

V.

Vaillith, *pr. s.* avails, 5765.
Valour, *s.* worth, 5236, 5256; value, 5538.
Vassalage, *s.* prowess, courage, C 5871.
Vekke, *s.* old woman, hag, 4286, 4405.
Vendable, *adj.* venal, vendible, saleable, 5804.
Verger, *s.* orchard, 3234, 3618, 3831, 4851.
Vermayle, *adj.* vermilion, scarlet-red, 4645.
Vilaynsly, *adv.* disgracefully, 3904.
Vileyn, *s.* peasant, yokel, churl, 1990.
Vilayns, *gen.* churl's, 1992.
Vitaille, *s.* victuals, delicacies, C 7044.
Voide, *v.* drive away, 5164, *pr. s.* removes, 2833, 2845, *imp. s.* remove, clear, 2283; *imp. pl.* put away, 3571.
Voluntae, *s.* will, desire, 5276.
Vouche, *pr. s.* 1 *per* vouchsafe, For sauf of cherlis I no vouche, for I do not vouchsafe, among churls, 2002. (Or read *to for of*.)
Vounde, *pp.* (?) well found, hence, excellent, C 7063.

W.

Wacche, *s.* watching, lying awake, 4132.
Wade, *v.* wade, go about, 5021.
Walkyng, *s.* walking?, 2682. Perhaps read *talking*. F text, *parlers*.
Walowe, *v.* toss (or roll) about, 2562.
Wanhope, *s.* despair, 4432, 4433, 4708.
Wante, *v.* be lacking, 2530.
Ware, *s.* commodity, C 5926.
Warne, *v.* inform, C 7657, *pt. s.* refused, C 5840, *pp.* refused, denied, 2604, 3426, 5245, C 7502.
Wawe, *s.* wave, 4712.
Wayte, *ger* to besot (me) with, to plot, 2938.
Weder, *s.* storm, 4336.
Weed, *s.* religious habit, C 6159.
Welfaring, *adj.* well-favoured, C 6866. F text, *beles*.
Wel-Helinge, *s.* Good-concealment, C 5857.
Wene, *s.* expectation, 2046, *withouten wene*, doubtless, 2415, 2668, 2683, 4506.
Wene, *v.* suppose, 2761; (read *mak'th* [him] *wene* F text, *Qu'il se cuide*); *pr*

s. subj. imagine, 5672; **Wende**, *1 pt. s.* imagined, 4322.
Wening, *s.* imagination, 2766.
Went, *pp.* departed, turned away, C 6084. [Went, *pr. s.* turns aside, C 6205.] Supplied by guess.
Were, *s.* distraction (F. *guerre*, 6599) *withouten were*, without doubt; a characteristic expletive phrase, common in Fragment B, 1776, 2568, 2740, 3351, 3452, 4468, 5485, 5657, 5692.
Were, *v.* wear away, devour, 4752, *ger* to wear, *1 s.* to wear away (the above), 4712; *pr. pl.* C 6215; *pt. pl.* C 6244.
Werne, *v.* deny, refuse, 2443, C 6673, *pp.* 1730. See **Warne**.
Werrey, *v.* war against, oppose, C 6206; *ger* to make war upon, 3251; *pr. s.* war against, 3699; *1 pr. pl.* make war, C 7018; **Werreyed**, *pp.* warred against, 3917.
Wery, *v.* worry, strangle, C 6264.
Wethers, *s. gen.* wether's, sheep's C 6259.
Weyked, *pp.* as *adj.* too weak, 4737.
Wher, *conj.* whether, 2617, 5191.
Whetted, *pp.* sharpened, C 6197.
Whitsonday, *s.* Whitsunday, 2278. Cf. 'Garlands Whitsunday, 113d.'; Brand's Pop. Antiq. s. v. Whitsun-ale.
Whylom, *adv.* sometimes, 4355, 5190 formerly, 4121, C 7090.
Whyte monkes, *s. pl.* Cistercians, i. e. Reformed Benedictines, C 6695.
Wicked-Tonge F. *Malebouche*, C 7424.
Wight, *s.* man, creature, C 5961.
Wight, *adj.* active, 4761.
Wilfully, *adv.* willingly, 4808, C 5041.
Willen, *v.* desire, 2482.
William, W. *Sent Amour*, C 6702, 6778.
Wimple, *s.* wimple, 3864. A band usually of linen which covered the neck and was drawn up over the chin, strained up each side of the face, and generally fastened across the forehead - called also *barbe*, *gorget*, or *chin-cloth*.
Winde, *v.* turn about, 1810, escape 2056.
Winke, *v.* sleep, 2568; *2 pr. s. subj.* 2448.
Wis, *adv.* verily, C 6423.
Wite, *v.* know, C 6105, 6208, 6950, *Whit* 3145, 5574; *Wist*, *pt. pl.* knew, C 5804.
Wisten, *pt. pl. subj.* knew, C 6087.
Wone, *1 pr. s.* dwell, C 6143.
Woning, *s.* dwelling-place, C 6082.
Woning-places, *s. pl.* dwelling-places, C 6119.
Wonnen, *pt. pl.* won, C 6252.

Wood, *adj.* mad, 3138, 3776, C 6263; raging, 1921.
Wook, 1 *pt.* *s.* kept awake, watched, 1877.
Woot, *pr.* *s.* knows, 5257.
Worche, *v.* work, cause, C 6052.
Worche, *v.* deal (with what they have to do), C 6037. MS. G. has *worthe*; *Lat ladies worthe* = let ladies alone. The passage is obscure.
Worahinges, *s.* *pl.* doings, C 6585.
Worth, *adj.* worthy, C 7104.
Wost, 2 *pr.* *s.* knowest (thou), 4977; *Wostow*, knowest thou, C 6075, 6373.
Woxen, *pp.* grown, C 7140.
Wrapped, *pt.* *s.* *subj.* should wrap, C 6260.
Wrathed, 1 *pt.* *s.* made angry, 4108; *pp.* enraged, 3097.
Wreke, *pp.* revenged, 3363.
Wrenche, *s.* turn, trick, 4292.
Wreying, *s.* betraying, disclosure, 5220.
Writ, *pr.* *s.* writes, C 6585.
Wryen, *ger.* to cover, C 6684; *v.* disguise, C 6795; cover up, clothe, C 6819 (F. text, *s'afublent*).
Wrythe, *v.* twist, 4359.
Wurching, *s.* machination, C 6123.
Wyte, *s.* blame; *to wyte*, *s.* matter of reproach, 3558.

Y.

Yaf, *pt.* *s.* gave, 2339, 4500.
Yalt, *pr.* *s.* *refl.* betakes himself, 4904. See **Yelde**.

Yate, *s.* gate, 4230.
Yates, *s.* *pl.* gates (but miswritten for gates, i. e. ways), 5722.
Y-bake, *pp.* baked, C 7048.
Y-do, *pp.* done; *here y-do*, have done! 1941.
Ye, *s.* eye, 4264.
Yedest, 2 *pt.* *s.* wentest, 3227; *Yede*, *pr.* *s.* went, 5151; has gone, 2585.
Yeft, *s.* gift, granting, 3664.
Yelde, *v.* yield, 1933; submit (thymself, C 6383, *imp.* *s.* yield, 1930.
Yerne, *adv.* readily, eagerly, C 6719.
Yerning, *s.* affection, C 5951.
Yeten, *pp.* poured out, 5702. *Pp.* from A. S. *gēotan*.
Yeve, 1 *pr.* *s.* care, regard, C 6464.
Yeving, *s.* giving, C 5907.
Y-fere, *adv.* together, in company, 3800.
Y-holpe, *pp.* helped, holpen, 5905.
Ying, *adj.* young, 2208. A Northern form.
Y-let, *pp.* hidden, 5335.
Yliche, *adv.* equally, alike, 3630.
Yolden, *pp.* requited, 4556. See **Yelde**.
Yore, *adv.* long ago, C 7599.
Youth-hede, *s.* youthhood, 4931.
Ypocryte, *s.* hypocrite, C 6482.
Yre, *s.* anger, 3174. F. text, *ire*.
Y-sene, *adj.* visible, C 6806.
Yvel, *adv.* ill, 5238.
Y-wis, *adv.* certainly, 2788, 5554, 5790; C 5825, 5896, 5915, 6879, 6932, 7400, 7564.

OXFORD
PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
BY HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

WORKS

BY THE

REV. PROF. W. W. SKEAT, LITT.D.

An Etymological Dictionary of the English Language, arranged on an Historical Basis. 4to, 2l. 4s.

A Concise Etymological Dictionary of the English Language. 5s. 6d.

The Principles of English Etymology.

First Series. *The Native Element*. 10s. 6d.

Second Series. *The Foreign Element*. 10s. 6d.

A Primer of English Etymology. 1s. 6d.

Specimens of Early English.

Part II. From Robert of Gloucester to Gower (A.D. 1298 to A.D. 1391). By R. MORRIS, LL.D., and W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. 7s. 6d.

Specimens of English Literature, from the 'Ploughman's Crede' to the 'Shepheardes Calender' (A.D. 1394 to A.D. 1579). With Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index. 7s. 6d.

The Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman, in three Parallel Texts; together with Richard the Redeless. By WILLIAM LANGLAND (about 1362-1399 A.D.). Edited from numerous Manuscripts, with Preface, Notes, and a Glossary. 2 vols. 8vo, 1l. 11s. 6d.

The Vision of William concerning Piers the Plowman, by WILLIAM LANGLAND. With Notes, &c. 4s. 6d.

Chaucer. The Complete Works of Geoffrey Chaucer. Edited from numerous Manuscripts. In 6 vols., demy 8vo, with Portrait and Facsimiles. 4l. 16s.

Chaucer. The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales. (School Edition.) Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s.

Chaucer. The Prologue, The Knightes Tale, The Nonne Preestes Tale; from the *Canterbury Tales*. Edited by R. MORRIS, LL.D. A New Edition, with Collations and Additional Notes, by W. W. SKEAT, Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.

Chaucer. The Prioresses Tale; *Sir Thopas*; *The Monkes Tale*; *The Clerkes Tale*; *The Squieres Tale*, &c. 4s. 6d.

Chaucer. The Tale of the Man of Lawe; *The Pardoner's Tale*; *The Second Nonnes Tale*; *The Chanoines Yemannes Tale*. 4s. 6d.

Chaucer. The Minor Poems. 10s. 6d.

Chaucer. The Legend of Good Women. 6s.

The Tale of Gamelyn. Edited with Notes, Glossary, &c. 1s. 6d.

Twelve Facsimiles of Old English MSS., with Transcriptions and Introduction. 4to, 7s. 6d.

The New Testament in English, according to the Version by JOHN WYCLIFFE, about A.D. 1380, and Revised by JOHN PURVEY, about A.D. 1388. With Glossary, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 6s.

The Books of Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and the Song of Solomon: according to the Wycliffite Version made by NICHOLAS DE HEREFORD, about A.D. 1387, and Revised by JOHN PURVEY, about A.D. 1388. With Glossary, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.

A Student's Pastime. Crown 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

LONDON: HENRY FROWDE

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.



28/9/97

Clarendon Press, Oxford.

SELECT LIST OF STANDARD WORKS.

DICTIONARIES	page 1
LAW	" 2
HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, ETC.	" 4
PHILOSOPHY, LOGIC, ETC.	" 6
PHYSICAL SCIENCE	" 7

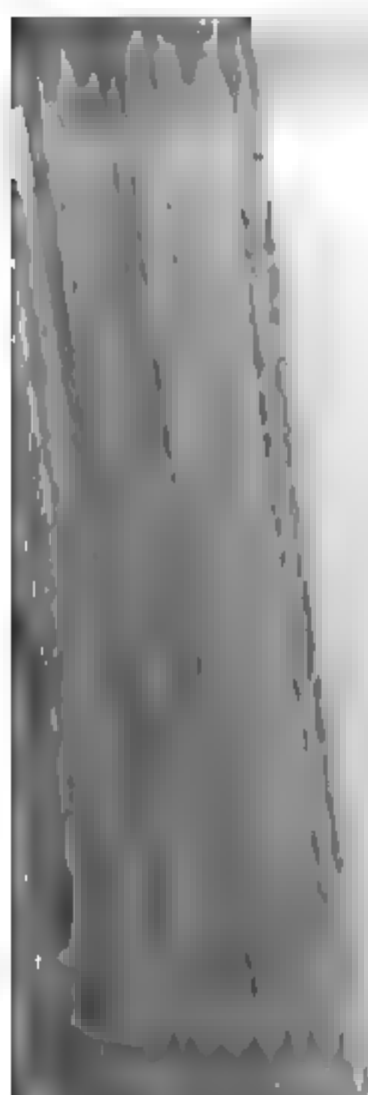
1. DICTIONARIES.

A NEW ENGLISH DICTIONARY
ON HISTORICAL PRINCIPLES,

Founded mainly on the materials collected by the Philological Society.
Imperial 4to.

PRESENT STATE OF THE WORK.		£	s.	d.
Vol. I.	{ A } Edited by Dr. MURRAY	Half-morocco	2	12 6
	{ B }			
Vol. II.	C Edited by Dr. MURRAY	Half-morocco	2	12 6
Vol. III.	{ D } Edited by Dr. MURRAY and Mr. HENRY BRADLEY			
	{ E }			
	Half-morocco		2	12 6
	Double Section Doom—Dziggetai		0	5 0
Vol. IV.	{ F Edited by Mr. BRADLEY {	F-Field	0	7 6
		Field-Fish	0	2 6
		Fish-Flexuose	0	2 6
		Flexuosity—Foister	0	2 6
	G To be edited by Mr. Henry BRADLEY. <i>In Preparation.</i>			
Vol. V.	H—K Edited by Dr. MURRAY. <i>In the Press.</i>			

* * The Dictionary is also, as heretofore, issued in the original Parts:—
Series I. Parts I–IX. A—Distrustful each 0 12 6
Series I. Part X. Distrustfully—Dziggetai 0 7 6
Series II. Parts I and II. E—Field each 0 12 6



Grueber. *Lex Aquilia.* The Roman Law of Damage to Property: being a Commentary on the Title of the Digest 'Ad Legem Aquiliam' (ix. 2). By Erwin Grueber, Dr. Jur., M.A. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Hall. *International Law.* By W. E. Hall, M.A. Fourth Edition. 8vo. 22s. 6d.

— *A Treatise on the Foreign Powers and Jurisdiction of the British Crown.* By W. E. Hall, M.A. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Holland. *Elements of Jurisprudence.* By T. E. Holland, D.C.L. Eighth Edition. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

— *The European Concert in the Eastern Question; a Collection of Treaties and other Public Acts.* Edited, with Introductions and Notes, by T. E. Holland, D.C.L. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

— *Gentilis, Alberici, De Iure Belli Libri Tres.* Edidit T. E. Holland, I.C.D. Small 4to, half-morocco, 21s.

— *The Institutes of Justinian,* edited as a recension of the Institutes of Gaius, by T. E. Holland, D.C.L. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.

Holland and Shadwell. *Select Titles from the Digest of Justinian.* By T. E. Holland, D.C.L., and C. L. Shadwell, B.C.L. 8vo. 14s.

Also sold in Parts, in paper covers—
Part I. Introductory Titles. 2s. 6d.
Part II. Family Law. 1s.
Part III. Property Law. 2s. 6d.
Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 1), 6d. (No. 2), 4s. 6d.

Markby. *Elements of Law considered with reference to Principles of General Jurisprudence.* By Sir William Markby, D.C.L. Fifth Edition. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Moyle. *Imperatoris Iustiniani Institutionum Libri Quattuor; with Introductions, Commentary, Excursus and Translation.* By J. B. Moyle, D.C.L. Third Edition. 2 vols. 8vo. Vol. I. 16s. Vol. II. 6s.

— *Contract of Sale in the Civil Law.* By J. B. Moyle, D.C.L. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Pollock and Wright. *An Essay on Possession in the Common Law.* By Sir F. Pollock, Bart., M.A., and Sir R. S. Wright, B.C.L. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

Poste. *Gaii Institutionum Juris Civilis Commentarii Quattuor; or, Elements of Roman Law by Gaius.* With a Translation and Commentary by Edward Poste, M.A. Third Edition. 8vo. 18s.

Raleigh. *An Outline of the Law of Property.* By Thos. Raleigh, M.A. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Sohm. *Institutes of Roman Law.* By Rudolph Sohm, Professor in the University of Leipzig. Translated by J. C. Ledlie, B.C.L. With an Introductory Essay by Erwin Grueber, Dr. Jur., M.A. 8vo. 18s.

Stokes. *The Anglo-Indian Codes.* By Whitley Stokes, LL.D.
 Vol. I. Substantive Law. 8vo. 30s.
 Vol. II. Adjective Law. 8vo. 35s.
 First and Second Supplements to the above, 1887-1891. 8vo. 6s. 6d.
 Separately, No. 1, 2s. 6d.; No. 2, 4s. 6d.

3. HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, ETC.

Ademnani Vita S. Columbae.

Ed. J. T. Fowler, D.C.L. Crown 8vo, half-bound, 8s. 6d. net (with translation, 9s. 6d. net).

Baedae Historia Ecclesiastica,

etc. Edited by C. Plummer, M.A. 2 vols. Crown 8vo, 21s. net.

Bedford (W.K.R.). The Blazon

of Episcopacy Being the Arms borne by, or attributed to, the Archbishops and Bishops of England and Wales. With an Ordinary of the Coats described and of other Episcopal Arms. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With One Thousand Illustrations. Sm. 4to, buckram, 31s. 6d. net.

Boswell's Life of Samuel

Johnson, LL.D. Edited by G. Birkbeck Hill, D.C.L. In six volumes, medium 8vo. With Portraits and Facsimiles. Half bound, 3l. 3s.

Bridges. The 'Opus Majus'

of Roger Bacon. Edited with Introduction and Analytical Table, by John Henry Bridges, B.M. 2 vols 8vo, 32s.

Bright. Chapters of Early

English Church History. By W. Bright, D.D. Third Edition. Revised and Enlarged. With a Map. 8vo. 12s.

Casaubon (Isaac). 1559-1614.

By Mark Pattison. 8vo. 16s.

Clarendon's History of the

Rebellion and Civil Wars in England. Re-edited from a fresh collation of the original MS. in the Bodleian Library, with marginal dates and occasional notes, by W. Dunn Macray, M.A., F.S.A. 6 vols. Crown 8vo. 2l. 5s.

Crawford. The Crawford Col-

lection of Early Charters and Documents,

now in the Bodleian Library.

Edited by A. S. Napier and W. H. Stevenson. Small 4to, cloth, 12s.

Earle. Handbook to the Land-

Charters, and other Saxon Documents. By John Earle, M.A. Crown 8vo. 16s.

Freeman. The History of

Sicily from the Earliest Times.

Vols. I. and II. 8vo, cloth, 2l. 2s.

Vol. III. The Athenian and Carthaginian Invasions. 24s.

Vol. IV. From the Tyranny of Dionysius to the Death of Agathokles. Edited by Arthur J. Evans, M.A. 21s.

Freeman. The Reign of

William Rufus and the Accession of Henry the First. By E. A. Freeman, D.C.L. 2 vols. 8vo. 1l. 16s.

Gardiner. The Constitutional

Documents of the Puritan Revolution, 1628-1660. Selected and Edited by Samuel Rawson Gardiner, M.A. Crown 8vo. 9s.

Gross. The Gild Merchant;

a Contribution to British Municipal History. By Charles Gross, Ph.D. 2 vols. 8vo. 24s.

Hastings. Hastings and the

Rohilla War. By Sir John Strachey, G.C.S.I. 8vo, cloth, 10s. 6d.

Hodgkin. Italy and her In-

vasaders. With Plates and Maps. By T. Hodgkin, D.C.L.

Vols. I II. Second Edition. 2l. 2s.

Vols. III-IV. Second Edition. 1l. 16s.

Vols. V-VI. 1l. 16s.

— The Dynasty of Theo-

donus; or, Seventy Years' Struggle with the Barbarians. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. 6s.

Jackson. *The Church of St. Mary the Virgin, Oxford.* By T. G. Jackson, M.A., R.A. With Twenty-four full-page Illustrations, and numerous Cuts in the Text. Demy 4to, half-bound, 36s. net; or in vellum, gilt top and morocco labels, &c., 42s. net.

Johnson. *Letters of Samuel Johnson, LL.D.* Collected and Edited by G. Birkbeck Hill, D.C.L. 2 vols. half-roan, 28s.

— *Johnsonian Miscellanies.* By the same Editor. 2 vols. Medium 8vo, half-roan, 28s.

Kitchin. *A History of France.* With Numerous Maps, Plans, and Tables. By G. W. Kitchin, D.D. In three Volumes. Third Edition. Crown 8vo, each 10s. 6d.

Vol. I. to 1453. Vol. II. 1453-1624. Vol. III. 1624-1793.

Lucas. *Introduction to a Historical Geography of the British Colonies.* By C. P. Lucas, B.A. With Eight Maps. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

— *Historical Geography of the British Colonies:*

Vol. I. The Mediterranean and Eastern Colonies (exclusive of India). With Eleven Maps. Crown 8vo. 5s.

Vol. II. The West Indian Colonies. With Twelve Maps. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Vol. III. West Africa. With Five Maps. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Vol. IV. South and East Africa. Historical and Geographical. With Ten Maps. Crown 8vo. 9s. 6d.

Ludlow. *The Memoirs of Edmund Ludlow, Lieutenant-General of the Horse in the Army of the Commonwealth of England, 1625-1672.* Edited by C. H. Firth, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo. 1l. 16s.

Machiavelli. *Il Principe.* Edited by L. Arthur Burd, M.A. With an Introduction by Lord Acton. 8vo. 14s.

Prothero. *Select Statutes and other Constitutional Documents, illustrative of the Reigns of Elizabeth and James I.* Edited by G. W. Prothero, M.A. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

— *Select Statutes and other Documents bearing on the Constitutional History of England, from A.D. 1307 to 1558.* By the same Editor. [In Preparation.]

Ramsay (Sir J. H.). *Lancaster and York.* A Century of English History (A.D. 1399-1485). 2 vols. 8vo. With Index, 37s. 6d.

Ramsay (W. M.). *The Cities and Bishoprics of Phrygia.* By W. M. Ramsay, D.C.L., LL.D.

Vol. I. Part I. The Lycos Valley and South-Western Phrygia. Royal 8vo. 18s. net.

Vol. I. Part II. West and West-Central Phrygia. 21s. net.

Ranke. *A History of England, principally in the Seventeenth Century.* By L. von Ranke. Translated under the superintendence of G. W. Kitchin, D.D., and C. W. Boase, M.A. 6 vols. 8vo. 63s.

Revised Index, separately, 1s.

Rashdall. *The Universities of Europe in the Middle Ages.* By Hastings Rashdall, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo. With Maps. 2l. 5s., net.

Smith's Lectures on Justice, Police, Revenue and Arms. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Edwin Cannan. 8vo. 10s. 6d. net.

— *Wealth of Nations.* With Notes, by J. E. Thorold Rogers, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo. 21s.

Stephens. *The Principal Speeches of the Statesmen and Orators of the French Revolution, 1789-1795.* By H. Morse Stephens. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 21s.

Stubbs. *Select Charters and other Illustrations of English Constitutional History, from the Earliest Times to the Reign of Edward I.* Arranged and edited by W. Stubbs, D.D., Lord Bishop of Oxford. Eighth Edition. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

— *The Constitutional History of England, in its Origin and Development.* Library Edition. 3 vols. Demy 8vo. 2l. 8s.

Also in 3 vols. crown 8vo, price 12s. each.

Stubbs. *Seventeen Lectures on the Study of Mediæval and Modern History.* Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

— *Registrum Sacrum Angliæ.* An attempt to exhibit the course of Episcopal Succession in England. By W. Stubbs, D.D. Small 4to. Second Edition. 10s. 6d.

Swift (F. D.). *The Life and Times of James the First of Aragon.* By F. D. Swift, B.A. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Vinogradoff. *Villainage in England.* Essays in English Mediæval History. By Paul Vinogradoff, Professor in the University of Moscow. 8vo, half-bound. 16s.

4. PHILOSOPHY, LOGIC, ETC.

Bacon. *The Essays.* With Introduction and Illustrative Notes. By S. H. Reynolds, M.A. 8vo, half-bound. 12s. 6d.

— *Novum Organum.* Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by T. Fowler, D.D. Second Edition. 8vo. 15s.

Berkeley. *The Works of George Berkeley, D.D., formerly Bishop of Cloyne; including many of his writings hitherto unpublished.* With Prefaces, Annotations, and an Account of his Life and Philosophy. By A. Campbell Fraser, Hon. D.C.L., LL.D. 4 vols. 8vo. 2l. 18s.

The Life, Letters, &c., separately, 16s.

Bosanquet. *Logic; or, the Morphology of Knowledge.* By B. Bosanquet, M.A. 8vo. 21s.

Butler. *The Works of Joseph Butler, D.C.L.; sometime Lord Bishop of Durham.* Divided into sections, with sectional headings, an index

to each volume, and some occasional notes; also prefatory matter. Edited by the Right Hon. W. E. Gladstone. 2 vols. Medium 8vo. 28s.

Fowler. *The Elements of Deductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Junior Students in the Universities.* By T. Fowler, D.D. Tenth Edition, with a Collection of Examples. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

— *The Elements of Inductive Logic, designed mainly for the use of Students in the Universities.* By the same Author. Sixth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

— *Logic; Deductive and Inductive, combined in a single volume.* Extra fcap. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Fowler and Wilson. *The Principles of Morals.* By T. Fowler, D.D., and J. M. Wilson, B.D. 8vo, cloth, 14s.

Green. *Prolegomena to Ethics.* By T. H. Green, M.A. Edited by A. C. Bradley, M.A. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Hegel. *The Logic of Hegel.*

Translated from the Encyclopaedia of the Philosophical Sciences. With Prolegomena to the Study of Hegel's Logic and Philosophy. By W. Wallace, M.A. *Second Edition, Revised and Augmented.* 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d. each.

Hegel's Philosophy of Mind.

Translated from the Encyclopaedia of the Philosophical Sciences. With Five Introductory Essays. By William Wallace, M.A., LL.D. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Hume's Treatise of Human Nature.

Edited, with Analytical Index, by L. A. Selby-Bigge, M.A. *Second Edition.* Crown 8vo. 8s.

Hume's Enquiry concerning the Human Understanding, and an Enquiry concerning the Principles of Morals.

Edited by L. A. Selby-Bigge, M.A. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Locke. *An Essay Concerning Human Understanding.*

By John Locke. Collated and Annotated,

with Prolegomena, Biographical, Critical, and Historic, by A. Campbell Fraser, Hon. D.C.L., LL.D. 2 vols. 8vo. 1l. 12s.

Lotze's Logic, in Three Books ;

of Thought, of Investigation, and of Knowledge. English Translation; edited by B. Bosanquet, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2 vols. Cr. 8vo. 12s.

Metaphysic, in Three

Books; Ontology, Cosmology, and Psychology. English Translation; edited by B. Bosanquet, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2 vols. Cr. 8vo. 12s.

Martineau. *Types of Ethical Theory.*

By James Martineau, D.D. *Third Edition.* 1 vol. Cr. 8vo. 15s.

A Study of Religion :

its Sources and Contents. *Second Edition.* 2 vols. Cr. 8vo. 15s.

Selby-Bigge. *British Moralists.*

Selections from Writers principally of the Eighteenth Century. Edited by L. A. Selby-Bigge, M.A. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 18s.

5. PHYSICAL SCIENCE.

Chambers. *A Handbook of*

Descriptive and Practical Astronomy. By G. F. Chambers, F.R.A.S. *Fourth Edition,* in 3 vols. Demy 8vo.

Vol. I. The Sun, Planets, and Comets. 21s.

Vol. II. Instruments and Practical Astronomy. 21s.

Vol. III. The Starry Heavens. 14s.

De Bary. *Comparative Anatomy of the Vegetative Organs of the Phanerogams and Ferns.*

By Dr. A. de Bary. Translated by F. O.

Bower, M.A., and D. H. Scott, M.A. Royal 8vo. 1l. 2s. 6d.

De Bary. *Comparative Morphology and Biology of Fungi, Mycetozoa and Bacteria.*

By Dr. A. de Bary. Translated by H. E. F. Garnsey, M.A. Revised by Isaac Bayley Balfour, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 1l. 2s. 6d.

De Bary. *Lectures on Bacteria.*

By Dr. A. de Bary. *Second Improved Edition.* Translated by H. E. F. Garnsey, M.A. Revised by Isaac Bayley Balfour, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Crown 8vo. 6s.

Goebel. *Outlines of Classification and Special Morphology of Plants.* By Dr. K. Goebel. Translated by H. E. F. Garnsey, M.A. Revised by Isaac Bayley Balfour, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 11. 1s.

Sachs. *A History of Botany.* Translated by H. E. F. Garnsey, M.A. Revised by I. Bayley Balfour, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Crown 8vo. 10s.

Fossil Botany. *Being an Introduction to Palaeophytology from the Standpoint of the Botanist.* By H. Graf zu Solms-Laubach. Translated by H. E. F. Garnsey, M.A. Revised by I. Bayley Balfour, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 18s.

Biological Series.

I. *The Physiology of Nerve, of Muscle, and of the Electrical Organ.* Edited by J. Burdon Sanderson, M.D., F.R.SS. L & E. Medium 8vo. 11. 1s.

II. *The Anatomy of the Frog.* By Dr. Alexander Reker, Professor in the University of Freiburg. Translated, with numerous Annotations and Additions, G. Haslam, M.D. Med. 8vo. 21s.

IV. *Essays upon Heredity and Kindred Biological Problems.* By Dr. A. Weismann. Authorized Translation. Crown 8vo.

Vol. I. Edited by E. B. Poulton, S. Schönland, and A. E. Shipley. Second Edition. 7s. 6d.

Vol. II. Edited by E. B. Poulton, and A. E. Shipley. 5s.

Elliott. *An Introduction to the Algebra of Quantics.* By E. B. Elliott, M.A. 8vo. 15s.

Prestwich. *Geology, Chemical, Physical, and Stratigraphical.* By Sir Joseph Prestwich, M.A., F.R.S. In two Volumes. 3l. 1s.

Price. *A Treatise on the Measurement of Electrical Resistance.* By W. A. Price, M.A., A.M.I.C.E. 8vo. 14s.

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

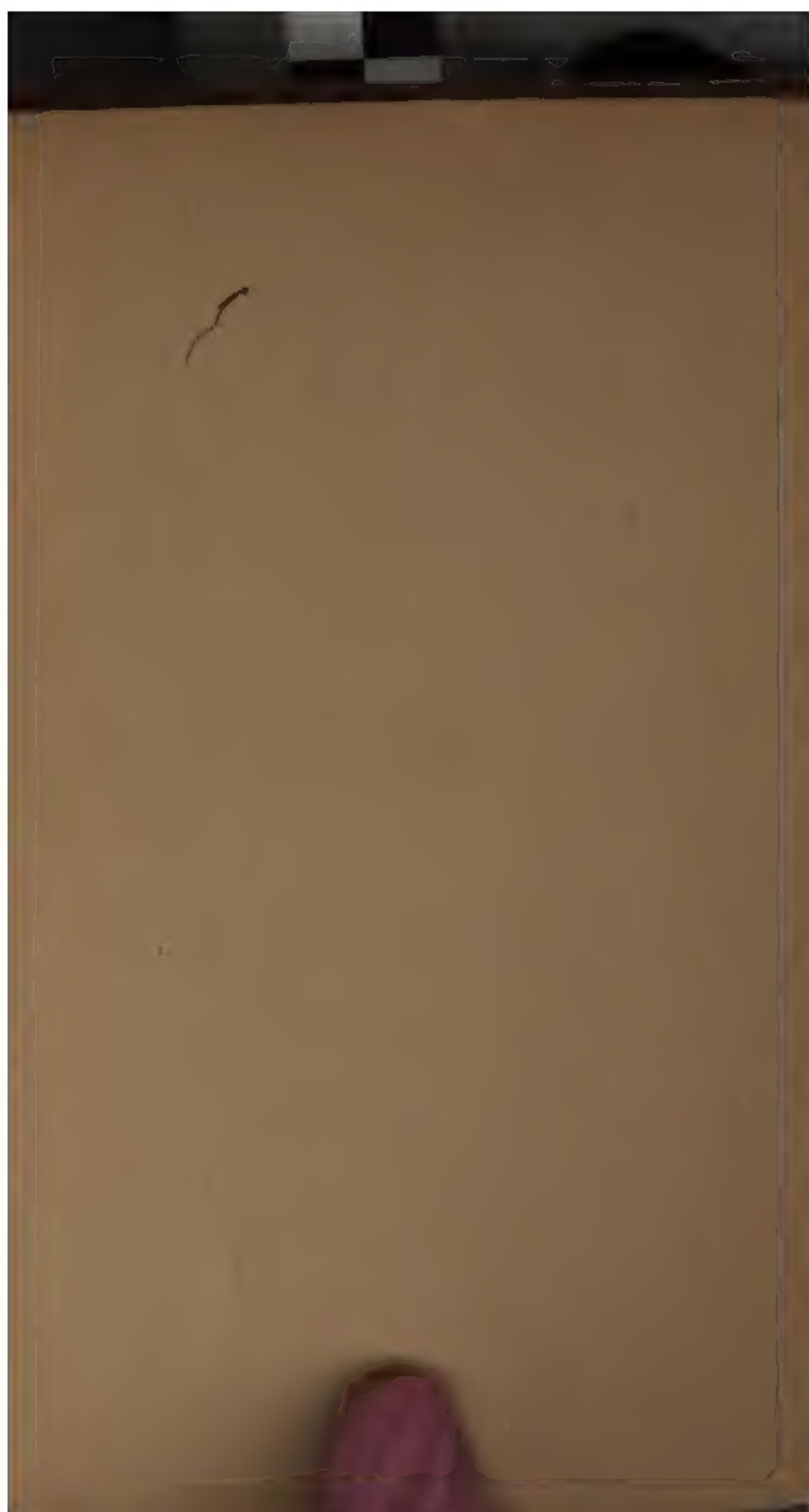
LONDON: HENRY FROWDE

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, AMEN CORNER, E.C.

Spr 17











THE BORROWER WILL BE CHARGED
AN OVERDUE FEE IF THIS BOOK IS
NOT RETURNED TO THE LIBRARY ON
OR BEFORE THE LAST DATE STAMPED
BELOW. NON-RECEIPT OF OVERDUE
NOTICES DOES NOT EXEMPT THE
BORROWER FROM OVERDUE FEES.

